EDITED BY DR. WILLIAM ROSE

AN OUTLINE OF MODERN KNOWLEDGE

R. R. MARETT
Rector of Exeter College, Oxford

JAMES RICE
Associate Professor of Physics in the University of Liverpool

J. W. N. SULLIVAN
Author of *The Bases of Modern Science*, etc., etc.

C. G. SELIGMAN
Professor of Ethnology in the University of London

J. ARTHUR THOMSON
Emeritus Professor of Natural History in the University of Aberdeen

A. WOLF
Professor of Logic in the University of London

W. R. MATTHEWS
Dean of King's College, London

L. DUDLEY STAMP
Reader in Economic Geography in the University of London

C. H. REILLY
Professor of Architecture in the University of Liverpool

R. O. MORRIS
Professor in the Royal College of Music, London

R. A. SAMPSON
Astronomer Royal for Scotland

ON

SCIENCE · PHYSICS · ASTRONOMY
COSMOGONY · MATHEMATICS ·
ANTHROPOLOGY · ETHNOLOGY · BIOLOGY
RELIGION · PHILOSOPHY · GEOGRAPHY
ARCHITECTURE · MUSIC

LONDON
VICTOR GOLLANCZ LTD.
14 Henrietta Street Covent Garden

First published September 28th, 1931
Second impression October 1931
Third impression January 1932
Fourth impression (first cheap edition) September 1934

Printed in Great Britain by
The Camelot Press Ltd., London and Southampton

CONTENTS

page

List of Illustrations ix

Introduction xiii

§A. SCIENCE, PHILOSOPHY, AND PSYCHOLOGY

Preceded by a Philosophic and Scientific Retrospect summing up the views held up to the 19th Century, and concluding with a survey of Recent and Contemporary Philosophy

1 A PHILOSOPHIC AND SCIENTIFIC RETROSPECT by PROF. A. WOLF, M.A., D.LITT., Professor of Logic and Scientific Method in the University of London 3

2 THE IDEA OF GOD : An Introduction to the Philosophy of Religion by the REV. PROF. W. R. MATTHEWS, M.A., D.D., Dean of King's College, London, and Professor of the Philosophy of Religion in the University of London 47

3 THE PHYSICAL NATURE OF THE UNIVERSE by J. W. N. SULLIVAN 83

4 ASTRONOMY by PROF. R. A. SAMPSON, M.A., F.R.S., Astronomer Royal for Scotland 113

5 THE NATURE OF MATHEMATICS by PROF. JAMES RICE, M.A., Associate Professor of Physics in the University of Liverpool 155

6 BIOLOGY AND HUMAN PROGRESS by PROF. SIR J. ARTHUR THOMSON, M.A., LL.D., Emeritus Professor of Natural History in the University of Aberdeen 203

7 SEX by PROF. F. A. E. CREW, M.D., D.SC., PH.D., F.R.S.E., Professor of Animal Genetics and Director of the Animal Breeding Station, University of Edinburgh 253

8 PSYCHOLOGY by F. AVELING, PH.D., D.SC., D.LITT., Reader in Psychology in the University of London 305

CONTENTS

page

9 THEORIES OF PSYCHO-ANALYSIS by PROF. J. C. FLÜGEL, B.A., D.SC., Assistant Professor of Psychology in University College, London 349

10 THE BEGINNINGS OF MORALS AND CULTURE: An Introduction to Social Anthropology by R. R. MARETT, M.A., D.SC., F.R.A.I., Rector of Exeter College, Oxford 395

11 THE CHARACTERISTICS AND DISTRIBUTION OF THE HUMAN RACE: An Introduction to Ethnology by PROF. C. G. SELIGMAN, M.D., F.R.S., Professor of Ethnology in the University of London 431

12 THE ACHIEVEMENTS OF ARCHÆOLOGY by PROF. E. A. GARDNER, LITT.D., formerly Yates Professor of Archæology and Vice-Chancellor of the University of London 485

13 RECENT AND CONTEMPORARY PHILOSOPHY by PROF. A. WOLF, M.A., D.LITT., Professor of Logic and Scientific Method in the University of London 541

§B. ECONOMICS, POLITICAL SCIENCE, AND HISTORY

With an article on Modern Geographical Ideas

14 AN INTRODUCTION TO ECONOMICS by MAURICE DOBB, M.A., Lecturer in Economics in the University of Cambridge 593

15 FINANCE by PROF. T. E. GREGORY, D.SC., Professor of Banking in the University of London and Professor of Social Economics in the University of Manchester 625

16 MODERN THEORIES AND FORMS OF INDUSTRIAL ORGANISATION by G. D. H. COLE, M.A., Reader in Economics in the University of Oxford. Member of the Economic Advisory Council to the British Government 663

17 THEORIES AND FORMS OF POLITICAL ORGANISATION by G. D. H. COLE, M.A., Reader in Economics in the University of Oxford. Member of the Economic Advisory Council to the British Government 701

18 MODERN THEORIES AND FORMS OF INTERNATIONAL ORGANISATION by C. DELISLE BURNS, M.A., D.LITT., Stevenson Lecturer in Citizenship in the University of Glasgow 739

19 THE SCIENCE OF HISTORY by PROF. F. J. C. HEARNSHAW, M.A., LL.D., Professor of History in the University of London 773

20 MODERN GEOGRAPHICAL IDEAS by L. DUDLEY STAMP, B.A., D.SC., Reader in Economic Geography in the University of London 813

§C. THE PRINCIPLES OF LITERATURE AND ART

Including Painting, Sculpture, Architecture and Music

21 PRINCIPLES OF LITERARY CRITICISM by PROF. LASCELLES ABERCROMBIE, M.A., Professor of English Literature in the University of London 859

22 THE ARTS OF PAINTING AND SCULPTURE by ROGER FRY 909

23 THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF ARCHITECTURE by PROF. C. H. REILLY, O.B.E., M.A., F.R.I.B.A., Professor of Architecture in the University of Liverpool. Member of the Council of the Royal Institute of British Architects, and Honorary Corresponding Member of the American Institute of Architects 969

24 AN INTRODUCTION TO MUSIC by R. O. MORRIS, B.A., Professor of Harmony and Counterpoint in the Royal College of Music, London 1003

Index 1055

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

SEX

Fig. 1 Genital Organs of Sow *page* 269

Fig. 2 Diagram of Cell Division showing the Behaviour of the Chromosomes 272

Fig. 3 Conventional Diagram of the Chromosomes of a Fly, *Drosophila Melonogaster* 273

Fig. 4 The Sex-Chromosome Sex-Determining Mechanism 274

Fig. 5 A Lateral Gynandromorph, *Drosophila Melonogaster* 276

Fig. 6 Diagram illustrating the Cause of Gynandromorphism 277

Fig. 7 Bonellia 281

Fig. 8 Chart : Sex-determination 282

Fig. 9 A Case of Intersexuality in the Pig 289

Fig. 10 Different Types of "Glandular Hermaphroditism" encountered in a Pig 292

ETHNOLOGY

Fig. 1 Scheme showing Possible Relationship of Various Forms of Man 433

Fig. 2 Europe : Map of Chephalic Index 437

Fig. 3 Ethnological Map of Russia in the Ninth Century 450

Fig. 4 Ethnological Map of Siberia 454

Fig. 5 Races of India 461

Fig. 6 Linguistic Map of Africa 465

Fig. 7 Persistence of Proto-Egyptian Type in the Nile Valley 468

Fig. 8 Food Areas of the New World 477

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

ARCHÆOLOGY

Fig. 1 Painting in Altamira Cavern 487

Fig. 2 Horse carved in Ivory, found in the Grotte des Espelugues at Lourdes 489

Fig. 3 Pre-Sumerian Painted Pottery from Al' Ubaid 490

Fig. 4 Nereid Monument 492

Fig. 5 Gold Mask from Mycenæ 493

Fig. 6 Temple of Nike (Victory), Athens 496

Fig. 7 Female Statue, Athens 497

Fig. 8 Hall at Eleusis 499

Fig. 9 Theatre at Epidaurus 500

Fig. 10 View at Delphi 501

Fig. 11 Charioteer from Delphi 503

Fig. 12 Great Altar at Pergamon 505

Fig. 13 Lycian Sarcophagus from Sidon 506

Fig. 14 Fresco in Akhenaten's Palace 511

Fig. 15 Cretan Vases (Kamares) 513

Fig. 16 Middle Minoan Vase 513

Fig. 17*a* Late Minoan Vase 514

Fig. 17*b* Late Minoan Vases 514

Fig. 18 Geometric Vase, Dipylon 515

Fig. 19 Rhodian Vase 516

Fig. 20 Black-figured Vase: Heroes Playing Draughts 517

Fig. 21 Red-figured Vase, by Brygos: Sack of Troy 518

Fig. 22 Attic White Lecythi 519

Fig. 23 Coins of Cyzicus, Ægina, Croton, Elis, Gortyna (Crete), Samos, Panticapæum, Macedonia 527

Fig. 24 Greek House at Priene 532

Fig. 25 Head of Nefertyti 535

Fig. 26 The Golden Helmet of Mes-Kalam-Dug 537

Fig. 27 Sumerian House 539

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

GEOGRAPHY

Fig. 1 Map of the World, showing a division into Major Climatic Regions 825

Fig. 2 Map showing the Distribution of Rice in India 854

Fig. 3 Map showing the Distribution of Wheat in India 855

Fig. 4 Map showing the Distribution of Millet in India 856

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are grateful to those mentioned hereafter for giving permission to reproduce certain of the illustrations :

The Characteristics and Distribution of the Human Race : to Messrs. Jonathan Cape for Fig. 1, reproduced from *Human History*, by Professor Elliot Smith ; to Messrs. Routledge & Sons (London) and Messrs. Appleton & Co. (New York) for Fig. 2, reproduced from *Races of Europe*, by W. Z. Ripley ; to Messrs. G. P. Putnam's Sons for Fig. 3, reproduced from *The Empire of the Tsars and the Russians*, by A. Leroy-Beaulieu ; to Messrs. The Clarendon Press for Fig. 4, reproduced from *Aboriginal Siberia*, by M. A. Czaplicka ; to Messrs. Thacker & Co. for Fig. 5, reproduced from *People of India*, by H. H. Risley ; to The Royal Anthropological Institute for Fig. 7A, reproduced from their *Journal*, Volume XLIII. ; to The Egypt Exploration Society for Fig. 7B, reproduced from *The Rock Tombs of Meir*, Part II ; to The Oxford University Press of New York for Fig. 8, reproduced from *The American Indian*, by Clark Wissler.

The Achievements of Archæology : to Messrs. Ernest Benn for Figs. 1 and 2, reproduced from *The Childhood of Art*, by H. G. Spearing ; to Messrs. Chatto & Windus for Fig. 3, reproduced from *Early History of Assyria*, by Sidney Smith ; to The Hellenic and Roman Societies for Figs. 5, 6, 11, 18 and 24 ; to The Royal Institute of British Architects for Fig. 12, reproduced from their *Journal*, Volume XXX. ; to Messrs. Duckworth & Co. for Fig. 14, reproduced from *Egyptian Sculpture*, by M. A. Murray ; to the British Museum for Fig. 27.

INTRODUCTION

The progress of scientific study and experiment during the present century, and more particularly since the War, has done more than add to the sum of facts. The whole outlook has changed and is changing. The materialistic and mechanistic views of last century, encouraged and strengthened by the biological discoveries of Darwin, are giving place to speculations which are in danger of falling into the abyss of mysticism. Yet, as Professor Wolf points out, matter remains matter, however our conceptions of its nature may change, and it is still too early to state the precise implications of the new discoveries and theories. Man, in his present condition, represents a stage in an evolutionary process which is still going on, and all the efforts of scientists are ultimately directed towards the one end—to reveal the nature of man's existence and the universe of whose creative forces he is, so far as we know, the crowning achievement.

The sciences can no longer work independently. They are all branches of one great investigation, and the discoveries of one react upon the other. All are liable to be influenced by any change of outlook which may come about through the advances of any one of them, and the progress of one science may be conditioned by new methods and discoveries in another. A channel of inquiry may even be blocked before the goal is reached, and the physicist, for example, who can tell us about the structure and behaviour of things, may, if mind should prove to be the ultimate reality, have eventually to leave to the psychologist the task of explaining what matter *is*. Fields of study are becoming ever smaller, but are, at the same time, undergoing a process of liberation. Science has become divorced from philosophy; philosophy is no longer expected to subserve the interests of theology; psychology is standing on its own feet; psycho-analysis, the offspring of psychology and medicine, though one of the youngest of the sciences, is yet including every aspect of man's activity in its domain—and the process of differentiation is being continued even in psycho-analysis, which has split up into three schools, one of which denies the title to the other two. Scientific investigation is thus becoming more departmentalised; each worker finds himself compelled to devote his mind and energies to a more restricted field, and the prospects of a final synthesis are growing more remote. It is true that attempts are being made every day to present to the lay public an exposition of one science or of all sciences, with a view to presenting the conclusions of theory and investigation in a form which will be easily intelligible to the inquirer who wishes to overleap the laborious stages by which generations of scholars have contributed to present results. But it is not possible to popularise to more than a certain extent without putting matters so simply that the explanation ceases to be true.

The planning of the present book was therefore based on the assumption that the only way to provide a conspectus of the actual achievements of scholarship and thought would be in a sufficient number of presentations by leading authorities who are themselves original investigators in the essential fields of study. Each contributor outlines the past history of his subject before leading up to an exposition of the present state of knowledge and the relation of his field of work to the life and thought of to-day. Each Article has been specially written for this book, and there has been sufficient discussion between the editor and the contributors, and between the contributors themselves, to ensure that it shall fit into its place in the general plan. An essential condition of the success of the book's intention was that simplification should not be carried to the stage which must inevitably result in distortion, yet that the thought in each contribution should be developed with a gradualness and lucidity which would make every successive point crystal clear to the reader who comes fresh to the subject. Each reader will be able to make his own synthesis, in so far as any kind of synthesis is possible, and will be helped towards an understanding of the fundamental problem which mankind has still to solve—the problem of life itself, with the questions it entails of free-will and survival.

All study is intimately bound up with the fate of man, and these Articles all have a bearing on his provenance and destiny, on both the realised and unconscious purport of his activities and the significance of the physical and spiritual forces, the external and the internal influences, which are affecting him for good or for ill. They show how science, philosophy, psychology, historiography and economics, together with the study of art in its various forms, are delving into the nature of existence, considering it not only in the light of what has gone before, but in view of the goal to which man and the universe may be tending. In the words of Dr. Marett : " To consider ourselves in the light of what we may reasonably hope to become is our first and last duty as self-directing beings." If we ask what is the value of the study of the past, Professor Hearnshaw points out that its aim is the explanation and elucidation of the present, that the purpose of the historian is to attain to an understanding both of his environment and of himself. If we ask what science is doing, and what we may expect it to do, towards giving man power over his future development, Professor Crew contemplates the eventual control of biological functions for furthering the happiness and progress of mankind, and Professor Flügel holds out the promise that psycho-analysis may enable us to become more conscious of ourselves, and thus extend our powers of rational insight and control. We may therefore look forward to the time when man will be master in his world, when he will be able to regulate some, at any rate, of the physical and mental forces of which he is at present largely the plaything. Mr. Fry, on the other hand, points to an activity which appears to be " biologically useless," a purely spiritual activity analogous to that which impels men to search for truth, and suggests that this is responsible for our most cherished works of art. It is also, in fact, responsible for some of the finest scientific achievements of the human mind, and the æsthetic element in their work is recognised by some scientists. Neither can it be denied, to take the

other side of the picture, that there is a scientific aspect to the search for beauty.

The scientist cannot define matter nor state the precise nature of sex, not because he knows little about them, but because he knows so much. Yet religious leaders, politicians, and economists have based their doctrines on scientific theories which have now to be cast into the limbo of outworn beliefs, and, though the theories be discarded, the doctrines are often slow to follow. Even art cannot divorce itself from the changes that take place in the realms of science and philosophy. The Naturalist movement towards the end of last century, which was the literary culmination of the growing sense of reality among imaginative writers, was closely bound up with the trend of thought that was due to the theory of organic evolution, and much of the most significant literature of the post-War years would have been unthinkable without the revolution in the outlook of physical science and the discoveries of the new psychology of the unconscious. The Naturalists thought they could photograph reality. We are now asking, "What *is* reality?"

The composite view of the universe is no longer systematic, or even intelligible, but at the same time as it is being widened and deepened it is growing more confused. In so far as it is possible to construct a clear picture, which must necessarily be in the nature of a mosaic, of the present achievements of human thought and knowledge, and to summarise the evidence which may point to a directive or purposive agency in the universe, this book attempts to do so.

WILLIAM ROSE.

THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON
KING'S COLLEGE, *June*, 1931

AN OUTLINE OF MODERN KNOWLEDGE

A PHILOSOPHIC AND SCIENTIFIC RETROSPECT

By

A. WOLF

SYNOPSIS

ANCIENT TIMES. Man's emergence from the mythological stage — The beginnings of philosophic and scientific thought among the Greek colonists in Asia Minor — The early nature philosophers before the age of Socrates — The golden age of Greek thought in Athens : Socrates, Plato, and Aristotle — Their successors — Philosophy and science in Alexandria, the greatest meeting place of East and West — The end of Antiquity — The closing of the Schools in A.D. 529.

THE MIDDLE AGES. Philosophy in Islam and among the Jews in Moslem countries — The Fathers of the Church and the Scholastic philosophers — Science in the Middle Ages — The Renaissance, the Reformation, the Copernican revolution, and the transition to the modern period.

MODERN TIMES. Gradual emancipation from bondage to authority — Science in the seventeenth century — Philosophy in the seventeenth century — Philosophy in the eighteenth century — Science in the eighteenth century — Philosophy in the nineteenth century — Science in the nineteenth century — The predominance of idealism in philosophy, and of materialism in science during the middle decades of the nineteenth century.

A PHILOSOPHIC AND SCIENTIFIC RETROSPECT

The belief in evolution is sufficiently wide-spread and deep-rooted by now to incline intelligent people to suppose that no period of human thought, not even the latest scientific and philosophic theories, can be regarded as isolated and self-contained. In one way or another, usually in many ways, each intellectual era has its preparatory historical antecedents, a knowledge of which makes it more intelligible than it would be otherwise, helps people to exercise moderation in their expectations from the latest ideas, and to spare themselves the shock which is apt to come to those who fail to appreciate the inevitableness of incessant change in man's intellectual orientation. Thoughtful people have long since realized that the *latest* word in science or philosophy is by no means the *last* word, and that probably there is no last word in these great enterprises of the human spirit. This is no ground for disappointment. The spirit of an age, as of an individual, must be judged, not by the finality of its achievement, but by the seriousness of its endeavours in the light of its own day; and the very absence of finality leaves ample scope for succeeding generations to carry on the ceaseless quest. And the quest is not altogether in vain. Absolute aberration appears to be a rare phenomenon in the history of human thought. For the most part the intellectual achievements of past ages not only serve a useful temporary purpose but also embody something of more enduring value. Indeed, to the student of the history of human thought one of the most surprising things is the persistence throughout the ages of the same stock of fundamental ideas, which are often modified and refined in many ways but are never abandoned entirely. Be that as it may, the human quest for truth is certainly one of the greatest enterprises of man, if not the greatest of them; and the story of that quest has an intrinsic interest of its own, besides affording some help to the understanding of the present and of its roots in the past.

ANCIENT TIMES

Of the period of two hundred and fifty thousand years or more that the human race has already been in existence, only a very small fraction comes within the purview of the historian of human thought. The great bulk of that long period was consumed in the struggle for bare existence amid the destructive forces of nature. Man had to act long before he could think. He had to react to his physical environment long before he had the capacity or the leisure to try to understand it. The life-and-death struggle prompted by the will to live, and later by the will to power, was no doubt haunted from an early period by a certain vague sense of wonder and bewilderment. And to this day something of that sense of wonder and bewilderment may haunt the performance of religious rites, which are the offspring of those magic performances by which early

man endeavoured to control and to compel, or to coax and appease, the deified forces of nature on which he felt himself so dependent. In course of time mythologies and other more intellectual explanations were attached to the primitive ritual. The explanations change from time to time according to the intellectual level of the age, but the emotional element associated with the religious ritual may continue more or less the same, reminiscent perhaps of that vague sense of wonder and bewilderment which haunted primitive man already at the pre-intellectual stage of human existence.

Some vague notion of cosmic orderliness may be discerned already at the mythological stage of human thought. Early Greek mythology, for instance, introduces the figure of Nemesis, the goddess who checks and controls the wild things in nature and so maintains some measure of order in nature. It is true, of course, that in the mythology of the Greeks a considerable rôle is played by Pan, the goat-footed and goat-minded lord of lawlessness. This is natural enough, for the wildness and rough play of natural forces seem to lie on the surface of things, and so impress one first of all. It is therefore all the more significant that some idea of order, in physical nature and in human life, should have emerged so early. The conception of order among the phenomena of nature appears to have grown *pari passu* with the growth of order in human societies. The use of the term " law " to express the regularity of natural phenomena is clearly reminiscent of the " law and order " decreed and enforced by a sovereign power in a society ; and to this day some people cannot divorce the notion of " law " from that of a legislator.

The transition from a mythological view of natural events to a more scientific and philosophical attitude was a very slow one, and even when it was accomplished the separation was not quite complete. For the more scientific attitude was the result of an increasing rationalization of mythological ideas, which may often be traced easily in their more intellectual transformations. Thus, for instance, the water in which Thales found the origin of all things is reminiscent of Osiris ; the fire to which Heraclitus traced everything recalls the sun-god Ra ; and Nemesis reappears in the " avenging spirits " which, according to the same Heraclitus, keep the sun within his orbit. In this kind of way it would be possible, if one had the time and the patience, to decipher the palimpsest of human thought throughout the ages. But that is unnecessary for the present purpose. It is enough to point out that when scientific and philosophic thought, as distinguished from mythological thought, made its first appearance, on the Western coast of Asia Minor, it was indebted to no small extent to the preceding mythological thought throughout the then civilized world, as well as to the many practical achievements of Egypt and Mesopotamia, and probably of other countries also. Western thought, however, during the past twenty-five centuries or so, is sufficiently comprehensive and self-contained to justify our confining our attention to it.

Pre-Socratic Thinkers

One of the persistent questions in the history of human thought refers to the nature of the ultimate stuff, or substance, of which all things

are composed and to which they eventually revert. For some reason or other the human mind always inclined to assume that the vast diversity of objects which make up the visible world is at bottom made up of the same stuff, and tried to determine what that ultimate stuff is. This question was first raised and answered in a non-mythological manner by a group of Greek thinkers who lived in Ionia, on the west coast of Asia Minor. The answer was crude. Thales (*c.* 640–550 B.C.) suggested that water was the primary stuff. Anaximenes (*c.* 590–525 B.C.) suggested air; and Anaximander (*c.* 610–545 B.C.) made the more deep-sighted suggestion that the primary stuff must be something different from the various determinate forms of matter known to us, and so described it simply as the "boundless" or "indeterminate," out of which such determinate substances as fire, air, water and earth "separated out" or were differentiated. The merely mythological stage was thus passed. They no longer asked *who* created the world of things, but *what* was the stuff of which they were made; and in place of the mythological processes based on the analogy of child-birth, Anaximenes suggested the processes of condensation and rarefaction as the processes by which the primary matter became transformed into the great variety of familiar things. These early thinkers traced the origin of all things to a material basis and to material processes, yet it would not be right to describe them as materialists, because the hard and fast distinction between mind and matter was alien to their ways of thinking. For them, and for the Greeks generally, matter was something living. They were *hylozoists*, not materialists: they regarded all things as composed, not of dead inert matter, but of living substance.

A more subtle conception of the nature of the ultimate principle (or primary stuff) of things was introduced by Pythagoras (*c.* 570–500 B.C.) and his school. They laid stress on the *form*, rather than on the matter, of things as constituting their permanent reality. The study of music led them to the discovery of the importance of *proportion* (say, between the lengths of strings and the notes which could be produced on them). This idea was applied by them in every possible direction. The health of a body, for example, was regarded as resulting from a certain proportion between its elementary qualities (hot and cold, dry and wet); other proportions between them would lead to various diseases. Extending this conception, they maintained that the principle or essence of all things is to be found in their several *forms*. They expressed this view in the dictum that "all things are numbers." Numbers and forms were easily identified in those days, because numbers were frequently represented by dots arranged in certain geometrical forms or patterns (as they still are on dominoes and cards). This custom rather encouraged the Pythagorean view, or at least made it seem plausible. For the unit of number was easily identified with the dot or point. Now, lines can be analysed into points, planes into lines, and solids into planes. This made it appear that points make lines, which make planes, which make solids. So the identification of the point with the unit of number readily made it appear that "all things are numbers" or made up of numbers. In one way or another the belief in the supreme importance of mathematics in science has maintained itself ever since the days of the Pythagoreans.

The Pythagorean School had been founded in Southern Italy by a refugee from Ionia, after the Persians had conquered it. The Persian conquest of Ionia filled the suffering Greeks with a kind of religious revival. The Pythagorean School was a kind of religious brotherhood with a philosophical bias. But the secular spirit was maintained and sharpened by other Greek thinkers in Elea, in Southern Italy. Noteworthy among these is Xenophanes (*c.* 570–480 B.C.), who made a scathing attack on the current conception of the gods. " Mortals [he said] believe that the gods come into being as they themselves do, that they have senses, voice, body. . . . But if oxen or lions had hands, oxen would make gods like oxen, horses would make gods like horses." Strongly opposed to the religious anthropomorphism (the tendency to regard God, or the gods, as like men) and polytheism of his time, he believed in " one supreme God . . . like unto mortals neither in body nor in thought." According to the reports of Aristotle, Xenophanes was the first Western monist and pantheist. He is usually regarded as the author of the statement : " The All is One, and the One is God." (The first part of this statement expresses his monism ; the second part, his pantheism.) The monistic philosophy of Xenophanes was strongly supported by other Eleatic philosophers, notably by Parmenides (*c.* 540–480 B.C.) and Zeno (*c.* 490–420 B.C.). Parmenides considered it unthinkable that things should come into existence out of nothing, or that they should ever dissolve into nothingness. He maintained, accordingly, that the world is one, uncreated and imperishable reality. Motion and other kinds of change, and the discreteness of ordinary things, he regarded as illusory appearances. Zeno's famous paradoxes were meant to show that a pluralistic conception of the world involved absurdities. Perhaps the most striking feature in the views of the Eleatic thinkers is their stress on *thought* as the only source of real knowledge, the senses being regarded as illusory.

In opposition to the Eleatics, Heraclitus (*c.* 540–475 B.C.) emphasized the multiplicity of things and their incessant change, though he shared the Eleatic view of the eternity of primary matter. His conception of the cosmic process was that of periodic cycles of change, each cycle beginning and ending in a mass of fire. Perhaps the most valuable thing in the teaching of Heraclitus was his stress on the orderliness of natural events—all changes, he insisted, occur " by measure." This regularity, moreover, was regarded as evidence of the existence of " universal reason " either in primary matter or side by side with it. Pluralism was carried a stage further by Anaxagoras (*c.* 500–428 B.C.) and Empedocles (*c.* 483–430 B.C.), and culminated in the atomic theory of Democritus (*c.* 460–370 B.C.). Anaxagoras held that there is not one kind of primary stuff, but a great variety of " seeds " of things through the various combinations of which all sorts of different objects are produced. Empedocles substituted the idea of four " roots " for that of the numerous " seeds " of Anaxagoras. The " four roots " of things were the familiar " four elements "—fire, air, water, earth. To account for the combination and separation of these elements he formulated two principles of attraction and repulsion (or " love " and " hate," as he called them). The atomic tendency of Empedocles betrayed him into some curious biological speculations. He

suggested that the several parts of the living body existed separately at first, and then combined in all sorts of ways (like the "roots" of matter). But he has the merit of having suggested also the first notion of "the survival of the fittest." For he held that of all the numerous combinations of the parts of living bodies, only those survived which were fit to live.

The atomic theory appears to have been first formulated by Leucippus (*c.* 500–430 B.C.), but is usually associated with the name of his follower Democritus, who is consequently known as "the father of physics." According to Democritus, the only ultimate realities are atoms and space. The atoms vary in size and shape, and all compound bodies are made up of them. The differences found among compound bodies are due partly to the differences in shape and size of the atoms of which they are composed, partly to the position of the atoms, and partly to their arrangement in the composite bodies. The atoms, in short, were regarded as the alphabet of the universe and the differences just referred to may be illustrated by means of letters of the alphabet. Thus, for instance, A and M differ in shape and size; M and W differ in position (invert either and you get the other); ON and NO differ in arrangement. The last of these differences recalls the "form" of the Pythagoreans. The atoms, according to Democritus, are not inert, but endowed with motion. This view of the atoms avoided the difficulty (which perplexed subsequent thinkers until the age of Newton) as to how inert matter was first set in motion. The atoms moving about spontaneously in all directions get entangled with one another and so form composite bodies of all kinds, including whole worlds. Under suitable conditions also such composite bodies collide with one another, and some of them break up again into separate atoms. The atomic theory thus attempted a purely "mechanical" explanation of the universe, that is, an explanation solely in terms of matter and motion. This involved the denial of the objective reality of the so-called "secondary" qualities (colours and sounds, smells and tastes, etc.), which could not be explained mechanically. "According to *convention* [Democritus is reported to have said], there is a sweet and a bitter, a hot and a cold, and according to convention there is colour. In *truth* there are atoms and a void." The contrast between the *conventionally* right and what is *truly* (or objectively) right had been made current by the Sophists. And the Atomists adopted the distinction for their own purposes. To describe the secondary qualities as "conventional" was tantamount to a denial of their objective reality and to reducing them to the subjective status of illusions. The atomic theory continued to enjoy considerable popularity throughout the subsequent history of human thought, though it has undergone many and important changes with the development of experimental physics and chemistry.

The Persian conquest of Ionia, we have seen, led to the dispersal of the Ionian philosophers, and so to the spread of philosophic interest elsewhere. Of far greater importance was the subsequent triumph of the Greeks over the Persians. This great upheaval produced a spirit of dissatisfaction with existing conditions and current beliefs, and awakened a wide-spread interest in knowledge. A class of professional teachers responded to the demand. These were the "Sophists" or "wise men." They did much for the spread of general education, and by their criticism

of current beliefs compelled other thinkers to probe deeply into the great problems of human life. It was they who gave currency to the distinction between mere convention and intrinsic value, and directed special attention to problems of specifically human interest. The most familiar doctrine associated with the Sophists is that contained in the dictum of Protagoras : " Man is the measure of things." This dictum is frequently regarded as an anticipation of the very much later pragmatism (or humanism) in its stress on the relativity of truth and goodness to the practical needs of man. It was in the period of the Sophists that Athens first became the centre of Greek philosophy, which attained its golden age in the genius of Socrates, Plato and Aristotle.

The Golden Age of Greece

Socrates (469–399) shared some of the views and interests of the Sophists, and his contemporaries mostly regarded him as one of them. For, like the Sophists, he also tried to promote general education, was particularly interested in questions of human conduct, and found much to criticize in current beliefs. But he believed in the possibility of real knowledge (as distinguished from varying personal opinions), if it were sought in the right manner. The method he proposed and pursued was in essence the inductive method. It consisted in checking tentative suggestions by reference to relevant instances until ideas could be formulated in harmony with all the relevant facts. Knowledge appeared to him so important that he identified even virtue with knowledge, namely, a knowledge of what is right. As Socrates left nothing in writing, his general philosophy of life could only be gathered from his own conduct, and this could be variously interpreted by stressing one or other of its several aspects. Aristippus and the Cyrenaics emphasized the cheerfulness of Socrates and his capacity for reasonable enjoyment, and so claimed his weight on the side of hedonism, the view that pleasure is the end and standard of conduct; Antisthenes and the Cynics stressed Socrates' indifference to hardships and his readiness to dispense with comfort when necessary, and so they claimed him as an advocate of the simple life. However, the greatest influence exercised by Socrates on subsequent thought had reference to his method of acquiring knowledge. His emphasis on the supreme importance of developing true *concepts* or ideas was taken up partly by Euclid and the Megarians, but above all by Plato.

Plato (427–360 B.C.) attempted to harmonize the views of Heraclitus, Pythagoras and Socrates. He agreed with Socrates that knowledge is possible, and that it is possible only by means of concepts or general ideas or truths. But he also agreed with Heraclitus that the objects of ordinary observation are an " ever-rolling stream " of changing events, of which no universal truths can be asserted. He therefore concluded that the real objects of knowledge are not the ever-changing things of the world of sense-perception but certain supra-sensible, immutable objects which he named " Ideas," and which he conceived more or less in the manner of the Pythagorean " Forms." The world of sense has but a lower sort of reality and consists of mere " imitations " of, or crude approximations

to, the " Ideas." So he distinguished two types of objects and two kinds of cognition. Real knowledge is concerned with the " Ideas," or with the world of eternal Being ; sense-perception is a lower kind of cognition, which he called " opinion," and is concerned with the world of change, or of mere " becoming." Possibly Plato's " Ideas " may have been intended to represent the eternal Laws of Nature. If so, the description of ordinary sense-objects as " imitations " of the " Ideas " was probably intended to bring out the fact that the conformity of ordinary objects and events to natural laws is never precise, only approximate. In any case Plato's conception of the universe was that of an interconnected system, working not merely mechanically but teleologically, that is tending towards cosmic end or purpose—" the Good " towards which the whole creation moves. Allegorically Plato compares " the Good " with the sun. The sun is at once the source of the growth of things and also of the light by which they are seen, so " the Good " is at once the source of all reality and of our knowledge of it. As fountains of personal inspiration no thinkers have surpassed Socrates and Plato, and only very, very few have equalled them. But with regard to calm scientific attitude of mind and scientific and philosophic achievements, the most important thinker of ancient times was probably Aristotle.

Aristotle (384–322 B.C.) was the first to introduce into human knowledge much of that system and articulation which it still retains more or less. His writings are encyclopædic and gather together all the important contributions to human thought up to his time, while his own contributions were colossal. Generally speaking Aristotle was more empirical and realistic than Plato, that is to say, he had more respect for the world of sense, but he was not blind to other aspects of reality, and actually shared some of Plato's fundamental views. Aristotle agreed with Socrates and Plato about the importance of general ideas or concepts for knowledge. But he declined to accept a world of Platonic " Ideas " more or less aloof from the world of sense. He regarded ideas as necessary in order to explain or to understand the world of experience, and he endeavoured to reconcile ideas with percepts, universals with particulars, as jointly constituting the world of reality and of knowledge. His attempt was based on the notions of *matter* and *form*, which had hitherto been divorced from each other, but which he joined in a new harmony. Whereas the early Ionians had stressed *matter* only, while the Pythagoreans and Plato stressed *form* only, Aristotle maintained that they belong to one another, that *form* is immanent in *matter*, the universal is immanent in the particular—they may be distinguished, but not separated from one another. Plato's " Idealism " was largely the outcome of his pre-occupation with pure geometry and its ideal figures. Aristotle's interests were mainly biological, and his study of the phenomena of growth and development gave no encouragement to the conception of immutable " Ideas." In fact by his use of the conceptions " form " and " matter " Aristotle attempted to reconcile the opposite views of those who, like the Eleatics, treated change as illusion and identified the real with the immutable, and those who, like Heraclitus and his followers, identified the real with the " flux " of change or process. Aristotle tried to do justice to both. He recognised in all ordinary things both matter and form,

or a comparatively raw stuff and some finishing touch which made it a comparatively finished product. The nature of the distinction varies in different cases. In the case of a statue the marble is the matter, the shape imposed on it by the sculptor is its form. In the case of a plant, or an animal, or a man, the bodily structure is the matter, while a certain function or combination of functions (nutrition, sensibility or reason, respectively) constitutes the form. In the case of human character certain impulses and instincts constitute the matter, while the way in which they are organised, drilled or " licked into shape," constitutes the form. Moreover, nothing is without some form. Even the most elementary kinds of matter recognized in his time (fire, air, water, earth) were regarded by Aristotle as different forms of primary matter resulting from different combinations of ultimate qualities (dry, moist, hot, cold). Primarily, formless matter was only a limiting conception. Whatever could be regarded as capable of further development was conceived as matter in relation to the process or function, etc., which would develop it further. But even within matter thus conceived one could really recognize something (a form) which distinguished it from a less developed entity. So that the distinction between matter and form is relative. But this relativity has its limits. Material objects cannot have less form than the so-called four elements. Nor can the forms of ordinary things exceed certain levels. A block of granite may assume the form of an image of some kind, but it cannot develop into a plant ; an acorn may eventually assume the form of an oak-tree, but not an animal ; and so on. Such considerations induced Aristotle to assume the fixity of species, though this did not prevent him from comparing the rich variety of things and noting what a wonderful ascending series, or " scale of nature," they constituted. The conception of such a " scale of nature," beginning with the limiting case of formless matter and ascending through richer and richer forms to the highest forms of life, led him to the conception of an upper limit or apex, a being so perfect that he cannot be regarded as matter for further development, and so could be conceived as form only. This being is God, whom (and whom only) Aristotle conceived in the manner of an immutable Platonic " Idea." God, according to Aristotle, is not the Creator, for matter and the forms are eternal, there being no break in the embodiment of the forms in matter. Yet, in some way, all things feel drawn towards God. He is the object of the world's desire, and by His mere presence lures objects to higher stages of development. He is the " unmoved mover " of the universe, and " it is love [for Him] that makes the world go round."

Intimately connected with Aristotle's doctrine of matter and form is his doctrine of the *four kinds of cause*. If we are to understand certain objects fully, then there are four things we must ascertain, namely, (*a*) their *material cause*, that is, the matter or stuff of which they consist, (*b*) the *formal cause*, that is, the form or law of their constitution or composition, (*c*) the *efficient cause*, that is, the agency through which the matter took on that form, and (*d*) the *final cause*, or the purpose which they serve. Aristotle explained that not all these kinds of causes are to be found or sought in all things ; some things are sufficiently explained by reference to the material and efficient causes alone. The physical sciences have

advanced by confining themselves to these two kinds of causes. During many centuries, however, theologically minded thinkers were obsessed with "final causes," to the exclusion of the others. This tendency was intimately connected with the endeavour to prove the existence of God from the evidence of "design," which, it was alleged, could be observed everywhere. The progress of science was seriously hindered by this kind of explanation, which consequently fell into utter disrepute among the pioneers of modern science. But the abuse was contrary to the intentions of Aristotle, who did not look for "final causes" outside the field of biology, where some reference to "final causes" is still felt to be necessary. Aristotle, in fact, had sound views on the necessity of checking speculations by reference to observed facts. In one passage he refers to the necessity of "trusting our senses more than our reasonings, and our reasonings only when the results are in agreement with the facts."

In the history of science Aristotle is famous chiefly for his work in biology, which has elicited an expression of the highest praise from Darwin. The beginnings of scientific biology among the Greeks must be traced at least as far as the medical school of Hippocrates, in the fifth century B.C. Aristotle's father was court-physician to King Philip of Macedonia, to whose son, afterwards Alexander the Great, Aristotle acted for a time as tutor. The origin of Aristotle's interest in biology is thus obvious. It was in some ways a continuation of, though a very great advance on, the Hippocratic tradition. To Hippocrates, or his school, it may be pointed out incidentally, is due the doctrine of the "four humours," which to some extent still survives in popular thought and speech. According to this doctrine there are four kinds of "humour" (or juice) in the human body, namely, blood, phlegm, yellow bile, and black bile, and the temperament of each individual is determined by the preponderance of one of these "humours" over the others. There are thus four kinds of temperament, namely, the sanguine, the phlegmatic, the choleric, and the melancholic temperament, corresponding to the preponderance respectively of one of the four humours as enumerated above.

Aristotle's biological work was continued, in the field of botany, by his successor Theophrastus (370–285 B.C.). Otherwise very little original research was carried out in biology for many centuries afterwards.

Post-Aristotelian Thinkers

Greek philosophy continued for several centuries after Aristotle. But already in Aristotle's lifetime a certain change of spirit came over it. This was the result of the loss of Greek independence after the battle of Chaeronea in 338 B.C. The troubles caused by the ascendancy of Macedonia left little inclination for pure philosophy. What people needed was some kind of moral or religious tonic. Accordingly, post-Aristotelian philosophy is predominantly ethical or religious in character. The Stoics, the Epicureans, and the Sceptics were all interested mainly in the moral problems of life, and in the last resort they all commended the same kind of ideal of conduct, namely, the cultivation of equanimity or peace of mind, and self-emancipation from the bondage of external

circumstances. Apart from their ethical doctrines, the Epicureans are chiefly noteworthy for having embraced the atomic theory, the Stoics for their pantheism and cosmopolitanism, and the Sceptics for their anticipation of nearly all the important arguments subsequently employed by defenders of philosophic or religious doubt. The survival of Epicureanism for many centuries was chiefly due to its atomism; indeed, it was the Roman Epicurean, Lucretius (98–55 B.C.), whose poem *On the Nature of Things* gave classic expression to the atomic theory of antiquity.

Stoic pantheism, though partly a continuation of the philosophy of Xenophanes, was probably in part also among the first fruits of the new contact between Greeks and Orientals in Alexandria, which was founded by Alexander the Great, in 332 B.C., and eventually became the most important seat of science and philosophy in ancient times. The Stoics modified Aristotle's doctrine of matter and form into a doctrine of body and soul, and they conceived the universe as an organic whole having both a body and a soul. All finite things were treated as but parts of the "One and All," which was regarded at once as Nature and God, as Destiny and Providence. Nature was thus conceived as inspired by universal reason, and could readily be regarded as worthy of human imitation. Hence the Stoic ideal of "life according to nature." As a corollary to their pantheism they pleaded for universal brotherhood. "All men [said Epictetus] are brethren, and God is the Father of all."

The influence of the East is more marked in that blend of philosophy and religion known as Neo-Platonism. The system of Greek philosophy which had the strongest leaning towards religion was that of Plato. Platonism accordingly served as a link between Western philosophy and Eastern religion when the two came into close contact in Alexandria. The most famous of the early Neo-Platonists was Philo Judæus of Alexandria (*c.* 25 B.C.–A.D. 50), who attempted to harmonize Hebraism and Platonism. To this end he interpreted the Bible allegorically, and identified the Platonic "Ideas" with Spirits mediating between God and man. The allegorical method proved too cumbrous, and Neo-Platonism owed its success mainly to Plotinus (204–270) and Proclus (410–485).

In the realm of science the Alexandrians made considerable advances, especially in mathematics, pure and applied. The ground had been prepared for them to some extent. The Egyptians and Babylonians already had made considerable progress in the art of calculation and mensuration. The earliest extant mathematical treatise is an Egyptian papyrus (now in the British Museum, and named the Rhind Papyrus after its donor) copied about 1600 B.C. from a much older original. From this it is clear that the Egyptians could manipulate large figures, measure land, estimate the contents of barns, etc., at an early date. So could the Babylonians. But the Greeks took up these studies in a more scientific spirit, formulating and proving general theorems instead of dealing only with concrete instances. Thales, Pythagoras, Hippocrates (not the father of scientific medicine), Plato, Eudoxus, Aristotle and others contributed to the development of Geometry, which Euclid of Alexandria (330–275 B.C.) systematized in his classical "Elements," which remained *the* class book of geometry for more than two thousand years. Other Alexandrians, notably Aristarchus, Archimedes, Apollonius, Hipparchus, Ptolemy, Pappus,

Diophantus, Proclus, and others carried mathematical studies some stages further, especially in connection with its application to astronomy, optics, mechanics and engineering.

The Alexandrians also made important contributions to Astronomy. Here likewise the ground had been well prepared. Long before the Greek period the Babylonians, and more especially the Chaldeans, paid close attention to the heavenly bodies. Their motives were mainly religious and astrological, but they accumulated much valuable information all the same, and many of our Western ideas and practices are derived from them. It was they who first observed the seven planets and associated them with a seven-day week, each day being called after one of the planets, and divided into twenty-four hours. They also divided the zodiac into twelve divisions or constellations, and associated them with the twelve lunar months. They were the first to discover that the evening star and the morning star were the same. And they instituted a system of regular astronomical observations, under the direction of Astronomers-Royal, thousands of years before such things were thought of in the West. Indeed, one of their records of a solar eclipse in the year 1062 B.C. was actually made use of, in recent years, by the astronomer Cowell in order to rectify the lunar theory. As the result of their long and regular astronomical observations, the Babylonians acquired already in early times an accurate knowledge of the periods taken by the sun, moon, and the other five planets then known, to complete their orbits, and so could foretell the position of each among the stars, and predict the occurrence of solar and lunar eclipses. But they regarded heaven as a solid stationary vault and the earth as a stationary mountain round which the stars moved, and in whose hollow part was the abode of the dead. Some of their ideas were taken over by the Greeks as well as by the Egyptians. The belief in a stationary, and usually a flat, earth survived for a long time even among the Greeks. Anaximander, however, already rejected the belief that the earth rests on a base of indefinite depth. He maintained that the earth floats free in space, and that the sun, when it sets in the west, continues to move to the other side of the earth. Anaxagoras (500–428 B.C.) gave the correct explanation of eclipses, the phases of the moon, and partly also of the Milky Way. Some of the Pythagoreans, moreover, conceived the earth to be a sphere, in fact a kind of star moving like the sun, moon, etc., round a fire placed at the centre of the universe. This was the first rejection of the geocentric theory, but did not yet amount to a heliocentric theory. It was Aristarchus (310–230 B.C.) who first proposed the hypothesis that the sun is the fixed centre round which the earth moves in a circular orbit while rotating at the same time about its own axis. But the heliocentric theory did not gain acceptance until it was revived by Copernicus nearly eighteen centuries later, and only very gradually even then. In the meantime various Greek astronomers attempted to determine the geometry of astronomical phenomena on the basis of a geocentric theory, and on the assumption that all heavenly bodies move in orbits which are either circular or are compounded of circular motions. The greatest mathematical ingenuity was displayed in various attempts "to save appearances" in celestial phenomena. Among the most familiar devices employed were those of concentric spheres with axes of varying

directions; epicycles, or circular orbits round a centre which is itself moving in a circle; and eccentrics, or circular orbits whose centre is at some distance from the earth. By all these devices it was attempted to retain the belief in the circular orbits of the heavenly bodies in spite of their apparent irregularities. The whole of Greek astronomy was systematized by the Alexandrian Ptolemy (second century A.D.), whose treatise *Syntaxis* (also known as *Almagest*) remained the standard work on astronomy until the time of Copernicus and even later.

Turning next to the science of Mechanics, it is obvious from the buildings constructed by the Babylonians and Egyptians (their palaces, temples and pyramids) that practical mechanics had made great advances long before the Greek period. But into this study likewise the Greeks were apparently the first to introduce a scientific spirit. The foundations of this science appear to have been laid by Aristotle, who propounded some of the fundamental principles of the subject, though he did not express them very happily. The most important contributions to the science were made by Alexandrians, and especially by Archimedes (287–212 B.C.). He formulated correctly the principles of the lever, of the pulley, and of the centre of gravity of bodies. He discovered the principles of specific gravity, and of the equilibrium of floating bodies. And his inventions include the water-screw for raising water. The work of Archimedes was continued to some extent by other Alexandrians, notably by Ctesibius and Hero, whose energies, however, were mainly directed to the construction of apparently wonder-working inventions.

Chemistry, too, was actively studied by the Alexandrians. In ancient Egypt, it had been a secret art practised by priestly adepts and largely empirical in nature; in Greece philosophers and craftsmen lived in different worlds; but in Alexandria the practical knowledge which had been handed down from ancient Egypt came into active contact with Greek thought, and in this fusion of practice and theory the science of chemistry had its beginning. The Alexandrian chemists, observing that matter underwent many remarkable changes, concluded that it was transmutable. Their theory of matter was thus like that of Aristotle, but was supported to some extent by experiment. The influence of the Neo-Platonists ultimately caused Alexandrian chemistry to become mystical and to encourage the belief in the "philosopher's stone," which was alleged to turn base metals into gold or silver, and in the "elixir" or "panacea," which was supposed to cure all diseases. Their writings abound in signs and symbols, used to preserve secrecy, the breach of which was punished with death. Their experimental results were too slight to support their far-reaching theories.

In 47 B.C. the Romans took possession of Alexandria, and its glory began to decline. The Romans had a genius for all things connected with imperialism, notably for law, administration, and engineering. But pure science did not appeal to them. Yet the annals of the history of science and philosophy contain some Roman names of distinction. The most important of these must be mentioned. Cicero (106–43 B.C.) had a masterly knowledge of the philosophical systems of his predecessors, and his writings did much to keep alive some interest in philosophy during the dark centuries that were to follow. Lucretius (98–55 B.C.) has already been

referred to as the classical exponent of the atomic theory of antiquity. Vitruvius (flourished about 14 B.C.) wrote the best ancient work on architecture and building (*De Architectura*). Strabo (*c.* 60 B.C.–A.D. 24) was an eminent traveller and geographer. Pliny the Elder (A.D. 23–79) wrote a famous *Natural History* in which some 20,000 topics are discussed, and nearly all the knowledge of antiquity, and many of its superstitions, are collected. Frontinus (A.D. 40–103), at one time Roman Governor of Britain, was the author of a notable work on *The Waterworks of Rome*. The Emperor Marcus Aurelius (A.D. 121–180) was a philosopher of distinction, and perhaps the most famous Stoic. His court physician Galen (*c.* A.D. 130–200), a native of Asia, but a Roman by adoption, was next to Hippocrates probably the most renowned doctor of antiquity, and his works served as a Doctors' Bible for many centuries. Lastly, Boethius (480–524) was the author of the widely read *Consolations of Philosophy*, and his various works served, for many centuries, as repositories of the rudiments of a liberal education.

In the meantime Christianity had come on the scene and grown powerful. Its gospel was a gospel for the lowly, and it was rather hostile towards the "high-brow." Of philosophy and science it was frankly contemptuous, and some of the Apostolic Fathers, like Tertullian, not only did not mind being unphilosophical in their faith, but seemed rather proud of it. In defence against hostile critics, however, it was found advisable to employ a certain amount of philosophical argument, and so the apologetic literature of the Patristic period is tinged with a certain amount of Platonic or Neo-Platonic doctrine like that of the "Logos." Moreover, some of the early Fathers, notably St. Augustine (A.D. 354–430), had been thinking pagans before they became believing Christians, and could not entirely abandon their philosophic interests. But the general attitude of the Christian Church towards philosophy and science was decidedly hostile. In 390 Bishop Theophilus destroyed one of the libraries of Alexandria. In 415 Hypatia, the daughter of Theon the astronomer, and herself a teacher of mathematics, was brutally murdered in Alexandria by a mob of Christian fanatics. And to crown it all the Emperor Justinian had all schools of philosophy closed in 529. The first great period in the history of human thought thus came to an end, leaving the West to darkness and the Church.

THE MIDDLE AGES

Moslem Philosophers

When the Athenian schools of philosophy were closed by Justinian, many of the teachers migrated to Syria and Persia, where they were safe from Christian persecution. Their advent there stimulated a certain amount of interest in philosophy and science, which was considerably intensified in the next century when Alexandria was captured by the Arabs (641). By 711 Islam had swept through Arabia, Syria and Mesopotamia, on the one hand, and along the north coast of Africa, as far as the Straits of Gibraltar, on the other. From here the Moors (that is, the Arabs of Mauretania or North Africa) crossed over into Spain. In this way philosophy and science found their way back to Europe through Moslem channels.

The most important Moslem philosophers were Al Kindi (d. 870), Alfarabi (d. 950), Avicenna (980–1037), and Averroes (1126–1198). Of these the first three lived in Bagdad, the last in Cordova. They knew most of the works of Aristotle, and some of the works of Plato. Their philosophy was Aristotelianism tinged with Platonism. It is interesting to note that Avicenna first gave prominence to the question of the relation between the universal and the particulars subsumed under it. This problem soon became the bone of contention among the Scholastics, whose ranks it divided into Nominalists and Realists, according as they regarded universals as mere names, and particulars as the only realities, or held that universals had an existence of their own apart from the particulars. The most influential, and most Aristotelian, of these Moslem thinkers was Averroes. According to him there is a perfect, eternal world beyond the stars, besides our sub-lunar world of imperfection and change. Matter is eternal and contains seminal " forms " which transform it into its final states under the influence of higher " forms " (or " intelligences ") or, in the last resort, of God. The soul of man is inseparable from his brain, and perishes with it. But the Reason that dwells in man is immortal. By cultivating this Reason, man may enter into union with the universal and eternal " Active Reason." The popularity of Averroes' commentaries on Aristotle is attested by the fact that the Schoolmen afterwards referred to him as " *the* commentator," just as they called Aristotle " *the* philosopher."

Jewish Philosophers

Side by side with the Moslem philosophers there were a number of Jewish thinkers who likewise helped to keep philosophy alive, or even to develop it to some extent, and who in due course mediated between Islam and Christendom when the latter was ready to resume an interest in philosophic problems. From early times some Jews took an interest in philosophy. Traces of this are to be found in the Bible already. In Alexandria there appears to have been a whole school of Jewish philosophers, whose influence may be traced in the Greek translation of the Bible (the Septuagint) and in the Sibylline Oracles. Mention has already been made of Philo Judæus, the best known among them. This interest in philosophy was revived when the Jews were living under favourable conditions in Moslem centres of culture like Bagdad and Cairo, Cordova and Toledo. They maintained a friendly rivalry with their learned neighbours. Almost every school of Moslem (or Græco-Moslem) thought found its parallel in contemporary Jewish thought—Platonism and Aristotelianism, traditionalism and modernism, dogmatism and rationalism, fatalism and voluntarism. The leading Jewish thinkers of this period were Israeli (between 850 and 950), Saadyah (892–942), Bachyah (*c.*1000–1050), Ibn Gabirol (*c.*1020–1070), Maimonides (1135–1204), Gersonides (1288–1344), and Crescas (1340–1410). The Jewish philosophers played no small part in the subsequent renascence of philosophy in Christendom. They helped with the Latin translation of Greek and Arabic treatises on philosophy, and they influenced the thought of the leading Scholastics. Gabirol's *Fountain of Life* helped to mould the thought of Duns Scotus, among others; and Maimonides' *Guide of the Perplexed* influenced

Albertus Magnus and Thomas Aquinas, among others. Maimonides and Crescas also had a share in the shaping of the philosophy of Spinoza.

The Scholastics

The revival of Christian interest in philosophy may be traced to some extent to the beneficent results of the educational work of Charles the Great, who founded schools throughout France in the eighth century. The subjects gradually introduced into these schools consisted of the so-called "seven liberal arts," namely, grammar, logic, rhetoric, arithmetic, geometry, astronomy, and music. The teachers who taught them were known as *doctores scholastici*. When in the course of the eleventh and twelfth centuries the new Universities of Paris, Bologna, Salerno, Oxford and Cambridge were founded, the name *Scholastics* (or Schoolmen) was extended to all who taught philosophy and theology there. The main motive of the Scholastics was to reconcile Christian theology with philosophy. The early Scholastics, John Scotus Erigena (810–877), Roscellinus (*c.*1051–1121), St. Anselm (1033–1109), and Abelard (1079–1142) inclined towards Platonism. In the course of the thirteenth century, however, as the works of Aristotle became better known, his philosophy grew in favour in the Church, especially with the Dominican order, which turned out the two most eminent Aristotelian Schoolmen, Albertus Magnus (1103–1280) and St. Thomas Aquinas (1225–1274). Albertus Magnus appears to have been the first to draw the line between *natural* knowledge and *theological* knowledge, that is to say, between the light of reason and the light of revelation. This distinction, though objectionable in some ways as implying a breach in the unity of the universe, served for a long time the very useful purpose of securing some measure of freedom for philosophy and science, which the Middle Ages were only too prone to treat as mere handmaids to theology or the Church (the realm of grace as distinct from the realm of nature). St. Thomas Aquinas stressed the Aristotelian distinction between matter and form, but went far beyond Aristotle as regards the number of "forms" to which he attributed an existence independent of matter. The human soul, though associated for a time with a body, is, according to Aquinas, capable of separate existence. And Aquinas postulated a whole scale of such "separate forms," beginning with the human soul, passing through a whole hierarchy of angels and spirits (some of which guide the stars in their courses) and culminating in God, who is the "Absolute Form." By his doctrine that God had endowed nature with a certain amount of autonomy, Aquinas supported the tendency, initiated by Albertus Magnus, to allow philosophy and science (that is, "natural" knowledge) some measure of autonomy. This tendency was further encouraged by Aquinas's theory of Knowledge. For whereas St. Augustine had treated all knowledge as the result of divine illumination, Aquinas regarded it as partly the product of images produced in the soul by external objects, and thus allowed some importance to the empirical study of natural phenomena. He held that material objects *qua* particular objects become known through the senses, but their "forms" become known through the intellect.

The Franciscan order showed great hostility to the Aristotelianism of the Dominicans. Their principal spokesmen, Duns Scotus (1265–1308) and William of Occam (d. 1349), repudiated any attempt to harmonize theology with philosophy, or faith with natural knowledge. What is true for natural knowledge (that is, for science and philosophy) may be quite false in theology, and theology is supreme. They repudiated the intellectualism of Aquinas, and laid stress on the will as the fundamental faculty of the soul. The good is placed above the true, and the good is whatever God has arbitrarily decreed. God has not decreed certain things because they are intrinsically good ; rather they are good only because He has decreed them. And it is man's duty to obey God. Even so-called evil deeds are good if they are done in the service of God. As the decrees of God are made known by the Church, all that was thus claimed for God was really claimed for the Church, whose authority and power were supreme throughout the Middle Ages, and more or less effectively repressed all freedom of thought.

Mediæval Science

The story of science in the Middle Ages is naturally very similar to that of philosophy. Such contributions as were made to the survival and development of science were due mainly to the Orientals, touched mostly by the spirit of the ancient Greeks. In the seventh century our system of numerals was discovered or invented in India. Its importance can hardly be exaggerated. About 900 it was adopted by the Arabs, who introduced it into Europe, where it first came into vogue about 1200. In the ninth century the Arabs also took in hand translations of the most important Greek works on science. In due course they had Arabic versions of the medical works of Galen, Euclid's *Elements* of geometry, and Ptolemy's astronomical masterpiece, known as *Almagest*, from the Arabic version. Acquaintance with these and other scientific treatises stimulated Moslem interest in science. Al Batani, in the latter part of the ninth century, carried on fruitful work in his observatory at Antioch, recalculating the precession of the equinoxes and preparing new astronomical tables ; and about a century later Ibn Yunus made important contributions to the study of solar and lunar eclipses. The Moslems built a number of observatories, including the one at Seville, which was the first European observatory. In medicine Rhazes of Baghdad (tenth century) and the philosopher Avicenna did work of distinction. Avicenna's *Canon* was used as a textbook of medicine in various European Universities till late in the seventeenth century. In physics Ibn-al-Haithan (965–1020) carried out valuable experimental work in optics. Al Biruni (973–1048) determined the specific gravity of precious stones, and carried out various geodetic measurements. He and Omar Khayyâm, the poet, also wrote treatises on mathematics. But of all the sciences chemistry perhaps owes most to the Arabs. The best known of their chemists was Jabir, who is sometimes called the father of scientific chemistry. He lived in the eighth century most probably, but is sometimes identified with, and sometimes distinguished from, a certain Geber, who may have lived later. His great merit was his insistence on actual observation, as distinguished from hearsay

and book-lore. He carried out many experiments in distillation, filtration, sublimation, and calcination. He gave careful accounts of these chemical processes, and appears to have been the first to notice that metals heated in an open vessel gain in weight. His name is especially associated with a new conception of metals, namely, that they are all the products of sulphur and mercury combined in different proportions, and that, inasmuch as they have the same constituents, they can be transmuted one into another. In the subsequent history of mediæval chemistry these ideas played a great rôle. Transmutation of base metals into precious ones was a common quest; and the "principles" of sulphur and mercury (to which, later on, salt was added) took their place beside the "four elements" of earlier thought. Another famous Moslem chemist was the above-mentioned Rhazes. He was more systematic than Jabir, and made an attempt at an elaborate classification of chemical substances. First he classified them into the familiar three classes, animals, vegetables, minerals, and then subdivided each of these into a number of sub-classes. He also gave a full account of the apparatus needed in the study of chemistry. Like Jabir, he believed in transmutation. Apparently the philosopher Avicenna was one of the few mediæval thinkers who rejected the possibility of transmuting metals. But there was a whole succession of Moslem chemists who were really scientific. The debt of subsequent European science to the Arabs is evidenced by the number of Arabic expressions which gained currency in other languages—alchemy, alembic, algebra, azure, elixir, zenith, zero, etc. It is also shown by the fact that when Roger Bacon commenced his crusade in favour of scientific research, he attached great importance to the study of Arabic and Hebrew, as well as Greek, as a means of access to the scientific knowledge already accumulated.

Perhaps the chief stumbling-block in the way of mediæval thought consisted of certain distortions of Platonic and Aristotelian doctrines. In his *Timæus* Plato had suggested that the great world (the macrocosm) is really alive, and that man is in some ways a small model of it (microcosm). This was developed in the Middle Ages into extravagant attempts to correlate parts of the great world (the planets, etc.) with parts of the microcosm (parts and organs of the human body). This ended in weird astrological and mystical fancies. Aristotle's doctrine of "forms" was similarly distorted or even more so. The Neo-Platonists and even some of the Aristotelians (see, *e.g.*, the above account of St. Thomas Aquinas p. 18) identified the "forms" of things with their "souls" or "spirits." This encouraged the mystical treatment of "forms" as occult powers which might accomplish anything, and which could therefore be conveniently resorted to to explain everything. In this way "forms," "occult powers," and "principles" helped to build up a pseudo-science which stood in the way of genuine, empirical science. Much of the time and energy of the pioneers of modern science (see, *e.g.*, Robert Boyle's *Sceptical Chymist*) was taken up in exorcising these spirits.

Transition

Even the Middle Ages, however, had quite a number of searchers who were imbued with the true spirit of science. So far as Christendom is

concerned, the two most famous men of this type were Roger Bacon (*c.*1214–1292) and Leonardo da Vinci (1451–1519). Bacon appears to have obtained most of his ideas from Arabic, Greek, and Hebrew sources, but, though not entirely free from mediæval fancies, caught the scientific spirit, and did his best to apply it himself and to persuade others to use the scientific methods of observation, experiment and verification, instead of relying on books and other authorities. His works were condemned by the general of the Franciscan order, to which he belonged. He therefore had little opportunity of exercising much influence. Da Vinci was a universal genius, whose influence might have been great enough to inaugurate the modern revival of science about a century earlier than its actual commencement. But, for reasons not difficult to surmise, he refrained from publishing his scientific researches.

The Renaissance and the Reformation, as such, afforded no direct help to the revival of either philosophy or science. The Renaissance, with its predominant interest in classical literature as such, gave no direct encouragement to a first-hand study of nature. Indeed, classical learning obtained such a hold on the Universities that these showed little love for science, and new societies (like the Royal Society, for example) had to be started for the encouragement of experimental science. Indirectly, however, the Renaissance helped to shake Europe out of its authoritarian torpor by acquainting people with the freer, more naturalistic spirit of the classical age, which the invention of the printing press (1455) helped to propagate. As to the Reformation, the reformers were just as intolerant as the Catholic Church, if not more so. Indirectly, however, the squabbles of the Churches had the effect of turning some of the best minds away and setting them on the path of a quest after truth independently of the rival Churches and the authority which they all claimed.

The most obvious feature of mediæval thought was its subordination to authority—the authority of the Church, in the first instance, and of such books as the Church favoured. As the Church encouraged little interest in this world, and stood primarily for supernaturalism, it had helped to reinstate something very like the mythological age which had preceded the birth of science and philosophy. The revival of science which marked the beginning of the modern period was concurrent with the revival of naturalism and the gradual repression of supernaturalism. The growth of interest in natural phenomena as such, and of the habit of direct observation of them, instead of accepting the accounts of authorities, was slow. Still, the idea was on the march. Some of the milestones may be indicated as follows. Lorenzo Valla (1408–1457) openly attacked Scholasticism for its interest in words instead of in things. Nicolaus Cusanus (1401–1464) showed scientific leanings, and openly accepted the view that the earth is spherical and rotates about its axis. The voyages of discovery in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries (Columbus, Vasco da Gama, Magalhaes) helped to spread this view, and widened people's outlook. Paracelsus (1493–1541) and Van Helmont (1577–1644) denounced authority and book-lore in the study of nature. Telesio (1508–1588) founded an academy in Naples for the empirical study of natural phenomena. The martyrdom of Servetus in 1553, and of Giordano Bruno in 1600, helped to make manifest the hostility of the Churches (Reformed

as well as Catholic) towards the naturalist spirit of science. Montaigne (1533–1592) and Sanchez (1562–1632) met dogmatism with scepticism, and advanced the cause of toleration. Francis Bacon (1561–1626) summed up all the faults of mediævalism. His persuasive pen and important position did much to prepare the way for the new scientific age, of which he proclaimed himself the herald. But most effective of all was probably the work of Copernicus (1473–1543). Slowly but steadily his book *On the Revolution of the Celestial Orbits* (1543) induced thoughtful people to abandon the geocentric theory of the universe. And when the earth was once relegated from the position of cosmic centre to that of a minor planet of the sun, it was felt to be impossible to continue to regard man as the crown of creation, or as the hero of the whole cosmic drama; so Church mythology was shaken to its foundations. In a more modest, yet positive and valuable, manner, Vesalius (1515–1564) likewise contributed to the new birth of science. His book on *The Structure of the Human Body* (published in the same year as Copernicus' revolutionary treatise) set a good example of a sober, objective study of man based on direct observation, instead of on authorities, and refraining from all speculations about alleged correlations between the planets, etc., and the parts and organs of the body, between the macrocosm and the microcosm. Supernaturalism, the great enemy of science, was being steadily excluded from the study of natural phenomena. The spirit of modern science had arrived.

MODERN TIMES

The advance of science, in modern as in ancient times, meant an extension of the realm of natural knowledge and the steady repression of the claims of the supernatural. The work of science consists essentially in the discovery of order among the phenomena of nature. It seeks to formulate the laws inherent in natural events, and to account for them without recourse to whatever is merely magical or mysterious, mythological or supernatural. But the human mind is so deeply attached to myth and wonder that some of the greatest pioneers of modern thought could not entirely emancipate themselves from the bonds of the supernatural, and their successors have repeatedly succumbed to its lures. Compromise between the two loyalties has been, and still is, rather common. And the commonest type of compromise resorted to consisted in being strictly scientific on weekdays and supernaturalist on Sundays, or scientific in writing on astronomy, physics, chemistry, etc., and supernaturalist when writing on philosophical and religious subjects. Still, not all suffered from such divided personality, and even those who did advanced, in spite of themselves, the great cause of natural knowledge.

Seventeenth Century Science

The most impressive movement with which modern thought began is probably to be found in that steady, irresistible, almost fate-like march of astronomy from Copernicus to Newton. The final outcome of this development was vastly to reduce the traditional differences between heaven and earth. On the one hand, the earth ceased to be regarded as the

central stage of the cosmic drama ; on the other hand, the celestial bodies, once conceived to be composed of a special kind of element (quintessence) and deified by many (even by Kepler !), were shown to be subject to the same material conditions (especially gravitation) as the earth. In the eyes of some people, at all events, all this tended to thrust the supernatural out of ken. Hence the stubborn resistance with which the Churches opposed the relentless march of the new astronomy with its implicit naturalism.

Galileo (1564–1642) probably deserves the chief credit for the great step forward in the emancipation of science from mystification. Copernicus died soon after his book was printed, and the book itself was put on the Index. But for Galileo's whole-hearted (if slightly disguised) championship of the Copernican theory, its day would have been long delayed. His own important discoveries added enormously to the momentum of the whole movement. His telescope revealed the earthy appearance of the moon with its mountains and valleys, and the spots on the sun, thus shattering traditional beliefs in the perfection of celestial bodies. His observation of Jupiter and its satellites furnished a striking parallel to the solar system as represented by the Copernican theory. Moreover, by his conception of inertia he succeeded in explaining away most of the difficulties which appeared to stand in the way of the Copernican theory.

Tycho Brahe (1546–1601) had in the meantime made the most important advance in the accuracy and number of his astronomical observations. His work set a most valuable example of ingenuity in the construction of scientific instruments, of patient devotion to the closest and continuous observation of phenomena, and admirable restraint in letting speculation wait for an adequate accumulation of data. By way of compromise between the heliocentric and geocentric theories he suggested the possibility that the sun and the moon move round the earth, while the other planets move around the sun. This view may have served as a half-way house for some people, until they could go all the way.

Kepler (1571–1630) offers a remarkable instance of a mathematical enthusiast and mystic converted gradually into a sober scientist. Embracing the heliocentric theory he went into ecstasies about the Sun, calling it God the Father. And he was almost beside himself when he thought he had discovered a correlation between the orbits of the planets and the five regular solids—a correlation to which he at first ascribed great mystical significance. But persistent work in science sobered him, and led him to such important real discoveries as made him the immediate forerunner of Newton. Kepler was acting as Tycho Brahe's assistant when Tycho died. Kepler received Tycho's vast collection of data, and set about the task of interpreting them. The main result of his life's labours consisted in the formulation of the famous three Laws of Kepler. They are the following. (1) The planets move in elliptic orbits having the sun in one focus. (2) A planet moves not uniformly but in such a way that the straight line joining its centre to that of the sun (the radius vector) sweeps out in its orbit equal areas in equal times. (3) The squares of the times which the several planets take to complete their orbits are proportional to the cubes of their mean distances from the sun. Kepler not only dealt with the geometrical and temporal aspects of planetary motion, but for

the first time in the history of human thought he attempted to give an account of the mechanics of the movements of the planets. Influenced by the work of Gilbert on magnetism, and his proof that the earth is a huge magnet, Kepler suggested that the sun emits lines of magnetic force which act tangentially on the planets and keep them moving in their elliptic orbits.

What with Galileo's three laws of motion and other discoveries, Kepler's three laws of planetary movement and Descartes' new mathematical methods (Analytical Geometry), the materials were prepared for the first great synthesis of physical phenomena. For the time being all these discoveries, important as they were, seemed to be entirely disconnected, and to have no obvious bearing on one another. It needed the penetrating eyes of a synoptic genius to see the single system of which they all formed so many aspects. Fortunately for the history of science the hour produced the man.

Newton (1642–1727) was born in the year in which Galileo died, and was the first to appreciate fully the significance of Galileo's three laws of motion, which in due course gained universal acceptance in the formulations which Newton gave them. Now the chief novelty of the new astronomy was the attempt to explain the mechanics of planetary movement, all the astronomers up to the time of Kepler having confined their attention to the geometry (that is, the precise shape of the orbits) of the motions of the planets. Of course even as regards this geometrical problem, Kepler's laws marked an advance of the utmost importance, but his attempt at a planetary mechanics, though a hopeless failure, was an entirely new departure. His example in this respect was followed by Descartes, who suggested the rival hypothesis of vortices, or enormous whirlpools, for the conveyance of the planets along their orbits. Now Newton was greatly drawn by the mechanical problems of astronomy, but his firm grasp of Galileo's first law of motion (namely, if no force acts on a body in motion, it continues to move uniformly in a straight line) convinced him that Kepler was on the wrong track, because he assumed that some force was required to *maintain* a body in motion, whereas Galileo had shown that force was only necessary to *change* its motion. What really needed explanation was not the continued motion of the planets, but only their deviation from a straight path. What causes the *curvature* of the orbits? Newton concluded that there must be some centripetal force which pulls the planets towards the sun. Such a centripetal force would account for the transformation of an initial straight path into a curved one. Now the intensity of a force emanating from a centre would naturally vary inversely with the square of the distance from the centre, because the force radiates or gets dissipated into larger and larger spheres, and the surface of a sphere varies with the square of its radius. But, as Newton showed, movement in an elliptic orbit implies an inverse square law. Thus the assumption of a centripetal force situated in the sun would account for the elliptical orbit of the planets, which Kepler's first law formulated merely as a brute fact. The same assumption, moreover, would account also for Kepler's second and third laws. The next thing to ascertain, if possible, was the nature of this centripetal force. According to the familiar legend, which ought to be true if it is not, it occurred to

Newton, while he was watching the fall of an apple, that the force which pulls the moon towards the earth, and the earth and the other planets towards the sun, might be the same force as that which pulls the apple to the ground, namely, gravity. And his calculations eventually led him to formulate the Universal Principle of Gravitation, namely, that every particle of matter attracts every other particle of matter with a force varying directly as the mass and inversely as the square of the distance.

The Law of Gravitation was the most comprehensive discovery that had yet been made, and retained its hold for several centuries. In one grand generalization it embraced all the physical phenomena of the universe, explaining such diverse phenomena as the fall of an apple, the movements of the tides, the shape of the earth, the motion of the moon round the earth, of the Medicean stars round Jupiter, of the earth, Jupiter and the other planets round the sun, and even the apparently erratic movements of comets, etc. Naturalism had achieved a great triumph, and repudiated the necessity of drawing any hard and fast line between terrestrial and celestial phenomena.

Although the astronomical advance of the seventeenth century almost overshadows all its other scientific discoveries, it made, of course, other important contributions to science. At least some of these must be indicated here.

In one form or another the atomic theory was revived. Descartes, indeed, had a theory of infinitely divisible matter not inherently mobile, which was very different from the atomic theory of the ancients. But Gassendi (1592–1655), Boyle (1627–1691), and Newton embraced the old atomic theory in its essentials, with the metaphysical reservation that the atoms were created by God and endowed by Him with motion and their other properties. For the time being the main significance of this "corpuscularian philosophy," as Boyle called it, lay in the fact that it helped to displace the traditional "four elements" and "three principles" (*tria prima*) and the "forms" and "occult qualities" which obstructed the path of scientific chemistry. Boyle, indeed, confessed that he could not see "how from matter, barely put in motion, and then left to itself, there could emerge such curious fabricks as the bodies of men and perfect animals, and such yet more admirably contrived parcels of matter as the seeds of living creatures." He therefore assumed an "architectonick principle or power" to account for it. The problems of vitalism and biochemistry, however, did not become urgent for a long while yet. And in the meantime inorganic chemistry could advance unimpeded.

So far as biology was concerned, the most important contribution of the seventeenth century was Harvey's discovery and experimental proof of the circulation of the blood. Descartes, indeed, attempted to treat the lower animals and even the human body as automata, and to describe all their physical activities mechanically. But his adherence to Galen's doctrine of animal and vital spirits, with their somewhat ambiguous position between physical and mental entities, seemed to open a back door for occult or quasi-occult influences. Harvey's discovery of the circulation of the blood, and his account of it in more or less purely mechanical terms, helped to put biology on a naturalistic basis.

In physics the most important discoveries related to optics. Snell

discovered his law of refraction in 1621. Descartes tried to explain all the phenomena of light on the analogy of the mechanics of moving particles. Roemer discovered the velocity of light in 1676. Newton made his classical experiments on the composite character of white light. And Huygens formulated the undulatory theory of light, which was destined to have such far-reaching consequences in the nineteenth century.

But perhaps most promising, in some ways, were certain important aids which the seventeenth century created for the subsequent advance of science. First of all there were certain advances in mathematics—the most potent intellectual tool of science. Napier invented logarithms. Descartes invented Analytic Geometry. Pascal (1623–1662) formulated the mathematical theory of Probability. Lastly, Leibniz and Newton invented the Infinitesimal Calculus, which provided the basis for nearly all subsequent discoveries in mathematics. Next to the intellectual tools must be mentioned the invention of certain material instruments which rendered possible that fruitful observation and experiment, and that accurate measurement of phenomena, on which science is based. The telescope was invented by a Dutch spectacle-maker at the beginning of the seventeenth century. Its adjunct, the micrometer, was constructed by Gascoigne about 1639. The microscope was invented about the same time. Guericke (1602–1686) invented and Boyle improved the air-pump. The thermometer was invented by Galileo, and improved by the members of the Accademia del Cimento, who introduced the method of hermetically sealing it, and by Renaldini, who in 1694 showed how the melting point of ice and the boiling point of water might be used as fixed points for a thermometric scale. Torricelli (1608–1647) invented the barometer in 1643, and Pascal demonstrated its accuracy, and so laid the ghost of the old superstition about nature's abhorrence of a vacuum, by which the action of pumps used to be explained. Huygens invented the pendulum clock. Finally, mention must also be made of the foundation of various academies which were formed for the express purpose of promoting scientific research. Rome had the Accademia dei Lincei. In Florence the Accademia del Cimento was founded in 1651. The Royal Society of London received its charter in 1662, though its beginnings go back to 1645. And the French Académie des Sciences was founded in 1666.

Seventeenth Century Philosophy

The differentiation between science and philosophy came into vogue only gradually, and largely in consequence of Newton's distinction between scientific inferences drawn direct from observations and metaphysical " hypotheses " which went beyond, and in which he declined to indulge in his capacity of astronomer and physicist. In the seventeenth century the line between science and philosophy was still very fluid, though there was a tendency to mark off the sciences as " natural " philosophy from the rest of philosophic thought. If it is not altogether easy to draw the line between mediæval and modern science, it is even less easy to draw the line between mediæval and modern philosophy, using the term philosophy in the later and more restricted sense of the term

(*i.e.* as exclusive of the sciences). But we may begin with Descartes, whose philosophy, though Scholastic in many respects, marked a new departure in some ways.

Descartes (1596–1650), like others before him, was keenly dissatisfied with the state of knowledge in his time. The only study which appeared to him well-founded was mathematics. This, he thought, was due to the method employed in mathematics, which sets out from clear ideas (axioms, definitions, postulates) and proceeds deductively to indubitable results. So he wanted to introduce the mathematical method into philosophy. For this he needed first of all a sure starting point. To find this he resorted to St. Augustine's " methodical doubt," and, like him, found that though he might doubt everything else he could not doubt the reality of his own doubt. " I think, therefore I am." Now, why is this accepted as certain ? Because it is " clear and distinct." If so, he gets the general principle that " whatever I apprehend very clearly and distinctly is true." And among such clear and distinct, and therefore true, ideas he includes those of God, the axioms of geometry, and such " eternal truths " as that " nothing can result from nothing." Nevertheless Descartes found it desirable to *prove* the existence of God ; and for this purpose he drew mainly on the arguments of St. Anselm and Campanella. Next, relying on the veracity of God, whose perfection would refrain Him from deception, Descartes accepts the reality of the world of experience in so far as this is very clear and distinct. This world is the creation of God, and is entirely dependent on Him also for its continuance. The created world consists of two main classes of things, namely, bodies (or " extended things ") and minds (or " thinking things "). Like St. Augustine, Descartes regarded bodies and minds (or souls) as so utterly different that there can be no interaction between them. The union of body and soul in man is just a miracle. With the miraculous aid of God the soul can *direct*, though not *produce*, the movements of the body. This supernaturalist strain in Descartes' philosophy soon developed into " Occasionalism," that is, the doctrine that body and soul exercise no influence whatever on each other, but that any change in either serves as an occasion for divine intervention to produce a corresponding change in the other. In his scientific work Descartes followed the mechanistic lead of Galileo. He even tried to explain animal organisms (including the human body) as mere automata or machines. His most original and valuable discovery was that of Analytic Geometry.

Hobbes (1588–1679) was strongly opposed to supernaturalism. He attempted to apply to the whole world of reality the kind of mechanistic explanations which Galileo and Descartes had applied to physical phenomena only. His naturalism thus assumed the extreme form of materialism. According to it matter and motion are the sole ultimate realities, and account for everything, even for human knowledge. For all knowledge is derived from sensations, and all sensations are produced by the pressure of matter on the sense organs. In fact sensations and even thoughts are only certain kinds of motion, and mind (or soul) is matter. All things, moreover, are characterized by the same fundamental tendency, namely, the tendency to persist in their present condition, whether of motion or of rest. Hobbes did not deny the existence of God as first cause, but he

maintained that man "cannot have any idea of him." Hobbes' main influence lay in the realm of moral and political philosophy, and even there it showed itself chiefly by provoking opposition.

Spinoza (1632–1677) was the first modern to give complete expression to the naturalism and rationalism with which modern thought reacted against the supernaturalism and dogmatism of the Middle Ages. He vindicated the autonomy of reason against every kind of authority, insisting that even the Scriptures must be submitted to the same kind of examination as any other historical documents. Now the characteristic function of reason is to discover the systematic connections between things. It is therefore opposed to any supernatural incursions which tend to break up the systematic interconnections between natural events. Hence we find in Spinoza rationalism and naturalism going hand in hand. But his naturalism is very different from the naturalism of Hobbes. In Nature, as he conceives it, there is room for the mental (or spiritual) as well as the material, and for the divine as well as the human and subhuman. In fact, for Spinoza Nature (or the cosmic system) and God are the same. The All is God, and God is All. Let us glance at the ground and structure of Spinoza's pantheism.

Every finite object or event is dependent on innumerable others, which ramify in all directions, and so each of them similarly dependent on innumerable others. But a world consisting solely of such contingent objects and events would be unintelligible. There must be some self-dependent reality (or "Substance") which sustains all the dependent things and events. But this self-existing "Substance" need not be sought in an external creator; the cosmic system (or Nature) in its entirety may satisfy this quest for God. Scientifically, this view avoids the unnecessary multiplication of entities, and the problem of creation from nothing. Nature or God is thus conceived as all-comprehensive, infinite or perfect, so that there is nothing outside the cosmic system, nothing supernatural. Nature, moreover, is not static but dynamic, exercising all existing forms of energy. Each ultimate kind of energy is described as an Attribute of God. Man only knows of two such ultimate attributes, namely, extension and thought, that is, physical energy and mind energy. But there may be an infinity of others. All material bodies and physical events are "modes" (that is, modifications or states) of the attribute extension, and all minds and mental experiences are modes of the attribute thought. The apparent interaction between body and mind arises from their being concomitant modes of the constitutive attributes of the one ultimate reality. The various finite modes are not illusions, but real while they last; and even when they pass away they do not utterly disappear, for the One remains in which the many change and change again. Spinoza is so opposed to anthropomorphism and its abuses that he declines to describe God as a Person; but only because He is so much *more* than we can understand by a person. God, as Spinoza conceived Him, is super-personal, but not less worthy of love for that, as is clear from Spinoza's life and character. In fact Spinoza's philosophy culminates in "the intellectual love of God," which is the fruit of that highest intuition to which man attains when, after an adequate discipline of intelligence and character, he arrives at a synoptic vision of the One and All.

Leibniz (1646–1716) formulated a philosophy of Monadism. He held that so-called material objects, and even space, have no objective reality, but are mere appearances within the experiences of minds. Minds (souls or spirits) are the only realities. They are of all degrees of development, some having but a very low kind of consciousness or sub-consciousness, a kind of chronic somnolence, others are in a somewhat higher dream-state, yet others are wide awake and have clear thoughts, while God ("the monad of monads") enjoys the most intense and most active consciousness. The monads are infinite in number and infinite in gradation, no two monads being exactly alike. Moreover, each monad is self-contained and is not affected by the others, except only by God who has created them by a kind of emanation. The appearance of interaction between different monads is due to a "pre-established harmony." God, in other words, has so made them that they all act in harmony. It is as if He had set a number of clocks to keep time together. The whole outlook bears the impress of supernaturalism. Yet in dealing with so-called physical phenomena Leibniz sought mechanical explanations, though he tried to reinstate also teleological explanations by treating mechanism as an instrument of teleology. The ultimate motive which prompted this idealistic monadology was the anxiety to justify the belief in the ultimate reality and permanence of individual souls.

Locke (1632–1704) attempted to divert philosophy from ambitious cosmic speculations to the study of the nature and limits of human knowledge. He was wont to discuss religious problems with certain friends of his, but the discussions seemed fruitless. It then occurred to him "that before we set ourselves upon inquiries of that nature, it was necessary to examine our own abilities, and see what objects our understandings were or were not fitted to deal with." For by "extending their inquiries beyond their capacities" people "raise questions and multiply disputes, which . . . only . . . increase their doubts." The main results of his examination of the human understanding may be briefly summarized as follows. Our understanding is dependent on sensations. It can reflect on these, and combine them into more complex wholes, but it cannot add to them. Now sensations are at best only appearances or copies of the primary qualities of things (extension, shape, solidity, number, motion). Sensations of secondary qualities (colour, smell, sound, taste) are merely subjective effects produced in us by primary qualities, and are not copies of anything objective. Our ideas of substances (bodies and souls) are vague, and cannot be justified by sense-experience. Hence it is impossible to say whether the soul is a spiritual substance, or a material substance endowed with the capacity to think. In fact, man does not know the "real essence" of anything, and is strictly limited to his experience. Each man can only be sure of his own existence, by intuition, and of the existence of God as the cause of man's existence. So, three years after the publication of Newton's *Principia*, Locke's *Essay* (1690) considered "a science of physical bodies as out of our reach" (beyond merely empirical limits), while regarding mathematics and ethics as real sciences because they are only concerned with ideas.

The five seventeenth-century systems of philosophy outlined above may be said to have provided the broad foundations for all, or nearly all

the philosophies which appeared during the two centuries and more that have elapsed since then.

Eighteenth Century Philosophy

Berkeley (1685–1753) formulated an idealistic philosophy to counter the materialistic tendencies of his age. The progress of mechanics in the seventeenth century had been so striking that thinkers naturally attempted to extend mechanistic modes of explanation (that is, explanations in terms of matter and motion) in all directions. The materialistic philosophy of Hobbes was a supreme example of this tendency; and Hobbes did not stand alone. Good Bishop Berkeley tried to refute the whole movement by disproving the reality of matter, in favour of spirits and ideas. Taking Locke's *Essay* for his text, Berkeley maintained that our ideas or sensations of primary qualities, as well as those of secondary qualities, cannot be "copies" of anything objective, but are mental experiences, and nothing else. Ideas can only resemble ideas, not material objects or their qualities. It is therefore unwarranted and superfluous to assume the existence of material bodies at all. Our ideas themselves, and not the alleged material things beyond them, are the real objects of knowledge. "All the choir of heaven and furniture of earth . . . have not any substance without the mind; . . . their *being* is to be perceived or known." When they are not perceived by man, then "they must either have no existence at all, or else subsist in the mind of some Eternal Spirit." But how is it that material bodies appear to produce certain effects with such regularity, if they are only ideas? Berkeley explains this as the result of "an arbitrary connection instituted by the Author of Nature" between the corresponding ideas. The only realities, then, are God, other spirits or souls created by Him, and the various ideas or experiences which He has ordained to be apprehended in certain regular sequences.

Hume (1711–1776) maintained that the line of argument pursued by Locke and Berkeley ends in scepticism. Berkeley had argued that, on Locke's own showing, there is not enough evidence for assuming the reality of material substances or material causation, though he insisted on the reality of spirits (or souls) and spiritual agency. Hume maintained that Berkeley's arguments against the former were just as valid against the latter. He repudiated Berkeley's contention that each man has an intuition of his own soul or self. "For my part when I enter most intimately into what I call *myself*, I always stumble on some particular perception or other. . . . I never catch *myself*." All that seems to be real is a miscellaneous multitude of disconnected impressions and ideas, to which habitual association gives the appearance of causally connected events, while our mistaking of similar impressions for identical ones gives them the appearance of enduring substances. The flux of changing experiences is all that is sure. Even mathematics is not certain. The most that can be claimed for anything is probability. Hume himself found his conclusions baffling, but he pleaded "the privilege of the sceptic."

Kant (1724–1804) attempted to bridge the chasm between ideas and the external world, in which Hume's philosophy ended. This divorce

between the subjective and the objective was the natural result of the line of thought pursued by Descartes, Leibniz, Locke, and Berkeley. But Kant had too much respect for the achievements of science to dismiss their claims in the manner proposed by the scepticism of Hume. And his defence of the sciences took the form of a comparatively new method, the so-called " transcendental," which was a striking development of the older doctrines of " common notions," " eternal truths," and " innate ideas." Kant conceived the objects of knowledge as the joint production of sense-materials, which are independent of the mind, and of certain forms and relations which the mind contributes. These forms of intuition (space and time) and relations or categories of thought (substance and attribute, cause and effect, etc.) are *a priori* or " transcendental " in the sense that they are not learned from experience, since experience itself would be impossible without them. On the other hand, the sense-material is *a posteriori*, that is, only given in experience, though it is given not as it is " in itself " but only as transformed by the *a priori* forms and categories. Human knowledge does not extend to " things-in-themselves " (or noumena) but only to their appearances (phenomena) as moulded in the way just indicated. The application of the *a priori* forms and categories to whatever falls within human experience is legitimate and, in fact, inevitable. But they must not be applied to whatever transcends such experience. God and future life, for instance, are beyond human experience, and consequently cannot be argued about at all—they can be neither proved nor disproved. But they may be *believed in* as a matter of *faith* based, not on theoretical, but *on practical grounds*. And it is on such practical considerations that Kant based the belief in the existence of God, freewill, and immortality. These are postulated by the unconditional claims of morality (the " categorical imperative "), just as the reality of an objective world of some sort is postulated by the theoretical claims of science.

Materialism

In opposition to the idealism of Berkeley his countryman Toland (1670–1721) advocated the materialism of Hobbes. He insisted that matter was not the inert thing that Descartes had represented it to be, but an *active* substance or *force*. Matter is force, motion, life, and mind is one of its functions. Thought is a function of the brain, just as taste is a function of the tongue. *Hartley* (1704–1757) likewise embraced a materialistic philosophy, and attempted to reduce psychology to physiology. Priestley (1733–1804) was perhaps the most important British materialist of the eighteenth century. He enumerated many plausible reasons in support of materialism (some of them actually drawn from the Bible), and argued that only on the assumption of God's materiality can the Christian dogma of His omnipresence be maintained. In France materialism was stimulated unintentionally by Descartes. Descartes was a dualist and theist, in fact an orthodox Catholic, but his view that the lower animals are mere automata, and his account of how all the limbs can be set in motion by sense stimuli without the intervention of the soul, led La Mettrie and others to dispense with souls altogether, and to explain

all things mechanically. La Mettrie (1709–1751) insisted that man is not a privileged being, and that there are no ultimate differences between plants, animals, and men. They are all subject to the same laws, and represent different stages of one evolutionary process. Other French materialists were Diderot (1731–1784), Helvetius (1715–1771), D'Alembert (1717–1783), D'Holbach (1723–1789) and Cabanis (1757–1808). To Cabanis are due some of the most familiar dicta of materialism. Body and soul are the same thing. Man is just a bundle of nerves. The brain secretes thought just as the liver secretes bile. All things, even the so-called mental and moral phenomena, follow from the laws and properties of matter. Phrenology was naturally an offspring of this kind of materialism.

Eighteenth Century Science

The progress of astronomy after Newton proceeded along two main lines, observational and mathematical. The most important work in observational astronomy in the eighteenth century is associated with the name of Herschel (1738–1822). In 1781 he discovered a new planet (Uranus) with two satellites beyond Saturn. Even more significant in some way was his discovery of 800 double stars, that is, pairs of stars revolving about each other according to the law of gravitation. This showed that the law held beyond the solar system. He also catalogued 2,000 nebulæ, which he conceived to represent different stages in the development of planetary systems. Moreover, by comparing the distribution of stars in the heavens he concluded that our star-system is approximately lens-shaped. Mention must also be made of Halley's observation of comets and his determination of the periodicity of two of them. Equally important was his discovery that certain fixed stars were changing their relative positions, and so were not really "fixed." Mathematical astronomy was mainly concerned with the development of the implications of the laws of gravitation and motion. The chief problem was how to determine the relative motions of three or more mutually attracting bodies. Euler, D'Alembert, Clairaut, and Lagrange worked out this problem with special reference to lunar and planetary theory, and the results of their labours were systematized and rounded off by Laplace in his *Celestial Mechanics* (1799). Laplace showed that the solar system is stable, the mutual interferences of its parts never exceeding certain limits. Laplace also made the first scientific attempt to explain the origin of the solar system. According to his Nebular Hypothesis (1796) the planets have condensed from rings thrown off by a rotating and contracting mass of glowing gas. This hypothesis had to be abandoned a century later, but is still accepted as a true account of the condensation of single stars out of a nebula.

In physics the eighteenth century made important contributions to the study of heat, sound, magnetism and electricity. Black's experimental work in heat led him to the discovery of specific heat and of latent heat, the latter of which was an important factor in Watt's discoveries in steam engineering. Rumford's experiments succeeded in establishing the hypothesis that heat is a mode of motion, not a kind of stuff like phlogiston

with its ambiguous " levity." In the study of sound Hawksbee, in 1705, first proved experimentally the dependence of sound on air, while Chladni (1756–1827) brought the study nearly to its present level. In the study of magnetism and electricity eighteenth century scientists made amends for the comparative neglect into which it had fallen since the days of Gilbert. A beginning was made by Hawksbee and the work was carried on by numerous investigators including Franklin, who established the electrical character of lightning, and Galvani and Volta, whose names have become household words through the " galvanic " battery, " galvanism," the " voltaic pile " and " voltage," etc.

In chemistry the eighteenth century is chiefly noteworthy for the first systematisation of the science, for a number of positive discoveries, and the disproof of several long-established errors. The century commenced rather unpromisingly with the phlogiston theory of Stahl (1660–1734). This was a glorified form of the old belief that in combustion a special kind of fire-matter (phlogiston) was given off. Thus, *e.g.*, when a metal was changed into a calx by heating, this was taken to show that the original metal consisted of the calx and the phlogiston, and that the latter was given off during the combustion. This hypothesis helped to bring some order into the chaos of many chemical details, but came into conflict with others. For instance, it had been observed already by an Arab chemist of the eleventh century that when a metal is calcined in the air it gains in weight. The supporters of the phlogiston theory met the case by saying that the phlogiston has levity instead of gravity, buoyancy instead of weight, and so its combination with the calx of a metal makes the metal lighter than is the calx by itself. Several discoveries, however, soon helped to disprove this old fancy (originally based on the obvious upward tendency of flame), though the discoverers did not always see the significance of them in this connection. Black (1728–1799) showed that when chalk is changed into quicklime it gives off a gas different from air. This led to the search for other gases. Priestley (1733–1804) and Scheele (1742–1786) discovered independently the gas subsequently called oxygen. The gas was obtained by heating calx of mercury. This discovery led Lavoisier (1743–1794) to the correct interpretation of calcination. He showed that in combustion the combustible matter combines with oxygen, which is one of the gases constituting air. Thus the calx of, say, a metal contains more than the metal did, and that is why it is heavier. The phlogiston theory was therefore disproved. Incidentally, it was also shown that air is not an element. Water too was shown to be a compound when Cavendish (1731–1810) discovered hydrogen and, by synthesizing it with oxygen, produced water. The principal honours of eighteenth-century chemistry go to Lavoisier, who extended and systematized all the good chemical work done up to his time. He gave vogue to Boyle's stricter use of the term " element," introduced a more scientific system of chemical names, set an example of the use of chemical equations, and virtually formulated the principle of conservation of matter when he postulated that " in every operation there exists an equal quantity of matter before and after the operation." The execution of Lavoisier by the leaders of the French Revolution was an irreparable loss to chemistry, and a warning that fanaticism is not the monopoly of religion.

The biology of the eighteenth century was mainly preparatory for the century of evolution. But a great deal was attempted and something was accomplished in descriptive biology, systematic biology, and in more speculative biology. In his *Natural History* Buffon (1707–1788) gave the most elaborate account known up to his time of the life, habits, geographical distribution of animals, and of the climatic and other conditions in which they lived. This work did much to make the study of natural history popular. Scientifically Linnæus (1707–1778) was more important than Buffon, for he did much to systematize biology, by introducing an improved classification of plants and an improved system of names, which are still useful for purposes of identification. The Linnæan system of classification is known as the Sex System. It was still rather artificial, but, in conjunction with the work of Jussieu and others, it prepared the ground for a natural classification based on kinship. The ancient belief in spontaneous generation of animals was still very common, but the experiments of Spallanzani (1729–1799) helped to discredit it, and moreover set an example of accurate experimentation in connection with this kind of problem. Of special importance to the future of biology was the introduction of the comparative method, which led gradually to the accumulation of the kind of evidence on which the theory of evolution was eventually based. In this connection Buffon's *Natural History* and Goethe's *Metamorphosis of Plants* may be specially credited with the popularization of the general idea of evolution. Intimately connected with the evolutionary ideas in biology was the new interest that was directed to the study of fossils, and of geology in general. In his *Theory of the Earth* (1788), Hutton (1726–1797) laid the foundations of scientific geology. In the sphere of applied biology the event of outstanding importance was the discovery of vaccination by Jenner (1749–1823), who thereby laid the foundations of preventive medicine.

Nineteenth Century Philosophy

Idealism. Although Kant himself had uttered a warning against speculation about the thing-in-itself, or Absolute, yet his writings contained suggestions which stimulated a number of thinkers to devote themselves just to that "forbidden fruit." The best known of these thinkers were Fichte, Schelling, and Hegel.

Fichte (1765–1814) maintained that even the thing-in-itself is the product of the mind. The whole of experience, not its form only, is generated by the "absolute self," in which individual minds participate. The "absolute self" divides itself into a knowing self and a known object, because the moral growth of the self needs objects as obstacles to be surmounted by moral endeavour. For similar reasons the absolute self must divide into many selves, otherwise there would be no opportunity for the exercise of mutual duties. But the many selves are all expressions of one moral order, which is the absolute self or God.

Schelling (1775–1854) attempted to rescue the reality of the physical world from the idealist tendency to explain it away as mere appearances or ideas. He regarded the beauty of the material world as a sufficient justification of its reality, and he conceived it to be an expression of the

Absolute just as mind is. This led to the view that the Absolute is neither mind nor matter though it expresses itself in both. Thus the Absolute reverted to the position of an unknown thing-in-itself.

Hegel (1770–1831) rejected the idea of an unknown thing-in-itself or Absolute. Mind and physical Nature, he insisted, *are* the Absolute, not merely appearances or expressions of an otherwise unknown Absolute. Moreover, mind and matter are not two distinct realities but integral components of one process of self-revelation of the Absolute. Mind needs an objective world on which to exercise itself; but this objective world is itself mental. " The real is rational, and the rational is real." Moreover, the development of reality proceeds like a dialectic. Some thought occurs (thesis). It is opposed by another thought (antithesis), which also proves to be inadequate. But a third harmonizes what is true in the first two (synthesis). Thus, for instance, " becoming " is such a synthesis of " being " and " non-being." The whole world is composed of such syntheses. And Hegel's conception of the world-process as a rational dialectic gave a new impetus to the study of history, which came to be regarded as the unfolding of a divine drama. Unfortunately Hegel's philosophy lent itself to opposite applications. Young revolutionaries took for their motto one half of Hegel's dictum, namely, " the rational is real " or is bound to become real; conservatives and reactionaries adopted the other half of the dictum, namely, " the real is rational," what is, is right.

Fechner (1801–1887) regarded the universe as a society of souls, and God as the supreme all-embracing Soul. Inwardly all souls are mental, but outwardly they appear to each other as material bodies. And just as smaller bodies are included in larger bodies, and all bodies are included in physical nature, so some souls are included in others, and the soul of God embraces all other souls. Life and consciousness do not evolve out of the lifeless and the unconscious, rather these are degradations of the former by a kind of secondary automatism.

Lotze (1817–1881) propounded an idealistic pantheism. Ultimate reality is mental Substance. Material phenomena are appearances produced by souls or spiritual monads (as Leibniz had maintained), but those monads Lotze (in opposition to Leibniz) regarded, not as independent substances, but as modes or states of God, who is the sole and infinite Substance. Mechanistic phenomena are appearances resulting from the uniform laws with which God carries out these immanent activities, which are nevertheless directed to divine ends.

Voluntarism. Whereas the Idealists identified ultimate reality with thought or reason, other philosophers identified it with will. Already Descartes had given primacy to the will, and Kant had given some encouragement to this tendency by treating the highest truths as moral or practical postulates. The chief voluntarists were Schopenhauer, Hartmann, Nietzsche, and Wundt.

Schopenhauer (1788–1860) identified ultimate reality with an irrational " will-in-general," or universal will. There are no individual things or wills. Individuality is mere illusion. For it depends on differences of time and place, which Kant had shown to be merely forms in which the

The biology of the eighteenth century was mainly preparatory for the century of evolution. But a great deal was attempted and something was accomplished in descriptive biology, systematic biology, and in more speculative biology. In his *Natural History* Buffon (1707–1788) gave the most elaborate account known up to his time of the life, habits, geographical distribution of animals, and of the climatic and other conditions in which they lived. This work did much to make the study of natural history popular. Scientifically Linnæus (1707–1778) was more important than Buffon, for he did much to systematize biology, by introducing an improved classification of plants and an improved system of names, which are still useful for purposes of identification. The Linnæan system of classification is known as the Sex System. It was still rather artificial, but, in conjunction with the work of Jussieu and others, it prepared the ground for a natural classification based on kinship. The ancient belief in spontaneous generation of animals was still very common, but the experiments of Spallanzani (1729–1799) helped to discredit it, and moreover set an example of accurate experimentation in connection with this kind of problem. Of special importance to the future of biology was the introduction of the comparative method, which led gradually to the accumulation of the kind of evidence on which the theory of evolution was eventually based. In this connection Buffon's *Natural History* and Goethe's *Metamorphosis of Plants* may be specially credited with the popularization of the general idea of evolution. Intimately connected with the evolutionary ideas in biology was the new interest that was directed to the study of fossils, and of geology in general. In his *Theory of the Earth* (1788), Hutton (1726–1797) laid the foundations of scientific geology. In the sphere of applied biology the event of outstanding importance was the discovery of vaccination by Jenner (1749–1823), who thereby laid the foundations of preventive medicine.

Nineteenth Century Philosophy

Idealism. Although Kant himself had uttered a warning against speculation about the thing-in-itself, or Absolute, yet his writings contained suggestions which stimulated a number of thinkers to devote themselves just to that "forbidden fruit." The best known of these thinkers were Fichte, Schelling, and Hegel.

Fichte (1765–1814) maintained that even the thing-in-itself is the product of the mind. The whole of experience, not its form only, is generated by the "absolute self," in which individual minds participate. The "absolute self" divides itself into a knowing self and a known object, because the moral growth of the self needs objects as obstacles to be surmounted by moral endeavour. For similar reasons the absolute self must divide into many selves, otherwise there would be no opportunity for the exercise of mutual duties. But the many selves are all expressions of one moral order, which is the absolute self or God.

Schelling (1775–1854) attempted to rescue the reality of the physical world from the idealist tendency to explain it away as mere appearances or ideas. He regarded the beauty of the material world as a sufficient justification of its reality, and he conceived it to be an expression of the

Absolute just as mind is. This led to the view that the Absolute is neither mind nor matter though it expresses itself in both. Thus the Absolute reverted to the position of an unknown thing-in-itself.

Hegel (1770–1831) rejected the idea of an unknown thing-in-itself or Absolute. Mind and physical Nature, he insisted, *are* the Absolute, not merely appearances or expressions of an otherwise unknown Absolute. Moreover, mind and matter are not two distinct realities but integral components of one process of self-revelation of the Absolute. Mind needs an objective world on which to exercise itself; but this objective world is itself mental. " The real is rational, and the rational is real." Moreover, the development of reality proceeds like a dialectic. Some thought occurs (thesis). It is opposed by another thought (antithesis), which also proves to be inadequate. But a third harmonizes what is true in the first two (synthesis). Thus, for instance, " becoming " is such a synthesis of " being " and " non-being." The whole world is composed of such syntheses. And Hegel's conception of the world-process as a rational dialectic gave a new impetus to the study of history, which came to be regarded as the unfolding of a divine drama. Unfortunately Hegel's philosophy lent itself to opposite applications. Young revolutionaries took for their motto one half of Hegel's dictum, namely, " the rational is real " or is bound to become real; conservatives and reactionaries adopted the other half of the dictum, namely, " the real is rational," what is, is right.

Fechner (1801–1887) regarded the universe as a society of souls, and God as the supreme all-embracing Soul. Inwardly all souls are mental, but outwardly they appear to each other as material bodies. And just as smaller bodies are included in larger bodies, and all bodies are included in physical nature, so some souls are included in others, and the soul of God embraces all other souls. Life and consciousness do not evolve out of the lifeless and the unconscious, rather these are degradations of the former by a kind of secondary automatism.

Lotze (1817–1881) propounded an idealistic pantheism. Ultimate reality is mental Substance. Material phenomena are appearances produced by souls or spiritual monads (as Leibniz had maintained), but those monads Lotze (in opposition to Leibniz) regarded, not as independent substances, but as modes or states of God, who is the sole and infinite Substance. Mechanistic phenomena are appearances resulting from the uniform laws with which God carries out these immanent activities, which are nevertheless directed to divine ends.

Voluntarism. Whereas the Idealists identified ultimate reality with thought or reason, other philosophers identified it with will. Already Descartes had given primacy to the will, and Kant had given some encouragement to this tendency by treating the highest truths as moral or practical postulates. The chief voluntarists were Schopenhauer, Hartmann, Nietzsche, and Wundt.

Schopenhauer (1788–1860) identified ultimate reality with an irrational " will-in-general," or universal will. There are no individual things or wills. Individuality is mere illusion. For it depends on differences of time and place, which Kant had shown to be merely forms in which the

things-in-itself appears, not constituents of it. Moreover, the will is essentially evil, and can never be satisfied. Life is a welter of unsatisfied cravings. The best course is to see through the illusoriness of individuality and the futility of the quest for satisfaction, and look upon life as if it were a work of art. Thus Schopenhauer's pessimism ended in a kind of Buddhist self-renunciation.

Hartmann (1842–1906) developed the voluntarism and pessimism of Schopenhauer into a "philosophy of the Unconscious." Whereas Schopenhauer treated representation (or cognition) as a mere instrument of will, Hartmann puts them both on the same level. Together they constitute the "unconscious" Absolute, which gradually differentiates into the two, becomes conscious, and realizes the tragedy of the will to live. By setting the two (will and representation) against each other (for instance, by devotion to such intellectual pursuits as those of the sciences), they may both be annihilated, and the evils of existence may be brought to an end. In this way mankind may redeem its "unconscious" God.

Nietzsche (1844–1900) attempted a synthesis of Kant, Schopenhauer, and Darwin. The inference he drew from Kant's theory of knowledge was that there is no such thing as knowledge, only fiction. Truth is not discovered, but created or invented. Beliefs, indeed, are not all alike. But the proper distinction is between those which are *useful* and those which are *useless*, not between those which are *true* and those which are *false*. Like Schopenhauer, Nietzsche identified ultimate reality with will, but he characterized this will as a "will to power," not merely as a "will to live." "The love of power is the dæmon of mankind." Like Schopenhauer, Nietzsche saw the world in sombre hues, but, instead of preaching an ideal of Buddhist acquiescence, he urged the gospel of energetic and dangerous living. Life is a kind of Greek drama in which the hero shows his mettle. The "struggle for existence" has the merit of bringing the superior men to the top. And Nietzsche looked forward to the coming of "supermen" as the result of the "survival of the fittest." The "superman" will surpass the existing human type as much as present-day man surpasses the ape.

Wundt (1832–1921) also identified basic reality with will, but a will which is never entirely divorced from feeling and ideas. There are two grades of will, namely, impulsive and voluntary (or deliberate) will. Even impulsive will needs feeling directed toward an end, and therefore an idea, but not that conscious adoption of a motive which characterizes voluntary will. As all organisms have impulsive will, organic evolution is teleological, mechanism being invented by it as an instrument for its own ends. Wundt identified will with activity of every kind. Hence, not only attention but even thinking is identified with will. This led to William James's doctrine of the "will to believe." Like Kant, Wundt restricted human knowledge to experience. In so far as reason attempts to transcend experience, it can only posit "ideals of faith." God is such an ideal conceived as the world-will.

Materialism. The middle of the nineteenth century witnessed a revival of materialism, especially in scientific circles. This was largely a kind

of reaction against idealism and its rash incursions into the domain of science. The generation which witnessed the physical experiments of Mayer, Joule, and Helmholtz (who established the principle of conservation of energy), the chemical researches of Liebig, and the microscopic investigations of Schwann (who showed the cell to be the unit of animal as well as of plant organisms) and of Schleiden (who rejected vitalism) had no patience with the romantic fancies of idealists, and their rejection of the reality of matter. Moreover, advances made in the technical arts, and the resulting improvements in industrial and economic conditions, helped to encourage a special interest in things material. So contact was renewed with the materialism of the preceding centuries. Moleschott (1822–1893) described the whole cycle of life in terms of matter and energy. "No sulphur, no thought." Vogt (1817–1895) added to this dictum the one of Cabanis, that the brain secretes thought as the liver secretes bile. Büchner (1824–1899) was probably the most important of this group of thinkers. His book *Force and Matter* served for a long time as the armoury of materialism. He identified all force with motion, and regarded everything as produced by matter and motion. But, though he distinguished between matter and motion, he insisted that they are inseparable. Rejecting vitalism, he regarded life as generated spontaneously out of matter under certain conditions, and that mental process is only "a radiation through the cells of the grey substance of the brain of a motion set up by external stimuli." Czolbe (1819–1873) condemned everything super-sensible as "transcendental nonsense." But he did not think that Büchner's "force and matter" would explain everything. It was necessary to assume organic forces, mental elements, etc., as well as material atoms and motion. And he regarded the natural system as an harmonious and purposive whole. It is worth noting that all these materialist scientists and philosophers were filled with enthusiasm for humanity and human progress.

Positivism and Evolutionism. The whole trend of modern science was away from supernaturalism, and even those who were not satisfied with the philosophy of materialism had recourse to a philosophy which refrained from supernaturalism, and conceived the world as a naturalistic system of law and order. This usually entailed moderation in metaphysical speculation or a certain amount of agnosticism. Comte, Mill and Spencer are the chief representatives of this movement, which was influenced partly by the empiricism of Locke and partly by the critical philosophy of Kant.

Comte (1798–1857) was the founder of what is known as Positivism. Like Kant he maintained that human knowledge is limited to phenomena, things-in-themselves being beyond our ken. It is therefore best for men to concentrate their efforts on the advancement of scientific knowledge and the amelioration of social conditions. Philosophers should relinquish the quest of what is unknowable (the Absolute, etc.), and take up the task of co-ordinating and systematizing the methods and results of the sciences. And religious devotion should be diverted from the fruitless service of an unknown God to the service of Humanity. In this way religion, instead of being a source of sectarianism and mutual

discord, will become a means of human solidarity. Such Catholicism without supernaturalism could only make very slow progress, as most people hanker after the supernatural. Mill (1806–1873) was also a positivist, though he was influenced by Locke rather than by Kant. His logic, his utilitarian ethics and his political economy were all worked out on positivist or empirical lines.

Spencer (1820–1903) likewise confined human knowledge to phenomena, but admitted an " unknown " ground of the phenomenal world. His fame rests mainly on his ambitious attempt to bring all things into one evolutionary scheme. The world, according to Spencer, began as an homogeneous something which may be called force or matter and motion, but whose inner nature is unknown. By its gradual differentiation there evolved first the heavenly bodies (more or less according to the nebular hypothesis of Laplace). The organic world then evolved out of the inorganic (on the lines of Lamarckian and Darwinian biology). Differentiation of structure and function in living bodies followed in due course, also division of labour in industry, and so forth. The total amount of energy in the universe remains always the same, it is only distributed variously. The evolutionary process was conceived by Spencer and others on mechanistic lines. Bergson's " creative evolution " and Lloyd Morgan's " emergent evolution " were intended to correct this mechanistic tendency, and to vindicate the spontaneity and originality of cosmic processes.

Nineteenth Century Science

Astronomy continued its advance along the lines followed in the preceding century, but with the assistance of new and powerful auxiliaries in photography and spectroscopy. Refinements in lunar and planetary theory led to the discovery of the planet Neptune in 1846. The existence and the position of the new planet had been inferred independently by Adams and Leverrier from a mathematical analysis of the irregularities observed in the movement of Uranus, and so afforded a striking confirmation of the principles of Newtonian astronomy. In observational astronomy Bessel's detection of stellar parallax, in 1838, was an event of great significance. The failure to observe parallax (that is, a change in the apparent position of fixed stars corresponding to changes in the position of the earth in its orbit) had been one of the chief objections to the heliocentric theory of Aristarchus and Copernicus. In the eighteenth century Bradley sought parallax, but only observed the aberration of light (which results from the observer's motion athwart the paths along which stellar rays reach him). Bessel's observation of parallax was a direct confirmation of the heliocentric theory. The nineteenth century also witnessed a much more accurate determination of the sun's distance from the earth than had been possible before. But the most remarkable novelty was the spectroscopic discovery of the chemical composition of the celestial bodies. The method used was briefly as follows. Each chemical element, when incandescent, emits a light which resolves by dispersion into a characteristic spectrum ; and whenever this spectrum is detected in the light from a star, the presence of this element may be

reasonably inferred. Moreover, the displacement of the spectral lines of a star proves that the star is in motion relatively to the observer. In this kind of way the combination of photography with spectroscopy has yielded much information about the velocities, temperatures, and evolutionary stages of stars; and in some cases even their distances and masses can be inferred.

In the realm of pure mathematics the discovery of most general interest was that of non-Euclidean geometry. The principal workers in this field were Gauss, Bolyai, Lobatchevsky, and Riemann. It was shown that Euclid's axioms of geometry were not the only possible ones, that sets of axioms can be formulated arbitrarily, and self-consistent geometries based on them; also that the space assumed in Euclidean geometry is only a special case of a more general type. Non-Euclidean geometries first assumed physical significance when it was found that the space-time continuum required by Einstein's theory of gravitation is non-Euclidean.

In physics Rumford's ideas about heat were developed by Joule, who established the equivalence between the heat produced and the work or chemical energy expended in producing it. Helmholtz extended the principle of the mutual convertibility and conservation of heat and energy to the whole realm of nature, and in this form it became known as the First Law of Thermodynamics. Meanwhile Carnot had discovered that the working of a heat-engine involves the transfer of heat from a hot source to a colder sink. The ideas of Carnot had very important results. In the first place they led Lord Kelvin to the fruitful conception of an absolute scale of temperature. In the second place, in conjunction with Joule's discovery, they led Clausius and Lord Kelvin to the formulation of the Second Law of Thermodynamics, namely, that heat cannot of itself pass from a colder to a hotter body. As every transfer of heat from a hotter to a colder body tends to equalize the temperature of the universe, it was inferred that the universe is tending to a state of uniform temperature, in which no heat will be available for work. Since this tendency is irreversible, it has been described by Eddington as the only physical criterion for distinguishing the future from the past.

In the study of light, the nineteenth century opened with experiments by Young and Fresnel which favoured the undulatory theory formulated by Huygens. Fresnel, however, found it necessary to assume that light-waves are transverse, not longitudinal. This, in turn, involved the attribution of incompatible properties to the æther. But the work of Oersted, Ampère, Neumann, and Faraday in connection with electromagnetism was preparing the way for Maxwell's electromagnetic theory of light. The experimental results obtained by these physicists convinced Maxwell that electromagnetic charges do not act across empty space, but through a medium; and he succeeded in formulating equations expressing the fundamental electromagnetic laws in terms of the electrical and magnetic properties of any given medium. For insulating media (including most transparent media) these equations had a form characteristic of transverse wave-motion. Such electromagnetic waves were unknown then, but the equations showed that if they existed they would have a velocity nearly equal to that of light, would be transverse, and subject to reflection, refraction, and double refraction—just like light.

Maxwell accordingly suggested that light-waves may be electromagnetic waves of comparatively short wave-length. In course of time Hertz showed experimentally that such electromagnetic waves exist, and that they behave like light-waves. The unification of the two kinds of waves and of their two media was a great simplification, and prepared the way for a still greater simplification, namely, Einstein's provisional unification of the phenomena of the electromagnetic and the gravitational fields as manifestations of the same structure of space. The upholders of the older mechanistic ideas are not quite reconciled to these newer views. The unitary electric charges which have to be assumed in connection with Maxwell's electromagnetic fields are regarded by them as corpuscles rather than as wave-groups, and as favouring a quasi-Newtonian hypothesis of light as consisting of corpuscles having associated wave-trains.

The discoveries of Galvani and Volta in current electricity were fully developed in the nineteenth century. The magnetic property of the current was discovered by Oersted in 1820, and its mathematical laws were investigated by Ampère, Faraday, Neumann, and Maxwell. Radiotelegraphy and the dynamo were the practical fruits of these researches. The chief quantitative laws of the electric circuit were determined by Ohm, Joule, and Weber. What is specially interesting, however, is the important rôle which electromagnetic theory played, and is still playing, outside its special domain. This has already been noted in connection with the theories of light described above. Something similar will be observed in connection with chemistry. For it was soon discovered that electric current has chemical properties which help to analyse chemical compounds into their elements. In this way Davy discovered a number of new metals. Faraday ascertained the quantitative laws governing electrolytic decomposition. He also suggested a theory of electrolysis, which was developed by Clausius and Arrhenius, to the effect that a certain percentage of the molecules of the dissolved salt are dissociated, by the mere process of solution, into oppositely charged particles which the subsequent application of an electric field impels in opposite directions. At the electrodes they lose their charges and so maintain the flow of current.

Chemistry at the beginning of the nineteenth century was mainly concerned with the exploitation of the atomic theory in the service of the special problems of chemical science. A first attempt in this direction had already been made in 1789 by W. Higgins, but it made no impression. A real advance was first made by Dalton (1766–1844) early in the nineteenth century. He held that each kind of elementary substance consists of a special kind of atoms, that each kind of atom has a characteristic weight, and that chemical combination takes place always between simple numbers of atoms. Assuming that in a combination of two elements there is one atom of each for every atom of the other, the relative combining proportions by weight should give the relative weights of the two kinds of atoms. Next, taking the atomic weight of hydrogen as the unit, he drew up a table of the atomic weights of the elements known in his day. His assumption was unwarranted, but his main theory served as a basis for the first quantitative laws formulated about that time—the laws of definite, multiple, and reciprocal proportions. In 1809 Gay-Lussac

showed that gases reacted with each other in simple proportion by volume, and in 1811 Avogadro distinguished between molecules (that is, clusters of atoms) and (single) atoms, and postulated the existence of molecules in elementary gases. On combination one molecule might break up into two or more atoms. From all this it was deduced that the density of a gas is proportional to the weight of its molecules. Here was a means of surmounting some of Dalton's difficulties. But this line of research was not pursued further until Cannizzaro took it up again in 1858. In the interval Berzelius was busy determining atomic weights. But atomic weights were neglected in favour of the "equivalents" introduced by Wollaston in 1814, especially when Faraday discovered the Law of Electro-Chemical Equivalents in 1834. The use of a variety of chemical units caused much confusion until Cannizzaro helped to introduce some uniformity.

One of the most notable triumphs in nineteenth-century chemistry was achieved in 1828, when Wohler prepared for the first time an organic substance from inorganic materials. This, coupled with Berzelius' discovery, in 1814, that organic substances obey the ordinary laws of chemical combination, helped to banish the mystifying "vital force" which had been assumed to produce organic substances from carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, and phosphorus. Another notable achievement of nineteenth-century chemistry was Mendeléeff's discovery of the Periodic Table of Elements. Developing the suggestions of other chemists (notably L. Meyer and Newlands) Mendeléeff showed that the elements, when arranged in the order of their atomic weights, fall into series showing a periodicity of properties. By means of this periodic table he predicted the atomic weights and physical properties of various unknown elements which were subsequently discovered. Subsequent research by Moseley showed that the periodic table could be much improved by substituting an arrangement according to atomic numbers instead of atomic weights. Yet another noteworthy feature of the period is the tendency, started by Prout, to regard atoms of hydrogen as the ultimate constituents of all other kinds of atoms. This tendency to seek a common origin for all the different kinds of atoms, coupled with other influences, culminated subsequently in the conception that all kinds of atoms are composed of protons and electrons. For all practical purposes, of course, the differences between the elements retain their significance. And one simple way of indicating the progress of chemistry during the nineteenth century is to point out that whereas only some thirty elements were known at the beginning of the century, nearly eighty were known at the end of it.

Great as the scientific advances of the nineteenth century were in other directions, its most characteristic advance was in the realm of biology. It was essentially the age of evolution.

But before turning to the subject of evolution, a brief account must be given of certain other aspects of nineteenth-century biology, with special reference to the work of Pasteur on microbes or bacteria. The existence of minute rod-like organisms was first discovered by Leeuwenhoek about 1683. But the subject received little attention until the nineteenth century, when Schwann proved experimentally that putrefaction and

alcoholic fermentation are the work of minute living organisms. In 1857 Pasteur took up the problem. He devoted himself to the closer study of these microscopic organisms, and founded the science of bacteriology. He showed that lactic, ammoniacal and other forms of fermentation also depend on bacteria. In 1873 he turned his attention to the study of contagion, thinking that it may be due to infection by specific germs. He showed in course of time that the silk-worm disease, anthrax or splenic fever in sheep and other animals, and chicken cholera are each the effect of the activity of a specific kind of germ. Later on the specific microbes of yet other diseases were discovered. One practical result of Pasteur's discoveries was the introduction by Lister of antiseptic surgery in 1887. This, coupled with the previous discovery of anæsthetics by Davy and others, made surgical operations much safer than they used to be. Moreover, following the example of Jenner's method of vaccination, Pasteur prepared various attenuated toxins, inoculation with which served to prevent, or to cure, such diseases as anthrax and hydrophobia, or rabies. Pasteur's work thus greatly advanced medical and surgical art as well as biological science. It also had important consequences in the field of practical agriculture. These biological discoveries were of the utmost practical importance, yet they were overshadowed by a mere theory—the Theory of Evolution. To this we must now turn.

In a vague kind of way the idea of evolution was an old idea, and familiar to many people by the end of the eighteenth century. But the nineteenth century witnessed the steady accumulation of vast masses of scientific evidence, which converted the idea of evolution from a mere speculation into a well-defined and well-supported scientific theory. Much of the evidence was actually prepared by scientists who did not accept the idea of evolution ; but this only gave additional value to their contributions. The main facts may be briefly outlined as follows. Cuvier laid the foundations of the science of palæontology by his studies of extinct vertebrates. Beginning with the examination of all known kinds of elephants, recent and fossil, he passed on to the study of all the extinct kinds of vertebrates accessible to him, and in 1821 published a very full and well-illustrated account of nearly a hundred of them. These descriptions suggested to some people theories of descent, say, of the modern horse from the extinct palæothere. But Cuvier cautiously asked for evidence of the existence of intermediate stages, and they were not known then, though they were discovered subsequently. In any case Cuvier's work made it possible to trace, however imperfectly, the descent of some modern ungulates (hoofed animals). Side by side with palæontology there arose the science of comparative embryology, which was founded by Baer. Starting from Pander's full account of the early stages in the development of a chick, Baer carried the work much further, and eventually formulated the principle that the development of an animal is a process of differentiation from the homogeneous to the heterogeneous. He compared it with Laplace's account of the development of the solar system from the nebula. In 1828 Baer appears to have inclined to the belief that the embryological evidence seemed to point to a common origin of the main types of animal life. About a year or two after Baer's

death Schleiden and Schwann published their cell theory, that is, that all plants and animals are composed of cells. It was shown that the individual cells of a complex organism are generally alive, and sometimes remain alive after separation from the main body. In 1843 Barry showed that certain protozoa are single cells, which are capable not only of motion but also of self-support. In due course all multicellular organisms, their tissues, the fission of these tissues, etc., were all traced to the protozoa. The cell theory thus exercised a great unifying influence, even linking up to some extent plants with animals. Lyell's *Principles of Geology* (1830) refuted the view that sudden catastrophes had repeatedly interrupted the succession of living things on the face of the earth. In 1845 Darwin made evolutionary suggestions in the new edition of his *Journal*. And a few years later Hofmeister gave a well-authenticated example of evolutionary descent in his accounts of flowering plants and higher cryptogams (plants which are flowerless or in which fructification is concealed). In 1859 Darwin published his *Origin of Species*, setting out the main lines of evidence on which he based his theory of the evolution of species by natural selection. It had taken him twenty years or more to collect the data and to make the experiments in support of the theory which first gave to the biological sciences a principle of synthesis comparable, to some extent, with Newton's law of gravitation in the realm of the physical sciences.

Some of the chief ways in which Darwin's theory helped to unify and explain various biological phenomena may be indicated briefly as follows. (1) *Affinity*. From the sixteenth century onwards biologists felt that there were affinities between certain plants, and attempted to classify them according to their affinities, but could give no intelligible account of the nature of affinity. Darwin showed " that community of descent is the hidden bond which naturalists have been unconsciously seeking," " that the characters which naturalists consider as showing true affinity between any two or more species, are those which have been inherited from a common parent, all true classification being genealogical," the natural system of classes being founded on " descent with modification." The influence of Darwinism on botanical and zoological classifications has, of course, been enormous. (2) *Survivals*. The presence in embryo birds and mammals of such things as a series of paired clefts along the side of the neck, along which are arranged vessels as in gill-breathing vertebrates, can only be explained on the assumption that the ancestors of birds and mammals breathed by gills. Similarly with other survivals. (3) *Homologous structure*. Such limbs as the pectoral fin of the fish, the paddle of the whale, the wings of birds and bats, and the hand and arm of man perform such diverse actions as swimming, flying, grasping, yet they all show a common plan. And this is only intelligible on the assumption that the common plan of the fore-limbs of the different vertebrates has been inherited from a common ancestor. (4) *Fossil remains*. The vast collections of fossil remains gathered by palæontologists can be interpreted only in the light of Darwinism. In some cases, notably that of the horse, the series of stages in their evolution has been so fully worked out that even Cuvier would most probably have changed his views on the immutability of species. (5) *Naturalism*. By a careful selection of suitable cases, various

naturalists had tried to base a natural theology on the evidence of adaptation in nature. The existence of predatory animals and noxious insects, etc., was either ignored or attributed to the devil. The doctrine of natural selection and the survival of the fittest helped to put an end to such supernaturalist speculations in biology, and thus brought the biological sciences within the naturalistic scheme of the physical sciences.

Largely through the influences of evolutionary biology, the same kind of naturalistic attitude has been introduced into such human and social sciences as psychology, anthropology, sociology, and economics. Religion itself is now studied on comparative and evolutionary lines.

ANTAGONISM BETWEEN SCIENCE, PHILOSOPHY AND THEOLOGY IN THE NINETEENTH CENTURY

Philosophically the significance of Darwinism lay in the fact that it helped to encourage the naturalistic or positivist tendencies of the age. For the conception of a struggle for existence and the survival of the fittest by natural selection seemed to do away with the need of employing the ideas of purpose and design in order to explain biological phenomena. It appeared to offer a purely mechanistic explanation in a region which was wont to be regarded as a stronghold of idealistic philosophers and defenders of the faith. Men of science, or at least many of them, not unnaturally bore a grudge against the more or less intolerant Churches and the philosophers who usually defended them. The middle decades of the nineteenth century witnessed remarkably strained relations between science, on the one hand, and philosophy and theology, on the other. This friction may have contributed to some extent to the exaggerated ideas which some men of science entertained about the possibility of explaining everything by means of matter and energy, or about the extent to which people could practise the art of self-denial in refraining from cosmic speculation and religious faith. Their hostility to Church dogmas and to idealistic philosophies probably did some good. It helped to encourage and intensify interest in man's earthly concerns, and in practical endeavours for the amelioration of the conditions under which the masses lived and toiled. It also helped the more intelligent members of the Churches to form more enlightened views of the world, and to adopt a more tolerant attitude towards those who belonged to other Churches or to none. In this work of general enlightenment philosophers took part, of course. For some of the philosophers were just as empirically minded, and as positivist or agnostic as the most combative men of science. But a very large percentage of philosophers were sufficiently identified with the philosophic defence of Church dogmas to rouse the antipathy of the fighting men of science. These strained relations between science, on the one hand, and philosophy and theology, on the other, may seem very strange in view of the next swing of the pendulum (which is dealt with in the Article on *Recent and Contemporary Philosophy*). But the mutual criticism during the period of hostility probably had no little share in bringing about that better mutual understanding which is the basis of those friendlier relations between them which now exist.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

Introductions to Philosophy :

W. E. HOCKING : *Types of Philosophy* (New York. 1930)
O. KÜLPE : *Introduction to Philosophy* (New York. 1901, etc.)
W. WINDELBAND : *Introduction to Philosophy* (London. 1923)

Histories of Philosophy :

A. K. ROGERS : *Student's History of Philosophy* (New York. 1918)
W. WINDELBAND : *History of Philosophy* (New York. 1919)
J. E. ERDMANN : *History of Philosophy* ; 3 vols. (London. 1892–1897)
J. BURNET : *Greek Philosophy* (London. 1920)
E. ZELLER : *Outlines of Greek Philosophy* (London. 1920)
H. HÖFFDING : *History of Modern Philosophy* ; 2 vols. (London. 1900)

Histories of Science :

W. C. DAMPIER-WHETHAM : *A History of Science* (Cambridge. 1930)
W. T. SEDGWICK and H. W. TYLER : *A Short History of Science* (New York. 1928)
A. N. WHITEHEAD : *Science and the Modern World* (Cambridge and New York. 1926, etc.)

THE IDEA OF GOD: AN INTRODUCTION TO THE PHILOSOPHY OF RELIGION

By

W. R. MATTHEWS

SYNOPSIS

The nature and aim of the philosophy of religion — Systematic thought on religion in ancient and modern times — In some sense, philosophy of religion a modern study — The relation of the philosophy of religion to general philosophy and its point of contact with theology — The chief problems to be discussed: (*a*) the nature of religion; (*b*) the ideas of God and the supernatural; (*c*) the real existence of God; (*d*) the theistic view of the universe and special problems arising from it, *e.g.* evil, creation, and revelation.

I The nature of religion a philosophical question which cannot be answered by psychology or sociology alone — Theories of religion: (*a*) Intellectualist: the merits and defects of this theory. (*b*) Moralist: merits and defects. (*c*) Romantic: merits and defects. Views of Schleiermacher and Otto — Positive statement of nature of religion — the tendencies of thought, will and emotion which are to be discerned in it. The basis of religious development. The relation of religion to other forms of spiritual life — "Anthropomorphism" in religion: higher and lower types — Reason and feeling in religion.

II The causes of the abandonment of all polytheistic forms of belief in the highest religion — Monotheism the only conception of the Divine which is compatible with the demands of reason and conscience — "Proofs" of the existence of God: their nature and value — The modern approach to the problem of "proof" — The three "rational" arguments — The Ontological argument stated — The vacillations of philosophy on the validity of this argument — The permanent value of the argument — The Cosmological argument stated — Criticisms and objections — The modern way of presenting the argument — The philosophy of nature and of history — The postulate of a transcendent Being required — The Teleological argument stated — The theory of evolution and its consequences for teleology — The Monotheistic hypothesis supported by "emergent" evolution — The Moral argument — Kant's influence

in modern thought — Moral development and absolute obligation — The implications of the moral consciousness — The ultimate Good — The Beautiful : its relation with the Monotheistic creed — Cumulative character of argument for Theism — The Agnostic theory untenable as theory and contradictory as a practical attitude.

III " Religion without God " in recent thought — Positivism : its defects — " Religion of Evolution " — The imperfection of any theory of religion which takes evolution as ultimate — Professor Alexander and Mr. H. G. Wells criticized — The religion of evolution requires a doubtful assumption.

IV Problems of the Divine Nature — God and the Absolute — Divine Personality — The religious needs which are met by the belief — Reasons for affirming its truth — The *via eminentiæ* — The conception of Perfect Personality — Divergent views on the nature of Personality in God — Creation — The difference between Theism and Pantheism : Emanation and Creation — Immanence and Transcendence — Degrees of immanence — Meaning of transcendence — Divergent views in recent religious thought on the subject of transcendence — The Divine Attributes : the Holiness of God : Love in God — Omnipotence : different conceptions of the meaning of this attribute — The Problem of Evil : the kinds of evil — The theory that all evil is defect of being : that it is the element of " negativity " in progress — " The best possible world " — The Problem of Good — Suffering as an element in the Divine experience : different views on this subject discussed and a possible solution suggested.

V Immortality and the Life to come — Primitive and civilized conceptions of the future life — The religious aspect of belief in immortality — The problem of mind and body — Inherent and conditional immortality contrasted — The " conservation of values " — The metaphysical and moral " proofs " of immortality — The general nature of the future life : difficulty of attaining definite conceptions — The possibility of endless progress — Revelation — The primary source of revelation and the sacred writings of the higher religions — The necessity of the conception of revelation for living religion — Reason and Revelation — The evidence for revelation — The mediæval and modern views compared — Doctrine, Dogma and Revelation.

THE IDEA OF GOD: AN INTRODUCTION TO THE PHILOSOPHY OF RELIGION

The simplest and most comprehensive definition of the philosophy of religion is that it is systematic thought about religion. Plainly we may have a great deal of religion, and religion of a high order, without any conscious and critical reflection upon it. Here as elsewhere we live first and reflect, if at all, afterwards. Men had lived together in society for many generations before they began to ask what social life really is and what kind of society would be the best. In the same way, men had acted and felt as religious beings long before the question, What is religion and why do we worship? had presented itself to their minds. But the awakening of the divine curiosity which is the motive of philosophy led almost at once to the consideration of religion. The gods were among the first subjects of critical enquiry in the early days of Greek speculation; and in the great period of ancient thought, that which embraces Socrates, Plato and Aristotle, ideas of the nature of the Divine were enunciated which have not ceased from that day until now profoundly to influence human life.

But in the strict sense the philosophy of religion may be described as a modern study. The wide extension of our knowledge of the history of the human race and the success of comparative and evolutionary studies of human beliefs and institutions have enabled us to see that religion is, in some sense, a whole. In spite of the very obvious differences which distinguished the actual religions of mankind from one another, including the utmost diversity of value, religion is something which is larger than any particular religion and raises problems which are prior to any which arise from the doctrines of any religious creed.

It need scarcely be said that the philosophy of religion is a part of general philosophy. The philosopher sets before himself the aim of interpreting the whole of experience; and therefore he can scarcely decline the task of giving some account of that aspect of man's experience which we call religion. The subject, however, is so vast and the questions raised so fundamental that there is a legitimate place for the special study of the philosophy of religion, just as there is a need for a special study of the philosophy of morals.

It may be said that if the philosophy of religion means thinking about religion it is the same as theology. This is only partly true. Theology is certainly the application of reason and reflection to religious beliefs and the attempt to state them in a systematic manner; and in this sense theology and the philosophy of religion are at one; but theology generally means the doctrinal statement of some specific religion and hence is usually concerned with the intrepretation of some real or supposed revelation. The philosophy of religion does not begin with any authoritative statement of belief or standard of religious truth; it is, in fact, part of its

duty to consider critically the idea of revelation. Thus it may be said that the philosophy of religion is a necessary prelude to theology. Perhaps one of the weaknesses of modern English and American theology is that it has often been discussed without reference to philosophy.

This distinction which we have suggested between theology and the philosophy of religion is not the same as the distinction which has often been drawn between "natural" and "revealed" religion. By many of the Scholastic theologians of the Middle Ages, above all by Thomas Aquinas, it was held that some religious truths are attainable by the unaided exercise of the human reason, while others require the disclosure of supernatural revelation before they can be known. A similar view was common in England in the eighteenth century. But we do not mean to endorse this idea when we differentiate between the philosophy of religion and theology. Our differentiation depends on method and starting-point, and could be accepted by anyone who came to the conclusion that all religion was in fact revealed.

We can now state the chief problems with which the philosophy of religion must grapple. First in logical order comes the question of the nature of religion. But this inevitably leads on to a series of further problems. We can scarcely avoid raising the question of the value of religion as an attitude of mind. This again suggests the problem of the validity of some beliefs which are associated with much, if not with the whole of religion; the ideas of God and of the supernatural in particular present themselves for critical enquiry. The question, Has religion any value? is not the same as, Does God exist? though they are closely related. It is possible to take the view, as indeed is done by some distinguished contemporary writers, that belief in God and the supernatural is not justified, but that religion is nevertheless an essential ingredient of worthy human life. The problem of the existence of God introduces us to the lines of thought which have been found satisfactory in the past by great thinkers as demonstrating His being, and requires us to estimate the present position of the arguments in the light of modern science and philosophy. Finally, there is a group of problems, each in itself of the greatest importance and complexity, which arise out of the religious or theistic view of the world: the problem of evil, the belief in immortality and the possibility and evidence of revelation. Perhaps we should add, as the final topic with which a philosophy of religion should deal, the nature of worship and its relation with man's highest good. Obviously these subjects are so vast, and the amount of reflection upon them both ancient and modern has been so extensive, that nothing but the barest sketch can be attempted here.

I

The problem of the nature of religion is considered from their special points of view by psychology, anthropology and sociology, and it has sometimes been held that the results of these sciences are a sufficient answer to the question, What is religion? This, however, is not the case. We should need, at any rate, to co-ordinate and combine the verdicts of these sciences before we could regard our problem as solved. But

further, there is a problem about religion which does not fall within the province of any positive science. When we ask, What is religion? we most commonly have in mind something beyond the question, what religion has been, what beliefs it has comprised, what function it has fulfilled in social development: we have in view the problem of its significance and its future. We desire to know what place it holds in the spiritual life of man. In Aristotle's phrase, we are concerned with the real nature which cannot be separated from its ideal development, its *telos*. The situation may be illustrated again by a comparison with ethics. Psychology, anthropology and sociology have much to say about man's moral ideas and their evolution; but at the end of their investigations we can still ask, But what *is* the good life, the life which is really good, and how is it distinguished from all other kinds of life?

Philosophical theories of the nature of religion may be conveniently classified according to the element which they take to be fundamental; and hence we obtain three divisions, corresponding to the three aspects of man's mental life, thought, will and feeling.

Intellectualist theories of religion find the essential element in it to be a kind of knowing: they regard every religion as, in essence, a view of the universe. Thus religion is closely akin to philosophy. Hegel, who held that philosophy was the supreme form of the Spirit, considered that religion was a permanent and independent activity of spirit, next in dignity and truth to philosophy. His modern Italian follower, Croce, however, holds that in this the great German thinker was mistaken, and believes that all religion is an imperfect philosophy, expressing a view of the world in images which are appropriate to art and not in concepts which are the true instruments of philosophy. In his opinion, therefore, religion is only a transient appearance and not a permanent and necessary form of the life of spirit. There is, of course, an element of truth in this view. Most religion is certainly associated with some belief or creed which claims to be knowledge about reality. But research does not support the contention that belief is the sole necessary ingredient of religion, for it would be easy to point to religious persons, both savage and civilized, in whom conscious belief or acceptance of creed is apparently absent. But the chief objection against the intellectualist theory is that religion plainly includes much more than belief about God or gods. It is an attitude of mind which, in most cases, embraces the impulse to worship and the feeling of a need for redemption.

The moralist theory of religion regards religion as primarily "practical" and concerned with the direction of the will. Most modern representatives of this view owe some kind of allegiance to Kant, who was the first to formulate the moral theory in a definite manner. According to his famous formula religion consists in "regarding all our duties as divine commands." The proposal, however, to take religion as equivalent to morality has great difficulties. Though we must admit that every religion has some effect on conduct and that, in the higher religions, this connexion with ethics is frequently very close, there seems to be a profound difference between the merely moral attitude of mind and that of religion. We might dwell once more upon the place of worship and redemption in religious life, but it is perhaps more striking to consider the question from

the standpoint of conduct. The specifically moral state of mind is a reliance upon the ability of the will to respond to the appeal of duty or of the good, an attitude well summed up by Kant's phrase, " I ought, therefore, I can." In those religions which make explicit demands for righteousness, however, the attitude of the believer is quite different. The idea of " grace " here takes the place of the idea of the power of the human will. To be righteous I must have help from a " power not myself." The formula of religion is rather, " I ought, therefore God can."

What has often been called the " romantic " view of religion stands in sharp contrast with both the intellectual and the moral, since it regards " feeling " as the basis of religion and allows great value to the imagination (as distinct from " fancy ") which other views had treated as a dangerous ally. The leader of this school of thought has been Schleiermacher, whose two books, the *Addresses to the Cultured Despisers of Religion* and the *Christian Faith*, have exercised a profound influence on modern theology. According to Schleiermacher, religion has, as such, no necessary connexion with either intellectual insight or moral conduct, but is a kind of feeling which in his first book he described as a " sense and feeling for the infinite," and later by the formula " a feeling of absolute dependence." The distinguished living theologian Professor Rudolph Otto, in his well-known work the *Idea of the Holy*, has developed a theory which owes much of its inspiration to Schleiermacher but differs in essential points. According to Otto the basis of religion is a kind of feeling, but one of a specific type which cannot be described as one of dependence simply. For this specific religious feeling Otto has coined the word " the numinous feeling." It is a kind of fear, but distinguished from mere terror. In its lowest form we may describe it by such names as " the weird," " the uncanny," while in its highest manifestations it becomes awe and reverence. The core of this specifically religious emotion and the source of its difference from every kind of mere terror or mere consciousness of our dependence, is the feeling of " creatureliness," it is the reaction of the created to the presence of the Creator. Included within this numinous feeling is the sense of mystery which is never absent from genuine religion. The Divine is, in man's consciousness, *Mysterium tremendum et fascinans*, the Mystery which causes him to shudder and yet draws him towards itself.

It is clear that each of the theories which we have briefly stated has some basis of fact, and also that each by itself gives too narrow an interpretation of the nature of religion. Even though we may doubt the statement that some belief or creed is a universal characteristic of religion, it is doubtless true that religion does tend to formulate doctrines and that the higher religions are definitely committed to some general beliefs about the nature of Reality. We have only to think of the three universal religions, Christianity, Buddhism, and Mohammedanism, and of their difference from one another, to be convinced that there is an intellectual element in any developed religion. Nor does it need proving that every type of religion affects conduct, while the religions of civilized men are all " ways of life," and associated with a more or less definite conception of the meaning of the good life for man. But any satisfactory account of religion must conceive it as embracing the whole human personality and

show how it engages the intellect, will and emotional nature when it is present in any complete way.

A positive answer to the question, What is religion? within our present limits must necessarily be somewhat dogmatic, and I must be content to state briefly a view which I have defended at some length elsewhere.[1] All the activities of man which can be described as "spiritual," the search for truth in science and philosophy, the appreciation and creation of beauty in art, the struggle for the good life in morality, appear to presuppose an essential condition. Throughout man feels, or "intuits," himself as in the presence of an Other: he is in relation with an object. Of course this "subject-object" relation is fundamental in every kind of experience, in that which is not, in our sense, "spiritual" as well as in the higher activities of mind. But in our spiritual activities there is the added feeling or intuition that the Other is in some way responsive to us. The "Other" with which we are in relation is not wholly alien to our minds, since we succeed in knowing it progressively but, so far as we can see, without limit. The "Other" is not wholly impervious to our judgments of value and ideals, for it is through action and reaction between the self and the "Other" that these value judgments have arisen; and the world is certainly not entirely resistant to our ideals. In the experience of natural beauty, which is at the root of all art, we seem to have in a very direct way a feeling that the "Other" is responding to us.

Religion, it may be held, is the complete development of this intuition of "responsiveness," which is, in some form, implicit in all our spiritual activities. Man finds, or believes that he finds, in the Other the response to his needs; not some of his needs only, as, for example, the need for truth, but to the whole body of his permanent aspirations. This would account for the fact of the development of religion, from a childlike and restricted state, that of "primitive credulity," to the highest levels of spiritual life. For man himself evolves, and as he evolves he becomes conscious of his own true nature and of needs which before had been hidden from him. The savage asks from his gods, long life, children, prosperity and the death of his enemies. The enlightened Christian finds in God the source of righteousness and the ground of truth. Thus religion from the earliest to the highest forms is a search for the satisfaction of human needs in the Other. But we shall totally misunderstand the nature of the situation if we think of the human spirit as developing by itself in complete independence of the Other. There is no such thing as the human self in isolation, there is no ego without the Other. Thus the development of religion is not only the progressive consciousness on the part of man of his own nature and needs, it is, at the same time, the progressive disclosure of the nature of the Other. Religion is both discovery and revelation.

We can now better understand a characteristic feature of religion which has often been used against it as a reproach—its "anthropomorphism." It is true that religion has always interpreted the Divine in terms of human life and experience. But the reproach is not justified when made in general terms, for clearly all human thought must be human, and if to be human

[1] *God in Christian Thought and Experience*, Chap. I.

is to be *ipso facto* wrong, then all our knowledge is false. Much religion has been justly accused of anthropomorphism in a more restricted sense, most frequently by such religious reformers as the Hebrew Prophets and Plato; but the burden of their complaint has been that men have interpreted the Divine in terms of their own lower nature, they have thought of God as "even such an one as themselves." It is important to distinguish between the kind of anthropomorphism which is the mark of a primitive or degenerate type of religion and that which is inevitable and right. The development of religion to a state above that of superstition depends upon the passing from the lower anthropomorphism to the higher.

The interpretation which we have suggested of the nature of religion will permit us to attribute a value to two modern views which, at first sight, seem contradictory of one another. As we have seen, Schleiermacher considered that a "feeling of dependence" was the essence of religion; but on the other hand, many modern authorities have held that the central element was not a feeling but a value judgment. Professor Höffding, for example, would describe religion as the affirmation that values are conserved. We are well aware that Christian conceptions of God have combined both these elements, holding that He is the ultimate Cause of all things and also the highest Value or Good. In all religion we may, I think, discover these two elements, though of course they take different forms in the varied theologies of the world. There is always the recognition of a Reality upon which I am dependent, and at the same time the acknowledgment that this same Reality is the source of the Good, so that my "salvation" depends upon my achieving some satisfactory relation with it. The fact that religion is concerned with value makes it impossible to adopt the formula "a feeling of dependence" without qualification, for the pursuit of values, the attempt to realise some good, is without meaning unless it implies the active willing of the human agent. Thus all religious experience involves the idea of a possible co-operation with the Divine will: it is not only dependence upon God but seeking to do the will of God. We must confess, therefore, that there is a paradox within religion which we cannot completely resolve. It appears when we try to think out any of the conceptions which are prominent in every civilized religion, *e.g.* grace and freedom, God and the world, revelation and discovery. But this is no proof that religion is illusory, since all the great and permanent activities of the human spirit lead us in the end, when we try to think them out, to mystery.

We have seen that it is possible to have a religious consciousness which is not associated with any definite and explicit belief, though the religious attitude will always be found to imply some belief. The intellectual element may, so to speak, be held in solution. But we have also observed that religion, being concerned with the whole personality, is normally associated with some intellectual formulation. The ideas of religion, and particularly the idea of God, are that part of religion with which philosophy can most directly deal, and the value of religion must depend, to a large extent if not wholly, on the validity of the ideas which are its intellectual expression. We must now turn to consider the idea of God.

II

The idea of the Divine is not, of course, necessarily the same as the idea of one God. Monotheism is a comparatively late development in the history of religious thought. Some students of comparative religions have indeed held that man began with a primitive monotheism, and so great is our ignorance of religious beginnings that it would be unscientific to deny the possibility of this view. On the whole, however, it seems more probable that the religious beliefs of mankind were, in the first instance, a vague conception of nature as animated by " spirits "—that man's first creed was " animism." From this starting-point it is not difficult to conjecture how the belief in " gods " arose, and the passage from animism to polytheism may in fact be traced with a high degree of probability. Doubtless many historical causes helped to carry the faith of the more advanced sections of the human race beyond polytheism to monotheism; but two causes have been constantly and universally at work. Polytheism cannot survive the growth of the moral consciousness and the critical intelligence. The polytheistic conception of the world outrages the demand for coherence, which is the motive of the intellect, and the demand for the supremacy of one law of righteousness, which is the inspiration of the moral consciousness. A world directed by many gods could not satisfy the philosopher, nor could it give any basis for the fully conscious moral life. We may see these tendencies at work in the literature of the two peoples who have contributed most of what is valuable in our civilization—the Greeks and the Hebrews. In the former the advance from polytheism to monotheism was chiefly the work of the philosophers and was never completely successful in the sense that it never displaced the earlier forms of religious belief and practice from the popular mind : in the latter the work was done by the unique line of Prophets whose conception of the God of Righteousness culminates in the doctrine of the second part of Isaiah.

Monotheism may take more than one form. The words " Pantheism " and " Theism " have come into use by modern writers to denote two different conceptions of the Divine Being, both of which affirm the doctrine of one God. Those views are called " theistic " which hold that there is one God who is the Creator or Ground of all finite existence, Himself in some sense distinct from the world. Theism has usually maintained that God is personal and that He must be thought of as morally good or holy. The word " Pantheism " covers a great many doctrines of God which have sometimes very little in common with one another ; but the essence of Pantheism is the denial of any real distinction between God and the world. Thoroughgoing Pantheism asserts that the All is God and God is the All. The various ways in which pantheistic conceptions have been presented and worked out lead to the most remarkable differences of emphasis. Some pantheistic theories are hardly distinguishable in their consequences from materialism, while others form the basis of the most extreme mysticism, which dissolves the world of experience into mere illusion. It is significant that the pantheistic philosophy of Spinoza has been accused both of " atheism " and of " acosmism," of the denial of the reality of God and of the denial of the reality of the world.

Pantheism in every form is open to grave objections. It is clear that on

is to be *ipso facto* wrong, then all our knowledge is false. Much religion has been justly accused of anthropomorphism in a more restricted sense, most frequently by such religious reformers as the Hebrew Prophets and Plato ; but the burden of their complaint has been that men have interpreted the Divine in terms of their own lower nature, they have thought of God as " even such an one as themselves." It is important to distinguish between the kind of anthropomorphism which is the mark of a primitive or degenerate type of religion and that which is inevitable and right. The development of religion to a state above that of superstition depends upon the passing from the lower anthropomorphism to the higher.

The interpretation which we have suggested of the nature of religion will permit us to attribute a value to two modern views which, at first sight, seem contradictory of one another. As we have seen, Schleiermacher considered that a " feeling of dependence " was the essence of religion ; but on the other hand, many modern authorities have held that the central element was not a feeling but a value judgment. Professor Höffding, for example, would describe religion as the affirmation that values are conserved. We are well aware that Christian conceptions of God have combined both these elements, holding that He is the ultimate Cause of all things and also the highest Value or Good In all religion we may, I think, discover these two elements, though of course they take different forms in the varied theologies of the world. There is always the recognition of a Reality upon which I am dependent, and at the same time the acknowledgment that this same Reality is the source of the Good, so that my " salvation " depends upon my achieving some satisfactory relation with it. The fact that religion is concerned with value makes it impossible to adopt the formula " a feeling of dependence " without qualification, for the pursuit of values, the attempt to realise some good, is without meaning unless it implies the active willing of the human agent. Thus all religious experience involves the idea of a possible co-operation with the Divine will : it is not only dependence upon God but seeking to do the will of God. We must confess, therefore, that there is a paradox within religion which we cannot completely resolve. It appears when we try to think out any of the conceptions which are prominent in every civilized religion, *e.g.* grace and freedom, God and the world, revelation and discovery. But this is no proof that religion is illusory, since all the great and permanent activities of the human spirit lead us in the end, when we try to think them out, to mystery.

We have seen that it is possible to have a religious consciousness which is not associated with any definite and explicit belief, though the religious attitude will always be found to imply some belief. The intellectual element may, so to speak, be held in solution. But we have also observed that religion, being concerned with the whole personality, is normally associated with some intellectual formulation. The ideas of religion, and particularly the idea of God, are that part of religion with which philosophy can most directly deal, and the value of religion must depend, to a large extent if not wholly, on the validity of the ideas which are its intellectual expression. We must now turn to consider the idea of God.

II

The idea of the Divine is not, of course, necessarily the same as the idea of one God. Monotheism is a comparatively late development in the history of religious thought. Some students of comparative religions have indeed held that man began with a primitive monotheism, and so great is our ignorance of religious beginnings that it would be unscientific to deny the possibility of this view. On the whole, however, it seems more probable that the religious beliefs of mankind were, in the first instance, a vague conception of nature as animated by " spirits "—that man's first creed was " animism." From this starting-point it is not difficult to conjecture how the belief in " gods " arose, and the passage from animism to polytheism may in fact be traced with a high degree of probability. Doubtless many historical causes helped to carry the faith of the more advanced sections of the human race beyond polytheism to monotheism; but two causes have been constantly and universally at work. Polytheism cannot survive the growth of the moral consciousness and the critical intelligence. The polytheistic conception of the world outrages the demand for coherence, which is the motive of the intellect, and the demand for the supremacy of one law of righteousness, which is the inspiration of the moral consciousness. A world directed by many gods could not satisfy the philosopher, nor could it give any basis for the fully conscious moral life. We may see these tendencies at work in the literature of the two peoples who have contributed most of what is valuable in our civilization—the Greeks and the Hebrews. In the former the advance from polytheism to monotheism was chiefly the work of the philosophers and was never completely successful in the sense that it never displaced the earlier forms of religious belief and practice from the popular mind : in the latter the work was done by the unique line of Prophets whose conception of the God of Righteousness culminates in the doctrine of the second part of Isaiah.

Monotheism may take more than one form. The words " Pantheism " and " Theism " have come into use by modern writers to denote two different conceptions of the Divine Being, both of which affirm the doctrine of one God. Those views are called " theistic " which hold that there is one God who is the Creator or Ground of all finite existence, Himself in some sense distinct from the world. Theism has usually maintained that God is personal and that He must be thought of as morally good or holy. The word " Pantheism " covers a great many doctrines of God which have sometimes very little in common with one another ; but the essence of Pantheism is the denial of any real distinction between God and the world. Thoroughgoing Pantheism asserts that the All is God and God is the All. The various ways in which pantheistic conceptions have been presented and worked out lead to the most remarkable differences of emphasis. Some pantheistic theories are hardly distinguishable in their consequences from materialism, while others form the basis of the most extreme mysticism, which dissolves the world of experience into mere illusion. It is significant that the pantheistic philosophy of Spinoza has been accused both of " atheism " and of " acosmism," of the denial of the reality of God and of the denial of the reality of the world.

Pantheism in every form is open to grave objections. It is clear that on

every pantheistic hypothesis the freedom, and therefore the responsibility, of finite persons must be an illusion, for they are by nature parts or aspects of the One Divine Reality. Not only does a pantheistic view tend to destroy the reality of the moral life, it tends to abolish the distinction between good and evil and affords no basis for our judgments of value. If all is Divine, then every aspect of the all must be a revelation of the Divine Reality, and the difference, which to us seems so important, between right and wrong, good and evil, must be only a distinction from our point of view, not grounded upon the nature of things. We shall have to return to this subject again when we deal with the transcendence and immanence of God.

Belief in one God Who is the Creator or Ground of all existence is a tenet which is probably comprehensible only to a relatively advanced intelligence and is capable of criticism and theoretical defence. Certain well-known arguments for belief in God have played a great part in the history of religious thought and must be briefly noticed here ; but before we consider them it will be necessary to make two remarks. First, if the position which we have briefly stated in the preceding section of this essay be accepted, it is obvious that the main justification for belief in the existence of God is religious experience itself. In so far as man is a religious being, and is conscious of that responsiveness in the Other to which we have referred, he is impelled to interpret his experience and finds implicit within it some beliefs about its nature. Arguments for the existence of God are confirmations of what is, in some sense, already known. Secondly, there has been in recent years a change in the method of approach to the problem of the existence of God, and consequently in the use made of the traditional arguments. The " rational " arguments were formerly supposed, *e.g.* by Thomas Aquinas and Leibniz, to give a direct demonstration of the existence of God, a demonstration so cogent that no one who understood them could reasonably fail to be convinced by them. The modern mind, influenced by the prevalence of the scientific method, thinks in a different way. To it the question presents itself more naturally in the form : given the Universe, to find the most probable hypothesis to account for it. Among the possible hypotheses is that of Theism ;[1] and the arguments may be regarded as lines of thought by which it may be shown that the hypothesis of God is more reasonable than any other. This point has been fully explained by Professor Sorley in his *Moral Values and the Idea of God*, and the change in method has been clearly stated by Professor Whitehead in his *Science in the Modern World*.

The three arguments for the existence of God which have been styled the " rational " arguments are the Ontological, the Cosmological and the Teleological. The first proceeds from the idea of God in the mind to infer the reality of God : the second argues from the existence of the Cosmos that there must be a First Cause or Ground : the third reasons from the evidence of purposiveness in the world to the conclusion that there is a purposive Mind behind or within it.

The Ontological argument first made its appearance in the writings of St. Anselm, though hints of similar trains of reasoning can be found in

[1] By Theism we mean the view that there is a personal and creative God Who is both transcendent and immanent. See Section IV. of this Article.

earlier writers. Anselm argued that even " the fool " who says in his heart that there is no God has the idea of God, for otherwise he could not mean anything by his statement. But the idea of God is the idea of " that than which nothing greater can be conceived." Now this being must exist, it must be not only *in intellectu* but *in re*, not only " in thought " but " in reality," for if it does not exist *in re* it is not " that than which nothing greater can be conceived." We could go on to conceive a being which was both *in intellectu* and *in re*. As the result of criticism Anselm made it clear that his argument was not applicable to all ideas but only to that of the absolutely infinite and perfect. It could not be used, for example, as Gaunilo suggested, to establish the existence of a perfect island. The subsequent history of this famous argument has been chequered. Rejected by Aquinas and the later mediæval theologians, it came into prominence again in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries and formed an essential part of the systems of the three greatest thinkers of that epoch, Descartes, Leibniz and Spinoza. Kant directed a destructive criticism against it towards the end of the eighteenth century, but it was rehabilitated once more by Hegel, who regarded it as the foundation of all philosophical thought.

It cannot be said that modern thought has reached any agreement concerning the value of the ontological argument, and distinguished philosophers are still divided into those who regard it as a verbal juggle and those who hold it to be, in some form, the basis of philosophical construction. The essential element in the argument is its insistence on the idea of the perfect and the absolute as a necessary idea, one which the mind cannot help having. It may be pointed out that in all our thinking there is implicit the idea of the absolute. The conception of truth seems to involve the thought of an absolute truth, the conception of value involves the thought of an absolute value, nor would the ideas of partial truth and imperfect values have any meaning apart from the concept of that which is neither partial nor imperfect. As Descartes argued, how should we know ourselves to be finite unless we had already the idea of the infinite ; and from what experience of ours could the idea of infinity and perfection be derived ? Perhaps we get at the heart of the ontological argument when we put its essential thought in a different way. It is really an attempt to state in the form of reasoning two different pieces of true insight. In the first place, there is, inherent in the self-conscious individual, an intuition of his relatedness with an Other who is not wholly other, a Beyond that is within, and hence an immediate consciousness of a Reality in which the deepest and permanent needs of the self are satisfied. In the second place, all thinking and knowing depend, in the last resort, upon an ontological assumption. We must begin by taking for granted that the world is really knowable by our minds, that it is rational. This is an assumption which can never be proved, because it is itself the presupposition of every possible proof ; but we may say that the existence of a rational order is verified by every advance of knowledge. The ontological argument cannot be safely dismissed as valueless, for if we do so, we are in danger of striking at the root of all thinking.

The Cosmological argument, which was formulated by Plato and elaborated by Aristotle, has generally been stated in the form of an argument

to a First, or originating, Cause. Aristotle used the idea of motion, and argued that there must be a Prime Mover who was the ultimate source of every motion in the world. This Prime Mover must be himself unmoved, since otherwise there would be needed another source of motion prior to him. The cosmological argument was the chief basis of the rational argument for the existence of God which Aquinas regarded as conclusive : it was the core of that " natural theology " which, apart from revelation, was able, it was believed, to arrive at the truth that God is and that He is one. In the exposition of the argument by Aquinas we find it presented in four distinct forms. In addition to the Aristotelian argument from motion we have the same argument stated in terms of efficient cause—there must be a First Cause—contingent and necessary being, and value or " perfection." The cosmological argument has been the common instrument of all constructive philosophies, for every attempt to " explain " the world of our experience as a whole must be some kind of argument from it, as experienced, to some ground or cause of its existence.

The traditional statement of the cosmological argument has almost invariably introduced the conception of a series which, it is argued, must have a beginning. There is a chain of causes which leads us to the First Cause, or there are a number of communicated motions or changes which lead us, on reflection, to postulate a Prime Mover. The argument stated in this manner is open to several serious objections which were pointed out by Kant. The unending series of causes or motions is, it is alleged, unintelligible : but, it may be replied, the idea of an uncaused cause or an unmoved mover is no less unintelligible. Further, the conception of cause is by no means so clear and self-evident as is assumed in the traditional cosmological argument, and the Aristotelian idea of efficient cause has almost disappeared from modern scientific theory. Again, even if the argument be conclusive, it may be questioned whether it would lead us to the thought of the God of religion. " And this all men call God " is Aquinas' formula at the end of each statement of the argument. But here he discloses his unconscious reliance upon religious experience and tradition. But that the idea of God was already present in their minds, men would not necessarily identify the first member of a series of causes with God. Kant was right when he said that the cosmological argument really presupposed the ontological argument.

If we ask ourselves whether the cosmological argument retains any value in the light of modern thought, we shall not be able to give a satisfactory answer unless we generalize the line of thought which it represents and free it from some of the limitations which have been the object of criticism. The essence of the argument is simply that " nature," " the world," or the " universe " is not a self-explanatory system : in order to interpret it we are compelled to postulate the existence of a Mind which is not identical with nature. In the more technical language of philosophy, we may say that the argument is the attempt to show a necessary transcendent reference. Plainly, this is a much more complex matter than the old cosmological argument. To state it fully would require a survey of all the possible ways of seeking to interpret the universe and an attempt to demonstrate that all of the interpretations, except that which postulates a creative Mind, are untenable. Any such lengthy investigation is far

beyond the limits of this article. We must be satisfied here to draw attention to the current tendencies of thought which are, to a degree not generally realized, in harmony with this enlarged cosmological argument.

The philosophy of nature, after being the plaything of philosophers and the scorn of scientific specialists, has within the last twenty years come to occupy the forefront of the intellectual stage. The reason for this is that science itself has found that it cannot pursue its legitimate investigations without raising some of the most profound philosophical problems, and moreover, the progress of science, particularly of physics, has seemed to throw light upon those problems. The conception of " nature " has often been taken as one which is clear and sufficient, and it has been uncritically assumed that we need no further account of the purpose of science than that it seeks to understand " nature." This was perhaps plausible so long as the old-fashioned materialism could be maintained and nature could be regarded as a mechanism. The foundations of materialism, however, have now been destroyed by the results of the research into the atom and the equally revolutionary views of space and time to which physics has been led.[1] The conclusion from this is not, of course, that scientific research can ever prove or disprove the existence of God ; but the disappearance of the conception of nature as mechanism should bring more clearly before our minds the ultimate problem of explanation. It might be argued that a mechanism is self-explanatory, since every part is determined by its relation to the whole. Even so, of course, only a very superficial reflection would be satisfied that a mechanism raises no problems, since we cannot conceive a machine which is not put together and set going. But the position into which the more recent study of nature is taking us is one in which we are almost compelled to face the question whether we are not forced to postulate Mind as the ultimate reality and conceive nature as a complex thought. To such a conclusion at least Professor Eddington and Sir James Jeans tend. The more definitely metaphysical researches of those who are professedly philosophers of nature support this conclusion. The most distinguished of these, Professor A. N. Whitehead, finds it impossible to complete an account of the natural order without assuming the existence of that which is " beyond nature " in any ordinary meaning of the word. We cannot make sense of nature, Whitehead holds, without the assistance of conceptions which transcend nature—that of " eternal forms " and that of God.

We may conclude from this brief estimate of modern tendencies in the philosophy of nature that the value of the cosmological argument is by no means destroyed, but, on the contrary, in its generalized form it is being re-enforced by scientific progress. We must, however, once more remind ourselves that a complete statement of the argument in its modern form cannot be attempted here. To do so would mean to criticize all the philosophical theories which have claimed to answer the problem of Reality without the idea of God, including those which are not directly concerned with natural science. We should have to show that whatever line you choose to pursue, whether you think of reality as " life " or as

[1] See the Articles on *The Physical Nature of the Universe*, p. 91, and *Astronomy*, p. 134.

" history," to complete your explanation you must bring in a " transcendent reference " ; the existence of Mind beyond the living beings of experience and beyond the process of history is inevitably suggested.

The Teleological argument, popularly known as the argument from design, has been the most effective with the plain man and has, in common belief, been the most severely battered by modern knowledge. In general the argument has been from the facts of order and adaptation to ends to the Source of Order and the Purposive Intelligence. Before the rise of the biological theory of evolution, the argument was most frequently founded upon particular instances of adaptation, as for example, Paley's favourite illustration, the human eye. The general acceptance of a theory of evolution has almost entirely destroyed the cogency of this type of reasoning, for we know that the eye has developed through many stages from rudimentary beginnings, and that it has been, to some considerable degree at least, determined in this development by " natural " causes. It is no longer possible to point to the eye as direct evidence of an intelligent Creator. The problem raised by the teleological argument, however, cannot be so easily dismissed. The two questions still remain : Is there evidence of a tendency in evolution itself towards the production of " values," of higher types of existence and experience ? If there is, how is this tendency to be explained ?

The answer to the first question appears to common sense to be obvious. We should agree that human life and experience is of a different and higher quality than that of the amœba, and further that there is no reason to suppose the progress in the creation of values to have finished. It may, however, be urged that these higher values are the result of accident and give us no ground for supposing, so to speak, that the universe is interested in their production. There is no complete answer to this. It cannot be demonstrated to be absurd : but such a supposition will appear to most to be improbable, and this feeling of its inherent unlikeness will be reinforced when we consider some of the consequences of the hypothesis. Knowledge is one of the values which have been evolved ; and if we are determined to believe that all value is the accidental by-product of an indifferent process we must logically include science itself among the accidental by-products. In this case it is difficult to see how science could claim to be true, or rather what the meaning of that claim would be. And if science cannot claim to be true, then we know nothing about evolution and the whole position becomes self-contradictory. The most reasonable hypothesis then is that values are not accidental by-products but integral to the process of evolution. One of the facts therefore about evolution, and obviously one of the most important facts, is that it tends to produce values.

We proceed to the second question. How shall we best explain the tendency to produce values ? The theory of evolution is at the present moment a subject of acute controversy among both biologists and philosophers, and we have to confess that in this as in other respects we are living at a period of transition. Here too the controversy is between the older theory of mechanism and other views which may be less clearly articulated but seem better to cover all the facts. The theory of " emergent evolution " has recently been made prominent by the writings of Professor S.

Alexander and Professor C. Lloyd Morgan. The concept of " emergence " is intended to meet the difficulties which the older theories of evolution encountered in connexion with the facts of the coming into existence of specifically new qualities and values. It is proposed on this theory to regard the process of evolution as something more than a mechanistic development. According to the new theory evolution has the property of bringing into existence beings which could not have been foreseen by anyone who knew the previous course of development and which, in fact, are not the mere " resultants " of prior conditions. Thus it may be said that life, consciousness and self-consciousness " emerge " in the course of evolution. The theory of emergent evolution may be welcomed as a descriptive formula. It is obviously more in harmony with the facts of experience than the mechanical theories which it hopes to displace. But no reflective person can regard it as anything more than descriptive. It would be an absurd claim, if it were made, that " emergence " really solves any problems ; for the question still remains, Why has evolution this quality of emergence ? The point at issue is simply this : What hypothesis will best explain this admitted tendency to produce higher qualities of life and experience ? We do not solve a problem by inventing a new word for it.[1]

Once again we are brought to the hypothesis of God as the most reasonable explanation of certain aspects of the world. The teleological argument in its modern form does not profess to be a demonstration, but to be one among many considerations which converge upon the idea of God. The admission of any teleological element in evolution, of any tendency towards the production of value, suggests the thought of creative Mind. The activity of purposive intelligence would at least be an explanation, and it is not obvious that there is any other.

The rational arguments, we may conclude, have been considerably modified by the new situation created by modern science, and they will be employed in a somewhat different manner from that of the mediæval philosophers by an enlightened philosophy of religion ; but they still have great value and conspire to support the theistic view of the world. They have not, however, been in fact the chief corner-stone of religious thought since Kant effected his " Copernican revolution." Since his time theologians have preferred to place in the forefront of the battle for religious faith the Moral argument.

We have already remarked that Kant criticized adversely the rational arguments for Theism in their older form. It was not, however, in the interests of Agnosticism that he conducted his campaign, but rather in order to transfer the weight of the defence of religion to the sphere of morals, " to make room for moral faith." The precise line of reasoning which he adopted is too closely identified with his own peculiar views of the nature of knowledge and of the moral consciousness to be generally acceptable to modern thinkers. In essence, however, his contention may be stated in a way which would be widely approved. If we accept the experience of our moral consciousness as it stands, we find that we are under an absolute obligation to obey the dictates of duty ; the moral law

[1] For an exposition of the theory of evolution see the Article on *Biology and Human Progress.*

comes to us in the form of a " categorical imperative," that is to say, the moral law appears to us as an unconditional demand. It comes not with a command in the form, " Do this if you want that," but simply " Do this." At the same time, however, we cannot avoid the conviction that the life of dutiful obedience to the law of right is a rational one. But if we think out the implications of this conviction, we find that there are three postulates which we are compelled to make—God, freedom and immortality. In so far as I am a self-conscious moral being, I have the sufficient ground for belief that I am a free agent, with an unlimited destiny and under the providential government of God.

The train of reflection thus inaugurated by Kant may be pursued along somewhat different lines in view of the changed intellectual situation. We may pursue first the line of thought lucidly stated by Lord Balfour. The fact that moral ideas have evolved and that conceptions of the good life have not always been the same may seem, at first sight, to be a serious difficulty in presenting a moral argument. Reflection, however, will show that, if we still retain the conviction that we are under an obligation to pursue the good as we understand it, the evolution of moral ideas affords a ground for belief in a providential ordering of evolution. If the evolution of moral standards were the result of merely non-moral and indifferent causes, if the changing conceptions of good were nothing more than the outcome of a process which had no spiritual direction, we should be at a loss to justify any recognition on our part of absolute obligation. To understand the nature of moral ideas and the laws of their change would be to weaken their authority over us. If, however, we take it as a fact of experience, which we cannot ignore without denying our own true nature, that we are really under an obligation to obey the right as we see it and to see the true meaning of right so far as we are able, then we must believe that the development of human conceptions of the good life is a directed development, the progressive revelation of a good, which, in some way, transcends the process of evolution. Thus any theory of the development of the moral consciousness of man which does not deny, or at least weaken, the sense of obligation must be a theory which finds a moral or spiritual background to that development.

Even more clearly is a belief in God suggested and supported by a consideration of the moral consciousness in its purest forms. It seems evident that the effort of the moral life is directed towards some end : it presupposes, at least in idea, some absolute and final good in which the aspiration of the moral self would find satisfaction. If we ask what that absolute good and final end would be, we are at a loss to describe it in terms of our human experience. Whenever we try to imagine a condition of perfection as existing in time, we are conscious that we are engaged upon an impossible task, for there is always something better which could be imagined. This may be illustrated by the case of social progress. We should admit that an essential part of the aspiration of the good man is that the social life of humanity should approach nearer to its ideal. But the attempt to conceive a human society under the conditions of time and space which could be called ideal is beyond our power. It is plain that an intercourse of persons with one another, free from all defects and achieving the maximum of joy and peace and creative fellowship, is not

possible, even though our power over nature and over ourselves were indefinitely increased. If then the end of the moral life is attainable, it must be attained in the unseen and eternal sphere : but if it is not attainable, the moral life must be regarded as not fully rational, as inspired by a hope which is, by its nature, incapable of realization. If we persist in relying upon the conviction that the moral effort is both obligatory and rational, we are compelled to postulate a perfection beyond the present and visible order, some Kingdom of God or city eternal in the heavens. The principle which we have illustrated by the example of the social idea is applicable to the whole range of moral good. Wherever we come across heroic virtue, such devoted goodness as we might describe as saintliness, it appears always to be directed towards, and inspired by, a Good which can never be fully realized in time. It goes beyond any formulation of the end in merely temporal terms. It has a touch of the supernatural. On this fact of experience the moral argument for the existence of God is based.

Recent philosophy of religion has been more prone than formerly to recognize that the Good, as Plato and the Greek thinkers generally held, includes the beautiful. The interpretation of the fact that we apprehend beauty and that one of our spiritual activities is the creation of beauty[1] has, of course, been the subject of much controversy, and it would be absurd to allege that Theism alone holds the field ; but it is at least true that Theism can give an account of the matter which meets the exigencies of our experience. Here again we may with Plato find a ladder which leads from partial and imperfect beauty to the absolute Beauty. The beautiful and the sublime in nature have been the source of religious experience to " nature mystics " such as Wordsworth ; but they may also be the starting-point of an argument from analogy which has at least some force. One of the theories of the nature of beauty is that it consists in expression. If this be true, then the beauty of nature may reasonably be conceived as itself the expression of a Divine artist or poet.

The arguments for the validity of the idea of God are of a cumulative character. Modern religious philosophy does not claim to possess a single line of reasoning which alone is sufficient. It would suggest rather that among all the possible hypotheses to answer our problem of the meaning of the world and of life, the hypothesis of God, when all the data are considered, is the most reasonable. Few modern philosophers of religion would deny that there is always an act of faith in the affirmation of God's reality. We can never know that God exists in the sense that we can prove the proposition by a chain of deduction beyond cavil and theoretical possibility of error. In the end there is always an act of will which decides to adopt " the nobler hypothesis "—but it is a rational act of will and is logically no more unreasonable than believing in the existence of other people, a proposition which is itself incapable of rigid proof.

A complete statement of the argument for Theism would include a criticism of rival hypotheses such as materialism and dualism. For such criticism we have here no space, but it is necessary to mention one view

[1] The subject of " Beauty " is discussed in the Article on *The Principles of Literary Criticism*, p. 903.

general aim of Positivism has not, however, ceased to secure adherents, and some of its leading thoughts, though transformed, appear in the contemporary movement for religion without God which may be described as the religion of evolution.

As we have already remarked, the conception of evolution has not remained always the same, and at the present moment there is a widespread tendency to revolt from the purely mechanistic idea and to adopt ideas of a " vitalist " or " emergent " kind. The older conception of the " orthodox " evolutionists, that the process of evolution can be regarded as, in the last resort, explicable by the laws of mechanics, has now been seriously shaken, and the " vitalist " and " emergent " theories have gained adherents both in scientific and philosophical circles. According to the former view, the evolutionary process is the development and progressive expression of a " life-force " ; according to the latter view, the process of evolution is not explicable wholly by laws of matter and motion, but has the property of giving rise to new forms of existence which could not have been predicted prior to their occurrence. The two theories are by no means identical, though they have important agreements with one another, and so far as their implications for religion are concerned, may be considered together. This change in the concept of evolution, which may or may not prove to be permanent in the sphere of science, has furnished a basis for a " new " religion. Obviously, so long as the process of evolution is regarded consistently as purely mechanical, there is little ground for finding an object of religious emotion in it, for few men would be willing to worship a machine, and probably even those few, like the man in Mr. Wells' story, *The Lord of the Dynamo*, only because they did not really think of it as a mere machine. The only worship possible in the case of a mechanical process of evolution would be that of the Maker and owner of the machine. When, however, any kind of " teleological " view of evolution is held the situation is radically changed. It is possible then to conceive religion as the service of those ideal tendencies which can be discerned within the process, as co-operation with the Life Force, or as the reaching forward in aspiration to that better life which is to be created by the process. A view of religion of this type has influenced much contemporary literature and is implied in many of the writings of Mr. G. B. Shaw and Mr. H. G. Wells.

The religion of evolution can justly claim to meet some of the requirements of the religious consciousness. It affirms the truth of the intuition that we are able to co-operate with an immanent purpose in the world, and that our good and happiness will be found in so doing. That side of Christian faith which centres upon the idea of working in the Spirit for the Kingdom of God, receives here an interpretation which is not without religious value. The religion of evolution, however, is grievously lacking in other important elements which have entered into the experience of God in the higher religions. Since the evolutionary creed rules out the conception of a Deity who is above the process, it can give no countenance to the belief that the law of righteousness is founded in eternal Reality ; if all is in flux and evolution, the very standards of judgment themselves must be involved in the stream of ceaseless change. Nor again can the religion of evolution allow the belief that there is an ultimate

Good towards which the efforts of finite beings to attain any good are tending. There can be no final vision of God in which the soul may know itself to be no longer *in via* but at last *in patria,* no longer on its pilgrimage but at last in its motherland. Nor again, can this type of religion justify any sense of dependence upon a Being infinitely greater than ourselves. The only dependence which it can recognize is a dependence upon the evolutionary process which, according to this hypothesis, is unconscious and therefore below the level of our own being.

A strange suggestion has been made by Professor Alexander. He proposes that we should attach the word " deity " to that higher type of being which, so to say, is waiting to be evolved, that with which the evolutionary process is now in travail. When the next stage is reached, " deity " will once more be transferred into the future, and worship will be directed towards the still higher yet to come. It would seem that this conception of deity labours under every kind of disadvantage, for, on this view, " deity " is both non-existent and unknown. It is non-existent because, by definition, directly it begins to exist it ceases to be deity; and it is unknown, because, according to Alexander, we have no idea what the next step in evolution will be like. It is perhaps not surprising that, so far as is known, few temples have been erected for the worship of the god who never is but always will be.

It should not, finally, escape our notice that the " religion of evolution " depends, in the last resort, upon an act of faith at least as much as the more orthodox belief in God. The upward tendency of evolution, it must be assumed, is not merely a temporary fact of the period and place in which we happen to be, but is, on the contrary, a permanent quality of the universe. It may be so, and on the hypothesis of Theism, there is good ground for believing that it is so ; but simply on the basis of empirical observation there seems singularly little reason for holding so optimistic a creed, and in so far as science can make any pronouncement, it appears still to be on the side of those who believe that the universe is " running down," tending towards a state of equilibrium in which all life, and therefore all value, will be abolished.

IV

The problem of the Divine Nature has not ceased to exercise the minds of philosophers, nor will it ever cease to do so, for the Being of the Creator must always present a depth of mystery which cannot be completely grasped by created intelligences. The difficulties and apparent contradictions into which we fall when we try to elucidate the conception of God, have always been a principal argument in the hands of those who would push beyond the thought of God the Creator to the thought of the Universe or the Absolute as the ultimate Reality. Pantheistic types of thought (using the word " Pantheism " in a wide sense) have had distinguished exponents in the last generation.[1] Idealistic philosophy in the works of F. H. Bradley, Dr. Bosanquet and other followers of the Hegelian

[1] Pantheism properly means the theory that God is identical with " the All " or " the Universe." Bradley and Bosanquet are not in the strict sense Pantheists, because of their doctrine of " degrees of reality."

tradition, has been deeply sympathetic with the religious consciousness and has professed at least to be maintaining its value and legitimacy even while drastically criticizing its conceptions. According to this view, in its most coherent form, the sole reality is the all-inclusive and timeless Absolute, of which all other things are " parts " or " appearances." Thus the finite self, though not an illusion, is not finally real, and the God of religion is indeed more real than the person who worships Him, but again not finally real or true. In religion, it is suggested, we have the representation, necessarily imperfect and symbolical, of the Absolute, which is itself not a possible object of worship. The apparent paradoxes of religious faith and practice have been freely used by thinkers of this school to support the view that Theism is not in the end true. More recent movements of thought, however, have given evidence of a general reaction against Absolute Idealism. It has been objected against it that the doctrine of the Absolute, as alone completely true and real, may properly lead to complete philosophic scepticism, to the conclusion that we can have no genuine knowledge at all. The theory has also been the object of damaging attacks from the standpoint of logic, while its implications for the moral life are too obvious to need comment. We cannot here enter upon the intricate and technical discussions that have led to the retrogression of a type of philosophy which a few years ago was dominant in England, Scotland and America; we may note, however, that the way seems to be open for a positive and constructive statement of a philosophical Theism.

For modern reflection, the problem of God seems to centre in the main upon two questions—personality and creation.

The debate on the subject of Divine Personality has been confused by much misapprehension and prejudice. It has been taken for granted by critics that those who hold to the personality of God mean that, in their opinion, God is a person identical in qualities with human persons, only very much larger and more powerful. On this assumption, it has been pointed out that the universe as we know it could scarcely be conceived as the work of such a being, and the idea of the personality of God has been dismissed almost without argument. A moment's reflection should have been sufficient to convince any candid critic that this is not what intelligent men have understood by the personality of God. Orthodox Christianity, as is well known, holds that the Godhead is not a person but rather a Unity of Persons. The religious interests involved in the discussion of the personality of God are chiefly two. The most intimate type of religious experience, and most, if not all, kinds of prayer, seem plainly to involve a personal relation with God. It is difficult to suppose that prayer addressed to an impersonal principle could long be maintained. Secondly, the idea of God, if it is to be an adequate idea, must be the idea of the highest and best Being conceivable. Now personality is admittedly the highest type of concrete being with which we are acquainted, and hence we are compelled to maintain that God cannot be less or lower than personal. There is no reason why religion should object to the description of God as a " super-personal " Being, so long as it is understood that " super-personal " includes " personal " and is not a polite synonym for " impersonal."

The two " interests " of religion are, from another point of view, the chief reasons for holding the truth of Divine Personality. A total rejection of all religious experience as illusory would, of course, entirely destroy the force of the first of these two considerations. If, however, we attach some value to religious experience and therefore conceive it to have some permanent relation with Reality, the fact that a large mass of this religious experience, that which is most highly developed no less than more primitive forms, builds itself up round relations with the Divine which have the " warmth " of personal intercourse, must weigh very greatly with us. It would be a paradoxical position if religion had a content of truth but, in its highest and most effectual exemplifications, were founded upon a mere mistake.

The more strictly philosophical argument for Divine Personality depends upon a principle which in mediæval thought received the name of the *via eminentiæ*. The general idea of this method of theological reasoning has been stated most simply by the Psalmist when he exclaimed : " He that made the eye shall he not see, and he that planted the ear shall he not hear ? " and by Jesus, more accurately, in His question, " If ye, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Heavenly Father ? " It must be admitted by any thinker who allows that we can have any knowledge of God, that the highest and best things in creation will give us the analogies by which we may most adequately conceive the Divine Nature. Thus it has been urged by the mediæval Scholastics that, in attempting to determine the Divine Being by the processes of reason, we must take every " perfection," *i.e.* every valuable quality, which we find in created being and attribute it " in a more eminent manner " to the Creator. That is to say, we are to free the quality in question from all the limitations of finite existence and conceive it as perfectly realised in God. If we take the quality of " knowing " as an example, we must think of the Divine Wisdom as without limitation, unconfused, unmingled with ignorance, and needing no train of reasoning to arrive at its conclusions. It will be not " discursive " but " intuitive." We may confidently affirm that any one who denies the legitimacy of the *via eminentiæ* in some form must logically either be an agnostic or rely solely upon " revelation " for knowledge of God.

We may assume that personality is the highest form known to us of concrete and living being : in fact personality might be defined as the highest and most complete way of being alive. We may conclude then that, if God is living, He cannot be less than personal. There are, however, sufficient signs that human personality is not the most perfect form of personal life which we can conceive. Though the precise nature of personality evades accurate definition, we can enumerate certain qualities which appear to be characteristic. Personal life is the life of a self-conscious being, who is capable of directing himself by principles or ideals of conduct. A person is one who is able to know and to will. We immediately predicate personality when we feel justified in assuming moral responsibility. It is plain that personality exists in ourselves at best in a strangely imperfect form. Even the most consistent character and life are, to some extent, incoherent. Of the best man we must say that he has not shown us the full possibilities of personal life. It is, therefore,

clear that in attributing personality to God we are by no means making Him " one of ourselves " ; on the contrary, we are recognizing the existence of a Being who, while not entirely other than ourselves, surpasses and transcends us immeasurably.

The metaphysical discussions which have been evoked by the doctrine of the Divine Personality have led to many intricacies which would be out of place here ; but there is one disputed point which must be mentioned. It has been alleged that personality and self-hood are conceptions which can only be applied to limited beings, that in fact the idea of an Infinite Person is self-contradictory. In support of this contention it has been frequently alleged that there can be no self without a " not-self," and that in fact those activities which we have recognized as being the peculiar marks of personality are impossible unless there is something, some sphere of reality, from which the person distinguishes himself. Thus, both in knowing and in willing we seem to need an object which is not identical with ourselves. Three different answers to this objection have been made. (1) It has been held by religious thinkers who follow the Hegelian tradition that, though personal analogies are the best which we have for interpreting to ourselves the Nature of God, they do not take us all the way, and we must confess, in the last resort, that the Divine is supra-personal, existing in a mode which is higher than personal. (2) It has been argued by Hermann Lotze and many other Theists that perfect personality, so far from being incompatible with infinity, is only possible for an Infinite Being. " Perfect personality is in God only ; to all finite minds there is allotted but a pale copy thereof ; the finiteness of the finite is not a producing condition of this personality, but a limit and a hindrance to its development." (3) Some Theists, among them the late Dr. Hastings Rashdall, would accept the contention that the conception of a personal Deity carries with it the implications of some limitation of the Divine Nature, and would distinguish sharply between God and the Absolute. Those who take this view generally attempt to preserve the ultimate dependence of all things upon God by the conception of a self-limitation of the Divine Being.

It is not possible here to summarize the reasons which may be alleged for and against the different theories which we have now briefly stated, for it is obvious that the questions at issue cannot be discussed without raising the most complex problems. We may, however, note that it would seem essential for any Theistic belief to distinguish between God and " the universe." Whatever we may choose to mean by the word " universe," it cannot be identified with God unless we are prepared to accept Pantheism. To identify God with " the All," or the sum of things, would be to abandon the chief element in the Theistic position. In some sense, then, it would seem there must be a distinction between the Creator and the created, between God and the universe. It may be that the word " infinity " should not be applied to the Divine Nature without careful qualification. We certainly mean by God a Being whose goodness and power are without limit, but this must not be confused with the idea of infinite space or infinite time. There is a great difference between the assertion that all things depend upon God and the assertion that all things are God. The former assertion is a part of the Theistic view, the latter is not.

We are thus brought to the second of our main problems—that of creation. The relation of God to the world has been represented in many ways, of which the most important are identity, emanation, creation. As we have seen, the first of these is the conception which lies at the root of all Pantheistic philosophies in the proper meaning of that word. For the Pantheist the world and God are not two but one, they are the same Reality viewed from different standpoints. The difficulties of Pantheism have already been touched upon and we need not recur to them. Emanational theories have taken various forms, perhaps the most famous being that expounded by the last great philosopher of the ancient world—Plotinus. All theories of emanation turn upon the conception of grades of being, which proceed, not necessarily in time, from the Supreme Being, or the Absolute One, falling in value and reality as they are further removed from their Source. The essence of the emanation theory is that the world proceeds from God by a kind of necessity. It is the nature of the Divine thus to "overflow." The idea of creation is distinguished from that of emanation by the fact that it does not conceive the world as following by necessity from the Divine Nature, but as being produced by an act of will.

It is easy to exaggerate the importance of this difference between emanation and creation, for in fact the two ideas often approach one another. It need not follow from a theory of emanation that God is regarded as impersonal; and, on the other hand, it is often held by those who adopt creation as the best conception that to create is a necessity of God's nature as personal. Plainly the idea of creation lends itself to pictorial representation and has often been expressed in purely mythological terms. The analogy of the artisan making a piece of furniture, or the potter making his pots out of given material, has been taken as the guide to Divine Creativeness. The nature of the creative action of the Divine must be for ever obscure to us, and the most we can hope to attain is a point of view from which the creative action of God may be seen to be in line with something in our experience. It has been suggested by many philosophers that the work of the artist and the poet furnish us with the highest examples of finite creativeness, and hence are the most fruitful source of insight into the creativeness of God. Even this analogy, however, will take us but part of the way, and those who have made most use of it, as for example James Ward in his *Realm of Ends*, have confessed that it fails us at last.

Closely connected with the problem of creation is that of Divine Immanence.[1] The difference between Theistic and Pantheistic theories of the Divine Nature is often said to lie in the fact that Pantheism holds the Divine to be wholly immanent, while Theism holds that God is both immanent and transcendent. The statement is scarcely accurate, for any

[1] The term "immanence" (Lat., *in-maneo*) is used to express the presence and activity of God in nature and in the human mind. The term may be applied to other relations beside that of God and the world, in fact it is appropriate in any case of the association of two entities which are distinct from one another but not separate in space: e.g. the mind, or consciousness, may be said to be immanent in the body. Immanence is frequently contrasted with transcendence, but it is a mistake to suppose that the one excludes the other. On the contrary, immanence implies transcendence.

belief in immanence, if it is self-consistent, must imply transcendence. It is unmeaning to speak of immanence without, at the same time, implying that in which the Divine is immanent, and hence a distinction. As we have seen, the Pantheistic doctrine is the identity of God with the universe. The modern term immanence appears to mean much the same as the older "attribute of omnipresence." The idea of God cannot be associated with the idea of spatial limitation. That on which all things depend cannot itself be among the "things," and since space is the relation between things, or at least has no meaning apart from "things," we cannot think of God as occupying space. Consequently we cannot regard God as being present in any particular place to the exclusion of others, which is the same thing as saying that there is no place where God is not. There is, however, a difference between the ideas of omnipresence and immanence in this respect. Some writers would speak of degrees of immanence, but would hesitate to speak of degrees of Divine presence. The conception of immanence includes the idea of the manifestation of the Divine Nature. In this respect there are plainly degrees of immanence. Some aspects of creation must be supposed to be more complete disclosures of the nature of God than others. Thus, though we could not affirm that there is more of God in the human person than in the stone, we could justly assert that personality tells us more about the Creator than the stone. The doctrine of the Divine Transcendence is intended to guard against the danger of Pantheism. In the most general terms, it is the doctrine that the universe, if by that we mean the sum of finite existence, does not exhaustively display the being of God. He is beyond the greatest that we can conceive in point of power and the highest we can conceive in point of value. It should be noted, however, that the word "universe" is a very ambiguous term and should never be used without careful definition. Sometimes the word apparently implies the sum total of all that, in any sense whatever, exists, and in that case we could not affirm that God transcends the universe; more frequently the word seems to mean a whole of finite existing things, and it is important to observe that one school of contemporary philosophers at least, the Italian Idealists, would deny that there is any such whole.

An important and controversial question concerning the relation of God with the world arises from the conception of God as the Perfect Being. According to the classical and mediæval theory on this subject, the perfect must be the absolutely self-sufficient, and therefore in need of nothing beyond itself. It has been concluded on this assumption that the created world is, in no sense, necessary to God, and even that its total annihilation would make no difference to His complete satisfaction. This conception is found in its extreme form in Aristotle, who held that God was not even aware of the existence of the world, and it has played a great part in orthodox Christian theology. In recent discussions of Theism a reaction is noticeable against this view, partly on the ground that such a conception of God would be hard to reconcile with the experience of religion, but also on metaphysical grounds. The controversy has been greatly confused by being mixed up with the question of the eternity of the world. The problem is not the same. Probably no Theist would hold that the present "physical universe" is eternal in its own right; but it

might nevertheless be held that some creation is a necessity. It is argued by those who take this view that creativeness is an essential characteristic of the Divine Personality, as it is, in an indefinitely lower degree, of human personality, and, further, that it is difficult to understand how the Divine Nature can be personal unless there is postulated a created order which stands to Him in the relation of " not-self " to self. The contentions of this school have been supported by the conclusions of Professor A. N. Whitehead who, approaching the problem from the standpoint of a philosophy of nature, has been led to postulate a God as necessary for the being of the world, and at the same time a world as necessary for the being of God. On the other hand, recent movements in German theology reinforce the opposite side in this controversy. The system of Karl Barth and, in some degree, that of Rudolph Otto emphasize the " otherness " of God and would not admit any relation of God with the world, or with man, which would compromise His absolute self-sufficiency. We must be content to note this important divergence of opinion here and observe that the two opposing views carry with them important consequences, practical as well as theoretical. On the first view, which lays stress on the Divine Immanence, there will follow naturally a religion which has affinities with Humanisn and seeks the Kingdom of God partly through the promotion of human progress ; on the second view, which lays stress on the absolute transcendence of God, there will be a disposition to despair of the world and of human progress, and to seek the Kingdom of God wholly in the unseen.

The dogmatic theology of our forefathers had much to say about the Divine Attributes, which were usually divided into two classes, the " metaphysical " and the " moral." Modern philosophy of religion, owing probably to its different approach, offers little systematic treatment of this subject. Indirectly, however, two topics which are part of the doctrine of the Divine Attributes have been discussed—the possibility of attributing moral goodness to God and the meaning of omnipotence. As we have seen, the conception of God is the conception not only of the Power on which all things depend, but of the Highest Value. God is the perfect Holiness. But obvious difficulties arise when we begin to think of God as morally good. Aristotle pointed out in the *Nicomachean Ethics* that it was absurd to think of a Divine Being as exercising moral virtues such as courage, or even justice, and concluded that the Divine activity could not be that of moral goodness, but must be that of pure intellectual contemplation. The difficulty which Aristotle stated has been recast by many modern idealist philosophers into a still more formidable objection. It is said that the moral life necessarily implies a limitation and the relation of the moral being with other selves of the same order. The moral life can exist only where there are ideals to be realized and a social intercourse between persons. On these grounds it has been held that, though God, or the Absolute, is the source of all moral values and, in the end, the goal of all moral endeavour, He is Himself " beyond good and evil " and not properly described as morally good. It must be admitted that the Holiness of God cannot be precisely analogous to the virtue of a good man, and if the Divine Holiness includes the virtue of courage, for example, we are unable to understand what transformation that virtue has undergone

in the Divine Being. There is a possible view which seems to avoid this difficulty. It may be suggested that to think of goodness as consisting in the exercise of a certain number of virtues is misleading. The cardinal virtues are different aspects of goodness, but they all spring from one principle. They form a unity, because they are not independent qualities but convenient ways of describing the good life. This was Plato's conception of the virtues, and is the conception which is central in Christianity. According to the teaching of St. Paul, and indeed of the New Testament as a whole, " love is the fulfilling of the law," and every virtue is an activity of love. The attribution of love to God doubtless raises further problems, but it does not involve us in any contradiction. It may be that the conception of God as love will lead us to the further conception of distinctions within the Godhead, and furnish one of the speculative confirmations of the doctrine of the Trinity. The argument has been used by Christian theologians. Unitarians, on the other hand, would hold that the belief in the love of God does not necessarily lead to any trinitarian conclusion, since we can think of the Divine love as going forth to the creatures and finding its object in them alone.

The attribute of " omnipotence " has received more attention in recent discussions of the philosophy of religion than the other attributes because of its bearing upon the problem of evil. The crux of that problem is the apparent difficulty of reconciling the existence of evil with belief in a Creator who is at once love and omnipotent. That this old objection is still formidable is shown by the fact that so distinguished a philosopher as the late Dr. McTaggart has thought it worth while to dwell upon it in his *Dogmas of Religion*. James Ward and other writers have done valuable service in calling attention to the ambiguity of the word " omnipotent." In its original meaning, as used in the creeds, it signified " having power over all things " and was a statement of the ultimate dependence of all things upon God. In this sense it has religious value, and perhaps in this sense alone. A logical definition of omnipotence is not easy. It has been assumed by some that it includes the idea of power to do absolutely anything, including the contradictory. Thus the view has been held that God could make 2 plus 2=5. On the other hand, it has been contended that God can do all that He wills to do, but that He cannot will to do anything which contradicts His nature. It is pointed out that a mere arbitrary will is inconceivable and certainly not to be regarded as a perfection. God's will, then, must be the expression of His own nature, which is rational and good. Hence the will of God has a " formal " limitation since, being what He is, He cannot will the irrational or evil. But further, if we take the conception of creation seriously, we must recognize another limitation of the Divine power. The creation of free selves would be inconceivable unless we admitted that some limitation of the Divine power was possible. The limitation involved in creation would be a self-limitation, and not an inherent or necessary one.

The problem of evil upon which we have now touched is a standing difficulty for any philosophy of religion which is not simply destructive and critical. On any view of religion which does not regard it as pure illusion, the existence of evil must be an experience which requires consideration. This is true even if we do not adopt a Theistic interpretation

of the world, for the type of thought which regards religion as belief in the " conservation of values " or the " ultimate reality of values " must find the reality of " negative values " a challenge and a perplexity. The discussion of this problem has a long history, and it cannot be said that modern thought has added much which is distinctively new. Perhaps it has become clearer that evil falls into three categories, which are not necessarily connected with each other, and are in fact capable of separate treatment. Sin, pain and error together comprise all that we call evil ; but it is obvious that the explanation of the existence of error may be quite different from that which is applicable in the case of suffering. Nevertheless the forms of evil are, in practice, often closely related, for some at least of human suffering is due to human wrong-doing and error, while sin again is partly the consequence of lack of insight into the nature of the good and the true condition of the given situation.

The theory that evil of every kind is the consequence of our finitude has been held by distinguished thinkers ; and on the assumption of an optimistic pantheism it would seem most logical to conclude that evil is real only from our limited standpoint, but from the point of view of the whole is a necessary element in its perfection. That some evils arise from our limitations is plain, but the assertion that there is nothing which is really evil is scarcely acceptable to most forms of religion and is difficult to reconcile with our experience. If there is nothing which is really evil, it is argued, the efforts of unselfish men to remove evil, and the promise of religion that we can be redeemed from evil, seem alike without justification. An opinion which has been of great importance in Christian thought is that evil is non-existent, in the sense that it has no positive being. Every evil, it is alleged, is a defect of being and not an existence. Hence we cannot attribute evil to the creative will of God, since not-being cannot be created. This doctrine, which was held by St. Augustine and Thomas Aquinas, cannot be said to have solved the problem of evil, for even if we allow that all evil is defect and non-being, we have still the question upon our hands, Why should the Creator have created a world in which defect was so rife ?

The idea which Augustine and Thomas adopted may be summed up in the phrase " anything exists in so far as it is good." In modern philosophy a closely related conception makes its appearance, adapted to the evolutionary mode of thought which is characteristic of the modern mind. It is one of the merits of Hegel to have emphasized the importance of " negativity " in development. Progress in a moving world occurs not in a steady upward movement, but by the overcoming of negation. Without the negation there would be no movement. This conception has been taken up by Idealists of the Italian School. The good, it is alleged, exists through the constant overcoming of its opposite. Thus truth is the continual transcending of error, and grows through the unceasing strife with imperfect and partly illusory ideas. Moral good exists only in the overcoming of moral evil. If there were no opposing movement there would be no such thing as virtue. We may allow a great measure of truth in these contentions, and agree that we cannot imagine a world in which goodness did not imply the possibility of its opposite and truth was not gained at the cost of the unremitting revision of concepts ; but it is not so

easy to see what light is thrown by all this on the problem of suffering. In any case these abstract metaphysical arguments are, for most people, convincing rather than satisfying.

Leibniz is the one great philosopher who has devoted a large treatise to the problem of evil. His general answer to the question of why evil exists is that this is " the best of all possible worlds " and that any other world, though we may imagine in our ignorance that it would be better, would in fact include more evil and less good than that which actually exists. This sweeping assertion of the great optimist, and the system by which he supported it, would be accepted by few modern thinkers ; but an answer not fundamentally different has been given by more than one philosopher in recent times, among whom we may mention the late Sir Henry Jones. It is urged : look at the general features of the world and ask yourself whether, in your best moments, you would wish them altered. We cannot expect to see that every detail serves the purpose of a supreme good, but we can see that a world in which there were no hazards and hardships, in which every advance had not to be won, in which there was no adventure, would be a worse world than that in which we are. We should not wish to have everything given and no opportunity of struggle and victory. In other words, if the purpose, or part of the purpose, of the created order is the development of free personalities and the achievement by them of their own full stature through the pursuit of goodness, truth and beauty, then a world in its general structure such as ours is a requisite condition.

A paradox which has been pointed out by many writers must be mentioned here. The problem of evil, which may be called perhaps the great theoretical difficulty for a religious view of the world, is also a necessary factor in the emergence of the religious attitude. It is because men feel themselves to be weak and sinful and blind that they stretch out their hands towards a power, a perfection and a truth which will, as they hope, redeem them and raise them from their wretched state. When we reflect upon the mystery of evil we ought always to reflect upon the mystery of the Good towards which man aspires and which, as it appears, he cannot help believing to be already real.

The discussion of the problem of evil has raised the question whether suffering in any form can be held to enter the Divine Experience. Great difference of opinion on this respect has to be noticed in recent Theistic writers. It might have been expected that Christian thought, which is often said to be concentrated upon the figure of the Divine Sufferer, would have accepted the idea that suffering could be conceived as part of the life of God, while on the other hand, it might have been expected that the more pantheistic religions would have been hostile to the belief. Historically, however, this is not true. On the whole, the more philosophical Christian theology has held fast to the " impassibility " of God, to the conviction that the Divine Nature, as such, is incapable of suffering. The reason for this is that Christian thought in its orthodox forms has been deeply influenced by the Platonic and Aristotelian conception of the Divine Nature. It has assumed that God, being the perfect Being, must be absolutely complete and self-sufficient. Now suffering is always the result of a lack or want, and cannot therefore be attributed to One who is

absolutely self-sufficing. The late Baron F. von Hügel, who adhered strongly to this view, maintained, in addition to this logical argument, that religion itself would fail of its consolation if it could not believe that God was raised above the possibility of pain. On the other side, it has been urged that the problem of evil becomes more pressing than ever if we thus remove God in our thought from all participation in our unhappiness, while it is, to some extent, relieved if we believe that He bears our griefs along with us. Christian thinkers have not failed to make the further point, that the appeal of the cross is due to the conviction that it reveals to us God suffering on our behalf.

The problem is not so easily resolved as exponents of either view have suggested, and though the balance of opinion appears to be against the older view of impassibility, it cannot be said that the difficulties in the opposite opinion have been removed. Even if we found some way out of the logical difficulty of self-sufficingness as a quality of the Perfect Being, we should still have to face another problem. It can be argued that the same reasons which might lead us to hold that God shares our suffering would equally lead us to hold that He shares our sin ; and this conclusion would be singularly inconvenient for any belief about God except Pantheism. If the expression of a personal opinion may be allowed, I would say that, on the one hand, it seems inconceivable that suffering does not enter, in some form, into the Divine Experience, for to deny that altogether would be to render unmeaning those assurances of the Divine sympathy which have given strength and peace to many religious souls. It would be to make God so transcendent that He would be quite different from what He is believed to be in the most poignant religious experience. On the other hand, however, it seems impossible to attribute mere suffering to the Divine Experience, for in that case we should fall into the error which Von Hügel dreaded, of debasing God in our thought to our own level of frequent frustration. The Divine Experience must be triumphant and therefore joyous ; but it may be that into it there enters the suffering of the world, real but overcome.

V

There are two topics which cannot be wholly omitted in a survey of the philosophy of religion—Immortality and Revelation. The religious view of the world includes not only the concept of the Divine but of man's relation with the Divine, and this relation has been expressed in the ideas that man's destiny is not circumscribed by the present life and that he has been the recipient of Divine communication.

The ideas of immortality and of a future life are not identical. The first implies an existence which is, in some way, raised above the vicissitudes of time, the second may mean no more than that there is another temporal existence for the individual following on death. The belief in a future life is almost universal in the more primitive religions, and it may justly be claimed that there is a wider consensus for it than for belief in God. Though the pictures of the future life vary in detail, there is one common principle pervading them. The uncivilized man thinks of his life in the beyond as an extension and reproduction of the present. Nor is the

picture always of a life superior to the present one in happiness. On the contrary, beliefs are frequently of a melancholy character, and to the early Hebrew and Greek the lot of the departed was miserable compared with that of those still living. Religion does not, however, invariably give rise to a faith in personal survival. For a considerable period the higher religion of the Hebrews included no doctrine of individual immortality, but only that of the indestructibility of Israel, the chosen people of God.

When we turn to the religion of civilized men, it is important to observe that not every belief in survival of bodily death is a religious belief. The doctrine might be held as a mere fact, which could be supported by evidence but had no connexion with any spiritual end of human aspiration and no relation with worship. The belief in immortality becomes a part of the philosophy of religion when it is directly connected with belief in God.

Religious thought has been engaged for the past two centuries in a struggle with materialism, and with the more plausible surrogates for materialism which go under the name of " naturalism." The primary purpose of this struggle has been to vindicate the spiritual character of Reality and the right to believe in God ; but the same warfare has been waged round the individual self and in connexion with the right to believe in his immortality. Here the difficulty for religious thought appeared more immediately pressing than in relation with belief in God, for it seemed clear that the human consciousness was dependent on the bodily organism, and every advance in physiology and psychology made this dependence more definite. There was thus apparent ground for the theory of T. H. Huxley and many Victorian philosophers that consciousness was a mere " epiphenomenon," a kind of temporary shadow cast by the brain. The development of reflection since the time of Huxley has brought into clear light the complexity of the problem of the relation of mind and body, and the fact that it constitutes one of the central enigmas of thought, hitherto an insoluble one. The Epiphenomenal theory has lost ground with serious thinkers and the prevailing views are forms either of Parallelism or Interactionism, i.e. that the two series, mental and physical, run on side by side without affecting each other, or that consciousness and the body act upon each other, neither being the creation of the other. To this development we must now add the consequences which seem to follow from the new departures in physical theory. So far as their general effect can be estimated, they lend support to the view that consciousness is fundamental in the universe and cannot be derived from or wholly dependent upon the material order. There is, we may suggest, a sharp change of direction in scientific thought. Whereas up to the end of the nineteenth century, on the whole, it lent support to the prejudice of common sense that consciousness is the product of matter, it tends now to support the opposite view.

The conceptions of immortality which have proved acceptable to religious philosophers fall roughly into two classes—inherent immortality and conditional immortality. According to the former, the human self is naturally immortal and imperishable ; according to the latter it has no immortality in its own right but may attain immortality. The natural

immortality of the soul was the doctrine which the Christian Church adopted and modified. The arguments of Plato, including the famous one based upon the soul's " simplicity," were all directed towards establishing the inherent immortality of the soul. Aristotle, though he did not accept the doctrine of individual immortality, held that the " creative reason " in man was Divine and imperishable. The anticipations of the Gospel in Plato were a favourite theme of the early defenders of Christianity, and it was natural that they should assume that the Platonic doctrine was, in essence, the same as the Christian belief in the resurrection of the body. Thus it has come about that the prevailing opinion in Christian theology has been that every rational self is immortal. Recently, however, the question has been asked whether the New Testament does in fact teach the natural immortality of all souls, and whether perhaps there is not a striking difference between the Platonic conception and that of primitive Christianity. The Philosophy of Religion is not concerned with the discussion of the historical question, but it must consider the meaning of the alternative view which, it is said, the New Testament presents.

The theory of conditional immortality may be summed up by saying that it takes literally the utterance of St. Paul, " the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life." The immortality of the self depends upon the action and choice of the self. Those who definitely and irrevocably range themselves with the lower values, the things that perish, share the mortality of that which occupied their attention and their thought. They come to an end. Those who choose the higher values, the things that are eternal, receive the gift of immortality, " the wages of going on." It is implied in this second view that there is no conclusive reason for holding that every rational being is immortal. This, however, would be disputed by some philosophies at the present time. Dr. McTaggart may serve as an instance of the persistence of the belief that human immortality can be proved on metaphysical grounds.

Few contemporary thinkers would admit that the Platonic or any other arguments for immortality are conclusive, and there would be a large measure of agreement that belief in immortality must be based upon belief in God ; the best reason for holding it is that it is implied in the Theistic view of the world. Whether this is so or not is a matter of controversy ; but it may be contended that any religious, and certainly any Theistic, theory of the nature of Reality must hold that there is a " conservation of values." It would appear to be very difficult to hold both that all values are conserved and that all finite persons perish, for the values which we know are all intimately related with personal life, and, so far as we are aware, can have no existence divorced from personal experience. This consideration would support the conditional view of immortality if, as seems probable, there are some selves which do not attain that degree of development which would justify us in concluding that a rational universe, in the sense of one which produced and preserved the highest sum of value, would be one in which they must continue to be.

The idea of immortality involves a great number of subsidiary ideas which are not without obscurity. For example, the problem of personal

identity is one which we should have to discuss in any complete treatment of the subject. Of still wider scope is the question whether the immortal life of those who have passed beyond death is a condition of progress towards a fulfilment, and whether the End towards which they aspire, the vision of God or the complete union with Him, is one which can be supposed to be compatible with individual existence in any sense. These discussions we must forbear to enter upon, but we must note that the fact that we may be able to find no satisfactory conclusion concerning them has little or no bearing on the validity of belief in immortality. Religion itself, when it has attained its highest point of spiritual insight, has refrained from any definite concept or image in this matter, and has been content to say, " Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither hath it entered into the heart of man." We must repeat that there would be no value for spiritual religion in the conviction that life persists after bodily death, unless that life were the provision of new opportunities for the spirit in its quest for God.

All the great religions of the world, with the possible exception of Confucianism, profess to be founded upon a revelation. The record of the revelation is frequently contained in sacred writings, and the scriptures are themselves generally regarded as authoritative and as being part of the revelation. The primary source, however, of revelation is inspired persons ; in Christianity and Mohammedanism the revelation culminates in the person of the Founder of the religion, whose teaching is regarded as the highest source of the knowledge of God. The philosophy of religion is not concerned with the critical and historical enquiries which elucidate the origin of the written sources and the circumstances in which they were composed. But it is concerned with the general idea of revelation, with the possible meanings of the idea, and with the reasons which may be alleged for accepting a revelation as authentic. Revelation is an essential conception for religion. There is no living religion which is, in its own view, the mere product of human reflection ; all rest upon the supposed self-disclosure of the Divine. Nor can the most enlightened Theism dispense with the belief, since it would be a strange paradox to believe in God and, at the same time, to hold that He had in no way disclosed Himself to His creatures.

Religious thought has been haunted by the distinction between reason and revelation. Sometimes these have been set in opposition to one another, but more frequently they have been regarded as separate but co-ordinate sources of Divine knowledge. The theology of the Middle Ages in Christendom spent much thought upon the relation of the authority of Revelation and the power of the unaided human reason. The differentiation between " natural " and " revealed " religion is still common. As we have already seen, according to Thomas Aquinas certain truths concerning God, such as His existence and His unity, are open to the mind of man apart from any revelation. They can be demonstrated by the speculative intellect : they have in fact been demonstrated by Aristotle. Certain other truths, such as the Incarnation, the Redemption of man, the creation of the world, and the Trinity could not have been discovered by human reason. Now that they are authoritatively revealed they can be shown to be not contrary to reason, though above it. Certain

consequences follow from this theory. In the first place, it seems that the substance of revelation is the same in kind as that of the knowledge which the intellect acquires by its own independent operation. Revelation, so to speak, steps in where reason leaves off, and supplements man's imperfect supply of truth about God with more truth about God. We should observe, however, that Aquinas recognizes another function in Revelation. It conveys the truths of " natural religion " to those who, from lack of faculty or opportunity, would not otherwise have known them. A conception practically identical with this was adopted by Bishop Butler, according to whom a part of the office of Revelation is to be a " republication of natural religion." In the second place, a consequence concerning the credentials of revelation must be pointed out. Since the essential nature of revelation is to add to what reason can tell us, the evidence of revelation cannot be its conformity to reason. Our ground for accepting it must be sought in " external evidence," in miracle and the fulfilment of prophecy.

Various causes have been at work to produce a movement away from this position in modern thought. The fact that the value of alleged miracles as evidence of revelation has been disputed, and the new critical conclusions concerning the nature of prophecy, have played an important part; but perhaps of even greater influence have been considerations drawn from the nature of religion itself and the study of the relation of authority to reason. The old division between natural and revealed religion has been questioned by many writers, notably by Professor Clement Webb, and the increasing knowledge of the phenomena of religious experience has reinforced the disposition to abandon the traditional standpoint. No part of the philosophy of religion has been so little investigated as the idea of revelation, and it must be confessed that we await a systematic treatment of the question. The main lines, however, of a modern view are taking shape. It would discard the assumption that the primary content of revelation is " propositional " knowledge, a collection of miraculously communicated statements about Divine things, or supernaturally imparted philosophy. It would return to the Biblical conception of revelation as the self-disclosure of God in human experience, in the lives of persons. The theological doctrines, and the literary expressions of this experience, are not themselves the revelation but are more or less adequate interpretations of it. In this way it would be impossible to divide religion into " natural " and " revealed," for all religion would be revealed, and at the same time all would be a proper object of rational criticism and valuation.

If this theory were adopted, it would be necessary to extend the notion of revelation beyond the borders of religion in its narrower sense and include all apprehension of spiritual values, moral and æsthetic as well as " religious," within its scope. The fact that much religion is mixed with superstition and positive evil would be explained on the ground that revelation, being always through persons, must be conditioned by the capacity of the persons; the human element in the revelation will always be present. The Divine light will always be distorted by the human medium; in One alone, according to Christian belief, has the human personality been the adequate instrument of the Divine self-revelation.

In this manner we might conceive the whole spiritual development of man as a revelation of God, and might proceed to trace the line which seemed to lead most directly to revelation's highest point. Some such argument would be used by a modern believer in a special and final revelation to justify his belief that there has appeared in history a disclosure of the Divine which has supreme authority. Into these domains it is scarcely the duty of the philosophy of religion to enter. It has fulfilled its task when it has taken us to their boundary and pointed to the territory which remains for the enquiring spirit to explore.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

The literature of the subject is immense, and a complete list of essential writings would cover the whole period of civilization—in the West at least from Plato onwards. The following books are given as examples of modern discussion which the reader will find useful.

A. S. PRINGLE PATTISON : *The Idea of God* (Oxford. 1917)

W. TEMPLE, Archbishop of York : *Mens Creatrix* (London. 1917)

A. CALDECOTT and H. R. MACKINTOSH : *Selections from the Literature of Theism* (3rd ed. Edinburgh. 1931)

C. C. J. WEBB : *Problems in the Relation of God and Man* (London. 1911)

J. ROYCE : *The World and the Individual* (New York. 1908)

W. JAMES : *Varieties of Religious Experience* (London, 1902 and 1920)

W. P. PATTERSON : *The Nature of Religion* (London. 1925)

W. R. INGE : *Faith and its Psychology* (London. 1909)

JAMES WARD : *The Realm of Ends* (Cambridge. 1911)

J. B. PRATT : *The Religious Consciousness* (New York. 1920)

W. R. MATTHEWS : *God in Christian Thought and Experience* (2nd ed. London. 1930)

God in Christian Experience (New York. 1931)

Studies in Christian Philosophy (London and New York. 1926)

A. E. TAYLOR : *The Faith of a Moralist* (London and New York. 1931)

G. GALLOWAY : *Philosophy of Religion* (Edinburgh. 1925)

THE PHYSICAL NATURE OF THE UNIVERSE

By

J. W. N. SULLIVAN

SYNOPSIS

This Article begins with the fundamental physical concepts introduced into science in the seventeenth century and describes their successful application to a description of a variety of phenomena. The discovery that these concepts were inadequate is then shown to have been brought about by the fruitless attempts to construct a mechanical theory of light, and by the experimental work that led to the dissociation of the atom into charges of electricity. Cognate discoveries, e.g. Radio-activity and X-rays, are also mentioned, and the electric theory of matter is developed. Further analysis of matter is shown to make a still more fundamental revision of scientific concepts necessary, and the reader is introduced to the modern Quantum Theory and to the new theories of atomic structure. It is shown that science has abandoned the ideal of explaining phenomena in terms of the *familiar*. The abstract character of the new theories is emphasised. The simultaneous analysis of space and time conceptions, culminating in the generalised Theory of Relativity, is also described, and an account is given of the Theory of the Finite Universe and of the recent attempts to extend still further the range of Relativity Theory.

THE PHYSICAL NATURE OF THE UNIVERSE

§ 1

The science of Physics has often been presented to an admiring world as the ideal science. It seems to fulfil all the criteria that make an enquiry truly scientific. Thus it rests upon observation and experiment; all its terms are clearly and exhaustively defined; and it reaches its conclusions by the impeccable method of strict mathematical reasoning. Compared with it all other sciences are, in one respect or another, imperfect. Thus astronomy, although it rests upon observation and employs mathematical reasoning, knows nothing of experiment. Men cannot experiment with the stars. The astronomer cannot handle and control his material with the facility that the physicist enjoys. The science of chemistry, although most firmly rooted in observation and experiment, makes comparatively little use of mathematical reasoning, and some of its fundamental concepts are not yet, perhaps, entirely free from obscurity. Biology is still more imperfect in these respects, while to call psychology, ethnology, economics, and so on, scientific is to express an aspiration rather than an achievement.

It would seem, therefore, that the best exhibition of the procedure of science and of its ultimate aim is to be found in the science of physics. Physics, one would suppose, is the study which presents the scientific method in all its purity. But when we study the descriptions of the various phenomena covered by the science of physics we do not find that any one ideal of " explanation " has been consistently adopted. Different kinds of explanations have been fashionable at different times. It would seem, on a broad survey of physics, that science does not yet know its own mind. Einstein's theory differs from Newton's not only in mapping more accurately the region of phenomena surveyed, but also in the fact that the map is constructed on entirely different principles. The atom of modern physical theory is not only a more complicated entity than the atom of the Victorians, but it is, as an intellectual construction, based on entirely different concepts. Physics began, and for a long time continued its career, by trying to explain phenomena in terms of familiar notions. Thus Newton's " forces " of attraction and repulsion had their psychological origin in our sensations of muscular effort—of pulling and pushing. The " electricity " of the early physicists was conceived as a " fluid." The " atom " of the Victorians was analogous to a tiny grain of sand. Modern physics has given up this criterion of familiarity. Many modern physical theories consist in establishing mathematical relations between entities which can be logically defined but which are quite unimaginable. It is for that reason that these modern theories cannot be " pictured."

Although physics has, in very important respects, profoundly changed, it remains mathematical in character. The primary entities used in physics are all capable of mathematical definition. Indeed, entities which cannot be defined mathematically would not be adopted in physics. We may say that physics is an adventure. It is an attempt to describe Nature, or certain parts of Nature, mathematically. In this respect the science of physics has always been self-consistent. But the primary entities to which the mathematical method is applied have changed out of all recognition of recent years. In that sense the science of physics has truly undergone a revolution. To understand this revolution we must understand the causes that have brought it about.

§ 2

Modern physical science is popularly supposed to have begun with Galileo. Scholars can show that there was considerable activity, of a kind that we should have to call scientific, before Galileo, but it remains true that Galileo was the first to isolate clearly certain fundamental scientific ideas, and the first to present them forcibly to the mind of his time. Galileo's greatest contribution to the scientific outlook consists in his analysis of the notion of motion. He claims to have been the first to realise that motion should be treated mathematically. Even so simple a matter as the acceleration of a falling body had never been stated clearly before. People realised, of course, that a falling stone moves faster and faster, but it does not seem to have occurred to them to measure the rate of increase of the motion. Galileo understood this perfectly. As he says : " It is requisite to know according to what proportion such an acceleration is made ; a problem that I believe was never understood hitherto by any philosopher or mathematician, although philosophers, and particularly the peripatetics, have writ great and entire volumes touching motion."

How did Galileo come to conceive the idea of treating motion mathematically ? How, in fact, did the notion ever arise that Nature is a vast mathematical machine ? The notion was not a part of the orthodox Aristotelianism of the Middle Ages, although it had occurred to certain exceptional minds, such as Roger Bacon and Leonardo da Vinci. It seems, as a matter of historical fact, that the notion came about as a result of certain philosophical speculations. There has always been a certain type of mind which is prone to find in mathematics the key to all things. Some of the manifestations of this general attitude are decidedly puerile, as we see when numerical interpretations are applied to the prophetic books of the Bible. The Great Pyramid imbecilities and some of the Shakespeare-Bacon controversies are manifestations of the same tendency. Even some very great men have been impressed by the mystical significance of mathematics. Thus, St. Augustine tells us that God created the world in six days, because six is the perfect number (being the sum and also the product of the first three numbers), and six would still be perfect even if the work of the six days did not exist. We may dismiss these notions as mere fantasies, but it cannot be denied that the general attitude played a great part in the creation of science. Kepler, one of the really great creators, thought that Nature is essentially mathematical. He did not

merely believe that phenomena could be described mathematically; he believed that the cause of the phenomena existing at all was that they fulfilled certain mathematical relations. Galileo did not go quite so far as this, but he did not always feel it necessary (he tells us) to verify his mathematical deductions by experiment. We realise now, of course, that a mathematical deduction must always be checked by experiment. This is not because mathematical reasoning is in itself imperfect, but because the premises from which we start may not correspond precisely to the facts. Newton recognised perfectly the issues involved when he said that the attempt to describe Nature mathematically is an adventure which may or may not be successful. If it breaks down (he said), we must try another method. The method has, as a matter of history, been enormously successful, but we must not assume that Nature is necessarily a mathematical machine, although it is quite likely that we shall be unable to understand it if it is not.

Galileo, as we have said, was the first to make the notion of motion clear and precise enough to be treated by mathematical methods. In doing so he also had to make a precise mathematical concept out of the notion of Time. It was his grasp of the mathematical nature of time (as a uniform flow) that led him to devise more accurate clocks.

Galileo believed that the really important properties of the world are those that can be mathematically defined. Thus, things differ from one another in size, shape, weight and motion, and all these four properties can be described mathematically. The whole world was built up, he believed, out of atoms, and these atoms had the four properties mentioned. Differences of motion are produced by *force*, but Galileo does not tell us what force is. He leaves the notion of force something of a mystery. His conclusion is that atoms, acted on by forces, produce, by their combinations, the whole material universe. And in this conclusion we have presented, in essence, the problem that was to dominate physics for nearly two hundred years. We may say, roughly, that the science of physics came about as an attempt to solve one great problem—to show that everything is explainable in terms of the motions of little particles. In these terms there had to be explained the different states of matter—solid, liquid, gas. There had to be explained the phenomena of heat, light, sound, magnetism and electricity, and a host of other phenomena, besides the great omnipresent fact of gravitation. As we shall see, the effort has been partly successful and has, in part, been definitely abandoned.

§ 3

The scientific adventure began, as we have seen, by assuming that the only properties possessed by the real world are such properties as size, shape, weight and motion—all of which can be described mathematically; that is to say, they are all quantitative properties. But we are aware of aspects of the world that are not obviously quantitative. We are aware, for instance, of colours, sounds, odours. What do these perceptions tell us about the real world? This question really belongs to philosophy, and different philosophers have given different answers to it. But science has generally assumed that these non-quantitative properties are not part of

the real, objective world. The point of view is well put by Galileo, who was the first to make it explicit. He says :

" But first I want to propose some examination of that which we call heat, whose generally accepted notion comes very far from the truth if my serious doubts be correct, inasmuch as it is supposed to be a true accident, affection and quality really residing in the thing which we perceive to be heated. Nevertheless, I say that indeed I feel myself impelled by the necessity, as soon as I conceive a piece of matter or corporeal substance, of conceiving that in its own nature it is bounded and figured in such and such a figure ; that in relation to others it is large or small ; that it is in this or that place, in this or that time ; that it is in motion or remains at rest ; that it touches or does not touch another body ; that it is single, few, or many ; in short by no imagination can a body be separated from such conditions : but that it must be white or red, bitter or sweet, sounding or mute, of a pleasant or unpleasant odour, I do not perceive my mind forced to acknowledge it necessarily accompanied by such conditions ; so if the senses were not the escorts, perhaps the reason or the imagination by itself would never have arrived at them. Hence, I think that these tastes, odours, colours, etc., on the side of the object in which they seem to exist, are nothing else than mere names, but hold their residence solely in the sensitive body ; so that if the animal were removed, every such quality would be abolished and annihilated. Nevertheless, as soon as we have imposed names on them, particular and different from those of the other primary and real properties, we induce ourselves to believe that they also exist just as truly and really as the latter. I think that by an illustration I can explain my meaning more clearly. I pass a hand, first over a marble statue, then over a living man. Concerning all the effects which come from the hand, as regards the hand itself, they are the same whether on the one or on the other object—that is, these primary properties, namely, motion and touch—but the animate body which suffers that operation feels various affections according to the different parts touched, and if the sole of the foot, the kneecap, or the armpit be touched, it perceives, besides the common sense of touch, another affection, to which we have given a particular name, calling it ' tickling.' Now this affection is all ours and does not belong to the hand at all. And it seems to me that they would greatly err who should say that the hand, besides motion and touch, possessed in itself another faculty different from those—namely, the tickling faculty ; so that tickling would be a property that exists in it. A piece of paper, or a feather, lightly rubbed on whatever part of our body you wish, performs, as regards itself, everywhere the same operation—that is, movement and touch ; but in us, if touched between the eyes, on the nose and under the nostrils, it excites an almost intolerable tickling, though elsewhere it can hardly be felt at all. Now this tickling is all in us and not in the feather, and if the animate and sensitive body be removed, it is nothing more than a mere name. Of precisely a similar and not greater existence do I believe these various qualities to be possessed, which are attributed to natural bodies, such as tastes, odours, colours and others.

But that external bodies, to excite in us these tastes, these odours, and these sounds, demand other than size, figure, number and slow or rapid motion, I do not believe; and I judge that, if the ears, the tongue and the nostrils were taken away, the figure, the numbers and the motions would, indeed, remain, but not the odours, nor the tastes, nor the sounds, which, without the living animal, I do not believe are anything else than names, just as tickling is precisely nothing but a name if the armpit and the nasal membrane be removed."

Thus, Galileo maintains that the characteristics of the real world are quantitative, and that our perceptions of qualitative differences are merely the way our minds react to certain quantitative differences. Thus, colours, as such, do not enter into the scientific scheme. Light is a wave-motion in the ether, and different colours correspond to different wave-lengths. It is the wave-length with which science is concerned. It is for this reason that a colour-blind man, or a man born blind, can understand perfectly the whole science of optics.

It is to be noted that in this passage Galileo assumes rather than proves that perceptions of weight, motion, etc., are of an altogether different kind from our perceptions of colour, sound, etc. He assumes that the first class of perceptions reveal to us an objective reality, whereas the second class does not. He imagines that weight, motion, etc., would still exist "without the living animal." This is an assumption with which many philosophers disagree. The distinction is important, however, as making clear the limits within which science is confined by its method. Science is confined to the quantitative features of the world, but there is no real reason to suppose that everything science neglects is less real than what it accepts.

§ 4

Although the theory that matter is composed of small indivisible particles was not given precise shape until the nineteenth century, the atomic theory, in a more or less vague form, had been held by many scientific men from the time of Galileo onwards. But the first man to make the theory quantitative, and therefore a valuable instrument in research, was Dalton, who applied it with considerable success to the phenomena of chemistry, thus giving that science a quantitative basis it had hitherto lacked.

Until quite recent times the atom was conceived as a small, hard and probably spherical piece of matter. The word "atom" is properly applied only to the ultimate particles of a chemical element. The ultimate particle of a chemical compound which is, of course, formed of the combination of two or more elements, is properly termed a "molecule." There are about ninety distinct chemical elements in the world, and every other substance is formed out of combinations of two or more of them. Thus, sodium is a chemical element and so is chlorine. But sodium chloride, which is common table salt, is a combination of sodium and chlorine. Water is a combination of hydrogen and oxygen. An ultimate particle of water—a molecule—consists of two atoms of hydrogen united

with one atom of oxygen. For the purpose of understanding these, and similar facts of chemistry it is not necessary to conceive the atom as being anything more than a small particle, analogous to a very tiny grain of sand. It is not necessary to attribute *structure* to the atom. Also, as we shall see, this simple conception suffices to explain many physical phenomena. It is only certain recent researches which make it necessary for us to regard the atom as an extremely complicated structure.

The three states of matter—solid, liquid, gaseous—are readily explained on the basis of the atomic theory. In a solid we may regard the atoms as being fixed in position. They may be able to vibrate about these fixed positions, but they have very little freedom to wander about. For this reason a solid preserves its shape. In a liquid the atoms have more freedom of movement; they can slide about over one another. Hence a liquid easily takes the shape of any vessel into which it is put. Nevertheless, the atoms of a liquid are sufficiently closely bound together to ensure that the liquid shall remain of the same *volume* into whatever vessel it may be put. In a gas, however, the atoms have achieved their maximum degree of freedom. A gas consists of a number of atoms, or molecules, flying about in all directions with all velocities. There is no natural limit either to the size or the shape of a gas. A gas simply expands until it fills whatever vessel contains it. Thus, the differences, in broad outline, of the three states of matter are readily explained by the atomic theory.

The agent that brings about the change from the solid to the liquid and from the liquid to the gaseous is heat. It follows, on this theory, that heat increases the atomic and molecular motions of bodies. It is easy to go further and to assume that heat actually consists of these motions. This theory, which is now the accepted theory, was probably held by Galileo, and was certainly held by Newton, Hooke, Boyle and others. But during the eighteenth century this theory—that heat is a mode of motion—fell into disrepute, and was replaced by the *caloric* theory of heat. According to this theory, heat is a fluid, called "caloric," whose union with bodies raises their temperature. This theory was always unsatisfactory. It was so unsatisfactory, in fact, that men of science were always tinkering with it in order to meet various objections. Thus, the original form of the caloric theory explained the fact that bodies expand on being heated by saying that the particles of caloric that enter into the body repel one another and thus stretch the body out. But it was pointed out that the expansion rule was not universal. Thus, water expands on *freezing*. How is this to be explained? The calorists explained it by modifying their original assumption. They now said that caloric combines *chemically* with the body. Now the volume that results from a chemical combination cannot be predicted. Thus the calorists got out of the difficulty by saying that anything might happen. This is unsatisfactory. A scientific theory that only lives by undergoing successive arbitrary modifications must be regarded with suspicion.

But the death-blow to the caloric theory was given by Count Rumford in 1798. While engaged in boring brass cannon at the military arsenal at Munich, he found that the metallic chips thrown off were very hot. This heat was obviously produced by friction, and he undertook experiments to find out whether there was any limit to the amount of heat that could

be produced in this way. He found no limit. It appeared that heat could be generated by friction inexhaustibly. This result was sufficient to disprove the caloric theory. As Rumford said : " Anything which any *insulated* body or system of bodies can continue to furnish without *limitation* cannot possibly be a *material substance*." The only thing that can be generated indefinitely in this way, Rumford concluded, is motion. He decided, therefore, that heat is a mode of motion. Numerous other experiments confirmed this conclusion, and it is now universally accepted that the heat of a body is due to the motion of its constituent molecules.

A very interesting result can be deduced from this theory. If heat is a manifestation of the molecular motions of a body, it follows that, if the molecular motions cease, the body possesses no heat at all. We are accustomed to suppose that a body can get colder and colder, just as it can get hotter and hotter. But if heat depends on molecular motions, then, in the absence of those motions, there can be no heat. A body in this state is said to be at the absolute zero of temperature. This temperature, it can be shown, is the same for all bodies, and theoretical considerations enable us to say what this temperature is. Measured on the centigrade scale, the absolute zero is 273° below zero, the ordinary centigrade zero being, of course, the temperature of melting ice. Thus, the absolute zero of temperature is 273° below the temperature of melting ice, or 373° below the temperature of boiling water, since water boils at 100° on the centigrade scale. The absolute zero of temperature can be very nearly attained by modern laboratory methods. Temperatures of about one degree above the absolute zero have been reached. At such temperatures all known gases become solid, as we should expect, since their molecular motions have almost entirely ceased.

The range of temperature in the universe extends from the absolute zero to the temperature of the central portions of the stars. This latter temperature is estimated to be many millions of degrees. The great bulk of the matter in the universe is, from our point of view, exceedingly hot. It is only the very cold parts of the universe, those where the temperature is very near to the absolute zero, that can support life.

The fact that the molecules of a body are normally in movement can be demonstrated by what is called " The Brownian Movement." In the year 1827 an English botanist named Brown observed that very small particles suspended in water were in a state of constant agitation. For many years this discovery attracted no particular attention ; it was put down to inequalities of temperature or to vibration. But a series of careful experiments finally showed that the effect really was remarkable and could not be accounted for by any ordinary means. The explanation was given by Einstein. He showed that the phenomenon was produced by the molecular movements of the water. The small particles, suspended in the water, must be perpetually struck by the moving molecules of water. As the molecules move indiscriminately in all directions, these collisions would usually cancel out. But it would sometimes happen that more molecules would strike the particle on one side than on another, and thus knock the particle a little forward. The next instant the direction of maximum impact would be changed. And thus we should obtain the incessant and highly irregular movements noticed by Brown. When Einstein's

theory was experimentally checked, it was found to be fully confirmed. Thus, we may say that the Brownian Movement is a direct revelation of molecular movements.

Further support to the doctrine of molecular movements is given by the success of the Kinetic Theory of Gases. According to this theory a gas consists of a number of molecules flying about in all directions. As the temperature of the gas increases, the velocities of the molecules increase. On the basis of this theory the properties of gases can be worked out and are found to be in accordance with the experimental evidence. Here is another proof, therefore, of the truth of molecular motions.

§ 5

We have seen that the notion that matter is composed of small ultimate particles is sufficient to explain a fair range of phenomena. But, in the course of these explanations, the notion of the atom has not been made very precise. It has not been necessary to make it so. It has been sufficient to imagine the atom, vaguely, as a small, hard and possibly spherical body. But this small body has been supposed to be of uniform constitution throughout. We have not supposed that it possessed a *structure*. A whole new realm of thought, which science cannot yet fully survey, was thrown open when it was found that this simple conception was inadequate.

The first indication that atoms were not the simple things they had been taken to be came with the discovery of the Periodic Table of the Elements. Atoms, it must be remembered, were known to be of different weights. All atoms of the same element were of the same weight, but the atoms of different elements differed in their weights. The chemists, by laborious and accurate experiments, had determined the relative weights of different kinds of atoms. Thus, it was known that an atom of oxygen weighed sixteen times as much as an atom of hydrogen. The elements could be arranged in the order of their atomic weights, beginning with hydrogen, the lightest of the elements, and ending with uranium, the heaviest known element. When the elements were arranged in this way it was found that they fell into more or less well-defined groups. A group of heavy atoms would be found to repeat, fairly closely, the chemical and physical properties of a group of lighter atoms. This sort of repetition ran all through the table. At regular intervals atoms appeared which seemed to be, judging from their properties, more complicated versions of atoms which had appeared earlier in the table. The physical and chemical properties that characterised any given atom occurred periodically at intervals throughout the table. This similarity of properties suggested a similarity of structure. It began to be suspected that atoms were not merely simple particles, but entities possessed of a more or less complicated structure. Another twenty-five years was to elapse, however, before this surmise received experimental justification.

Between the years 1895 and 1900 a series of extraordinary experiments showed definitely that the atom is not a simple entity. The first group of these experiments was concerned with the electric discharge in a vacuum

tube. If two metallic plates are fixed inside the two ends of a glass tube which has been exhausted of air and these two plates are then connected to a source of electricity, a somewhat complex phenomenon occurs in the tube. The chief part of the phenomenon, however, consists in a stream of something coming from the negatively electrified metal plate. It can be shown that this stream travels in straight lines, for if an obstacle be placed in its path a clearly-defined shadow is thrown on the far end of the glass tube. If a magnet be brought near the tube, the direction of the stream is deflected. It was proved that the rays constituting the stream actually carry negative electricity with them and, further, that they possess the extraordinary property of being able to pass through thin sheets of metal. In 1897 J. J. Thomson put forward the theory that these rays consisted of electrically charged particles, but that the particles, as their penetrative power proved, were much smaller than ordinary atoms. The next step was to determine the precise size of these little particles. This was done, with the extraordinary result that they were found to be nearly two thousand times smaller than the lightest known atom—namely, the hydrogen atom. These little electrified particles were called " electrons." Further experiments showed that, wherever and however they were obtained, all electrons were exactly alike. Here, then, it was conjectured, were the real foundation-stones of the material universe. The theory came into being that all material atoms are composed of electrons.

But in the meantime a very interesting discovery had been made respecting the nature of these electrons. We have described them as " electrified particles." Now J. J. Thomson had shown, some years before, that when a body is charged with electricity, that body behaves as if its mass were increased. It is as if the electric charge has a mass of its own. How much of the mass of an electron is due to its electric charge ? This question could not be answered until the mass and the electric charge of an electron could be measured separately. This was finally done and the result was bewildering. It turned out that the *whole* of the mass of an electron was due to its electric charge ! The electron was nothing but electricity. There was no " ordinary matter " there at all. The theory that matter is composed of electrons, therefore, really meant that matter is built up out of " disembodied charges of electricity." The theory seemed to make the whole world of matter completely unsubstantial. The theory could only be assimilated by making our notion of " matter " somewhat more abstract. We had to get rid of the notion of " substance " and replace it by the notion of " behaviour." Anything that behaved like matter, anything, in particular, that manifested the cardinal property of matter—namely, inertia—was fitted to play the rôle of matter. Electrons possess all the necessary properties. The fact that they are called " electric charges " instead of " material particles," only means that they possess other properties in addition.

It is evident, however, that electrons, by themselves, are not sufficient to build up atoms of matter. Atoms are electrically neutral, whereas every electron is charged with negative electricity. Further, electrons, all being negatively electrified, repel one another and an assemblage of them could not be stable. We must assume, therefore, that the electrons in an atom are somehow associated with a charge of positive electricity. Such a

combination could be stable, and would also account for the fact that an atom is electrically neutral.[1]

The next step was to determine the way in which these constituents are arranged in the atom. After one or two unsuccessful attempts had been made, Sir Ernest Rutherford suggested an arrangement which has had a great measure of success. This was the famous theory of the atom as resembling a "miniature solar system." The positive charge was supposed to be located at the centre of the atom, while the negative electrons, like so many planets, circulated round it. In every case the central positive charge is just sufficient to counterbalance, electrically, the sum of the electrons circulating round it. The differences between different kinds of atoms were explained by differences in structure. Thus, a hydrogen atom consists of a positively charged nucleus with one electron circulating round it. The next atom in the table of the elements—helium—has two circulating electrons. The next atom has three, and so on, until we reach uranium, which has ninety-two circulating electrons.

Such is, in broad outline, Rutherford's theory of the atom, although, when worked out in detail, various complications arise. Thus, it was found that the positively charged nucleus must be given a complex structure, except in the case of the hydrogen atom. The nucleus of the hydrogen atom is taken as the unit of positive charge, and is called a "proton." The nucleus of the helium atom, however, does not consist of two protons, but of four protons combined in some way with two electrons. The nuclei of other atoms are still more complicated. Also, the orbits of the circulating electrons in an atom cannot be assumed to be simple circles. Some of them are very markedly elliptical. Further, they do not all lie in the same plane.

This model of the atom, although well confirmed by experiment, was not at all satisfactory to the mathematicians. According to the accepted laws of electrodynamics, which had been thoroughly well confirmed over a wide range of phenomena, such an atom could not be stable. The revolving electrons, it could be shown by mathematical calculations based on the accepted laws, would necessarily radiate energy and approach ever more closely to the nucleus. Finally, they would fall into the nucleus and the whole atom would vanish in a flash of radiation. On the basis of the accepted laws of nature, therefore, such an atom was impossible. It so happened, however, that a new and very strange theory of radiation had been proposed by Max Planck some years before. He had come to the conclusion that the heat radiated from a hot body was not radiated in a continuous manner, but in little jerks, or *quanta*. Similarly, the heat falling on a body was not absorbed continuously. Planck imagined that this curious effect was due to some sort of resonating apparatus in the atoms

[1] If a piece of glass be rubbed by a piece of vulcanised india-rubber a certain degree of force is required to separate them and, if not too far apart, they are found to attract one another. They have been electrified by friction. In general, any two bodies can be made to exhibit the same phenomena. But it will be found that one of these bodies will repel the glass and attract the rubber, and that the other will repel the rubber and attract the glass. Hence there are two kinds of electricity. They are called positive and negative. Like charges (*i.e.* both positive or negative) repel one another. Unlike charges attract one another.

of bodies, but later developments of the theory showed that the effect was not brought about in that way at all, but was a revelation of the actual nature of radiant energy. Radiant energy is, in its very nature, atomic. This conclusion applies to all forms of radiant energy—heat, light, electricity, X-rays and so on.

It occurred to a brilliant young Danish physicist, Niels Bohr, that this theory, with certain modifications, could be applied to the atom. The application turned out to be very successful. It not only accounted for the stability of the atom, but it also accounted for certain well-known experimental results which had never previously been explained. In making this application it was necessary, of course, entirely to abandon the old laws of radiation. It might be thought that this was merely an instance of the ordinary process of scientific advancement—merely the replacing of an old theory by a new and more comprehensive theory. But the curious and disconcerting fact is that the old theory of radiation cannot be completely abandoned. According to the old theory, radiant energy spreads out from its source in the form of waves. According to the new theory—the Quantum Theory—it spreads out like a flight of bullets. The two theories cannot be reconciled with one another, and yet there is very strong experimental evidence for both. Certain of the phenomena connected with the propagation of light have not yet been explained by the quantum theory, whereas the old wave-theory of radiation explains them perfectly well. On the other hand, there is a large class of phenomena, such as the liberation of electrons from metals under the impact of X-rays, that seems to be explainable only on the principles of the quantum theory. Amongst these phenomena we must include the processes that go on inside an atom.

The account we have so far given of the atom is more or less picturable. We have presented the electron as being something like a very small particle moving at a determinate speed round orbits of a determinate shape. This picturability is, however, largely illusory, as we find if we examine the picture in more detail. There is no need to make this examination, however, for every picturable element in the theory has now been given up.

The theory of the atom that we have outlined was first found to be seriously insufficient in 1925, and since that date an entirely different theory has been developed. This theory is, however, purely mathematical. The fundamental entities assumed by it are no longer picturable at all. The electron, for instance, on this theory is described not as a particle but as a system of waves. These waves are located within what is called a "configuration space." This configuration space is certainly not ordinary physical space, for the reason that each electron requires a three-dimensional configuration space to itself. Thus, two electrons require a space of six dimensions in which to exist; three electrons require a nine-dimensional space; and so on. It is evident, therefore, that the configuration space is not real space, and in this sense the wave system that represents an electron is a mere mathematical device and not a description of a physical reality. The justification of the theory is that it leads to calculated results which are confirmed by experiment. These results cannot be deduced from the older theory.

Since the resolution of an electron into waves seems to be merely a

mathematical device, it is distinctly baffling to find that there is experimental evidence for it. A number of experiments on the refraction and reflection of electrons show that they behave like waves. No satisfactory interpretation of these results has yet been given. They can hardly be taken as confirmatory of the mathematical theory, for that theory is not concerned with physical waves. And yet it is difficult to suppose that such results are entirely unconnected with the theory. All that we are justified in saying is that the mathematical analysis of an electron into waves does correspond to certain essential characteristics of the electron, but precisely how far that correspondence extends is a matter for future investigation. In the meantime it is safest to assume that all we know about the electron is its mathematical specification, and that we are not yet in a position to say what is the physical reality that obeys that specification.

The general theory of the atom as a structure of protons and electrons receives striking experimental confirmation from the phenomena of radio-activity. Radium, as is well known, shoots out two kinds of particles, called α-particles and β-particles. The nature of these particles is known. The β-particles are simple electrons. The α-particles are much more massive and much more complicated. An α-particle is, indeed, identical with the nucleus of a helium atom which, as we have already seen, is composed of four protons united with two electrons. Both α and β particles are shot out from the highly complicated nucleus of the radium atom. They testify to the actual disintegration of this atom. Each step in the disintegration of a radio-active substance (of which about forty are known) changes it into another element. Thus, radium passes through a whole series of transformations until it finally settles down as lead. The phenomenon of radio-activity is one proof, amongst many, that atoms are complex structures.

We have seen that the atomic theory of matter has changed out of all recognition since the days of Galileo. The scientific notion of matter has become steadily more and more abstract, until at present science can tell us nothing about it but its mathematical specification. The old familiar conception of an enduring substance has been replaced by a collection of mathematical symbols. We shall find that this process of abstraction is typical of modern physics.

§ 6

Besides the problem of the constitution of matter, the science of physics was early concerned with the nature of certain " influences," such as heat, light, sound, magnetism and electricity. Heat, as we have seen, was explained as the motion of little particles, and it was suspected that the other influences would turn out to be explicable as motions of some medium or other. In the case of sound the explanation was speedily forthcoming. Sound, it was shown, was due to waves set up in the air by a vibrating body. The waves travel through the air as alternate pulses of condensation and rarefaction. The bigger the swing of the air particles the louder the sound, and the more rapid the swing of the particles the higher the sound. This theory was worked out in detail, with the result

that the explanation of sound in terms of the movements of little particles was a complete success. But it was obvious that some new concept was required in order to explain light. Light is obviously not transmitted by the atmosphere.

If a vibrating electric bell be put in a glass jar and the jar exhausted of air, the sound of the bell becomes feebler and feebler until it becomes altogether inaudible. But we continue to *see* the bell vibrating as vigorously as ever. Further, light reaches us from the stars and we know that our atmosphere ceases to exist at a comparatively short distance above the surface of the earth. If light is due to motion in a medium, therefore, it must be a medium which extends as far as the farthest star.

An early theory, adopted by Newton, supposed that light was due to little corpuscles entering the eye after being shot out by the luminous body. In this way he explained the fact that light is propagated in straight lines. But he did not lay any great stress on this theory. He considered, also, the theory that light consists of waves in some subtle medium, or "ether," filling all space, although, if light is a wave motion, he thought it ought to bend round corners, as sound does. This difficulty could only be overcome by supposing that the light-waves are exceedingly minute. It could then be shown that the degree of bending should also be exceedingly small. The wave theory, in the hands of Huygens, showed itself a better instrument of research than the corpuscular theory, and its study was prosecuted with vigour.

The great problem presented by the wave theory of light was to determine the mechanical properties of the medium that conveys these waves. The fact that light is propagated with a definite velocity was established by the Danish astronomer, Römer, in 1676. He had observed that the satellites of Jupiter were sometimes irregular in their motions, and he had noticed that these irregularities depended on whether the earth was approaching Jupiter or receding from it. The brilliant idea occurred to him that, if light has a finite velocity of travel, it would take less time to meet the approaching earth than to overtake the receding earth. The velocity of light he deduced from his observations was astonishingly close to the value of 186,000 miles per second, which has since been determined by refined terrestrial experiments. The questions then arose : What are the properties of the medium that conveys light at this speed, and what is the nature of the waves ?

For some time the development of the theory of the ether was hindered by the assumption that light-waves, like sound-waves, are longitudinal—that is, consist in a to-and-fro motion in the direction of propagation. Certain experiments finally made it clear that this assumption cannot be correct, and that light-waves must be regarded as transverse—that is, as executed at right-angles to the direction of propagation, as occurs when a rope fixed at one end is shaken from the free end. When this fact was established the mathematicians were free to develop the theory of a medium that would support such vibrations. For years some of the best mathematicians in Europe devoted their attention to this problem. A great variety of ethers were worked out. They grew more and more complicated, and miracles of mathematical ingenuity were performed. But nobody succeeded in constructing a perfectly satisfactory ether. Nevertheless, the

nineteenth century cherished an almost passionate belief in the existence of the ether. In spite of all failures, the idea that the propagation of light was susceptible of a purely mechanical explanation became an article of faith. Men like Lord Kelvin stated that the ether was the most real thing in our experience and its existence the most indubitable of truths. Yet it continued to elude satisfactory mathematical specification.

The death-blow to the mechanical ether was given by the publication of Maxwell's electromagnetic theory of light, although nobody—not even Maxwell himself—realised that fact at the time. Maxwell's theory was based on the ideas of Faraday, who was the first to regard the space surrounding an electrified body as a seat of electric force. The older theory regarded electricity, vaguely, as a " fluid " confined to the surface of electrified bodies. The attraction or repulsion between electrified bodies was explained as an " action at a distance " phenomenon. The force between electrified bodies was supposed to be exerted instantaneously across the space separating them. Faraday approached the whole subject from an entirely different point of view. He regarded the electric charges as setting up a state of strain in the space surrounding them, and he regarded the forces of attraction or repulsion as being due to this state of strain. Maxwell adopted this theory and developed it mathematically. As a result of this development, he was led to declare that electromagnetic forces are propagated through space with the speed of light. Further, his calculations showed that these forces must travel in the form of waves very analogous to light-waves. Maxwell did not hesitate to deduce that light-waves actually are electromagnetic waves, that light is an electromagnetic phenomenon. Thus was announced the greatest physical discovery of the nineteenth century.

Experimental confirmation of Maxwell's theory was not forthcoming for twenty years. It was not until 1886 that Hertz, by a wonderful series of experiments, obtained full confirmation of the Maxwellian theory. He designed an apparatus for producing an oscillating electric charge and found that he could produce electric sparks in a circuit at the other end of the room, although the two pieces of apparatus were not physically connected in any way. He also measured the velocity of propagation of these effects, and found that they passed over the intervening space with the speed of light. Further, he showed that they behaved like waves, strictly analogous to light-waves. He reflected them from the walls of his room and refracted them through a large prism of hard pitch. Further experiments by other investigators showed still more resemblances, and Maxwell's electromagnetic theory of light was definitely established. The practical application of this discovery resulted in wireless telegraphy and telephony.

But the immediate scientific interest of Maxwell's theory lay in the light it threw upon the problem of the ether. All etheric vibrations, it was now understood, obeyed Maxwell's equations. The problem, therefore, was to give the ether the mechanical properties that would be compatible with Maxwell's equations. Ethers of an altogether incredible complexity arose in obedience to this demand. They were so complex that it is doubtful, even supposing one of them to have been successful, whether it would have been accepted. It would so obviously have been much more a *tour de force* than a revelation of the workings of nature. But, as

it happened, none of these ethers was successful. Scientific men began to realise that the explanation of all natural processes in mechanical terms was an impossible ideal. It became evident that henceforth certain concepts, other than mechanical concepts, would have to be ranked as fundamental for the science of physics. Electricity became a fundamental concept. No explanation of it in other terms seemed to be possible ; it had to be accepted as an ultimate fact of nature. Indeed, the inverse problem arose : Can mechanical processes be explained in terms of electricity ?

Although it became clear that a satisfactory description of the mechanism of the ether could not be given, the notion of an ether was not yet abandoned. The fact that light and electromagnetic processes in general are propagated through space with a finite velocity seemed to make the notion of a medium indispensable. And certain general questions could be asked about this medium, even although its constitution was unknown. The most important question was concerned with the relation between moving matter and the ether. Is the ether everywhere stationary, or does moving matter carry the ether along with it ? If the ether is everywhere stationary, then can the motion of the earth through it be detected ? A famous experiment, which has since been several times repeated, was undertaken by Michelson in 1881 to determine whether the earth moved through a stationary ether or whether it carried the ether in its neighbourhood along with it. The principle of the experiment is simple. Two equal arms are placed at right-angles and from the point of intersection a ray of light is passed along each arm and reflected back to the point of intersection. One arm points in the direction of the earth's motion in its orbit. The other arm is, of course, at right-angles to this direction. If the earth is travelling through the ether we should not expect the two rays of light to get back to the point of intersection at the same time. For if the earth and the ether are moving relatively to one another, the position would be analogous to that of two equally powerful swimmers, one of whom swims a certain distance up-stream and then down, while the other swims that same distance across stream and then back again. We know that, in this case, the second swimmer will make the faster time. Similarly, the light which travels along the arm at right-angles to the direction of the earth's motion through the ether should make the faster time. Nevertheless, the two rays of light arrived back at the point of intersection at the same moment. This experiment has been several times repeated. The apparatus has been turned at all angles, the experiment has been tried at various times of the year and at various heights above the earth's surface. Moreover, the apparatus is extremely sensitive, and can measure one-hundredth part of the effect to be expected if the ether is stationary. In every case the result is null.

Michelson concluded that the earth carries the ether in its neighbourhood along with it. But this conclusion entirely conflicts not only with other well-attested experiments, but also with certain astronomical observations of great weight and accuracy. In this dilemma it occurred to FitzGerald and also to Lorentz that the theory of a stationary ether could be preserved, in spite of Michelson's experiment, if we suppose that every body in its motion through the ether undergoes a certain contraction. If the arm of Michelson's apparatus which points in the direction of the

earth's motion is contracted in a certain ratio, thus making the light-path shorter, the null result of Michelson's experiment can be explained. Numerous experiments were made to test this new idea, but no direct evidence for it was forthcoming. Lorentz showed, however, that the postulated contraction fitted in with the electromagnetic equations.

This was the state of affairs when Einstein published his *Restricted Principle of Relativity* in 1905. He there laid it down as a fundamental principle that the velocity of light, whether measured from a system in motion or a system at rest, has the same value. This is obviously a very extraordinary principle. We are required to believe that a ray of light overtakes a moving system (whether the system is moving towards or away from the light) at the same rate at which it overtakes a system at rest. How can this be possible ? We begin to see that the principle is not a mere contradiction in terms if we reflect that a velocity is the ratio of two measurements, a measurement of length and a measurement of time. It is evident that if measurements made from two systems in relative motion reach the same value for the velocity of light, then something must have happened to the measuring instruments. This is, in essence, what Einstein asserts. He says that length and time-lapse are relative conceptions—they vary with the state of motion of the observer. The distance between two events (say, two flashes of light) is not the same for observers who are moving relatively to one another. Nor is the time-lapse between these events the same for all observers. A man carries, as it were, his own particular space and time about with him. The behaviour of his instruments, his measuring rods and clocks, varies with his motion. From the point of view of a stationary observer the moving observer's measuring rod is contracted and his clock is going slow. We cannot speak of the " stationary " standard of measurement, however, and say that it should be preferred. For our use of the word " stationary " is quite arbitrary. There is no experiment whatever which will show an observer whether he is *absolutely* at rest. All systems in uniform relative motion are on exactly the same footing. What we have called the moving observer may quite well suppose himself to be at rest, and then the erstwhile stationary observer becomes the moving observer. And his measuring rod is contracted and his clock is going slow, judged from the point of view of the other observer. In fact, the same judgment is made about his measuring instruments that he makes about the other observer's measuring instruments.

Each observer, as we have said, carries his own space and time about with him. All observers who share the same motion make the same space and time measurements. Observers whose motions differ make different space and time measurements. But these variations in measurement are not, of course, arbitrary. They are connected together by the fact that all observers reach the same value for the velocity of light—namely, 186,000 miles per second. From this fact we can find the precise formula according to which space and time measurements vary with motion. It is hardly necessary to say that, by referring to an " observer," we do not imply that there is anything " subjective " or " psychological " about this theory of relativity. Instead of " observer " we could substitute the phrase " automatic measuring apparatus " without affecting the validity of any of our conclusions.

We have said that observers in different states of motion do not find the same values for the distance separating two events, or for the time-lapse separating two events. Now, all events exist both in time and in space. No event exists at no time at all, and no event exists nowhere. The complete description of an event involves both the specification of the place where it occurred and also the time when it occurred. Between any two events, therefore, there is a spatio-temporal relation—that is, a relation comprising so much of distance and so much of time. If the time-lapse between two events happens to be zero, the events are said to be simultaneous. If the distance is zero, then, of course, they occur at the same place. Since the time measurements as well as the space measurements of an observer vary with his motion, it follows that two events which are simultaneous for one observer need not be simultaneous for another observer. Simultaneity is a relative concept. This follows, of course, from the fact that time itself is a relative concept. Yet, although different observers estimate quite differently both the space and the time separating two events, there is, nevertheless, a certain relation between these events on which they would all be agreed. If any given observer takes his space and time measurements referring to any particular pair of events and combines these measurements in a certain way, he will get a certain result. If another observer combines *his* measurements for the same pair of events in the same way, he will get the same result. The manner in which the measurements have to be combined is very simple. The time measurement has to be subtracted from the space measurement—after suitable units of time and space have been chosen. But the precise technique of the process is of no present importance. The important fact is that there exists a relation between any pair of events which is the same for all observers. This relation, it is obvious, refers to something more fundamental than either space or time taken separately. It refers to something that does not vary with the motion of the observer. What is this something?

The correct interpretation of the fact that there is an invariant relation between any two events was given by Minkowski. He showed that this relation (which is called the *interval*) was, in its mathematical expression, analogous to the mathematical expression for a *distance*. He suggested, therefore, that the interval is a distance of some kind. But, if the interval is to be regarded as a distance, it must be regarded as a distance in a four-dimensional continuum. Minkowski did not hesitate to take this step. The actual universe in which events exist is, he asserted, a four-dimensional universe. Our minds split up this universe into three dimensions of space and one dimension of time. Different observers, as we have seen, split up the universe differently. They take different cross-sections, as it were, of the four-dimensional reality. Therefore, they have different space and time measurements. Only those quantities which refer directly to the four-dimensional reality itself are the same for all observers. Of such quantities the interval is one.

The fact that the interval could be regarded as a distance in a four-dimensional continuum immediately illuminated the whole theory of relativity. For it showed that the geometry that must be applied to the universe was not, as had always been supposed, Euclidean geometry. The reader is probably familiar with the fact that during the last hundred years

a number of non-Euclidean geometries have been invented. For something like two thousand years it had been considered that the axioms on which Euclidean geometry are based are necessities of thought. It is now known that these axioms are, logically speaking, arbitrary. An entirely different set of axioms can be chosen and an entirely logical and self-consistent geometry be built up on them. All that is necessary is that the chosen axioms shall be consistent with one another. All geometries, Euclidean and non-Euclidean, are equally logical and self-consistent. There is no *a priori* reason for preferring any one of them to any other. It becomes a matter of experiment, therefore, to decide which of them can most conveniently be applied to the description of natural phenomena. The geometry we want is the geometry which will best describe the observed behaviour of our measuring appliances. Our measuring appliances may consist of rigid rods and mechanical clocks, or we may find it more convenient, in some cases, to use rays of light and vibrating atoms. The question is : What geometry best expresses their behaviour ?

We have said that Minkowski interpreted the *interval* as a distance in a four-dimensional continuum. Now Riemann, the great German geometer, had shown that the essential difference between all the different geometries, Euclidean and non-Euclidean, could be traced to the fact that each geometry gave a different mathematical formula for the distance between two points. The formula for the interval, if interpreted as a distance, made it clear that the geometry of the four-dimensional continuum was not Euclidean. Yet it was, in certain respects, very like Euclid's geometry, and for that reason was called " semi-Euclidean." But the differences are of great importance. It can be deduced, for instance, that in a continuum subject to this geometry there is a maximum velocity. In a Euclidean continuum, as we know, it is theoretically possible for an infinite velocity to exist. Whatever speed we suppose a particle to be travelling at, we can always imagine it travelling at a greater speed. But in a continuum governed by semi-Euclidean geometry this is not the case. An infinite velocity is not possible in such a continuum. The *ultimate* velocity is a certain finite velocity. It is, therefore, strongly confirmatory of Minkowski's conception that the velocity of light is found, in relativity theory, to play the part of an ultimate velocity. The velocity of a material body cannot, according to the theory of relativity, ever exceed the velocity of light. For it can be shown that the mass of a body increases with its velocity, and increases in such a way that at the velocity of light it becomes infinite This increase in mass is not measurable except at speeds comparable with the speed of light. Some of the particles shot out by radium move at speeds sufficiently great to enable the increase of mass to be measured. At half the velocity of light the mass of an electron (or any other body) is increased by one-seventh. At nine-tenths the velocity of light the mass is nearly two and a half times greater, while at ninety-nine-hundredths of the velocity of light the mass has seven times its value at rest. At higher speeds the mass increases very rapidly until, as we have said, it becomes infinite at the velocity of light. This can only mean that the speed of light is a natural limit for moving matter. In a continuum governed by Minkowski's geometry it behaves, in fact, as if it were an infinite velocity.

There is another respect in which the velocity of light behaves as if it

were infinite. We are accustomed to suppose that velocities can be added to one another according to the ordinary arithmetical law of addition. Thus, if a particle passed an observer with a speed three-quarters that of light, and another particle passes the observer in the opposite direction at the same speed, it would appear that the relative speed of the two particles must be one and a half times the velocity of light. Since all motion is relative, either of these particles can be considered as at rest, and then the other must be reckoned as moving half as fast again as light, thus violating the relativity principle that the velocity of light is an ultimate velocity. The fact is, however, that velocities do not combine according to the arithmetical law of addition. If a train passes an observer on the platform at sixty miles an hour and a man walks down the corridor with a velocity, relative to the train, of four miles per hour, his velocity, relative to the man on the platform, is not sixty-four miles per hour. It is less than this sum. The relativity formula for the addition of velocities shows that however many velocities relative to the same observer be added together their sum can never exceed the velocity of light. This strange result is again due to the curious geometry of the four-dimensional continuum. None of these results are perceptible, of course, except at speeds altogether outside our ordinary experience. Otherwise, we would not have had to wait so long for the theory of relativity.

Another very important result of relativity theory is the light it throws on the relation between matter and energy. There are, as is well known, various kinds of energy. Thus, there is the energy possessed by moving matter, as in the case of a rifle bullet, a stream, or a wind. There is energy of strain, as in a bended bow. There is heat energy, light energy, electrical energy. All these forms of energy are capable of doing work, and they can all be transformed into one another. Moreover, the transformation always takes place in a fixed proportion. The same amount of heat energy, for example, will always produce the same amount of energy of motion, or of electrical energy, or what not. Further, no energy is lost or created in the process of transformation. This fact is expressed by the principle of the Conservation of Energy. Energy is akin to matter in the fact that it cannot be either created or destroyed. But relativity theory has shown that the kinship is a much closer one than is expressed by saying that both matter and energy are conserved.

We have already said that a moving body has a greater mass than is possessed by the same body at rest. Now the moving body, in virtue of its motion, has acquired a certain amount of energy—kinetic energy, as it is called. According to Einstein this energy has mass. Indeed, the extra mass of the moving body is due to the mass of its kinetic energy. And what is true of kinetic energy is true of any other form of energy. All forms of energy have mass. Since mass is the cardinal property of matter, this fact suggests that energy and matter are convertible terms. We may regard the mass of a body at rest as the mass of the congealed energy, as it were, that constitutes the body. If matter could be changed into energy we should have incomparably the greatest source of energy possible. A thimbleful of mud, for example, if changed into energy, would be sufficient to drive a large ship across the Atlantic.

§ 7

A striking peculiarity of the Restricted Principle of Relativity, as we have described it, consists in the rôle played by geometry. Various phenomena, instead of being referred to special laws of nature, are shown to be consequences of the fact that the four-dimensional continuum is governed by a certain semi-Euclidean geometry. What, then, is the relation between geometry and laws of nature ? A simple illustration showing how this question might arise has been given by Poincaré. Let us consider the triangle formed by three stars. According to Euclid's geometry the three interior angles of this triangle should together equal two right-angles. Let us suppose that actual measurements of these angles show that they are not together equal to two right-angles. Should we conclude that Euclid's geometry is not the geometry of space ? Not necessarily. For in making these measurements we have assumed a law of nature—namely, that light is propagated in straight lines. It might be possible for us to account for our measurements by giving up this law while still retaining Euclid's geometry. This example is sufficient to show that what we call a law of nature may be at least partially dependent on the geometrical assumptions we begin with.[1]

The most celebrated of all scientific laws is Newton's law of gravitation. Newton imagined a force of attraction exerted between every particle of matter in the universe and every other particle, and he gave the law according to which this force varies with the masses and distances concerned. In particular, he gave an extremely satisfactory description of the motions of the planets by supposing the sun and the planets to be exerting this force of attraction on one another. It is interesting to see how far this conception of gravitation was necessitated by Newton's more fundamental assumptions. The only geometry known in Newton's time was Euclidean geometry, and Newton doubtless regarded Euclid's presuppositions as necessities of thought. When, therefore, Newton said that the natural motion of a body acted on by no forces is motion in a straight line, he was thinking of a Euclidean straight line. But the assumption that the unhampered motion of a body is motion in a Euclidean straight line makes the invention of a force of gravitation inevitable. The "natural" motion of a body, one would suppose, is the motion of a body which is not subject to impacts of any kind. But the planets are not subject to impacts. An earlier theory had supposed that angels carry the planets round the sun in just the way they are observed to go round. This may be called an " impact " theory. But Newton, needless to say, did not believe in any impact theory. Why, then, did not the planets travel in straight lines ? Newton concluded that there was a force pulling them out of the straight line path. He called this force " gravitation." It is to be observed that this force was invented purely because the planets did not behave as Newton thought unhampered bodies should behave—that is, they did not travel in Euclidean straight lines. Thus, we see that the force of gravitation was the inevitable outcome of Newton's assumption that the geometry of space must be Euclidean. If we do not make that assumption, can we get

[1] For further discussion of this subject see the Article on *The Nature of Mathematics*, p. 188.

rid of the force of gravitation? In other words, can we explain the observed motions of the planets as being their natural motions in a non-Euclidean space?

This was the problem that Einstein solved in his *Generalised Principle of Relativity*, published ten years after the *Restricted Principle*. The later theory may justly be regarded as a generalisation of the earlier theory, for while the earlier theory deals only with observers who are moving in straight lines with constant velocities, the later theory places no restrictions upon the motions of the observers. The aspect of the later theory that interests us here, however, is its attitude towards the whole problem of gravitation. Einstein showed that the force of gravitation is a superfluous concept, and that all the phenomena that had been accounted for by that force could be equally well explained in terms of a certain non-Euclidean geometry. In order to carry through this idea, Einstein had to adopt Minkowski's conception of a four-dimensional continuum. But he had to attribute to this continuum an altogether more complicated geometry than that proposed by Minkowski. We have already said that Minkowski's geometry is, in many respects, very like Euclid's. One very important point of resemblance consists in the fact that the natural motion of a body in a continuum governed by Minkowski's geometry is motion in a Euclidean straight line. Minkowski's geometry affords no assistance in the enterprise of abolishing the force of gravitation. Nevertheless, Minkowski's conception of the world as four-dimensional was an essential contribution to the general theory of relativity. If Einstein was to discover a geometry which would do the work of the force of gravitation, this geometry must be applied not to space only but to the four-dimensional space-time.

Einstein solved this problem. He showed that if the space-time continuum possesses certain metrical properties, then the motions of the planets are in the "straight lines," or geodesics, proper to this kind of continuum. In speaking of the motions of the planets we do not refer merely to their paths in space, their elliptical paths, but to their paths in the four-dimensional continuum, which are a kind of spirals. In the neighbourhood of a double star a planet's spatial path would not be an ellipse, and its four-dimensional path would not be a spiral. It would, however, describe the "straight line" appropriate to that part of the continuum. Thus, we see that the continuum must have different metrical characteristics in different parts of it, and that these differences are connected with the distribution of matter in the different regions. Thus, there is no one definite geometry that can be applied to the whole of space-time. The geometry required is a very general, flexible geometry, which admits of a considerable range of local variations. This general geometry, which Einstein has applied with such success, is called "Riemannian" geometry, from Riemann, who first discovered it.

The metrical properties, the geometry, of any portion of space-time, depend upon the distribution of matter in that region. A planet moves round the sun in an ellipse, not because there is a force of gravitation pulling at it, but because that is the natural motion of an unhampered body in the sort of space-time that exists in the neighbourhood of the sun. For the same reason a ray of light that passes near the sun describes a curved

path. This fact, which was predicted by Einstein's theory, has been confirmed by measurements made by various eclipse expeditions. Stars near the sun (that is, in very much the same line of sight) cannot normally be seen, as their light is overpowered by the sun's light. But during a solar eclipse they become visible. If their light, in passing near the sun, is bent, it follows that the stars should appear displaced compared with the positions they occupy in the sky when the sun is not there. Einstein's theory enables the amount of the displacement to be calculated, and these calculations have been fully confirmed by observation. Time measurements, as well as space measurements, are influenced by the presence of the sun. A vibrating atom may be regarded as a natural clock, and it can be shown that atoms on the sun should vibrate more slowly than similar atoms on the earth. Thus, the light they emit, which depends on the rate of vibration, should be of longer wave-length than the light emitted by similar atoms on earth. This result has been confirmed by spectroscopic observation. A third result of the theory, which has also been confirmed by observation, deals with the motion of the planet Mercury. According to Newton's law of gravitation, an isolated planet should describe an ellipse round the sun. But no planet in the solar system describes a strict ellipse, since any planet's motion is influenced by the gravitational attraction of all the other planets. This influence is most apparent in the case of Mercury, for its orbit is the most markedly elliptical of any of the planetary orbits. When the calculations were made, however, it was found that there was a discrepancy between the theoretical result and the observed motion of Mercury. Many attempts were made to explain this discrepancy, but none of them was successful. Einstein's theory gives a complete explanation of the whole thing. These three observational results, together with the inner coherence and harmony of the theory, have caused it to be generally accepted. It may be taken as proved, therefore, that the universe exists in a four-dimensional continuum governed by Riemannian geometry.

Gravitation and all the laws of mechanics can be deduced from the fact that space-time is subject to Riemannian geometry. These laws are not special and isolated laws of nature. They are inevitable consequences of the geometrical peculiarities of space-time. Thus, the world has been immensely simplified. Instead of laboriously discovering one special law after another, we deduce them all from one set of premises. But the unification of nature is not yet complete. One great set of laws—namely, the electromagnetic laws which govern the propagation of radiant energy through empty space—have not yet been brought into the scheme. Also, relativity theory throws no light on the fact that matter is atomic in constitution, nor on any of the phenomena that are dealt with by the quantum theory. But certain steps towards a complete unification have been taken. Attempts have been made, for example, to bring electromagnetism into the geometrical scheme. The procedure, in each case, consists in inventing a geometry which, while allowing the laws of gravitation and mechanics to be deduced, shall also be sufficiently general to include the laws of electromagnetism. Electromagnetism, in fact, is to be made a necessary consequence of the geometrical peculiarities of the space-time continuum. It could be shown that the original Riemannian geometry used by

Einstein could not do this. All its geometrical peculiarities were exhausted, as it were, in accounting for gravitation and mechanics. A still more complicated geometry is necessary if electromagnetism is to be included.

One of the most interesting of these attempts is that of Eddington, and it is worth mentioning here because of the general nature of its conclusions. Eddington begins by attributing to the four-dimensional continuum almost the minimum amount of structure conceivable. Compared with the firm outlines of Euclidean geometry, the geometry assumed by Eddington is almost completely amorphous. Nevertheless, from this bare material, and making the minimum number of assumptions, he derives the laws of gravitation, mechanics and electromagnetism as being necessary consequences of this primitive structure. A piece of matter, on this theory, is a place where the continuum is curved in a certain way. It is not that the piece of matter produces the curvature; the curvature is the piece of matter. The "objective reality" is a continuum possessing certain kinds of curvature. As a result of the mind's selective action on this raw material the universe of physics, matter and its laws arise. Space and time are not fundamental on this theory. The "interval" with which Eddington starts is not, to begin with, a spatio-temporal relation. The mind splits up the interval into space and time components, but this is done in obedience to imperious psychological laws. The division into space and time is not imposed on us by nature; we impose it on nature. The whole universe of matter is, on this theory, a much more subjective affair than we had hitherto supposed. It arises as a result of the mind's selective action on certain raw material. A different mind from ours would fashion a different universe out of this same raw material. There are certain mathematical consequences of the existence of this raw material to which our mind pays no attention. Such consequences do not form features in the universe of our perception. Out of all the different aspects or combinations of the raw material the mind pays attention to some only.

What can we say about the nature of this raw material? Eddington maintains that, by the methods of science, we can learn nothing about the raw material except its structure. The primary elements of the raw material with which he starts are undefinable. He calls them "point-events," but all we know about a point-event is that four numbers are required to specify it. We can illustrate what this means by an analogy. To specify a house in New York, for instance, we require to know the number of the street and the number of the house in that street. To specify a musical note we require to know its pitch, its loudness and its *timbre*. Both pitch and loudness can be represented by numbers, and *timbre*, which is due to wave-shape, could conceivably be given numerical expression. If these particulars are given about a musical note they suffice to distinguish it from all other musical notes. Point-events, whatever they may be, require four particulars to distinguish them unambiguously, and each of these particulars can be represented by a number. That is all we require to know about point-events for the purposes of science. To use one of Eddington's illustrations, it is as if all we knew about the Big Four at Versailles was that they numbered four. Between pairs of point-events is a relation called the "interval," and this relation can be given mathematical expression. And from this the existence of matter and its laws

can be deduced. Thus, the world of physical science is due merely to the *structure* of the four-dimensional continuum of point-events. Of the *nature* of the raw material science tells us nothing.

This attempt of Eddington's to geometrise the world has been mentioned chiefly because it affords a clear instance of his contention that science tells us nothing about the nature of reality, but only about its structure. This is a point of view which, as we shall see, is becoming very prominent in modern scientific speculation.

The fact that the four-dimensional continuum is governed by a non-Euclidean geometry raises the question as to whether space is finite. As long as space was supposed to be governed by Euclidean geometry such a question had no meaning. For to ask whether space was finite was equivalent to asking whether it had boundaries. Obviously, space cannot have boundaries, for what can we conceive to lie beyond the boundaries ? But it is possible for a non-Euclidean space to have no boundaries and yet to be finite. A simple example is provided by the surface of a sphere. Regarded as a two-dimensional object, the surface of a sphere is not Euclidean. On the surface of a sphere, for instance, the three interior angles of a triangle are not together equal to two right-angles. Creatures confined to the surface of a sphere and having no knowledge of a third dimension would develop a non-Euclidean geometry. And their space, which is the surface of the sphere, has no boundaries. These creatures could crawl for ever over the surface of their sphere in any direction without ever meeting any barrier to their further progress. They would come back to their starting points, but they would never reach a stop. Nevertheless, the total area of their space would be finite. Similar conclusions hold good when we come to consider a non-Euclidean three-dimensional space. It is possible for the total volume of such a space to be finite, although there are nowhere any barriers. It is, therefore, a perfectly sensible question to ask whether the space in which we live is finite but unbounded.

The notion that space is infinite has always been attended by certain difficulties. Consider, for instance, the distribution of the stars. Are we to suppose that the stars are scattered more or less uniformly throughout infinite space ? Or are we to suppose that they all exist within a limited volume of space, and that empty space spreads out to infinity in all directions about them ? Each of these alternatives has its own difficulties. If the stars are scattered uniformly throughout space, it can be shown that the night sky should be very much more luminous than it is. If the stars form an island in infinite space, then, under the influence of their mutual attractions, some of them should attain very great velocities. Such velocities have never been observed. Such difficulties are among the reasons that led Einstein to formulate the theory that the universe is finite but unbounded.

The theory that the universe is finite is now generally accepted, although there is some disagreement as to its form. But the theory which seems to be, on the whole, most probable assumes that time is curved as well as space. This universe has a tendency to expand. Particles initially close together tend to scatter. This is, to some extent, borne out observationally by the fact that the spiral nebulæ, which are considered to be

" island universes " quite outside our main galactic system, are most of them receding from us with considerable velocities. These velocities are deduced from spectroscopic observations. The light from the spiral nebulæ is displaced towards the red end of the spectrum, and measurements of the displacements enable us to calculate the velocities of recession. But this effect is complicated by the fact that the time dimension is curved. This will have the effect of slowing down all distant processes. The shifting of the light towards the red end of the spectrum may be partly due to the slowing down of time at such vast distances, for the atoms of the nebulæ, by vibrating more slowly, would send out a redder light than similar atoms on earth. At a certain distance, at what is called the " horizon," time would slow down completely and all natural processes would stop. This effect is illusory in the sense that if we transported ourselves and our instruments to the horizon we would find everything going on normally, and the horizon would now appear to be at the place we had left. This theory is due to the Dutch mathematician de Sitter. On Einstein's original form of the theory particles did not tend to scatter, and there was no slowing down of time. A form intermediate between these theories has been proposed, and the whole question is still in process of investigation. It appears, however, that the hypothesis of a finite, re-entrant space must be accepted. We may put it crudely by saying that space bends round on itself. This is not true, however, of time. There is no reason to suppose that time is " closed," and so there is no reason to believe in the nightmare of " eternal recurrence."

Time, in science, extends indefinitely into the past and indefinitely into the future. The scientific concept of time is as a bare succession. Future and past are distinguished merely by a difference of sign; there is no essential difference between them. The equations which enable us to determine the future, as when we predict eclipses, can equally well be made to work backwards. It is doubtful whether this simple conception of time will always prove adequate for the purposes of science. It may be that something more akin to our intuition of a creative advance in nature will have to be adopted. However that may be, the present scientific conception of time regards the passage from the present to the future, or from the present to the past, as being no more than the passage to the right, or to the left, along a straight line. There is, nevertheless, one respect in which science recognises a difference between the future and the past when the material universe as a whole is considered. It can be definitely stated that the available energy of the universe is steadily becoming less.

We have already said that energy is conserved. The total amount of energy in the universe remains constant. In view of what we now know of the relation between matter and energy, this statement must be amended. We must now say that matter and energy, taken together, are conserved. This amendment does not affect the statement, however, that the available energy of the universe is steadily becoming less. Energy passes from higher to lower levels. Heat passes from a hot body to a colder one. This passage of energy can be used to do useful work. But no work can be obtained from a number of bodies at the same temperature. We may consider an isolated system, from which no energy is lost, and

which is composed of bodies initially at different temperatures. In course of time all these bodies will reach the same temperature. They have not, as a whole, lost any energy, but their energy is now unavailable. In all energy transformations, whatever the kind of energy concerned may be, there is a loss of availability. The movement of the whole universe towards a uniform temperature is a process which, so far as we know, cannot be reversed. The general idea can be put rather differently if we say that the degree of organisation of the energy of the universe steadily grows less. In a swinging pendulum, for instance, the organised energy of motion is gradually transformed into a less organised form. The pendulum gradually comes to rest through the friction of its supports and through the resistance offered by the air. The energy of motion of the pendulum has been used up in increasing the chaotic motion of the air molecules and in heating the supports, that is, in increasing the chaotic molecular motions of the supports. The energy, in its organised state, has disappeared. The resulting disorganised energy, although quantitatively equal to the original energy, will never spontaneously assume the organised form. It has become less available. This change, from a more highly organised to a less highly organised form, is continually taking place in natural processes. And it appears that this process must inevitably go on until the disorganisation of the energy of the universe reaches a maximum. This final state, the end of the universe, must occur within a finite time.

If, using this same argument about the disorganisation of energy, we turn our attention to the past history of the universe, we see that the universe must have been more highly organised the farther back we go. This process, also, has its maximum. A finite time ago the universe must have been in a maximum state of organisation. This state could not have been evolved from any less organised state. It appears that the universe must have had a definite beginning in time. The accepted laws of physical science do not enable us to trace the universe through an indefinite past. Further, the chances against this highly organised state having come about at random can be shown to be practically infinite. The universe, as we know it, must have originated a finite time ago, and it could not have originated by chance. The origin of the universe, it would appear, is not a problem that can be brought within the scheme to which science confines itself. Whether this indicates that the universe had a transcendental origin, or whether it indicates that science, as a scheme, is not yet completely coherent, is at present a matter of opinion.

§ 8

The principle we have just described, the principle that the available energy of the universe grows steadily less, is known as the second law of thermodynamics. It is essentially a statistical law. It is one of those laws that do not deal with single elements, but with large assemblies of them. It is now realised that many of the older laws of physics are really only statistical laws and are derived from our experience of matter in bulk. When we come to study the actual elements of the physical world, such as protons and electrons, we find that the laws governing their individual

behaviour are quite different from the laws governing their behaviour as assemblies. The most striking difference arises when we come to investigate the relation of cause and effect as applied to the elements of the physical world.

Physical science has long been supposed to present nature as a completely determined scheme. It has been a cardinal assumption of science that a given state of affairs determines uniquely the next state of affairs. If we are given all the relevant data about the present state of the solar system, for instance, we can predict any future state of the system. If we cannot do so it is merely because our observations are imperfect or that we do not know accurately the laws involved. In itself the system is completely determinate. In all the phenomena with which science was concerned this principle seemed to be verified. Predictions of eclipses, as everybody knows, come off. This principle was, by some people, generalised to include the phenomena of life and mind. Free-will was regarded as an illusion. Laplace boldly expressed the view implied in the beliefs of many scientific men when he stated that from the original distribution of the atoms in the primitive nebula a sufficiently great mathematical intelligence could predict the whole future history of the world.

The abandonment of this assumption is one of the most striking characteristics of the present scientific outlook. Strict determinism cannot be traced in the behaviour of the ultimate elements of the physical world. In these elements we include the " atoms of energy " or quanta, as well as electrons. The behaviour of a quantum of light as, for example, in which of two directions it will go, is found to be a matter of probabilities. In one experiment the quantum will choose one path. In a repetition of the experiment repeated under identical conditions it will choose the other path. If the experiment be repeated a great number of times, the percentage of the times the quantum chooses one path or the other can be reckoned up. It is then possible to enunciate a law specifying the probability that on any given occasion the quantum will take one path or the other. The same holds good of the motion of an electron. The chances that it will reach a position B from a position A can be given. But its future conduct is not uniquely determined by its present state. When a sufficiently large number of electrons are taken, as happens in any piece of matter with which science deals, their individual idiosyncrasies cancel out, as it were, and the resultant behaviour of the assemblage is determinate.

It might be thought that a closer observation of the electron would determine the conditions that cause it to jump one way rather than another. But an electron cannot be examined without interfering with it. An electron has a detectable existence only while it is interacting with the rest of the universe. An electron which is playing no part in the production of phenomena is in an unobservable state. But an electron cannot be detected (it could not, for instance, even be seen in an ideal microscope) without at least one quantum of energy being involved in the process. And this one quantum is sufficient to disturb the motion of the electron in an unpredictable way. Heisenberg's Principle of Indeterminacy states that an electron may have position or it may have velocity, but it cannot in any exact sense have both. The more exact the determination of the position of an electron the vaguer becomes its velocity, and the more

exact the velocity the vaguer the position. How are we to interpret this principle ? Are we to say that it is merely an expression of the fact that our methods of measurement are defective—perhaps inherently defective—but that, nevertheless, an electron's behaviour is strictly determined ? Or are we to interpret the principle as an indication that the law of strict causality does not apply to the fundamental operations of nature ? At the present time scientific men are of two minds about this matter. Those who maintain that nature is finally undetermined ask what is the use of postulating a law of causation that can never be discovered ? If our measurements necessarily fail to reveal strict determinism, why assume that determinism nevertheless exists ? This question is very pertinent in view of the tendency of modern science to seek for no explanations except in terms of observable entities. By " observable " one must understand " detectable by physical processes." Newton, for example, explained the centrifugal force developed by a rotating body in terms of the body's relation to absolute space. According to Einstein, absolute space cannot be detected by any physical processes. He therefore regards it as an illegitimate entity in a scientific explanation. In Bohr's early theory of the atom we were asked to imagine electrons revolving round a central nucleus and occasionally executing jumps from one orbit to another. It was only while the electron was jumping that it interacted with the rest of the world. In the meantime, while it was steadily revolving in one orbit, it was immune from all detection. Bohr's picture of the atom therefore contained an unobservable element. Heisenberg replaced this scheme by one where none but observable factors was involved.

The banishment of determinism from the ultimate processes of nature is quite in keeping with this modern tendency. But is it possible to conceive of undetermined phenomena ? It would seem that the answer to this question depends on whether we think we have an intuition of free-will or not. If we can regard free-will as an unanalysable category of thought, then we may suppose something analogous to free-will to lie at the basis of material phenomena. Free-will and determinism then become theoretically two equally valid alternatives, and which one we adopt is to be decided purely by the evidence.

§ 9

We see that physical science has become a radically new thing since the days of Galileo. Science to begin with tried to account for phenomena in terms of notions made familiar to us by our ordinary experience, notions such as fluids, particles, pushing and pulling and so on. Up to a certain point this effort was successful. There are many phenomena which can still be accounted for in these terms, provided the analysis is not pushed beyond a certain limit. The first really big failure of this method of thought was the attempt to account for light as consisting in the vibrations of an elastic solid fitting all space. But although the elastic solid theory failed, the ideal of a mechanical explanation of light was not given up. The ether became more and more unlike anything in common experience, but the fundamental concepts used in constructing it were still mechanical. But the fact that no satisfactory mechanical ether could be

designed led some to wonder whether the body of concepts that science had in stock, as it were, were really adequate. This moment was a turning-point in the history of science. Science no longer insisted that the description of the material universe *must* proceed in certain terms. Since then science has introduced a number of new concepts. But they have this in common with the old ones, that they are all capable of mathematical definition. Whatever words science may use for its concepts, light-quantum, distance, mass, four-dimensional continuum, electron, or whatever they may be, we find in each case that each of these words stands for a body of mathematical relations. Many of them differ from the old concepts in the fact that they are not picturable. But the " picturability " of the old concepts was really a quite irrelevant fact about them. The old terms, just as much as the new, stood for certain mathematical relations, and only so far as they did so were they of any importance to science. The fact that the Victorian " atom " conjured up the notion of a tiny grain of sand doubtless brought comfort to the mind, but it was only the mathematical specification of the atom that played any part in atomic theory. It is characteristic of the modern scientific man that he is sufficiently self-conscious to realise that he is *only* talking about certain mathematical relations when he talks about the entities out of which he intends to construct the universe. Provided that he has reason to suppose that his mathematical specification of an electron or what not is correct, he is not worried by the fact that the entity that fulfils that specification is not picturable.

This realisation of the nature of science makes it clear that the material universe is a much more subjective thing than Galileo, for instance, supposed. It is difficult now to make the hard-and-fast distinction between primary and secondary qualities that Galileo made. If our perception of the colour red is merely our interpretation of certain electromagnetic waves, our perception of a tennis-ball is, it appears on the wave theory of matter, merely our interpretation of waves that are still more mysterious. Or if we turn to relativity theory, we find that what we perceive as a tennis-ball is " really " a region of a four-dimensional continuum possessing a certain kind of curvature. Science does not tell us anything about the substance of the elements out of which we have built up the preceptual world. It tells us merely the mathematical specifications of those elements.[1]

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

A. S. EDDINGTON : *The Nature of the Physical World* (Cambridge. 1928)

J. W. N. SULLIVAN : *The Bases of Modern Science* (London. 1928 ; New York. 1929)

E. N. DA C. ANDRADE : *The Mechanism of Nature* (London. 1930)

A. D'ABRO : *The Evolution of Scientific Thought from Newton to Einstein* (New York. 1927)

R. A. MILLIKAN : *The Electron* (2nd ed. Chicago. 1924)

[1] The reader will find it profitable to read, in conjunction with this Article, the Articles on *The Nature of Mathematics* and *Astronomy*.

ASTRONOMY

By

R. A. SAMPSON

SYNOPSIS

Astronomy occupies at the present time a position of remarkable interest — Each of the physical sciences is now emerging into view of the others — What Astronomy has learnt illuminates physics and chemistry and in turn is illuminated by them — At the same time, in its own region, it has succeeded, far beyond what the most sanguine could have dreamed, in learning with certainty the nature, the position, the motions, even the constitution of the heavenly bodies — Our limit of knowledge, and even of ambition and ideas, a century ago, was the solar system ; this is now passed briefly by, as having little that is significant to tell — The stars are the real problem — We have successively found methods of reaching securely further and further out, and of determining the nature, the order and the structure of the stars — Not of individual stars alone, but their general history, grouping and genesis — Thence we are led on to wider theories of the universe as a whole — This Article attempts to convey a picture of this extraordinary field.

ASTRONOMY

THE GENERAL BEARING OF ASTRONOMY

The most evident contacts that Astronomy makes with other sciences are those with meteorology, with the geology that tells how the world came to be, and last, and above all, with physics. Though the subject matter of these sciences is at hand, while that of astronomy is remote and inaccessible, astronomy advanced towards certainty far in front of any of them. In spite of its remoteness, or rather because of that, it has progressed while they were stagnant, and has developed method after method, which have been handled by its students with the complete certainty of familiar tools. A glance at the reasons that carry so much certainty into such distant regions is far from fruitless. It is necessary, if one is to share the conviction, as well as the reserve, that astronomers attach to their own assertions.

The first reason is, that the material which the astronomer was obliged to contemplate itself defined and created science. Because the subjects of astronomy were remote and isolated, in the sense that those of meteorology were not, they became abstractions, with each element of the problem separate from every other, and at first sight independent of them. The needs of astronomy may be said to have created geometry. Mathematics has always been studied as an abstract science, but in its earlier days astronomy may claim to have given it direction, by putting to it a succession of problems just in advance of those it had already solved. Geometry sufficed for the need at first, especially the geometry of the circle and the sphere, which, naturally, were the first to be developed. Later it demanded, still as abstractions and for that reason a proper subject matter for mathematics, the geometry of more complex figures, with figures undergoing change, the effects of forces, and finally the generalities of Relativity. In all measures some error is involved, but a method of calculating the residue of truth that resides in the inevitable and conflicting errors that enfold it has been created, and this method, in a literal sense, transcends our own senses. And in the experimental region, and still because of its abstraction and isolation, it has furnished to physics, in the stars, a laboratory of experiments and demonstrations of circumstances that wholly outrun any provision it is possible to make otherwise, whether in space, time, mass or motion.

If we look at the picture from another angle, the gain is seen to be mutual. Astronomy may be said to have depended upon the advances of other sciences. It does so still. Any new method, such as an improvement in photography, or the development of the photo-electric cell, or radio, or the engineers' capacity to produce large work accurately, finds an application in astronomy. It is the same in theory. For the most part the astronomer has learnt to content himself with humble mathematics,

because that part can be handled by people of no extraordinary capacity, whose main interests are not absorbed thereby. But each great advance, such as the development of a new method in mathematics, has carried astronomy forward to a new plane. The latest we have seen in our own day—the theory of Relativity, with its new formulation—almost an elimination—of gravitation. But as these methods grow more difficult, they become inevitably less fertile, because less easy to use.

Mathematics now, generally speaking, has outgrown its astronomical services, but its place has been fully taken by physics. Many, and ever more, developments of physical theory find their examples and illustrations in astronomy.

The characteristic of the subject matter of astronomy, in offering ready to hand the abstractions that mathematics and physics demand, is the essential reason for its rapid advance. The basis of its certainty, in dealing with matters so remote and measures so minute, is that its students have been compelled to go over the same ground again and again. There is only one solar system. The main facts about it, and even a correct geometrical description of it, have been known for about 2000 years. Some of the knowledge—that the Sun was the centre—was found and lost and found again. All other discoveries, even those that were impossible until the telescope was invented, were added as piecemeal extensions, confirming and making extraordinarily sure what was already known. Thus the successive revolutions of the satellite systems, the discovery of *Uranus*, of *Neptune*, and lastly of *Pluto*, the new planet, all bear that mark. They have extended ideas, but they have also fortified what was known, while correcting it and marking its limits. And, though high originality was required in the discovery, the past was so sure that, to the right minds, it suggested the future.

We may repeat the same theme without generalities, for the process of this sure and gradual extension of ideas is worth following. That the Sun was the centre of our local system was discovered by Greek science—Aristarchus (250 B.C.) taught it; but his ideas were still-born, because they came at a time when people were unable to appreciate their value. The system which was accepted right up to the late Renaissance was given by Ptolemy (A.D. 150). It made the Earth the centre; and though fundamentally misleading, in a sense it was correct, or nearly so, like a pair of gloves that only require turning inside out and will still fit, though on the other hands. When at length Copernicus introduced the modern system (1543), with a rotating Earth, revolving round the Sun, among the other planets, it was a revolution of ideas, but not of facts—the old facts were the same though arranged in a new order, and new facts fell into places already indicated for them. Astronomy however is now centred, not on the solar system, but on the stars. The Sun itself is a star—at first the statement was a guess, and it was looked at for at least three centuries before it gained much meaning. First of all, the scale of things which the fact involved had to be appreciated—the incredible distances between the bodies had to declare themselves by much collateral evidence, and finally the physical nature of the Sun had to be made out, and fitted in with the sequence defined by the other stars.

It is unnecessary to give other instances, for the whole of the following

pages have been written from the point of view of gradual, inevitable growth. Astronomy is connected in common parlance with a set of startling discoveries. To the astronomer himself it appears much more a gradual unfolding. It will be appreciated that this attitude makes astronomers good and cautious judges of any new announcement.

THE SOLAR SYSTEM

When they are viewed directly, and as they presented themselves to the earliest observers, the Sun, Moon and planets show none of their true relationships. The Earth seems the most important body. The Moon appears as a body that may be compared with the Sun. The planets divide into two groups and have no likeness to the Earth. If we rearrange the same facts, but take the Sun as centre, the real system becomes evident. The Sun is indeed much the greatest body; it is a hundred times the diameter of the Earth, which means a million times its volume. It has 330,000 times its mass. Physically the Earth has no title to the chief place. The planets *Mercury*, *Venus*, the Earth, *Mars*, *Jupiter*, *Saturn* are spaced out, in their distances from the Sun, with a certain regularity which is emphasised by adding the ring of minor planets between *Mars* and *Jupiter*, and *Uranus* and *Neptune* beyond *Saturn*. They move round the Sun in the same direction, in nearly the same plane.[1] The system is evident, though no formula covers the succession of distances.

So far as we can examine them the planets present a wide range of surface conditions. This is to be expected, because their distances from the Sun would imply a great difference of temperature. If the Sun governs the temperature and there is no contribution of internal heat—a state of affairs that corresponds with conditions on the Earth—the mean temperatures would range from 200° C. on *Mercury* to − 200° C. on *Neptune*. *Venus* would be about 70° C. and *Mars* —40° C. But such mean temperatures may allow a wide range, unless there is an atmosphere to trap incoming and outgoing heat. By inspection with the telescope, *Venus* appears cloudy, with little detail to fix on. *Jupiter* is certainly cloudy, though definite features, like what is called the "Great Red Spot," persist semi-permanently. It has a low mean density which suggests that the cloud layer may be deep. *Saturn* is much the same. Most of the others offer no definite information. *Mars* alone can be examined in some detail. It is small and its atmosphere is light. By putting together what different observers agree upon, it has been mapped pretty precisely, so that we can speak even of the changes that occur upon it. These changes follow its year. Round its poles, there are what seem to be ice caps, which increase and diminish. Concurrently, changes take place in its topographical features. What these are we can only guess. Large parts of it show an orange tinge, giving the planet its ruddy colour. One might suppose they are deserts. If we describe the rest as "vegetation" or "seas" we must do so with reserve, admitting considerable ignorance and keeping the temperature in mind. But in any case, this is far more than we know of the other planets. How difficult it is to learn,

[1] The new planet *Pluto* cannot be included.

will be appreciated by saying that under the most favourable circumstances mapping *Mars* is like reading the inscription on a coin at a distance of several hundreds of yards.

Three additions have been made to the major planets known from the beginning. *Uranus* was discovered by Herschel in 1781, because he saw it was not a mere point, like a star. *Neptune* was found by Adams and Leverrier independently, assigning its existence and place mathematically so as to explain why *Uranus* did not follow Newton's theory of gravitation. The planet was thereupon discovered within about a degree of the stated place, in 1846. Some fuller details of this are given in the next section as also of the latest addition to the solar system, the planet *Pluto*.

A word may be added about the Minor Planets. Of the thousand or more that are now known, most are an undistinguished horde whose orbits lie between those of *Mars* and *Jupiter*. But one stands out notably —*Eros*—because its mean distance from the Sun is actually less than that of *Mars*, while its least distance periodically brings it much closer. It is at these times our nearest neighbour. Thus its distance in 1901 was 30 million miles; in 1931, 16.2 million only. Such occasions are far the most favourable that are offered for direct measurement of the scale of our system. The accepted distance of the Sun, 93 million miles, was so derived from the approach in 1901.

Coming to the satellites, except the Moon, no other was suspected until Galileo in 1610, a few days after he turned his telescope on the sky, detected, " with incredible jollity of mind," the four great satellites of *Jupiter*. He saw also later the ring of *Saturn*, but this was first recognised for what it was by Huygens in 1672. Huygens found too the greatest of *Saturn's* satellites. The ring itself is now known to be a host of small satellites, each moving according to an orbit of its own in *Saturn's* equatorial plane. J. D. Cassini added four more satellites to *Saturn*, W. Herschel two others, and two to *Uranus*. Two further satellites of *Uranus* were found by Lassell, who also discovered a satellite of *Neptune*. An eighth satellite of *Saturn* was found by G. P. Bond in 1848. Asaph Hall discovered two for *Mars* in 1877, the inner of which has the remarkable feature of revolving round the planet three times in the latter's day. More recent discoveries have not been wanting. Barnard added a fifth small inner satellite to *Jupiter* in 1892, Perrine two others outside the old system, Melotte an eighth and Nicholson (1914) a ninth, while W. H. Pickering added a ninth to the system of *Saturn*. While the earlier discoveries show on the whole a high degree of regularity in the systems, the outer members rather shake one's belief in its significance. The ninth satellite of *Saturn* goes backwards compared to the others. The eighth and ninth satellites of *Jupiter* do the same. The last two are also at enormous distances from the planet and subject to such enormous perturbations that no orbit fits them, and their places can only be computed step by step as needed.

The planets with their satellites, in their comparatively regular sequence, are not the sole constituents of the solar system. Much stranger members are the comets. We know them to be permanently attached to our system, because they share in the solar motion through space.

Several are detected every year, which usually make one revolution round the Sun and depart again to remote distances. The greatest recent comet of this kind was the "Daylight Comet" of 1910. A small proportion do not go far into space but return regularly, having apparently had their motion in approach to the Sun slowed down by a chance passage near one of the greater planets. Some eight or ten are thus definitely allotted as "captures" to *Jupiter*. The most famous of all the comets is Halley's, which recedes considerably beyond the orbit of *Neptune*, and revolves in a period of about seventy-five years, a period that varies according to chance encounters with the planets. Its return cannot be identified to a matter of five years without taking account of such perturbations. Yet they have been followed, with the help of Chinese and Japanese chronicles, back to 87 B.C. The most notable historical return is that figured in the Bayeux tapestry, contemporary with the Norman Conquest. The latest was in 1910, when the comet was a magnificent object for those favourably placed to observe it.

The nature of comets is imperfectly known. As they approach the Sun they are at first inconspicuous in appearance, presenting a hazy spot of light, so that Herschel first announced *Uranus* as the discovery of a comet. They grow in brightness and develop a bright condensation in the head and a tail, directed away from the Sun, sometimes of gorgeous proportions, and apparently consisting of matter ejected. One would suppose that a periodic comet of many returns would become exhausted in consequence, but Halley's comet hardly confirms this view. The tail is greatest after the passage past the Sun and diminishes as the comet recedes again. Not a few comets have been known to split into two, three or four parts, each following an orbit. The orbits of some comets are identical with orbits followed by certain swarms of meteorites, which we become aware of when the earth chances to encounter their stream and they show as "shooting stars" in our atmosphere About a hundred known streams, with or without accompanying comets, have been identified. The mass of a comet is very small. When the comet is incandescent, the source of its light can be determined, and carbon monoxide and sodium have been detected besides reflection of sunlight. But these pieces of information are mere scraps—evidences of ignorance rather than of knowledge.

GRAVITATION

That the bodies of the solar system behave in a particular way, the greatest body dominating the motions of the rest, permits of a more comprehensive statement. Newton derived from this fact the law that matter attracts matter, particle by particle, with an intensity that diminishes as the distance increases, just as though a constant quantity had to be spread over an increasing surface. Though that discovery dates from two centuries ago, the theory is so well knit that it repays some detailed survey.

Most natural "laws" are accepted tentatively, until some better statement can be found. But the response to Newton's formula, wherever it was applied, seemed to be complete. The law was first indicated by

the motion of the planets round the Sun, which might all, somewhat roughly, be treated as condensed points of matter, but Newton tried the wide assumption that the law was exactly true between all particles at all distances. Without pausing over the details, it may be said that this justified itself completely. It appeared for a long time that astronomy required and permitted no other formula. It seemed as if all the known phenomena—planetary perturbations, the intricate motions of the Moon, those of the other satellites, those of comets also, the movement of the Earth's polar axis, the determination of its figure and the variation of gravity upon it, the tides—gave no indication that there was anything to add to it. The labour of examination, throughout two hundred years, became greater and greater, but it was sustained by the confidence that nothing else was required.

Apparently the law extends also to the stars. In some cases, as for example when one star is known to move round another, an essential element in the verification may be wanting. And in the case of those groups of stars known as moving clusters, the distances may be so great that the operation of gravitation is insensible. Still no reason is found to call the law other than universal. Incidentally we may remark here on the illustration of the debt of general science to astronomy. The study of force, and the motion it produces, is more general than its astronomical applications. But except in the isolations of the heavenly bodies, examples could not have been furnished of verifiable motions in curves, and of the complicated rotation of a body about its own centre of gravity, whether free or under the action of forces. This is an earlier example, of which physics is now supplying many, of the necessity of astronomy to science in general.

The well-known example of the discovery of *Neptune* is an indication of the certainty of astronomical calculation. The planet *Uranus* did not conform to the orbit first assigned to it. A revision of the orbit failed in the same way. The departures were analysed independently by Adams and Leverrier as perturbations produced by an unknown planet and they succeeded in assigning a direction to this body, close to which *Neptune* was actually found. If the effect of the new body was included, the anomalies of *Uranus* were almost effaced.

But at the present day, we have had a still further example instilling confidence. The errors of *Uranus* were almost but not quite effaced. A certain systematic character in them convinced Percival Lowell, among others, that they denoted the action of a further unknown body, and by unsparing labour he assigned a place and magnitude to it. He felt so much confidence in his work that he provided after his death for the prolonged search that was necessary. A dozen years later (1930) a body was found agreeing quite strikingly with his forecast. He was wrong about its magnitude only, and that delayed success in the search.

This new " planet," *Pluto*, is in many respects unique. It is unquestionably a member of our system, circulating round the Sun. It is not a comet, for no comet is visible so far away. The older planets adhere pretty closely to a single plane of movement and to nearly circular orbits, with the exception of *Mercury*, which moves distinctly out of the common plane and in a very elliptical orbit. But *Pluto* shows more peculiarity in

both respects. It would be easier to find its parallel among the minor planets or asteroids. Possibly it is only the first of a chapter of exceptions. There are some thirty million objects as bright as it is. Most of these are probably stars, but they have never been examined. There would be no reason for surprise in a new ring of asteroids beyond *Neptune*.

What is the nature of this tie that binds matter to matter? Or again, what is matter, if we take this tie as defining it? The only, and great, advance towards answering this question has been made in our own time, by Einstein. Needless to say it cannot be described rigorously while avoiding technicalities. The question is one of general physics, but again astronomy played an essential part in supplying a foothold for theory.

Einstein had developed an electrical theory which linked together space and time and made mass dependent upon the velocity with which it moved. It was frankly revolutionary, and though it fitted in with some indications from the difficult region of atomic theory, it might seem to have no bearing upon well-tried sciences like astronomy. But there was a known phenomenon which astronomers were unable to explain. When all the older forces and sources of disturbance were reckoned, the planet *Mercury* did not go as it might be expected to go. The point where it passed nearest to the Sun showed a minute shift, that nothing known would account for. Here Einstein entered, with the breadth and boldness that characterise all his work, and showed that the unexplained motion could be caused by the mass of *Mercury* varying with its velocity, just as that of an atom did. The revolution of ideas must be appreciated. A crevice had at last been found in Newton's law of gravitation. Mass, which was treated as a primary property of matter, now became a secondary one. Confirmation was given to the view that the primordial stuff of nature was not matter, but electricity.

The theory from which Einstein proceeded indicated that time and space meant different things to different observers. To any one observer they appear easy to distinguish from one another. But we are unable to carry over the identification from one observer to another; there is no test by which we can try it. This is sometimes expressed by saying that we are quite unable to *prove* that any two events are simultaneous. Therefore if the phenomena are described over again in terms that do not assume time and space to be separate and real entities, with a meaning absolute and the same to all observers, nothing that is observable will be lost and some liberty of interpretation will be gained. Einstein accomplished this work of re-describing the phenomena, and it was a feat of genius. He included in the scheme the phenomena of gravitation. The result is his General Relativity.

So many things are taken for granted by all of us, which General Relativity dismisses as prejudice, that it is difficult to convey an idea of what remains. The amalgamation of space and time transforms all our conceptions, and leaves only a geometry of more than the three familiar dimensions. Gravitation even appears as a consequence of local twists in this geometry, the occasion or the cause of the twist being the presence of matter, or rather of energy, of which matter is one of the manifestations. Force is wiped out. What energy is remains unanswerable; it is primal and there are no terms in which to explain it.

By this one piece of mathematics, all conceptions of time and space, supposed fixed, have been demolished and not replaced. The present writer may however record his conviction that, great as may be the extension of ideas and of power that Relativity has brought, until some way has been found to include electrical and magnetic phenomena in its scope, it remains essentially a geometrical *tour de force*, missing its veritable aim.[1]

THE SUN AMONG THE STARS

We are far from an end of what we have to learn from the solar system. The discovery of the planet *Pluto*, and, even nearer home, the unforeseen constitution and importance of the Earth's upper atmosphere as shown by meteorites, and by the transmission of radio-phenomena, prove the fact, if there were any doubt about it. Still, in an outline, which must indicate less the minute anatomy of the subject than its greater members, we must recognise that the stars, and not our nearest neighbours, claim attention. Our goal is to describe where the stars lie, what they are, and what systems they compose. But on many important points opinion is hardly settled. There are great technical difficulties. I shall attempt to indicate them in the course of these pages. The wonder is, that so much is sure. But not to exaggerate the authority of our statements, the best course will be to follow generally the historical development.

Describe the stars then, just as they appear upon the sky, first to the unaided eye, and finally to modern resources of registration. They are very evidently of different brightnesses, the so-called "magnitudes," and less evidently of different colours. Ptolemy, who worked with an arithmetic founded on the number six, as ours is founded on the number ten, divided those visible to his eye into six "magnitudes," each fainter than the last. This system is still kept, supplemented only to render it an exact tool. We fix a standard first-magnitude star. We define the advance of one magnitude as equivalent to a diminution of light 2.512 times. This is near the old estimate and implies that a star is scaled five magnitudes further down if its light is diminished 100 times. Hence twenty magnitudes meant a fall of intensity of light 100 million times. Such faint stars can be reached, but only with the most powerful telescopes and the longest photographic exposures. They are quite beyond the eye, even with every aid.

The brightest stars are few and well known. As we proceed down the magnitudes they become more and more numerous. Presently we have to be content with small sample areas, selected in all parts of the sky. Great care is necessary in choosing and counting these samples, and great care has been devoted to it. Finally, however we proceed, even counting must be given up. The numbers show no sign of stopping, but they outrun our resources of registration.

The counts and estimates may be put in a table as below, where the numbers given represent the stars that are met with if we go as far as the magnitude m (visual) given alongside.

[1] The theory of Relativity is discussed in the Article on *The Physical Nature of the Universe*, p. 99.

NUMBER OF STARS BRIGHTER THAN VISUAL MAGNITUDE *m*

m	Number	*m*	Number
4.0	530	13.0	5,700,000
5.0	1,620	14.0	13,800,000
6.0	4,850	15.0	32,000,000
7.0	14,300	16.0	71,000,000
8.0	41,000	17.0	150,000,000
9.0	117,000	18.0	296,000,000
10.0	324,000	19.0	560,000,000
11.0	870,000	20.0	1,000,000,000
12.0	2,270,000		

In reading this table, it must be recalled that these are ordinary stars and do not represent the great clusters and groups which will be dealt with later and separately. If we make an attempt to arrive at a total, we must guess at the number that are beyond our counting. There is very little ground for saying they converge to a total at all. The rate of increase falls off a little, but this may be due, in whole or in part, to general absorption of light on its way to us. It seems as if we were safely within the mark in saying there are ten thousand million, or even a hundred thousand million stars separately registrable and on a par with our Sun. Perhaps no single fact in all our knowledge is more impressive.

Obviously the apparent brightness of a star will change with its distance. If we suppose the stars to differ in actual or intrinsic brightness according to any rule, but to preserve the same proportions at all distances, it appears that for each step of magnitude the number of stars would increase slightly less than fourfold. Looking at the numbers above, we see that the increases in number for one step in magnitude begin about threefold and fall gradually to less than two. The conclusion is that the distribution is thinner as it grows more remote. Apparently we belong to a very numerous cluster. Whether there exist other similar clusters outside our own is a question that will engage our attention later.

That there is a system of an extensive kind, of which apparently we are a member, is evident even to the eye. The "*Milky Way*" or *Galaxy* proves it. This broad band goes right round the sky, somewhat irregularly it is true; the Sun lies close to its central plane. Moreover it is evident on inspection that the apparent density of the stars increases progressively as the *Galaxy* is approached, quite apart from the great multitude of indistinguishably crowded stars that give it its name. The impression conveyed to the eye is confirmed when we arrange the full counts of stars according to distance from the galactic plane. We then find that there is an unquestionable progression. For stars of the fourth magnitude, there are about four times as many near the galactic plane as at its poles; for the twentieth magnitude, about forty times as many. We may conclude that the system we are describing is decidedly flattened, as Herschel concluded, something of the shape of an ordinary magnifying lens, the *Galaxy* lying around the rim and our Sun near the centre.

A less obvious method of investigation than mere enumeration, one of

which the ancients knew nothing, and the value of which increases cumulatively as time passes, is the study of the motions of the stars among themselves. The " fixed " stars are far from fixed, putting aside those larger motions which are actually not a shift of the stars, but of the Earth, the pole and equator of which must be used as data for measurement. Out of a careful comparison of each catalogue of star-places with any earlier one, a number of " proper motions " is derived for the stars that figure in both catalogues. Until we know something about the distances, these are merely changes in the directions in which the stars must be looked for. Naturally they differ pretty widely in amount. A relatively large motion almost certainly indicates a relatively near star. The largest known motion is that of " *Barnard's Star*," which moves one degree, or the 360th part of the circle, in 360 years and turns out to be 400,000 times the Sun's distance away.

But let us rather speak of what emerges when we analyse the motions all together, and individual features are allowed to cancel one another out. In that case a certain definite residue remains, which we may attribute to the mass of the stars, or to the Sun or, more properly, we may take it as defining the Sun's motion relative to the mass of stars. It is directed to a point in the constellation *Hercules*.

If we take into account also the known distances of some of the stars and so convert their apparent change of bearing into linear motion along the celestial sphere, we can measure the solar motion as well as assign its direction, and it is about twelve miles a second. Though we assign this motion to the Sun and not to the mean of all the stars, it is merely a relative motion and there is nothing absolute about it. If we were able to compare the mean of our group of stars with the mean of another group, we should expect to find that they were also in relative motion with respect to one another, and we would be unable to give a meaning to anything absolute.

The solar motion is not the only systematic motion that emerges from an analysis of proper motions of the stars. If it is removed, the remaining motions are not random. There remain two preferred directions, which we know as " the two star streams." The points to which they are directed are opposite to one another, in the *Milky Way*, one in *Orion* and the other in *Scutum*. How many stars belong to these streams is not certain, but the number is very large. It may be the whole of the local cluster. Whether they are best described as two streams is not known, for there is an alternative way of putting the same fact. But the fact remains, whether we call it streaming, or preferential directions of spreading.

Less extensive systems have been detected, which are characterised by common motion. The first to be found was the *Taurus Cluster*. The clustering of stars in the *Hyades* is not illusory. They possess a common motion. More than that, a common motion links many unexpected but prominent members in other parts of the sky, such as five of the stars of the *Plough* with *Sirius* and a number of others.

All these apparently are threading their way through our system, and have been, for countless ages, without suffering any perturbation from other stars or even perturbing one another so as to converge—so feeble must be the gravitational influence of one star upon another.

Another point of view of stellar motions deserves mention. The first common effect to emerge is the motion of the Sun, as said above. If we regard it as a relative motion belonging to the stars, its amount, as a change of bearing, will be more or less according to the distance. But distance shows also in brightness, and though individually no connection may appear, if we take sufficient numbers a correlation will be shown between brightness, or " magnitude," and the solar motion, regarded as a change of bearings, and since we know what the solar motion amounts to this again may be interpreted as a determination of the actual average distances to be associated with a certain average magnitude. Such average distances prove to be quite reliable, and are an illustration of the collateral methods by which astronomers keep their scale in control.

All the foregoing conclusions suffer from the difficulty that the material becomes less and less palpable as the stars get more remote. Unless determinations of angular motion were cumulative and increased in precision with the lapse of time, they could hardly be used at all. Wonderful as it seems, there is another method, by which linear motions in miles per second can be found, and that irrespective of the distance of the star. This is due to the fact that light is transmitted in waves carried with a certain velocity, and a relative velocity of the source appears to the receiver as a change in the wave-length of the light. Such a change can be measured very accurately, so that motions of stars in the line of sight can be found, within less than one mile per second. Needless to say, a method such as this has many applications, some of which will be mentioned hereafter. In the present connection it will be seen how exactly it serves as a complement to the other method. All general conclusions that we derive from the one, such as the determination of the solar motion, can be derived otherwise by the other, in such a manner that the two methods check one another.

NATURE OF THE SUN

Leaving for the present the question of the distribution of the stars in space, we shall return to certain aspects of it after some discussion of their constitution.

We look to the constitution of the Sun, apart from any interest it may have in itself, as the best approach for understanding the nature of the stars. It is to be expected that we should learn a great deal more by critical examination of the phenomena of the Sun than by mere inspection, but it is surprising how great is the difference.

First regarding the Sun as our source of heat, the radiation received at the Earth may be estimated in different ways. It may be taken in the mass, receiving it in a carefully constructed absorber. After somewhat elaborate allowance for the part trapped in the atmosphere, we find that enough reaches each square centimetre of the outer atmosphere of the Earth to raise a gram of water 1.95° C. per minute. Calculating the temperature of a globe of the dimensions and distance of the Sun that would produce this, we find it a little below 6,000° absolute.

Or again, the heat received may be analysed, in respect to its intensity and according to its wave-length. It is then found that it agrees fairly well,

though not perfectly, with the emission of an ideal radiator at a definite temperature—for which alone we can make a binding theory. The temperature of this radiator would be a little above 6,000°. No exact agreement can be found ; the emissions are too strong at the red end and too weak at the violet. But the discrepancies are minor matters and leave us with a fairly well determined figure.

For information about the Sun, the spectrum is our chief document. If a small patch of sunlight is passed through a prism, it is spread out into a coloured band. The different colours designate different wavelengths or types, so that the band is in effect an analysis of the source of light, and may be used to compare the intensity of emission for all the various types. This is the way we compare the Sun with an ideal radiator at a definite temperature, for such a radiator emits the different types or colours, as blue, yellow or red, with intensities that are characteristic of its temperature. But we can do much more than estimate the balance of intensity for different colours. Sunlight reaches us deprived of some very significant elements. The spectrum, if produced by a narrow slit, is not continuous but is crossed by many thousands of dark lines, some exceedingly thin and faint, some broad and heavy, some sharp, some fuzzy, in apparently inextricable complexity. It constitutes the most precise as well as the most precious document in physics, and it has taken the better part of a century to unriddle it. It was found that these lines were characteristic of the chemical elements. The first thing learnt was the presence of sodium in the Sun, followed by the detection of about half the other elements, by recognition of the characteristic lines emitted by these elements. The lines are produced by a kind of contrast, when the element is present as a screen of lower temperature between us and the luminous disc. Hence we cannot prove the absence of an element from the fact that its lines do not appear, since it may be present low down within the luminous disc. The quality of the lines, their breadth, their intensity, has much to teach us of the state of the atoms that emit them, and therefore of the state of matters within the Sun itself, but this is best deferred until we can consider it in comparison with other stars.

Some features however we may deal with. If the element is in motion in the line of sight, the lines are displaced. For example, the Sun rotates, the east limb approaching and the west limb receding. We can measure the effect, and verify that the angular daily motion falls off from the Sun's equator up to 75° latitude, so that a complete rotation which takes place in 24.7 days at the equator, occupies as much as 33 or 34 days so far north or south as we can trace it.

But besides this constant effect, many local motions are shown, and some are exceedingly violent. The face of the Sun that we see is in furious turmoil, tempests raging to and fro with speeds like the volleys of an explosion. More systematically they show as whirling movements around the " Spots." These spots, not yet fully understood, are dark, or relatively dark, regions of lower temperature, that drift with the surface, and seldom endure more than a couple of months. A counter-clockwise tornado around a spot in the northern hemisphere is not infrequently associated with a clockwise system in the southern. They partake in the " periodicity " of the Sun, of which indeed they are the chief measurable indication.

This so-called periodicity of the Sun, though not prominent, is apparently deep seated, and can hardly be different in character from the much more pronounced recurring change that declares itself in many stars. Besides the spots, it is seen also in various other solar phenomena, in the "prominences," the type of the "Corona," and the magnetic effect of the Sun upon the Earth. It can be traced back almost as long as spots are observed. Perhaps because of the casual, unsystematic nature of the early records and the difficulty of tracing anything regular from the spots, the tale is far from smooth, but a chief period of 11⅛ years is clear, with a rapid rise from the least number present to the greatest, followed by a slower fall, broken half way by a pause. In this respect it resembles the characteristic type of change that is observed in much more pronounced degree in certain stars (p. 131).

The Sun presents to us strata as definite as, though different from, the gaseous, the liquid and rocky cloaks of the Earth with its unknown core. Starting from the interior, which only theory can penetrate and where circumstances must be very different from anything in our experience, we come to the opaque region known as the photosphere. It is from this that we receive radiation, for by some process the photosphere blankets the radiation from within. It is itself gaseous, but visibly also it is sharply bounded as, for example, is a cloud. Temperature and density fall, presumably, as we proceed outwards and only the lighter elements in the upper strata can announce their presence by spectral "lines" of absorption of hotter radiation from below. Some of the lines are of such a character that we can use them instrumentally so as actually to map the distribution of that species of atom in the Sun. Calcium, robbed of one electron, and normal hydrogen are thus continually charted. The calcium floats in bright patches or "flocculi" in the Sun's atmosphere, being specially dense over the spots. The chief character of the hydrogen distribution is found in immense trails of lower radiation. These are associated with "prominences," which are mainly jets of hydrogen—if anything going through its sequence so fast can be called a jet—into the relatively non-luminous upper strata. Relatively only, for there appears, when the disc is eclipsed, a streaked "corona," with no sharp boundary, and following in its changes the Sun's period of variation. In this corona the light gas helium was first discovered, and another which has been identified with oxygen in one of its "forbidden" states—forbidden, that is to say, or not occurring in our laboratories, where the atoms are still so close to one another that we can experiment upon them.

We think of the Sun's radiation as light, but as to how light travels our theories are only tentative. Certainly we must include, among what reaches us from the Sun, streams of electrified particles, which reach our upper atmosphere, being diverted towards the magnetic poles, to reveal themselves there in *Aurora Borealis* and disturbances of the earth's magnetism. The Sun itself is a magnetised body, with a general magnetic field, specially intense about the spots. Presumably this is no more than to say that the atoms that are found there are torn, temporarily, apart.

The mass of the Sun, which dominates the motions of the whole solar system and is felt beyond the orbit of *Neptune*, must be regarded as synonymous with a concentration of energy in a certain portion of space.

It is now held that as the Sun radiates energy—of which we receive a minute portion, a hundred millionth—its mass diminishes by four million tons a second.

The relations of mass with radiation are fundamental in the theory of Relativity. They were stated by Einstein before they were observed, in two other features. The gravitational field of the Sun disturbs the transmission of light. This was verified and measured by Greenwich observers in the eclipse of 1919. And the density of the Sun lowers the tone or, which is the same thing, makes redder the emission from all its atoms. It is difficult to detect this in the Sun, because the effect is small, and is over laid by other phenomena, but when we come to certain stars, the fact springs into cardinal importance.

THE SUN COMPARED WITH THE STARS

Having thus formed a descriptive idea of the Sun, we must next control or correct the presumption that it is a characteristic star. It may be said at once that the stars divide into two series or sequences—the so-called " Giants " and " Dwarfs." The Giant Stars will occupy us later. The Sun belongs to the other sequence, known as the Dwarfs—rather unfortunately, for a dwarf is an exceptional individual, and there is nothing exceptional in the Dwarf-series, nor are its members specially small. However, the term is established and we must use it, though we shall refer to it usually as the " Main Sequence."

The Sun's magnitude on the stellar scale, found by reducing its light suitably, is —26.7, understanding by a " magnitude " a step in intensity of brightness of more than $2\frac{1}{2}$-fold, as explained above (p. 121). That of *Sirius* is —1.6, *Vega* 0.1, of *Altair* 0.9. It is so bright only because it is near. As we wish to compare the stars irrespective of their distances, we must introduce a conception which eliminates distance, by placing them all at a standard distance. The standard distance usually taken is about two million times the radius of the Earth's orbit—10 " parsecs " or thirty-three light-years, as they are called—taking a " light-year " as the distance which light would travel in one year, *i.e.* about six million million miles. The magnitude as viewed from this distance is known as the " luminosity " of the star, or sometimes as the " absolute magnitude." The luminosities of the stars named above are as follows : the Sun 4.9, *Sirius* 1.3, *Vega* 0.6, *Altair* 2.9 ; and this is fairly indicative of conclusions from fuller data—that the Sun is a normal star of rather low luminosity.

Before remarking upon these figures we consider other features. The light of a star can be analysed, in the same way as that of the Sun. Spectra can be obtained for the stars, just as for the Sun, though naturally with less detail. However, they make it very clear that a spectrum of the solar type is only a stage in a long series or sequence. They are divided into classes, to which names have been given—O, B, A, F, G, K, M, N, R. The classes merge into one another insensibly. The Sun belongs to class G. The classes may be distinguished approximately by colour, as blue (B), white (A), yellow (G), orange (K), red (M), deep red (N) or (R). More precisely they may be defined by the character of the spectral lines. From class O, bright lines are emitted. Class B form the helium stars,

and show slight and faint absorption lines of any kind; in class A the hydrogen lines have developed to enormous strength, and metallic lines show their presence, especially the lines of "ionised," or electrified, calcium, called by their discoverer Frauenhofer (H) and (K). This (K) has nothing to do with the K-stars. In class F these are much developed and the hydrogen lines recede. Class G continues this process, and in particular the lines (H) and (K) are very heavy and broad. Class K shows even more absorption lines, the beginnings of general absorption and absorption in bands by certain compounds. Before this stage, chemical compounds, even the most refractory to heat, hardly declare themselves. In class M the general absorption increases, and in particular the spectrum is deeply gashed by a succession of bands that have been traced to the oxide of the metal titanium. The conclusion is inevitable that we are looking at a sequence, though whether it is a mass sequence—state depending upon size—or a time sequence in which each star passes through all the stages in succession, or whether there is some connection between the two ideas, must be left for further investigation.

Besides showing a progression in the development of the lines, the spectra show a variation of intensity in respect to the balance between the blue and the red ends. This feature, shown in a rough, but quite consistent way in the visual colour of a star, may be measured accurately by more refined apparatus. An ideal radiator would show a known and calculable balance of colours for each temperature, and we have seen that the Sun roughly approximates to an ideal radiator at a temperature of 6,000°. By assuming that the stars do the same, we can find their temperatures also, and those for each spectral class are now well established. A table is given below, with some further details (p. 133).

With regard to the masses of the stars, compared with that of the Sun, the evidence is sufficiently striking, though there is not very much of it. If collisions occurred between stars, mass could show in the effects, but as they do not, mass only shows in gravitation. No planets can be seen circling round the stars, and according to the current view, such a planetary system as surrounds our Sun exists only by the rarest accident. But a number of cases are known in which two *stars* circulate round one another, evidently by their mutual attraction. In fact such systems are of very frequent occurrence, and many more must exist than can be detected if we are to rely upon seeing the two components separated from one another, for it appears from theory that fission into two is a normal incident in the development of a star. If the motion of a double star has been followed over a sufficient portion of the relative orbit, and if in addition their distance from us has been ascertained, gravitational theory allows us to assign the sum of the masses of the pair. If, further, their motion can be followed separately by comparison with some independent standard, the masses can be separated from the sum. We conclude that a good many conditions must be satisfied before we obtain well determined masses, and it is not surprising that comparatively few are known with certainty. Few as they are, there is little doubt as to what they say. They show that not only is the Sun a representative star of its own spectral class, but that right through the main sequence, at any rate if we stop short of B stars, the masses exhibit a very small range. No star is known

with a mass less than one sixth of the Sun, and this one is at the extreme red end of the sequence. At the other end, *Sirius* is about two and a half times the Sun's mass, and this is exceptionally big. If we arrange the masses according to the luminosity an even more striking result is apparent. But as this includes also the giant masses, as well as other outlying cases of high theoretical importance, detail with regard to it is deferred.

GIANT STARS

The increase in the masses of the stars as we pass upwards in temperature, from class A to class B, and beyond these to O, is very marked. Those at the top of class B are ten or twelve times as massive as the Sun. The highest known mass, by far, is of class O ; the star has two components, each probably 100 times as massive as the Sun. Concurrently the mutual orbits from which these masses are derived exhibit a progressive change. Those first found with the micrometer, the astronomer's instrument for measuring their visual separation, are of long period—very few being under a hundred years—and very elliptical. As we proceed to the other end of the sequence the period, and with it the distance of separation, diminishes and also the ellipticity of the orbit diminishes. The view is strongly suggested that we are viewing stages of a process of development, which begins with the " early " stars of high temperature and mass, and therefore of high luminosity, and continues down the main sequence, the mass gradually diminishing and the temperature falling, while the components of the " binary systems "—as we call a pair of stars circulating round one another—separate and circulate in more eccentric orbits.

The binary systems of *short* period are not revealed by the older methods of measuring separation and relative direction of two components with the micrometer. The two components are seldom distinguishable even as an elongation in the image. They are shown instead by periodic oscillations of the spectral lines about a mean place, defining a to-and-fro motion of the emitting body in the line of sight. Such systems, as has already been remarked, are very numerous. The method is another application of motion in the line of sight showing itself by a change of wave-length. Sometimes both spectra are visible and, not infrequently, are of different classes. What we can derive from such observations is restricted in the important respect that we cannot distinguish the inclination of the orbit, and the true dimensions are involved in this deficiency. On the other hand, we are given direct velocities without demanding a knowledge of distance.

It will appear below that these giant stars are, some of them, of enormous size. The star *Betelgeuse*, if placed where the Sun is, would extend to the orbit of *Mars*. This is exceptional, but it must be evident that two suns of this kind, revolving round one another in a few days, must frequently be in actual contact, or even intermingle their bodies, under which circumstances their differential gravitation, which is known as the tidal effect of one upon the other, would be of an order comparable with the main gravitational effect. This gives peculiar importance to another source of knowledge of certain systems, exceedingly precise and leading

in certain cases to most valuable pieces of information not to be obtained otherwise. This is by the study of the light changes of pairs of stars that pass in front of one another and so eclipse one another.

Some, indeed many, of the stars vary in light. In some cases it is certainly due to an actual change in the star itself. In others it is equally certain that we happen to be in the plane of circulation of a close binary system and receive the light from the two discs, now separated and now hiding one another. Thus there will be two equal maxima of light, and two minima that will be unequal, if, as usually happens, the stars are unequal in size and brightness. The best known star of this type is the star *Algol*—*β Persei*—which in five hours loses two-thirds of its light, recovers it again in the same period, and remains at full brightness (with a slight secondary minimum that can only be detected by an instrument for measuring brightness) for 2¾ days, after which the same steps are repeated with perfect regularity. We are viewing an eclipse, and as the distance of *Algol* is known, by analysis of the phenomenon, we can tell the sizes of the discs of the two stars, as well as the masses. The important new fact that this approach gives us is the density, and this star turns out to be of low density—if not gaseous—about one-eighth that of the Sun, or one-sixth that of water. Other systems, also well observed, give much lower densities, some of them some hundreds of times less dense than air. Yet these huge spheres of gas, which are only distinguishable from a void by the greater void around them, emit light themselves and eclipse the light of each other.

Thus we must think of stars *preceding* the main sequence upon which the Sun is found as of greater mass, vastly greater luminosity and low density. But they do not progress continually to greater and greater effective temperatures. Theory would dictate that they reached a maximum of temperature after which they turned back, and this appears to be the case. Preceding the main sequence, where the order goes from B to M and the temperature falls in consequence, and uniting with it, say, at class B, we have a giant sequence of great stars of round about the same luminosity, which run through the whole series of spectral classes in the reverse order—that is to say from M to B, with rising temperature. A gap of at least twelve magnitudes separates the stars of class M, which are here at least true giants and true dwarfs. The M-giants are among the brightest, and the M-dwarfs among the faintest objects in the sky.

VARIABLE STARS

The eclipsing stars which vary in light, of which we have spoken above, owe their variation to the geometrical accident that we happen to lie in the plane in which they revolve round one another. But there is a true variation of light in a great many stars, in some cases regular and in some irregular in all degrees. Regular variation is illustrated by the star *δ Cephei*, whence we derive the name "the Cepheid type." The period of Cepheids ranges from about 100 days downwards to a few hours, and change in the period of a single star has hardly been established. The stars in question are among the greatest that we know. These very great ones are giants of class G, and of very low density. Those of

earlier class are smaller and of shorter period. The luminosity may change from a barely sensible increase, up to more than double the minimum light emission. The change of brightness shows the feature of rapid rise to maximum and slow fall, punctuated by a hesitation. It will be recalled that the Sun's periodicity displays this also, though any attribution to a common cause is merely a speculation. By measuring the wave-lengths from known lines of the spectrum, we find that the radiant surface is approaching us and the temperature rising when the light is increasing, and receding with falling temperature when the light is diminishing, suggesting so strongly a pulsation within the body of the star that this is the generally accepted explanation.

The period of a Cepheid variable is intimately connected with its luminosity. This was first established by the discovery of a number of them in the smaller " cloud of Magellan," which is a remote group containing almost numberless nebulæ, clusters and systems, a veritable " island universe," where presumably any Cepheids that occur are at about the same distance from us so that their true luminosity follows their apparent magnitude. Though we have no explanation for it, this period-luminosity relation is so definite that it is used without question. And it has this important use—since it covers the periods of Cepheids in our own large cluster, which are remote stars certainly but not inaccessible by one means or another—we can translate the apparent magnitude of the others into absolute magnitude, and thus use in effect the immense distances of δ *Cephei* and *Polaris* and others which are not too remote as a new measuring rod for sounding the further depths of space. We shall have occasion to refer to this method again later.

Much less regular are the " long-period variables." The long periods are not very long, ranging from 250 to 1,000 days. Unlike that of the Cepheids, the variation is not so definite that it can be foretold with certainty, but when it comes it may amount to a change of many magnitudes. Thus the star called *Mira* (ο *Ceti*) frequently increases in brightness two-hundredfold or more, and this is not the greatest difference known. These stars, like the Cepheids, are great stars (though not so great) and of very low density. They are of low temperature and advanced spectral class, but they appear to be distinct from the Cepheids, and not to form a continuation of that sequence.

The Cepheids and also the long-period variables are often viewed as more or less regular pulsations in the body of the star. A third class of variation is more adequately regarded as an explosion. These are the Novæ. As a rule, though not always, such stars are known to break out only once. Some very faint star which has been, for all we know, steady and normal, increases its brightness perhaps a hundred-thousandfold in the course of two or three days and soon settles back, more slowly, into its old insignificance. Hence the disturbance, whatever its cause, must be called superficial. Meanwhile the spectrum shows, as might be expected, a tumultuous sequence of changes, but proving by the displacement in wave-length of the lines that can be recognised, that the luminous gases are rushing towards us as by an explosion. It is extremely improbable that it is anything else. It might conceivably be a collision, but all the stars are so small compared to their distances apart that a direct collision would

occur practically never. Now the phenomenon of a Nova is not uncommon ; a good many Novæ break out every year. Very few are remarked at the time, because great brightness is necessary at maximum in order to attract attention ; the fact is established by examining stored photographic plates, covering the same region, where the steady brightness and sudden outbursts are found recorded.

The review in the last three sections of the nature of the stars will show that knowledge of the Sun is merely a key to the door, and though it is an indispensable and effective key we find, when we use it, that it opens to us a variety of unforeseen things.

NATURE OF THE STARS: OBSERVATIONAL

Following the idea expressed in the last paragraph, it might seem that the ground was insecure, when we came to describe the physical states of the stars which differ widely from the Sun or any matter we know upon the Earth. But astronomers hardly feel it so. Reference has been made more than once to the way in which one undemonstrative conclusion, perhaps little more than a surmise, serves to strengthen another of independent origin. Almost all the observations of the physical state of the stars are separately incomplete in this sense. But we piece the puzzle together and in the end get a picture which is not likely to want any large changes in order to put it right. This practice is well illustrated in what follows. We begin with stellar temperatures.

The temperature of the Sun may be derived from the whole heat received at the Earth, or from the same analysed according to its quality or wave-length, or again by consideration of the wave-length at which the intensity of emission is a maximum. All these depend upon well-established physical theory. They agree in indicating a temperature of about 6,000° absolute, which may be imagined as belonging to the opaque luminous disc at the base of the thinner solar atmosphere. It is undoubtedly gaseous there, but it is opaque ; we get nothing from below it and can only penetrate it by theory.

Taking, now, what evidence we can about the stars, we may photograph their spectra and examine the variation of intensity as we proceed along it. Variation introduced by the method of reception may be allowed for, and the outcome is a curve of varying intensity that can be compared with that of the Sun, and assigns a temperature accordingly. Incidentally it confirms the supposition, suggested by observations of the Sun and also by theory, that the whole radiations of a star follow pretty closely those of the ideal radiator—the so-called " black body " of the physicist. The method permits of extension. Full spectra can be obtained only over restricted magnitudes, since the light must be spread out and therefore weakened, before a spectrum is recorded. But ultimately it is only the balance of intensity between the blue and the red that we require, in other words, the united effective balance of colour of the light considered as a whole. Accordingly a quantity called the " colour index " is studied, which may be found if we compare the magnitude of the star as photographed with that as seen, since the photographic plate is most sensitive to one colour and the eye to another. This can be pushed as far as where

any stellar images will record themselves. It is found that " colour," as it would appear to the eye, or effective visual wave-length, can be assigned definitely. The method fits on to the other method and corroborates it. Further, it deals quite positively with the place where the main sequence of stars splits away from the giants, which occurs about class B. The temperature, in short, is found to follow closely the spectral class, the class of giants being somewhat cooler than the dwarfs of the same class.

Satisfactory as this method is, it is not the only approach to a solution. Actual quantity of radiant heat, spread out over a spectrum, has been measured. Naturally the observation is somewhat of a *tour de force*, and has only been effected with the greatest telescope there is, namely, the 100-inch telescope at Mount Wilson in California, and for a few of the brightest stars only. As far as extending knowledge goes, it affords another prop to what we have concluded otherwise. A definite prolongation of the series is given by a fourth method—the consideration of the appearance, preferably the maximum intensity, of chemical elements which have lost one or more electrons, as they may under sufficient agitation. If the sequence it gives is adjusted to known temperatures in the known region, it extends by a credible theory our knowledge into the unknown, just where the determination by colour or spectral balance becomes ineffective or fallacious. The following table shows approximately the results for the different spectral classes :

B	..	20,000°
A	..	12,600°
F	..	8,600°
G	..	6,200°
K	..	4,400°
M	..	3,500°

It will be remarked that there is nothing very extraordinary in these temperatures. The temperatures that must be assigned *within* the stars, ranging up to millions of degrees, are a very different matter and can be conceived only by theory. But the temperatures given in this list overlap at the lower end what can be dealt with on the Earth in the electric furnace and in explosions. We may regard them as immediately contiguous to ordinary experience. It is therefore doubly valuable that we can use them for another purpose, and incidentally confirm them. When the apparent size of a body is known and also its temperature, we can calculate the radiant emission we receive from it. For the stars, the last figures as magnitude and the first as apparent diameter, which is measured by the angle subtended. In other words, knowing the temperature and the apparent magnitude, we can calculate the apparent diameter. The following represents the results for a few of the brightest stars. For the case of these stars the distance is also known, so that we can find not only the apparent diameter, but the actual diameter. That of the Sun is taken as the unit.

Capella	12	*Vega*	2.4	*Companion to Sirius*	.034
Arcturus	30	*Sirius*	1.8		
Aldebaran	60	*Procyon*	1.9		
Betelgeuse	290	*α Centauri*	1.0		
Antares	480	*Barnard's star*	0.16		

These data, obtained first as above from theory, have been confirmed, and along with them the theory from which they spring, by a brilliant piece of direct measurement. It should be remarked that we can never see a true stellar disc, to measure it. It is overlaid by a much larger false disc produced by the scatter of light known as diffraction. Otherwise, though the quantities are small, some of them would have proved to be within reach. Obviously the biggest disc will be one that appears bright though of low temperature. This points directly to *Betelgeuse*, *Antares* and *α Herculis* as the most promising. But diffraction, which defeats us first by creating a false disc, has been made, by applying it otherwise, to yield up the secret. If the same source of light, proceeding through two apertures, is brought to a single spot, the united diffraction disc is found to be crossed by bright and dark bands, the separation of which depends upon the separation of the apertures. If two sources are presented at the same time, the bands can be made to disappear in the united diffraction discs, by separating the apertures suitably, so that bright of one compensates dark of the other. The two halves of a stellar disc may be regarded as the two sources, and thus the apparent diameter of the star can be measured in terms of the separation of the apertures that give an image free from bands. Though comparatively few stars can be treated in this way, and these with difficulty, it is enough, for it confirms that the diameters calculated from temperatures and magnitude are real ; if we want more than these direct measures can give, we can obtain them by the easier method.

There is a further confirmatory value in these numbers. Comparing the diameters derived with that of the Sun, it appears that over most of the main sequence, which is given in the middle column, the diameters do not range widely. They run down a little for the red dwarfs, and run up a little for high temperature stars. But for the giant red stars, to which the last entries of the first column belong, they are enormous. *Betelgeuse*, placed where the Sun is, would envelop the Earth and reach as far as *Mars*. Its volume would be about twenty-five million times that of the Sun. But so far no star has been found, and we do not expect any, with a mass greater than a very moderate multiple of the Sun's mass. Hence we have a confirmation of what we have already concluded from the showing of eclipsing stars, that these great stars must be regarded as composed of a gas as tenuous as would produce a pressure of about a thousandth of a millimetre of mercury. The standard pressure of the atmosphere is recorded in the barometer as the millimetres of mercury, so that the quantity is about a millionth of an atmosphere.

THE ATOM

It is almost impossible to give a lucid account of the stars without positing a knowledge of the structure of the atoms. The two are indeed very closely linked. Many of the details of the modern theory of the atom could not have been confirmed elsewhere than in the great laboratory of the sky. And our sole means of ascertaining the constitution of the stars and nebulæ, and much else about them, lies in splitting their light into spectra and then studying them by the help of a theory founded on terrestrial experiments.

The modern atom is a kind of solar system on a minute scale, too complicated for exact calculation, unfortunately, in any except the simplest cases presented. And here we may remark that though we are in the habit of speaking very definitely, as we do in describing the atoms, of " electrons " revolving round their nuclear " protons " in certain orbits, and so forth, this must be regarded merely as a manner of speech, designed to assist thinking and to point to the execution of certain calculations that work out. The less definiteness we give to our words, the less we are likely to be misled. It will be sufficient if we think of the electron as a particle, beyond conception small, and charged with an invariable quantity of negative electricity, while the proton is still smaller, nearly 2,000 times as massive, and charged with an equal quantity of positive electricity. One or more protons form a nucleus, and an equal number of electrons revolve around them with incredible speed; and each of the ninety-two chemical elements is characterised by an " atomic number," which is nothing but the number of electrons revolving round its nucleus in its un-electrified state. But there is much in the spatial specification that is obviously provisional, and which we should abolish without compunction if we could find an equally useful equivalent. Indeed it may be regarded as already abolished, and replaced by a " wave theory " which denies any permanent identity to the electron. But like the ray theory of light, which the undulatory theory supplanted, the current description as given above is too useful and too efficient to be discarded.

Any information we have of the constitution of the atoms is got from their spectra. The spectrum of the hydrogen atom is the simplest of all the spectra. It consists of a single series of lines in the visible region, proceeding from the visible red to the ultra-violet, at intervals diminishing in an obviously related manner, until finally the series converges upon a definite limit in the ultra-violet, beyond which the lines cease and a faint continuous band succeeds, extending until lost to view. Similar series of lines have been found in the infra-red and ultra-violet regions of the spectrum, into either of which regions the eye cannot penetrate.

It would take too many words to explain how this sequence, which anyone could recognise, baffled all theory, and finally forced upon us a revolution of ideas more drastic than that of Relativity. This is the " Quantum Theory." We now picture the hydrogen atom as consisting of a single electron, negatively charged, which revolves around a positive nucleus under mutual attraction, the whole being neutral electrically. Our older theories would have said that all orbits were possible for such a system, and the mere description of an orbit entailed emission of radiation. But we must conclude that that is not the case when we are dealing with an atom. Only those orbits are possible in which the so-called " action " steps up *by a certain definite amount, the Quantum*. This quantum is a fundamental unit in physics and, once known, can be detected over and over again as the true and only explanation of many facts otherwise unintelligible. The first orbit is the smallest orbit, of lowest action. As the action is increased by a step, the orbit grows larger by a step, until finally the electron has such a speed that it escapes from the pull of the nucleus altogether, and travels farther and farther away. The

negatively charged electron and the positively charged proton have thereafter separate histories, and the system is said to be electrified or "ionised." The process by which quanta are conveyed to the atom, or from it, is radiation. When radiation strikes the revolving system, it can only be absorbed in definite quanta. When so absorbed, the electron is said to "jump" from one orbit to the next, and the fact is marked to our senses by the occurrence of one of the absorption lines of the spectrum. Such an absorption line, or emission line, therefore records the orbits between which the electron has "jumped."

This complicated and artificial description is forced upon us by the facts. It will be remarked how far it is from classical dynamics, which is a theory of the effect of forces in producing motion, and, like ordinary geometry, is founded upon axioms that are supposed to be metaphysically self-evident.

The hydrogen atom, and the nearly similar one of ionised helium, are the only systems simple enough to be calculated exactly. But, as was said above, the scheme extends itself to all the ninety-two elements; two electrons revolve around the nucleus of neutral helium, three round that of lithium, and so on. The orbits arrange themselves in a symmetrical but peculiar way, in a sequence of "shells," which contain when completed respectively 2, 8, 8, 18, 18, 36 electrons. All the chemical properties and the visual spectrum of each element depend upon the number of electrons in the outermost shell. If one is removed from an inner shell by any cause, radiation may be emitted, and the inner shell completed again by an electron "jumping" from an outer shell where the energy is higher. When the outermost shell is complete in its number of electrons, the element is practically without chemical properties, and we have the inert gases Helium, Neon, Argon, Krypton, Xenon, Radium. Helium is inert chemically and Hydrogen is active, because the two electrons of the former complete the first ring, while the single electron of the latter leaves it open. When an element is reduced by ionising it—that is by driving away one of the electrons of its outer shell—to a certain similarity of structure with the element next below it in the series, its spectrum becomes similar to the spectrum of that element, though the analogous features do not occur in the same part of the visible band. The word "similar" requires explanation. The spectra are too intricate for exact prediction, but they present recognisable features, sometimes very obvious visually, as pairs of lines, or lines in threes or more, the so-called "triplets," or "multiplets" of any complexity, and these are generally reproduced quite faithfully in the spectrum of the next higher element in the series when the latter is ionised.

Ionisation of an element, being the loss of an electron from its outermost shell, whereby it seems to acquire a positive electrical charge, is a very definite step, which takes place only under assignable circumstances. Hence when an ionised spectrum is recognised in a celestial body, it gives information of extreme precision as to the physical state in that body.

The atoms must be regarded as incredibly small and numerous and rapid in action. Unless search is made expressly, we apprehend nothing except the statistical results from the behaviour of great numbers, which

may be quite different from the behaviour of any individual atom. Yet we know something about the behaviour of individual atoms; for example we know that they are not always the same; thus they interfere with one another. The spectral lines corresponding to the larger electron orbits are apt to be fuzzy, which means that they perturb one another and have not strictly the same period for revolving round the nucleus. They can be made sharp again by reducing the pressure, that is to say, by leaving more space to each atom.

As everybody knows, statistics mislead completely if applied to predict individual behaviour. "The unexpected always happens" because the expected, at best, is the average, and the happening is individual. A relevant example may be taken from the exchange of heat between bodies. A body, which is a perfect radiator and absorber, refuses to absorb or radiate indiscriminately, but preserves a balance between radiations of different types, which is related to its "temperature." This fact alone, well known and well established as it is, has been found impossible to explain without resort to a quantum theory, for which it becomes one of the fundamental proofs. Now temperature, viewed more closely, is a measure of the average relative agitation of the particles of the hot body. Hence we should expect, as in fact we find statistically, that a body can take up heat from one that has higher temperature, but parts with heat to one that has a lower one. But if we resolve the particles into chemical molecules and these into their atoms, exchange between two bodies becomes an average history of exchanges between the atoms. Thus if we calculate the temperature, say, of a particle of dust in space, exposed to the radiation of all the stars, it is found to conform to what we should expect in a relatively large body, and to be only a few degrees above absolute zero. But if we treat, not a particle of matter, but individual atoms, these can only absorb or emit radiation in a prescribed way, and if we calculate the temperature at which they are, it is found to be about 10,000°. Of course, though the temperature is high, the quantity of heat may be small.

In the same way we can generally only rob an atom of one of its electrons by somewhat violent means—high temperatures or heavy electric discharges through high vacua—but the isolated atoms that are found in space, and in the upper regions of our own and the Sun's atmosphere, appear to be mostly ionised. We infer that, having become ionised by some accident, the encounter with a neutralising electron is a circumstance too rare to be the rule. We shall see the bearing of these facts in the next section.

CONSTITUTION OF THE STARS IN THE LIGHT OF ATOMIC PHYSICS

The circumstances in the stars are evidently so different from any circumstances we can approach or handle here, that scruple is necessary in drawing any conclusions from them. We must build upon ultimate physical theory, or we shall certainly be led astray. That is the importance to us of atomic physics, which otherwise it would seem so paradoxical to introduce into astronomy. Our confidence in forecasts will be

greatly strengthened by doing so. Accordingly we shall first point to many places, otherwise dark, which the conceptions of the last section of this Article illuminate. Such illumination is due, for, as already remarked, the current theory of the atom could hardly have been established without the evidence contributed by astronomy.

We turn first to the Sun, keeping an eye upon the application of terrestrial physics to its phenomena. We find that a great deal can be read about the occurrence of different elements at different heights in its " atmosphere " from a photograph of the spectrum of the narrow crescent which the Moon exposes just before a total eclipse. The crescent is so narrow a source of light, that in this case we do not need to make it narrower by interposing a " slit." For about a second the disc is shut off while the luminous atmosphere is visible, and as the Moon's disc is then slightly bigger than that of the Sun, it cuts across all the different levels of the solar atmosphere. An element which occurs high up records its presence by a longer line than one that is lower. The elements that are found to reach highest are the light elements hydrogen and helium, which we should expect, and ionised calcium, which might seem surprising, because there are many elements lighter than calcium. Extreme tenuity must be indicated. Even lower down, where neutral calcium also shows, far the greater proportion is ionised, and, for this to be the case, the general density must be low. Other circumstances confirm this conclusion. Since gravity on the Sun is twenty-eight times as great as on the Earth, under parallel circumstances we should have, not a tenuous, but a dense atmosphere. The balancing consideration that must be introduced to counteract a strong gravitational pull is the pressure of outgoing radiation. The mechanics of radiation enter very prominently in any theory of stellar states. Every dark line in the spectrum connotes radiant energy absorbed. A proportion of what is absorbed is re-emitted as radiation, but at a lower temperature, and moreover in all directions in place of directly outwards, so that a residue remains with the atom, counteracting the pull of gravitation. The importance of radiation pressure becomes still greater within the body of a star, and as will be pointed out below, may become the dominant factor, feeble though the force may be under terrestrial circumstances.

Returning to the lower levels of the atmosphere of the Sun, taken as a typical state, the features known as sun-spots, though embedded in the photosphere, exhibit unmistakably a lower temperature, namely about 4,000° in place of 6,000°. The evidence comes from various sources ; we have the general balance of emitted wave-length, the prominence of compounds like titanium oxide, cyanogen and hydroxyl, and the relative strengthening or weakening of certain spectral lines. The sun-spots themselves are certainly vortices, or whirling storms which may be the ends of long, whirling filaments, sometimes just breaking out to the surface, and there spreading outwards laterally and lowering their temperature by this expansion. The whirl can be seen in suitable photographs, and the whirling " ions," that is to say, broken atoms, generate a strong magnetic field, which can also be detected by suitable apparatus. The sun-spots recur with a period of about eleven years, but alternate sun-spot periods reverse their magnetic field, so that a full period must be thought of,

not as eleven years, but twenty-two. In less degree a magnetic field has been traced over the whole of the Sun, just as we have a magnetic field over the whole of the Earth, the poles approximating with the poles of rotation, as they do on the Earth.

We have thus good grounds, in confirming what we know, and illuminating its meaning, for pushing further the application of atomic physics, in order to assist our comprehension of the state of affairs within the Sun, and therefore within the other stars. The first problem that meets us is the opacity of the disc. Why can we not see right into the Sun ? It is not due to sudden change of density—there is none. The answer is that it is due to ionisation. An ionised gas will trap radiation, as has been verified by terrestrial experiments, and therefore prevent us from receiving the radiations from within, by which alone it would be possible to see the interior Hence, enormous, by our standards, though the energy emitted by a star may be, it is merely a leak. The main part of radiant energy and of the irregular motion that we know as heat, is semi-permanently trapped within. Now violent motions at close quarters mean electrons frequently displaced, so that we must think of the characteristic atoms as stripped of part or all of their outer shells of electrons. So far as we know they do not lose their identity and, if placed again under suitable circumstances, would speedily assemble the normal shells about their nuclei. But there is a consequence of the first importance. The nucleus is very small as well as very massive. If stripped of its shields, it may and does present densities exceeding thousands of times anything known in circumstances we call normal, though at the same time it has the free mobility of a gas. The density of the Sun exceeds that of water by forty per cent. And it used to be a problem whether its interior was gaseous or liquid. But the density of the faint and tiny F-star that accompanies *Sirius* exceeds that of the Sun 36,000-fold. But since this arises from stripping the outer shells of the atoms, there is no reason to treat either body as other than a perfect gas.

The best theory shows that the temperature must rise within the body of a star to millions of degrees, and as the temperature rises, the pressure of radiation rises enormously too. It rises at a greater rate than gravitation, which it opposes, and accounts for the fact that the stars are not greatly more compressed than we find them and than we should expect them to be from their great masses. At a certain point indeed radiation-pressure would become greater than gravitation, but if that were reached, expansion would reduce it again, and we should have a pulsating body. This may be what we witness in the Cepheid variables. If the circumstances were such as to make radiation-pressure greater still, the star would fling itself apart, so that there is an assigned limit to the size of the collections of matter we know by the name of " star." Or again, we may have a border-line case such as a Nova seems to illustrate.

The luminosity, or shining, of a star is, as has been said above, a mere leak. It may however be calculated from physical theory when the other circumstances are known, and though the calculation is difficult, it verifies itself over so wide a range that there can be little doubt that it is reliable. It turns out that the luminosity may be assigned when the mass and surface temperature alone are known. The other factors, the size,

the density—its distribution and its average—simply do not matter. This covers stars in such diverse states as the *Companion to Sirius* on the one hand, where the density is 30,000 times and the radius one-thirtieth of that of the Sun, and, on the other, *Betelgeuse*, where the density compared to the Sun is one-millionth only and the radius 300.

The low densities which are found at a small distance from an immense mass like the Sun must be still more pronounced in the loose bodies known as the gaseous nebulæ. Some of them, stretching over a large part of the sky, are wholly dark. The " rifts " that are seen in the continuity of the *Milky Way* are of this character. Possibly all are dark ; at any rate we know that some at least owe their luminosity to stars embedded in them, which light them up like an incandescent lamp within a globe. But unlike such globes they show spectra of characteristic bright lines. In default of knowledge the element producing this spectrum was called " nebulium," until it became clear that there was no room for any element of that kind. At the date of writing, only two elements are undiscovered, but their properties can be predicted, and, among other things, they are heavy, whereas the matter in the nebulæ must certainly be light. Hence we have gradually become pretty sure that " nebulium " was merely a familiar element in an unfamiliar state ; but only recently has its secret been disclosed. Among the great variety of changes between two orbits which are theoretically open to the electrons of most elements, are certain modes that are " forbidden," in the sense that the lines corresponding to them are not met with. The reason is that an electron, jumping to one of these orbits, remains in it perhaps a thousand times as long —so long, say, as a thousandth of a second—as it would in other orbits. Hence the absorption or emission that is related to it does not occur often enough to be seen. There are such lines possible in singly ionised nitrogen, and in singly and doubly ionised oxygen, and they have been shown to account for the mysterious " nebulium." Such a proof is not a conjecture. It follows the severest test of numerical agreement to five or six figures. One may ask why these " forbidden " states occur in the sky. The answer is that the matter in question is already ionised, and is so tenuous in density that the encounter of an " ion," that is a broken atom, with an electron or another ion, is in any case so rare that the " forbidden " states lose their peculiarity.

The " empty " space of the sky is nearly, but not quite, void of matter. Almost no general absorption takes place, which would be our ordinary test for the presence of matter there, even from remote stars, but these expanses have been found to contain enough atoms of ionised calcium and also of normal sodium to produce the characteristic absorption lines of such elements. At first these lines were attributed to the star by whose light they were seen, but whereas the other lines of the star showed the displacement of wave-length that is interpreted as motion, the calcium lines were steady. Their true origin as due to diffuse inter-stellar matter has been confirmed by measuring their intensity, which increases for remoter and remoter stars.

The presence of matter of such specific kinds in the depths of space presents the intriguing questions of how it got there, and whether there is anything else. As to the latter point, there is certainly something else

and something different from any matter or radiation that we encounter otherwise. There are the " cosmic rays," recently discovered and the nature of which is still mysterious. They come from the depths of space and are not related to the position of any of the most probable sources—the Sun, or the *Milky Way*, or the nearest great nebula in *Andromeda*. The Earth is bombarded by them wherever it goes. They have a penetrating power that much exceeds any other that we know, and would pierce some twelve feet of lead. Whether they consist of particles or ether waves has not yet been determined ; nor what they mean, though so much energy can hardly result except from the merging of simple atoms into more complicated ones, or even the destruction of an atom altogether by the union of an electron and a proton, which seems to be theoretically possible.

That matter is destroyed in some such way, in the processes we witness in the sky, and energy given forth as radiation, can hardly now be considered a question of debate. Any other imagined method for maintaining the radiation of the Sun, for example, of whose duration in its present form we have some idea from geology, proves on examination to be hopelessly inadequate. Thus if we consider gravitational contraction, this would supply energy to correspond with current needs, but it would postulate a quite different Sun twenty million years ago ; and other supplies are still feebler. The interior of a star, as we have described it a little way back, seems exactly the place where head-on encounters of electrons and protons may be met with, and we conceive that the result of such an encounter would be the disappearance of " matter " and the generation of a relatively enormous quantity of radiant energy. The Sun's radiation, though only a leak, is very great ; in order to balance it, the Sun must lose matter at the rate of four million tons a second. But there seems no reason to call this quantity improbable. Even at this rate, its mass is so great that the supply would last twenty million million years.

GLOBULAR CLUSTERS

Leaving for the moment these matters which lie on the border-line between experience and speculation, let us proceed with the description of what is found in the skies. Next beyond individual stars come clusters of stars, and of these the most easy to characterise are the globular clusters.

The globular cluster in *Hercules* is the one best placed for northern observers, but if we describe one, apparently we describe all, for they are extraordinarily alike. Seen by the eye as a single star, the cluster in *Hercules* is resolved by the telescope into a multitude of very faint stars, scattered with a regularity, which is presumably merely an average from a large number of irregularities, over the whole field, and concentrating more and more densely to the centre. A good photograph shows much more. There are at least 50,000 stars in this cluster, and they concentrate so closely on the centre that they run over one another and become indistinguishable. About ninety of these clusters are known ; they appear to be centred about a point in *Sagittarius*, in the *Milky Way*, and the Sun shows no sign of relation to their distribution.

This might have been all we know about them, if Cepheid variables (p. 130) had not been found in them. The Cepheid variables in these clusters are of extraordinarily short period—half a day or thereabouts. Now from the period of a Cepheid variable we can infer its real brightness, and if this is done, these apparently very faint stars turn out to be intrinsically highly luminous, so that their apparent faintness is no more than an effect of great distance. Comparing the apparent magnitudes with what we can infer of their real brightness, we can tell the distance that they are at. From such a calculation it appears that the cluster in *Hercules* is distant from us some 35,000 light-years. The nearest of the globular clusters, that in *Centaurus*, is 21,000 light-years. Most of them are much more remote.

In fact we require some more powerful method even than that of detecting variables, in order to get their scale of distance. Such methods have been found, depending on the great similarity between different clusters. The simplest is nothing but a comparison of the apparent diameters. Another depends upon the brightest stars in the cluster. Trusting to these, one cluster has been found to lie ten times as far away as the cluster in *Centaurus*.

It is unnecessary to spend words in attempting to make these figures more impressive. They are measures, not vague surmises. They may be disturbed in detail, perhaps, but not in scale. They extend our knowledge in a way that prepares for further extensions. They represent something, obviously systematic and utterly beyond what we could measure, or could hope to measure, using as scale the ordinary "astronomical unit," or distance from the Earth to the Sun—ninety-three million miles. They ignore the Sun in their arrangement, and point to another centre.

We may record a few further details. Their motions are large, both relative to one another and relative to the Sun. Each cluster separately may extend to a diameter of about 100 light-years. The star density at the centre is about 1,000 times as great as it is near to us. In spite of this, the stars that compose them are presumably at great distances from one another. It must be remembered that even if our neighbours were tenfold nearer, which would increase the density a thousandfold, they would still be very remote. The greatest stars within the clusters are red supergiants with diameters two or three hundred times that of the Sun, like *Antares* and *Betelgeuse*.

THE SPIRAL NEBULÆ

Next in order of hierarchy beyond the system of globular clusters are the nebulæ. There are nebulæ which seem to belong to the *Galaxy*, and others styled extra-galactic nebulæ. We shall treat the former very briefly. Although few in number, they are remarkable, most because they are gaseous. What their spectra show has already been dealt with (p. 140). They are apparently envelopes, consisting of light atoms, ionised and in a state of great tenuity, surrounding some star from which they receive radiation, to emit it again with a stamp of their own. They are of great dimensions, probably exceeding many times the whole solar system. So far they have not been connected rationally with any other formation.

Quite other are the extra-galactic, or spiral, nebulæ. For one thing, the spirals are both enormously greater and enormously more numerous, so that it is a moot question whether they are not the generating points from which the whole celestial panorama unfolds. They are also, as will appear, enormously more remote. Without being moulded exactly upon one pattern, they present unmistakable signs of a common chain of development and vary from one another by their stage of advancement, and by circumstances one calls accidental.

The name " spiral " is derived from the form assumed. If we imagine a tracing point to go round and round the origin from which it started, but to get continually further away, it will trace out what geometers call a spiral. Such forms are shown with the utmost clearness in some of the spiral nebulæ, only in place of one spiral we have two, starting from the same origin, interlocked and just opposite to each other.

The most prominent, and presumably the nearest of the spirals is the great nebula in *Andromeda*. On a photograph, a record can be obtained, stretching across fully a degree of the sky, that is, twice the diameter of the Moon, though the eye sees only the condensed centre as a hazy star. It appears as oval in form, with fissures that might mark a succession of rings, but if we take the other spirals to interpret it, we see that we are viewing in perspective a flattish object, lying near to one plane, with a central nucleus from which two long arms extend round and round it in what are spirals pretty close to the type called " equiangular."

Learning from other spirals, we see that the nucleus lies equally above and below a certain plane of symmetry ; it may be round or oval shaped or flattened ; in the last case it is frequently, and apparently characteristically, obscured along its central plane of symmetry by a dark band, which has been interpreted as an escape of matter from it, cooled by the escape. The arms, or spiral prolongations, from the nucleus lie also in this plane of symmetry ; they may be more or less extended and regular, or not at all. They are punctuated throughout their length by condensations, which are stars.

The nucleus is much brighter than the arms. In the *Andromeda* nebula it is impossible to secure a photograph of the extensions without greatly over-exposing the central part. And in most of the photographs the image has a " woolly " look that strongly suggests an incandescent gas, with a soft boundary. Yet it is uncertain whether the spirals are truly gaseous at all. Their spectra are continuous, generally of the solar type. And high telescopic power separates at any rate some parts of them into distinct stars which run into one, as the *Milky Way* does, under a lower power. These may be plunged in nebulous matter, which they illuminate. The spirals range downwards in apparent size, from the *Andromeda* nebula, which is the greatest, because, as one supposes, it is the nearest, through a number of other striking examples, until we come to a host of small patches of light that it is just possible to recognise as belonging to the family. Their number is enormous. Probably the telescopes at present in use could record half a million. And each of them that we can examine in detail envelops a countless host of separate stars.

There seems no room for systems on this scale, within any other system than their own. And indeed they hardly seem to belong either to

us or to one another. An estimate has been formed of the distance of the nearest—that in *Andromeda*—following the method that proved so reliable for the globular clusters. Some minute stars, of the eighteenth magnitude, which means an exceedingly faint star, were recognised as Cepheid variables. Their period gave their actual brightness, namely 5,000 to 10,000 times brighter than the Sun, from which a calculation shows that this nearest of the spirals is nearly a million light-years away. Indeed there is some reason for saying that the spirals are on the confines of space, if we are to suppose that space has any limits. For their velocity towards or away from us can be determined in a number of cases, and after removing an enormous motion relative to the Sun, with one accord they show a still greater velocity of recession, or departure, from one another. No one has suggested a reason why they should spread out in this way, so that one is disposed to accept the interpretation which General Relativity would put upon it—namely that it is not an actual recession at all ; but if space is supposed to be finite and re-entrant on itself, like a kind of sphere, a very remote object in that case would show a spectrum in which the lines were not of the wave-lengths we expect them but were all displaced so that all the wave-lengths would seem bigger. We are used to such displacements, and our regular interpretation is that the object is going away from us. But it may be that the spiral nebulæ are merely informing us that they are so remote that space itself has suffered a change.

THE GALAXY

The description of these lesser and greater orderings among the stars leads up naturally to the question—What is the *Milky Way* ? Even the unaided eye shows it to be a central feature, and a proof that a system of some large kind exists. More careful work, as by star counts, and the distribution with respect to it of characteristic objects, confirm the fact. Still it has proved extremely difficult to assign a position to it, in any general order. If we give here with some confidence the views that appear to be prevailing, they must be read as not yet wholly established. They are, on the whole, greatly more enlarged than would have been acceptable a few years back. If this implies trusting to some perhaps uncertain ground, it must be remembered that all the indications point in the same direction, and that again and again, from the earliest times when Aristarchus made the Sun only five times the diameter of the Earth, astronomers have been forced to expand their conceptions, on a better knowledge of the facts. Perhaps this note of caution may convey too much doubt to those not used to the methods of astronomers. All that is given summarily below is the view of students of the problem of many years' standing, who are almost as good judges of a forecast as of a proof, and moreover much that it contains has been proved up to the hilt.

The *Milky Way* presents large ill-defined features which do not offer any easy clue. It is very different in brightness in different parts. One decided condensation has the dignity of a constellation—*Scutum Sobieski* ; the brightest part is in *Sagittarius*; for a great part of its circuit round the sky, it is split in two by an immense dark lane. The stars into

which Galileo confidently and correctly resolved it prove, upon scrutiny, to be excessively small, so small as to reach the limit of separate detection with our present telescopes.

There are more and more of both visual and telescopic stars as we approach the *Milky Way*. On closer scrutiny, too, the condensation of stars towards the *Milky Way* proves to be only the beginning of the story. If we suppose that this greater number comes from looking into a greater depth, we conclude that it means that the stars around us are spread out in a sort of disc, with the Sun near its centre, or on the whole a little to the north of its central plane. Call this disc-like extension the " local cluster," or as it is sometimes named " the Kapteyn universe." We find that the clustering does not extend beyond a distance we can put roughly at 1,000 light-years, after which we have nothing like reached the main *Galaxy*. Moreover the central planes of the local cluster and the *Galaxy* do not agree. The local cluster is inclined at about 12°, which is more than one-eighth of a right angle, to what is estimated as the equator of the *Galaxy*.

In these circumstances one must look elsewhere than to the local cluster, large as it is, for a parallel, and the *Greater* and *Lesser Clouds of Magellan* naturally invite examination. Fine photographs of these grow more and more impressive the more one knows. The " clouds " themselves are well defined patches upon rather blank parts of the sky, made up of countless systems of individual stars, groups, clusters, and spiral nebulæ. Recalling what great organisms the spiral nebulæ are, it is no wonder the *Clouds of Magellan* have been called " Island Universes." Since Cepheid variables have been found among their members, the extraordinarily fertile method of the period-luminosity relation, which has been referred to already in connection with the distances of the globular clusters and the *Andromeda* nebula, has told the actual distances of these clouds. We find in consequence that the faint stars that are apparently of thirteenth magnitude are in reality super-giants that, at ten times the distance of *Sirius*, would exceed it in brightness. The enormous distances of 112,000 light-years and 110,000 light-years have been assigned to the two clouds, with diameters 14,000 and 7,000 light-years respectively. They are separated by 40,000 light-years from one another and are widely separated from the plane of the *Galaxy*.

Yet great as these systems are, consideration of these figures shows, as has been said, that if they are island universes the *Galaxy* itself is a continent. No direct measure of its span has been found, but indirectly the globular clusters, which are associated with it by symmetry, give a clue both to its size and its centre. The centre of the system of globular clusters is in *Sagittarius*, where the *Galaxy* is brightest, and where there is an immense condensation of stars, the brightest part apparently hidden from us by one of those dark patches that make the " lanes " and are associated with the local cluster. Now the distances of the globular clusters were among the first fruits of the method of Cepheid periods. And several pairs of these clusters are separated from one another by a quarter of a million light-years and upwards. Hence we shall have the right scale of ideas in thinking of the *Galaxy* as 300,000 light-years in diameter. If we want something to compare with this, we must look elsewhere than in the

Andromeda nebula or the *Clouds of Magellan*. We must search for super-systems, very remote of course, and including within their borders a multitude of great systems reduced to faintness by distance.

Such super-systems have been found and, what is more, the energy and thoroughness of Shapley, who first determined the distances of the globular clusters, and who is still at work upon the problem, have searched, to demonstration, what they contain. We can give some idea of the grounds. For example there is a somewhat insignificant patch of a few square degrees on the sky, crossing the constellations *Coma* and *Virgo*, which shows on a photograph of long exposure a large number of faint spirals. The actual number brought under examination is over 2,700. Their condensation in groups, their apparent diameters and other features have been examined, and in particular the distance that must be assigned to the collection. No variables are available for this purpose. The distance is estimated by comparing the appearances presented in the system with those of the *Andromeda* nebula and other systems for which, being less remote, the argument from observed variables is offered. The estimation is a matter of delicate judgment, but for our purposes not less reliable for that reason. The diameter arrived at for the super-system is two million light-years. The distances of the separate clouds differ widely, from eleven million to 150 million light-years.

It is evident then that we must treat this insignificant patch of faint objects as a super-system comparable with our own *Galaxy* and indeed exceeding it. Others have been found which are even greater and more remote, and the discovery for the present is terminated, not by want of material, but by the feebleness of our telescopes. But it is sufficient. We might get more detail, but we should not vary the view, which really answers the question with which this section began—What is the *Milky Way*? We must regard it, not as one system, but as a group of star clouds, which are collected in a flattened form, neighbouring and presumably influencing one another, though at immense distances, and each one of which might be called a universe. Our own local cluster, the "Kapteyn Universe," may be a degenerate spiral, to which in size it appears to belong. The nebulous appearances of these spirals seem to be only a result of the great distances at which they are seen. In that case, the dark nebulosity that hides so much of our sky would be interpreted as one of the dark bands that appear along the central planes of many of the spirals.

If this is the correct point of view, our local system is nowhere near the centre of the great *Galaxy* of which it forms an element, rather it is near the rim. All considerations point to a centre near the star cloud in *Sagittarius*, distant from us by say, 100 million light-years. And any apparent motion in the other parts, so far as it can be brought under one head, should more properly be attributed to our own system, than to the greater system with which it is compared. From this point of view the so-called rotation of the *Milky Way* should be regarded. Difficult as it is to treat, very definite and consistent results have been obtained, and these show that the local system and the great *Galaxy* are in rotation relative to one another and would turn completely round in a period of the order of 100 million years.

COSMOGONY—THE SOLAR SYSTEM

Under the imposing name of Cosmogony we consider *How Things Came To Be*. Really this is no part of an astronomer's obligation, but possessing curiosity like other people, he is interested in it. Yet before saying what can be said about it, one should in fairness indicate how large a proportion is of necessity inference. To describe the evolution of an organism is synonymous with giving its history. This can be done with some certainty in such limited fields, for example, as the meanings attached to a word in the language, let us say the word *post* or *humour*. But it is a very different matter to give the history of a natural object. Even in a case where the evidences are abundant, as for the human skull, often the best that can be said of a theory that connects them is, that it cannot be disproved. In astronomical matters we are on even weaker ground. The periods of time that must be considered are so vast, that in a quite literal sense we know only one point of the history and must infer the whole past and future. It is true that in many regions there are a great many examples which we assume to show different stages in a common succession, as we can infer the course of human life from the infant, the boy and the man, without watching the one develop into the other. But experience in the regions of Natural History, with its missing types and conflicting remains, does not encourage optimism or even confidence.

Yet, speaking first of the Solar System, some common connection is evident; in fact, if put in mathematical form as an estimate of probability, the evidence is overwhelming. The greater planets and nearly all of the host of minor planets move round the Sun, near to one and the same plane and in the same direction. There is no process in operation to make them do so, for the comets, which are also members of the solar system, do not. We may reserve the discrepancies shown by the new planet *Pluto*, until we know more about it. The alternative to plan is chance, but it is easy to see that the probability against such a coincidence by mere chance is overwhelming. How then did this evident system originate? Up to quite recent times the usual answer was contained in Laplace's Nebular Hypothesis, of which Poincaré said in the nineties that, considering its age, it didn't show too many wrinkles; though a little later Sir James Jeans remarked that the difficulty of disproving it was the same as that of proving anything definite about it—an ominous dictum for a cosmologist. This hypothesis supposed that both Sun and planets were formed out of a single original gaseous nebula, contracting on itself, rotating faster, as it would, and flattening out in the process. The planets were formed out of rings shed off in succession and collected into single bodies, while the Sun was the residue that remained at the centre. Under cross-examination, the answers of this theory to such questions as why do the planets rotate in the same direction as they revolve round the Sun are so unsatisfactory that as a theory it has been abandoned. It may perhaps apply elsewhere, but not to the solar system. But it has been no easy matter to find an alternative. Indeed there is only one that is current to-day, and that depends upon an *If*.

In place of imagining the planets to have been formed in a process of contraction which finally left the Sun in the middle, the Sun is imagined

as formed first without planets. It would have remained without planets great or small unless it had experienced, once in its history, some great cataclysmic disturbance. The nature of this disturbance is supposed to have been tidal. All tides have the same character, which can be readily understood. An external body, like the Moon, attracts the Earth. The first effect is shown in a revolution of the centre of gravity of the Earth about the common centre of gravity of the Earth and Moon. But there is a secondary effect which shows itself in an elastic deformation of the solid earth and its atmospheric and aqueous envelopes into elliptical shapes, which follow generally the position of the Moon. The last of these, which gives the tides in the ocean, is familiar, but the others have been verified too. In the case of a more labile body than the Earth, and a greater disturbing body than the Moon, the tides might rise to any height. They might form an immense jet directed generally towards the disturbing body, which ended by breaking into drops, which never fell back upon the parent Sun at all, but had sufficient motion conferred upon them by the disturber, before it passed, to ensure their revolution in orbits. This is the tidal theory of the genesis of the solar system. It would explain how the planets all were near one plane, which the Ancients knew and designated by the Zodiac; it would explain why they all go round the same way, and, if we suppose the disturber to have passed near by in the direction in which the Sun was rotating, it explains also the agreement of the Sun's rotation with the revolution of the planets. Things which it leaves to be cleared up are the near approach of the planetary orbits to circles, and the exceptional but definite presence of satellites which are *not* circulating in that way. But the difficulties of finding any explanation are so great that one is inclined to hope that a way out will be found. It may reasonably be said that we cannot expect a theory to explain every detail.

The disturbing body must of course be imagined as a star, and here arises the great difficulty of the theory. For tidal effect, proximity is more important than mass. The Sun produces on the Earth only half as great tides as does the Moon, though it is twenty million times as massive—because it is four hundred times as far away. The passing star would have to make its closest approach to the Sun at much less than the Earth's distance. Now the first fact about the stars is their isolation. It is of course not impossible that in the remote past a star passed near the Sun. The chance that one might do so can be estimated. The result is unfavourable. Unless a perfectly immense period of time is allowed, the chance against the approach of a star sufficiently near to bring the planetary system into being is as overwhelming as is the evidence that the system did not originate by chance. This does not quite demolish the theory. The latest views are inclined to leave open immense lapses of time, in which things may have happened, and there is always the chance that an off-chance comes off. But it is not convincing. It may be that this theory does not need very much adjustment. Theory shows that the normal development of a rotating star leads to fission. A body originally spheroidal develops into an elongated ellipsoid, then into a pear shape, then into a shape like an unequal dumbbell or gourd, and finally breaks into two parts which recede from one another. This break could hardly be a clean one, and would result in the formation of a not very regular set of drops that would

be endowed with orbital motion. Some of them would form planets round the one star and some round the other. This would abolish any question of the genesis of our system as the consequence of a very improbable coincidence. Incidentally it would make a planetary system the possession of a great many suns.

As there are so few tenable theories of cosmogony, we may glance again at the nebular hypothesis, in a connection where at any rate it has not been disproved. It seems, in many respects, to fit in with the history of spiral nebulæ. Laplace imagined a primitive nebula which was gaseous. It is very doubtful if the great spiral nebulæ are gaseous. They do not show the spectrum of a gas, and under high resolving power their gaseous appearance shows signs of breaking up into stellar points. But if we suppose them to be collections of rotating gas, it can be shown mathematically that we should have a sequence of states which appear to be illustrated in the sky—nearly spherical forms, becoming elongated ellipsoids under greater condensation with its more rapid rotation, then breaking out along the equator with streams of escaping, and presumably cooling, and therefore dark, gas. These dark equatorial bands appear to be characteristic of the course of development. Indeed it is conjectured that the " dark nebulæ " that obscure so much of our own sky, and are associated with the local cluster, are of that kind. This would make our " local cluster " nothing but the stars into which a parent nebula has broken.

It is true that spiral nebulæ develop in two great whorls of stars, arranged in a geometrical shape, and we are at a loss to assign any reason why this should be a regular event in the history of a rotating gas, such as Laplace imagined. But a great many features fit, and we may end, not by rejecting Laplace's Nebular Hypothesis, but by promoting it to an application far vaster than he dreamed.

One word may be said in conclusion. Every astronomer has had occasion to learn that people are more interested in the origin of life than in that of the planets upon which it may be supposed to exist, or the stars of which these may be the offspring. He may be excused for waving such questions aside. It is not his affair. Our life exists under very narrow limitations, which hardly touch astronomy. The astronomer cannot point to any other place in the universe where life, as we know it, could be supported. In short, anyone can judge the question as well as he.

PROGRESS AND DECAY

The use of these popular words to summarise the present section is deliberate. But before science can say anything about them, we must first strip them of the moral attributions that lend them nearly all their attraction. If this is done, we recognise in nature two kinds of process, *prima facie* fundamentally different, and must enquire what is the real distinction between them. The first process goes on, so far as appears, without change of type, for ever. There are innumerable examples, of which we need only mention, on the large scale, the motion of the Earth round the Sun, and on the small one, that of an electron round its nucleus in an atom. The second kind progresses towards some ultimate state. Again the examples are so easy to find, that this process was thought of,

up till yesterday, as a summary of Nature. The diffusion of motion, the diffusion of heat, the degradation of energy are commonplaces to everybody. If asked what was the purpose of life, you could answer in one word —death. But science has nothing to do with grim or emotional colouring—what we wish to determine is, whether there are indeed two kinds of process, or only one—whether we can assign an end towards which things travel, or whether they continue in changing figures of one endless dance for ever.

One alternative, which will suit some of the cases, is to suppose that the things that go on for ever are really an ultimate state in which the element of change has exhausted itself. Consider, for example, the system of the Earth and Moon. The Moon's rotation occupies the same time as its revolution round the Earth. It can be shown that this would follow from tides which the Earth would raise upon a Moon when the latter was in a plastic state. And in the same way the friction brake which the tides apply to the Earth's body will infallibly slow the day down till first it is equal to the month and ultimately to the year, producing at the same time other changes in the orbits, until finally all sleeps in one unending night —*nox est perpetua una dormienda*. But though that might do for the Earth and the Moon such a history would not fit the atom at all. As far as we know, the quantised states, as those states of the atom are called which operate by the gain or loss of a quantum, shift back and forth without a trace of decay.

One may think, on the other hand, of the uncompensated outflow of radiation from a star. Briefly the current description is this :—intense relative motions within the star convert its matter into radiative energy, which soon or late escapes from the surface and travels away through space for ever, producing almost infinitesimal mechanical or thermal effect that might possibly return. Even here we must be cautious. We have learnt that while the " temperature of space," *i.e* the temperature of any absorbing matter there may be, which results from such radiation, is a few degrees only above absolute zero, the conclusion is profoundly modified if atoms are met with that are capable of *selective* absorption ; the resulting " temperature " of such an atom may be far higher than that of the emitting body. Still we can hardly say that this modifies our view by much. The four million tons of its mass a second which the Sun converts from matter to energy, and pours out as radiation, is gone for ever and will not be replaced in any shape or form. We have to accept as typical of at least one side of our system a process which goes on in one direction only and cannot be reversed, and which leads as a limit to a state in which no further exchanges are possible.

This is the well-known doctrine of the degradation of energy, which was more readily received before modern physics established itself. Modern physics has disestablished so many accepted ideas in the course of establishing itself that it becomes necessary to re-examine the idea of the degradation of energy. Regarding heat as nothing but irregular motion of the molecules, it becomes essentially a question of the diffusion of motion. Now if anything is diffused or distributed, let us say by chance, the state which we are most likely to find is the state that contains the greatest number of equally probable arrangements. Suppose then we

start with an unequal distribution, such as one end of a bar hot and the other cold, this might be called as probable as any other distribution, and so we might expect to find it at any subsequent time. But we do not. On the contrary we are sure to find that the temperature has equalised itself throughout the bar. Now it may be said that an exactly equal temperature throughout the bar is just as improbable as the state from which we started. That may be. But the cases that would *pass* for equal, by any tests we can put, are so enormously more numerous than any other state, that practically we find nothing else. Modern physics says nothing to rebut this argument. Therefore it remains ; and it is a typical case of the degradation of energy.

Be it remarked that we invoke in this discussion nothing but " chance "; it implies no intelligent guidance. Maxwell imagined a method of reversal of the " second law of thermodynamics," which is just a statement of the continual degradation of energy ; he imagined " demons " watching the separate molecules, and separating those that were moving fast from those that were moving slowly by opening trap doors to let them pass. The result would be the same as arranging that a bar should, of its own action, make one end hot and the other cold. But these demons must have been intelligent. The task of physical science is to show what follows in Nature, apart from intelligent guiding.

But what is the source of the tendency, always working in one direction, that gives us first hot concentrations of matter like the stars—depositories of stores of energy that thereupon dissipate themselves as rapidly and completely as the circumstances allow ? It is simply the unidirectional character of gravitation, which collects all matter into a centre, unless it is endowed with sufficient lateral motion to ensure the description of an orbit. At the centre, exchanges of motion take place by collision, and we have the concentration of heat and ultimately its diffusion. In the atom we have both positive and negative electricity, with attractions and equal repulsions. But in gravitating masses we have attractions alone. Necessarily so, for if we suppose that any stuffs that repel one another exist, they would mutually drive one another away until the field contained one kind alone. Say we are left with that kind of attracting stuff, and call it matter, then the familiar degradation of energy, with its terminus in what is known as a " heat death "—though not a death of motion, as far as motion persists in orbits—becomes inevitable.

In somewhat the same way as the Moon's orbit remains after all its heat-motion is radiated away, while it is now believed that a star is continually transforming its mass and dispersing it as radiant energy, there will remain from this process an inconvertible residue of dead matter such as we see in the Moon, for which there is no more prospect of further conversion than there is for a conversion of a residue of orbital motion. Unless again this dead residue, whether matter or orbital motion, is ultimately dissipated by bombardment by cosmic rays.

THE TIME SCALE

We touch the universe at a single point of time. Apart from memory there is no such thing as a past. Even if we include memory and supplement it by records that can be called scientific, the time is so brief in

which anything definite has been known of the heavens that we hardly need to modify the above exact statement. An astronomer, therefore, might decline to speak about what is not before his eyes. And there is the further complication—that must not be treated as of no practical importance in relation to the universe—that simultaneity and the time sequence possess no common meaning for different minds. If we speak of the history of things, it is evident that we must do so in a conventional way. We are divorced from direct observation of the history of any individual object, and must rely upon recognising, among the diverse objects presented to us, specimens of successive stages through which the individual has passed. He may make a mistake in doing so. The manner, the order, even the members that are selected by his theory, will depend upon the theory he adopts. The ground, therefore, is uncertain. But the astronomer is in no worse case than any other naturalist, and better placed than many. In any case, with the proviso that the picture is conventional, theoretical, and must not be taken too seriously, it will aid the comprehension of what has been written if we add here some account of how long the order of things we see has taken to come about and how long it may be expected to endure. The account will be very brief, for the agreement among astronomers, such as it is, is rather rough.

The age of the Earth is about two thousand million years. In making the statement we recognise that it rests upon an element of observation and an element of theory. It is an inference, and its reliability depends less upon the question of making the observation correctly—for this may be revised and refined—than upon being able to say that the theoretical process has continued at an unchanged rate through that great lapse of time of which we have no experience. It is evident that this objection will envelope in doubt any such measure of the Earth's age as the rate at which the salinity of the sea increases. Much more satisfactory is the rate of degradation of radio-active materials. Radio-activity is an atomic process which neither heat nor pressure nor any other force that we know can either hasten or retard. In this way, uranium degenerates into lead. The physicist can distinguish the lead which resulted from the break-up of uranium from other lead that is indistinguishable from it by chemical tests. In certain rocks, uranium and its degenerate lead are found, and if we assume that the process has gone on at the same rate since the crust of the Earth was first formed, we arrive at an age of one or two thousand million years. Other indications confirm the figure. Strictly it refers only to the formation of the crust, but if the genesis of the planets that has been exposed in an earlier section is accepted, the Earth must first have existed as a glowing liquid drop of the Sun's body. But when direct communication of heat to this drop was broken, and it lay open to radiation into cold space, it seems reasonable to conclude that a crust of rock would be formed in a time that was a negligible addition to the age that has been mentioned.

It would follow that the other planets have the same age. We have no means of estimating directly, but it is probably significant to point out that small bodies like the Moon and *Mars* seem to have had less power to conserve their original state than the Earth, while great ones like *Jupiter* and *Saturn* have degenerated less.

The age of the Sun must be estimated with the same cautions in mind. We must have an observation of the present rate of some process, and an adequate theory by which we can go back into the remote past until we arrive at a state that can be called primitive. The most satisfactory theory is that which connects the mass and luminosity of a star. Derived originally as pure theory, it has proved to apply closely to the luminosity of all stars of known mass. We have therefore only to fit it on to the present mass and the present luminosity of the Sun, and we obtain with some confidence a picture of the latter's previous history. If we do so, we find that at the time when the planets came into being, the Sun was much as it is now, but if we go back to a million million years and beyond, it becomes a different story. Radiation diminishes the mass, and the theory shows that a greater mass gives greater and continually greater radiation. From the greatest stars there is a torrent of radiation that reduces their mass at headlong speed. Before we reach backwards to eight million million years, the Sun would have had a mass equal to that of the greatest star known.

Having gone so far in theory, it is tempting to go further. But we must recognise that the ground becomes more and more questionable. We have before us stars in various states of development. Consider a giant star such as *Betelgeuse*—the Sun may have passed through a similar state, but what was *Betelgeuse* itself at that remote period ? We cannot point to any object known as an answer. At least it seems certain that the stars did not all come into existence simultaneously, as we suppose the planets to have done.

More precarious still is anything we can say of the past history of still greater organisms such as the spiral nebulæ, and in an outline such as the present, where the attempt has been made to show the grounds of confidence as well as to state the articles of an astronomer's belief, we may fitly refrain from pursuing the speculation.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

Astronomical knowledge has advanced so rapidly that a few years place a book out of date. The following list is therefore brief.

An excellent and authoritative work, giving details of phenomena, measures, and reasoned theory is

RUSSELL, DUGAN and STEWART : *Astronomy* ; 2 vols. (Boston. 1926, 1927)

A general reader and a specialist will be equally at home in it, and it contains current references to all the previous literature.

Recent works, conceived on more popular lines, are :

SIR A. S. EDDINGTON : *Stars and Atoms* (Oxford. 1927)
G. E. HALE : *Beyond the Milky Way* (New York. 1926)
G. FORBES : *The Wonder and the Glory of the Stars* (London. 1926)
H. SPENCER JONES : *General Astronomy* (London. 1922)
W. M. SMART : *The Sun, the Stars and the Universe* (London. 1928)
J. S. DUNCAN : *Astronomy* (New York. 1927)

A work that is too well written to be called out of date is

SIR A. S. EDDINGTON: *Stellar Movements and the Structure of the Universe* (London. 1914)

This work is for mathematical readers; so is also the same author's *The Internal Constitution of the Stars* (Cambridge. 1926)

A striking recent work is SIR. J. JEANS: *The Universe Around Us* (Cambridge. 1929); and a continuation by the same author—*The Mysterious Universe* (Cambridge. 1930). These books embody statements that in some places are still matters of opinion, but they are the more interesting and, to the right readers, not less weighty for that.

For those who are interested in the history of the subject we may mention

A. M. CLERKE: *History of Astronomy in the Nineteenth Century*; 3rd edn. (London. 1898)

G. FORBES: *History of Astronomy* (London. 1909)

and for details of the lives and theories of earlier astronomers

J. L. E. DREYER: *Planetary Theories from Thales to Kepler* (Cambridge. 1906), and

A. BERRY: *A Short History of Astronomy* (London. 1898)

Finally should be mentioned

H. SHAPLEY and H. E. HOWARTH: *A Source Book of Astronomy* (New York. 1929)

which contains extracts, translated where necessary, of passages from the works of original discoverers from Copernicus to the present day.

THE NATURE OF MATHEMATICS

By

JAMES RICE

SYNOPSIS

Introduction : Mathematics and the practical needs of Man — Mathematics as distinct from the arts of calculation and mensuration — The contributions of the Egyptian, the Greek, the Hindu and the Arab.

Number : The laws of numerical operations — The Commutative. Associative and Distributive laws as applied to numbers — The use of the plus and minus signs and of brackets — Algebraic symbolism — Integral numbers — Fractional numbers and Decimals — Irrational numbers — Positive and negative numbers — The generalisation of the meaning of number related at every step to the practical activities of Man.

Algebra : Problems and algebraic symbolism — Formulæ — The fundamental laws of algebraic operations — Factorisation of algebraic expressions — Algebraic symbolism is no mere " shorthand " — Logical and mathematical principles — Equations — The origin of the name " Algebra " — Methods of solving a quadratic equation and the duality of the roots — Equations and practical problems — Imaginary numbers — Generalisation of the idea of a " power " of a number — Algebra beginning as generalised arithmetic becomes a weapon for dealing powerfully with the variable quantities of natural phenomena — Functionality.

Geometry : Extension of bodies in space — Surfaces, lines and points as abstractions from the real properties of bodies — Geometry concerned with such abstractions — Euclid's great treatise : a brief summary of its contents — Axiom and Postulate — Construction and Proof — The famous Euclidean postulate as to parallel lines — The dependence of his conclusions on the truth of this postulate — Digression on the actual experimentally observed facts of our physical space.

Limits, The Calculus, Periodicity : The notion of a limit as suggested by observation on moving bodies — The world as a flux of events and not as a static configuration — Differentiation : its importance for the laws of Physics — The notion of length as applied to a curve — Integration — Convergent and Divergent Series — Trigonometry and Periodic Functions.

THE NATURE OF MATHEMATICS

INTRODUCTION

The study of the sciences originated in the practical needs of men, and Mathematics, though the most abstract of the sciences, offers no exception to this statement. We can see the beginnings of arithmetical calculation in the primitive requirements of the race, when men bartered articles with one another or divided their prey into portions, and perforce had to be able to count so as to maintain a rough justice in their division or exchange. In more settled conditions, when the tilling of fields became the vital activity of a tribe instead of hunting, the necessity of dividing the cultivated area into suitable portions for each family of the tribe compelled them to develop some elementary notions of mensuration. Nowadays, when the word " mathematics " is mentioned, the first idea to arise in the mind of the average man or woman in this connection is linked with the art of arithmetical calculation or skill in solving geometrical problems. It is true that education in our schools is developing so far that the subject of algebra probably presents itself to the hearer's mind as well as trigonometry and calculus. But to the average boy and girl with a good secondary education algebra is still " generalised arithmetic," in which the calculations are carried out with letters instead of " real numbers " ; trigonometry is a kind of mixture of algebra or arithmetic and geometry ; and calculus is a peculiar pursuit that " looks like " algebra, but differs in one strange operation which can be technically mastered with sufficient practice and assiduity, but still remains somewhat of a mystery both as regards its reason and its purpose. Hence, despite all our sophistication, " mathematics " as a name conjures up notions which are clearlyrelated to " arts," rather than " sciences," the cultivation of which was one of the prime needs of man the moment any form of communal life, based either on food-getting or food-producing, came into existence.

We have no record indeed of those early geniuses of our race who first recognised the difference between " one," " two " and " many," who then proceeded to subdivide the " many " into " three," " five," " ten " and so on, and who realised that the number of fingers on one hand or on two and the number of toes on the feet were an extremely convenient piece of machinery for help in counting ; or who gathered flints or pebbles and laid them down, one by one, to indicate to their fellows the number they wished to convey and then, recognising the clumsiness of these methods of communication, invented sounds and signs to convey to the hearer the idea of the number in question at the moment. But after all, mere counting lacks the special character which makes arithmetic one of the mathematical sciences and the most fundamental of them. It is hard for us to realise the immense stride in human thought which carried us from counting to the study of " number " in itself as an object of

interest, when we began to realise that six pebbles, six arrows, six men, six trees had something in common which is neither pebble, nor arrow, nor man, nor tree, that something being just " six " itself ; when it dawned on the human mind that numbers had an interest of their own apart from *numbered objects* and presented a uniformity of behaviour in all circumstances of counting which is the very characteristic of all facts capable of being scientifically summarised. That six sheep and four sheep made a collection of ten sheep, that six pebbles and four pebbles made a heap of ten pebbles, in fact that six and four *always* " made ten " no matter what objects were involved, was a scientific generalisation which must have cost some primitive Newton much mental travail and earned him the admiration and reverence of his less gifted fellows. We may presume that he was a priest or medicine man. When we come to the civilisation of the Egyptians and the Babylonians, the records show that such purely intellectual pursuits were the special province of the priestly caste. But even in these great states, with all their wealth, refinement and pomp, the real nature of mathematical knowledge was not discerned. This statement can be brought home to the reader by a simple illustration. Mensuration was a necessary art for the Egyptians. The rise of the Nile annually wiped out all the landmarks which divided field from field in the arable land which fringed its banks. When the river receded, fresh division of the soil had to be undertaken among the various tribes, and so a considerable body of mensurational propositions became known in an empirical way, *e.g.* how to find the area of a triangle. But to the Egyptians this was all " earth measuring." Apparently the desire to know something about form and figure, apart from particular fields and *as something distinct from any material thing*, never arose in their hearts. It was the Greek who first made that great flight of spirit, although he modestly kept the Egyptian name " geometry," which means literally " measurement of the earth," for a mental discipline which is as unlike the Egyptian prototype as a symphony is to a folk-tune. Again, the Egyptians had their skilful builders of pyramids and temples, and one of their stock-in-trade implements was a rope divided by knots into twelve equal lengths. With this they could make a triangle of sides 3, 4 and 5 units, and they knew that between the short sides there was included a right angle. But it was a Greek, and not an Egyptian, who thought about right angled triangles in themselves apart from strings, ropes and special sizes, and discovered the great proposition about the square on the hypotenuse being equal to the sum of the squares on the short sides. The average man probably does not realise that this proposition, the discovery of the famous Pythagoras, enters decisively into all our ideas about the nature of physical space and, with its modern extensions, forms the starting-point for introducing any method of measurement at all into that child of modern thought, the space-time of the relativist.

The love of knowledge for its own sake amounted to a passion with the Greeks in the golden age of their history, and so it is but natural to find the early developments of Mathematics in the proper sense of the word as one of the manifestations of their genius. To them number was an absorbing topic quite apart from skill in calculation or the special properties of numbered articles ; and the general laws of form and figure exercised

their intellect quite apart from the material bodies which presented to them the infinite variety of shapes with which we are familiar in daily life.

The word " Mathematics " is found in Greek literature at the time of Plato, but not specialised to the meaning it acquired later. With that great philosopher *mathema* (literally " a thing learnt ") means any subject of instruction or study. Yet he does say in the *Laws* that three subjects are specially fit for free-born men ; they are arithmetic, the science of measurement (meaning what we now call geometry), and astronomy. His emphasis on these three subjects gradually led to a specialisation of the word *mathema* to these and similar objects of study, so that in the time of Aristotle the convention had so far hardened, that his followers explained the particular use of the word by pointing out that subjects such as rhetoric, poetry, music or literature could be understood even by one who has not learnt them, but that the subjects grouped by them under the name *mathemata* could not be known by anyone unless he had received a definite course of instruction in them. The word *mathematike* appears to have first come into use in the time of Pythagoras a century and more before Plato, and seems actually to have had, with the Pythagoreans, some of the specialised meaning definitely assigned to it by common consent later ; be that as it may, by the time of Aristotle the term *mathematics*, meaning literally " things fit to be learnt," had definitely established itself as referring to the subjects such as arithmetic, geometry, astronomy, optics, etc., which were regarded as above all others the things in which it was most suitable for a cultured man to receive instruction.

So clear were the minds of the Greek thinkers on these matters, that they used entirely different words to distinguish between these lofty mental exercises and those mere arts and practices of daily life and business which had some connection with them. Thus Plato uses the word " arithmetic " to mean what is commonly meant by it to-day in any school curriculum, but a different word " logistic " to denote the art of calculation. Thus he would have referred to " lightning calculators," and those who can tot up columns of figures with speed and accuracy, as men who are " logistic " by nature, but he would not have called them " arithmeticians " unless they had shown themselves capable of studying and grasping the true theory of number, as distinct from calculation. He did not despise *logistic*, for he admitted that naturally slow people would be made smarter by it and that it was a very necessary accomplishment in daily life ; but he would have regarded the acquisition of the art of calculation only as a preparation for the study of the true science. Similarly in the time of Aristotle, a clear distinction was drawn between " geometry " and " geodesy," the former being geometry in our sense (though showing its origin in its name, " earth measurement "), the latter being what we should call " mensuration," meaning not only land-surveying but all practical measurements of length, surface and volume. Aristotle seems to have been the first to indicate a division in Mathematics which is acknowledged in school and university curricula to this day, namely, the separation of the general science into two branches, " Pure " and " Applied." Thus he refers to Mechanics, Optics, Harmonics and Astronomy as the more physical branches of mathematics,

pointing out that the proof of propositions in these subjects depends on the pure mathematical subjects, Geometry and Arithmetic.

Although we derive our names for Arithmetic and Geometry from the Greeks, we must not forget that the Hindus independently cultivated these subjects, and it is from the Hindus that we derive our present numerical notation. The forms 1, 2, 3, etc., for the numbers are our copies of a variety of symbols used by the Hindus in their writings, and have in modern times replaced both the Greek method of using the letters of their alphabet for this purpose and the clumsy Roman numerals I, II, III, IV, etc.

So far we have not mentioned Algebra, the third of the trio of subjects whose names leap to the mind of the ordinary man when the word " mathematics " is mentioned. Most people know that Algebra is a kind of arithmetical calculation, where symbols such as the letters of the alphabet take the place of the symbols such as 1, 2, 3, etc., which designate actual numbers. The word " algebra " is Arabic in origin, and makes its first appearance in a work by an Arab mathematician, Al Khowarazmi, in the ninth century A.D., but of course the operations in Mathematics which we call " algebraic " are much older and date back, in a rather rudimentary form, even to the Egyptians. A Greek, Diophantos of Alexandria, wrote the first Western work on it about the middle of the fourth century A.D., and actually the Hindus had brought this subject to a higher pitch of development than the Greeks, whose peculiar genius was more at home in Geometry. It was from the Hindus that the Arabs learnt this system and brought it to the West. In the solution of equations, there is a well-known operation in which quantities on one side of an equation are brought over to the other side with a changed sign. This transposition was considered to be a reunion of separated quantities and was regarded by the ancients as an operation of great importance. When the Arab, Al Khowarazmi, wrote his treatise, he called it " al-jabr m' wa'l muquabalah," the word " jabr " referring to this reunion. The word " muquabalah " referred to another operation in equations, where a symbol appearing on both sides of the equation with the same sign is taken away from each side. (" Al " is the definite article in Arabic.) In consequence, when this treatise became well known to European scholars in the middle ages, they referred to it by the first word in its Arabic title, corrupting this into our " algebra."

NUMBER

We have already realised that the first mathematician was he who thought of the number " three," for instance, quite apart from three pebbles, three bits of meat, three dogs, or three *of any particular thing*. This " emptying " of every physical property out of the counted things, except their mere existence as individual things, is an example of what the philosopher calls " abstraction." The primitive mathematician to whom we have referred was abstracting from the things themselves every quality except their capacity to be counted. For him it did not matter what three things were involved ; indeed they did not even need to be the same kind of thing—a dog, a tree and a pebble would serve as a

physical picture of " three," as well as of the groups mentioned. He recognised that when he put *any* three things into a heap of any four things he always got the same number of things in the larger heap, namely seven. He did not find that four dogs and three dogs, for example, gave a group of dogs whose number was different from the number of pebbles he obtained when four pebbles were placed beside three pebbles. The apparent triviality of these illustrations must not be scorned, since they are vital to the understanding of the scientific process we call " generalisation." Recognising this feature as true of all additions of heaps or groups, he gradually began to think of the addition as not being effected on the groups *but on the numbers*, and so he arrived at the " identity "

$$4 + 3 = 7$$

We are using modern symbolism, of course. The ancient and mediæval people wrote that result with different symbols, but essentially it was numbers which they added and not *things*. The numerals 3, 4, 7 are modern adaptations of Hindu signs ; + is a symbol which did not come into use until the fifteenth century ; and the two parallel strokes = , representing " is equal to," are also of recent origin. The reader should bear in mind that in every case our symbolism is most unlike the symbolism of the Greek, the Hindu, the Arab or the mediæval European, but that the processes indicated by the symbolism are alike.

Another thing which this acute observer of distant ages noticed was, that when he put a group of four things beside a group of three things he had the same number as if he put a group of three things beside a group of four. Again this looks terribly trivial but it seems to bring out the correct use of the sign + ; we nowadays write down this result in the form

$$4 + 3 = 3 + 4$$

The left side reads " four plus three " and means the result of adding three to four ; the right side reads " three plus four " and means the result of adding four to three. As the result is true when any other pair of numbers is substituted for 3 and 4, we write the general result thus :—

$$a + b = b + a$$

and the reader at once thinks of algebra. Strictly speaking, this is not algebra. At present we are simply stating, in a more general symbolic form than we did above, that the result of adding any two numbers together is independent of the order in which they are placed. We use any convenient symbol (and experience has shown that the letters of various alphabets are the most convenient) to represent a number which we need not specifically state in numerical value. (This sort of device enters into many operations other than arithmetical. For example, chemists use a peculiar symbolism to state important results concisely and briefly. Thus *H* stands for a unit weight of hydrogen ; *O* for 16 units of weight of oxygen ; *Cl* for 35.5 units of chlorine and so on, some hundred or so of such symbols being tabulated in any work on Chemistry.) The mathematician has a word which he associated with the symbolic statement

written above. He says that the operation of addition is "commutative." Take another of these apparently trivial statements. Suppose we wish to add 4 and 3 and 5. Of course the order in which we write them down is immaterial; but as they stand it is also immaterial whether we add 3 to 4 and then add 5 to that result, or add 5 to 3 and then add that result to 4. We express this by writing

$$(4 + 3) + 5 = 4 + (3 + 5)$$

Here we have an example of the use of "brackets," as the curved strokes ( ) are called. On the left side, the brackets enclosing 4 and 3 indicate that they should be added first and then 5 added to the sum; while on the right side, the enclosing of 3 and 5 indicates that addition of them should be effected first and this sum added to 4. The mathematician again has a special word to suit this occasion. He speaks of a law of "Association," and he writes it entirely symbolically as

$$(a + b) + c = a + (b + c)$$

and of course, by his law of Commutation, either of these "expressions" is equal to $(a + c) + b$ or $a + (c + b)$ or $(b + c) + a$, etc.; and finally, as this is so, he can, if he wishes, do without the brackets and write the complete sum as $a + b + c$, or $a + c + b$, or $b + c + a$, etc. As a matter of fact he can invent quite fiendish problems involving the use of brackets, as most schoolboys know, leading to dozens of pitfalls for the unwary; but in general the errors into which the scholar falls are due to his failure to keep before his mind the simple meaning of the symbolism used.

The minus sign offers no difficulty in this connection. If we add 6 to 5, and subtract from this result 4, we express this in the most rigidly correct symbolic way as

$$(5 + 6) - 4$$

But, of course, we get the same result by first subtracting 4 from 6 and adding the result to 5, which is correctly written as

$$5 + (6 - 4).$$

Or we can find the same answer if we take 4 from 5 and add 6 to the difference, which is

$$(5 - 4) + 6$$

and so on. As all these are equivalent, the mathematician once more simplifies his symbolism somewhat by writing

$$5 + 6 - 4,\ 5 - 4 + 6, \text{ etc.}$$

according to his convenience or choice.

Take another example which raises one little point of considerable importance. Suppose we add 3 to 7 and then subtract this result from 12. In rigid symbolism this is

$$12 - (7 + 3).$$

Now will it do simply to " wipe out " the brackets and write this

$$12 - 7 + 3 ?$$

Clearly not ; for one result is 2, and the second, which says " subtract 7 from 12 and then add 3 to that," gives 8. In fact $12 - (7 + 3)$ turns out to be the same as $(12 - 7) - 3$, or $12 - 7 - 3$, which says " subtract 7 from 12 and subtract 3 from that." Again let us subtract 3 from 7 and then subtract this result from 12. This is symbolised by

$$12 - (7 - 3)$$

and this is not at all the same as $12 - 7 - 3$, but is actually the same result as $(12 - 7) + 3$, *i.e.* the result of subtracting 7 from 12 and *adding* 3 to the result. Thus, in more general symbolism,

$$a - (b + c) = (a - b) - c$$
$$\text{and} \quad a - (b - c) = (a - b) + c$$

so that, stated as a matter of routine, if we remove brackets before which occurs the minus sign we must change the signs within. Of course the above expressions can be written respectively as $a - b - c$ and $a - b + c$; but as we cannot add or subtract many numbers " all at once," but must group them in pairs at each stage, brackets are always implied although they need not always be written. It is over this changing of the sign inside brackets preceded by the minus sign that the schoolboy is frequently so confused. For example, let us write down

$$16 - [10 - (5 + 3)]$$

Now strictly this means :— " Add 3 to 5 and subtract the result from 10 ; take this result away from 16." The answer is of course 14, and this is the same as

$$16 - [10 - 5 - 3]$$

and this again the same as

$$16 - 10 + 5 + 3.$$

In short, if one interprets the top expression correctly in words one cannot go wrong ; but there is a purely mechanical way of removing the brackets one by one, *working from the inside outwards* and changing signs where necessary, so that

$$\begin{aligned} & a - [b - (c + d)] \\ = \; & a - [b - c - d] \\ = \; & a - b + c + d \end{aligned}$$
$$\begin{aligned} \text{and} \quad & a - [b - (c - d)] \\ = \; & a - [b - c + d] \\ = \; & a - b + c - d \end{aligned}$$

Trial with any actual numbers will always verify this.

We now meet another result which raises an awkward but very fundamental question. Suppose I write down

$$16 - (3 - 7)$$

This says " Subtract 7 from 3 and subtract the result from 16." This appears to be nonsense : you cannot subtract 7 from 3. But if a friend borrows £7 from you, and only repays you £3, he appears to have achieved the feat. He leaves you the poorer by £4. Indeed the natural exclamation (creeping into colloquial use to-day), " I was minus £4 on that deal," might rise to your lips. So if I write

$$16 - (3 - 7) = 16 - 3 + 7 = 20$$

conforming to the rule of changing the sign, I can think of it as representing the financial state of your friend who, beginning with £16 in his pocket, borrowed £7 from you and only repaid £3, thus " taking away " from his own little pile £(3 — 7) and yet being £4 to the good ! So it appears that such an expression as

$$a - (b - c)$$

need not be altogether nonsense even if c is greater than b, and that writing it as

$$a - b + c$$

may still be quite valid. With this hint we leave the point for the moment and will return to it later.

We are all familiar with the multiplication table and the meaning to be attached to 3×4 for example. Our primitive mathematician must have noticed the interesting fact that four heaps of three things gave the same number of things as when he put three heaps of four things together. As we write it, that result is

$$4 \times 3 = 3 \times 4$$

The left side reads " four multiplied by three," the right " three multiplied by four." In more general symbolism

$$a \times b = b \times a$$

or multiplication of two numbers is " commutative."

Actually, the cross sign $\times$ is frequently omitted *when we use letters to represent numbers*, so that the product $a \times b$ is more often than not written $a\ b$, and $b \times a$ written $b\ a$. We naturally cannot omit the cross when we use actual numbers ; for 34, for example, is thirty-four and not three times four, which must be written 3×4, or sometimes 3.4, the dot printed on the line sometimes taking the place of the cross. (The dot on the line must not be confused with the dot above the line, as in $3 \cdot 4$, indicating the decimal point.) This privilege accorded to letters, and not to the numerals, renders necessary a short digression here ; for if we actually did want to suggest that a number had two digits, the first one being a and the second one b, we should have to write it $10a + b$. This serves to remind us of the universal convention in the writing or printing of our numbers, that the last number is in the " unit's place," the one before that in the " ten's place " and so on, so that

$$356 = 6 + (5 \times 10) + (3 \times 100)$$

But this convention is not used in our symbolism of letters. Actually $a\,b\,c$ means that we multiply a by b and that product is then multiplied by c. If we wish to suggest a number of three digits whose first digit is a, second b, third c, we must write it $c + 10b + 100a$. Beyond that measure of caution in interpretation the omission of the cross causes no inconvenience.

Two very convenient abbreviations are used when, in addition or multiplication, the same number is repeated several times. Thus :

$$a + a + a + a + a$$

can be written $5a$, the economy in writing being obvious. Again

$$a \times a \times a \times a \times a$$

or

$$a\,a\,a\,a\,a$$

is generally written a^5, the 5 being printed in small type at the top right hand corner of the letter to distinguish the result from $a5$ which is actually the same as $5a$, as we know. We then speak of the 5 in a^5 as an "index" or "power," referring to a^5 in the words "a to the fifth power" or "a to the power 5." Looking now at the four "expressions" ab, ba, a^b, b^a, we recognise that the first two mean the same number, but that in general this is not the same number as either the third or fourth expression represents ; nor indeed do the third and fourth expressions represent the same number ; a^b represents the result of multiplying a by a, and that product again by a and so on, until the number of a symbols involved has reached b, and b^a represents similarly $b \times b \times b \times \ldots$, a times.

There remains the fourth fundamental operation of arithmetic, namely, division. This is the inverse of multiplication, so that when we write $4 \times 3 = 12$, we can also write it $12 \div 3 = 4$ or $12 \div 4 = 3$. Actually the division sign, $\div$, is frequently replaced nowadays by the "solidus," /, and the divisions above are often written $12/3$ and $12/4$. Of course the operation of division is not commutative ; for certainly $12/3$ is not the same as $3/12$. Indeed in confining ourselves, as we have implicitly done so far, to the numbers by means of which we *count discrete objects*, we have no meaning at all for $3/12$ if "number" is to refer exclusively to the numerals of the ordinary table. For that matter $12/5$ or $12/7$ would have no meaning either, while $12/2$ and $12/6$ would ; so that if we had no other numbers than 1, 2, 3, 4, etc., a/b might or might not have a meaning, and even if a/b had a meaning, b/a would not. This introduction of the word "meaning" deserves a little more consideration. It is often said that when we meet an expression like $a + b$ or $a - b$, a means *any* number and b means any number. This is hardly a correct way of stating the situation. In any specific case a must mean *some* number and b must mean *some* number, and the correct way of looking at the matter is this. If a represents some definite number and b represents a definite number, the same or not as a, then the expression $a + b$ has a meaning, so also has $a - b$ (with perhaps a slight reservation for the moment if b is greater than a) ; so also has $a\,b$. But without some extension of the

meaning of the word " number " a/b might not have a meaning. That extension we now make.

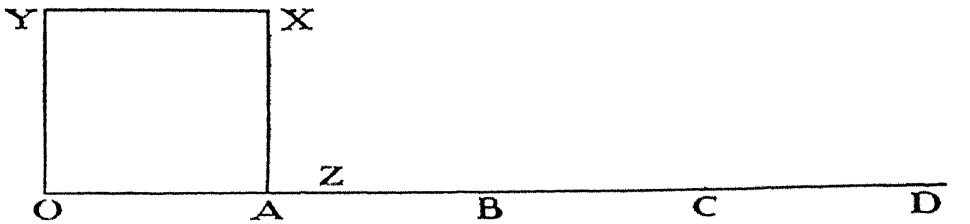
Naturally we are concerned now not only with discrete, enumerable objects, but with the results of breaking them into parts and the evolution of ideas about the dimensions, weights or other physical properties of the parts, so that on some criterion parts could be called equal or unequal in magnitude. Hence obviously arise the notions of half, third, quarter, etc. These are, of course, introduced into an extended number system in the form $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, etc., or sometimes in a more convenient form for printing $1/2$, $1/3$, $1/4$. In the earliest records of arithmetical calculation among the Egyptians, the only fractions used were unit fractions, *i.e.* fractions with unity in the numerator. Thus what we would write as $2/9$ they wrote as $1/6 + 1/18$; and $2/95$ was written as $1/60 + 1/380 + 1/570$. The Greeks, Romans and Hindus used a symbolism which is equivalent to our way of writing general fractions. So we now " give a meaning " to $\frac{a}{b}$ or a/b when a and b mean " integral numbers " or " integers " such as 1, 2, 3, 4, etc., even when the number represented by a is not exactly divisible by the number represented by b; for we can picture a physical operation which breaks something into b equal parts and then selects a of them as another recognisable thing. Actually, this way of looking at the matter is only legitimate if a is less than b; the fraction is then a " proper fraction." If a is greater than b we must think of several things, only one of which is broken up into b parts. The number of whole things still left gives us a picture of an integer which is part of this " improper fraction," and the combination of the integer and the proper fraction we call a " mixed number," so that if we write the improper fraction $16/7$, it can also be represented by the mixed number $2\frac{2}{7}$. The number system now includes both integral and fractional numbers, and we can adapt our symbolism to meet the new situation by admitting that a single symbol such as a can now represent not only an integer as heretofore but also a fractional number, proper or improper, if need be. The rules for addition, subtraction, multiplication and division of fractions explained in every text-book of Arithmetic then enable us, as before, to give a meaning to $a + b$, $a - b$, ab, a/b, provided a and b represent definite numbers. The commutative and associative principles still remain in force. If we care to, we can utilise the decimal notation, in place of the usual fractional form, to indicate the fractional numbers proper or mixed numbers. There is, however, this difference, of some importance as we shall see presently, that whereas a proper fraction can always be indicated by using a finite number of ordinary figures, the corresponding decimal expression may be unending, although the figures recur. Thus :

$$\tfrac{6}{7} = \cdot 857142857142857142 \ldots$$

usually written $\cdot\dot{8}57142\dot{}$.

We have by no means exhausted all the possibilities of number, as the Greeks recognised in their day because of their geometric genius. Since $2 \times 2 = 4$, $3 \times 3 = 9$, $4 \times 4 = 16$, $5 \times 5 = 25$, etc., it is sometimes said that the numbers 4, 9, 16, 25, etc., have square roots, while numbers

like 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 10 . . . have no square roots and so are not " perfect square " numbers. Take 2, for example ; we can apply the well-known process taught in every text of Arithmetic for extracting square roots. The process works perfectly but *never ends* (except, of course, when necessity or loss of interest compels us to stop). Thus the square of 1·4 is less than 2, but the square of 1·5 is greater ; the square of 1·41 is less than 2, the square of 1·42 is greater ; the square of 1·1414 less, of 1·415 greater ; the square of 1·4142 less, of 1·4143 greater, and so on as far as we care to go. So we can arrange a class of ascending numbers such as 1, 1·4, 1·41, 1·414, 1·4142, . . . whose squares are all less than 2 but progressively increasing towards 2 *as near as we like*, provided we take sufficient trouble. Also we can arrange a series of descending numbers such as 1·5, 1·42, 1·415, 1·4143, . . . whose squares progressively decrease towards 2 yet never quite reach it. The gap can be closed up to any degree we please, but can never be absolutely closed. The situation is tantalising, but the Greek had no difficulty in admitting that the square root of 2 really exists by adopting the following line of argument. When he reasoned about number, he nearly always pictured a number as representing some geometric magnitude such as length, area or volume. Let us draw a straight line on paper, mark a point O on it and then mark points A, B, C, D . . . so that OA = AB = BC = CD = . . . each step being one



inch, say. The lengths of OA, OB, OC, OD, . . . can then be considered to represent in a geometrical sense the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4. . . . Further, by dividing the segments OA, AB, BC, . . . into equal parts as finely subdivided as we please, we can represent all the various fractional numbers, proper and improper alike. None of these points, however, will represent the square root of 2, since it cannot be expressed as a decimal *with recurring figures*, which as we know can be reduced to an ordinary fractional form with a finite number of figures in numerator and denominator. But let us construct a square OAXY on the side OA. By the Pythagorean proposition, the square on the diagonal OX is equal to the square on OA plus the square on AX, *i.e.* to the square of 1 + the square of 1, or 2. So if we mark by means of a compass point Z on the line OABC, so that OZ = OX, then just as OB can be said to " represent " the number 2, and OC the number 3, etc., in exactly the same sense OZ will represent a number whose square is 2. In short, we deliberately extend our number system to include numbers represented by any length we like marked out from O to some point on the line. In this way, by suitable constructions, the square root of any number can be given such a pictorial representation. Such considerations justify our introduction of the square

roots, cube roots, fourth roots, etc., of any number we please into our number system. We distinguish them from the integral and fractional numbers by calling them " irrational " numbers, but this epithet must not be interpreted as " unreasonable " ; for the existence of these numbers is so " reasonable " an assumption that a tremendous amount of mathematics, absolutely vital for practical calculations in our scientific and engineering pursuits, would be impossible without them. So when we say that a letter a represents an irrational number, *e.g.* the seventh root of 5, we mean that a satisfies the relation

$$a^7 = 5.$$

We postulate also that if a represents such an irrational number and b another number, rational or irrational, then $a + b$, $a - b$, ab, a/b, also represent numbers and that $a + b$ is the same number as $b + a$, and ab the same number as ba. (It should be noted that if a and b are irrational numbers it cannot be concluded that ab is necessarily irrational. Thus $\sqrt{2}$ and $\sqrt{8}$ are irrational numbers ; but $\sqrt{2} \times \sqrt{8}$ is not, for it is the same as $\sqrt{16}$ which is 4.) In making this postulate we are appealing to the " principle of continuity," for inasmuch as we can always find a rational number, integral or fractional, which is as near as any assigned amount, however small, to the irrational number in question, we take it that the laws which are true for rational numbers are also true for irrational.

In a former paragraph of this section we drew attention to the doubt about the validity of an expression such as $a - b$ if we knew that b represents a larger number than a does. Even so we saw that the operation indicated was not entirely unreasonable. We can now make a final extension of the number system so as to remove all trace of hesitation about accepting such an expression. Suppose you walk 6 feet in a given direction and then turn right round and walk back 4 feet, you have walked 10 feet no doubt, but the final effect is to leave you only 2 feet from where you started. If you walk 6 feet to the right and then 8 feet to the left, you are once more 2 feet from the initial mark. How can one distinguish these two cases from one another by a concise symbolism ? The experience of the mathematician has guided him to a very simple answer to that question. He represents 6 feet one way by + 6 and 4 feet the other way by — 4, thus introducing what he calls " directed numbers," some of which are " positive " and some " negative." (It is entirely a matter of choice and convenience which he chooses as the " positive direction " and which the " negative direction.") He then writes an account of the first walk thus :

$$(+6) + (-4)$$

the result being + 2. Note that in this the + sign has two meanings, one to indicate the direction and one to indicate that a certain effect represented by — 4 is being added to another effect represented by + 6, the sense of the word " addition " being rather more general than before. The second walk is represented by

$$(+6) + (-8)$$

and the result is — 2 ; for now you are 2 feet away from the start in the negative direction. The first of these can then be contracted to

$$6 - 4 = 2$$

the second to

$$6 - 8 = -2$$

So now at one swoop we double all the numbers in our system by this convention of " directed-ness " ; for to any of our previous numbers rational or irrational, integral or fractional, regarded as a positive number, there corresponds a negative number. Our letter symbols *a*, *b*, etc., now may be considered as representing negative numbers if necessity should arise. Care is needed here. Though we may not necessarily write a minus sign before a letter, say *b*, yet we can assume if necessary that it is representing a negative number. Thus let us consider

$$a + b$$

where *a* represents + 9 and *b* represents — 5. As indicated above, we can think of this as a walk of 9 northwards followed by a walk of 5 southwards, the result being 4 northwards, so that $a + b$ represents + 4. The question at once rises to our lips, What about $a - b$ if *b* is a negative number ? That can be answered by reference to a simple situation. Harry walks 9 feet north and James 5 feet north ; how far is Harry away from James ? Four feet to the north of him of course ; *i.e.*

$$(+9) - (+5) = +4$$

But now Harry walks 9 feet to the north and James 5 feet to the south ; how far is Harry now from James ? The answer is of course 14 feet to the north ; *i.e.*

$$(+9) - (-5) = +14$$

There we have it again : " Two negatives make a positive." We need have no hesitation about changing the sign inside the brackets if there is a minus sign outside. We could go on multiplying illustrations from all sorts of human pursuits and activities. For example, we know that there is a temperature on all thermometers marked 0, the " zero " ; temperatures warmer than this are marked + (or at least that is implied if the sign is omitted), and temperatures below are marked —. How much does the temperature *a* differ from the temperature *b* ? Always by $a - b$. Try it in any case. How much does + 30° differ from + 20° ? Answer, $(+30°) - (+20)$, *i.e* + 10° or ten degrees *higher*. How much does 20° differ from 30° ? Answer $(+20°) - (+30)$ *i.e.* — 10° or ten degrees *lower*. How much does + 30° differ from — 20° ? Answer $(+30) - (-20)$, *i.e.* + 30 + 20, or + 50, or fifty degrees *higher*. Obviously correct, for from 20 below a mark to 30 above it is 50 steps. Again, walk up ten steps on the stairs, turn, and come down fifteen steps. Where are you ? Answer $(+10) - (+15)$ steps *up* ; *i.e.* (— 5) steps *up* ; *i.e.* really 5 steps *down*. One last illustration, so as to show what is meant by *ab* when *a* and *b* may represent negative numbers as well as positive. When a train travels through a station going north and we know it is travelling at a speed of 500 yards a minute, where is it 4 minutes after passing through ? It is

2,000 yards away to the north. Let us now represent time which elapses after the instant when the train was at the station by positive numbers, and time which elapses from earlier moments until the instant of passage through the station by negative numbers. We symbolise the result just given by

$$(+500) \times (+4)$$

which is + 2,000.

But where is the train 4 minutes later if it is going south ? The answer is clearly 2,000 yards to the south ; and this is brought within our symbolism if we agree that

$$(-500) \times (+4) = -2{,}000$$

so that the product of a negative number and a positive number is a negative number. Or look at it another way. When the train travelled north, where was it 4 minutes *earlier* than the instant of passage ? Clearly 2,000 yards to the south, and again this is right if we agree that

$$(+500) \times (-4) = -2{,}000.$$

Lastly, and most instructive of all ; where was the train, if it is travelling *south*, 4 minutes *earlier* than its moment of passage through the station ? Without a doubt 2,000 yards away *to the north*. Again all right if we agree that

$$(-500) \times (-4) = +2{,}000$$

or the product of two negative numbers is a *positive* number.

It is absolutely a hopeless task to grasp the nature of mathematical reasoning, unless the reader understands the meaning of those symbolic representations which indicate the fundamental operations of arithmetic as carried out on all the variety of numbers which can be conceived by the mathematicians, and unless it is realised at the same time that these conceptions have not been spun out of an unregulated imagination, but that they have been checked at every turn by reference to many activities and occurrences in our physical world, of which only an extremely limited selection has been indicated in the preceding pages.

ALGEBRA

Having invented this concise symbolism to indicate the results of applying the four fundamental operations to the numbers of his system, the mathematician at all times has delighted in extending the range and power of his symbolic method far beyond the possibilities conceived by his ancestors.

Most people know that Algebra is extremely useful in " solving problems " ; that there are, in fact, certain calculations arising in every region of practical activity, which would be entirely impossible without some symbolic way of representing numbers which are unknown at the outset but which have to be found. Every text-book of Algebra contains a selection of such problems so that the pupil, by experience of varied types, may learn to deal with them if they arise in his own pursuits. The solution of such problems involves a widening and deepening of the technical

operations indicated in the previous section, and so the text-book generally devotes its earlier chapters to practice in the handling of "formulæ." The reading and understanding of a formula is an absolute necessity for an engineer, chemist, physicist or architect, to single out a few professions. For example, to take the first one that comes to hand from an engineer's table-book, C^2Rt. This has a meaning if C and R and t have meanings. Actually it tells you that you multiply the number indicated by C by itself, then multiply that product by the number which R represents, and that product by the number presented by t. As used by the engineer, C is the number of ampères in a current, R is the number of ohms in the resistance of a wire, and t is the number of seconds for which the current has been running, and the calculated value of the formula indicates to him the amount of heat which has been developed in the wire. In these days of electric heaters there is no need to stress the "usefulness" of the information which C^2Rt compresses into itself so compactly.

Take another one, this time an "expression" from a book on Algebra, $x^2 - 5xy - 7y^2$. This expression has three "terms." The first term, x^2, tells you to square the number indicated by x; the second term tells you to multiply the number indicated by x by the number indicated by y and that product by 5; the third term tells you to square the number indicated by y and take 7 times that result. You then subtract the second term from the first, and from the difference you again subtract the third term. An operation which requires six lines of print to explain in ordinary words is indicated by the printed letters in one third of a line.

Then there are operations of great service which are indicated by a symbolism such as this :

$$a\,(b + c),\ a\,(b - c),\ (a + b)\,(c + d),\ \text{etc.}$$

Take $a\,(b + c)$ for instance. It indicates, by this use of the brackets, that b and c are to be added and that a is then multiplied by the sum. Try this on $5\,(7 + 3)$. The result is 5×10, or 50; but notice that 5×7 is 35 and 5×3 is 15 and these add to 50. That is

$$5\,(7 + 3) = 5 \times 7 + 5 \times 3.$$

This suggests that

$$a\,(b + c) = ab + ac$$

and trial with any numbers always justifies this general statement.

Similarly, trial with any numbers always justifies

$$a\,(b - c) = ab - ac$$

and we can extend this indefinitely thus

$$a\,(b + c + d - e \ldots) = ab + ac + ad - ae \ldots$$

This is called "distributing" a among the terms inside the bracket and the result is called the "Distributive Law."

Take a still wider form

$$(a + b)\,(c + d)$$

As a matter of trial, insert 10 for a, 8 for b, 4 for c, 3 for d.
The result is :

$$18 \times 7 \text{ or } 126.$$

Now notice that ac is 40, ad is 30, bc is 32 and bd is 24. Add these four numbers and the result is 126. So this suggests that

$$(a + b)\ (c + d) = ac + bc + ad + bd$$

and trial with any numbers will always justify it. But actually, if we are satisfied that our previous result is correct, we need no numerical trials to convince us that this is also correct ; for we have only to apply the Distributive Law twice to " prove " it. Thus

$$(a + b)\ (c + d) = (a + b)\ c + (a + b)\ d$$

where we regard $(a + b)$ for the moment as one numerical entity. Now apply the law again to the right side

$$(a + b)\ c + (a + b)\ d = ac + bc + ad + bd$$

and the proof is completed.

Again take $(a + b)\ (c - d)$; it is equal to $(a + b)\ c - (a + b)\ d$, and this is equal to $ac + bc - (ad + bd)$ and this to $ac + bc - ad - bd$ *if the rule about changing signs inside the bracket is all right here.* Try it on any numbers and it is so. Thus with the numbers used above $a + b$ is 18 and $c - d$ is 1, so the result is 18 ; 18 is also equal to $40 + 32 - 30 - 24$. Finally consider

$$(a - b)\ (c - d).$$

This is $(a - b)\ c - (a - b)\ d$, and that is $ac - bc - (ad - bd)$, or $ac - bc - ad + bd$, and numerical trial again justifies the general rule for changing the sign on removing the bracket after a minus sign.

Now all these separate results can be summarised in one result, provided we remember that the letters may represent *negative* numbers, if need be, as well as positive. Thus

$$(a + b)\ (c + d) = ac + ad + bc + bd$$

is a truth, even if some of the letters represent negative numbers. Put + 9 for a, − 5 for b, + 4 for c, − 2 for d.

The left side is

$$[(+9) + (-5)]\ [(+4) + (-2)]$$
$$i.e.\ (+4) \times (+2) \text{ or } +8.$$

The right side is

$$(+9) \times (+4) + (+9) \times (-2) + (-5) \times (+4) + (-5)\ (-2).$$

Now comes a clinching test concerning the products of positive and negative numbers. If what we have pointed out in the previous chapter is generally true, then

$$(+9) \times (+4) = +36$$
$$(+9) \times (-2) = -18$$
$$(-5) \times (+4) = -20$$
$$(-5) \times (-2) = +10.$$

Add the four numbers ; *i.e.* add " in the algebraic sense," *taking account of the signs* ; the result is as follows : $(+36) + (-18)$ is $+18$, $(+18) + (-20)$ is -2, and $(-2) + (+10)$ is $+8$, and $+8$ is what we got above.

Special cases of these results are extremely useful at times. Here are two which are always turning up :

$$(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$$
$$(a - b)^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2$$

or, in words, " the square of the sum of two numbers is equal to the sum of their squares together with twice their product, and the square of their difference is equal to the sum of their squares less twice their product." But how compact the symbolic statement is as compared with the verbal.

Here is another valuable little " friend in time of need " :

$$(a + b)(a - b) = a^2 - b^2.$$

Another piece of skill which the mathematician must cultivate, as a craftsman must cultivate skill with his tools, concerns the same kind of operations as those just mentioned looked at from the opposite point of view. We can easily see that

$$\begin{aligned}&(3a + 4b)(2a + 7b)\\ &= 6a^2 + 8ab + 21ab + 28b^2\\ &= 6a^2 + 29ab + 28b^2.\end{aligned}$$

But suppose I write down

$$5a^2 + 41ab + 8b^2.$$

Can I do the reverse operation on this and represent it as the product of two " factors " ? Actually I can " factorise " the expression ; it is equal to $(5a + b)(a + 8b)$. But, as a matter of fact, it is not always possible to do this for any expression like the above with any random numbers written down in place of the 5, the 41, and the 8 ; at least, not with the numbers which we have considered so far, *i.e.* the " real " numbers, integral or fractional, rational or irrational, positive or negative. Even when the factorisation is possible the numbers in the factors do not generally come out so nicely and may involve cumbersome fractions, or even irrational numbers. For example, $a^2 + b^2$ has no factors like the above ; $a^2 + 6ab + 7b^2$ has, but they are

$$[a + (3 - \sqrt{2})b][a + (3 + \sqrt{2})b].$$

Cultivation of skill in factorisation, combined with the recognition of the occasions when it is possible and when not, is one of the most useful accomplishments which a mathematician can cultivate, and a good number of pages in every book on Algebra is devoted to teaching all the methods and artifices which experience has revealed as necessary for the purpose and for the multifarious types of expressions which may occur.

Of course the examples of an algebraic expression which have been written above are relatively simple ones. An expression might consist of many more terms and each term might be much more complex in structure. In addition we could build still more complicated expressions consisting of products, quotients and powers of those just indicated.

Here is one which has a special significance for any reader who is interested in wireless matters and may have heard of the " impedance " of an electric circuit, a word bandied about freely in conversation between wireless enthusiasts :

$$\sqrt{\left\{\left(2\pi Lf - \frac{1}{2\pi kf}\right)^2 + R^2\right\}}$$

As an algebraic expression it tells you to carry out a group of calculations. First you multiply the number f (which is to be read as an abbreviation for " the number represented by f ") by the number L and the result you multiply by the number π and double. From that you subtract the number obtained by dividing the product of the numbers f, k, π and 2 into unity. This result is squared and then added to the square of the number R, and you then extract the square root. An engineer's pocket-book in which you will find this formula will tell you that this is the impedance of an electric circuit whose " resistance," " inductance " and " capacity " are equal to the numbers R, L and k respectively in the usual electric units and in which there is an alternating current of frequency f. The number π is the ratio of the circumference of a circle to its radius. You would also find in the same pocket-book, in the same connection, another expression such as this :—

$$\frac{E}{\sqrt{\left\{\left(2\pi Lf - \frac{1}{2\pi kf}\right)^2 + R^2}}$$

which suggests that you should divide the number calculated above into the number E, the object of this division being to obtain the so-called " peak " value of the alternating current excited in this circuit when an alternating electromotive force, whose " peak " value in E, is applied to it.

Now let the reader be under no misapprehension that this symbolic writing is only of value as a kind of convenient shorthand, indicating concisely certain necessary and useful practical calculations. That would be a painfully inadequate view of the situation. After all, these expressions were not originally written down at the dictation of some eminent mathematician. They were *proved*. They were deduced by plain, ordinary reason from certain principles and, what is more, the deduction *would have been a sheer impossibility without the symbolism*. It will be illuminating if we just refer to those principles for a moment. First of all there come the " physical principles," *i.e.* the laws discovered by experiment and trial, in this case the laws of electric circuits first propounded by men like Ohm, Faraday and Maxwell. These enable one to write down an " equation," which is just a statement of an equality between the values of two mathematical expressions. The experimenter, the physicist, has now had his say and the mathematician takes up this equation, absolutely unconcerned as to what the symbols in the equation " mean." To him they are purely abstract quantities to be treated according to the principles of his science, among which we first of all meet " logical principles," which are

those universal rules admitted on all hands to be vital to any kind of reasoning. Such, for instance, are the statements that " two things which are equal to a third, are equal to each other," or " remove equals from equals and the remainders are equal," etc. . . . But there are, in addition, principles bearing on the handling of his special symbolism, mathematical principles proper, *e.g.* the laws of commutation, association, distribution referred to above, and others which we cannot here mention or illustrate. This may help the reader to understand that algebraic symbolism is not merely a convenient " language," but is an indispensable part of the machinery of certain kinds of reasoning, and that the mathematician proper, the " pure " mathematician as he is conveniently named, is more interested in his processes of deduction and the development of the range and power of his symbolism than in the useful, practical formulæ which he, and he alone, can obtain.

The reference just made to an " equation " may remind the reader that when we begin to work out a problem we always expect to " turn the problem into an equation " ; so that equations are vitally connected with problems. Yet it is more instructive (or so the writer thinks) to show how the mathematician would come to be interested in equations, quite apart from their practical value in discovering the answers to problems.

Let us consider the letter x as representing some number, and let us write down a few algebraic expressions in which it is involved :—

$$4x - 8$$
$$3x + 4$$
$$x^2 + 2x - 68$$
$$x^3 + 7x^2 + 5x + 9$$
$$x^4 - 10x^3 + 8x^2 - 7x + 1.$$

The first two expressions only involve x itself and not a square, or third power, or fourth power, etc. . . . of x. They are called " linear " expressions ; the third one is called a " quadratic " expression, because it involves the second power or square of x (*x quadratus*) as well as the first power ; the third is called a " cubic " expression because it involves the cube of x ; the fourth a " quartic," and so on. It is obviously a simple matter to insert a special number for x, and calculate the numerical value of any of these expressions which corresponds to the special value of x. As we " vary " the value of x, the value of any such expression also varies ; for clearly the latter depends on the former. In technical language we often refer to x as an " independent variable " and then call any expression which involves it, and which is therefore dependent on it as regards numerical value, a " function of x." But what interests the mathematician is the inverse operation to what has just been indicated. He asks, " If I give a numerical value to the expression or function, can I find what is the value of x which will fit this ; or indeed is there a value which will do it " ? Let us try the mathematician's puzzle with some of the expressions above. Take the first one and ask what is the value of x which will make it have the value 12. This gives us the " equation "

$$4x - 8 = 12.$$

Now we apply the *logical* principle, " add equals to equals and the sums are equal." Let us add 8 to each side

$$4x - 8 + 8 = 12 + 8$$

or
$$4x = 20$$

and so
$$x = 5.$$

We see at once why we add 8 to each side ; it gets all the terms indicated by actual numerals together ; it amounts to transposing — 8 to the right side and changing the sign. It was this *uniting* process to which the Arabs referred when they used the word " al jabr " and this, it will be recalled, gave the name of the subject by reason of the title of an Arabic book.

Let us try to answer the same question for the third expression ; let us ask if there is a value for x which will make $x^2 + 2x - 68$ equal to 12. The reader will find that if he puts x equal to 8, the quadratic expression is equal to 12 ; for x^2 is then 64, $2x$ is 16 ; so their sum is 80 and thus if 68 is taken away, 12 remains. Yet obviously it would take more " guessing " than in the previous instance to arrive at this value of x. Is there no routine way of getting at the required result ? Well, there is, and there is also a modification of it which yields the result very quickly in certain cases, provided one is expert at the process of factorisation mentioned earlier. The present example happens to be one in which the modified method works. Let us write down our equation :—

$$x^2 + 2x - 68 = 12.$$

Let us apply the logical principle that if we remove equals from equals, then equals remain and take away 12 from each side

$$x^2 + 2x - 68 - 12 = 12 - 12$$

or
$$x^2 + 2x - 80 = 0.$$

This is the " transposition " process working a little differently than in the previous example with the linear function. Now anyone with experience in factorisation will split the left hand expression above into two factors ; they are $x - 8$ and $x + 10$, and the reader at all events can satisfy himself that this is so ; for by repeating the process already referred to in stating the principle of distribution he will find that

$$\begin{aligned}(x - 8)(x + 10) &= x(x + 10) - 8(x + 10) \\ &= (x^2 + 10x) - (8x + 80) \\ &= x^2 + 10x - 8x - 80 \\ &= x^2 + 2x - 80.\end{aligned}$$

So we again modify the equation into

$$(x - 8)(x + 10) = 0.$$

The answer, x is equal to 8, is now justified, for if we make x equal to 8, one of the factors becomes zero and the other 18, and 18 times nothing is just nothing. But we have discovered something more ; for if we put — 10 for x (note the minus sign most carefully), then one of the factors is

0 and the other is — 18 and the product of 0 and — 18 is 0. So if we substitute — 10 for x in $x^2 + 2x - 68$ we should get 12, and this is so, for $(-10)^2$ is + 100 (remember that "the product of two negative numbers is positive" is a rule satisfied by our symbolism); also $2x$ is — 20 and + 100 — 20 — 68 = + 80 — 68 = 12. Of course the choice of 12 as the number to which the quadratic expression is to be equal made this method "work simply." Had we chosen another number, the factorisation would not have been so easy; for instance, suppose we had asked for the expression to be equal to 10 instead of 12, it would be a little more awkward but not impossible. The equation would be now

$$x^2 + 2x - 68 = 10$$

and on transposing as before we would have

$$x^2 + 2x - 78 = 0$$

and the reader can try as hard as he like, but he will not find any two simple integers whose difference is 2 and whose product is 78 (for that is what the previous solution amounted to). Still we are not beaten; the mathematicians of the middle ages taught us how to get round this trouble. We apply the transposition process differently, more like the way we applied it in the first problem. Add 68 to each side and we find

$$x^2 + 2x - 68 + 68 = 10 + 68$$

or

$$x^2 + 2x = 78.$$

Now add 1 to each side. Why? Because by so doing we obtain on the left-hand side an expression which is a "perfect square." Thus

$$x^2 + 2x + 1 = 79$$

But

$$x^2 + 2x + 1 = (x + 1)(x + 1) = (x + 1)^2.$$

Hence

$$(x + 1)^2 = 79$$

and

$$x + 1 = \sqrt{79}$$

so that

$$x = \sqrt{79} - 1.$$

So we have found the answer, although the number to be substituted for x in order to make $x^2 + 2x - 68$ equal to 10 is not a simple integer, but an irrational number. But let us pause; when we asked for the expression to be equal to 12, we found there were *two* answers possible. Why are there not *two* now? Well, there are, for there are *two* irrational numbers whose square is 79, *viz.* $+\sqrt{79}$ and $-\sqrt{79}$, and so when we found that

$$(x + 1)^2 = 79$$

we could write

$$x + 1 = -\sqrt{79}$$

as a possibility just as much as

$$x + 1 = +\sqrt{79}.$$

Obviously x cannot be chosen to satisfy both these demands at once, but if we make x equal to $-\sqrt{79} - 1$, it will make $x^2 + 2x - 68$ equal to 10, just as much as putting $+\sqrt{79} - 1$ for x.

This second method, technically called " completing the square," is always applicable in the case of any quadratic expression. Let us give another example. Suppose we want to make $x^2 + 6x + 12$ equal to 6, what value of x will do ? Write down the equation

$$x^2 + 6x + 12 = 6.$$

Subtract 12 from each side

$$x^2 + 6x = 6 - 12 = -6.$$

Now add 9 to each side

$$x^2 + 6x + 9 = -6 + 9 = 3.$$

The addition of 9 was made as before so as to produce a perfect square on the left side ; for $x^2 + 6x + 9 = (x + 3)(x + 3)$ or $(x + 3)^2$.

Thus $(x + 3)^2 = 3$

and so either $x + 3 = +\sqrt{3}$

or $x + 3 = -\sqrt{3}$

and therefore $x = +\sqrt{3} - 3$

or $x = -\sqrt{3} - 3.$

Two irrational answers arise as before, but still *two* answers, and that is a general feature of all " quadratic equations."

In order to bring out a feature of the relation of these equations to problems about actual things and not about abstract numbers, let us consider the following " puzzle " as we might call it. " A number of posts is set up in a space of 40 yards at equal distances. Had there been 2 posts more, the gap between two adjacent ones would have been reduced by 1 yard. How many posts are there ? " Suppose the number of such gaps is x at first, so that there are in fact $x + 1$ posts. Then the distance between neighbours is $40/x$ yards. We are told that if there are $x + 3$ posts and therefore $x + 2$ gaps, the distance between neighbours is $40/x - 1$ yards. If that is so, the whole length must be

$$(x + 2)\left(\frac{40}{x} - 1\right) \text{ yards.}$$

But this is 40 yards. Therefore we have our equation

$$(x + 2)\left(\frac{40}{x} - 1\right) = 40.$$

Use the distributive principle to work out the left side. Thus

$$(x + 2)\left(\frac{40}{x} - 1\right) = x \times \frac{40}{x} - x + 2 \times \frac{40}{x} - 2$$

$$= 40 - x + \frac{80}{x} - 2$$

$$= 38 - x + \frac{80}{x}$$

Hence $$38 - x + \frac{80}{x} = 40.$$

Logic gives us $$-x + \frac{80}{x} = 2.$$

But that multiplying equals by equals gives equals is likewise logical; so multiply each side by x. The left side becomes $x\left(-x + \frac{80}{x}\right)$ and the right side, $2x$.
Distribute the left side once more and we obtain $-x^2 + 80$ from it, and so

$$-x^2 + 80 = 2x.$$

Add x^2 to each side and by logic

$$80 = 2x + x^2.$$

But this is just the equation we worked out a moment ago. It has two "roots" (as they are called), namely, + 8 and − 10; *i.e.* either of these values, if substituted for x, will satisfy the equation. But clearly the second one is no good to us *for our problem*; we cannot have minus 10 gaps and minus 9 posts; however, the first root is all right, 8 gaps, *i.e.* 9 posts, will work, as the reader can easily show.

Now this is really an important point. When we are dealing with a problem about the counting of real things, our answer must be in those numbers *with which we can count, i.e.* the *positive* integers. So when we reduce our problem to an equation, if no root of the equation is such a number we have shown that the problem is impossible *about real things*; but the equation is still possible for the abstract numbers of the mathematician, which include negative and irrational numbers, and, paradoxical as it may seem, an enormous amount of his work, not only of intense interest to himself but of great practical service to scientists, engineers and others, would be impossible without such equations. Nay, more, we can, to conclude this chapter, give the reader an example of a still more apparently ridiculous kind of number. Suppose we asked for a value of x which would make the expression $x^2 + 10x + 30$ equal to 4. The equation is

$$x^2 + 10x + 30 = 4$$

leading to $$x^2 + 10x = 4 - 30.$$

We complete the square by adding 25 (which is the square of 5, 5 being the half of 10). Thus

$$x^2 + 10x + 25 = -26 + 25 = -1$$

or $$(x + 5)^2 = -1.$$

So $x + 5$ must be equal to the square root of *minus one*! "Now this *is* arrant rubbish," the reader possibly exclaims, "if you ask me to believe that any numbers when squared give a minus result. That a positive number when multiplied by itself gives a positive result I have always known, and you have been most careful to insist that if I multiply a negative number by itself, that is also positive." Quite so; that is perfectly true about the numbers *we have so far defined*, integers, fractions,

irrationals, positive or negative. There is no use throwing up the reproach that the square root of minus one is a number we " can't count with." Irrationals are of no use for that. Actually the mathematician " invents " (for that is really what he does) a whole host of new numbers, which he *defines* to be such that their squares are -1, -2, -3, -4, or indeed minus any of the positive numbers, rational or irrational, previously defined. His former numbers he groups under one title —" real." These new numbers he calls " imaginary." Once more his own curiosity and ingenuity enable him to work out a host of interesting properties which they possess, and although of course they are of no use for " counting " (being in no worse plight than the irrationals in that connection) it is a fact, perhaps astonishing to the reader but none the less true, that many practical conclusions deduced by him for the scientist and engineer would be much more difficult to work out without these " imaginaries." For instance every electrical engineer, studying the derivation of the formulæ used in connection with alternating current machinery, must be familiar with these peculiar but exceedingly useful numbers.

In short, numbers are abstract entities only limited by the definitions we impose on them. After all, " definition " is only another word for limiting.

It should be mentioned that when we equate a cubic or quartic expression to any number we obtain cubic and quartic equations. These are always soluble provided we admit irrational and imaginary answers as valid whenever they turn up. There are always three roots for a cubic equation, and four roots for a quartic. Similar statements are true for equations of still higher " degree," but they involve methods of solution which are extremely complicated and only few mathematicians of the very " advanced " order pursue the " Theory of Equations," as this branch of Algebra is called, to such ultimate stages.

The reader may have heard of " logarithms " and " slide rules " as practical means for carrying out otherwise tedious calculations with ease and expedition. He may therefore be interested to read a word or two about the " nonsensical " notion (for so he will think at the first glance) upon which these are founded. We know what 2^2, 2^3, 5^2, 5^4, . . . mean; the last one is, as he would say, " Four fives multiplied together." " What then is $5^{\frac{1}{2}}$? " Five multiplied by itself a half times ! ! Consider these few results

$$5^2 \times 5^3 = 5^5$$
$$5^4 \times 5^3 = 5^7$$
$$5^6 \times 5^4 = 5^{10}$$

and so on.

Note that the index on the right is always the *sum* of those on the left; for when you multiply, for example, 5^4 by 5^3, the number of fives involved is 7. Well then it is obviously true that

$$5^1 \times 5^1 = 5^2$$
$$5^2 \times 5^2 = 5^4$$
$$5^3 \times 5^3 = 5^6.$$

Suppose we *agree* that $5^{\frac{1}{2}}$ shall obey the same rule; then

$$5^{\frac{1}{2}} \times 5^{\frac{1}{2}} = 5^1$$

for the sum of $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{1}{2}$ is 1. So $5^{\frac{1}{2}}$, *by our agreement that the law of indices is to be general,* turns out to be $\sqrt{5}$, the square root of 5. Similarly $5^{\frac{1}{3}}$ is the cube root of 5, $5^{\frac{1}{4}}$ the fourth root and so on. We can go further and give a meaning to a negative index. It turns out that 5^{-2} is the result of dividing 5^2 into unity; it is $1/5^2$, 5^{-3} is $1/5^3$, and so on.

Here then is a further example of the mathematician widening his powers by generalising his definitions; and as already stated, quite apart from his own pleasure and interest in the new extensions of his methods, every table of logarithms and every slide rule used by practical calculators depend on this new extension.

In this way Algebra, which came on the scene as generalised Arithmetic, gradually took on a character of its own. As in Arithmetic the notion of number was separated from any association with any particular set of objects, so in Algebra the notion of number was even further refined so as to be abstracted from reference to any particular numbers. Just as a number like 7 refers impartially to any group of seven objects, so in Algebra a letter like a or x is used to refer impartially to any number, on the understanding of course that each letter in any particular problem, or in any particular analysis of a particular expression, must refer to the same number throughout. Analysis of expressions, such as those suggested above, and many other types, some of incredible complexity, gradually led to the notion of " variable " and " functionality," and the reader will realise that the idea of functionality is the mathematical counterpart of the well-established order of nature expressed in the experimentally discovered laws of the physicist and chemist. Just as the value of an algebraic expression depends on the values of the variable or variables which appear on it, so does a physical quantity (like a gravitational force, for instance) depend on other physical magnitudes with which it is related by observation (distance apart and masses of the gravitating bodies, for instance). Without such mathematical expressions and the technical means of manipulating them invented by the mathematician *for their own sake,* mathematically expressed laws of nature, which came on the scene in the seventeenth century and have since multiplied in number and importance, would have been a sheer impossibility.

GEOMETRY

Our external world is a world of form, colour and sound. The forms of visible objects are infinite in their variety, and frequently the form of even one body will change under the action of wind or other natural causes in a most varied manner. The study of the fundamental laws of shape has always been an absorbing pursuit for the mathematician. The Greek philosophers were attracted to this study, in which they showed pre-eminent genius, when they became acquainted with the rules of mensuration and land-surveying discovered by the Egyptians. Although they gave the name " Geometry " to this study, thus acknowledging the source from which the impulse came, they regarded mere " earth-measuring," as compared with the true science of Geometry, in much the same light as they regarded mere calculation in comparison with Arithmetic or a true science of numbers. Mensuration was an art useful no

doubt in practical life, but no substitute for the study of Geometry in the eyes of the cultivated man.

When we look at any ordinary object such as a stone we see that it has a surface. The stone itself is " extended in space." We say it is extended, or has extension, in three dimensions, meaning that every body can be considered as divided into parts, the majority of which, apart possibly from parts near its surface, can be conceived to be of the rectangular block shape, and about such a block *three* statements have to be made before its size and shape are given, *viz.*, statements about the magnitude of its length, breadth and height. But the surface is not extended in quite the same way. If we put the point of a pin in contact with the stone, we say that the point is " on the surface of the stone " ; but a little thought will show that it is just as correct to say that the point is on the surface of the air which lies around the stone ; in short the surface belongs to the air as much as to the stone ; it separates the air from the stone ; it really " contains " neither stone nor air. Look at this in another way. Move a pencil downward from air into water ; we can be quite sure when the " point of the pencil," meaning the little tip of graphite at its end, is entirely in the air, and when entirely in the water. We recognise, however, that there is a short interval during which it is partly in air, partly in water. We may say in colloquial language that it is then on the surface of the water ; but this is absolutely incorrect in strict geometrical language. A body extended in three dimensions, however small, *cannot be contained in a surface.* It is clear that in introducing the notion of surface we have embarked on another adventure of abstraction, of a different type from that employed when we begin to deal with number. The surface is extended only in two dimensions. A common error is to regard a sheet of paper as a surface ; a sheet of paper is a rectangular *solid* just like a block of wood. I measure the thickness of a book apart from its binding and I find it to be one inch ; there are 300 pages in the book ; so each page has a thickness of 1/300 inch, and there are specimens of paper thinner than this. But any fraction of an inch, however small, is not *nothing* in magnitude. So a sheet of paper has six faces just like any other rectangular solid, although four of its faces are rectangles in which a pair of sides have a very tiny length.

Let us take another glance at a block of wood ; its surface (or to be quite accurate the surface between the wood and the surrounding air—but we will not be pedantic in future so as to avoid long phrases) has six parts ; we call them " faces." These faces cut each other at the edges of the blocks ; each edge is common to two faces and, by reason of this property, is extended one dimension less than a surface ; it is extended only in one dimension, or, as the text-book has it, it has length, without breadth or thickness. Notice that this is not true of a thread or wire, however thin. All actual bodies are extended in the full three dimensions. It is not even true of the graphite strokes which we make on paper with a lead pencil and call " lines." A line in the strict geometrical sense is the result of a double abstraction carried out on actual matter ; while the stroke on paper has obviously a breadth (or it would not be seen) and has a depth also, being in fact a very shallow ridge of graphite lying on the page. Even the printed letters on this page have some depth. Actually,

edges of blocks are frequently blunt or rounded enough to be obviously lacking in the strict characteristics of a true geometrical line, and even the sharpest edge has just sufficient bluntness to show that a line is really an abstraction from the external characters of real bodies.

There is still another abstraction to be made and we reach the idea of "point." Edges of blocks meet in corners; a corner is common to two edges; and so, although in actual fact it is not strictly a point in the genuine sense by reason of some amount of bluntness however sharp it may feel, the corner gives us the idea of two strict geometric lines crossing and having as a common element a point, an entity which may be said to be in a definite place but is not extended in any dimension at all; "it has position but no parts"; or it has position but neither length, breadth nor thickness; or, briefly, it has position but no size.

Now points, lines and surfaces are the abstractions with which Geometry is concerned; with these and certain axioms and definitions about them it proceeds to build up a wonderful science of form, unfolding gradually by processes of pure thought an amazingly complicated structure of propositions or "theorems," to whose number there appears to be no limit save that set by pure exhaustion of human interest.

The great Greek mathematician Euclid, who lived about the beginning of the third century B.C., made a famous collection of geometrical theorems and problems known in his time; he arranged them in a logical order so that each proposition could be deduced from previous propositions. This work in thirteen books, copied many times (and in later ages printed for many publishers), edited and commented on by many great scholars, has remained until quite recent years the only text-book for pupils desiring to understand Geometry. So universal was this practice that "Euclid's *Elements*" (often abbreviated simply to "Euclid") was a recognised synonym for "Geometry." Many of the editors added additional propositions and submitted to the reader lists of further theorems on which to try his skill (such theorems are often called "riders"), but with few exceptions the arrangement and methods of proof adopted by Euclid were unaltered, apart from the introduction here and there of certain simpler ways of phrasing sentences.

Euclid begins by making certain statements which he calls *definitions*, *postulates* and *common notions*. The definitions refer to the abstract material mentioned above, namely points, lines and planes; to figures such as squares, rectangles, triangles, etc., which can be constructed with lines; to other figures such as circles, and in the later books to solid figures such as cubes, pyramids, spheres, etc. The postulates refer to certain operations which he assumes to be allowable, or to certain geometrical statements which he cannot prove but considers to be evident without proof. *E.g.*, he postulates that a *straight line* can be drawn from any one point to any other; he also postulates that although an infinity of different lines can join two given points, *only one of these is straight* or, what comes to the same thing, two straight lines cannot enclose an area. The reader's attention is drawn to this. Everyone has intuitive, practical notions of straightness; tight threads, edges of rulers, sighting along marks, etc., are illustrations of these practical notions; but a straight line cannot

be defined in a strict theoretical sense. Any such definition is simply a verbal phrase involving words and ideas as undefinable as straightness itself. It is in these postulates of Euclid that we find those properties of straight lines which are necessary and sufficient for the proofs of subsequent propositions. Another postulate requires us to admit that a circle may be described with its centre at any given point, and its circumference at a given distance from that point. This implies the use of compasses, but it should be carefully noted that although in one of the earlier postulates Euclid assumes that we can join two points by a straight line, thus implying the use of a ruler, he *does not assume that the ruler is graduated by marks into equal divisions*. The reader may have heard the statement that although we can bisect any angle " by Euclid," we cannot trisect it, and may have thought that there was some mystery surrounding the denial of an operation which is so palpably possible, say with a protractor. But he is reminded that the impossibility is dependent on the conditions postulated by Euclid. With a graduated ruler the process is possible, in fact not at all difficult; but it cannot be achieved if we limit ourselves to the only instruments whose use is postulated by Euclid, that is to say, a pair of compasses and an *ungraduated* ruler.

There is another famous postulate about parallel straight lines, but we shall leave that for a moment and consider some of the statements which Euclid calls " common notions." In using this phrase Euclid was following the lead of Aristotle, who suggested the use of this term instead of " axiom." The word " axiom " (a statement worthy of belief), however, has persisted and is in common use in all the editions of Euclid now extant. To be sure, Aristotle was very precise in the meaning he attached to " axiom " ; according to him, it should only be used for statements of a general nature, not geometrical, which we assume to be true; when geometrical statements are made the correct name for them should be postulate, or definition, or common notion. Thus of the following two axioms or common notions of Euclid, only the latter would be a true axiom according to Aristotle. " Things which coincide when applied to one another are equal to one another." " The whole is greater than the part." The former statement he would have classed as a definition of geometric equality, or perhaps postulate. Here are some axioms :—" If two or more magnitudes are equal to the same magnitude they are equal to each other " and " If equal magnitudes are added to other equal magnitudes the sums are equal." There has been, however, in the past a certain amount of variation in the use of the words " postulate " and " axiom " ; thus the parallel postulate, to which we referred above and which will be discussed presently, is more frequently referred to as the axiom of parallelism.

The propositions of Book I. of the *Elements* fall into three groups. The first group deals with triangles, and intersecting straight lines and the angles between them; in these the concept of parallelism is not required. The second group introduces the idea of parallelism by means of the famous postulate referred to above. There is a good deal of misconception about this idea, and so we shall consider Euclid's treatment of it and some modern modifications, since they have a very important bearing on our ideas about the nature of the physical space in which we observe

all our phenomena of position and motion. Among the first group of propositions in Book I. there is one in which he proves that any two angles of a triangle make up less than two right angles. So if two straight lines in a given plane cross a third straight line at B and C and themselves intersect at A the angles marked I and II in the figure, when added together, are less than two right angles (Fig. 2).

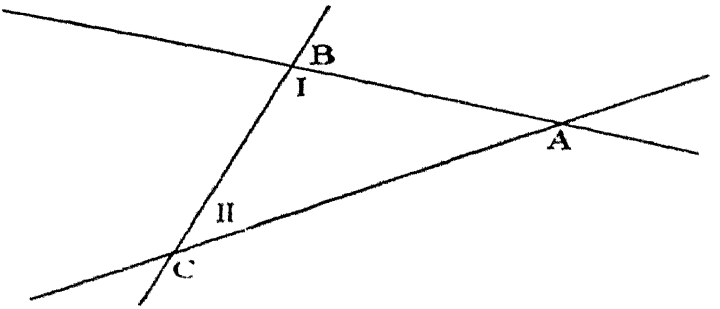


FIG. 2

Now suppose that the two lines cross the third line at B and C and make the two angles marked I and II together equal to two right angles (Fig. 3), then the lines do not meet, at all events on the right hand side. This can be

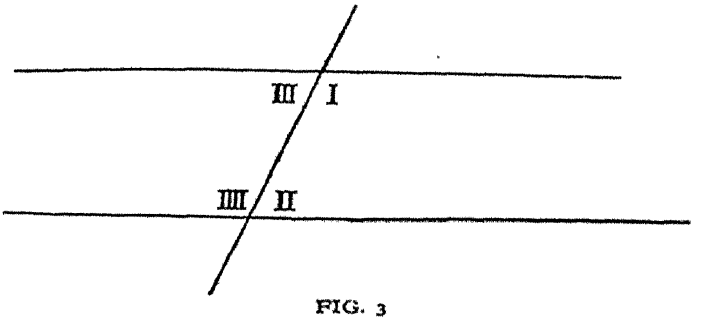


FIG. 3

proved by the so-called method of *reductio ad absurdum* (reduction to an absurd conclusion). For if the lines are assumed to meet on this side then by the earlier proposition I and II are together less than two right angles, which is a conclusion contradicting the hypothesis that they make up two right angles. Moreover, since it can be shown from earlier propositions that if I and II together make up two right angles, then the angles marked III and IV do likewise, it follows that the lines do not meet on the left-hand side.

Now comes the critical point. Consider a line marked XY in the figure and a point marked B (Fig. 4). We see that there is at all events *one* line

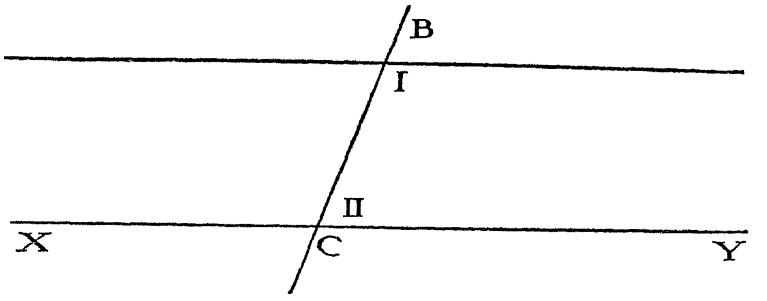


FIG. 4

through B (in the plane of B and XY of course) which does not meet XY anywhere, no matter how far extended in either direction. It is a line so drawn as to make the angles marked I and II together equal to two right angles, where BC is any line drawn to cut XY. The question is, Are there any other lines in the plane through B than this one which enjoy the same property ; *i.e.*, is there *only one* line through B in the plane which does not cut XY anywhere ? Now the reader must put all *intuitive* notions, based on hedgerows running side by side along very straight roads, or on railway lines or like objects, sternly out of his mind. The argument is not about *material objects* at all, but about creations of the mind abstracted from such material objects. In the nature of things, obviously, no one can prolong such objects to any length he likes ; such prolongation as can be effected is not even " in a plane," but on the curved surface of the earth.

Now on this question, Euclid postulated that there is only one parallel line through B, *i.e.*, only one line which does not intersect XY anywhere.

He phrased his postulate thus :—" If a straight line meeting two other straight lines makes the two interior angles on one side of it together less than two right angles, the two lines are *not* parallel ; but can be made by production to meet on the side on which are the two angles less than two right angles." This clearly denies the property of parallelism to any line through B, except the one which makes the sum of the two interior angles (the angles marked I and II in Fig. 4) equal to two right angles ; but the reader must carefully note that Euclid had to *postulate* it ; he could not *prove* it from his earlier axioms, postulates and theorems. Since his own time mathematicians in all ages have felt that the situation was not satisfactory and have made ingenious attempts to prove this famous postulate, but to no avail ; it has always appeared on rigorous investigation that the supposed proof concealed an assumption which was tantamount to Euclid's own postulate. An interesting feature of the situation is the fact, already stated, that at an earlier stage in his first book Euclid proves quite satisfactorily (and of course before he refers to parallel lines at all) that two angles of any triangle are together less than two right angles, from which it follows as an obvious result that if two lines are drawn to cut XY

and if they meet, then the two interior angles on that side are together less than two right angles. Thus Euclid's postulate is the " converse " proposition to this earlier theorem ; *i.e.*, a proposition in which what is stated as the conclusion in the other proposition is now stated as the hypothesis, and what is stated as hypothesis in the other proposition is now stated as the conclusion. The unsophisticated reader may naturally think that it should be all right and that if we can prove a proposition to be true, we have *ipso facto* proved the converse proposition to be true. But that is not so. After all, geometrical reasoning uses the propositions of Logic, as well as the special postulates and proved propositions of Geometry itself, and the Logicians can easily confute the facile assumption that a proposition and its converse must *of necessity* both be true. It may be so, but not *of necessity*. The converse proposition must be as rigorously investigated as the one to which it is converse. For example, " If an object is red, it is not black," is true ; but " If an object is not black, it is red," is not necessarily true.

In any case Euclid proceeds on the basis of the assumption that there is only one parallel line in the circumstances mentioned above. He then deduces a few simple properties of parallel lines and proves the well-known theorem that the sum of the three angles in any plane triangle is equal to two right angles. (We shall return to this theorem a little later.) There follow an important series of propositions about parallelograms, or four-sided figures, whose opposite sides are parallel. Thus it is proved that parallelograms on the same base, or on equal bases, and between the same parallel lines are equal in area. (In Fig. 5 the parallelogram

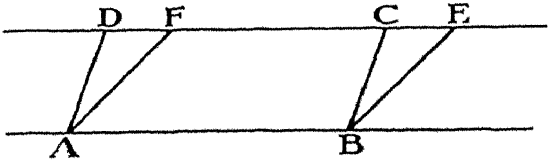


FIG. 5

ABCD is equal in area to the parallelogram ABEF. In Fig. 6 the parallelogram ABCD is equal in area to the parallelogram EFGH, if AB = EF)

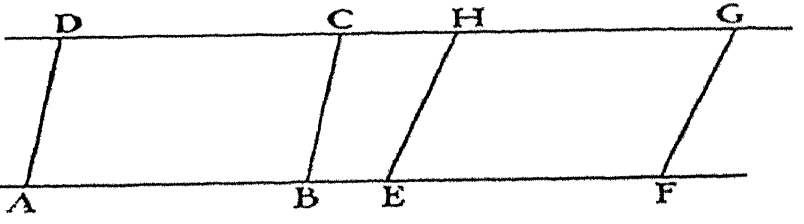


FIG. 6

It is very instructive to note that the treatment here is not *arithmetical* ; *i.e.*, we are not engaged in mensuration. Naturally the reader may wonder how we can treat of equality of areas without " multiplying a length by a

breadth " ; and if we multiply, surely arithmetical operations are involved. But if he reflects that an *ungraduated* ruler and compasses are the only tools supposed to be available, *measurement* of a length or breadth in any units is out of the question. The truth is that Euclid bases all statements of equality of area on notions of " congruency," or the perfect fitting of figures. Earlier in his first book he deals with triangles which have sides or angles equal in such number as to fit perfectly if superposed one on the other. Thus, looking at Fig. 5, it appears from the propositions proved about parallel lines that the triangle ADF is congruent to the triangle BCE ; the former would fit the latter perfectly if " slid over " on to the latter. So the area of the triangle ADF is equal to the area of the triangle BCE, and it is then obvious why one parallelogram has an area equal to the other, without any reference to measurement of length and breadth. A similar type of proof suffices for the other proposition. Note that the statement that AB and EF are equal in length only requires the use of compasses. To proceed, the remainder of the first book continues to deal with areas of figures, especially with the equality in area of triangles on the same base or on equal bases, and between the same parallel lines. Again it should be noted that mensuration and arithmetical operations on numbers are not involved, and that the whole validity of his procedure is based on the assumed truth of his parallel postulate. The first book closes with a beautiful proof of the famous theorem, discovered two centuries earlier by Pythagoras, concerning the squares on the sides of a right-angled triangle. This proof is probably Euclid's own.

The second book deals with some important propositions about the areas of rectangles. Each of these is an analogue of an important proposition in Algebra, and probably nothing will give the reader a clearer conception of the different spirit in these two abstract sciences, Geometry and Algebra, than a reference to one of these propositions.

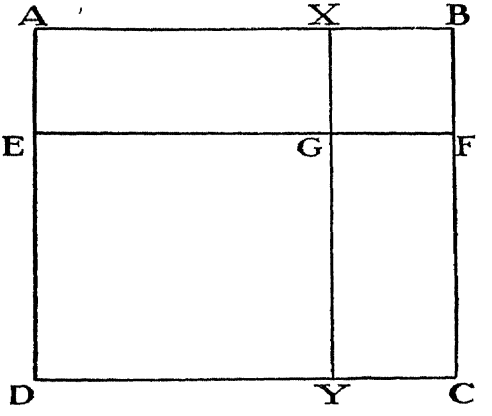


FIG. 7

Divide the line AB at any point X into two parts. Construct the square ABCD and the square XBFG. Complete the figure as shown, and it is

not difficult to prove in the *pure geometrical* manner that the square on AB is equal in area to the sum of the areas of the squares on AX and XB and of twice the area of the rectangle contained by sides equal to AX and XB. (The figure itself almost shows it intuitively without the formal steps in the argument.) The analogous proposition in Algebra is mentioned in the previous chapter, namely :

$$(a + b)^2 = a^2 + b^2 + 2ab$$

as is obvious, if we suppose AX and XB, measured by a *graduated* ruler, to be a inches and b inches respectively and the ordinary mensurational rules applied.

The third and fourth books deal with the general properties of circles and of certain rectilinear figures which can be inscribed in a circle, or circumscribed so that all the sides touch a circle. The fifth book is one of the most subtle chains of reasoning known to man, dealing with the connection between number and magnitude, and the conception of ratio, *but entirely independent of the arithmetical operation of division.* It is generally regarded as one of the most difficult books in the *Elements* to follow, and in most modern editions considerable changes are made in the presentation so as to render the study of it a simpler matter for the tyro. The modifications introduced by the famous nineteenth century mathematician, de Morgan, are frequently adopted. The propositions of the fifth book are really necessary in order to deal satisfactorily with the geometry of similar figures which bulks large in the sixth book.

In these six books Euclid deals with the geometry of figures in a plane. Later in the eleventh, twelfth and thirteenth books he deals with the geometry of solid figures in three-dimensional space, treating the properties of cubes, prisms, pyramids, spheres, etc., in an analogous manner to that used for the plane figures and, in particular, treating the volumes of figures, without appeal to mensurational rules based on measurements of length, height and breadth. The books between the sixth and the eleventh are largely concerned with propositions of an arithmetical and algebraic nature, and are usually omitted in the printing of modern editions of the *Elements*.

In order once more to emphasise the abstract nature of Geometry let us recur to the question of parallelism. From Euclid's postulate we can prove that the sum of three angles of a triangle is equal to two right angles. Now is this really true of any plane triangle having its three corners at points in our physical space ? No doubt careful drawing and measurement on a large sheet of paper reveals no discrepancy that cannot be put down to lack of precision in our instruments. Every land-surveyor, every constructor of an ordnance map, uses this proposition and finds no inconsistency in his results. The astronomer uses the rule to find the distances from the Earth of Sun, Moon and planets and a few of our nearest neighbours in the stellar galaxy. But, be it noted, *only a few*. The instruments he employs are sufficiently precise to carry him to about 1,000 billion miles with any degree of confidence in his results. The immense majority of the stars in the heavens are beyond that limit, and any guesses which he makes at their distances employ certain results of Physical Science, in addition to Geometry, as a guide. In short, the geometrical result *cannot be tested*

for immense triangles. Now in the nineteenth century certain mathematicians, Gauss in Germany, Lobatschewski in Russia, and Bolyai in Hungary, gave up the attempt to prove Euclid's postulate and proceeded to deduce what would be true if there were other lines through a given point than the one considered by Euclid which are parallel to a given line (lying in the same plane, of course). A perfectly consistent Geometry is the result, but one in which certain conclusions differing from those in Euclid's *Elements* are deduced. For example, in this Geometry the three angles of a triangle are together less than two right angles and the defect of the sum under two right angles grows larger and larger as the size of the triangle increases. There is also a system of Geometry due to a German mathematician Riemann, which postulates that to any given line there exists no parallel line at all, that any line in the same plane must meet it somewhere. This Geometry, as a matter of fact, begins altering Euclid's postulates at an earlier stage than the parallel postulate so as to invalidate his proposition that the sum of two angles of any triangle must be less than two right angles. With his system of postulates Riemann could deduce that the three angles of a triangle are together greater than two right angles of a triangle, the excess growing larger as the size of the triangle increases.

Turn for a moment to another proposition, the Pythagorean theorem concerning a right-angled triangle. The proof of this is also dependent on acceptance of Euclid's parallel postulate. Without this the theorem cannot be deduced. Now this theorem forms the basis of a whole series of mensurational formulæ which are in daily use for many practical purposes and lead to no inconsistency. To be sure the theorem is not true in its simple form for an extended triangle drawn on the Earth's surface, but of course such a triangle is not a *plane* triangle, and in any case the mathematician can deduce from the assumed truth of the theorem for a triangle in a plane, what modifications must be introduced into the surveyor's and the navigator's formulæ in order to render them theoretically valid and therefore presumably correct in practice. Yet there remains the question of interest to the scientist and philosopher, if not the practical man—is the theorem really valid in our physical space? As far as we can judge, for relatively small plane triangles it is practically true, but does the validity extend to enormous triangles? In fact the situation is similar to that in which the theorem about the three angles of a triangle finds itself on strict scrutiny, and again the conclusion is inevitable; if the parallel postulate of Euclid is abandoned and another postulate replaces it, the usual statement concerning a plane right-angled triangle will not be true and another result will take its place, of a rather more complicated nature, concerning whose exact form we cannot speak now.

Clearly the situation calls for the *experimenter*, physicist or astronomer, and it takes no elaborate argument to convince one that the problem is beset with many difficulties of a theoretical as well as a practical nature. True the practical man, satisfied with the well-tried accuracy of his conclusions on the surface of the Earth, and hearing that after all if there are any discrepancies to be found when the astronomer plumbs the depths of our physical space they are minute, may shrug his shoulders at the manner in which men of a different temperament worry themselves over

" trifles." But to the scientist and philosopher this is no trifle. Philosophy faces many problems concerning man's nature, but one of its oldest tasks and one which has engaged the minds of some of the greatest thinkers, is just the nature of our physical space and time, and in connection with that these geometrical results which we have been discussing play a vital part. To clear away any possible misconception on the part of the reader concerning the exact nature of the dilemma, we must warn him that there is no question of Euclid being " wrong." Our space may very well be " non-Euclidean " ; but that does not affect the question of the correctness and consistency of Euclid's propositions as logically and systematically developed by him *from his axioms and postulates*. As an exercise in reasoning on *abstract* entities such as points, lines and planes, etc., his Geometry is perfectly valid. Whether there exist in our physical space any *material* entities enjoying the properties deduced for points, lines, etc., is a matter for the experimental scientist ; it is of no interest to the mathematician as such. The fact that his deductions do in fact have a close relation with actual things is a fortunate circumstance and one which is of tremendous importance to man as accountant, builder, engineer, physicist or astronomer ; but it is all one to the " pure mathematician " whether his conclusions have a practical application or not.

Howbeit, although it digresses for a moment from our true purpose in this article (which is to analyse and describe the purely mathematical processes of the reasoning mind), the reader will possibly be interested to know how matters stand with regard to the scientific problem just indicated. The most serious difficulty of a practical nature facing the experimentalist is that all the bodies in our space whose observable geometrical relations are under investigation, are not at rest but in relative motion to one another. (After all, in the purely mathematical consideration of a geometrical problem the configuration of the points, lines, etc., in the figure remain unchanged.) This would not be so troublesome a feature if one perceived the bodies in the same places as they actually occupy at the moment of perception ; but this is not so. When we look at the Sun we see it to be where it was some eight minutes earlier, because it takes eight minutes for light to travel from Sun to Earth. Furthermore, because of the different distances from us, the lag of time between the location of a body in a place and the perception of that location varies from body to body. The problem has in very recent years been placed on an entirely new basis by the discovery that the behaviour of light does not copy in detail the motions of bodies or of waves in deformable media (views prevalent in the previous century or two). On the basis of this newly ascertained *experimental* fact, Einstein has laid down a certain broad principle concerning the nature of our scientific laws (it is known as the Principle of Relativity) and has, for the scientist at all events, simplified the position, although there is a very prevalent, but quite unjustifiable, idea to the contrary. This principle has led to certain conclusions concerning the " metrics " of our space, meaning by that the measurable relations connecting observable bodies, and these have been extended to include such great stretches of physical phenomena as are embraced in the terms " gravitation " and " electromagnetism." One of the most unexpected results, evoking the unbounded admiration of those trained to

follow the argument, is that, on considering quite dispassionately certain properties of that ultimate particle of matter which we call an " electron," we are almost forced to conclude that our physical space is *finite in size*. There is no paradox about this although, on hearing of such an idea for the first time, an unsophisticated man probably enquires, What is the nature of the " boundary " or " wall " which limits its size? But a moment's reflection shows us that there need be no boundary; the surface of the earth is finite in size yet there are no boundaries; we can, apart from physical difficulties of transport over mountains and polar wastes, go round it in multitudes of different paths. We naturally feel at the first blush that this analogy is not quite sound; we can *conceive* in a direct, intuitive way how the earth's surface may be finite and yet " unbounded,"[1] because we have *direct perception* of such things as oranges, balls, etc. No such direct intuition is available to us in the case of " finite but unbounded space." Yet the inference that it is so is quite as definitely based on observable experimental results as the conclusion about the earth's surface. Putting it quite definitely, if somewhat crudely, the physicist and astronomer believe, on what they regard as perfectly irrefutable evidence, that if a being could somehow ferry himself across space and survive for an enormous number of years, and always continue along what he *would believe to be a straight line*, he would in time arrive somewhere near his starting-place. (We often talk about going " in one direction " on the Earth; but of course the mariner steering " dead straight " on his shortest course from one place to another travels not along a straight line but along a " great circle " of the Earth's surface.) The physicist also makes a shot at what the length of his journey would be—ten thousand trillions (10^{22}) of kilometres!! The mind shrinks, appalled, at such a figure, yet it is not *infinite*.

If this be so, we have an answer at once to the question, Is Euclidean Geometry valid in our space?—and it is " *No!* " This is what is meant when one reads nowadays about " curved " space. The use of that phrase implies that the conclusions of Euclid's system of Geometry are not found to be true in our space. The agreement observed in our terrestrial measurements, or in regions not too far extended from the Earth, rests on the restricted nature of such observations, just as a small sheet of water on the Earth appears flat while the ocean is obviously curved.

Even before the advent of the Relativity Principle, there were certain considerations of a more speculative character which pointed to a similar conclusion. If one assumes our space to be infinite in extent, we must ask ourselves if it is in all its extent populated with galaxies of stars similar to those which we know to exist relatively near to us. Now the answer to such a question raises serious difficulties for the notion of infinite space. Suppose, for example, we admit that the stars are not " innumerable," *i.e.*, not really infinite in number, nor greater than some conceivable number. Then there is a finite number of them. We can conceive that they are distributed, in much the same way as the stars we know, in some finite portion of space—enormous no doubt, but still finite and

[1] There is a poetical use of the word " unbounded " which makes it practically synonymous with " infinite." That is not intended here; it is used with its true meaning—" having no boundaries."

therefore *as nothing* compared to infinite space. This state of affairs cannot last; in time, as can be readily shown from statistical considerations and the ordinary laws of motion, the stars will gradually spread themselves, becoming less and less densely distributed in space, until after the lapse of a time, enormous no doubt, but *finite*, any small group of stars like our solar system would find itself without a neighbouring star within sight. Now, philosophically, we have no less reason for postulating infinite time than we have for postulating infinite space, with the result that we find it difficult to account for the fact that we here and now obviously have very many neighbours in the heavens.

If, on the other hand, we agree to regard the stars as really infinite in number, and any part of space, however distant from us, as inhabited by galaxies like our own, we are in no better case. The laws of gravitation and light propagation, as discovered by the physicist, lead to the conclusion that at all times our heavens would be an intolerable blaze of light compared to which sunlight would be a feeble flicker, and the gravitational forces on us would be infinite in value and rend the earth into the tiniest fragments.

It is true that the full force of these conclusions could be evaded by *ad hoc* assumptions involving the existence of absorbing, partially opaque matter in space and small modifications in Newton's law of gravitation. But, as already indicated, Einstein's great principle, with its amazing result concerning a connection between the size of our Universe and the electrical theory of matter, has clinched the argument.[1]

It is time to return to our study of purely mathematical reasoning.

LIMITS: THE CALCULUS: PERIODICITY

Mathematics based on abstraction of number and form is admirably suited to the symbolic representation of a static world; but to take account of the flux of events a further element is needed. The discovery of this was a modern achievement, though the germ of the method may be found in the work of Archimedes, the famous Greek mathematician who lived in the third century B.C. The poverty of symbolic methods in his day, however, prevented its growth, and not until the development of algebraic symbolism in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries could the conception of "fluxions" be embodied in a specific notation, which is due in part to Newton and in part to Leibniz.

The most obvious example of change in our world is motion, or change of position. A body is now in a certain position, but it is moving; it has a certain speed, we say. To give the physically essential information about the body we must state its position and its velocity of movement. The former is a matter of geometry. What about the latter? Can we really say anything about its speed *at an assigned position*? On the face of it we can apparently only refer to speed *between two positions*. These two positions are separated by a measurable distance, over which the body travels in a measurable time. We divide the distance by the size of the time interval to obtain the speed; that is the meaning of "speed," and with

[1] A further discussion of the Theory of Relativity will be found in the Articles on *The Physical Nature of the Universe*, p. 99, and *Astronomy*, p. 120.

reference to one position only this operation is clearly impossible. So the phrase " speed at an assigned place " appears to be meaningless. As a matter of fact, the logical difficulty involved in such considerations so impressed certain Greek philosophers in ancient times that they devised several ingenious paradoxes meant to prove that motion is an illusion of our senses. (The interested reader can look up an encyclopædia on the philosopher Zeno of Elea for further information.) However, modern mathematics has completely swept aside these verbal quibbles.

In order to illustrate the way in which mathematics has extricated us from this awkward situation, let us consider a very simple type of motion. If one rolls a smooth ball down a groove on an inclined board, it can be demonstrated, by modern physical apparatus, that a simple law connects the distance and time. If the body travels, say, 3 inches in the first second of motion, it will travel 12 inches in the first two seconds, 27 inches in the first three seconds, after four seconds it will be 48 inches away from its starting-point, and so on. The essence of the law lies in the fact that 12 inches is four times 3 inches and 4 is the square of 2; 27 inches is nine times 3 inches and 9 is the square of 3; 48 inches is sixteen times 3 inches and 16 is the square of 4. One may tilt the board to different inclinations without varying the essential physical fact embodied in this " square law." Thus at a somewhat greater inclination the ball might roll 5 inches in the first second; it would then roll 20 inches in the first two seconds, 45 inches in the first three, and so on.

Naturally we cannot actually observe the ball at *any* instant; our moments of observation are limited in number and separated by discrete intervals of time, which are shorter no doubt if we devise ingenious timepieces, but cannot be indefinitely reduced in size. We now make a new kind of abstraction from the facts. We assume that what we have observed to be true for a limited group of positions and instants is true for *any* instant and its corresponding position. We invoke the " Principle of Continuity " in natural events, and embody our observations and the assumption in the phrase :—" the distance varies as the square of the time." We can, however, embody them much more succinctly in an algebraic formula. Represent the distance covered in one second from the start by a inches; then the distance covered by the ball in x seconds from the start is ax^2 inches. Note that x may be any number of seconds we like, integral or fractional. (Provided of course it is not so great that the ball has rolled off the board; but even then we can conceive a very long board to be at our disposal.) The speed between two instants can now be calculated by applying well-known algebraic results. Suppose it has taken x seconds to travel to a position which we refer to as the position P; it takes a larger number of seconds, say z, to travel to a position beyond P which we refer to as Q. Thus it takes $z - x$ seconds to travel from position P to position Q; the distance between P and Q we obtain by subtracting ax^2 from az^2, the result being $az^2 - ax^2$ or $a(z^2 - x^2)$ inches. To obtain the speed from P to Q, *i.e.*, speed on the average, we divide $a(z^2 - x^2)$ inches by $(z - x)$ seconds and this is written

$$\frac{a(z^2 - x^2)}{z - x} \text{ inches per second.}$$

Now what is the speed *at* the position P. Here we meet the difficulty referred to. The position of the body at P is perfectly definite ; it requires no reference to any other position of the body ; it is a question of " simple location," as the philosophers call it ; the body is there and nowhere else. But speed requires some reference to another position, apparently, or we seem to make nonsense of the business. We cannot talk about the speed from P to P ; if we do we must make z equal to x in the formula written down above and it becomes

$$\frac{a(x^2 - x^2)}{x - x} \text{ inches per sec.}$$

$$\text{which is } \frac{0}{0} \text{ inches per sec.}$$

a perfectly meaningless operation apparently. But there is one way of escape. No matter how near Q is to P, so long as they are actually different positions, z differs from x and the formula has a meaning and can be evaluated numerically, provided numbers are assigned to z and x. Is there a limiting value to the quotient in the process as z is reduced in value nearer and nearer to x ? Let us recall the simple factorisation we referred to in the section on Algebra :—

$$z^2 - x^2 = (z - x)(z + x).$$

So

$$\frac{a(z^2 - x^2)}{z - x} = \frac{a(z - x)(z + x)}{z - x}$$

and the right hand side is just $a(z + x)$ since $z - x$ in the denominator cancels the factor $z - x$ in the numerator. Now $a(z + x)$ *is not meaningless* when z is made equal to x ; its value is then $a(x + x)$ or $2ax$. This then is taken as the speed of the body at P, *viz.*, $2ax$ inches per second. The point is that as we think of a position Q nearer and nearer to P, the speed from P to Q is approaching to $2ax$ inches per second closer and closer as a limit, and this limiting value gives us our correct idea of speed at P.

But now the pure mathematician steps in and says :— " It is true that this process has been suggested to us by our need to deal scientifically with the physical world ; but after all this process can be applied to all sorts of functions of the variable x without any reference to material things at all. It has an interest of its own which is purely intellectual ; there are definite mathematical laws which it obeys by reason of the definition of the process and our own mental make-up." Thus we can apply the process equally well to x^3 as to x^2. Let us change a variable from a value indicated by x to a value indicated by z ; another variable, which is the cube of the first variable, changes in value from x^3 to z^3. The relative change in the second variable to that in the first is

$$\frac{z^3 - x^3}{z - x}.$$

This ratio has a meaning so long as z differs from x. As before it appears to have no meaning when z is equal to x, since it becomes $\frac{0}{0}$.

But again we can factorise the numerator and *one of the factors is* $z - x$.

The factors are $z - x$ and $z^2 + zx + x^2$, as the reader can easily justify. Hence :—

$$\frac{z^3 - x^3}{z - x} = \frac{(z - x)(z^2 + zx + x^2)}{(z - x)}$$

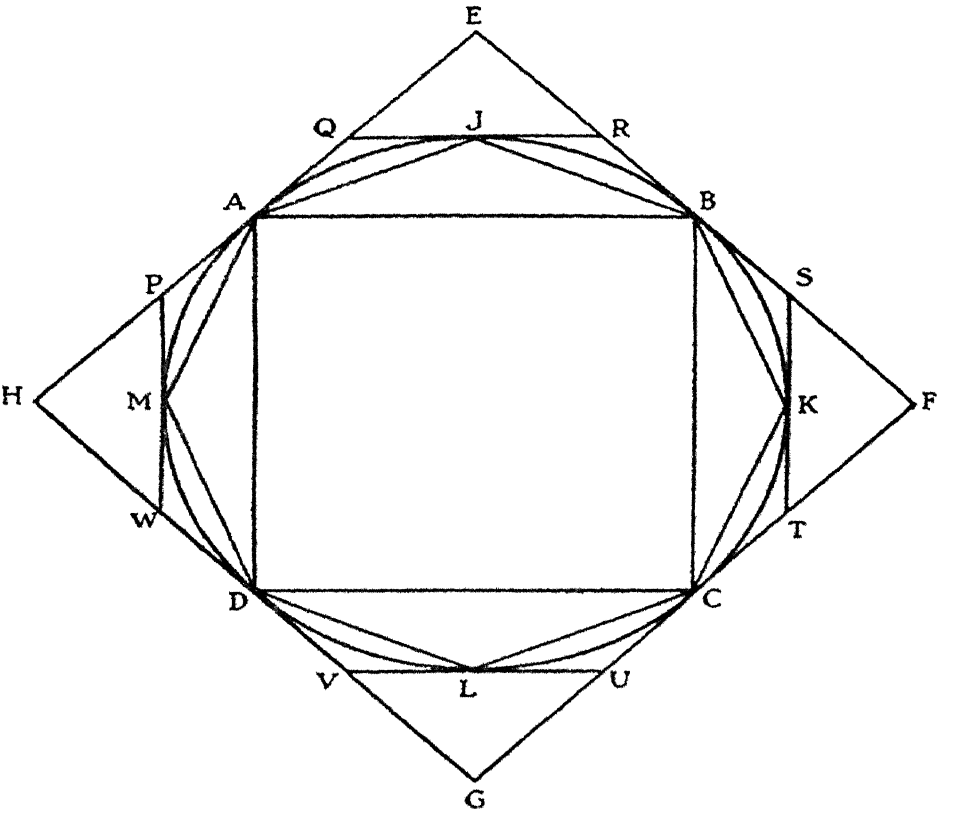
and this is just $z^2 + zx + x^2$.

As before just in the condition where no meaning can be attached to $(z^3 - x^3)/(z - x)$, the alternative expression $z^2 + zx + x^2$ has a perfectly precise meaning, *viz.*, $3x^2$; for on putting z equal to x we get $x^2 + xx + x^2$, *i.e.*, $3x^2$. In exactly the same way the mathematician will prove to you that this process will produce $4x^3$ from x^4, $5x^4$ from x^5, etc. ; in general nx^{n-1} from x^n. He gives the process a special name, " differentiation." He calls the result a " differential coefficient." Thus the " differential coefficient " of x^2 with respect to x is $2x$; of x^3 with respect to x, $3x^2$; of x^n with respect to x, nx^{n-1}.

As may be anticipated, the mathematician finds that this process of differentiation can be applied to the most complicated functions of a variable. He has invented a special notation and symbolism for it. A very wide literature on the " Differential Calculus " has come into being in the last three centuries, embracing extremely exhaustive and very subtle discussions on the validity of the process in special cases, and an amazing number of purely intellectual problems meant to test the skill and ingenuity of the learner. More than that, just as this calculus sprang from the needs of the physicist, so in its most highly developed form it has returned to him, giving him an amazing power in the mathematical treatment of his observed phenomena. Without it he would be helpless in the face of the ever changing conditions of our world ; he would be powerless to work out the quantitative aspect of these phenomena ; indeed he would be without the means to formulate his laws in their most general significance. We hear of the " equations of motion," the " equations of the electromagnetic field," the " equations of gravitation," the " equations of wave propagation " and so on. Now the reader should know that these are not equations of the simple type referred to in the section on Algebra, they are " differential equations," *i.e.*, equations connecting the differential coefficients of symbols representing various physical quantities with respect to variables on which they depend, such as time and " co-ordinates of position "—" co-ordinate " is the name given to any measure of length or angle which helps to define where a point is situated with reference to a standard point of reference or " origin."

Nor is this the only aspect of those processes in Mathematics which " work to a limit." We have seen in the section on Geometry how Euclid treated distance apart of two points without introducing a *graduated* ruler as part of his postulated appliances. He was not a " mensurator," but a geometer. Now how could we treat the length along a curved line between two points marked on it in a similar way ? The natural impulse is to seize a thread ; lay it as carefully as possible along the curve, lift it, stretch it out and place it so tightened beside a ruler. It is a familiar practical operation ; but that is mensuration, not geometry. The geometer

proceeds as follows. Taking a circle as the easiest curve for simple illustration, we can suppose that inside the circle we inscribe a square ABCD and outside it we circumscribe a square EFGH as in the figure below.



The length of the circumference obviously lies between the values of the perimeters of the two squares. Now increase the number of sides of the inscribed figure so as to obtain an inscribed octagon AJBKCLDM and a circumscribed octagon PQRSTUVW. The circumference lies between the perimeters of the two octagons, and the limits are nearer to one another. We can conceive of this process being carried on until the inscribed and circumscribed regular polygons have each an enormous number of sides, each side being extremely short. Always the circumference lies between the two perimeters, and as the difference between these two perimeters is clearly diminishing to an infinitesimal amount, we regard the length of the circumference as the common *limit* to which each perimeter approaches as near as we please as we increase the number of sides indefinitely. Of course, it must be realised that the measurement of the sides of such a polygon by a *graduated ruler* is not implied nor required. (That would just be as much mensuration as using a thread on the

actual curve.) Euclid, in his fourth book, has proved certain propositions about such inscribed and circumscribed polygons which, when assisted by similar propositions discovered by later geometers, enable us to compare the length of a side of such a regular polygon with the length of the radius without resort to measurement of either. The circumference is, as the mathematician says, the " integral " of the infinitesimal lengths for the polygon with the unlimited number of sides, and the process he refers to as " integration." Similar processes can be applied to all other curves, and indeed to problems in a multitude of situations of quite a different character from this example, and the works describing methods and results are called text-books of the " Integral Calculus." With reference to the example shown, the reader should know that when he reads that the value of π (the famous Greek symbol which stands for the ratio of circumference to diameter) has been worked out to so many places of decimals, he must not imagine that it has been done by mensuration. A thread method as described above would barely give the first three places correctly. Even to obtain 3·14159 the integration process as described above or in some alternative way has to be employed, and it is only a matter of patience to carry the decimal much further.

Another illustration of the use of the notion of a limit is contained in the following statement. I write down the following fractions : $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{8}$, $\frac{1}{16}$, $\frac{1}{32}$ and so on, each fraction having a denominator twice as large as its predecessor in the series ; now I add them travelling on indefinitely, that is I " sum the series "

$$\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{32} + \ldots .$$

No matter how far I travel along I never reach a number as great as 1 for the result of the addition. True, I can approach as near to unity as I like by taking a sufficiently great number of " terms." As the mathematician says, the limit of the sum of the series is unity when it is " summed to infinity." Now it is perhaps natural to suppose that this series behaves like this, is " convergent " (to employ the usual phrase) simply because the successive terms are getting smaller and smaller. This is a complete misapprehension. If I write down the series

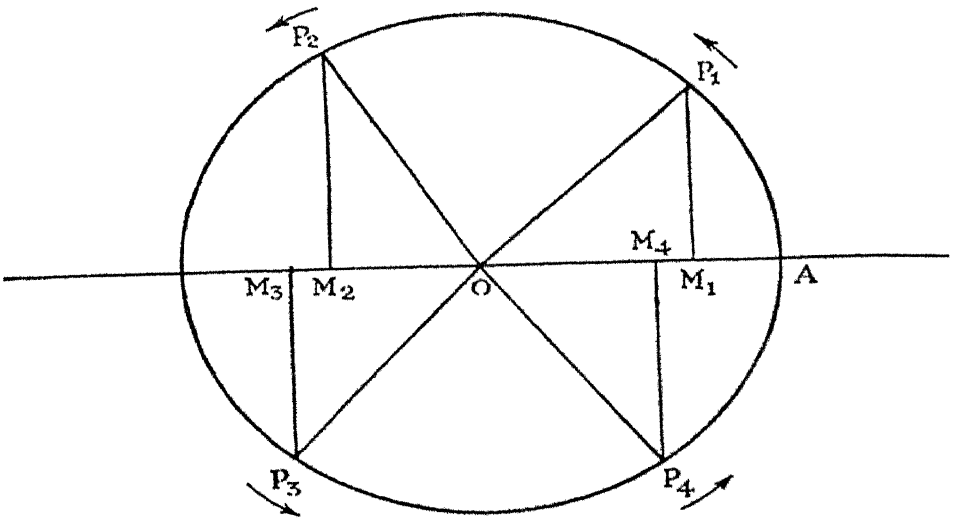
$$\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{5} + \frac{1}{6} + \ldots$$

it enjoys no such property of " convergency " ; it is " divergent " ; *i.e.*, there is no limit to the value of its sum if one embraces a large enough group of terms. Write down any number you please, no matter how large, and the sum can be made to surpass that number by adding up a sufficiently great number of terms. That may appear an astonishing statement to those uninitiated in these matters, but the proof of its truth is unassailable and may be found in any text-book of Algebra which has a chapter on " Convergency and Divergency of Series." Yet this series shows a progressive decrease in the values of the successive terms, just like the previous one. Obviously, then, the test for the convergency of a series is more delicate than that suggested above as plausible. Indeed the study of the tests for convergency and the limiting sums of series that are convergent form a branch of mathematical analysis which is not only invaluable in the study of the properties of functions (a purely mathematical

interest), but is also of immense practical value to those who wish to apply mathematical analysis to scientific and engineering problems. As is always the case, every new branch of mathematical investigation takes its rise in some practical need of man, then develops on its own account, as it were, by reason of his purely intellectual interests, and in so doing becomes a still more powerful aid to him in his control over the forces of the world and in his investigation into their nature and origin.

As one last illustration of this statement, let us recall the fact that many phenomena of nature show a recurrence of certain features as time goes on; they are periodic, as we say. Examples such as the recurrence of light and darkness, of the seasons; the rise and fall of the sea level in tidal seas and estuaries; the daily and seasonal fluctuations of temperature will leap to the mind of the reader. Many mechanical occurrences such as the swing of a clock pendulum, the oscillation up and down of a body at the end of a spring, the motion of water as ripples or waves pass across its surface exhibit the same features.

Consider for a moment the behaviour of a point which travels round the circumference of a circle at a uniform rate.



Starting at the point A, let it move round and let us denote by x the distance along the arc which it has actually travelled from the start to any position. We are for convenience considering the circle to have as its radius the unit length, so that when the line OP has turned round a right angle, $x = \pi/2$ (π is ratio of circumference to diameter), when OP has turned two right angles $x = \pi$, and so on; in fact x goes on steadily increasing; it is a variable which increases by the amount 2π in every complete journey of P round the circle. Now drop a perpendicular PM on the line OA. The lengths of PM and OM vary as x varies. They also are variables as well as x, but depending on the value of x, " dependent

variables " as they are called. They are in fact functions of x; the mathematicians call them " circular functions " of x. Actually they have long been in use as important measures of the angle POA, the " sine " and " cosine " of the angle as they are named. They originated in the needs of the surveyor and the navigator, and they are familiar to every navigating officer. But from the mathematician's point of view they are the " sine function of x," and the " cosine function of x," written sin x and cos x for convenience. Now the reader will observe at once that they are periodic functions of x, repeating their value when x increases by 2π. As x increases from 0 to $\pi/2$, the value of sin x is given by a length such as P_1M_1 at the appropriate position of P. It begins with the value zero when x is zero, and reaches the value unity when x is $\pi/2$. As x increases from $\pi/2$ to π, sin x (indicated by P_2M_2) decreases from 1 to 0. As x increases from π to $3/2$, sin x changes in value from 0 to -1, having negative values for all intermediate values of x. (Observe that M_3P_3 is directed oppositely to M_2P_2 or M_1P_1.) As x increases from $3\pi/2$ to 2π, sin x alters from -1 to 0. Now as x increases from 2π to $5\pi/2$, sin x proceeds to pass through the same series of values as it did when x lay between 0 and $\pi/2$; and so on. Similar conclusions can obviously be drawn for cos x. In fact if we give x any particular value, say 3,

$$\sin 3 = \sin (3 + 2\pi) = \sin (3 + 4\pi) = \sin (3 + 6\pi) \text{ etc.}$$

and $$\cos 3 = \cos (3 + 2\pi) = \cos (3 + 4\pi) = \cos (3 + 6\pi) \text{ etc.},$$

and any such statement is true for any other numerical value of x that may be chosen.

Actually then we have in these functions the most simple example of a wide range of functions of x, which enjoy this property of periodicity, or recurrence of value, as x steadily increases in value. To relate this fact to a statement concerning series made a few pages back, it is interesting to know that the mathematician can prove that the series

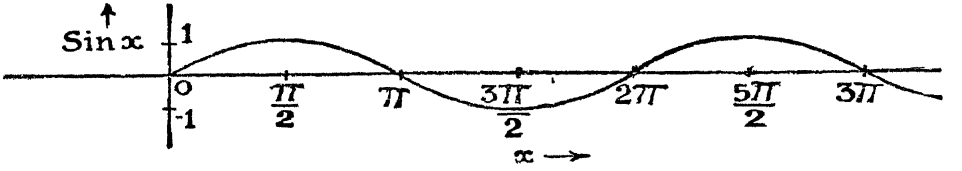
$$x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \frac{x^9}{9!} - \frac{x^{11}}{11!} + \ldots \text{ to infinity}$$

is convergent and its limit is sin x. (Note that in putting the exclamation mark after the numbers in the denominator, we are indicating not the number but the " factorial of the number " as it is called. That is $2! = 1 \times 2$, $3! = 1 \times 2 \times 3$, $4! = 1 \times 2 \times 3 \times 4$, and so on.) The series

$$1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \frac{x^8}{8!} - \frac{x^{10}}{10!} + \ldots \text{ to infinity}$$

is also convergent and its limit is cos x.

If we make a graph of the function sin x in the usual way, we reproduce the well-known " wave form."



In conclusion, these functions and others like them are the symbolic material which the mathematicians use when they wish to represent, in the only way possible, the quantitative aspects of the broad periodic phenomena of nature and of the experiments of the physicists made to discover the nature of those occurrences within the atom which give rise to the emission of light and which are believed to be periodic, or the nature of the propagation of light, or the nature of molecular quiverings in bodies which are believed to be the essence of the thermal properties of matter.

And so we end as we began. The material needs of man have, in the process of their satisfaction, raised for him purely intellectual problems. Driven by some inner urge to solve these, with no ulterior motive of any sort, he finds to his ever increasing astonishment that in their solution he discovers weapons which multiply his power over his environment a hundredfold. Intellectual pursuit as it is, Mathematics is of the very essence of the human spirit, and the literature in which it is enshrined ought to be one of man's proudest possessions.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

The following books are recommended for the initiation of beginners into the elements of mathematical subjects :

H. S. HALL and F. H. STEVENS : *An Elementary Course of Mathematics* (London. 1922)

I. L. MILLER : *Introduction to Mathematics* (New York. 1930)

C. V. DURELL and R. C. FAWDRY : *Arithmetic* (London. 1930)

C. I. PALMER : *Arithmetic with Applications* ; 3rd edn. (New York and London. 1930)

C. V. DURELL and OTHERS : *Elementary Algebra with Introduction* (London. 1925)

G. ST. L. CARSON and D. E. SMITH : *Elements of Algebra* (New York and London. 1915)

C. V. DURELL : *Elementary Geometry* (London. 1919)

G. ST. L. CARSON and D. E. SMITH : *Plane Geometry* (London and New York. 1915)

C. V. DURELL and R. M. WRIGHT : *Elementary Trigonometry* (London. 1930)

S. P. THOMPSON : *Calculus Made Easy* ; 2nd edn. (London. 1919)

A few books of a more advanced character may be mentioned :

C. SMITH : *A Treatise on Algebra* ; 5th edn. (London. 1920)

G. CHRYSTAL : *Algebra* ; 2nd edn., 2 vols. (London. 1922)

R. C. J. NIXON : *Euclid Revised* ; 3rd edn. (Oxford. 1915)

SIR T. L. HEATH has translated, with a very complete introduction and commentary, the thirteen books of Euclid's *Elements*. The book is in three volumes, published in 1926 by the Cambridge University Press.

J. PERRY : *Calculus for Engineers* ; 13th impression. (London. 1920)

The history of mathematics may be read in the following books :

W. W. R. BALL : *A Short Account of the History of Mathematics* ; 6th edn. (London. 1915)

J. W. N. SULLIVAN : *The History of Mathematics in Europe* (Oxford. 1925)

A fuller history is given in :

D. E. SMITH : *History of Mathematics* ; 2 vols. (New York and London.)

Consult also :

SIR T. HEATH : *A History of Greek Mathematics* ; 2 vols. (Oxford. 1921)

The following three books deal with the philosophy of mathematics rather than with training in its operations :

S. BRODETSKY : *The Meaning of Mathematics* (London. 1929) [Benn's Sixpenny Library]

A. N. WHITEHEAD : *An Introduction to Mathematics* (London and New York. 1924) [Home University Library]

A. R. FORSYTH : *Mathematics in Life and Thought* (University of Wales Press. 1929)

BIOLOGY AND HUMAN PROGRESS

By

J. ARTHUR THOMSON

SYNOPSIS

What Biology means — Its central position among the sciences — Sub-divisions of Biology, *e.g.* Botany and Zoology — Sub-sciences of Biology, namely Morphology, Taxonomy, Physiology, Ecology, Embryology and Palæontology, Ontogeny and Phylogeny — An Outline Survey of the Great Events in Biology — The idea of Science as an instrument in man's service — Theoretical Discovery and Practical Invention — The Appeal to Biology as a science is very modern — Biology and Human Life : its Contributions : (i) Alleviation of the struggle for existence and increase of food and elementary amenities ; (ii) conquest of disease and increase of positive health ; (iii) elucidation and solution of great practical problems, *e.g.* of sex ; (iv) as a means of culture ; (v) as a foundation for eugenics ; (vi) as of ethical suggestion and guidance ; (vii) in forming part of the materials to be appreciated in a synoptic or philosophical view — Biology and Philosophy — The Wonder of Life, *e.g.* (1) the abundance of power, (2) the multitudinousness and diversity of organisms, (3) the intricacy of organic architecture, (4) the adaptiveness of living creatures, (5) positive and exuberant healthfulness, (6) the increasing dominance of mind, and (7) the fact of Evolution — Descriptive Naturalism — Vitalism — Psycho-Biology — Organic Evolution and the operative factors — As regards Variations — As regards Heredity — Struggle and Selection — Isolation — Evolution going on.

BIOLOGY AND HUMAN PROGRESS

The term Biology is used in three or four different ways. (1) It may mean the generalised science of the nature, continuance and evolution of organisms, and it is in this sense that it is for the most part used in this article, just as in Spencer's classic *Principles of Biology*. (2) But it is often used as a collective term for all the Life Sciences, which include Botany, Bacteriology, Zoology, Protozoology and so forth, and also for the biological sub-sciences of Anatomy, Physiology, Embryology, Genetics and the like. Thus in one great University all the sciences or sub-sciences that we have mentioned are under one roof—the Biological Institute or the Hall of the Life Sciences.

(3) An English book entitled *The Biology of Spiders* or *The Biology of Flowering Plants* would contain a discussion of the group in question in order to illustrate in this particular field the general principles of Biology. (4) Unfortunately, however, a German book entitled *Die Biologie der Spinnen* (The Biology of Spiders) would be entirely devoted to Ecology, that is to say, the study of inter-relations and habits, adaptations to seasons and surroundings, the intimate life of the pair, the family and so on—in short, the old-fashioned Natural History. This fourth usage is unfortunate and should not be allowed to impose itself. The first two usages are necessary and convenient.

Biology is central among the concrete sciences, with Chemistry and Physics (hardly separable now) beneath it and fundamental to it; with Psychology and Sociology above it and fundamentally based on it. Thus we have the convenient Spencerian scheme :—

SOCIOLOGY	Societies and their Life
PSYCHOLOGY	The Inner or Subjective Life
BIOLOGY	Living Organisms
PHYSICS	Energy and its Transformations
CHEMISTRY	Matter and its Changes

Yet in some ways it seems clearer to recognise only three great Orders of Facts :—

1. The *Cosmosphere* of non-living things and forces, from dewdrops to stars, from electricity to gravitation.
2. The *Biosphere* of living organisms, both plants and animals; and
3. The *Sociosphere*, consisting of human societary forms acting as units, and with a dominant social heritage, enregistered in institutions, literature, art, traditions, and all sorts of permanent products.

This threefold classification has certain advantages; *e.g.*, that Chemistry and Physics are no longer readily separable, for Matter has been analysed into Energy; and similarly that Biology and Psychology (regarded as the science of behaviour) are inextricably intertwined. Thus we may think of three circles one within the other :—

(1) The domain of non-living things and forces (Cosmosphere).
(2) The realm of organisms (Biosphere); and innermost
(3) The kingdom of man (Sociosphere).

The inclusion of one circle within the other will suggest the useful idea that there is a chemistry and physics of the living body, just as there is a biology and psychology of societary changes. When beavers make a canal, the biosphere is taking part of the cosmosphere into its realm; when man irrigates a country like Egypt or India, he is doing the same. When microbes cause a plague, the biosphere is overwhelming part of the sociosphere; yet when man domesticates and cultivates he is taking part of the biosphere into his kingdom.

SUB-DIVISIONS OF BIOLOGY

It is a matter of convenience how many Biological Sciences we recognise. Everyone admits Botany for plants and Zoology for animals, but as specialisation of study increases, it becomes plain that Bacteria are very different from all other living creatures, and thus Bacteriology arises; whereupon the specialists on unicellular animals insist also on Protozoology; and Protistology is further suggested as a title for the study of those minute organisms which are not very definitely plants, or animals, or bacteria. Then each class asserts its claims, and Entomology, Ichthyology, Ornithology and so forth get a footing on the list. And so for the science of special groups of plants, such as mycology for the science of fungi. But here there is no confusion, such as begins to show itself when highly specialised lines of inquiry demand rank as particular sciences; *e.g.*, parasitology for the study of parasitism, conchology for the study of shells, and oology for the study of eggs!

The following scheme should make the matter clear :—

BIOLOGICAL SCIENCES
- BOTANY
  - BACTERIOLOGY
  - MYCOLOGY
  - and other sub-sciences
- ZOOLOGY
  - PROTOZOOLOGY
  - GENERAL ZOOLOGY
    - ENTOMOLOGY
    - ORNITHOLOGY, etc., etc.
  - ZOOLOGICAL ANTHROPOLOGY

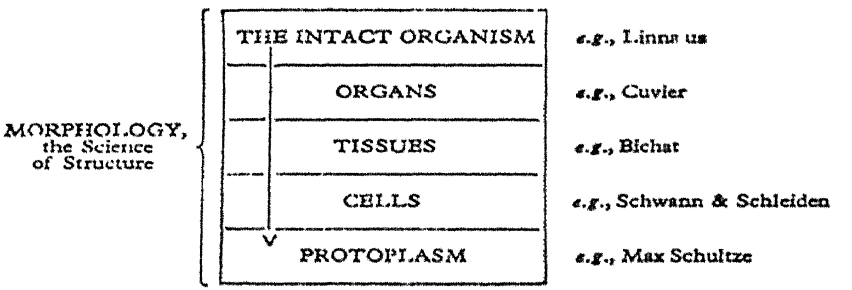
There is, of course, room for reasonable difference of opinion in regard to details. Thus there is something to be said for removing Bacteriology from within the rubric of Botany. Or again, while much of anthropology is definitely sociological, the study of man's structure, functions, development and pedigree may be conveniently, and without prejudice, retained

under Zoology. It comes to this : that under the collective title Biology (=Life Sciences) a variable number of sciences may be included.

In a different group, however, are the so-called Applied Sciences, such as Agriculture, Veterinary Science, Fisheries, Genetics, Hygiene, and much of Medicine, where we have to do with the focussing of a pure science, or of several pure sciences (Biology included), on a particular group of practical problems. These applications of science have meant much to human progress and also to the advancement of pure science itself. Practical invention often springs from theoretical discovery, and reacts on its origin.

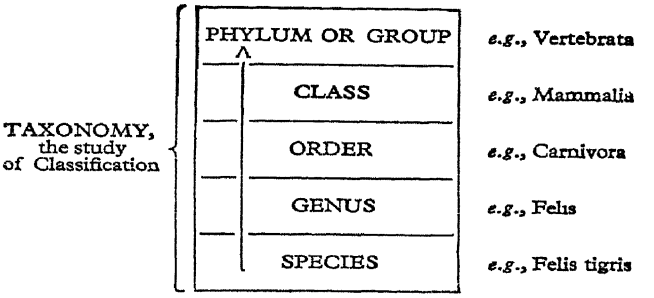
SUB-SCIENCES OF BIOLOGY

There are four great questions that Biology is always asking, and the answers to *each* of these four give rise to two sub-sciences, according as the scrutiny is confined to the individual organism or to the race. The first question is : *What is this?* as a whole and in its parts, to the naked eye or under the microscope. This is the study of structure, the statical aspects of the organism—in a word, MORPHOLOGY. It includes anatomy by means of forceps and scalpel, and histology by means of microscopic sections and other technique. If we begin at what may be called the biological renaissance, with the anatomist Vesalius (1514–1564), " the emancipator of biology from the tradition of the ancients," and with Harvey (1578–1657), the demonstrator of the circulation of the blood, we may sum up the subsequent analysis of structure as a more and more penetrating analysis of the organism into its organs, its tissues, its cells, and its protoplasm. We follow our teacher and colleague Patrick Geddes in this scheme, which suggests both the historical and the logical sequence :—

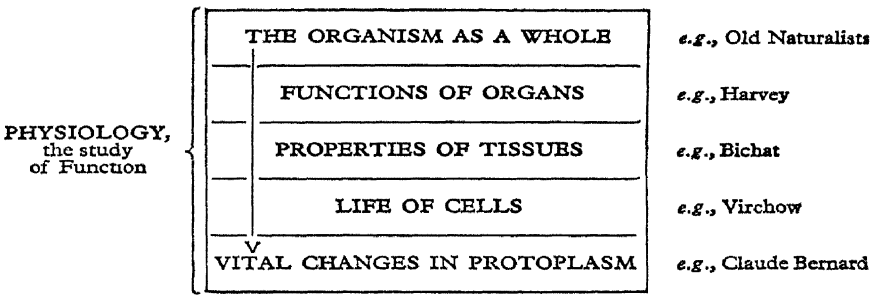


But when we pass from the individual organism to the group or race, we begin the science of orderly arrangement or classification—TAXONOMY, which is based on the study of structure, but rises beyond it. As everyone knows, the tigers form the *species Felis tigris* in the *genus* Felis, which also includes lions and leopards, cats and jaguars. But the genus Felis is not distantly related to the genus of cheetahs (Cynælurus) and together they

form the *family* Felidæ. But along with the cats must be ranked the wolves and foxes, the bears and otters, forming the *order* Carnivora. This again is within the *class* of Mammalia in the Group or *Phylum* of Backboned Animals or Vertebrata. So the scheme of classification stands :—

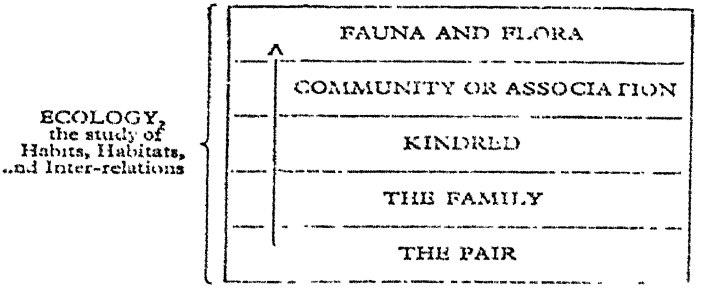


But the second great biological question is : *How does this organism work ?* How does it continue in being, what are its activities, its dynamical aspects ; and the answer to this question is the sub-science of PHYSIOLOGY. And just as with Morphology, so with Physiology, the history has been a gradually more penetrating analysis, from the intact organism, with its creeping, running, swimming, flying and so forth, to the functions of the various organs, such as the beating heart and the filtering kidneys. Thence to the properties of tissues, *e.g.*, the irritability of nerves and the contractility of muscles. But this leads to the everyday life of the component cells that build up tissues in most living beings. Whence there is but another step to the chemical and physical changes and their regulation within the protoplasm which Huxley called " the physical basis of life." So again the same logical and factual scheme appears :—

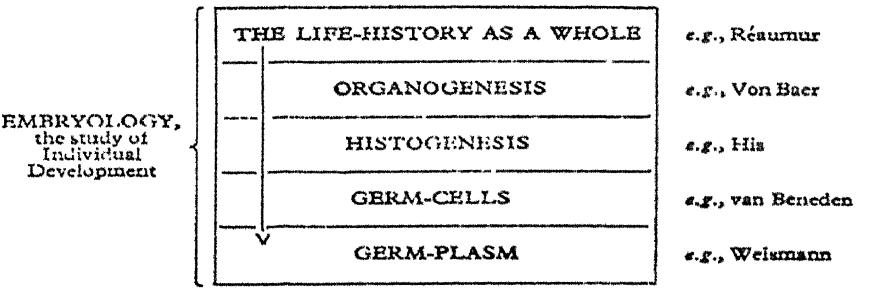


But there is a " higher physiology," which emerges when we envisage organisms, especially animals, in the plural, as members of a group or race, an association or community. This is the old-fashioned Natural History, which is becoming the precise sub-science of ECOLOGY, the study of habits and habitats, of inter-relations and linkages, at the various levels

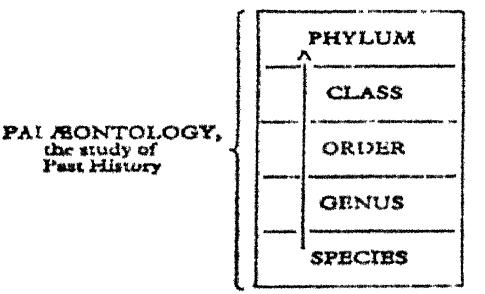
of pair, family, kindred, community, fauna—all considered from the physiological point of view. Thus the scheme stands :—



The third biological question is : *Whence ?* In what form did this organism begin, and through what stages did it come to be as it is ? When this question is answered for the individual, the result is the sub-science of EMBRYOLOGY—the science of development or individual Becoming. And here again there must be a sequence of steps—from the more superficial to the deeper aspects :—

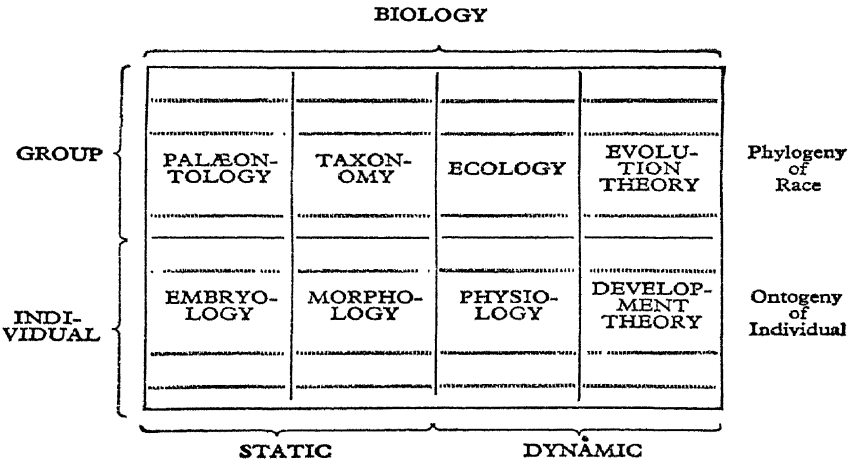


But the same question *Whence ?* may be asked for the group or race to which the organism belongs ; and the answer, dug out of the fossil-bearing rocks, is the sub-science of PALÆONTOLOGY, the study of pedigrees or racial Becoming. So the scheme reappears :—



The fourth biological question is the most difficult : *How have the forms and functions of life come to be as they are?* The question " Whence ? " is answered for the individual by Embryology and for the race by Palæontology—not that any answer is within sight of completeness, but the new question is into the " How " of the " Thence," a question into causes, into the factors operative in the development of the individual (Ontogeny) and in the evolution of the race (Phylogeny). This is what Huxley called ÆTIOLOGY, with its two sub-sciences of Evolution-Theory and Physiological Embryology or Development-Theory.

This mapping-out of Biology may seem to the newcomer very academic, but it is essential to an understanding of the aims and methods of the science, and it gives a background against which particular advances can be seen in perspective. If we lift up the rectangles and piece them together we get Geddes's map of Biology (slightly modified) in which we see more and more the longer we study it.



GREAT EVENTS IN BIOLOGY

(*A slow reading of this historical section will reward the student, but it may be postponed to the end of the Article.*)

The foundation-stones of Biology were laid by Aristotle (384–322 B.C.), a great initiator, anatomist and embryologist, as well as naturalist-observer. But centuries passed before he found an outstanding successor —namely, Galen (A.D. 131–201)—who returned to actual dissection and initiated experimental physiology. Then came the ages of preoccupation and tradition, and (apart from a few irrepressible observers) it was not till the sixteenth century that the fetters were broken. The Belgian anatomist, Vesalius (1514–1564), insisted effectively on an independent scrutiny of facts, and an even greater initiator of later date was William Harvey (1578–1657), who demonstrated what some precursors had hinted at—the circulation of the blood. This was a great discovery in itself, but it was

also epoch-making as the first proof that some activities of the living body may be in some measure described in terms of mechanics. For Harvey showed how it was that the blood was forced to go round the body. Harvey was still a believer in the old theory of spontaneous generation (that living creatures may arise from non-living matter), but he had a remarkable prevision of the fact that "all animals are in some sort produced from eggs," and of the fundamental idea that in the apparently simple germ from which an animal, such as a chick, is developed, "no part of the future organism exists *de facto*, but all parts inhere *in potentia*." Thus he contradicted the long-lived notion that a preformed miniature of the future animal lay within the germ-cell, only requiring to be unfolded.

Among the early foundation-layers we are inclined to include the Italian, Redi (1626–1698), for the clear-cut experiments by which he disproved alleged cases of spontaneous generation—a tenacious heresy to which the convincing experiments of Pasteur and Tyndall hardly sufficed to give a death-blow. Also fundamental was the work of the early microscopists—some would trace the compound microscope back to Galileo about 1610—for besides disclosing a new world of minutiose life and a new intricacy everywhere, they showed how the invisible illumined what had previously been obscure. Thus, while Harvey proved the circulation of the blood, he did not know of the invisibly delicate capillaries which connect the ends of the arteries with the beginnings of the veins, and make the whole *a closed system* of vessels. These capillaries were demonstrated in the frog's lung by Malpighi (1628–1694), born in the year of the publication of Harvey's *De Motu Cordis et Sanguinis*. Similarly, the everyday life of insects was not intelligible until some of the early microscopists, like Swammerdam (1637–1680), showed how the respiratory tubes or tracheæ divide into microscopically minute branches which carry air to every recess of the intricate body. Thus the invisible makes the visible intelligible. Great honour is also due to Leeuwenhoek (1632–1723), an investigator of splendid achievement, who discovered not merely Infusorians but Bacteria and spermatozoa.

At this stage we must recall, from the preceding section, the useful general idea that the history of Biology shows a more and more penetrating analysis, from organisms to organs, from organs to tissues, from tissues to cells, from cells to protoplasm. With this as general clue, we shall now very briefly recount some of the events that seem to us most momentous, always admitting that in this matter there is room for considerable difference of opinion.

Linnæus (1707–1778), often called "the Father of Botany," laid the foundations of Classification (Taxonomy) and struck a new note in including Plants and Animals under the common title "Organisata." What is now a commonplace was a great discovery in its day, that Plants and Animals are equally alive, though on very different lines.

Cuvier (1769–1832) laid the foundations of Comparative Anatomy, and expounded the idea of the correlation of organs in the body, showing, for instance, that all mammals with hollow horns have cloven hoofs. He also began to do justice to fossils as relics of extinct types.

Goethe, an early evolutionist, and thus siding against the conservative

Cuvier and with Geoffroy Saint-Hilaire and Lamarck, invented the term "morphology," and illustrated with vivid clearness the concept of homology or deep-seated resemblance in structure and development. He was one of the first to discern the real nature of the flower, which he recognised as four whorls of much transformed leaves. He had a vivid interpretative insight into the unity of plan underlying great series of organic structures.

Lavoisier (1743–1794), the main founder of modern chemistry, is ever memorable in the history of Biology for his recognition of the oxidation-process that all living involves. He saw that the burning candle and the panting mouse were both illustrating combustion.

After Stephen Hales (1677–1761) initiated vegetable physiology and Priestley (1733–1804) discovered, or re-discovered, oxygen, and after hardly less important steps taken by Ingenhousz (1730–1799) and De Saussure (1767–1845), there began to be some understanding, still incomplete, of the process of photosynthesis—the most important vital process in the world—by which green plants use part of the energy of sunshine to build up nutritive carbon-compounds from carbon dioxide and water.

Liebig (1803–1873) was pre-eminent in demonstrating the circulation of matter, a fact of the deepest importance in Biology. He showed in a luminous way how the elements, *e.g.* carbon, nitrogen, sulphur, iron, pass from one chemical linkage to another in endless cycles.

In 1838–1839 Schwann and Schleiden formulated the Cell-Theory, Goodsir and Virchow being contemporary discoverers, and Lamarck a notable anticipator. The Cell-Theory includes three propositions: (1) all organisms have a cellular structure, being either single-celled (the Protozoa or simplest animals and the Protophytes or simplest plants) or multi-cellular (the Metazoa and the Metaphytes); (2) every multi-cellular organism, reproduced in the ordinary way, begins as a fertilised egg-cell, which develops into an embryo and young creature by continued division and differentiation of cells; (3) the life of the multi-cellular organism is the regulated and unified sum of the lives of the component cells. This Cell-Doctrine, as it should be called, is one of the foundation-stones of Biology.

The Russo-German investigator, Karl Ernst von Baer (1792–1876), was the founder of Comparative Embryology, and one of the first to discern that individual development (Ontogeny) is in some measure a recapitulation of racial evolution (Phylogeny). Development, he said, proceeds from the generalised to the more specialised; the developing heart or brain of a mammal goes through stages which are permanent in less highly evolved backboned animals.

A very important step associated with the names of Dujardin, Von Mohl, Max Schultze and Cohn, about the middle of the nineteenth century, was the extension of scrutiny beyond the cell to its contents of living matter or protoplasm. It is difficult for us to realise that it was only about that time that biologists discerned that all organisms have protoplasm in common, specific though it is for each particular type. All living creatures are built up of similar material, and yet it has an individuality for each definite kind.

Another milestone was Wöhler's building up or chemical synthesis of

urea in 1828, urea being the very characteristic waste-product in the urine of mammals. This was the breaking down of the blockading wall between what goes on in non-living Nature and what goes on in the living body. It was also the initial step in that remarkable series of syntheses by which the chemist—almost creative—has artifically built up not only sugars and alcohols, but amino-acids which have been called the building-stones of life, besides such precious substances as thyroxin (the hormone of the thyroid gland) and adrenalin (the hormone of the supra-renal bodies). Hormones are chemical messengers of great potency which are produced in the *ductless* glands, such as the thyroid and the supra-renal, and are distributed by the blood throughout the body. They affect the activity of certain parts in a very remarkable way, sometimes accelerating, sometimes putting on a brake. They are indispensable to health, for they regulate the activities of the body.

Much physiological progress was due to Claude Bernard (1813–1878), who established experimental physiology on a firm foundation; discovered that one of the great functions of the liver is to make glycogen or animal starch, an important nutritive reserve; and distinguished the up-building (anabolism) and the down-breaking (katabolism) which alternate with one another in the chemical routine (or metabolism) of the body. Of fundamental importance was his famous book, *Phénomènes de la Vie communs aux Animaux et aux Végétaux* (1878), in which he showed the deep resemblances between Plants and Animals in their main vital processes, except as regards the photosynthesis or up-building of carbon-compounds, which goes on in all green leaves. Later on this rapprochement of Plants and Animals was extended to a recognition of the deep similarities, in spite of superficial differences, in the reproductive processes in the two sub-kingdoms. Very noteworthy was the clearing up (by Steenstrup and others) of the alternation of generations in various classes of animals, such as zoophytes, and the masterly work of Hofmeister, who traced the same alternation of generations from Liverworts and Mosses to Ferns and Lycopods, and thence to Flowering Plants where it is so well concealed. This is a long story, but it may be enough here to notice that an ordinary asexual Fern-plant produces spores which develop into minute sexual prothalli. From fertilised egg-cells produced by the prothallus, and fertilised by sperm-cells, there develop the familiar spore-producing fern-plants.

Much progress was due to August Weismann (1834–1914) who thought out the first coherent theory of heredity. By his demonstration and understanding of "the continuity of the germ-plasm," he explained, for the first time clearly, how like tends to beget like; he focussed the idea that new departures or variations are due to changes in the germ-cells; he anticipated the modern theory of hereditary "factors" or "determinants," now called "genes"; and much has followed from his damaging, if not destructive, criticism of the evidence adduced in support of the Lamarckian theory of the transmissibility of individually acquired somatic modifications. The continuity of the germ-plasm means that when a fertilised egg is developing into an embryo, part of the germinal material is not used in body-making, but remains apart to form the beginning of the reproductive organs of the offspring.

To Pasteur may be referred the modern recognition of the manifold rôle of Bacteria and of the fundamental part that enzymes or ferments play in vital processes. For there can be no approach to an understanding of the activities of living creatures unless we recognise the marvellous power that ferments have of accelerating chemical changes. To Bayliss and Starling, about 1904, is due the demonstration of the rôle of "hormones," to which we referred above. They are the almost magically potent secretions of the ductless glands, and they serve as regulative agents in the healthy functioning of the body. Diseases like diabetes and cretinism are due to disturbances in the working of the hormone-making glands.

The great pre-Darwinian evolutionists were Erasmus Darwin, Buffon and Lamarck—the last the greatest, especially perhaps in his recognition of Psycho-biosis or the mental aspect of life. For Lamarck had a vivid appreciation of the share that an insurgent, wilful, struggling organism, full of need or "besoin," may have in its own evolution. To Charles Darwin and Alfred Russel Wallace the debt of Biology is great and manifold; but their theory of Natural Selection stands out prominently. That is to say, they discerned the scope and subtlety of the unconscious sifting that is involved in the struggle for existence.

Epoch-making beyond doubt, though unrecognised in his lifetime, was Mendel, who discovered the mode of inheritance which bears his name. Along with Weismann—who was chiefly concerned with germ-cells—and Francis Galton—who applied statistical methods—Mendel helped to lay the foundation-stones of the sub-science of Genetics, which he based on experiment.

Very influential has been the discovery of the dual nature of lichens by De Bary (1866) and Schwendener (1868), who showed that these plants express an intimate partnership of a particular Fungus and a particular Alga. This was an important discovery in itself, but it also led on to the recognition of many other forms of symbiosis, as the mutually beneficial internal partnership is called, and of other linkages as well, such as the interesting external partnership known as commensalism, which is well illustrated by the "mutualism" between certain hermit-crabs and certain sea-anemones. The idea of inter-relations or linkages in an ever-complexifying web of life was in the mind of old-fashioned naturalists like Gilbert White, and it was central to Charles Darwin's thinking.

Among other foundation-stones we may mention the intimate analysis of ordinary (mitotic) cell-division, remarkable for the meticulous accuracy with which half of each structure in the parent-cell passes into each daughter-cell; the discovery of the peculiar mode of cell-division known as meiotic, which occurs at the maturation of egg-cells and sperm-cells and is remarkable because the *number* of the nuclear rods or chromosomes is halved for each daughter-cell; the recognition of these chromosomes as the specialised bearers of the initiatives or "genes" of the hereditary characters; and the deepening of knowledge in regard to what happens when a sperm-cell fertilises an egg-cell.

Thomas Graham's study (1861) of osmosis and his disclosure of the properties of matter in a colloidal state has proved of fundamental importance in modern physiology; and we must single out Hardy's proof, about 1899, that active protoplasm has no microscopically visible framework,

but is a fluid system, with not less than 70 per cent. of water, in which are suspended innumerable ultra-microscopic mobile particles and unmixing droplets, presenting a large sum-total of surface on which chemical and physical changes may take place.

Mention should also be made of the introduction of a new organon in biological investigation—namely, statistical methods or biometrics. This has yielded valuable results in the skilful hands of Galton and Pearson, Weldon and Pearl, and has a promiseful future before it.

Also fundamental, we may almost say essential, is the critical study, by investigators like Lloyd Morgan, of Animal Behaviour at its many levels, and the recognition of the rôle of " Mind " as a *vera causa* in Organic Evolution and in the unending Drama of Life from day to day.

SCIENCE IN MAN'S SERVICE

Since Man came to his own as a wide-awake intelligence, he has been familiar with the idea of utilising expert knowledge as a guide in facing practical difficulties. Even in prehistoric days there must have been expert lore to which appeal was made. Men took counsel with the elders of the tribe, the magicians, the priests, and, later on, with the wise men—who correspond to our scientists. In everyday routine it was enough to follow tradition and the dictates of common sense; but in face of crises there was an appeal to experts or supposed experts. This was the beginning of what is increasingly characteristic of modern times—the habit of using science as a guide in practical affairs. As a practical policy this habit is in greater part modern, though the germ of it is as old as mankind. Thus it seemed a new idea that Herbert Spencer promulgated in his epigram : Science is for Life, not Life for Science.

Man, like the rest of creation, often illustrates " the principle of least action," as the Earth in its orbit; that is to say, he prefers to avoid taking trouble or thought, he trusts to tradition and to common sense as far as they will take him. For science is difficult to understand, and consulting the wise man or scientific expert usually involves a fee. Thus men built beautiful boats and bridges by rule of thumb, and the old-fashioned farmers and breeders succeeded wonderfully well without any agricultural chemistry or Mendelian genetics. " Wonderfully well," we say, yet often very wastefully, often very slowly, and sometimes not at all—being hindered or baulked by lack of understanding. Yet for many centuries tradition and common sense worked not so badly, especially in regard to the easier practical problems.

Gradually, however, with increase of population and the quickening of the pace of life, it became necessary to get more coal and iron out of the ground, more wheat from the fields, more fish from the sea, besides quickening transport with locomotives and steamships, and shortening distances with great bridges, tunnels and the like. We need not elaborate, for it is well known that in one field after another novel difficulties had to be faced, and an appeal to science became more and more imperative. Meanwhile, after the Renaissance—say from the classic works of Copernicus and Vesalius in 1543—the sciences themselves had been growing, as the outcome of man's irresistible inquisitiveness and desire to discover

causes ; and although their main *motif* was always towards fuller understanding, they became increasingly able and willing to assist, as Bacon put it, in the relief of man's estate. Thus and thus there arose what are somewhat unhappily called the Applied Sciences, such as Agriculture, Engineering, Metallurgy, Navigation and so on through a long and lengthening list. They consist of applications of Pure Science to particular practical problems or crafts, and it is only in so far as they conform to this description that they can be called scientific. For they often include masses of information which do not rise high above the old empirical lore in which all science began. Naturally enough, the sciences that were first appealed to were those that had made most progress—the exact sciences of Physics, Chemistry, Astronomy, Mechanics and the like. The appeal to Biology as a science is quite modern, practically post-Darwinian.

To this last statement exception may be taken on the ground that Medicine has always been appealed to, and Medicine goes back to Hippocrates (born about 470 B.C.), who was of high rank as a scientific thinker. But the apparent exception is not a very real one, for the old-established custom of sending for the physician when life was menaced was for many centuries rather an appeal to an art or to an honourable craft than to science as such. No doubt the end of the Dark Ages saw, in the work of pioneers like Vesalius (1514–1564), the beginning of the laying or relaying of the scientific foundations of medicine, but the idea of medicine as a biological science is in the main post-Darwinian. It may indeed be dated from Pasteur with his germ-theory of disease, or from Virchow with his " Cellular Pathology." We do not wish to over-labour the distinction, but the metamorphosis of the Art of Medicine, from a craft to a science, is distinctively modern, and the long-standing habit of sending for the physician is not much of an exception to our conclusion that man's appeal to Biology is a quite recent development.

Discovery and Invention

It has been said that apart from prophets, priests and kings no single man ever changed the face of civilisation so much as Newton ; and in any case it is agreed by all that he was one of the great initiators, giving man keys which opened practical as well as theoretical doors. His work is a good illustration of the important fact which the history of science proves, that most of the vitally important practical inventions are based on recondite researches in Pure Science. If we think of such devices as telegraphy, telephoning, broadcasting, the use of rays in medicine and surgery, the serum treatment of disease, we find that they are based on very theoretical researches and discoveries. It we use Bacon's memorable phrases for the twofold function of science as light-bringing (luciferous) and fruit-bearing (fructiferous), we may safely say that the first conditions the second, theoretical discovery preceding practical invention. At the same time we are bound to recognise that some urgent practical need or some wave of emotion has often given point and purpose to scientific research. Thus although Lister was from his inborn scientific curiosity interested in physiology and in microbes, it was, he tells us, the tragedy of the high mortality in the hospital wards that urged him towards his

antiseptic methods. Similarly with Pasteur, whose early researches on tartrates were as theoretical as his later ones were practical.

The historical point is that the successes of science in solving practical problems gave the public a respect for science as such; and this accounts for the early recognition of the value of chemistry and physics and mechanics, and the tardy recognition of biology and psychology. Is there a demand for a new drug or dye, a new fuel or explosive, the citizen has now learned to look to chemistry; but the time has hardly come when the problems of population or of human inheritance immediately suggest an appeal to biology. Is there a question of a difficult bridge to be built or a more reliable airship, it would be regarded as extreme folly to experiment without the scientific expert; but the citizen has hardly realised that it is almost as absurd to make educational experiments apart from the advice of the psychologist, or environmental and occupational experiments without consulting the biologist. It comes as a surprise as yet to hear a prophetic appreciation of what Biology may mean for human life, as when Sir Walter Morley Fletcher recently startled the public by saying in a National Broadcast, that "we can find safety and progress only in proportion as we bring into our methods of statecraft the guidance of biological truth."

The Appeal to Biology very Modern

To understand the position to-day we must recognise, as we have said, the greater prestige of chemical and physical science as compared with Biology. This is the natural outcome of: (1) The more advanced state of the exact sciences, and (2) the many impressive triumphs which have rewarded the application of these sciences to the service of man. But since Darwin's day the science of Biology has become more mature and more exact, and it also has some triumphs of practical application; *e.g.*, in connexion with Mendelian breeding, the life-history of formidable parasites, the rôle of vitamins in diet and of hormones in health. Thus the eyes of many citizens of the world are now beginning to think of Biology as a possible light to their feet and lamp to their path. This appeal will become more insistent in proportion as ordinary men and women turn from traditional and vaguely instinctive promptings to face the facts and to demand scientific guidance—biological as well as physical.

BIOLOGY AND HUMAN LIFE

Assuming, alas! with considerable warrant, a critic who smiles at the idea of Biology having anything to do with civilisation, let us state the case for our science. How are we to classify the services that Biology renders to Man? First, there are the direct contributions which alleviate the struggle for existence by increasing the food supply and improving the more elementary amenities of life. Second, there is the assistance that Biology offers: (*a*) in the conquest of disease; and (*b*) in the quest for positive health.

Third, there is the biological counsel which is already available in regard to certain perennial problems of human life, such as those centred in

sex. Fourth, there is the genetic basis of eugenics. Fifth, there is the cultural value of biological study. Sixth, there is the ethical value of Biology as a guide in conduct. And seventh, there are the contributions that Biology offers to our synoptic (philosophical and religious) outlook on the world as a whole.

I. Biology and the Struggle for Existence

Though man does not live by bread alone, food is his first need ; and Biology can certainly help him to make two blades of grass grow where only one grew before. And all flesh, however carnivorous, is in the long run grass. Biologists have discovered the secret of the success of leguminous plants, that they have partner-bacteria in their root-tubercles which are somehow able to capture the free nitrogen in the soil-air or soil-water. These friendly symbiotic microbes add to the plant's nutritive reserves of nitrogenous carbon-compounds, and if the crop is systematically dug in or ploughed in, then poor soil will become good soil, and there will be more food for man and beast. In several ways Biology is instructing the agriculturist how to reclaim waste places, and if success rewards the promising experiments now begun on transforming peat-bogs into crop-growing fields it will be a great day for many a crofter. If the population of the globe goes on increasing at its present rate, with an absolute addition of 12-14 millions every year, a terrible struggle for food is in prospect. If Biology can increase the food supply—a power which no one doubts—there is a greater chance of avoiding a *débâcle* before the birth-rate is reduced to meet the conditions of existence. Thus at the very outset we see how Biology may contribute to the welfare of civilisation.

What an advance there is from the wild wheat still growing on Mount Hermon to a first-class modern wheat like Marquis, an advance not only in number of seeds, but in their nutritive value. Especially of recent years there has been a remarkable patience of sifting on the part of experimental biologists devoted to wheat and, if we are on the outlook for significance to mankind, we must remember that Marquis Wheat was certainly one of the factors that won the Great War.

The methods of the Mendelians make it possible to graft on to a prolific wheat various other good qualities, such as early ripening or a texture that grinds well and yields attractive flour. Some ten years ago Professor Punnett, one of the leading geneticists of Great Britain, said in a lecture :

> " Take wheat alone. Biffen's work has already added hundreds of thousands of pounds yearly to the wealth of this country. Howard in India has produced a new wheat which is now spreading over the Central Provinces and is expected shortly to increase the annual value of the crop in that area alone by £7,000,000. The experiment station in Ohio is supplying the farmers of that State with a wheat that produces on an average an increase of two bushels to the acre on those previously grown. With two million acres under this cereal the gain is obviously considerable."

Since this was said the improvement of wheats has continued, and the magnitude of the biological advance is not fundamentally affected by the complex social and economic conditions that have robbed wheat-growers in Britain, for instance, of much of their reward, and have made the loaf dearer not cheaper. We are not here called on to enter these deep waters.

What botanical biology has done for wheat—one instance out of many—zoological biology has done for many animals. Breeds of poultry have been established in which the individual hen may lay two hundred or more eggs in the year. In a limited freshwater area it is possible to multiply the trout, even by the rough-and-ready method of pitching cartloads of bracken into the water. As we have said elsewhere : " Bacteria working on the bracken thrive and multiply, they afford food for infusorians, and they also liberate the stimulants of vegetative growth. The replenished hosts of infusorians and Algæ are devoured by minute Crustaceans, which afford food for freshwater fishes. Here we have a hint of a possible correlation between bracken and breakfast. And while the sceptic and patriot may refuse to cast his bread on the waters, who would not cast bracken which is conquering all too easily in the struggle for existence with much better plants ? " There would be more chance of checking the deplorable ruin of pasture by bracken—a ruin for which a cure is on the horizon even as we write—if some use could be found for the fern, and what could be better than turning it into trout and thus, eventually, into man ! Whether we think of wheat or of trout we see a scientific echo of the miracle of multiplying loaves and fishes ; and there is no irreverence in recognising this.

Our thesis is that Biological Science helps to spread man's table ; and there are many ways of doing this besides directly increasing the supply of edible plants and animals. Under expert control there may be great increase of a country's wealth by the naturalisation of useful plants, like fruit-trees at the Cape, and useful animals, like sheep in New Zealand. Great things have been done in the way of saving crops and herds from formidable parasites and from less insidious enemies. An almost ideal utilisation of animals is illustrated by bee-keeping. The honeymakers have not been much deteriorated by their masters, however they may have suffered from their own servile state. They do not require much artificial nurture, and would probably be better with less. They produce a very delightful food at a minimum cost to man. There is no reason save slackness why a country like Britain should not flow with honey. And if the critic naturally reminds us of the " Isle of Wight " disease which has ruined so many apiaries from Ventnor to Cape Wrath, the reply is that the parasitic mite associated with this malady has been discovered, and that ways are being devised for circumventing its ravages. In a score of similar cases the dramatic sequence of events has been the same : a disease crops up with disastrous results ; the cause of the disease is discovered by the biologist ; and then there follows either cure or prevention. Very dramatic and not less effective is the prevention of some of the scale-insect diseases of imported fruit-trees, notably the oranges and lemons of California, by also importing the natural insect-enemies of the scale. This also is spreading man's table.

We do not wish to dwell longer on the contributions made by Biology

to the bread-and-butter problem, though these are far-reaching and will increase in importance if the world's population goes on growing at its present rapid rate. Before the appearance of notices saying " Standing Room Only " there is likely to be a struggle for subsistence too terrible to think of, yet it is *possible* that some momentous bio-chemical discovery will alter the whole aspect of the nutritive problem. This might come about, for instance, if there is confirmation and extension of Professor Baly's synthesis of sugar and other carbon-compounds by the action of light on carbon dioxide and water. This is not our present business, yet we must keep in mind the achievements of the almost creative chemists, even to the artificial synthesis of the amino-acids which have been called the building-stones of living matter. Nor should we forget how waterfalls are now used to produce great discharges of electricity which capture some of the free nitrogen of the air, binding it into ammonium nitrite or the like—the basis of " fertilisers " which increase the yield of wheat. So, in a way, science makes bread out of the thin air. This, then, is our first point, that Biology spreads man's table.

II. Biology in Relation to Health and Disease

It was a momentous event in civilisation when Pasteur demonstrated the microbic nature of many diseases. We can hardly realise the change in the entire outlook, not only of medical experts, but of ordinary citizens when it was clearly seen that disease is no mysterious power suddenly emerging out of darkness and clutching man by the throat, but is in many cases due to the invasion of the body by a microbe—a microscopic living creature that can be contended with and often conquered. Discovery of causes was followed by discovery of cures, and then there arose a system of Preventive Medicine which vindicated man's natural love of light, fresh air and cleanliness, and showed in prosaic detail how infection might be in many cases avoided. There followed a recognition that some very important diseases, such as malaria and sleeping sickness, were caused not by Bacteria, which are generally regarded as of the nature of single-celled *plants*, but by Protozoa, that is to say, by intruding microscopic *animals* which destroy or poison the living cells of the body. And as an invaluable contribution of Natural History to Medicine there has arisen a fascinating department of ecology which deals with the carriers of the disease-microbes and of the larger parasites. Thus, as everyone knows, various kinds of mosquitoes carry the various malaria-organisms, and the tsetse flies are the disseminators of sleeping sickness. With a deepening knowledge of the habits of these carriers or disseminators, and of the life-history of the intruders or parasites themselves, there is arising an increasing body of knowledge leading to methods of sure prevention which are even more hopeful than the achievement of cures. With biological science behind him, man is conquering one disease after another.

Hookworm disease, or ankylostomiasis, is the cause of one of the heaviest mundane clouds that have ever rested on the human race, producing in many warm countries the " tropical depression " which travellers, missionaries and employers of labour have often deplored. It is due to several kinds of threadworm (species of Ankylostomum and

Necator) that pass as larvæ through cracks in the skin of bare feet, and burrowing in the body, fix themselves in the wall of the food-canal. They grip firmly by means of hooks beside their mouth and draw blood from the lining membrane. The results are bloodlessness or anæmia, weakness, emaciation, melancholy, lassitude, despair and death. The disease, for so many years a mystery, is now well understood ; the intruding hookworms can be readily expelled from the food-canal by doses of carbon-tetrachloride, and further infection can be prevented by theoretically simple sanitary measures, which keep the soil around the village from being diffusely infected with the young stages of the hookworm. Thanks to medical efforts, especially those of the Rockefeller Institute campaign, the incidence of hookworm disease has been checked over vast areas and has been in some places reduced from 25 to 2 per cent. of the population. With patience and goodwill the heavy cloud will disappear ; our present point is that the preventive measures are based on a deepening of biological knowledge.

Human progress is mainly due to positive ameliorations—physical, organic and social ; but it is no small gain when handicaps are removed, and the heaviest of all handicaps is disease. So let us take another instance of Biology to the rescue. In various warm countries, such as Egypt and Japan, a painful and serious disease known as " bilharziasis " is rife. Every third child born in Cairo becomes infected with bilharziasis and in some places every third adult has the disease, which is due to various species of a very peculiar worm (Schistosomum) in the order of Trematodes, to which the liver-fluke of sheep also belongs. The microscopic larvæ, like transparent forked threads, enter man through cracks or abrasions on the skin, and occasionally on the lips and lining of the mouth. Passing through the body, many of them take up their abode in the bloodvessels of the small intestine and in the region of the kidneys and bladder. This varies with the different species of Schistosomum. They produce minute hard-shelled eggs, each with a lateral or terminal spine (according to the species), and the pressure of the multitudinous sharp spines on the walls of the bloodvessels causes great pain. The minute eggs are passed out from the kidneys or the food canal, according to the species ; and, unless precautions are taken, they may readily find their way into water-pools. There they hatch into microscopic larvæ, which enter various species of water-snail such as Planorbis and Isidora, and there continue their development somewhat in the same way as the young stages of the liver-fluke develop inside the little water-snail, Limnæus. From the water-snail there emerge other more advanced larval stages, minute, threadlike and free-swimming, called cercariæ, and these bore into the skin of children who paddle or bathe in the water, or into the hands of washerwomen, gardeners and the like. Apart from man, their host is some aquatic mammal such as a water-vole. The life-history which we have just outlined was elucidated by Major Leiper during the War, when bilharziasis often occurred among our soldiers in Egypt, and his biological investigation threw immediate light on prevention. Contamination of water-pools may be prevented ; children may be forbidden to bathe there ; water-snails may be collected ; snail-eating birds may be encouraged ; the aquatic plants that the snails browse on may be

destroyed; the larvæ on watercress and the like are killed by dissolving tabloids of sulphate of soda, and they die in thirty-six hours in water that is kept quite still. In these and other ways Biology has shown man how to conquer a serious disease, a handicap to progress.

III. Biology and Life's Difficulties

There are many indications to-day that we are at the beginning of a new era—the era of biological control, when for the first time on a large scale mankind is turning to the life-sciences (in addition to Medicine), and saying: "Show us what you can do for us in the way of betterment." Sporadically in recent years Biology has been consulted by physicians, educationists, practical men, and even statesmen; there are signs, we think, that it is soon going to be appealed to more generally by educated humanity, seeking life more abundantly. Let us illustrate our meaning.

In civilised society—and that is no modern affair—there is a sorry frequency of sex-pathology, taking many forms. What should be the finest expression of our life is too often ugly and besmirched. Often what should be highest happiness becomes an obsession or repression, the source of unhappiness, it may even be of disaster—physical, mental and moral. In place of the old tribal instructions and initiations, though these had their morbidities, too, there has been for centuries a taboo of the subject except in salacious form, and adolescence is allowed to steal in on life like a thief in the night.

But what can Biology do to help? It can present the normal facts of sex in impersonal and scientific form. It can give to much that is puzzling an intelligible interpretation; for instance, by explaining the rôle of the sex hormones. These hormones or internal secretions, as we have already explained, are potent chemical messengers which are produced in ductless glandular tissue and are distributed by the blood throughout the body, exciting, or sometimes hindering, activity in particular structures. The sex-hormones from ductless glandular tissue associated with the reproductive organs are produced very markedly at adolescence, and evoke changes in body and mind which were mysteries till the rôle of these chemical messengers was discovered.[1] Biology can also trace with great advantage the evolution of sex through the animal kingdom and show how the path of progressive evolution has been one on which a primarily physiological urge becomes an æsthetic attraction, and rises from fondness by psychical refinement to lasting love. It can also show how self-indulgence is apt to lead to tyrannous habits and even to nervous deteriorations; and so on and so forth.

This is but a single illustration, for in many directions Biology is now mature enough to give man definite counsel, not to replace, but to supplement the older controls of an ethical, traditional and religious character. Biology can advise as to habit-forming, diet, stimulants, improved environment, sleep, play, population and the culture of existence in general. When its advice is widely asked and taken a new era will have dawned.

[1] For a fuller treatment of this subject, see the Article on *Sex*, p. 283.

IV. The Cultural Value of Biology

The utilitarian value of Biology is being increasingly recognised, but can the same be said for its educative or cultural rôle ? As a recreation the old-fashioned Natural History, now rising into Ecology (the science of habits, habitats and inter-relations), may perhaps be holding its own ; but there are at present few enthusiasts for the educational value of the biological sciences. This is partly because these do not afford that resoluteness of discipline to be found in the study of the exacter sciences, like mathematics, chemistry and physics. But another reason, we fear, is that we live in a dominatingly mechanical age, and " as is the world on the banks, so is the mind of man." The fact is that man needs biological culture more than ever before.

(*a*) To the biological sciences we owe many mental pictures that are treasures. The Natural History and Botanical picture-gallery is full of masterpieces, such as the world of the great oceanic abysses, or the woods of the Yosemite valley.

(*b*) The study of Animate Nature is an æsthetic education. Everywhere there is beauty—of form, of colouring, or of movement ; easy beauty of bird and tree, difficult beauty of serpent and sea-wrack ; conspicuous beauty like the peacock's tail, hidden beauty such as the internal zoned architecture of a sea-urchin's spine. And while science is in itself quite unemotional, it feeds the æsthetic sense, and the more we know of the biological aspect of withering leaves, the more we enjoy the autumnal woods.

(*c*) The biological sciences open our eyes to the Drama of Life, and excite an ever-increasing interest in things that angels might desire to look into—life-histories, linkages, endeavours, subtleties, comedies, tragedies, anticipations. Animate Nature is an inexhaustible well of surprises, which make for the enrichment and enhancement of man's life. It is not that they are curiosities of Natural History, quaint pieces of information ; it is rather that they give us glimpses into the heart of things. They suggest Walt Whitman's exclamation : " Prais'd be the fathomless universe, for life and joy, for objects and knowledge curious."

(*d*) There is an incalculable cultural value in the great facts and ideas of Biology—the ascent of life, the pulse of evolution, the web of inter-relations, the ceaseless circulation of matter, the development of the embryo, the trajectory of each life-history, the long inclined plane of animal behaviour, rising to remarkable freedom of mind in man.

(*e*) As a fifth contribution to Culture may be ranked the array of brain-stretching problems which biological study provides. It is not to be compared with mathematics for intellectual gymnastics, yet Animate Nature is a " Euclid " by itself, tending to develop sound judgment. Who can tell us why a cell divides into two, what the fertilisation of the egg-cell really means, how embryonic differentiation comes about, or the true inwardness of sex ? Biology bristles with unsolved problems ; the realm of organisms is full of marks of interrogation.

(*f*) Finally, it must be recognised that sojourning with living creatures in Nature brings home to us the deep impressions of growing, multiplying

and developing, of varying, inheriting and sifting. These form indispensable parts of a well-educated man's mental furnishing, and they cannot be replaced by anything else. The fact is that life-lore is essential if our life is not to be impoverished. No doubt many able-minded men and women have got on well without knowing any Biology, but how much more they might have been with it!

V. Biology as a Foundation for Eugenics

Those who cherish ambitions for mankind are unanimous in including healthfulness of race—healthfulness in the widest sense, meaning clear-headedness and goodwill as well as sound physique. The ideal means much more than a reduction of disease, though that always counts for much; it implies positive health, expressing itself in vigour, resisting power, initiative and joy. No one can look around to-day and remain complacent: so many are diseased in body and mind; so many are victims of their appetites; so many live at a low level of healthfulness, with no more than sub-health; and so many show little trace of beauty or of happiness. The endeavours to raise the standard of racial fitness in our civilised communities are called eugenic, in opposition to dysgenic tendencies which make towards the deterioration of the human breed. Our present point is that the foundation of sound eugenics must be sound Biology.

It is not suggested that all man's troubles are due to causes which more Biology would remedy, for some are in part due to evils inherent in the social system that enmeshes us; others are due to deficiencies in imagination, kin-sympathy, and goodwill; others are due to our liking for lower pleasures and for lines of least action; and others again to our mis-education, often including a dismal ignorance of the history of our race. It would be a fallacious "biologism," akin to a fallacious "materialism," to think that applied genetics alone will save us in our sea of troubles. There must be eupsychics, and much more, as well as eugenics.

Here at once we see the eugenic value of Biology, since the biologist is always seeing the three sides of his prism:—Organism, Function and Environment; the Living Being, its Doings, and its Surroundings. These obviously correspond to the three chief concepts or co-ordinates of the sociologist: Folk, Work and Place—Le Play's *Famille, Travail, Lieu.* But, even more than the sociologist, the biologist is habituated to considering every problem in these three indissoluble aspects, and is therefore saved from the fallacy of thinking that secure progress can be made by working along one line only. There must be Eutopias and Eutechnics if Eugenics is to have much chance.

Similarly, the biologist, more than any other investigator, is familiar with the idea of the Unity of the Organism, not merely as an orchestral harmony, "many members in one body," but as, in its higher expressions, alternately BODY-mind and MIND-body. Thus the biological eugenist will never forget the necessity of Eupsychics; his ideal is *mens sana in corpore sano.*

One of the oldest ambitions in the world is to have a fine family, and eugenics is the modern scientific expression of this ambition, which has become in modern times sadly more difficult of fulfilment. There has

been, for too long among too many people, a disregard of the need for persistently selecting towards health, and for avoiding as far as may be a sowing of tares along with wheat. It comes to this, that Biology is needed as a broad foundation for eugenics ; we require not merely a deeper knowledge of heredity, of the influence of environment, of the rôle of nurture in general, but a deeper insight into the subtle ways in which Animate Nature has wrought out its exuberance of evolving life.

VI. Ethical Value of Biology

To envisage the ascent of life is to discover a solemnly long series of experiments with life—a book in which man may find guidance. Not indeed clearer or better guidance than he can find elsewhere, as in the history of his race, yet if he reads aright a light to his feet and a lamp to his path. Thus there is the great ethical lesson of the struggle for existence, that things of value require to be struggled for. It is easy to make too much of the cruder forms of the struggle for existence, of Nature red in tooth and claw with rapine, of the Hobbesian warfare—each for himself and extinction take the hindmost ; but more accurate Biology discloses not only the large proportion of time and energy involved in parental care and mutual aid among kindred, but the great rewards that have gone to those animals that show other-regarding endeavours and what amounts to self-subordination. In the success of birds and mammals we see what has been called " a materialised ethical process " ; for such activities as are illustrated by the long-tailed tit's gathering of 2,379 feathers to quilt its nest, or by the prolonged nurture, protection, and education which the mother-otter gives her cubs, have Survival Value just as much as those which are seen when the golden eagle lifts the grouse, or the tiger launches itself on the young deer. There was genuine insight in giving to the highest class of animals—to which man is affiliated—the name of mammals, so obviously suggestive of mothering.

It is not suggested that animals are ethical agents, for there is no warrant for crediting them with general ideas, but the point is that there has been a long evolution of the incipient virtues, the raw materials of good conduct, such as courage, affection, control and sympathy ; and many animals are morally admirable, along certain lines at least. But besides the *occurrence* of the primary virtues among animals, we must recognise that they have been rewarded in the course of Organic Evolution with survival and with success. There is an evolution of ethics, but there is also an ethics of evolution.

No doubt there are seamy sides in Animate Nature, such as parasitism; and lurid warnings, such as may be seen without a microscope in the servile state of ants and bees, and with one, if we inquire into the fatigue-degeneration of the brain of the short-lived worker-bee ; yet on the whole it must be allowed that Animate Nature is condemnatory of the unlit lamp and the ungirt loin. There are some difficult cases, but Animate Nature is almost always for health, unless man interferes with the conditions of life, as in domestication and cultivation. It is easy enough for anyone so inclined to travesty our thesis, and to say that the very best to be found in Animate Nature is a pageant of lusty animals ; but that is not

accurate. The higher creatures are psycho-biological beings, as we ourselves are ; and proud man has often much to learn from the courting of birds. Moreover everyone who has reflected knows that our degree of healthfulness from day to day is often a subtle and rigorous criterion of our morals ; and Animate Nature is almost all for health.

VII. Biology and Philosophy

Our last question is the most difficult : How does Biology affect man's synoptic (philosophical and religious) outlook on the world as a whole ? There are many uncertainties in biological science, especially as regards the innermost secret of that kind of activity that we call life ; the correlation or regulatedness that makes the organism a " whole " ; the true inwardness of sex, of development and of variability ; and the perennial problem of the relation between the mental and the bodily aspects of the organism—the psycho-biological and the bio-psychological. But there are great certainties as well. Thus (*a*) There is general agreement that in some way or other organisms transcend mechanisms ; there is an autonomy of Biology. Again (*b*) In some way or other the living creature is only intelligible as a historic being ; that is to say, in Clifford's words :—

> " It is the peculiarity of living things not merely that they change under the influence of surrounding circumstances, but that any change that takes place in them is not lost, but retained, and, as it were, built into the organism to serve as the foundation for future actions."

Living implies both individual and racial enregistrations ; and these are certainties, though it is not easy in either case to explain *how* the engraining is effected.

(*c*) It is also characteristic of organisms that each is affiliated to the past and normally parental to the future. In other words, living creatures have to be thought of as links in a hereditary chain, for heredity is the relation of genetic continuity between successive generations. Ever present is the child of the past and the parent of the future. This is, of course, an old idea ; but it has become more incisive since Galton and Weismann disclosed the fact of the continuity of the germ-plasm—that individuals are, as it were, the deciduous pendants of an undying lineage of germ-cells. The parent organism, especially the mother, is obviously the producer of the offspring ; yet, as Galton said, it is almost truer to say that the parent is the trustee of the germ-cells, which will eventually develop into offspring. As Weismann put it :—

> " In each development, a portion of the specific germ-plasm contained in the parent egg-cell is not used up in the construction of the body of the offspring, but is reserved unchanged for the formation of the germ-cells of the following generation."

In a deeper way than even Darwin recognised, there is a hereditary *continuity of generations*. The modern biologist thinks of the organism as a living link between past and future.

(*d*) Another fundamental idea in the modern biological view is that the organism must always be thought of as functioning in particular surroundings which, in turn, condition it and react upon it for good and ill. The three sides of the prism of life are, as we have already said, Organism, function and environment; but at times we must read them the other way round and give the capital letter to the environment or system of surrounding influences—Environment, function, organism. These are the three co-ordinates of Biology, inseparable except in scientific analysis. Since the everyday functions, say, of irritability and contractility, nutrition and respiration, are wrapped up with the very idea of organism, which becomes an empty name without its functions, it may be clearer to use the word "functionings" to denote the organism's actions on its environment. Thus the three sides of the biological prism are Organisms, Functionings and Environments, corresponding to the sociological co-ordinates: Folk, Work and Place, in terms of which every sociological fact must be considered. As Professor Patrick Geddes has put it, living is a moving equilibrium between O–>f–>e and E–>f–>o; and similarly for the social life of mankind, Fk–>w–>pl and PL–>w–>fk. Or in ratio form: $\frac{O}{E}\frac{f}{f}\frac{e}{o}$ and $\frac{Fk}{Pl}\frac{w}{w}\frac{pl}{fk}$; and the biological ratio is, as it were, parallel with the sociological.

But (*e*) the relation of an organism to the past is more than that between offspring and parents, descendants and near ancestors: it is a racial relation to an older, usually more generalised, stock. A modern horse has an immediate pedigree, but it is also a descendant of remote ancestors with three or four digits, instead of the single finger or toe which the modern type bears on each limb. Just as all our modern breeds of domesticated pigeon are known to have been derived under man's care from the wild rock dove, *Columba livia*, so the thousands of wild birds are all traceable to some ancestral extinct bird more than hinted at in the first avian fossil, Archæopteryx, whose structure proclaims that it, in turn, was derived from a stock of extinct reptiles. Every organism is an antiquity with a long pedigree, leading back to simpler or more generalised ancestors, except in cases where evolution has been retrogressive or degenerative, as in the case of parasitic and easy-going types, whose ancestors were *less* simple. Moreover, we must think of organisms as not merely outcomes of evolution, but as themselves, in many cases, evolving here and now. Variations are still emerging; selection is still in operation; new adaptations and even new species are still arising for better or for worse. The biologist is always saying to himself, in Hegel's words: "Becoming, Being, and Having Been."

There can be no synoptic or philosophical view of the world which does not include living creatures as part of the picture, and our first point is that these must be thought of as (*a*) Transcending mechanism; (*b*) Enregistering experience; (*c*) Affiliated to their immediate progenitors; (*d*) Functioning in particular environments; and (*e*) Evolved from simpler ancestors and in many cases evolving still.

But while it is of great importance to realise these five characteristics of living organisms, they do not exhaust the richness of reality. As Robert Louis Stevenson said, "Science writes of the world as if with

the cold finger of a starfish ; it is all true, but what is it when compared with the reality of which it discourses ? "

Living beings are always in flux, always breaking down and always being built up again. Their essential constituents are proteins and other carbon-compounds, always being burned or oxidised, and yet the unities we call organisms have their fit symbol in the burning bush of old, for they are not consumed for many a day. Throughout the world of life there are similar living stones and mortar—protoplasm, the physical basis of life ; but while this makes the whole of Animate Nature kin, the complementary fact is *specificity*, for each species or definable kind is itself and no other. Each has some particular protein, different even in nearly related species, such as fox and wolf, horse and ass. This individuality or idiosyncrasy is one of the marked differences between living organisms and non-living things. Thus we have a first triad of qualities : persistence amid change, ceaseless down-breaking and up-building of colloidal protoplasm, and specificity of proteins for each particular form of life. Colloidal means that the material in question, whether living or not living, consists of innumerable ultra-microscopic particles or unmixing droplets suspended in a fluid ; and its importance is partly because of the multitudinousness of the minute surfaces, on which physical and chemical changes may take place. A drop of protoplasm may be compared to an archipelago of many islands on whose multitudinous coastlines there is great opportunity for fishing and trading !

A second triad of qualities characteristic of living beings may be summed up in three words—growth, multiplication and development. Everywhere in the world of life we see growth, usually accomplished by the division of cells ; and it differs from the accretion-growth of crystals in being from the inside outwards, and because the material used is in most cases very different from that composing the organism. The grass grows at the expense of air and water and the salts of the soil ; the foal grows at the expense of the grass. But a crystal cannot grow except from a solution of the same kind of material, or occasionally from a different kind of material that has the same crystalline form.

It is normal for a full-grown organism to multiply, and in most animals this occurs when a definite size, *the limit of growth*, is reached. In ways that vary from type to type, the plant or animal becomes a parent ; and soon there is a succession of generations. In the non-living world there is no counterpart to multiplication unless we point to a nebula giving rise to a double star, or to a molecule dividing into two molecules, or to a radio-active substance giving off helium particles—and these are rather far-fetched analogies.

Not less familiar, and not less striking when one begins to think about it, is the process of development, wherein a detached portion of the adult, or a liberated germ-cell, proceeds to reproduce an entire organism. Out of the apparent simplicity of the egg-cell there develops the obvious complexity of a young creature ; from a clear drop on the top of the yolk of a hen's egg there develops a chick. From a fragment of a begonia leaf there develops an entire plant—flower and all. The latent becomes patent, the apparently homogeneous becomes the obviously heterogeneous, the invisible becomes visible. Such is development.

The third triad includes two characteristics to which we have already referred—the enregistering of the past in the present, in such a way that the future is affected (Bergson's *durée*), and the power of evolving, giving rise to something new under the sun—but also a third feature, the power of effective response, of purposive (rising to purposeful) behaviour. In animals especially, where mind begins to be emancipated, this quality of endeavour stands out clearly ; but all through the world of life there is purposive agency. Here the symbol of the organism is not the burning bush but the bent bow.

Our point, then, is that living creatures, which must be included in our philosophical picture of the world, show an integration of qualities. The first triad includes :—

1. Persistence amid incessant change ;
2. The down-breaking and up-building of colloidal protoplasm ; and
3. Specificity.

The second triad includes :—

4. Growth ;
5. Multiplication ; and
6. Development.

The third triad includes :—

7. Enregistration ;
8. Purposive behaviour ; and
9. Evolvability.

An appreciation of these nine characteristics will certainly save us from an easy-going or a commonplace view of organisms, yet the total impression is too cold and academic. Let us seek, therefore, to envisage the wonder of life more vividly.

THE WONDER OF LIFE

(I) We are impressed by *the abundance of power* in the universe, from the movements and internal activities of the heavenly bodies down to the fierce little world within the complex atom, and between these extremes of the infinitely great and the infinitely little are the powers of life—the power of winding up the living clock almost as fast as it runs down, the power of an open-sea fish, whose muscles are more efficient as energy-transformers than are the engines of the *Mauretania*, the power of an eagle in the air, far surpassing any flying machine ; and life's power of multiplying itself so that in a few hours an invisible microbe may become a fatal million. Most of the physical and chemical non-living clocks in our cool corner of the world, such as a fragment of radium with its extraordinary output of energy, are running down ; but every living organism succeeds in winding itself up for days or for years or

for stretching cycles of years. From hour to hour it ripes and ripes, long postponing the evil day when at length it begins to rot and rot, as Shakespeare put it. A great river rushing down to the sea, carving its bed and driving many mills, is a fine example of power, but the otter in the river is finer, for it commands its course. Life is a stream that seems often to flow uphill ; its power is insurgent. As Goethe said, animals seem very often to be attempting the impossible and achieving it. The water-spider, though belonging to a thoroughly terrestrial stock and breathing dry air, just as we do, has chosen to spin a web in the moorland pool. The migratory birds annihilate distance and know no winter in their year. The bat is a true mammal, yet it has learned to fly. Living creatures are marked by extraordinary insurgence, and that is a characteristic part of the picture.

(II) The fact of multitudinous life, we are urging, has to be included in our synoptic picture of the universe, just as we must take account of the numbers and the immensities of the stars. As Spenser said in *The Faerie Queene* :

> " For much more eathe to tell the starres on hy, albe they endlesse seem in estimation, than to recount the sea's posterity ; so fertile be the floods in generation, so huge their numbers and so numberlesse their nation."

Just as the modern astronomer, becoming philosophical, tells us that the heavens declare themselves as the thought of a Supreme Mind, transcendently mathematical, so a naturalist, familiar with the multitudinous variety of living creatures, is often given to think of a Supreme Mind, transcendently artistic, and loving life for its own sake. We see the world-floor, the great studio of Animate Nature, strewn with sketches, each a little masterpiece. So Tennyson turned away from peering into the crowded life of the brook, with the exclamation : " What an imagination God has ! " In any case one gets the impression of endless resources in the creative evolution of individualities.

Over two thousand years ago Aristotle knew about five hundred different kinds of animals, and now the list of the named and known, still far from complete, includes twenty-five thousand Vertebrates, and a quarter of a million (some zoologists estimate twice as many) Invertebrates.

What prodigality of unique species, for each is itself and no other. As St. Paul said :

> " All flesh is not the same flesh, but there is one kind of flesh of men, another flesh of beasts, another of fishes and another of birds."

One can often identify a bird from a single feather that it drops from its wings ; one can often tell a fish from a few scales. Everywhere there is *specificity*.

(III) Another feature is *intricacy*, for everyone knows that he is fearfully and wonderfully made. Our body is built up of millions, billions, trillions of cells or unit corpuscles of living matter. The average man has

twenty-five billions of oxygen-capturing red blood corpuscles, which if spread out would occupy a surface of 3,300 square yards. Even more significant is the fact that he has in the cerebral cortex of his brain, the home of the higher intellectual activities, over nine thousand millions of nerve-cells, that is to say, more than five times the present population of the globe—surely more than the said brain of the average man as yet makes use of! And our impression of intricacy grows when we realise that these neurons are connected to one another by branching processes or dendrites which make multitudinous inter-linkages possible.

And again each cell is a microcosm, for within the colloidal contents or cytoplasm (in part consisting of true living matter or protoplasm) there floats a kernel or nucleus which contains forty-seven (in woman forty-eight) rodlets or chromosomes, each with a bead-like arrangement of smaller microsomes, and so on till we reach the invisible (yet not unmeasurable) "genes" or hereditary "factors"—the initiatives of the various distinctive "unit-characters" of the body. We see that the nucleus of the cell is a little world in itself, and the cell may also include centrosomes, mitochondria, chromidia and so forth, with untold complexities of interaction. And a remarkable fact is that when a typical growing cell divides, there is a meticulous halving of everything—chromosomes, centrosome, mitochondria—everything. By a complicated sequence of manœuvres in all ordinary cells of plants and of animals, it comes about that each daughter-cell is a replica of the parent-cell.

(IV) Also to be taken account of is the world-wide *adaptiveness* of living creatures. Every complex organism is a bundle of fitnesses. Some are no doubt more striking than others; thus, as a great biologist once said, if one takes away all the adaptations from a whale, what is there left? In fact, wherever there is intricacy of structure or subtlety of function in plant or animal, adaptations abound; and while we can no longer agree with Paley in directly arguing from these to a Divine Artificer, we cannot ignore one of the largest facts of life, that living creatures are adaptive through and through. The creative institution of the Order of Nature was evidently such that more and more perfectly adapted organisms have emerged in the course of evolution.

(V) Apart from parasites, which often establish a *modus vivendi* with their host, there is very little trace of disease in Wild Nature, though it may become rife when man interferes, with a grasp more greedy than skilful. And what strikes the trained observer as characteristic of Wild Nature is more than the rarity of constitutional, functional or environmental disease; there is an exuberance of *positive health*. No doubt there are parasites, living a drifting life of ease; degenerates that have settled down into easy-going sedentariness; and retrogrades that have, for various reasons, lapsed from the level reached by their ancestors; but these are exceptional. What is characteristic of Wild Nature is the lit lamp and the girt loin, the vigour of positive health.

And if disease be defined as disintegrative disturbance of the well-balanced metabolism or chemical routine of the body, we can understand why it should be so often associated in mankind with ugliness, whereas harmonious orderliness of life makes for beauty. Some animals fail to

please our æsthetic sense, which is often over-conventionalised, and thus we invent popular names like " devil-fish " and technical names like *Moloch horridus*, but the artist is delighted with both these creatures. Grotesque they may be, but not ugly. Just as with pictures, so among organisms there is difficult as well as easy beauty. Thus anyone can admire the peacock's tail : it needs a Ruskin to perceive the sinister beauty of the snake. Not only is organic beauty an expression of orderly and integrative vital processes, it often bears the marks of the animal's strenuous, graceful and eurhythmic movements ; and sometimes we may go the length of saying that beautiful features are, as the poet discerned, " chiselled from within," especially when there is a strong emotional life, as in birds. But the point is the pervasiveness of beauty among living creatures. It is part of the picture, as real as metabolism. Surely Lotze was right, that it is of high value to look upon beauty not as a stranger in the world, nor as a casual aspect of certain phenomena, but as the " fortunate revelation of that principle which permeates all reality with its living activity."

(VI) Not much can be said in regard to the mental aspect of the life of the lower animals, and still less when we turn to plants ; and yet it is impossible, we think, to do anything like justice to the behaviour of higher animals without crediting them with minds that count. It is not a question of our being generous or parsimonious, the point is whether we can give an adequate description of the higher reaches of animal life on apsychic lines. Excepting the extreme behaviourists, science agrees with common sense in declaring this impossible. There are animal " minds " that count for something ; and we cannot make sense of what we see unless we credit the animal with an inner subjective life of feeling, imaging and purposing—analogous to our own. And just as we watch every day the development of mind in the individual child, from the simplest and vaguest expressions of infancy to the epiphany of lively intelligence, joyous emotion and eager will, so looking at racial evolution we must search among the lower animals for the early stirrings of mind. The biologist is not likely to forget Spinoza's warning, that we must not be too quick to decide what the body, *as body*, may not do ; but there is a growing array of facts, such as the modern study of the Anthropoid Apes, pointing in the direction of more Psycho-biology, as well as more Bio-psychology. In other words, the biologist is finding it necessary to study the higher animal as a MIND-body and as a BODY-mind alternately. No one wishes to over-emphasise the psychical aspect of the lower animals or of plants, since it is obviously difficult to give content to the concept at these low levels ; but if there is continuity in organic evolution we must expect to find the dim analogues of mind even in the Protozoa. " Mind " or " sentience " is probably conterminous with life itself.

(VII) The crowning wonder of life, giving significance to the whole picture, is the fact of Organic Evolution. We have already mentioned evolvability as one of the nine characteristics of organisms, but we must not lose the drama in the doctrine. It is not merely that birds evolved from reptiles, these from amphibians, and these from fishes ; the concept of Organic Evolution is much more than a system of pedigrees. We must

have some vision of the succession of achievements, such as the first body, the first sex, the first limbs, the first brain. What acquisitions are suggested by the words—blood, eye, voice, "warm-blooded," viviparous? We must have some picture of the gradual peopling of the wide, wide world by plants and animals; of the repeated colonisations of the dry land, and the far-reaching consequences of each; and of the insurgent possession of every niche of opportunity. We must imagine the changes of the world stage in successive geological periods, and how these, not least those of climate, involved new motives in the drama and new pitfalls as well. There has been an evolution of sieves as well as of material to be sifted. Nor can we afford to ignore the gradual weaving of the web of life, the linking of living creatures together in subtle interrelations. This is characteristic of life, that it forms a *systema naturæ*, which serves as a subtle sieve for new departures or variations, and also tends to lessen the risk of retrogression. Animate Nature is a fabric, with a changing pattern; and man insists on sharing in the weaving.

To sum up: our argument is that the picture of organisms that must form part of our synoptic or philosophical view, should include some appreciation of the power of life, the multitudinousness of specific individualities, the astounding intricacy, the pervading fitness, the practical omnipresence of beauty, the interactions of mind and body, and the dramatic character of Organic Evolution.

DESCRIPTIVE NATURALISM

The biologist seeks to describe, as simply and tersely as possible, what happens in Animate Nature and in individual organisms, and he does so in terms of factors which are experimentally verifiable in the system of things which he observes. His universe of discourse includes the minds of animals, so far as these are demonstrable, but it does not include anything mystical or transcendental. One of the greatest of naturalists, Darwin's magnanimous colleague Alfred Russel Wallace, went beyond Biology and beyond science when he postulated special "spiritual influxes" to account for various "big lifts" in evolution. That was departing from the method of *descriptive naturalism*, which keeps to empirical formulæ, trying to account for the facts of life, in the case of Biology, in terms of the factors known to be resident in organisms and their surroundings. *What are these factors?* They include:—

(*a*) Chemical and physical processes, operative in and around organisms;

(*b*) Qualities of protoplasm that remain at present in greater part irreducible, such as irritability, persistence or inertia, growth and development; and

(*c*) Resident mental or psychical activities, when these are convincingly recognisable as at work.

It must be clearly understood that scientific naturalistic *description* does not imply what is called philosophical naturalism, which denies the validity of all transcendental or spiritual *interpretation*. For while science

answers the questions *What?* *Whence?* and *How?* it never even asks the question *Why?* In other words, science does not raise the philosophical or religious question of the meaning, significance or purpose behind the world of the measurable. It does not inquire into the original Beginning or the Essence of things. But what the biologist has to aim at in this connexion is the working out of an empirical description which will be as exact and impersonal as possible, and verifiable by all normally constituted minds who can use the methods. Of all science, but of Biology in particular, it must be understood that it is a partial and abstract inquiry, based on observational and experimental methods devised to detect and measure (or register) certain orders of fact, and these only. As we have often said, the biologist, as biologist, dredges in the sea of reality with nets of a certain kind of mesh (his biological methods), and is naturally restricted to the capture of certain kinds of fishes. As a man he may appreciate beauty; as a biologist he does not catch it except in rare cases; *e.g.*, when it operates as a factor in the courtship of birds. More generally, if he has arranged the meshes of his net so that they will only catch metabolism, he cannot expect to discover Mind in his sea. None the less, he may be well aware of it, and thus becomes psycho-biologist. Of course the biologist cannot be sure that his science has as yet come to know all the factors operative in Animate Nature, but he should none the less remain radically opposed to every attempt to eke out empirical factors with subsidies from transcendental treasuries.

VITALISM

The biologist seeks to avoid all " isms " except organism. He has the difficult task of steering between a metaphysical Scylla and a materialistic Charybdis. His only safety is to keep close to the facts of the case, and that is easier said than done. On the one hand, it is plain that there are chemical and physical processes always going on in the living organism, and to do justice to these—a fruitful pathway of discovery—is what Comte called " legitimate materialism." Living matter is in a colloidal state, and much that goes on in the living cell must be described as far as possible in terms of the properties of colloids. Innumerable ultra-microscopic particles and unmixing droplets of proteins and other carbon-compounds are suspended in a fluid medium, and their surfaces, very large in proportion to the total volume, afford vast opportunity for physical and chemical changes. We may repeat our useful metaphor, that the invisible particles, whose refractive haloes are sometimes demonstrable in the strong light of an ultra-microscope, may be compared to the islets of an archipelago, whose coast lines, large in proportion to total area, afford opportunity for much trading. Similarly, the biologist must take account of the surface-tensions, the capillarities, the absorptions and adsorptions, the diffusions and so forth, that are observable in the living. Much is to be learned from bio-physics and bio-mechanics, yet the biologist finds that organism transcends mechanism.

So with bio-chemistry, a very illuminating contact of two sciences. In the living body there is an interplay of oxidations, reductions, hydrations, dehydrations, fermentations and so forth; and the science of the living

body cannot afford to ignore any one of them. Yet the biologist clings rightly to the autonomy or independence of his science, since he does not find it possible to give an adequate description of the behaviour, the development, the evolution and the other outstanding features of the organism in terms of bio-physics and bio-chemistry. Abstracted corners may be so described, but no *complete vital phenomenon* has as yet found adequate chemico-physical description; there is some integration or regulatedness or registration of previous individual and racial experience, a purposiveness which is beyond purely chemical and physical formulation—indispensable as these are. Such familiar occurrences as the winking of an eye do not in the present state of science admit of being satisfactorily described in terms of chemistry and physics, but require, in addition, distinctively biological concepts, which might be called organismal, such as growth, development, enregistration and integration. Our position, which may be technically called "methodological vitalism," differs from positive vitalism in not postulating any "vital force," "entelechy," "élan vital," or other *x*, but in simply saying that, as a matter of fact, organisms require for their scientific description certain biological concepts or categories which are at present irreducible. It differs from the mechanistic position in maintaining that the organism, even when it has no demonstrable mental aspect, is more than any mechanism. A new aspect of reality emerged when life began. In other words, the first organisms were new "wholes," new syntheses, which made the world new.

PSYCHO-BIOLOGY

When we come to know the behaviour of living creatures intimately we make two discoveries that are at first sight somewhat divergent. We find that many activities that seemed, to begin with, clever, are really automatic, in the sense that they do not require conscious control. They are reflex, as when the earthworm jerks itself back into its burrow; or tropistic, as when the young eels make steadily upstream all the long spring day; or rhythmic, as when the green Convoluta worm comes to the surface of the sand at the ebb of the tide, and retires again at the first splash of the incoming flow; or instinctive, as when the young spider on its first attempt constructs an intricate web true to type. In the course of Organic Evolution there has evidently been a tendency to enregister in the hereditary constitution ready-made responses to normal circumstances. Care must also be taken to do justice to the individual development of what Pavlov has called "conditioned reflexes," which play an important part in the life of man and beast.[1]

On the other hand, among the higher animals, such as birds and mammals, there are indubitable evidences of intelligence, of putting two and two together, of making a simple inference, of profiting by experience, of "learning" to live effectively. We must use the term *intelligent* when we cannot describe the behaviour without giving the animal credit for "perceptual inference," a sort of picture-logic. And even when the behaviour

[1] These are dealt with in the Article on *Psychology*, p. 329.

cannot be called intelligent, as in a ganglion-less starfish, there may be initiative and experiment, something on a quite different line from enregistered response. But from the amœba, engaged in hunting a smaller amœba, up to the chimpanzee, engaged in joining two bamboo lengths together to make a rod long enough to reach a coveted fruit, there is evidence of mentality; and when it does not take the form of experiment, imaging or ideation, it may be expressed in joy and in the bent bow of purpose. Apart from the extreme behaviourists who maintain that mental activities are only the foam-bells on the stream of nervous activities or neuroses, all naturalists are agreed that animal behaviour is shot through and through with a subjectivity that operates as a *vera causa*, whether it be the emotion of the nightingale or the well-laid schemes of the resourceful otter. Even in the very thoroughgoing instinctive behaviour of ants and bees there are passages which seem to demand flashes of intelligence.

Among higher animals, the higher mammals in particular, there is an undeniable mental or psychical life analogous to our own, with inferences, emotions, purposings and the like comparable to ours. Yet there is no warrant for crediting animals with " *Conceptual* inference " or experimenting with general ideas. They may rise to intelligent reasoning, but they have not Reason in the sense of conceptual inference. In the same way, while many birds and beasts have words, none can be credited with language in the strict sense—the expression of judgments by means of socially imitated sounds. These two prerogatives, Reason and Language, give man a position higher than that of animals, and it is also evident that in mankind the *social heritage* of extra-organismal gains—as in literature, art, institutions and permanent products—plays a very important part, supplementary to that of the *natural inheritance*, enregistered in the germplasm. Among animals there are hardly more than adumbrations of this social heritage, but some of these, notably the ant-hill and the beehive and the termitary, are of surpassing interest. But our present point is the simple one, that mental or psychical activity, which is such a powerful stream in Man, is more or less recognisable in many animals, even if it has not become more than a slender rill. If it were not so, Man would appear as a discontinuity in Organic Evolution, and the drama of animal life would appear as a magical puppet-show. However the fact may be expressed, the mental activity in a dog or a horse is as real as the metabolism, the psychosis as real as the neurosis.

The progress of biological research on the two sides of neurology and ecology has shown very clearly the closeness of the inter-relation between the neural and the psychical. The mind is " thirled " to the body, and the body is thrilled by the mind. Good news helps digestion; strong circulation helps clearness of thought. The various grades of chloroforming correspond to the stoppage of mental currents at successively deeper levels. As the body develops so does the mind; and a thyroid deficiency may spell disaster to the latter as much as to the former.

Some biologists of distinction picture the mind as a musician playing on the instrument of the body (a dualistic view); others of equal distinction, think of mental activity and nervous activity as two inseparable aspects of one reality—the life of the organism, which has two inseparable

sides like the inner concave and the outer concave surfaces of a dome (a monistic view). Many other biologists regard the perennial problem as a limiting one for human intelligence as far as that has yet developed. It is for the philosopher to help the biologist to ask aright the question of the relation between " Body " and " Mind " ; but it is for the biologist to keep to the facts of the case and to make it clear that the organism is very often almost entirely physiological, with just traces of the psychological, while at other times it is conspicuously psychological, with an undercurrent of the physiological. The Yellow Bunting in flight is an extraordinarily dynamic engine or collocation of engines ; but it has a mental picture of its home-tree, a picture inspired with tender emotion, and with memories of mating, nesting and parentage. It is not a mere body ; it is BODY-mind ; its description implies BIO-psychosis. At another time it is singing to its mate ; mentality is in the ascendant ; it is embodied mind or MIND-body ; its description implies PSYCHO-biosis. In using these useful compound words, due to Alexander Bain, it is probably clearest to put the dominant aspect first—BODY-mind in the homing bird, but MIND-body when the nightingale sings.

ORGANIC EVOLUTION

The term evolution is used in so many different connexions that it requires an adjective in front of it to give it precision. Thus in *cosmic* evolution, say, of a solar system, there is no succession of generations nor struggle for existence, as is characteristic of organic evolution. There is *chemical* evolution when uranium gives rise to radium, and radium to lead ; but this is very different from reptiles giving rise to birds, or the wild Rock Dove to domesticated races of pigeons. And again, to give only one other example, *social* evolution implies some awareness of past history and some reasoned guidance towards a future, which cannot be said of the evolution of plants and animals. Yet the fact that some higher animals play an intelligent part in their own endeavours indicates the difficulty of drawing hard-and-fast lines and excluding some perception of a goal. Similarly, looking in the other—the physically determined—direction, we recognise the fact that gamma-rays sometimes play a part in evoking organic variations ; and we remember that in a series of related species of, say, rose the chromosomes in the nucleus of each cell number 7, 14, 28 and 56 for the different kinds. *Organic* evolution is different from social evolution and from chemical evolution, but it cannot be considered altogether apart, since human society is its climax, and since even the most enminded organism is a collocation of matter and energy in a material and energetic environment. All evolution is a process of becoming, in which the present is the child of the past and the parent of the future, but Organic Evolution may be defined as a process of racial change in a definite direction, in the course of which new forms emerge and may be established alongside of or in place of the originative stock. So the first birds emerged from a reptilian stock. Evolution is a natural process comparable to that by which man has established so many different breeds of poultry from the wild jungle fowl, *Gallus bankiva*, of India, and so many different varieties of wheat from the wild wheat still growing on the shoulders of

Mount Hermon ; but what corresponds to man's sifting and singling is to be looked for and found in the processes of selection and isolation verifiable throughout Animate Nature.

From our present point of view it is all-important that the picture of Organic Evolution which Biology contributes to the philosophical synoptic view should be as accurate as is possible. But it must be patiently kept in mind that the whole inquiry is still very young. It was not till the work of Darwin (1859) and the anticipations of a few precursors that Ætiology began to be taken seriously !

Modern Evolution theory has not advanced in idea very far beyond Darwinism, but there has been a great extension of knowledge (as to heredity in particular), and on some lines a deepened understanding. The central Darwinian theory was based on the following propositions :

(*a*) Novelties, new departures, or variations are of frequent occurrence ;

(*b*) Some of them are hereditarily continued in subsequent generations, and only those thus " transmitted " can have direct evolutionary importance ;

(*c*) Some variations, distinguishing offspring from parents, or the members of one family from one another, are in one way or another advantageous to their possessors ;

(*d*) For various reasons, such as rapid multiplication, limited space and food, the changefulness of the callous environment, and the insurgence natural to vigorous organisms, there is a manifold, unceasing, intense, and often very subtle struggle for existence ;

(*e*) In the course of this struggle for existence, when organisms come up against environing difficulties and limitations, there is a process of selection which favours the possessors of the variations that are relatively advantageous in the struggle, and tends to eliminate, quickly or slowly, those that are without them ; and

(*f*) There may also be factors securing some form of isolation for new departures, so that they tend to breed together, thus stabilising their advantageous features. A simple case of this is when new varieties on a peninsula are insulated by some geological change.

In short, the central ideas of Darwinism are : variation, heredity, struggle, selection and isolation ; and modern ætiological research has not yet disclosed any other factors in organic evolution. But evolution theory is evolving—it would be strange if it did not—and we wish to conclude this outline of the biological contributions to philosophy by noticing a few of the post-Darwinian steps that seem to be particularly progressive.

As Regards Variations

One of the central problems of Biology is the origin of the new, for it is by the sifting of newnesses or variations that the ascent of life has come about. In other words, variations or mutations supply the raw material of evolution ; and this has been for the most part progressive or integrative, though from time to time, in diverse types, retrogressive and degenerative,

as in the familiar case of parasites. One of the things we are tired of hearing is that Darwinism accounts for the survival, not for the arrival of the fit; but Darwin was quite clear that Nature's sifting or Natural Selection operates on the novelties or variations that are submitted to it, and these are of very frequent occurrence in Nature. Natural Selection prunes the new shoots on the *arbor vitæ*, but neither Darwin nor any careful biologist ever supposed that the pruning-hooks accounted for the tree or for its new shoots. Darwin began the scientific study of variations, in regard to which he said, with his usual frankness, that our ignorance is immense. We may say the same to-day, yet considerable progress has been made. To Weismann in particular we owe the clearing up of the idea, obscure to Darwin, that variations have *a germinal origin*. The newnesses may not find visible expression until embryonic life is over, or even until adult life begins, but the originative change is to be looked for in some permutation and combination within the complex germ-plasm of the egg-cells and sperm-cells—either in their making, or in their maturing, or in their union at fertilisation. If we compare the hereditary initiatives, technically called " factors," " genes," or " determinants," to the cards of a pack, many opportunities for shuffling are afforded by the intricate manœuvres of the nuclear rods or chromosomes in which the genes are located in each germ-cell. Very important, for instance, is the reduction-division or meiosis which occurs at the ripening or maturation of the egg-cell and of the sperm-cell, for in this peculiar mode of cell-division the number of chromosomes is reduced by a half, the normal number being restored when a " reduced " egg-cell and a " reduced " sperm-cell unite in fertilisation—which may be defined as the intimate and orderly union which is the beginning of each new individual organism, if reproduced in the ordinary way. In the halving of the number of the chromosomes in maturation, and in the restoring of the normal number in fertilisation, there are opportunities for novel permutations and combinations—in other words, for *the origin of the new*.

There is also a remarkable process of " crossing-over " between two adjacent chromosomes lying together inside the nucleus, for an area of the one passes over and changes places with an equal area in the other. As the genes, though invisible, are known to lie in linear order in each chromosome, the " crossing-over " affords yet another possibility of permutation and combination.

Then there is the pooling of the two " reduced " sets of chromosomes that occurs in the microscopic process of fertilisation, to which Weismann applied the term " amphimixis "—the mingling of the paternal and maternal inheritances—each complete in itself, though differing in details. Moreover, one must think of the amphimixis not as the mere mingling of two complex organic substances—half paternal and half maternal : it is the union of two living units or implicit organisms to form one—the fertilised egg-cell. The fertilisation nucleus, with an equal number of chromosomes from each parent, is a reorganised unity which initiates the development of a new individuality. The re-organisation promotes novelties and it also tends to nip the incompatible and the pathological in the bud. One reason why mules, such excellent animals in themselves, are rarely fertile is probably some incompatibility in the chromosomes of the

two parents—the horse and the ass. The first generation succeeds, but there are rarely any more. In the great majority of animals, the crossing of two distinct species is unsuccessful in yielding even one generation of hybrid offspring.

As knowledge grows, the fortuitous seems to shrivel. Variation occurs within limits, within limits narrower than those seen in a kaleidoscope. The new departures must be congruent with what has been already established, just as the novelties that an architect will sanction in adding to a building must be in keeping with the style of what has gone before. In many cases variations in plants or animals are quantitative—a little more of this, and a little less of that, a longer wing and a shorter tail; and Darwin placed great reliance on the selection and hereditary accumulation of those small quantitative variations that are advantageous to their possessors, or conversely on the persistent elimination of those variants in which the new departure is on the disadvantageous side. One must, of course, draw a firm distinction between a variation that is disadvantageous and one that is positively pathological. For in Wild Nature the outcrop of anything pathological or disintegrative seems to be a great rarity, and likely to be nipped in the bud if it occurs. There is very little hint of congenital or constitutional disease in Wild Nature.

Another glimpse of *the frequent definiteness of evolution* is to be found in those rock-records where there is a very perfect preservation of fossil forms. There is sometimes, as in fresh-water snails, or in nautiloids and ammonites, an extraordinary gradation of species—F very different from A, yet connected ever so gradually to A through the intermediate B, C, D, E species or sub-species. In other words, the stages in racial evolution look like the stages in individual development, all is so gradual. To some extent this apparent definiteness of variation—this orthogenesis, as it is called—may be due to the fact that divergent variants were eliminated, but it is strange that these hypothetical divergent variants should be so rarely represented as fossils in these orthogenetic series. In other, more zigzag, lineages the occurrence of divergent forms, off the main line, is often very convincingly documented in the rocks.

Yet another glimpse of the definiteness of variability is seen in those series of species, to which we already referred, which show an arithmetical orderliness in the number of chromosomes in their cells. Thus there are species of rose with 7, 14, 28 and 56 chromosomes; and this is but one example out of many. Thus there are often quantitative differences between related species that recall those between related chemical elements.

Another good reason for discarding the nightmare idea that chance variations furnish the raw materials of evolution may be suggested. A germinal variation, *i.e.*, some new departure in a germ-cell, might well take the form of a change of metabolism involving an extra-production of some ferment, or implying an extra growing power in, say, the ectoderm or outer-layer cells, or leading to increased storage of reserves, and so forth. This variation has opportunity for expression in the development of the offspring, but there it finds itself in certain physiological and morphological trammels. It is not anything that can find expression : there are only a few possibilities open. Just as there are only some half-dozen great types of architecture among crystals, so there is but a limited

number of ways in which multiplying embryonic cells can arrange themselves. What is even more important are the physiological limitations established in living creatures that have been going concerns for millions of years. Thus in an ordinary higher plant, where the antithesis between foliar nutrition (leafing) and floral reproduction (flowering) is so pronounced, variations are likely to find expression in an emphasis on the one or the other. Thus, as Patrick Geddes has well shown, there is in evolution an ever-recurrent dichotomy or forking of the ways between the more grassy and the more orchidaceous, between the more leafy and the more floral. Thus plants with almost invisible flowers but abundant foliage are to be contrasted with the sparsely leafed, but exuberantly floral, such as the extreme case of the parasitic Rafflesia where the vegetative system is almost unrepresented, and there is a colossal flower a yard across; but this contrast is not that of fortuitous variations gradually selected as adaptations to different life-conditions, but rather that between the extremes of two trends—foliar or floral—that are of general occurrence. Similarly many evolutionary trends in higher plants are concerned with a lengthening out or a shortening down of the floral axis—two obvious developmental possibilities. So the new is not the fortuitous, but a fresh expression of individuality within certain constitutional limits.

Among animals a continual physiological alternative seems to have been between speeding-up and slowing-down; *e.g.*, between avian and reptilian types, but this dichotomy or forking of the ways is plainly related to the fact that metabolism has these two aspects, downbreaking or katabolism and upbuilding or anabolism. Or again, a typical life-history shows in varied guise an ascending and a descending curve, like an old-fashioned bridge—an ascent from embryo to larva, from larva to adolescent, from adolescent to maturity and parentage, whence the downgrade to ageing and senescence. Germinal variations may find expression in a lengthening-out or a shortening-down of a particular arc on the life-curve. In this way different types of life-history in related organisms have arisen, and after this deeper rationale is appreciated, it is time to turn to their selected adaptiveness to particular conditions of life.

Variations are broadly distinguishable as (1) minute *fluctations* of a quantitative character, which may mean much, as Darwin thought, if long continued and accumulated, *e.g.*, a lengthening of the feathers of flight; and (2) brusque *mutations* of a qualitative character, which make a definite step, large or small, without gradated intermediate stages, *e.g.*, a white blackbird. Darwin was much interested in discontinuous variations or mutations (also called "saltatory," "brusque," "sports,") but thought that they would be averaged off in crossing. It is now known, however, that when mutations come, they usually come to stay; they take a strong hereditary grip; as will be explained later on, they illustrate Mendelian inheritance.

We must admit, however, that it is especially when we consider mutations, where something distinctively novel suddenly emerges, that we feel the inadequacy of our knowledge in regard to the origin of the new. Let us sum up the possibilities :—

(1) Novelties may arise in kaleidoscopic fashion by new permutations and combinations of the hereditary factors or genes, notably in

maturation, " crossing over," and fertilisation. To some extent this may be thought of as shuffling of the hereditary cards.

(2) Changes in the nutritive stream within the body may provoke changes in the nature of the genes—a factor to which Weismann was for a time inclined to attach much importance. There can be no doubt that some changes in diet effect some novelty in the offspring.

(3) Important changes in the body, induced by environmental and functional modifications of a penetrating nature, *e.g.*, change of climate, may evoke changes of some sort in the germ-cells, though it would seem that these are not (as far as known) such that the original parental modifications reappear hereditarily in the offspring. A modification may be defined as a structural change in the body directly induced in the individual life-time by some peculiarity in surroundings, food or habits.

(4) Deeply penetrating environmental changes, saturating through the body, may provoke changes in the genes, as may be illustrated by recent experiments which indicate that gamma-rays may serve as variational stimuli, provoking the genes to change. Thus change of climate may induce changes in a race.

(5) There may be, as Weismann suggested, some form of germinal struggle and selection among the hereditary initiatives or determinants; thus if a particular kind is in course of being weakened by some variational trend, this deterioration may be hastened by some subtle form of intra-cellular competition. This is called " germinal selection " ; but few biologists seem to favour the hypothesis.

(6) Just as a slipper-animalcule (Paramecium) may in certain conditions exhibit a remarkable process of scrapping and re-organisation called " endomixis," so there may be in the germ-cells a re-arrangement of materials ; and here there is also some suggestiveness in the sudden way in which some microbes change their character from virulence to innocence, or conversely. We must never lose sight of the commonplace, that the germ-cells are living unities—implicit organisms.

(7) Finally, in regard to this central problem of Biology, the origin of the distinctively new, it may be suggested that it is difficult to think of a germ-cell, of a higher animal at least, as being without its psychical aspect. Unless we think of " the mind " as entering in at a later stage in development, the germ-cell must have a dim primordium of the subjective, the promise and potency of mentality. If so, it is easier to credit the microscopic implicit organism, as rich in initiatives as a germ-cell is, with making experiments of some sort in self-expression ; and that is what mutations are. Perhaps we exaggerate the difficulty of the problem because we are so slow to take the psycho-biological point of view. That mind may influence body in the highest expressions of both is a certainty of experience, though we cannot explain how it is done ; perhaps the same holds in the apparently simplest cases of germ-cells on the one hand and unicellulars on the other, that the first stirrings of what will be individual and racial mind are not without influence.

As Regards Heredity

Heredity is no " force " or " principle " or " entity," but a flesh-and-blood (or genetic) relation between successive generations, such that like

necessarily tends to beget like. This depends on *the continuity of the germ-cells*, a fact brought into prominence by Weismann. What it means is that, that if a fertilised egg-cell be thought of as containing the initiatives or " factors " of a number of qualities, *a*, *b*, *c* . . . *x*, *y*, *z*, it divides into many cells in which these same qualities are continued, for ordinary cell-division, as we have already mentioned, is meticulously exact. But while the great majority of the cells of the developing body undergo division of labour, whose structural aspect is called differentiation, some expressing more of the qualities *a*, *b*, and others more of the qualities, *y*, *z*, and so on, there are other cells which do not share in body-making, but retain in unspecialised intactness the original qualities, or initiatives of qualities, *a*, *b*, *c* . . . *x*, *y*, *z*; and these cells become the foundations of the reproductive organs of the offspring. They form other cells like themselves, that is to say, more germ-cells, and some of these are in due time liberated to start another generation. As these germ-cells (the egg-cells and sperm-cells) have in intactness the qualities *a*, *b*, *c* . . . *x*, *y*, *z*, they will develop into similar organisms, provided always that the appropriate environment is forthcoming. Thus there is a continuance of a specific organisation from parents to offspring and so forth; and this continuance, not very happily termed transmission, is the central fact in heredity.

Yet we can only say that like *tends* to beget like, for heredity includes the possibility of variation, which is an incompleteness or change in the hereditary resemblance. The inheritance, the " natural inheritance " as Galton called it, includes all that the organism is or has to start with in virtue of its hereditary relation with its parents and ancestors; and this implies the inclusion of any novelty or variation which may have occurred, as we have explained, in the intricate history of the germ-cells. Any viable inborn novelty of germinal original is *ipso facto* transmissible or continuable; and no organic change that is not proved to be transmissible can have a direct part in evolution. Thus heredity is a condition of evolution.

This raises the much-discussed question whether individual modifications, badly called, " acquired characters," can be handed on as such, or in any representative degree, to succeeding generations. As we have already said, a modification is an individually acquired bodily change, directly due to some peculiarity in functioning, nutrition or environment, which so transcends the limits of organic elasticity that it persists after the inducing causes have ceased to operate. Exercise strengthens a muscle; sluggishness leads to a deposit of fat; deficient food brings about a degeneration; altered diet is followed by a change in the wall of the gull's stomach; total darkness leads to the gold-fish becoming quite blind; a man becomes tanned in the course of years of work in India; a sheep transported to a cold country thickens its fleece; a white Proteus from the Dalmation caves soon becomes dark-coloured in a well-lighted laboratory; and so on through a very long list.

But if we ask whether these modifications can be hereditarily continued or entailed on the next generation, even in a slight representative degree, the evidence for the affirmative is very far from convincing. Modifications are often of great importance for the individual organism that acquires them, but they do not seem to be handed on as such, and if so they cannot

be of direct importance in the evolution of the race. There are some puzzling cases which lead the cautious biologist to keep the question open, but on the whole it must be said that there is little convincing evidence to show that a bodily modification is ever continued in the inheritance. This should not lead to any depreciation of the importance of nurture, or of changed nurture, for the individual, since the same advantageous modifications can be hammered on afresh for each successive crop of organisms ; and disadvantageous modifications may be similarly evaded. It should also be noted, as Weismann always emphasised in his criticism of Lamarckian theory, that some deeply saturating influences, say of food and climate, may influence the entire organism, including its germ-cells, so that the germ-plasm may be affected, for better or for worse, *along with the body* ; and a germinal change thus induced would naturally find expression in the next generation. But this is very different from Lamarck's theory that modern giraffes have long necks because of the hereditary cumulation of the minute increases acquired by many generations of ancestors who stretched out their cervical vertebræ as they reached up to the leaves on higher branches. It is very different from Herbert Spencer's theory that he had small hands because his father and grandfather, being schoolmasters, were habituated to such neat manipulations as sharpening pencils ! Yet as it appears to many incredible that experience should not count at all as a factor in organic evolution, it must be noted that this depreciation of the importance of individual experience is not involved in a rejection of the evidence adduced in support of Lamarck's theory of *direct* adaptation through use and disuse. Experience has certainly counted, for it is in their daily experience and in expressions of their new desires and needs (Lamarck's *besoin*) that organisms test the novelties with which germinal variability has endowed them. It is in experience that new departures are tested, and the testing often determines whether they are continued to many offspring, or to few, or to none at all.

In viviparous organisms, such as seed-bearing plants and all mammals save two, there is a more or less prolonged partnership between the offspring and the parent. The seed is a young plant intimately bound to its parent, often for a long time before it is scattered. The unborn young mammal is bound to the wall of its mother's womb in a very intimate partnership, which might well be called symbiosis. In both these cases it is plain that the young creature may be profoundly influenced while it is still in organic continuity with its parent, and though this influence, both plus and minus, is not in the strict sense part of its inheritance, it may count for the individual offspring as if it were. Thus there may be a general strengthening or a general weakening of the young mammal's constitution according as the mother's health is vigorous or depressed. But this is certainly not what is meant by " the transmission of an acquired character."

Here, also, it may be noted, as before, that in mankind the extra-organismal inheritance, usefully called the *social* heritage, may have an influence on the offspring so powerful that it may be compared to that of the *natural inheritance*, whose bearer is the germ-plasm. In social animals, such as ants and bees, rooks and beavers, there is a dim adumbration of

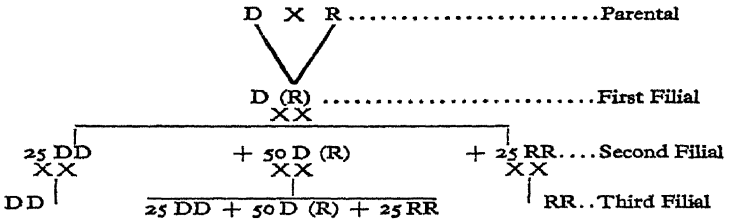
the social heritage which becomes so determinative in man, and is indeed one of the criteria of the sociological as different from the biological. More and more in modern times does the social heritage become the custodian of human progress ; yet the inheritance of a healthy body is as fundamental as the heritage of truth, beauty and goodness is supreme.

The whole science of heredity has been changed by the discovery of " Mendelian Inheritance " by the Abbot Mendel in 1865, and by its rediscovery by De Vries, Correns and Tschermak in 1900. Every inheritance is largely made up of a series of " unit characters," which do not blend or break up, but remain intact from generation to generation. So far as is known these " unit characters " are represented in the germ-plasm by ultra-microscopic differentiations localised, in linear order, in the chromosomes of the nucleus of the egg-cell and sperm-cell ; and, as we have already noted, they are called hereditary " factors," " genes," or " determinants." They are invisible, but they are not symbols ; they are living initiatives of subsequent differentiations, leading to what are called the hereditary characters of the organism. But several genes may be concerned in determining one character, such as the colour of the hair ; and one gene may influence the development of several characters, as some change in the chemical routine may readily do. A gene or a linkage of genes may germinally represent a large constitutional peculiarity, such as sex or rapidity of reaction or immunity to some disease ; at the other extreme it may be the determinant of some triviality, such as some new grimace on a snapdragon flower or a new colour in a fruit-fly's eye.

These unit characters, whose origin has been well-studied, since they recur under observation and in experimental conditions, are known to arise as mutations, that is to say, as sharply-defined, brusque novelties which are not connected by intergrades with the condition found in the originative stock. They may be large or small, important or trivial ; but they all behave in the same way in inheritance, they do not blend or break up, they " mendelise." As instances may be named : gigantism or dwarfism in peas, green or yellow seed colour in peas, the colour of the iris, short hair or Angora hair in rabbits, crests in poultry or none, horns in cattle or none, bands on a wood-snail's shell or none, night-blindness or normal sight in man, broodiness or its absence in hens, dentate or entire margin in nettle-leaves, and so on through scores of well-established cases. The drawback, indeed, to giving a list of instances is that we are thereby apt to obscure the fact that a very large number of hereditary features have been shown to be unit characters which mendelise.

As an example of Mendelian Inheritance, and that is all that can be attempted here, let us take the picturesque case of the Japanese waltzing or dancing mouse. This variety of the common mouse has some obscure peculiarity in its nervous system that behaves as a unit character. It has the habit of dancing round in circles, and with this other idiosyncrasies, such as deafness, are associated. Now if a waltzing mouse be paired with a normal mouse, all the offspring are normal ; and this fact is expressed in the statement that normality is dominant and waltzing recessive. But if the apparently normal hybrid offspring, the first filial (F.1) generation, pair amongst themselves or with others like themselves of similar history, what is the character of the second filial (F.2) generation ? Mendel found

that, on an average, 75 per cent. will show the dominant feature and 25 the recessive. In other words, in a dozen F.2 mice (of the history just given) there will be nine normals and three waltzers. If these waltzers are paired together, or with others of similar history, they will yield waltzers only—leading on to a future lineage of perfectly pure recessives, as long as no dominants are allowed to mingle with them. As to the 75 per cent. of dominants, a third of them are shown by breeding to be pure dominants comparable to the pure recessives, while two-thirds of them will be impure dominants like their immediate parents—apparently, but not really normal. If these are bred together they will yield the same proportion of three normals to one waltzer ; and of the three normals one will be genetically wholly normal, while two will have the recessive or waltzing character unexpressed in development, but latent in some of the germ-cells, as further breeding shows. If we use the letters " D " and " R " for the dominant and recessive characters respectively, and allow them for shortness to stand for the possessors of the respective characters, then the Mendelian rule may be briefly expressed in schematic form :—



Here D (R) means that the recessive character, though not patent, is latent in the inheritance. The doubling of the letters (DD and RR) means extracted (or genetically pure) dominants or recessives. The inbreeding of similars is indicated by the two crosses (XX). Returning to the waltzing mouse, we see that all in the hybrid or first filial generation would appear quite normal, behaving as such. In the second filial generation a quarter of the total number of mice might be sold as pure waltzers, though neither of their parents could be so described. And a third of the dominants of the same second filial generation might be certified as pure normals, though in each case the grandparent on one side of the house was a waltzer.

It may be noted that it is sometimes possible to distinguish the pure from the impure dominant externally, as is well illustrated by blue Andalusian fowls. When black and white Andalusian fowls are paired the resulting chickens show a finely divided pattern of black-and-white marking, which is called " blue." Black is dominant, D ; white is recessive, R ; and blue, D (R), is the impure dominant. If the blues are paired together, the average outcome per dozen chickens will be three blacks (DD), three whites (RR), and six blues D (R).

When the parents differ not in two contrasted characters, but in two pairs or three pairs, the resulting types will be more numerous, but the striking feature throughout is that the various dominant and recessive characters appear in successive generations in definite proportions and in their entirety or intactness. This is due to a segregation of the genes or

factors in the germ-cells, for if there were 100 egg-cells, 50 of them would carry the dominant gene and 50 the recessive. The same is true of the sperm-cells, and fortuitous fertilisation of D or R egg-cells by D or R sperm-cells must yield the Mendelian ratio—1 DD + 2 D (R) + 1 RR, where only one pair of contrasted characters is concerned. Mendel had this idea of the segregation of the hereditary factors among the germ-cells of the hybrid D (R) generation, but he was naturally unaware of the fact, demonstrated by modern cytology, that the arrangement which secures this segregation is afforded by the reducing or meiotic division that occurs at the maturation of both egg-cells and sperm-cells, when the number of chromosomes in each unit is halved.

Before we leave this mere suggestion of one of the most important of modern biological discoveries, of equal theoretical and practical importance, we may notice, to avoid misunderstanding, that no one as yet understands why one of two contrasted characters should be dominant and the other recessive. The terms simply express the genetic fact that one of the two contrasted characters finds expression in the development of the offspring, while the other does not. There is no suggestion that the dominant character, which finds expression in the hybrid offspring (F.1), is stronger, older, more positive, or fitter than the recessive character, which remains latent or unexpressed. Another point is that Mendelian inheritance typically occurs when two contrasted true-breeding races or varieties or sub-species of *the same species* are paired. For the occurrence of fertile hybrids between related species is only occasional. It is typical of species that they are *not* fertile with related species, though not a few species-hybrids, *e.g.* mules, are well known.

Many biologists still recognise other modes of inheritance besides Mendelian, such as *blending*, as in " half-bred " sheep, the true-breeding result of crossing, say, Cheviots and Leicesters ; or *coarsely particulate*, as in a piebald pony ; or *reversionary*, as when a foal shows stripes on its withers ; or *complete hereditary resemblance* as in very pure-bred stocks where homogeneity prevails.[1]

Struggle and Selection

Darwin's conception of the struggle for existence was far ahead of that promulgated by many of his coadjutors, such as Huxley, and some of his disciples have strayed further than Huxley from the facts of Nature. For Darwin insisted that the phrase is to be used in " a wide and metaphorical sense," since the reality includes much more than life-and-death competition around the platter of subsistence. It includes efforts to baulk a callous environment and to secure for the family a good send-off in life ; it rises from cannibalism to an endeavour after well-being ; it extends to all the reactions that organisms make against environing difficulties and limitations.

Selection is a general term for all the sifting and winnowing that goes on in Nature, and few have realised its subtlety as Darwin did. It may be competition so keen that one variant with a plus novelty may kill another

[1] The subject of Mendelian Inheritance is also discussed in the Article on *Sex*, p. 261.

without it ; or it may be between co-variants of the same species and a common enemy ; or it may be entirely non-competitive, *e.g.* against an unfriendly environment. The selection may be *lethal*, when the issue is a quick or a slow killing off, the relatively fitter surviving ; or it may be *reproductive*, when one type prevails in the course of time by having larger and more successful families than its rival or neighbour. What determines survival varies greatly from case to case. For the issue may depend on hardiness of constitution, on inconspicuousness, on swiftness of foot, on quickness of sense, on ability to utilise a long bill of fare, on capacity for winter-sleep, on nimble brains, on good digestion, on way-finding or homing, on fertility, on parental devotion, on beauty—and we need not continue the list. The important point is that the selection or sifting is in operation whenever and wherever the degree of survival and success depends upon the presence or absence of particular variations, which are possessed by some members of a species but not by others. A famine may reduce an animal population, say of lemmings, to a mere remnant, but it will not affect the character of the species unless the survivors survived in virtue of the possession of some particular qualities which were not shared by those eliminated, or not shared in the same degree. It is only *discriminate elimination* that counts.

In the sifting that goes on in Nature the agent is the struggle for existence, and the sieve is the system of inter-relations—the web of life—in which the organisms in question are involved. Thus the sifting may be so penetrating that it eliminates and fosters in reference to characters which might be at first sight regarded as trivial. We might say that natural selection can separate those organisms which say Shibboleth from those that say Sibboleth.

Besides the many forms of natural selection, there is sex selection, where the sifting is in relation to reproductive success or preferential mating, and there are other forms, all operating in the same general way ; the survivors surviving, the successful succeeding, because they differ in some particular feature from those that are eliminated. And there may even be survival value in *not* varying, as very conservative types, like the Lamp-Shell Lingula, the King-Crab and the Pearly Nautilus, well illustrate.

In domestication and cultivation man practises what Darwin called " Artificial Selection " ; he works deliberately towards a desired end. But this cannot be said of natural selection, which goes on automatically. Yet it must be carefully noted that natural selection operates in reference to the already established *Systema Naturæ* and web of inter-relations, so that is far removed from fortuitousness. Moreover, various evolutionist thinkers, notably Professor James Ward, have pointed out—it is a very open secret—that living creatures often take a share in their own evolution by striving to make the most of their hereditary equipment in the given circumstances, or even by bending these circumstances to their will. This is part of the truth in Lamarckism, that the more vigorous animals always show something of the bent bow of endeavour. Organisms play their hand of hereditary cards for better or for worse, and thus, though they have neither ideals nor conceived purposes, they take a share in directing their own evolution. The picture of Organic Evolution as " a chapter of accidents " is an unwholesome caricature.

Isolation

As regards isolation, it is illustrated whenever there is a narrowing of the range of inter-crossing among the members of a species. It may be by a peninsula becoming an island or an archipelago, by a flood changing a river-bed, by a lava flow interposing a barrier, or by the development of an impassable stretch of desert-land. Or apart from such geographical isolations, there may be reproductive variations which establish among the members of a species differences in the time of sex-maturity, so that only similar forms can pair together. Or the same may result from variations in size and structure. Or there may be psychical preferences and antipathies which serve to narrow the range of inter-crossing. On the whole, inbreeding or endogamy tends to stabilise the characters of a species, while outbreeding or exogamy tends to promote an outcrop of new variations, two facts familiar to breeders, and often illustrated in human history. Close endogamy does not seem in itself to induce degeneracy, unless there are marked hereditary taints and defects in the inbreeding stock. In many cases a recessive Mendelian character of a minus kind, which is masked when there has been crossing of dominant-bearing and recessive-bearing individuals, is exposed by inbreeding, when two recessive-bearing individuals are more likely to pair. The outcrop of the deteriorative recessive characters is often referred to the evil influence of consanguineous unions as such, whereas it is really due to the conditions of Mendelian inheritance.

On many islands there are unique species, such as the St. Kilda Wren, the St. Kilda Mouse, the Fair Isle Mouse, and the Orkney Vole ; and one of the facts that most impressed Darwin on his famous Columbus voyage on the *Beagle*—discovering a new world, evolved and evolving—was seeing seven or so separate species of Giant Tortoise on as many islands of the Galapagos Archipelago. There can be little doubt that these separate species represent divergent offshoots from an original species which inhabited a great equatorial peninsula projecting from Central America into the Pacific. When a partial submergence of the peninsula resulted in an archipelago, variations emerged in the groups of tortoise on the various islands, and the fact of isolation assisted in the process of species-making. This view is corroborated by the fact that the Giant Tortoises do not voluntarily swim, and thus have a restricted breeding-range. This illustrates the isolation-factor in Organic Evolution.

In Conclusion

Three general considerations must be briefly alluded to in conclusion :—

(*a*) In spite of ourselves we tend to speak too often of past evolution, and too little of that which is at present going on. This is not unnatural, since the period under man's observation and record is so short compared with the hundreds of millions of years during which Organic Evolution has been in progress. Moreover, some types have long ago reached positions of well-established equilibrium, and do not seem to have varied much for ages, or to be varying in any marked way to-day. On the other

hand, we have before our eyes the continued changefulness of domesticated animals—there is always some new dog on the market—and of the cultivated plants, as is evident in flower-shows, and in such exuberantly mutant forms as Lamarck's evening primrose, *Œnothera Lamarckiana*, which has been prolific in novelties. Outside man's shield, though under his scrutiny, there are some well-known mutating species like the fruit-fly, *Drosophila ampelophila*, which has in the twentieth century given rise to numerous true-breeding varieties. If these occurred in Wild Nature they would be regarded as new species. They are possible species in the making. It is not very long since some long-tailed field mice (*Apodemus* or *Mus sylvaticus*) were accidentally marooned on Fair Isle, one of the Shetlands, and there establishing themselves, gave rise in the course of generations to a new species, *Apodemus fridariensis*. Within recent years, the story has repeated itself, for some Fair Isle mice were taken by chance to the Ultima Thule of Tacitus, the island of Foula, some twenty miles out into the Atlantic, and have there by further variation given rise to a new variety, *Apodemus fridariensis thuleo*, which may, by continued divergence and stabilising, become clearly worthy of a new specific name. For approximately stable varieties are new species in the making. It is a question of degree. The important fact is that *evolution is going on*.

(*b*) In the minds of some loose thinkers, especially of anti-evolutionist prejudice, there lingers an erroneous view of the origin of species which is often expressed in the criticism that no naturalist has ever seen one species of plant or animal turn into another. It might be replied that brusque mutants occur which are at a leap as different from their parents as are many instances of related species; or it might be pointed out that the mills of organic evolution grind very slowly; but the final answer is that the critics are looking for a phenomenon which the evolutionist has not even imagined. What has happened, and still happens, in the origin of a new species is that a number of similar variants diverge from the parent stock, breed together, attain specific stability, and find a footing in the struggle for existence, often in some slightly novel niche of opportunity. If their novel features are very markedly advantageous as compared with those of the originative stock, the new may oust the old; or as often happens, the old and the new may get along together, probably with some slight difference in habits and habitat. But one species does not turn into another; that would be magic, not evolution!

(*c*) The origin of well-marked newnesses is the most striking feature in evolution and the crowning wonder of life. We refer especially to great steps, such as the origin of birds from an extinct reptilian stock, or the origin of warmbloodedness or viviparity, or the origin of tentative men. In these new departures and in many others more or less comparable in magnitude, the step is in kind rather than in degree. We cannot but feel that what appears is too big for its premises; it is certainly more than the additive result of its antecedents. This is expressed by calling it a new synthesis, a new "whole," an "emergence." The terms do not explain anything, but they lay useful emphasis on the fact that many of the great novelties that have successively arisen in the course of the ascent of life are disclosures of some new aspect of reality which could hardly have been

anticipated. Even below the level of the living there are some good illustrations of emergence, and one of the best is water. From a union of two gases—hydrogen and oxygen—there emerges liquid water, an unpredictable novelty with remarkable properties of far-reaching importance, making the whole world new. At the other end of the scale, the appearance of man, though implying a slow dawn, was an emergence, for man's reason is a power very different from intelligence, which he shares with the higher animals, and man's language is very different from animal speech. The story of Organic Evolution shows a succession of creative emergences.

The " man in the street " has often a philosophy—an attempt to think of all things together, and this colours his life. In the philosophic or synoptic picture a large place must be found for Organic Evolution ; and it is therefore very important that everyone should have a clear vision of the actual facts, which are often travestied in careless exposition. Even the expert philosophers are sometimes open to the reproach of dealing with worn clichés of Nature, instead of with the facts themselves. Thus it is seldom recognised that the evolution of Animate Nature shows trends towards human ideals. In Wild Nature there is almost no disease ; Organic Evolution makes for health. Animate Nature also favours that mastery of natural energies—a food store as its simplest—which allows of a certain freedom of action and victory over vicissitudes. Organic Evolution makes for wealth. But if health and wealth be regarded as no more than pre-conditions of man's true progress, which is a balanced all-round movement towards a fuller realisation of the true, the beautiful and the good, the biologist can advance his position and maintain that there are in Organic Evolution great trends towards even the highest values. Thus Beauty is almost omnipresent ; the success of Birds and Mammals is a testimony to the survival values of the raw materials of morals ; the largest fact in Organic Evolution is the growing emancipation of Mind, and many are the rewards that have gone to clear-minded as well as able-bodied animals. Part of the momentum of Organic Evolution works in Man to-day, and while we always hope that the ape and tiger may die within us, we are not perhaps sufficiently appreciative of other pre-human legacies which are in line with our best endeavours.

Finally, it is often and rightly said, as we have just been suggesting, that Man must be considered in the light of Organic Evolution, the outcome of an age-long process—and also a promise. But we must also envisage Organic Evolution in the light of man, since it is in Man that Nature finds its chief significance. We might say, *Finis coronat opus* ; were we not reluctant to think of any full stop to the evolutionary process as a whole.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

PATRICK GEDDES and J. ARTHUR THOMSON : *Biology* (Home University Library) (London. 1925). An introduction

J. ARTHUR THOMSON and PATRICK GEDDES : *Life—Outlines of General Biology* ; 2 vols. (London. 1931)

H. G. WELLS, JULIAN HUXLEY, and G. P. WELLS : *The Science of Life.* (London. 1931). A large treatise, very lucidly written

HERBERT SPENCER : *Principles of Biology* ; 2 vols. (London. 1866). A classic

J. B. S. HALDANE and J. S. HUXLEY : *Animal Biology* (Oxford. 1928). A very educative up-to-date book

S. J. HOLMES : *Life and Evolution, an Introduction to General Biology* (London. 1931)

A. HARTMANN : *Allgemeine Biologie* (Jena. 1927). The best recent treatise on general biology ; with a good bibliography

L. L. WOODRUFF : *Foundations of Biology* (London. 1922)

J. ARTHUR THOMSON : *Everyday Biology* (London. 1924). Short Introduction

The New Natural History ; 3 vols. (London. 1926)

A. DENDY : *Evolutionary Biology* ; revised edn. (London. 1923)

F. O. BOWER : *Botany of the Living Plant* (London. 1919). A masterpiece

E. S. RUSSELL : *The Study of Living Things* (London. 1924)

The Interpretation of Development and Heredity—A Study in Biological Method (Oxford. 1930). A very important treatise

L. HOGBEN : *The Nature of Living Matter* (London. 1930)

JAMES JOHNSTONE : *The Philosophy of Biology* (Cambridge. 1914)

A. F. SHULL : *Principles of General Biology* (New York. 1920)

MACGREGOR SHENE : *The Biology of Flowering Plants* (London. 1924) An excellent book. See also his *Common Plants* (London. 1921)

E. V. COWDRY (editor) : *Human Biology and Racial Welfare* (London. 1930)

SEX

By

F. A. E. CREW

SYNOPSIS

Is there a better definition of sex than that of Plato, which suggested that in the beginning man and woman were one but that through the wrath of the gods they were cleft apart, only ceaselessly to strive thereafter to come together again? Even though we cannot define sex exactly, we can describe its manifestations. Is sexuality only to be understood and justified by reference to its relation to reproduction? Can we dissociate the two and study them apart? We can, and we can conclude that the attitude which demands that sex shall be the servant of reproduction cannot honestly find support in an appeal to biological fact.

How and when is the sex of the individual determined? The sex-determining mechanism has been laid bare, and the precision of its workings revealed. We know that sex is determined at the time of fertilisation by the mechanism which governs the distribution of the sex-chromosomes. But we know, further, that this mechanism in many forms can be and is influenced, even overwhelmed, by the impress of other agencies. Just as in controlled experiment, male can be transformed into female and female into male, so also under certain conditions sex-inversion can proceed in nature. The rôle of the sex-hormones in this strange reversal of sexual destiny is even now fairly clearly understood, and our present knowledge permits us to envisage a future in which many forms of personal and social disharmony will be repaired by means of the therapeutic use of these most potent modellers not only of the body but also of the mind, for already it can be shown that many of the problems of the psychologist need for their solution an appreciation of the facts of the newer physiology and biochemistry.

More boys than girls are born: among people eighty years of age and over there are twice as many women as men. It would seem that far more male children than female are conceived, and that both before and after birth the male dies far more easily than does the female. What is the explanation of these and allied facts? How might the sex-ratio be controlled?

SEX

THE NATURE OF SEX

Sex, in its manifold manifestations, is so intimately woven into the fabric of human life that anyone, be he scientist or layman, must approach its study with awakened interest. When once the mind becomes entangled with the problems, personal and social, which cluster around sex, then, inevitably, insistent wonder and curiosity are aroused to yield in their turn, all too commonly, it would seem, myth and legend, taboo and doctrine. In every generation and in every land the complex of sex has been, and still is, regarded as one of the outstanding problems of the day. With passing time the problem has remained unchanged, but the attitude of peoples toward it has varied. In some societies an interest in matters pertaining to sex has been openly admitted; in others it has been anxiously and imperfectly concealed. To-day and in most countries it is no longer accepted that sex is one of the great mysteries that defy understanding, and the recognition of the fact that its peculiar mechanisms are complicated merely stimulates enquiry and no longer inhibits effortful analysis. The point of view is gaining ground that sex is a matter to be examined and explained.

Science, which has enabled man to know the laws which govern the movements of molecules and the mechanisms which drive the world on toward its destiny, has also taught him that he may think of himself, with all his lusts and pains, his doings and his dreams, his beginning and his ending, as the expressions of physico-chemical forces ; even though, beyond and above all these, something other and additional may exist. It is this attitude of mind which has encouraged man to tear aside the veils which have concealed the problem of sex, and thus to learn that in all probability all expressions of sex are nothing more or less than the results of the workings of a knowable, analysable, chemical mechanism. We know that male can be transformed into female : female into male ; that those details of structure which distinguish the sexes can be destroyed and as easily restored. We know a great deal of the manner in which, and of the time at which, sex is determined in the life history of the individual, and that the mechanisms involved in this process can be manipulated to an extent far beyond the imagination of those who are unacquainted with recent developments in this field. That we know these things and more is due to the fact that sex—an attribute of the living organism—has become a proper study for the biologist who, unlike the layman, does not regard sex as an exclusively human affair. To him, sex in man is only one instance of a phenomenon which is to be encountered in countless other forms of life. That we know already a little about ourselves is due to the fact that we have learned a lot about other forms. The reader who prefers to hold the view that man is surprisingly different from mouse or microbe in respect of the fundamental phenomena of life must not expect to

glean much from the writings of a biologist. The comparative method is universally employed in scientific enquiry, and biology has ever assumed that such phenomena as natality, mortality, sexuality and reproduction, for example, are not the peculiar possessions of any one particular species, but are the attributes of living things in general.

To the layman, unacquainted with the more recently disclosed facts, nothing could appear simpler than to define sex by stating that there are two sexes—male and female; that male differs from female in that he provides one kind of germ-cell, the spermatozoon (Gk. *sperma*=seed, *zoon*=animal), she another kind, the ovum or egg, and that, associated with this main difference, there are others which permit the observer to tell at a glance whether any given individual belongs to one sex or to the other. It is the case that one can classify the individuals of those forms of life with which the layman is acquainted as males and females, but when one undertakes a survey of the multitude of different forms of animal and plant life one finds that the distinguishing features quickly disappear. Yet, though in many forms the sexes can no longer be distinguished, it can be shown that amongst these there is still sex. What, then, is sex? The layman may perhaps find an answer, but no biologist has yet given a sufficiently comprehensive and satisfactory reply. We do not know what sex is. Biology has not yet reached that stage of its development when it can describe the objects of its searchings. To one who is acquainted with the history of the sciences this is not surprising, for it will be found that the nature of the subject of scientific enquiry is commonly the last thing to be discovered. The physicist writes easily of matter, but he is not able to state what matter is. The biologist speaks easily about sex, yet he does not know what sex is. For the present, he disregards this fact and busies himself legitimately with a description and a consideration of the varied expressions of certain phenomena which are regarded by him as pertaining to the sex-equipment of the individual.

One need not travel far in order to prove to oneself that superficial structural differences in characterisation are not satisfactory criteria for identifying the sex of an individual. The cock can be distinguished easily from the hen of a domestic fowl; to distinguish the drake from the duck of many of the self-coloured domesticated breeds is not so simple; whilst to distinguish the gander from the goose requires the knowledge of an expert breeder. And if one passes from the bird to the fish and onwards in a survey of the simpler forms of life, one at once finds that in countless forms in which sex exists there is no ready means of distinguishing male from female. So that, whatever sex may be, it does not demand the existence of two types of individuals, readily distinguishable one from the other by differences in their superficial characterisations.

In many of the forms in which male is not to be distinguished from female by differences in form or adornment, the sex of the individual can be recognised by reference to the rôle that the individual plays in the act of sexual congress. In man and in domesticated animals generally the male, during the sexual act, deposits the spermatozoa elaborated in his testes within the genital tract of the female. But reference to other forms shows that mating does not necessarily demand the intimate congress of two bodies. In the case of certain newts, the male deposits a gelatinous

capsule containing his spermatozoa on the bottom of the river or of the aquarium, and the female then takes this up within her vaginal orifice. There is a small cuttlefish in which the semen of the male is passed into a transformed arm, which then breaks away and makes its way through the water until it meets a female of the species, into whose body it passes. In all these cases, mating involves the transference of spermatozoa elaborated by special organs—the testes—within the body of the male to the genital tract of the female. But, in other forms, mating is concerned with the transference of material which cannot be regarded as being either a part of the sex equipment of the individual or a product thereof. The slipper animalculæ, Paramæcium, for example, which is a minute, single-celled organism that lives in stagnant fresh-water pools, mates by forming a temporary union with another individual, quite indistinguishable from itself, by means of a bridge of living matter or protoplasm (Gk. *protos*=first; *plasma*=form). Across this bridge nuclear material is exchanged, and thereafter the individuals separate again. In other forms, mating consists in the complete and permanent fusion of two complete individuals to form one.

It is difficult to trace a common feature through all these instances of mating. In the lowest forms it involves the permanent union of two whole individuals. Next comes the transient union of whole bodies and the interchange of bodily material. Thereafter comes the relegation of the task of providing the sexual contribution to special organs of the body. Associated with this are refinements in the mechanisms, by means of which the spermatozoa are transferred into the genital passage of the female. These make fertilisation of the ova by the spermatozoa more certain. This being so, the opportunity for practising economy in the production of ova is provided. Many fish, for example, extrude millions of ova during the breeding season, but, since fertilisation occurs in the water when ova chance to meet the spermatozoa extruded by the male, the majority are never fertilised. In the mammal, on the other hand, the spermatozoa are deposited in the genital tract of the female, and fertilisation is practically certain. It is a matter of interest to note that such economy is practised only by the female. The male, during the act of sexual congress, provides enough spermatozoa to fertilise millions of ova, yet commonly only one ovum is available for fertilisation. The variety in the matter of mating amongst the different species is such as to make it impossible to derive any general principle from a comparative study. The sex of an individual cannot be identified by reference to the rôle played by that individual during sexual congress.

It would seem that one is almost driven to the view, that the nature and meaning of sex can only be recognised by bringing it into a definite and essential relation with reproduction. Society and the needs which have had their origin in the peculiarities of its structure have indeed always demanded that sex and reproduction shall not only be related one to the other in their actual expression, but also that sex can only be understood and justified by postulating that it is the mechanism which Nature has ever used for the preservation of the species and for the improvement of the race. It will be found that in most biological text-books, " reproduction " is the title of the chapter which includes a subordinated account

of sex. Morals, as determined by recent forms of civilisation and as taught by cleric and philosopher, unhesitatingly state that sex is the servant of reproduction ; the means whereby Nature achieves the continuity of the species ; the reward which Nature pays to the individual for fulfilling its duty in begetting its kind. Schopenhauer, the great German philosopher, who was the first to express clearly the argument that love and sex are nothing but mechanisms which Nature created for the purposes of serving reproduction, held the view that the attraction which two individuals feel for each other is to be explained only by reference to a purpose, and could best be understood as the working of a mechanism devised by Nature for the drawing together of those individuals suitably matched for reproduction. Such views as this impressed and even guided biological thought for generations. It is to be noted that they are not contributions of the science itself, but impositions born of sociological necessity or of theological preference. They have had a definitely degrading influence upon the logical structure of biology, and far too few biologists have rebelled against this interference of social and theological demands in the development of their own particular science.

It is too commonly forgotten, that the scientist of to-day does not concern himself with the meaning and the purpose of things. Until he leaves science for philosophy, he is not interested in the great generalisations which gripped the minds of men in older days, and which began with " why " and asked for final solutions. He does not seek ultimate truth, but only an understanding of the mechanisms which underlie the phenomena of life and the attributes of living and non-living things. He has not so much interest in the purposes of creation as in the methods by which they may have been achieved.

It can be understood how Schopenhauer's authoritative teaching would be welcomed by such as sought an endorsement of the common demand, that in any society wherein population increase is to be desired for any reason, everything that encourages a high birth-rate is praiseworthy and should be rewarded, whilst anything that tends to reduce the birth-rate is blameworthy and should be punished. Under such conditions sexual intercourse without pregnancy as a sequel must be avoided, and in order to discourage unfruitful intercourse the people must be taught that such is unpatriotic, even sinful. Furthermore, it would seem that in every society there have been and are sufficient biologists of position, who will provide endorsement for such attitudes by an appeal to what they regard as legitimate interpretation of scientific fact. In the past the biologist has justified feudalism, Manchester Liberalism, socialism, and every other type of social organisation and political programme by reference to selected biological phenomena, and they who have shown that it is not only right, but even natural, that the strong should devour the weak, can have no difficulty in accepting from the non-biologist the view that sex is but the servant of reproduction.

Without doubt, the chief reason for the prevalence of this point of view is the might of the impact of Jewish theology upon the sex-ethic of other peoples. It is of interest, however, to note that there have been peoples, such as the aborigines of Australia and the inhabitants of the South Sea Islands, who have been entirely unaware of the connection between sexual

intercourse and reproduction. To these fertility was the gift of a spirit, and mating, which was bound up in many rites and customs, had nothing whatsoever to do with parentage.[1] To other peoples, the Greeks, for example, sex has been justified simply and completely by sexual desire, and has been explained by reference to its nature and not to its apparent purpose. It is seen, then, that the point of view exhibited by many societies has not been universally accepted ; and, in any case, it can be argued that the reasons which have persuaded such societies to the view that sexuality can only be justified by reference to reproduction are not themselves scientific. Of course this does not prove that the attitude itself is necessarily unsound. But when the matter is considered dispassionately, it will be found that it is impossible to endorse it by an honest appeal to scientific fact. It is true that sexual activity commonly precedes, leads up to, and passes on to reproductive activity, but the relationship of sexuality and reproduction is such that one can as readily argue that the purpose of reproduction is the replacement of sexual individuals as to argue that the purpose of sexuality is to make reproduction possible. If the sexual act leads to reproduction, then reproduction itself yields nothing but another sexual individual. Reproduction leads to sexuality just as much as sexuality ends in reproduction. Birth leads to birth, and so there is a continuous cycle with no beginning and no end, neither purpose nor cause.

This statement, however, is but a formal and logical one, and is not enough. It merely argues that the explanation of sex as a means of reproduction is not valid. It does not obviate the necessity of analysing the obvious interrelationship of sexuality and reproduction which undoubtedly exists. Even the slightest acquaintance with this subject shows that the relationship is so intricate and intimate, that it may well be doubted that any attempt at the analysis of this complex can be successful. Nevertheless, the point of view that such an analysis is both desirable and possible must prevail. It is true that the time has not yet arrived when a final answer to the question as to what sex actually is can be given ; the present is but the period of preliminary analysis in the science of sex biology. For the time being, we must concern ourselves with a description of the object of this science and with a survey of its particular field, and it is to be recognised that, as knowledge increases, complications will arise which will demand revision of most, if not all, of the conclusions at which we may now arrive. In the development of any science, advance, in the first stages rapid, becomes retarded as the probings become deeper.

It is desirable to examine the question of the possible separation of sex and reproduction for the reason that unless they can be so separated neither can be analysed alone, with the result that much concerning them, separate and in association, cannot be understood. That they *can* be separated can be shown by an appeal to the comparative method of study. If we were to confine our attention to one species, then the task would be impossible, but if we compare sexuality and reproduction in the different species, and if we assume that all these possess certain attributes in common, our task becomes quite hopeful.

[1] For an elaboration of this point, see the Article on *The Beginnings of Morals and Culture*, p. 413.

A review of sexuality in its various aspects, and as exhibited by the many diverse living forms, reveals the fact that it is indeed usually associated in the most intimate fashion with reproduction. This is especially so if one's survey is restricted to the higher animals. But if it is extended so as to include invertebrate animals, plants and the unicellular organisms, one finds, amongst these, innumerable instances of reproduction without sex; in other words, that asexual reproduction—the production of offspring without mating—is as widespread as is reproduction with mating. Manifestly, therefore, sexuality is not essential for reproduction. The Indian stick insect, Dixippus, exists both in the male and female form, but the male is exceedingly rare and the mating of male and female has never been observed. The female lays a great number of eggs which develop without having been fertilised, and in this insect the male is to be regarded as a reminiscence of older times in the history of the species, when both sexes played their rôle in mating and when fertilisation was the rule.

It has long been known that the eggs of the sea urchin, which normally begin their development only after having been fertilised by the spermatozoa of the male, can be made to develop by being placed in sea-water, the salt concentration of which is higher than normal. Furthermore, it has been demonstrated that if the egg of the frog is punctured by means of a fine needle, it will develop into a tadpole and thence into a frog, though usually, before there can be reproduction, the ova of the female must be fertilised by the spermatozoa of the male. A " fatherless " frog has been produced, but as yet no fatherless mammal has appeared under conditions of controlled experiment. That this is so is not surprising, for there are so very many difficulties in the way; the egg of the mammal is so tiny and is so jealously guarded within the body of the mother. Examination of large numbers of ovaries of rats, however, has shown that in all probability unfertilised eggs begin to develop into embryos, and although this development does not proceed very far, nevertheless such instances clearly demonstrate that, in principle, the origin of a new individual in the rat can occur in the absence of any influence contributed normally by the sperm of the male. Since this is so, it follows that the production of offspring by the mammal, though usually intimately associated with sexuality, is not necessarily dependent upon it.

The architectural unit of the body is the cell. This is a minute mass of living stuff—the so-called protoplasm, enclosed (in most cases) within a capsule or wall. There are two kinds of living things—the unicellular organisms, whose bodies consist of a single cell, and the multicellular, whose bodies consist of many cells. In the latter, different groups of cells are concerned with different functions. One group constitutes the reproductive organs which elaborate the sex cells. If one examines a typical cell one finds that the protoplasm within is not homogeneous, but that by appropriate methods of staining this by means of dyestuffs it is possible to distinguish a central area—the so-called nucleus—which can be shown to differ chemically, and structurally, from the rest.

If one turns to the unicellular or noncellular forms of life, the Protista (Gk. *protistos*=first of all), the primitive organisms from which animals and plants arose, one can readily find evidence which seems to

show that amongst these sexuality and reproduction are not only distinct but are contrasted. They reproduce or multiply by a process of simple division : one individual dividing to become two. On the other hand, two individuals may fuse—conjugate—(and it is customary to regard this conjugation as a sexual process) and the result of this fusion is that the number of individuals is reduced and not increased. So also it is in the case of the human subject ; the origin of a new individual occurs in the union of two sex-cells to become one—the ovum and the spermatozoa, the gametes or marrying cells (Gk. *gametes*=spouse) fusing to form the zygote or fertilised egg, which by its continued division gives rise to the new individual. The process of building the new individual out of the fertilised egg is asexual, being nothing more than the continued division of cells, all having their origin in a single cell. It would seem, indeed, that the part that sexuality plays is merely that of providing the stimulus to this cell division. Normally this stimulus takes the form of the fertilisation of the ovum by the sperm, but as has been shown, this fertilisation can efficiently be replaced by relatively simple physico-chemical techniques.

There is no difficulty in showing, therefore, by an appeal to the facts of biology, that sexuality is not the only means of reproduction. Reproduction can occur without sexuality. It follows that one cannot argue that sex is, in all cases, the servant of reproduction. Still, one might argue that sexuality is necessary for reproduction in those forms in which it has been developed and in which sexual activity normally precedes reproductive activity. It has been urged that the fact that sexual reproduction is so common amongst the higher forms is an indication that it must be positively advantageous to its exhibitors. It is assumed that the higher forms possess greater efficiency in their functioning than do the lower.

But surely we have the right to ask those who compare one mechanism with another to define and to exhibit their standards ! By what yardstick are the modes of reproduction to be measured ? It used to be taught that sexual reproduction was more advantageous than asexual, for the reason that the union of cells derived from different bodies leads to rejuvenation. It is the case that the germ cells of the higher plants and animals perish unless they unite in fertilisation ; but it does not follow that senescence and natural death are fundamental phenomena inherent in all living tissues, or that conjugation (*i.e.* the temporary or permanent fusion of two individuals) and fertilisation (*i.e.* the fusion of two dissimilar sex-cells, sperm and ovum) are the only means of outwitting them. It is known that in many animals parthenogenesis (the process whereby an egg develops without activation by a sperm) can replace fertilisation as a method of reproduction, either temporarily or else permanently. Moreover, experiments involving the growth of cells outside the body on appropriate media, and of tumour cells transplanted from individual to individual, have shown that these can thrive indefinitely. It is abundantly established beyond all doubt that the living cell can multiply and flourish in the absence of any sexual reinforcement. Many are the cultivated plants which have been propagated continuously by root cuttings or grafts for long periods of time, and yet show no signs of diminished vigour. In fact, there are certain plant species which are completely sterile and which reproduce

exclusively by parthenogenesis (Gk. *parthenos*=virgin; *genesis*=descent) or by some other asexual process.

The conclusion that conjugation or fertilisation, with the resulting mixture of living contributions from two sources, implies rejuvenation was reached from the study of conjugation in noncellular organisms. The slipper animalculæ, Paramæcium, multiplies, as has been stated, by division of the individual into two. As soon as these daughter individuals have reached full size they divide again. Normally, however, there occurs, after a series of such divisions, a phase when this multiplication is replaced by conjugation. It was observed that as the age of a culture of Paramæcium increased, the frequency with which multiplication occurred became steadily reduced; and that after the period of conjugation the division rate again reached its full height. It was assumed, therefore, that continued asexual reproduction, as represented by division, could not go on without end, since the periods of such multiplication were followed by periods of physiological depression and then by the death of the culture unless conjugation occurred. Conjugation, it was concluded, removed the results of this progressive diminution in vigour. However, it has more recently been shown beyond all doubt that such degeneration of the stock can be due simply to faulty husbandry, and that the conclusion that conjugation was responsible for the rejuvenation of the culture is no longer tenable.

Other somewhat similar theories, formerly very prominent in biological teaching and all concerned with the nature and meaning of sex, have passed into obscurity. One of the most prominent of these was that concerning amphimixis (Gk. *amphi*=both; *mixis*=mingling)—the mingling of maternal and paternal contributions to the offspring in the fusion of two dissimilar individuals or gametes. This theory had its origin in the experience of breeders who had noted that crosses between different races, varieties and species, were often remarkable for their vigour, this commonly taking the form of a greater size, more luxuriant growth, earlier attainment of maturity, or greater resistance to unfavourable external conditions. The results of the early hybridisers gave rise to a widespread belief, that this crossing was itself the cause of this increased vigour, and that inbreeding—the mating of near relatives—was in the same sense the cause of degeneracy. It is now known that outcrossing, which involves the mating of two dissimilar types, does not invariably yield hybrid vigour, and also that inbreeding is not always harmful but that, in fact, it can be definitely advantageous, leading to the establishment of a uniform and true-breeding stock. For an understanding of the modern interpretation of the facts concerning these estimates of breeding, a certain acquaintance with Mendelian theory is demanded.

If the nucleus of a typical cell is examined it is found to consist of masses of material which take up stain eagerly and deeply and which is known as chromatin. In certain stages of the process whereby a cell divides to become two, this chromatin becomes aggregated in the form of rods —the so-called chromosomes. Modern Mendelism postulates that corresponding to all of the hereditary characters (details of form and of function) which an individual may exhibit, there are hereditary factors resident in the chromosomes. Hereditary characters can be classed in pairs

and the members of each pair are alternative. For example, the colour of the eye in man may be brown or else it may be blue. In respect of each character exhibited by the individual there are, in the cells of the body and in the unripe germ cells, spermatozoa or ova, two hereditary factors, one of which was derived from the paternal parent, the other from the maternal. Thus a particular individual may have received the factor for brown eye colour from both parents and thus be duplex for this factor, and homozygous (Gk. *homos*=same; *zygon*=yoke) for the character responding to them. An individual, on the other hand, may have received the factor for blue eyes from each of its parents, and therefore be simplex for the factor and homozygous for the character blue eye colour. But an individual which has received the factor for brown eye colour from one parent and the factor for blue eye colour from the other will be brown-eyed and it will be heterozygous (Gk. *heteros*=other; *zygon*=yoke), or hybrid, for the character it exhibits. In order to express this fact that when the factors for brown and blue are both present, the brown character prevails, brown is said to be dominant to blue and blue recessive to brown.

The individual carries the hereditary factors in pairs, and in the case of each pair the members may be alike or unlike. But, into the ripe gamete there passes only one member of each pair of factors. Thus, in respect of all the factors for which the individual is duplex, the gametes will all be alike, but in respect of those factors for which the individual is simplex, there will be two kinds of gametes, those with this factor and those without it. Thus it is that the individual "breeds true" for those characters for which it is homozygous.

It is assumed that inbreeding has but one demonstrable effect : it increases the degree of homozygosity, that is, the state of being homozygous for the characters exhibited by the stock, and duplex in respect of the factors corresponding to these. An individual is to be regarded as a combination of many thousands of hereditary characters, and probably in respect of most of them it is heterozygous. Inbreeding reduces this hybridity, and slowly but surely leads to a state in which the individual is homozygous for all the characters it exhibits. But all characters are not advantageous. In every one there are the hereditary factors which correspond to characters that maim and deform and kill. But since these are for the most part recessive in nature, the alternative normality being dominant in relation to them, they are hidden and do not work their will in the case of individuals which are heterozygous in respect of the characters corresponding to them. Only when an individual which is homozygous for such a character appears is the effect seen. Inbreeding provides the opportunity for such an individual to appear. Outcrossing reduces the chances of such an individual appearing, since it is unlikely that two comparatively unrelated individuals will be carrying, hidden in their hereditary constitutions, the factor for the same deleterious character. But just as inbreeding permits the appearance of undesirable characters, so does it also lead to the production of individuals which are homozygous for the useful, advantageous characters, and since the great merit of homozygosity is that its possessor breeds true, therefore, through inbreeding, there can arise a stock purged of its undesirable recessives and,

in virtue of its hereditary constitution, inevitably begetting offspring as homozygous and therefore as excellent as itself. Outcrossing, on the other hand, increases the heterozygosity of a stock. The good characters of one parent can reinforce the good of the other. The harmful recessives of one can be covered by the alternative advantageous dominants of the other. But hybrid vigour only follows when the contributions of the two parent are complementary and compensatory; profound disharmony can ensue when undesirable reinforces undesirable. It is because two comparatively unrelated individuals are less likely to carry the hereditary factors for the same deleterious recessive characters than are two comparatively closely related individuals, that sexual reproduction, associated with marriage laws that prevent the mating of close relatives, can perhaps be preferred to asexual methods of begetting offspring. But the advantages of sexual reproduction are not inherent in this particular system. The effects are referable to the peculiarities of the hereditary constitutions of the individuals that mate.

It has been argued that this amphimixis has played a most important rôle in evolution. New hereditary characters, advantageous or harmful, have their origin in an alteration in the hereditary constitution, that is, in the hereditary factors of the individual. Such an alteration is known as a mutation. In sexual reproduction such a mutation can have occurred in either of the two parents, and so mutations occurring independently in time and space can meet. This is not so, of course, in cases of asexual reproduction, for here there can be no pooling of advantageous mutations that have been endured by two individuals. A further advantage of sexual reproduction is that, by the pooling of the characters of two parents, offspring combining the advantages of both can be produced.

It is a matter of observation, however, that the majority of mutations would seem to be disadvantageous. In the case of asexually reproducing forms, such mutations would either eliminate or seriously embarrass their exhibitors. In sexually reproducing forms, on the other hand, such recessives could remain hidden for long periods and only be brought to light amongst the offspring of two individuals, each of which is heterozygous in respect of these characters. Thus a stock in which sexual reproduction is the rule could become slowly but surely loaded with harmful recessives, which almost certainly must lead ultimately to the appearance of degeneracy. Under such circumstances racial decay is inevitable. In contrast with this, the elimination of the unfit, in the case of the asexually reproducing forms, is swift and ruthless. Moreover, homozygosity in respect of advantageous characters can only be obtained if sexual reproduction is the rule and, in the absence of definitely controlled mating, after a very considerable time. In the case of the asexually reproducing forms, the state of homozygosity is attained relatively quickly, and once it has been achieved it continues.

It may be argued that heterozygosity implies a power of adaptation on the part of the individual to a changing environment. It seems to be the case that the homozygous individual is not relatively so plastic. This may be a matter of considerable importance in the case of other forms, but man can control his environment much more easily than he can control his hereditary constitution. It is far simpler to warm a room than to

impose a control upon one's own temperature-regulating mechanism. Moreover, how can one maintain that the lowly bacteria cannot and do not adapt themselves to changing environments? Indeed, they are remarkable for their powers of adaptation, and yet they reproduce asexually. It is interesting to note that if mankind reproduced asexually, then racial improvement would be a simple matter, if only certain selected individuals were permitted to reproduce themselves. Heterozygosity associated with sexual reproduction certainly yields fascinating variety in the matter of combinations of hereditary characters, but the association certainly prevents the easy perpetuation of the desirable and permits the appearance of the definitely undesirable, judged by any standard, in increasing numbers.

An examination of the postulated intimate connection between sexuality and reproduction, then, fails to demonstrate that such a connection exists in fact. Furthermore, sexuality does not seem to possess any real advantage over asexuality in the matter of reproduction.

It would seem that the personal value of the sexual act is not necessarily reduced after sterilisation. The " change of life " or menopause in women marks the cessation of those activities on the part of the ovaries which lead to the production of ova, but though reproduction thereafter becomes impossible, the personal enjoyment in sexual congress is not necessarily thereby decreased. In the case of the male, castration in the adult is not followed by an inability to perform the sexual act, though certainly it renders fertilisation impossible. It can be shown that sexual activity without reproductive activity is as possible as reproduction without sex. In the case of the man, the sexual act is the reproductive act : it is the actual ejaculation of the seminal fluid which gives the greatest sense of pleasure in the sexual act, and this ejaculate is the contribution of the male to reproduction. To prevent ejaculation is to avoid satisfaction : to avoid the reproductive act is to obliterate much of the sexual act. But in the case of the female the sexual act has nothing whatsoever to do with the reproductive act, for coitus is not attended by the discharge of ova. In her case sexual satisfaction is achieved through the stimulation of nerve endings in the genital tract by the copulatory organ of the male, and ovulation—the discharge of ova from the ovaries—does not occur until some hours later, as in the rabbit, or else it has no relationship whatsoever to coitus. In the human female, ovulation occurs periodically and unconsciously during the period puberty-menopause, both in wife and in virgin, and coitus has nothing whatever to do with this process. There is no reason for assuming that the extrusion of an ovum is in any way a conscious or a pleasurable event. The pleasure of sexual activity has no relation to reproduction. It is present whether coitus is fruitful or abortive.

It may be argued that sexual activity is really associated with reproductive activity in the human female for the reason that sexual activity is associated with the reception, if not with the extrusion, of gametes. But such a contention cannot be maintained. Masturbation can replace coitus, and it can be shown that sexual satisfaction on the part of the female is not necessarily attended by the reception of the gametes of the male. The only possible relation would seem to be that sexual activity in the female permits her to exhibit her reproductive function.

The search for a definition of sex would seem to be hopeless. It has been shown that one cannot refer it to the relationship of two individuals, these being either dissimilar or similar in characterisation. It is true that in the case of man and of domesticated animals the sexual act is an *affaire à deux* in which two dissimilar individuals, a male and a female, play different rôles. But this is not all, for following intercourse there is a definitely sexual interaction between the gametes, the ovum and the sperm. These are as dissimilar in their form and function as are the bodies which elaborate them. There is thus a sexuality of the individual and also a sexuality of the gamete. It is the case that usually the sex of the individual is in accord with the sex of the gamete elaborated by that individual, but it can be shown that the sexual characters of the individual are not dependent upon the type of gametes which the individual elaborates. Experimentation has shown that the general appearance and behaviour commonly regarded as typical of maleness are exhibited even in cases in which the tissue of the testis, which is responsible for the production of spermatozoa, has been destroyed, and similarly that the typical female characters persist after the production of ova by the ovaries has been rendered impossible. The production of spermatozoa is only one of the characters which, in their combination, comprise the state or quality of maleness ; it is not the cause of maleness ; and therefore the sexuality of the gamete and the sexuality of the individual must be considered separately.

Biologists have applied the term " sexual activity " to so very many and such varied phenomena, that any exact definition is difficult. However, there would seem to be general agreement that sexual activity is that particular activity exhibited in the mating of male and female, being the force which impels the individuals to mate. But, as has been said, the modes and methods of mating are exceedingly varied. In certain forms male and female do not exhibit any mutual activity in mating. Each, apparently without reference to the other, merely extrudes its gametes and these, disseminated through the water, meet and mate, that is to say, that dissimilar gametes mate but that sexual individuals do not. Now, such a meeting and mating of gametes is just as much a sexual act as is the meeting and mating of male and female individuals. Manifestly, the mating of individuals cannot be a criterion of sexuality. It has been shown that sex-dimorphism—the existence of structurally different male and female forms within a species—is not, as would appear to be the case at first sight, fundamental to sex. There are no sexes in the common earth worm or in the common snail. All individuals are alike in respect of sex-equipment, each possessing both ovaries and testes, and each producing both ova and spermatozoa. Nevertheless, the individual does exhibit sexual activity for, having reached a certain stage of its development, each seeks out a mate—another individual exactly like unto itself—and the two join in sexual intercourse, each fertilising the other. In forms such as this one cannot speak of the mating of the sexes, but only of the mating of two individuals. It is even more difficult to fit into the conventional picture of sex forms such as Spirogyra. This is a plant which has the form of long green threads, anchored to the bottom of ponds and slowly flowing streams. Every thread is subdivided into many component cells,

and should two such threads come together after they have reached a certain stage in development, it may be seen that some of the cells send out protruding feelers which enter cells of the adjoining thread. Moreover, it is possible to distinguish between the passive cell which receives the feeler and the active cell which sends these out. One might refer to the passive cell as being the female and its mate as the male cell in this relationship. By experiment one can distinguish between threads, all the cells of which under these conditions extrude feelers, and other threads, all the cells of which receive these; that is, one can distinguish between male threads and female threads. But should one keep two female threads together, one or other of them will behave as a male toward its companion. The explanation offered to accommodate these and other facts is that these threads are weakly or strongly sexed. A " weak " male behaves like a female in its relationship with a " strong " male, or as a male to another male " weaker " than itself. Manifestly, the meaning of maleness and femaleness loses much of its clarity. The relationship of thread and thread can better be understood if one merely states that the strength of the sex of these threads varies and that the more strongly sexed thread behaves as a male toward the weaker sexed thread, and that the weaker sexed thread behaves as a female toward the more strongly sexed thread. The suggestion that is conveyed by these experiments is that the sexuality of an individual is not absolute but relative.

Should one seek for some feature common to all these instances, one must conclude that sex is not necessarily expressed in the form and in the appearance of the individual, but in its behaviour and reactions under certain conditions. It is the stimulus which excites sexual activity that varies as one passes from form to form; but the method of the response to this stimulus would seem to be common to all. In heterosexuality, the stimulus that lights up sexual activity is the person or the image of another individual of the opposite sex. In homosexuality, the sexuality of the individual is released and stimulated by the presence of an identical individual. There are other forms, in which both ova and sperm mature within one and the same body and are extruded together, and in which this extrusion of gametes is not in any way dependent upon the presence of another individual. Yet such extrusion is a sexual act, and there may be observed during its occurrence every sign which is associated in other forms with the congress of two differently sexed individuals. Intense excitement, followed by calm, would seem to be the hall-mark of sexuality in its expression in all forms, either hetero-, homo-, or auto-sexual.

This imperfect discussion of the nature of sex must presently suffice. One leaves the subject with a feeling of regret that biologists and laymen could not be content to leave the nature of sex unexplained and to accept some simple point of view as that of Plato, who held that in the beginning man and woman were one, but that they were divided by the wrath of the gods into two, who for ever tend to come together and unite again. Such a view at least expresses the fundamental character of sexuality.

It is necessary next to discuss the nature of those factors which determine whether any given organism shall develop into a male or else into a female. This question is usually known as the determination of sex. Before passing on to it, however, it is desirable briefly to discuss the origin of the individual itself. This story, as does everything else in the history of biology, begins with Aristotle, the first biologist whose published works we possess in complete form. This great teacher divided animals into two classes—those which developed without parents, directly from unorganised matter by means of spontaneous generation, and those which came into being through sexual reproduction, each of the parents contributing something to the offspring. According to him, the ejaculate or semen of the male did not originate in the testes ; the true function of these organs being to delay emission of the male ejaculate until it had had time to ripen. In the female it was not the uterus (womb) or the oviducts (the tubes which lead from the uterus to the vagina, L. *ovum*=egg ; *ducere*=to lead) which provided the maternal contribution to the next generation, the material which was contributed being the menstrual blood. The process of reproduction consisted in the mixture of the menstrual blood and the male ejaculate, and in the development of an egg from this mixture. The female contributed the substance of the embryo, whilst the male contributed that formative impulse which initiated growth and determined form.

The ovaries of the mammalian female are solid bodies, quite unlike those of the bird, and were referred to by the earliest anatomists as " female testes." Galen supposed that the semen of the male was manufactured in the arteries and veins of the testes, and was thereafter sieved through these latter organs. The female semen, according to this authority, was likewise elaborated in the blood-vessels of the female testes, and the two fluids, male and female, became mixed in the uterus of the female, there to coagulate and then become frothy and thus evolve the embryo. For a thousand years this point of view prevailed.

It was not until William Harvey, greatly influenced by the previous observations of Fabricius, wrote his great book *De generatione animalium* (1651), that new concepts began to be considered. Harvey was the personal physician of Charles I, and this position provided opportunity for him to transfer his work from the incubating hen's egg to mammals. He was permitted to carry out a post-mortem examination of female deer, killed by the enthusiastic royal huntsman. Harvey found, quite unexpectedly, that the uterus of the deer, before November 12th (the date is of importance only in that it bears a relation to the normal mating season of the deer) in any of the years of his study, was completely empty, although its lining was swollen and softened. This observation supported neither the views of Aristotle (according to whom there should have been visible, during the first stages of generation, menstrual blood mingled with male ejaculate) nor those of Galen (according to whom there should have been visible a mixture of male and female semen). King Charles, interested in these findings, next permitted Harvey to have twelve does taken alive during the mating season. Some of these were killed soon after

capture, and again nothing was found within their uteri. The others were kept and later gave birth to their young. It appeared, therefore, that indeed for a fortnight, or even a month after conception, nothing existed in the uterus which the human eye could discover. But, about the 12th to 14th of November, Harvey noted the presence of white filaments, like spiders' webs, becoming conjoined and presenting themselves as membranous or gelatinous sacs, and a few days later the tiny embryo could be identified amid its membranes. From these observations Harvey concluded that the spermatic fluid did not reach the uterus, but exuded an effluvium which stimulated the uterus to secrete the egg.

Another generation elapsed before further discoveries were made. Swammerdam and van Horne of Leyden developed the idea that the " female testes " of the mammal were comparable to the ovaries of birds, like them producing eggs. The same idea was included in a thesis of Stensen (1667), but whilst these were continuing their studies a third student of the Leyden group, de Graaf, published in 1668 a book which anticipated many of the points that were still being considered by the others. A later book, *De Mulierum organis generationi inservientibus* (1672), by the same author, contained a full description of the genital tract of the human female and the first real account of the ovarian follicles. He was of opinion that the whole content of the follicle was the ovum, and that what we now know as the *corpora lutea* (yellow bodies) developed in the follicular wall before the rupture of the follicle. Using the rabbit as his experimental material, de Graaf found nothing in the genital tract of those which he killed on the first or second day after mating, but on the third day he found tiny spherical bodies in the Fallopian tubes (*see Fig.* 1), and on the fourth day slightly larger spheres in the uterus. He rightly regarded these as the products of the ovary, and the forerunners of the embryos. It is interesting to note that no one else succeeded in finding embryos in the uterine tubes again until more than a hundred years had passed.

A few years later (1677) Leeuwenhoek discovered the spermatozoon in a drop of fluid obtained by one of his students from a patient suffering from a urethral discharge. Observations made on other animals revealed the presence of these animalculæ in the seminal fluid of all of these. Leeuwenhoek promptly concluded that the spermatozoon was the whole material contribution to the embryo from its parents, and that the uterus of the female was simply the place where the spermatozoon was incubated and was nourished. He denied the importance, even the existence, of the egg. Leeuwenhoek's view that the spermatozoon was the rudimentary embryo was carried to absurd lengths by his followers, one of whom published a picture of a homunculus—a miniature man—which he had observed in the seminal fluid and which had the outward appearance of a spermatozoon but which, on closer examination, revealed all the characteristics of a minute human being with folded arms. From this it was deduced that within the testes of this homunculus there was a still smaller homunculus and so on, *ad infinitum*; Adam, the first man, therefore, must have contained within his reproductive system all the generations that could follow him, enclosed one within another like the unending boxes of a Chinese puzzle.

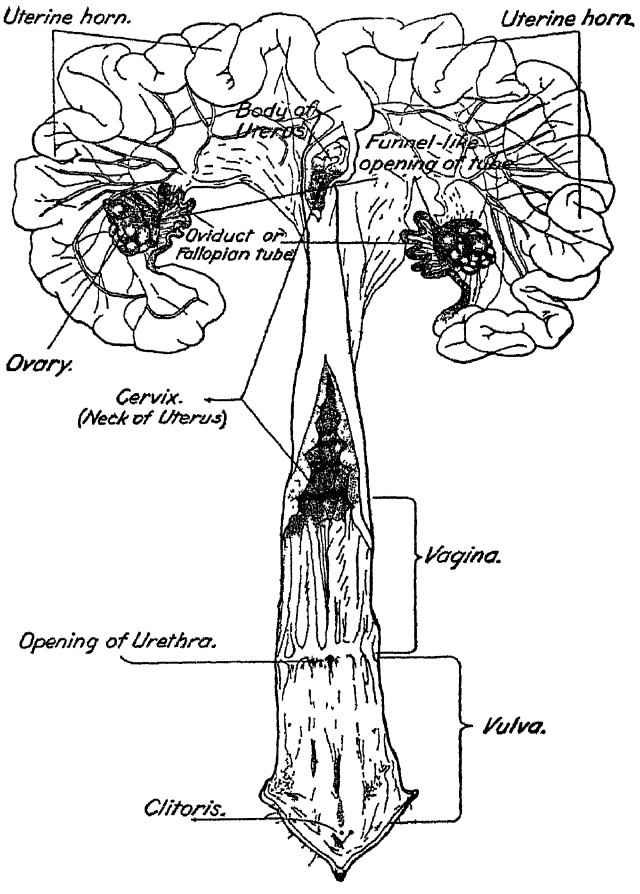


Fig. 1. GENITAL ORGANS OF SOW

The ova develop within the solid ovary. As each ovum ripens it becomes enclosed with a follicle containing fluid—the *liquor folliculi*—and moves toward the surface of the ovary. In the diagram the follicles are seen as grape-like clusters. As the ovum ripens, this fluid increases in amount until the pressure within the follicle is such as to cause a rupture of the follicle wall which is exposed on the surface of the ovary. The ovum is extruded and passes into the mouth of the Fallopian tube and onwards into the uterine horn. The wound on the surface of the ovary, thus produced, heals, and the scar tissue is peculiar in that it is yellow in colour and glandular in structure. Such a mass of scar tissue is known as a corpus luteum which elaborates specific chemical substances that play their part in the maintenance of the state of pregnancy.

The ejaculate of the male is deposited in the upper part of the vagina, and the spermatozoa make their way upwards through the cervix (the neck) of the uterus into the body of the uterus and on into the uterine horns. It is here that sperm and ovum meet and that fertilisation takes place.

The fertilised ovum becomes embedded in the wall of the uterus and proceeds to develop into embryo and fœtus. At the time of birth the neck of the uterus dilates and the muscular action of the uterus expels the fœtus *via* the vagina to the exterior.

Fifty years later von Haller (1752) carried out embryological studies of sheep, after the manner employed by Harvey in the case of the deer. The results he obtained confirmed Harvey's opinion that nothing was to be found in the tubes during the first part of pregnancy, and he concluded that something of an undefined character passed from ovary to uterus and there slowly coagulated into the ovum. In 1778 William Cruikshank, an assistant to William Hunter, repeated this work, using the rabbit. Cruikshank had no difficulty in finding ova in the Fallopian tubes on the third day after mating, and in the uterine horns (*see Fig.* 1) thereafter. Thus the work of de Graaf was confirmed 106 years after the publication of his results.

Then came two young men of Geneva, Prevost and Dumas, who demonstrated (1824) that complete spermatozoa were to be found in the testes, and that these organs were the site of their origin. Next they showed that by mixing the eggs and the sperm of frogs, tadpoles could be produced, but that if filtered spermatic fluid, or the vapours arising from the spermatic fluid, were used the eggs were not fertilised. Furthermore, they demonstrated that, after copulation, spermatozoa could be found in the uterus of the dog. This was the first observation of this fact, and constituted a conclusive refutation of Harvey's notion that nothing passed from the male into the upper portions of the genital tract of the female. Later they found in the uterus very small bladder-like bodies, like those noted by de Graaf and Cruikshank in the uterus of a rabbit. Since they expected to find very much larger bodies than those which they found, they concluded that the large ova of the ovaries—that is the Graafian follicles—contained small ovules. But when they examined the follicles in the ovary of the bitch, they did not find any of the small clear vesicles which they expected to see. But it is recorded that on two occasions they did observe minute opaque round bodies, the very objects for which they were seeking, but they dismissed them from any consideration.

The two men parted shortly after this work was completed, and their opinions developed somewhat divergently. Prevost gave it as his opinion that spermatozoa and ova together yield the embryo; but held the view that neither of them formed any part of the actual tissues of the embryo. He seems to have thought that the sperm and the egg interacted to secrete the embryo in the uterus. Dumas on the contrary believed that the spermatozoon, having united with the ovum, became the nervous system of the embryo, the ovum contributing the rest.

The next great figure in this history is von Baer. It was he who actually discovered the mammalian egg (1828). Unlike his predecessors, he, using the dog, worked backwards from twenty-four days old embryos, taking the later stages of development first. He traced the embryo from the uterus on into the Fallopian tube. Having decided that the next step in his investigation was the examination of the ova in the ovary itself, he opened up a follicle and took out therefrom a yellowish white point which was floating in the fluid. Placing this under a microscope, he saw " an ovule," exactly similar to those that he had previously found in the Fallopian tubes. In 1866 Gegenbaur was able to prove that in all animals the ovum is a single cell. It was not until 1875 that Hertwig demonstrated the actual union of egg and spermatozoa.

Thus was the story completed. A spermatozoon, a single cell produced by the testis of the male, unites with an ovum, a single cell produced by the ovary of the female, to form the new individual.

Every individual, whether male or female, develops from an ovum fertilised by a sperm—apart, of course, from the occurrence of asexual and parthenogenetic reproduction. What, then, determines that the fertilised egg shall develop into a male or else into a female?

Many are the theories relating to this problem of sex-determination that have been propounded which were doomed to pass into the limbo of forgotten things as advances in our knowledge were made. Many of them are based on discoveries which are still made anew almost every year. For example, the theory, as advanced by Schultze, that there are two kinds of ova, destined respectively to develop into males and females, is still promulgated anew with the greatest regularity by people who have apparently not heard of each other, of Schultze or of recent developments in our knowledge of the structure and constitution of the living cell. Hofacker (1923) and Sadler (1930) independently suggested that when the male parent is the older the offspring are predeterminedly male, whilst if the parents are of the same age, or if the male be the younger, female offspring appear in increasing majority. This conclusion, generally known as the Hofacker and Sadler law, has received, and still receives, both confirmation and perplexing contradiction, as might be expected, when one remembers how critical it is necessary to be while making a statistical study in which all the factors cannot be considered. One of the best known, and probably one of the most influential, theories concerning sex-determination is that, as elaborated by Girou, which refers to the comparative vigour of the parents. The hypothesis connects the sex of the offspring with that of the more vigorous parent. A variation of this form is that which refers to the superiority of one or the other sex. According to Starkweather, for example, sex is determined by the superior parent, the superior parent producing the opposite sex. Such a theory as this has little more than verbal simplicity to commend it, for, indeed, how shall one define superiority?

But enough of hypotheses. There are certain facts of general biology now known which are not susceptible to interpretation of this kind. These facts point directly to the view that in the higher animals, at least, sex is determined at the time of fertilisation by the workings of a relatively simple mechanism to be found within the cell itself.

In the human subject there are two kinds of twins—identical and fraternal. Identical twins have their origins in a single fertilised egg, while fraternal twins have their origins in two ova, each of them fertilised by a separate sperm. Identical twins are always of the same sex, and are remarkably alike in their general characterisation. Fraternal twins may or may not be of the same sex, and they are no more alike than are ordinary brothers and sisters born at different times. Now, there is no appreciable reason why, if purely environmental factors were at work in determining the sex of the offspring, twins produced from one egg should be of one and the same sex, while twins produced from separate eggs should include both males and females. This evidence points directly to

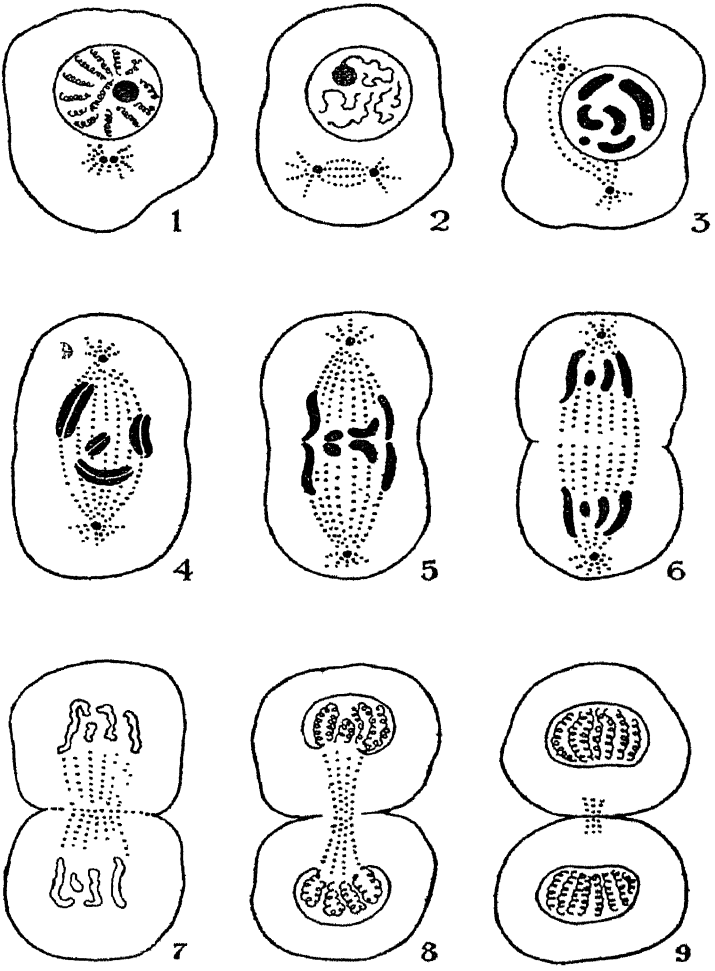


Fig. 2. DIAGRAM OF CELL DIVISION SHOWING THE BEHAVIOUR OF THE CHROMOSOMES

(1) The resting cell about to divide. (3) The chromatin of the nucleus becomes aggregated into the chromosomes. (4) These chromosomes come to lie at the equator of the cell, the wall of the nucleus disappears, fine fibrils radiate from the two " stars " which have separated, the chromosomes divide longitudinally into two. (5) The half-chromosomes separate and travel toward the opposite poles. (6) The cell shows signs of division at the equator. (7–9) The chromosomes lose their distinctness, the division of the cell continues, the wall of the nucleus reappears and finally two daughter cells are produced.

the conclusion that the sex of the individual is determined by the constitution of the fertilised ovum at the time of fertilisation.

Although it is quite impossible to distinguish between that fertilised egg which is to become a male and that which is to become a female, by means of the naked eye, it can be shown, by the use of appropriate techniques, that very significant differences between them do indeed exist. As has been said, the architectural unit of the body is the cell. The egg and the spermatozoon are each of them a single cell. The cell possesses a typical organisation. Centrally there is the nucleus which dominates all the activities of the cell, and around it in the general body of the cell there is the rest of the living protoplasm, commonly loaded with particles of non-living matter. Examination of microscopic sections of tissues, appropriately stained, shows that the nucleus includes a mass of material which in a resting cell (*see Fig.* 2. 1) takes the form of a tangled skein and which, because of the ease with which it takes up dyes, is known as



Fig. 3. CONVENTIONAL DIAGRAM OF THE CHROMOSOMES OF A FLY, *DROSOPHILA MELONOGASTER*

chromatin (Gk. *chroma* = colour). Sections showing cells at different stages of cell division reveal the fact that this chromatin, as cell division proceeds, becomes aggregated into a definite number of clumps or rods which are known as chromosomes (Gk. *chroma* = colour; *soma* = body; *see Fig.* 2. 3). It is a startling and significant fact that the number of chromosomes is characteristic of the species to which the individual belongs, and, moreover, that they exist in a cell in the form of pairs, the members of a pair being identical. Further study reveals the fact that whilst the rest of these pairs of chromosomes, said to be homologous for the reason that they are similar in origin and structure, are alike in the two sexes, there is one pair in respect of which male and female differ. In its simplest form this difference consists of the presence of a pair in the one sex, and of a single chromosome in the other.

For purposes of discussion, these chromosomes in respect of which

the sexes differ are referred to as the *sex-chromosomes*, in contrast with the rest which are known as the *autosomes*, and the individual sex-chromosome itself is known as an X-chromosome. In many forms the difference consists in the presence of a pair of identical members in one sex (XX), whilst in the other there is a single X and an unequal mate, the so-called Y-chromosome. In these cases, then, male can be distinguished from female for the reason that in all the cells of the body and in the unripe gametes of the former, there is either a single X, or else an X and a Y, whilst in the case of the latter each cell of the body and each unripe egg contain two X-chromosomes.

It is established that in the ripe gamete, egg or sperm, there is to be found one member of each pair of homologous chromosomes which are present in the cells of the body and in the unripe gamete. This reduction

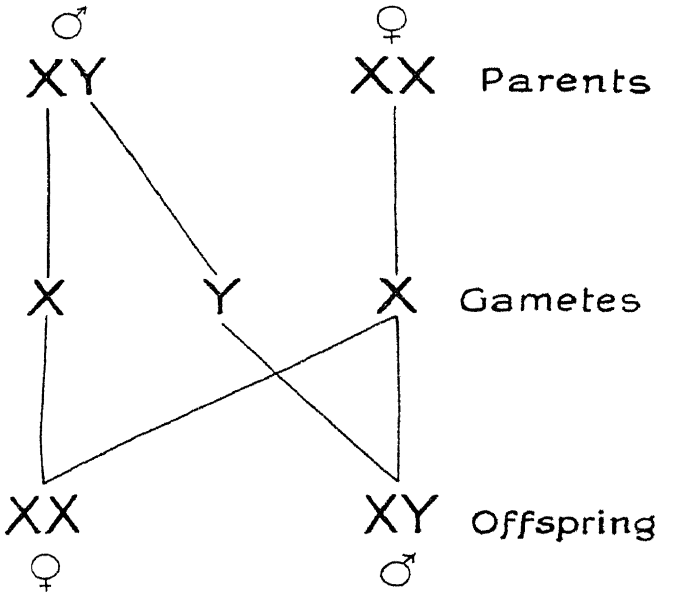


Fig. 4. THE SEX-CHROMOSOME SEX-DETERMINING MECHANISM

in the number of chromosomes is effected by what is known as the " reduction divisions " during the formation of the gametes. These do not occur during ordinary cell-division whereby the body, its organs and tissues, increase in size or effect repair ; they are special divisions during gametogenesis. Before a cell divides into two there is a previous longitudinal division of the chromosomes (*see Fig.* 2. 4), that is to say, there is multiplication of the chromosomes, and of each original chromosome one half passes into each of the two daughter cells (*see Fig.* 2. 6). As a result, each receives that number of chromosomes which is characteristic of the species. But in gametogenesis, instead of each chromosome

dividing into two, the two members of each pair of homologous chromosomes fuse. So that on examination there would appear at this stage to be only half the correct number of chromosomes. Later the two members of each pair separate and one passes into each daughter cell. Thus each of these will come to contain only half the number of chromosomes which is characteristic of the species.

It follows, therefore, that in each egg there will be one X-chromosome, whereas in the case of a species in which the male is XY in sex-chromosome constitution there will be two sorts of spermatozoa, one including an X- and the other including a Y-chromosome. The male is *digametic* in these forms, the female *monogametic*. The new individual has its origin in the union of egg and sperm. It can therefore have its beginning in the union of an X-bearing egg with an X-bearing sperm, and become an XX individual (a female), or else in the union of an X-bearing egg with a Y-chromosome bearing spermatozoon to become an XY individual (a male) (*see Fig.* 4). This sex-determining, sex-chromosome-distributing mechanism yields results which are entirely in accord with observed facts, and the list of species in which this sex-chromosome distinction between the sexes has been found to exist is enlarging yearly.

That sex is determined at the time of fertilisation and by means of this sex-chromosome, sex-determining mechanism is supported by the facts of what is known as sex-linked inheritance. In the case of a species in which the male is XY in sex-chromosome constitution and the female XX, the son, who, to be a son, must receive one X-chromosome and one Y, must get his single X-chromosome from his mother, since it is the Y that he will receive from his father; whilst the daughter must get one X from each parent. If on the X-chromosome of the father is borne the hereditary factor for a recessive character, then the track of this chromosome in inheritance can be followed if the Y-chromosome of the male carries no hereditary factors which in any way affect the action of those borne upon the X. Colour blindness—the inability to distinguish between red and green—is an example of a sex-linked recessive character. If a colour-blind man marries a normal-sighted woman, then the sons of this marriage will all be normal, but the daughters, though normal themselves, will carry the hereditary factor for this abnormal condition. Should a colour-blind man marry a daughter of such a marriage, then of the sons 50 per cent. will be colour-blind and 50 per cent. will be normal, whilst of the daughters 50 per cent. will be colour-blind and 50 per cent. will be carriers. If a carrier woman should marry a normal man, then of the sons 50 per cent. will be colour-blind and 50 per cent. normal, whilst of the daughters, 50 per cent. will be carriers and 50 per cent. normal. These statements refer to observed facts.

By means of this scheme the reader can for himself predict the distribution of colour-blindness among the offspring of any marriage. Let X underlined so, $\underline{X}$, indicate that on this X-chromosome the factor for colour-blindness is borne. There can thus be two kinds of males, colour-blind males, $\underline{X}Y$, and normal males, XY. But, there are three kinds of women; colour-blind, $\underline{X}\underline{X}$; carrier women, $\underline{X}X$; and normal women, XX. A carrier of a recessive character is an individual in whose hereditary constitution there lies hidden the factor for this particular character.

It is not expressed because it is covered by the dominant character of normality. Thus, on one X-chromosome of a woman, a carrier of colour-blindness, there is this factor (X), but on the other, the alternative factor for normal vision is present. If a woman is to be colour-blind, she must have a double dose of this colour-blind factor : for a man to be colour-blind, he needs but one, for the reasons that he has only one X-chromosome and that on the Y-chromosome there is not the factor for normal vision.

These and similar facts can be explained easily and satisfactorily if it is assumed that the hereditary factor for colour-blindness is resident in the X-chromosome, that the presence of one X-chromosome in the chromosome constitution of an individual leads to the development of maleness, whilst the presence of two X-chromosomes leads to the development of femaleness, and, finally, that the sex of the individual is determined at the time of fertilisation by the workings of this sex-chromosome-distributing mechanism.

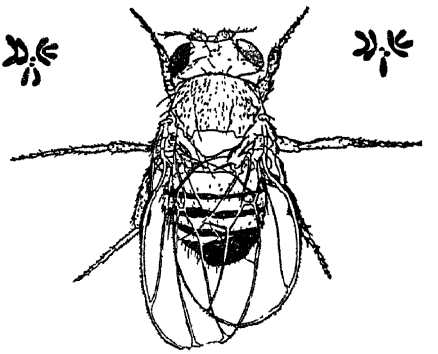


Fig. 5. A LATERAL GYNANDROMORPH *DROSOPHILA MELONOGASTER*

The left side is red-eyed and female in type ; the right side is white-eyed (a sex-linked recessive character) and male in type. The cells on the left side contain two X-chromosomes ; those on the right side contain only one. Since the mother of this fly was white-eyed and the father red-eyed, and since red is dominant to white, we are enabled to state that it was the X-chromosome from the father that was lost.

The very clearest light is thrown upon this sex-determining mechanism by what is known as gynandromorphism in insects (Gk. *gyne*=woman ; *aner*=man ; *morphe*=form). A gynandromorph is an individual which is a sex mosaic in space, exhibiting both male and female characters. In a lateral gynandromorph half of the body is male, the other half is female. It has been shown that this abnormality in the regional distribution of the sex characters is associated with, and can be explained by, an abnormality in the distribution of the X-chromosomes. The gynandromorph is an individual which has its origin in the fertilisation of an X-chromosome-bearing egg by an X-chromosome-bearing sperm to become a genetic female—XX in sex-chromosome constitution. The fertilised egg in which this individual has its origin becomes the individual by continued

cell division. First of all the egg divides into two, and this division involves a previous longitudinal division of all the chromosomes, which, as has been said, exist in the form of pairs, and of each pair one member has come by way of the sperm from the father, the other by way of the egg from the mother. As a result of this division of the chromosomes, each daughter cell receives exactly that number of chromosomes which is characteristic of the species. Each of the X-chromosomes of the fertilised egg divides longitudinally and into each daughter cell there passes one half of each. If at this first division of the fertilised egg one of the daughter X-chromosomes fails to pass into one of the daughter cells, then that cell and all its descendants will contain only one X-chromosome instead of two. Furthermore, if in respect of sex-linked characters the father and the mother differ, it becomes possible, by reference to the characterisation of that half of the body the cells of which contain only one X, to recognise which X, paternal or maternal in origin, has been eliminated. Examination of the tissues of such a lateral gynandromorph

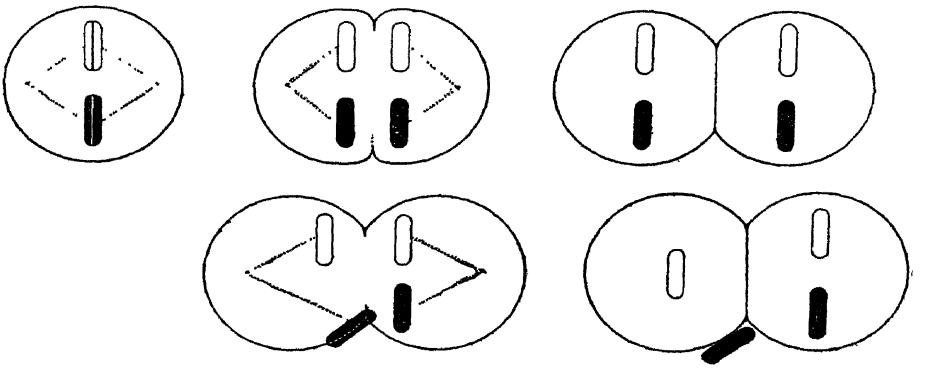


Fig. 6. DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING THE CAUSE OF GYNANDROMORPHISM

Above is shown the normal distribution of the X-chromosomes; below is seen the daughter X-chromosome excluded from the daughter cell.

has shown that this explanation is the correct one, for the cells of the male half of the body include only one X-chromosome, whereas the cells of the female half include two. It is interesting to note that of the two sides of the body in the case of these forms one has its origin in one of the daughter cells produced by the first division of the fertilised egg, the other half having its origin in the other daughter cell (*see Fig.* 6).

From this and other evidence it follows that in the body cells of the female tissues there are two X-chromosomes in association with two of each of the autosomes, so that, if A represents one complete set of autosomes as present in the ripe ovum, the quantitative relation in the body cells and in the unripe gametes between the sex-chromosomes and the autosomes can be expressed by the formula 1X : 1A; whereas in the male the relation of X-chromosomes to autosomes is expressed by the formula 1X : 2A.

For purposes of discussion, by far the simplest method of constructing

a thought model of the sex-determining mechanism is to assume that on the X-chromosome of these forms are hereditary factors that are female-determining, and that on the autosomes are others that are male-determining, and that the sexuality of the zygote is determined by the balance between these. If F represents one set of such female-determining factors on the X-chromosome, if M represents one set of the male-determining factors on one set of the autosomes (A), and if in their relationship 1F is greater than 1M, but less than 2M, then

(FX) (FX)MM is a female because 2F is greater than 2M ; whereas
(FX)Y(MM) is a male because 1F is less than 2M.

A complication enters here. In the moth and the bird it is the female and not the male that is digametic. Symbolised, her sex-chromosome constitution is XY, and that of the male XX. In these cases it is necessary to place the male-determining factors on the X and the female-determining factors on the autosomes, so that

(MX) (MX) (FF) is a male because 2M is greater than 2F ; and
(MX)Y(FF) is a female because 1M is less than 2F.

These formulæ, of course, must not be taken too literally. They are to be regarded as simple attempts to explain a very imperfectly understood subject concerning which there is presently profound lack of physiological knowledge. But it is certainly necessary to postulate that in every zygote, be it XX or XY in sex-chromosome constitution, there are the physical bases of developmental impulses which strive to impose upon the developing individual a male type and a female type of differentiation respectively.

This is clearly shown by the results of crossing different geographical races of the gypsy moth *Lymantria dispar*. It has long been known to entomologists that when these are crossed sexual abnormalities are commonly present amongst the hybrid offspring. For example, if European specimens of the gypsy moth are bred amongst themselves, their offspring are perfectly normal in every way. The same is true of the Japanese variety. But should a Japanese male be mated with a European female, the offspring consist of normal males and of females that are intersexual in that they show a number of modifications in the direction of maleness. The reciprocal cross, European male and Japanese female, yields normal males and females, but if the individuals of this generation are interbred, then, in the next hybrid generation, there appear a proportion of males that are intersexual, that is, that show modification in the direction of the female type of sex-equipment. This problem has been studied very thoroughly by Goldschmidt of the Kaiser Wilhelm Institut für Biologie, Berlin-Dahlem. He has found that in respect of their ability to produce intersexual forms when crossed, there are very many different races of European, Japanese and American gypsy moths. As a result of great numbers of matings between different races, Goldschmidt has been able to classify his strains as relatively " strong " or " weak." For example, a strong male mated to a weak female would give 50 per cent. normal males and 50 per cent. intersexual females. A very strong male mated to

a weak female would give offspring all exhibiting the male type of sex-equipment. Out of his experience there came to him the possibility of predicting the results of any particular cross, and to produce every grade of intersexuality. It was noted that this intersexual condition did not affect all the structures of the sex-equipment equally, and he found that he could arrange the different structures in a definite series as regards the degree of intersexuality, and that this series was exactly the opposite to the order of the time of their appearance in development. Those structures which were the first to be developed were the last to become modified : those that were developed last were the first to be changed. In order to explain these facts, Goldschmidt postulated that each individual possesses the potentialities of either sex, since each can become intersexual. The sex-chromosome constitution of the female is XY ; that of the male XX. He places the female-determining factors in Lymantria on the Y-chromosome of the female, and was forced to postulate that these factors elaborated their female-determining substances in the immature egg before the X- and the Y-chromosomes became disjoined. (It will be remembered that the immature gamete possesses a pair of sex-chromosomes, but that the ripe gamete includes but one single sex-chromosome. In this case the ripe egg contains either an X or else a Y.) Because the female-determining factors of the Y function before the egg has become finally ripe, substances, possibly enzymatic in nature, elaborated by the female-determining factors, pervade the immature egg and therefore pervade also both the final egg including an X-chromosome and that containing the Y. He places the male-determining factors on the X-chromosome. Furthermore, he postulates that since the different races can be classified as relatively " strong " or " weak " in respect of their sex-determining powers, these male-determining and female-determining factors themselves must vary in their relative strength. This concept can be illustrated in a simple fashion.

If F represents the female-determining factors borne upon a Y-chromosome, then to this F can be assigned a numerical value : *e.g.* F_5, F_4, F_3, F_2, F_1. Similarly, if M represents the male-determining factors carried by an X-chromosome, then the relative strengths of different male-determining factors can be represented by M_5, M_4, M_3, M_2, M_1. It will be noted that the female-determining impulses are always received by way of the egg from the mother. It follows, then, that in respect of the strength of the female-determining impulses all eggs of one and the same female will be alike. The female will receive her X-chromosome, and therefore her male-determining factors, from her father. The male possesses two X-chromosomes and therefore two sets of male-determining factors (M), and one of these will have been received from either parent, and these themselves may differ one from the other in respect of their strength. A male has its origin in an egg, and therefore into this egg will have passed the elaborated products of the female-determining factors of his mother. His constitution can be represented therefore by MMF ; the constitution of the female by MF. We can now give to these sex-determining factors numerical values. For example, consider the following mating :

(a strong male) $M_5M_5F_6$ × (a weak female) M_2F_3

The spermatozoa provided by the male will each contain M_5 (no female-determining factors will pass into these gametes for the reason that according to the argument these come only by way of the egg). The gametes of the female, on the other hand, will be of two kinds : those with an X-chromosome which will have the constitution M_2F_3, and those without an X-chromosome which will have the constitution F_3. Fertilisation will result in the appearance of two kinds of offspring—$M_5M_2F_3$ (a male because there are two X-chromosomes and because $5 + 2 = 7$, and 7 is greater than 3 : because, that is, M is greater than F); and genetic females, XY in sex-chromosome constitution, but, since 5 is greater than 3, they will all possess the male organisation (that is, they will be examples of complete sex-inversion of females into males).

The simplest method of envisaging what is happening is to assume that the different strengths of male- and female-determining factors elaborate their products at different rates ; that an M_5, for example, as compared with an M_2, is a male-determining factor which elaborates its products much more quickly. If this is so, and if the relation of male- and female-determining factors can alter during that period of development when the sex-equipment is being laid down, then one can accommodate all the facts by what is known as the time law of intersexuality. In the normal male M is always greater than F during that time of the individual's life when the sex-equipment is being laid down. In the female F is always greater than M. But if it should so happen that these sex-differentiating substances are produced at different rates, then there exists the possibility that sex-mosaics in time will be produced. If, for example, in the case of a female, the male-determining reactions should operate at a greater rate than do the female-determining reactions, then the former may overtake and finally supplant the latter. If there is a serial order in the events of sex-differentiation, that is to say, if one can make a time-table representing the relative time of appearance of the various characters of the sex-equipment, then the degree of intersexuality will be determined by the time during this process of differentiation of the sex-equipment when one type of sex-differentiating reaction overtakes and replaces the alternative type. An intersexual female is a female which has pursued a normal female development up to a particular point, but which thereafter switched over and pursued a male type of differentiation. According to this hypothesis it is not the absolute but the relative rates of production of male- and female-differentiating substances that control and model the sex-equipment. It is to be noted that not every part of the body is involved in this condition. Only the structures of the sex-equipment are concerned, and of these only those whose differentiation is not complete at the time are affected by the switch-over. The earlier in development the switch-over occurs, the more structures of the sex-equipment will be affected, and therefore the greater will be the degree of intersexuality. Intersexuality of this kind is the result of a quantitative disharmony between the male and the female sex-determining factors. It is inborn, for it is nothing more or less than the expression of the hereditary constitution of the individual. If the seeds of this disharmony are in the fertilised egg, then inevitably this kind of intersexuality will become expressed as development proceeds.

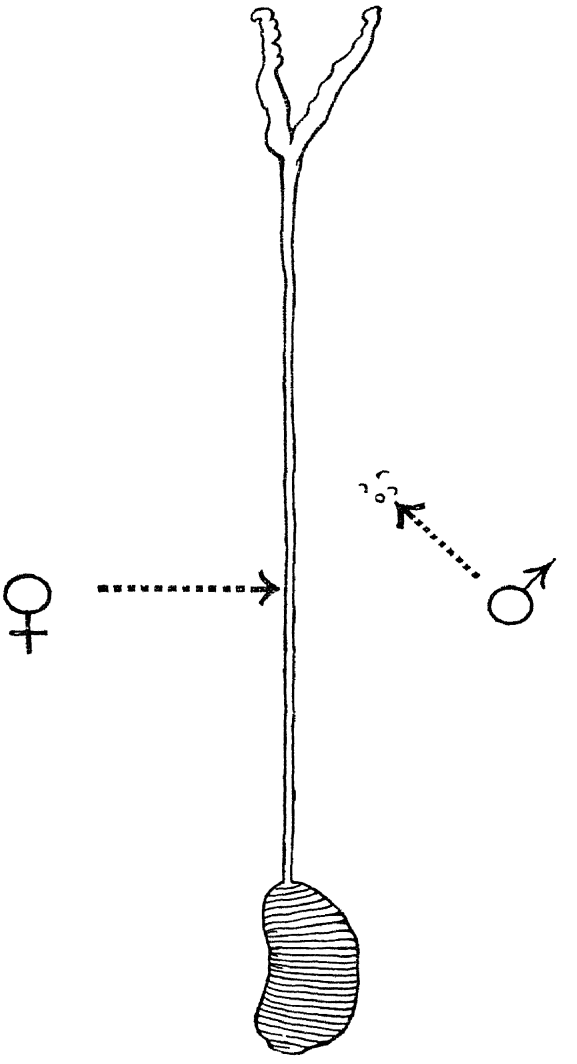


Fig. 7. BONELLIA

Intersexuality very similar in its general appearance can, on the other hand, be the result of the overwhelming of the hereditary constitution of an individual by the impress of external agencies. Bonellia is a marine organism in which sex-dimorphism is most pronounced. The female has a bulky bean-shaped body about two inches long, and extending from one pole of this there is a very long tube-like proboscis ending in a bifurcation (*see Fig.* 7). She rests at the bottom of the water with her body hidden amongst stones and her proboscis protruding in search of food. The male is a microscopic pigmy consisting of nothing but reproductive organs. He

lives within the reproductive passage of the female, obtaining from her everything that he needs for life and in return fertilising the eggs that she produces. The young Bonellia is a free swimming form, floating on the surface of the waters, and amongst them there is no sex-dimorphism, all the individuals are alike. As they develop they begin to sink toward the sea bottom, and the sexual fate of the individual is determined entirely by chance. If one should settle on or near the proboscis of a female it becomes a male. If, on the other hand, it settles at a distance far removed from a female, it becomes a female. If an individual which has been in

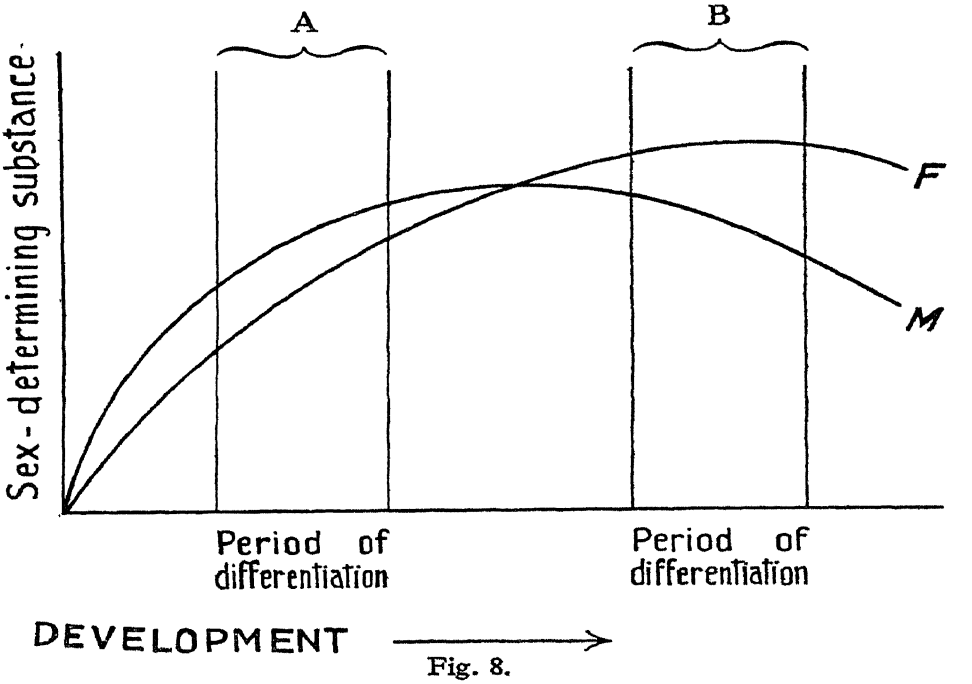


Fig. 8.

If the differentiation of the sex-equipment occurs early (A), then it is pursued under the influence of the male-determining reactions ; if it occurs later, then it comes under the influence of the female-determining reactions. The effect of the stimulus of the female's proboscis is to cause the sex-equipment to be differentiated as A.

contact with the proboscis of a female for a time, and which is therefore developing the male characters, is removed and kept apart from a female, the mode of differentiation changes and the sex-characters which are still to be developed are those of a female. Extracts made from the proboscis of females and added to the water in which larval forms are living induce a male type of differentiation in these.

It may be assumed that Bonellia, like Lymantria, has a sex-chromosome, sex-determining mechanism, but it is seen that even though this be the case the determination of sex is not effected thereby. The facts have been explained as follows. During the early stages of development

in Bonellia, the male-determining reactions are effectively in excess of the female-determining reactions. A little later, however, the female-determining reactions gain the ascendency. If this be so, then if the differentiation of the sex-equipment of the individual occurs early in life, it will take place under the control of the male-differentiating reactions. If, on the other hand, the differentiation of the sex-equipment is somewhat delayed, then it will occur under the control of the female-differentiating reactions. The effect of the chemical substances contained in the proboscis of the female is to produce a precocious development of the sex-equipment, so that any individual exposed to the action of these substances will develop a male characterisation; whilst any individual which is not exposed to their action will become a functional female (*see Fig.* 8).

Broadly it can be stated that in many forms sex is determined solely and finally by the workings of the sex-determining, sex-chromosome-distributing mechanism; whereas, in other forms, the action of this mechanism is conditioned by, and can be overwhelmed by, the impress of external agencies.

THE SEX-HORMONES

In its beginning, the male amongst mammals has a hereditary constitution which is represented by the formula XY and the female by XX. At this stage the individual is but a fertilised egg, and much must happen before it can become a functional male or functional female possessed of the appropriate characterisation. With development there comes the laying down of the sex-equipment, and at the end of development one can be distinguished from the other by differences in anatomical structure, in physiological functioning and in mental characterisation. In the vertebrates (back-boned animals) this initial sexuality, which is but the direct expression of the action of the hereditary factors, is strongly reinforced when the sex-glands of the individual have become differentiated. At this stage of our knowledge it must content us to assume that the normal male develops testes for the reason that in the beginning he had a hereditary constitution which we can symbolise as 1X:2A, and because, during the time of his development, the male-determining reactions were always effectively in excess of the female-determining reactions. Similarly, we must assume that a female develops as a female because in the beginning she had a hereditary constitution which we can symbolise as 1X:1A, and because during her development the female-determining reactions were always effectively in excess of the male-determining reactions.

The results of experimental castration, and of implantation of testicular and ovarian tissues, have demonstrated clearly the intimate relation between the type and the degree of the sex-characterisation on the one hand, and the structure and functional activity of the sex-glands on the other. The stag bears horns, and his accessory sexual apparatus includes penis and scrotum, and these are associated with the presence in his body of testes. In the hind the ovaries are associated with the presence of a uterus, well-developed mammary glands, absence of horns, or else a different pattern of horns, and different body shape. This association of various characters with testis and ovary respectively is so intimate, that

one has no hesitation in identifying the sex of an individual by reference to the structure of its sex-gland. Indeed it can be said that a female is a female in virtue of her ovaries ; a male a male in virtue of his testes.

These sex differences associated with differences in the type of sex-gland pervade the whole organism. It has been found, for example, that the cells which comprise the female body commonly are smaller than those of the male, that there is a difference in the rate of respiration, in the rate of the pulse, in the intensity of the metabolism (Gk. *metabole*= change), the constructive and destructive chemical changes occurring in living organisms, and in many other bodily functions which, at first sight, seem to have nothing to do either with the structural or with the functional characters of sex. That many of such characters depend for their existence and maintenance upon the normal functional activity of the sex-gland is shown in the clearest possible fashion by the results of experimentation. After removal of the sex-gland, changes can be noted in the form and degree of expression of those structures and functions which depend for their initial expression and maintenance upon this gland.

For a long time the view was held that the sex-gland produced its effects through its nervous connections with other parts of the body. Indeed, it was not until the middle of the last century that this attempted explanation of the intimate relation between the sex-gland and the general sex-characters was destroyed, as a result of critical experimentation. The cock, after castration, does not crow ; his comb rapidly diminishes in size, and becomes pale. But it was found that if pieces of testis were implanted under the skin of such an animal, the signs of castration did not appear, although the testicular grafts had no connection with the ducts which carry the spermatozoa toward the exterior and had no nervous connection with the rest of the body.

When first these experiments were carried out, the theory was propounded that the testicle must elaborate a substance which is secreted into the blood stream and is carried thereby throughout the body, thus reaching all organs, influencing them and directing their differentiation. That this conception was fundamentally correct is shown by the fact that within recent years it has been found possible to extract from the testes of domestic animals a substance which, when injected into castrated males, prevents the development of those changes which invariably occur after removal of the male sex-gland. This substance is known as " the male sex-hormone " (Gk. *hormao*=I excite). A hormone (a chemical messenger) is a substance elaborated by a glandular organ, passing therefrom directly into the blood stream and thus being conveyed to all parts of the body and stimulating or depressing the functional activity of distant organs. The male sex-hormone is regarded as being that particular elaborated product of the testis which is responsible for the expression and maintenance of the male characters.

Similar experiments have been carried out in the case of the female. It has been shown that a grafted ovary can maintain the general expression of femaleness in a female from which the ovaries have been previously removed. The injection of extracts derived from certain parts of the mammalian ovary induces the mating reactions in such ovariectomised mice, which otherwise would never attract or receive the male. It also brings

about complete development of the uterus and vagina and induces growth in the mammary glands. It follows, then, that functional sexuality in either sex is essentially a reaction on the part of the body to a particular sex-hormone, male or female.

As was to be expected, a very considerable amount of experimentation has been carried out, having for its object the demonstration of the results of the implantation of ovary into a male and of testis into a female, and of the effects of the injection of male sex-hormone into a female and of female sex-hormone into a male. It was Steinach, of Vienna, who first approached this problem. He used the guinea-pig as his experimental material, for the reason that in this form sex-behaviour is well differentiated in the two sexes and the differences between the external reproductive organs of male and female are very distinct, the male having a large penis with well-developed horns. His mammary glands are rudimentary with very small nipples. Steinach found that after removal of the ovary in the female the nipples atrophied, and that after castration in the male the penis either did not develop, or, if the operation was performed after it had become developed, it underwent atrophy. He found further that implantation of testicular material into the castrated male restored the normal male characterisation, and that implantation of ovarian grafts into the female restored the typical female sex-equipment. When he implanted testicular grafts into young ovariectomised females and ovarian grafts into young castrated males, he found that the male with no testes, but with ovarian grafts, developed large nipples, whilst its penis remained rudimentary. Furthermore, such an animal permitted the approach of young and actually suckled them. In its behaviour it in no way resembled the normal male. The female whose ovaries had been removed, and which had received testicular grafts, exhibited no female behaviour, but its clitoris developed into a penis-like organ.

Later investigators have found reason to qualify some of the original claims of Steinach, but that they are fundamentally correct cannot be doubted. One must conclude from this and similar work that the soma (Gk. *soma*=body), the general tissues of the body, of either sex can develop either male or female characters according to the type of sex-hormone with which it is supplied. The soma possesses the potencies of developing the characters of either sex. This is not surprising to anyone who is acquainted with the many forms which in Nature completely change their sex. The sword-tailed minnow, a fish commonly kept by fanciers, is remarkable in that many cases are known in which an old female has become a complete male. The oyster, it would appear, can undergo complete sex-transformation year after year. Complete transformation of male into female, and female into male, can be produced under experimental conditions in the case of the gypsy moth. In quite a number of forms, protandrous (Gk. *protos*=first ; *aner*=male) or protogynous (Gk. *protos*=first ; *gyne*=woman) hermaphroditism is the rule, it being usual for an individual first to function as a female or male, and then, later, as a male or female.

Manifestly, sex-reversal cannot be complete unless the component structures of the sex-equipment of the individual are capable of becoming transformed or else replaced. The ovary must be replaced or transformed

into a testis, or vice versa. The accessory sexual apparatus, the external organs of reproduction and the rest of the sex-distinguishing characters, must be capable of being either replaced or remodelled. It follows, therefore, that sex-reversal cannot occur in any mature individual whose sex organs are fashioned early in life and which thereafter lose all plasticity and become insensitive to any stimulus which, had it been exerted during development, would have guided their differentiation. No more can it occur in any form in which the differences between male and female architecture are based upon the differential development of two different sets of structures, one of which in either sex undergoes, early in life, complete atrophy.

One would not expect, therefore, to find complete sex-reversal occurring in the mammal after birth. It is possible that it does occur in the case of the bird. The evidence which exists is not conclusive, but certainly is highly suggestive. If one removes the functional ovary of a hen, commonly the right sex-gland, which normally does not develop, springs into activity and develops into an organ which, in its microscopical structure, is somewhat like a testis. In the great majority of such cases, however, spermatozoa are not found in this organ ; but very exceptionally their presence therein has been recorded. Ovarian disease is relatively common among those varieties of domestic fowl which have been selected for high egg yield. A hen with an excellent record of laying ceases to produce eggs ; her comb becomes as large and as erect as that of the cock of the breed ; and she begins to crow. If one makes a post-mortem examination of such a case one finds that in the place of the ovary there is a large vascular tumour (*i.e.* a tumour very rich in blood-vessels). In other cases, the plumage becomes entirely cocky in structure and colour and in these cases one finds usually that the left ovary has become entirely atrophied, whilst on the right side there is a small sex-gland having the microscopical structure of a rudimentary testis. There are several instances of what would seem to be complete sex reversal in the fowl, in which a hen, which previously has been an excellent layer, rapidly assumes the male characters and actually fertilises the eggs of another hen. There must always be a doubt concerning such cases, however, for the reason that though one has no cause to question the statements of the breeder, it is from him that the professional biologist receives his material ; so that the latter cannot personally vouch for the accuracy of the statements relating to the earlier part of the life history of the specimen.

If complete sex-reversal does occur, then it follows that it is due to the removal of the functional ovary by disease and to the consequent development of new sex-gland tissue, which assumes the structure of testes. One could easily explain the occurrence of sex-reversal in the fowl by an appeal to the hypothesis developed by Goldschmidt If one assumes that during embryonic life the female-determining reactions are effectively in excess in the case of the female fowl, then the sex-gland will be differentiated under the influence of these reactions. The ovary develops and soon comes to consist of something like 3,000 immature eggs. Ordinarily, during the succeeding years of the individual's life these eggs ripen, and yolk is laid down. So long as this ovary remains healthy, then its action will preclude the operation of the male-differentiating reactions which, after embryonic

life, have been increasing in efficiency; but if the ovary is removed by the knife or by disease, then, should any further differentiation of sex-gland tissue occur, it will take place under the influence of these male-differentiating reactions which have overtaken and replaced the female-determining reactions.

That the soma can, and does, react to both the male and the female sex-hormone is shown in the clearest way by the case of the free-martin in cattle. The free-martin is a genetic female (XX in sex-chromosome constitution), whose reproductive system becomes abnormal during the period of the differentiation of the sex-equipment, as a result of the action of the male sex-hormone of a normal male co-twin. Twins in cattle may consist of two normal males, two normal females, one male and one female, each normal (this combination is exceptionally rare) or one male and a free-martin. Lillie, of Chicago, who finally solved this intriguing problem of the nature of the free-martin, found that the great majority of twins in cattle are fraternal twins and not identical. The two fertilised ova pass into the uterus and become attached to its lining. As the zygotes increase in size, their embryonic membranes meet and in the great majority of cases fuse; so that if the after-births are examined, when the calves are born, it is a matter of the greatest difficulty to separate one set from the other. If such fusion occurs, it is possible for the blood-vessels of each to ramify into the substance of the other, so that a common vascular intercommunication may become established. It was noted that when the twins consisted of one normal male and one normal female, there was no such vascular interconnection. If the twins are bisexual—that is, if one is a male and the other is a female—and if this fusion of the embryonic membranes occurs, and if the blood-vessels in them become conjoined, any sex-hormone elaborated by one individual can pass into the body of the other. If then, the testis of the male should become functional at an earlier stage in development than does the ovary of the female, the male sex-hormone will be elaborated and will be pervading the tissues of both fœtuses before the female sex-hormone is present. Under these circumstances, the female co-twin will pursue her development under the direction of the male sex-hormone elaborated by the testes of her brother.

Examination of the free-martin has shown that the assumption of the male characters by the female twin is imperfect. The external reproductive organs are of the female pattern, whilst the internal organs of reproduction are more or less completely male. The sex-glands, which normally would have become ovaries, assume the structure of imperfect testes. The degree of development of the mammary glands of the free-martin is as that of the immature female.

As has been stated, it is suggested that the female becomes abnormal whilst the male remains normal because the male sex-hormone is liberated before the female sex-hormone is present. Of course, this is not the only possible explanation. It may well be that the development of the sex-equipment of the male proceeds undisturbed by any influence exerted by the female co-twin. Obviously, either the female does not exert any influence on the male, or else this influence is not strong enough to overcome the tendencies toward male development as aroused by the male sex-hormone. It would seem that the former alternative is the correct one,

for it has been found that the removal of the ovary during the early stages of development, for example in a one-day-old rat, does not in any way affect the progress of the normal differentiation of the sex-equipment of the female ; whereas castration of the day-old male rat is followed by very profound modifications. It would seem that the ovary does not exert any appreciable influence upon the soma before the individual has attained a certain age, and that the sex-equipment of the female becomes developed because the impulse to this differentiation is innate in the soma of the embryo. In other words, the female type of sex-differentiation owes nothing to the female sex-hormone. This is not to say that when once that sex-equipment has been developed, it does not depend upon the female sex-hormone for its maintenance. In contrast with this, the male type of differentiation demands the presence of the male sex-hormone elaborated by the testis. A body without a sex-gland, or with an ovary, will develop the female sex-characters (in the case of the rat or mouse) : a body with a testis will develop the male sex-characters. From the experiments which permit these conclusions to be drawn, the fact emerges that the differentiation into a female is a function which every embryo can perform, so long as no male sex-hormone is present to impose upon the body a male type of differentiation. The female sex represents, in the early stages of its development, the neutral form—that is, the form which the soma assumes in the absence of the male sex-hormone. On the other hand, every embryo would become a male if it were exposed during its early development to the action of the male sex-hormone.

If this be so, it follows that in cases in which the male sex-hormone appeared in the body at a later stage of development than was usual, a form of intersexuality would result, and that the degree of this intersexuality, as measured by the amount of femaleness in characterisation, would be an indication of the extent of the delay—the later the effective production of male sex-hormone the more femaleness. It so happens that a great many cases of intersexuality, which would seem to be best explained by an appeal to such an hypothesis, have been recorded. They are common both in the case of man and of his domesticated animals. The typical history in these cases is that an individual regarded as a female during the earlier part of its life later assumes many of the characters of the male. In man, there are many cases known in which the individual, having been reared as a girl, and even having become a wife, later undergoes a strange sex-transformation. There are many cases in the goat in which an individual has won prizes as a female kid and later has developed the beard and the head and the smell of a male. When the external reproductive organs of these cases are examined, it is found that though in general they resemble those of a female, the erectile organ, which in the female is quite small and hidden by the lips of the vulva, is over-large, whilst in the groin can be felt a pair of tumour-like bodies which, when removed and examined, are found to have the structure of undescended testicles. When one examines the internal reproductive organs, one finds that in addition to a more or less well-developed uterus there are the seminal vesicles, prostrate gland and epididimes, glands which either act as store-chambers for the semen of the male or else add their own contributions to his ejaculate (*see Fig.* 9).

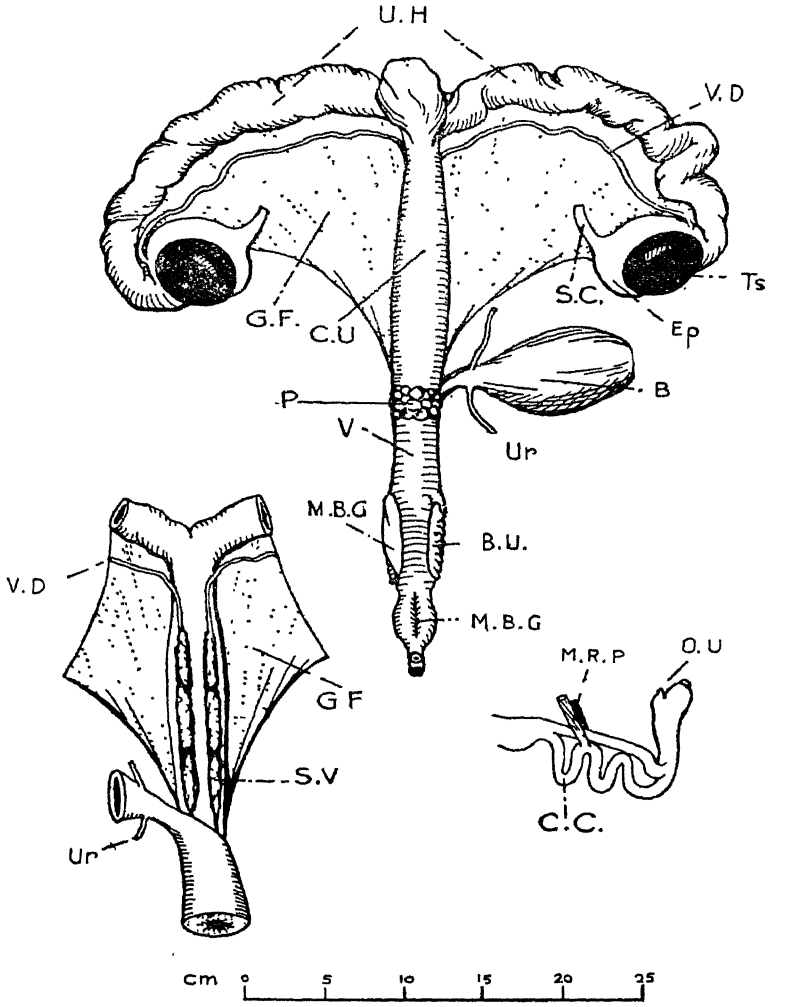


Fig. 9. A CASE OF INTERSEXUALITY IN THE PIG

B.	Urinary Bladder	both sexes
C.C.	Penis	male
C.U.	Body of Uterus	female
Ep.	Epididymis	male
P.	Prostate	male
S.C.	Spermatic Cord	male
S.V.	Seminal Vesicle	male
Ts.	Testis	male
U.H.	Uterine Horn	female
Ur.	Ureter	both sexes
V.	Vagina	female
V.D.	Vas Deferens	male

The animal's reproductive system consisted of an intimate mixture of male and female structures, but the sex-glands themselves were found to be testes.

In order to understand these cases, it is necessary to understand a little about the origin and development of the reproductive organs. In the young fœtus, before the sex-characters are developed, there are to be found two minute rudimentary sex-glands, or gonads, which possess neither the characters of the ovary nor of the testis. The accessory sexual apparatus consists of two pairs of ducts, one of which is called the Müllerian, the other the Wolffian. The external reproductive organs consist of a cleft with a tubercle, the urogenital cleft and the genital tubercle. In that individual which becomes a functional male, the gonads become testes, the Wolffian ducts become the ducts of the testes which convey the spermatozoa therefrom to the penis, and the seminal vesicles and prostate. The Müllerian ducts atrophy, whilst the urogenital cleft and genital tubercle become the scrotum and penis respectively. In the case of the female the gonads become ovaries, the Müllerian ducts become the uterine tubes and the uterus, the Wolffian ducts atrophy, whilst the urogenital cleft and genital tubercle become the vulvo-vagina and clitoris. At the time of the attainment of sexual maturity, in the case of man between fourteen and twenty-one years of age, many other sex-dimorphic characters make their appearance; *e.g.* differences in the degree of development of the mammary glands, in the distribution of the hair, in depth of voice and so on.

Now, in these abnormal cases it is found that the gonads have become testes, that derivatives of both the Müllerian and Wolffian ducts become well developed, that there is some degree of abnormality in the development of the derivatives of the urogenital cleft and genital tubercle, and that those sex-dimorphic characters which are assumed later in life are of the male type. These abnormalities can be explained, if it is assumed that these individuals are males in their beginnings and that, owing to a delayed differentiation of their testes, the male sex-hormone did not come into play and control the differentiation of the Wolffian and Müllerian ducts and of the urogenital cleft and tubercle. Before the male sex-hormone was present differentiation would be that of the neutral type, that is of the female. After it had come into play the differentiation would be as that appropriate to the male. If there is a time seriation of events in the sex-differentiation of these forms, then the degree of abnormality will be determined by the time at which the male sex-hormone becomes operative.

If this is so, then it can easily be understood how it is that an individual, which is regarded as a female during the earlier part of its life, comes to assume male characters after sexual maturity has been passed. The sex of an infant, or of a kid, is identified by reference to its external reproductive organs. In the absence of the male sex-hormone, as has been said, the urogenital cleft and genital tubercle develop to assume a form which is indistinguishable from the normal differentiated vulvo-vagina and clitoris of the female. At the time of birth the genital tubercle is not overlarge; its size increases as the individual grows. The child is therefore regarded as a girl and is brought up as one. It is unlikely that any reason will present itself for examining further the external reproductive organs of such a child. At the time of, and after, sexual maturity the superficial sex-dimorphic characters become expressed, and at this time, if an

examination were made, suspicions would quickly be aroused. It would be found, for example, that the distribution of the hair on the body and the size of the clitoris were not in accord with the typical female plan, but such examination is not made until, as usually happens, persistent pain in the groin, together with the growth of hair on the face, sends the individual to a doctor.

In other cases of this kind a further abnormality is noted. The sex-glands, instead of consisting solely of testicular tissue, take the form of ovo-testes, which include both ovarian and testicular material. These are cases of what is commonly known as "glandular hermaphroditism" (*see Fig.* 10). Usually the testicular material contains no spermatozoa, but an abundance of that tissue which is known to be the source of the male sex-hormone. It is an interesting fact that the testis cannot elaborate spermatozoa if it is retained within the abdominal cavity. The reason for this would seem to be that the temperature within the abdomen, being several degrees Centigrade higher than that within the scrotum, is too high for the processes of spermatogenesis to proceed normally. In order to explain these cases, it is necessary to call upon the hypothesis adumbrated by Goldschmidt to account for his cases of intersexuality in the gypsy moth. These would seem to be individuals in whom there is a disharmony between the male- and female-determining factors in the hereditary constitution. If, for example, during the time of the differentiation of the gonad, first the female-differentiating reactions are effectively in excess, and if almost immediately these are supplanted and replaced by the male-differentiating reactions, then the gonads will become an intimate mixture of ovarian and testicular tissues. If the elaboration of the male sex-hormone on the part of the testicular tissue is somewhat delayed, there will result an intersexual condition of the accessory sexual apparatus and external reproductive organs, and when the development of the derivatives of the Müllerian and Wolffian ducts has been completed, the differentiation of these structures will be maintained by the male sex-hormone and by the female sex-hormone provided by the mixed sex-glands. Furthermore, the remaining sex-distinguishing characters, which depend for their expression and maintenance upon the sex-glands, will be developed under the influence of both ovary and testis and thus a sex mosaic, an individual with the characters of both sexes, will be produced.

THE PSYCHOLOGICAL ASPECTS OF SEX

The older psychology either disregarded sex altogether or, where it dealt with it, tried to bring it into line with the usual classification of the emotions. In recent years the scientific study of sex-behaviour has been undertaken, and into this particular problem the conception of the reflex mechanism has been introduced. These reflexes are mechanisms which play a very important rôle in a great many of the functions of the living organism. An example which one may display for oneself is that which is known as the knee-jerk. By sitting with one leg resting upon the other, with both knees bent and the muscles relaxed, and by striking with the edge of the hand just below the knee-cap of the upper leg, one will notice that this leg gives a sudden kick. Consciousness is not involved in this

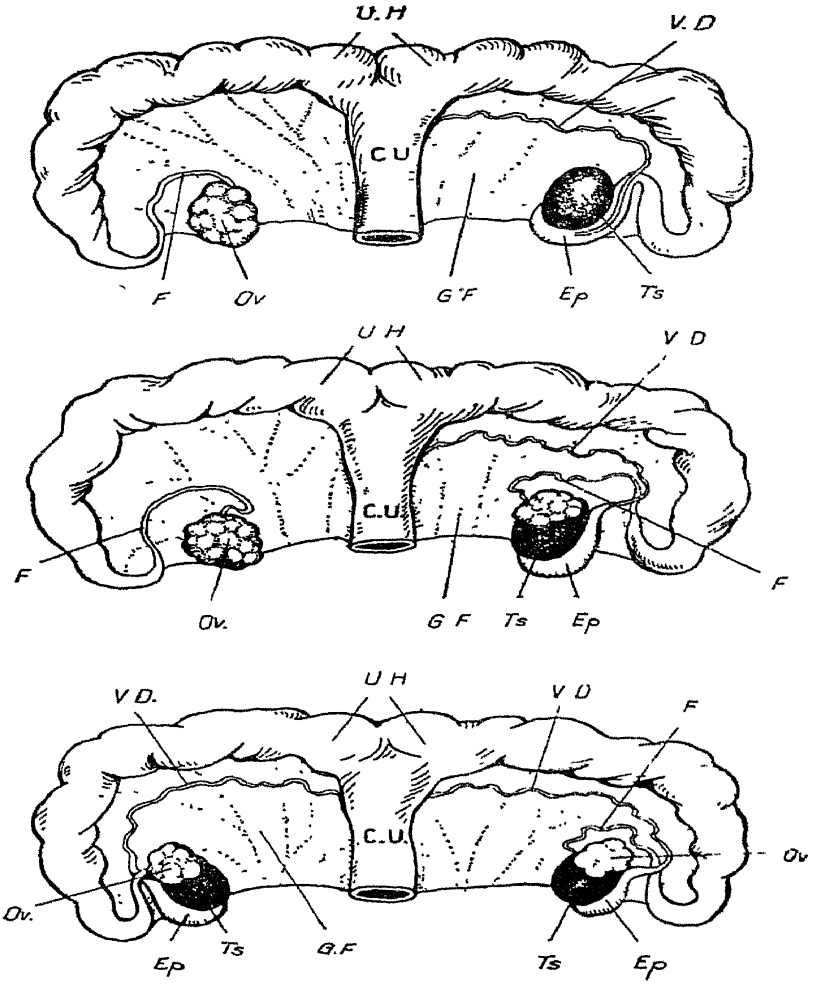


Fig. 10. DIFFERENT TYPES OF "GLANDULAR HERMAPHRODITISM" ENCOUNTERED IN A PIG

C.U. Body of Uterus
Ep. Epididymis
F. Fallopian Tube
Ov. Ovary
Ts. Testis
U.H. Uterine Horn
V.D. Vas Deferens

action. What really happens in this series of events is that the sudden blow to the tendon of the knee-cap involves the stimulation of the sensory nerves therein. Along these the message is passed to the spinal cord, where it is, so to speak, switched-over to associated motor nerves, along which passes the complementary message which provokes contractions in certain muscles of the leg. Now, the essential feature of this so-called reflex arc and its functioning is its entire independence of consciousness and deliberation. Many are the reflex actions of this kind, and without doubt they are of the greatest importance to the organism. The blinking of the eyelid if a speck of dust or any other foreign body touches or threatens to touch the eyeball, the coughing that follows immediately upon the irritation of the back of the throat, the sudden withdrawal of the hand when it touches unexpectedly something hot or very cold, the leap for safety out of the way of the on-rushing motor-car—these are all instances of reflex actions, which may be so important to the individual as to make all the difference between living and dying.

In the case of insects, behaviour can be simply and generally explained as a complex of reflexes which are predetermined in the structure and in the organisation of the animal. For example, there are caterpillars which invariably, when moving, crawl in Indian file, one behind the other; the first one being directed in its movements by certain conditions of the surface of the body on which it seeks its food. All the rest follow strictly in the train of the first. Should one force the first caterpillar to cross its own trail, then it will follow that trail and the whole procession will move continuously in a circle, even though in doing so they can never reach their object and inevitably must starve. Practically every kind of behaviour in the insect can be explained by reference to some reflex action. It flies toward a flower, not because it wants to do so, but because it must. The flower excites certain sensory nerve-endings, and these in their turn incite the movements of those muscles which, in their action, direct the animal toward the flower.

It might seem at first sight that in this matter of reflex action one cannot compare an insect with the higher mammals, but it can be shown in the case of those animals which are available for experiment, and which must be regarded as being essentially similar to man in respect of their behaviour, that reflex actions such as exist in the insect also operate in them. For example, appropriate stimulation of the male ejaculatory organ, or of the female genital region, produces a state of general sexual excitement which can lead to the climax of the sexual act, ejaculation in the case of the male and contraction of the uterus during an orgasm in the female. The chain of these reflexes has been investigated, and it is now known that the stimulus applied to the genital region provokes a nervous reaction which is conducted to the lower part of the spinal cord, where it links up with motor centres, and that nervous stimuli sent therefrom lead to the contraction of the muscles surrounding the deferent duct of the testis, thus producing ejaculation in the case of the male and, in the female, to a contraction of the muscles of the uterus. In the case of the guinea-pig boar, if one places an electrode to the tongue and another to the skin of the neck and then releases a slight electric shock, the animal will behave exactly as it does during the act of sexual congress, there

being erection of the penis and complete ejaculation, although no female and none of those stimuli which normally call forth sexual excitement are present. The explanation for this behaviour is that the electric current directly excites the motor centres in the spine which normally are stimulated by messages received by way of the sensory arms of this reflex arc, and this leads to exactly the same effect as does the presence of a female in heat. It has also been shown experimentally, that even after removal of those portions of the brain which are known to be concerned with the higher psychical functions, this electrical stimulation produces exactly the same result. It follows therefore that erection and ejaculation in the male and contraction of the uterus in the female, phenomena which are the most prominent features in the act of sexual congress, are reflex actions and are not under the control of the brain.

The reflex nature of the sex act has been demonstrated in the clearest possible fashion in certain of the lower forms of life, for example, the garden snail. It has already been mentioned that the sexual organisation of the snail is complicated. There is only one kind of individual, each has both ovarian and testicular tissue and each produces both ova and spermatozoa. Nevertheless, two individuals mate and during this process they exhibit very intricate movements and seem to express very considerable excitement. Yet one can show, in the simplest fashion, that the whole chain of events is dominated by simple reflexes. If one should stimulate certain regions of the body surface in an orderly sequence, one can produce in a single snail, in the entire absence of any other individual, all the expressions of the sex act in exactly the same sequence as these occur during normal mating. It is a long way from snail to man, and certainly in all forms it is not so simple a matter to demonstrate the chain of reflexes and complexes which constitute the complete performance of the sex act. But there is no doubt that whilst stimuli which are not of a tactile, olfactory or visual nature have yet to be investigated, it should be possible in the future to interpret the whole sexual behaviour exhibited by the higher forms as a series of reflex actions.

So far, only the act of sexual congress itself has been discussed, but observations have been made which show quite clearly that sex-behaviour, in the wider sense of the word, is no less reflex in nature than is the actual sex act itself. In the rat, for example, one notes that sexual behaviour in the case of the female is restricted to certain periods—the periods of œstrus (Gk. *oistros=gadfly*) or heat—which recur following intervals of four to six days. The male, on the other hand, is always prepared to exhibit sexual activity. There are two entirely different kinds of response on the part of the female to the advances of the male, according to whether or not she is in heat. If she is not, then she replies to the approach of the male with very definite movements of defence, making copulation impossible for mechanical reasons. She simply will not receive the male. But later, when she comes in heat, this behaviour changes completely, and on the approach of the male she crouches, arches her back and thus makes sexual intercourse possible. But a female rat which is in heat will not only crouch on the approach of a male, but can be induced to do so in response to very different kinds of stimulus. If, with one's fingers, one should press upon her back, she will adopt the mating position. Thus it

appears that we are dealing with another example of a reflex action, one which does not occur at any time but only during the heat period. It may be said that the main feature of œstrus, or heat, is that during this period the mating reflex can be exhibited by the female. It matters not by what the stimulus is exerted : it may be a male or it may be the pressure of the human finger. During this time, if this particular stimulus is exhibited, the response is inevitable and is not under the control of the will of the rat.

In the case of the male, whilst there is no reason to assume that a similar kind of mechanism is not involved, it is probable that the mechanism is rather more complicated. It would appear at first sight that the stimulus which releases sexual desire in the male is the smell, or the sight, of the female. However, males which are blind, which have been robbed of their sense of smell, whose cutaneous sensations have all been obliterated, and which are deaf, nevertheless can perform the sex act as readily and as efficiently as does the normal male. It follows, therefore, that it cannot be the smell, or the sight, or the noise made by the female which evokes the exhibition of sex behaviour on the part of the male. One has to conclude from all the observations which are available, that there is automatism in the male which leads to a continual urge to perform the sex act. The actual performance of the male during sexual congress is nevertheless conditioned by the behaviour of the female, and ejaculation does not take place until the female has permitted the male to mount her. So it would seem that the male endures a continual urge to pursue and mount the female, and that as soon as the latter permits him to do so ejaculation occurs as a reflex act. If this be so, we are dealing with a chain of reflexes which, in their functioning, are conditioned by the occurrence of reflexes in another individual. Manifestly, such mechanisms may be very complicated. If they exist in the case of man—and there is no reason to assume that they do not—then in all probability the sensory stimuli must be largely presented by the physical attractions of the heterosexual partner ; these, in their turn, being qualified by all sorts of inhibitions and preferences born of social experience. However, the application of the concept of the reflex arc to the problems of sex-behaviour has placed future research in this particular field on a firm basis. This has made it possible to exclude the influence of consciousness as an active factor in matters of sex, and to regard consciousness as a more or less additional phenomenon.

The study of reflex mechanisms in relation to sex-behaviour leads inevitably to a consideration of the nature of the attraction that one individual can exert for another. It is the rule that it is the male of the species which exhibits the desire to mate, which pursues the female. But this is not essentially a male characteristic, and it can be shown that it is not the presence of the testis which determines this form of activity. There are species in which the male is inactive and in which the female plays an active rôle in courtship. Among birds, for example, in the case of the Phalarope it is the female which wears the brighter plumage and plays the active rôle in courtship, though amongst breeds generally the adornment of the male far surpasses that of the female, and it is the male which is prone to exhibitionism. But these exceptions to the rule show clearly that

sex-behaviour is by no means necessarily related to the production of spermatozoa or ova, and that the psychological sexuality of an animal may be quite different from physical sexuality. This fact has given rise to considerable speculation, and has encouraged certain experimentation relating to the condition of homosexuality in man.

Homosexuality has been regarded as the state in which an individual, equipped with all the physical characters appropriate to one sex, exhibits the psychological characters appropriate to the opposite sex. Thus a homosexual male was looked upon as being psychologically female, though structurally male. It was but natural that against the background of our knowledge of the relation of the endocrine glands and the sex characters, it should be assumed that this homosexuality was to be attributed to the secretion on the part of the gonad of the wrong sex-hormone; that is to say, that a testis, instead of elaborating male sex-hormone, was producing female sex-hormone, and vice versa. Steinach concluded from his studies that the male homosexual had an abnormal testis of this kind, and argued that the cure of homosexuality must take the form of the replacement of the testes of the patient by others from a normal heterosexual male. Clinical records seem to show that in this way homosexuality could indeed be cured; but there is reason to think that this experimentation and its clinical application were erroneous, both in conception and in the recorded results. It is well known that the human subject is a very unsatisfactory experimental material. The patient himself rather complicates the experiment by allowing opinion and self-interest to colour his symptoms, and his examination can never be sufficiently objective. Moreover, it is commonly forgotten that there is no real reason why the homosexual should be essentially different from the heterosexual. It is well known that the male of domesticated animals, under certain conditions, very frequently attempts to perform the act of sexual congress with other males. If twelve cocks are kept together, in the absence of females, it is certain that some of these males will be treated by the rest as though they were females. Homosexuality does not consist so much in differences in male behaviour as in the choice of unusual objects. If the appropriate object is absent, or if the individual is unable to identify the proper sex of the object, then copulation will be attempted, but it will be successful only if the partner is the female. It would seem, therefore, that homosexuality is not so much due to a disturbance in the secretions of the endocrine (Gk. *endon*= within; *krinein*= to separate) glands, but rather to a disturbance of the central nervous system which results in the choice of an unusual object for the purposes of mating.

At this stage we must return once more to the sex-hormones. Thus far we have discussed the influence of these upon the structural and physiological characters of the individual, but it can be shown that their influence upon the psychical characters, as expressed in sex-behaviour, is no less pronounced. The female rat from which the ovaries have been removed no longer shows that periodic recurrence of heat which is typical in the case of the normal rat. In respect of sexual behaviour she is indeed asexual. For her life is but one long " interval," no mating is ever observed. On the other hand, should one inject the female sex-hormone which leads once again to the development of the genital organs, one finds

that the injected female again exhibits sexual behaviour. The animal which has received a sufficient quantity of extracts containing female sex-hormone behaves exactly as does the normal female rat during the period of œstrus. It responds to the approach of the male with the typical mating reflex. It is obvious, therefore, that the sex-hormone erotinises the nervous system and this creates what one might call the psychological condition of sexual activity. As yet we have no knowledge as to the method by which this state of erotinisation is actually produced, nor of the changes in the nervous system created by the hormone. Nevertheless, it can even now be stated that the mechanism which is concerned with sex-behaviour has been disclosed, and that the exhibition of this mysterious urge, concerning which mankind has speculated for centuries, can be called into being by the administration of a substance, chemical in nature, the actual composition of which will soon be known.

In the case of a male the facts are somewhat different. If one removes the ovary from a female rat, sexual activity is immediately obliterated. In the male, on the other hand, this only occurs if castration is performed before the individual has reached sexual maturity. This is not true only for the rat, for it applies also to man. It has frequently been described how men who have been castrated before they have reached puberty have never developed the sex-characters of the male, but that if castration occurs in adult life, sex-characters and sex-behaviour are not thereby completely destroyed. It follows, therefore, that the erotinisation of the nervous system which occurs at the time of puberty persists in the case of the male for a longer period of time than it does in the case of the female. But it can be shown that this again is due to the action of a sex-hormone, in this case, the male sex-hormone, which, as has been shown, is responsible for the expression and maintenance of the physical sex-characters of the male. If one castrates a guinea-pig the seminal vesicles, which provide the bulk of the fluid in the ejaculate, atrophy, and though erection may still occur, ejaculation is impossible, since there are no spermatozoa and no secretion from the seminal vesicles. After a time the power of erection of the penis also disappears and the sex-urge becomes greatly diminished. However, injection of the male sex-hormone restores this sex-behaviour and the power of erection, and should one now apply the electrical stimulus to which reference has already been made one notes that the guinea-pig responds with a complete ejaculation.

The psychological effects of these sex-hormones are not restricted to the field of sexual activity as ordinarily understood. Rats that are kept for laboratory purposes are provided with revolving cages, in which they take their exercise. It is to be noted that the rat is a very active animal, and that if a contraption like a cyclometer of the ordinary push-bicycle is attached to the revolving drum, they spend hours in this drum and travel for miles at a time. It has been found that this spontaneous activity of the rat is an indication of the individual's sexual activity. For example, in the case of the female, the animal about to come in heat takes far more exercise than she does in the interval between two heat periods. After ovariectomy there is a remarkable diminution in the amount of this spontaneous activity, but should such an ovariectomised female be injected with the female sex-hormone, then her spontaneous activity is

raised again to the normal level or even beyond it. The same is true of the male. If we tried to translate these findings into ordinary language, we might be inclined to say that the animal which exhibited a high degree of spontaneous activity was a very energetic animal, and the animal with a low spontaneous activity a relatively lazy animal. It is an interesting thought that the degree of this activity is related to the intensity of the sexual urge. The tendency to go hiking, to indulge in Rugby football, or violent games of tennis, the running round and round in a revolving cage, these all would seem to be of the same order, and laziness and activity would seem to represent the reaction on the part of the nervous system to those chemical agencies, the sex-hormones.

It is necessary to make an attempt to link up these facts and suggestions with certain of the statements of modern psychology, particularly of psycho-analysis. The psycho-analytical point of view is that the primary source of mental energy is represented by the sex-urge, which can be directed to other purposes during the course of individual development and ordinarily is so transferred.[1] It must be the purpose of future investigation and of theoretical analysis to examine the possibility of interpreting physiological findings such as have been discussed in psychological terms, but attention should now be drawn to the fact that in the case of the experimental animal, at least, the sex-hormone is the creator of sexual energy in the strict sense of the word as well as of general activity and that, in addition, these hormones are intimately concerned with the expression of the higher functions of the nervous system.

The maze is a favourite instrument of the experimental psychologist. Rats have mostly been used for these experiments, and the task set them is to find their way to an inner chamber where food is offered. The number of trials and errors until the individual passes directly and without hesitation to the food is registered as the measure of the learning ability of the rat. It has been found that the supply of sex-hormone is a factor of great importance in the degree of learning ability exhibited by any particular rat. The female sex-hormone increases the ability to learn when it is given in certain concentrations, whereas the absence of the female sex-hormone decreases the ability to learn just as it decreases the amount of spontaneous muscular activity. It is not extravagant, therefore, to suggest that future developments in this field of research will lead to most far-reaching consequences, inasmuch as mental development seems to be so very dependent upon the proper supply of the sex-hormones. It follows that if this is so, then when these hormones are available in pure and simple form it should become possible to control the development of the mind through their use to an extent far beyond that which is at present imagined by the orthodox psychologist, who, after all, deals only with the product of the reaction and not with the reaction itself.

It is profitable to approach this subject from the opposite angle, and to enquire how far sexual activity and the act of coitus affect the glands of internal secretion. This system of glands, which includes the thyroid, pituitary, adrenal, ovary and testis, consists of organs which elaborate specific products of a chemical nature, hormones, which pass by the

[1] For a fuller treatment of this subject, see the Article on *Psycho-Analysis*, p. 373.

blood stream throughout the body. There can be no doubt that, in some form or other, these ductless glands are influenced in their functioning by the expression of sexuality. As yet but little is known of this subject, but an inkling of the facts may be gleaned from a consideration of the relation which undoubtedly exists between sexual activity and the functioning of the pituitary, a small gland which lies at the base of the brain.

Medical men have known for a long time that certain types of disease and degeneration of the pituitary are accompanied by an imperfect development of the reproductive organs—there is a diseased state known as pituitary infantilism. Extirpation of the pituitary in an otherwise normal individual leads to atrophy of the testes, and therefore to an atrophy of those sex-characters which depend for their maintenance on the supply of the male sex-hormone. Furthermore, implantation of the anterior lobe of the pituitary in such animals leads to the repair of the testes, and therefore to a re-development of those sex-characters which are dependent upon the gonad. The same is true of the female. Furthermore, if one implants small pieces of the anterior lobe of the pituitary or injects prepared extracts of this lobe into sexually immature animals which normally would not reach puberty for a considerable time, one finds that almost immediately the changes characteristic of puberty appear. Thus it is that young mice, being so treated, come rapidly into heat and their ovaries show mature ova, whilst the testes of young males similarly treated pursue a greatly hastened development. Male sex-hormone is elaborated, and this incites a rapid development of the penis and of the other male sex characters.

It is seen from this and similar experiments that the function of the gonad, which controls the development of the sexual characters, is not an automatic one, for it depends upon the presence and action of a hormone elaborated by the anterior lobe of the pituitary. It follows, therefore, that the anterior lobe of the pituitary is as much the spring of sexual activity as are the gonads, even if not more so. But it must be recognised that the sex-differences exhibited by male and female cannot be due to the action of the pituitary itself, for this gland secretes the same hormone in the male as it does in the female, and the differences are due to the fact that in the male the pituitary hormone activates the testis whilst in the female it activates the ovary.

The intimate interrelation between pituitary and ovary can be illustrated by reference to the state of pregnancy. It has been shown that in addition to the female sex-hormone which is elaborated by the ovary, and is responsible for the expression of the physical and mental characters, which in their combination constitute œstrus, or heat, another hormone is secreted by the ovary. It is known that after mating the uterus of the mouse and the rat undergoes certain changes which make pregnancy possible. Its lining membranes become thickened to form a bed, in which the fertilised egg may become implanted, and later to take part in the formation of the placenta, or after-birth. Now, these changes in the uterus occur under the influence of an ovarian hormone, probably elaborated by the corpus luteum, that is very different in its nature from the female sex-hormone. (The corpus luteum, or yellow body, consists of glandular tissue, yellow in colour, which develops in the scar on the

surface of the ovary after the rupture of the ovarian follicle and the escape therefrom of the ovum.) Therefore, the ovary, through these two hormones, controls not only sexual activity but also reproductive activity. In the rat, for example, the secretion of this second, pregnancy-promoting hormone does not begin until immediately after mating : that is to say, the preparation of the uterus for the reception of the fertilised egg by means of the action of this second hormone does not begin until immediately after insemination and fertilisation. The sex act itself brings about a very definite change in the hormone function of the ovary, and this in its turn leads to the development of markedly changed conditions in the psysiological and psychological state of the individual.

Now, these changes can be brought about artificially. A rat will exhibit all the features of pregnancy if, during the period of heat, the neck of the uterus is stimulated by means of a fine glass rod. One must assume, therefore, that mating leads to the stimulation of certain nerve endings in the neck of the uterus and that along these sensory nerves are passed messages which ultimately affect the functioning of the anterior lobe of the pituitary, which then proceeds to produce a second hormone and this affects the ovary, calling forth the second ovarian hormone which, acting upon the genital tract, stimulates this to develop the conditions of pregnancy.

This account may serve to illustrate the very intimate interrelationship that exists between the various members of the system of endocrine glands, and how several of them are not only directly concerned in the expression of the physical and physiological characters that pertain to sex, but also how they would seem to lie at the basis of much that is at present claimed as the peculiar possession of the psychologist. It may be expected that further investigation will show that quite commonly there is an understandable physical basis for that which one is wont to call a purely emotional phenomenon.

THE SEX-RATIO

The sex-determining, sex-chromosome-distributing mechanism should lead to the production, in the case of a bisexual species, of equal numbers of males and females in each new generation, for the reason that the two forms of gametes elaborated by the digametic sex should be produced in equal numbers. The primary sex-ratio—that which obtains at the time of conception—should therefore be equality. There should be 100 males per 100 females conceived. If this primary sex-ratio is not equality, then we must conclude that either the two forms of gametes are not produced in equal numbers or else that one is more successful in the act of fertilisation than is the other. Observations that have been made demand for their explanation that certain individuals do indeed produce more of one kind than of another, and experiment has shown that it is possible to influence the proportion of the two kinds produced.

Thury, in 1863, developed the theory that an ovum fertilised soon after extrusion from the ovary tends to produce a female, whilst an older ovum will later develop into a male. This theory has been incorporated into the practices of breeders of domesticated animals, and indeed statistical

investigations undertaken by Pearl and his colleagues in America seemed to show that possibly the theory was correct. They found that, in the case of cattle, the sex-ratio amongst calves which had been conceived during the earlier part of the period of heat of the mother was significantly different from that of calves conceived during later periods. However, further figures collected by the same investigators showed that this conclusion was not tenable. But that over-ripeness of the egg, such as might result from delay in fertilisation, is associated with a swing in the sex-ratio is shown by the work of Hertwig and his pupils. The female frog only lays her eggs whilst the male is on her back, exhibiting the mating reflex. A male frog was allowed to fertilise half the eggs extruded by a female and was then removed, and after varying intervals of time was replaced and allowed to fertilise the remaining half. It was found that with increasing intervals more and more males appeared amongst the offspring, so that after an interval of 89 hours between the fertilisation of the first and the second half, none but males were produced. It was shown that this was not due to any sexually selective mortality, and that the only explanation that can be given is that the over-ripe egg when fertilised inevitably becomes a male, whether it is fertilised by an X-chromosome-bearing sperm or by a Y-chromosome-bearing sperm.

If the primary sex-ratio were equality, but if a sexually selective pre-natal mortality operated, then the secondary sex-ratio—that which obtains at the time of birth, or hatching—would be more or less removed from equality according to the intensity of this pre-natal mortality. In the case of man it is known that more boys than girls are born: the secondary sex-ratio for Great Britain being roughly about 103 : 100. Thereafter, in every age-group save those which include the onset of menstruation and of the climacteric in the female, the death-rate is higher amongst the males ; so that amongst the people in Great Britain who are 80 years old or older there are about 2 women for every man ; that is to say, that during post-natal life there is sexually selective mortality operating which reduces the sex-ratio at birth of 103 : 100 to one of 50 : 100 amongst the age-group 80 or over.

It will be found on examination that the sex-ratio amongst still-births—that is, amongst infants born dead at or about full-term—is distinctly higher than that amongst children born alive. This means that still-birth is more common amongst boys than girls. The sex-ratio amongst abortions —that is, amongst fœtuses born dead between the time of conception and the seventh month of pregnancy—is again higher than the sex-ratio of still-births. It is impossible to identify the sex of the fœtus before the third month of pregnancy, but such figures as are available seem to show that the sex-ratio is highest amongst abortuses of the third and fourth month, and that thereafter it declines in a steady fashion to blend with the secondary sex-ratio of 103 : 100.

It follows, therefore, that, in the case of man, a sexually selective mortality is operating both before and after birth. It also follows that if the secondary sex-ratio is 103 : 100, in all probability the primary sex-ratio is not less than 150 : 100. Far more boys than girls are conceived, but far more boys than girls die before they are born. It is difficult to offer any adequate reason to explain this fact. All that can be suggested is that

whilst sex-linked recessive characters, that are lethal or semi-lethal in their effects, could account for some of the mortality amongst the males, it is impossible to call upon these agencies to explain the whole. All that can be said at the present time is that the male would seem to be less able to withstand unfavourable conditions. It is certainly true that amongst those peoples who take parentage seriously (the Jews, for example) the secondary sex-ratio is higher than that of other sections of the same community. It is probable that the present developments in ante-natal and child-welfare practices will lead to the raising of the secondary sex-ratio.

CONCLUSION

A survey of the facts and of the fancies that have been presented enables us to express certain reasonable expectations. The problem of the control of sex-determination and of sex-differentiation is one that intrigues many minds. According to many the problem has already been solved. Almost every year there appears a book or a pamphlet written by someone—never a professional biologist—who claims to have found the key to this particular riddle. More commonly than not they have rediscovered that which Rumley Dawson thought he had discovered, and the theory, which underlies the practices which they advocate, demands that in the case of man and his domesticated animals the female and not the male shall be the digametic sex. The usual form of the theory is that the two ovaries differ one from the other in that one produces eggs which, being fertilised, are destined to become males, the other producing eggs which are destined to become females; and that the ovaries function alternately with succeeding heat or menstrual periods. If, then, one notes the sex of the first offspring and is able to relate the conception associated with the pregnancy that produced this to a particular menstrual period or period of heat, one is thus enabled to predict the sex of any subsequent offspring.

Another variant of this theme is that the ovaries, one being male-producing and the other female-producing, function synchronously and that the sex of the offspring is determined by the direction of the flow of the male ejaculate. Thus is it that breeders have their cows served on the slope of a hill, one flank being lower than the other. The semen of the male is supposed to drain toward the lower flank and therefore ensure fertilisation of an ovum elaborated by the ovary on this side.

There is no doubt that statistics can be collected which completely prove the correctness of these theories, or, on the other hand, disprove them. In any case, any discrepancy can most easily be explained by reference to faulty observation or to a temporary abnormal functioning on the part of the two ovaries. The fact remains, however, that these theories, attractive as they are, cannot be brought into line with established scientific fact. Biology has shown that it is not the female of the mammal but the male that is digametic, and that the problem of the control of the sex of the individual that is to be will only be solved when it has been found possible to ensure that fertilisation is affected by one or other kind of sperm. It is possible that the two kinds of sperm might be separated if they were forced to travel through an artificially produced chemical field

in the vagina of the female, one kind being more or less completely immobilised. But so far no experimental application of a physical or chemical agent has succeeded in separating the two forms. If and when such separation is affected, then of course it should become eminently possible to ensure that the result of fertilisation shall be male or else female.

The future is full of promise, for with developments in our knowledge of the endocrine basis of sexuality it should quickly become possible to control the expressions of puberty and of senility, due to breakdowns in the hormone function of the sex-glands and of the pituitary. Since disharmonies in the functioning of these glands of internal secretion are responsible for so much personal and social misery, control such as is envisaged could prove of the greatest benefit to mankind.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

F. A. E. CREW : *The Genetics of Sexuality in Animals* (Cambridge. 1927)

R. T. FRANK : *The Female Sex-Hormone* (Illinois. 1929)

R. GOLDSCHMIDT : *The Mechanism and Physiology of Sex Determination* (London. 1923)

J. W. HARMS : *Körper und Keimzellen* (Berlin. 1926)

A. LIPSCHÜTZ : *The Internal Secretions of the Sex-Glands* (Cambridge. 1924)

F. H. A. MARSHALL : *The Physiology of Reproduction* (London. 1922)

J. MEISENHEIMER : *Geschlecht und Geschlechter im Tierreich* (Jena. 1922)

A. S. PARKES : *The Internal Secretions of the Ovary* (London. 1929)

PSYCHOLOGY

By

F. AVELING

SYNOPSIS

Rise of psychological problems in prehistoric speculation; animism — Gradual emergence of distinction between living creatures and inanimate beings ; between life and mind — Position of psychology in Greek philosophy ; soul and body, dualistic views (Plato, Aristotle) — Freedom and determinism — Importance of psychology in early Christian thought ; emphasis upon the human soul, its nature, origin and destiny (Augustine) — Development of psycho-physiological and psychological doctrines in mediæval Scholastic philosophy ; intellect and will (Aquinas, Scotus) — Renaissance and post-renaissance period — Theories of interaction between soul and body (Descartes) ; of parallelism ; of monism ; of panpsychism (Leibniz) — Beginnings of empirical psychology (Locke) — Laws of association and associationism (Hume) — Development of contemporary psychology under the influence of the theory of evolution (Darwin, Spencer) — Emotions and behaviour — Individual differences (Galton) — Comparative psychology ; study of the behaviour of lower animals, primitive peoples and young children — Physiological psychology and experimental psychology (Wundt) — Social psychology (McDougall) — More important contemporary systems of psychology ; Behaviourism ; Psycho-analytic schools ; " Gestalt " psychology; Noegenetic, or Two-factor, school ; dynamic psychology and personalism — Applications of psychology to problems of life and living ; education ; medicine ; industry and commerce, etc. — Definition of psychology.

PSYCHOLOGY

INTRODUCTION

Psychology is still a science in the making rather than a finally established one. This is indicated by the lack of agreement among psychologists upon the exact definition of the subject. There are a number of contemporary schools in existence, each advocating its own particular principles and methods and defining psychology in its own way. It is thus presented as the science of the soul, of mind, of consciousness, of behaviour, and the like. And this is not astonishing when we remember the extraordinarily varied interests of psychologists to-day. They cover so wide a range, and involve so great specialisation, that many points of view are inevitable. There is, however, more real unanimity than might appear on the surface; since, with negligible exceptions, all would agree that the principal subject-matter of psychology is human conduct; that it is concerned with conduct in order to discover the principles which account for it, and so be in a position to control and guide it; and that the methods to be employed in the study are the observation of behaviour, on the one hand, and introspection or the inner observation of our own conscious processes, on the other. All the definitions, though apparently exclusive, can be reduced to a single formula. Psychology is the science which investigates behaviour in general from the point of view of its mental implications, whether conscious or unconscious, with a view to control.

To appreciate the present state of scientific psychology it will be useful to review the outstanding points in its historical development. It is the last of the sciences to have broken away from philosophy; and it still raises acute philosophical problems at every turn. Solutions of these problems have been offered by a succession of great thinkers, in which we find a progressive clarification, each advance marking a higher achievement than the preceding one. But almost from the outset we discover indications of contemporary systems. The central problem, towards which all the others converge, is and always has been that of the nature of man as shown in his various activities, and particularly those of feeling, thinking and willing, so far as they account for human conduct. The history of psychology, accordingly, will be an account of the ways in which conduct has been interpreted, and of the different conceptions men have framed of themselves as actors in the drama of life. It could have no beginning until the observation that such conduct differs radically from the behaviour of inanimate beings, and in many essentials also from that of animate creatures other than human, had provoked reflection upon the reason why this should be so. From the very origin of the human race man has presumably been a self-conscious animal; but there could have been

no psychology, even the most rudimentary, until he came to reflect upon his own self-consciousness and attempt some explanation of it.

PREHISTORIC THOUGHT

It has been assumed that psychology originated in the thoughts of primitive men about the phenomena of sleep, dreams, insanity and death. These would lead to belief in the existence of impalpable counterparts of the bodies of the living, which were capable on occasion of severing their connection with the body, and at death finally departed from it to live on as ghosts in an underworld. Proof of this for the primitive mind would lie in the fact that the inert body of the sleeper awoke to report dream adventures in remote places and times, and to recount his meetings and transactions with people already dead. Further proof would be found in the phenomena of mental disease, which would point towards possession of the body of the sufferer by conscious agents other than himself, by demons, ghosts or forces able to control its actions even against his will. The conscious wraith, wandering abroad in sleep and disappearing at death, would be held to inhabit the body during life, and to account for the latter's vital actions, movements, feelings, thoughts and desires. The assumption presupposes considerable reflection already on the part of primitive man; and it is probable that it was preceded by a stage of development in which no distinction was made between animate and inanimate beings, but all were thought of as possessing hidden activities similar to those of man himself. In this stage, by an analogical interpretation of Nature in the light of the primitive's own experience, everything would be regarded as endowed with conscious life, and able to play its kindly or malevolent part in human affairs. Until this stage had been outgrown, and distinctions between conscious and unconscious beings recognised, there could be no beginning of science, either physical or psychological. There is evidence of a phase of animism (the endowing of physical objects with consciousness) which precedes the distinction of living from inanimate beings in the developing mind of the very young child which, according to the theory that the development of the individual recapitulates the evolution of its kind, represents the mind of the race in its childhood. We find such evidence also in the early speculations of philosophy. But from the point of transition onwards, psychological history is the history of the problem of the conscious self. No doubt a gap of centuries lies between the vaguely felt distinction and the earliest records of explicit attempts to explain the nature of the universe and of man as a part of the universe. Such systematic attempts, however, were made by the Greek philosophers. Beginning with them, accordingly, we may divide our summary into four main periods: (1) the epoch of Greek speculation, in which the Mind-Body dualism arises in a general framework of philosophical theory; (2) the period of mediæval thought, during which great emphasis is laid upon the mental powers as indicating the spiritual nature of man; (3) the modern era, beginning with the distinction drawn by Descartes between the body and the mind; (4) contemporary psychology, dating back to the introduction into science of the hypothesis of evolution.

The central problem of psychology emerged only gradually in Greek speculative thought, and phases in its development may be distinguished. Greek philosophy arose in an atmosphere of strongly religious and mystical tradition, and at first was mainly concerned with the study of external Nature in a search for principles by which the latter might be explained. The early philosophers were extroverts, *i.e.*, their interests were centred upon cosmic changes rather than upon themselves; and they found the principles required in a physical element, or combination of elements, together with a life-principle not separated from these. All matter is alive, and all living things have souls. An advance was made, however, in the distinction of the forces of love and hatred (attraction and repulsion) from the original, imperishable elements, fire, air, earth and water; an interpretation of physical change, though not clearly recognised, on the lines of psychical experience. Dualism begins vaguely to assert itself in cosmology, or the philosophical interpretation of physical Nature. It also asserts itself psychologically in a theory of perception. Perceptions are due to emanations from bodies which pass through the pores of sense to the soul, in which like is known by like. Thought is ascribed to all things without distinction, and depends upon the mixture of the elements. A still more interesting advance was made when the formative power of mind or reason was postulated to account for the origin of the world from a primitive agglomeration of infinitely small particles of every sort of substance. A principle which cannot be perceived by the senses is for the first time invoked to explain the evolution of the cosmos; for mind is distinguished from material things by its characters of simplicity, freedom, omniscience and omnipotence. Just as hylozoism (the conception of the all-pervading life of matter) was a projection of unanalysed personal consciousness upon objects of the external world, so here spirit or reason, experienced in personal thinking, planning and willing, is a projection upon the universe. Thus cosmological dualism (world and soul) is the result of the beginning of reflective analysis of mental process. In psychology this indicates a clearer distinction between sensory and intellectual knowledge. The former, though not necessarily deceptive, is weak; the latter acquaints us with the truth, and is due to a spiritual principle or soul. Mind, accordingly, is not only a principle which accounts for the formation of the world, and implies teleology or progress towards a goal; but also in man it takes the form of an individual soul in a material body. Immanent in the universe, it is also an immanent constitutive principle of the individual person. This doctrine marks a distinct advance in an entirely new direction; but it was not consistently followed up, and gave place to a theory of atomism in which inherent necessity was substituted for mind or reason in explanation of the way in which cosmic processes came about by the aggregations of physical atoms. Yet psychological problems occupied attention even in this new phase of thought. A theory of knowledge was advanced in conformity with the atomistic postulate. Nothing save material atoms exists. Sense-perception, accordingly, is mechanically determined by images which emanate

from objects and come into contact with the soul. But such perception is obscure and deceptive; for it presents as qualities what is, in fact, quantity. Thought also is a mechanical modification of the soul; but in thought we grasp the true natures of things as constituted by the invisible quantified, material atoms. Impulse, conation (striving) and will are explained as the giving out again of the images received in perception. In this theory the distinction between soul and body is not rejected; but the soul, like all else, consists of atoms of "fire," perfectly smooth and round. It is the noblest part of man, warming his body while alive, and separated from it at death. Atomism reduces psychology to physics, but has significance in psychological history. By stressing the mechanical aspect of Nature, it made way for a vivid contrast between it and the subjective world of Mind; and by calling attention to the illusory nature of sensory knowledge it called for a critical examination of all knowledge by a subjective analysis. The antithesis between thought and perception came also to expression in other early schools of Greek thought. It was emphasised by the attempt to explain cosmic change on the basis of mathematical relations. Numerical concepts, unlike the changing objects of sense experience, are eternal, unchangeable, imperishable; and accordingly provide a higher kind of reality for thought than that reached in perception. Nature obeys the mathematical laws of abstract number; and to know Nature is to know the laws its phenomena express. Applied to psychology, this view makes the soul the numerical harmony of the body, just as the world-soul from which it derives is the harmony of the universe. Its parts, or faculties, are reason, understanding and desire. But this classification of powers is less important than the concept of the principle from which they derive as an abstract mathematical relation. This was a parallel of the still more abstract concept of Being, which was developed in another line of thought, and still further stressed the antithesis between sense and reason. A group of thinkers, beginning with the postulate that Being *is*, and not-Being can neither exist nor be conceived to exist, came to the conclusion that Being is one—unproduced, unchangeable and undivided. This fundamental doctrine of the absolute unity and immutability of Being acutely raised the problem of the distinction between reason and sense, and threw doubt upon the validity of sense-perception of the external world. Whereas intellect grasps reality as in fact the one and changeless, our senses reveal to us nothing but the many and change. The world of movement, becoming, appearance, is an illusion and a paradox. Such a position as this called for a criticism of the worth of knowledge, and again implicitly emphasised the necessity of undertaking such criticism from the psychological point of view.

The doubts thus cast by all the schools alike upon the validity of sense-perception deepened in the scepticism of the Sophists. All truth, they taught, is relative to the observer; there is no objective truth. Admittedly our senses deceive us. Why should not reason deceive us also? Knowledge is only personal belief; contradictories are equally true if different people hold them to be true; everything is equally false. But even this movement of scepticism had significance for psychology. It drew attention to the personal element in knowledge. It reduced objective truth to personal opinion. And it immediately provoked an examination of the

problem of the value of knowledge which played so great a part in the subsequent shaping of psychological science.

Up to this point Greek philosophy was predominantly objective. It dealt with problems of the physical world to the relative exclusion of man, his mind, its nature and origin. But it led to a view of the relativity of knowledge in the sense that knowledge is relative to the individual possessing it ; and this, at the hands of Socrates, Plato and Aristotle, was met by theories in which psychology definitely found its place and was expanded into coherent systems.

The outstanding contribution of Socrates (b. *circ.* 471 B.C.) to psychology was the substitution of the subjective for the objective method. The Sophists had followed the old method and given up the search for truth. Socrates, looking within consciousness rather than upon the external world, tried to determine the conditions of knowledge by an examination of the mental constitution of man himself. He thus established the validity of our concepts as products of logical induction and definition, and so provided a scientific basis for the principles of knowledge and conduct alike. His method was one of questioning, by which he helped his pupils to form for themselves concepts of the changeless natures of changing things. Starting with commonplace sensory experience, he led them by a process of induction to the admission of stable intellectual definitions. He thus countered the sceptical individualism of the Sophists with a doctrine of rational, universal and socially acceptable knowledge ; and showed that sense-perception and uncritical generalisation can be controlled by critical and logical thought. Logical concepts thus become both the test of truth and the guide of practical aims. Though moralist and logician rather than a psychologist, Socrates occupies a high place in psychological history because of his insistence upon the nature of the process by which true conceptual (abstract and universal) knowledge is reached, or may be reached, by all men.

The Socratic doctrine was developed by Plato (b. 427 B.C.) in a metaphysical direction, which had its bearing upon psychology, in his theory of Ideas. Plato regarded the Socratic concepts as being objectively existent things. Our knowledge of them is occasioned by, but not derived from, sense-perception. Ideas, accordingly, are not merely personal possessions differing from one individual to another, nor even mental contents shared in common by all men. They are realities in themselves, having an existence apart from the sensory world. For Plato, true knowledge is a grasp of changeless reality, not mere opinion born of sense-perception. Socrates had shown that the possession of concepts was the necessary and sufficient condition of stability in knowledge. But to what objects have these concepts reference ? Plato held that knowledge is something received, or given to the mind. Ideas, accordingly, are given ; concepts correspond to the realities from which they proceed. To deny this would be to deny the reality of Being, as well as all possibility of attaining to scientific knowledge. But the Ideas do not exist in the changing world of the senses ; and we are not in touch with any ideal world. How, then, do we come to know them ? Plato answers with a doctrine of reminiscence or memory. In a previous existence we actually contemplated the Ideas ; in this life, immersed in a world of flux and change, we recall them to mind.

We may thus distinguish the three worlds, *viz.*, of *concrete phenomena*, *concepts* and *Ideas*. Concepts are the mental representations of Ideas beyond the reach of sense ; sensory phenomena are their faint shadows or copies. The importance of this line of thought for psychology is evident. The contrast of sensory phenomena with Ideas, the making of subjective concepts into a real world of objective " universals," emphasising the old distinction of intelligence and sense, sets over against each other two objective worlds, the one the realm of intelligible reality, reason, order and goodness, the other a place of appearance, plurality, disorder and imperfection. But it stresses also subjectivity, and points to a necessary distinction between soul and body. The doctrine of reminiscence necessitates the pre-existence of the soul. This Plato defines as the principle of self-movement, explicitly rejecting the view that it is the harmony of the body. It is the living, moving element in man which perceives, knows and wills. But these processes are on different levels ; and the soul is accordingly divided into three parts, the rational, the courageous and the appetitive (desire), having their seats in the head, heart and abdomen respectively. The rational soul alone is immortal, possesses free-will, and is created by God. In a series of transmigrations into new bodies it gradually rids itself of its irrational parts through the conquest of desire by reason. Plato's psychology is built around his theory of Ideas, and moves upon the ideal plane. The nature of the soul is deduced from the theory rather than reached by an examination of mental activities. What is now understood as empirical or experimental psychology is, in Plato's view, part of physics, and therefore no true science ; for man, the physical object, belongs to the world of change and becoming and, like all appearance, is not an object of scientific knowledge. Nevertheless, though the rational soul is harboured in the body and thus bound to the world of appearance, by reminiscence it lives also in the ideal world. Plato advanced the two laws of association by similarity and contiguity—that like recalls like, and that, of things experienced together, one tends to recall the other to mind—in support of his theory of reminiscence.

We have seen that the problem of the constitution of the external world led to that of the validity of knowledge, thereby raising psychological issues. The doctrine of the stability of universal concepts had been opposed by a denial of the existence of anything except individuals ; and Plato's theory was advanced to bridge the gap, and relate the individuals perceived by the senses to the Ideas. He attempted to do this by deriving the former from the latter ; but he failed to show how the derivation comes about either in our knowledge or in the real world.

The problem was taken over by Aristotle (b. 384 B.C.), and its solution by him was made the foundation-stone of his whole philosophy. Like Plato, Aristotle held that there can be no true science of individual objects, for these are continually undergoing change. But he taught that stable intellectual knowledge nevertheless begins in sense-experience, in which only individual existent things are revealed. Instead of regarding experience as a mere occasion for the recall of Ideas, he held it to be the true source of conceptual knowledge. Instead of attempting to deduce individuals from Ideas he reached abstract concepts by induction from concrete instances. Individuals alone are real, universals are products of

the mind discerning identity of nature amidst a plurality of things. Though these may change, the conceptual essences remain fixed and stable. Thus, although intellectual knowledge is essentially dependent upon sense-perception, it is also essentially superior to it. Aristotle's doctrine of knowledge implies radical differences between his psychology and that of his predecessors. In the first place, since scientific knowledge arises from sense-perception, his method is empirical. Natural events are explained on principles reached by induction. Though all involve change, the phenomena of Nature fall into different classes. Some things move (change) because moved by others; some change because they move themselves. The latter are alive; and life is accordingly defined as self-movement, of which the soul is the principle. For Aristotle, soul is not a synonym of mind or consciousness. It is the explanatory principle of every kind of vital process, including nutrition, sensation, movement and thought. Psychology, accordingly, is the empirical study of vital processes as manifested in plants, animals and man. But stress is laid upon sensation and thought; and, because the more perfect includes the less, and thought is a function of the human soul, the study of the principle of thought in man embraces all psychological problems. In the second place, though his method is that of objective observation, he does not neglect introspection. Indeed, Aristotle's theory of knowledge is built upon the introspective distinction of percept and concept (object of sense-perception, object of abstract thought); and a considerable part of his psychology is devoted to showing how we pass from the sensing of the former to a scientific knowledge of the latter. Nevertheless, his psychology is dominated by a metaphysical theory with regard to the constitution of individual things; and, indeed, it is on this theory that he accounts for the transition from perceiving to conceiving. Four principles are necessary to explain the constitution of all concrete beings in the physical order, and the changes which they undergo; matter, form, the efficient (or producing) and the final (or goal) cause. Of these, two are intrinsic principles of the thing in question, the matter and the form. Matter is that out of which the thing is made; marble, for instance, is the matter of the statue. But matter, before the statue is fashioned, is a definite natural substance; and it, in turn, is to be conceived as made out of a "first matter," an indeterminate though determinable principle which cannot exist or be known without form. Form, on the other hand, is the determining principle which actuates matter and constitutes it a definite kind of being, marble, oak, horse or man. It is that into which the thing is made. It is also the object of conceptual knowledge, the changeless essence abiding throughout all the changes the concrete individual undergoes. Applied to psychology, the soul is the form of the body; the matter of which body is formed is a mere potentiality of life which is actualised by soul. Accordingly soul and body, though distinct, constitute one substance only. Man is a unitary being. Furthermore, there is only one soul in man, accounting for all the processes of nutrition, appetite or desire, locomotion and reason. It is not divided, as Plato taught, into parts, but is distinguished into faculties which are the modes of its activity. The conception is a biological one, in which natural species are regarded as unchanging. Plants have nutritive and reproductive souls; animals have sentient souls with powers

of feeling, imagination and locomotion; and man's soul adds to these the powers of reason, deliberation and will. In the biological scheme soul may be considered in an ascending scale, the higher developing from and including the lower. In this conception, psychological data in the modern sense are not abruptly separated from physical ones ; but the observation of vital process is observation of behaviour as function of the soul. Aristotle incorporated an astonishing number of empirically established data into the framework of his theory. He divided mental powers into those of knowing and desire, and connected the power of movement with the latter. He made a study of the special senses, and of the " internal senses " by means of which we perceive, imagine and remember. His explanation of sensory process in general is that the forms of sensed objects are received into knowledge without their matter. Sense is thus regarded on analogy with matter as potential to the reception of forms. To each external sense corresponds a " proper object," as colour to vision ; but besides these there are also " common objects," such as movement and shape, which we apprehend by several senses. The five external senses, however, are insufficient to explain perception, in which different kinds of sensations come together. This function is ascribed to a central sense ; from which also the latent images, without which reasoning is impossible, arise in memory. Aristotle states three laws of associative revival of experience—contiguity, resemblance and contrast (like recalls unlike) ; and he teaches that man alone has the power of active recollection and constructive imagination. To account for conceptual knowledge he advances a theory of abstraction. Like the senses, the intellect stands in relation to its objects as matter to form. It requires " information " in order to understand. Its proper objects, however, are the universal essences of things ; and these " intelligible forms " are neither discoverable in the world of concrete beings nor exist apart as Ideas. The only things which exist are individuals. The intellect works, accordingly, upon the material supplied by the senses and illuminates the universal essence enshrined in the individual, thus mentally considering it apart from all individualising characters, such, for example, as time and space. Once rendered intelligible in this way, the object impresses itself upon the passive intellect precisely as the sensible object impresses its form upon sense, and the intellect passes over to conceptual knowledge. Intellect is thus distinguished as active and passive, a power of rendering knowable what was only potentially so, and a power of receiving intelligible forms. In this account of the processes of knowledge from the lowest to the highest stage, the same general principles are invoked. All knowledge originates in sensation ; but there is an activity which discovers the universal elements of thought in the concrete beings of sense. Is this activity a faculty of the soul, or is it something transcendental to the individual man ? Aristotle's thought here is obscure and disputed. But in any case, because the intellectual activities transcend the conditions of matter, he holds that the acting intellect is both immaterial and immortal. On the orectic side (desire, striving, will) Aristotle is no less a pioneer in psychology than on the cognitive (knowing, remembering, etc.). His study of movement led to the view that all perception is accompanied by pleasure or pain. These give rise to impulse and desire. Impulse, appetite

and emotion lead to action. But besides these spontaneous motives there is also deliberate will, which may be described as intelligent desire. Corresponding to the division of cognitive states, desire, will and choice are determined by percepts and images, by concepts and rational insight; and in deliberate choice will is free. Aristotle's conception is that of moderate dualism in which soul and body are not separate entities, but together constitute the individual. On this background he draws the lines of a naturalistic and empirical psychology. The subjective point of view is never lost, although the objective is greatly developed; and psychology takes its place among the biological disciplines as the final chapter of natural science.

There is little of psychological interest in Greek philosophy subsequent to Aristotle. Atomism was reasserted (Epicurus; b. 341 B.C.) with the curious addition of a doctrine of freedom. To this determinism (denial of freedom) was opposed (Stoics), in an interesting anticipation of a view of consciousness as consisting in passively received sensations, from which all knowledge, feeling and will are derived. These sensations become representations when they rise with increasing clearness in consciousness. These two points mark a phase of development in the concept of the mental as contrasted with the physical, and also foreshadow the modern doctrine of the subjective variation of clearness in ideas.

The last stage of Greek speculation has even less interest for psychology. Attempts were made to unite Jewish religious beliefs with the philosophy of Plato, Aristotle and the Stoics. The number theory and the theory of Ideas were revived; but philosophy tended to degenerate into mysticism. The chief significance of these movements, so far as psychology is concerned, is that, infiltrating into Christian tradition, they influenced the thought of so great a psychologist as St. Augustine (b. A.D. 354).

PSYCHOLOGY IN EARLY CHRISTIANITY

With the spread of Christianity, the growing need of expressing its teaching systematically and providing an apologetic for it resulted in Patristic philosophy (*i.e.*, that of the Church Fathers), which arose in subservience to religious dogma. In this there is little relevant to psychology before Augustine except the common distinction of soul and body, the doctrine of immortality, and an increasing precision in the concept of personality. In Augustine, however, we find a psychologist of outstanding eminence, who left the impress of his thought upon all subsequent speculation. Two pivotal ideas stand out in his philosophy: God and the human soul. The great stress laid by Christian teaching upon the value of the individual raised problems concerned with the personality, nature, origin and destiny of man. The theological doctrines of the Trinity and the dual nature of Christ accentuated those problems; and in such a setting Augustine's psychology was developed. Familiar with nearly all the philosophies of antiquity, he is in the main a platonist; but he incorporated also into his system many results reached by other thinkers. His chief explicit contribution to the science is his vigorous assertion of the value of the introspective method, whereby he defines the subject-matter

of psychology as the inner world of consciousness, distinct from that of physical Nature. The soul is known in self-consciousness as a simple, immaterial and spiritual being. This he proves from the fact of sensation, using a neo-platonist argument: *viz.*, the soul is everywhere in the body, since it receives impressions coming from all parts of the body. It is therefore immaterial; for it is no one part of the soul which perceives, but the self as a whole. Further, he shows that it is immortal, on the ground that imperishable concepts are discovered within it; and what contains the imperishable must itself be immortal. The platonic character of these proofs is evident; but the point made is that they are based upon introspection, which reveals mental life as a continual activity of the soul. This shows itself in three functions—intellect, will and self-conscious memory—which are not distinct from the soul itself. The fundamental principle is will, which moves intellect and inner sense to action, and is both ethically and psychologically free. Man is therefore by nature a spiritual soul making use of a body. He acts upon the body, but is not acted upon by it. The senses, accordingly, engender neither sensation nor thought; it is the soul which gives birth to both. Thus all ideas are innate, and are formed in the soul under the influence of divine illumination. Augustine classifies mental powers as faculties of sense and faculties of spirit. The former include appetite and sensory knowledge arising in connection with, but not dependently upon, the external and internal senses. The latter are common sense, imagination and memory. Faculties of spirit embrace will, understanding and intellectual memory. In Augustine's view the source (which is revealed by introspection) of mental activities, though united to the body, has its own substantiality, and can be studied in its own right. In considering its origin, he hesitates between creationism (the creation of the soul from nothing by God) and traducianism (the derivation of the soul of the child from those of the parents); but on theological grounds inclines to traducianism. A great gain for psychology is registered by Augustine. In separating the inner from the outer world he justified the study of the former as a distinct branch of knowledge; and in insisting upon the immediacy of self-consciousness in reflective thought, he drew a sharp distinction between the self as subject and the objects of its knowledge, thus furthering the dualistic point of view. His influence in psychology is everywhere traceable throughout the Middle Ages, comes to more explicit development at the beginning of the Modern period, and is manifest in many directions of contemporary thought.

PSYCHOLOGY IN THE MIDDLE AGES

While Platonism colours Patristic speculation, Aristotelianism is the hall-mark of Scholasticism (the philosophy of the mediæval Churchmen), though both streams flow together and intermingle in mediæval thought. The principal representative of Aristotelian tradition is Thomas Aquinas (b. 1225, ? 1227), who stands out pre-eminently in the philosophical development of the thirteenth century. More than ever before, psychology becomes in his hands a comprehensive body of unified doctrine, easily separable from the rest of philosophy though intimately connected

with it. Aquinas is concerned with the nature of man in order to infer from it his origin and destiny. He accordingly examines all human activities to determine what human nature is and what it implies. He follows closely the main lines of Aristotelian thought, but develops and alters the traditional teaching in several important respects. In his view, all human activities are functions of faculties proper to man as a composite of matter and form ; but the faculties are due to form, or soul, and not to matter. The existence of the soul is known in any one of its activities ; but its nature as a spiritual actuality is only grasped by diligent reflection upon the characters they display. Aquinas distinguishes the soul from its faculties and these from each other, however, because of irreducible differences in vital operations which cannot be accounted for by any one single principle. Here he parts company with Augustine and clarifies the obscure teaching of Aristotle. The faculties are the proximate grounds of the vegetative, cognitive and appetitive functions. Aquinas, however, was principally interested in knowledge and desire as expressions of the purely mental life. He distinguishes knowledge into two orders, a lower, or sensory, form and a higher, or intellectual, kind. In general, his explanation of the processes of knowing is Aristotelian. The joint activity of the object and the knowing subject engenders a mental image representative of the object. Sensation, perception and sensory appetite are regarded as psycho-physiological processes, stress being laid upon their physical aspect. Here the interdependence of organic function and mental process is in striking contrast with the Augustinian view. Being organic, the senses are passive powers, reacting to stimuli by the formation of sensations, which are combined into images by an internal sense. Sensory processes, however, acquaint us only with individuals. To the list of internal senses Aquinas adds an estimative sense, the function of which is sensory judgement with respect to the useful or harmful character of concrete objects. Animals possess this sense ; but in man it is a kind of reason which deals with particulars. Intellectual processes also are accounted for on Aristotelian principles. Universal concepts are derived from sensory images by the process of abstraction and are subsequently universalised by a purely mental activity. Passive and acting intellects are distinguished to meet the requirements of the general theory of knowledge ; but Aquinas clearly teaches that both " intellects " are intrinsic faculties of the soul itself. Naturalism here replaces the vague mysticism which was taught by the Arab commentators of Aristotle and is traceable perhaps even to Aristotle himself. A notable advance towards a purely scientific psychology is thus made. With regard to orectic processes, Aquinas again divides appetite or desire into the two classes of sensory and rational, which operate on different levels. Sensory desire inclines us towards objects perceived or imaged ; and its arousal gives rise to passions or emotions. These passions were the object of careful study by the Scholastics in connection with moral philosophy. Rational desire, or will, inclines us towards abstract Good, in respect of which its activity is absolutely determined. The will is free, accordingly, only with regard to contingent, or relative, goods. One general law, however, regulates the life of desire, whether sensory or rational. Some kind of knowledge must call the appetitive powers into action. Knowledge is accordingly superior to will. In contrast with the

Augustinians, and particularly Scotus, Aquinas is thus an intellectualist. The results of his analysis of mental process lead to the Thomistic conception of human nature. Since the soul is only the substantial form, the proper object of study is man himself and not the soul alone; but man acts as he does in virtue of being "besouled." Further, one soul only constitutes him a spiritual as well as a material being. The doctrine of plurality of forms, held by other Scholastics, was explicitly rejected by Aquinas. Nevertheless, though form of the body, the soul is a spiritual and substantial principle, independent of the organism in its highest activities of conception and thought. It is accordingly immortal; not, as Aristotle probably held, in the impersonal form of the acting intellect, but in the personal immortality of its whole being. It is created by God, and was created to enjoy eternal happiness in intellectual union with God. Though presented in a framework of theology, the psychology of Aquinas marks a distinct advance. It unites the biological view of Aristotle with the refined form of animism taught by Plato and Augustine. It thus avoids the dualism which makes two entities of body and soul, which destroys the unity of the individual, and raises insoluble problems with regard to the relation of mind and matter. At the same time, it leaves room among the natural sciences for psychology to deal with mental, as distinct from physical, phenomena, and justifies its existence as a special science with its own subject-matter, point of view, methods and principles.

In contrast with the psychology of Aquinas, several differences in that of Duns Scotus (b. 1274, ? 1266) have a bearing on more recent developments. Adopting Augustinian and Aristotelian doctrines, with personal modifications of great originality, Scotus agrees in the main with Aquinas; but he teaches that we have an intellectual knowledge of individual things. Besides abstract and universal knowledge, which is clear and distinct, we also know individuals in a confused manner simultaneously with our sense perception of them. This indicates a growth in clearness of mental contents arising from experience; and is a second anticipation of an important current doctrine in psychology. Again, because of its absolute freedom (knowledge of the Good being a condition, but not the cause, of will-acts) will, rather than intellect, is the pre-eminent faculty. This is in line with recent developments of Hormic psychology (impulse, striving), and even with certain postulates of Behaviourism (*see below*). Lastly, though man is the composite resultant of soul and body, Scotus teaches that a "bodily form," as principle of organic structure, also enters into his composition. Though he did not develop the view, this implies a step towards that of Descartes, in which soul and body are conceived as two separate entities.

The general results of Scholastic speculation that are most significant for psychology, are progress in the analysis of cognitive, volitional and emotional processes, as well as the establishing of relations between them; the making explicit of the essentially unitary nature of consciousness; and the development of a theory of personality centred upon the intuitive awareness of the self as a real psychical entity.

The movement reached its zenith in the thirteenth century. After long incubation it rose swiftly to maturity; but hardly less swiftly decay set in. The springs of inspiration dried at their source. Growth and development

were arrested ; and mere dialectic (argument and hair-splitting) took the place of empirical analysis and the closely reasoned speculation built upon it. So far as psychology is concerned, there is an almost complete blank between the thirteenth and sixteenth centuries.

THE BEGINNINGS OF MODERN PSYCHOLOGY

With the rise of the scientific movement, however, it was not long before psychological problems appeared in a fresh setting. At first, as in Greek philosophy, interest was primarily centred upon external Nature ; but even Bacon looked forward to the time when empirical methods should be applied, not only to physical and physiological events, but also to the interplay of ideas and the activities of the will.

The two great forerunners of modern psychology are Descartes (b. 1596) and Locke (b. 1632), from each of whom derive influences which have fundamentally affected psychological thought up to the present day.

Descartes' philosophy began in a universal, methodic doubt which prepared the way for the discovery of incontrovertible truth ; and Descartes found this truth, from which he proposed to deduce all others, in the fact of personal, self-conscious thought :—" I think ; therefore I am." One may doubt all else, even one's own bodily actions ; one cannot doubt such self-evident intuition. Upon the clearness and distinctness of this truth he based his criterion of valid knowledge. Whatever is as clear and distinct as self-consciousness is true. But for the supposition that some power superior to our own might deceive us in all things, Descartes might at once have applied this criterion to the clear and distinct idea of extension as revealing the nature of matter, and so have raised the antithesis of body and mind. Instead, he turned to the idea of God ; from which he " proved " the existence of a Being whose goodness and wisdom guarantee the veracity of our faculty of knowledge. Clear and distinct ideas (innate in the sense that the mind is predisposed to accept them), and whatever is deduced from these, are accordingly valid. Among such innate ideas is that of the nature of matter as consisting in extension ; and this is sharply distinguished from sensory perceptions, in which bodies appear to be coloured, sonorous, odorous, and the like. These qualities are obscure and confused subjective appearances, and not objective properties of things. The essence of body, accordingly, is to be extended ; and the essence of mind is thought. Here is a metaphysical dualism in which the main problem that exercised subsequent speculation arises. What is the relation between body and mind ? The antithesis is further emphasised by Descartes' teaching that animals are automata without feelings or power of self-movement, which obey the physical and mechanical laws that regulate inanimate Nature. Only in man's case a thinking mind is infused into the automaton by God. Thus essentially opposed to body, the human mind must somewhere come into contact with it to explain the reception of sensations and the production of movements. Descartes locates this contact in the pineal gland at the base of the brain. Here the mind receives feelings from the nerves, and brings about motions in the body by way of the " animal spirits " flowing in the

nerve channels. Sensorial life thus has a physiological basis, whereas true thought is wholly mental. The automaton doctrine disposes of the soul as the principle of life in man, and substitutes a thinking mind joined to a mechanically regulated body. The main point brought out in all the detail of Descartes' psychology is the refining of the concept of mind to include conscious events, and the reduction of sensory and motor processes to physical ones. There is interaction between body and mind, but complete disparity of nature. This doctrine bore fruit later, when interest in the body-mind problem gave place to empirical psychology, in a clearer definition of purely mental phenomena.

The line of thought deriving from Descartes was largely occupied with the psycho-physical problem set by him. The Occasionalists, distinguishing between occasion and cause, held that the body does not cause sensations nor the mind movements, but that physical stimuli and conscious volitions are mere occasions of sensations and movements which, in fact, are caused by God. Leibniz advanced a theory of divinely arranged, or pre-established, harmony. Soul and body do not directly influence one another; but their actions run in parallel lines. Spinoza, more radical, made of mind and matter two aspects of the one underlying reality, God. Instead of Descartes' interaction, these philosophers asserted psycho-physical parallelism in solution of the difficulty.

While on the Continent rationalism continued its development, in England the foundations of empirical psychology were being laid. Already Hobbes had attacked the concept of a substance-mind, and taught that mental process is a function of the body, and reason the product of sensation. Here lay the germ of modern materialism and associationism (the doctrine that all mental processes are accounted for as associations of ideas). But we must look to Locke for the full use of the empirical method in psychology. Instead of the deduction of conclusions from the supposed nature of mind, he uses the method of induction to reach a scientific knowledge of the principles of mental life. He thus rejects metaphysical and mystical accounts of the origin of knowledge (innate ideas, pre-established harmony, divine inspiration) for a theory based upon observation. Children, he argues, uneducated people and savages show evidence that knowledge originates in experience. At the outset the mind is a blank tablet. How, then, do ideas become inscribed upon it? Locke teaches that all ideas derive from experience by sensation and reflection. By sensation we perceive the external world as possessing qualities and quantity; but the (secondary) qualities, colour, odour, etc., are subjective only. By reflection we are acquainted with the inner activities of understanding and will. Ideas are simple or complex, the former simply given to the mind, the latter actively formed in it by repetition, comparison and combination of elementary ideas. Mental powers, however (*e.g.*, sensation, memory, imagination, understanding, will), are not separate entities, but only ways in which the mind acts. Locke's distinction between sensation and reflection shows that mental process is not merely a mechanical interplay of ideas. Mind has the power of reflecting upon the course of its ideas; and in reflection higher ideas (*e.g.*, power, cause, unity, relation) are formed. Thus universal ideas are explained on an empirical basis; a protest against the doctrine of innate ideas. Locke deals more cursorily with the

active powers of the mind. Pleasure and pain are kinds of sensation ; will is a mental movement due to " uneasiness " ; and both arise in course of the interplay of ideas. His empirical analysis is clearly a forerunner of later analyses of consciousness into contents and states ; but Locke never disputed the existence of a substantial, active mind. He accepted this as a fundamental datum. It was the existence of the external world that needed explanation ; and our certainty of this, he taught, depends upon the impressiveness, or " liveliness," which characterises certain subjective sensations.

The last statement shows how the next analytic step could be taken by Berkeley (b. 1685). Already secondary qualities had been denied of matter and made subjective. For Berkeley the primary qualities (extension, impenetrability, etc.) also became mental states no less than the secondary. The external world, accordingly, has no reality except in mind: to be is to be perceived. All experience is subjective. This Berkeley argued in his *Theory of Vision*, in which he showed how our idea of tridimensional space results from the association of sensations of sight and touch. Ideas, however, presuppose some cause upon which they and their sequences depend ; and, having shown that no material reality exists, Berkeley asserts that their cause must be spiritual. Moreover, since the sensory ideas do not depend upon our personal wills, it follows that it is not we, but the eternal, uncreated spirit that produces them. Matter does not exist ; spirits alone exist : God and human minds. And the mind is a simple, active being, revealed through experience. Sensory perceptions are ideas in the mind of God, who causes them to appear to us. The perceiving mind is reason, as contrasted with the acting mind, which is will.

Berkeley's idealism forms a stepping-stone between Locke and Hume (b. 1711), whose psychological system had an immense influence upon the development of the science. A radical empiricist, Hume set out to make an exact analysis of mental powers and capacities. He begins by reducing mind to the sum of its contents. He rejects Locke's distinction between sensation and reflection, and substitutes a law of association for the dynamic activity of the mind. The fundamental mental states are the lively impressions which originate both in outer and inner experience, and their fainter copies, or ideas. We thus have as original elements of mind visual, auditory, tactile, etc., impressions and ideas, as well as pleasures, pains and efforts ; and these are the sole data of knowledge. Connected, compounded and succeeding one another in virtue of association by contiguity, similarity and causal relationship, they constitute consciousness ; which is accordingly conceived as an agglomeration of sensations regulated by the principles of association. Where Hartley (b. 1705) used associated nervous processes to explain the occurrence and order of mental events, Hume postulates only mental elements and mental laws, thus avoiding any appeal either to body or to mind in explanation of consciousness. Impressions, ideas and laws of association take the place of brain processes, as well as of any really active principle of thought. Even the self is reduced to a mere bundle of associated ideas. While Locke reasoned away secondary physical qualities and their unknown substratum, while Berkeley extended the reasoning to primary qualities and physical substance, Hume used the same line of attack upon

the mind itself, and nothing substantial remained. Hume's empirical analysis of causality, which reduces even will to sensations, is equally radical. The causal relation is one in which two ideas are constantly experienced in a sequence; and repetition of such experience in the past sets up the habit of expecting a similar relation in the future. But there is no real efficiency in the "cause." For, if we analyse the notion of power it contains, we find no more than the sensations of effort we ourselves experience when we move external bodies, or those of the impact of bodies upon us. Here there are only several sensations in constant sequence (feeling of effort and movement of limb; sensations of moving body and impact). No real power is involved in either case. We read our sensation of effort into sequences of external events, and come to an illusory belief in real power, or energy, resident in the "cause." We experience effort and believe in our own causality in willing. But this is illusory also; for, though perceived movements follow upon will-acts, this is in fact apprehended only as a sequence of strongest motive as inner event and change of place as outer event. Feelings of pleasure and pain, corresponding to impressions, give rise to emotions, which are thus also reduced to sensations and become associated with ideas. The system is one of radical sensationalism, in which all mental events are hypostatised; and psychology is presented as a naturalistic and positive science, the task of which is to investigate the structure of consciousness. It is no longer the science of soul or of mind, but of mental phenomena. Hume's influence in psychology can hardly be over-stated. He was the founder, with Hartley, of the Associationist and Structuralist schools which have lasted almost to the present day. Transferred to France, his doctrines were modified into a still more complete sensationalism by Condillac (b. 1715), who omitted the principle of habit as accounting for mental synthesis. In Britain and abroad, these movements provoked reactions in the Scotch "Common Sense" philosophy and French Eclecticism. Hume's psychological doctrines were developed in the two contrary directions of spiritualism and materialism. Everything being reduced to sensation, it was easy to construct the world out of ideas, as Berkeley had done; and scarcely less easy to identify sensations with states of the brain, as did Hartley, Priestley and the French Encyclopædists. Finally, it was Hume's phenomenalism and "scepticism" which awoke Kant from his dogmatic slumber to labour at his Critical Philosophy.

Three further influences have contributed to the shaping of contemporary psychology. Already in the movements of Cartesian rationalism and Locke's empiricism, we find many of its elements; but the speculations of Leibniz (b. 1646), the philosophy of Kant (b. 1724) and the formulation of the theory of evolution by Darwin (b. 1809) supplied other exceedingly important ones.

Leibniz's conception of the world is wholly psychological. Unlike Descartes, who set himself to doubt all previous principles and conclusions of philosophy, Leibniz wished to establish a system in which Greek, Mediæval and Contemporary thought would be reconciled. To this end he advanced a theory of reality of which his doctrine of monads, principle of pre-established harmony, and law

of continuity, are the cardinal points. Mind and matter, divorced by Descartes, were to be reconciled in a panpsychism (universe in which all that exists is held to be spiritual). Leibniz begins with the concept of mental substances as independent activities, essentially individual, yet together constituting a world. These active forces he calls " monads." He conceives them, on analogy with material atoms, as simple, indivisible and indestructible ; but he also endows them all, in varying degree, with the power of mental representation. The human soul is such a monad, conscious of what it represents. Others represent the universe confusedly or even unconsciously, and so reflect every other monad in existence. The world consists of these immaterial monads in an ascending scale of perfection, their place being determined by the degree of clearness with which each actively represents the rest. Thus the lowest (inorganic) monads manifest unconscious representation in attraction and repulsion only. Plants are " sleeping monads " with unconscious ideas, or formative vital forces. Animal soul-monads represent obscurely in sensation and memory ; while the human soul is capable of forming clear and distinct, as well as adequate concepts. There is thus an absolute psychical continuity between the lowest monad and the human soul. Though the conception is vitalistic, it is not that of Aristotle ; for, instead of interpreting mind in terms of life, Leibniz interprets life in mental terms. Bodies are aggregates of simple monads apprehended in obscure sensory perception as spatially and temporally ordered, but in clear analytic thought as aggregates of active spiritual entities. No monad, however, can act upon another, or receive influence from it. Their activity is wholly immanent, or within themselves. A problem accordingly arises with regard to the correspondence of the succession of ideas in the mind with the movements of the monads of the body. Leibniz solves this problem by postulating a pre-established harmony between them. Soul and body agree like two clocks, originally set going by God and absolutely synchronised. Remote as his doctrine may appear from contemporary psychology, it nevertheless has had considerable influence upon it. The assertion of unconscious mental activity is accepted to-day. The concept of growth in clearness of ideas from unconsciousness to full apperception, or clearness (as in Scotus and the Stoics), has born fruit in many directions. And the doctrine of the essential activity of self-consciousness as dynamic will (Augustine), which determines the course and clarification of representations in consciousness, has left its impress upon the science.

The philosophy of Leibniz was a consistent and closely reasoned system. At the hands of his follower Wolff (b. 1679) it became little more than a series of dogmatic assertions. The meeting point of Dogmatism and the scepticism of Hume in the mind of Kant gave rise to the Critical Philosophy. Kant opposed all speculation which goes beyond empirical experience without first having justified its procedure by a preliminary critical examination of the extent and limitations of knowledge. Impressed by Hume's analysis of causality, which regarded belief in the causal relation as being due to a subjective element of habit or custom, and concerned to distinguish the universal element in knowledge from the particular elements of experience, he was led to the hypothesis that, instead of the mind conforming to objects in knowing them, objects conform to

the mind. The manifold items of experience become unified and stamped with the impress or form of mentality. Since nothing necessary and universal can come from experience, space and time (the universality and necessity of which are shown in mathematics) must be subjective forms, prior to all experience, which are impressed upon sensations. They are the pre-requisite conditions of external and internal sensation. Things-in-themselves are neither spatial nor temporal; co-existence and succession are phenomenal—appearances only—and accordingly are only subjective. Analysis of judgement shows further that there are subjective categories, forms of thought not derived from experience, under which phenomenal knowledge becomes organised. Since these, like the sensory forms, are logical and subjective conditions of knowledge, reality as it is in itself remains unknown. By speculative knowledge we can reach neither to the real self, the world nor God. Nevertheless, Kant's doctrine of the unity of apperception and of the categories has profound significance for psychology. The organisation of disparate items of experience into mental objects with spatial and temporal characters, their interpretation by inclusion in a category, points to more than was admitted in Hume's sensationalism. Though we cannot know its nature, the doctrine reintroduces the notion of a self which actively organises experience. Moreover, even if we cannot grasp things-in-themselves, we do know our own organised experiences; and it is thus possible to formulate psychological laws on the basis of experience, even in the absence of knowledge of the soul. Kant's treatment of willing and feeling allows him to bring back into philosophy what his analysis of pure reason had made him reject. Passing from consideration of thought to that of action, he finds a "categorical imperative" in the consideration of duty. This presupposes the freedom of the will, the existence of God and the immortality of the soul. The ultimate value does not lie in the region of knowledge, but in that of will and feeling, where teleology, or the seeking of ends and goals, and æsthetic appreciation are experienced. Feeling, willing and knowing are three separable faculties. Though Kant declared that an exact science of psychology was impossible, his general position indicates how such a science might be built up. It must no longer be concerned with souls, but must study experience; and, to be successful, must employ mathematical method. In rejecting metaphysics and "subjectifying" physical science by introducing mental elements into its construction, he revealed a point of view for the study of mental phenomena which greatly influenced subsequent speculative thought. His place in psychological history is indicated by his comparison of himself with Copernicus as a revolutionary in science, making objects conform to mind rather than making the mind merely reflect objects. The implications of this reversal of theory have remained a permanent gain.

While in Britain and France empiricism developed, in Germany psychology never wholly lost its metaphysical background. Herbart (b.1776) combined elements of the philosophies of Kant and Leibniz, but laid greater stress upon introspection. He rejected the doctrine of unitary faculties; and postulated a simple, active soul as the subject of mental life, teaching that ideas are due to its reactions upon other beings ("Reals") with which it co-exists. He attempted to express all psychical

activities in mathematical formulæ and to reduce mind to a kind of mental mechanics. Conscious states are thus regarded as an equilibrium of opposing forces. Ideas are conceived as complexes of sensations; but instead of passive links between them, as in associationism, he postulated active mental forces which are conceived as summating algebraically. Ideas struggle together or ally themselves in consciousness. The conception suggested an unconscious region of mind into which ideas, that are too feeble for successful competition, sink, to rise again when their opposing ideas weaken, or when their own force increases by alliance with others. The dynamic alliance of ideas, to which fresh material is assimilated in learning, is called by Herbart an " apperceptive mass." It is conceived as an aggregate of active past experience to which new ideas ally themselves. Apperception is thus the active combination of ideas into a growing unity; the dynamic background of experience makes the assimilation of fresh material possible. This conception was, and still is, of great fruitfulness in educational theory and practice. Herbart's aim was to make psychology an exact empirical science, with practical applications. Though his dynamic of ideas did not prove successful, he certainly advanced the study in both these respects.

EVOLUTION AND PSYCHOLOGY

The positivistic trend in England was given fresh impetus by the restatement of the hypothesis of evolution and the vast amount of evidence collected in its favour. Though formulated in several quarters before his time, it was the influence of Darwin in its support, more than any other, that went to shape contemporary psychology. Both Lamarck and Darwin held that acquired characteristics (or at least some) are cumulative, and inherited from previous generations, and that these characteristics are acquired not only by the action of the environment upon the organism, but also, in part, by the efforts of the creature to adapt itself to its environment. This implies a psychological factor in evolution; and, though the inheritance of acquired characteristics is not now generally accepted, the view proved to be an incentive to research and a workable principle of interpretation. Darwin's psychological interests were extraordinarily broad and profound. He applied the principle of natural selection to problems of instinctive behaviour, emotional expression in man and animals, protecting and attracting traits, and the like; and in the *Descent of Man* he extended the same principle to higher mental processes also, and showed the similarity between human reasoning and processes of the animal mind. The influence of the evolutionary hypothesis upon psychology was enormous. Like the saturated solution of a salt into which a crystal is dropped, current psychologies began to crystallise round it. The mental gulf between man and the rest of the animal kingdom was bridged. Genetic views of the mind came speedily to replace static ones; and many acute psychological observations, from Aristotle onwards, were found to fit readily into the new naturalistic scheme. The stage was fully set for the development of contemporary psychology. The first thoroughgoing application of the new principle was made by Spencer (b.1820) within the framework of associationism. On analogy with

the derivation of complex organic structures from simpler forms he derived all more complex mental states from primitive sensation, or feeling, elements which accompany elementary nervous process. Intelligence was similarly derived, through instinct, from primitive reflex action. Mental products are, accordingly, capable of analysis into simple elementary forms ; and by association these are bound into wholes, not merely in the developing mental life of the individual, but racially also. Associations formed in early social experience, animal or human, are stamped in and transmitted by heredity. There is thus a reconciliation of innate ideas and experience ; the universal and necessary elements of thought coming, not from individual experience, but from that of the race. They are the result of past history recorded in hereditary neural arrangements of the brain. Feelings, emotions and will are reduced to aspects of complex sensory processes, the complexity of which is conceived on analogy with chemical compounds, rather than as the result of summation or mere addition. Here is no hint of any synthetic or creative activity of a conscious self in respect of its own mental contents ; the psychology is a wholly structural one. Indeed self, as mind-substance, is for Spencer only an unknowable something postulated to explain persistence and unity, in spite of all changes, in the aggregate of states of consciousness. Like all associationisms and structuralisms Spencer's psychology is now outgrown. It was none the less a contribution of worth, focussing attention upon the naturalistic evolution of mind as a subject of special study. It indicated the place of psychology among the other biological sciences ; and, by insistence upon the racial derivation of individual mental characteristics, related the science closely to sociology.

A second consequence of the acceptance of the Darwinian hypothesis was the application of the concepts of variation, selection and adaptation to the study of individual differences. Though experimental work had shown that people differ in respect of sensory acuity, quickness of reaction-time, and the like, it was Galton (b. 1822) who first investigated the problem of individual differences on a large scale in his studies of hereditary genius, mental images, mental number-forms and similar matters. Even more important was his contribution of a statistical method, which was to prove of enormous service in psychological investigation. In order to find the relation between mental qualities, which cannot directly be measured, we require some device by which we can ascertain how far they tend to go together. Such a device Galton provided in the " coefficient of correlation," which has since so been developed and perfected as to be of inestimable value in psychological research. The raising of the problem of individual differences, and the creation of this instrument of research, entitle him to a foremost place as a pioneer of contemporary psychology.

A third consequence of the introduction of the hypothesis of evolution was the extension of psychology to the comparative study of animals, primitive peoples, children and abnormal persons, with a view to discovering genetic relations between them and normal adults in respect of mental process. Whereas previous interests had chiefly been directed upon the normal adult mind, either deducing its characters from the nature of the soul, or inducing its principles from empirical observation, interest now

was largely centred upon evolutionary connections. Behaviour in all its forms, interpreted on analogy with the personal conscious behaviour of the student, was closely observed by naturalists; and observation in experimental conditions later on took the place of uncontrolled field work. A vast and growing literature upon animal, child, primitive and pathological psychology began to accumulate. Experiments upon creatures, ranging from unicellular organisms to anthropoids and young children, were multiplied; and the original impetus, far from spending itself, has steadily increased up to the present, every school of psychology drawing inspiration from the comparative observation of behaviour. The chief dangers of this line of attack have been an undue tendency to interpret the behaviour of animals and children as if they were human adults, and the " behaviouristic " tendency to dispense with consciousness altogether in interpreting the actions not only of lowly organisms but even of man himself.

EXPERIMENTAL PSYCHOLOGY

Already experimental psychology had begun, in a small way, in the attacks made in physical and physiological laboratories upon problems connected with sensation. Both psychophysics (the correlation of mental with physical changes, when physiological conditions are kept constant) and psychophysiology (the correlation of mental events with physiological changes) had made headway. The growth of the experimental spirit in psychology is indicated, as we have seen, as far back as Herbart. It is illustrated by such work as that of the physiologists Weber and Fechner, who established the psychophysical law of sensation (*viz.*, sensory intensity increases in arithmetical progression while the stimulus is increased geometrically). It was advanced by physicists like Helmholtz, who investigated vision and hearing as well as the temporal differences of reaction-times. It came at length to a head in the establishment by Wundt of the first exclusively psychological laboratory at Leipzig. Here not only sensory processes, but higher mental processes also—memory, imagination, attention, association, feeling, emotion, thought and will—were proposed for investigation. Within a comparatively short time psychological laboratories multiplied throughout Europe and America : and at the present day there is hardly a centre of psychological teaching where experimental work, forming the nucleus of training and theoretical teaching, is not carried out. Besides observation and introspection, the ordinary methods of physical science are employed; and within the past few decades statistical treatment of the data of research has increasingly been followed up. These methods, becoming progressively more refined and adapted to the subject-matter, have proved not only fruitful in their application to special problems, but illuminating in general psychological theory also.

The multiplication of centres of research, and the continual splitting up of larger problems into their parts for detailed solution, have led to increasing specialisation in psychology and a shift of interest even greater than that caused by the introduction of the empirical standpoint. The old problems concerned with soul, mind or consciousness, its relation to

body, its origin and destiny, have largely been thrust out of view by preoccupation with more immediate issues. They have been left to the philosophers, while experimental psychologists have busied themselves more and more with the investigation of mental processes as such in all their detail. This does not mean that the more fundamental problems are no longer urgent. It means a distribution of labour, in which the experimentalists are content with the spadework that yields immediate practical returns. For psychology to-day is in the position of physical science when this made its greatest advances, and applied its discoveries in every direction to social and material well-being. There also more fundamental problems lay in the background, which to-day the mathematical physicists are attempting to solve. It is not unduly optimistic to hope that the immense amount of material being gathered together in experimental psychology will lead to an empirically established and acceptable view of the nature of the conscious principle.

SOCIAL AND COMPARATIVE PSYCHOLOGY

Another line along which psychologists have been working, is the investigation of man in his social aspects. This also may be traced to the influence of evolutionism upon the science. It has led to the formulation of doctrines of social and dynamic psychology which supplement the data derived from the experimental investigation of mental process, and link up comparative with normal, abnormal and pathological psychology. No longer considered as isolated individuals in a merely physical environment, the reactions of organisms, and particularly of man, to social stimuli were investigated. What are the springs of action which instigate behaviour in response to such stimuli ? The hormic psychologies provide an answer. The original drives to action are the inborn psycho-physical, or body-mind, dispositions, differing in different organisms, to behave in typical ways upon external stimulation whether physical or social. Profusely illustrated in the behaviour of lower animals, and especially of insects, they are the primary motives of all behaviour, in the service of which all the cognitive powers have their existence and meaning. It has been said that intelligence is a tool at the service of instinct. How far down in the biological scale animals are to be credited with consciousness analogous to ours may be disputable ; but there is evidence of adaptation by insight, or by trial and error, which makes learning possible at a very low stage indeed. Such cognitive powers as animals may possess are accordingly regarded as serving the original hormic forces. The action of these forces, however, may become modified by consciousness in various ways. Fresh kinds of stimuli may become substituted for those originally adapted to release them. They may become specialised to a single individual belonging to the class of stimuli apt to activate them, and so be more readily called into exercise by that individual than by others. In creatures capable of mental abstraction and conception, moreover, the hormic drives may come into play in response to stimulation by abstract and conceptual ideals. On the other hand, modifications of original forms of behaviour, or behaviour-patterns, also come about dependently upon processes of trial and error and of insight. This is especially noticeable in

human social conduct, in which the goals of instinct are not as a rule directly attained, but are secured through means that are often of an exceedingly circuitous kind. Thus all the social machinery of law, industry, commerce, and the like are human inventions used to secure the instinctive ends prescribed by Nature. Hormic psychology presents a very complete dynamic view of human behaviour, into which the details of comparative and experimental psychology naturally fit. It thus reflects the best features of pre-scientific psychology, and provides a broad foundation for the investigation of the nature of the principle of conscious life. In its recognition of dispositions, drives or tendencies, it emphasises the part played by the unconscious in the determination of consciousness; and, by extending mentality beyond the region of awareness, it points to a mental vitalism comparable with that of Aristotle.

Having indicated the main directions in which the currents of contemporary psychology are flowing, it will be convenient to summarise the present position of the science under several heads, roughly corresponding to the division of mental process into cognitive, conative and affective. Though there may be some unavoidable overlap, this will enable us briefly to review and contrast the chief schools of psychological thought in existence at the present day.

From what has been said with regard to hormic psychology, it will be clear that the investigation of cognitive processes has its bearing upon the explanation of behaviour; for modification of inborn, or connate, behaviour-patterns depends upon forms of cognition. From the lowly organism which slightly alters its native reaction to a stimulus when confronted with difficulty in attaining its end or maintaining its "psychic equilibrium," to the human being who plans a long and complicated series of actions leading to some remotely conceived goal and strives to attain it, the strivings are determined by cognition, but at very different levels. No one of us, however, has direct insight into the mind of any creature other than himself; and we must accordingly interpret behaviour at all levels, on analogy with our own, and refer it to mental processes which we immediately apprehend in introspection. Analysis of human consciousness must yield all our principles of explanation. Such analysis has led to the formulation of four principal theories of cognitive process which are advanced to-day. All except one are protests against the associationisms and structuralisms in which mind was reduced to the sum total of its phenomenal elements or states. The remaining one is an extension of associationism to physiology; and it contrives to do away with consciousness altogether. Since we have already considered associationism in dealing with Hume and Spencer, no recapitulation is necessary here. We need only recall the main point of the theory; *viz.*, that all processes of consciousness whatsoever are reducible to sensations regulated by associative laws. Apart from the distortion of many mental phenomena by forcing them into the too rigid framework of the theory, the omission of the functional and dynamic aspect of mind was fatal, as is shown by all contemporary presentations of psychology, including Behaviourism. Dynamic activity is smuggled in by way of neural process, even if it is not admitted right of hospitality in consciousness. Associationism has been ousted by contemporary systems, because it was inadequate to explain

vital factors of personal experience. It had no place for emotional activity, purposive striving, or creative thinking.

BEHAVIOURISM

In a sense, however, it has taken on a new lease of life in the more extreme form of Behaviourism ; but at the price of sacrificing consciousness altogether. Behaviourism is not only a psychology without a soul ; it is psychology without either mind or consciousness. It proposes that the consideration of psychologists should be limited to external and observable behaviour ; and then proceeds to explain behaviour, in a strictly deterministic manner, in the light of the principle of contiguous association. In this theory, all forms of behaviour in animals, all kinds of human conduct, no matter how socially desirable or morally elevated, are conceived as built upon the foundation of a few native reflexes inherited by all the members of the species. Like any other animal, man starts life with a limited equipment of unlearned reaction-patterns to external stimuli ; and upon these are grafted an immense number of other behaviour-patterns, which make up his learned equipment. To explain the activation of reaction-patterns by stimuli other than those which originally alone called them into activity, the behaviourist uses the principle of the conditioned reflex. Experiments have shown that a stimulus that is incapable of provoking a given reaction will, after presentation together with a connate stimulus to that reaction, evoke it. Thus Pavlov induced salivation in dogs as a reaction to the ringing of a bell, after the bell had been rung a number of times in connection with the presentation of food. Watson, again, showed that fear-reactions, originally provoked in very young children only by startling stimuli, such as loud noise or loss of support, could be associated with the sight of objects with regard to which the child had previously exhibited no signs of fear. A dog, in which the infant had before only shown interest, afterwards provoked fear-behaviour if it had been seen at the same time that the child had been frightened by a violent noise. Similarly, rage and love reactions, naturally provoked by a limited range of definite stimuli, could be " conditioned " to others. Moreover, just as the connate connections admitted of a fairly wide range of stimulus (*e.g.*, *any* loud noise) in provoking appropriate responses, so the conditioned reactions, it was found, spread also to stimuli that only resembled the one to which they had actually been conditioned (*e.g.*, the child would not only fear a dog, but anything *like* a dog, as, for instance, a teddy bear, or even a bit of fur or cloth). This looks like association by similarity, but in fact it can be reduced to contiguous association. On the basis of associative attachment, or " conditioning," and substitution of stimuli, together with alteration in the character of the response, behaviouristic psychology was erected, but on a physiological rather than a psychological foundation. It is a system strongly reminiscent of that of Hartley. The original endowment of man is a group of physiological reaction-mechanisms of a relatively simple kind. All complex behaviour is explained by environmental conditioning, which results in the formation (and re-formation) of habits as physiological as the inherited mechanisms themselves. The concept of instinct,

accordingly, is not needed to explain behaviour; neither is the concept of consciousness nor thought. For thought also is only a conditioned reaction to external stimuli on a par with any other. It consists in feeble movements of the organs of articulation (inner or sub-vocal speech) which have become substituted for the gross movements of limbs and body that were originally evoked by the same stimuli. The evidence upon which behaviourism is based is of a conative, or emotional, order rather than cognitive; and the theory ends in excluding thought as an interesting or useful topic for psychological investigation, and denying to consciousness any effective part in the determination of behaviour. It may therefore seem out of place to consider behaviourism in this section, except as an instance of refusing to allow mental processes any right of citizenship in psychology. Behaviourism is not at present maintained however, in its exclusive and rigid form, as outlined above. Though a considerable group of psychologists would still call themselves behaviourists, and make use of the conditioned reflex as the chief explanatory principle in psychology, there are few who altogether dispense with consciousness, or employ the principle of stimulus and physiological response alone to explain behaviour. Both consciousness and thought have been reintroduced into more moderate Behaviourism. Though genetic and even dynamic as a theory, its single principle was not enough to embrace all the facts. It could not explain how new ideas, or new types of behaviour, could arise, except as mere rearrangements of old ones. Yet thought, in some of its operations, is creative; and some behaviour gives evidence of true originality. Behaviourism could not continue to maintain that thought is sub-vocal speech, for definite experimental evidence disproves the statement. While the general bias of Behaviourism, accordingly, is towards a physiological explanation of mental events, its original formulation has been greatly modified. There were, however, aspects of permanent value even in the original statement of the doctrine. It was a protest against the merely structural view of consciousness to which pure introspection had led. It emphasised the importance of an objective examination of behaviour as functional. It introduced the principle of conditioning and transfer into general psychology in connection with behaviour, and not merely as a mode of association of inert ideas; and thus indirectly paved the way for a return to the dynamic conception of consciousness. Finally, though failing to account for purpose and volition as human experiences, its aim of determining behaviour on morally and socially desirable lines by the practical use of conditioned reflexes—its very name *Behaviourism*—suggested the lines upon which all along psychology had been developing; *i.e.*, as the science of the principles of behaviour, by the application of which conduct might be directed and guided.

FORMALISM OR "GESTALT"

A second type of contemporary psychology, definitely in revolt against the atomistic and structuralistic conception of consciousness, has developed from the fundamental postulate that there is more in any psychological whole than the mere sum of its parts. In germ this system, commonly known as *Gestaltpsychologie*, or Formalism, may be traced back

to Wundt's (b. 1832) doctrine of mental creative synthesis; which is illustrated, among others, by the fact that though one can analyse a tonal clang into a fundamental tone with its overtones, the mere putting of these together again does not result in the clang. There is more in the latter than the sum of the tonal components. This view was developed by the Austrian psychologists, particularly Ehrenfels, who noted that a large number of sensory qualities belong to perceived wholes as such, and cannot be derived from the isolated sensations which enter into them. Thus " triangular," " round," "square," are properties of triangles, circles, squares, as mentally apprehended wholes, and add something to the elementary sensations supposed to constitute them. This " something " is evidently relational in character, as appears even more evidently if we consider a melody, which is not a mere collection of notes, but of notes related in a definite manner. Thus, though every single note is altered when the melody is transposed, the tune itself remains unchanged because of the " form quality " constituting it. This fruitful conception, originally worked out with regard to shapes (hence *Gestalt*=German for *shape*, or *form*), was extended to wholes of other kinds; and attention was focussed upon the dynamic mental process by which wholes come to be formed and isolated. The most recent, and perhaps best-known, developments of Formalism, however, are due to the work of a group of German psychologists (Wertheimer, Köhler and Koffka) who have extended the theory to cover conscious processes other than perception. They have brought forward experimental evidence in its support, and have applied it in the interpretation of animal and child psychology with very considerable success. Meanwhile, the Austrian school has not been idle either in experiment or development of theory; and, though there are divergences of opinion between the two schools with regard to the nature of the mental processes involved in the creation of form, both are in general fundamental agreement. Though the Austrian school antedates that of Berlin, the latter considers that the principles of Formalism were first stated by Wertheimer as the result of his research into the problem of movement apparently perceived when the stimuli presented are not themselves moving. The problem is that of the zoetrope or kinematograph, in which the eye is stimulated by successive pictures representing stationary, but different, phases of moving objects, and combines these pictures into the representation of apparently continuous movement. Wertheimer rightly explained the apparent movement as something over and above the impressions actually made by the isolated stimuli, and attributed it to a configurational or formalising process as immediate as the sensing of the elements which are perceived as already in relation. There are not two processes, first sensing and then shaping, as the Austrians hold, in the perception of wholes, but only one. With this modification, the conception of form or shape was at once extended to cover all the operations of sensory perception, as well as of thought. Connected with the psychological doctrine of mentally configured wholes, which has met with wide acceptance, is a physiological one : namely, that there exist connate configurational patterns in the nervous system, which are correlated with the mental wholes, and correspond to objectively configured wholes in the environment. These physiological patterns are held to function as

response mechanisms. Though based on speculation rather than physiological evidence, this is a far-reaching extension of psychological theory to physiology, and even to physics. Other than psychological aspects of Formalism, however, need not detain us here. Having shown that wholes are, in fact, more than the sum of their parts, it was necessary to complete the doctrine by showing that they are original, in the sense that no other mental items than structured wholes are directly known, and that it is to these we react. Instead of elementary sensations, or the " buzzing, booming confusion " of sensations held by James to be the ground from which consciousness develops, Formalists teach that mental development starts with structures or wholes, however primitive their character may be. To substantiate this genetically, they point to observations and experiments made upon child and animal behaviour. Primitive and incomplex wholes become more complex and fully structurated in virtue of the *Principle of Precision*, whereby they " tend to become as perfect as prevailing conditions permit." This not only accounts for our tendency to perceive, say, an incompletely drawn triangle as a complete triangle, but also shows how learning takes place in the animal, child and adult by increasing structuration of wholes and the inclusion of new elements within them. The old view that learning comes about by slow associative processes of trial and error, during which pleasurable or successful reactions are stamped in so as to become habits, while unsuccessful or painful ones become eliminated, is supplanted in Formalism by a doctrine of insightful learning. New wholes are suddenly apprehended ; a new structuration occurs, or a new element is incorporated into the situation, with consequent changes in reaction. Many examples of the working of the Principle of Precision are given in Formalist literature. Köhler's observation of the behaviour of his chimpanzees is classic. Faced with problem-situations in the attainment of goals (*e.g.*, food), they overcame the difficulties by behaviour which displayed insight. To cite examples, one gifted ape, whose fruit was too far from the bars of his cage to draw in with a short bamboo pole, happened by chance to fix two bamboos together, and used the artificially made " tool " to fish the food into the cage. Once he had thus chanced upon the solution, he perceived the means towards the goal insightfully, and thereafter was able to fit bamboo poles together to gain his ends. His reaction to the situation had altered. In the Formalist explanation this means that the whole situation (cage, food, sticks, etc.) had become enriched by the integration of the two-poles-joined-together with the rest. Indeed, he had already perceived this enriched whole when he unsuccessfully tried to push one stick in line with the other towards the fruit. The sticks were not joined together, but the solution was indicated. Though the ape stumbled on his solution by chance, he at once perceived the tool appropriate to the situation. Learning in this respect was complete. Other instances are given to show that insightful solution does not always arise by chance, but by scrutiny of relations. And several examples are advanced, in which the difficulty of breaking up one whole, and perceiving its parts as integrated in another whole, is brought out. Thus one ape, able to use a box to reach fruit hanging high up in the cage, did not make use of it when another ape was lying upon it. It was then a " resting place," not a " means for reaching fruit." When her companion had fallen

off the box, however, she at once grasped it, carried it under the goal, mounted, and seized the fruit. Köhler notes also, in illustration of the same point, that the following situation proved very difficult. The fruit lay outside the cage; there was no stick in sight; but a dried tree with branches stood at the back of the cage. The difficulty lay in " releasing " a part (branch) from one whole (tree), and transferring it into another configuration. While it was in the configuration " tree," it could not be apprehended as a tool. A similar account is given of learning in human beings. A child comes to dread the fire, not by association of painful experience with the visual appearance of fire, but because the relatively simple fire-whole suddenly becomes more completely structured and meaningful, calling for a new reaction. Meaning thus grows in more primitive, but already meaningful, wholes by further structuration. It is not created by experience, but merely transformed by it. Rignano has pointed out that serious difficulties beset this account of meaning and its growth. He stresses the part played by our emotional attitudes in the determination of what shall be object-wholes for us, and of our conative dispositions in the fixing of their meaning. A chair is a unitary whole to sit on, a part of a drawing-room set, or the like. And he insists upon the share that experience has in contributing both to wholes and their meanings by way of association. It seems to be clear that the concept of association cannot yet be dispensed with in psychology, however much Formalism has contributed to the advance of the science. The greatest contribution of *Gestalt* to contemporary psychology, however, is undoubtedly its vigorous protest, supported by a wealth of comparative and experimental evidence, against the insufficiency of associationism. Not only are mental objects originally perceived as meaningful wholes which grow by structuration, but they are wholes perceived in relation to goals to be attained, and so explain behaviour. Thus purpose is implied from the outset of mental life. Although Formalists have almost entirely neglected detailed study of feelings, emotions and will-acts, in this respect their theory will fit in with hormic psychology, to which it makes serious contributions on the cognitive side. Nevertheless, though implying conative activity throughout, and emphasising cognitive activity in the tendency to perfect configurational wholes and to enrich them with meaning, it stops short of any real mental creativity, either in thought or behaviour, which might take us beyond the sphere of sensory experience. Unlike the behaviourist principle, that of Formalism would seem to have little practical application to the development of character and the guidance of conduct. Though it is no doubt true that " the larger the wholes and the greater their unity, articulation, and meaning . . . the more personality will they express," the claim that an explanation of personal development is ultimately given by means of the universal law of *Gestalt* alone needs further substantiation; for it would appear that subsidiary principles also are required to construct a complete psychology of personality.

PSYCHO-ANALYSIS

Since the third type of contemporary psychology has an article to itself in this volume, it will only be necessary to refer to it very briefly.

Psycho-analysis, popularly perhaps the best known of current psychological systems, embraces a number of theories which have grown up around a method of investigating and treating mental disorder. It originated in the practice of hypnosis, during which it was found possible to bring to light the original occasions of certain pathological derangements in neurotic patients, and so to cure them. It was subsequently discovered that the hypnotic state was not necessary in order to secure curative results. Emotionally charged memories, though normally forgotten, could be recovered by appropriate treatment during a state of ordinary relaxation; and discharge, or working off, of the emotion then effected a cure. The point of departure for the analysis was found in the dreams of the patients. An elaborate theory grew up around these observations; and it has been extended from pathology to cover the psychology of everyday life. In the first place, the release of emotional tension of which the patient was wholly unconscious pointed to an unconscious, yet active, region of mind which influenced both consciousness and behaviour. This point became of capital importance in the theory. In the second place, great resistance was frequently encountered in carrying out the analytical technique; a fact which led to the formulation of the theory of " censorship." The conception is that of an active, repressive factor tending to secure the maintenance of the unconscious in its unconscious state. An indication of the functioning of the same mechanism was also found in the distorted forms of dreams; which were interpreted on good evidence as disguised manifestations of unconscious wishes. According to the view taken with respect to the inheritance of acquired characteristics, the unconscious is regarded as entirely individual or partly racial in origin; and the censorship, once conceived as the result of conscious social and moral repression, is now, at least in part, held to be an integral force of the unconscious mind itself. Theoretically systematised by Freud, psycho-analytic doctrine is presented as a mechanistic determinism on purely naturalistic lines. Conscious events are determined by unconscious ones which never may, or never can, come to awareness, and yet are psychical activities. Personality is rooted in the unconscious rather than in the conscious mind. And, though full use is made of the principle of association to explain the derivation and transference of forms of behaviour and thought from their unconscious motives, the fundamental explanatory principle of the system is that of the dynamic nature of the unconscious. Whether this is the drive of sex or the will to power, whether it is unique or manifold, differs according to the interpretation of different authors. But all alike definitely infer from the empirical evidence the two capital points of mental activity and the extension of this beyond the sphere of awareness. While Formalism, dispensing with association, provides the mental wholes grasped by the mind, Psycho-analysis, in common with Hormic psychology, indicates the activities making use of them.

The three contemporary psychological systems just considered are not, in fact, exclusive, but are mutually supplementary. All are based upon empirical observations, and are typically dynamic. All are concerned with the explanation of behaviour. But whereas one finds this in organic mechanisms and their conditioning without recourse to mind, another discovers it in the integration of conscious " configurations " and growth

of meaning, and the third in the profound depths of the unconscious. Each view has contributed to the development of current psychology. Native reaction-patterns together with the alterations wrought in them by conditioning; the conception of active configuration in percept and memory, as well as in the behaviour to which these give rise; the extension of the essential character of consciousness to the unconscious—all these have been incorporated into psychological theory, or at least have profoundly modified the outlook of the present day.

THE "TWO FACTOR" THEORY

A fourth system, incorporating the vital parts of the foregoing, has recently been developed within the field of experimental psychology. During the past twenty-five years, psychologists the world over have been investigating so-called "intelligence" and devising means for its measurement. Obviously, there can be no direct measure of such a mental function; but the accuracy and speed with which a person's mind works in performing intellectual tasks can be estimated from his output. Even then there is no natural unit of measurement; it is possible only to calculate norms, with their probable errors, from samples of the population, and to compare the performances of individuals with the norm. In this way a "mental age" can be assigned to them, which may or may not correspond with their real age. Original work in this field was done by Binet, who constructed "intelligence" tests to be administered to individuals (children) singly. Later, group tests were devised, by which large numbers might be tested at the same time. There was, and still is, much controversy in regard to the nature of "intelligence"; but statistical considerations have led to almost unanimous acceptance of the view advanced by Spearman, that whatever shows itself in intelligent behaviour, and is measured by the tests, consists of two factors, the one ("g") a general mental ability involved in all the tests, and the other a specific ability which differs according to the character of the particular test employed. To illustrate by a rough example, we might say that there is a common general factor of consciousness both in seeing and hearing, but a specific factor (eye or ear) involved in each performance. Using a large battery of varied tests, the specific factors tend to cancel one another, and a relatively pure measure of "g" may be obtained. Experimental and analytic work has shown that some tests are more "saturated" with "g" than others; and that it is best conceived as pure mental energy working through different engines. What is it that characterises individuals who are gifted with general mental ability? The results of an immense amount of mental testing, running into millions of cases, show that they score highly in tests which chiefly involve three mental processes, deriving from three basic laws or principles of original cognition. They score in the tests (1) when the mental items involved come quickly and clearly to awareness, (2) when relations of various kinds between the items are quickly and clearly noticed, and (3) when, such relations being applied to such items, correlated items rise quickly, clearly and accurately before the mind. All these processes are characterised by insight; and they are exclusively the ways in which new knowledge, as distinct

from remembered or recalled knowledge, arises.[1] The principles accounting for these processes have been termed by Spearman, who formulated them as providing a complete account of the genesis of knowledge, *Principles of Noegenesis*. They are expressed as follows. (1) " Any lived experience tends to evoke immediately a knowing of its characters and experiencer." (2) " The mentally presenting of any two or more characters tends to evoke immediately a knowing of relation between them." (3) " The presenting of any character together with any relation tends to evoke immediately a knowing of the correlative character." Briefly, knowledge arises from experience; relations are grasped within knowledge; the application of relations to items of knowledge generates new items. Of these principles the last is astonishingly fruitful. It can take us in thought beyond any previous experience, even beyond all possible experience. To it are due scientific hypothesis and invention, as for instance the transfer of the perceived relation of steam and kettle-lid to the conceived situation of steam in a boiler in order to work an engine. It accounts for artistic creation in every sphere of art, and even for concepts which have never entered into experience in any way, such as those of infinity, eternity or God. While all the noegenetic processes are expressions of mental activity and even creativity, the third thus expresses creativity in an especial manner. But the noegenetic principles, though accounting for the origin of knowledge, do not cover the entire cognitive field. And it is the claim of the system we are examining that it is explanatory of all cognitive process. The noegenetic principles do not explain remembering or forgetting, variations in clearness of mental items, differences in original mental endowment, or power of controlling thought. Five further principles of a quantitative kind are accordingly necessary to complete the account of cognition. The first is one of constancy; every mind maintains a total simultaneous output, which may vary in quality but tends to be constant in quantity. This principle, illustrated by the limitation of mental span, restates the two-factor doctrine. An individual's general mental energy tends to be constant, but is available for different operations. Next comes the principle of retentivity, manifested both in inertia and facilitation of mental processes, under which head the old law of association is included. Mental items experienced together tend to be retained and experienced together again. The reverse of this is the principle of fatigue, which summarises the tendency of a mentally experienced event not to occur again. These two principles together express the summated effect of earlier upon later experience. The fourth principle is that of conative control. By willing and striving we can alter the direction and intensity of our knowing. Lastly, there is the principle of primordial potencies, indicating those original individual differences which are the ultimate personal conditions of the functioning of the others. These five quantitative principles, together with the noegenetic laws, form a framework of explanation into which it has been found possible to fit every

[1] The following test illustrates all three processes: " Complete the sentence ' Smoke is to fire as finger-print is to . . . ' " No answer can be given unless the meanings of " smoke," and " fire " and " finger-print " are grasped, the relation of " sign " obtaining between " smoke " and " fire " perceived, and that relation applied to " finger-print " to generate the item required.

variety of cognitive process hitherto examined. It must be noted that the noegenetic, or qualitative, principles are stated in a purely psychological way without reference to physiology, whereas the quantitative principles, while capable of similar statement, are given physiological consideration as well. In respect of the three processes in which experience, relations and correlates become known, the psycho-physical connection is utterly obscure, and no help is afforded by physiology in their explanation. This is not so with regard to the quantitative principles, except in one case. Though they express psychological tendencies, physiology is able to throw some light upon them. The two aspects should, no doubt, be kept separate ; but neither science can here afford to ignore the other. Most interesting in this connection is the recent work of Lashley, which indicates a general energy resident in the nervous system and available for use in various directions. This is an exact physiological parallel of the psychological doctrine of the two factors. The one exception, emphasised by Spearman, is the principle of conative control. Recent experimental investigation of will-acts (*see below*) supports his view. It points to a distinction between conation and volition. Now, the dependence of a conation (say, to move a limb) upon a will-act to do so is as utterly obscure as the passage of experience into knowledge ; and physiology has no useful explanatory suggestion to offer the psychologist in the matter. The problem, like that of the origin of knowledge, remains a purely psychological one. Indeed, this was already indicated in the statement of the first noegenetic principle, where the experiencing subject is asserted to be one of the objects of which we tend to become aware. This subject is very intimately connected with his will-acts which according to the evidence appear to be absolutely effortless precursors of conations of a physiological as well as a psychological character. We have, then, in this system a general mental energy presented which, at least to some extent, can be directed at will from one kind of operation to another. The well-investigated phenomena of inertia, mental lag or perseveration, and of oscillation (or " fluctuation of attention "), are aspects of this same energy. It works in various engines to produce different cognitive results. The engines, in Spearman's view, are provided by the nervous system, so far as its function is localised ; and this, coupled with his doctrine of the nature of noegenetic process, leads him to suggest that the chief purposes subserved by cerebral localisation are sensation, movement and retention. The roots of the mind ramify in physiology ; its branches, flowers and fruits, so far as we at present know, have no physiological implications. There remains one point to complete the picture. In this presentation of psychology we have energy and engines ; but there is also an engineer. The investigation of the former will indicate the conception we are to form of the latter ; which, in the writer's judgement, is the keystone of a personalistic psychology.

THE DEVELOPMENT OF CONTEMPORARY PSYCHOLOGY

The contemporary systems of psychology, which have so far been considered, are scientific in the strict sense of the word. They do not attempt ultimate, but only proximate explanations of phenomena ; they

simply investigate behaviour, or the mental processes underlying behaviour. Even on the cognitive side, however, many experimental data have been gleaned for deeper philosophical consideration. The essentially dynamic character of mental process, activity in the formation and completion of configurated wholes, activity in the region of the unconscious, creativeness in the operation of noegenetic laws, the central position of the self in the psychological synthesis : all these positions, already gained in science, point to the lines upon which a philosophy of human personality must proceed. In this we shall be reminded of much ancient speculation. For the pendulum, heavily weighted now with empirical and experimental data, is swinging backward again in contemporary thought from materialistic and physiological explanations of mental phenomena to spiritualistic and purely psychological ones. We can trace an ascending spiral on the record of psychological history ; and at each higher point in the curve the restatement of the old animistic doctrine takes on a more refined and substantiated form. To-day epiphenomenalism (the view that mind is a by-product of matter) need hardly be taken seriously. The issue is between parallelism of and interaction between mind and body ; and contemporary psychologists appear to be about equally divided upon that issue.

THE WILL

This consideration leads us directly to the topic of conation, or mind in its aspect of active willing and striving. Here again contemporary schools have arisen as protests against associationism, structuralism and phenomenalism. Already, as far back as Maine de Biran, a theoretical doctrine was advanced to account for the origin of habit, will and consciousness of self in a genetic manner. It was an attempt to explain volitional consciousness as consciousness of self upon empirical lines, which would cut across the mechanistic conception of the followers of Hume. Biran held that the self was essentially an experiencing activity of a spiritual kind ; and he explained how it becomes aware of itself as such. In the first instance, certain reflex activities are mechanically determined by external stimuli. But, on repetition of stimulation, experience divides into two orders, that of active self and that of object to which the self reacts. It is self as will, especially when effort is experienced in the exercise of its activity upon objects, which is revealed to us. William James also stresses the feeling of effort in " the slow dead heave of the will," as well as the *fiat* (" let it be so ") which distinguishes the highest form of will-acts from all other processes of consciousness. Of recent years, however, a great deal of experimental work has been carried out upon problems connected with willing and striving, the results of which fit in well with the findings of Hormic psychology and psycho-analytic theory. This work has mainly followed the two methods of controlled introspection and of estimates. Beginning with researches upon choice carried out in the laboratory of Wundt, the first method was perfected, both with regard to choice of problems for attack and in technique, by a group of workers largely influenced by Külpe. Notable among these are Ach and Michotte. The first named, investigating the resolutions taken by his subjects to

carry out prescribed mental tasks, found that the true will-act occurs at the moment of resolution, and not in the subsequent performance. The latter, he found, was conditioned by the previous volition, and took place in virtue of what he called a " determining tendency " brought about by it. These volitional determining tendencies are assimilable to native, or instinctive, dispositions in that they may operate without further conscious guidance or control. Ach was able to induce very strong resolutions in the course of his experiments, which aimed at measuring the strength of the will when pitted against strong associative tendencies. His subjects were required, say, to find rhymes to syllables which had so been learned over and over again with others that, when re-presented, there was an almost irresistible tendency to react with the associated syllables. What he really measured, if anything, was not the strength of will-acts, but that of the associative against the determining tendency. Nevertheless, his work shows that conative activities are called into being by the will. Further experimental investigation has emphasised the distinction between conation and volition, and shown that, while great effort may be involved and experienced in striving, acts of will may be entirely effortless and yet effective. Ach's fine introspective analyses further prove that the experience of resolution is in an intimate way bound up with the lived experience of the self; which can be characterised only by the description " *I* truly will." Thus volition, in its form of resolution, is a peculiarly impressive manifestation of self-activity. Here are gains for psychology of the greatest importance; the introspective isolation of will-acts, their clear distinction from feelings of effort, and the definite relating of volitional process to the active self.

Similar results were obtained by Michotte, who investigated the process of voluntary choice. In his experiments the subjects were required to choose, for good reasons, between alternative arithmetical operations to be carried out, between different combinations in pairs of pleasant and unpleasant liquids, one of which had to be tasted, and the like. As in Ach's experiments, it was found that the choice-process developed under the influence of volitional determining tendencies set up by the previous acceptance of the instruction (resolution to choose). The choices themselves were capable of analysis on broad lines. Though exceedingly complicated processes, fairly definite phases were distinguishable in them, such as the perception of the alternatives, evolution and deliberation of motives, development of feelings, and finally consent to, or designation of, the alternative chosen. The subjects distinguished two typical kinds of choice, cold and lively, and it was found that the " cold choices " were the more voluntary of the two. But these were precisely those choices in which the feeling of effort was least apparent; and the introspections to this effect were borne out by the objective controls (breathing records, etc.), which showed " lively choices " to be accompanied by considerable physiological disturbance. This observation further emphasises the distinction between volition and conation, to which reference has been made. As has already been stated, the whole process of choice may take place automatically in virtue of the previous resolution to choose; but there occurred many cases in which will intervened during the choice itself. When this happened, the experience of self-activity, as in the case

of Ach's resolutions, was reduplicated in what Michotte terms " consciousness of action." This is an important result of Michotte's investigation ; for it points again to the phenomenal appearance of self in consciousness, an experience sharply differentiated from the consciousness of effort which may accompany it. Once more self, as will, is indicated as an experience entirely distinct from feelings of physiological origin. Experiments similar to those of Ach and Michotte have been carried out in the laboratory of the present writer, with results which confirm their conclusions ; and correlation of the introspective reports with psycho-galvanometric records taken during the researches corroborates the distinction, exceedingly important for theory, between volition and conation. Where effort is reported, the galvanometer indicates bodily change.

Research of another kind was carried out by Webb, who used the method of estimates. His problem was to discover what character-qualities tend to be found together in individuals ; and to this end he had a large number of persons ranked in order, by competent judges, in respect of different character-qualities which they displayed. Only those rankings were used in his conclusions when several independent judges agreed in their estimates closely enough to obtain a good " reliability coefficient " (*i.e.*, when high agreement obtained between the rankings). Having obtained his data in this way, Webb calculated statistically the tendency of certain traits of character and intelligence to be shown in the same individuals. He found that the moral and social qualities of perseverance in face of obstacles, kindness on principle, trustworthiness, and conscientiousness are qualities of persons whose intelligence is profound rather than quick ; whereas readiness to become angry, eagerness for admiration, and bodily activity in pursuit of pleasure, characterise those persons whose intelligence is quick but not profound. He thus showed that a general will-factor exists which reveals itself in character ; and he concludes that consistency in conduct results from deliberate willing. Webb's data might have been interpreted in another way, as pointing to the general factor of perseveration already established by previous work. Stability in character might not be due to will, but to mental inertia. His conclusion, however, is supported by further investigations made by Lankes, who used the methods both of experiment and estimates. Having obtained rankings for character-qualities similar to Webb's, he also tested for perseveration, and correlated his results. The event proved that consistency of conduct, or perseverance, is not perseveration. The latter is a native character of the nervous system ; the former the result of a person's own effort and will. Lankes sums up by saying " the self, with persons used to act . . . from higher motives of reason and principle, not according to merely natural bent and inclination . . . can modify, and directly counteract, its own nervous system and its innate tendency towards perseveration or the opposite."

It will readily be seen how the two lines of attack upon the problem of will lead to similar and mutually supplementary results. A large field is opened for further exploration ; but already the gain is recorded of an aspect of self which is fundamental. It is a self which enters experience as an essentially active and controlling reality, largely directing its own

behaviour, and irreducible to a mechanical system of sensations or neural processes.

FEELING AND EMOTION

If the field for work upon the will is large, that for the investigation of feeling and emotion is still larger. The psychology of emotion is in a far less advanced state than that either of cognition or conation. To begin with, there is a difficulty with regard to the meaning of the term emotion itself. Sometimes it signifies conation, sometimes feeling, sometimes a blend of both. Until more exact analysis is forthcoming, there is bound to be confusion. From very early times two chief views have claimed adherents ; one, that emotion is a mental state which leads to conation, the other that bodily conation is experienced as emotion. The two views are contrasted by James, who advanced the latter, in a well-known passage :— " Common sense says, we lose our fortune, are sorry and weep ; we meet a bear, are frightened and run . . . the more rational statement is that we feel sorry because we cry . . . afraid because we tremble." James picturesquely over-emphasises the rôle of the skeletal muscles in emotion; but visceral and glandular changes must principally be taken into account. The elements of both views are implicit already in Descartes' doctrine of the passions of the soul. Like all conscious processes, emotions are thoughts, not bodily states. None the less, they are perceptions of changes occurring in the body. Physical impressions conveyed to the brain bring about bodily changes which result in seeking, avoiding or defence reactions. In the lower animals this is all that happens. But in man the mind perceives the bodily " commotion," and so experiences " passion." Emotion is thus a conative adjustment of the body perceived by the mind. But it is more than this. It is also an incentive to acts of will, which in turn influence movements of the body. It is accordingly not merely, as for James, a mass of bodily sensation, but a dynamic mental state lying midway between knowing and doing. Interesting in this connection is Wundt's emotional theory of will. Elementary feeling-qualities carried by sensations become fused in higher and higher " emotions " which develop in regular sequences, and usually lead to acts of will. These latter consist in those emotional sequences which end in a feeling of resolution and lead to overt action. Since consciously willed acts tend to become mechanised and unconscious in us, Wundt extends the concept of will to cover all purposeful action whatever which satisfies biological needs. Thus his emotional theory of volition includes both impulsive and reflex acts, which genetically once expressed conscious wants of the organism, but now simply connote a typically emotional sequence in which the feeling of resolution is absent. Will as emotion is thus an entirely general and fundamental character of mind. A similar rôle assigned to emotion will be recalled from what has been said of Behaviourism, in which theory both natural and acquired reaction-patterns are regarded as activated by external stimuli. Here the conative aspect of emotion is stressed to the exclusion of the feeling aspect ; and will is reduced to mere physiological striving. In sharp contrast with this last view is that of the Hormic psychology developed by McDougall. Here emotion is made the central part of the instinctive process, which is initiated by perception of

connately adapted stimuli and issues in definite conative activities leading to observable behaviour. Both on the perceptual and the conative side, modifications may occur which explain the complexities of acquired forms of behaviour ; but the emotional core of instinctive and acquired behaviour is fundamental in the theory. This view leads to the exceedingly important conclusion that emotion is the clue to behaviour, as it indicates the natural springs of action. By the play of cognitive process upon these through the emotions, character may be built up and conduct may to a large extent be guided ; and it is by stimulating the natural needs and wants of human beings in this way that the success of applied psychology in all its branches depends. The investigation of the physiological changes connected with emotion, though of less psychological interest, has proceeded apace. Since the time of Lotze, who was one of the first to examine changes in facial expression, bodily posture, alterations in breathing and pulse, under emotional stress, many investigations of this problem have been undertaken. In general, it may be said that these point to the autonomic nervous system, the lower centres (thalamus and basal ganglia) of the brain, and the endocrine, or ductless, glands, as more particularly concerned in emotional reactions. The work of Langley, Head and Sherrington on neural processes, and that of Brown-Séquard, Cannon and Crile on the secretions of the ductless glands, may be cited in support. Especially interesting is Cannon's investigation of the function of the adrenal glands. He showed that fear and rage excited in animals provoked the secretion of adrenalin, with consequent increase in blood pressure, liberation of glycogen from the liver, and heightened stimulation of striped, or so-called " voluntary," muscles. This indicates a conative set in the animal, fitting it to react with greater vigour to the object which provokes fear or rage. But the question still remains open whether these changes are the cause or the effect of the mental state. One indication of a possible answer lies in the temporal sequence of events. Some of the physiological changes are very slow, and all require time. In experiments upon will-acts, using the psycho-galvanometer as control, the mental attitude seems certainly to precede the physiological one as indicated by the deflections of the needle. This would appear to show that the conative part of the response takes place definitely before the experience of the " emotion." Here, again, there appears to be evidence of the essential activity of mind, as already instanced in the creative activities of thought and the controlling aspects of conation.

PERSONALISM

Before passing on to consider the applications of psychology to practical life, it will be in place here to suggest, in the light of the foregoing analyses, a view which has been shaping itself in contemporary thought with regard to the nature of the feeling, thinking and willing subject. Those psychologists who are not so " departmentalised " as to exclude consideration of the deeper problems of their science, are coming to realise that analysis, though a useful and even necessary method, breaks up in thought what is in fact indivisible. The conception of consciousness as a mosaic of sensations, or products of mental chemistry, has been

abandoned. Functional psychology has been substituted for structuralism. Since Herbart, polemic has waged fiercely against the theory of faculties (intellect, memory, imagination, etc.) as unitary functions, until definite experimental evidence has been adduced that no such functions exist. The notion of man as a collection of separable instincts, of personality as the integration of native and acquired reaction-patterns, or modes of behaviour, is beginning to lose favour. In place of these abstract products of analysis, stress is laid upon the undivided totality of the person as an organic whole, all of whose reactions are purposive. This is personalistic psychology ; and it has taken several forms. Most interesting is Stern's view that scientific psychology and personalism go together. For Stern, a " person " is a being which, in spite of the multiplicity of its parts, presents a real unity, having a character and value of its own. Thus, notwithstanding its many subordinate functions, a person is in fact a unitary and purposive self-activity. It is, however, psycho-physically neutral, lying beyond its physical and mental manifestations, either of which may be interpreted mechanistically or teleologically. For, in Stern's view, the antagonism between mechanism and teleology is reconciled in a teleomechanical parallelism. Moreover, a person's " disposition " is a single inner factor which co-operates with external factors, and thus manifests itself in a series of single tendencies and characteristics. This doctrine is the philosophical basis of Stern's scientific treatment of individual differences ; to which subject he has contributed experimental results of a very high order. While Stern's purposive self-activity is beyond its manifestation, other personalists maintain that it is actually lived and apprehended in self-experience. This is the conclusion of much experimental work by such investigators as Dürr, Katzaroff, Michotte and Ach, to some of which reference has been made above. As actually experienced, the self, according to Calkins, exhibits four principal characters. It is consciously self-identical ; it is consciously unique, consciously related as ground to its own experience and also in many ways to its environment. These characters, together with that of its activity, provide a clue to the conception we should frame of it. Is it matter ? Is it spirit ? Is it a compound of both ? Clearly it is not matter in the old sense in which matter was conceived as an inert substratum for quantities and qualities. Modern physics itself is abandoning that concept for one of energy, which it has borrowed from psychology. Clearly it is not matter in the sense of mere potency ; for that is a contradiction of all experience. As clearly, it is not spirit in the sense that it exhibits no physical phenomena ; otherwise there could be no communication between selves, nor interaction between a self and its environment. We are driven back upon psycho-physical interaction or parallelism, with an altered value put upon both the terms psychical and physical ; for the reality lying behind physical phenomena, and the psychical as given in experience, appear to be assimilable in the form of energy directed towards ends, aimed at goals, one kind of which at least is evidently self-conscious. Whether this personalistic view be acceptable, or, as in other philosophical interpretations of the facts advanced by different schools of psychologists, pure spiritualism or pure materialism is to be preferred, one thing is pragmatically certain, since, in fact, it *works*. This is, that the discoveries of contemporary psychology

are applicable with advantage to the practical affairs of everyday life. The science is not only a theoretical, but also an applied one.

The principal directions in which psychology has already proved of value in application to practical problems are those of education, medicine and industry; though its applicability has proved to be possible in other spheres also, such as those of law, commerce and social organisation.

APPLIED PSYCHOLOGY: EDUCATION

During the modern period, at least as far back as Herbart, psychological knowledge has been employed in the service of education. The doctrine of apperceptive masses indicated lines upon which educational practice should proceed. The child should gradually and progressively be supplied with information which is easily assimilable to the background of knowledge already possessed. Moreover, in this process his own powers of observation should be trained; for information is not simply poured into his mind by the teacher, he must acquire it for himself. Pestalozzi and Froebel insisted on this aspect of training, not neglecting character-formation, the latter especially emphasising the value of vivid stimuli (colours, playthings, etc.) in attracting and securing attention. His theory of education by the play-method led to the institution of the kindergarten, and has further been developed in the Montessori system. But other problems demanded attention also. The discarding of the doctrine of faculties raised the question of the possibility of " transfer of training." Does training in one subject, or skill, facilitate the learning of another? Does learning Latin, say, make learning Greek easier? Or does practice in manipulation with one hand help in the acquisition of skill with the other? It was found that such facilitation only occurs when the several subjects or skills concerned are very similar in character; a fact which has largely influenced educational curricula. A like problem arose inrespect of memory. Is this a unitary power, good or bad all round; or do people have good memories for some things and bad for others? Again, research has shown that " memory " consists in a number of memory-functions, and that the degree of functional unity is connected with the degree of likeness of the material remembered. Thus, though retentiveness varies from one individual to another, it is incapable of general training. On the other hand, work initiated by Ebbinghaus and prosecuted by a large number of investigators shows that there are advantageous methods of memorising and acquiring skills. In general, for example, learning by wholes is more economical than learning by parts; spaced-out learning is better than learning all at once. These conclusions also have been fruitful for educational practice. Even more important, however, has been the discovery of the possibility of measuring general mental ability, as well as certain special aptitudes, by the use of intelligence and other tests. This not only permits of children being graded for teaching appropriate to their mental age, but also gives indications of special abilities which would benefit by intensive training, or the lack of such abilities in children upon whom training would be wasted. On the character side, as contrasted with intelligence, much headway has also been made in applying psychological knowledge to problems of maladjusted, naughty or

troublesome children. Emotional and conative defects, lack of control, and wrongly formed habits are, to a large extent, amenable to treatment; and the multiplication of highly successful child-clinics for this purpose is evidence of the educational and re-educational value of applied psychology.

APPLIED PSYCHOLOGY: PSYCHOTHERAPY

This last consideration indicates a connection between educational psychology and psychotherapy. Just as maladjusted children can be successfully readjusted by psychological means, so many forms of neurosis yield to psychological treatment. From time immemorial psychology has in one way or other played its part in the practice of general medicine. Plato relates how Socrates described the cure of headache by suggestion, and the earliest records of Egyptian medicine show how psychological principles were used in effecting cures. Psychotherapy is to-day a recognised branch of the medical profession, specialising along definite lines in the treatment of functional, and sometimes organic, disease of mental origin. The chief methods in use are those of suggestion during hypnosis or in the hypnoidal state, psycho-analysis and re-education. By such means not only phobias (fears), compulsions (irresistible impulses), tremors, tics and morbid habits, such as alcoholism or drug-addiction, may be cured, but even serious physical conditions may be ameliorated. Apart from definite curative suggestions and catharsis, or mental purging, however, the influence of emotional states and conative attitudes upon physiological processes is well known; and the skilled practitioner draws upon general, as well as special, knowledge and technique in his therapeutic procedure.

APPLIED PSYCHOLOGY: INDUSTRY

Among the latest developments of applied psychology is that connected with industry. It has at length come to be realised that human beings, as well as machines and materials, are involved in production; and that individual differences are of the greatest importance in adapting people to the various avocations of industrial life. Some employments require much intelligence, others less. As we have seen, individuals may be tested for general mental ability and advised in respect of, or selected for, tasks which are suited to their capacity. Again, perseverative tendencies, which make for slowness in adaptability, would be a great handicap in some tasks, whereas a strong perseverator would perform others with ease and success. This general factor can also be tested, and advice given or selection made accordingly. Similarly, many special aptitudes which fit or disqualify people for particular forms of work can be investigated by testing. In this way, a fairly complete picture of the individual is reached, so far as possibilities of performance are concerned. There are some jobs in which he can never make good; in others he may prove a success. That he will not certainly be successful in these depends on other factors than general and special abilities of a cognitive or executive kind. Human beings are not machines, nor even intelligent machines. Their emotional and conative make-up must also be reckoned with. Their needs, desires

and feelings constitute a no less important consideration than their abilities in fitting them for different employments; and individual differences in these respects also must be taken into account, not only in vocational guidance and selection, but in their subsequent occupational career as well. Here, again, psychology has much to offer to worker, employer, distributor, salesman and even consumer. Investigations have been carried out upon the best ways of performing different tasks, the introduction of rest-periods between spells of work, the lessening of the hours of the working day, the avoidance of fatigue and boredom, the provision of adequate incentives to arouse ambition, and the like; and the results, when applied, have proved to be advantageous to all concerned. Greater production has been secured with less effort, fatigue and emotional disturbance. Though here, as elsewhere, psychological research and application have begun with problems of the head and hands rather than of the heart, an immense field is opened up for further work. Our increasing knowledge of will and character-qualities will be found as applicable to industrial conditions as our knowledge of intelligence and special aptitudes has already been; and the legitimate needs and desires of human nature, even when they differ, will be taken into account in industrial organisation. An illustration may already be found in the psychology of advertising and salesmanship. Clearly these can be practically successful only so far as they are based upon knowledge of the desires and motives which lead people to purchase goods. It is not enough to catch attention by a striking poster or paragraph, and to hold it by repetition. A mere description of an article by a salesman will not sell it. The prospective purchaser must want to buy, or be made to want to buy, by an appeal to need or desire. He must be given a motive to purchase which will be sufficiently strong to sway him. The appeal through the eye or the ear is not so much to his judgement as to his feelings. By further extension of this principle, applied psychology can go far both in industry and commerce. It can reach to professions or callings of every kind. Indeed, there is no sphere of life that it cannot touch. For to control our own thoughts, feelings and actions, and to adapt ourselves to our place in the social organism, some understanding of human nature, as manifested in ourselves and in others, is required. We must know those points in which we are alike and those in which we differ. Most of us learn a little of that knowledge in a rough and ready way through experience of ourselves and others in our various social contacts. But a detailed and exact knowledge is only possible through scientific observation of the facts and their experimental investigation. We end with the definition with which we began. Psychology is the science which investigates behaviour in general, from the point of view of its mental implications, and with a view to its guidance and control.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

References for the historical part of this article will most readily be found in Histories of Philosophy and Psychology, of which the following are recommended :

J. M. BALDWIN : *History of Psychology* (London. 1913)
G. S. BRETT : *A History of Psychology* (London and New York. 1921)
G. MURPHY : *An Historical Introduction to Modern Psychology* (London and New York. 1929)
E. G. BORING : *A History of Experimental Psychology* (London and New York. 1929)
W. WINDELBAND (tr. TUFTS) : *A History of Philosophy* ; 2nd edn. (London. 1907)

For psychological terms and definitions the reader may consult :

J. M. BALDWIN : *Dictionary of Philosophy and Psychology* (New York. 1901–1905)

The following works are also recommended in connection with the topics listed :

General Psychology :

W. JAMES : *Principles of Psychology* (London and New York. 1908)
W. MCDOUGALL : *An Outline of Psychology* (London and New York. 1923)
J. WARD : *Psychological Principles* ; 2nd edn. (Cambridge. 1920)
Article " Psychology " in *Encyclopædia Britannica.*
R. S. WOODWORTH : *Psychology—A Study of Mental Life* (London and New York. 1922)

Associationism :

D. HUME (ed. SELBY-BIGGE) : *A Treatise on Human Nature* (Oxford. 1896)
D. SPENCER : *Principles of Psychology* ; 4th edn. (London. 1899)

Behaviourism :

I. P. PAVLOV : (tr. ANREP) *Conditioned Reflexes* (Oxford. 1927)
J. B. WATSON : *Psychology from the Standpoint of a Behaviorist* (Philadelphia. 1919)
Behavior—An Introduction to Comparative Psychology (New York. 1914)

Comparative Psychology—Animal :

H. S. JENNINGS : *Behaviour of the Lower Organisms* (Washington, 1904 ; New York, 1906)
W. KÖHLER (tr. WINTER) : *The Mentality of Apes* (London and New York. 1925)
C. LLOYD MORGAN : *An Introduction to Comparative Psychology* (London. 1903)
R. M. YERKES : *Almost Human* (New York. 1925)

Comparative Psychology—Primitive Peoples :

SIR J. FRAZER : *The Golden Bough* ; abridged edn. (London. 1922)

C. READ : *The Origin of Man and his Superstitions* (Cambridge. 1920)

Comparative Psychology—Child :

NORSWORTHY and WHITLEY : *The Psychology of Childhood* (New York. 1920)

W. STERN (tr. BARWELL) : *Psychology of Early Childhood* (London. 1924)

Experimental Psychology :

MYERS and BARTLETT : *A Text-book of Experimental Psychology* ; 3rd edn. (Cambridge. 1925)

H. PIERON (tr. MINER) : *Principles of Experimental Psychology* (London and New York. 1929)

E. B. TITCHENER : *Experimental Psychology* (New York. 1901–1905)

G. M. WHIPPLE : *Manual of Mental and Physical Tests* ; 2nd edn. (Baltimore. 1914–1915)

" Gestalt " Psychology :

W. KÖHLER : *Gestalt Psychology* (London. 1930)

K. KOFFKA (tr. OGDEN) : *The Growth of the Mind* (London and New York. 1924)

Noegenesis :

C. E. SPEARMAN : *The Nature of Intelligence* (London. 1923)
The Abilities of Man (London. 1927)

Personalism :

F. AVELING : *Personality and Will* (London and New York. 1931)

M. W. CALKINS : *A First Book in Psychology* (New York. 1910)

Psycho-analytic Theory. See Article in this volume

Applied Psychology—Education :

E. L. THORNDIKE : *Educational Psychology* (New York. 1913–1914)

C. BURT : *The Young Delinquent* (London and New York. 1925)

J. DREVER : *An Introduction to the Psychology of Education* (London. 1923)

Applied Psychology—Industry :

F. AVELING : *Directing Mental Energy* (London and New York. 1927)

C. H. GRIFFITTS : *Fundamentals of Vocational Psychology* (New York. 1924)

C. S. MYERS : *Mind and Work* (London. 1920)

Applied Psychology—Medicine :

B. HART : *The Psychology of Insanity* (Cambridge. 1919)

W. MCDOUGALL : *An Outline of Abnormal Psychology* (London and New York. 1926)

M. PRINCE : *The Dissociation of a Personality* (New York. 1906)

W. H. R. RIVERS : *Instinct and the Unconscious* (Cambridge. 1922)

THEORIES OF PSYCHO-ANALYSIS

By

J. C. FLÜGEL

SYNOPSIS

Psycho-analysis is a branch of psychological science which has attracted much attention in recent years. Starting as a method for treatment of nervous disease, it soon opened up new and important fields of psychological research, which had hitherto been inaccessible to orthodox psychology. Though many of its conclusions have been hotly contested, it has nevertheless exercised, both directly and indirectly, a very great influence on modern thought, so that some knowledge of the subject is indispensable to those who would view the chief tendencies of present-day culture in their proper background and perspective.

In the first section of the following Article will be found a brief treatment of the historical evolution of psycho-analysis; its origin in the pioneer work of Breuer and Freud, the remarkable series of discoveries to which it led in the hands of the latter investigator; the founding of the psycho-analytic movement, which has for many years possessed an international organisation; the divergent doctrines of Adler and of Jung, who, from being originally followers of Freud, eventually established separate schools of their own.

The second section gives a systematic account of the chief concepts of psycho-analytic science; the nature of the Unconscious, the functions of repression, the significance of sex, symbolism, conflict, neurosis and sublimation.

In the third section the development of mind is considered in the light of psycho-analysis. An endeavour is made to show how psycho-analysis can explain much, both of individual character and of human culture as a whole, on the basis of the mechanisms of displacement and sublimation. Consideration is also given to the startling new revelations of psycho-analysis concerning the foundations of our moral life—revelations which are likely to be even more far-reaching in their social influence than were the earlier discoveries concerning the importance of sex. Finally there is a brief indication of what would seem to be the general significance of psycho-analysis for the future of human life and human society.

THEORIES OF PSYCHO-ANALYSIS

I

THE NATURE OF PSYCHO-ANALYSIS

Meanings of the Term

Psycho-analysis is a term that has carried a number of meanings—some legitimate and others not—and in approaching the subject it is well to be clear as to the nature of these meanings. In its widest sense the term has sometimes been used to designate almost anything within the domain of psychology. This is a meaning that was due solely to the indiscretions of publishers and journalists, anxious to sell their books or to gain the attention of readers by reference to a doctrine which, because novel and startling, was supposed to have a popular appeal; it is a meaning which, fortunately and rightly, is seldom to be met with nowadays.

In a more restricted, but still misleadingly wide sense, the term is sometimes used to denote the work of a number of psychological schools, which had a common origin, but which have now drifted so widely apart that all members of these schools have recognised that it is highly inconvenient to employ a common designation; and where the schools concerned themselves agree that a distinction is desirable, it ill behoves others to confound this distinction by applying the term "psycho-analysis" indiscriminately to them all. The schools in question are three in number, and all three owe their origin to discoveries made by Professor Sigmund Freud of Vienna towards the end of the nineteenth century.

Except for one collaborator in the first stages, Freud worked practically alone, until early in the present century. But from 1902 onwards a small band of followers gathered round him, resulting in the first Psycho-analytic Congress in 1908 and the foundation of an International Psycho-analytical Association in 1910. Soon after this latter date, however, two prominent members of the school independently and gradually seceded from it, first by stressing certain particular aspects of psycho-analytic doctrine, then by raising objections to other well-established aspects of this doctrine, and finally by neglect or reinterpretation of these latter aspects on such a drastic scale as to make it very clear that such mutual understanding as is required for profitable co-operation was utterly impossible. These members were Alfred Adler and C. G. Jung, who thenceforward became the leaders of the schools associated with their names—schools which have in recent years been known as those of Individual Psychology and Analytical Psychology respectively. Of these,

Adler's school has the closer organisation and the more coherent body of doctrine; and is, in consequence, more definitely associated with the title it has adopted. Jung's views, though perhaps less systematised (except as regards an elaborate doctrine concerning " psychological types ") and to a lesser extent adopted *en bloc* by a particular body of followers, have nevertheless exercised a wide influence, particularly in Switzerland (their native home), England and America. In what follows we shall have occasion to deal with particular characteristics of both schools. Meanwhile, what concerns us is the fact that the original school of Freud has persisted and has retained the title by which it has been known since the beginning. At the present day the term " psycho-analysis " is, among psychologists and physicians, almost without exception employed only in connection with this latter school. There can be no doubt that this usage is the correct one, whether we look at the matter from the point of view of historical continuity, of ethical justification or of scientific precision. It is in this sense therefore that we shall understand the term here.

But even from this relatively narrow point of view, " psycho-analysis " can mean several things, between which it is possible, at least in theory, to distinguish. In the first place it means a method—a method at once of psychological study and therapeutic practice. In the second place it means the facts discovered by this method. Thirdly it signifies the theories that have been propounded to explain and correlate these facts. Lastly it is used to designate the application of the psycho-analytic method, viewpoint and theory to facts obtained otherwise than by the direct observation of the individual—facts which, in actual practice, have been collected from very wide and varied fields.

In our exposition we shall study, first the method, and then the facts and theories. For the sake of brevity it will be necessary to describe the facts in conjunction with and in the light of the theories, and not—as would for strictly scientific purposes have been preferable—to explain in detail how the theories were devised to fit the facts. To adopt the latter course would necessitate a detailed treatment of the whole development of psycho-analysis—a task which is far beyond our present purpose.[1] The reader may rest assured however that, unless there is specific warning to the contrary, use will be made only of such theoretical constructions as have proved themselves of unmistakable utility and are generally accepted at the present day by all competent workers in the subject. In the course of our survey we shall have occasion to indicate from time to time some of the chief fields to which psycho-analysis has been applied, together with the general bearing of these applications, both upon psycho-analysis itself and upon our general conception of the human mind and human institutions. As befits the character of the present volume, emphasis will be laid throughout upon more general matters of psychological and sociological importance rather than upon the contributions of

[1] A detailed consideration of the validity of psycho-analytic findings and of the general scientific status of psycho-analysis will be found in the present writer's chapter on " Psycho-analysis; Its Status and Promise," in *Psychologies of 1930* (1930).

psycho-analysis within the narrower field of medicine in which it took its origin.[1]

Development of Psycho-analysis

The history of psycho-analysis is usually taken to date from certain observations made by Josef Breuer of Vienna in the early eighties of last century. Whilst treating a remarkable case of hysteria he discovered that the many strange symptoms of the case had a meaning, in the sense that they referred to certain forgotten (but, at the time they occurred, highly emotional) past experiences of the subject—and furthermore that these experiences could be brought back into consciousness by suitable suggestions or communications in the hypnotic state, and that, when they were thus brought back, the symptoms vanished (at least temporarily) and a general alleviation of the patient's condition could be brought about. The fact that hysterical symptoms had a meaning and depended upon certain buried memories had already been made clear by Charcot and his pupil Janet in France, but the curative effect of the recovery of these memories in consciousness had never been clearly demonstrated, and Breuer's discovery seemed to open up new prospects for a psychical therapy that was not directly dependent upon the effects of suggestion. On returning from a period of study with Charcot in Paris, Freud joined forces with Breuer for a time and persuaded him to publish the material which he had begun to collect some ten years earlier. In 1893 was published the first joint paper of the two collaborators, to be followed in 1895 by a book entitled *Studies in Hysteria*, which constitutes the first great contribution to the literature of psycho-analysis. This book, which was based upon a number of penetrating clinical studies, contained the germ of psycho-analytic theory and the description of a method of treatment which is still applied in psycho-therapy, though it no longer forms part of the orthodox procedure of the psycho-analyst. This method consisted essentially in the recovery of pathogenic (*i.e.*, disease-producing) memories in the hypnotic state and (a point which, early in the work, showed itself to be of great importance) the re-experiencing in consciousness of the appropriate emotions. This re-experiencing or working-off of emotion was termed " abreaction," and the method itself was called the " cathartic " (purging or clearing) method, since the patient appeared to be purified and freed from disease-engendering material as a result of this procedure. The underlying concept thus revived the idea long ago expressed by Aristotle with regard to the function of tragedy, which, he held, brought about a healthful " purging " by intense arousal of the emotions of " pity " and " terror." Breuer soon gave up this line of work, to which he had indeed never brought the same interest as his younger colleague. Freud however,

[1] Those who wish to study in greater detail the strictly medical aspects of psycho-analysis will find thorough but condensed treatments in Ernest Jones' *Treatment of the Neuroses* (1920), and John Rickman's *Development of the Psycho-analytical Theory of the Psychoses, 1893–1926* (1928). The psycho-analytic method itself as applied for therapeutic purposes is described in greatest detail by Edward Glover, *The Technique of Psycho-analysis* (1928).

continuing alone, soon modified the procedure and devised the psycho-analytic method proper, as it has continued until this day. Following the procedure of the French schools, the production of the hypnotic state of mind had hitherto been regarded as an indispensable condition of the treatment. Freud's great step was to abandon hypnosis and to find a new method that could take its place. He gave up hypnosis, in the first instance for practical reasons, because—like other investigators—he found it could not always be induced ; secondly, because the capricious and often incomprehensible results of hypnotic treatment displeased him as a scientist. He early obtained the impression that by the use of hypnotism certain difficulties or obstacles were evaded rather than overcome. This might in some cases be satisfactory, so far as immediate therapeutic effect was concerned ; but it was very dissatisfying from the point of view of medical and psychological science, which seeks, not only to cure, but to understand the principles of cure. It was clear, however, that ordinary procedures in the waking state were powerless to produce either understanding or alleviation of the patient's troubles. If these troubles had a mental origin and a meaning explicable in psychological terms—facts of which by this time Freud was fully assured—this origin and meaning appeared to be quite inaccessible to consciousness. Something in the structure of the mind seemed to bar the way to understanding. This barrier had somehow to be overcome, if the true nature of the symptoms was to be elucidated. It was to meet this difficulty that the psycho-analytic technique was gradually evolved. By a series of approximations, which we need not stop to detail here, Freud developed the procedure of free association, which has ever since remained the chief weapon of the psycho-analyst and the essential feature of the psycho-analytic method. This method consists in asking the patient to abandon all conscious control and direction of his thoughts and emotions and to say everything that comes into his mind without hindrance or criticism. Absurdly simple as this may sound, and simple as it is indeed in theory, it is yet very far from easy in practice. It constitutes a radical departure from the speech habits of everyday life, in which we are (with good reason) constantly controlling and adapting our words and thoughts in accordance with the circumstances of our environment. The nearest approach to such a mental attitude as is required is that of reverie or day-dreaming (a condition which we regard as quite peculiarly private and unsuitable for communication to others). Day-dreaming apart, there is always some task to accomplish, some line of thought to pursue, some special pre-determined chain of association to follow up—all of them circumstances in which, checking our tendency to " wander," we have constantly to keep attention upon the matter in hand. Even in social small talk, in which the logical sequence of ideas towards a goal gives place to a more unrestricted roaming along the chance paths of phantasy or recollection, there is always some limit to our freedom, necessitated by the claims of intellectual relevance, emotional congruity, or respect for the feelings and emotions of our fellows (as will be easily realised, if we imagine ourselves trying to find an opening for some favourite joke or story). In free association for purposes of psycho-analysis even this degree of control must be abandoned, the subject being instructed to say literally everything that occurs

to him, even though it appear inappropriate, senseless, shameful, disgusting or even rude—even though, in fact, the saying of it may involve a complete flouting of all the intellectual, moral, æsthetic and social canons of our thought and speech. Let the reader try the process for but a few minutes, and (if he is honest) he will rapidly convince himself that the procedure is a socially " impossible " one, and that he has already begun to edit or censor his associations, for the sake of his own feelings or those of his collaborator. Indeed even in the special conditions of the analyst's consulting-room the procedure is at best only partially adhered to; the process of analysis constantly meets with " resistances " which interrupt the flow of associations. Sometimes these resistances are of a conscious order and manifest themselves in a deliberate refusal to put into words some idea that has arisen. At the other extreme the patient is sometimes temporarily unable to progress, in spite of his most earnest conscious desire to do so. In such cases he may correctly assert that he " cannot think of anything," that his mind has " become a blank," except perhaps for some slight awareness of his immediate physical environment; or else, as if in flight from more important matters, he may prattle away about a quantity of insignificant events connected with his daily life. In either case a strong impression is received that there is some mental force impeding the entrance into consciousness of emotionally toned associations—a mental force that may sometimes appear in consciousness as disgust or embarrassment, or may sometimes itself remain unconscious. Here, as so often elsewhere in the sphere of mind, there is moreover a continuous gradation from the clearly conscious to the definitely unintrospectible, so that there arises a strong presumption in favour of the view that there exist unconscious resistances which in their general nature are somewhat similar to those that we observe in consciousness.

In spite of these formidable difficulties, however, the method soon showed itself to be capable of results of great psychological interest and therapeutic value. With its help a great fund of information concerning the nature of the mind and of mental development (normal and pathological) has been gradually accumulated. The most astonishing feature of the whole history of psycho-analysis is the vast field on which its discoveries have thrown a vivid light. Starting as a means of dealing with mental disorder, it soon revealed the fact that there was little essential difference between so-called " normal " and " abnormal," and that the processes shown to be at work in the patients' minds could be paralleled in almost every detail by those of healthy individuals; a slight alteration in the balance of forces could account for the whole difference between health and disease. Certain special types of mental process also began to be illumined by the new method. Dreams, for instance, which had long been a source of inspiration to the superstitious and of puzzlement to the learned, were shown to present many striking resemblances to the phenomena of the neuroses (or functional nervous disorders). Indeed the analysis of dreams soon began to play an important part in actual treatment. They constitute, as Freud has said, the *via regia* to the unconscious, and his advice to those who would obtain some insight into the real nature of psycho-analysis is that they should study their own dreams by the method of free association, starting from the various

items of the dream in turn, and noting the ideas and emotions that spontaneously arise when conscious control of thought is abandoned. The next matter to be investigated was that which was christened by Freud the " psychopathology of everyday life,"[1] the little forgettings, mistakes and slips of which we are all guilty at some time or other, and which he showed to be frequently determined by unconscious mechanisms of the same general nature as those which are responsible for the more permanent pathological disturbances that we term neurotic. The problems of wit and humour were then, in turn, attacked. Here, too, many of the same mental processes were shown to be at work, and psycho-analysis succeeded in throwing much additional light upon a field which had already been extensively cultivated by philosophers and psychologists. There followed excursions into the domains of art, literature, history and —most fruitful of all—anthropology. It is from the study of primitive ways of thought as embodied in the myths, beliefs, superstitions and practices of savage peoples or in the corresponding survivals among civilised races that there have come at once the most striking corroboration of psycho-analytic theory and the most far-reaching applications of the psycho-analytic method. The corroboration from this field (as from that of history) was particularly welcome, since there was here no possibility of the supposed discoveries of psycho-analysis being in reality in the nature of artifacts created by the suggestive influence of the physician and his own beliefs—a possibility that has been much stressed by critics. Unlike the discoveries made in the consulting-room, the data obtained from anthropological, literary and historical sources are fully available to all, so that the material on which the psycho-analyst bases his conclusions can be examined and assessed by others in a way that is not possible in the case of the material gained from the actual study of individuals by the method of free association, where much that is conclusive to the analyst actually present at the time is difficult to present in convenient and convincing form to others.

If the corroboration of psycho-analytic findings from these wider fields has done much to establish the scientific respectability of psycho-analysis, the wide vistas that have been opened up have shown in clearest fashion the immense importance of the psycho-analytic view-point for an understanding of the whole structure and function of human culture. The psychological mechanisms originally discovered by Freud in his consulting-room seem to have so wide an applicability that there is scarcely anywhere a religious belief, a ceremonial observance, a social institution or a conventional practice that does not bear their imprint. In theory it was clear from the beginning that the social sciences, such as anthropology, sociology, politics and economics, should be based upon psychology (much as engineering is based on physics, and medicine is, or should be, based on physiology). But, in practice, psychology had shown itself very slow in providing the foundation on which the social sciences could build. Both academic psychology of the more philosophical sort and the more recently developed experimental psychology were

[1] The more convenient word " parapraxia " has recently been introduced as general term applicable to this field.

largely concerned with problems so abstract, or else so specific, that they had little relation to the affairs of everyday life. Psycho-analysis however was, from the first, concerned with the more concrete thoughts and emotions of individuals actually struggling with life's difficulties—difficulties moreover with which, in one form or another, all humanity has had to contend. Freud tells us that he ultimately came to realise that he had the whole of mankind for his patient. It would seem indeed that there can be no field of human endeavour, however great or small, concerning which we cannot receive profitable enlightenment from psycho-analytic concepts. Hence the great importance of a general understanding of these concepts, in the interest of human welfare and progress.

We will accordingly pass now to an examination of certain of the main theoretical conceptions of the Freudian psychology, to which the next section of this Article will be devoted. The third section will deal with the general process of mental development seen in the light of those conceptions and of the present state of our empirical knowledge, while in a few final words we will return to deal briefly with the general significance of psycho-analysis for modern culture.

One further word, however, is necessary before we embark on this programme. It is a word of caution which the title of this Article makes especially imperative. Psycho-analysis is not, and never has been, a theoretically perfect structure. Contrary to what has often been supposed, Freud and his fellow-workers started with no fixed conceptions of the nature and function of the human mind or of its disorders. Their theories have rather been in the nature of working hypotheses erected as scaffolding, indispensable for the further work of building. They have added to and modified these theories as this work has proceeded, but no attempt has ever been made to give them the dignified structure of a completed edifice. On the contrary they show, ever and again, evidences of a makeshift and temporary character. Psycho-analytical theory as a whole is today a rapidly growing body of doctrine. Its more recent development has, however, shown that the foundations of some thirty or more years ago were well and truly laid, and indeed we have good ground for supposing that the theory, as it exists at present, does not contain much that will later be regarded as definitely erroneous, though it will undoubtedly come to be looked upon as seriously incomplete. This, however, is the utmost that we can demand of any extensive theoretical structure in the realm of science.

II

THE NATURE OF MIND

Repression and the Unconscious

In the forefront of psycho-analytic doctrine stands a certain general assumption as regards outlook and method—the assumption of what has been called *psychic determinism*. By this is meant the belief that the law of cause and effect is as operative in the sphere of mind as in that of matter. Where introspection fails to reveal an adequate *conscious* cause of a mental content, it is assumed that unconscious mental factors are operative. It is

this assumption that theoretically justifies, and is in turn empirically corroborated by, the method of free association. The method is in fact based on the belief that, when conscious control of the sequence of thought is abandoned, unconscious factors take over the control, and express themselves as best they can in the ensuing conscious ideas and emotions.

This brings us to the most general and fundamental of all the concepts of psycho-analysis concerning the nature of the mind—that of the *Unconscious*. It is of course a concept which existed before the advent of psycho-analysis, and has indeed long been familiar both to philosophers and psychologists. Freud's use of the concept is, however, somewhat different from that of the great majority of his predecessors, and in its detailed application he has gone far beyond them all. Most of the earlier writers arrived at the concept of the unconscious through a study of knowledge ; to these writers the unconscious seemed necessary to account for the phenomena of thought and perception, and, above all, of memory. This apparent necessity, which was felt by so many students of the mind, became much clearer and more urgent as a result of the work on hypnotism and psycho-therapy in the second half of the nineteenth century. This work had demonstrated the frequent occurrence in pathological cases of mental dissociation, a splitting up of the mind into two or more mutually inaccessible parts ; parts which, in some instances, might even develop into " dissociated personalities," though in other cases the dissociated elements might be confined to a few isolated sensations or memories. Such cases of dissociation were accounted for by Janet (in whom this work may be said to culminate, and who is by almost universal admission the greatest living figure in psycho-pathology after Freud) on the hypothesis of a lack of " tension " or cohesive force, as though a reduction of the available energy made it impossible to hold all the varied portions of the mind together. Freud conceives of these dissociations, not in terms of lack of some general energy, but rather on the ground of some specific antagonism or opposition between the dissociated parts. His conception of the mind is essentially dynamic. He regards striving or conation (to use the generally accepted psychological term) as the real function of mind, and the opposition between different parts of the mind can, he thinks, best be expressed as a conflict between inconsistent and opposing mental tendencies or " wishes." Thus the primarily intellectualistic concept of the unconscious, that was prevalent before psycho-analysis, gave place to a primarily dynamic concept. In this point, as in many others, Freud has revealed himself as the scientific successor of the great pessimistic philosophers, Schopenhauer and Hartmann, rather than of his immediate psychological predecessors ; we say " scientific " successor to emphasise that in his outlook he has (at any rate throughout his earlier years) been consistently more empirical than they, though the philosophical affinity between the three great thinkers is unmistakable.

Conflict then, according to Freud and his followers, is the essential cause of functional nervous disorder and of the dissociations so frequently connected with it. But this view of dissociation soon led to a distinction between two apparently different ways in which a thought or memory might be unconscious. A fundamental feature of the human mind, on which many psychologists have commented in wonder, is the extreme

narrowness of consciousness at any given moment. Of all the possible things which we could think, remember or perceive, only a minute fraction can enter consciousness at one time. The rest must wait till some external fact, some chance association, or some consciously directed desire, enables them in turn to occupy the stage. When their turn comes, however, they are ready to appear. It is otherwise with those thoughts or memories which are dissociated, and which have been shown to be concerned in the production of neurosis. In their case no external stimulus, no voluntary effort, can avail to bring them into consciousness ; this can only be done (if at all) by the help of some special procedure, such as hypnotism or free association. It is as though some barrier or obstacle made them inaccessible, in a way that ordinary memories are not. All the psychic material of the first class Freud designates the *Pre-Conscious*. The second class he calls the *Unconscious*, employing the word in a special " systematic " sense.

Although the unconscious in this special sense (a sense which will be adhered to throughout this Article) plays an important part in the production of mental disorder, its importance is by no means confined to pathological cases. It is rather an essential constituent of every human mind, and, as already implied, it seems intimately connected with the occurrence of mental conflict, another feature which is common both to the diseased and to the healthy. It would appear, in fact, that one of the results of mental conflict is that certain thoughts and tendencies may be forced, as it were, into the unconscious (or, in other words, that they may be prevented from reaching consciousness). This process of active exclusion from consciousness is called *repression*, a term which, therefore, designates a particular kind of that general controlling function which is known to psychologists and physiologists as " inhibition." It should be noted that repression itself is an unconscious process—it is not a deliberate and voluntary pushing out of the mind, though it is undoubtedly analogous to this process, with which we are all consciously familiar.

We may here, in passing, call the reader's attention to the fact that, in his later writings at any rate, Adler has discarded the notions both of the Unconscious and of Repression—notions which are fundamental to the whole of Freud's psychology. We mention this to show how confusing and illegitimate it would be to designate the two now so different schools by one and the same name.

But if repression is one important outcome of conflict, it is far from being the only way in which a conflict may be solved. Indeed complete repression, in the sense that a mental tendency disappears utterly and for ever, is a theoretically limiting case to which, in actual practice, only certain approximations can be observed. There is every reason to believe that a wish is never completely annihilated by repression, but that it continues to exist in such a form that it is ready to seize any opportunity for expression that may present itself ; indeed it is only through the continued vigilance of the repressing forces that it is prevented from entering consciousness. These repressing forces (which in their totality were called by Freud the *Censor* ; a term which—because of its anthropomorphic associations—has been much criticised by English writers) are

less active in sleep, and the repressed tendencies (many of them dating from the first years of life) are enabled to express themselves in dreams. It is this which makes the dream, as Freud has said, the *via regia* to the unconscious. But such manifestations of the repressed as we detect in dreams are in most cases not direct, but distorted, expressions of the original wish ; and it is in this point that dreams so much resemble neurotic symptoms. Whence comes the distortion ? From the action, it would seem, of the Censor, who—like his social prototype—will allow certain facts or views to be expressed, provided they are suitably veiled, so as not to be easily recognisable for what they truly are. The dream product (the manifest dream content, as Freud designates it, to distinguish it from the latent dream thoughts), like the neurotic symptom, reveals itself, then, as a compromise arrived at as the result of the interaction of conflicting forces —repressing and repressed.

It is one of the paradoxes of the development of psycho-analysis that, at the present moment, much more is known about the repressed tendencies than about those which are responsible for the repression. In the earlier statements of the psycho-analytic theory, the repressions were regarded as resulting from the fact that the repressed tendencies were not in harmony with the moral consciousness of the individual or with the personality as a whole. It was generally believed, moreover, that the attitude of the Censor was more in harmony with conscious standards of thought and conduct than was that of the repressed wishes. It should therefore, one would imagine, be more accessible to investigation than these latter. With increasing insight, however, it became apparent that this was only to a slight extent the case, and that the morality of the Censor is, in reality, itself largely unconscious, differing in important ways from that of the conscious ethical outlook. The element of paradox was thereby removed, though at the same time a complex and difficult series of fresh problems concerning the nature and origin of this unconscious morality was opened up. We can deal with these problems more conveniently at a later stage of our considerations. Meanwhile we need only, by way of anticipation, state—baldly and dogmatically—three results of recent investigations in this field. In the first place there has been evolved a new concept concerning the unconscious morality in question ; this morality is regarded as a definite entity within the mind and is called the *Super-Ego*. It is, as it were, at the behest of the Super-Ego that the Censor does its work. In the second and third place the morality of the Super-Ego differs from that of the conscious Ego in that it is (*a*) relatively archaic (depending, that is, upon impressions formed during the early life of the individual and persisting in a condition that is but little modified by later experiences), (*b*) more severe, inasmuch as things that seem right and permissible to consciousness may nevertheless be disallowed in the unconscious. It is for this latter reason that Freud has made the statement that " the normal man is not only far more immoral than he believes [referring to the repressed tendencies] but also far more moral than he has any idea of [referring to the Super-Ego]."

Aggression and Sexuality

It is natural to ask at this point what are the chief thoughts and tendencies that are repressed. It is possible to answer this question quite shortly, without any serious sacrifice of accuracy ; the repressed material is, in the great majority of cases, either hostile or sexual in nature, with the latter category (so far as our present knowledge goes) very considerably predominating. That this should be so need not astonish us. For, granted that the process of repression exists, we should surely anticipate that hostile and sexual impulses would more often succumb to the process, since the most superficial reflection on our present culture is sufficient to convince us that the conditions of this culture constantly demand the control and inhibition of such impulses. How many times, even in a single day, are we not compelled to curtail or dissimulate the natural expression of our irritation at life's petty frustrations, humiliations and annoyances ! But, over and above these trivial sources of bad temper, there are long-standing and quasi-permanent causes of hostility (such as those occasioned by the necessity for co-operation or cohabitation of persons between whom there exists rivalry, jealousy or incompatibility of views and temperament), for which no adequate outlet can be provided. It is these latter sources of hostility, especially those connected with early life, which psycho-analysis has shown to be especially important as regards repression. The frustration of the sexual impulses demanded by our present (and perhaps indeed by any) civilisation is even easier to realise, if we devote a little candid introspection and observation to the subject. Nevertheless the revelations of psycho-analysis concerning sexual repression and the nature of the impulses that are repressed have aroused more incredulity and opposition than any other of its discoveries.

The Freudian doctrine of the nature and development of the sexual instincts is so important for the whole theory of psycho-analysis that we shall reserve it for more detailed treatment in the next section. We may here note, however, that the widespread antagonism encountered by these results of psycho-analytic research are only such as are to be expected, if the psycho-analytic theories themselves are true. In individual patients the process of making conscious the repressed tendencies meets, as we have noted, with very great resistance. But individual patients are, as we have also noted, by no means the only persons to suffer from repression —a mechanism which appears indeed to be a universal characteristic of mankind. We have therefore every reason to anticipate that, to the human race as a whole, the showing up of the general nature of the repressed material in psycho-analytic literature will be no more welcome than is the uncovering of their buried thoughts and impulses in the case of those who actually submit to the process of analysis. The well-nigh universal tendency to oppose the conclusions of psycho-analysis, a tendency which has manifested itself throughout the history of the movement, so far from affording an argument for the unconditional rejection of these conclusions, actually affords some evidence in their support.

We have said that the impulses which meet with the most frequent checks are those concerned with hostility and sexuality. One of the important differences between the school of Freud and that of Adler may

perhaps be said to concern the relative importance attributed to the inhibition of these two impulses respectively. Quite early in his history as a psychologist, Adler began to attach a greater importance to the frustration of the tendencies of individual self-assertion than did Freud—a tendency that was not unconnected with his own rebelliousness in general and his attitude to the founder of psycho-analysis in particular; for concerning this attitude Freud has recorded the significant words of his one-time disciple: "Do you believe that it is such a great pleasure to me to stand in your shadow my whole life?"[1] Some of Adler's first and most interesting observations concerned the "inferiority of organs" and the psychological reactions thereto by way of compensation: by which he meant the tendency to over-compensate for a natural defect by developing the corresponding faculty so that the individual concerned eventually becomes superior in just that respect in which he was originally inferior—a doctrine which is undoubtedly of great truth and value, and which is exemplified in the well-known story of Demosthenes, who, from being a stammerer, became one of the greatest of orators. From this beginning, Adler continued to develop the doctrine of self-assertion by way of the "masculine protest" (the aggressive assertion of virility), until it soon became the all-absorbing element in his whole system. Psycho-analysts have not denied the importance of the factors to which Adler drew attention; and, indeed, they have themselves in recent years devoted an ever-increasing attention to the ego elements, but their generally critical attitude towards his doctrines has been based upon the contentions:—(*a*) that, by neglecting the unconscious, together with nearly all the complicated details of mental functioning which had been so laboriously discovered by psycho-analysis, he has given an inadequate account of that part of the mind which he has treated (thus he fails to make sufficiently clear the fact that many of the original inferiorities—stammering, for instance—were themselves the result of deep-lying inhibitions, and that their over-compensation is in the nature of a "return of the repressed" in a form that is ethically more permissible): (*b*) that his psychology altogether overlooks the importance of the erotic aspect of life, and is thus essentially and inevitably one-sided. According to his system, the impulse of aggression is all-important, there is no room for love. As Freud has remarked, it is a cheerless aspect of life that is presented; but, as the example of innumerable ascetics shows, almost anything is acceptable, so long as sexuality is kept at bay—a task in which Adler's psychology is almost as successful as was academic psychology before the advent of psycho-analysis. Our task here is not to criticise Adler's psychology or any other, but to expound psycho-analysis. Some brief indication of the distinctions between the two systems is however imperative, and this first approach to the subject of sex seemed the natural place to attempt such indication. Lest it be said that Freud's "pan-sexualism" (a term that has sometimes been used by his critics) is no less one-sided than Adler's insistence on the ego, it is only fair to remark here that Freud has, time and again, emphatically stated his belief that the sexual tendencies, though of immense importance, do not exhaust the instinctive equipment

[1] S. Freud: *History of the Psycho-Analytic Movement* (1916), p. 42.

of man, and that psycho-analysis has in the course of its development continually broadened the range of its observations and its theories, without thereby sacrificing the earlier acquisitions. Adler's Individual Psychology on the other hand has become more and more rigid in its accent on aggressiveness as an all-pervading and all-important factor, and has, with ever greater determination, set its face against the intrusion of sexual or other influences.

Symbolism

The view of psycho-analysts that repressed material is very largely of a sexual nature is rendered all the more unacceptable to the majority of people by a further aspect of their doctrine—the importance that they attach to sexual symbolism. As we have already noted, repressed impulses seldom exist without making themselves felt in consciousness in some way or other—though the way may be so indirect that the true underlying meaning is often not appreciated ; indeed this lack of appreciation is often an essential condition of their manifestation. Now one of the most important of these indirect ways of manifestation is that of symbolism. Not the least of the achievements of psycho-analysis is that it has led to a realisation of the widespread use of methods of expression, whereby sexual or other inhibited material is portrayed in such a way that it is not immediately or easily understood. We have said that psycho-analysis is responsible for the " realisation " rather than for the " discovery " of sexual symbolism, for the reason that the discovery of this symbolism had already been made by students of religions of the East and elsewhere : students who had—above all—endeavoured to make clear to an incredulous world the wide importance of the phallus in many aspects of religious ceremonial. Psycho-analysis has proved that symbolism of this kind is not confined to primitive peoples or to the civilisations of the East, but that it appears to be a general characteristic of the human mind. Indeed one of the most valuable contributions of psycho-analysis has been to show, here as elsewhere, that the same phenomena can be observed in many different aspects and products of the mind. Actually, it was in their study of dreams that psycho-analysts first encountered symbolism ; but, as the work proceeded, it soon became apparent that precisely the same symbols, with the same interpretation, could be discovered in religion, language, ceremonial, myth and fairy story. There still exist many fascinating but unsolved problems in connection with symbolism,[1] problems which we cannot deal with here. In particular, it is still uncertain how far symbolism results from repression, or how far repression merely leads to the employment of a mode of expression which has come into being for quite other reasons. There is considerable evidence to show that symbolism is a necessary and inevitable feature of the primitive mind (and therefore also of the primitive layers of the cultured mind). But that there is the closest connection between symbolism and repression, is indicated, not only by the study of

[1] The fullest treatment is that of Ernest Jones in *Papers on Psycho-Analysis*, 3rd edition (1923).

innumerable individual cases, but by the general fact that the field of interest that would seem to be most universally repressed—namely that of sex—is also the field with which the majority of symbols deal.

In symbols, as in every case of indirect expression, there exists mental relation between the symbol and the thing symbolised. The ease with which this relation can be discovered varies greatly, however, from one case to another. As a case where the relation is fairly plain, though nevertheless of such a kind as to escape recognition by the vast majority of those to whom the symbol is familiar, let us take the wonderful lamp of Aladdin, which will afford the gratification of every wish. Here it should be plain enough, once it is pointed out, that the lamp itself is a symbol of the phallus, and the happiness to be derived from it (by the appropriate magical gestures) a scarcely veiled allusion to sexual gratification. But why a lamp ? The middle term is here supplied by the idea of warmth and fire, which seem always and everywhere to be associated with love, passion and sensuality, as is shown in such common expressions as " on heat," " a warm embrace," " an ardent affection," " hot stuff," " a burning desire " (with which compare " a frigid woman " and " a chilly reception ") and in the innumerable rituals in which fire plays a part, from the religious creation of fire (by friction) among primitive peoples to the lamp-lighting ceremonies of certain present-day societies.

As another transparent example let us take the well-known rhyme :—

I had a little husband no bigger than my thumb,
I put him in a pint pot and there I bade him drum.

Taken literally, this is almost complete nonsense ; interpreted symbolically as the act of coitus, the meaning is perfectly clear. This interpretation of the total idea is, moreover, borne out by the frequent occurrence of the individual symbolisms involved. The " little husband " is a case of the " little man," dwarf or gnome as a representation of the phallus, of which Rumpelstiltskin and Punch are among the best-known examples ; the process here being a substitution of *totum pro parte* instead of the still more usual one of *pars pro toto*. The thumb as phallic symbol is an example of the general tendency to substitute a more harmless portion from the upper part of the body for the more emotionally significant but relatively unmentionable parts of the lower trunk—a tendency that is perhaps especially manifested in dreams. The pint pot is an example of the very numerous cases where a vessel, receptacle or enclosed space serves as a feminine symbol, as contrasted with the complementary class of phallic symbols.

Let us now take two more difficult cases to contrast with these. There is a considerable amount of evidence to show that a cloak or mantle may often serve as a phallic symbol. Here there is no similarity of outward form between the symbol and the thing symbolised. So different do the two things seem that it is almost unimaginable that such a symbol could have been consciously elaborated in accordance with a pre-conceived theory (thus affording additional evidence for the truly empirical basis of the psycho-analytic views on symbolism). As far as the evidence at present available goes, it would seem that the missing link is here to be

found, once again, in the notion of warming, which is of course the function of a cloak.

Scarcely less obscure at first sight is the symbolisation of coitus by means of climbing or walking upstairs. Here the essential common thoughts are those of rhythmic movement and the actual position adopted in the reproductive act; while linguistic usage helps us again by the corroborative evidence afforded by such phrases as "*un vieux marcheur*" (an elderly *roué*).

Symbols are, as will perhaps have been gathered by this time, extremely numerous and varied. Nevertheless the number of things symbolised is relatively small. They are, without exception, things of high emotional significance, and include (1) the human body or certain portions of the body, especially the genital regions; (2) certain bodily excretions, such as semen, fæces and urine; (3) certain persons, especially the father and mother; (4) certain biological events or processes, especially birth and death. Among the more important symbols falling into the first class are long, pointed objects, weapons, knives and other instruments, serpents, fish, Zeppelins, all these being male symbols. The corresponding female symbols are hollow and round objects, jewels, gardens and flowers. The process of tumescence is often symbolised by flying, while the human body as a whole is most often represented by buildings (with doors and windows corresponding to the bodily orifices), and by landscapes (with hills and valleys corresponding to the protuberances and depressions of the body—*cp.* the anatomical term "Mons Veneris"—and woods corresponding to the hairs). Dancing, climbing and other rhythmic movements represent coitus, while sliding, and extraction or losing of teeth, correspond to auto-erotic activities. In the second category we find, for instance, that salt stands for seed, money and papers for fæces, water and fire for urine. In the third category there exists a general tendency to portray the father and mother by more exalted personages, especially a king or queen, though the parents, and especially the father, may also be represented by certain animals (this latter symbolism linking up such apparently unrelated phenomena as the totemism of primitive peoples and the animal fears of present day neurotic children). In the fourth class, birth is most often represented by going into, or coming out of, water, a hole, a tunnel or a house, while death appears as going on a journey (*cp.* use of the term "the departed," the constantly recurring notion of the soul's journey after death and Hamlet's well-known reference to "the undiscovered country from whose bourne no traveller returns").

It is clear that symbols of the kind we have been discussing are, in certain respects, different from such other forms of indirect representation as that in virtue of which a wedding ring stands for marriage, or certain conventional female figures stand for such abstract virtues as liberty or justice. In these latter cases the things symbolised are in the preconscious rather than in the unconscious; in other words, there is no special difficulty about bringing these things to consciousness. The emotional elements of the relationship are also strikingly different in the two cases, for, whereas in the first kind, where the thing symbolised is unconscious, its emotional value is greater than that of the symbol, in the

second kind just the opposite holds good. This can be seen clearly in those cases where the same object serves as a symbol of both kinds. Thus a serpent may stand both for the phallus and for wisdom, but whereas the emotion accompanying the idea of the phallus is greater than that aroused by the idea of a serpent, the serpent is itself of greater emotional significance than is the abstract idea of wisdom. Indeed a consideration of the two kinds of symbolism gives us very strongly the impression that the symbolic process is used by the mind for different ends in the two cases—that in the first case the aim is to reduce the total emotion by substituting a relatively harmless and uncensored object for one that appeals more strongly to our primitive desires (though at the same time permitting some discharge of our feelings through this indirect channel); and that in the second case the purpose is rather to endow with the additional instinctive energy attaching to some emotionally toned concrete object an idea that in itself appeals rather to the intellect than to the passions. The writer who has devoted most attention to this subject,[1] has proposed that different terms shall be employed in the two cases, that the word " symbol " should be confined to instances of the first kind, and that some such term as " metaphor " or " emblem " should be used when referring to the second. It seems doubtful whether it will be possible, or even desirable, thus to narrow the meaning of " symbol," and the present writer has tentatively proposed the term " cryptophor " as a suitable designation for those cases that contain " hidden " meanings not ordinarily or easily accessible to consciousness. But whatever term be adopted, there can be little doubt of the psychological value of the distinction.

It would seem, however, that we may be compelled to recognise more than one kind of cryptophor or true " symbol," to use Ernest Jones' term. In particular it would seem necessary to distinguish between " material " and " functional " symbols. Whereas " material " symbols deal with corporal or external objects and events (all the cryptophors that we have so far mentioned are of this class), " functional " symbols express states and tendencies of the mind. These states and tendencies may be of a temporary or, in extreme cases, almost momentary character (such as the attempt to solve a given problem, or the process of transition from a sleeping to a more wakeful state), or may be of a more stable nature, in which case the symbols appear to denote permanent and abstract features of the mind, such as the instincts, the power of moral control, the tendency to return to infantile ways of thought, etc.

It is generally agreed that such " functional " symbols occur, but there is a great difference of opinion between psycho-analysts proper and certain other psychologists as to their importance as compared with that of the " material " symbols. This divergence is particularly acute as between the school of Freud and that of his erstwhile follower Jung. Discovered in the first place by a special technique devised by Herbert Silberer, functional symbols were seized upon by Jung as a means of escape from what seemed to him the monstrous, repellent sensuality and infantilism of the unconscious as revealed by Freud. They soon became the real centre of interest in his researches, and it is in connection with them that most of the distinguishing features of his system had

[1] Ernest Jones: *op. cit.*

their origin. Instead of studying the individual concrete wishes of the patient, wishes towards particular persons or objects, Jung began to look everywhere for symbolic representations of general mental tendencies, and above all for symbols of the libido. The term " libido " had been used throughout by Freud to designate the sexual impulse in all its various manifestations (a conception with which we will deal later). By Jung it was widened so as to designate the sum total of the creative forces of the mind, becoming thus more or less synonymous with the Bergsonian term *élan vital*. In practice this amounted to a very much smaller emphasis upon the concrete sexual motives and to a development in the direction of very wide and somewhat mystical generalisations—a development which has seemed to psycho-analysts to involve the abandoning of nearly all the hard-won insight into the nature and importance of the sexual elements of the human mind.

To take a concrete and frequently recurring instance. There are innumerable myths and dreams which portray in somewhat disguised form the slaying of a father by a son and the love of the son for his mother —a theme which occasionally finds a relatively open expression, as in the well-known myth of Œdipus. To many followers of the Jungian tradition the principal significance of such a theme is to be found in a symbolical portrayal of the struggle to overcome primitive, unadapted and immoral tendencies (*e.g.* " the old Adam ") and a necessity for a return to the depths of the unconscious in order to gather strength for a new effort—a sort of *reculer pour mieux sauter*. To the psycho-analyst these meanings might be regarded as quite possible in certain cases, but as secondary and relatively superficial constructions, which we must not allow to distract us from the underlying " material " symbolism, which portrays the literal hatred of the son for the father, and the literal incest wish towards the mother. To him the functional interpretations of the analytical psychologists seem to have much the same significance as the interpretations of certain schools of mythologists of an earlier generation —mythologists who, in accordance with the then popular " astral " modes of thought, would interpret the murder of Laius by Œdipus as the triumph of the rising sun over the darkness, and the incestuous marriage with Jocasta as the apparent sinking of the sun into the sea or earth at sunset. Both tendencies they would regard as motivated principally by the desire to escape the unpleasant implications of the more significant, simpler and more literal meaning. It is for this reason that psycho-analysts have looked upon much of the later work of Jung with very grave suspicion, though they universally agree that in his earlier years he contributed much of value to psycho-analysis itself, particularly by his insight into the possibilities of the word-association experiment and by his pioneering application of psycho-analysis to certain cases of dementia præcox. The difference in method and outlook between the two schools has only widened with the lapse of time, and in their later developments psycho-analysis and analytical psychology have proceeded in almost complete independence of each other. We shall therefore not be called upon to investigate the more recent features of Jung's psychology, such as his elaborate doctrine of types, which, however important it may ultimately prove to be, cannot be regarded as in any sense a product of

psycho-analysis or a feature of psycho-analytic theory. There is, however, one further point in Jung's psychology which deserves mention before we leave the subject. Jung, unlike Adler, continues to make use of the concept of the Unconscious. He considers, however, that the unconscious is not entirely a personal and individual affair ; over and above the " personal unconscious," each individual, according to him, shares in the " collective unconscious," in which not merely the form but also the content is determined by heredity. This view implies the old and widely-abandoned doctrine of " innate " ideas ; it means that our hereditary equipment is not confined to general tendencies, predispositions and capacities, but that ideas themselves are to some extent transmitted. If we could accept this doctrine, it would of course clear up the otherwise difficult problem as to why certain notions so constantly figure in the unconscious and why symbols nearly always bear the same meaning. Freud himself has been so struck with the frequency and similarity of certain " primal phantasies " (such phantasies for instance as castration or the overhearing of sexual intercourse between the parents) that he too is inclined to consider that they cannot be entirely accounted for in terms of the individual's own experience. Many other psycho-analysts however still hope to explain the uniformities in question on the ground that, owing to the similar conditions of life and the similar operation of the fundamental instincts, all human beings have necessarily many of their deeper interests, hopes and fears in common.

Condensation and Displacement

We said just now that it is generally agreed that functional symbols actually occur. We might have gone further and asserted that the same symbolic material may serve at one and the same time in a functional and in a material sense. That such a double significance of a single conscious item is possible, is due to an interesting tendency of the mind, the far-reaching importance of which Freud was the first to realise. Given, as so often happens, the simultaneous arousal of two desires or intentions, seeking different expressions, the mind most easily deals with the situation by way of a compromise, in which both elements are to some extent represented. Examples of this from everyday life are to be found in the " portmanteau-word," the pun and the *double entendre*. This last shows indeed some superficial resemblance to (cryptophoric) symbolism, inasmuch as one meaning is, as it were, paraded for the sake of respectability, while the emotion is derived from a partly hidden significance of a less presentable kind. Many symbols, however, together with many neurotic symptoms, may have two (or more) meanings, which are both (or all) unconscious. Indeed, resort to compromise of this kind appears to be one of the striking characteristics of the Unconscious. The process of compromise is called in the technical literature *Condensation*, when the fusion is primarily one of ideas ; *Over-determination*, when it is a question rather of simultaneous " drives " or wishes.

The ideas or wishes in question may, it appears, have almost any relation to one another. They may be quite independent and unconnected except for chance coincidence, or else (and perhaps most usually and

significantly) there may be a certain relation of oppositeness or incompatibility between them. Indeed one of the most remarkable revelations of psycho-analysis concerns the frequency with which people harbour simultaneous but irreconcilable wishes, wishes which are in many cases in the nature, not only of logical contradictories, but of contraries, as when a person wishes to do and not to do a thing, or wishes to do a thing and at the same time to do its opposite. When two wishes of a directly contrary kind are simultaneously operative, the attitude of the person concerned is said to be *ambivalent*. The most important kind of ambivalence is that which occurs when a person at the same time both loves and hates another person—an attitude which is surprisingly frequent as between near relatives, and indeed between all people whom the circumstances of life bring into intimate and influential relationship with one another.

The scope of this Article does not admit of extensive illustrative amterial, which—in psycho-analysis even more perhaps than elsewhere—necessarily demands much space. For such material the reader must be referred to the text-books, special treatises and journals devoted to the subject. Nevertheless, since the full significance of over-determination and ambivalence are particularly difficult to realise without some illustration, and since such realisation is essential to a proper understanding of many of the most essential features of psycho-analytic theory, we may pause here to consider two brief examples—one from the domain of wit, the other from that of dream life.

First the case of wit. Let us take the story of the Englishman who offended against the law of *lèse majesté* in Berlin in the days before the Great War. This Englishman held strong and unfavourable views about the Kaiser, and did not fear to express them to a companion even in the street. One day he was overheard by a policeman to make an emphatic statement beginning with the words "This damned fool of an emperor . . ." The policeman quickly arrested him, and informed him of the nature of his crime. But the Englishman, with remarkable presence of mind, attempted a bold method of escape. "My dear man," he said, "surely you don't suppose I was talking of the German emperor. I wouldn't dream of talking like that about the German emperor. I have the greatest admiration . . ." But the policeman was not to be so easily put off. "Come, come," he said, "that's no use at all. I know very well whom you meant. There's only one damned fool of an emperor and that's ours!" Here the policeman manifests an ambivalent attitude, both towards the emperor and the foreigner. He admits with the Englishman that the Kaiser is indeed a fool; but at the same time he protects the latter from the disrespect of an outsider (in much the same way as a man will defend his family honour before a stranger, though he may live in private enmity with all members of this family). Contempt and respect are, therefore, both neatly gratified by means of the same formula. He has the satisfaction of doing his duty by arresting an impertinent foreigner; but, by identifying himself with the latter's point of view (and thus to some extent sympathising with him), he makes a sly dig at his own imperial master (doubtless glad enough of an opportunity of expressing at last an opinion which he himself had long held, but never dared to utter

—at any rate in the course of his official duties). The over-determination in this case is the essential element of the wit. Similar over-determinations, but more complex in structure, at a deeper level, and with direr consequences, would seem to be at work in all cases of neurotic illness. Essentially the same, but on a still grander and more tragic scale (though again not without an element of the ridiculous), are the psychological mechanisms that underlie many of the cherished religious, political and social beliefs and institutions of the human race.

To turn now to the dream example. To analyse a dream of any length or complexity would require many pages. Here we will take therefore a very short and simple dream, but one which is well suited to our present purpose, inasmuch as it reveals itself as highly over-determined. A female patient undergoing psycho-analytic treatment dreamt that : " The tuner had come to tune the piano. He was engaged in taking out a number of seeds from the inside of the piano." Short as it was, the analysis of this dream occupied a whole hour's session, and revealed very clearly the following symbolisations and over-determinations. The dreamer herself is represented by the piano, a choice of symbol that is partly determined by the circumstance that she was a proficient amateur musician (though her own instrument was the violin) and partly by the fact that she was suffering from serious worry and overwork at the time of the dream, and that she had herself, the day before, expressed her longing " to go *piano* for a bit," *i.e.* to take life more easily. This desire " to go *piano* " (represented symbolically by actually being a piano) is the first and most superficial wish-fulfilment of the dream. The tuner is a symbol of the analyst —one indeed that is apt enough, for there is an obvious analogy between the relation of a tuner to a piano and that of an analyst to his patient. The dream therefore contains a reference (as so many dreams do) to the analytic situation itself. But why is the tuner (analyst) removing seeds from the piano (patient) ? With this question we come to the sexual elements which are so seldom lacking in dreams, for seed, here as elsewhere, refers to the biological processes of reproduction. But the associations made it evident that there were three distinct meanings within this general sphere. In the first place seeds refer to certain sexual desires, which, as the analysis was making her realise, she had all-unknowingly harboured in her mind. The analysis, she hoped, would rid her of these, as it seemed to her, evil and unseemly desires. Hence the analyst was symbolically removing them. This is the second wish-fulfilment. It will be observed that it is one that fits in pretty well with the interpretations that have been stressed by Jung and his school, for the " seeds " may with some justice be regarded as a symbol of the libido itself (though, it is true, in a narrower and more definitely erotic sense). But there are two further wish-fulfilments of a cruder and more instinctive kind. The word " seed " can be metaphorically used for " offspring," and the third meaning of the dream is that the analyst is acting as the patient's accoucheur at the birth of a child. Lest the reader be astonished and disgusted, let him remember that Socrates, who with his motto " Know thyself " appears to have been in some ways very definitely a forerunner of Freud, likened his own spiritual labours to those of a midwife, who helped women to the birth of children in much the same way as he himself helped men

to the birth of self-understanding. Fourthly, and finally, the dream represents the opposite of taking out, *i.e.* putting in ; in other words, the analyst is thought of as putting his seed into the patient. Here the reader who is untrained in psycho-analysis is likely to remain incredulous. But before he definitely rejects this interpretation as both unpleasant and absurd, we would mention three sources from which evidence from analogy is forthcoming to support it. In the first place the condensation of the ideas of coitus and birth is one that is found to be of very frequent occurrence in psycho-analysis. It is as if the unconscious tended to identify the two processes as marking the two most interesting points, the beginning and the end, of the cycle of gestation, bridging over, as it were, the nine months that intervene. Secondly, as regards representation by opposites (in this case the symbolisation of " putting in " by " taking out "), we must remember that this process is by no means confined to dreams (where it is frequently found), but is familiar to us through that conscious expression of humour and hostility that we term irony. Thirdly, as regards the rôle of the tuner (analyst), this is the place for referring to what is found to be a constant feature in psycho-analysis, namely that the person of the analyst becomes invested with a very high degree of feeling, both of love and of hate—emotions that are derived from the psychological relationships in which the patient has stood to persons of importance in his earlier environment (parents, nurses, teachers, etc., but especially the first named), and which in the course of the analysis are temporarily transferred to the analyst himself; whence the technical name for this process, which is called Transference.

To sum up the features of this dream which here especially concern us.—The dream reveals itself as highly over-determined, inasmuch as it gives expression to four distinguishable wishes : (1) to get rid of worry and overwork (" go *piano* "), (2) to get rid of disturbing sexual desires, (3) to give birth to a child with the help of the analyst, (4) to have sexual intercourse with the analyst (*i.e.* to receive a child from him). It may be noted that the second wish is incompatible with, and may even be regarded as the opposite of, the third and fourth.

With these examples in mind, let us return now to our general consideration of the principal concepts of psycho-analysis. The phenomenon of *Transference*, to which we referred just now as a factor entering into the interpretation of our dream example, is by general consent a matter of the greatest importance in the therapeutic aspects of analysis. It occurs without exception in every case where the analytical process succeeds in getting far enough to overcome the resistances in the initial stages ; and it is essential to ultimate therapeutic success. It is as though, in the course of the analysis, there took place a living over again of emotional attitudes towards the most significant persons in the patient's past life—though this reliving is now done in relation to the analyst himself, who appears to take on the characteristics of these earlier persons. The emotions concerned are those of fear and hate, as well as of respect and love—hence the attitude of the patient towards the analyst is apt to be highly ambivalent. The reliving of these emotional attitudes is however itself, for the most part, an unconscious process—and one of the most difficult tasks of the analysis is the conversion of this tendency to repetition into an

insightful remembering, so that the origins of the attitude of the patient to his analyst are recognised for what they are. In fact the transference can to some extent be regarded as a new and artificial neurosis, which, in its turn, is analysed; and with the successful completion of this part of the work, the analysis itself draws to an end. It is the difficulty of inducing transference in patients suffering from genuine insanity that appears to be the chief obstacle to the therapeutic application of psycho-analysis to such cases.

Transference, which thus plays such an important part in the practice of psycho-analysis, can in theory be regarded as only a particular example of a wider process—that of *Displacement*, which can be defined as the (quite general) transference of an emotional attitude from one idea to another. The occurrence of some such process has long been acknowledged by psychology, and indeed the process is an easy one to recognise without any special training (as when we are put into a bad temper by someone who has not acted according to our wishes, and thereafter for a time tend to behave in a curt or irritable way to all who approach us, however innocent and inoffensive in themselves). Fundamentally it would seem to be the emotional equivalent to the law of association in the sphere of cognition, and indeed it is, to some extent, in its actual working, dependent on this law; for displacement takes place, not in haphazard fashion (though in certain cases, as in the simple instance just noted, it may be very diffused) but, like symbol-formation, according to certain definite relations, which can usually—though not always quite easily—be detected. According to psycho-analytic theory, displacement is a mechanism of enormous importance for the development of mind; and indeed many of the most valuable contributions of psycho-analysis to the study of mental growth consist in the discovery of the precise nature of the individual displacements that most frequently occur. It would seem that man is born with a limited number of hereditarily determined reaction patterns (themselves of varying degrees of complexity and determinateness) and that, thereafter, as he develops, these reaction patterns become complicated by the facts: (*a*) that any given reaction can be evoked by an ever-increasing variety of stimuli, and (*b*) that it can itself (together with its emotional accompaniment) undergo important modifications, so that at first sight the whole reactive process may eventually appear to have little in common with its original and primitive form. This general view is held by the great majority of present-day psychologists, including even the school which represents the opposite extreme to that of psycho-analysis. Behaviourism (which may be said to occupy that position because it endeavours to ignore consciousness altogether), in its studies of the "conditioned reflex," is concerned with the change in the nature of the stimulus. Psycho-analysis (which extends the sphere of the conscious, by analogy, into that of the unconscious) is concerned with the wider aspects of the developmental changes, not only those of stimulus, but those of emotion and response. It is not therefore in the general doctrine of displacement, but rather in its particular contributions to the doctrine, that psycho-analysis is distinguished from other schools of psychology (though the term itself is still peculiar to psycho-analysis).

In the course of development there are formed certain displacements of especial social and cultural value. Indeed, if psycho-analytic theory be right, civilisation is possible only through displacements of this sort, as a result of which the myriad activities of civilised societies gradually evolve out of the relatively simple and primitive innate tendencies of man. Such displacements have received the special name of *Sublimation*, a technical term that, unlike " displacement," has found its way into general psychological literature, and indeed to some extent into common speech. A considerable portion of our third section will be devoted to indicating the chief forms of sublimation, as at present discovered by psycho-analysis, since this constitutes one of the most assured and at the same time one of the most interesting parts of psycho-analytic theory.

Other displacements however seem to be pathological in nature, and it is these that find expression in the various *symptoms* that are characteristic of nervous disease. Psychologically a neurotic symptom and a sublimation have much in common, since both represent a deflection of energy ; the most obvious difference being that of the relative value for cultural achievement and individual happiness—a difference that is social or ethical rather than psychological. But closer inspection reveals a psychological difference also. The neurotic symptom appears always to be the outcome of mental conflict, and itself is in the nature of a compromise between the opposing forces engaged in the conflict ; like most compromises, moreover, it gives lasting satisfaction to neither party concerned. It seems to result from an attempt at repression, but an attempt that is only very partially successful (the repressed tendencies having found a circuitous channel of escape ; a channel that often stands in some symbolic relation to the one that was originally sought). The relative influence of the repressing and the repressed forces varies from one kind of symptom to another, and this variation is to some extent a characteristic of the various forms of nervous disease that are clinically distinguished. Thus in hysteria (whether the symptoms are chiefly mental, as in so-called " anxiety hysteria," or chiefly physical or sensory, as in " conversion hysteria "), analysis of the symptoms reveals for the most part a distorted expression of a repressed wish ; while in " obsessional neurosis " (in which the patient is plagued by compulsive thoughts or actions) the symptom seems rather to be in the nature of an over-compensation against the inhibited desire, and thus chiefly gives expression to the repressing forces of the mind. Symptoms of this latter kind belong to the class of so-called *Reaction-formations*. The existence of such reaction-formations—often, but not always, of an obviously neurotic kind—can frequently be recognised in ordinary life. One thinks naturally of two very common types : the shy young person who, in order to overcome his timidity and sense of inferiority, becomes somewhat curt, loud, rude or blustering in his behaviour ; and the prudish " old maid " who is so constantly on the defensive against her own repressed sexuality, that she scents sex everywhere, and consequently reacts with shame, disgust or disapproval, when confronted with words or acts that seem to others perfectly innocent and harmless.

The element of conflict and repression is much less in evidence in the case of sublimations. It would seem here as though the viability of the

channel depended on conditions that are much more stable than those in neurosis. There is an appearance of smoothness, relative effortlessness and lack of friction, that contrasts strikingly with the impression of struggle and waste of energy that one receives from the study of neurotic symptoms. It is as though the sublimated channel were a really adequate substitute for the original and cruder one, and were capable of providing a gratification which, though different in quality (and often less in intensity) than that of the corresponding primitive impulse, is no less satisfactory ; the ardour with which people give themselves over to the pursuit of true sublimations being often but little inferior to that which accompanies pleasure of a more sensual kind. Psycho-analytic theory has not as yet definitely committed itself as to how far repressions are necessary for the production of sublimation. On the whole the evidence points pretty strongly towards the necessity of some kind of inhibition of a more primitive satisfaction as a condition of sublimation. But the inhibitions themselves are relatively deep-seated and efficient, and (since they do not interfere greatly with the quantity, and impose restrictions only on the forms of satisfaction), they seem to meet with comparatively little opposition, the instinctive energies flowing easily and naturally into the new substitutive channels.

From what has been said, it will be clear that the goal of development to which psycho-analytic theory points is that of sublimation—a goal which signifies at once mental health for the individual and cultural progress for society. Psycho-analysis has made us realise, however, that the achievement of sublimation is not an easy task, but is on the contrary an end which can only be attained by slow and gradual steps. Neurosis comes about largely through a sort of moral impatience on the part of the individual and society. To achieve the maximum of sublimation we shall find it necessary to be more tolerant to the demands of instinct than has hitherto been the case. Sublimation itself is an unconscious process which is outside the sphere of voluntary control. All we can do is to provide the means for its occurrence, remembering meanwhile the inevitable gradualness of the whole process. This is one of the great lessons of psycho-analysis, both to the educator and to the social reformer. It is a theme to which we shall return in our concluding section.

III

THE DEVELOPMENT OF MIND

General Theory of Development

The psycho-analytic theories of mental development are inextricably bound up with the psycho-analytic theory of sex ; it is therefore necessary for us to consider together these two aspects of our subject. The psycho-analytic conception of sex is a somewhat unusually wide one, and includes a good many processes that are at best only indirectly connected with the process of reproduction. The terms " Libido " and " Sex," as used by Freud, are in fact used somewhat similarly to the " Love " of Christian

tradition or the Platonic " Eros," though the psycho-analytic views as to the nature and development of " Sex " are far more detailed and precise. According to these views, normal adult sexuality results from an integration of a number of what were originally more or less independent impulses—technically termed *Component Instincts*. Perhaps there was originally a vague erotic quality—the earliest precursor of the sexual instinct—attaching to all sensations coming from the surface and from the interior of the body, but from birth onwards there are certain special zones, regions or organs which are specially endowed with this quality, and to each of which there may be said to correspond a particular component instinct—an instinct, that is, which urges the individual to seek the gratification obtainable by appropriate stimulation of that zone or organ. Other component instincts are more loosely connected with anatomical regions and are classifiable only on the basis of the peculiar activities or feelings connected with them. No psycho-analyst has as yet attempted a complete enumeration or classification of the component instincts.[1] Among the most important are the following :—(1) those connected with the mouth (the so-called " oral " component instincts). As observation of any very young baby will show, these are of especial importance in the first few months of post-natal existence ; a period which, for this reason, is often called the oral stage ; (2) those connected with the opposite end of the alimentary canal, *i.e.* anus and rectum (the " anal " component instincts) ; these are particularly important in the next stage of development, and it is in regard to them that some of the most sensational psycho-analytic discoveries have been made ; (3) those connected with the organs and processes of micturition (the " urethral " components); (4) those connected with the genital organs proper ; (5) those connected with the activities of vision, which are divided into two main groups—the active or " scoptophilic," and the passive or " exhibitionistic " ; (6) those connected with the infliction or endurance of pain—again divided into an active or " sadistic " group, and a passive or " masochistic " group.[2] In addition to these, there are certain other components, such as those connected with the muscles and the skin, the sense of smell, the auditory sense, which have as yet been insufficiently studied by psycho-analysts and about which in all probability a good deal still remains to be learnt.

In the course of normal development, these various component instincts become co-ordinated and organised under the leadership of the genital components, so that they ultimately come to serve, at least indirectly, the purposes of reproduction. Analysis of normal sexual behaviour can indeed easily reveal the presence of some at least of these components. Thus the erotic excitations connected with seeing and being seen are among the most familiar of the initial stages of the whole sexual cycle. They play a prominent and essential part in courtship in man as

[1] Freud's *Three Contributions to the Theory of Sex* (1916) is, in its later editions, still the most complete and systematic account.

[2] So named after the Marquis de Sade (1740–1814) and Sacher Masoch (1836–1895), well-known individuals whose sexual life was strongly influenced by the component instincts in question.

well as in many other of the higher animals, for, wherever vision is the most important distance receptor, the first intimation of the presence of a possible mate must be conveyed through the eye. Reference to the kiss is sufficient to recall the general importance which the oral components retain in ordinary sexual life. A certain amount of aggressiveness in the normal male attitude gives evidence of the rôle of sadism, while female passivity entails a certain element of masochism. Skin and muscle erotism are likewise normally involved to some extent. Perhaps the anal and urethral elements are the only ones to play no obvious part in normal sexual life ; and this fact is bound up with two important further aspects of psycho-analytic theory, to which we now pass.

In the first place the process of organisation of the component instincts, to which we have just been referring, goes on simultaneously with the process of displacement and sublimation with which we dealt in the last section. In virtue of sublimation, each component instinct, in the course of its development, transfers a certain amount of its energy to non-sexual goals, and upon this process of displacement a good deal both of social culture and of individual character depends. It seems probable that, on the whole, the component instincts which can least easily find an adequate place in adult sexuality undergo the most extensive and varied forms of sublimation and displacement ; this is strongly suggested, at any rate, in the case of the anal components, which—as we shall see—while contributing little to normal adult sexuality itself, exercise a most wide-spread and ramifying influence elsewhere.

In the second place, coincident with the development of the component instincts with regard to integration, there is development with regard to object. It has become customary to distinguish three main stages of this latter aspect of development. In the first or *auto-erotic* stage, each instinct seeks its own satisfaction, more or less as an end in itself. The erotism of the very young child must be conceived as being exclusively of this type, but some degree of auto-erotic activity remains throughout life. Eating sweets, smoking, onanism and scratching of the skin are adolescent or adult forms of auto-erotism which will naturally occur to the reader. Other activities, such as dancing or gymnastics, which are to some extent upon another plane, contain important auto-erotic elements (in this case chiefly of the muscular components), while the anal components, in so far as they are not displaced, tend to remain permanently auto-erotic in character.

The second stage is that of *narcissism*. Here there is organisation and direction of love towards a definite object. This object, however, is the self (hence the name, which is of course taken from the mythical figure of Narcissus). The doctrine of narcissism has considerably complicated psycho-analytic theory, inasmuch as it has destroyed the simple outlines of the dualistic division of human tendencies into those of self and sex (since much that a facile *a priori* explanation would ascribe to the ego is now seen to contain a libidinal element—a love of self that is in many ways comparable to the love of another individual). Nevertheless the concept has amply justified itself by the additional insight it has afforded into mental development, the psychology of individual differences and the nature of mental disease. We shall return to the subject a little later.

Here, however, we may perhaps remark in passing that narcissism, like auto-erotism, is never entirely outgrown ; some degree of narcissism is, on the contrary, beyond all doubt, normal and essential. Further to make clear the difference between auto-erotism and narcissism, we may cite the case of a conflict between the two that is of frequent occurrence at the present day. When a woman refrains from indulging in some favourite but fattening dish lest she should endanger the slim silhouette that is nowadays so fashionable, a narcissistic impulse (the love of herself as possessing the desired-for slimness) triumphs over an auto-erotic impulse (which prompts her to enjoy the pleasures of the table).

The third stage is that of *allo-erotism*, or " object-love," in which libido is directed outside itself to some external thing or person. Its earliest manifestations are probably directed to the mother, as soon as the child begins to realise her existence as an external person on whom his satisfaction intimately depends ; its fullest development is perhaps reached in the process of " falling in love " which is characteristic of adolescence and early adult life.

Development of the Component Instincts

Neglecting these distinctions for a while, let us return to a consideration of the development of the component instincts. On the strictly sexual side they can be studied in relative purity in those adults who exhibit the so-called *perversions* of the sexual instinct. These perversions are conditions in which the hegemony of the genital components has to a greater or lesser extent been replaced by a dominance of one of the other component instincts. Thus the so-called " voyeur " obtains his chief sexual satisfaction by looking (so that what is merely preliminary with others becomes an end with him), the exhibitionist by being looked at, the sadist by inflicting pain on his love-object, the masochist by enduring pain himself. Freud considers that the young child exhibits the germs of all the possible perversions, since there is as yet no genital hegemony and indeed little or no libidinal organisation of any kind. That is what he meant when he called the child a " polymorphous pervert." Though the term may be alarming, the concept is of real utility in affording insight into the essential continuity of the development of human sexuality.

Let us now consider some of the individual component instincts, with special reference to the displacements and sublimations that occur during their development. The oral stage (*i.e.*, as already explained, the stage at which the component instinct connected with the mouth is the most prominent) has left a deep mark on primitive human culture, a mark which is to be found even at the present day in such apparently diverse phenomena as the central rites of religion and the stories of the nursery. Eating is the most primitive manifestation at once of love and hate. For to incorporate by eating is the closest form of communion and loving proximity that is physically possible ; and since the incorporated object is destroyed, it can also be a manifestation of hate (as witness the fact

that tearing with the teeth is the most natural expression of hostility in many animals). Hence the oral stage—especially in so far as it relates to biting rather than to sucking—is exquisitely ambivalent. The rituals of totemism, which constitute perhaps the earliest beginnings of religion, display this ambivalence very clearly. A primitive totemic tribe (or more strictly a certain section of the tribe) venerates a certain species of animal which it regards at once as a brother and an ancestor. As a rule the members of this tribe refrain from eating this animal, but occasionally it is eaten as a sort of ceremony ; and this ceremony is, both psychologically and culturally, directly continuous with the theophagic communion services which distinguish so many of the world's religions,[1] and which in many cases clearly indicate both love and hate towards the god, who must be killed before he can be eaten. The god, as ancestor and father, sometimes retaliates by eating his children (as witness Cronos and Moloch), and when we come to the ancient stories that are still in use in the nursery (doubtless appropriately enough, if there is any truth in the doctrine of Recapitulation—a doctrine to which psycho-analysis has given valuable support upon the psychological side), we find that they are full of incidents of devouring by animals, ogres, witches or giants.

Scarcely less interesting, though perhaps less well established, is the influence of oral erotism on individual character. According to the evidence at present available, there would appear to be two fairly well-marked types of oral character. These types seem to depend upon whether the history of the individual in the early oral phase of life has been marked by contentment and confidence (that food will be forthcoming when required) or by discontent and anxiety. The former leads to a care-free, happy optimism. Like Mr. Micawber, individuals of this type always expect something to " turn up," and can thus look forward hopefully to the future, even when there is a shortage of good things in the present. They tend to be sociable, uncritical, and open to new ideas. Persons of the second type are apt to be hurried, impatient and pessimistic. They may be always asking, begging or demanding ; or else—in order to guard against the threat of insufficiency—they may seek a career that offers safety (*e.g.* through provision of a pension) rather than advantages or prospects. In some instances they may unconsciously seek to revenge themselves for oral disappointments they have themselves endured, as in one remarkable case where a man of this type would invite his friends to dinner, and then absent himself from home, so that his guests were turned hungry away. In other cases hostility may express itself largely through speech, which has here become a displacement of the more primitive tendency to bite—a displacement, the nature of which is indicated by such common phrases as " incisive argument," " biting sarcasm " and " mordant wit."

The character qualities connected with anal erotism (*i.e.* the erotism of the component instinct connected with the process of defæcation) are so numerous and varied that they can best be stated in tabular form as follows :—

[1] *Cf.* Freud: *Totem and Taboo* (1919). See also the Article on *The Beginnings of Morals and Culture.*

Displacements and Sublimations		*Reaction-Formations*	
Retention	1. Postponement	Orderliness	28. Tidiness
	2. Defiance		29. Organisation
	3. Obstinacy		30. Pedantry
	4. Miserliness		31. Clear thinking
	5. Love of possessions		32. Thoroughness
	6. Desire to collect		33. Punctuality
	7. Dislike of waste		
Production	8. Concentration (especially after postponement)	Cleanliness	34. Washing
			35. Cleaning
			36. Preventing accumulation
	9. Generosity		37. Fear of contamination (*e.g.* of self or "Nature")
	10. Extravagance		
	11. Contamination		38. "Purity"
	12. Untidiness		39. Reality
	13. Noise (music)		
	14. Leaving mark (sadistic)	Control	40. Strong will (resisting temptation)
	15. Destruction (sadistic)		
	16. Speech		41. Asceticism
	17. Writing		
	18. Painting		
Manipulation	19. Moulding		
	20. Cooking		
	21. Chemistry		
	22. Photography		
	23. Building		
	24. Engineering		
Products	25. Child		
	26. Money		
	27. Papers		

Those qualities which represent direct displacements of original positive desires are placed in the left hand column, those which correspond rather to "reaction-formations" against these desires, on the right. Hence those in the right hand column often represent opposite characteristics to certain of those on the left.

The displacements of the original desires (left hand column) permit of being classified under four main heads :—

(1) Those connected with retention of the fæces—an act which is undertaken in the first place (*a*) in order to increase the eventual pleasure of the excretory act, (*b*) as one of the ways in which a very young child can show defiance of his nurse or mother. This process soon becomes associated with the idea of value attaching to the excreta ("products") and hence, by displacement, gives rise to the desire to hoard and accumulate objects of worth.

(2) Those connected with the pleasure attaching to the excretory act

itself. These are of course, in certain respects, necessarily opposite in character to those of the previous group. Thus the desire to hoard or retain is contrasted with the desire to give (when associated with love) or with the desire to contaminate (when associated with hate—though of course ambivalence is frequent here).

(3) Those connected with the desire to manipulate the excreta when produced.

(4) Those corresponding to the simple interest in the excreta as valuable material.

If originally the act of excretion is a matter of pleasure and pride, and the excreta themselves objects of value and delight, under the influence of parents or nurses this attitude soon changes to one in which excretory acts are regarded as dirty or indecent, acts which must be sternly controlled and regulated. In this way arise the chief reaction-formations, which for the most part explain themselves.

A few brief remarks may be added concerning one or two of the individual items of our list.

Nos. 1 and 8 may be found together and manifest themselves alternately in an important type of anal character. The two traits together represent a displacement of the combined tendency, first to retain, and then to produce in large quantities. Such persons will, for instance, delay " action " (note the word) in important matters until the last possible moment, and may then become feverishly energetic and perform prodigies of work in a short time ; or else they may refuse, for instance, to answer correspondence or pay their bills, until there is a great accumulation of arrears, to which they will then, however, devote themselves with fierce attention. Nos. 4, 5, 6, and 7 are, of course, usually found in combination with No. 26, which last is perhaps culturally the most important sublimation of anal erotism. Indeed there can be little doubt that a great deal of the economic basis of our present civilisation is supplied by this form of displacement. Nos. 14 and 15 represent tendencies the strength of which can be gauged by the difficulty encountered by the recent movement to preserve our parks and countryside from dirt and litter. The connection of these tendencies with anal erotism should be clear to anyone who will take the trouble to study the inscriptions to be found in almost any public lavatory. No. 25, which may at first seem strange, is due to the infantile theory of anal birth, a theory which is very natural in view of the child's ignorance concerning the functions, or even the presence, of the vagina.[1]

The known effects of urethral erotism, *i.e.* the erotism connected with the passing of urine, are far less varied and extensive. There is a certain amount of evidence to show that a highly developed interest in this process may be connected, at any rate in men, with the character-quality of ambitiousness. In its gradual displacements, the interest in question may lead to preoccupation with pipes and water, and thence to plumbing, hydraulic and electrical engineering (the latter owing to the unconscious

[1] It is very difficult to do justice to the complications of anal erotism in a few words. The student who desires a fuller treatment of the discoveries of psychoanalysis in this field should consult the relevant chapter in Ernest Jones' *Papers on Psycho-Analysis*, 3rd edition (1923).

equation of fire and water). But water in some form or other usually retains its attraction. Thus of the two cases of unusually marked urethral erotism which the present writer has himself had the opportunity of studying, one was a sailor, the other a keen swimmer.

Both sadism and masochism normally retain some importance in the actual sexual life ; to some small extent they must be regarded as constituents of normal love. Furthermore, in most people they remain potentially active throughout life, so that by appropriate stimulation they can easily be aroused in an intensity that borders on the " perverse " ; witness for instance the almost universal sexual attraction that is exercised by tortures and other " horrors." When such a perversion succeeds in escaping from control, it can of course become extremely dangerous, and may even manifest itself in " lust murders," such as those of " Jack the Ripper." It is frequently allied in a subtle way with anal erotism, and may then give rise to the actual practice of the phantasy of whipping. There are certain walks of life which would appear to offer good opportunities for the satisfactory sublimation of even high degrees of sadism—such as the professions of butcher and of surgeon. A more moderate degree of sadism can be utilised in many kinds of work ; but there are other professions where everything much in excess of the ordinary degree is socially dangerous, however satisfying to the individual himself—such professions as those of judge, magistrate, policeman or teacher. And these examples serve to remind us of certain very important aspects of sadism or masochism that have come to light in recent years.

We have already indicated how the mind possesses the power of arriving at a compromise between the forces of instinct and those of inhibition. This compromise is especially characteristic of neurosis, but is found also in conditions that would not ordinarily be called neurotic. In the examples that we have hitherto studied there takes place a condensation or overdetermination which expresses both of two conflicting wishes. A slightly different form of compromise is one in which the inhibiting tendencies organised within the Super-Ego (*cf.* p. 359)—powerless to achieve a complete repression of the instinctive desires—permit some satisfaction of the instincts on condition that there be endured a certain amount of pain or suffering, as though by way of punishment to compensate the pleasure. Now the sadistic or masochistic impulses are peculiarly suited to enter into a compromise of this sort, for they can obtain their satisfaction by the very means adopted by the Super-Ego in exacting punishment. Hence it is justifiable to speak of a special class of " moral sadism " and " moral masochism." In moral sadism the impulses are directed outwards, and obtain gratification from punishing others who have allowed themselves certain forms of forbidden satisfaction. Our legal and punitive systems and our own social codes are full of instances in which society as a whole, or certain members of it, gratify at once their sadism and their moral indignation by punishment (often cruel enough, for most tortures—both of body and of mind—have been justified on moral grounds) of those who have offended against our legal, social or ethical codes. The same was true till fairly recently of our religious and educational systems. Now, fortunately, civilised humanity has achieved the great step of abolishing religious intolerance (though the abolition of political intolerance—in

some ways its modern equivalent—is proving hard to accomplish), while the moral-sadistic features of education are also tending to disappear. In moral masochism the impulses demanding pain and punishment are turned against the self, and may give rise to all sorts of discomforts, failures, self-deprivations and self-humiliations, the nature and extent of which psycho-analysts have only just begun to realise. The sexual element in these latter cases is often less easily revealed to superficial investigation. Nevertheless, it is commonly recognised that there exists a class of persons who " enjoy " their own sufferings, of which they will not readily permit themselves to be deprived. Such persons represent (within the range of the normal) extreme cases of moral masochism. We may suggest indeed that there are certain times and certain cultures which have been specially favourable to (or perhaps we should say, dominated by) such forms of self-punishment, *e.g.* the Middle Ages with their monkish and ascetic traditions, and to the modern civilisation of the Slavs.

The development of the somewhat analogous pair of component instincts known as scoptophilia and exhibitionism presents on the whole a somewhat simpler picture. A strongly developed scoptophilia may give rise to a generalised curiosity and love of spying and prying into others' lives or secrets ; on the lower levels of displacement, the sexual background is often still discernible, and in the common forms of gossip, to which so many of us are prone, displaced scoptophilic tendencies will often fuse with moral sadism of the kind that we have just been discussing. In the higher forms of sublimation, scoptophilia would seem to play a most important rôle in scientific investigation, though even here some element of sadism may often co-operate. The scientific man " loves " his " subject," but nevertheless betrays a certain aggressiveness towards it, as he " wrests " or " wrings " its secrets from it.

The exhibitionistic instinct originally relates to the naked body, but in the course of individual development it inevitably (in civilised races) becomes displaced, to a greater or lesser extent, on to clothes. Clothes are, however, exquisitely ambivalent, inasmuch as they both cover the body and thus subserve the inhibiting tendencies that we call " modesty," and at the same time afford a new and highly efficient means of gratifying exhibitionism on a new level ; as a successful compromise-formation they afford an interesting social parallel to many forms of individual neuroses.[1] In its simpler manifestations, as still attaching to the naked body, exhibitionism is often reinforced by skin and muscle erotisms, and these three combined play a large part both in sport and in the gymnosophist (" nudist ") movements of to-day. How strong and fundamental is this desire for nakedness, which we have retained in the unconscious from our childhood, is shown in the fact that one of the most general and typical of dreams reveals to us ourselves as embarrassingly nude or underclothed in public. In its more sublimated developments, scoptophilia may lead to the adoption of professions which involve playing a prominent and public rôle, such as those of the stage, the screen, the bar and the pulpit ; while,

[1] The present writer has elsewhere endeavoured to trace in detail these hitherto somewhat neglected psychological aspects of dress. See *The Psychology of Clothes* (1930).

in its pathological aspects, it would seem to have a connection (at present but little understood) with certain skin diseases.

Turning lastly to the component instincts connected with the genital organs themselves, there seems little limit to the numbers of life's activities which receive at least some impetus from displaced genital libido—as is shown by the immense number of sexual (especially phallic) symbols connected with all kinds of objects and pursuits.

Two of man's great cultural achievements, however, stand out perhaps above all others as having derived the necessary energy from this source —the making of fire and the discovery and development of agriculture. We have already referred to the connection of fire and heat with sexuality, and, as to agriculture, we may remind the reader that the word " plough " is used in many languages to denote the sexual act, and that such terms as " seed," " fertility," and " barrenness " are applied indiscriminately to vegetation and to human beings. The widespread tendency to accompany agricultural ceremonies with sexual rites and sexual orgies again affords an anthropological corroboration of psycho-analytic findings. To mention just two other examples of genital sublimation, another, perhaps even more fundamental, instance is the use of tools, which are among the commonest of sexual symbols ; while certain prominent philologists consider that the development of speech owes much to the deflection of sexual energy to this sphere, a contention to which psycho-analysts in their turn have brought considerable supporting evidence.

One further phenomenon connected with the genital instincts must be mentioned, because of its widespread influence and great importance. This is not (as in the other cases we have mentioned) a displacement of desire, but a reaction-formation, in the shape of anxiety lest the genital organs or their functions be harmed or interfered with. Arising in the first place, it would appear, as a fear of talion punishment for sexual thoughts or acts which have come to be regarded as guilty, this anxiety exerts a great influence in the unconscious minds of many individuals, where it constitutes what is usually called the " castration complex." In its typical form it is a male phenomenon, and attaches primarily to the feared loss of the phallus ; but it may also occur in women, in whose case it leads to the belief that the phallus has been lost (and thence to serious feelings of inferiority). Indeed the anatomical differences between the sexes often play an important part in the origin of the complex. Normally, however, the ability to produce a baby seems to be the female psychological equivalent of the male's possession of the phallus. This is perhaps connected with the fact that the castration complex proper (as applying to the genitals) appears to be only a particular aspect of a general fear of loss of the means of satisfaction—a fear which is often connected with a whole series of earlier " traumatic," or shock-producing, situations, in which loss of the mother's womb (at birth), loss of the breast and loss of fæces all play a part. The precise significance of these last mentioned connections is not yet fully understood, but of the existence of the connections there can be no reasonable doubt. Finally we may mention that the castration complex appears to have a good deal to do with the development of phallic symbolism, since the use of objects which possess the requisite symbolic significance (often rationalised as means of protection

against " ill-luck " or the " evil eye ") affords reassurance against the feared loss of the valued organ.

Narcissism and the Super-Ego

Let us now leave the individual component instincts to consider very briefly the more general development, through the stage of narcissism, to that of allo-erotism. In narcissism, as we have stated, the libido is directed to the self rather than to the outer world. Strongly narcissistic individuals can be recognised by their preoccupation with their own bodies and (at a somewhat more extreme stage) with their own minds. A very high degree of such narcissistic preoccupation makes the person in question relatively uninterested in, and independent of, the outer world ; hence prevents the formation of the *rapport* or transference that is essential to all psycho-therapy. All forms of insanity imply some degree of withdrawal from the outer world. Perhaps the strongest impression that is received by any person visiting an asylum for the first time is one of surprise at the very little interest that the patients take in one another. Each seems immersed in his own concerns ; there are no groups of two or three gossiping together, as there would be in a similar collection of normal people. In so far as the environment is taken into account at all, it tends to be reconstructed from within upon a delusional basis. Such persons have permanently lost their hold upon reality. All of us however have periodical relapses from contact with reality—in an extreme degree during sleep, and in a lesser degree during day-dreams and phantasy. In phantasy we achieve an imaginary fulfilment of our desires without the trouble of taking the necessary steps to achieve them in reality ; in Freud's terminology, we are thinking according to the " Pleasure Principle " and not according to the " Reality Principle." This does not mean, however, that phantasy is necessarily useless. On the contrary it is probably essential :—(1) as an outlet or " safety valve " for desires that must inevitably remain unsatisfied in this imperfect world, (2) as a preliminary step towards actual achievement, for the fore-pleasures of imagination may act as a bait destined to lead us to the more toilsome, but more permanently satisfying, enjoyment of reality. It is only when phantasy withdraws an unnecessary quantity of energy from our dealings with the outer world, that it can be regarded as pathological ; the diseases of phantasy are indeed only in the nature of misuse of that all-important faculty that man possesses for " looking before and after."

Apart from abnormal conditions, the nature of narcissism can perhaps best be realised by drawing certain comparisons. Let us compare first the mental states in bodily health and bodily disease. In the latter condition interest inevitably becomes more concentrated on the self ; an ill man makes a poor lover. The difference in question is most strikingly illustrated by temporary troubles that appear and disappear very quickly, such as toothache or sea-sickness. In both states the sensations from our own body are so absorbing that they compel the withdrawing of our attention even from persons and things that were full of interest but a little while before.

As a second comparison, take the two sexes. Our present society expects and encourages a greater amount of narcissism in women than in men.

In women we cheerfully tolerate a degree of preoccupation with personal appearance that we should regard as foppish and effeminate (note the implication) in a man. In men's dress the note of display (for narcissism, in its social aspects, naturally exploits exhibitionism) is sternly suppressed. Even in the actual love-life itself there is a difference : a woman seeks to be loved rather than herself to love, but a characteristically allo-erotic man wants actively to possess himself of the loved object, and is somewhat indifferent as to whether he is loved in return. Of course the differences are in any case only relative ones. Men may also find certain substitutes for the personal beauty which is the goal of the narcissistic libido in women. Athletic prowess and muscular development may be such a substitute (a well-known exponent of physical culture tells his pupils that they will find their exercises " more interesting if performed before a mirror "). Intellectual prowess may also serve as a more subtle and sublimated substitute in both sexes, and this leads us naturally to the higher and more complicated developments of narcissism.

The earlier and more primitive forms of narcissism consist of love of oneself as one actually is. A larger or smaller amount of libido remains at this level throughout life. But, in the course of further development, a certain quantity of the libido originally entering into this form of narcissism undergoes displacement—and this in two main directions. On the one hand there is a displacement from love of self to love of others, *i.e.* a passage from the stage of narcissism to that of allo-erotism. To this we shall return in a moment. On the other hand there is displacement from love of oneself as one actually is (the real self) to love of oneself as one would like to be (the ideal self, Ego Ideal or Super-Ego—the same Super-Ego which, as we saw earlier, plays such an important part in the moral constitution of man). This displacement of primitive narcissism on to an ideal constitutes one great source of the energy whence our (often so fierce and overpowering) morality is derived. Another great source is more complicated in its origin. It comes from an introjection into the self of the earliest external moral forces, *i.e.* the moral attitudes and precepts of parents, nurses and other influential persons from whom the child first learns the distinction between right and wrong. By means of this introjection (or internalising) the individual comes in time, as it were, to carry in himself, as part of his permanent mental equipment, the moral standards of his environment. What were originally external sanctions have become internal sanctions. Recent studies in child analysis have shown that the foundations of the Super-Ego are laid at a very early age (certainly before five), and this to some extent explains the peculiarly archaic and inaccessible character of these foundations—which can be influenced only with great difficulty by subsequent experience. It is owing to this inaccessibility that man is, in Freud's already quoted words, " far more moral than he has any idea of," and that there are often (perhaps always) serious inconsistencies between the, generally more lenient, adaptable and " reasonable," morality of consciousness and the sterner and more inflexible moral elements in the unconscious—inconsistencies that are perhaps particularly striking in present-day individuals of advanced views whose theories are often far more liberal than their practice.

So stern and uncompromising is the Super-Ego that, though it undoubtedly depends to a large extent upon the introjection of the morality of our elders, it would nevertheless seem that there must be further factors at work in its formation, especially since there is by no means always an exact correspondence between the severity of the Super-Ego and the actual sternness of the parents. This is one of the great problems with which psycho-analytic research is grappling at the present moment. Our knowledge is not yet advanced enough to state anything with certainty, but it appears as though at least one important factor lay in the recoil upon the self of the individual's own aggressive tendencies. These tendencies are called up by any frustration of desire, and are at first directed outwards. We act as though all frustration were due to an intentional hostility on the part of those about us (much as the savage still thinks that ill-luck, disease and death are all due to black magic or to hostile spirits). But, since we both love and fear our elders, this aggressivity due to frustration must be itself inhibited, and thus frustrated; and it would seem that all inhibited aggressivity must either find another outlet (through displacement—as when the clerk, who has been angered by his employer, vents his wrath upon the office-boy), or else be directed inwards against the self. In very early life alternative external outlets are difficult to find; the aggression therefore returns upon the self and constitutes one of the chief sources of the savage and cruel aspects of the Super-Ego.

In so far as this theory is true, we can see how even exceptionally mild and indulgent parents may yet be instrumental in forming a stern Super-Ego in their children, for such parents are peculiarly unsuited as objects on which to direct a fierce aggression; hence the greater necessity of inhibiting this aggression and its consequent greater likelihood of turning back upon the self. We can see too that the problem of an over-stern Super-Ego is not necessarily solved by the mere substitution of kindness for severity in the nursery and in the schoolroom. The problem is more difficult than that. Possibly the solution may lie in a combined method of diminishing frustration (by a more tolerant attitude towards the " polymorphous perversion " of the child—an attitude which should be the nursery equivalent of a greater social leniency towards the sexuality of adult life), combined with the provision—where possible—of suitable outlets for such aggressivity as is still inevitably aroused. This is as yet little more than speculation, but it is clear that the problem is one with which the further development of psycho-analysis will soon bring us face to face.

Let us now return to more established aspects of psycho-analytic theory. The nature and function of the Super-Ego, as conceived by analysts, cannot be fully understood without a reference to certain further concepts elaborated by Freud in his book *The Ego and the Id*, published in 1923. Here the mind is divided into three parts, termed the *Ego*, the *Super Ego* and the *Id*. The Ego is that part which is concerned with the perception of outer reality and our adjustment to it, while the Id is the great reservoir of instinctive energies from which all our desires are ultimately derived, but for which we do not always consciously hold ourselves responsible (hence the term [the " it "], which indicates that we

tend to regard it as something foreign to our *selves*, as when we say, " I was carried away by my emotions," or " I was overcome," by them). The Ego has a hard task, calling for much strength, skill and diplomacy, inasmuch as it has to do its best to satisfy three masters, to wit, outer reality, our instinctive desires located in the Id, and our moral standards located in the Super-Ego. In mental disorders, the Ego has proved unequal to this task (though the actual nature of its breakdown varies with the nature of the disorder), and the aim of psycho-analytic therapy is to strengthen the position of the Ego. This involves : (1) an uncovering of the Id, so that the true nature of the (repressed) instinctive desires is revealed, (2) a no less free examination of the nature and demands of the Super-Ego, and (3) a breaking down of such neurotic compromise functions as have been arrived at between the Super-Ego and the Id. Both Super-Ego and Id have therefore equally to face reality, and to make the sacrifices that may be necessary in order that the human energies locked up in the conflict may find a free expression in reality, *i.e.* in order that our desires may receive the maximum of " real " gratification in a way that is in harmony with the claims of rational or enlightened morality. The essential difficulties, as we are beginning to realise, lie in (2) and (3) rather than in (1). As regards (2), it may be safely said that every successful resolution of a neurosis involves some modification and relaxation of the claims of the Super-Ego, which is often just as unwilling to take account of the realities of human nature (*i.e.* the fundamental and ineradicable nature of the instinctive urges), as the Id itself is unwilling to take account of the obstacles that the outer world so often puts in the way of our desires. Above all, it must give up certain archaic features of its constitution, such as :— (*a*) the tendency to punish thoughts with the same severity as actions (as when a person treats himself as though he were actually guilty of the death of a relative, whose death he may unconsciously have desired, but which he has done nothing whatsoever to bring about), (*b*) the tendency to extend the condemnation of a specific desire to all desires remotely associated therewith (*e.g.* to condemn all sexuality because the first expressions of infantile-sexuality had an incestuous foundation). But perhaps the biggest difficulties lie in (3). A neurosis of long standing represents a peculiarly stable compound of the forces of the Id and of the Super-Ego, which is hard to break up because both sides fear to lose by a resolution of the compromise. To use a social parallel, the satisfaction which the Super-Ego and the Id derive from the neurotic symptoms is like that which the Churches and the bootleggers alike find in Prohibition, and which renders both sides equally unwilling to consider objectively the possible benefits of a repeal of this restriction upon liberty.

It is a curious and interesting fact that, so far as psycho-analytic investigation has yet gone in the study of the Super-Ego, it seems to show that our troubles—both individual and social—are due much more to the excessive, than to the deficient, morality of man. In fact, no single analyst has as yet reported a case in which the Super-Ego of his patient seemed dangerously weak. This somewhat paradoxical finding is largely due to the fact that an excessive development of the Super-Ego, with consequent extreme efforts at repression, prevents the displacements and sublimations of the libido that accompany " normal " development.

The libido therefore remains fixated at a relatively crude and infantile level, and in a sense, therefore, really tends to express itself in actions that would be regarded as improper or immoral if judged by adult standards. A vicious circle is thus set up ; repression induces fixation, and this in turn gives rise to fresh efforts at repression. The only cure for such a condition is a relaxation, and not a tightening, of the moral censorship. Indeed, many anti-social acts, which might at first seem to indicate an unduly feeble Super-Ego, are clearly traceable upon closer examination to the influence of the Super-Ego itself. Among such acts are : (*a*) the " crimes from conscience," to which, as psycho-analysis has shown, certain persons may be driven, in order that the consequent punishment by society may replace and alleviate the intolerable tension of internal guilt ; (*b*) the deeds of hostility and revenge prompted by the inevitable resentment occasioned by a too deep and constant frustration of vital instincts ; (*c*) the direct expressions of libidinous tendencies that are permitted on condition that they are paid for in terms of suffering ; (*d*) the cruelties that result from a projection on to others (" scapegoats ") of this need for punishment. This last case, as already mentioned in another connection, usually exhibits a strong admixture of sadistic trends. It undoubtedly constitutes a source of aggression of a socially very disruptive kind, into the amazing strength of which we are only just acquiring a dim insight.

Object Love

Leaving this difficult and comparatively recent chapter of psycho-analytic theory, let us in conclusion deal briefly with the third stage of development—that of object love or allo-erotism. Freud has drawn up a short scheme of the chief means of transition to object love, which is perhaps worthy of quotation here. According to this scheme there are six chief ways of acquiring a love object :

Narcissistic Type, in which love is directed to :	1. What one is. 2. What one was. 3. A part of oneself. 4. What one would like to be.
Anaclitic Type, in which love is directed to :	5. The mother who nourishes. 6. The father who protects.

In the first four cases the transition to object love is *via* narcissism. The term " anaclitic " (literally " leaning up against ") means that in the first phase of their existence the outwardly directed elements of the libido prop themselves, as it were, upon the self-preservative instincts and thus become directed to the persons who satisfy the latter instincts.

No. 1 is the simplest form of object choice. It represents a simple displacement of primitive self-love (love of the " real " ego) to love of others, according to the principle of similarity. Thus, quite generally, we tend to love those who are like ourselves, whether the resemblance be one of intellect, character, moral standard, social class, racial type or physical characteristics (as when, for instance, as statistics indicate is on the whole

the case, tall men marry tall women, and vice versa). One particularly important aspect of this type of choice is that which leads to homosexuality, for a person of one's own sex is in certain important respects more like oneself than is a person of the opposite sex. Connected with this is the fact that a homosexual object-choice is very frequently found in association with a strong element of narcissism ; heterosexuality seems to demand on the whole a further general advance of the libido in the direction of allo-erotism than does homosexuality.

No. 2 depends upon the fact that the narcissistic libido often undergoes a fixation at a certain stage of the development of the individual concerned, usually the stage at which he (or she) still possessed the physical charm of youth and beauty. Such an individual then remains permanently in love with himself, as he was at the particular age concerned (a fixation which indeed seems sometimes actually to prolong the youthful appearance of the individual). When fixated narcissism of this kind is displaced on to another person, it chooses as object a person resembling the lover as he was at the age at which the fixation took place. It may thus give rise to pæderasty. But it may also operate in a more subtle manner, as when a woman sees in a young man just those elements of " boyishness " which she herself has inevitably lost to some extent at puberty, when she acquired the special characteristics of her own sex.

No. 3 is the special form of narcissistic object love that characterises the love of parents for their children, who may be regarded as constituting (almost literally—especially in the case of the mother) a part of themselves. It is in virtue of a displacement of this type that a very narcissistic woman may become a loving mother, even though she may have shown herself capable of but little affection towards her husband (who is unable to attract the narcissistic libido in this way). Parental love, however, seems only to be the extreme case of a very general tendency to regard everything on which we have lavished toil and care as, in a certain sense, an extension of our own personality. The attitude of the collector to his treasures, of the inventor to his invention, of the writer to his book will naturally occur to the reader in this connection. Indeed the labour of an author in producing his work has often been compared to that of a mother in giving birth to her child.

If No. 1 corresponds to the displacement of that portion of the narcissistic libido which attaches to the " real ego," No. 4 represents the displacement of that portion which attaches to the Super-Ego. It is this element which, beyond all others, accounts for the (as it so often seems to others) absurd over-estimation of the loved object by the lover, who often considers himself all too unworthy as compared with the virtues of the person on whom his adoration falls (just as his real ego is " unworthy " as judged by the standards of the Super-Ego). In its more specific workings, this type of object love may lead to the choice of an object who possesses different or opposite qualities to those of the lover, the loved person thus representing a " compensation " for just those qualities in which the lover himself is deficient (corresponding to a projected form of that compensation for " organ inferiority " which Adler has emphasised in dealing with the individual). This type of love may therefore exhibit opposite characteristics to those of No. 1.

Types 5 and 6 are more generally understood outside the ranks of psycho-analysts themselves, and therefore may be dealt with very shortly; for, ever since the early days of psycho-analysis, the Œdipus Complex has occupied the foremost place in all discussions of the subject.[1] It must suffice here to remind the reader that one of Freud's most fundamental discoveries concerned the vastly important rôle of the father and mother as the earliest objects both of love and hate. The myth of Œdipus, who kills his father and marries his mother, represents the translation into adult terms of the primitive tendencies of the boy child who has realised that his father is a rival who prevents his own (the child's) monopolisation of the mother's time and love. A similar attitude *mutatis mutandis* is characteristic of the little girl, though in her case the development is rather more complicated, inasmuch as her very first love-object is the mother, just as in the case of the boy. Indeed, in the case of both boy and girl, the attitude toward both parents is to some extent an ambivalent one, though in normal development love goes preponderatingly towards the parent of the opposite, hate to the parent of the same sex as the child. But all possible combinations of love and hate are to be found, from the fully developed " normal " to the " inverted " Œdipus Complex. In this latter form of the complex, the boy (usually as a means of avoiding the otherwise inevitable hostility with the father) identifies himself with the mother and seeks to love the father in her place, so that she, rather than he, becomes the rival—the girl of course behaving correspondingly. This inverted Œdipus Complex is another important factor in the production of a homosexual object-choice.

The original love and hate embodied in the Œdipus Complex undergoes extensive and important repression and consequent modification and displacement. Hate is often to a great extent repressed and concealed by love, though it may throughout life influence character through various unrecognised displacements. Love itself undergoes repression through the very strong taboo of incest, which is one of the most remarkable features of human society at all levels of development, and the influence of which can be traced in the various exogamic rules and practices which distinguish so many primitive peoples. As a result of this repression there is brought about a certain dissociation between the sensual elements of love upon the one hand and the elements of tenderness, devotion and respect upon the other—a dissociation which is of the greatest importance for both social and sexual life (especially in the male sex), but of the true nature and causes of which we are still far from having a complete knowledge.

Only second in importance to the child's attitude towards his parents is his attitude towards his brothers and sisters. Here too there is a general arousal of ambivalent emotions. A younger brother or sister is often at first looked upon as a rival, though (especially if there be some considerable difference in age) quasi-parental feelings of love may also be engendered. These feelings of love are in their turn subject to repression at the hands of an incest taboo which is but little less severe than that operative between parents and children.

[1] A full treatment of the theme in all its ramifications has been attempted by the present writer in his *Psycho-analytic Study of the Family* (1921).

A great deal, both of individual character and social culture, depends upon the gradual displacement of the various loves and hates aroused within the circle of the family. Here we can only indicate in barest enumeration some of the most important forms of this displacement.

A strong parent fixation in persons of either sex may manifest itself in an inability to marry or leave home, or a failure to achieve reasonable self-reliance and independence of character. The actual displacement of parent-regarding feelings may take place along lines of relationship (*e.g.* from father or mother to brother or sister, uncle or aunt, cousin, etc.), age, name, character, general situation, etc., *i.e.* any one of these factors may act as the mediating association of a displacement. A particularly important instance of the last mentioned type occurs when a repetition of the original Œdipus situation, in which there was an obstacle to the child's love, is sought as an essential condition of later loves. In such cases, a love without external impediments is unattractive and a person is capable of sexual attachments only to, say, engaged or married individuals of the opposite sex. So frequently is this tendency present in some degree or other that it seems to form the ground of the very widespread appeal of the " triangular situation " in literature and the drama.

In successful " normal " development there takes place a gradual " weaning " from the parents and the parental situation, so that ultimately the individual is free to live and love in ways that have but little reference to the original family situation. Entire freedom is, however, in all probability impossible to achieve, for analysis can nearly always reveal some association with the parents, who were the original objects of love, fear and hatred. Thus, in our attitude towards social groups and institutions, the same influences are operative as in the case of our attitude to individuals. The individual's love for his country is largely tinged by its association with his father or mother (" Motherland " or " Fatherland "), as is also his love for his native town, his school, his church (" Mother Church "), his University (" Alma Mater "), and even his " mother tongue." The enemies of his country are treated as though they were would-be ravishers of his mother, while to those who hold positions of authority within his own group he displays the same ambivalent emotions of love and hate, of veneration and impotent rage, that he once felt towards his father. Politics indeed represent little more than a reliving and re-enactment of the infantile attitudes aroused in connection with the Œdipus Complex, and, until this is understood, there is small hope of human conduct in this field becoming more rational and more adjusted to reality.[1]

A few final words on certain further effects of fixation at the Œdipus level must bring this Article to a close. When the fixation on the parents is strong, the child may be unwilling to abandon the exalted idea that he has formed of the power, knowledge and goodness of the parents ; the real parents, when he comes to understand that they also have their deficiencies and limitations, are very disappointing when compared with the magnificent beings that he had imagined them to be. This may give rise to the very widespread " foster-child phantasy," according to which the child himself is a changeling, who has lost his true parents and been

[1] *Cf.* Pryns Hopkins : *Father or Sons* (1927).

adopted by others, who are inferior to them in wealth, station, character or power; a phantasy which has found expression throughout the ages in "the myth of the birth of the hero," in which the young hero, the son of gods, princes or nobles, is brought up by animals or peasants. Moses, Perseus, Romulus, Lohengrin, are a few among the very many legendary heroes of this type, while Mowgli and Tarzan of the Apes represent corresponding figures from modern literature.

But the most general of all methods of dealing with this persistent longing for the ideal parent is to project him into the heavens as a deity; for gods and goddesses are the omnipotent parents of our infancy, permanently enthroned in their high estate. By this act of projection the adult human being saves himself the painful realisation of the fact that he is ultimately dependent on his own efforts, and is enabled to retain the infantile notion—to which we would fain all regress in time of trouble—that there is somewhere a watchful and loving parent who is ever solicitous for our welfare. But the gods can be angry as well as kind, and this aspect of deity corresponds to the hostile and (especially in the higher religions) to the moral aspects of the parents. God, as judge or avenger, fulfils much the same functions as the Super-Ego, and may be described as the external equivalent of the Super-Ego. The punishments, sacrifices and ascetic practices demanded by God are similar, in their general intent, to those demanded by the Super-Ego, and are inspired by much the same feeling of guilt.[1] How strong is this feeling, and the consequent need for an avenging God, is shown, for instance, by the inability of organised Christianity to remain contented with the more purely positive and loving morality of its founder. The attitude implied by Christ's words, "Neither do I condemn thee," leaves unsatisfied the "need for punishment," which is as important a feature of religion as it is of neurosis. Christ's attitude demands a freedom from guilt and hatred, which only a very few elect minds here and there have been able to achieve, and the attainment of which on a large scale is possible, if at all, only by a general understanding of the neurotic and quasi-neurotic elements of guilt, which psychoanalysis alone would seem to be in a position to bring about. As long as there is serious fixation at the level of the infantile attitude towards the parents, it would seem almost inevitable that there should be, not only dependence on the parent substitutes (which merely makes us helpless and unprogressive), but also hate towards them (which makes us cruel as well). That the attitude of humanity towards its gods is deeply ambivalent can be shown by any thoroughgoing analysis of religious belief and ritual, but especially by an analysis of sacrifice, which has as its ultimate motive the slaying of the god himself, and is thus a repetition of the prototype of all great crimes—parricide. A religious or social attitude based consistently on love would seem to be possible only in so far as the hatred, and consequently the guilt, associated with our infantile reactions to the parents, have been generally outgrown.

We have finished our survey of psycho-analytic theory. This theory is already so complex and has a bearing on so many fields, that much has necessarily been left unsaid, and much has had to be presented in a

[1] *Cf.* R. Money-Kyrle: *The Meaning of Sacrifice* (1930).

condensed and somewhat dogmatic fashion. But it is to be hoped that we have at least made clear the great importance and interest of the subject. If, in conclusion, it be asked, what is the bearing of psycho-analysis on human culture as a whole, the answer would seem to be, that it holds out the promise of enabling us to become more conscious of ourselves, and thus to extend our powers of rational insight and control. The biological value of conscious mind lies in its capacity for delicate discrimination and adaptation. The unconscious instincts and reflexes by which our lives, like those of other animals, are so largely determined, doubtless have great value for rough orientation towards our environment. But they tend to work on the " all or none " pattern, and are incapable of those finer adjustments of means to ends, which, when organised and co-ordinated in physical science, have enabled man to win an altogether unique power over Nature. But this power is itself a danger unless it is accompanied by a corresponding knowledge and control of our own selves ; which alone will enable us to use this power for beneficial, rather than for harmful and self-destructive, ends. The psychological and social sciences are, it is universally admitted, in a lamentably backward state as compared with those other sciences which deal with our physical environment. In psycho-analysis man would seem to have an instrument with which to readjust this balance, and thus to become master in his own house, as well as in the outer world.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

ERNEST JONES : *Psycho-analysis* (Benn's Sixpenny Library, London. 1929). (An excellent short and up-to-date introduction)

SIGMUND FREUD : *Introductory Lectures on Psycho-analysis* ; 2nd edn. (London. 1929). (The best longer introduction)

A. A. BRILL : *Psycho-analysis. Its Theory and Practical Application* ; 2nd edn. (Philadelphia and London. 1914). (A valuable pioneering work, suitable as an introduction to the subject)

Fundamental Conceptions of Psycho-analysis (London. 1922). (An excellent statement of the simpler problems, with particular stress on the mechanism of wish-fulfilment)

ERNEST JONES : *Papers on Psycho-analysis* ; 3rd edn. (London. 1923). (A valuable series of essays devoted to many aspects of the subject)

WILLIAM HEALY, AUGUSTA BRONNER and ALICE MAE BOWERS : *The Structure and Meaning of Psycho-analysis* (New York. 1930). (A detailed and up-to-date review and commentary)

T. W. MITCHELL : *Problems of Psycho-pathology* (London. 1927). (Medical and general)

SIGMUND FREUD : *Totem and Taboo* (London. 1919). (Anthropological)

The Ego and the Id (London. 1927). (A classical treatment of certain more recent developments)

J. C. FLÜGEL : *The Psycho-analytic Study of the Family* (London. 1921) (An introductory sociological treatment)

VARIOUS AUTHORS (ed. ERNEST JONES) : *Social Aspects of Psycho-analysis* (London. 1924). (Sociological)
BARBARA LOW : *The Unconscious in Action* (London. 1928). (Educational)
R. MONEY-KYRLE : *The Meaning of Sacrifice* (London. 1930). (Religious and anthropological)

The dates of Freud's works are those of the English translations. Certain further references to books dealing with special topics are given in the footnotes.

THE BEGINNINGS OF MORALS AND CULTURE: AN INTRODUCTION TO SOCIAL ANTHROPOLOGY

By

R. R. MARETT

SYNOPSIS

Anthropology, the science of Man, divides into Physical and Cultural branches that are severally concerned with body and mind; and of the latter, while other sub-divisions deal with handiwork and language, the most important section is Social Anthropology, namely, the study of moral institutions and ideas. As for method, any enquiry into the historical development of morality must start from the instincts; must thence go on to observe how reason supervenes on instinct to lend conscious direction to the process; and, finally, must show by reference to the facts how conduct conforms to the change of control involved in this substitution of intelligence for blind impulse. Now the instincts, though the biological function of all alike is to promote the survival of the species, fall into two main classes, according as they either directly subserve group-maintenance by way of mating, nursing, and herding, or indirectly do so by enabling the individual to achieve self-maintenance through self-protection, self-assertion and self-sustenance. When man's instinctive endowment is thus analysed it turns out that, as compared with other animals, he shows no deficiency in this respect, but on the contrary has so many of these predetermined tendencies that in practice they would conflict and hold one another up, were it not that the resulting instability affords intelligence the chance of bringing experimentation and choice to bear on this wealth of possibilities. At the primitive stage of society, however, intelligence has but shaken off the tyranny of instinct to succumb to that of habit. Morality is of the customary type. Externally viewed, it depends on a law, religion and education that insist on rigid conformity to convention, a sort of tribal drill. In its internal aspect, again, the moral judgment involved is uncritical, conscience amounting to a mere orthodoxy, and even the leaders of opinion depending rather on subconscious inspiration than on reflection. A review of the actual moral codes of savages illustrates this dependence on ready-made standards of right and wrong. As

the instincts can be distinguished as group-maintaining or self-maintaining, so the moral activities can be classified as making either for sociality or for personality. Under the first head come domestic, tribal, and inter-tribal forms of organization regarded as attempts to establish closer and wider relations between human beings naturally associated by blood or by local contiguity. A one-sided family life and narrow clannishness gradually evolve into a more or less well-disciplined tribalism capable of certain courtesies towards strangers. But savage society gets no further than this, imposing as it does too uniform and fixed a set of rules on its members to provide scope for the variability and initiative on which the possibility of a higher culture rests. Under the second head, however, fall agencies that help to build up a moral personality of a rudimentary type, so that both manliness and godliness come to serve as ideals on which the individual may model his life. Such manliness is pictured chiefly as the power of cutting a brave figure in society. The godliness, on the other hand, is more clearly conceived as a state of the soul; but primitive religion is more successful in prescribing negative obligations in the form of abstinences than in enjoining a positive scheme of good behaviour. Even so, though it does little to clarify morals, it greatly helps to heighten morale.

THE BEGINNINGS OF MORALS AND CULTURE: AN INTRODUCTION TO SOCIAL ANTHROPOLOGY

INTRODUCTORY

Adjacent Fields of Research

All distinctions are drawn at a venture, and even the distinction between Physical and Cultural Anthropology—in other words, between Man's body and his mind, together with the things into which he has put his mind—is not quite so radical as might be supposed. It is not a question merely of those cultural adornments that become more or less permanently attached to the body, such as the tattoo-marks of a savage or the civilized man's false teeth. In so far as our bodies take outwardly or inwardly the impress of our habits, or, in biological language, in so far as concerns acquired as opposed to inherited characters, the anthropologist of the body has to consult his colleague, the anthropologist of mind and society; and in practice, whatever may be the case in theory, it is hard to prevent an overlap between the two kinds of work.

Next comes another set of distinctions, also difficult to determine exactly, that fall within the sphere of Cultural Anthropology and enable it to be broken up into sections employing each its own appropriate methods, and its own body of special students. Thus Technology, which deals with the products of the human arts and crafts, whether useful or decorative in their intention—in a word, with what is known as Material Culture—forms one group of studies. A second comprises Linguistics, which examines the various speech-forms of Man considered apart from their literary outcome; the latter topic being treated as the affair of the third group. This remaining section, by far the most comprehensive of the three, is known as Social Anthropology. It is with it alone that we have to do here.

Before proceeding to consider it in detail, however, two further points about classification must be noted. The first is that General Anthropology, as it may be called, embraces all the topics already mentioned. So far as it tries to use their several results in combination—as notably when it tries to account for the Distribution of Peoples in the light of their racial peculiarities, arts, languages, and social customs, regarded as one and all contributory to their ethnic or national individuality—such investigations may be termed ethnological in scope; and in this sense General Anthropology may be said to culminate in Ethnology. It goes no further, however, because it is not a Philosophy of Man, but only a Science of Man based as directly as possible on his Natural History. It is, in fact, simply a highly specialized and developed branch of Biology, the science of living

nature in general, of which Man is in a way a small part; though it is the part which he wants to understand most and on the whole has the best chance of understanding, having an inside-view of himself and of no other creature.

The other point is that both General Anthropology and its various subdivisions draw freely on other sciences which, though to this extent subsidiary, occupy more or less independent positions of their own, such as Geology, Physiology, Psychology, and so on. Of these the two most immediately concerned with Anthropology are, perhaps, Prehistoric Archæology, which is especially helpful to Technology, and Anthropo-Geography. The latter describes the human Environment—which forms with Race and Culture a triad of basic conditions that Anthropology assumes to be together responsible for the making of Man. It only remains to add that, while every anthropologist firmly believes his science to apply to mankind in general, it is only with the more uncivilized kind of man that he is at present free to deal as he pleases. So far, the enquirer who tries to take a biological and therefore universal view of human history has no weight with or control over the student of civilization; who, treating culture of the Western type as an ultimate fact, is consequently bound to mistake his relative for absolute values. It is for the future to adjust the focus better—to decivilize history, as it were, in the sense of humanizing it more impartially and completely. Here, however, in accordance with existing custom, only primitive man will be considered—primitive, that is, whether in the sense of old or in that of old-fashioned. For, as the French put it, there is a modern as well as an ancient prehistory. Pre-history of course only means pre-literary history; and fortunately there are other historical documents besides books—harder to decipher, perhaps, but sometimes less lying.

Scheme of Enquiry

If a student, for worthy or unworthy reasons, wanted to acquire the rudiments of Social Anthropology at short notice he might be advised to give his mind to two topics, Social Organization and Religion, the study of Institutions and of Beliefs; and to leave the rest, the Economics and Law on the one hand and the Ethics and Aesthetics on the other, to fit in as best might be contrived. This means that one can broadly distinguish between the external forms in which any human society displays its activities and the inner meanings and purposes on which the activities in question ultimately depend. Man being what he is, and always has been as far as our backward view extends, namely, a social animal, we have a right to posit as our datum-fact the human society rather than the human individual taken by himself.

To ignore the individual, however, as the sociologist is apt to do, losing sight of the trees in a wholesale but blurred contemplation of the wood, is fatal to a true understanding of our dealings with one another. For the gregarious habit has its limits. The struggle for existence proceeds, in however mitigated a form, within each society; while the strength of the social bond would seem, in turn, to depend largely on the support that it gives to each co-partnership in a fiercer struggle waged with the rest of humanity. Whether, however, we base the human society on mutual need

for purposes of common self-assertion and self-protection, or insist rather on the consciousness and love of kind which certainly helps to foster such association, the fact remains that for the historian the unitary human agent whose activities he studies is not this man or that, but a group of men forming some sort of body politic and more or less in charge of their own affairs.

Given, then, such a society, it will inevitably have a structure, just as if it were really and not metaphorically a body ; while, to pursue the same analogy, there will be functions corresponding to the structure. Like the body, then, the social organism will likewise exhibit processes of feeding, breeding, fighting, maintaining health, recuperating by means of rest, and so on. In terms, then, of such a morphology and physiology of the body politic, we could stop short at describing all the outward manifestations of the social life. It would be as if one were to visit a foreign country without knowing a word of the language, and were nevertheless to draw up a description of the visible behaviour of the people. Yet clearly such an account would be very imperfect. Another traveller, who was at home with the language, would double or rather treble its value by supplying the motive—the more or less conscious why and wherefore—of everything that was done.

In short, a Social Psychology is needed to supplement the mere surface-view of the life of any given people. For Man is not only the social animal but the self-determining animal above all others. The ultimate clues to his actions must be sought within himself, whatever the behaviourist may say. Indeed, a behaviourist philosophy which would explain life exclusively in terms of matter and motion is either physical science gone mad, or, more probably, it is sheer narrowness of education. Here, at all events, the human universe will be viewed as if its true centre were the human mind. What may be broadly termed morals will be treated as the clue to the social life in the sense of the outward manifestations of the pursuit of good. The sources of human character will be examined as it realizes itself in and through human conduct. It only remains to add that, since we are concerned with mind as something that develops, we are bound to cast back some way into the sub-conscious or even unconscious. It would be fatal to forget that the social mind—so far as one can talk of such a thing at all—has also this side to it. As a branch of biology, anthropology is bound to interpret the history of human intelligence as an evolution proceeding gradually from unconscious instinct on and up towards conscious reason.

So much, then, for the scope and method of the present enquiry. A. We shall start with a search for the human instincts. B. We shall next try to discover how, thanks to the intervention of conscious purpose, they are converted into moral sanctions. C. Finally, the ensuing conduct will be considered in sufficient detail to bring out that moral quality which is the only true test of the degree of culture, or self-cultivation, therein achieved.

A. THE RAW MATERIAL OF MORALITY : THE HUMAN INSTINCTS

Man has had moral freedom in sight ever since he emerges into history. Primeval instinct may retain some slight hold over him, but it has none of

that absolute grip to which the rest of the animal world is subject. The blinder the response to stimulus, the lower the rate of individual survival—such is the law of the evolution of life. Instinct merely ensures that what is done is often enough right to maintain the given kind in being, whether one in ten or one in ten million be lucky enough to hand on the torch. Intelligence, on the other hand, stands for economy in the spending of vital energy. For it implies that, whereas the function of Nature is still to hint that one path for all lies ahead and common rules of the road must be followed, nevertheless considerable discretion is left to each wayfarer to pick his own steps. At most, then, our racial inheritance consists in a vague sense of direction together with a certain ability to keep going along this line. The rest is, broadly, a matter of free choice. Instead of instincts that would master us, we have impulses that act as our servants, at any rate so long as we are in a fit state to rule, and are not in the plight of those sick souls that cringe to some overpowering passion.

An impulse can be recognized by its emotional tone, which preserves the primitive character displayed at the level of animal instinct. Thus, suppose a man to be suddenly startled, he will feel afraid; but he will probably, at the same time, feel curious, or perhaps angry, or else submissive. All these emotional reactions to the situation reveal the presence of so many expert assistants, each of them ready to carry out instructions in his special way at the bidding of the will; so that the man will run away, or draw near, or fight, or grovel accordingly. For the psychologist, then, the analysis of the emotions probably offers the most effective means of classifying our instinctive tendencies; which such a method proves to be many and complex. Here, however, it will suffice to group them more roughly by reference to their function of providing morality with its raw material. Now we have a social and an individual side to our life, but it would seem that it is only through sociality that moral individuality can be achieved; so that for our present purpose the social aspect should be given priority.

Correspondingly, then, we may arrange the human instincts under two main heads, according as they are more directly concerned with the claims of others or with those of self. One can think of them as the instincts that severally subserve co-operation and competition; but it must be remembered that they are there, not to pull against each other, but to pull together, since all alike have been evolved as instruments of racial survival.

(*a*) *Group-maintaining Instincts:*

In the first group, then, are the instincts relating to group-maintenance, which can be considered under the three heads of mating, nursing, and herding. Of these functions mating and nursing—in other words, reproduction and the care of offspring—obviously go close together, but have to be distinguished inasmuch as, at a lower grade of organic life, the one can exist without leading on to the other. Now just as sexual reproduction is the most direct means of securing the continuance of our species, so it is the most powerful and all-pervasive of the human instincts; and it hardly needed the testimony of Freud and the other psycho-analysts to remind us of so insistent a fact.

To a corresponding extent, then, the history of morality must largely turn on various steps taken to regulate this primal urge. Instead of perpetual freshets and floods, an orderly flow of this mainstream of the passions can be brought about only by the most elaborate canalization. So uncompromising and severe are the sanctions that from time immemorial have repressed illicit forms of love, that the horror excited by the occasional violation of these ancient taboos has come to seem almost natural, that is, instinctive ; whereas the never-ceasing sense of strain attending a controlled sexuality is enough to remind us that habit, though reputed a " second nature," can never amount to an altogether effortless rule. It is only fair to add, however, that the theorists are by no means agreed as to the precise point at which the line is to be drawn between the instinctive and the habitual, the natural and the artificial, the animal and the purely human. Thus it is still a burning question whether a repulsion against close inbreeding is congenital or, on the contrary, an effect of early marriage-custom. For the rest, we are probably entitled, on the strength of various analogies drawn from other animals, to include in the sex-complex certain incidental tendencies, of which jealousy, modesty, and self-display are leading examples. It remains, also, to note that sex-instinct in Man is by no means to be treated as a constant, since its intensity varies with age and perhaps, to some extent, with season ; while there is reason to suspect that vigour in this respect as between the different human stocks is not always the same.

Next, as regards parental instinct, we may take its strength, and more especially its duration, as a fair measure of superiority in the matter of organic development. It is to be noticed that the two parents play different, and not always equally onerous, parts in the maintenance, protection, and education of their young ; the animal world providing cases in which the male, or more rarely the female, is relatively remiss in regard to such duties. In this connexion it should be noticed too that the impulses to breed and to nurse are so far independent that, just as a hen will bring up alien chicks, so there is a type of human society in which brothers bring up their sisters' children to the utter neglect of their own.

Finally, the herding instinct, though involved to some extent in any form of family life, may be treated as something specific, inasmuch as there is a marked difference between the solitary and the gregarious types of animal species. Curiously enough, the man-like apes, to which the biologist is most inclined to turn for his clues to the very early history of Man, are decidedly prone to form small rather than large groups, such as find favour with other members of the simian tribe, as, for instance, the baboons. It has been suggested that the decisive change occurred when man became a meat-eater and thereupon found it expedient to hunt in packs like the wolves. But it is quite doubtful whether he has ever done so. On the contrary, the unitary human group of effective common life may always have tended to be small at the hunting stage of society, when it normally takes many square miles to feed a few. Be this as it may, mankind must all along have enjoyed a group-life sufficiently intense to afford expression to impulses that make either for greater solidarity, such as self-subordination and self-devotion, or else for better understanding, such as imitation, suggestibility, sympathy and, in a wide sense, concerted

play. Given, then, all these propensities naturally disposing men to draw near to each other, one chief task of morality was to organize them so that they should work together for good, as far as the moral life consists in co-operation.

(*b*) *Self-maintaining Instincts :*

In the second group are the instincts relating to self-maintenance, and these can likewise be treated as threefold, according as they are concerned with self-protection, self-assertion, or self-sustenance. It is for the racial advantage that each individual, however social in his disposition, should likewise be able to shift for himself, and to some extent at the expense of the less able and worthy ; but on the other hand these instincts, though primarily self-regarding and competitive, exist ultimately for the good of the species as a whole no less than do those which immediately further group-life. Self-protection is clearly the biological purpose of the fear-instinct, which in the opinion of the psycho-analysts is exceeded only by the sex-instinct in the power of its grip on the human organism, to judge by the violence of its effects in the case of the mentally dissociated. A remarkable feature of the fear-complex is the number of specialized reactions which it comprises. Thus, one may be moved either to run away or to keep still in the presence of danger ; while many minor phobias have been distinguished, each governed by its own form of terror. Indeed, it is a nice question whether the anthropologist may not look for an inherited as well as a purely traditional element in the fear almost universally excited by particular kinds of objects—blood, corpses, snakes, and so on, the strongest case being perhaps that of ghosts. Yet, however different they may be in other respects, these experiences agree in being " *asthenic*," that is, literally, strengthless, involving a lowering of the vitality, a sinking of the heart, as if a reinforced weakness were Nature's reminder to be prudent.

The self-assertive type of instinct, on the other hand, such as anger or pugnacity, has the opposite function of heartening and bracing. Nevertheless its association with fear is very close, since it needs some sort of alarm to set the counter-attack in motion ; and indeed the most timid of animals will put up a good fight if brought to bay. It is to be noted, moreover, how intimate is the connexion between the fighting instinct and the rivalries of the mating season—a point which well illustrates how an apparently self-regarding disposition is really of racial service. As compared with other animal types that are better armed in respect of tooth and claw, Man would not seem to be in general suited to gain his ends so much by brute courage as by cunning ; though there is reason to think that considerable differences in regard to inborn fierceness exists in various human stocks that have severally adopted aggressiveness or submissiveness as their leading rôle ; for both are ways of survival.

It remains to notice the self-sustaining type of instinct, which in its most fundamental form is concerned with nutrition. One hardly knows whether to postulate greediness, or fastidiousness, or the recklessness begotten of sheer hunger, as the natural cause that turned Man into a carnivore, or, rather, an omnivore with carnivorous leanings. In any case he has seemingly been hunter long enough to have acquired a specific

hunting-instinct, which is distinguishable from the fighting-instinct by the accompanying emotional tone, though in many respects akin to it. Whereas anger pivoting on fear is the characteristic note of pugnacity, the hunting temper subordinates ferocity to an acquisitiveness united with curiosity, thus involving a certain play of the intellect such as underlies the sense of sport. Instead of merely seeking to drive away or destroy, the hunter is out to assimilate. In place of anger, his disposition involves a kind of love and interest, even if it starts as a mere cupboard-love, a pregustatory interest. Indeed, since animal analogies show hunting to be associated with collecting and storing, the acquisitiveness thus bound up with hunting, or at any rate with nutrition, is evidently at the root of the property-feeling; and thus plays an all-important part in the building up of human culture, seeing that culture on its material side is simply a hoard of properties. It has only to be added that self-sustenance is the biological end of the whole health-preserving process covering exercise, cleanliness, and sleep, and we have brought to an end our review of the organic capital laid up, as it were, beforehand for the human being to spend at his own discretion—and risk.

In a sense, it is a very rich endowment. We have so many instinctive tendencies that in practice they inhibit one another, and give the will the chance of throwing its weight on this or that side of the balance. Human conduct, regarded in a broad historical way, is anything but natural. On the contrary, it always seems exceedingly arbitrary, not to say odd; and we should rejoice in the fact, because eccentricity and individuality are twins. We have broken away from Nature regarded as the sum of the blind impulses pushing us along from behind. Rather, we trust to a forward-reaching faculty that depends more on hope than vision; and are engaged in a campaign of experimentation on so vast a scale, that every petty people has diverged into habits of its own on which it stakes its very existence. Thus, at the far end of the historical process we clearly discern an animal of uniform type which differs from the rest only in being somewhat over-endowed with instincts and to a like extent unspecialized and unstable. Yet, at the near end, represented by the present, we find the lineal descendant of that same animal enjoying an amazing variety of experiences; out of which, were he as wise as he is ingenious, he might surely select the make-up of a good life.

B. THE MORAL SANCTION: CUSTOM

In escaping from instinct Man might seem, at first sight, to have but fallen into the hands of another and a worse tyrant, namely habit. For a habit is, in a way, an accidental precipitation, and hence a limitation, of an instinct. The first reaction that happens to occur tends to repeat itself, with the result that other possibilities of impulsive response are suppressed. Thus, one of the firmest postulates of the psycho-analysts is that some single experience in very early childhood may produce a persistent emotional bias; so that, for instance, a life-long horror of cats may result from one infantile encounter with an aggrieved kitten. So too, then, accident has left many traces on the history of human society. Moreover, whereas individual habits are not transmitted to the

next generation, social habits—in other words, customs—can under primitive conditions have an almost age-long duration.

Such continuance, however, depends on some sort of disciplinary system which brings a steady pressure to bear on every member of the group. Apart from it he would have no such social habit at all, and despite it he is ever ready to deviate from the average line of conventional conduct. It is but slowly that society learns to distinguish between deviations for the worse and deviations for the better, and to this day no sure criterion exists for differentiating the reformer from the criminal. Early politics being petty but desperate, a life-or-death affair, no risks are taken, and a premature martyrdom is apt to overtake the innovator, not to say the genius. Travellers who know the savage well do not find him by any means lacking in originality; but they universally testify to the strictness of a social code which recognizes but one type of behaviour as incumbent on all.

We have, then, in a word the character that marks off primitive from advanced morality, when we say that the former is customary. Right or wrong for the savage is simply as custom decrees. It makes little difference whether one considers the matter from without or from within. Not only are the traditional rules enforced in their entirety, but likewise in their entirety do they feel and seem obligatory to everyone involved. These two aspects of the moral sanction, the external and the internal, are worth examining at greater length.

(1) *External Aspect*

Externally viewed, the moral discipline to which the individual savage is subject from the cradle to the grave depends on a social organization, an established scheme of co-ordinated activities. As when a boy joins his school, or a young man his regiment, the new recruit is faced with a curriculum, a drill, to which he must outwardly conform whether he likes it or not. At first he is almost bound to resent being licked into shape, especially as the licking is not all done by means of the tongue. His natural plasticity, as it were, registers an inward protest against the stiffening that is relentlessly exercised by the mould. In time, however, there steals over him a sense of inevitability that ripens into a positive acquiescence in a set of rules, the real purpose of which may even now be scarcely understood. If anyone has a clear idea of the meaning and value of the whole set of arrangements, it will be the authorities, the elder folk, in charge; but they in their turn have been through the mill, and, in proportion as they are supine and stupid, will be content to carry on in a mechanical way. A test of the relative intelligence with which they perform their duties of instruction will be the extent of their reliance on persuasive as contrasted with purely coercive methods. Obviously they are likely to convince just in so far as they can show reason for what is done. It must be noted, however, that the reason implicit in morality is as much an affair of the heart as of the head. Unlike logical reasoning which, at least in appearance, moves forward, ethical reasoning always looks back in order to justify something that all along has been more or less self-evident, namely, the goodness of the good life.

A great deal, then, of the desirability of any orderly mode of social existence needs no explaining any more than does the swing of a good dance; and, so long as it goes with a swing, one kind of dance is almost as satisfying as another. The trouble is, however, as we have seen, that in social no less than in individual experience accident has a way of twisting and cramping the play of natural impulse, so that it is difficult to recover from bad tricks that have been picked up at the outset in some casual and almost insensible fashion. Thus the function of reason in morality is largely the negative one of purgation; for it is only by realizing that the tricks are not part of the style, but on the contrary are so many impediments and contradictions that interfere with the pleasant rhythm of the social round, that men slowly accommodate their concerted actions to one of those relatively equilibrated systems of controlled impulses which are healthy and therefore happy. Now no savage society has yet acquired any considerable power of self-criticism, so as to expurgate its customs by reference to its own dominant notion of good. Though it may be vaguely aware that it has got into bad ways, it cannot break with them because it has not yet learnt to look them in the face; for, if once they have been brought into manifest consciousness, they can be mastered. Thus it took civilized society a long time to face the evils of slavery, despite all its skill in clothing its sentiments in articulate language. How much more difficult, then, must it be for a body of savages to rid itself, say, of human sacrifice, however loathsome and burdensome such an institution may proclaim itself to the feelings of all, so long as it is not seen for what it is in itself apart from the salutary elements of the religion with which it is confusedly associated? In what follows, then, our chief interest must be to note how far intelligence enters into the social drill—in other words, how far the reason for the rules prescribed is given together with the bare order to conform.

(*a*) *Law*

On its purely coercive side, custom is equivalent to what an advanced society knows as law. What Bagehot calls "the persecuting tendency" is alive in every human breast, as a boy at school soon finds out if he departs from the ways of the majority. Moreover, every crowd follows its leader, so that there will always be some whose authority, however indefinitely exerted or recognized, governs the actions of the rest. Again, a human society is a crowd which remains in being through constant recruitment on the part of the newly born, who during their long pupilage are bound to find their leaders among the elder generation. Some sort of parental discipline, in fact, is the natural beginning of law; and indeed family jurisdiction remains an important branch of legal procedure throughout the incipient stage of its evolution. So early, however, is the age at which the lesson of obedience is learnt in the savage home, that within its purely domestic range primitive morality is apt to seem almost automatic, and punishment is rarely administered or required.

Nevertheless, within the domestic group, which tends to be a one-sided affair consisting of the mother's people or the father's people—the former system being presumably the earlier—there are fundamental laws to be observed, such as notably three:—to avoid sexual relations

with group-mates ; to avoid killing them ; and, if they are killed by outsiders, to kill these in turn. These three laws of the blood are so engrained in the moral nature of the savage that one is tempted to overlook their social origin ; which must be traced back to very ancient insistence on the domestic proprieties, possibly on the part of the mothers whose blood was the symbol of social decency and honour. Nor need we suppose that any mercy would be shown to the rare offender against the laws of the blood, a moral leper whose unclean presence was intolerable.

On the other hand, outside the domestic circle were other groups with which less sympathy would be felt, since the ties produced by intermarriage would be offset by vendettas and other sources of quarrel. Thus when any sort of tribal organization involving a central authority comes into play, a far greater difficulty is experienced in bringing the pack to heel, and the situation demands a more liberal use of the whip. It is in fact a case of fighting down the tendency to fight among themselves, and this is rarely accomplished without the interposition of strangers who impose social order in their own interests in the form of servitude—an unwelcome discipline on which all civilized peoples must, to some extent, look back. Hence, it is not until tribal society, with its more or less loosely organized system of kin-groups on one social level, gives way to the class-system which is characteristic of a nascent state, that a strong and centralized law comes into force. Up to that point such punishment as is publicly enforced may mostly be treated as a by-product of religion.

(*b*) *Religion*

In a way religion may seem just as coercive as law, or even more so, inasmuch as its prohibitions are backed with threats that take the form of curses. Such curses, moreover, are wont to take effect palpably and at once, since primitive society, in order to avoid universal pollution, is prompt to rid itself of the offending member by a sort of surgical operation. Thus, humanly as well as divinely regarded, a sin is even more deadly than a crime. The real sanction, then, of custom in the early society is that it is largely sacred. It is unforgivable to do anything likely to bring ill-luck on oneself, because ill-luck is catching. There can be no arguing about the utility of a taboo, namely, an avoidance resting on a religious sanction. It is unconditional—something that simply cannot be done. Even when a man is punished for acting in a way that is obviously prejudicial to the public advantage, the savage is apt to invert the reason for his fate by supposing that he must have brought a curse upon himself or he would never have behaved so badly. This sacrosanct character which attaches to tribal usage, entailing a ceremonial punctiliousness that extends to the last detail, affords the true explanation of that conservatism which the civilized man who comes into contact with the savage finds so unreasonable, because it rests on no plain grounds of common sense.

It is easy, however, to overlook the fact that primitive religion is not all negation, but has its positive side. To observe taboo is to enjoy *mana*, namely, spiritual power, or strong-heartedness, an equally infectious thing. So long as the group can feel that its collective luck is intact, it

is sure of itself. Call *mana* morale, and one can see how spiritual welfare is more important than temporal welfare to hard-pressed folk ever on the edge of starvation, whose native pluck is their one permanent stand-by. Thus the old-world community is not wholly to be blamed, if it finds the adoption of improvements, pressed on it by some alien culture, about as hard as it is for a civilized church to alter its prayer-book. The root-feeling is a sort of veneration for the ancestral wisdom and piety that have made the people what they are, that is, what they would like to believe themselves to be. Their theological justification for such a sentiment may be rather mixed, conceived as it is likely to be in terms of totems,[1] ghosts, nature-spirits and so on. But the quantitative effect of the moral sanction is in direct ratio with the qualitative, because the social rule is infinitely more binding when the tremendous import of the divine is superadded. Savage faith—or, as some would prefer to say, primitive credulity—is strong; so that, for instance, an oath is no vain form, but suffices to turn a human trial into what our own Middle Ages called a "judgment of God." A secular law may always be dodged; but there is no dodging a conviction of sin. Indeed, nothing is wrong with the spiritual armour of the savage except that it is inelastic.

(*c*) *Education*

Whereas coerciveness is a leading feature not only of law but likewise of religion at the primitive level, since on the whole it might be said to lay more conscious stress on the fear of taboo than on the hope of *mana*, there are also gentler influences at work that more or less persuasively inculcate good behaviour. As for the moment we are considering the moral sanction on its external side, we can ignore all that the individual picks up for himself, living as he does cheek by jowl with his fellows and taking part in everything done or suffered by the rest. Teachers, however, are not wanting to school him in his tribal duties. Until the age of puberty, as a rule, nothing systematic is attempted in this way, and more is learnt in imitative play than from the direct injunctions of parents and kinsmen. On the other hand, when as often the initiation ceremonies are of an elaborate and prolonged character, the novice undergoes a disciplinary course that is calculated to make a man of him at any cost to his private feelings. In Australia, for instance, apart from a good deal of terrorism, conjoined with symbolic rites intended to promote bodily growth, there is no little instruction of a doctrinal kind in all that pertains to tribal lore.

It is to be noted that these tutorial functions are exercised, not by the youth's own kinsmen, but by the males of the group into which he is destined to marry, who thus make sure that he is worthy of such an alliance. Incidentally, this give-and-take between the kins in the matter of the training of the young shows that one and all are being taught to take more than a domestic view of their moral duties, and, in a word, to feel and think tribally. It is no wonder that, when with advancing years they play an increasingly prominent part in these and other solemnities, the more intelligent acquire a good working knowledge of all the niceties

[1] See Glossary, p. 430.

of the customary code. Thereupon they proceed to sit with the rest of the experts on more or less formal councils which, though largely administrative, would seem occasionally to introduce changes amounting to fresh legislation.

Moreover religion, even when of the rudimentary type, does not entirely lack the individual note; and the inspired man is permitted to indulge in innovations that militate against ritualistic stagnation. In fact, in its small way tribal life keeps the mind busy with affairs that, if carried out without much discussion of principles, are nevertheless so immediately before the eyes of all concerned that their bearing on the general welfare is never in doubt. In savage society one does not need to think much about a duty that stares one in the face. At the same time, too, one's neighbours are only too ready to point it out, if they deem it necessary to do so.

(2) *Internal Aspect—The Pre-ethical Conscience*

To suppose that the savage has no sense of right and wrong is, of course, an absurd mistake. He is inwardly guided by standards that, in a way, have all the more hold upon him because they are uncritical and unreflective. In the orthodox man " the native hue of resolution " is not " sicklied o'er by the pale cast of thought." He is secure in his judgments and correspondingly vigorous in his actions until a new situation finds him unprepared, when all becomes confusion. It is notorious how utterly a primitive community becomes demoralized if suddenly forced to change its customs. To the average member of the static type of human society there seems to be only one possible way to behave. He has never tried to analyse his moral system into its elements, so as to discover their separate values apart from context; and so he cannot distinguish between principles and details. Since therefore he cannot pick and choose in the bestowal of his appreciations, which extend indifferently to everything sanctioned by convention, he may be said to lack moral freedom.

It is but just to note, however, that this is hardly needed, inasmuch as no free career lies before him. As Maine puts it, he is subject to a regime of status as opposed to one of contract. His duty is to live according to the station to which he is born, not to go forth experimentally to seek whatever station will accord best with his opportunities and merits. In a dynamic world, then, a man has to invent a moral character, whereas in a static one he has simply to imitate one. The savage, as it were, finds his part ready written for him; so that his business is but to render it correctly and not to " gag." Consequently, any departure from custom offends his moral sense, very much as a child dislikes hearing liberties taken with the words of a well-known story. Moreover, primitive orthodoxy is essentially a crowd-consciousness, and it is hard to resist the feeling that whatever everybody says and does must be right. The only glimpse that the savage gets of another point of view under a clan-system is through marriage into another kin, which at all events has probably another totem and a few ceremonies of its own, though one and the same general level of outlook prevails throughout. Morals, in short, amount to hardly more than tribal good manners. To do what is not done is the mark of the impossible person, who being strange is

unclean—unless, indeed, something superlatively forceful in his exceptional behaviour causes him to be accounted holy instead.

Wrong, then, in the savage eyes is more or less equivalent to taboo. It stands for everything and everybody that a plain man should shun. The standard by which it is judged is intuitive and almost æsthetic. It is a matter of good taste to recoil from anything so immediately offensive to the well-bred. It must be kept at a distance because one cannot touch it and remain pure, that is, a healthy member of the community. Since social health is identified with unanimity, the toleration of something alien must act like a spreading sore. Loss of conviction will entail loss of confidence, and the savage society that has lost its nerve is doomed. Indeed, there is here to be noticed a sort of echo of that herd-instinct which expels the sick or wounded beast. It is unsafe to live with it, and this is enough to condemn it. So too, then, savage justice takes little account of motive. Whether by his own fault or by sheer misfortune the offender has done something whereby he forfeits his right to associate with the rest. No excuse can alter the fact of his infectivity. Nay, he may already have conveyed the taint to his immediate surroundings, so that he and his alike will have to be banned.

As for right, on the other hand, this means for plain folk to be respectable—to stand well in the public favour. The man in the crowd may almost be said to think of himself in the third person, so much does he apply a crowd-judgment to the figure which he cuts in society. Of this exterior self he is exceedingly conscious, but of the intimate self within hardly at all. His moral personality is worn like a garment cut to the fashion, and he is uncomfortable in proportion as he feels untidy. Contrariwise, a sense of being well-dressed is the very secret of his strength. He hardly counts it suffering so long as it makes for a braver show. His ambition is to live in style—to be in the centre of the picture.

It must be remembered, however, that in the static type of society the appearance is in close keeping with the reality, since there is little to do which cannot be copied. There may even be a sort of intensive progress achieved by constant efforts to improve on the same model. A heightened morale will inevitably result if everyone strives to shine in the eyes of his neighbour. After all, much human energy is dissipated in making frequent changes, and it may well be that the more conservative type of human society has more gusto to throw into its untiring repetition of the familiar. The very sacredness that is imputed to the ancient and traditional would seem to indicate that old acquaintance is needed to stir the deeper feelings ; and, if a certain shallowness be observable in modern civilization, it may be because the pace is too fast. The moral experience, then, of the ordinary savage is not shallow in the sense that it fails to touch a deeper self in him, but in another sense it is, because this is a generalized, collective self—one that imposes the same set of repressions and liberations on all alike without regard to the variable element in human nature. It may be that savages breed more true to type than happens in the civilized society that is composed of many racial strains. Even so, though to wear the conventional self may afford sufficient play to the average man's nature, it is decidedly hard on such misfits as occur.

It remains to consider the psychology of the leader of a primitive

society; and this presents peculiar features. Among those who exercise more or less authority over the rest we can distinguish two classes which might be termed lay and religious. The first of these, which is altogether less important or even typical, is composed of those who simply represent the flower of the conforming majority—those who have made themselves conspicuous for bravery, liberality and whatever other virtues are generally admired. In a way these men of high average attainments form the very backbone of the tribe. And yet it is not to them that their society is apt to turn at times of crisis; for their strength lies in dealing with the normal.

To the second class belongs the type of man whose pre-eminence rests on a claim to supernatural power—*mana*. The two classes shade off into one another only in so far as any outstanding merit or success carries with it promotion from a lay to a spiritual status. *Mana*, however, is conditioned by taboo—by a precautionary withdrawal from the common pursuits of common folk. Broadly speaking, a man's holiness is proportionate to his remoteness. He must reserve himself for critical occasions, if he is to intervene convincingly when nothing but a miracle will save the situation. Thus he has a chance of developing a mentality differing from the crowd-consciousness of his fellows. By virtue of his social position he is thrown back on himself—introverted; while probably he is likewise, by his natural bent, disposed to be a dreamer. William James in his *Varieties of Religious Experience* has attempted to analyse the state of mind of the civilized visionary; but neither Christian saint nor Hebrew prophet can compare with the savage seer in respect to the obscurity of his thought-processes, which barely emerge above the level of the subconscious.

Especially hard is it to frame a moral estimate of the character that goes with this high-strung kind of temperament. From the standpoint of common-sense it is decidedly suspect, fluctuating wildly as it does, so that now it seems inspired but now fraudulent, now reaching towards the divine but now descending to the devilish. It may be then that the extreme cases serve mainly to impress the crowd and render it submissive, and that the real leaders of society are rather the men in whom ecstatic gifts are less in evidence than is a capacity for state-craft. Even so, the mere profession of sanctity entails a certain isolation that is favourable to self-communing and hence to the development of individuality. Leadership goes with independence of mind such as is denied to those who have no inner life.

C. THE WORKING OF THE SANCTION: MORAL ACTIVITIES AND VIRTUES

Our final task—and one that, if carried out in any detail, would take us far—is to examine the effects on human conduct and character of a morality of the customary type. We are trying to extract from the historical facts some answer to the question—What kind of good is to be got from a life that is ruled mainly by habit? A rational ethics suitable to a modern society might not be prepared fully to endorse Clifford's paradox, "It is not right to be proper"; but it would certainly go far toward

encouraging a critical attitude toward current practice and opinion, for the purpose of distinguishing principles of lasting value from the accidents and whims of the moment. At the same time, our world finds it hard to devise a system of moral education that will produce the good man who is at once broadminded and of strong character, because the heart lags a long way behind the head in adaptability, or, in plain language, emotional as contrasted with intellectual tendencies are inelastic if once they become set.

The savage, on the contrary, has no need to think about his duty, because the sentiments drilled into him early in his life can be trusted to last him to the end of it. He has the negative strength of the narrow-minded—a sort of obstinacy. He cannot die alone for a new principle, but he can die with his fellows for the old country and its old ways. His tragedy is that, brought suddenly into contact with a dynamic world which has little sympathy for his slowness, he must perforce be the martyr of a lost cause. Nevertheless, he is not an animal, with instincts that must literally be rebred in him if they are to be changed. He is a man with a culture, the artificial product of an education that must be constantly renewed if the culture, and through it the man, are to survive. His education differs from ours only in so far as it offers the individual the choice of only one kind of moral personality. It is a one-pattern system of tailoring. Fortunately human taste is so various, not to say arbitrary, that every little community the savage world over has struck out something characteristic in the way of a style ; so that it is, indeed, mostly because it is the heir of the ages that civilization has become so diversified a bazaar of fashions.

For the moralist, then, human culture is primarily an educative process, and it is in this light that we must here consider the advantages and shortcomings of a customary regime as illustrated by savage life. As the instincts were found to fall into separate groups, according as they chiefly had group-maintenance or self-maintenance for their biological end, so it will be convenient to distinguish moral activities, together with the corresponding virtues, under a like pair of heads, according as they mainly serve to foster sociality in the group or personality in the individual. The raw stuff of which human nature is composed consists of these two threads ; and, however much they may intertwist, education, which is as it were the dyeing process, allows the difference between them to appear in the finished article.

(1) *Activities making for Sociality*

(*a*) *Domestic Virtues*

The social life in a sense embraces all living humanity, not to speak of the other dimension in which it extends from our ancestors to our descendants. Within this somewhat indeterminate tissue of inter-personal relations, forming what might be termed the body of morality, all our collective activities take shape round a number of lesser centres. Thus, everyone belongs to some sort of body politic which provides him with his unit of social reference. Within this nucleus, however, there is always to be found a nucleolus or core of intenser sociality, the very hearth and nursery of the group-maintaining instincts. We can call this the home

circle, since, as will presently appear, the term " family " has to be used in a rather unfamiliar way if it is to cover all the facts.

Here, then, we have the groundwork of a triple classification of Man's social activities, according as they are domestic, tribal, or inter-tribal. We can think of every individual as ringed round with these three concentric spheres of duty towards his neighbours, who experience the warmth of his charity in a declining ratio at each remove of distance. To reduce these three degrees of social sympathy to one must be the abiding hope of ethics. Yet, since morality is more a matter of quality than of quantity, this can only be done, not by substituting a correct but cold cosmopolitanism for the old affection felt towards home and country, but on the contrary by promoting moral individuality, so that each member of the constellation should, as it were, throw out more heat for the benefit of the entire system. Charity must always begin somewhere, though it need not end there ; and for this reason the touchstone of the moral condition of a given people is best sought in the quality of its home-life. Without intimacy, there can be no love.

How, then, are we to conceive the earliest kind of home ? Do what one will, one cannot prevent history tailing back into pure mythology, and science can but see to it that facts and inferences are kept distinct. At most, then, we can frame a fairly accurate notion of the general conditions of human life in Europe for, say, the last twenty millennia, a matter of about a thousand generations—quite a short span if reckoned in terms of biological process. This northland type of man, fire-using, tool-making, cave-dwelling, was in culture already a long way ahead of forebears who must have surely picked up the rudiments of living humanly, or at least sub-humanly, under far easier conditions of climate, when they could camp in the open and find a sufficiency of animal, or at any rate, vegetable, food at all seasons. Dense forests would not suit their habits so well as rather open country, such as would likewise favour wandering and dispersal. The size of the separate bands would depend on the food-supply, and it is in economic terms that one must chiefly calculate the strength of the social bond. So long as gathering prevailed over hunting, in which department a more or less weaponless man can do little on an effective scale, the females of the group would be economically almost independent of the males ; and, if they had fire, they might even largely dispense with their protection. On the other hand, their child-bearing and nursing functions would render their life more sedentary than that of the men-folk, especially after the latter had progressed in hunting skill and become addicted to the joys of the chase. Nor need it be supposed that the claims of sex would permanently enchain the males, so long at any rate as mating was mainly governed by season. On the contrary, one might suppose that breeding-time would be the moment when intestine rivalries would periodically threaten to shatter the usually placid intercourse of what was primarily a " syntrophic association," in other words, a food-group.

Thus it is probably quite wrong to imagine the primitive horde as essentially a harem owned and guarded by an ever-jealous patriarch—a sort of Grand Turk. With just as much, if not more, right could one compose a myth of Amazons who are economically self-sufficient enough

to be able likewise to retain the initiative in the bestowal of their favours. Using their authority as mothers to stop in the young what they could not so well prevent in the old, they might at length succeed in putting their ban—one might almost say their curse—alike on mating and fighting within the home-circle. Given the proximity of more or less related and friendly bands, there would be no great hardship in obliging the young men to go abroad on amorous visits, especially when once it was understood by their neighbours that the compliment could be returned. Be these guesses sound or not, human society as we know it can provide examples of a well-established type of domestic communion in which only one parent is represented, namely the mother. Supported by her brethren, she manages her children without the father having any say in the matter; for he is but a stranger from over the way, just as her own brethren are strangers to the women with whom they go forth to consort.

Thus the basic principle of such a household is that those who feed together must not breed together—that sex is a disturbing factor that must altogether be suppressed within the home. It is usually known as the law of exogamy; but the term is not very happy in that it seems to render the rule as "Marry out," whereas its real import is, "Avoid incontinence within." The absolute stringency of the taboo may be taken to argue for its great antiquity; while the fact that incest is universally regarded as an offence against the sacred blood constituting the mystic bond of kinship points to its origination in the kind of group of which the breeding women formed the rallying-point and centre—in a word, stood for home. Since savages are still to be found who do not understand the physiological side of fatherhood, it is a fair assumption that in early times the mother would be credited with the entire responsibility for the child; while not only childbirth, but other mysterious incidents in the life of woman, would serve to make her blood at once a great taboo—a source of disaster for the heedless—and a thing full of *mana*, the natural symbol of the collective being and luck of the group.

Now, taken in its purely negative capacity as a rule that prohibits interbreeding between group-mates, the law of exogamy displays complete indifference as to what sort of sexual relations are formed outside. There is nothing in what it prescribes to prevent sheer promiscuity so long as it is confined to dealings with strangers. On the other hand, it might be assumed that sexual selection would not fail to operate in some degree; or, in other words, that individual mating preceded by some rude sort of courtship would prevail, even if it by no means follows that the ties thus formed would last for life. For exogamy merely implies that one can mate with any stranger, not that one must mate with all strangers without distinction. In short, it indicates one's "marriageables," not one's actual spouse; so that the theorists are wide of the mark who would deduce an original promiscuity from the wide terms in which an exogamic marriage-licence is cast. On the whole, we can but suppose that the duration of the union would depend on the amount of cohabitation involved. A more or less furtive assignation in the bush, or a liaison contracted in the course of some collective visitation of the youth of the other camp—for such saturnalian invasions occur to this day, and, as we hear from the Trobriand Islands, it is not always the young men only who thus

go forth to conquer—could create no real partnership, no joint interest in a common hearth and home ; whereas an attachment involving residence with the woman's group, or at any rate assistance rendered to it in the shape of presents of food and so on, would ripen eventually into a firm union.

In the existing societies that practise the extreme forms of mother-right[1] this kind of " labanism," or marriage by service on the part of the husband from without, is already for the most part in vogue. As in each group life becomes gradually differentiated, so that each woman with her brood tends to have a fire and shelter of her own, and perhaps a gathering-ground destined eventually to become a hoe-patch—for agriculture almost certainly starts as the woman's business—there will be a corresponding appropriation of the husband's services to the particular needs of the wife and her family. As soon as he helps to minister to her private necessities, his domestication has begun, and the claims of their common home begin to outweigh the duties that he owes to his kin. His kinsfolk for their part, however, long continue to regard him as having no right thus to rob them of their time by pandering to the wants of aliens ; and, if he does, are apt to require compensation for the labour that he has put into his wife's house or plot of ground. In such minds the very notion of the family as a bi-parental affair has scarcely yet taken shape.

It remains to note a consequence that is liable to disturb the peace of a group organized as a motherhood, if the stranger is tolerated as a visiting squire of dames. What if mother and daughter compete for the attentions of the same man, or he for his part uses his opportunities to throw over an older woman for a younger ? A rule that lovers must not look beyond their own generation will clearly make for group solidarity, and, however it may have come about, can be discerned at the back of the taboo of the mother-in-law—the most rigid of those avoidances which accentuate the separateness of all who marry under the law of exogamy. Whereas sexual relations between kinsfolk are offences against the blood, this does not hold of intimacy with the mother-in-law ; and yet this too is reckoned incest—a fact which incidentally proves that it is not instinct, but social convenience, that is the real sanction of these fundamental prohibitions. That " marriageables " must belong to another kin, but to the same generation, are roughly the two clauses of the exogamic law, covering every kind of inter-sexual connexion from a casual flirtation to a partnership for life.

Hence we find Australian tribes who label themselves according to what is known as the four-class system, which uses different names, firstly for alternate generations, and secondly for the inter-marrying sections of each of the pair. Thus of every four women a man knows at once by their class-names, while conversely a woman knows about every four men, that only one is a possible mate, namely, the one belonging to the opposite section of the same generation, while the other three are immediately recognized as ineligible. It is worth repeating, however, that this does not in the least mean that the cross-sections of any one generation are promiscuous in their relations. It would be just as absurd to infer that we are promiscuous within the limits indicated by the table of

[1] See Glossary, p. 430.

prohibited degrees in the prayer-book. Marriage within a class and marriage by class are utterly different things; and the chances are that when Aristotle described Man as a "pairing animal" he was not far wrong, however much the savage may be inclined to repeat, and thus multiply, the pairing process.

A great revolution came about when somehow kinship came to be reckoned as relationship on the father's instead of the mother's side. It is pretty certain that the change was not due to a recognition of the physiological function of the male, because there are patrilineal peoples in existence whose theory of how babies come is still on a par with nursery tales such as that the storks bring them, or that they are found under the gooseberry bush. On the other hand, the chances are that relationship at first implied physical contiguity—in other words, being born and bred in the same local group. Whenever, then, it became the custom for the males to bring home their wives, allowing their sisters to be similarly carried off to strange camps, there would really be very little point in distinguishing the children by the separate group-names of their mothers; at any rate unless these connexions with outside were allowed to override their prime duty, which is obviously to support their own daily companions.

Even if it be granted, then, that the earliest kins were at once matrilineal and matrilocal as the only way of accounting for the facts that blood-relationship and the blood-avoidance involved in exogamy relate primarily to the mother's blood, it might well happen sooner or later that a sort of revolt of the man might occur, whenever mating had come to necessitate enough cohabitation to make service with strangers altogether too onerous. If, for instance, there were a great disparity in numbers and strength between neighbouring groups, the male members of the more powerful one would be sorely tempted to make their brides come over to their own side where food and protection were more easily to be obtained. Having once asserted their authority in the form of wife-capture, they would retain it in any wife-exchange that was almost bound to ensue, since under the new system their sisters had still to be provided with mates; and, after a longer or shorter period of mixed nomenclature during which the children lived with their fathers but retained the kin names of their mothers, the paternal group-name would be adopted as alone suitable to express the social unity that comes of living together and acting as one body.

It might seem, indeed, that at this point a bi-parental family ought to come into existence; so that henceforth the child should be recognized as belonging more or less equally to both sides of the family. To some extent such a result would actually seem to follow, and we often hear of cases where the father and the maternal uncle alike exercise an authority which, however, is never so much joint as rival. It depends on the closeness of the relations between the various kins, how far interference with each other's concerns is tolerated; whereas, if they remain more or less mutually independent and even hostile, it is clear that a son must make up his mind whether he pulls with his father or against him.

There is, indeed, a moral principle deeply engraved in the savage mind that stands directly in the way of the possibility of anything but a

one-sided family under any system organized on the basis of kin. This is the duty of blood revenge. Two laws of the sacred blood have already been considered, which forbid the violation of its purity by either marriage or murder—the two abominable sins of the early world. But there is a third law hardly less cogent, namely, that of wiping out the alien shedder of kin-blood. This is not a taboo but a positive injunction, and therefore perhaps involves a slightly more conscious attitude than that of recoiling in horror from an act of pollution. But, if it be not obvious that the spilt blood of a comrade cries for vengeance, the funeral—and we know that funeral ceremonies date back to Neanderthal times, say, twenty thousand years ago at least—is bound to excite a wrath proportionate to the sorrow. Seeing, too, how prominent a part is played by the loud-lamenting women on such occasions, we can understand all the better how the cry of the outraged mother's blood makes itself heard. It remains to be added that the savage has scarcely any idea of a natural death, being little acquainted with disease, which is proportionately mysterious when it comes, while on the other hand he is exceedingly liable to some sort of violent end.

It is not unreasonable of him, therefore, to generalize all such visitations alike as murder on the part of persons unknown; and the fact that the aggressors have escaped notice is got over by supposing that they must have achieved their fell purpose by means of an invisible magic. Thus in Australia one must always slay a stranger—it matters not who it may be, since collectively the outside world is guilty—if the grief and indignation exerted by a kinsman's death are to be allayed according to custom. How, then, if one is perpetually persecuting vendettas with the inter-marrying kins, is one to settle down with them to an amicable division of interest in the offspring of a given marriage? Thus, let us suppose that a father has been slain, whether own or collective, by an uncle, whether own or collective. On a patrilineal interpretation of his duty, the son takes up the feud, but on a matrilineal view of it he must stand on guard against reprisals. Just so, when two modern nations are at war, an international marriage does not constitute the children neutrals, but they are torn between conflicting duties.

If, however, a one-sided mother-right is replaced by a more or less equally one-sided father-right, a radical alteration is required in the laws of the blood; and, indeed their original meaning and sanction have gone, since all-one-blood can stand only by a very forced metaphor for anything but all-one-mother. All-one-name, however, is a possible substitute as a symbol of unity, a sort of war-cry. As soon, then, as the local group of men who make their wives cross over are ready to rally to some such common badge, they have a peg on which to hang the old obligations not to inter-marry, not to inter-destroy, and to slay the slayer from without. Such a name and badge will probably be a totem, which, involving the idea of some relationship with, as well as through, an animal-kind or plant-kind, would help to invest the bond of fellowship, which is now simply a local tie, with a mystic significance likely to enhance its binding and sanctioning force.

As for the origin of totemism, a vast and obscure subject, it will be enough to suggest here that it is not likely to have come into existence with the patrilineal kin, if this is later than the matrilineal, but more

probably goes back as far, or almost as far, as the parallel institution of exogamy. In that case, since the totem would be ultimately connected with a food-group that was conscious of its unity through the mother's blood, the association with animal or plant giving rise to the common name would presumably arise in one of two ways. Either it would have to do with their staple-food, so that for instance they would be known as the turtle-men if they ate turtles, and understood the mystery of hunting and humouring the turtles; or else it might rest on some notion that the mother's blood was stimulated into childbirth by what she ate, or possibly by what she did not care to eat, during the nervous months of pregnancy. Be these guesses sound or not, the almost world-wide distribution of totemic designations, with implicated beliefs at least generically similar, would argue for the great age of the institution; so that, if father-right is relatively late, it would have had the totem-name ready to hand. Moreover, this would already possess a sanctity peculiar to itself, such as could make a group of stay-at-home fathers appear one body, not exactly as a fatherhood—for they may have still been fathers without knowing it—but rather as a brotherhood, who, because they were all named after only animal or plant, were bound to enjoy one *mana* and to observe one set of taboos.

With this complete reversal of the point of view from which relationship is regarded under father-right, the mother's position changes for the worse. It is indeed sometimes thought that, however matrilineal and at the same time matrilocal a human group might be, it could never be matripotestal in the sense of woman-governed; the reason being that the muscle is all on the side of the male. Now even if this be granted—and, although less heavily built, the primitive virago may have been both tough and fierce—authority has its moral as well as its physical foundations. If the earliest law and religion centre round the sanctity of the mother's blood, she—that is to say, the plurality of mothers from which the group drew its life—must enjoy a standing, as a sort of queen-bee of the hive, that cannot but ensure her a certain dignity and even power. After all, under mother-right every male, in so far as he plays the husband, must experience for the time being a sort of inferiority-complex, as one who exists on sufferance among strangers; whereas the womankind have all the while the uplifting sense of being at home with their surroundings.

But now let the process be reversed, so that the woman must quit the home of her youth, not temporarily, as under matrilocal conditions the male is apt to do, but so that her lot is exile for life. As they phrase it in Indonesia, she must perform a "deer's jump." Her people will have taken what is usually known as the "bride-price" for her, though it is really the price of the children that she is going to bear for the benefit of the other group. Hence they are in honour bound to have nothing more to do with her; or at most may be on terms of distant politeness, addressing her as "you" instead of "thou." The last thing that they desire is to see her sent back to them, because this means that for sterility or some other cogent reason she has been divorced and disgraced; so that the marriage-price must be returned, unless a sister will be accepted as a substitute.

From her point of view, the transaction in which she seems to us to figure as a mere chattel handed over the counter is not so degrading as might appear on the face of it. She has cost something to acquire, and her husband and his people will value her accordingly, if she does her mothering amply and well. Her real trouble is that the female society into which she now enters is without cohesion, a mixed lot of wives assembled from various quarters, and hence more likely to be jealous of each other and quarrel than to combine to keep the males in order. Even though under the new system her relations with her husband are likely to be more close and permanent, yet so long as the sexes live and work more or less apart, as is usual in savage society, she loses more than she gains, by becoming an individual mother instead of what once amounted almost to a collective one. Group-affairs as such henceforth concern the males only, and a domestic policy in which the woman is consulted shrinks to the question of how her particular brood is to be reared and fed. She can have no part in the rites that concern the local god or totem ; for its *mana* is independent of her blood or that of any other mother, and requires a new theory that somehow gives the united fathers the credit of passing on the corporate life and luck. Religiously, and therefore legally and morally, the inferiority-complex passes to the woman.

Economically she may be no worse off, and she may taste the petty triumphs of a queen of the harem ; but the glory has departed. She is now little more than a counter in a game played by men. The days being long over when gathering was the mainstay of human existence and she could vie with the male as a food-getter, she was destined to become ever more parasitic on the man as greater demands were made on the strength and skill necessary for big-game hunting, herding, advanced agriculture that involved the use of traction-animals, and systematic predatory fighting. As for her sacred character, to which the mystery of child-birth formerly bore witness, such a notion always fluctuates in savage religion between the opposite poles of mystic potency and uncleanness ; so that the very source of her earlier influence might, under altered circumstances, prove an occasion for multiplying her disabilities. Half-priestess and half-witch as she had always seemed to the mere male, he had to regard her chiefly in the latter light now that she stood no longer for social strength but rather for individual weakness. Thus if the moral position of women were to be made the sole criterion of social evolution, it might lead to some queer results.

It has been necessary, even at the risk of some very speculative reconstruction of the earliest history of the species, to bring out the contrast between mother-right and father-right in their most uncompromising forms, in order to illustrate the effect of a strongly developed kinship system on the moral relations of husband and wife. Before one looks into the facts it is all too easy to imagine that the early home consists of father, mother, and baby, and that by the time they are grandparents a nice little society has grown up with the original progenitor in command. In reality, however, it would seem that the individualization of the family, as a partnership involving common bed and board, is the outcome of a slow and tortuous process of evolution. So long as marrying out did not imply living out, love in absence had no chance of prevailing against the

sympathy of close but non-conjugal cohabitation. The woman's part was in these circumstances to play the mother rather than the wife, and her real home was the women's camp where the women and younger children slept together apart from their elder sons and brothers ; and the women's camp, thus hedged off from male interference, would doubtless act solidly, as well as shrilly, together in support of the feminine point of view. In the same way the men would be organized on a sort of regimental plan, according to which authority must be mostly a matter of seniority ; so that between them the elder women and the elder men would take the lead as groups rather than as individuals. Moral relations would thus be felt less as inter-personal ties than as collective obligations. There would be plenty of loyalty but little love. The mutual attractions would be felt in and through concerted movements of a mobbish type, and sex and age between them would determine conduct almost regardless of private inclination or capacity. It remains, then, to review shortly the group-attitudes that resulted from a domestic life dominated by kin in the place of the individualized family.

First, then, as regards the relations between the sexes, enough has perhaps already been said to show that the intercourse between them, so far as they involved no conjugal familiarities, would tend to throw a glamour of mystery over the woman's side of life ; such as would at once protect women from male bullying, and give them authority, more especially as peace-makers. For the rest, their relative importance as a sex would depend largely on two things—the value of their contribution to the food-supply, and the extent to which they managed to keep their marriage-arrangements in their own hands, so that they chose their lovers and were not assigned to them to suit their brothers' convenience.

Next, as to the relation between children and their elders—whereas the girls would form a permanent part of the women's camp and be duly brought up in its ways, the boys, as soon as it was advisable to separate them from their sisters, would go off to sleep and live with the men. There is no reason to think that here they would not be kindly treated. The relation between a youth and his maternal uncle is always marked by a friendliness that is conspicuously absent from his more formal attitude to his father, so long as there is any question of a divided authority. Indeed, it has been already noted that the terrorism which marks an Australian initiation is accounted for largely by the fact that it is practised on the novice by the inter-marrying group and not by his own kinsmen.

In any case the boys act and suffer as a class, and the fact that they are doing exactly what their elders did before them makes the educational machine run smoothly. The age-grades succeed each other like the waves of the sea ; and at any time the strength of the group, reckoned in males, consists of three major categories—a promising crop of youngsters, a corps of trained hunters and warriors in their prime, and a body of elders sage in counsel and versed in luck-bringing ceremonies. All are equally necessary to one another, and the normal group is well aware of the fact. One must not make too much of the occasional cases of infanticide ; or, at the other end of the scale, of senicide, namely, the putting away of the old and feeble. Travellers of the baser sort are fond of

adorning their pages with such horrors, but they accompany unusual conditions, namely, either a state of extreme privation, or one of degenerate slackness and irresponsibility. The typical savage takes the greatest pride in the fecundity of his womenfolk; and on the other hand is so amenable to the authority of his seniors that gerontocracy, the rule of the old, might fairly be said to be the earliest form of government. It must be remembered, too, that the living regularly believe themselves to be in the closest communion with their dead; so that the greybeard on his way to become an ancestor has all the more power to bless or curse credited to him, as it were, by anticipation.

To sum up about the kin or food-group conceived as the earliest type of social unit, it is not as my husband, my wife, my child, but as our men or women, young, middle-aged, or old, that one and all think of themselves in their most intimate relations with each other. To realize the collective personality appropriate to sex and age-grade is their only way of feeling, and being, at home. The moral law is summed up in the word "Imitate." The harness of custom will hold so long as every rank in the linked procession conforms to the movements of the rank in front. The philosophy of "follow one's nose" will suffice if fortified by an occasional growl from the older and stronger when the rear ranks break step or lag. A communistic system depends for its success on the average performance of the average man; and it was within the compass of the average intelligence to grasp that the primitive kin must not quarrel, more especially over its own women, and that it must share its takings in the way of food fairly and squarely. As for the male duty of protecting the breeding mothers, that must be done vicariously as long as a man ate at home but wived, and so all-unconsciously bred, abroad. So much, then, for moral life within the home—the circle of immediate symbiosis. Meanwhile, any kind of exogamy implies dealings with neighbours. What, then, of moral relations with them? On what minimum terms of mutual forbearance or positive amity can an inter-marrying union of social groups be established?

(*b*) *Tribal Virtues*

The tribe comes gradually into existence because to shake one's club at the foreign male, and to make eyes at the foreign female, prove in the long run to be incompatible proceedings. In proportion as marriage involves cohabitation between the parties, whether it is the husband or the wife that plays helpmate to the other group, two domestic circles must intersect. Nor can it fail to strike them sooner or later that, so far as they can act conjointly in consequence of this intermixture, they are twice as strong as against third parties. Before any such co-operation can occur, however, they must be able to converse in something better than the language of signs. Now we do actually hear of cases—one in point is that of the Carib invaders of the Lesser Antilles, who had killed off the Arawak males and appropriated their womenfolk—in which the wives speak one language and their husbands another. In such circumstances, however, there might well happen what both African history and Greek legend show to be humanly possible, namely, that the mothers should

bring up their sons to slay their own fathers in revenge. Normally, however, when the inter-marrying groups are on some sort of equality in power, not to mention culture and race, they are bound to come to terms about their matrimonial cross-connexions. On the matrilocal system, the barest toleration on the part of the woman's brethren towards her more or less furtive lover will induce the latter to protract his stay ; and, once settled in the new camp, he will have to pay for his keep by making himself useful.

A patrilocal system, on the other hand, will always be somewhat more difficult to establish, since it means some hard bargaining, prefaced it may be by not a little poaching, before the women can be parted from the society of their mothers. Somehow, male dominance must have reached the point at which the united wishes—we had better say the united curses—of the mothers have ceased to exert much practical effect. As for the hardship of being cut off from one's own people, that must depend on the extent to which the economic life favours close association between the separate food-groups. Even in the richer kind of game-country hunters need a good deal of room ; while fishing tends to concentrate round scattered spots on coast or river.

On the other hand, there will always occur seasons of plenty, or periods of interrupted labour during which the people live on their stored provisions wherever shelter is best obtained, when the scattered bands can assemble to hold high holiday together. We need to go back, however, to the etymology of the word " holiday " to appreciate the taste of the savage for collective ceremonies which stand with him for the highest value that life affords. Even food is not so important in his eyes as the mystic procedure whereby he seeks food and all other blessings at the hands of the unseen powers. For, however secondary its function when regarded as a means to living, his religious life has come to stand primarily and in itself for something more than living, namely good living. This common interest in sacred rites which gives all a sense of heightened being, in that it causes them to lift up their hearts together, is the chief source of such moral sympathy as gradually grows up between them. The firmest spiritual nexus of tribal life is a common worship.

That economics will follow in the footsteps of religion is easy to see. The so-called silent trade, when one party to the transaction nervously deposits his object of barter on a prominent stone, and retires into the bush until the other party has had time to remove it and substitute his *quid pro quo*, is a tiresome mode of commerce. On the other hand, a religious festival is at the same time a fair when, thanks to the prevailing " truce of God," folk otherwise none too friendly can indulge in the chaffering of the market without risk of coming to blows.

Again, law likewise waits on religion for its opportunity. The best way of settling a quarrel is, firstly, to get the disputants to meet and have it out, and, secondly, to bring this about in the presence of third parties, who have no interest in the matter one way or the other, and do not want to be disturbed by feuds such as always tend to spread. Thus in Australia a visiting group is expected to come out on its first arrival with everything unpleasant that it has to say about the conduct of its hosts, who are

equally outspoken in their recriminations ; the men shout and brandish their weapons, the women intervene, and, after much steam has been blown off, all cheerfully assume their party-manners. Similarly, on occasions of tribal assembly more serious cases of trouble between kins and local groups are disposed of by some kind of regulated fight, such as tends to become more and more symbolic, a mere vent for angry feelings ; as when the culprit is let off after he has stood up to a shower of spears or boomerangs, which he is usually quite competent to dodge.

All such association, then, under the stimulus and shelter of religion, clearly makes for peace ; and, even in a loosely aggregated society of semi-independent groups, between which a certain amount of sneaking murder persists on the score of blood-revenge, causes them in the long run to extend the area of moral obligation from kin to tribe. The separate brotherhoods come to acknowledge a common cousinhood. Human society has reached the stage of the multi-cellular organism.

Now the savage doubtless always remains collectivist or group-conscious in his moral outlook ; but at least he becomes aware, when the tribal spirit develops, of competing group-loyalties, of which the more intense has the disadvantage of being likewise the narrower. Common customs, then, and more especially, as we have seen, common religious customs, can do much to promote friendly relations. But something more than a diffused friendliness is required to bring home to the moral consciousness the subordination of kin to tribe as part to whole. Definite organization of a centralized type must be somehow evolved. In a word, group-regimentation implies an overhead rule.

Thus tribalism thrives on war. In North America we find the very word for tribe meaning those who fight together. War, however, has itself to develop from the loose skirmish to the serried order of battle, and the authority of the war-chief will vary accordingly. His best chance is to combine executive strength with religious prestige ; and the two tend to go together, since success and *mana* are for the savage almost convertible terms. War in its turn leads to conquest, and at this point tribalism, which is essentially a system of co-ordinated groups, passes into State-organization or polity involving some sort of class system. At its crudest the conquerors form a governing caste, while the conquered are little better than slaves or serfs. Unless inter-marriage is prohibited, however, between the upper and lower orders, an aristocracy of status will gradually be replaced by one of merit. For the rest, the rule of the stronger will assume the cloak of a superior sanctity, and custom will confer a consecration on the established regime. Morally dubious, however, as such beginnings may seem to us, let it not be forgotten that our civilization is their ultimate outcome, and that we have in the course of the process become ever more conscious of common interests, and of a common duty to promote their realization.

(*c*) *Inter-tribal Virtues*

Whereas savagery scarcely extends beyond the limits of tribalism, while on the contrary it may barely attain them, it must not be supposed that at this level of society the foreigner is regarded as a pure enemy, a being

without moral rights of any kind. Undoubtedly, in the early world, it is the only sound policy to bristle up on the approach of the strange dog. But his very strangeness is a protection to him, investing him with *mana*, a power to bless and to curse. It is quite a chance which aspect of him will prevail. Either he will be slain offhand ; or else he will be hospitably entreated, so that he is made free of board and, in the fullest sense, of bed as well. In Australia, for instance, a native will make long journeys into foreign parts, not without risk of sudden death it is true, but in the main safely, and on such terms that, as Lord Avebury puts it, he finds himself entitled to " a thousand miles of wives." When he turns up among a strange group, he will be closely questioned as to his identity, and must explain it in such totemic terms as the others can appreciate. Failing to do this, he will probably be speared ; but as soon as he has made good his footing he is welcome, and, if he has a new corroboree tune or step to impart to them, so much the better. In this way customs spread, and common culture makes for common understanding. Indeed, inter-tribal marriages are fairly frequent, and the subsequent initiation ceremonies, when the education of the future husbands is entrusted to the group from which the wives are to come, gather the folk together on a scale that might be termed incipiently national.

It is a long way further, however, in the scale of social development when, as in North America, a group of fighting tribes find it convenient to frame a pact whereby the entire confederation, so long as it is unanimous, makes war or peace together. Commerce, again, breaks down the barriers between alien peoples, and the trading voyages of the Pacific region are peacemaking in their effects, so long as the navigators do not find piracy and head-hunting more satisfying to the adventurous spirit. Meanwhile, movements of population due to various causes, mainly economic, disturb the social balance, beginning in clashes but usually ending in some sort of amalgamation ; so that the world grows ever more mixed alike in race and in culture. To this larger world the moral consciousness becomes slowly adapted ; though, if we are to-day more humanitarian than the savage in theory, our practice may still leave something to be desired.

(2) *Activities making for Personality*

(*a*) *Virtues constituting Manliness*

It has already been pointed out that, just as there are no instincts that have not the good of the race for their ultimate biological purpose, so there are no virtues that are strictly self-regarding ; since, in so far as they minister to our moral individuality, they are at the same time helping to make us more useful to our neighbours. On the other hand, even in the most communistic of primitive societies everyone must, as a matter of self-interest, mind his manners, lest he or she fall too conspicuously below the general standard of respectability ; for that way lies suffering, with sudden death as its downward limit. Even if the kin-group is lenient towards its feebler folk, these must approve themselves fit before another group is likely to allow them to mate with any of its members. Thus, although moral competition does not take the form of striking out in new

directions, there need not be any corresponding lack of individual enterprise as regards excelling in all customary pursuits.

In a word, the ambition of every savage is to live up to the fashion. As has already been said, he is not without a desire for self-realization, but it is an exterior self that he has mainly in view. By a sort of imitation turned inwards he identifies himself with a copy of what the best people do, and then tries to copy this ideal copy as faithfully as he can. If he can in imagination see himself making a good show, he is satisfied. Let him on the other hand "lose face," and his self-respect is gone. He cannot stand up to an adverse public opinion. Nothing is so galling to him as ridicule, however ill-deserved. He must always be on his dignity, and nothing is easier than to offend him by demeaning him in the eyes of his fellows. Half his troubles with the white man are due to more or less unwitting breaches of etiquette on the part of the latter, whose most radical mistake is to forget that the savage is a gentleman, and as such decidedly nice on a point of ceremony or honour.

Given, however, a sympathetic audience, no one is more ready to play the man; while, within her more limited circle, the same applies to the woman. We have only to think of the fortitude displayed by the American brave under torture. As sheer drama it is superb. Ringed round with his enemies, he will force them to admire him; and, since their moral standards agree with his, he doubtless succeeds in doing so. Now a self-esteem so closely allied to self-display has obviously its petty as well as its nobler side. It may produce the coxcomb as readily as the hero; many a savage warrior, in truth, being an odd mixture of the two, while as for pain, his wounds received in battle may well have cost him less than those incidental to his toilette. On the whole, however, we may say that this anxiety to shine keeps the average individual up to the mark alike in the essentials and unessentials of current conduct, so long as the social system is intact; whereas, if the cross-imitations are interrupted, the morals break down.

For the rest, a responsiveness to the social drill being more passive and less voluntary than a true self-control, which involves assent to an intelligible principle, the repression entailed is greater. Hence savage morality is apt to present the contradiction of a rigorism tempered by orgy. Periodically custom allows the savage to let himself go, usually on some religious excuse, and for the time being he seems to part company with all his moral rules. The false notion that this in his normal condition, instead of an occasional remedy designed, as they say in Ashanti, "to make the heart cool," is responsible for many an undeserved libel on the general character of worthy folk, who despite such outbreaks are for the most part steady-going in the extreme, as the stability of their institutions proves. We must blame the custom rather than the individual, if, in order to do the correct thing, he must at stated intervals behave as though temporarily intoxicated or downright insane. The same person can, when occasion demands, throw himself with equal abandon into duties that tax his powers of self-sacrifice to the utmost, more especially if a certain magnificence of gesture, as for instance in the way of reckless courage or equally reckless liberality, is thereby achieved. Making allowance, then, for the ready-made cut of his moral garb, we can see that it is

a proper man who wears it. Under civilization each of us has a far better chance of securing a fit; but even so the happy mean between uniform and fancy dress is none too easily attained.

(*b*) *Virtues constituting Godliness*

It remains to consider the effects of primitive religion on the inner life so far as these make for an increase of moral individuality, that is, of the power to choose, initiate and direct in all that relates to the good life. Over and above such manliness as can be fostered in ordinary folk, there is needed the supermanliness of those rarer spirits whose function it is to lead the rest. In the eyes of the savage such men stand nearer to the gods, or actually rank as gods. Hence godliness is no bad word to express the superior degree of enlightenment and driving force manifested in those whose natural gifts, fortified by a suitable education, mark them out for positions of social authority, with a social responsibility thereto attaching in strict proportion. One must not, of course, exaggerate into a difference of kind what is but a difference in the degree of realizable capacity as between one man and another. Yet it is plain that, so long as biological deviations from the average occur, it must profit a human society to utilize those conducive to its more intelligent management.

At the same time, social sympathy would seem to rest chiefly on the recognition of an equality of need rather than on that of an inequality of merit. If a human group is to remain morally at one, it will not do to emphasize the dependence of one part on another, but on the contrary to make the most of the common dependence of each on the rest. It is bad alike for inferiors and superiors to regard themselves severally as such; but one and all can afford to translate the superiority implied in leadership into something relative to the general good, namely an opportunity and a call for fuller service. The " super " of the superman may thus be, as it were, detached from him and represented as a capital value which really belongs to all, though lent to him on trust. It would be a fatal policy to level down all talents to the minimum, or even the average, ratio of efficiency; but to level them up by recognizing a transcendent or divine standard, to which even the best men with all their efforts can but imperfectly attain, is bound to bring out all the power that a lofty aspiration can excite in human nature. Religion, together with morality and education, must always support a doctrine of aristocracy; yet it must do this in conjunction with a doctrine of humility that proclaims a sense of infinite shortcoming to be the secret of all striving after the ideal, and makes this divine discontent with self the final test of human nobility.

Now primitive godliness is, from a civilized point of view, a very doubtful type of virtue, and if its moral value is to be justified it will be necessary to examine it at some length. The manly savage, indeed, we have not great difficulty in understanding, even if he sometimes seems to us to go to the wolf for his model of what a man should be. But we are suspicious of the man-god. Indeed, none of his modern analogies, consecrated king or infallible pope, canonized saint or inspired poet, can be said to enjoy an authority that is divine beyond all dispute. On the other hand, when biology puts forward a theory—of course it does not pretend to be an ultimate explanation—of genius as a happy combination of

unusually potent genes,[1] it does nothing to show why, and in what forms, society ought to utilize and respect it. A moral philosophy, then, needs to think of outstanding human goodness in some way better suited to its own purposes. Hence, so far as the savage can be credited with a conscious doctrine on the subject, its main tenets may turn out to be less inadequate than might at first sight be supposed. For the belief in *mana* more or less explicitly involves two assumptions : firstly, that all good *mana* is a gift to a favoured few who must show themselves worthy of it ; secondly, that it is meant to be used for the benefit of all.

Thus, on the one hand, the possession of *mana* is held to be conditional on the observance of taboo. Wonder-working is incompatible with self-indulgence ; nay, to be truly great a man needs to cut himself off from the interests and pleasures of ordinary life—must " scorn delights and live laborious days." Not only is he bound to face the stern discipline incidental to initiation, but he needs to maintain his austerities throughout life, lest his indwelling power should depart and leave him an empty vessel. If he is to inspire others with a faith in his helpfulness, he must first possess faith in himself ; for the impotence of the charlatan is proportionate to his want of self-respect. At all levels of society, including that of savagery, there are hypocrites whose sanctity is but an official smugness which they sport like a mask ; yet these count for very little beside the genuine leaders, in whom a certain honesty of purpose must always prove the secret of their strength.

Again, on the other hand, good *mana* is known by its fruits. An anti-social wonder-working is rated as black magic, and plain men see to it that the sorcerer dies the death. No doubt the use of good *mana* includes a power to punish with curse or excommunication, but this is strictly limited by the public interest, being simply a way of calling down the justice of heaven upon the backslider who is at once criminal and sinner. Indeed, the principle of the responsibility of leaders is so well recognized in the primitive world as even to be overdone. That one by his own fault, such as neglect of his taboos, should be forcibly deprived of his position of authority, is reasonable ; but it is hardly so reasonable that sickness or old age should condemn the worthy ruler to an abrupt and violent end. Yet such a doom is often allotted by custom to the savage potentate who, in the heyday of his powers, has been accounted to sway the very universe, to make the sun to shine and the rain to fall, for the benefit of his subjects. One of the many paradoxes of human religion is the view that it is possible to propitiate and honour a god by slaying him in another of his aspects. The primitive king, moreover, takes up office with a full knowledge of the conditions under which he must lay it down, and is thus in a sense a willing victim—one who identifies his sacred mission with his very life, and is prepared to revitalize with his own blood that power of superhuman guidance which must never grow feebler if the community is to last. On the other hand, such a death is regarded by all concerned as a translation to a sphere of greater majesty conjoined with usefulness ; for the tomb of the departed monarch becomes a shrine, his relics are prolific in miracles, and his ghost is uplifted to rank among the gods as a source of blessing to all future generations of his people. Even so, such

[1] See the Article on *Biology and Human Progress*, p. 238.

public divinity is only to be purchased by private suffering. Indeed, a regime of custom, as compared with one in which the individual is more free to choose, possibly offers fewer opportunities of evading the fundamental law of society that greater privilege stands for harder service.

It would be an endless task to consider in detail the many types of leading men whose social position carries with it a more or less sacred character, with a corresponding obligation to behave in a strict and circumspect way. From a modern point of view, we might be tempted to classify them according to their functions as lay or religious, chief or doctor; whereas really one and all in their own eyes are wielding a power which, whether inherent in their office or derived from ceremonies, is something, as it were, superadded to their ordinary personality, a communication of energy from a source lying beyond the range of common experience and unexplainable in terms of common sense. It is not, of course, as if none but a great man had any chance of access to such a higher plane. In the first place, all the public rites of the community have the same end in view, namely, that of tapping some sort of supernatural grace. In the next place, the meanest individual can expect his little share of *mana*—a slice of luck, a touch of inspiration. Yet, on the whole, it is reserved for the man of light and leading to play the part of intermediary between the people and their gods; and it is on such a theoretical basis that primitive government implicitly rests, being always in the broadest sense of the term a theocracy.

The anthropologist has to recognize that there are many possible ways of symbolizing the divine; but, however it is figured and explained, whether under an impersonal and quasi-material or under a personal and quasi-human form, it is universally believed to stand for all that human nature longs to enjoy more fully than it has yet—strength, wisdom, happiness, duration of days. At the same time the savage world at large is also conscious of something antithetic to the divine—another set of influences that conspire to encompass life with horrors and drag it down into death. Balancing uncertainly between these opposite stresses of supreme hope and supreme fear, the majority in times of peril turn to the few who can deal boldly with the critical situation. When the crowd panics, those in charge of the emergency exits must not lose their heads. In such circumstances the leader is called upon to show more confidence than perhaps he feels; and it is not only the bad doctor who tries to look wiser than he is. Hence it would be unfair to judge the man who is reputed to cast out disease-devils as a solemn humbug, because he sometimes seems to descend to conjuring tricks, as when an Australian medicine-man pretends to suck out magic crystals from the body of his patient. It is a professional gesture that is in strict keeping with the official tradition, and is adopted, without any sense of guile, as part of a treatment designed to carry conviction on the face of it. Indeed, in order to be popular all authority must somehow manage to be impressive; because simple folk believe mainly through their eyes. On the other hand, in order to appreciate the man who stands out among savages as of superior character and ability, we must endeavour to project ourselves into his inner life, so as to discover what kind of disposition it is that renders him so strong and efficient. Moreover, we may be sure that he

has not got what Plato would call " the lie in the soul," but on the contrary is upheld by a sense of being in touch with some higher reality. On its intellectual side this experience of *mana* is hard for us to interpret, because primitive theology is a mass of obscurities and contradictions. Morally, however, it likewise involves emotional conditions that we can appreciate better, since they reflect far more clearly than any play of ideas the common and abiding tendencies of human nature.

Rites may be divided roughly into negative and positive, according as their main purpose is either to keep away curses or to attract blessings. The evil avoided or the good sought is always of a mystic kind, that is to say, is held to transcend the ordinary alike in its causes and its effects. Hence, being such as to stir the mind to its very depths with transports of dread foreboding or else of exaltation, the experience in question tends to acquire more significance on its moral than on its material side ; so that the fears and hopes of the religious man come to be largely concerned with accursedness and blessedness, more or less clearly conceived as states of the soul.

Thus, to deal first with the subject of negative rites or taboos, a typical way of representing their object is to think of it as the avoidance of uncleanness. It is a spiritual uncleanness that is meant, though savage religion—and advanced religion is ever liable to the same fallacy—is apt to fall back on the literal sense of its symbolic act, so that, for instance, a savage will indulge in an endless number of lustral baths, or scour his inside with purges and emetics, in order to get rid of the sin for which the very name that he commonly uses means " dirt." Another difficulty of rudimentary religion is to distinguish between a moral and a merely ritual purity. Many taboos would seem to have begun as almost irrational phobias[1]—for instance, the fear of contact with woman's blood. Thus it is but gradually that round such casual centres of primitive attention there gather all sorts of vitally important obligations ; as, for example, the laws against incest and the murder of kindred may well have developed out of some such quasi-physical repulsion. Indeed, the path of the strict observer of tradition is beset with so many pitfalls, a devil lurking at the bottom of every one, that he may be excused if he is more immediately occupied with walking warily than with attending to the precise direction in which he is going.

Nevertheless, the mere act of restraining oneself from overstepping the bounds is not destitute of positive benefit. To practise chastity, for instance, may begin as a ritual precaution, but the self-control therefrom resulting is a spiritual asset, in that it promotes the sublimation of sexual desire[2] as well as otherwise assisting to discipline the character. The same growth of moral value can be noted in the case of fasting, or in that of the sacrifice of property. At first these are repressions of normal instinct induced by almost meaningless fears, causing good food to be treated as if it were poison, and useful objects to be thrown away as if they were infected with disease. Yet to endure such deprivations is good for the soul in the long run, not exactly for its own sake, but because it

[1] See the Article on *Psychology*, p. 345.

[2] For an account of the process of sublimation, see the Article on *Psycho-Analysis*, pp. 372 and 375.

affords preliminary practice in bringing the will to heel and using it as the ally of reason in the work of shepherding the passions. Hence, to be pure and to be strong in heart ultimately go together ; and thus not only negatively, but quasi-positively, his taboos afford the savage a lesson in godliness by exhibiting it as the moral opposite of all such spiritual dangers and temptations as are most damning, that is, deadly.

Turning to positive rites, we perceive their general import to be the securing of mystic blessings ; which in turn, as having the transcendent and infinite quality that belongs to the supernatural, come to be chiefly envisaged as an enlargement and uplifting of the spirit. Here, again, the savage tends to confuse the ritualistic with the moral effect, so that the rite itself seems as it were automatically to communicate the grace. Thus a primitive act of religion is, on a short-sighted view, easily mistaken for a sort of pseudo-scientific operation ; and the civilized observer contemptuously notes how the unpractical savage goes on cheerfully performing absurd experiments, the outcome of which is *nil*. It may strike a more penetrating mind, however, as a little remarkable that the world should have persisted through such long ages in taking all this trouble for nothing. It is true that men have always prayed to the gods for their daily bread and all other material kinds of prosperity ; but this is but part of a larger hope that embraces all good living ; which in turn really amounts to the inward experience that it is good to be thoroughly alive. Rites, duly carried out after a preparation conditioned by taboo, are found to yield *mana*. Having suppressed the flesh, the godly man finds that he has liberated the spirit. He has acquired a fresh self, and one with which it is more encouraging and altogether more satisfactory to dwell. Even aboriginal Australia can talk, like Dante, of a " new life," such as comes with and through the puberty rites, and is experienced in even fuller forms in the progressive initiations to which the adult is subject. If the primitive theologian be asked whence the *mana* comes, his answer is halting and mixed ; but he knows *that* it comes, while his ritualistic tradition also tells him how it is acquired. His religious experiments, it is true, may not always succeed ; for often he over-excites himself, and generates a sort of temporary madness. On the whole, however, the godliness of the savage may be reckoned the chief source of the morale that has slowly but surely raised humanity from the purely animal level to a civilized condition.

CONCLUSION

The anthropologist is a man of science, and is therefore not called upon to play the philosopher and interpret human history from the standpoint of the ideal—a precarious task, since the philosopher is a man like the rest of us, and has to construct his notion of the ideal and perfect out of elements which are tentatively selected from the actual and imperfect. Nevertheless, to consider ourselves in the light of what we may reasonably hope to become is our first and last duty as self-directing beings. Strictly subordinate to this end is, therefore, the function of a Science of Man which provides a preliminary statement as to where we are at present, and how we got there. Such a science, keeping clear as it tries to do of any theory of ultimate value, is not strictly qualified to affirm the reality

of human progress at all. After a fashion, however, and without prejudice to the final verdict of philosophy, it can do this by observing the results of Man's competition with the other related forms of life. Indeed, as far as knowledge of fact can take us, we are on firmer ground when we take stock of ourselves as evolved animals than as undeveloped angels. Thus, in a quantitative way, we can attest the increased dominance of our species by reference to the growth of population and the greater average duration of life. A qualitative criterion, however, could alone serve to justify the philosopher in claiming, as against the dismal assumption of cosmic indifference, that this long historical process stands for the gradual unfolding of an immanent good. He must be able to show that through the ages mankind has advanced from a less to a more satisfying kind of experience—that the meaning of life has been somehow enriched. Can any such conclusion, then, be gathered from the foregoing account of savage morality? What, perhaps, comes out most clearly from such a bare sketch of the main facts, is the preoccupation of the primitive mind with brave dreams that, however fantastic in themselves, react on it to stimulate desire and to enlarge hope. As far back as we can trace him, Man appears as a visionary who has lived on an overdraft and traded on credit. Since, therefore, something infinite attaching to his notion of good has hitherto helped him on his way, it might well seem sound policy on his part to continue steadfastly to imagine the divine, and to treat it as the only true measure of the human.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

The two most notable works on primitive morality are *Morals in Evolution*, by L. T. HOBHOUSE, 3rd edn. (London. 1915), and *The Origin and Growth of the Moral Ideas*, by E. WESTERMARCK (London. 1906). The latter's *The History of Human Marriage*, 2nd edn. (London. 1921), should also be consulted, together with SIR J. FRAZER'S great work *The Golden Bough*, 3rd edn. (London. 1911–15), and *Totemism and Exogamy* (London. 1910). Good introductions to the subject are to be found in *Early Civilization*, by A. A. GOLDENWEISER (New York. 1921), and *An Introduction to Anthropology*, by W. D. WALLIS (New York. 1926).

GLOSSARY TO TEXT

Totemism, as applying to the clan, is the system whereby a subdivision of a tribe identifies itself with an animal—or plant—species, using its name and claiming to be in mystic touch with it.

Mother-right stands for kinship as traced through the mother, being matrilineal in so far as the children derive their family name from her, matrilocal so far as they are brought up in her home and among her people, and matripotestal so far as they are under the legal control of her people and herself. Father-right implies the opposite of these conditions.

THE CHARACTERISTICS AND DISTRIBUTION OF THE HUMAN RACE: AN INTRODUCTION TO ETHNOLOGY

By

C. G. SELIGMAN

SYNOPSIS

Time and Space. Early forms of man, their antiquity and distribution ; the " missing link " — Criteria of race ; blood groups — Temperament and character.

Races of Man. The six great divisions of mankind, their distribution and physical characters.

Europe. Antiquity of man in Europe — Mediterranean, Alpine, and Nordic races ; their contrasting temperaments — The Turki peoples of Europe — The Basques.

Asia. Early man in Asia — Ethnic confusion in the Near East — The Eastern Turki peoples — Medes and Persians — Arabia, the home of the Semites — Palæo- and Neo-Siberians, reindeer pastoralists of the Tundra and Tayga — The Japanese ; importance of Ainu influence — China ; early civilisations ; contrast between northern and southern Chinese — The Moslems and Jews of China — Tibet — Mongols and Manchu — French Indo-China ; the " southern aborigines " — Malays — India ; Pre-Dravidian jungle tribes ; Risley's classification ; the caste system.

Africa. Main ethnic divisions — Hamites, Negroes and Bushmen — The pre-dynastic Egyptians and their modern representatives — The Arab invasions — Antiquity of the Negro in Africa — The true Negro ; the Negro-Hamitic peoples and their chief divisions, half-Hamites, Nilotes and Bantu — Negrito and Bushman — Hottentots — Indonesian influence in Madagascar.

America. Physical characters of population ; similarity of type, pointing to original common Asiatic parentage — Linguistic considerations — Culture of early immigrants — Food areas and cultural groupings — The Eskimo — Ancient civilisations of Maya and Aztec — The Chibcha and Inca — Savage tribes of South America.

Oceania. Australia and the island groups of the Pacific — Australoid fossil skulls in Java and Queensland — Migrations of Polynesians from Indonesia to the Eastern Pacific — Physical characters of Polynesians and Melanesians — Micronesia.

THE CHARACTERISTICS AND DISTRIBUTION OF THE HUMAN RACE: AN INTRODUCTION TO ETHNOLOGY

INTRODUCTION

Time and Space

In this Article we shall limit ourselves to the existing species of man, *Homo sapiens*, to which all the living races of mankind are conventionally referred. Moreover we shall consider only those forms of man that exist at the present time or have existed in the recent (holocene) period in which we live, and even here we shall confine ourselves to living peoples, referring only occasionally to the neolithic period and ignoring the earlier representatives of *Homo sapiens*—men of the Aurignacian, Solutrean and Magdalenian periods, *i.e.* of the latter half of the Old Stone Age—as well as their epipalæolithic (mesolithic) successors, transitional to the New Stone Age.

Yet, in order to have a background for our living races, it is necessary to make mention, however bare, of the older species of mankind which furnish the most important fossils of the palæolithic age. Fig. 1 (after Elliot Smith) represents the relative position of the more important species and genera of extinct man in relation to the races of the present day. It will be noted that none of these early men stand in the direct line of ascent of modern man; we have in fact to give up the traditional idea of the "missing link." There is indeed no single missing link joining us to the apes, but innumerable forms bringing us nearer as we go back in time to the common anthropoid ancestor. "In our first youthful burst of Darwinianism we pictured our evolution as a simple procession of forms leading from ape to man. Each age, as it passed, transformed the men of the time one stage nearer to us—one more distant from the ape. The true picture is very different. We have to conceive an ancient world in which the family of mankind was broken up into narrow groups or genera, each genus again divided into a number of species—much as we see in the monkey or ape world of to-day. Then out of that great welter of forms one species became the dominant form, and ultimately the sole surviving one—the species represented by the modern races of mankind."[1]

It is perhaps worth noting that of the older forms Piltdown man (*Eoanthropus Dawsoni*) is a relatively large-brained type with a lower jaw resembling that of a chimpanzee—in fact the jaw was at first held by many to be that of a chimpanzee accidentally associated with fragments of a human cranium—while the recently discovered remains of Peking man (*Sinanthropus pekingensis*) is of the low heavy-skulled type, with a great bar of bone running across the forehead above the orbits, but with

[1] A. Keith: *The Antiquity of Man* (1915).

a jaw clearly related in form to that of Piltdown man. Nothing is gained by endeavouring to estimate the duration of the palæolithic in terms of years, but we may agree that the trend of modern research is to place its end in Europe some eight or ten thousand years ago, while the imagination best deals with its earlier phases in terms of changes of geography, fauna and flora; thus England, Ireland, and the continent were one, there was no English Channel, and a greater Rhine, with the Thames

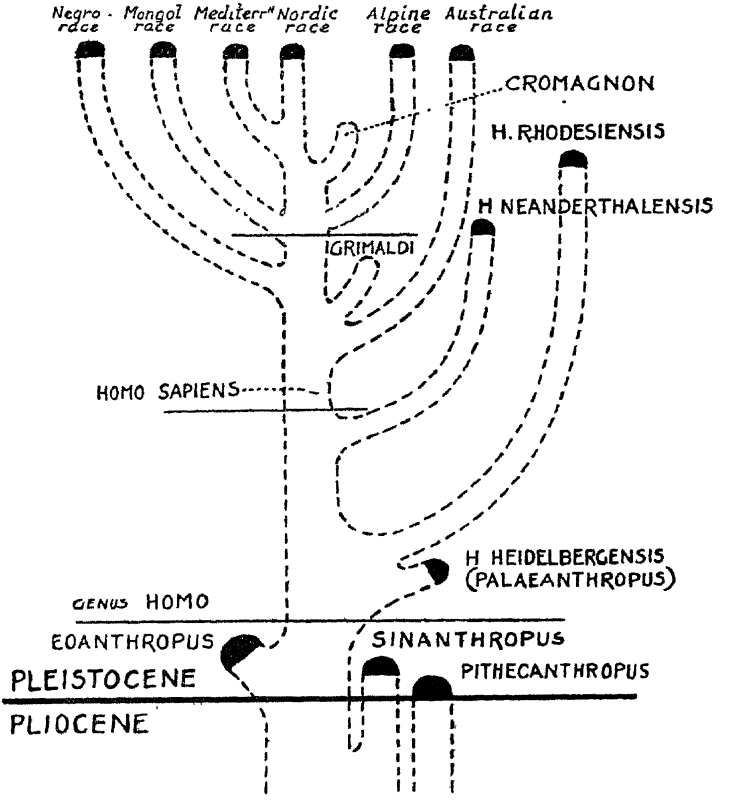


Fig. 1.—SCHEME SHOWING POSSIBLE RELATIONSHIP OF VARIOUS FORMS OF MAN

as affluent, opened into the Arctic Ocean somewhere to the south of the Faroe Islands.

Regarding the place of origin of man, we can only say that "somewhere in Asia" is regarded as the most probable; while as to the causes of differentiation of the main races of mankind, the only suggestion having even *prima facie* plausibility is that put forward by Keith, who regards the outstanding racial differences as directly due to qualitative and quantitative variations in the secretions of such glands of internal secretion as the thyroid, pituitary, etc. How far this fascinating hypothesis is true only the future can show.

Considering area in relation to time, *i.e.* the filling up of the world, if we accept Asia (whether East-Central or South-Western) as the cradle of mankind, it is worth noting that such early forms as Heidelberg and Piltdown man had reached Western Europe at the Chellean period—the dawn of the pleistocene, the recent or quaternary period of the geologists —while there is steadily accumulating evidence in the West of man's handiwork at an even earlier period, though no actual remains of tertiary man have yet been found. At the other extreme of the time scale, no substantiated trace of palæolithic man has yet been found in the New World, indeed all the evidence goes to prove that both North and South America have been peopled exclusively by our own race of man, *Homo sapiens*.

Here it is convenient to define two terms which we shall have occasion to use, *viz.* palæanthropic and neanthropic. The former is applied to all forms of man other than our own, the latter includes the many stocks of our species. In time, palæanthropic man as we know him at the moment is mainly of the Lower and Middle Palæolithic, but the discovery of Rhodesian man, an archaic form which persisted until a few thousand years ago, indicates how rapidly our knowledge may change. Neanthropic man appears in Europe with the Aurignacian period, *i.e.* at the beginning of the Upper Palæolithic.

The Basis of Classification

In attempting to define the term " race " we cannot do better than follow Haddon, who uses it to connote " a group of people who have certain well-marked features in common,"[1] with the addition that the group should be as large as possible, *e.g.* we do not speak of a Swedish race, although typically the Swedes as a group have certain well-marked physical characters, but we regard them as one of the chief constituent peoples of that much larger group having these same characters, which we call the Nordic race. While the number of characters that are to be taken into account is largely a matter of individual opinion—in the past there have been many systems of classification proposed—it is generally agreed that character of hair, skin, colour, stature, shape of head, shape of face and shape of nose, are among the outstanding criteria of race, with quality of hair as perhaps the most important, and it is these that we shall use in this Article.

These criteria are in the main empirical, only doubtfully to be related with environmental conditions. Thus, although it is true that the Negro race is confined to the tropics, and that in India skin colour is predominantly dark, it cannot be said that all or nearly all inhabitants of the torrid zone are dark skinned, witness Arabs and millions of southern Chinese, nor can more than a tentative case be made out for the association of a high nasal index with tropical conditions.

We may add that, apart from inter-breeding, the common criteria of

[1] A. C. Haddon : *The Races of Man* (1924). The author takes this opportunity of stating his indebtedness to this invaluable small book, and also, though, to a less extent, to A. H. Keane : *Man, Past and Present* (1920).

race are of extreme stability, and that if there ever was a time of considerable " plasticity " this is long past.

The criteria most generally useful are as follows :—

Hair:—This is generally recognised as of three qualities, *i.e.* " straight," " smooth, wavy or curly," and " woolly."

Colour:—Skin colour is more important than hair and eye colour, though dark skin and dark hair commonly go together while the correlation of hair and eye colour is by no means so close, *e.g.* in Cornwall and also in Brittany there is a dark-complexioned dark-haired light-eyed type of great physical attractiveness. As already stated, dark-skinned peoples are generally found in or near the tropics. On the other hand, there are a number of peoples living in the torrid zone who are true " Caucasians," belonging to the Mediterranean race, and such peoples (apart from sunburn and dirt) usually have relatively light-coloured skins, though these (wheat coloured to light brown, with perhaps a tinge of copper) are considerably darker than those of Europeans. The Hamites, especially the southern Beja (p. 467) of the Red Sea Province of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, are a good example of such " dark " or Allophyllian Whites, as they have been called.

Stature:—Here it is well to be precise : following Haddon, the terms " short," " tall," etc., will be used, wherever measurements are available, in accordance with the following table, stature being given in inches.

Pygmy ..	.. –58¼ in.	(–1.48 m.)
Short ..	.. 58¼–62¼ in.	(1.48 m.–1.58 m.)
Medium ..	.. 62¼–66 in.	(1.58 m.–1.68 m.)
Tall ..	.. 66–67¾ in.	(1.68 m.–1.72 m.)
Very tall ..	.. 67¾ in. +	(1.72 m. +)

That there is a considerable range of stature in most peoples is obvious, but here, as in other measurements, averages of groups of thirty or forty individuals come remarkably true ; moreover a tall race will not (apart from dwarfs) contain very short individuals nor a pygmy race tall men.

Head-shape:—Looked at from the side some heads will be seen to be long, others short (the hair must be discounted), while seen from above such heads look long and (more or less) round respectively. The various degrees of this distinction in shape are expressed by the Cephalic Index (living) or Cranial Index (skull), which is the ratio (or percentage) of the breadth of the head or skull to the length, the latter being taken at 100, *i.e.* C.I. $= \frac{B \times 100}{L}$. Except in artificially deformed heads it is uncommon for this figure not to fall between 65 and 90, and the vast majority fall between 70 and 85. The terminology commonly applied to this index (skull) is :

–75, long or dolichocephalic.
75–80, mesaticephalic.
80 +, round, or brachycephalic.

The difference of the index taken on the living and on the skull is about two units, hence the cephalic index can be converted into the cranial index by the subtraction of 2, and vice versa.

Character of face, prognathism:—Though a number of indices are in common use for the face, it does not seem necessary to discuss them in this Article. We are so accustomed to looking at faces that the terms "broad-faced," "long-faced," are self-explanatory, while all must have noted the varying projection of the forehead and cheek-bones (malar bones). Projection of the lower part of the face, especially of the lower jaw (prognathism), is common in Africa, and where it is extreme there may be definite "snoutiness." This is generally, and no doubt correctly, regarded as a "low" character, its opposite, "orthognathism," especially when allied with a prominent forehead, being considered "high" from the intellectual standpoint. But it should be noted that many Negroes have bulbous foreheads without being particularly intellectual, while the least developed races, with infantilistic crania, such as the Bushmen, may be relatively orthognathous.

Nose:—The nose may be long or short, broad or narrow, with its bridge flat, medium, or projecting. The relation of length to breadth is so important that it seems well to give the terms and figures commonly employed, and since there is no morphological identity of the nasal indices taken on the living and the skull, and no easy mode of conversion of one to the other, only the figures for the living are given. The index is again $\frac{B \times 100}{L}$, and the terms applied are :—

55–70 leptorrhine.
71–85 mesorrhine.
86–100 platyrrhine.

Noses that are broader than they are long (hyperplatyrrhine) are not very uncommon among Negroes. This index has proved of special use in areas in which the population is of mixed origin, *e.g.* in India it has been claimed that nasal index is an adequate guide to social status. The development of the root of the nose is important (low, medium, high), as well as certain forms of the nose. Here most of the terms are self-explanatory, but it should be noted that the so-called "Jewish" nose, though often called "Semitic," is not truly so, since the purest Semites have it not; it is characteristic of the ancient Hittites and their modern representatives the Armenians; it should be called "Armenoid," and where present in a typical form may fairly be taken to indicate the admixture of Armenoid blood.[1]

Lest it be thought that undue space has been devoted to very commonplace definitions, it may be stated that experience extending over many years has shown the absolute necessity, when writing for lay readers, to be extremely precise in definition if they are to grasp without innumerable photographs the significance of physical characters. Moreover, distribution maps of the various physical characters—stature, cephalic index, etc.—such as those given by Ripley[2]—should be studied whenever possible (*see Fig.* 2).

[1] These definitions and remarks have been taken from the author's work, *The Races of Africa* (1930).

[2] W. Z. Ripley: *The Races of Europe* (1910), with excellent maps of the cephalic index, stature, and complexion, in Europe.

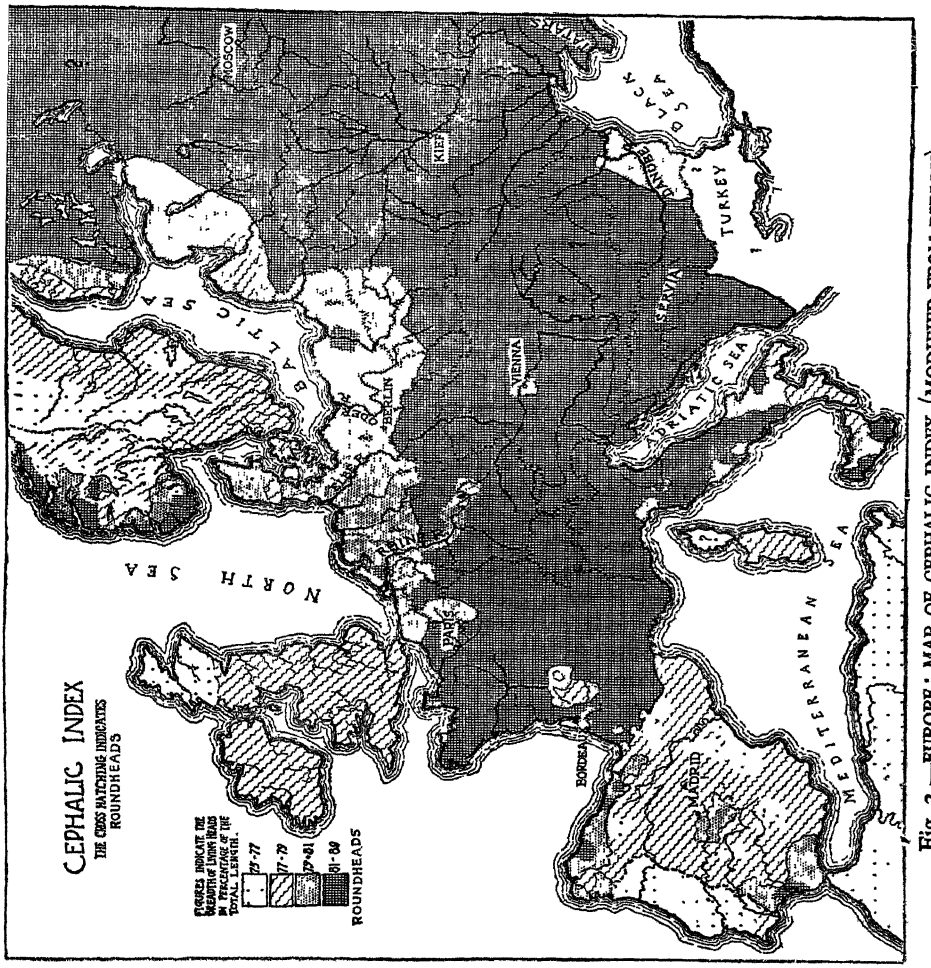


Fig. 2.—EUROPE: MAP OF CEPHALIC INDEX (MODIFIED FROM RIPLEY)

So much interest attaches to "blood groups," and such high hopes were at one time entertained as to the assistance they would prove to the anthropologist, that it seems advisable to devote some little space to them, though in the present state of our knowledge their importance is sensibly less than was at first hoped.

It was discovered in 1900 that there were definite substances in the serum of some bloods that would agglutinate, or clump, the cells of certain other bloods, and it was further shown that on this basis blood can be classified into four groups.[1] These groups are commonly represented by the Roman figures I, II, III, IV (sometimes by O, A, B, A B, with reference to the bodies theoretically causing agglutination) and the chief

[1] For a good account of human blood groups see L. H. Snyder in *American Journal of Physical Anthropology*, 1926.

anthropological interest of the blood groups lies in the varying percentages of each group in different peoples, for it was soon found that different populations—we dare not as yet say races, except in a restricted sense—were characterised by different frequencies of the four groups. Everywhere we find both II and III, but the proportion varies : *e.g.* to take large units, II is high in Caucasians, relatively low in Asiatics and Negroes, while III, comparatively high in the two last groups, is low in Europeans. Thus, in a general way, it may be said that while II is high in Western Europe this group falls in frequency towards the south and east, while III rises. But, with the exception to be noted immediately, it does not appear that the differences are sufficiently clear cut to enable the human varieties to be differentiated by blood tests. These tests, then, fail to justify the more extreme hopes entertained in the early years of their discovery ; rather must they take their place among the older and better-known criteria. Nor is this to be wondered at when it is remembered that groups II, III, and IV have already been found in the few orang-utan tested, while I and II have been found in the chimpanzee, for it is obvious that these facts indicate the high antiquity of the groups, unless indeed it be claimed that, unlike other anatomical traits common to apes and men, they are not part of a common heritage, but arose independently by parallel development.

There are, however, certain facts of great anthropological interest in the distribution of group I to which allusion must be made. To put it briefly, this group is found in an unusually high percentage of individuals of certain peoples occupying areas which are in a sense " outliers," so that it has been suggested that its presence in high frequency may be looked upon as an indication of the degree of isolation of the peoples in whom it occurs. A group of North American Indians (483), believed to be pure-blooded, give 91.3 per cent. of I, a percentage so high as to lead to the conjecture that before the Discovery the percentage of I may have been 100, while, as pointed out (p. 475), the variation in type in the inhabitants of America (other than arrivals in the last 500 years) has necessarily required a relatively lengthy period to come about. But against this must be set the Australians (1176), with a percentage of I of 52.6. This is only moderately high, and not so high as might be expected for the Australians on the isolation hypothesis. For it is a fact that the Australian must be regarded—for reasons that cannot be given here—as a more primitive and isolated member of *Homo sapiens* than the American Indian, while again the Australians show nothing like the degree of variation found in the latter. Actually the Melanesians of New Guinea (certainly with an element of Polynesian blood) and the Negroes of West Africa have about the same percentage of members of group I as the Australians. Moreover, one observer's figures give 45.5 and 54.5 of I and II for Central (Arunta, etc.) Australians, leading him to regard their blood grouping as ultra-European.

The following table shows at a glance some of the data—its figures taken from Ruggles Gates, *Heredity in Man* (1929)—furnished by recent investigators, on which the above paragraphs are based.

Population	*Number*	*Groups*			
		I	II	III	IV
Americans	5,000	44.4	36.0	14.2	5.1
Germans (Schleswig-Holstein)	3,156	40.7	41.3	12.5	5.3
Russians (Moscow)	2,200	32.0	38.5	23.0	6.5
Chinese	1,000	30.0	25.0	35.0	10.0
Hindus (India)	228	31.8	18.5	40.9	8.7
Gypsies (Hungary)	385	34.2	21.1	38.9	5.8
Australian natives	1,176	52.6	36.9	8.5	2 0
Melanesians (New Guinea) ..	753	53.7	26.8	16.3	3.2
Negroes (W. Africa)	325	52.3	21.5	23.0	3.2
Indians (N. America)	1,104	79.1	16.4	3.4	0.9

The similarity of the blood of Hungarian Gypsies to that of Hindus, amounting to practical identity, will be noted, though the former left their Indian homeland hundreds of years ago.

We may add, as facts of the greatest interest though only indirectly concerning the subject of this Article, that : (1) Although, as might be expected, a new-born child, in whose vessels its mother's blood has been circulating, is of the same blood group as its mother, its own blood group —determined by heredity—asserts itself after a few months, and this is not necessarily the blood group of its mother, indeed it often is not. (2) The inheritance of the blood groups is on Mendelian lines,[1] though there is some disagreement as to the exact formula.

It is important to distinguish between race, nation, and people. As already stated, race is defined by anatomical characters, but it must be emphasised that the living races of the anthropologist are not regarded as corresponding to the species of the zoologist, but rather to smaller groups, varieties or possibly sub-species. Moreover, apart from anatomical peculiarities, races may exhibit physiological peculiarities in matters to temperament, *e.g.* it seems agreed that Negroes are more musical than whites. " Nationality " stands apart from race and is in the main a matter of history and politics, indeed most nations are composed of more than one race, *e.g.* the British nation is mainly a mixture of Nordic and Mediterranean races. The term " people " is generally used in a rather indeterminate sense, usually fairly obvious and often connoting a group that is neither racial nor national but united by some other lien, as for instance language, or some other particular form of culture. Tribe is commonly applied to a unit of the lower cultures, whose members have a common tongue, and, like those of a nation, usually act together in external affairs.

Language, which has been more studied than any other single human activity, is of such vast practical and political importance that it is sometimes hard to remember that this is but a special form of culture, no more a criterion of race or of primary assistance in classifying peoples than any other cultural feature. But because of the large part that language has played in our lives and cultures, as well as on account of ancient habit, we do habitually transfer linguistic terms to racial units, and only use

[1] For a full discussion of the Mendelian Theory, see the Article on *Sex*, p. 261.

dictates whether this is " good " or " bad " anthropology. Thus we speak of Semites, though " Semitic " is essentially a linguistic term, and this usage is sanctioned by anthropology, while to speak of Aryans in a racial sense is not generally considered permissible, perhaps because of the enormous area peopled by the most divergent races over which Aryan tongues are spoken. Nevertheless, similarities and differences in language are so striking, often go back so far, and are of such deep significance, that everywhere in the less well-known parts of the world classification tends to be largely linguistic, as for instance in Africa, where the distribution of the great families of language (see map) in a broad sense corresponds almost everywhere with ethnic reality, so that in general outline ethnic and linguistic maps of Africa—except in the north—would agree if superposed.

Although the study of temperament is only beginning, it seems necessary to say something about this, for if temperament be regarded from the racial aspect it will be seen as an important expression of racial mental quality. We will therefore deal briefly, on the appropriate pages, with the races of Europe and two highly civilised peoples of the Far East, the Chinese and Japanese. There are, however, certain pitfalls that must be borne in mind and allowed for. Social position—class—is perhaps as important as race ; again, time, in the sense of the period of a civilisation, counts for much, *e.g.* to call the members of the oldest of Eastern civilisations " cruel " because torture and horrible modes of death were sometimes resorted to in recent times, with the implication that the white races are not cruel, seems little to the point in the members of a nation which two or three centuries ago used to " hang, draw, and quarter " its political enemies, while it is certain that no nation or people could have taught the Inquisition anything in the way of torture.

THE RACES OF MAN

The earlier attempts at the classification of mankind into a small number of great racial divisions are of historic interest only, nor is this the place to discuss the relative merits of the more modern plans, none of which are ideal. In practice the following scheme, with six races, and four or six great divisions of mankind, according as to whether we retain the term Caucasian as a synonym for the " white " man, probably works as well as any :—

The Nordic Race	Together comprising White or, to use a conventional but extremely convenient term, Caucasian Man [1]
The Alpine Race	
The Mediterranean Race	
The Mongol Race	Yellow Man
The Negro Race	
The Australian Race	

This is the scheme we shall adopt, though pointing out some of the more obvious difficulties, or at least infelicities, of nomenclature.

[1] Two other " races," the Dinaric (p. 441) and the East Baltic, are sometimes recognised, but are probably best regarded as of mixed origin.

No sooner is the Alpine race constituted than its western members immediately fall into two great sub-groups : the European Alpine roundhead, with a cranium that suggests part of a sphere, and the Armenoid of Asia Minor, with the back of his head (occiput) flattened, great basi-vertical height, and in the living a nose so definite in shape that it is given a special name, " Armenoid." As to the so-called Dinaric race inhabiting the head of the Adriatic and neighbouring lands, if it is not a race of equal value with the other three European races—as some anthropologists consider it to be—it must be regarded as a greatly modified variety of Alpine, or as a cross between Alpine and Nordic with perhaps a touch of the Armenoid. Again, in Central Asia and the Far East, there are two groups which are both certainly Caucasian and perhaps both Alpine. These are the Turki and the Ainu. The former have a yellowish-white complexion, abundant hair, and a tendency to obesity—a quality apparently running right through the Alpine race—very high brachycephalic head, straight and prominent nose and dark but non-Mongolian eyes. The Ainu of Japan and the neighbouring islands, with their mesaticephalic heads, hairy bodies, and rosy complexion, can only be regarded as of the white race, wherein, unless we call them proto-Caucasian and speculate no further —perhaps the wisest course—we may agree that they belong to the Alpine race.

The Mediterranean race includes not only such obviously related strains as the Hamite and the Arab, but is enlarged by some authorities to embrace the Dravidians of Southern India and Ceylon, with aberrant types of their own as extreme as the Todas, distribution going far beyond that admitted by Sergi, whose work, *The Mediterranean Race* (1901), is the *locus classicus* for the use of the term.[1]

Having pointed out these difficulties, we shall first describe the distribution and physical characters—the latter very briefly—of the six races of man, and then pass on to describe the chief peoples of each of the great geographical units of the world—Europe, Asia, Africa, America, and Oceania.

White or Caucasian Man

The Nordic race includes such North Europeans as the Scandinavians, Flemings, Dutch, many North Germans, and some Russians. Many English and Scotch—particularly the allegedly " typical," *i.e.* aristocratic type of Englishman—must also be included, though the basis of the older population of the British Isles was Mediterranean.

The Alpine race includes European Alpine and Asiatic Armenoid branches. To the European Alpines belong the Swiss, South Germans, Slavs, French, and North Italians. This branch extends into Asia, and to it must be reckoned the Persian Tajik and the mountaineers of the Pamirs, among whom a type prevails which tallies almost exactly with

[1] In 1911 Elliot Smith suggested the term " brown race " for the peoples of proto-Egyptian type, *i.e.* the Mediterraneans of Sergi, and for a number of people, or an element in the population, of lands outside Sergi's area—the inhabitants of Southern Persia, Mesopotamia, some coastal parts of Asia Minor and the Nēsiots of Malaysia (*The Ancient Egyptians*, 1923).

the Swiss representatives of the Alpine race. The West Asiatic branch, *i.e.* the Armenoids, is represented in antiquity by the Hittites (or one of the stocks entering into their nation), whose gods are pictured with the exaggerated Armenoid nose of the comic-opera Jew. At the present day the Armenoids are found in Armenia, the Levant, Mesopotamia, and Southern Arabia, and have given their characteristic nose to many Jews and Arabs. Of the Turki we have already said something on p. 441.

As already stated, it is doubtful whether there is a Dinaric race; if there is it must be included here.

The Mediterranean race includes the inhabitants of the Mediterranean peninsulas and islands—when these have not been overlaid by Alpines (Greece and much of North Italy)—of parts of Arabia (Semites) and of Africa north of the Sahara, where as Berbers they constitute the Northern Hamites or Libyans, even crossing the Sahara (Tuareg, and such tribes as the Cow-Fulani, *i.e.* those who have not absorbed much Negro blood) and so impinging on the Negro. All these may perhaps best be regarded as constituting a Northern branch of the Hamites. The Southern or Eastern branch includes Egyptians, Beja, Berberines, Abyssinians (with infusion of black blood), Somali, and Galla. It will be remembered (p. 435) that many of the peoples of this branch, even when free of Negro blood, are so dark complexioned that the layman, forgetting the quality of their features and the form of their hair, scarcely recognises them as Caucasians.

Passing eastwards, there are such less typical, indeed doubtful, "Mediterraneans" as the Tamils of India and related peoples.

Many Semites (Arabs and Jews) carry much Armenoid blood, a strain thought to have come in during the first millennium B.C. Apart from this, Hamites and Semites exhibit many physical and cultural features in common (including linguistic affinities), indeed there is good evidence for the existence of a former Hamito-Semitic culture.

The Mongol, or Yellow Man

The Mongol race, with many areas of interpenetration and contact metamorphosis, spreads westwards across Asia from the Pacific Ocean, nor is it possible to state its western boundary with any precision on account of frequent mixture and often confusion with stocks of Turki origin. It is however true to say that the great mass of the Yellow race lies east of longitude 80°. We have no certain knowledge of its area of characterisation, but considering the predominance of the Yellow race in Eastern Asia—with its great mountain ranges and former ice barriers of the Glacial Epoch—we may believe that its cradle-land lay in the area that we now call the Far East, south of 40° (the latitude of Peking), perhaps in the fertile plains between the Yellow River and the Yangtze-kiang.

"Wherever the race acquired its distinctive features, it wandered far and wide as soon as climatic conditions permitted, north into Mongolia, Manchuria and Eastern Siberia; west into Turkestan and Tibet; and south into Yunnan and Burma, and into what we now call Indo-China,

the Malay Peninsula, and the Malay Archipelago. Different groups had assumed distinctive characters, so that Northern, Southern, and Maritime Mongols became differentiated; and as the first and third of these subdivisions intermingled freely with other races their differences from the Southern Mongols (who exhibit the characteristic features of the race in their extreme form) became further emphasised. To interpret the physical characters of the people we have to picture members of the Mongolian group wandering away from the centre (where the most intensive specialisation of racial characters was taking place) before the process of differentiations was far advanced, for on the fringe of the Mongolian domain one finds members of the race differing less emphatically from other human beings than, say, the Chinese do. But as this fringe extended its wanderings, it came at length into contact with the expanding edges of other races, in particular the Alpine people in Central Asia, and the Indian and Indonesian people . . . in the south."[1]

The physical characters of the Mongols are particularly well defined. The skin is some tint of yellow or yellowish brown; eye brown, generally dark brown; the hair is coarse, straight (almost circular in section), and generally sparse, noticeably so on the face; the head is generally round (but in some groups mesaticephalic); the cheek-bones are broad, and so prominent that, taken with the characteristic absence of depression between nasal root and forehead and the slight development of the brow-ridges, the whole face tends to have a peculiar flatness, which is as characteristic and much more general than the very distinctive "Mongolian" eye. Where the "Mongolian" quality is well developed, the inner part of the upper eyelid is continued over the inner angle (inner canthus) of the eye, the skin fold so produced extending to and fusing with the skin at the side of the nose; it is this, with the narrow aperture between the upper and lower lids, so common in Mongols, that gives the proverbial narrow oblique appearance to the Mongol eye, the orbits themselves and their position in the skull not differing significantly from those of other races. Stature is usually short (about 64 in.), but the northern Chinese are often tall (70 in. or even more).

The Yellow race is usually divided into Southern, Northern, and Oceanic Mongols.

The Southern Mongols, who in recent literature are tending more and more to be called Pareoean, have a geographical distribution that includes Tibet, the southern slopes of the Himalaya, China and Indo-China to as far south as the isthmus of Kra. In general they conform to the Mongol physical type, but are perhaps rather shorter (this does not hold for Northern China) with an average height of about 63 in. Many Southern Mongols carry a considerable strain of foreign blood, *e.g.* the more civilised Tibetans (Bod-pa) are described as betraying a considerable admixture with Hindu elements, while the peasant folk of the bleak uplands (Dru-pa) have clear brown or even hazel eyes, and among their younger women rosy cheeks are quite common. In China too there are wide divergences from the type; thus in Northern China skulls are mesaticephalic (C.I. 77) rather than round, and, as already stated, stature is high.

[1] G. Elliot Smith: *Human History* (1930).

The great mass of Northern Mongols occupy Siberia, stretching from Japan to Lapland and coming south (roughly) to the Great Wall and Northern Tibet. Beyond this, west and south, there is a strong Mongol strain in many Turki and Finnish groups. Taking the Tungus as fairly representing the Northern Mongols, the highly brachycephalic skull of these and similar peoples gives place to mesaticephaly in some of the mixed groups, including even Siberian tribes such as Ostyak and Vogul (C.I. 77), while the Koreans, often with hazel eyes, have an aristocracy relatively tall and slim with long narrow noses. How this foreign strain reached Korea is unknown ; in Japan we may fairly attribute the rosy skin, which is by no means uncommon, to Ainu admixture, though this will not explain the long and narrow noses of the aristocratic type.

The Oceanic Mongols range over Indonesia (including the Philippines), Formosa, the Nicobars (much modified), and Madagascar. These are the shortest of the Mongols, the stature in some groups scarcely exceeding 60 in., and include the darkest skinned members of the race (some Malays). The hair is as among other Mongols ; the skin colour varies from a faint tawny yellow to reddish brown ; the skull is brachycephalic (sometimes mesaticephalic) ; eyes black, often with Mongol fold ; nose often small, with rather wide nostrils.

There is an undoubted connection both physical and cultural between certain island groups of Oceanic Mongols and some hill tribes of Assam. In the latter there is a very great variety in physical, especially facial, type, while in Borneo we can easily differentiate brachycephalic and mesati- or dolichocephalic types, some of whom show *inter se* a considerable degree of facial variability. This variability of head and face leads us to the conception of a long-headed stock which has to a greater or lesser extent permeated the island groups. This stock, often called Indonesian (resulting in much confusion), is better called Nēsiot. It is difficult if not impossible to isolate the type, for it has everywhere been mixed with round-headed yellow men. Haddon suggests that the Nēsiot type is short (60–62 in.), mesaticephalic—probably originally dolichocephalic—with black hair often tinged with red ; skin tawny to rather light brown ; " lozenge-shaped face, cheek-bones sometimes projecting ; nose often flattened, sometimes concave."[1] The Murut of Borneo (C.I. 73) probably contain as much of this Nēsiot blood as any other island people.

Lastly, we must remember that the Mongols have crossed the Pacific, *via* Behring Straits and the neighbouring islands, and peopled America.

The Negro Race

The Negro race has two great branches, an African or Negro, and an Oceanic or Melanesian. In connection with both these great areas there exist negroid jungle folk of diminutive size and of much lower culture than their taller neighbours ; these are the Pygmies, or Negritos, whose African representatives are often called Negrillos.

There is no satisfactory evidence as to the cradle-land of the Negro race, nor is the relation of Negro to Negrito at all clear in the natural history of man. While some authorities regard the Negritos as having

[1] *The Races of Man.*

arisen from their taller neighbours (by what can only be called degeneration) this view is not generally accepted and in fact seems untenable; rather should they be considered to represent an early human type, "infantilistic" both physically and mentally.

Although it is broadly true that the whole of Africa south of the Sahara is inhabited by "Negroes," by far the greater number of these (Nilotes, half-Hamites, Bantu) are not pure Negroes but carry more or less of Hamitic blood, the true Negro being confined to West Africa in the neighbourhood of the Guinea coast. The true Negro is tall (68 in.), woolly-haired, with a skin so dark that it is often described as black; stoutly built, short-legged, long-armed; the head dolichocephalic (C.I. 73–75); the face often prognathous, with thick everted lips; forehead often bulging, and nose platyrrhine.

The Oceanic Negroes are represented in their purest form by the Papuans, an obscurely variable stock with black woolly hair, skin dark chocolate or sooty brown; usually of medium stature; long-headed and broad-nosed, often with retreating forehead and prominent brow-ridges. Their stronghold at the present day is New Guinea; formerly no doubt they had a wide distribution in Melanesia, probably in Australia, and were present as a variety in Tasmania.

The Negrito are the peoples generally termed Pygmies. They are very short, dark-skinned, woolly-haired, broad-nosed, mesaticephals or brachycephals. In the east they include the Andamanese (st. 58½ in., C.I. 83), the Semang of the Malay Peninsula (st. 60 in., C.I. 79), the Aeta of the Philippines (st. 58 in., C.I. 82), and the little-known Tapiro of Netherlands New Guinea (st. 57 in., C.I. 79.5). In the west the African Negrito (Negrillo) of the Equatorial forests (Akka, Batwa, etc.) are the shortest of mankind (st. about 54 in.); they are mesaticephalic, with hair less dark than the eastern Pygmies, short in the trunk, with long arms and legs, and features tending to infantile type.

The Bushmen are probably to be related to the Pygmies, though their skin colour is yellow and their average stature 5 ft. or just over. Head mesaticephalic, face flattened, orthognatic, with prominent cheek-bones and very wide nose. The women tend to exhibit that peculiar development of fat on the buttocks which is called steatopygy.

The Hottentot is in many respects a magnified Bushman brought about by an infusion of Bantu and Hamitic blood (st. 63 in.). The women are frequently steatopygous.

The ears are often lobeless in both Bushmen and Hottentots.

The Australian Race

The Australian race includes the Australians and the pre-Dravidian tribes of Southern India and Ceylon (Vedda), the Sakai of the Malay Peninsula, and probably the Toala of the Celebes, though these latter seem to have absorbed much foreign blood. Throughout the race the hair is black, wavy or tending to curly.

The Australians are of medium height, with an average stature around 65½ in., but varying in different groups; the skin is a dark chocolate brown, often very hairy; the head is long, with flat retreating forehead

and prognathous jaw, the brow-ridges prominent (often excessively so), the nose depressed at root and often very broad.

The Sakai are short, with a stature scarcely reaching 60 in.; a reddish tinge in the hair; skin yellowish to dark brown; skull mesaticephalic (C.I. 78); nose high mesorrhine.

The Jungle tribes of Southern India (Kurumba, Irula, Paniyan, etc. and Ceylon (Vedda, almost extinct), are short (60–62 in.) dolichocephals (C.I. 70–75), often with prominent brow-ridges and nose generally platyrrhine. The hair may be frankly curly (Kadir and Paniyan, in whom Negrito influence is possible).

EUROPE

Disregarding the remains of palæanthropic man found in Europe and dating back to the lower and middle palæolithic, " neanthropic man " as we know him—the *Homo sapiens* of Linnæus—appears in the Aurignacian period, *i.e.* at the beginning of the Upper Palæolithic. All these were long-heads (though certain undescribed skulls of high mesaticephals have been stated to be of Aurignacian date). Round-heads do not appear until epipalæolithic (mesolithic) times, when their remains are found at Furfooz (Belgium), Offnet (Bavaria), and Mughem (Portugal); presumably these were the vanguard of the present-day European round-heads constituting the Alpine race of Central Europe, but we know little of the early history or spread of this race.

Coming to the New Stone Age, we find the coasts of the Mediterranean and the coastal areas of Western Europe populated by a rather short narrow-headed race, who as they spread over France and much of the British Isles introduced the megalithic culture[1] into Western Europe. They and their descendants are of the Mediterranean race. We do not know at what date this race entered Europe, but its Egyptian representatives in the Nile Valley—the predynastic or proto-Egyptians—were a flourishing agricultural people as early as the fifth millennium B.C. Following Haddon, we may assume that there was a great influx of Alpines into Europe about this time, indeed " we may reasonably conclude that Alpine man introduced into Europe cultivated grains and fruits, domestic animals, polished stone implements, painted pottery, weaving, and possibly at a later date the art of metal-working. It was to them that the lake-dwelling cultures were due, and mainly also it is to their descendants that we owe the Hallstatt and the La Tène [Iron Age] cultures, but both these were strongly influenced by the culture brought by tall, fair, long-headed Nordic man from the northern plains of Europe. . . ."[2]

The origin and early history of the Nordics is unknown, but their homeland is generally considered to have been the South Russian steppes or in their neighbourhood. One view regards them as a giant blonde variant of Mediterranean man, a change supposedly analogous to that

[1] By megalithic culture is meant a culture in which structures composed of large, usually rough, unhewn stones play a prominent part. Dolmens, circles, and triliths are common examples of megalithic monuments.

[2] *The Races of Man.*

in the brown bear which gave rise to the polar form. Whether this be so or not, we may agree that an early steppe-folk of Eastern Europe and Western Asia had been spreading westwards at various times and in different culture phases, and some of these " proto-Nordics " may be supposed to have passed northward into Scandinavia to become the ancestors of the Nordics of our own times.

The ethnology and history of Europe are the ethnology and history of these races, and the crosses that arose from them, with that of certain invading groups in historic times. Of the latter the only important invasions were those into Hungary and the Balkan Peninsula, bringing into Europe three Turki peoples, the Magyar, the Osmanli Turks, and the Bulgars. The two former have kept their Asiatic languages, and the Magyar have become completely European in physique and culture, the most prevalent physical type being described as somewhat brunette with chestnut hair and light eyes; the cephalic index is high (84), with a medium stature of 64 to 65 in. As regards the Turks, an ethnically mixed Turki nation settled down in Asia Minor in the eleventh century, but the earlier inhabitants were by no means exterminated; on the contrary, while great numbers embraced Islam, " many thousand children were marked by the knife of circumcision, and many thousand captives were devoted to the service or the pleasures of their masters." [1] It is the descendants of these already mixed Turks, modified by centuries of intermarriage with the European population of the Balkan peninsula, that constitute the European Turks of the present day, so that it is no wonder that in appearance they retain but little of their Asiatic origin.

The Bulgars, who reached their present homes in the seventh century, have become completely Slavonicised, but their speech contains more words of Turki origin than any other Slav language.

Though we neglect the other European peoples and nations as being too well known to be of interest in a summary account, some mention must be made of the Basques, if only on account of the quantity that has been written about them. Occupying the western Pyrenean provinces of France and Spain, it is said that sixty years ago there were perhaps half a million people who spoke their extraordinary language and who had until then succeeded in maintaining intact much of their peculiar politico-social organisation :—

" Their political institutions were ideally democratic. . . . In Vizcaya, for example, sovereignty was vested in a biennial assembly of chosen deputies, who sat on stone benches in the open air under an ancestral oak-tree in the village of Guernica. This tree was the emblem of their liberties. A scion of the parent oak was always kept growing near by, in case the old tree should die. These Basques acknowledged no political sovereign; they insisted upon complete personal independence for every man; they were all absolutely equal before their own law; they upheld one another in exercising the right of self-defence against any outside authority, ecclesiastical, political, or other; they were entitled to bear arms at all times by law anywhere in Spain; they were free from all taxation save for their own local needs, and from all foreign military service;

[1] Gibbon, chap. lvii., quoted by Keane.

and in virtue of this liberty they were accorded throughout Spain the rank and privileges of *hidalgos* or noblemen."[1]

Their language is agglutinative (the ordinary European languages are inflective), different meanings being expressed by the compounding of several words into one; thus the verb includes all pronouns, adverbs and allied parts of speech, and the noun similarly comprehends the prepositions and adjectives. A classical example, given by Ripley, meaning " the lower field of the high hill of Azpicuelta " runs, *Azpilcuelagaraycos-aroyarenberecolarrea*. The antiquity of this curious language is denoted by the slight development of the principle of abstraction or generalisation, " Thus there is said to be a lack of such simple generalised words as ' tree ' or ' animal.' There are complete vocabularies for each species of either, but none for the concept of tree or animal in the abstract,"[2] a condition paralleled by numerous primitive peoples, *e.g.* the Cherokee, who are said to have thirteen words to signify the washing of different parts of the body but none for the idea of " washing " itself. The crudity of the verb is another primitive feature, most Basque verbs being in fact nouns (*e.g.* " to give " is treated as if it were " donation " or " the act of giving ") and declined as such.

As to its origins, and the affinities of the people who originally spoke it, nothing is known. The idea that Basque is an Hamitic language akin to Berber has broken down, and we are left with the bold and seductive suggestion of Elliot Smith that it represents the speech of Upper Palæolithic man.

Physically there is no uniformity among the Basques at the present day; dolicho- or predominantly mesaticephalic in Spain, they are brachycephalic in France. Nevertheless a good case can be made out for a definite round-headed long-faced type, with a bulging forehead and refined oval jaw, which it is suggested may have developed *in situ*, and, if so, then no doubt as a result of interbreeding and selection.

Examining the temperament of the three great European races in relation to Jung's behaviour types (introvert and extravert), it seems that though the Nordic race excels other races in determination, this steadfastness shades into stubbornness which, in the individual, is likely to lead to recklessness as to the results of his actions not only to himself but to others. His power of organisation is of great social value and, with his fighting capacity, accounts for his genius for imposing himself as an aristocracy dominating other peoples; nevertheless he is essentially an individualist, and as such shows a definite incapacity to understand and sympathise with views not his own. However his natural reserve prevents his thrusting his views on others, *i.e.* his general attitude is introvert. McDougall says he is " weak in herd instinct." It would be more accurate to say that his " herd " tends to be small; indeed there is abundant evidence of this in the sagas, wherein we may find Nordic traits more vividly portrayed than anywhere else. It seems that it is this individualism, (with perhaps a certain capacity for mysticism), which in the religious sphere has led to that protestant tendency, which contrasts so sharply with the dominant catholicism not only of Mediterranean but of Alpine

[1] Ripley: *The Races of Europe* (1900). [2] Ripley: *op. cit.*

lands. The Nordic "is distinctly religious and philosophical, but his yearnings, not being easily satisfied, tend to drive him beyond the actual and into mere metaphysic."[1] Nevertheless, he has an undoubted aptitude for science which is, perhaps, reinforced by a capacity for observation that seems to go with his love of the sea and of the country as opposed to the town. It is these last qualities, combined with his individualism and pugnacity, that have made him the finest explorer and coloniser in the world.

The Alpines of Europe are predominantly Catholic, and lack the stubborn individualism of the Nordics, while it is generally agreed that they are specially suited to life in small communities and show little tendency to adventure and colonisation, and it is alleged that with this there goes a relative absence of genius or outstanding ability. A certain quality of moroseness has been attributed to the Alpines; if this be so, another aspect of this quality might be the steadfastness and capacity to bear punishment which the Swiss wars of independence showed them to possess.

The Mediterranean race has been described as vivacious, quick, impetuous, impulsive; with emotions blazing instantaneously into violent expression and action. This may be true as it stands, and no doubt the Mediterraneans generally are extravert, though if, as is generally stated, the South Italians—the most pronounced Mediterraneans of the group—will coolly shape their actions for years towards the consummation of a vendetta, the description is perhaps somewhat exaggerated. The Mediterraneans show an intense appreciation of colour, glitter and movement and there is no doubt as to the important part played by coloured illustrations in their papers, even at a time more than a quarter of a century ago when colour was but sparsely used in Western European journals. It would be interesting to know whether this applies alike to Italy and Spain and whether it is equally true of Northern and Southern Italy. Whatever conclusions we may come to concerning the above, it can hardly be denied that the Mediterranean race has actually more achievement to its credit than any other, since it was responsible for by far the greater part of Mediterranean civilisation, certainly before 1000 B.C. (and probably much later). We know little of the physical characters of the Hellenic Greeks, but may regard them as basicly Mediterranean, with a strong admixture of Alpine and no doubt some Nordic. Thus the Mediterranean race shaped not only the Ægean cultures[2] but those of Western as well as the greater part of Eastern Mediterranean lands—including the Sumerian civilisation of Ur and Kish—while the culture of one branch, the Hamitic pre-dynastic Egyptians, formed the basis of that of Egypt. Rome is purposely omitted on account of the doubt there is as to the ethnic relationship of the Romans, some holding that patricians and plebeians were of different race and contributed vastly different proportions to Roman civilisation.[3]

[1] F. Lenz, in Baur—Fischer—Lenz: *Menschliche Erblichkeitslehre* (Munich, 1923).

[2] Actually the earliest Cretan skulls known dating 1500 B.C. and earlier are not exclusively long-headed.

[3] The alternate views are well set out in William Ridgeway, "Who were the Romans?" (*Proceedings of the British Academy*, 1907) and H. J. Rose, "Patricians and Plebeians at Rome" (*Journal of Roman Studies*, 1922).



Fig. 3.—ETHNOLOGICAL MAP OF RUSSIA IN THE NINTH CENTURY

ASIA

The vast continent that we call Asia should, from the ethno-historical standpoint, be yet further enlarged to include almost the whole of European Russia, for it was only in the ninth century that that branch of the Alpine race that we term Slavs began to push into its dark forests, until then inhabited by Ugro-Finnish tribes speaking non-Aryan languages, whose representatives, now predominantly of European blood, include,

e.g., the Zyrian, Mordven, and Votyak of present-day European Russia, all still speaking their own languages.[1] In connection with this persistence of Asiatics in a country that from our schooldays we have regarded as European, it should be emphasised that the Urals, which on the map appear as a well-marked natural barrier between Asia and Europe, are but rounded hills with many intervening gaps, nowhere attaining a height of over 5,500 ft. (*see Fig.* 3).

The early history of man in Asia is entirely unknown. Implements of River Drift type are abundant in some parts of Western Asia and in India ; a Mousterian skull has been excavated in Palestine, and the Far East has given us the remains of *Pithecanthropus*—the most primitive hominid known—and is now yielding the remains of numerous individuals of *Sinanthropus* ; but these finds no more than prove the varying forms and wide distribution of Quarternary Man. Coming to more recent times, the Ainu show such clear evidence of Caucasian affinities that we can only regard them as undifferentiated progenitors or representatives of one of the European races, and though their skull is very different from the modern Alpine their appearance, summed up in oft-quoted resemblance to the Russian peasant, makes it reasonable to ally them to that race. The relation of the great group of Western brachycephals, which in its extended sense we call Alpine, to the yellow roundheads (the Mongolian race) is quite obscure.

The main geographical features of Asia, upon which depend the distribution and cultures of its peoples, are three great belts of country, each with more or less uniform features, running from east to west from the Pacific Ocean into Europe, and south of these a high steppe with two great series of plateaux—an eastern, including Tibet, Eastern Turkestan, and North-West Mongolia with the Gobi desert, and a western comprising Iran, Armenia, and Anatolia. Southward and peripherally lie India, Indonesia, and in the west Arabia, each with a history and ethnography of its own, the first and last of such size and importance as almost to constitute sub-continents in themselves.[2]

So much for generalisations. Turning to the Near East (Anatolia, Mesopotamia, Syria, but excluding Arabia), although there are indications that the aborigines were Mediterraneans, round-headed peoples from the East have poured in from so early a period that even in Crete our oldest skulls are not pure Mediterranean. On the other hand the skulls collected by Woolley at Ur, judged to date from the fourth millennium B.C., clearly indicate that the early Sumerians were Mediterraneans.

Leaving for the moment the Near East, we may agree with Buxton to define a " Middle East," to include the Turkoman and Uzbeg Soviet republics in the north, and Persia, Beluchistan, and Afghanistan in the south.[3] This is an area of ethnic confusion : there is certainly a large element of Alpine round-heads, akin to or even identical with our European Alpines, and if it be admitted, as has been suggested, that the Turkoman Steppes are the area of characterisation of the Nordic race, then there

[1] Concerning these peoples see Ripley, *Races of Europe* (1900), and especially the distribution map.

[2] India and Arabia are only about one-third smaller than Australia.

[3] *The Peoples of Asia* (1925).

is no difficulty in understanding the mixed types of this area, particularly if weight be given to the presence of a Mediterranean type akin to the Dravidian, in connection with which we may remember that the Brahui of Baluchistan, though they are (now) physically Baluchi, speak a Dravidian language.

The Turki, whose physical characters are described on page 441, form the basis of the Eastern Turkish peoples, *i.e.* the Turks of East Central Asia—Kirghiz, Kasak, Uzbeg, Turkoman, etc. These folk are very mixed, differing considerably in social characteristics, and are very far indeed from any feeling of race solidarity such as that implied by the Pan-Turkish (Pan-Turanian) movement of the War years. Uzbeg seems to be a term of more political than racial significance, and the Kirghiz are said to carry much Mongol blood. Actually all these Eastern Asiatic Turks are to be looked upon as the remains of the old Turkic stock—greatly modified by infusion of foreign blood—first known to history as the Hiung-nu, whose inroads, together with those of the Tung-hu (Tungus), led to the building of the Great Wall of China during the Ts'in dynasty, thus forcing westwards the Asiatic *Völkerwanderung* of the first centuries of our era —a fact which, it is interesting to note, was appreciated by Gibbon some hundred and fifty years ago.

The Medes and Persians of history are regarded by Haddon as proto-Nordic, their blood still existing in the Farsi about Persepolis, " fair in skin, with abundant hair and beard of a dark chestnut colour, [though] real blonds with blue eyes are rare." [1] The other Persian type—tall, long-headed, and dark—is that which commonly represents people of importance in Persian paintings. On the other hand the " moon-faced " beauties perhaps represent the type that may most fairly be termed Iranian, the Alpine Tajik (Tajik, Galcha, etc.) with a C.I. of about 85.

Arabia, the home of the Semites (and probably of the Hamites too), falls naturally into three main divisions, a northern, a southern, and a third less well characterised central area between the Midian coast on the west and the head of the Persian Gulf on the east. The northern division extends to the edge of the Syrian desert, and, apart from its oases, is inhabited by nomad pastoralists, and furnishes a barely adequate pasturage for their limited numbers. The southern division contains the highlands of Yemen and Asir in the west, which, with the Hadramut, form a habitable zone round the great southern desert, continued to the east by Oman and Jebel Akhdar. The Yemen and Asir highlands enjoy a temperate climate ; their population consists largely of agriculturalists, whose terraced hills form one of the most characteristic features of the landscape. The central zone includes El Hasa, Nejd, and the Hejaz, with the holy cities.

The population of the northern area—typical northern Semites—are with few exceptions dolichocephalic and narrow-nosed, with white skin easily bronzing, and of medium stature. They come nearest to the traditional Arab of the text-books, " with a fine oval face . . . [a] type which . . . often assume an almost ideal beauty." [2] In the south an entirely different type prevails : a " Beduin " tribe inland from Aden gives a

[1] Haddon : *op. cit.* [2] Keane : *Ethnology.*

cephalic index of 81, moreover the stature is lower than in the north, and an examination of all the figures for Southern and South-Eastern Arabia indicates that less than 10 per cent. are long-headed. We have very few measurements derived from the central area; provisionally we may regard its inhabitants as predominantly northern.

Obviously then, while the inhabitants of Northern Arabia are "Arabs" in the commonly accepted sense and true Semites, the southerners are not, and though we cannot be certain who they are, it is most probable that the round-headed element has come in from Mesopotamia, a suggestion supported by the fact that, long before the sixth century A.D. South Arabia was a country of a thriving civilisation with an agriculture so advanced that irrigation works on a considerable scale existed and were kept in repair for hundreds of years. It may be added that within the last two years Mr. Bertram Thomas, exploring the unknown country behind Oman, has found tribes who physically are of the South Arabian type but who speak Semitic languages that are definitely not Arabic.

Much romantic nonsense has been written on the temperament and character of the Arab. Arab loyalties are primarily to their group, *i.e.* to clan and family; the tribe comes next, and patriotism in the larger Western sense can only be described as uncommon. Where clan and tribal loyalty is all that is required by his environment the Arab lives happily enough, and his social organisation may be regarded as successful, as among the nomads of the Sudan and the Beduin of Arabia, but where government of larger or more coherent units is required he is apt to fail. Indeed on this matter the town Arab has few illusions, witness the Syrian proverb, "You cannot make a pair of tongs out of wood nor a Pasha out of an Arab." Generally religious, the pure-blooded Arab is less fanatical than is commonly supposed; it is the mixed breeds, in whom there is an infusion of Negro blood, that provide by far the greater number of fanatics. It was no matter of chance that the Mahdi was a Dongolawi and the Khalifa a Ta'aishi of the southern negroid cattle-Arabs (Baqqara) of Kordofan.

As might be expected, town folk, peasants, and nomads differ in habits and superficially in outlook, but they have a substantial fund of common characteristics. They may fairly be described as "polite, intelligent, very kind and affectionate to their children and relations, diligent in their own affairs, almost completely deficient in patriotism and public spirit . . . have considerable humour, are cheerful, excitable, extremely avaricious, always ready to bribe or take bribes, but otherwise fairly honest."[1]

Counterbalancing their avarice is a hospitality so generous as to have become proverbial. It is a fact that except in large towns where inns abound any stranger will be provided with food and refuge without thought of payment, the nature of his entertainment depending far more on his social position than on his wealth, and it is this hospitality, with the ready kindliness that accompanies it, that has made for the Arab so many admirers.

The Semites had overflowed into Palestine and Mesopotamia millenia

[1] Lord Raglan: "Arab Life and Character" (*Nineteenth Century and After*, 1922).

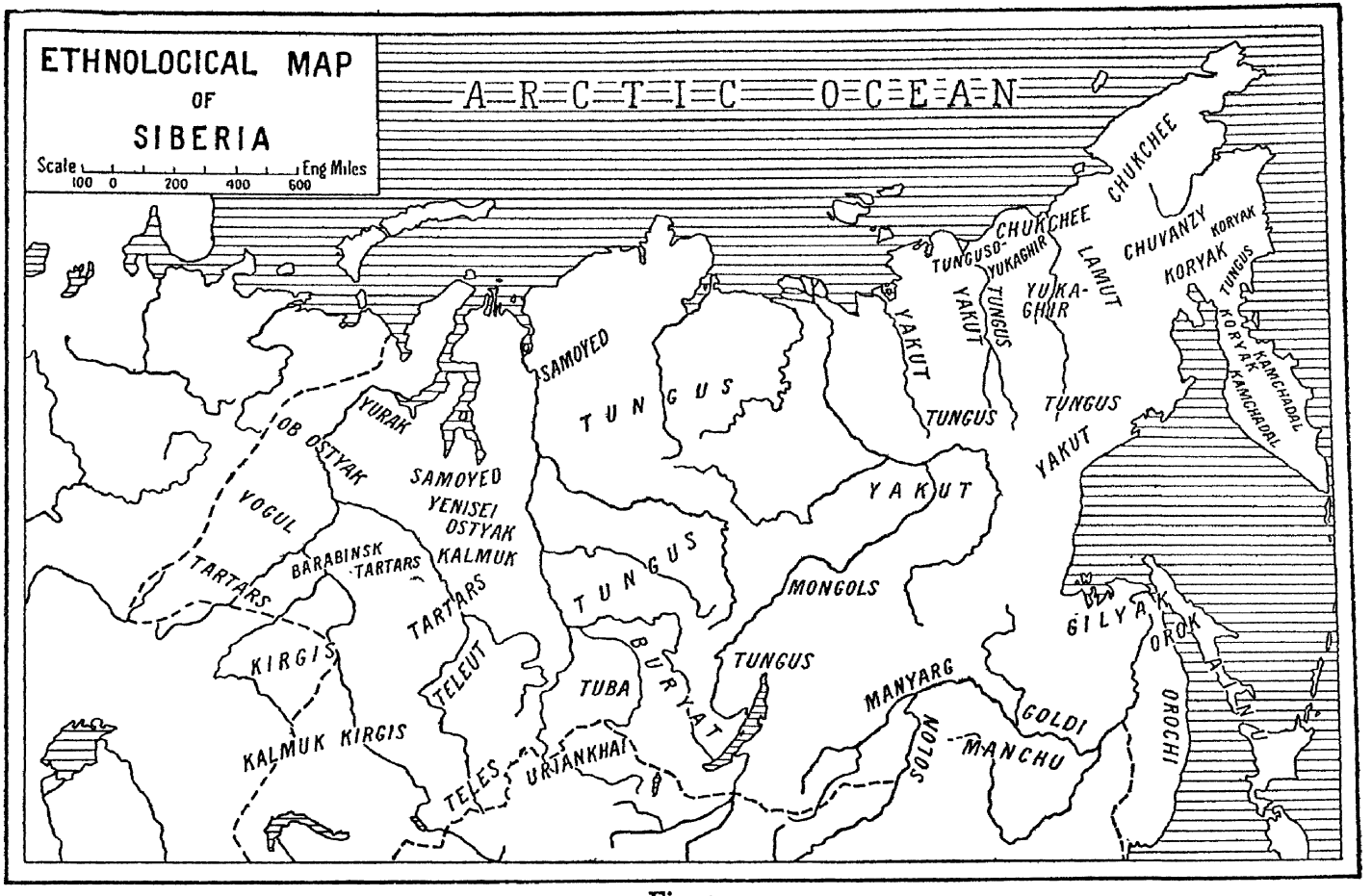

ETHNOLOGICAL MAP
OF
SIBERIA
Scale
100 0 200 400 600 Eng Miles
ARCTIC OCEAN
CHUKCHEE
CHUKCHEE
TUNGUSO-YUKAGHIR
CHUVANZY
KORYAK
LAMUT
YUKA-GHIR
YAKUT
TUNGUS
KORYAK
TUNGUS
KAMCHADAL
KORYAK
KAMCHADAL
SAMOYED
TUNGUS
YAKUT
TUNGUS
TUNGUS
YAKUT
YAKUT
YURAK
OB OSTYAK
SAMOYED
YENISEI OSTYAK
KALMUK
VOGUL
TARTARS
BARABINSK TARTARS
TARTARS
TUNGUS
MONGOLS
GILYAK
OROK
KIRGIS
TELEUT
TUBA
BURIAT
TUNGUS
MANYARG
GOLDI
OROCHI
KALMUK KIRGIS
TELES
URIANKHAI
SOLON
MANCHU

Fig. 4

before our era. The Canaanites are regarded as Semitic, but the Amorites are traditionally considered Nordic. The Abrahamic branch were nomads who entered Egypt with the Hyksos and, after these were expelled, entered Palestine, absorbing the former inhabitants into their politico-religious system but in the process themselves taking on, to a greater or lesser degree, the physical traits of the earlier peoples. Thus both Jews and Samaritans at the present day include light-eyed red-haired strains, and the typical "Jewish" nose is the Armenoid nose of the Hittites, the ancestors of the present-day Armenians. The Assyrians too were an Armeno-Semitic mixture—witness their characteristic faces as portrayed in the long series of bas-reliefs from Nimrūd, dating from the latter half of the ninth century B.C., in the British Museum in London.

The Jews of the present day are predominantly round-headed. They are grouped into two stocks, the Askenazim in Northern, Central, and Western Europe, and the Sephardim in the South and in Spain, Portugal, and North Africa.

In Siberia, a vast area concerning which comparatively little is known, it is convenient to employ a broad classification, such as that proposed by Czaplicka, into Palæo-Siberians and Neo-Siberians[1] (*see Fig.* 4). The first term is equivalent to the older term Palæo-Asiatic, and includes principally Chukchi, Koryak, Kamchadal, Gilyak, Yukghir, Yenisei, and Ostyak. All these, with the Ainu, may be regarded as very ancient peoples and generally as living a simple life, specialisation, so far as it goes, having mainly been forced upon them by the Arctic climate. But while it may be true that the Palæo-Siberians have been in Siberia for a prolonged period, the latest opinion is that they are a reflux from North-Western America, and the best authorities hold that their language is American-Indian rather than Asiatic, this incidentally being the only accepted example of relationship between Old and New World tongues.

The term Neo-Siberian implies no more than that we believe the Finnic, Mongolic, Turkic, and Tungusic tribes which have populated Siberia to be relatively recent incomers. Czaplicka, quoting Patkanoff, gives a complete list of these tribes, of which all belong to one or other of the following stocks :—Finnish, Samoyed, Turki, and Tungus.

These Palæo- and Neo-Siberians are the inhabitants of the tundra and tayga, the two more northern of the belts referred to on page 451. They are all more or less reindeer pastoralists, though some of the Chukchi and Gilyak are too poor to possess any and maintain a miserable existence dependent on other groups. Other Chukchi, and, for example, the Koryak, have large herds of semi-feral animals that cannot be milked and are of little use for transport, but are invaluable as meat and trade. Many Tungus have good herds of reindeer, but may consider them too precious to use freely as food, especially as hunting, fishing, and trading are widely practised by this people, while the Samoyedic tribes are generally pure pastoralists, living on the milk and flesh of domesticated deer. Reindeer herdsmen probably live a harder life than any other pastoralists and require really large flocks, for ten deer are said to give no more milk than one cow.

Aboriginal Siberia (1914).

The Low Steppe east of the Lena is mainly in the hands of Tungus and Yakut; west of the river are Ostiak "Tartars," *i.e.* Turki and Turki-Mongol folk, and such important Turki peoples as Turkoman, Kirghiz, and Uzbeg, with a broad zone of Russian settlement extending from Saratov through Perm in a south-easterly direction.

Most of the pastoral tribes of steppe and tayga, though they occupy such a vast area, can be passed over with what we have already said, but the Tungus are most important. They stretch beyond the limit of Siberia to include, *inter alia*, many Manchu, the Buriat (of Lake Baikal), a number of tribes of the Gobi area, the Kalmuk (Chinese Turkestan, Mongolia, and Zurgaria), and the Taranchi of Eastern Turkestan. Naturally, so far-flung a people exhibit considerable variation physically, yet in a general way they conform to the characters given on page 444, *i.e.* they are high brachycephals (C.I. 84.8), of medium stature (62½-66 in.), with yellow or yellowish-brown skin, hair coarse, straight, and sparse, broad flat face and prominent cheek-bones, broad nostrils and dark brown eyes, usually typically "Mongolian."

The Tungus are praised by every traveller for their qualities and character. They are described as "cheerful under the most depressing circumstances, persevering, open-hearted, trustworthy, modest yet self-reliant, a fearless race of hunters, born amidst the gloom of their dense pine-forests, exposed from the cradle to every danger from wild beasts, cold and hunger. Want and hardships of every kind they endure with surprising fortitude."[1] This, of course, only applies to the wilder hunting and reindeer Tungus; the Manchu, the southern, civilised and settled section of the stock, until recently kept up the old clan system under military organisation into "banners," which enabled them to conquer the Chinese in the seventeenth century and to impose upon them the Ch'ing dynasty, which endured until 1911.

The ethnology of Japan is one of the puzzles of anthropology. Not only are we unable to make any definite statement as to who the Japanese are, but the most critical philologists cannot cite any linguistic stock to which the Japanese language is affiliated. We say "critical" advisedly, for many statements exist, but none so far has stood the test of time.

Considering the Japanese as a nation, we may say that they have an average stature of 63¼ in., and a cephalic index of 81.8, but this really gives little idea of the people. Two distinct types, each perfectly characteristic, are immediately obvious. A coarse type, short and thick set, with broad flat face, narrow and oblique eye, and typically a well developed epicanthus, a dark tawny-olive skin and the nose often concave; this is obviously a thoroughly Mongol type. In opposition stands the "fine," or Daimyo type, taller, of slender build with long face and often long nose, the latter sometimes prominent and arched, with the tip somewhat flattened down, recalling vaguely the Armenoid form, though certainly not to be given this term. This aristocratic type—familiar in countless colour prints—was known, admired, and represented in sculpture as long ago as the seventh or eighth century, for the wooden statue of Prince Shōtoku Taishi at Nara admirably represents it, as does a pottery figure of a

[1] Keane: *Asia* (1906).

cavalryman, probably of rather earlier date, recently excavated in Korea.

The earliest inhabitants of Japan were the Ainu, still existing in Yezo, North Island, and the anthropologist travelling in Japan will soon feel convinced that even in the south where the historic " Japanese "—whoever these were—first landed there is far more Ainu blood than the textbooks imply. Wavy hair (as in the Ainu) is not very uncommon, curly hair occurs, and there is often a rosy flush in the complexion which, if not so marked as that of the Ainu, does strongly recall it. That the Ainu exterminated an earlier people, the Koropakguru, the " Earth-Spiders " of Japanese legend, is now generally discredited, and the Ainu must be regarded as the true aborigines. With them there mingled incoming round-headed Asiatics, indeed some of the shell mounds contain both Ainu and Asiatic skulls of the same date.

A southern strain from the Indonesian islands has been generally recognised, and there seems to be cultural evidence for this. The often-alleged Negrito strain seems much more doubtful; in fact the writer of this Article would discredit it. It is true that the traveller is struck by the fact that he meets a certain number of very short Japanese, but the stature of the Japanese has been carefully studied, and although a certain number (under 5 per cent.) are under 60 in., there is a larger number (over 6 per cent.) of tall subjects ranging from 67 to 70¾ in. Further, while carefully on the lookout for individuals with negroid features, the writer failed to find even a single subject.

But whatever the stocks that have gone to produce the Japanese people, the result is noteworthy and, if often puzzling to the Westerner, is generally admirable, even if recent foreign influence has not always led individuals to show themselves at their best. Cheerfully patriotic in belief in their country and themselves, with a high sense of honour, the Japanese have in an eminent degree the qualities of citizens and patriots combined with a rare capacity for united action. This genius for co-operation, so well seen in business and politics, is one of the characters that differentiate them from the only other Eastern people of equal capacity and civilisation, for, in spite of the wisdom, business sagacity, and individual success of particular Chinese, the latter have so little power of combination that they have not produced a single great banking house or business firm, as have the Japanese in numerous instances, while the same opposed characteristics inform and shape the politics of these two great peoples. To say, as is sometimes said, that the Japanese are irreligious is untrue. They are definitely a religious people—it is only necessary to go to one of the big temples on a Buddhistic festival to appreciate this—but their religion is cheerful and assumes primitive virtue rather than original sin; even in the insanities, delusions of a religious nature with sense of guilt, so common in this country, are practically absent in Japan. But this by no means implies the absence of religion. The bravery and persistence under torture of considerable numbers of the Christian Japanese in the seventeenth century must surely be attributed to nothing else than strong religious feeling. What does strike the Westerner reading Japanese history and talking to the older men is how efficiently the sense of decorum, with the typically Japanese appreciation of æsthetics, seems to have guided every rank. It may be said quite fairly that the influence of Buddhism as a code

was more æsthetic than ethical. So Japanese feudalism converted the Buddha's doctrine of renunciation into the stoicism of the warrior; the Japanese Samurai renounced desire not that he might enter Nirvana, but that he might acquire the contempt of life which would make him a perfect warrior.

As to the arts and crafts, it can scarcely be doubted that the Japanese are gifted *en masse* with an æsthetic sense which makes it fair to write of them as the most art-loving and art-appreciating of mankind, and, even if they owe the beginning of their arts to Chinese teachers, there is not a single branch that they have not thoroughly made their own—to such an extent indeed that origins are in most cases established by historical knowledge, rather than immediate similarity.

Politically, besides China proper, *i.e.* "the eighteen provinces," China rules or exercises suzerainty over Chinese Turkestan, Mongolia, and Tibet. Here we shall only consider ethnic China, bounded for practical purposes on the north by the Great Wall, and, where this leaves off, by the Gobi Desert. In the west is the mountainous Tibetan border, while in the south-west to the Gulf of Tonking the boundary is political rather than natural.

Historically we know nothing of the origin of the Chinese, though, as already stated, in Kansu and Honan there have been found burials of neolithic and transitional (chalcolithic) date of a people who were Northern Chinese in physical characters but differed culturally from almost all that we know of Chinese culture. These folk may date to some 2000 B.C., whereas the earliest Chinese (An Yang) culture, ivories, etc., carved in the style of the Chou dynasty, dug up in the neighbourhood of this site, may be taken to be nearly a thousand years later. Too much importance must not be attached to these dates; that of the Kansu burials is speculative, moreover these pre-Chinese burials and An Yang are geographically far apart.

In any case, the old civilisation of China is first known in the valley of the Hoang Ho—the Yellow River—and here, in Northern China, is the home of the rather tall, often burly, Chinese, who, unless their type has altered within the last two to three thousand years, started China on her voyage of pre-eminence in Asia and were the originators of those wonderful bronzes and porcelains which the name of their country calls to our minds.

These northerners are stoutly built men, with an average stature of about 66 in., mesaticephalic rather than brachycephalic, though not uncommonly described as round-heads. They vary greatly in facial characters; long faces and noses with high bridges are not uncommon, nor is the eye always Mongolian. They may be presumed to carry a substantial amount of foreign blood; Tungus, Turki, and Mongols from beyond the Wall have entered Northern China over and over again, and, though always absorbed into the Chinese nation, have doubtless modified the type.

This great historical civilisation spread into Southern China along the tributaries of the Yangtsze, but did not greatly affect the folk inland from its southern bank until the last centuries of the last millennium B.C.

Before this we must picture the southern Chinese as leading a somewhat primitive agricultural life, indeed the quality of the culture they held at that time may be fairly well judged by that of the fast diminishing group of so-called " aborigines " of the Southern Provinces—the Man, Miao, etc.—who again differ little from the folk of Indo-China and even the T'ai of Burmah.

The southern Chinese, whose physical characteristics are less well-known than those of their northern brethren, are considerably shorter, more round-headed, and rather darker-skinned. We may put their height at about 63–64 in., their cephalic index as somewhat over 80, and note that the back of the skull often shows considerable occipital flattening.

The Manchu in China have so intermarried with the Chinese that it seems doubtful whether they can be differentiated physically, and even in the north beyond China proper the Manchu are a little-known people. They have mixed much with Chinese and latterly there has been Japanese immigration ; the figures given are often discrepant, and Buxton argues the necessity for search for an old Manchu type in the remoter parts of Manchuria.

The " Turki " Moslems of Kansu are regarded by Buxton as an Alpine-Yellow race cross, and probably have much Turki blood ; they are of heavier build than the ordinary Chinese and more turbulent. Besides these " Turki " Moslems there are " Arab " Moslems in Peking, forming a distinct community dating back to the founding of the city by Yung Lo (reigned 1403–1425). They are sufficiently good Moslems to avoid pig, and this, in China, implies that their marriages are limited to their own community.

In spite of limits of space, something must be said about the temperament and character of the Chinese, so different from that attributed to them by the uninstructed layman. Their outlook indeed is as far as may be from the inscrutable, unemotional, silkily subtle quality which Western ideas—and especially Western fiction of the cheaper sort—attributes to them. It is only necessary to watch a group of Chinese coolies seeking for hire, or a crowd brought together by a street mishap, or even labourers at their work, to be convinced that the Chinese are more excitable and emotional than north Europeans. In private life the same excitable character is shown by the very emotional conduct which is common after family quarrels, and the frequency on such occasions of severe hysteria and suicide, while with regard to the suggestibility of Chinese crowds it is sufficient to refer to the history of the Boxer Rebellion.

This is not to say that the " superior man " of Confucius does not exist ; there is still a considerable number of men who have trained themselves to control their emotions in true Confucian fashion ; nor indeed are such limited to the older-fashioned *literati*. But their number is relatively small, and the mass of Chinese are at least as emotional as the corresponding classes in Great Britain or the United States. Perhaps the diplomatist—even if he was mythical—who called the Chinese the " British of the East " was not far wrong. It is at least a pretty, and we may hope not utterly unfounded, compliment to two peoples, even if one essential difference in outlook be kept in mind. The Chinese has never admired

the fighting man as such, his heroes are not soldiers, and if in history soldiers have earned distinction it was for administrative rather than fighting virtue. So his poems are not epics, nor are his love romances of Western erotic type, for his whole outlook on womankind is as different as may be from that of the mediæval and Renaissance Europeans who have so largely moulded our tradition.

The Jews of China are of historical interest only. They are now assimilated, but at one time they formed a small but definite element at Kaifeng and had a synagogue.

In a concise description such as this, Tibet, Mongolia, and Manchuria are conveniently, if somewhat irregularly, considered as Chinese borderlands, and indeed in all these regions Chinese influence has existed for the last 2,000 years or more.

Tibet is officially so connected with China that it is symbolised by one of the five stars in the flag of the Republic. Little is known of the country anthropologically, but we have already referred (p. 443) to the presence of old Caucasian blood. Further, two types can be recognised; one long-headed, the so-called "Warrior" type, the other round-headed, the "Priestly" type, though as might be expected both types are found among the priests, and moreover, in Northern Tibet Chinese influence has been potent for generations, bringing with it no doubt considerable Chinese blood.

The Mongols, who have given their name to the numerically strongest of the human races, have their home in a huge, sparsely inhabited country to the north of China. Very little is known about them anthropologically, but, after examining the available evidence, Buxton concludes that "there seems to be an underlying homogeneous element among the people who claim to be Mongols; this is probably, especially on the borders, mixed with other strains, but is essentially different from Yellow or Mongoloid man. Their territory has been invaded by Yellow man, who has at times mixed much with the population, and to-day often exists in groups within Mongol territory, but is always physically and culturally distinct. The Mongols are connected by blood with some branch of Alpine . . . man."[1]

South-east of China lie Tonking, Annam, Cochin China, and Cambodia (constituting French Indo-China), Siam and Burmah. It is probably true that over all this area, and especially in Indo-China, the dominant type is one akin to the "aborigines" of Southern China, and we may regard these "southern aborigines," if we may call them so (omitting for the moment pre-Dravidians and Negritos), as having been modified locally by strains of Negrito, Tibetan, Nēsiot, and even Caucasian blood, *via* the Tibetans. Farther south, in the Malay Peninsula, besides Malays there are Semang (Negritos), Sakai (pre-Dravidians), some primitive proto-Malays (Besisi and Jakun) and immigrant Chinese.

The Malay proper, the true Malay of history, who distinguish themselves as the Orang-Maláyu, are Muhammadan and speak the language

[1] *Op. cit.*

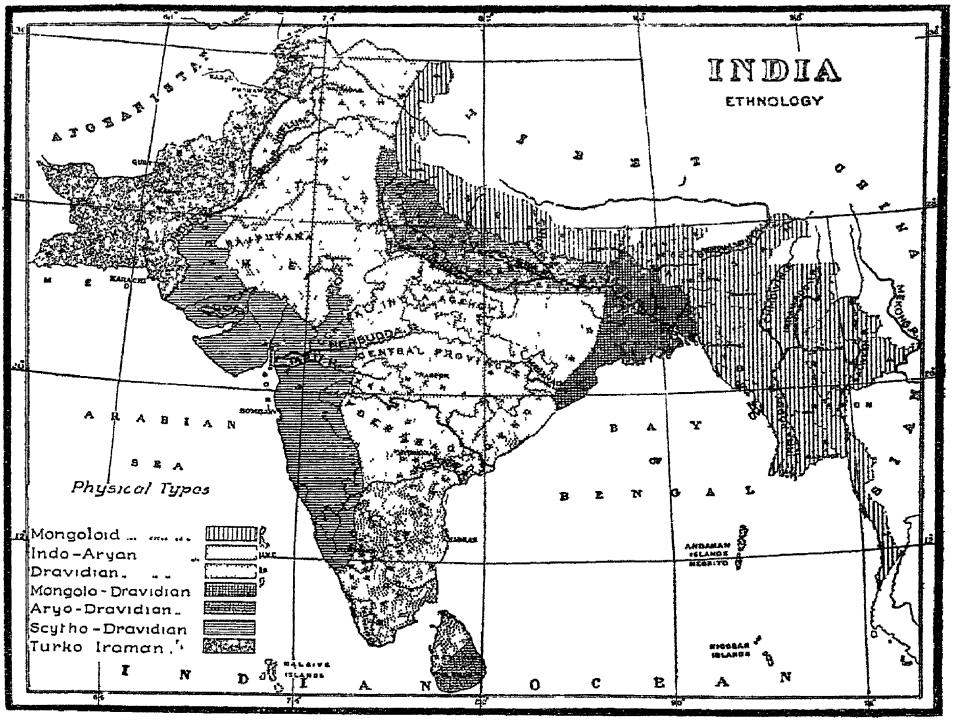


Fig. 5.—RACES OF INDIA (AFTER RISLEY)

that is called Malay. They appear in history about the middle of the twelfth century, originating as an obscure tribe which rose to power in the Menangkabau district of Sumatra. At this time was founded their first colony, Singapore; its name, which is pure Sanscrit, signifying the "Lion City," is an indication of the strength of Hindu influence in the Archipelago at that time. Menangkabau was the first Moslem state to acquire political supremacy, and "this district thus became the chief centre for the later diffusion of the cultured Malays, their language, usages, and religion, throughout the Peninsula and the Archipelago. Here they are found in compact masses chiefly in south Sumatra; in all the insular groups between Sumatra and Borneo; in the Malay Peninsula as far north as the Kra Isthmus, here intermingling with the Siamese . . . partly Buddhists, partly Muhammadans; round the coast of Borneo and about the estuaries of that island; in Tidor, Ternate, and the adjacent coast of Jilolo; in the Banda, Sula, and Sulu groups; in Batavia, Singapore, and all the other large seaports of the Archipelago. In all these lands beyond Sumatra the Orang-Maláyu are thus seen to be comparatively recent arrivals; and in fact intruders on the other Malayan populations, with whom they collectively constitute the Oceanic branch of the Mongol division."[1]

[1] Keane: *Man, Past and Present* (1920).

It is these " other Malayan populations " which constitute the great mass of " proto-Malays," whose most highly civilised members, such as the Javanese, practise a culture largely derived from India and differ *toto cælo* from the rude up-country tribes of Borneo.[1]

Geographers sometimes divide India into three great areas (the Deccan in the south, north of this the plains of Hindustan, and then the Himalaya and their foothills), but these do not correspond to natural ethnic provinces. The anthropology of India is in fact difficult, and our knowledge is quite inadequate. We may assume that the oldest population was pre-Dravidian, whose representatives, the primitive hunting jungle tribes of India (in the Deccan Irula, Kuramba, Paniyan, etc.) and Ceylon (Veddas), still exist. It is probable that such primitive hunters formerly extended over the greater part of India, and though the existence of Negritos has never been proved in the sub-continent, their former presence in the Deccan seems likely.

The more advanced population of India has been divided by Risley into seven great groups, and although his classification has been criticised, it cannot be said that the types he set up have been seriously impugned, though it may fairly be urged that his nomenclature is not always fortunate (*see Fig.* 5). Risley describes his types, passing from the western frontier of India ; in our description it will be convenient to start in the south with the Dravidians, a very old element in India. Apart from pre-Dravidians and hypothetical Negritos, the Dravidian may be taken to represent the ancient civilised population of much of India, its dilution with pre-Dravidians and its modification by Caucasian Aryan-speaking and Mongolian elements producing the Indians of the present day.

The *Dravidian* type extends from Ceylon to the valley of the Ganges, pervading the whole of Madras, Hyderabad, the Central Provinces, most of Central India, and Chota Nagpur. Among its most characteristic representatives are the Paniyans of the South Indian hills and the Santals of Chota Nagpur. The stature is short or scarcely medium ; the complexion very dark ; the hair shows tendency to curl ; eyes dark ; head long, and nose very broad.

The *Mongolo-Dravidian* type, found in Lower Bengal and Orissa, comprises the Bengal Brahmans and Kāyasths, the Muhammadans of Eastern Bengal, and other groups peculiar to this part of India. They are to be regarded as a blend of Dravidian and Mongolian elements, with a strain of Indo-Aryan blood in the higher groups. Stature medium, complexion dark ; hair on face usually plentiful ; head broad, nose medium with a tendency to breadth.

The *Aryo-Dravidian* type, found in the United Provinces of Agra and Oudh, in parts of Rajputana, in Bihar and Ceylon, is represented in its

[1] By continental writers the inland (pagan) tribes of Borneo are known as Dyak ; in this country the term is commonly limited to a particular tribe, the Orang-Iban, the so-called Sea Dyaks, though there also exists a numerically weak and insignificant tribe termed Land Dyaks. As to Indian influence, it is worth remembering not only the ruins of Borobodur, but that Bali is still administered (under Netherlands authority) on the model of a Hindu rajarate.

upper strata by the Hindustāni Brahman, in its lower by the Chamār. Regarded as arising from the intermixture of Indo-Aryans and Dravidians, the former element predominates in its lower groups and the latter in its higher. The stature is medium ; the complexion varies from lightish brown to black ; the head is long, with a tendency to mesaticephaly ; the nose ranges from medium to broad.

The *Scytho-Dravidian* type of Western India, comprising the Marātha Brahmans, the Kunbis and the Coorgs, was thought by Risley to have arisen as a mixture of Scythian and Dravidian elements. There is really no evidence for the identity of the round-headed group, who must however fall within the Alpine race. Hair on head rather scanty ; stature medium ; complexion fair ; head broad ; moderately fine nose, not conspicuously long.

The *Mongoloid* type of the Himalaya, Nepal, Assam and Burmah, is represented by the Kanets of Lahoul and Kulu, the Lepchās of Darjeeling, the Limbus, Murmis and Gurungs of Nepal, the Bodo of Assam, and the Burmese. Stature low or medium ; skin of varying tints of yellowish brown ; head broad, with face characteristically flat ; nose fine to broad ; eyelids often oblique ; facial hair scanty.

The *Indo-Aryan* type occupies the Punjab, Rajputana and Kashmir, having as its characteristic members the Rajputs, Khatris and Jats. This type most nearly approaches that traditional for the Aryan-speaking colonists of India. The stature is mostly tall ; complexion fair ; hair on face plentiful ; eyes dark ; head long ; nose narrow and prominent.

The *Turko-Iranian* type is represented by the Baloch, Brāhui, and Afghāns, of the Baluchistan Agency and the North-West Frontier Province. Risley writes of these peoples as " probably formed by a fusion of Turki and Persian elements in which the former predominate,"[1] but there is also an Armenoid strain. Stature above mean ; complexion fair ; eyes mostly dark, but occasionally grey ; hair on face plentiful ; head broad ; nose medium, prominent, not infrequently Armenoid.

Perhaps the most important of the objections that have been raised is that the broad-headed element in Risley's Mongolo-Dravidians and Scytho-Dravidians is due to an admixture of the Pamir type of the Alpine race. This is no easy matter to settle ; it can only be said that the origin of the Mongolo-Dravidians has been critically examined by Buxton,[2] with the result that he supports Risley's thesis, while the profile of some Bengali faces can scarcely fail to convince that at least some Mongolian blood is present. With regard to the Scytho-Dravidians, we have suggested above an Alpine element, while as to the historical Scythians, what little we do know scarcely indicates that the Scythians reached India in any mass.

The caste system, which in India has acquired a rigidity unparalleled elsewhere, implies the existence of a large number of endogamous groups, the members of which are bound together by a common traditional occupation and belief in a common origin. By this system the whole course of a man's life—how he shall eat, drink, dress, marry and give in marriage—is irrevocably determined by the accident of birth. The

[1] *The People of India* (1908). [2] *The Peoples of Asia* (1925).

political significance of caste is therefore immense, and whatever its defects it does ensure an amazing continuity in tradition and in the arts and crafts, while on the ethnic side it cannot but play an important part in fixing physical type.

The original significance of the word *varna*—" caste "—was doubtless that implied by " colour," as denoting purity of breed. In the *Institutes* of Manu (compiled between the fifth and second centuries B.C.) a separate origin is ascribed to each of the four classes into which the community was divided, which later became the four traditional castes, *viz.* the Brāhman (priestly), Ksatriya (warrior), Vaisya (merchant), and Sūdra (cultivator and menial).

At the present day Risley distinguishes seven different types or varieties of caste. First the tribal, *e.g.* the tribes of Chota Nagpur and the Nagas ; secondly the functional or occupational, perhaps the most familiar to Europeans and often regarded as the chief factor in the evolution of caste ; the third type is sectarian, *e.g.* the followers of a popular reformer outcast themselves and very soon form a new caste ; a series of new castes may be formed by the crossing of one with another, and Risley gives as a fifth type the " national castes," such as the Newars—once the predominant race in Nepal—or the Marāthas. Caste may also be formed by migration, where a group outcasts itself by moving and forms in its new home a new caste, and finally certain castes may have arisen from change of custom as, for example, the Rajput and the Jāt.

If we seek to speak of an Indian temperament we can only say that the old speculative Hinduism, with its mystical systems of religion and philosophy which we call Brahminism, was no doubt introvert, but how far introversion was the preponderant disposition among the upper classes generally, and whether it still plays as important a part in modern Hinduism as it did of old, is another matter, though the history of Buddhism certainly suggests that it may. This system, arising as a protest against the mystical formalism and particularism of Brahminism, although it made headway against Brahminism for centuries (partly no doubt because its sects made no difficulty in accepting, in mild disguise, much of the old mystic philosophy) and numbered millions of converts, yet at the present day is extinct in India. It may be added that caste, with its precise and unalterable determination of every man's position in the social fabric, seems to be just one of those examples of " arrangement " which are so typical of the introvert disposition.

AFRICA

In broad outline, the ethnology of Africa is so much simpler than that of the other continents that, in spite of vast unsurveyed areas and uncharted tribes, it is comparatively easy to write an account of its racial history. It is true that classification, or at least delimitation, has been very largely based on linguistic criteria, for the facts of language are relatively easily determined, and though in themselves no safe guide to race, nevertheless in Africa speech and race do so substantially correspond in regard to the great racial groups that such terms as " Bantu," " Semitic," etc.—

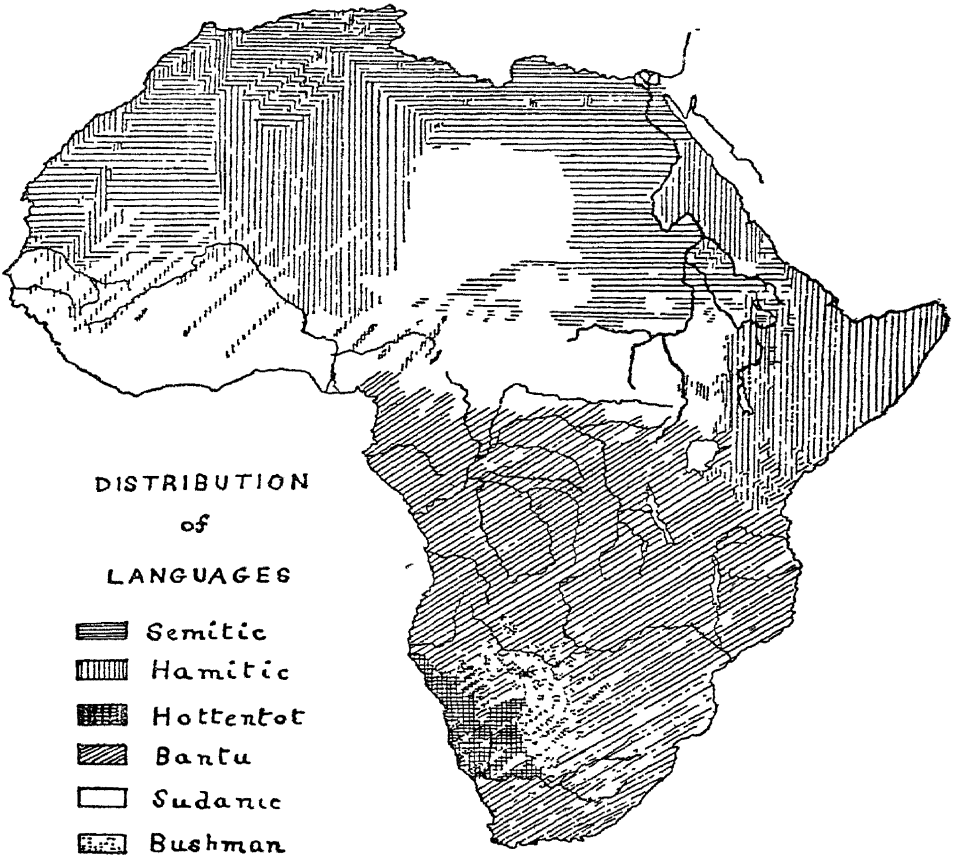


Fig. 6.—LINGUISTIC MAP OF AFRICA

which, strictly speaking, have no more than a linguistic significance—are habitually employed with a high degree of racial accuracy.

The main divisions of mankind in Africa are as follows:—

Bushmen, Hottentots } sometimes known as Khoisan
Negritos
Negroes
Hamites
Semites

It must, however, be remembered that the Semites—apart from a certain amount of mixture in Abyssinia—have only been in Africa a little more than a thousand years, and their influence has in the main been confined to the country north of the Sahara.

Of these divisions the Hamites, Negroes, and Bushmen are by far the most important.

In considering the movements and mixings that have gone on in Africa, it is well to remember that there are no great mountain ranges to obstruct the free movements of peoples, but deserts in the north (and to a limited extent in the south) with tropical rain forest in the west, though that on the edge of the Abyssinia plateau is hardly sufficiently broad to constitute an obstacle.

Apart from relatively late Semitic influence—whether Phœnician (Carthaginian) and limited, or Arab (Muhammadan) and widely diffused —the history of Africa is in the main the history of the Hamites, with the record of their interactions with the two more primitive African stocks, the Negro and Bushman, whether this influence was exerted by highly civilised Egyptians or by such wilder pastoralists as are represented at the present day by the Beja and the Somali. To emphasise the importance of the Hamites and the part they have played in Africa, it is only necessary to look at a map showing the distribution of languages in Africa at the present day, when it will be seen that Hamitic languages are spoken by peoples spread over perhaps one-fifth of Africa (*see Fig.* 6). The area inhabited by people regarded as Hamitic is even larger, including, as it does, many tribes superficially semiticised through the influence of Islam, and before the Arab expansion Hamitic languages must have been spoken over by far the greater part of the northern half of the continent. It is necessary to realise that the number of immigrant Arabs was never very great, and that the social results of intermarriage and the prestige of the dominant religion, far more than a substitution of Arab for Berber blood, accounts for such arabisation as has taken place.

Ethnologically, then, Africa may be divided into two sections, the northern essentially white or light-skinned, inhabited by Caucasian Hamites and Semites, the southern essentially Negro, with peoples almost everywhere characterised by their dark skin and woolly hair. A line drawn from the mouth of the Senegal River, through Timbuktu to Khartum, thence southwards and westwards to the Abyssinian border at about 12° N., following the Abyssinian border to the Juba River and Indian Ocean, marks out the northern boundary of the Negro with fair precision, but it must be realised that the term Negro includes at least three huge groups, each with its peculiar characteristics. Almost everywhere in this vast area the Negro carries Hamitic blood and has been influenced by Hamitic culture. The true Negro is mainly confined to West Africa, while the rest of negro Africa consists of Negroes hamiticised to a varying extent—on the one hand the Bantu, on the other the Nilotes and half-Hamites.

The Hamites—who, as already stated, belong to the Mediterranean race—are commonly divided into two great branches, eastern and northern, and their cradle-land is generally agreed to be Asiatic, perhaps Southern Arabia or possibly an area farther east, though Sergi suggests the Horn of Africa. There is no doubt that the Hamites and Semites must be regarded as modifications of an original stock, and that their differentiation did not take place so very long ago, evidence for this statement being furnished by the persistence of common cultural traits and linguistic affinities. Physically their relationship is obvious, as also their kinship with the European representatives of the Mediterranean race, though

some anthropologists admit this relationship only for the Northern branch of the Hamites, proposing to distinguish these from the Eastern branch by the term " Libyan."

To the Eastern Hamites belong the ancient and modern Egyptians, the Beja, Berberine (Barabra or Nubians), the Galla, Somali, Danakil, and, though mixed with Semites and Negroes, most Abyssinians.

The Northern Hamites include the Berbers of Tripoli, Tunis and Algeria (often conventionally distinguished as Libyans), the Berbers of Morocco, the Tuareg and Tibu of the Sahara, the Fula of Nigeria, and the extinct Guanche of the Canary Islands.

Apart from a few skeletal remains, referred to the Old Stone Age, the oldest " Africans " of whom we have any organised knowledge are of the great group of Eastern Hamites.[1] These are the pre-dynastic Egyptians (proto-Egyptians, anterior to about 3200 B.C.), whose burials leave no doubt as to their identity with the Beja of the eastern Egyptian desert, to-day the purest representatives of the Hamitic race. This is well brought out by comparing stature and cephalic index of the proto-Egyptians and of two modern Beja tribes, and is of extreme interest, implying as it does a stability of type for a period extending for some 6,000 years.

		C.I.	*Stature*
Beja	Ababda	73·7	64 in.
	Beni Amer	74·7	64½ in.
Proto-Egyptians (Naqada)		.. 74·9	64 in.

Nor in this matter are we limited to physical measurements. We have two notable representations of the proto-Egyptians as they were in proto-dynastic times 5,000 years ago and again in the twelfth dynasty about 2000 B.C. The first of these is the head of an ivory figure (*see Fig. 7a*) found at Hierakonopolis. It is only necessary to compare this, with its straight nose, well-modelled lips, and slight beard, with the photograph of the Beni Amer (*see Fig. 7b*) to see the likeness. The twelfth dynasty example comes from Meir, where on the west bank of the river, and some 160 miles south of Cairo, is a group of twelfth dynasty tomb-chapels dating to about 2000 B.C. On the walls of one of these there is a wonderful drawing of a Beja herdsman (*see Fig. 7c*), undoubtedly one of the most successful examples of racial portraiture of the Ancient Egyptians. The long thin figure and limbs, with broad chest, narrow flanks, and almost retracted abdomen, are no doubt conventional and exaggerated representations of the characteristics of the pastoral desert men as they appeared to the agricultural Egyptians, but there can be no criticism of the splendid naturalism of the lined face, the thin pointed nose and the mop of hair projecting over the forehead, and standing out stiffly over the whole head to the nape of the neck. The beard is the usual chin tuft of the Beja tribes. A glance shows the close resemblance, even to the hairdressing, to the Hadendoa whose head (*see Fig. 7d*) is sketched from photographs taken near Port Sudan.

[1] This ignores Mr. Leakey's recent important unpublished discoveries in East Africa; his preliminary announcement indicates that the Upper Palæolithic inhabitants of the Kenya plateau were not Negroes.

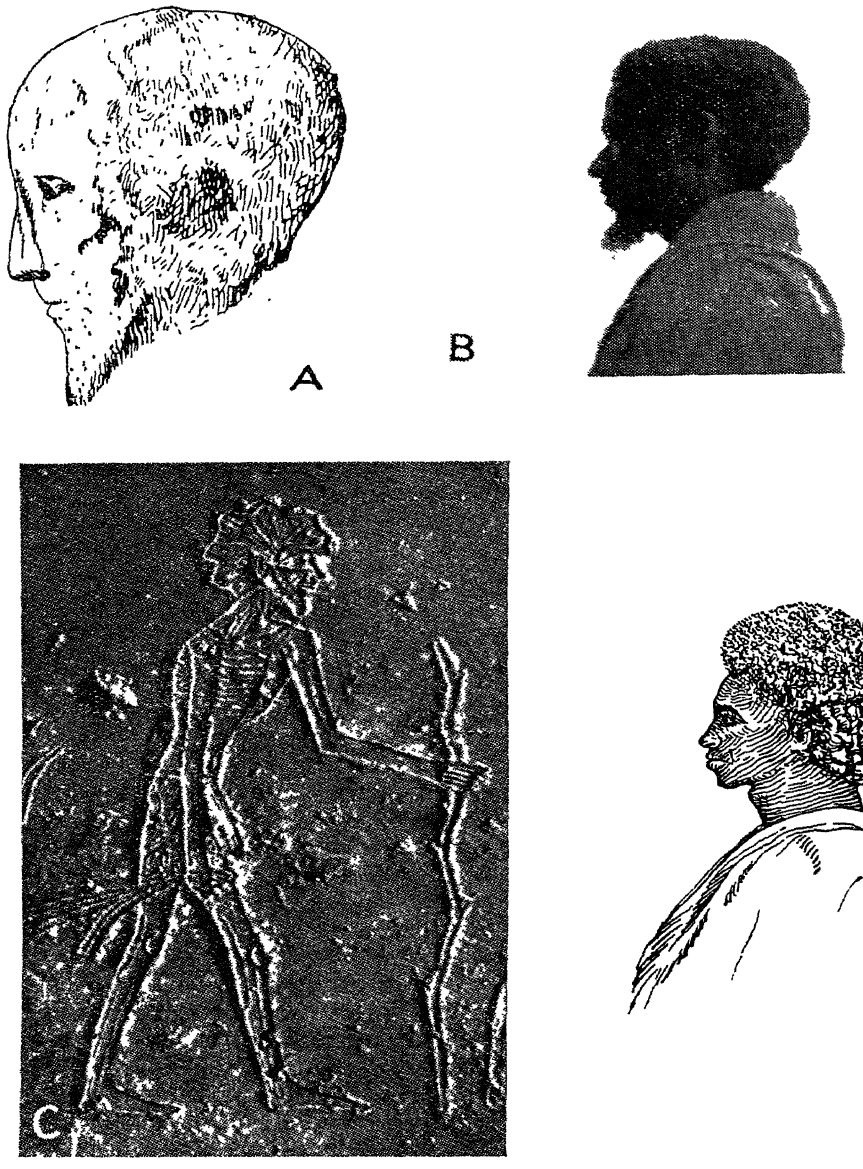


Fig. 7.—PERSISTENCE OF PROTO-EGYPTIAN TYPE IN NILE VALLEY

A. Ivory Head, Hierakonopolis at 3000 B.C. B. Modern Beja (Beni Amer). C. Wall painting (Meir 2000 B.C.). D. Modern Beja.

The Northern Hamites are typically represented by the Berbers, who skilled agriculturalists and gardeners, while many are pastoralists as ll. Their social organisation differs entirely from that of the Arabs, ng as essentially democratic and suited to a sedentary life as that of latter is aristocratic and apt for a nomadic existence, though it must be lised that this typical contrast is not absolute, and that in North Africa re are many sedentary Arabs and some nomad Berbers, the Arabs pre- ting a diminishing percentage of the population from east to west. e Berbers are good craftsmen, and the silver jewellery of Algeria is racteristic and distinctly beautiful, while their pottery shows an inter- ing resemblance to that of the proto-Egyptians.

The Arab conquest of Egypt in the years 639 to 641, although important turally, cannot, owing to the small number of immigrants, have had r great ethnic effect on the population of the Nile Valley. It was the at invasions of the eleventh century, and especially the migration of the ni Hillal and kindred tribes, that led to the effective arabisation of rth Africa and to the dominance of Islam. For in Africa, as elsewhere Islamic lands, creed counts for more than race, and the name " Arab " pplied to any people professing Islam, however much Negro or other eign blood may run in their veins, so that, however great its cultural ue, the term is of little ethnic significance and often is frankly mislead- . Yet in a broad sense, and excluding the Berbers, the term remains of itive value as denoting a vast series of tribes, claiming, even if they re it not, a predominant Caucasian ancestry, boasting a particular toric tradition and religion, and speaking a Semitic language. In this se the peoples we call Arab contrast with all the other Africans we re discussed in that they exhibit an essentially uniform culture, even n many instances they can boast but little of the newer immigrant od to which this culture is attached.

The Arabs of Africa may be divided into three main cultural groups : e nomads (" people of the camel ") ; Baqqara (cattle folk), semi- nads ; sedentaries. Actually some tribes, such as the Kenana of the glo-Egyptian Sudan, include all three classes, and many nomad tribes re sedentary sections, while there may be a limited nomadism, as when ribe sows its crops in an oasis in the autumn and leads a more or less ndering life until the spring. Tribal organisation is far stronger among nomads than among the sedentaries, and it is among the former that purest Arab physical type is found, *e.g.* among the camel-owning babish of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan or the Aulad Ali of Eastern ipoli. Even here there is considerable variation, largely determined by wealth of the tribal sections and the consequent amount of black slave od.

Though the Negro is no doubt one of the oldest stocks in Africa, no gro skulls of any great age have yet been discovered. The antiquity of race is, however, indicated by one of the great proto-Egyptian slate ettes, dating from *circa* 3200 B.C., which depicts captives and dead with olly or frizzly hair and showing the same form of circumcision as is v practised by the Masai and other negroid tribes of Kenya Colony ; reover, the Archæological Survey of Nubia has brought to light a

burial—with typical Negro hair—dating to the Middle Kingdom (about 2000 B.C.).

The true (West African) Negro, whose physical characters are described on page 445, possesses certain characteristic cultural features. They build gable-roofed huts; their weapons include bows, tapering at each end, with bowstrings of vegetable products, swords and plaited shields, but not clubs or slings; among musical instruments are wooden drums and a peculiar form of guitar—the so-called West African harp; clothing is of bark-cloth and palm-fibre, not of skin; secret societies, masks and wood-carvings of the human figure are characteristic; cattle are absent, the domestic animals being the dog, goat, pig, and hen; cannibalism occurs, and human sacrifice—formerly common—might attain a huge scale, as in Ashanti. On the artistic side, the West African Negro shows a skill in plastic art that is hardly found elsewhere in Negro Africa, the carved ivories, wooden and ivory masks, and bronzes of Benin being specially noteworthy.

As already stated, the great part of Negro Africa is occupied by mixed populations of hamiticised Negroes (though some of the members of the Bantu group carry but little Hamitic blood and show no great signs of Hamitic culture). The origin of these Negro-Hamitic peoples will be understood when it is realised that the incoming pastoral Hamites arrived in a long succession of waves, of which the earliest may have been as remote as the end of the Pluvial period. Better armed than the agricultural Negroes among whom they settled (there was no Bronze Age in Africa, and the Negro, now an excellent iron worker, presumably learnt this art from the Hamites), they would soon assert their superiority over the latter. Gradually a series of peoples combining Negro and Hamitic blood arose; these, superior to the pure Negro, would be regarded with disdain by the next incoming wave of Hamites, and be pushed farther inland to play the part of an invading aristocracy *vis-à-vis* the Negroes on whom they impinged. This process was repeated over a long period of time, the agriculturalists always dominated by the pastoralists and tending to leave their own mode of life in favour of pastoralism or to combine the two. The result of one such series of combinations is to be seen in the Zulu, another in the Baganda, while an even more striking example is afforded by the symbiosis—to use a biological term—of the Bahima and the Bahero. The Bahima, a tall cattle-owning aristocracy with narrow nose and long faces (though they always have Negro hair), are utterly unlike the shorter, broader-faced, Negro Bahero in whose country they live and who normally provide them with grain.

It is not surprising that classification is difficult, and the observer is compelled to fall back on the relatively easily determined facts of language. With this reservation the following may be regarded as the primary divisions:—

(1) The half-Hamites, inhabiting East Africa and East Central Africa from the neighbourhood of Lake Rudolph in Kenya to 5° or 6° S. in Tanganyika Territory.[1]

[1] These are sometimes called Nilo-Hamites, a thoroughly inappropriate term since there is no evidence to suggest that they arose from a mixture of Nilotes and Hamites, nor that they are Hamites living on the Nile south of Khartum.

(2) The Nilotes of the Nile Valley, extending from the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan into Uganda.

(3) The Bantu, a congeries of peoples occupying the southern two-thirds of black Africa, roughly delimited by a line running irregularly from the Rio del Rey to the mouth of the Juba River.

The half-Hamites, as the term implies, carry a considerable amount of Hamitic blood, *i.e.* definitely more than the Bantu and Nilotes. The relative preponderance of the Hamitic side of their ancestry is reflected alike in speech, appearance and culture. They all speak languages of Hamitic type, and although dark-skinned their faces are generally Negroid rather than Negro. Culturally they are predominantly pastoralists, many of their tribes leading the semi-nomadic life which this entails. The Nandi, Masai, Turkana, and Suk are perhaps the best-known tribes of this group.

The second great group of hamiticised Negroes are the Nilotes, a well-defined physical type, speaking Sudanic languages and associated with a particular culture, who occupy the Nile Valley from some 200 miles south of Khartum to Lake Kioga, one group reaching Lake Victoria. The majority of Shilluk—who, with the Dinka, may be taken as the most typical representatives of the Nilotes—are obviously Negroid rather than Negro, while in spite of their dark skins and no doubt preponderantly Negro blood the Nilotes are culturally far more Hamitic than Negro, their predominant pastoralism being reflected (as in the half-Hamites) in the almost religious esteem in which they hold their cattle. Human sacrifice is very rare and cannibalism unknown, in contradistinction to their neighbours on the other side of the Nile-Congo divide. The men for the most part go naked. Psychically the Nilotes show an aloofness and pride of race, with a lack of desire for European clothes or trade objects, which is probably unparalleled elsewhere in Africa.

The Bantu are a congeries of peoples named from and defined by the peculiar type of language they speak, which is generally considered to have originated in the neighbourhood of the Great Lakes. Apart from the nations grouped round the shores of the Great Lakes (Baganda, Bakitara, etc.), where the Hamitic invaders from the north have mingled less completely with the older inhabitants, the infusion of Hamitic blood which differentiates the Bantu from the pure Negro is strongest in the east and south, weakest in the west and north.

The Bantu may be divided into three main groups : Southern Bantu, inhabiting the vast region south of the Zambesi and Kunene Rivers ; Western Bantu, reaching from the Kunene River in the south to the Rio del Rey (separating Southern Nigeria from the Cameroons) in the north and from the Atlantic to the Rift Valley (line of the Great Lakes) in the east ; Eastern Bantu, stretching from Uganda in the north to the Zambesi in the south.

The Southern Bantu comprise the Shona peoples, the Zulu-Xosa (including the so-called " Kaffirs " and the Matebele), the Suto-Chwana (Bechwana, Basuto, etc.), and the Herero-Ovambo ; they are grouped into a very large number of tribes showing great diversity in physical characters.

The area of the Western Bantu includes the true " Heart of Africa,"

the tropical rain forest of the Congo, the home of such little-known beasts as the okapi, and of pygmy hunting tribes with habits and beliefs of which we are almost entirely ignorant, but it also includes (or included) the territory of considerable and highly organised kingdoms, such as the mediæval kingdoms of the Kongo and the Balunda, and in later times the Bushongo Empire, as well as such renowned cannibals as the Fang. The southern limit is vague, the Lunda Empire and Jaga raids, with subsequent encroachment of wandering tribes, having played havoc with tribal organisation.

Of the Eastern Bantu, the Lacustrine tribes, as already mentioned, present a more recent Hamitic element than that which originally gave rise to the Bantu; indeed, among the Banyankole assimilation between the two stocks has scarcely gone beyond the possession of a common language, spoken alike by the intruding Bahima and the indigenous Bahero.

Apart from the Lacustrines the Eastern Bantu include such well-known tribes as the Akamba and Akikuyu, essentially agriculturalists, although cattle are even here regarded as the embodiment of wealth. Among these tribes there is, strictly speaking, no chief, but government is in the hands of a council of elders, with only local authority, a man's position in the community being according to the seniority of his age-grade. The Wachagga on Kilimanjaro share with the Lotuko of the Nile Valley the interesting custom of exhuming the bones of their dead after some months, the skull being then taken to an ancestral shrine or deposited in an earthen jar in the neighbourhood of the village. The Swahili of the east coast are specially important, as their language has become the *lingua franca* of a great part of East Africa.

The Bushman is distinctive in appearance from all other Africans save only the Hottentot, and belongs to a type so ancient that he may well have been in Africa for a period to be measured in tens of thousands of years, while until less than a century ago he was using stone tools of the type that was being made in Europe towards the end of the Old Stone Age. It is generally agreed that the Bushmen reached their present home in South Africa from the north, their ancestors having perhaps occupied the great part of tropical East and East-Central Africa, while the former extension of the race over practically the whole of South Africa is shown by the distribution of its relics—skeletal remains, rock paintings, and even place-names. Apart from isolated offshoots, their present range is restricted to the Kalahari Desert and the northern half of South-West Africa, where alone their original mode of life has been retained.

The Bushmen lead a primitive nomadic life as hunters and food-gatherers, their social organisation and culture being of the most simple. The southern Bushmen are notable for the paintings and engravings which in the past they executed on the walls of caves and rock shelters. The paintings, many of which are of comparatively recent date, are naturalistic studies of high artistic merit, depicting animals, cattle-raids, dances, and magico-religious scenes in which animal-headed human figures are represented. This art seems to have completely died out.

The Bushmen are rapidly becoming extinct. Even before the arrival

of the white man in South Africa they were being forced out of their hunting-grounds by their stronger Bantu and Hottentot neighbours, and the white colonists continued the process of dispossession and destruction, until the ancient owners of the land, unable or unwilling to adapt themselves to their changed environment—to domesticate animals or cultivate the soil—were reduced to a few scattered and dwindling remnants.

There is little doubt that the Hottentots are the result of the mixture of Bushmen and early invading Hamites, with an infusion of Bantu, and it is generally held that the mixed race arose in the north, perhaps near the Great Lakes, and did not reach South Africa until after the Bushmen. The former distribution of the Hottentots comprised practically the whole of the western part of South Africa from the Kunene River in the north to the Cape Peninsula in the south, and extended inland to the Kei River. To-day, though scattered remnants are to be met with over a considerable part of this area, their tribal organisation is only found in a state of preservation in South-West Africa north of the Orange River. Like the Bushmen, whom they dispossessed, they are now a passing people, and only a remnant of their former customs survive. Culturally the outstanding difference between the two races is that the Bushmen are hunters and food collectors only, while the Hottentots are a pastoral people, with herds of long-horned cattle and flocks of fat-tailed sheep ; they also differ from the Bushmen in practising the art of smelting iron, make wooden pots, weave baskets and mats from reeds and rushes, and make skin bags to hold milk and water. Their material culture is, then, superior to that of the Bushmen, but they do not appear ever to have possessed the art of painting and engraving on rock at which the older and more primitive race excelled.

Of the pygmy Negritos of Africa but little is known ; not only are we ignorant of their social organisation, but no one has yet discovered whether they have a language of their own, all recorded vocabularies belonging to the speech of their Negro neighbours. Hunters, trappers and collectors, they are nowadays confined to the thick tropical forests within 6° north and south of the Equator, but folklore and classical tradition point to their having had a much wider distribution a few thousand years ago ; as long ago as the Pyramid Age (*i.e.* in the third millenium B.C.) the Pharaohs were sending south—but certainly not so far south as the Congo Valley—for pygmies to dance before them.

It is not only among the islands of Farther Asia that the Oceanic Mongols have travelled in their clumsy-looking but seaworthy craft : passing westwards, they reached Madagascar sufficiently long ago for an early form of Austronesian (Malayo-Polynesian) to become the standard speech, while the Antimerina, generally called Hova, a group of sixteenth-century immigrants of fairly pure blood (perhaps originating in Java), now form the dominant aristocracy of the island. The greater part of the population is negroid, and it seems natural to suppose that this element is African, but considering that the language of Madagascar

is an early form of Austronesian and the strong currents between Africa and Madagascar, as well as the facts that Madagascar culture is not Bantu, and that the latter are not seamen, there is much in favour of the suggestion that the black element is also from the Far East, *i.e.* consisted of Oceanic Negroids, who are known to be expert seamen. Immigrants from Arabia have certainly played an important part in forming local dynasties, some arriving so early that, as reported, they recognised the patriarchs but not the Prophet.

In the south there has been immigration from India, and in the north European pirates and slavers have left their mark; *e.g.* the man who consolidated the Betsimakara, one of the more important tribes, and provided them with a royal house, was a half-caste.

AMERICA

The Eskimo occupy the Arctic coasts of North America, Greenland, and extreme North-East Asia, and must be regarded as early immigrants of Asiatic type.[1] They are short (st. 62½ in.) dolichocephals (C.I. 72) with broad flat face and prominent cheek-bones; nose narrow, moderately prominent; eyes black and straight, but the epicanthic fold is occasionally present.

The Amerinds (American Indians) occupy the rest of the New World, it being understood that they have for the most part been exterminated in North America, and in the southern half of the continent are largely represented by mixed breeds. The hair is everywhere black, lank and coarse; skin colour yellowish-white to chocolate, usually some tint of brown; stature varies but is generally high; skull generally mesaticephalic, but ranging from low dolichocephaly to high mesaticephaly; face usually broad, with high and laterally prominent cheek-bones; eyes brown, with sometimes a suggestion of Mongolian characters; nose often well developed and straight, even aquiline in some northern stocks.

In spite of variation in appearance between groups, ethnologists are generally agreed that there is an underlying general similarity of type among the peoples of the New World which can only point to an original common parentage. Further, since it is highly improbable on zoological grounds that man originated on the American continent, this must have been peopled either from the east or from the west, and the resemblance to the Mongolian type is so widespread that it seems certain that the homeland of the American Indian was Asia rather than Europe; moreover, while there is no easy access to the New World from Europe, the gap between Asia and North America *via* Behring Straits is only some forty miles.

This seems a simple conclusion. It is in fact so simple, considering the complexity of physical characters and cultures found in the New World, that some little elaboration is really due. Since, however, space forbids

[1] "It seems to be fairly well established that the Eskimo were the result of a migration of a special type into America at presumably a very early date. The most representative appear to be those of the Hudson Bay district which would thus be a secondary area of characterisation" (Haddon: *The Races of Man*).

any general discussion of all the lines of argument, it must suffice to transcribe the conclusions reached by Hrdlička and supported by Wissler :—

" The American natives represent in the main a single stem or strain of people, one homotype ; this stem is identical with that of the yellow-brown races of Asia and Polynesia ; and the main immigration of the Americans has taken place, in the main, at least, gradually and by the north-western route in the earlier part of the recent period, after man had reached a relatively high stage of physical development and multiple secondary differentiations. The immigration, in all probability, was a dribbling and prolonged overflow, likely due to pressure from behind, or want, and a search for better hunting and fishing grounds in the direction where no resistance of man as yet existed. This was followed by multiplications, spread, and numerous minor differentiations of language due to isolation and other natural conditions, and by the development, on the basis of what was transported, of more or less localised American cultures. It is also probable that the western coast of America, within the last 2,000 years, was on more than one occasion reached by small parties of Polynesians, and that the eastern coast was similarly reached by small groups of whites, and that such parties may have locally influenced the culture of the Americans ; but such accretions have nowhere, as far as we know to-day, modified the native population." [1]

It is not possible to state the date at which the ancestors of the American Indian first entered North America—a date some 4000–5000 B.C. is perhaps plausible [2]—but this can be said, that no implements or other evidence of early or middle palæolithic man (using the terms in a Western European sense) have been found in the New World, some of the so-called palæoliths that have been produced from time to time being no more than rejects, or rude or unfinished tools, while the skeletal fragments have not passed the test of skilled examination. There is, in fact, no valid line of argument that when man first migrated into America he was other than neanthropic, or that his stone technique was other than a simple form of stone chipping. But this need not imply very recent or, as sometimes stated, a neolithic immigration ; the variety in language and physical characters in America can only point to a prolonged period of physical differentiation.

Linguistic considerations point in the same direction. All American languages yet studied are morphologically akin ; they all belong to the " polysynthetic " group—that is to say, languages that permit of a whole sentence being included in a single polysyllabic word—not one true example of which is found anywhere in the eastern hemisphere, where the Basque, Caucasus, and Ural-Altaic groups limit incorporation to pronominal and purely relational elements. It is clear that a system so apart from all the conditions found elsewhere must imply a long development

[1] Clark Wissler : *The American Indian* (1922).

[2] At the other extremity of the time scale it has recently been suggested that the more northern tribes of the Athapascan linguistic stock (inhabiting the Mackenzie River area and so nearest to Asia) have reached the New World since the beginning of our era.

and consolidation, and the time is also demanded by the vast number of stock languages prevailing throughout the continent, all differing profoundly in their vocabulary, and in fact with nothing in common except this extraordinary polysynthetic groove in which they are cast. There are probably about seventy-five stock languages in North America, of which fifty-eight occur north of Mexico, indeed it has been stated that there are as many linguistic stocks in America as in the whole of the Old World. Moreover differentiation within a stock is very great, and the dialects usually as mutually unintelligible as, for example, English and German.

All this goes well with the relatively primitive condition of the culture generally accepted as having been that of the immigrants. Even at the time of the Discovery, although there was cereal culture there was no plough, corn was ground with the push quern, but the rotary quern was unknown, while the wheel did not exist in any form, so that pottery was built up by hand or with the aid of a mould, and transport was by human porterage, travois, or sledge; there was no metal working except in Mexico (where copper and even bronze were used to a limited extent), the only exceptions being in the fortunate areas where native copper existed, and even here no more was done than laboriously to break away pieces of metal which were afterwards hammered into shape without the aid of heat.

The physical anthropology of the American peoples has not yet been systematised, and no classification can at present be grounded thereon, even with a linguistic basis. Therefore, as a geographical or cultural grouping has much practical convenience, it is customary to adopt a division into areas of material culture, each possessing distinctive features. The location of food areas laid down the general lines of these cultural groupings, the characteristic of such an area being the tendency to specialise in some one or two foods, and the New World is thus comprehended under eight large food areas (*see Fig.* 8). Thus, in North America the Arctic and Sub-Arctic region is the natural home of the caribou or American reindeer; on the Pacific slope we have the salmon area; to the south, in California, the area of wild nuts and seeds, with the acorn as the most typical food; in the heart of the continent, the bison area; the eastern maize area in the Eastern United States; from the Colorado River through Mexico to the lower part of Chile is the area of intensive agriculture, in which maize is again the leading food; the manioc area comprises the interior of the southern continent (although this latter vast region is too little known for us to be able definitely to characterise the food of the whole area); finally, the lower part of the continent has certain similarities to the caribou area, the chief food animal being the guanaco. Of these eight food areas, three may be grouped as the homes of hunting peoples, three of agriculturalists, one of fishers, and one of gatherers of wild seeds.

With this geographical grouping a cultural grouping is generally combined, that is, a classification of social groups according to their culture traits. Wissler gives fifteen areas, each conceived to be the home of a distinct type of culture spreading from a centre. Groups of tribes are thus located as constituting culture centres, and other tribes as

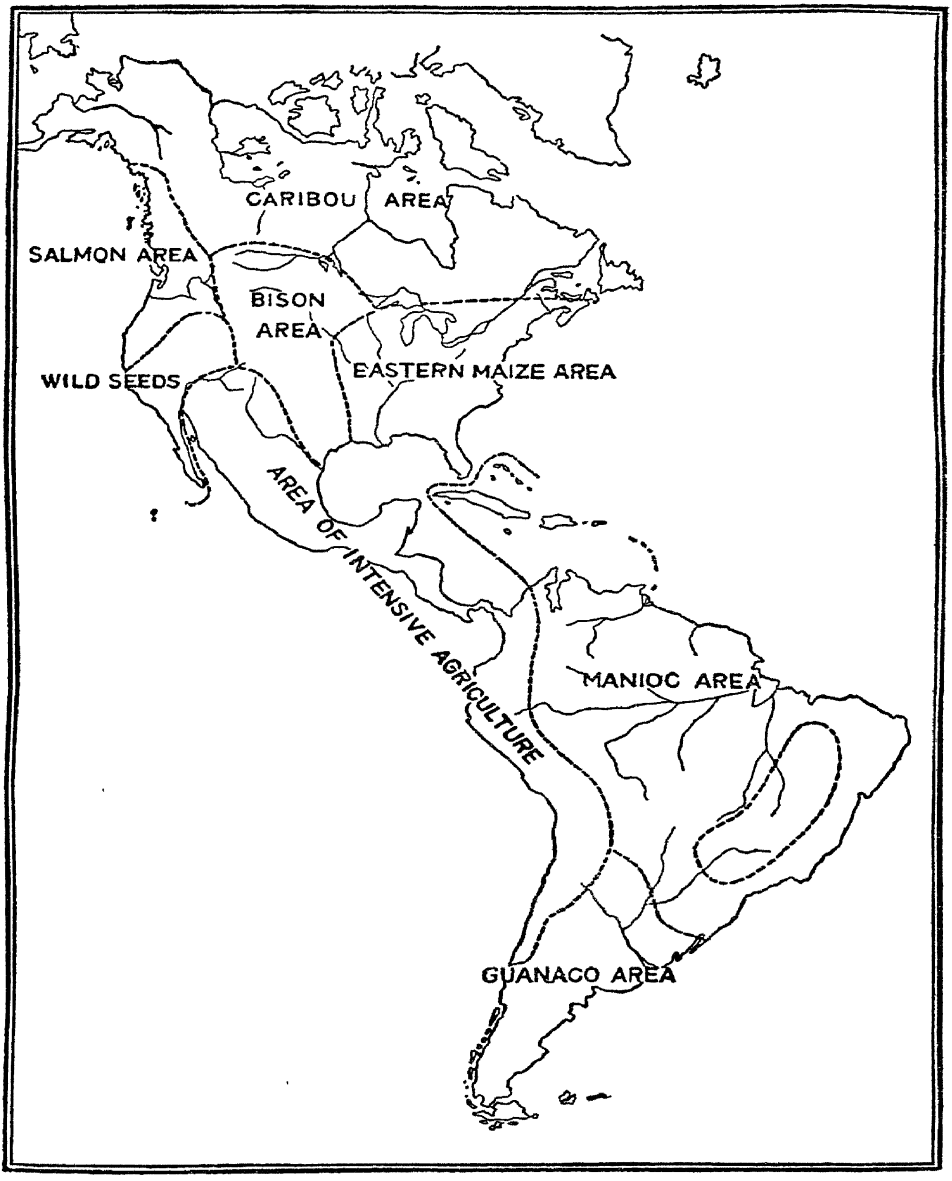


Fig. 8.—FOOD AREAS OF THE NEW WORLD

intermediate or transitional. Space will only permit brief mention of a few of these areas.

The Eskimo area spreads from Greenland to Alaska, and these tribes have developed a highly specialised culture to meet the requirements of the unpromising environment, such archæological researches as have been made tending to show that this culture has remained essentially unchanged for many centuries. Winter sealing, combined with caribou and musk-ox hunting in summer, are the principal occupations. The skin tent is general in summer, and the snow house, as a more or less permanent winter house, prevails east of Point Barrow. Owing to the lack of vegetation in these regions the Eskimo depend almost entirely on animal food : the skins of seals furnish the material for their tents and clothing, the flesh is almost their only food, and the blubber the indispensable fuel during the long winter, when they live in solid snow houses, each occupied by two families. Each settlement has a headman, but his authority is very limited and there is no obligation to obey him. The textile industry is absent except for a little basket-making ; implements and weapons are in the main of ivory, bone, slate or stone. Pottery is unknown. The long Arctic winters provide the Eskimo with leisure to develop the art of carving, especially in ivory, to a high degree of perfection.

It would be consistent to give some such summary as the above for each of the eight remaining cultural areas generally recognised in Canada and the United States,[1] but a suggestion of the results has already been given on page 476, where the characteristic foods that have done so much to shape the culture of each area have been cited. It may, however, be mentioned that in the valley of the Mississippi (the south-eastern culture area) there is archæological evidence of a much more advanced culture than is found there at the present day, for this is the region of great mounds and earthworks, once thought to be of enormous antiquity, and the work of a vanished race, but which later research has shown to be almost certainly constructed by the historical Indians, tribes of the Algonquian, Iroquian, Siouan, and Caddoan stocks. Archæological evidence also points to the continuity of the type of culture represented by the present-day Pueblo Indians, centred in the upper Rio Grande Valley and extending into Mexico (the south-western culture area). The Pueblo culture takes its name from the towns or villages of stone or adobe (sun-baked clay), and exhibits traits not found elsewhere in Canada or the United States, *e.g.* the art of masonry, main dependence upon maize, the loom or upward weaving, the use of a grinding-stone, and the domestication of the turkey. There is evidence of connection between the Pueblo area and the Aztec of southern Mexico, though no architectural evidence of any continuous chain of culture between the two areas exists. The Pueblo Indians were accustomed to ornament ceremonial objects of shell and bone with a mosaic incrustation of turquoise and lignite, an art practised on a far larger scale by the Aztec, and, as

[1] For these areas see Keane : *Man, Past and Present* (1920) and Wissler : *The American Indian* (1922).

there are important turquoise deposits in New Mexico but none in Southern Mexico, it is likely that the Aztec obtained their supplies, probably by indirect trade, from the Pueblo area. The marvellous examples in the British Museum represent the acme of this turquoise incrustation, and are generally admitted to have been sent to Europe by Cortez or his companions.

The peoples of Mexico and Central America may be regarded as constituting the (tenth) Nahua culture area. Here the interest centres chiefly on the two great ethnic groups—Nahuatlan and Huaxtecan—whose relations were so closely interwoven that they can hardly be considered separately. At the time of the Spanish conquest there was one culture from Rio Grande to Lake Nicaragua, typical representatives of which were the Aztec of Mexico City—a branch of the Nahuatlan family—though the Zapote and others were almost equally typical. (The Zapote language is still spoken by a few natives.) Centuries earlier the culture centred round the Huaxtecan Maya in Honduras (later in Yucatan), who have left behind them the most impressive ruins in the New World. The Early Maya alone among the aborigines of America had developed a hieroglyphic script—though other tribes had advanced pictographic art—and their culture is an extraordinary example of artistic and technical development among a people ignorant of bronze and iron. Stelæ have been found dated from about 300 B.C., at which time the population must have attained a relatively high degree of civilisation, including an advanced architecture, a calendar system, and astronomy, while legendary chronology takes us back another three thousand years. It should be noted that the later Maya worked both copper and bronze. Maya building comprised monoliths, temples, and " stepped " pyramids, but magnificent as these buildings were, they show that the Maya were ignorant of three important principles—the use of mortar, the bonding of corners, and the true arch. Sculpture was mainly in relief and was highly skilful; perfect profiles were portrayed, and even three-quarter figures in correct perspective. The art of pottery was highly developed, and vessels were painted in rich designs. Maya religious beliefs were portrayed in the symbolic and ceremonial nature of their art, the rain god being the deity most frequently represented.

The reason for the desertion by the Maya of their age-long settlements remains a mystery, but it is certain that when Cortez passed through the country these wonderful sites had long been swallowed up by jungle, and the Spaniards found the Maya no longer in cities but living in independent tribal groups. At the present day primitive and loosely organised groups are found in this area, speaking Maya languages but with no knowledge of their calendar system or writing. Maya intellectual culture, being exclusive to the priestly caste, either passed to the Aztec or into oblivion.

Before the collapse of the Old Empire, Maya civilisation had spread to the Mexican Valley, where it was adopted by the Toltec, immigrants from the north. The Toltec were followed by a series of invading tribes (Nahuatl-speaking) culminating in the arrival of the Aztec—skin-clad nomads, practising a desultory agriculture and ignorant of weaving and other arts. It was not until 150 years before Cortez that the Aztec became independent, their rapid rise to dominance over the other tribes of the

valley being probably due to their introduction of the bow, together with a genius for political organisation. Their rule was based on a peculiar system of ceremonial war—in which the taking of prisoners for sacrificial purposes was the main object—and of trade guilds, many of which represented submerged tribal groups. Their culture was based on that of the Maya, from whom they borrowed much, including their calendar and deities, and these Maya gods, for the most part of a relatively mild type like the Maya themselves, became in the Aztec pantheon bloodthirsty demons demanding countless victims. Religious festivals were celebrated in accordance with the calendar, and human sacrifice was on an almost incredible scale; besides the annual sacrifice of a young man to the Creator god, there were the gruesome ceremonies in honour of the fertility god, involving the wearing by the participants of the skins of the victims, flayed after their hearts had been torn out on the sacrificial stone.

In South America five great cultural areas may be recognised, two of which, the Chibcha and the Inca, are particularly interesting on account of the high civilisation attained by some of their constituent peoples. We may pause here to note that, in general, the southern populations of the continent present more violent contrasts than those in the north; the wild tribes touch a profounder depth of savagery, while the civilised peoples attain a higher degree of excellence in the arts of engineering, architecture, and political organisation. As in Mexico many of the Nahuatlan tribes remained savages, so in Colombia the semi-civilised Muscayans were surrounded by numerous kindred tribes who were real savages, wearing no clothes and practising cannibalism; cannibalism seems to have been everywhere more rife in the south than in the north, where it survived only as a ceremonial rite.

There is generally a close connection between the surviving peoples of the Isthmus and Colombia, where we come to the most northerly of the great linguistic families of the Andes, the Chibcha-speaking peoples, an agricultural folk with a highly developed irrigation system, a sun cult, no stone buildings or copper, but with great skill in gold work (formerly the centre of the art for the New World). At the time of the discovery the Muysca Empire, the most powerful of the Chibcha group, was coterminous southward with that of the famous Inca of Peru—the dominant nation of the Quichuan race—though the two civilisations seem to have been quite distinct.

Like the Aztec, the Inca built their empire on the ruins of an earlier civilisation, of which the megalithic remains at Tiahuanaco (at the southern end of Lake Titicaca, now 13,000 ft. above sea level) are the most important monument. This pre-Inca civilisation appears to have flourished at about the same period as that of the earliest dated Maya monuments, though as the Peruvians, unlike the Maya, had evolved no form of script, even of a pictographic nature, we have no means of dating their architectural remains. (The only form of record used by the Inca was the quipu, an elaborate system of knotted cords.) The ruins of Tiahuanaco are megalithic, with a celebrated monolithic gateway; the masonry, apart from the great size of the blocks, is almost unique in that the stones are polygonal and often carved with re-entrant angles, each

stone being cut to fit its immediate neighbour. The pottery is also of excellent technique, and that found at Truxillo (" proto-Chimu ") is some of the most remarkable ever produced by a people ignorant of the wheel, the modelled vases in human form giving us minute details of the dress and physical characters of the population. Metals, both gold and copper (the latter often a form of bronze), were known and worked to a far greater extent than among the Maya.

Many centuries elapsed between the fall of this megalithic civilisation and the rise of the Inca towards the end of the eleventh century A.D. Tradition agrees that the Inca, with the sun as their tribal god, entered Peru from the south, probably from the Bolivian highlands. At the time of discovery eleven Inca had ruled in Peru, by which time their empire stretched from Quito in Ecuador to the River Maule in Chile, comprising more than 35° of latitude, and they had assumed the position of a ruling caste rather than a dominant tribe. The system of control of this enormous area was a rigid combination of theocracy and state socialism, based on belief in the ruling Inca as a god on earth ; agricultural labour and military service were compulsory for all, and no member of the tributary population might move from his village or marry outside his district. The Inca were wonderful road builders, and though their masonry lacked the force of the older civilisation their buildings, of rectangular stone cut to size and accurately fitting without mortar, are perhaps technically the most perfect ever constructed by a people ignorant of iron. There was complicated ceremonial worship, and human sacrifice took place, but not apparently, as among the Aztecs, on a large scale. The Quichua dialect is still spoken over this area.

The great basin of the Amazon is one of the world's most typical tropical areas, but in spite of the savagery of many of its tribes there is almost everywhere some native agriculture—manioc (the tapioca plant) being the staple crop—though the tribes are not dependent on it as are those of the intensive agricultural area, and the responsibility for cultivation is usually assigned to the women.

The countless aborigines of the Amazon and Orinoco basins are dominated by four linguistic stocks, the Arawak and Carib in the north-west, the Tupi and Tapuya in the south-east. Of these the first pair are the most widely distributed and occupy the whole of the West Indies, as well as the greater part of Venezuela, Guiana, and Northern Brazil. Physically the Arawak and Carib are very similar, and the ethnic division is admittedly on linguistic grounds only. The Tapuya (Botocudo, Ges, etc.) are the aborigines of Eastern Brazil, and include many primitive forest tribes. Both in culture and physical characters they perhaps represent an early type of immigrant, possibly allied to the type known as Lagoa Santa, to which some ethnologists have attached perhaps undue importance. All their implements are of wood, they do not work stone, and they have no tradition of migration ; they are pure nomads, roaming the woods in a nude state in search of roots and berries, and are notorious cannibals. The Tupi formerly occupied an immense area, estimated at one quarter of the southern continent, and extending into Peru. They were an aggressive people, addicted to cannibalism. Most tribes practised agriculture to some extent.

The Highlands of Bolivia, Patagonia, and the lower half of Chile comprise the so-called Guanaco area, the Araucanian, Puelchean, and Tsonekan (Tehuelche) being among the most important stocks. Here the domestication of the llama and alpaca provides the only example of pastoralism in the New World; the Spanish colonists introduced horses and cattle, and, like the Indians of the North American plains, the natives of this area quickly developed an intense horse culture. These people are said facially and mentally more to resemble Europeans. To the Araucanian group belong the folk commonly called Pampaen (Pampas Indians), now mainly represented by the half-breed Gauchos.

The Patagonians (Tsoneca), of giant stature for South America (st. 68–72 in., C.I. 85), are of uncertain origin, and it has been suggested that their original home was amongst the Bororo of Matto Grosso in Brazil, whom they closely resemble. The Bororo are said to be an exceptionally tall, round-headed people (st. 68½, C.I. 81.5).

The native life of the most important islands of the Antilles was almost completely stamped out by the Spanish conquerors. So far as we know, the pre-Columbian population was first pure Arawak, but later overrun by Carib.

The Yahgan, the aborigines of Fuegia, are a sea-shore people, formerly cannibals, and with a culture so primitive that it may fairly be described as of bone and shell.

OCEANIA

Oceania is broadly taken to indicate Australia and the island groups of the Pacific, but does not include the Aleutian Islands in the North Pacific nor even the islands of Indonesia. Its natural geographical units are Polynesia, Micronesia, Melanesia (including New Guinea), Australia, and Tasmania, while the peoples that have gone to populate it are Negritos (in New Guinea), Polynesians, Micronesians, Melanesians, and Papuans with their archaic branch, the Tasmanians and Pre-Dravidians (Australians). Of these peoples the pygmy Negritos, the Tasmanians, and the Australians are by far the most primitive.

We know little about the pygmies of New Guinea, except that they are no longer a food-gathering, hunting folk, but practise much the same agriculture as their taller neighbours. As already stated, the typical Papuan is short, dark, and long-headed, though mesaticephalic and even brachycephalic " islands " occur, *e.g.* in the southern part of British New Guinea. We cannot account for these variations; presumably they are the result of miscegenation. Be this as it may, it seems that a somewhat variable Papuan stock at one time existed over the whole of Melanesia. Thus (with Negrito admixture) we may account for the short stature of some Papuan hillmen, for the extreme dolichocephaly of some Fijian tribes, and the extinct Tasmanian with his dolicho-mesaticephaly and medium stature.[1]

[1] The Tasmanian " may be regarded as a somewhat generalised variety of the Negrito-Papuan stock, which at a very early date crossed Australia and was isolated in Tasmania by the formation of Bass Strait before the Australians reached so far south " (Haddon: *The Races of Man*, 1924).

The Australians, whose physical characters are described on p. 445, represent an old and unusually homogeneous stock, indicating, in spite of probable foreign cultural influences, no effective immigration into the continent since their arrival.

We may feel confident that these three primitive types reached the Pacific by the Malay Peninsula and Indonesian Islands. The presence of pygmies in the Philippines makes this clear for the Negritos. We have no direct evidence for the Papuans, but for the Australians our knowledge is more precise ; not only has a fossil " proto-Australian " skull been dug up at Talgai in Queensland, but two skulls in fossil or semi-fossil condition, clearly Australoid in character, have been found at Wadjak in Java.

All this seems relatively simple, probably because we are dealing with migrations of high antiquity. The migrations of Polynesians are much more recent and more difficult to understand, while of the past history of the Micronesians and their history we know practically nothing.

The position when the Polynesians entered the Pacific was roughly as follows. The islands that are now Polynesian were uninhabited, or some may have carried a primitive " black " population. The Polynesians, starting from Indonesia, moved eastwards through Melanesia to their future homes in the Eastern Pacific, so that even now a line drawn from New Zealand through Fiji to Hawaii cuts the Pacific into eastern Polynesian and western Melanesian-Papuan areas. We can even indicate a portion of the route taken by the Polynesians in passing through Melanesia, basing our conclusions on small island populations showing Polynesian characters in the midst of Melanesians. Thus the Polynesians passed along the north coast of Netherlands New Guinea, sailing westwards round the Bismarck Archipelago (leaving traces at Abgarris or Fead Island), then south-east, north of the Solomons (colony on Ontong Java), and so to Tikopia, the most important of these colonies. There is, or was, a colony on Uea (Wallis Island), but this is generally taken to be a backwash from Polynesia.

So much for the pre-history. Traditionally, and probably in actual fact, the Samoan group formed a rallying-ground for the migrants, who may be supposed to have left Indonesia some 2,000 years ago, and Savaii —one of the Samoan islands, originally Savaiki—is a name which in one form or another is found, often as the homeland, accompanying the Polynesians all over the Pacific.

For the sake of simplicity we have spoken of the Polynesians as though they were one people, but it is certain that there was a number of greater waves, each carrying, according to Rivers, its contribution to the culture that we call Polynesian. We can indeed differentiate physically two main stocks, varying in stature and cephalic index, which have been well described by Haddon.[1] The first stock, represented by the more European-looking Maori, is tall and of slender build, with relatively long head and face, open eyes, narrow and high nose ; the lips are thin, hair abundant on face and body, and the skin generally light. The second stock is slightly brachycephalic, and may be regarded as carrying " proto-Malay " blood ; this type is shorter than the first, with coarser features, the skin is darker

[1] *Op. cit.*

and hair less profuse. We may add that a type with Melanesian characteristics also occurs in New Zealand, indicative either of pre-Maori Melanesian settlers or, more probably, a high proportion of Melanesian blood in particular groups of colonising Polynesians.

We are now in a position to understand the physical characters of the Melanesians, as apart from Papuans. We may, if we like, lay stress on the tendency to variation in the Papuan stock (very obvious to any observer in one hundred miles of New Guinea coast), but in any case we can best explain the modified physical characteristics of many Melanesians—including the sometimes lighter skin, the smoother, less craggy bones, the less consistently frizzly hair—by a slow soakage of Polynesian blood which has spread slowly from community to community during the last two millennia or more.

Of Micronesia we know very little, but in essence the story is the same, with presumably a far greater amount of Indonesian blood. There is much variability from group to group : in the east the skin is light, the hair wavy or straight, in the west there is a considerable number of darker-skinned people with almost frizzly hair.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

L. H. DUDLEY BUXTON : *The Peoples of Asia* (London. 1925)

M. A. CZAPLICKA : *Aboriginal Siberia* (Oxford. 1914)

A. C. HADDON : *The Races of Man and their Distribution* (Cambridge. 1924)

A. H. KEANE : *Man, Past and Present* (Cambridge. 1920)

A. L. KROEBER : *Anthropology* (New York. n.d., about 1924)

A. MEILLET AND MARCEL COHEN : *Les Langues du Monde* (Paris. 1924)

W. Z. RIPLEY : *The Races of Europe* (London. 1900)

H. RISLEY : *The People of India* (London. 1908)

C. G. SELIGMAN : *Races of Africa* (Home University Library. London. 1930)

G. ELLIOT SMITH : *Human History* (London. 1930)

C. WISSLER : *The American Indian* (New York. 1922)

THE ACHIEVEMENTS OF ARCHÆOLOGY

By

E. A. GARDNER

SYNOPSIS

Archæology has many branches, some of which overlap with other studies such as history and anthropology. The earliest products of human handiwork are the chipped flints of the palæolithic age; these show progressive development, and consequently afford valuable evidence as to period. The most remarkable remains of this age are the cave paintings of France and Spain. In the neolithic or polished stone age are found the first examples of pottery, which continues through all subsequent ages as a useful criterion of date. Civilisation and art reached a very high level in Egypt and Mesopotamia at least before 3500 B.C. The study of classical archæology has been carried on by travellers and excavators of all nations, especially in Greece and Asia Minor. Many Greek statues have been found in Italy, but they were mostly restored and placed in private galleries. Since the end of the eighteenth century a more historical study has prevailed and museums have been founded in all civilised countries. The history of vase painting, from the Cretan and Mycenæan age through the classical period in Greece, has also been studied in detail, and the subjects represented have supplied information as to religion, mythology and daily life. Gems, coins and inscriptions have contributed greatly to our knowledge. In central and western Europe the sites known as Hallstatt and La Tène have yielded characteristic examples of pottery and metal work.

Recent discoveries have carried back to a remoter age our knowledge of Egypt and Mesopotamia, and an interesting episode of Egyptian art has been found at Tell-el-Amarna. With new methods, especially the help of air survey, there are prospects of still further discoveries in the future.

THE ACHIEVEMENTS OF ARCHÆOLOGY

DEFINITION

The province of Archæology is by no means easy to define, and different authorities use the word in distinct senses. It should mean " the science of ancient things " ; but any attempt at delimitation between it and other studies must depend partly on its subject, partly on its aims and objects, and partly on its methods. Perhaps the clearest way to realise these is to compare it with other kindred studies, such as history, anthropology, ethnology and the history of art, all of which overlap it to a greater or less extent.

The materials of historical study are for the most part literary, depending upon written documents, at least in the case of classical and modern time ; while archæology deals more with the visible and tangible remains of earlier ages. But this distinction holds only with certain branches of both history and archæology, especially with regard to such nations as have left behind them a literary record. In some cases, however, notably in the cases of Egypt and Mesopotamia, there are extensive historical documents, engraved on stone or impressed on clay, which had to be deciphered and interpreted before they could convey any useful information. And the deciphering of inscriptions is generally regarded as a branch of archæology. In cases such as these, the archæologist has to supply the material out of which the historian must construct a record of events and of the life of the people. But in the cases of Egypt and Mesopotamia, no less than in those of Greece and Rome, it is the function of archæology to supplement the literary and historical evidence by its own more special contribution to our knowledge of the past, whether illustrated by the remains of its activities, or expressed by means of its arts and handicrafts.

Beyond all this there is a rapidly widening region of human knowledge which is sometimes especially assigned to archæology, though shared to some extent by anthropology. This is what is commonly known as prehistoric archæology—the only kind recognised by some of the narrower definitions of the study. Archæology certainly has here a freer scope, since its discoveries and theories cannot be controlled and checked by the collateral evidence of other branches of knowledge—except, in some cases, geology. It is evident that a study which covers so wide an area must differ greatly in its aims and its methods, and cannot well be treated with any degree of generalisation. Its various branches may best be considered separately ; and for this purpose the scheme of division drawn up under expert advice by the University of London is convenient, though not of course exhaustive. For the purpose of academic study, archæology is in this scheme classified into eight sections :—

1. Prehistoric. 2. Western European. 3. Egyptian. 4. Assyrian. 5. Greek and Roman. 6. Early Christian and Mediæval. 7. Renaissance. 8. Oriental.

If Mesopotamian be substituted for Assyrian, and it be understood that Oriental is intended to include China, India, and Persia, this list may be regarded as suggesting the main lines of archæological studies.

The present Article deals mainly with what has been discovered about the ancient peoples who have influenced our civilisation.

PREHISTORIC

The ultimate limit of archæology may be said to be the first appearance of man upon the earth. In its earlier stages this study may be held

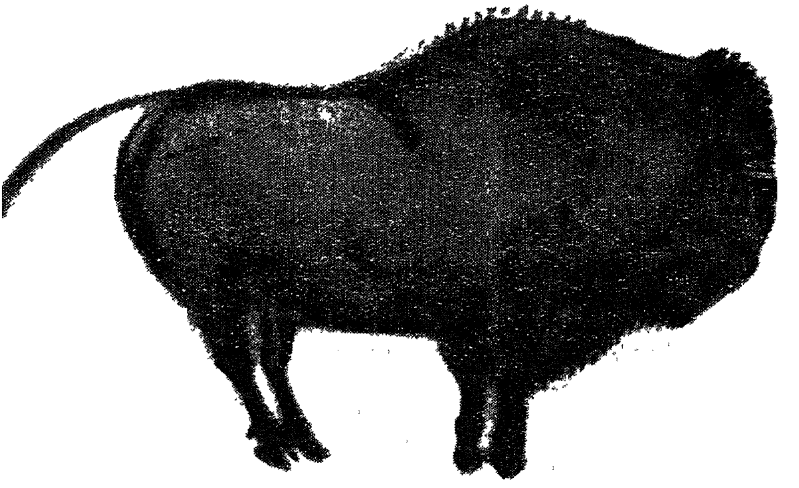


Fig. 1.—PAINTING IN ALTAMIRA CAVERN. MAGDALENIAN PERIOD

to belong rather to the sphere of geology and anthropology. Prehistoric archæology begins with the first traces of human agency or handicraft; and for a long period the series of chipped flints which have been found in all parts of the world serve to those who have the requisite knowledge as an index and guide. They have been carefully classified, and various styles and successions have been noted of bolder and finer, until we come to the exquisitely skilful handiwork in finely shaped and chipped flints, which are characteristic of the later phases of the early flint or palæolithic age. Throughout these periods there is no historical or social background to be traced except the succession of glacial eras traced by the geologist. The names given to the various styles for convenience in classification are mostly due to accidents of modern discovery, being taken from villages in the south of France or Spain where the first characteristic specimens were noted. For the earlier palæolithic age nothing

beside worked flints has been found, but for the later periods, known by the names of Solutrian and Magdalenian, there is evidence of artistic activity of the most remarkable quality, showing a sense of form and power of expression far beyond anything that appeared probable or possible at so early a date (*see Fig.* 1). These discoveries, when they were first made about fifty years ago, were received at first with scepticism ; but they have since been amply confirmed by the discovery and publication of numerous other similar representations in caves and rock shelters in the same region, and also of somewhat similar finds in various parts of the world, such as the drawings of the Bushmen in South Africa, though these latter may be very much later in date.

The discovery of these products of the palæolithic age is the most remarkable attainment of prehistoric archæology, and gives us a most vivid notion of the life and artistic power of man at a time when nothing but chipped flints had before been known. The representations are mainly those of animals, including many now extinct, such as the mammoth, and others, such as the reindeer, long unknown in this region. There are drawings, reliefs, and modelled figures in relief or in the round. The most primitive, probably, are mere outlines traced by the finger, or by a bone or flint, upon a more or less hard ground. The forms are correct, and the action often spirited. The natural colours are often imitated by pigments, and not only local colour but light and shade are often indicated. These early painters and sculptors succeeded in producing work of a far higher artistic quality than anything known to us before the highly developed arts of Mesopotamia, Egypt, and Greece.

It has been disputed whether drawing and painting, or modelling and carving in relief and in the round, came first. The actual reproduction of the shape of animals or other natural objects may appear the more primitive, since anything like relief or drawing requires a certain abstraction or convention in the translation of an object from three dimensions to two. On the other hand, drawing on a flat surface is technically the easier process and requires less complicated tools or appliances. The finest work in relief or in the round is done in hard materials, such as mammoth ivory or reindeer horn; this must have been worked by tools made of flint, and is often astonishingly life-like. Both in painting and in carving we find mammoths, boars, reindeer, bisons, a primitive kind of horse, and other animals. Human figures rarely appear, and then with no approach to the feeling for natural form found in the case of other animals (*see Fig.* 2).

NEOLITHIC POTTERY

A remarkable thing about this artistic ability of the men of the later palæolithic age is its complete disappearance in the succeeding period, without any apparent survival. This may be due to a glacial era or other cataclysmic disturbance, or to other circumstances which we cannot trace. The makers of the smoothly polished flint implements of the later age commonly called neolithic did indeed produce some representations of events, with human and other figures ; but these are little more than symbolic in character, with no attempt at a realistic imitation of natural forms. On the other hand, our knowledge of the arts and handicrafts and

even of the civilisation of the neolithic age has advanced rapidly in recent years, and has received contributions from many parts of the world. Smoothly polished flints replace the chipped flints of earlier times, though the art of chipping flints did not become extinct, and even survives in many places to the present day. But it no longer provides the only, or even the chief criterion for estimating the relative dates of various deposits. The art of pottery arises from the discovery that clay can be moulded into various shapes and then hardened by fire so as to hold water or other materials such as grain, and so as to serve for storage, cooking and drinking. From this time on it supplies an immense variety of potsherds, for while earthen pots are easily broken, the fragments of these remain practically indestructible through all ages. Consequently, on almost any site that has been occupied since neolithic times, sherds of ancient pottery have been found. And these, by the patient study of experts and careful observation, have come to be recognised as an indication

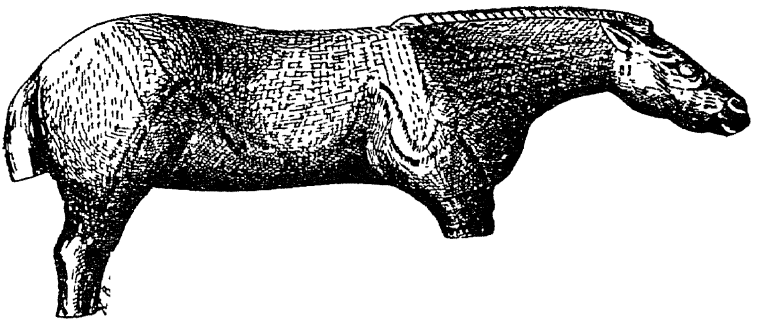


Fig. 2.—HORSE CARVED IN IVORY, FOUND IN THE GROTTE DES ESPELUGUES AT LOURDES. EARLY MAGDALENIAN PERIOD

of the age and attainments of the people who made them. Some characteristics are common to many local varieties of early pottery, others vary considerably from place to place. For example, the earliest pottery is usually hand-moulded, and has little ornament beyond what can be made with the fingers. Other examples are highly polished, as if with a bone or a flint; others again, in slightly more advanced times, have patterns incised in the wet clay with a sharp instrument. These patterns are mostly either of a wavy or geometrical style. They are followed by similar patterns in pigment, either dark on a light ground or light on a dark ground (*see Fig.* 3). It is impossible here to give either a general or detailed description of the forms of ornamentation of this early pottery. All we can notice at present is its wide distribution, not only around the Mediterranean basin and northern Europe, but also in Asia, in Mesopotamia and Persia, and even in India, and south Russia and the Ukraine. What is more remarkable still is that pottery with similar decoration is found in both North and South America. In New Mexico, for instance, it is still made at the present day. It is not, of course, to be supposed that it spread from a few centres, or that similar pottery in different regions is contemporary.



Fig. 3.—PRE-SUMERIAN PAINTED POTTERY FROM AL'UBAID
After drawings by the late F. G. Newton

It is often a difficult problem in archæology to decide how far similarities such as these are to be assigned to the direct or indirect influence of one race or region upon another, how far the true explanation may be that the human eye and hand tend under similar conditions to produce independently similar results. This is really more a question for psychology than for archæology.

BRONZE AGE

Unlike the work of the palæolithic age, that of the neolithic seems to continue almost without a break until it is succeeded by the great advances that mark the progress of early civilisation. Remains of it are often found in the lower strata of sites which have yielded the richest discoveries belonging to later ages, such as Troy or Cnossus. The great advance is mainly associated with the discovery and use of metals, copper first and probably gold, and then bronze, leading up to the great civilisation of the bronze age in Mesopotamia and in Egypt. Recent years have seen

remarkable discoveries in both regions, reaching back to the fourth millennium B.C. or even earlier. And perhaps the most astonishing thing of all is that the artistic products of these early ages show nothing of the tentative or experimental character of a primitive art, but a masterly and technical skill in the treatment of metal and other materials which implies a long previous training and development. Yet it remains a mystery whence the origin of these two national arts was derived; much may have been developed from experimental work in perishable materials. But these two, interacting but slightly on each other, may be traced in continuous succession almost to the present day, that of Mesopotamia through Babylonian and Assyrian to Hittite, Persian and Parthian, and many branches of Oriental art; that of Egypt through Greece and Rome to the Renaissance and modern European art.

In the case of both Egypt and Mesopotamia the historian is dependent to some extent on the archæologist, since the evidence he has to deal with is mostly preserved in inscriptions. In both alike we find from very early times a system of writing which implies a long development from pictographic script before any of the documents that have come down to us; and from the earliest examples to historical times these have persisted in various forms as a record, in the case of Mesopotamia continuing as cuneiform through its use to express Sumerian, Semitic, Assyrian and Persian languages.

CLASSICAL; HISTORY OF STUDY

The aims and attainments of classical archæology may conveniently be considered in the order in which various discoveries have been made and various methods have been employed. Though a systematic and scientific study of archæology has mainly been developed during the last half-century, earlier travellers had already done much to spread in the west of Europe a knowledge of the remains of architecture and sculpture that were still to be seen in Greece, and had even, in some cases, transported them to places where they were more accessible. The English traveller Wheler, for example, described Athens as it was in 1676; two years earlier the French artist Jacques Carrey had made an invaluable series of sketches of the sculpture of the Parthenon, and thus preserved for us a record of much that was destroyed in the disastrous explosion of 1678. But it remained for Stuart, in 1750, to make a series of accurate architectural drawings of Athenian buildings, and so to enable those who had not travelled to appreciate what Greek architecture was like in its finest examples. In 1800 Lord Elgin obtained leave to remove some of the sculpture from Athens, and consequently the Elgin Marbles found their way to the British Museum. So far little had been taken that did not show on the surface, at least in Greece. In Italy many excavations had been made in order to find works of sculpture, but these were isolated statues, many of them brought from Greece, which had been buried by chance in Italian soil. With the nineteenth century began the practice of exploring the sites of temples and other Greek buildings for the sake of the sculptures that once ornamented them.

This was the case at Ægina and at Bassæ near Phigalia. In both cases the excavators carried off the marbles that they found and sold them in

the one case to Munich, in the other to London. But at the same time the architect Cockerell, who was one of the excavators, made a careful study and publication of the architecture of the two temples ; and he and Wilkins, and other architects, introduced a revival of classical and especially of Greek architecture in the buildings they designed. Towards the middle of the century English explorers and excavators brought to England many fine sculptures from the Greek cities of Asia Minor—the Nereid monument (*see Fig.* 4), the Harpy monument, and other tombs from Xanthus in Lycia were brought by Fellows, with the assistance of a British man-of-war detailed for the purpose ; and similar help was given to Newton, who held the post of British Consul while excavating at Cnidus and at Halicarnassus for the Mausoleum, and to Wood during his excavation of the temple at Ephesus.

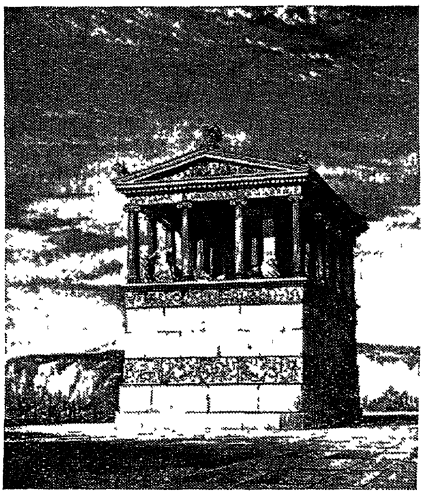


Fig. 4.—NEREID MONUMENT

STUDY IN GREECE

Meanwhile, in 1846, Penrose made those exact studies and measurements of the Parthenon and other buildings which revealed for the first time the subtlety and precision which are characteristic of Greek architecture at its best. After the foundation of the Greek kingdom in 1830, it was no longer possible or desirable for antiquities found in Greece to go out of the country ; but they were collected and cared for by the Greeks and by foreign archæologists, and Athens came to be the chief centre for the study of Hellenic art. Foreign archæological schools were founded there, the French in 1844, the German, American, British, and others at various intervals. All alike devoted themselves to exploration and excavation in Greek lands, and to the study of the buildings, sculptures and other works of art, inscriptions, and other antiquities preserved in the museums at Athens and elsewhere. The Archæological Institute, which was in a

sense the parent of them all, had been founded in Rome in 1829 as an international undertaking, but as the German element in it became predominant, other nations founded schools of their own in Rome as well as

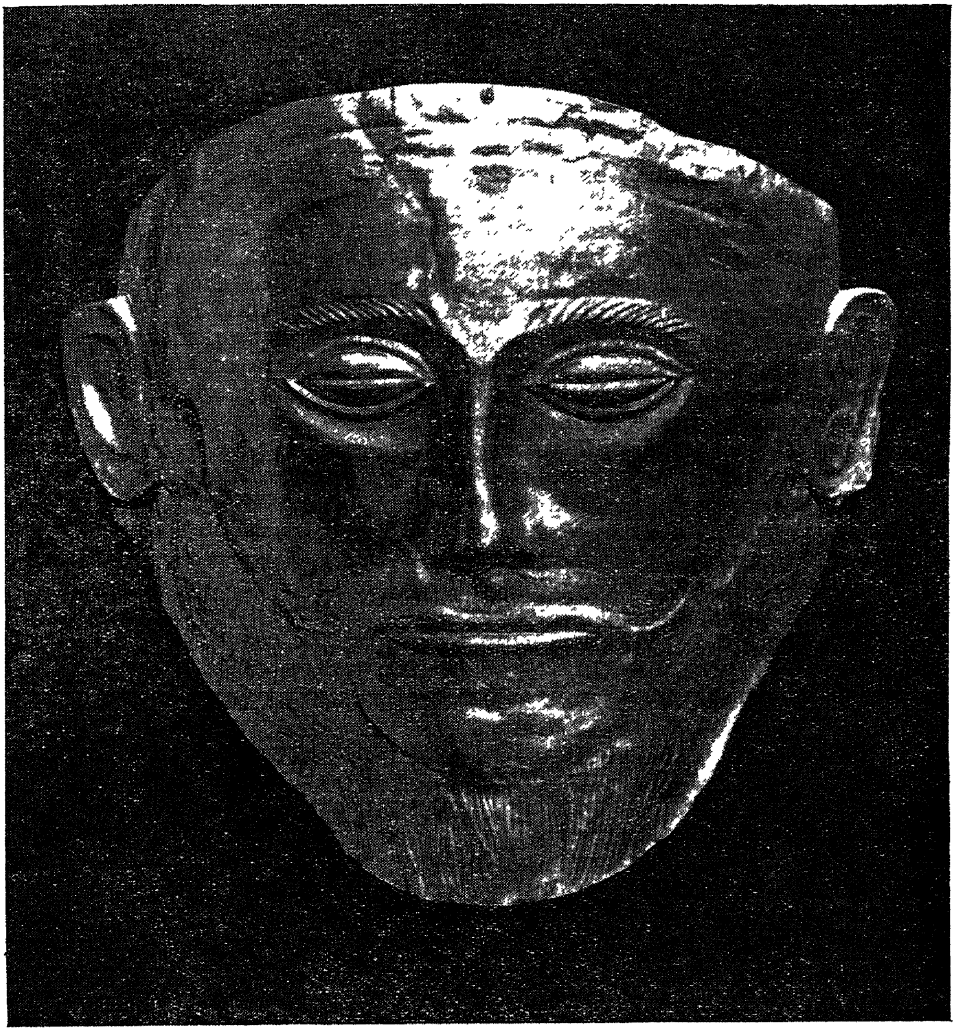


Fig. 5.—GOLD MASK FROM MYCENÆ

Athens. None could take anything out of the country ; but they vied with one another in friendly rivalry, contributing each his own share to the discovery and study of the history, art, and archæology of Greece.

The limits of our knowledge of ancient Greece did not, before the middle of the nineteenth century, reach much beyond strictly historic times. The Homeric poems indeed seemed to belong to a previous age; but the stories they told were often thought of merely as myths or fairy-tales, and the poems themselves were regarded by many as a compilation of no very primitive date. The great discovery which astounded the learned world, and opened up the beginning of a new vista of ancient history and life, was not the work of a professed archæologist or scholar, but of a man who as a boy had cherished an enthusiasm which led him to believe in the literal truth of the Homeric poems, and an aspiration to put his beliefs to the test of excavation when he should be able to do so. Schliemann cherished this belief all through a busy life, during which he accumulated the necessary funds, and then settled in Athens to put his theories to the proof. Already, in 1869, he had published his belief that Troy would be found on the side of Hissarlik and that the graves of Agamemnon and his companions were to be sought, according to the statement made by Pausanias in the second century A.D., within the walls of the citadel of Mycenæ. It is a matter of common knowledge how brilliantly his theories were confirmed by his discoveries at Troy. His excavations there, which mainly took place between 1870 and 1880, and which had in their later part the skilled co-operation of Professor Dörpfeld, laid bare not only the city described in the Iliad, but many earlier and later cities on the same site; of these the sixth in order of succession is shown by its pottery and other indications to be contemporary with the lords of Mycenæ, and has the finest stone walls still standing to a great height.

At Mycenæ, in 1876, Schliemann found, within the citadel, a sacred circle, within which were graves containing masses of gold ornaments, weapons, gold masks (*see Fig.* 5) and many other things such as had never been found in Greece before.

It was almost to be expected that such a find would at first cause a certain amount of scepticism. Schliemann's own claim, that he had found the actual bodies of Agamemnon and his companions, seemed to be justified by his prediction that they would be found. But the most absurd and impossible explanations were suggested at first, such as that the treasure had been left there by a barbarian invader in late Greek or mediæval times. It was not long, however, before other discoveries, less numerous and magnificent, but similar in artistic character, came to confirm, or modify, Schliemann's theories. The origin of this art remained long a puzzle, for no foreign art in the least resembling it was known, or was likely to have influenced it. It was indeed suggested that the origin might be sought in Crete; but until Crete could be satisfactorily explored, this remained a mere conjecture. And so long as Crete remained subject to the Turks, it was impracticable to obtain suitable conditions for excavating. In the meanwhile Sir Arthur Evans had already secured a hold upon the site of the palace at Cnossus; and as soon as systematic excavations could be carried out, Crete at once took its place as one of the chief early centres of Mediterranean civilisation and art. It soon became obvious that a people of very advanced civilisation and a high degree of

artistic skill had been living in Crete many centuries before it sent out to the mainland of Greece those offshoots which had established themselves at Mycenæ and elsewhere, and which produced the remarkable work of which the graves found by Schliemann are representative. The connection with Crete also involved connection with Egypt at various periods, and so provided a system of chronology which affords a firm basis for Greece also. Throughout, not only gold and silver work but also carved gems and pottery can be systematically arranged and dated, thus providing a most useful criterion for date and influence.

EXCAVATIONS IN GREECE: OLYMPIA AND DELOS

The half-century which saw the discovery of Mycenæan and Cretan art was also marked by great and systematic excavation upon various historic sites in Greece. First among these comes the excavation of Olympia by the Germans. The site had long been known, and the French had carried off some fragments of the sculpture of the temple in 1829. The project of a complete excavation of Olympia had for some time been cherished by the Germans, and in 1876 a skilled staff of excavators was appointed. Though hardly any buildings remained standing on the site, it was hoped that the excavation would make it possible to realise, at least in imagination, what the home of one of the great national festivals of Greece was like in the time of its glory. This expectation was fully justified. The Altis, or sacred enclosure, could be traced, with its surrounding walls; in the middle of it was the great temple of Zeus, its massive columns lying as they had been thrown down by an earthquake, the sculptures that once had ornamented it scattered about or built into later walls. Two other temples, the Heræum, the earliest of Greek Doric buildings, and a later temple to the mother of the gods, were placed just below the Hill of Cronos, which dominates the Altis to the north; and many other buildings were found, as described in Pausanias' guide-book; among the most interesting are the treasuries of the various Greek cities, some of them with rich terra-cotta ornamentation and groups of early sculpture. It is now possible to wander round the Altis and its surroundings, the porticoes to receive visitors, the gymnasium where the athletes were trained, the stadium where the foot races took place, even the grooves in which runners had to place their feet at the start. All the sculpture and other perishable material has been housed in a museum on the spot. These include the magnificent pediments and metopes from the temple of Zeus, and among individual statues found were the Hermes of Praxiteles, discovered in the very place in the Heræum where Pausanias saw it at his visit, and the graceful Victory of Pæonius, set upon her lofty pedestal.

About the same time as the Germans began the excavation at Olympia, the French School at Athens undertook the exploration of another early centre of Greek religion in the island of Delos, the birthplace and sacred island of Apollo. The conditions here were very different. In contrast to the alluvial plain of the Altis, the rocky island of Delos had little soil beside the stony débris from numerous buildings, and was, as it is now, quite deserted. The funds available were much more limited, and

therefore the excavators at first had to content themselves with a careful seeking out and recording of all ancient walls and buildings, without any attempt at a complete clearance of the site. This has, however, been carried out by degrees as opportunity offered, with the result that it is now possible to trace the foundations not only of temples, treasuries and porticoes, but also of many public buildings and private houses of later Greek date, as well as precincts of foreign gods and other indications of the various activities of Delos in Roman times. There are also very

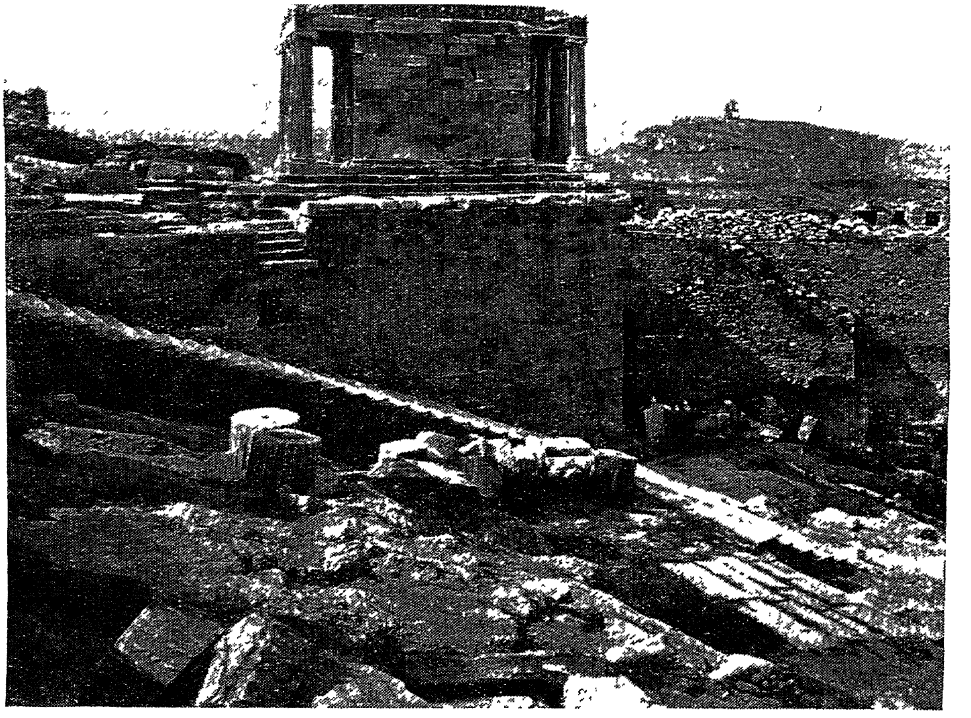


Fig. 6.—TEMPLE OF NIKE (VICTORY), ATHENS

numerous and very long inscriptions, which give much information as to the history and administration of the island at various periods, and as to the contents and property of the temple. The sculptures found in Delos are of high interest. But though there is a small museum in Delos to house the pottery and other antiquities that have been found there, the sculpture has mostly been transferred to the National Museum at Athens.

ATHENIAN ACROPOLIS

Meanwhile the Acropolis at Athens, the most interesting and the most promising site in Greece, had remained practically in the same state since the foundation of the Greek kingdom. One of the first things that were

done under the new administration was to clear away all the walls and houses of Turkish construction; but for the most part the bare rock was visible, so that excavation did not at once suggest itself. The Parthenon, the Erechtheum, and the Propylæa remained standing, but few other indications remained. One of the first undertakings of Ross, the German archæologist who was in charge of antiquities under King Otho, was the re-erection of the little temple of Victory (*see Fig.* 6) just outside the Propylæa, out of the original blocks, columns and reliefs that had been built into a Turkish bastion shortly before the bombardment of the Acropolis which led to the explosion in the Parthenon. The Frankish tower, which had been built on to the Propylæa when that building was



Fig. 7.—FEMALE STATUE, ATHENS

used as the palace of the Dukes of Athens, and which formed a conspicuous landmark in mediæval views of Athens, was demolished in 1864, thus leaving clear the plan of the south-west wing of the Propylæa.

The great scheme for a complete excavation of the Acropolis down to the living rock was carried out in 1886 and the following years in the most complete manner. After some trial-pits had been sunk to ascertain the depth and nature of the soil, the whole was dug out systematically, beginning from the Propylæa, and working along to the north of the Erechtheum, round the eastern end to the great accumulation of soil between the basis on which the Parthenon stands and the south wall of the Acropolis; in the central area, between the Parthenon and the Erechtheum, there were found the foundations of the early temple of Athena and the peristyle built around it by Pisistratus. The chief finds of early Attic sculpture had been buried in the space between the Erechtheum and the north wall of the Acropolis (*see Fig.* 7). They had evidently been thrown

down by the Persian invaders, and carefully placed by the Athenians in the position where they were found in the course of terracing up the ground within the new walls. As a result they give us a remarkable series which illustrates the sculpture known or made in Athens in the period just before 480 B.C. A more complicated problem is offered by the stratified mass of débris found to the south of the Parthenon. For the great basis on which the Parthenon stands was constructed to carry an earlier temple, and the lower parts of the terraced earth which adjoins it must have been placed in position some time before the Persian Wars. It was in this region that most of the fragments of sculptural groups and architectural remains of Piraic limestone have been found. They are evidently of earlier style than the marble statues that have been found elsewhere on the Acropolis.

As a result of these excavations the history of the Acropolis, which formerly was hardly known before the fifth century B.C., can now be traced to remote antiquity. In many places it is possible still to see the walls built of large blocks of Acropolis rock, which remind us of those of Mycenæ and Tiryns, and must belong to the same age; they follow the natural contours of the rock, and are in great part hidden beneath the walls of the fifth century; and numerous fragments of pottery of Mycenæan style have been found in the lower strata of the terraced soil. Open pits have been left in convenient places, so that it is still possible to see parts of these earlier walls. Amidst the foundations of the early temple of Athena it is still possible to trace the remains of the well-built house of Erechtheus which it replaced. And to this early time also belong the postern and staircase that are now visible, but were hidden in classical times. Another approach is through a natural cleft in the rock, which may be identified as the means by which the Persians made their way into the Acropolis to take the defenders in the rear, and by which also, in all probability, the maidens called the Arrhephori conveyed to the lower town certain sacred objects which they were forbidden to see. Moreover, the sculptures and buildings of which the remains have been found enable us to picture to ourselves the Acropolis as it was before the Persian Wars, and to contrast its quaint brilliance with the sober dignity of the Periclean age. Thus the Acropolis and its excavation offer us a striking example of how much can be gained by systematic excavation on a site that does not at first seem to offer many opportunities for further discoveries.

ELEUSIS

Two other sites excavated by the Greeks offer the most interesting information as to the rites and religious beliefs with which they were especially associated; these are Eleusis and Epidaurus. The Eleusinian mysteries had always been a puzzle to scholars; for though there is plenty of evidence from literature as to the external accompaniments of the mysteries, what actually took place at their celebration remained very obscure. It might be hoped that excavation upon the site would throw light upon this matter. But tentative excavations on a small scale caused more confusion than they removed; for various subterranean passages were found which, it was suggested, might have something to do with sacred apparitions and scenic effects. But a complete excavation of the sacred precinct has shown

that such passages, if they existed, served no other purpose than that of drainage. On the other hand, the discovery of the whole plan of the sacred edifice in which the mysteries were performed has proved most illuminating. The great hall was reconstructed several times, once probably in the time of Pisistratus, once in the Periclean age, and more than once in Roman times ; but in every case the same essential form was preserved—a square hall surrounded on all sides by tiers of seats, cut in the rock at the back, and built up at the sides (*see Fig.* 8). This hall was entered by six doors, through one of which a procession coming along the sacred way from Athens would enter ; and its roof was supported by rows of columns at right angles to one another, and spread evenly over the whole space. It is evident that the initiated who attended the ceremonies were placed upon the tiers of seats all round the hall, and that the space within was devoted to the hierophant and torch-bearer and other priests and officials.



Fig. 8.—HALL AT ELEUSIS

It is obvious that in such a building no continuous or concentrated attention of the spectators could be fixed upon one point, for the columns would obscure the view of a large number of them at any time. It seems to follow that what is sometimes called the sacred drama was rather of the nature of a pageant, which, winding as it would among the lines of columns, would be most impressive. There was also a large rock-cut terrace at the back, which may perhaps have been assigned to those who had not yet been admitted to the full privilege of initiation, but were only in the state of novitiate. Of course these conditions do not offer us any information as to what actually took place in the hall. But the more thoughtful of ancient writers, both Greek and Roman, speak with the utmost respect of the mysteries and their permanent effect upon the character of the initiated in this life as well as their prospects in the next. They were prepared, by processions, sacrifices, wandering in the dark, and fasting, for the sights and sounds that were put before them, and were doubtless profoundly influenced.

EPIDAURUS

At Epidaurus, we learn much of another phase of Greek religion, and of the miraculous cures attributed to Asclepius. This site has been

thoroughly cleared, and it is now possible to see the whole plan of the sacred precinct, its temples and altar, the theatre (*see Fig.* 9) and stadium provided for those who visited the shrine.

A characteristic feature is a portico in two stories, which we know from inscriptions to be called the Abaton, in which the patients who came to consult the god passed the night. There is also a beautifully finished little circular building called the Thymele (place of sacrifice) or Tholos. Its outer columns were of the simple and dignified Doric order and those inside were of the richly decorated Corinthian style. It was designed by the younger Polyclitus, who was also architect of the theatre, according to Pausanias the most beautiful in Greece. A most interesting series of documents, inscribed on marble slabs, gives a record of the cures attributed to the god. It was evidently compiled by the priests from the votive tablets set up to commemorate the various cures. The usual formula states that a patient came to Epidaurus to consult the god, slept in the Abaton, and

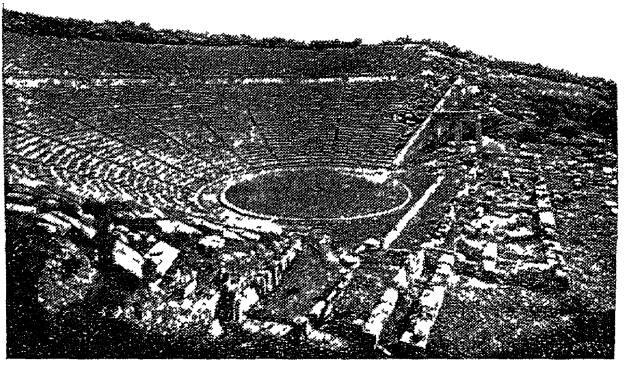


Fig. 9.—THEATRE AT EPIDAURUS

went out whole the next morning. These documents have been much discussed from the medical point of view. Some are clearly apocryphal; but others record cases which may well be explained as genuine examples of faith-healing, and possibly in some instances of surgical operation. It is interesting to compare both the custom and the cures with what still takes place at the festival of the Annunciation at Tenos, where people gather together from all parts of the Ægæan, where sick or injured people are brought to sleep in the crypt of the church, and where some miraculous cures are still believed to be effected. At Epidaurus other means seem to have been used in later times, when regular medical prescriptions and regimen were adopted; and the Emperor Antoninus Pius built a hospital in which cases were received for medical treatment; but there is no evidence that the priests at Epidaurus had a hereditary practice like those of Cos. At Epidaurus some sculptures were found, among them the statues placed in and above the gables of the temple, which we know from inscriptions to have been provided by Timotheus, who was one of the

sculptors employed on the Mausoleum ; and there was a copy of the gold and ivory statue of Asclepius, made by Thrasymedes of Paros. It is instructive to compare the remains of the Hieron of Epidaurus with those of the Asclepieum at Athens, situated close to the theatre of Dionysus on the south slope of the Acropolis. Here, on a terrace probably chosen for its sheltered and sunny position, a precinct was arranged beside a primitive healing spring. This was probably done during the Peloponnesian War in 420 B.C. in imitation of the Asclepieum at Epidaurus. It contains most of the features which have been mentioned—a temple, an altar, a pit of sacrifice, and porticoes in which the patients could sleep ; and these are of particular interest, because it was to this very shrine that the blind

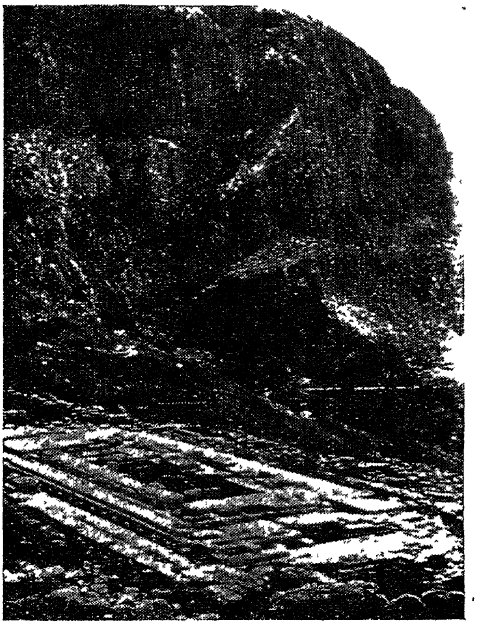


Fig. 10.—VIEW OF DELPHI

god Plutus was taken by his attendants in Aristophanes' play of that name. And the description of what happened recalls what we are told by the inscriptions about the cures at Epidaurus, the god himself or his priest moving about among the patients, accompanied by the sacred snakes and dogs which also contributed to the effecting of the cures.

DELPHI

Delphi had for many years been regarded as the most promising site in Greece not yet excavated ; the chief difficulty in this case lay in the fact that the modern village of Castri was built all over the site of the temple and its precinct. Various tentative explorations were made at intervals, but with little result, except to show that extensive remains existed

beneath the modern houses. The project of complete excavation was at last taken up in 1892, and the first operation was the building of a new village on a position nearer the sea, and the expropriation of the villagers, leaving the site of Delphi free for systematic exploration. The sacred precinct, bounded on each side by walls, is built in terraces high up on the rocky slope of Parnassus. The sacred way, which enters it at the lower eastern corner, takes a zigzag course from terrace to terrace, and beside it, in its lower stretches, are the treasuries of the various cities, as at Olympia and Delos. Some of these—those of Sicyon, Siphnos, and Athens, were decorated with sculptured metopes and friezes. Below the temple there was found a colossal sphinx, dedicated by the Naxians and set up on a high column, and two statues by an early Argive artist, representing Cleobis and Biton, whose story is told by Herodotus. Of the temple itself only the foundations remain (*see Fig.* 10) ; close above it was found the fine statue in bronze of a charioteer (*see Fig.* 11), dedicated as a memorial of his victories by a prince of Syracuse. A group of athlete statues includes a portrait of the Pancratiast Agias, a contemporary marble replica of a bronze original by Lysippus. In the upper part of the precinct, in the east corner, was once the Lesche, or club, of the Cnidians, with its famous paintings by Polygnotus ; only the foundations of this have been found. The theatre in the western corner is so well preserved that it was recently used for the performance of Greek plays. High above it is the Delphic stadium, with its seats in many places well preserved. It is now possible to trace the actual pavement of the sacred way, to identify the position of the various buildings and statues described by Pausanias, and to realise the impressiveness of the site in its wonderful position and numerous monuments. A large number of inscriptions have been found and carefully edited, among them the famous Hymn to Apollo, with musical notation added.

OTHER GREEK SITES

In addition to the complete clearance of such extensive and representative sites as have been mentioned, there have been in Greece many excavations on a smaller scale which have contributed their quota to the advance of the knowledge of Greek archæology. Mention may be made of some of the more important of them. The French have dug at Mantinea, where they found a plan of a circular town laid out in the fourth century B.C., and, in a church, some fine Praxitelean reliefs of Apollo, Marsyas, and the Muses, as mentioned by Pausanias. At Tegea they excavated the temple of Athena Alea, built by Scopas, and found some of the sculptures with which he decorated the temple ; these have supplied valuable evidence as to his style. The British School has excavated the theatre at Megalopolis, the largest in Greece, and has discovered a remarkable and unique building associated with it, the Thersilion or Parliament house of the Ten Thousand, as the meeting place of the Arcadian confederation was called. It was a pillared hall, in some ways resembling that at Eleusis ; but differing in that it sloped up from the centre to all sides, and had its columns arranged in radial lines, so that as few as possible of those present had their view of the speaker obscured. The British School has also excavated on prehistoric sites among the islands,



Fig. 11.—CHARIOTEER FROM DELPHI

at Phylakopi in Melos, a port for the export of obsidian, where the walls and houses of an early town and a great mass of pottery were found, and at the early settlement of Palækastro, at the eastern end of Crete. But the chief activity of the British School in recent years has been devoted to Sparta, above all at the site of the temple of Artemis Orthia. It was at the altar of this shrine that the Spartan youths were scourged until their blood ran down upon it, as a test of endurance. A Roman amphitheatre had been built on the site in later times, but underneath it were found successive early temples, and in the precinct there was found a stratified accumulation of pottery, carvings, lead figurines and other small objects which were observed and recorded with the utmost care, and have consequently provided chronological data for the successive periods of early Spartan art; in particular it has been proved that the ware commonly known before as Cyrenaic was, at least in its earlier phases, of Spartan origin.

The American School excavated the Argive Heræum and found traces of various buildings and a great mass of early pottery, especially proto-Corinthian, and other antiquities, including some of the sculptures from the temple. But the chief enterprise of the Americans has in recent years been at Corinth, where great masses of earth had to be moved. It is now possible to see finely laid out streets and porticoes of Roman date, and also the fountain Pirene, which has had various new architectural fronts at different times. Close beside it is a subterranean fountain house, in which the bronze lion's head from which the water poured is still in position. Here also great quantities of early vase fragments have been found and placed in the local museum.

An example of later Greek sculpture is the colossal group of figures of Demeter and Despœna seated on a throne, and Artemis and the Titan Anytus standing beside them, which was found by the Greek excavators at Lycosura in Arcadia. Pausanias, who describes the group, says it was made by Damophon of Messene. The date of this sculptor was much disputed; but the data of excavation and collateral finds show that he lived in the second century B.C. The group is an attempt to get back to the grand style of the age of Phidias, but there is something artificial about its style and composition such as might be expected at this period.

SITES OUTSIDE GREECE

All these excavations in Greece have been undertaken disinterestedly, for the increase of our knowledge and appreciation of ancient Greece and to add to the artistic treasures of the world. For nothing found upon Greek soil is allowed by the law of antiquities to go out of Greece. All that the excavator retains for himself is the right of publication, and all valuable antiquities are preserved in the museums of Athens or other important sites such as Olympia and Delphi. Elsewhere, until recent years, the law of antiquities was for the most part less drastic, and it was possible for the excavator to carry off all or most of what he found. Thus the collection of early Greek vases from Daphnæ and Naucratis in Egypt has been placed in the British Museum, as have some discoveries from Rhodes and Cyprus. The great Greek cities of Asia Minor have also offered a field for extensive and thorough excavation, though in recent years the Turkish

law of antiquities has been assimilated to that of neighbouring countries, and all the important works of art discovered have been transported to Constantinople. The Germans, however, in 1878, obtained leave to excavate the site of Pergamon, and to carry their discoveries to Berlin. The topography of the town was completely recovered. Its lofty Acropolis contained, at the top, the palace of the kings of Pergamon, the temple of Athena, the great library, the rival of that at Alexandria, and the upper market-place with the great altar. On the slope of the hill was a large theatre; further down, a gymnasium and many other buildings; and in the topmost terrace there was later added a temple of Trajan. The architecture of all these was studied and published, and has enabled a reconstruction of the whole to be drawn, showing it to have been in all probability the most magnificent group of buildings in the ancient world. But the most brilliant discovery of all was the sculptural frieze of the great

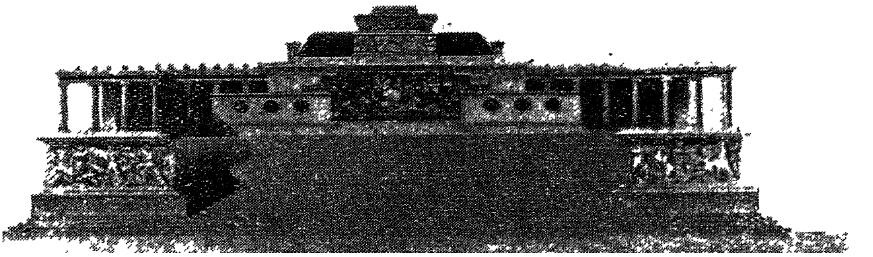


Fig. 12.—GREAT ALTAR AT PERGAMON

altar, which had been demolished and built into later walls of fortification. The altar itself was about 100 feet square, and the frieze surrounded it on all four sides, except for a staircase which led to the top, where the actual altar of sacrifice was placed. The subject of the frieze, which was over seven feet high, was the battle of gods and giants. Nearly two-thirds of this magnificent composition was recovered and sent to Berlin, where a reconstruction of the whole has been made in a special museum (*see Fig.* 12).

Excavations have been made on the sites of several of the great Greek cities in Asia Minor. At Priene the whole plan of the town has been recovered, with its central market-place and senate-house, its temple of Athena, its theatre, and its blocks of private houses which give a clear notion of the character of the dwelling-houses of the Hellenistic age. Excavations have also been made at Ephesus—mainly in the Roman market-place and library, of which a fine architectural front has been found and restored in Berlin—at Miletus and its temple, at Branchidæ, at Sardis by the Americans, and on other town sites. But the conditions for work in this region are not favourable at present, though there are still many sites which would well repay excavation.

One of the most remarkable discoveries made in a region then subject to Turkey was the series of marble sarcophagi found in a subterranean tomb at Sidon in Phœnicia. These were carefully transported by the Turkish authorities, and are now the chief ornament of the museum at Constantinople. It appears that the reigning princes of Sidon had for nearly two centuries, from 500 to 300 B.C., the habit of employing Greek artists to make their marble coffins. The earliest of these with sculptural decoration is called the tomb of the Satrap, from a dignified bearded figure who appears on it more than once in scenes of banquet, battle, and hunting. The style resembles the delicate and refined Ionic work of the early



Fig. 13.—LYCIAN SARCOPHAGUS FROM SIDON

years of the fifth century B.C. The second is known as the Lycian from its shape, which has the ogival roof, like a Gothic arch, common in Lycian tombs (*see Fig.* 13). This is in many ways the finest of all the series; its style closely resembles that of the Parthenon sculptures, with which it must be approximately contemporary; it represents hunting scenes in which both Greek youths and Amazons are taking part, and struggles between centaurs, or Cæneus and centaurs, on the shorter sides; sphinxes with outspread wings fill the curved triangles of the roof. The whole is most excellently sculptured and almost perfect in preservation. The third tomb is known as that of the Mourning Women, and is in the form of a miniature Ionic temple; its columns do not stand free, but project from the wall, and between them is a series of women in attitudes

of grief or melancholy. These richly draped figures, in various and harmonious attitudes, remind us of the figures which frequently appear upon Attic tombstones, as a record of the affection of the living for the dead. It has been suggested that such a tomb would be most appropriate for a King of Sidon in the fourth century, who is said to have been strongly Philhellene, and to have had Greek ladies in his harem. The largest and most imposing of these sarcophagi from Sidon is that which is commonly called that of Alexander, because he appears twice in its sculptured scenes, once in a hunting group where he is defending an Oriental rider from a lion, and once in a battle scene. The Greeks, or rather Macedonians, and the Orientals who appear on these reliefs are strongly differentiated, the first a hardy race of soldiers, the others with delicate and sensitive features and expressions. The remarkable preservation of the colour of these sculptures gives quite a new notion of their life-like effect, especially in the pupil and iris of the eyes. It has been conjectured that this is the tomb of a prince of Sidon who was set up and supported by Alexander, and that the scenes of battle and hunting refer to exploits which they had shared. The work may well be of the school of Lysippus.

GREEK STATUES IN ITALY

So far we have been mainly concerned with the discovery of works of art upon Greek soil. In the case of these, we usually have the great advantage that we know where, and often by whom, they were originally set up. But they often have survived merely by chance, and in any case they represent but a minute fraction of what existed in ancient times. It is difficult for us to realise the immense number of statues that once existed on such sites as Olympia, Delphi, or the Acropolis at Athens. The first cause of their transference or loss was the appreciation of the Roman conquerors, who carried off great numbers to adorn their triumphs or to decorate public buildings or private houses in Rome. In 187 B.C. M. Fulvius Nobilior is said to have carried in his triumph 785 bronze and 230 marble statues from Ambracia, where they had probably been collected from other sites by Pyrrhus. And Nero is said to have carried off 500 bronze statues from Delphi, though there were apparently plenty left in the time of Pausanias. The plunder went on from time to time, most of the statues being carried off to Rome or later to Constantinople. It is recorded that in the sixth century A.D. there were in Rome as many as 3,890 bronze statues; and of this total only about ten have been recovered. These statues were some of them works of the great period and of the great masters of Greek sculpture; but their identity must often have been lost in the transference. In addition to these there must have been a great number of copies of Greek masterpieces, or imitations, such as were made for the Roman market by Greek artists of the Roman period; and these existed not only in Rome and Italy, but in all parts of the Roman Empire. So far the danger to Greek statues came mainly from the high esteem in which they were held throughout the civilised world. But with the inroads of barbarians and the general failure of appreciation of classical art, especially when the value of the material of which a statue was made counted for more than its artistic quality, the fact that calls for

explanation is not how many statues disappeared, but how so many came to survive. Gold and ivory, as in the colossal statues of Phidias and Polyclitus, had little chance of escaping the plunderers; bronze was melted down for coinage and other purposes; and marble was either burnt for lime, as is attested by the lime-kilns found in almost all ancient sites, or broken up and built into walls or other structures. In this last case the statue may be reconstructed, but usually in a mutilated state. Only a few, owing to accident or particular conditions, have always remained visible. Notable examples are the Wolf of the Capitol at Rome, and the statue of Marcus Aurelius, because, it is said, it was mistaken for the Christian Emperor Constantine; the architectural sculpture from some temples has also survived in some instances, but usually, as is the case with the Parthenon, in a much damaged state. Most, however, of the classical sculpture we now possess has at some time or other been buried in the ground. We have already noticed the instances in which it has been dug up in Greek soil. But a large proportion of the statues in our museums have been found in Italy. Some had been purposely buried to preserve them in some time of stress, like the bronze boxer in the Terme Museum or the Aphrodite of Melos. Many were buried in the débris of the buildings they once adorned. Some were wrecked in vessels proceeding to Italy with the spoils of Greece, like the cargo of ships discovered by divers off Cerigotto and Cape Artemisium, the athlete and the colossal Zeus (or Poseidon) which are now among the chief treasures of the National Museum at Athens. The beautiful Apollo in the Terme Museum at Rome had fallen into the Tiber, and was found when embankment operations were in progress. The recovery of all these buried statues was at first the result of accident. But with the new appreciation of classical art which came in at the Renaissance, ancient statues were eagerly sought for in places where they were likely to be found, especially where there had been palaces or villas in Roman Imperial times; the richest and most famous was the Villa of Hadrian at Tivoli, where the Emperor had gathered together representative works of all ages and styles. The Popes and the Roman nobles vied with one another in searching for antique statues, or acquiring them to decorate their palaces and villas. They were required mainly as ornaments and not as the subjects for serious study. Broken or damaged statues were unsuitable for this purpose; and they were usually handed over to restorers, who replaced what was missing according to their own fancy. Some of the greatest sculptors of the time, including Michel Angelo himself, were employed upon this work. Some of them, with the help of other replicas or the evidence of other monuments, or from a sympathetic understanding of the subjects, produced work which followed very closely what the original must have been. But others were less conscientious, or less gifted, and often used the mutilated remains of an antique statue merely as material to work into a purely fanciful design of their own. One instance of such a statue now in the Louvre may illustrate the result. It is described in the catalogue as follows:

"Youthful Dionysus, nude, his left arm resting on a thyrsus, offers, with his lowered right hand, a bunch of grapes to a panther seated at his feet.

"(Modern—the head of Dionysus, part of his hair, right fore-arm and

bow, left fore-arm and thyrsus, a part of right thigh, both legs and feet, the panther and the plinth.) "

In another case it is recorded that " only a portion of the torso is antique " ; and in the case of a much restored group " the figures are only put together by the caprice of the restorer." Such examples could easily be multiplied. Another practice common among restorers was to piece together portions of different statues, sometimes with successful effect, sometimes with very incongruous results. The commonest example of this is where statues which have lost their heads have had them replaced by other heads whether antique or modern—a state of things often very difficult to detect at first glance, yet very misleading to the student.

This practice of restoration was almost universal until the end of the eighteenth century. The last conspicuous example is offered by the pedimental sculptures from Ægina, which, when they had been removed to Munich, were restored by Thorwaldsen with so great skill that it is difficult without reference to the records of discovery to tell what is ancient and what is modern, the restorer and his assistant have so skilfully imitated not merely the style but the actual weathering of the original marbles. It is evident how much such restoration falsifies the evidence and misleads the student. And, since the restoration is in marble, all fractures had to be cut smooth to fit on the new pieces, and consequently, when further fragments were found in the excavations of 1900, it was impossible to fit them into the places where they belonged. When the Elgin Marbles were brought to London, the Italian sculptor Canova was requested to undertake their restoration. But fortunately he refused, and deprecated any attempt to restore such marvellous works. He thereby not only conferred a great benefit upon posterity, but set an example which has ever since affected the policy of all the authorities of the chief museums. These are some exceptions that " prove the rule," but the restored legs of the Hermes of Praxiteles and of the Agias of Lysippus are not satisfactory, and we may remember the storm of protest, chiefly from artists, which arose when it was proposed to restore the nose of the Demeter of Cnidus. There is not, indeed, the same objection to a restoration in plaster as if it is carried out in marble ; for in this case the surface of the original may be preserved, and the addition can at any time be removed. Perhaps the best solution in the case of masterpieces is to place a restored plaster cast beside the original, for the benefit of those whose imagination does not suffice to enable them to appreciate a statue of which portions are missing.

This change of view as to restoration is partly due to the different view of the study and appreciation of classical sculpture which came in about the beginning, and developed more strongly towards the middle and end, of the nineteenth century. Before that time, those who studied or wrote about classical sculpture were to a great extent occupied with finding meanings and identifications, often of a fanciful character; and these sometimes imposed themselves on the restorer. Examples are the giving the name Cincinnatus to the Hermes binding his sandal, or Arria and Pætus to the Gaul who has slain his wife and is stabbing himself. Even the dying Gaul, though admirably criticised by Byron, is called by him the Gladiator, and so given a misleading association. The tendency even went so far

as to recognise the Emperor Hadrian and Sabina in the Cecrops and his daughter of the Parthenon pediment.

GROWTH OF MUSEUMS; HISTORICAL STUDY

The collections of sculpture which had come into existence in Italy and elsewhere were more for the enjoyment of the owner and his friends than for the education of students; the foundation of museums as distinct from private galleries was at once a cause and an indication of a different point of view. The great galleries of the Vatican might, indeed, be regarded as a national rather than a private possession. The Louvre was made into a museum, mainly of sculpture, in 1793. Previous to this the nucleus of the British Museum was founded in 1753 by the will of Sir Hans Sloane, and added to by the acquisition of Sir William Hamilton's collection and the Townley Marbles; and many other museums were established in different countries. With the opportunities for study came the intellectual impetus which has since gone on increasing. The great change in mental and critical outlook which took place towards the end of the eighteenth century was accompanied by a keen appreciation of Greek and Græco-Roman art. In 1766 Lessing published his *Laokoön*, which still, in spite of certain limitations and errors, remains a standard work upon the principles of art. The fact that he chose the Laocoön as the theme and title of his work is significant.[1] The struggling group of the father and his two sons, attacked by monstrous snakes, is compared by Lessing with Virgil's description of the same event; and he was able to recognise in this group those great characteristics of Greek art at its best which here seem to many modern critics conspicuous by their absence. Winckelmann and others spread the knowledge and appreciation of Greek sculpture; but a systematic and historical study, based alike on literary and on monumental evidence, was first attempted by Brunn, and on his work all subsequent study has been founded. His book, which was published in 1852, was called *The History of Greek Artists*. The title is appropriate; for the whole study had to be built up upon a chronological framework which was based on the references in ancient writers. His successors have to a great extent been employed on filling the gaps in our knowledge by fitting extant works into their proper places in the system. Furtwängler's great work called *Masterpieces of Greek Sculpture* was published in 1893; its aim is to identify and to classify, by comparative study, a number of sculptures scattered throughout the museums of Europe and America, and to establish their relations to one another and the leading characteristics of the different schools and periods. It required an extraordinary memory and critical faculty to deal with such a mass of material. A distinguished German scholar said at the time, "Furtwängler has built a mountain over which we all have to climb." But from this elevation it has been possible to survey the whole field, and to find guidance in a most complicated study. There have been several other histories of sculpture. Above all the full and scientific catalogues of museums, such as the British Museum, that at Berlin, and many others, and of the great collections such as the Ny Carlsberg at Copenhagen and the Barracco at

[1] The importance of Lessing's *Laokoön* for æsthetics is also discussed in the Article on *The Principles of Literary Criticism.*

Rome, have contributed to the recognition and classification of sculpture; also such works as the German catalogue of the Vatican, that of the Capitoline Museum by the British School at Rome, and Michaelis' *Ancient Marbles in Great Britain*. The study of ancient sculpture has become excessively minute and technical, and in many cases the wood cannot be seen for the trees.

CRETAN PAINTINGS AND VASES

The conditions of the study of Greek painting are very different from those applying to sculpture. With the exception of Crete at the one

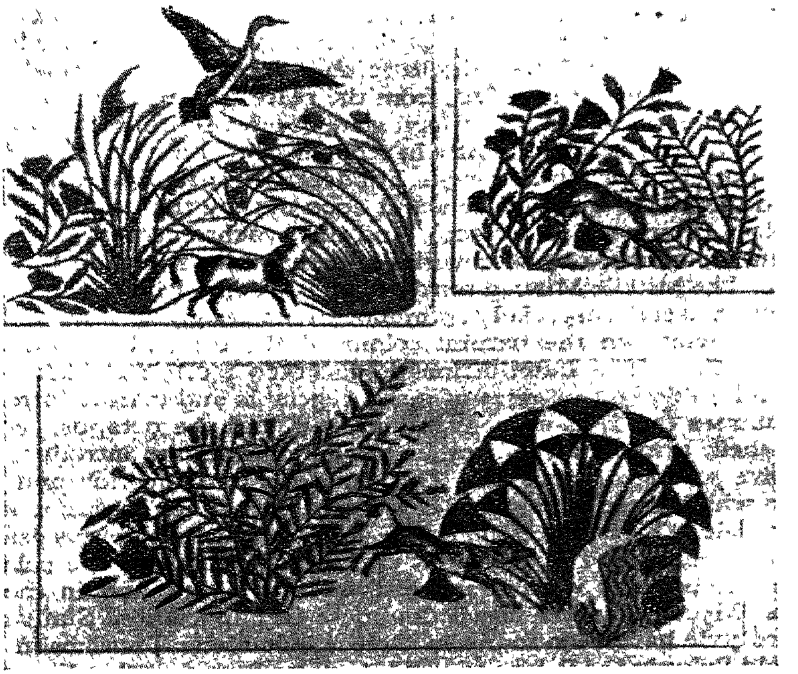


Fig. 14.—FRESCO IN AKHENATON'S PALACE

extreme and Pompeii and Herculaneum at the other, very little is left to enable us to imagine its character. But to judge from the description of ancient writers it occupied a position in the ancient world as highly esteemed as that of sculpture. The great frescoes of Polygnotus and the Aphrodite Anadyomene of Apelles enjoyed the highest fame. But such knowledge as we have of these being entirely due to literary description, they hardly belong to the domain of archæology, except so far as their influence may be traced on contemporary vases. The decorative frescoes found in the palaces at Cnossus and elsewhere in Crete cannot be reckoned as Hellenic art; their spirited renderings of men and animals and their naturalistic treatment of vegetable forms find the closest analogy in the frescoes of Akhenaton's palace at Tell-el-Amarna in Egypt (*see Fig.* 14).

But they are not Egyptian, and their artistic style seems to have been developed in Crete itself. It was imitated in the frescoes of the palaces of Mycenæ and Tiryns ; but its artistic tradition seems to have been completely lost and forgotten before the rise of Hellenic art in Greece. In the art of decorating vases, however, there seems to be an almost continuous succession, interrupted by some remarkable breaks, from the earliest times to the third century B.C. In the lowest strata of the palace at Cnossus there is pottery of the neolithic age such as is found in many Mediterranean districts, mostly black with geometric patterns incised and filled with white. This is succeeded by pottery of the so-called Minoan style, which is roughly divided into three periods, each of these divisible into three or more sub-sections. The Early Minoan (2500 B.C. or earlier) imitated to some extent the incised patterns by painting, either light on dark or dark on light. The Middle Minoan (2000 B.C.), especially in its middle period, when it is called, from the place where it was first recognised, Kamáres ware, is a fine biscuit ware of most skilful technique, with polychrome floral designs, mostly in red and white on dark ground. This type of pottery was found by Sir Flinders Petrie in Egypt in remains dated to the XIIth dynasty, or about 2000 B.C. by the usually accepted chronology (Petrie makes it 3500). And this synchronism has since been abundantly confirmed by discoveries of dated objects both in Egypt and in Crete. The Middle Minoan third period is distinguished by more sober and restrained style, especially by monochrome designs of lilies and other flowers in white on the natural colour of the clay, giving an almost Japanese effect. The Later Minoan age (1500 B.C.) is marked by the adoption into designs of vases of many vegetable and marine forms ; the lily continues but is more conventionalised, and the octopus, nautilus, murex shell, brittle-star, and other marine animals are introduced in a decorative setting of seaweed. This develops into the rich and florid style, in which these same motives are used with more profusion and on a larger scale. This is called the Palace style, because numerous examples of it have been found in the latest and most splendid of the palaces at Cnossus. It has also been found elsewhere in Crete, and in the early graves at Mycenæ, where it was doubtless an importation. Similar finds of Palace style have been found in Greece, notably at Thorikos in Attica and at old Pylos in the Peloponnese. It has also been found in Egypt ; and vases of the same characteristic shape and ornamentation have been found represented as tribute brought by Cretans on tombs of the XVIIIth dynasty, about 1500 B.C. The palace of Cnossus was destroyed, possibly by invaders, about 1450 B.C., and this event was followed by the years of highest prosperity and riches at Mycenæ and elsewhere in Greece. The style of pottery that accompanies this epoch is sometimes known as Late Minoan third period. It shows most of the motives of the Palace style repeated in a somewhat mechanical and conventional manner, and gradually loses its freshness and vigour until, in the general decadence of the Mycenæan civilisation, it gradually disappears, though not, as will be seen, without leaving some inherited traditions to its successors. The three Minoan eras belong properly to Crete, though stray examples of them are found elsewhere in the Ægæan area. An analogous division, however, has been traced in the surrounding regions, and is known as early, middle and

late Cycladic for the islands, taking its name from the Cyclades. Melos, at Phylakopi and elsewhere, has proved very rich in characteristic examples of naturalistic flower designs, corresponding to those of the third phase of Middle Minoan in Crete, and also in curiously conventionalised



Fig. 15.—CRETAN VASES (KAMÁRES)



Fig. 16.—MIDDLE MINOAN VASE

bird forms. A similar classification has been noted for the mainland of Greece, and is known as early, middle and late Helladic (*see Figs.* 15, 16, 17*a*, and 17*b*).

It is evident that this general classification must prove of the highest value to excavators and to students, and affords clear criteria for estimating

the age and affinities of any deposit. Any study of the subject, to be profitable, must of course be supplemented by actual familiarity with typical instances of all classes. This can best be obtained in the museums of Candia and Athens. But selections of fragments and of facsimiles have



Fig. 17*a*.—LATE MINOAN VASE

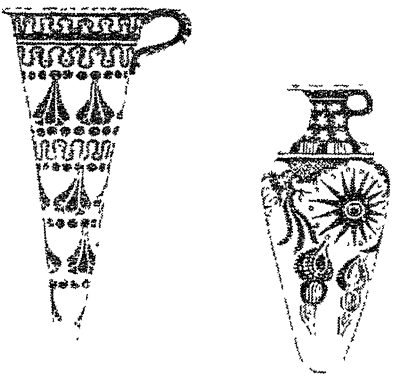


Fig. 17*b* —LATE MINOAN VASES

been arranged in Oxford, at the British Museum, and elsewhere, so that it is possible to grasp their main characteristics without a visit to the Ægæan.

GEOMETRIC AGE

Following on the decadence of the Minoan and Mycenæan civilisation, we find new elements of decoration intruding into the pottery of Greece. These belong to what is called the geometric style, in the more

restricted sense. The supplanting seems to have been gradual, for vases and fragments of the late Mycenæan and the early geometric are often found side by side both in Crete and on the mainland of Greece. The origin of this geometric style has been much disputed; there are two main theories, the one that it was brought in by the invading Dorians about 1000 B.C.; the other that it represents a revival of the earlier geometric style which had been overwhelmed for a time by the Mycenæan. This geometric pottery is found in many places, above all on the Acropolis of Athens and in the cemetery just outside the Dipylon Gate, whence it is commonly known as Dipylon ware (*see Fig.* 18). It often consists of very large vases, which were set up as monuments over tombs as well as buried within them. The subjects are not confined to stylised patterns



Fig. 18.—GEOMETRIC VASE, DIPYLON

such as the key, a kind of flattened spiral or mæander, or concentric circles connected by tangents, but also include aquatic birds, deer, and other animals; and in the more elaborate specimens are found figures of horses and men, great funeral processions, dances, and even sea-fights. The geometric pottery, which reaches its full vigour in about the ninth and eighth centuries B.C., comes almost everywhere, in its later phases, to be penetrated by orientalising influences. This is the case especially in Attica and Bœotia, and in what is called proto-Corinthian, which is widely spread in minute and delicate vases. Much of it was found in the Heræum at Argos, and more recently at Corinth and its neighbourhood. In colouring and in shapes of vases it recalls the later varieties of the Mycenæan, and may well have been developed from it, side by side with the geometric intrusion.

The orientalising style, which is in vogue about the seventh and sixth centuries B.C., falls into two main branches, the Doric or Corinthian and the Ionic or Rhodian, the former mainly prevalent on the mainland of Greece, the latter in Asia Minor (*see Fig.* 19). It may be said generally that the Corinthian is more compact in its shapes and more crowded and concise in its ornamentation, and given to the rendering of details by incised lines, the Rhodian or Asiatic freer and more flowing in design and given to the use of outline. Both alike have the ornamentation on



Fig. 19.—RHODIAN VASE

larger vases in the form of friezes one above another. The subjects in earlier examples are mainly friezes of animals either real or fantastic, ibexes, oxen, lions, leopards, birds, and sphinxes, gryphons, and other mixed forms. In both the human figure appears on later examples, sometimes merely for decoration, sometimes in definite scenes of combat or of mythological interest. Both styles develop on lines consistent with their character. The richly decorated and freely drawn work of Miletus and Rhodes is continued in the various Ionic schools of painting. At Clazomenæ many large terra-cotta sarcophagi have been found, some with historical battles—the finest is in the British Museum. This style is continued with some Egyptian influence in the pottery found on the site of Daphnæ in the Delta, where Psammetichus settled his Ionian mercenaries ; this was deserted after 564 B.C., when Amasis transferred the Greeks to Naucratis, and consequently all the pottery found

there, which is very distinctive in style, must belong to the end of the seventh century or the beginning of the sixth. Naucratis also developed a characteristic vase painting, derived from that of Miletus and Rhodes. Great quantities of this pottery were found in the temples sacked by the Persians in 526 B.C.; hence this Naucratis ware must belong to the third quarter of the sixth century. Such historical data offer most valuable evidence as to the dates of the various classes of vases, not only of those made at Daphnæ and Naucratis, but also of those showing affinity to them or discovered with them.

STYLES OF GREEK VASES

In addition to the Corinthian, which are the most numerous and widespread, there were other distinctive classes of vases made on the main-



Fig. 20.—BLACK-FIGURED VASE. HEROES PLAYING DRAUGHTS

land of Greece. Among these are the Chalcidian, noted for its metallic forms and quaint and vigorous drawing, and the Attic or Athenian. These and the later Corinthian all adopted a style of decoration with black figures on a terra-cotta ground, drawn in silhouette with all details incised; white and purple were also added in places. These black-figured vases, as they are called, became very popular throughout the Mediterranean, and were exported in great quantities to Italy and elsewhere. Many of them were found buried in Etruscan tombs. Hence they, and the red-figured vases that succeeded them, were usually called "Etruscan" vases by the antiquaries of a century or more ago. This black-figured style was prevalent in the earlier part of the sixth century B.C. Another class of vases which had a more or less independent development was that of Sparta. Thanks to the careful record kept of the stratification of the vase fragments in the temple of Artemis Orthia, this Laconian ware can now be traced through the centuries, from the seventh to the fourth, in different stages of rise and decline. Its finest work, which belongs to the sixth century, has a fine white surface and beautifully designed ornamentation; its scenes are in the black-figured technique.

From the subjects on some of these vases, they were generally supposed to be of Cyrenaic origin. This is clearly not the case, in view of the Spartan discoveries, though it is still possible that some of the vases may have been made by potters who carried the Laconian tradition to Cyrene. In the sixth century Athens, with its famous potters' quarter (Ceramicus), began to monopolise the Italian market, and to drive the Corinthian and other rivals from the field. From about 550 B.C. onwards the history of vase-painting is the history of Attic vase-painting. For the two centuries that follow the study of this history has become highly specialised. Both potters and painters took to signing many of their finest vases; and, with the help of their signatures, the vases have first been classified according to these; then others have been grouped around them by comparative

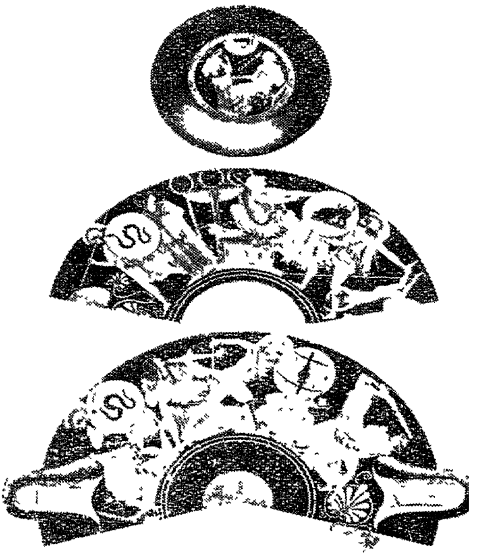


Fig. 21.—RED-FIGURED VASE, BY BRYGOS
SACK OF TROY

study, until it has become possible to assign a very large number not only to their date, but also to their individual master. Certain general changes may be noted. The finest of the Attic black-figured vases had a bold design and exquisitely finished detail, incised almost like goldsmith's work (*see Fig.* 20). Other examples vary in excellence, and some were carelessly drawn. About the last quarter of the sixth century a revolutionary change in the design of vases was introduced. Instead of the figures being silhouetted on a light terra-cotta ground, the figures were first drawn in outline and then the background was blacked round them, all details and inner markings being rendered by fine brush-lines, often in relief on

the surface. It was in this red-figured technique that the most skilful vase-painters worked, and drew with a freedom of design and a certainty of hand that have never been surpassed (*see Fig.* 21). The actual dates of these different techniques were incorrectly estimated by earlier students, owing to the misconception that the finest vase-painting must be approximately of the same date as the finest sculpture in the Parthenon. But once more a national disaster came as a help to modern study. For in the débris buried on the Acropolis after the Persian sack of Athens, there were found signed vases by the greatest artists of the finest red-figured technique, which must therefore have been fully developed before 480 B.C., and must probably have originated some half-century earlier. Attic vase-painting continued to develop, though hardly to improve, after



Fig. 22.—ATTIC WHITE LECYTHI

this period. A strong influence was exercised by the painter Polygnotus, who came to Athens soon after the Persian invasion and painted many famous frescoes of historical and mythological scenes. The simple and dignified drawing, and the distribution of the figures as if on uneven ground, is imitated on some vases of this time, which may therefore give us some notion of his style. Towards the end of the century a more florid and picturesque effect is aimed at. A series of vases which lasts pretty well through the fifth century B.C. is that of the Attic white lecythi, or vases for ointments buried with the dead. These were painted in more or less polychrome effect upon a white ground; they can therefore give us a better notion than the red-figured vases of the arts of fresco and easel painting as practised at the time (*see Fig.* 22). In the fourth century the art of vase-painting in Athens lost its distinction and brilliance; but it

produced for the barbarian market, especially the Crimea, vases with coloured and gold enrichments; and some interesting imitations with Scythian subjects seem to have been made locally. But the South Italians at this time took to making vases for themselves instead of importing them. At Tarentum, in particular, enormous and pretentious vases were produced, often with interesting scenes from dramas or from the nether world of the dead. There were several other varieties of Italian vases, such as Apulian, Lucanian and Campanian, which did not entirely disappear until the Roman conquest.

This is an outline of the history of Greek vase-painting, and enough has been said to show how such a series of datings of various styles, checked again and again by reference to historical events, offers a constant succession of clues to the excavator and to the student. In order that these clues may be preserved and understood, the most careful record must be kept in all excavations. If the earth in which objects are buried is the result of gradual accumulation, it must be removed and recorded stratum by stratum. If its burial has been the result of sudden destruction or accident, the exact conditions must be considered; if the excavation is of a cemetery, the contents of the various graves must be preserved together and their relative position noted.

PRESERVATION AND RESTORATION OF VASES

The study of Greek pottery has so far been considered almost exclusively from the artistic and technical side, and especially from the chronological data it supplies. From this point of view, the most insignificant fragment can give as trustworthy and valuable information as a complete masterpiece of the vase-painter's art. The subjects of vase-paintings offer an almost inexhaustible field of study, ranging from gods, heroes and mythological scenes to the most trivial details of daily life. But before making use of this evidence as to the way the Greeks represented for themselves all these subjects, it is necessary to observe some caution. The history of the preservation and present condition of Greek vases is similar on a small scale to that of Greek sculpture. The vases were dug up in great quantities in the eighteenth century in tombs, mostly in Etruria, and accordingly were commonly called Etruscan. They were sought after by rich collectors, either for ornamental purposes or as works of beauty in themselves; but they remained almost entirely in private collections. For such purposes broken vases or fragments had little attraction. Many vases, thanks to the solid construction of the tombs, remained whole and undamaged. Many others were broken up, and portions of them were lost. Here the restorer again had his chance, and he used it sometimes with skill and discretion, sometimes indiscriminately. The reconstruction of the form of a vase, of which considerable portions are missing, requires skill and patience, but is in every way a desirable undertaking, especially if the new parts be distinguished from the old by some difference of colour. Restoration of the designs or scenes represented on the vases is another matter, and may be very misleading. For instance, on a vase from the Leake collection at Cambridge there was a representation of Ulysses and a companion thrusting a club into the eye

of Polyphemus. When the vase had been skilfully cleaned, the club disappeared, and there were left only two warriors attacking with spears a recumbent giant, probably Heracles and Telamon attacking Alcyoneus. The Cyclops motive was borrowed from another vase in the British Museum. This is a very simple and insignificant instance of false restoration; but it would be easy to multiply examples in which what is now visible is a mere travesty of the original design. Nor is the pernicious work of the restorer confined to modifying the composition or adding to it. When vases had been broken into many fragments and pieced together, often the joints were scratched in and then filled up with cement or some other material, and then the whole was covered over with an opaque coat of pigment, only approximately resembling the terra-cotta red and black of the original painting, so as to conceal the fact that the ware had been broken and put together again. Most of the vases in the great collections have been tested and cleaned by experts, so that what is now visible is ancient; but there are many still left which would not stand the test, or of which but a small portion would survive it.

Greek vases, like Greek sculpture, were for a long time accessible only to the few. Systematic study of them was facilitated by the transference of large series of them to public museums. Thus the Hamilton collection of vases was acquired by the British nation in 1772, and was later joined by many additions. The great Campana collection was not acquired by the Louvre until 1861. There are now fine collections of vases in most of the chief museums of Europe and America. Catalogues of many of them have been published; and within recent years a great international project for the publication of a systematic "corpus" has been planned and is being rapidly carried out.

SUBJECTS OF GREEK VASES

The subjects of the designs on Greek vases and their interpretation have attracted much attention from scholars. In earlier days fanciful explanations and attempts to connect them with the mysteries were prevalent. Some undoubtedly preserve for us aspects of Greek religion and life otherwise unrecorded; but mythology itself in recent years has become a more scientific and comparative study. Some of the commonest classes of subjects may be noted. In some cases they illustrate, or confirm, the information we obtain from classical literature, in others they supplement or modify it. They are sometimes derived from scenes of myth or of ritual which are preserved through no other channel; even when they reproduce a well-known tale, they often do not merely illustrate the text, but give a traditional and independent version of the story. A frequent characteristic is the desire to tell as much as possible of the story in a single scene; and this not by repeating the same figure in successive stages of action, but by what is sometimes called the comprehensive method, by grouping together several incidents without very close observance of the unities of place or time. An example may be seen in the representations of the sack of Troy. Here the various episodes were well known. Neoptolemos slew Priam at the altar in the palace; he also killed Astyanax by hurling him from the battlements. But the figure of

Neoptolemos appears only once, and he is hurling the boy, not over the battlements, but against the altar on which Priam is seated. There are many varieties of this scene in detail, but the combination of the two tragic events had evidently become impressed upon tradition, though it does not appear in any literary version of the tale. And, to fill up the picture on the vase, other episodes were introduced as required to fill the space or to satisfy the artist's caprice—Ajax dragging Cassandra from the image of Athena, the Trojan women taking refuge at the same statue, the escape of Æneas, carrying his father on his shoulders and leading his child, the rescue of Æthra by her grandsons. These do not recur in any traditional order, but are selected and arranged by the vase-painter to suit his convenience or to balance his composition.

The gods are frequently represented on Greek vases, either in single figures or in groups, or as taking part in some scene or action. Sometimes comprehensive groups of the chief gods are found, usually arranged in pairs; but there is no recognised canon of choice. They may be represented as banqueting on Olympus. Such groups are especially common when a great occasion is represented, such as the introduction of Heracles and his marriage with Hebe after his apotheosis, or the return of Hephæstus when he was brought back by Dionysus and his satyrs. The birth of Athena from the head of Zeus occurs in the presence of other gods, and her combat with Poseidon for the land of Attica. She also appears constantly as supporting heroes in their various exploits.

A scene of combat in which all the gods take part is the battle of gods and giants; and the separate single combats of the various gods and giants often appear.

The myths relating to Apollo and Artemis frequently appear on vases. Apollo rescues his mother from the giant Tityos, whom he slays. Apollo and Artemis, instigated by their mother, slay the children of Niobe. When Marsyas, having picked up the flute invented by Athena, challenges Apollo to a musical contest, he is defeated and flayed for his presumption. Artemis, surprised while bathing by Actæon, sets his own hounds on him. Apollo recovers his cattle, which had been stolen by the infant Hermes. Dionysus, with his rout of satyrs and Mænads, is perhaps the commonest of all subjects on vases, and appears in infinite variety. The myths of Demeter and Persephone also supply many themes. The rape of Persephone by Pluto is not often found; but, on the other hand, the return of Persephone to her mother and to the upper world occurs in many varieties of treatment. Sometimes she appears emerging from the earth or from a cave, escorted by Hermes as messenger and guide. In a curious variation she is welcomed on her return, or at least surrounded by satyrs or peasants with mallets—apparently a reminiscence of some country festival. In one case she is named Pandora and received by Epimetheus. In some vases, which contain Eleusinian gods and heroes, the birth of Plutus is represented. A large and sumptuous series of vases, mostly made at Tarentum, in South Italy, represents the underworld. In the midst, in a palace or shrine, are placed Hades and Persephone, surrounded by other figures of the world of the dead—the three judges, Minos, Æacus and Rhadamanthus, Orpheus and Eurydice, Medea and her children, Theseus and Pirithous, and also the great sinners, Sisyphus

and Tantalus, tormented by Furies. Among them sometimes appears Heracles dragging off Cerberus.

Scenes from the life and exploits of heroes supply many subjects to the vase-painter. The commonest of all, perhaps, are the Labours of Heracles. In addition to the canonical twelve, each of which has more than one recognised version, various other exploits or adventures are represented. Among them are his visit to Egypt, and overthrow of Busiris, his slaying of the giants Antæus and Alcyoneus—these in addition to his taking a regular part in the battle of gods and giants; his fight with Cycnos and Ares, which is often hard to distinguish from a battle of gods and giants, since most of the gods join in on either side until Zeus parts the combatants; his struggle with Triton, and also with the river god Achelous, in which last he won as his bride Deianira, whom he subsequently delivered from the centaur Nessus. He also fought with the centaurs and the Amazons, and freed Prometheus from his fetters on the Caucasus, after slaying the vulture that tormented him. A latish vase, of Italian make, represents his madness as it is told in the play of Euripides. This is but a selection from the great variety of adventures in which Heracles is the main figure. Theseus, especially in Athens, had also a canonical series of exploits, mainly on his journey from Troezen to Athens; the club-man, the pine-bender, the sow, the wrestler Kerkyon, Sciron, who hurled travellers down the rocks that bore his name, Procrustes, who cut them down to fit his bed, all of them suffered poetic justice at the hands of Theseus. But his chief exploit was the slaying of the Minotaur in the Labyrinth, after he had accompanied the annual tribute of children from Athens to Crete. There are also representations of his visit to the home of Amphitrite beneath the sea at the challenge of Minos; of his receiving from Ariadne the clue to guide him through the labyrinth, and his desertion of Ariadne in Naxos. Theseus was, above all, an Attic hero; but the Attic vase-painters also illustrated many other legends. One of the most familiar is that of Perseus. We may see on vases Danaë receiving the shower of gold, and being enclosed in the chest and floated off to sea. Many of the details of Perseus' seeking and slaying of the Gorgon Medusa are to be seen. A favourite subject, especially on early vases, is the flight of the hero across the sea, pursued by the other two Gorgons. Then there is the rescue of Andromeda from the sea-monster, the return home, and the turning of Polydectes to stone by means of the baleful head. Another great expedition was that of Jason and the Argonauts to recover the golden fleece; this offered many subjects to the vase-painter—the freeing of Phineus from the Harpies by the sons of the North Wind; Medea's help to Jason in overcoming the dragon; her adventures after she had fled to Greece with Jason; her destruction of the bronze man Talus, who defended the shores of Crete, and her deception of the daughters of Pelias; finally her quarrel with Jason and slaying of her children, as represented in the play of Euripides.

The Theban legends are not very commonly found on Attic vases, perhaps because no love was lost between Thebes and Athens. Œdipus and the Sphinx appear on an Ionic vase. The tale of the Seven against Thebes has inspired a quaint picture of the bribing of Eriphyle; Polynices tempts her with the necklace of Harmonia, and on a Corinthian vase

with the departure of her husband Amphiaraus the necklace she holds tells the tale of her treachery. Dionysiac scenes are not particularly associated with Thebes, except in the case of Pentheus.

This miscellaneous set of legends, many of which are only incidentally referred to in literature, might be almost indefinitely multiplied. But enough has been said to show the vast repertory from which the vase-painter could select. In addition there are all the vases which deal with the tale of Troy, as told in the poems of the Epic cycle, and especially the Iliad and Odyssey. These start with Peleus' capture of the sea-goddess Thetis, the marriage feast at which the dispute arose between Hera, Athena, and Aphrodite, and the judgment of Paris that followed—a theme repeated again and again in various types. Then follows the elopement of Helen with Paris. The Iliad inspired many scenes which, apart from the names added, could not be identified with certainty; for one battle scene is much like another. Often we simply find single figures or small groups of heroes, such as Achilles and Ajax playing draughts, or Achilles binding the wound of Patroclus, or the separation of Hector and Ajax after their single combat. The capture of Dolon, the embassy to Achilles, the attack on the ships, are all clearly represented; also Sleep and Death carrying away the corpse of Sarpedon. The final duel of Achilles and Hector is identified by the names, but the details of the Homeric narrative are not followed by the artist. The dragging of Hector's body, and Priam's visit to Achilles to redeem it, add pathos to the story; and there are representations of Hector and Andromache, alone or with other Trojans. The Odyssey, from its varied and distinctive episodes, is easier to illustrate than the Iliad. Among characteristic scenes may be quoted the adventures with the Cyclops, with Circe, and with the Sirens, the visit to the region of the dead to consult Tiresias, the meeting with Nausicaa, the loom of Penelope, the recognition of Odysseus by his old nurse Anticleia, and the slaying of the suitors.

Historical scenes are sometimes found on vases; but mostly such as had already become almost mythical in character. Thus the representation of Crœsus seated on his funeral pyre does not correspond closely either with the account in Herodotus or with that in Bacchylides. Combats of Greeks and Persians occur on vases, but the great example of an imaginary historic scene is the vase at Naples which represents King Darius and his Court making preparations for the invasion of Greece. This was made in South Italy, probably about the time of Alexander, when people were reminded by current events of the time of the older Persian wars.

Scenes from daily life are very common on vases, and serve to illustrate almost every form of work, activity, or enjoyment. The art and practice of the potter himself is not neglected; we can see representations of quarrymen chopping out clay from the pits, of potters throwing vases upon the wheel; of the furnace with vases being baked in it, of the vase-painter's studio, with master and apprentices at work; and, finally, of the vases being exported by ship, sometimes hung in the rigging to avoid risk of breakage. Agriculture is represented by ploughing and sowing, by the gathering of crops of olives, apples, and other fruits, and by scenes of vintage and wine-presses. Among trades and occupations we find

shoe-making and shopping. Many vases, as was to be expected, are concerned with athletics, and almost every type of contest is found—running, jumping, wrestling and boxing—in addition to chariot and horse races. A class of vases, known as Panathenaic amphoræ, were given as prizes in the Panathenaic festival at Athens. These have a large image of Athena on one side and on the other a representation of the contest for which they were given. They were evidently highly prized by the victors, for they were exported to all parts of the Greek world. Dinner-parties, symposia, and dances are often found in vase pictures, and also many games; sometimes there are religious processions and festivals, military exercises and reviews. Funeral rites are especially found upon vases made for placing in tombs or dedicating outside them, such as the Athenian white lecythi; on them may be seen the lying in state of the corpse (prothesis) surrounded by mourners, the funeral procession, the deposition in the tomb, sometimes by figures of Sleep and Death, and the approach of the survivors with offerings to be placed in the tomb, usually wreaths or sashes. In short, there is hardly any event of interest which cannot be illustrated from vase-paintings, or about which they do not give us valuable information.

USE OF VASES

It is sometimes asked what use the Greeks made of painted vases. A certain misapprehension arises from the fact that the great majority of the vases in our museums have been found buried in tombs. Certain classes of vases were certainly made for the purpose of burial with the dead, owing to the custom prevalent in many places and periods of supplying vessels and furniture for the dead in their long abode. But representations on the vases themselves often show them as in actual use or standing about in a house; the dead were merely supplied with what they were used to in life. Doubtless the larger and finer vases were intended either for ornament or for dedication in temples; an immense number of vase fragments of all periods were found on the Acropolis at Athens, and in the temples of Apollo and of Aphrodite at Naucratis; owing to the conditions of destruction and discovery, it was inevitable that such dedicated vases should be broken up and only survive in fragments. But there can be no doubt that the vases were originally intended for actual use, though many of them, owing to the demand for vases to be buried, were provided for the export trade to Etruria and elsewhere.

GEMS

Two classes of antiquities that are closely related, from the artistic point of view, are gems and coins; for the coin, in its essence, consists of a lump of metal stamped with the seal of a city or a ruler. Gems may be either in precious or semi-precious materials, and in harder or softer stones. The engraved design is always in early times in intaglio, or cut in so as to produce an impression in relief on wax, plaster, or some other soft material. The usual form of a seal-stone in Mesopotamia was the cylinder, from which the design could be rolled out on to the impression, and repeated identically if required. The Egyptian form was the scarab, so called because the rounded back was carved to represent the folded wings of the

sacred beetle, the design being incised upon the flat side. Both forms were used in Greece in early times, and the shape of the scarab was often used in the finest period of Greek art, especially in what is called the scarabæoid, which preserves the shape but omits the details of the beetle.

Cretan gems, which are very numerous, are often in the earlier examples pyramidal in shape. In the later Cretan and Mycenæan gems the shape is often circular or else lentoid (lentil-shaped), and convex on both sides. The designs found in Crete are often religious or symbolical in nature, many of them containing symbols in the Cretan script. Mycenæan gems are more given to representations of animals, often in contorted positions —lions, oxen, or deer. The harder stones, which were worked with the wheel, are most skilful examples of the gem-cutter's art. Gold signet rings have also been found, especially at Mycenæ, with more or less elaborate scenes upon them. After the Mycenæan period comes that of the island gems, mainly found in Melos ; these carry on the tradition, but in softer stones and, for the most part, less skilful work. They offer, however, a most valuable link between the Mycenæan and the archaic Greek. The art of the Greek gem engraver goes through much the same stages as that of the sculptor and painter. In the earlier time it is stiff and angular in poses ; in the fifth century it attains the highest degree of beauty of design and technical skill ; in later times it becomes softer and freer in design. Cameo cutting, in which the figures stand out in relief, often in differently coloured layers of stone, does not appear until the Hellenistic age. Some very large ones were made with Ptolemaic portraits, as were also large allegorical groups ; the same technique was continued with great sumptuousness in Græco-Roman or Roman imperial art. Greek gems have always been in great demand among collectors, and for that reason many forgeries have been produced.

COINS

The study of numismatics is far too complicated to be more than touched upon here ; but Greek coins offer such invaluable evidence as to art, history, and commerce that it cannot be altogether passed over (*see Fig.* 23). It is difficult for us to realise how great and prosperous civilisations can have been carried on in early times before the invention of coinage ; all commerce must have been dependent either on barter or on carrying about gold and silver ingots and portable scales. Units of value were often slaves or cattle. In a very early Greek inscription in Crete, fines are reckoned in tripods and caldrons. It has been suggested that the earliest Greek coins were equivalent to a bull. The invention of coinage was attributed by tradition either to the Lydian kings—one of whom was Crœsus—or to Phidon of Argos, who struck coins in Ægina. The essence of the invention, which probably dates from the seventh century B.C., is the impressing on a lump of metal—in early times usually gold or silver, or electrum, an alloy of the two—a device or symbol which was officially recognised as a guarantee of the weight and quality of the metal, and so obviated the necessity of weighing or assaying it. The enormous variety of Greek coins that is known is due to the fact that every independent Greek city claimed the right to issue coins, and most



Fig. 23.—COINS OF CYZICUS, AEGINA, CROTON, ELIS, GORTYNA (CRETE), SAMOS, PANTICAPÆUM, MACEDONIA.

of them exercised this right and vied with one another in the beauty and variety of their types. The origin of these types has been a matter of much dispute. Some authorities have regarded them as religious; and this seems the obvious explanation when the head of the chief deity of the city appears on its coins, as is the case with Athena at Athens, Hera at Argos, or Zeus at Elis. Others are generally regarded as commercial, especially when the type represents the chief product of the city, like the tunny-fish at Cyzicus, the ear of corn at Metapontum, or the Silphium, a medicinal plant, at Cyrene—though in this last case the head of Zeus Ammon appears on the other side of the coin. Probably no one explanation fits all cases, but various local or other considerations led to the choice of the device, or "arms," of the city which was placed upon its coins; sometimes it seems to be merely what is called in heraldry a "canting" device, as when the parsley leaf appears on the coins of Selinus or the seal on those of Phocæa, "Selinon" meaning parsley and "Phokos" a seal.

The difference in shape between ancient and modern coins is mainly due to the process of striking. First of all a metal die was prepared and engraved in intaglio, just like a seal-stone. This was fixed in an anvil, and then blanks of gold or silver or other metal were cast, of the requisite weight, usually round or lentoid in shape and convex on both sides. These were driven into the die by means of a punch and a hammer. This punch, except in the earliest examples, had another device engraved upon it, and thus were produced the obverse and reverse designs. The relief was usually much higher than on modern coins, and consequently ancient coins could not be piled, though in later times they became flatter in surface. In early South Italian coins, the obverse design was often repeated in hollow relief upon the reverse, the punch being in relief and not in intaglio. No collar was used to prevent the blanks from spreading when struck; hence the irregular shape often found in Greek coins. But the height of the relief gave the utmost scope to the skill and taste of the artist, and contributed to the extraordinary beauty of many Greek coins.

The earlier scholars gave much study to Greek and especially to Roman coins; but in this case also the last half-century has seen great progress, and much co-operation. The great collections have been scientifically catalogued. Above all, a minute study has been made of the coinage of various cities, all the historical data have been brought into relation with the indications to be found upon coins, and the successive periods of the history of the city have been traced in its coinage. This is most conspicuous in the case of outstanding events; for instance, Syracuse issued two magnificent series of dekadrachms to commemorate two great deliverances from its enemies—the Carthaginians in 480 B.C. and the Athenians in 413 B.C., and the same city placed the Corinthian Pegasus on its coins when Timoleon from Corinth came to their aid; or, again, the introduction of the Samian lion's scalp on the coins of Rhegium and Messene is probably to be explained by the arrival in these towns of a party of exiles from Samos in 493 B.C. And political conditions like the Bœotian League or the Ionic revolt have left their traces on the coinage of the cities concerned. Many other events, some of them recorded by literary history, some otherwise unknown, are reflected in the history of coin-types. It is evident that coins have in this way contributed in the

highest degree to the certification and supplementing of history, and above all to the exact dating of many events. The different monetary standards used by different cities have been thoroughly studied, and most important inferences drawn from them as to commercial relations, trade routes, and influences. Coins offer a dated compendium of the history of art from the seventh century onwards. Many statues have been identified by their help. From the time of Alexander, they also supply a vivid and authentic portrait gallery of Hellenistic rulers, which is continued in the portraits of Emperors on the Roman imperial coinage. In addition to what may be learnt from their types and inscriptions, the evidence of coins is most useful when they are found, either individually or in hoards, in excavations or elsewhere; they offer the same indications for dating as vase fragments, but under even more precise conditions.

MINOR ANTIQUITIES

The study of minor antiquities, such as bronzes, terra-cottas, and carvings in bone and ivory, has also been systematised and become more exact in recent times. The larger bronzes follow much the same development in style as sculpture generally; but statuettes and decorative bronzes have been found in great numbers and classified according to their technique, age and place of origin. This was especially the case in great excavations like those of Olympia, Delphi, and the Acropolis of Athens; early carvings have been found at Ephesus and Sparta; terra-cotta statuettes and other objects have been found in immense numbers upon almost all excavated sites and supplement or verify the knowledge we derive from other sources; they range from Mycenæan and geometric right through the classical age to Roman times. How much a study of these minor antiquities can contribute to our knowledge may be realised by a visit to the exhibition illustrating Greek and Roman life in the British Museum in London or to similar exhibitions in American museums.

INSCRIPTIONS

Inscriptions, both Greek and Roman, were not ignored by the earlier scholars, but the gigantic project of gathering together in a corpus the whole body of inscription dates from the earlier part of the nineteenth century. Systems of writing appear to have been in use as early as 3500 B.C. The Egyptian hieroglyphic and the Mesopotamian cuneiform (or wedge-shaped) were, however, a mystery until comparatively modern times. It is one of the greatest achievements of the early and middle part of the nineteenth century to have deciphered and interpreted them. The first clue was given by the Rosetta stone, found in 1798, and now in the British Museum. It is bilingual—that is, it contains versions of the same document in Egyptian hieroglyphic (the system of the priests), hieratic or demotic (the system of books or of the people) and Greek. This enabled Champollion and other scholars to recover the Egyptian language and the method of writing it. The Egyptian and Mesopotamian scripts were a combination of ideographic symbols (each representing a certain idea) and phonetic (each representing a certain sound). Other systems, such as the Cretan and the Hittite, existed in the second millennium B.C. The first

people to have invented and used a purely alphabetic system of writing were the Phœnicians, the earliest long Phœnician document being the Moabite stone, dated about 850 B.C., though some fragmentary inscriptions may be considerably earlier. The Greeks borrowed their alphabet from the Phœnicians, with slight modifications, about the end of the seventh century B.C., each Greek city adopting it in a different form; and this local variation continued until about 400 B.C., after which date the Ionic alphabet, which we use to this day in printing and writing Greek, was generally adopted. The Roman alphabet was borrowed, with some modifications, from that of Cumæ and other Chalcidian colonies in Italy.

Inscriptions served in ancient times as the chief means of publicity, both for information and for record. There is hardly any aspect of religion, or of public or private life, that is not illuminated by the evidence of inscriptions. As to religious matters, we find records of the worship and recognition by the State of various gods; the foundation, endowment, and administration of temples; and innumerable dedications of statues and offerings of all sorts. Some are of great historical interest—for example, the names of the cities which took part in the battle of Platæa, inscribed on the support of the tripod dedicated to Apollo on the occasion. This was set up at Delphi, and is now in the Hippodrome at Constantinople. Another instance is seen in the Roman arms dedicated by Pyrrhus of Epirus to Zeus at Dodona after his Italian campaign. Numerous temples and precincts had their own regulations, which were set up in a conspicuous position. There were lists of priests and other officials, and regulations for their appointment, duties and privileges, and for ritual of all kinds, might be prescribed.

A peculiarly interesting set of inscriptions records the cures made by Asclepius at Epidaurus. There were also many private associations for religious purposes, each of which had its own prescribed constitution and ritual observances.

On the political side, there are innumerable documents containing decrees and laws of the various States. An early example is a code of laws found at Gortyna in Crete, with many details as to laws of inheritance. It was the regular practice at Athens and elsewhere to inscribe all decrees of the Senate and people on marble, and to set them up in the market or some other conspicuous place. Public accounts and inventories of treasure were treated in the same way, as well as decrees and specifications of public works of all sorts and building accounts. We have, for instance, the accounts of the building and sculpture of the Parthenon and the Erechtheum. It was a common practice in Greece and in Rome to set up honorary inscriptions to men who had done good service to the State; and the office and privileges of proxenos (nearly equivalent to a modern consul) were frequently given to those who had made themselves useful to another city. Artists' signatures have given much information about the history of sculpture. The whole system of the training of Athenian youths, which subsequently developed into the University of Athens, is recorded in the so-called Ephebic inscriptions. In some cases we find a direct historical record, like that which Augustus had set up in many cities, to record the chief events of his reign; this is commonly

known as the Monumentum Ancyranum, because the best known example of it was found at Angora (Ancyra). Inscriptions in many places have recorded the famous Edict of Diocletian, an attempt to fix the price of all commodities throughout the Empire; this was in some cases in Greek, in others in Latin. Tomb inscriptions are innumerable, many of them containing interesting epitaphs.

Most of the above classification applies equally to Greek and to Roman inscriptions. On the Roman side an immense amount of light is thrown on municipal organisation and institutions throughout the Empire.

Milestones make it possible to trace the construction, direction and date of the network of Roman roads. Military inscriptions are also very numerous. Many of them, as Dr. Haverfield says, "are absolutely devoid of striking features. But when these hundreds are considered together they become important. If you tabulate some hundreds or thousands of birthplaces, you can trace the whole policy of the Imperial Government in the matter of recruiting. You can ascertain the answers to numerous important questions—to what extent and till what date legionaries were raised in Italy, what contingents for various branches of the service were drawn from the provinces, and which provinces provided most; how far provincials garrisoned their own countries, and which of them, like the British recruits, were sent as a measure of precaution to serve elsewhere; or, finally, at what epoch the Empire grew weak enough to require the enlistment of barbarians from beyond its frontiers." This is but one example of the way in which a great co-operative effort can reach results which no isolated study or chronicle of facts or theories could attain, and how a few great leaders, followed by numerous assistants and disciples, can give a new outlook and a new inspiration to whole spheres of intellectual activity.

THE GREEK HOUSE

Another aspect of Greek life upon which much light has been thrown by recent excavations is the plan and character of the Greek house. The great Cretan palaces, with their courts and complexes of chambers, workshops, and store-rooms, stand by themselves. But the less extensive and simpler palaces of Tiryns and Mycenæ show already, in their court and hall opening out of it, the essential features of the houses and palaces described by Homer, and also of the Greek house of historic times. This development had been obscured by a mistaken notion that both of these usually consisted of two courts, one for men and one for women. This misconception was based partly on the false analogy of Pompeii, where the two courts (atrium and peristyle) follow a Roman type, partly on a misunderstanding, or rather a misquotation, of Vitruvius. The excavations at Priene and at Delos have given us many examples of well-preserved Greek houses, mostly of the fourth century B.C. or later (*see Fig.* 24). But they almost all conform to the type of an open court, usually surrounded by a peristyle in the larger examples; out of this, usually at the north side so as to catch the sun and escape cold winds, opens a large chamber, often with a pillared porch in front of it, used probably as a living-room and also for entertainments, and several other rooms beside it or around

the court. There was often an upper story approached by a staircase. In some cases this was assigned to the women, in others they had certain chambers reserved for them. But that they were regularly to be found in the court is attested by literary evidence, though on special occasions they were probably confined to their own quarters. The decoration of these houses, often in imitation of marble panelling, resembles what is found in the earlier style of marble painting at Pompeii.

From all these sources it is possible to realise something of the life of the ancient Greeks. In the best days of Athens the duties of a citizen took up most of his time—attending the public assembly, serving his turn as a magistrate or juror, taking part in religious festivals, or being called out for military service. It followed that a man spent little of his

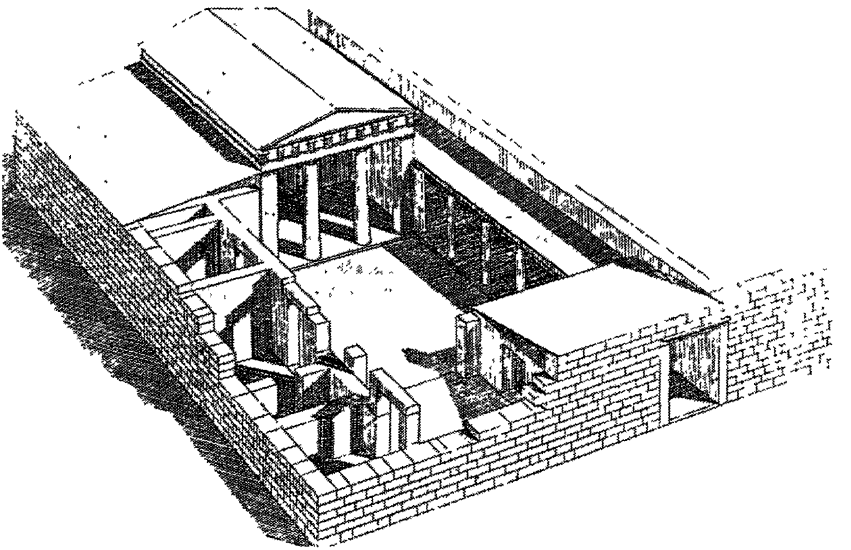


Fig. 24.—GREEK HOUSE AT PRIENE

time in his house, which was mainly given over to the women, especially in the daytime; but many houses had a dining-room in which guests could be entertained, and such dinners, followed by symposia, were a common feature of city life. Most men also passed a considerable portion of their time exercising in the gymnasium. Country estates existed, but these, as well as commercial pursuits, were mostly managed by overseers or agents with the help of slave labour. Hunting, especially the pursuit of the hare on foot and with hounds, was a favourite pastime.

ATTIC TOMBS

Another side of Greek life, which is little touched upon in literature, is represented upon the reliefs set up over Attic tombs. These frequently represent family scenes, and give a moving record of domestic affection.

There is often either no reference to death, or only the most indirect allusion. The survivors prefer to think of the deceased as they were when alive, in their favourite pursuits or amusements. Groups of two or more figures sometimes contain some allusion to a departure or a journey, in a solemn hand-clasp and a gentle melancholy. These tomb-reliefs are not, as a rule, the work of great artists, but they are the product of a time when Greek art was at its best, and they testify to the good taste and feeling of the people as a whole. The greatest number of them was found in the Ceramicus at Athens, just outside the sacred gate through which passed the road to Eleusis.

MYTHOLOGY

Another study which, though it does not deal directly with visible and tangible objects, is generally reckoned as a branch of archæology, is that of mythology. The evidence of vase-painting as to this subject has already been noted ; reliefs also, especially votive reliefs, often give information concerning local beliefs and rituals. The earlier mythologists were often content to make fanciful explanations both of myths and of the ritual associated with them, and often some theory, such as that of the solar myth, was used almost as a universal key to their interpretation. But a systematic and comparative method of study has led to more scientific results. The primitive rites practised everywhere by peasants, especially at critical periods of the natural year, often bear a striking resemblance to the tales that they tell, and also to the myths which we find in a more artificial and poetical form in Greek mythology. Sir James Frazer's *Golden Bough* is an example of the mass of material that may be used in such investigations.

NORTHERN AND WESTERN EUROPE

So far we have been mainly concerned with classical archæology, but epochs which fall within the historical period in Greece and Rome and in the Mediterranean region must still be counted as prehistoric in the north and west of Europe. Much study has been given to these, but much still remains obscure ; for instance it is still a matter of doubt, in the case of the beginning and end of the bronze age and the beginning of the iron age, how far the advances made are contemporary in the Mediterranean region and in central and north-western Europe. The interval between the two is not probably so great as is sometimes supposed. For objects of barter seem to have travelled along the great trade routes between the Baltic and the Ægæan in both directions. Baltic amber is often found in the south from Mycenæan times onward ; and Mycenæan patterns, or others closely resembling them, are found as far away as Celtic Ireland. The most characteristic examples of the civilisation and handicrafts of these regions are associated with the names of two places where they have been found most abundantly : Hallstatt, in Austria, and La Tène, in Switzerland. The first, which belongs to the later part of the bronze age, is generally dated about 900–700 B.C. ; the latter, which belongs to the early iron age, about 400–300 B.C., and both show the influence of Ægæan art of a contemporary or slightly earlier age. The metal objects of

these styles, and the pottery that accompanies them, have been published and recorded, and supply a foundation for the study of the handicrafts of Scandinavia and Celtic Britain as well as for central Europe.

This sketch gives an outline of the achievements of archæology. Many branches of the subject have been passed over altogether, others have been but lightly touched upon, but enough has been said to show that the discoveries of the past half-century have been of the most remarkable character, and exceed perhaps those of any other epoch in the history of the study. Nor do these discoveries seem likely to be at an end or even to have come to a pause. The last few years have seen the most sensational finds in Egypt and Mesopotamia, and the limits of our knowledge seem to be pushed further and further back, to show even in the remotest ages the most surprising technical and artistic attainments.[1]

MOST RECENT DISCOVERIES; EGYPT

In the case of Egypt, the life of the people has been recorded and portrayed with vivid detail in the paintings which decorated the inside of the tombs. These, owing to the dryness of the climate, have been preserved uninjured except by the hand of man, and have been studied and copied so that they are readily accessible to study. The same conditions have affected the preservation of many other objects, such as furniture and small articles of all sorts in wood or other materials elsewhere perishable. In earlier days it was mainly the pyramids and colossal temples which impressed the imagination; but little was known about the administration or civilisation of the country beyond what could be learnt from Herodotus and other classical writers. The great mass of documents that has been discovered in recent years, both inscribed on stone, scratched upon potsherds (ostraka), or written on papyrus, has supplied detailed information as to history, administration, religion and social life. An immense number of small objects, vases, beads, scarabs, ushabti (or tomb statuettes), have been studied and dated according to their types and materials, so that it is now possible to reconstruct in imagination the characteristics of almost all periods, from the earliest to the latest dynasties. In addition to this, there have been made some special discoveries of extraordinary richness. One, which aroused the widest interest, was the tomb of King Tutankhamen, the son-in-law of the heretic Pharaoh Akhenaton. As a rule tombs in Egypt, especially those of the kings, had been rifled, many of them in ancient times, and only gleanings are left for the modern excavator. Consequently the news that an unrifled tomb had been found aroused the highest expectations, and these were fully justified by the result. In the ante-room there was, closely piled together, a great mass of furniture, beds, chairs, chariots, and other objects, all of the most elaborate character and richly inlaid or plated with gold and other materials; the style however lacks the severity and simplicity of earlier work, and shows the influence of the somewhat affected work made under Akhenaton. Within the tomb chamber itself was a richly ornamented shrine enclosing the actual sarcophagus, ornamented with winged figures

[1] See also the section on Egypt and Mesopotamia in the Article on *The Arts of Painting and Sculpture*, p. 921.

of guardian goddesses, and plated with gold. The whole contents of the tomb have now been transferred to the Cairo Museum, and probably constitute the most remarkable set of objects ever found together.

The work of the time of Akhenaton shows a strange but most interesting phase in the history of Egyptian art. This king, about 1400 B.C., substituted for the traditional worship of the Egyptian gods a kind of monotheism, and appears to have attempted something of the same sort with the traditions of Egyptian art. This may be seen chiefly in the sculpture and painting found in his palace at Tell-el-Amarna. The portraits of the king and his family vary considerably, from a refined and spiritual idealism to what is hardly short of caricature. The king's figure, for example, seems almost to be a pathological study of an abnormal development; but his face as well as that of his queen,



Fig. 25.—HEAD OF NEFERTYTI

who must have been closely related to him, has a subtle charm, in spite of the abnormal development of chin and neck (*see Fig.* 25). The decorative paintings of the palace at Tell-el-Amarna are also strangely unlike Egyptian work, especially in the naturalistic representations of plants and animals. These last show a remarkable resemblance to contemporary designs in the palace of Minos at Cnossus. There is, indeed, no difficulty in the supposition that Akhenaton imported Cretan painters to decorate his palace. The resemblances are too many and too close to be accidental, and the style may well have originated in Crete. But no such explanation can account for the treatment of the human figure at Tell-el-Amarna. Nothing like it is known in Crete, nor is there any other known art which may have influenced Akhenaton's sculptors. The whole episode of this strange artistic innovation, which began and ended with the reign of Akhenaton, remains a problem for archæologists.

It is difficult to speak in any general terms of the life and civilisation which lasted through many thousands of years. Many changes no doubt took place; but the extraordinary conservatism of the Egyptians preserved many customs almost unchanged from the earliest dynasties down to the reign of the Ptolemies. Conditions must evidently have differed greatly in the different classes of the population, from the king and his officials and the priests at the one extreme to the serfs at the other. Between the two were middle classes which varied considerably in number and importance from time to time, according to the prosperity and external relations of the kingdom. But all alike were affected by the stereotyped routine which was necessitated by the geographical conditions. The very existence of Egypt depended on the dams and canals which were necessary for the control of the Nile and its inundations; hence the institution of forced labour (corvée) which continued until modern times. Work on the land was dependent on the same causes. During the inundation, from July to October, nothing could be done beyond the watching and repair of the dykes. Then, in November, came the time for sowing of all sorts of crops, and the people moved back on to the land; and the harvest followed in April. From the representations on tombs, we can realise how the officials and other rich men themselves supervised the work that went on in their estates, with the help of numerous scribes and other attendants. They must also have had large staffs of handicraftsmen and artists in their employ. Most of the arts and handicrafts were hereditary, and this conduced greatly to the conservatism and traditional skill which characterise most Egyptian work.

The houses of rich men and officials were on the most lavish scale, and included, in addition to living-rooms, courtyards, groves and gardens, and work-rooms and stores for all purposes. The houses of the middle and lower class were less magnificent, but similar in character, being usually built round a closed courtyard, with or without columns, with dwelling-rooms on the first floor, and flat roofs, with or without a canopy, made accessible by a staircase. These can be seen not only in paintings but in terra-cotta models, supplied sometimes in the tombs of poorer people, to provide them with accommodation similar to what they were used to in life.

Though all classes in Egypt, from the king to the serfs, appear to have been bound by an inexorable routine, the impression conveyed by the pictures is not a gloomy one, but rather of a cheerful and busy out-of-door life, full of industry and enjoyment. Relaxation and entertainments of various kinds seem to have been common. In the houses of the well-to-do, visitors were received and feasts or banquets were provided, at which the company sat on the ground on mats. There were decorations of wreaths and flowers, and music and dancing followed. Such entertainments can only have been given by the richer classes; but picnics and similar diversions were enjoyed by the common people, and festivals, sacrifices, and other gatherings were widely attended; an example is offered by the great festival at Canopus, which in later times degenerated into a wild sort of orgy.

The climate of Egypt, which suited such open-air life, was also suitable for very light garments. These varied from time to time according

to the prevalent fashion. Men at all times often wore nothing but a kind of loin-cloth or kilt, sometimes tightly folded or pleated. A vest might be added, and a wide necklace was often worn. Women usually wore a single straight and narrow garment, falling nearly to the ankles. Nude figures sometimes occur. But the drapery is often treated as if transparent, and the artist shows a delight in the bodily forms which offers the greatest contrast to the enveloping masses of clothing that conceal all but the hands and arms of Mesopotamian statues.

MESOPOTAMIA; UR

The recent achievements in archæology in Mesopotamia resemble in

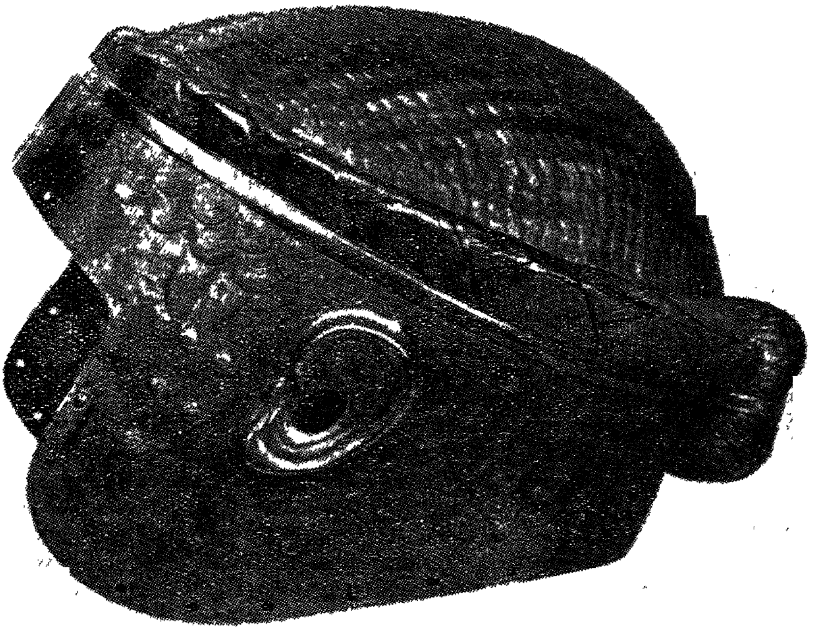


Fig. 26.—THE GOLDEN HELMET OF MES-KALAM-DUG

one respect those in Egypt—they have carried back our knowledge many thousands of years. The colossal winged bulls and extensive historical reliefs of the Assyrian kings were among the most imposing acquisitions of the last century; but they show for the most part a conventionalised style, in spite of their very spirited rendering of animals wild and tame. The origin of this style may be now traced back to the early Sumerians, and to cities and dynasties of a most remote age. The work of this period has been discovered in recent years by explorers of various nationalities. The most recent and in some ways the most astonishing finds are those of Mr. Woolley at Ur. The town, with its streets and houses, is preserved to a great extent. The finest examples of handicraft come from the royal

tombs, and are dated about 3500 B.C. But they show the highest skill in design and technique, both in metal, mostly gold and silver, and in inlaid work in various materials. Figures and heads of animals are beautifully modelled. An excellent example is a gold helmet (*see Fig.* 26), closely fitting the head and richly decorated. For inlay work, the most complete is the so-called " Standard of Ur." This represents, in shell and lapis lazuli, a series of scenes most delicately worked, representing the close of a campaign on one side, and a scene of peace on the other. Other similar friezes show cattle, sheep and goats as well as warlike subjects. The men are usually represented, as they are in Sumerian sculpture, clad in loose woolly garments hanging in tufts and completely enveloping and concealing the figure, in contrast to the clinging or transparent dress of Egypt. In the royal tombs, a confirmation of the early date is, in Mr. Woolley's opinion, to be found in the custom of human sacrifice, of which there is no trace in later Mesopotamia. In one of the royal tombs an armed bodyguard and many slaves and attendants, male and female, seem to have been butchered where they stood in the approach to the tomb. Among other finds are harps decorated with animal and other designs, a wreath or head-dress of gold on a princess, weapons, implements and vases, many of them of gold or silver. The whole impression produced is of a degree of wealth and of artistic skill that must, even at this early age, have had many centuries of growth and development behind it. The most conspicuous building at Ur was the huge Ziggurat, a massive cube of brick about 150 by 200 feet, and 75 feet high. Its walls, sloping slightly inward and divided by projecting buttresses, give a great feeling of stability; and they already show the principles of design found in later Mesopotamian work. It also has huge staircases leading up to the terraces. The temples and palaces are very complicated structures; but houses of the middle class are also found. These are built round a courtyard open to the sky, with a wooden balcony supported on columns of wood or brick, and rooms opening out of it (*see Fig.* 27). The roofs were flat or slightly sloped. On representations of towns there is often a tower at one end; a staircase led up to the living-rooms. The whole impression made by this early Sumerian civilisation is of magnificence in the case of the rulers and great officials, and of comfort among the middle classes.

The Sumerian people are represented in art as of a rather squat figure, with round heads and strangely projecting triangular noses, in strong contrast to the Semitic people who later became predominant in Mesopotamia. They usually are clean-shaven both as to hair and as to beard; but some early princes wear long hair and beard treated in the manner familiar in Assyrian statues, which evidently follow after a long interval the same fashion. Circumstances do not allow the same vivid pictures of their life as we find in Egypt. They seem mostly to have lived in towns with massive walls, for protection against enemies and floods. Some dynasties are recorded as already existing before the great flood, of which various traditions are preserved. Probably the common people, especially if occupied as herdsmen or agriculturalists, lived in temporary shelters in the plain.

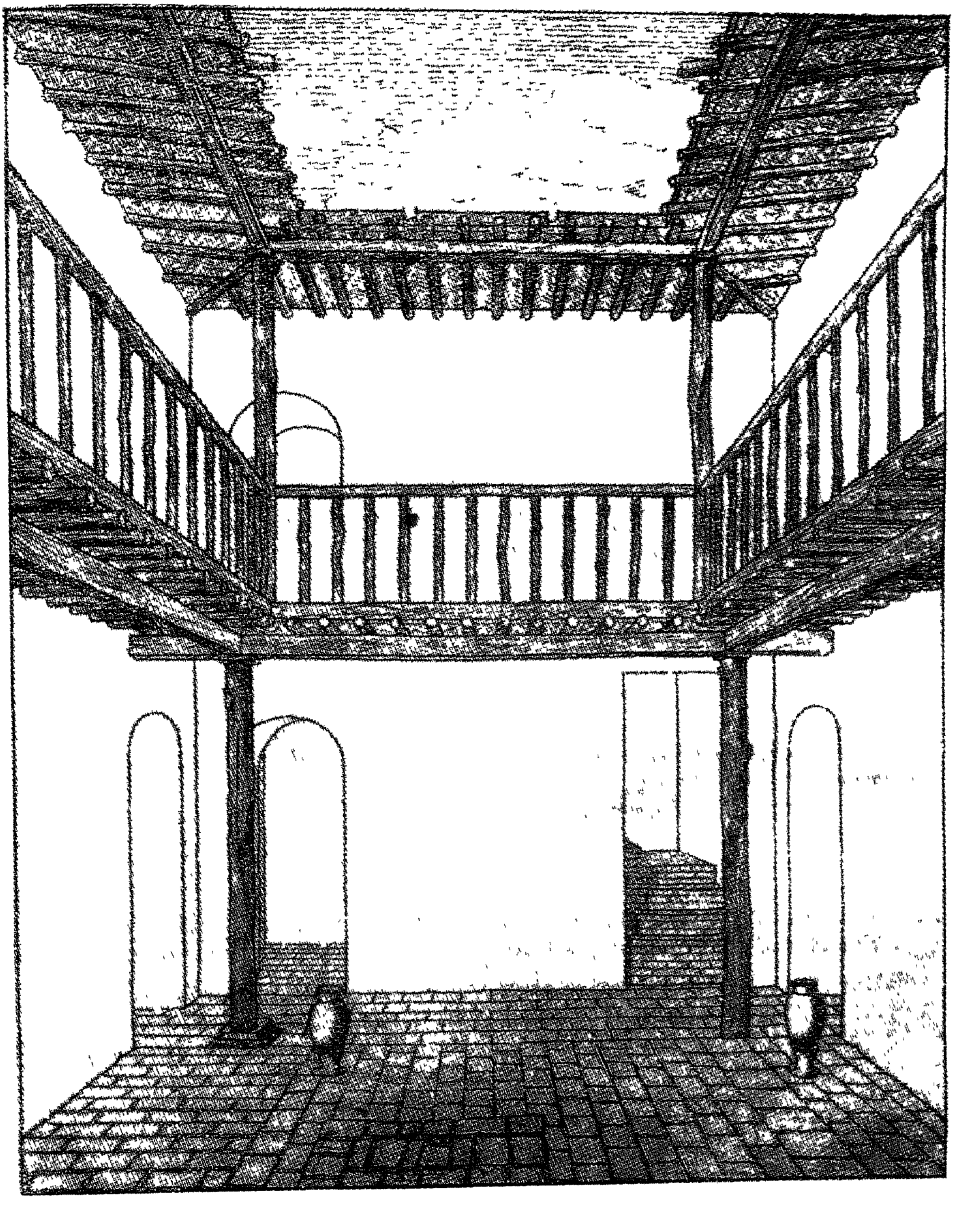


Fig. 27.—SUMERIAN HOUSE

After drawings by the late F. G. Newton

Exploration and excavation still continue, and there still appears to be an ample scope for their activities. The most promising sites in Greece itself have been dug ; but there is still the project of the excavation of the central part of Athens, at present occupied by part of the modern town. Crete appears inexhaustible ; and many of the great and once flourishing cities of Asia Minor still await their turn.

The excavation of Pompeii continues, and that of Herculaneum has been resumed ; in Rome itself, and in its port town of Ostia, new and important excavations are in progress.

Field work is still being carried out at many places in Great Britain, mainly on Roman sites. A new auxiliary is now at the disposal of the archæologist. Photographs taken from the air have given accurate surveys of many regions hitherto inaccessible, and have revealed the sites and even the plans of unknown towns. In many parts of England such photographs have shown roads and earthworks which are invisible to those who walk over the site. In this, as in many other ways, archæology may claim to be among the most progressive of studies.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

T. H. BREASTED : *Ancient Times* (Boston. 1916)

H. G. SPEARING : *The Childhood of Art* (London. 1912)

E. A. PARKYN : *An Introduction to the Study of Prehistoric Art* (London. 1915)

C. L. WOOLLEY : *The Sumerians* (Oxford. 1928)

SIR W. M. FLINDERS PETRIE : *Social Life in Egypt* (London. 1923)

C. H. and H. B. HAWES : *Crete, the Forerunner of Greece* (London and New York. 1909)

H. B. WALTERS : *The Art of the Greeks* (London. 1906)

The Art of the Romans (London. 1911)

RECENT AND CONTEMPORARY PHILOSOPHY

By

A. WOLF

SYNOPSIS

The differentiation of philosophy and science — The main departments of philosophy: ontology, epistemology, and axiology — The chief types of philosophy, and how to distinguish them.

Ontological Problems and Solutions: fluxionism and substantialism; substantival monism, dualism, and pluralism; uniform and multiform pluralism; attributive monism, dualism, and pluralism; absolute idealism, spiritual pluralism, materialism, energism, and neutral monism; tychism, necessitarianism, mechanism, vitalism, and emergent evolution; theism, deism, pantheism, and agnosticism; naturalism and supernaturalism.

Epistemological Problems and Solutions: gnosticism, scepticism, fictionism, and pragmatism; transcendentalism, idealism, theory of representative ideas, and realism; empiricism, positivism, rationalism, intuitionism, and mysticism.

Axiological Problems and Solutions: the nature and number of the ultimate values; their objective or subjective character.

The general character of recent and contemporary philosophy, and the classification of representative philosophers.

Materialism, energism, and positivism in Germany — Absolute idealism in England, France, Italy, and the United States — Spiritual pluralism in England and Russia — Neo-Transcendentalism (or neo-Kantianism and phenomenology) in Germany — Biotism, vitalism, pragmatism, instrumentalism, and fictionism in France, Germany, and the United States — Realism, emergent evolution, and fluxionism in England, South Africa, and the United States.

Retrospect — The present amicable relations between science, philosophy, and theology, and some possible dangers.

RECENT AND CONTEMPORARY PHILOSOPHY

I. THE DIFFERENTIATION OF PHILOSOPHY

The original union of philosophy and science inevitably became loosened, in the course of the centuries, by the sheer accumulation of knowledge. Imperceptibly a division of labour came increasingly into operation. Not only was philosophy differentiated from science, but science became differentiated into many sciences, and philosophy differentiated into a number of philosophical studies. Nevertheless, until the nineteenth century some sort of pretence was kept up that Knowledge was one whole, and that the sciences were just specialised branches of philosophy. In the course of the nineteenth century however, not only was this pretence dropped, but there emerged something like a definite antipathy between science and philosophy. This was largely due to some of the German idealists, whose extravagant incursions into the domain of science aroused the general resentment of men of science. Even in Scotland, where everybody is reputed to be a philosopher, a scientist like Lord Kelvin did not veil his contempt for a philosopher like Edward Caird, when both were teaching in Glasgow. This kind of hostility gradually disappeared. Quite a number of scientists have actually turned philosophers. And at the present time the incursions of men of science into the domain of philosophy threaten to become about as embarrassing as were the incursions of philosophers into the domain of science about a hundred years ago. At the moment, however, we are only concerned with the differentiation of philosophy into a number of separate departments or branches. Something must be said about these in order to make the study of recent and contemporary philosophy generally intelligible.

Philosophy has three main departments, namely, (1) Ontology, or the study of the ultimate nature of being or reality, (2) Epistemology, or theory of knowledge, or the study of the ultimate problems relating to the nature, validity, and limitations of human knowledge, and (3) Axiology, or the study of the ultimate nature, reality and significance of values (goodness and beauty). Sometimes Ontology (1) and Epistemology (2) are grouped together as Metaphysics ; but sometimes the term Metaphysics is used less correctly as synonymous with Ontology only, or with Epistemology only. The two sub-departments of Axiology (3) are Ethics or Moral Philosophy, the study of the ultimate ideals and norms of conduct, and Æsthetics or the Philosophy of Beauty, the study of the ultimate ideals and norms of art. There are also other departments of philosophy. Of these, however, Logic as the study of the general conditions of valid reasoning is really a preliminary to all other studies, including philosophy.

Psychology, the study ot mental life, has recently established itself as an independent science. Lastly, such studies as those designated the Philosophy of Law, the Philosophy of the State, etc., are rather specialised studies arising out of certain ultimate problems of Law, Politics, etc., and intimately connected with these special departments of research. The departments of philosophy which are of most general interest are Ontology, Epistemology, and Axiology. And of these the first is of central interest, the other two are mainly of interest in so far as they help to throw light upon the first. In the following account attention will be paid chiefly to the ontological character of the philosophies dealt with, but the other aspects will also receive some consideration. Some philosophers, indeed, have confined their attention to the problems of epistemology. Of these only very few can be dealt with. And nothing at all can be said here about the numerous thinkers who are dealing with specialised philosophical problems. Important as their work is, it cannot be presented in a manner sufficiently intelligible and interesting to the general reader. Nor is it possible to include in this survey all the particular varieties of what is essentially the same world-view. Hence the inevitable omission of a number of well-known, and deservedly well-known, names in contemporary philosophy. However, this account actually deals with some forty representative philosophers, and future historians of philosophy will probably consider this a generous allowance for the period under review.

II. TYPES OF PHILOSOPHY

There are many different types of philosophy, and the tendency to refer to all of them by means of a few names is rather misleading. No doubt there are some advantages in limiting the number of main distinctions between philosophical systems. But it is important to have some appreciation not only of the principal cleavages between the various philosophies, but also of the specific differences between philosophies within the same group. Perhaps the simplest way to make all the more important distinctions sufficiently clear is to indicate briefly the chief problems which philosophers have to face, and also the different ways in which each of these problems has been answered in recent and contemporary philosophy.

(*a*) *Ontological Problems and Solutions*

(1) Perhaps the first philosophical question raised in the history of Western thought was this : Is there anything permanent at the basis of the changing phenomena of nature ? Many philosophers of all times answered the question in the affirmative, maintaining that there is some kind of " substance " underlying the flux of events ; others declined to admit any reality other than the flux of events as such. At the present time, largely under the influence of recent physical theory, a philosophy of events is perhaps accepted more widely than is a philosophy of substance. The difference between the two views may be expressed by means of the terms *ontological fluxionism* and *ontological substantialism*.

(2) The second question may be stated thus : Is there only one ultimate reality, or are there two or more ultimate realities ? The possible answers to this are obvious. Some hold that there is only one ultimate reality ; some believe in two ultimate realities ; others admit a multiplicity of ultimate realities. These different views are known as *substantival monism*, *substantival dualism*, and *substantival pluralism* respectively. Of the three, the first and last are the most widespread.

(3) The third problem is this : Is ultimate reality all of one kind only ? For those who accept *substantival monism* the answer is obviously in the affirmative. But for those who maintain a *substantival pluralism* the answer may or may not be in the affirmative. Some, for instance, believe in a plurality of spirits which are all essentially the same in kind, and deny the reality of anything else. Others believe in a plurality of atoms which are all essentially similar, and deny the ultimate reality of anything else. Either of these views may be described as *uniform pluralism*. Others, again, believe in a plurality of different kinds of ultimate realities (bodies, souls, etc.). This view may be described as *multiform pluralism*. Substantival monism, of course, is necessarily uniform.

(4) The fourth question is : How many fundamental (or irreducible) attributes does ultimate reality (or do the ultimate realities) possess ? The answer obviously may be, " One," or " More than one." The former view may be called *attributive monism*, the latter *attributive pluralism*. If the number of irreducible attributes is held to be two, then we may use the special name *attributive dualism*. Each of these distinctions naturally leads to other distinctions according to the irreducible attribute or attributes ascribed to ultimate reality. If it is held that the sole attribute is of the nature of mind or consciousness, the view is called *idealism* or *mentalism* or *spiritualism* ; if the sole attribute is identified more especially with thought, we get *panlogism* ; if it is identified with will, we get *voluntarism*. Idealists who accept substantival monism are called *absolute idealists* ; those who accept substantival pluralism are usually known as *spiritual pluralists* or *monadists*. The view which identifies the sole attribute with matter is called *materialism* ; the view which identifies it with energy is called *energism* ; the view which identifies it with something different from mentality or materiality, though underlying both these, is called *neutralism* or *neutral monism*.

(5) The next ontological problem is : How are the various parts, units or modes of reality interrelated ? One extreme view is that there are no real connections between things or events, that everything is a matter of chance. This view is known as *tychism*. Opposed to it is the view, known as *necessitarianism*, according to which law and order prevail throughout the universe, so that nothing really happens by mere chance. A special form of this view, and frequently but wrongly confused with it, is the view that everything happens in a way causally determined according to the laws of matter and motion. This view is variously described as *mechanism*, *determinism*, and *the mechanistic theory*. Midway between the two extremes of mechanism and tychism (yet presumably without flouting the various known and unknown types of orderliness maintained by necessitarianism) there are various views which aim at vindicating some measure of spontaneity, novelty or originality for natural events, and

freedom for man. These views are known variously as *vitalism*, *creative evolution*, *emergent evolution*, and, more rarely, *libertarianism*. *Teleology* is the view which more especially seeks to vindicate the reality of purposes or purposiveness in natural events, as against the mechanistic view that all is causally pre-determined, or against certain idealistic views which regard ultimate reality as a " block-universe " which is eternal and immutable.

(6) Another ontological question amounts to this : Is there any being, or anything, that may be called divine ? One answer is to the effect that we do not know. This view is known as *agnosticism*. The view which answers the question definitely in the negative is called *atheism*, a term rather liberally applied according to taste, or want of taste. Of the affirmative answers to the question the most familiar are those known as *theism*, *deism*, and *pantheism*, respectively. Theism is the belief in a personal God, who is the creator of nature and man, distinct from both, yet intimately connected with both. Deism and pantheism strive to avoid the anthropomorphic tendencies of theism, and insist that God is supra-personal. Pantheism identifies God with the Universe, and thereby achieves a scientific economy.

(7) Lastly, there is this problem (more especially for those who recognise the reality of a divine being) : Is the world of reality one interconnected and orderly cosmic system, or is there a supernatural world, over and above nature, and capable of interfering with the order of nature ? This problem will probably be dismissed by agnostics and atheists as meaningless, inasmuch as they do not admit any other reality than nature. It will also be dismissed by certain idealists on the ground that there is no such thing as physical nature, and by certain other idealists who are definitely atheistic. Theism and deism, however, would both admit *supernaturalism*, though deism would reject miraculous interferences with the natural order of things. Pantheism definitely identifies nature or the universe with God, and so rejects the supernatural. And some forms of realism, while admitting the existence of deity in the universe, identify deity with part of the universe, and reject the supernatural. Such a rejection of a supernatural world, on the ground that the whole of reality is one orderly interconnected system, is known as *naturalism*. This term should not be confused, as it commonly is confused, with *materialism*. For naturalism leaves room for the mental, the spiritual, and the divine, whereas materialism (in the strict sense of the term) does not.

(*b*) *Epistemological Problems and Solutions*

(1) The first question relating to so-called human knowledge is : Do we have any real knowledge at all ? *Scepticism* is the view which throws doubt on the possibility of real knowledge. (Epistemological scepticism must be distinguished from the limited scepticism and agnosticism which only doubt or deny the possibility of knowledge of ultimate reality, or of God.) *Fictionism* mainly differs from scepticism in maintaining that the limitations of human knowledge are not peculiar to man, but characterise also the knowledge of superhuman minds, if there are such. *Pragmatism* likewise is not essentially different from scepticism. What it

says in effect is that the proper distinction is between fruitful beliefs and misleading beliefs, rather than between true and false beliefs, but fruitful beliefs may be called true, and misleading beliefs may be described as false. Fictionism, as compared with pragmatism, admits rather more candidly that even avowedly false views may have practical importance, and that it is just this practical importance that really matters. The view that knowledge is possible may be described as *gnosticism*. This term, however, is rarely used in philosophy. For gnosticism also has several varieties according to the different answers given to the next question, and so the names usually employed are the specific names of these varieties.

(2) The second question, which of course does not concern the several forms of scepticism, is this : How are the cognitive experiences, by which we know objects, related to these objects, or *vice versa* how are the objects known related to the cognitions ? *Transcendentalism* maintains that some unknown materials are given to us but that the mind in the very act of apprehending them gives them certain forms, such as order in time and space, causal connections, etc. (This view is also known as " criticism " or " critical idealism "). According to *ontological idealism* all objects are mental in character, and their very existence is dependent upon some apprehending mind or knowing subject, though this need not be the finite mind of man, but the Absolute, or " consciousness in general." According to the *theory of representative ideas* there are two kinds of objects, namely, psychical objects (or ideas), which depend on the mind and are directly revealed to it, and physical objects, which are independent of mind and are revealed to it only indirectly, or inferentially, through mediating experiences. Lastly, according to *realism*, objects exist quite independently of their being cognised, and are apprehended directly by the mind, and as they are, more or less. Of these views, realism probably commands the largest following. There are, however, so many varieties of realism that it is impossible to deal with them here.

(3) A third epistemological problem concerns the avenues of knowledge. There are at least three such avenues commonly recognised, more or less. But there are great differences of emphasis ; some thinkers emphasise one of these avenues, others another. *Empiricism* stresses sense-experience as the chief source of real knowledge. *Positivism* treats experience as the only source of knowledge, and is consequently opposed to all metaphysical speculation. *Rationalism* emphasises the supreme importance of reason and of reasoning from, and according to, general principles. *Intuitionism* attaches the greatest value to intuition, which is regarded as a more primitive form of apprehension, prompted largely by feelings and instincts, and not yet so intellectual and abstract as thought and perception are. In recent philosophy intuitionism has come into great prominence. Lastly, *mysticism* upholds the possibility of an indescribable spiritual vision of deity or of ultimate reality. It should be noted that the supporters of one of the latter views often allow relative validity to other powers of apprehension than the one to which they chiefly pin their faith. This is usually done by the recognition of different grades of knowledge. In this way, a mystic may allow *some* value to intuition, reason, and even sense-perception ; an intuitionist, to reason and sense-perception, and so on.

(c) *Axiological Problems and Solutions*

When we are interested in anything we attribute value (or worth) to it. Things are valued very differently, of course. Many things, perhaps most things, are valued only as a means to an end. But there are some things that are valued for their own sake. These may be called *ultimate values*; and in philosophy we are mainly concerned with such ultimate values.

(1) The first axiological problem is: How many and what ultimate values are there? The usual answer is that there are three such ultimate values, namely, Beauty, Goodness, and Truth. To these three a fourth is sometimes added, namely, Worshipfulness, or religious value. But most thinkers are probably of opinion that religion is concerned with the conservation of the first three ultimate values mentioned above, rather than with the apprehension of any additional value. There are also other views which need not be discussed here.

(2) The second, and most important, axiological question (and the only other question that can be referred to here) is this: How are the ultimate values related to reality? Do they belong to things in the same kind of objective way as the primary qualities do, or are they as subjective as secondary qualities were usually considered to be? Some who regard secondary qualities (colour, scent, taste, etc.) as subjective tend to think that values (or tertiary qualities, as they are often called) are also subjective. According to this view, then, values are merely psychological characters which are attributed to things in virtue of somebody's interest in them, but have no reality apart from such interest or appreciation. Some hold that values are, at all events, independent of finite, individual selves. Others, admitting the objective reality of secondary qualities, have no difficulty in admitting also the objective reality of values. Still others, indeed, regard values as of the very essence of reality, and speak confidently of a kind of mystic experience (intuition or vision) in which reality and value are apprehended as one. Lastly, there are various differences of opinion as to which of the above-mentioned ultimate values are objective. Some have no difficulty in regarding beauty as an objective quality of a beautiful landscape, or in regarding goodness as an objective quality of a good action or a good character, but cannot attribute truth to anything but propositions. Others find it easier to accept the objectivity of Truth than of Beauty or of Goodness. And so on. In the main, however, it may be said that the present tendency is to treat ultimate values as objective rather than as subjective, although there are different views as to the precise sense in which their objectivity should be interpreted.

(d) *The Characterisation of Types of Philosophy*

This brief review of philosophical problems and their solutions may suffice to show that no philosophy can be adequately described by means of any single "ism," like "monism," "idealism," "realism," etc. A considerable number of "isms" would be required in order to characterise correctly any one system of philosophy. And an exhaustive classification of the possible combinations of the various "isms" would be a very complex affair. Any such attempt, moreover, would be hampered also by the fact that the antitheses between different views have lost a

good deal of their sharpness, in recent years, owing to an increase in mutual understanding and a consequent " meeting of extremes," which makes it necessary to take into account differences of shade and of emphasis as well as the more palpable differences. Then, too, there is, in the last resort, something individual and personal about each philosophy, and this complicates still further any attempt at an accurate classification. Yet, for the purpose of an easy survey, any grouping is better than none, and there are certain advantages in a simple grouping, provided it is not misunderstood. We propose, therefore, to arrange the selected representatives of recent and contemporary philosophy in a few rather loose groups, trusting that the foregoing summary review of the main problems of philosophy and their solutions will enable the reader to put each philosopher in his proper place in the general philosophic scheme, if he so desire.

III. GENERAL CHARACTER OF RECENT AND CONTEMPORARY PHILOSOPHY

(*a*) The period with which we are concerned is a period of about half a century, beginning approximately at the point where the " Retrospect " (see the first Article in this volume) ends, and terminating early in 1931. The middle decades of the nineteenth century showed a marked tendency towards materialism and empiricism. This tendency gave rise, on the one hand, to a certain amount of philosophy which was more or less materialistic, or energistic, or at least positivist; but, on the other hand it also stimulated, by way of reaction, a strong interest in idealistic philosophy. Idealistic philosophy had had a golden age during the fifty years or so following the publication of Kant's *Critique of Pure Reason* (1781), and its traditions had been kept alive by at least a few distinguished philosophers. It was therefore comparatively easy to take up, and to develop, the idealistic philosophy in its various forms. The greatest service in this connection was rendered probably by T. H. Green, who developed his views, just as Kant had developed his, largely in opposition to the empiricism and scepticism of Hume. Of the several forms of idealism which have been taught during the period under review two at least may be readily distinguished, namely, absolute idealism (which tends to be pantheistic), and monadism or spiritual pluralism (which is usually, though not always, theistic).

In Germany, the revived interest in idealism produced a philosophic movement the aim of which was to begin all over again the work of transcendental criticism initiated by Kant. This movement began with the slogan, " Back to Kant," but eventually, although it tried to be even more radical than Kant, it ended by being far more speculative, and perhaps less critical, than he had been. Of this movement, which may be called Neo-Transcendentalism, or critical idealism, there are at least three branches, namely, one led by H. Cohen, another by W. Windelband, and a third by E. Husserl. The first two of these are commonly known as Neo-Kantianism, the third as Phenomenology.

Idealism has taken firm root not only in England and Germany but also in France, Italy, and the United States of America.

In France the reaction against materialism assumed yet another form than that of idealism, though intimately connected with it historically. H. Bergson, namely, has expounded a philosophy according to which ultimate reality is Life (rather than the " matter " of materialists or the " thought " or " consciousness " of idealists). For want of a better word this philosophy may be named " biotism." The concept of evolution naturally has an important place in biotism. In Germany and elsewhere a somewhat similar reaction to materialism has shown itself in the much more restricted view known as " vitalism," the view namely that living organisms cannot be explained without assuming a principle of life (or vital principle) as dominating the physical organism. Various theories of knowledge have also been influenced by " biotism." This applies notably to certain epistemological theories already mentioned, namely, pragmatism, instrumentalism, and fictionism, all which treat beliefs as instruments of life, and to be valued accordingly.

While idealism may be said to have succeeded very well in its opposition to materialism, and as a reaction against this, it has also managed to provoke a reaction against itself. Some thinkers, while agreeing that it is impossible to derive mind from matter, find it equally difficult to derive matter from mind, or to regard matter as in some sense an external appearance of mind. In recent years this reaction against idealism has been based mainly on epistemological considerations. The anti-idealistic view is known as realism, of which there are various kinds. But they are most of them agreed in maintaining the reality of something besides mind (or consciousness) and independently of it. Some realists have developed a more or less complete system of philosophy, while others have so far confined their attention to the epistemological problems. For the most part realists are also naturalistic, and some of them find room for deity within the universe.

One of the most characteristic features of recent philosophy is due to the influence of the new physics. The tendency of recent physicists to regard matter as composed, in the last resort, of electric charges or waves has induced some philosophers, especially the realists, to conceive reality as fluxional rather than as substantival, that is to say, as consisting of a flux of events rather than of permanent substances. This view, which has already been described as fluxionism, has probably had a good deal to do with the abandonment of naturalism on the part of many contemporary scientists, and their almost embarrassing anxiety to subscribe to idealism. Some appear to be acquainted only with the following short catechism :

Q.—What is mind ? A.—No matter.
Q.—What is matter ? A.—Never mind.

Difficulties in the conception of matter, however, are a poor reason for identifying it with mind. Some try to get over the difficulty by positing some third kind of entity which is neither mind nor matter but from which both have emerged. This " neutral stuff " is sometimes called " mind-stuff," apparently because it is neither " mind " nor " stuff," though it gives rise to both.

Another characteristic feature of recent philosophy is the emphasis

placed upon emergent evolution. This is especially true of biotism, for which life and its creative evolution are almost everything. But it is also true of realism. This is due partly to the tendency of realism to base itself as far as possible on the broad results of science, biological as well as physical ; and evolution is, of course, one of the basic theories of modern biology. And partly this is due to the tendency of realism towards naturalism, and the help which the concept of emergent evolution affords in the attempt to include all realities in the one universe.

(*b*) In accordance with the foregoing sketch of the main tendencies in recent and contemporary philosophy we propose to arrange the following accounts of some forty representative philosophers of the period under the following headings :—(1) materialism, energism, and positivism ; (2) absolute idealism ; (3) monadism or spiritual pluralism ; (4) neo-transcendentalism (or neo-Kantianism and phenomenology) ; (5) biotism, vitalism, pragmatism, instrumentalism, and fictionism ; (6) realism, emergent evolution, and fluxionism. The general significance of these terms has already been explained in the preceding pages.

The selection of representative philosophers is always a difficult matter for a contemporary, especially when there is an *embarras de richesses*. Many fishes as good have been left in the sea. Moreover, the different countries have been treated very unevenly, and their philosophical merits must not be judged by the number of their representatives included in the following sketches. The selection of representative philosophers has been determined mainly by the desire to have every important philosophical tendency adequately represented, and to have them represented, as far as possible, by philosophers in whom English and American readers of general education are likely to be most interested. To these considerations must probably be added another factor, namely, the writer's convenience and limitations.

IV. MATERIALISM, ENERGISM AND POSITIVISM IN GERMANY

E. H. Haeckel (1834–1919) was probably the most influential advocate of Darwinism. In his hands Evolutionism became a whole system of philosophy instead of a purely biological theory. Of the biological ideas associated with his name the most familiar (though he did not originate them entirely) are those of phylogeny and recapitulation. Phylogeny is the study of the evolution of the various species of plants and animals. It leads to the construction of genealogical trees, the lower parts of which represent the ancestral types, while the branches represent various descendants, and the twigs represent the latest offspring. In his *Descent of Man* Darwin had already sketched one such tree. Haeckel and his followers attempted many such genealogical trees. The principle followed was briefly this. First of all it was determined by comparison what animals had a similar form or plan. For example, the amœba and infusorians are alike in being unicellular. Next, we note which of them is the less differentiated. This is regarded as the ancestor, or as the type nearest to the ancestral form of that group. Thus, for instance, the amœba has no definite organs, whereas the infusorians have certain specialised structures. The amœba was, accordingly, regarded as the ancestor, and the

infusorians as a branch. The other theory, namely, the Recapitulation Theory, states that during its development, from the egg to its final form, every animal repeats the stages in the evolution of its species from its unicellular ancestor. The pace of embryonic development is, of course, enormously faster than that of the racial evolution. In the course of a few days, or even a few hours, an embryo may pass through a number of stages which may have taken millions of years in the racial evolution.

According to Haeckel the simplest conceivable animals, the so-called *moneras*, crystallised from lifeless matter. And he conceived of the whole cosmic process as a continuous evolution, from the simplest atoms to the highest forms of being, in accordance with strictly deterministic laws. There is no fundamental difference between living and lifeless bodies, for lifeless crystals have definite structures whereas some living organisms have none. Moreover the elements found in organic matter are also found in inorganic matter, and it is possible to produce some organic compounds artificially. All things, then, are composed of the same kinds of elements, and are dominated by the same forces of attraction and repulsion between their atoms. Even the so-called soul is only a number of extremely complex reactions of the central nervous system. The simplest living things arose by spontaneous generation, and from these all higher forms of life have evolved under Natural Selection. A molecule more or less of carbon or phosphorus or sulphur may have been the sole difference between the primitive forms of life which formed the several ancestors of all the many forms which have evolved from them. Haeckel stressed the *monistic* character of his world-view, inasmuch as he held that matter (composed of atoms) is the only ultimate reality, and that all things, living as well as lifeless, conscious as well as unconscious, have evolved from it according to iron laws. His monism, in fact, looks very like materialism. Yet that is not altogether true. For he endowed even his atoms with souls, so that matter, as Haeckel conceived it, was not the lifeless matter of thoroughgoing materialists. Haeckel was a hylozoist rather than a materialist. And Haeckel's philosophy, if it was monistic as regards the one ultimate substance which he recognised, was also dualistic in regard to the two attributes (materiality and mentality) with which he credited it. Force was regarded by Haeckel as an aspect of matter.

[*Natürliche Schöpfungsgeschichte*, 1868 (Eng. Tr. *The History of Creation*, London, 1883);
Anthropogenie, 1874 (Eng. Tr. *The Evolution of Man*, London, 1879); *Die Welträtsel*, 1899 (Eng. Tr. *The Riddle of the Universe*, London, 1902).]

W. Ostwald (b. 1853) has formulated a philosophy of "energetics," according to which ultimate reality is energy. Energy is capacity for work, or what results from work, or what is converted into work. All the properties of matter can be expressed as various forms of energy. Its mass can be expressed in terms of work and velocity. Its volume can be expressed in terms of compressibility. Its shape can be expressed in terms of elasticity. And matter is just the synthesis of such energies. Heat, light, sound, magnetism and electricity are all of them kinds of energy. All

chemical properties are forms of energy which operate in the transformation of substances. Bodies are comparatively stable collocations of various energies in approximate equilibrium. Living organisms are stationary bodies having free chemical energy to render metabolism, nutrition, and reproduction possible. " The entire mechanism of life can be compared to a water-wheel. The free energy corresponds to the water, which must flow in one direction through the wheel in order to provide it with the necessary amount of work. The chemical elements of the organisms correspond to the wheel, which constantly turns in a circle as it transfers the energy of the falling water to the individual parts of the machine." Consciousness likewise is some kind of energy. Ostwald speaks of soul-energy as well as nerve-energy. " We know that mental work is connected with an expenditure of energy and exhaustion, just as physical work is." Ostwald repudiates the charge of materialism, seeing that he rejects the ultimate reality of matter altogether. He has also protested against the common assumption that he meant to reduce life and consciousness to merely physical energy. His view is rather that while so-called physical energy must be regarded as the basis of all things, including life and consciousness, yet some sort of auxiliary concepts are required to account for the appearance of life and of consciousness. What he has in mind is the kind of concepts after which vitalism and emergent evolution are feeling their way, though he does not accept vitalism as such. With regard to his reduction of matter to energy, Ostwald claims in his favour the whole tendency of recent physics to reduce atoms to electric charges.

[*Die Überwindung des wissenschaftlichen Materialismus*, 1895 ; *Naturphilosophie*, 1902 (Eng. Tr. *Natural Philosophy*, London, 1911) ; *Die Philosophie der Werte*, 1913.]

E. Mach (1838–1916) maintained that the physical and mental sciences should apply the same scientific methods, inasmuch as the subject-matter with which they are concerned is reducible to common terms. Following out the line of argument used by Hume, Mach argued that physical and psychical phenomena can be resolved into common elements. For, by identifying physical objects with their sensible appearances, Mach thought that he abolished the alleged intrinsic differences between physical and psychical phenomena. The only difference between them, according to Mach, consists in their external relationship to other phenomena. The phenomenon of colour, for instance, is physical in relation to its luminous source ; it is psychical in relation to the experience of sensing it ; but in itself it is neither physical nor psychical. The relationship in question is what is commonly known as dependence, and is determined usually either by the method of difference or by the method of concomitant variations, the successful application of which establishes a functional relationship between various contents of experience. The main aim of science is to discover such functional relations between phenomena. Such discoveries, when crystallised in ideas and theories, serve an economic purpose, inasmuch as they summarise past experiences and anticipate future experiences. That, in fact, is the motive which prompts our search

for such ideas and theories. It is the felt need of finding our way in nature that necessitates the discovery of such concise directions for the conduct of life. The tendency of science to replace qualitative by quantitative accounts of phenomena is due to the greater simplicity and comprehensiveness (that is, economy) of quantitative summaries. Ultimate reality, according to Mach, is almost what is now commonly called " neutral stuff," and Mach's philosophy was substantially monistic. But he was explicit in his rejection of materialism. Bodies were for him only thought-symbols of complex experiences. And the extensive use of " mechanistic " modes of explanation he regarded as due to our greater familiarity with them, and to the tendency to employ analogies in order to simplify explanation. Even what is explained mechanistically must, therefore, not be regarded as though it were merely mechanical or material. His conception of the rôle of science, and of knowledge generally, was influenced by the theory of evolution and its emphasis on the need of a growing adaptation of life to environment in order to ensure survival.

[*Die Mechanik in ihrer Entwicklung*, 1883 (Eng. Tr. *The Science of Mechanics*, London and New York, 1893);
Beiträge zur Analyse der Empfindungen, 1886 (Eng. Tr. *The Analysis of Sensations*, London and New York, 1906);
Erkenntnis und Irrtum, 1905.]

V. ABSOLUTE IDEALISM IN ENGLAND, FRANCE, ITALY, AND THE UNITED STATES

T. H. Green (1836–1882) was the leader of the English idealist reaction against empiricism and evolutionism. Negatively his philosophy was prompted by his aversion for what used to be regarded as typically British philosophy. Positively it was influenced by German idealism, and is consequently described sometimes as Neo-Kantianism or Neo-Hegelianism. His hostility to empiricism (as taught by Hume and his followers) and to evolutionism (as taught by H. Spencer and others) was inspired, in the first instance, by moral considerations. He felt that when man is conceived to be a " being who is simply the result of natural forces," his character is misunderstood and his life is degraded. Such a conception, according to Green, utterly fails to account for man's sense of moral obligation, involves a denial of human personality and of the very possibility of all the higher intellectual and moral activities of man. Green accordingly set out to show the true nature of man, his real potentialities, and his relation to merely natural phenomena.

In order to understand the real nature of man it is necessary first of all to understand the nature of our consciousness, the reality of which is all that we are sure of, to begin with. Now human consciousness, according to Green, is essentially self-consciousness. In the case of man even the simplest process of sense-perception is not a mere change, but the consciousness of a change. All human experiences, in short, consist not of mere events, physical or mental, but of *recognitions* of such events. What we apprehend, therefore, is never a *bare* fact, but a *recognised* fact, a synthesis of relations in a consciousness which involves a *self* as well as

the elements of the objects apprehended, which it holds together in the unity of the act of perception. Thus knowledge always implies the work of the mind or self. This work of the mind, however, is not capricious or arbitrary. This is attested both by the common distinction between truth and error, between reality and illusion, and by the very existence of the sciences. But all this, according to Green, implies that the reality which we know is an intelligible reality, an ideal system, in short, a spiritual world. And such a world can only be explained by reference to a spiritual " principle which renders all relations possible and is itself determined by none of them," an absolute and eternal self-consciousness which apprehends as a whole what man only knows in part. This " principle," this absolute and eternal self-consciousness, is God. In some measure man partakes of the self-consciousness of God. This participation is the source of morality and religion. It is also the justification of the belief in immortality. For a self-conscious personality cannot be supposed to pass away but must partake of the nature of the eternal.

Turning to the moral life of man, Green maintains that reflection reveals to man certain capacities and corresponding responsibilities, in the exercise of which man finds his highest good. This good consists in the realisation of personal character, the realisation of the highest self. In so far as the motive which prompts one to realise one's true or highest self lies in man himself, the determination so to realise one's self is a self-determination. And such self-determination to realise his true good constitutes the freedom of man. But individual self-realisation is possible only in society. Just as there can be no society without individual persons so there can be no fully developed persons without a society in which the individual persons, while retaining each his own individuality, are also integrated so as to form a social whole, in which each develops his special aptitudes. It is only in such a society that the highest moral good can be realised.

[*Prolegomena to Ethics*, Oxford, 1883 ; *Works* in 3 vols., London, 1888.]

F. H. Bradley (1846–1924) attempted to construct an idealist philosophy free from that intellectual bias which characterised Green's idealism. Of the moderns, it was Hegel who had first identified the " real " with the rational, and Green had adopted the same view. Bradley, however, found this kind of idealism " as cold and ghostlike as the dreariest materialism." The apparent glory of the perceived world is just as much " a deception and a cheat " if it hides some " spectral woof of impalpable abstractions, or unearthly ballet of bloodless categories " (which Hegelian idealism regarded as ultimate reality) as if it hides " some colourless movement of atoms " (which materialism treated as ultimate reality). Apparently the nature of consciousness, which Green had made the starting-point of his philosophy, had not been fully appreciated by him. Bradley, accordingly, made a fresh start.

For Bradley the starting-point is " immediate experience " rather than cognitive consciousness. In immediate experience we have " an immediate feeling, a knowing and being in one." It is at first an undifferentiated unity, and non-relational, but it contains implicitly numerous distinctions

which discursive thought or judgment makes explicit. For immediate experience is felt to be inadequate, and thought is our endeavour to supplement it by introducing distinctions, abstractions, qualifications, and relations, etc. But the categories and concepts with which thought operates, though useful as working ideas for the special tasks of science, are unsatisfactory for a philosophic understanding of ultimate reality. " The Nature studied by the observer and by the poet and painter, is in all its sensible and emotional fulness a very real Nature. It is in most respects more real than the strict object of physical science." For the concepts of science are abstract and not ultimately true. Space and time, relation and quality, primary and secondary qualities, motion and change, causation and activity, self and things-in-themselves—all these notions when closely examined end in self-contradiction, and are therefore applicable only to mere " appearances," not to ultimate reality. For ultimate reality must be self-consistent and harmonious. Yet even " appearances " cannot be mere illusions, though Bradley sometimes described them as such. They must have a place in ultimate reality. How is ultimate reality, the Absolute, to be conceived ? The clue to such a conception, though a very inadequate conception, is sought by Bradley in immediate experience, at least in immediate experience at a higher remove. The Absolute is a Spirit embracing and completing all finite experiences and " appearances." And the experience of the Absolute, or the absolute experience, repeats at a higher remove, with infinitely greater wealth and perfection, the " immediate feeling," the " knowing and being in one " which characterises the " immediate experience " of human beings. " Reality is one experience," and " experience " exhausts all reality. " There is no being or fact outside of that which is commonly called psychical existence. Feeling, thought and volition (any groups under which we class psychical phenomena) are all the material of existence. And there is no other material actual or even possible." " Spirit is the unity of the manifold in which the externality of the manifold has utterly ceased." " Outside of spirit there is not, and there cannot be, any reality, and the more that anything is spiritual, so much the more is it veritably real."

Unlike Green, who believed in the *personality* of God, Bradley regarded the Absolute as supra-personal. He also rejected the attribution of " goodness " to God. And he denied the view (of Kant and Green) that personal immortality is an implication or postulate of the moral life. But, in agreement with Green, Bradley denied evolution of the Absolute. The Absolute " has no history of its own, though it contains histories without number."

[*Ethical Studies*, Oxford 1876, 2nd ed., 1927 ;
The Principles of Logic, London, 1883, 2nd ed., Oxford, 1922 ;
Appearance and Reality, London, 1893, 8th ed., 1929 ;
Essays on Truth and Reality, Oxford, 1914.]

B. Bosanquet (1848–1923) is perhaps chiefly noteworthy in the history of British Idealism for his defence of thought as a pathway to absolute reality. Bradley had made much of the alleged inconsistencies to which

thought leads by its abstractions. Bosanquet maintained that it was a misconception of the real nature of thought to identify it with the formation of abstract universals, which naturally led to an inadequate interpretation of reality. Thought at its best is systemic, not merely abstract. It helps us to construe the systematic character of reality. Its characteristic " universal " for the understanding of reality is the " concrete universal," that is, the conception of a " whole " or " system," not the merely " abstract " universal which is only concerned with what is common or general in things, instead of with their systemic interrelations in a whole or system. So conceived, thought leads, not to contradiction or illusory appearance, but to the very heart of reality. In fact it is " the self-revelation of reality." Thought and reality are correlative. " Thought . . . is always an affirmation about reality." And reality " is the whole that thought is always endeavouring to affirm." The common opposition of thought (or logic) to feeling struck Bosanquet as the silliest of all silly superficialities. " The emotional absorbing or carrying power which belongs to great ideas, great characters, great works of art, is measured by the depth and spread of their roots and sources in reality ; and this again is measured by their logical power, their power to develop and sustain coherence with the whole." In all experience the influence of " the whole," or the concrete universal, is implicit. But in logical thought, which follows the natural impulse to seek truth and reality, we have " the whole " operating explicitly as the criterion. In it " the idea of system, the spirit of the concrete universal, in other words, of individuality, is the central essence." All higher human experiences are characterised by the fact that in them comes to light the coherence of things, the " wholeness," or systemic integrity, of the universe, that is, the Absolute. In such experiences, accordingly, we feel " the heart-beat of the Absolute." And the Absolute is the final synthesis of mind and nature. Nature and mind are correlative. Nature is what is revealed to mind ; and mind is what apprehends or interprets nature. In the Absolute all finite experiences are transmuted and perfected into a complete whole. As such a Whole in which everything is adjusted in relation to the rest, the Absolute may be described as teleological or self-directing.

[*Knowledge and Reality*, London, 1885 ;
Logic, Oxford, 1888, 2nd edn. 1911 ;
Principle of Individuality and Value, London, 1912 ;
Value and Destiny of the Individual, London, 1913 ;
Implication and Linear Inference, London, 1920 ;
Meeting of Extremes in Contemporary Philosophy, London, 1921.]

Viscount Haldane (1857-1928) was essentially a follower of Hegelian or Absolute Idealism, though he did not like the term idealism. Experience is the only possible point of departure. But experience always discloses as immanent in it, and as its foundation, an ideal system wider in range and in quality than itself. This ideal system Haldane calls " Knowledge." But this " knowledge " must not be regarded as merely an object of our experience, or as an activity which merely establishes external relations of independent objects to the mind. The character of an object is never

independent of the character and activity of knowledge. For being always implies meaning of a certain kind ; to be meaningless is to be beingless. There are many different levels of knowledge varying with the extent to which abstraction is made from the wealth of detail in the facts observed ; and each level of knowledge has for its object a corresponding level of reality. Physics, Biology, and Psychology, for instance, involve diminishing degrees of abstraction, and accordingly represent different levels of knowledge and reality. But all levels of knowledge and reality have their places and mutual relations in the entire system of Knowledge. The truth is the whole, but the limitations of finite minds, and their habit of distinguishing subject from object, prevent them from grasping the whole fully. Perfect knowledge must, however, be conceived as self-complete and all-inclusive. In it the isolation of subject from object, and the antithesis of universal and particular, are overcome. Unlike human experience, all that is distinguished in it falls within it, so that it is more than merely relational ; it is an absolute system of self-knowledge. The conception of such ideal knowledge and of its immanence in human experience seems necessary for the understanding of the Universe. Knowledge interpreted in this wide sense, and with its ideal completion taken into account, is not only the foundation of reality, but is indistinguishable from it. In other words, Knowledge is not merely one kind of event among others ; it is the universe which embraces all events.

[*The Pathway to Reality*, London, 1903 ;
The Reign of Relativity, London, 1921 ;
The Philosophy of Humanism, London, 1922.]

F. Ravaisson-Mollien (1813-1900) helped to revive and develop the philosophy of spiritual activity initiated in France by Maine de Biran (1766-1824), but long neglected. According to Ravaisson, nature is essentially spirit or spiritual activity. Spiritual activity is not merely a function or attribute of reality, but reality itself—to act is to be, and to be is to act. Thought is such a spiritual activity, for volition and thought are one and the same activity. The aim of thought is the unification of experience. And knowledge is essentially like art, since knowledge is the product of the creative synthesis of thought. Knowledge of reality is impossible without the aid of spiritual categories. The biological sciences, as C. Bernard (1813-1878) had shown, had to explain the parts of organisms by reference to the whole, and could not dispense with teleological explanation. But the physical sciences are not essentially different in this respect, since inorganic or inanimate phenomena differ only in degree, not in kind, from those of life and consciousness. The inertia characteristic of inanimate objects is a kind of habit, or a degeneration of will, and only spirits are capable of forming habits. Physical nature is a by-product of God, a " dispersion " of the divine spirit. God is the supreme principle of order and harmony in the world. He created matter, with all its imperfections, in order that life may re-awaken out of it and so recover its perfection. Progress presupposes a fall.

[*Rapport sur la Philosophie en France au XIX Siècle*, 1867 (5th edn. 1904) ;
De l'Habitude, 1894.]

C. Renouvier (1815–1903) attempted a fusion of positivism and idealism on a basis of phenomenalism. Phenomena, he insisted, are the only things directly known. They are our data. Now phenomena have two aspects. They appear *to* us, and they are appearances *of* something. It is a mistake to divorce either of these two aspects from the other. That is to say, it is a mistake to treat phenomena as if they were objects independent of all experience, independent of their appearance *to* somebody—this is the realistic mistake ; and it is a mistake to treat phenomena as if they were just experiences without any objective reference, as if they were not appearances *of* something—this is the idealist's mistake. Phenomena must be regarded in their integrity, in their dual aspect. And regarded in this way they constitute reality, so that we can dispense with a thing-in-itself and with an independent subject beyond the experiences of the phenomena. This does not reduce the world to the mere play of subjective caprice, for phenomena have their laws, or uniform mutual relations, which give them order and permanence. In the first place, they all have certain ultimate laws or categories, namely, Relation, Number, Extent, Duration, Quality, Becoming, Causality, Teleology, and Personality. In the second place, they are subject to the various particular laws discovered by the several sciences. In his later writings, however, he admitted also the existence of more organic individualities than orderly aggregates of phenomena, namely, Leibnizian monads, spiritual individualities, and personalities. " When freedom makes its appearance in a given being, that being, bound by a thousand relations to other beings, acquires an incomparably more individual existence : what was only distinguished is now separated ; what was a self becomes self-subsistent, an essence, or . . . a substance . . . ; an individual, and the most individual individual that is known—the human individual, the human person."

Moreover, in order to form a comprehensive view of reality as a whole, more is needed than a knowledge of the categories and particular laws. We must assume the principle of contradiction, and we must resort to the principle of free Belief under the inspiration of our whole personality. Renouvier believed in a kind of harmony between man and the universe, in virtue of which the universe responds to the moral demands of man.

In some ways it would be better to class Renouvier's philosophy with critical idealism, or even with monadism, rather than with absolute idealism. On the whole, however, in a brief outline like this, it is better not to separate him from the other French idealists included here, namely, Ravaisson and Lachelier.

[*Essais de Critique générale*, 1854–1869, 2nd ed., 1875–1886 ;
La Nouvelle Monadologie, 1899 ;
Les Dilemmes de la Métaphysique pure, 1901
Le Personalisme, 1903.]

J. Lachelier (1832–1918) set out from the critical philosophy of Kant. According to this philosophy the world of experience, as science interprets it, derives its orderliness or organisation from the forms and categories with which the mind apprehends and interprets it. And the natural laws discovered by science owe their universal validity to the fact that

they must conform to the constitution of the mind, inasmuch as they are products of the mind. Whereas, however, Kant had assumed that the mind only applied certain forms and categories to certain sense-data, or raw materials, independent of it, Lachelier maintained that mind actually creates the whole world of experience, and that there are no independent data to which it must adapt itself. In other words, according to Lachelier, mind or thought is the only ultimate reality. The world of sense-perception, it is true, appears to everybody to be independent of perception. But this is only so because that world is the object of an intelligent consciousness, which gives it objectivity by making it an object of thought, and thereby saves it from the mere subjectivity of sense-consciousness. It is just by organising them into a system of truths that thought gives objectivity to physical and mental phenomena and saves them from subjective relativity. And the reality of thought is demonstrated by the existence of a world which only thought can explain. The existence of sensibility shows that thought is something more than pure intellect. For it is by an act of will that thought gives a sense-content to space and time. Lachelier, in fact, distinguished three levels of thought. On the first level, thought is intellectual and abstract and treats things as subject to mechanical causality. On the second level, thought has particulars for its objects, which it posits by an act of will, and externalises in space. These objects are pictorial and determined teleologically. On the third level, thought is self-conscious, and attains its freedom. Lachelier associated these three levels with science, art, and religion respectively. The three levels, or grades, were not intended by him to represent three successive stages in time, but rather as co-existing phases. " Being is not first a blind necessity, then a will which must always be restrained by that necessity, and finally a freedom which must recognise the existence of both. It is freedom through and through, in so far as it is produced by itself; it is will through and through, in so far as it is something concrete and real; it is necessity through and through, in so far as it is intelligent and gives an account of itself." Lachelier identified God with universal Thought; and Religion with the individual's sense of dependence on universal Thought.

[*Du Fondament de l'Induction*, 1871;
Psychologie et Métaphysique (in the *Rev. de Métaph. et de Morale*), 1885. Both in one volume in 1896.]

B. Croce (b. 1866) is the leading idealist philosopher of contemporary Italy. His " philosophy of the spirit " sets out from the Augustinian and Cartesian view that conscious experience is what we are most sure of; and he maintains, after the manner of the German idealists, that it is the only sort of reality that need be assumed. Spiritual reality, however, contains more than the experiences of merely finite minds. Like the absolute idealists, Croce posits also a universal consciousness or Spirit which is immanent in all finite minds and is more than the mere totality of finite minds. But whereas Hegel and his followers conceived of the dialectic of universal thought as essentially logical rather than temporal in character (though Hegel could not avoid conveying the impression that it was also a process in time), Croce definitely regards the cosmic spirit as a process in

time, and identifies reality (or philosophy, for the two are necessarily the same in such a spiritual system) with history. That is to say he regards reality as incessantly changing, always active, ever creative. Like Bergson and James he rejects the conception of a static, immutable Absolute, or "block universe" complete once for all. Cosmic activity proceeds in cycles, but is without a beginning and without an end. Within this total spiritual activity certain phases, aspects, or factors may be distinguished, though not separated. First of all its *theoretical* activity may be distinguished from its *practical* activity. And then within each of these it is possible to make two further distinctions. In the case of theoretical activity Croce distinguishes between *intuitions* and *concepts* (or thoughts or ideas). Intuition is the act of creating the materials of cognition, and is best exemplified in the creative vision of the artist. Here there is no sense material supplied to the mind from outside (as is commonly believed to be the case)—the mind just produces or creates its intuitions. Conceptual thinking operates on intuitions and traces relations between them, or traces what is universal in them. Actually the concepts are immanent in the intuitions, and the two can never be separated. Intuitions without concepts would be blind; concepts without intuitions would be empty. The concepts, however, have a certain special significance. They are common to all minds or spirits, and are the means of communion between them. They are universal, and are expressive of the universal Spirit that is immanent in all finite minds. As to the objects to which theoretical activity must always be directed, they also are the creations of that activity. In fact the process of thinking, the object of thought, and the discrimination between the activity and the object are all of them aspects of the same total experience. It is only by a process of abstraction that a world of seemingly independent objects is set up over against the world of thought. Turning next to practical activity, this is always volition, of course, since there are no physical actions in a spiritual world. Practical activity is dependent on theoretical activity, for volition depends on cognition. Croce distinguishes two kinds of practical activity, namely economic activity directed towards the useful, and moral activity directed towards the good. Economic activity is individual and egoistic; moral activity is universal and altruistic. But, like intuition and conception, economic and moral activity are not separate, but only distinguishable phases of the same whole, so that every practical action has at once an egoistic and a altruistic character.

[*Estetica*, 1902 (Eng. Tr. *Æsthetic*, London, 1909);
Logica, 1905 (Eng. Tr. *Logic*, London, 1917);
Filosofia della Pratica, 1909 (Eng. Tr. *Philosophy of the Practical*, London, 1913);
Storiografia, 1920 (Eng. Tr. *History*, London, 1921).]

G. Gentile (b. 1875) approaches philosophy from the standpoint of education, which he regards as a process of self-development culminating in philosophy as the highest form of self-consciousness. For Gentile self-consciousness is ultimate reality. Self-consciousness is the one thing we are sure of, and it is a sufficient clue to the interpretation of reality, for all

reality can be adequately conceived as self-consciousness. For Gentile this self-consciousness (or mind or spirit) is a more compact unity than it is for Croce, who attributes to it four different kinds of activity. Gentile rejects the view of such a quadruple cleavage, and insists on the complete unity of self-consciousness. The inevitable distinction between the knowing subject and the known object is no real difficulty, for in self-consciousness we find both, and it is the same mind that is at once subject and object, or knower and known, and each of these is the whole mind, not merely a fragment of it. The object of cognition is therefore always consciousness or mind, which self-consciousness generates in thinking it, so that " nothing is but thinking makes it so " in the very process of self-development. And just as the self-consciousness of a finite mind or spirit is immanent in each of its experiences, so the universal self-consciousness or spirit is immanent in each finite self-consciousness. Finite minds are therefore only moments or aspects of the universal mind which at once is and creates the universe. Although the subjective and objective phases or moments of self-experience (finite or cosmic) are not really separate, yet they are distinguishable. Art, according to Gentile, is mainly concerned with the subjective aspect, whereas religion is mainly concerned with the objective aspect. Philosophy, on the other hand, is concerned with the two together, that is, with self-consciousness or reality in its integrity. Philosophy, according to Gentile, is the complete form in which art and religion are brought together and reconciled, so that it represents the Truth, complete actuality, or the Spirit. Thus the philosopher not merely contemplates reality, but in a measure creates it.

[*L'atto del pensare come atto puro*, 1912 (Eng. Tr. *The Theory of Mind as Pure Act*, London, 1922).]

J. Royce (1855–1916) was the best known American idealist. His philosophy was in some ways like the Absolute Idealism of Bradley. Beginning with the consideration of finite ideas he pointed out that these are not mere images, but imply some mode of action, and therefore some purpose. The purpose constitutes the internal meaning of an idea. Ideas, moreover, possess an external as well as an internal meaning, the external meaning consisting in their reference to objects beyond themselves. But no object can be real independently of the knowledge related to it. And in order to be related the object and the idea must have something in common. From this Royce concludes that the reality of these objects of reference consists in their fulfilment of the inner meanings of the corresponding ideas. The reality of an object is thus conceived as the realisation in experience of the purpose involved in the internal meaning of an idea. Whether this purpose is or is not fulfilled can only be judged by the idea itself, which is thus construed as having a purpose and will of its own. In this way thought came to be conceived by Royce as a conscious life in which ideas embody their purposes in objects. " To be " means, in the last resort, to express " the complete internal meaning of an absolute system of ideas," because reality in its fulness must fulfil all ideas. And so finite ideas must be assumed to be absorbed in one complete system of ideas and one all comprehensive purpose which finds its satisfaction in the total realm of

existence. This Absolute Experience, of course, embraces also much that is beyond finite experience. Royce, however, did not conceive of human individuals as merely engulfed in the Absolute, but as conserved in some way. Each individual expresses in his own way something of the absolute or divine will, and so constitutes a unique part of the unique Whole. Even time, according to Royce, is not merely superseded, in the Absolute, by an eternity that is utterly different from it. He would say rather that eternity is the Absolute's simultaneous apprehension of all time, somewhat in the same way as a melody is the simultaneous apprehension of a certain sequence of notes.

The moral philosophy of Royce is noteworthy for the novel character of its ultimate principle, namely, " loyalty to loyalty." By " loyalty " he meant a person's devotion to a cause greater than himself. When a person, who is loyal to one cause, also respects other people's loyalties to other causes, and co-operates with the spirit of loyalty wherever he finds it, then he practises loyalty not only to his cause but also to loyalty generally. This is " loyalty to loyalty," the gradual extension of which Royce hoped would eventually bring to birth " the Great Community," and bring to an end all international discord.

[*The World and the Individual*, New York, 1900, 1901 ;
The Philosophy of Loyalty, New York, 1908 ;
The Problem of Christianity, New York, 1913 ;
Lectures on Modern Idealism, New York, 1919.]

W. E. Hocking (b. 1873) is still elaborating a philosophy which he describes as " mystical realism," but which admittedly also contains some elements derived from idealism, naturalism, and pragmatism. Perhaps it is idealist first and foremost. This seems to be implied in Hocking's assertion that " idealism is not so much a separate type of philosophy as the essence of all philosophy." One of the most interesting features of Hocking's philosophy is the view that sense experience is a common link between many selves, and that thereby we get to know directly not only other human selves but even God. " I have sometimes sat looking at a comrade, speculating on this mysterious isolation of self from self. Why are we so made that I gaze and see of thee only thy wall and never thee ? This wall of thee is but a moveable part of the wall of my world ; and I also am a wall to thee. We look at one another from behind masks. How would it seem if my mind could but once be within thine, and we could meet and without barrier be with each other ? And then it has fallen on me with a shock—as when one thinking himself alone has felt a presence —that I *am* in thy soul. These things around me are in thy experience. They are thy own ; when I touch them and move them I change *thee*. When I look on them, I see what thou seest, and I experience thy very experience. For *where art thou ?* Not there, behind those eyes, within that head, in darkness fraternising with chemical processes. Of these, in my own case, I know nothing and will know nothing ; for my existence is spent not behind my wall, but in front of it. . . . And there art thou also. This world in which I live is the world of my soul ; and being within that, I am within thee. I can imagine no contact more real and thrilling

than this ; that we should meet and share identity, not through ineffable inner depths (alone), but here through the foregrounds of common experience, and that thou shouldst be—not behind that mask—but *here* pressing with all thy consciousness upon me, *containing* me, and these things of mine. This is reality, and having seen it thus, I can never again be frightened into monadism by reflections which have strayed from this guiding insight." Hocking identifies the primary object of knowledge with sense experience itself, and objectivity with social agreement. Man's recognition of the objectivity of Nature therefore presupposes the simultaneous recognition that at least one other self or mind has a like knowledge of the same content. In the last resort, however, there must be a mind other than human to give objectivity to Nature. For the human self is itself dependent upon Nature, so Nature cannot be dependent on it. The " Other Mind," in the last resort, must therefore be God, the universal Knower, who gives objectivity to all knowledge, even to our knowledge of our fellow men. Hocking, in fact, regards the whole world as a self. " This word self indicates chiefly that the mental life within the world has its unity, and that all the meanings of things cohere in a single will." The ultimate evidence for the selfhood of the whole world is to be found in immediate experience. " We, as a group of human selves, know that we are not alone in the universe : that is our first and persistent intuition." But the self of the universe is infinite in its depth and mystery. And human life is a reaching out to the reality of things as a region in which the discovery of value need never end. The human self spans past and future, lives on values, and is free, determining out of a matrix of many possibilities which one shall become fact. But the human self is not all these things from the beginning—its freedom and its immortality must be won. In these respects man is the creator of his own destiny.

[*The Meaning of God in Human Experience*, New York, 1912 ;
Human Nature and its Remaking, New York, 1918 ;
The Self, its Body, and Freedom, New York, 1928 ;
Types of Philosophy, New York, 1929.]

VI. MONADISM OR SPIRITUAL PLURALISM IN ENGLAND AND RUSSIA

The Earl of Balfour (1848–1930) was apparently a defender of philosophic scepticism. But his defence of philosophic scepticism was intended to be a defence of religious faith, or at least of a spiritual point of view. His early years had been spent in the atmosphere of the conflict between science and religion which followed Darwinism. Balfour was impressed by the general assumption that the teachings of science were beyond question. It appeared to him that the credentials of science (as expounded in Mill's *Logic*) were no better than those of religion. And his sceptical attack on the foundations of science was planned in defence of the foundations of faith. He contended that the two main " creeds " (religion and science) by which human life is guided should be regarded as resting on separate bases, and that discrepancies between the two must not be regarded as more unfavourable to religion than to science. In his

later work he was not content with this divorce between science and religion, their mere agreement to differ, but tried to bring them into the closest possible harmony. He held that science itself can only be saved from corroding scepticism if we assume the existence of God as the source of all knowledge. Contrasting his own with Descartes' escape from doubt, Balfour said : " Descartes rests the belief in science on a belief in God. I rest the belief in God on a belief in science." He was not really sceptical about science. He admittedly accepted common-sense beliefs and science as true, or at least as on the way to truth. But he insisted that the only way to justify such a conviction was to place it in a theistic setting. His main reasons were as follows. Science is avowedly based on perception, yet concludes in the end that the things perceived are really very different from what they appear to be in perception. All the wealth and variety of the world of perception are reduced by science to systems of imperceptible electrons and protons. Its conclusions seem to contradict its perceptual data. Again, according to the theory of evolution human capacities have been evolved as instruments of survival. They may not be capable at all of dealing with merely theoretical problems, which have no survival value. Yet our common-sense beliefs seem inevitable, and even scientists and sceptics perceive things in the same way as others do, and make the same kind of assumptions about their causal connections, etc. The only ground for believing in the accuracy of these perceptions and assumptions, according to Balfour, is the supposition that all knowledge draws its inspiration from God, who guides human reason to its highest results, which exceed the bare needs of survival, but are necessary to the ascent of man.

Turning next to the realm of morals, Balfour rejected the view that the highest loyalties, the most devoted love, the noblest self-sacrifice, could be regarded as the waste product of the process of adapting human organisms to their environment. Natural Selection, he insisted, " must be treated as the instrument of purpose, not simply as its mimic. . . . Ethics must have its roots in the divine, and in the divine it must find its consummation." Similarly with æsthetic values. " When we look back on those too rare moments when feelings stirred in us by some beautiful object not only seem wholly to absorb us, but to raise us to the vision of things far above the ken of bodily sense or discursive reason . . . we must believe that somewhere and for some Being there shines an unchanging splendour of beauty, of which in Nature and in Art we see, each of us from our own standpoint, only passing gleams and stray reflections."

Thus the three lines of argument converge to show, according to Balfour, that all that is best in human nature, whether associated with knowledge, goodness, or beauty, needs God for its support if it is to preserve its full value. And God is on the side of Truth, Beauty, and Goodness. He guides cosmic evolution, and from Him flows the inspiration which helps the growth of knowledge, æsthetic joy, and love.

[*A Defence of Philosophic Doubt*, London, 1879, 2nd ed., 1920 ;
The Foundation of Belief, London, 1895, 8th ed., 1901 ;
Theism and Humanism, London, 1915 ;
Theism and Thought, London, 1923.]

J. Ward (1843–1925) agreed with earlier and contemporary idealists in maintaining that actual experience does not involve a dualism of matter and mind, but a duality of subject and object, and that this duality-in-unity is consistent with a spiritual monism in which the unity of nature is conceived to be the counterpart of the unity of experience. But, unlike other idealists, Ward declined to make the Absolute his starting-point, preferring to begin with the plurality of reals, and proceeding to find out how far such a more empirical and less speculative start may lead him. He begins, accordingly, by assuming the existence of an indefinite variety of psychical beings of all grades, some much higher than human minds, others much lower, but all tending to self-conservation and self-realisation. This conception of all entities as psychical, indeed conative, individuals Ward based on the principle of continuity—the absence of leaps in nature. Now such mental, striving entities, or monads, must be endowed with spontaneity. They cannot be regarded as subject from the the first to merely mechanical laws. The prevalence of natural laws and the appearance of mechanism in nature are best explained as the transformation of spontaneous activity into regular habits, which may easily appear to be even more regular or uniform than they really are, if we apply to them statistical methods. Moreover, the co-operation and organisation of monads leads to progress by a kind of creative synthesis, just as a melody comes into being when single notes follow in a certain sequence, or a certain level of culture is attained when society is organised on certain harmonious lines. As the final goal of such progress one may think of " the eventual consummation of a perfect commonwealth, wherein all co-operate and none conflict, wherein the many have become one, one realm of ends." In this way Ward believed that without any extravagant speculation he had succeeded in construing the world as a plurality of psychical beings, or monads, primarily independent as regards their existence, and yet always mutually acting and reacting upon each other, " an ontological plurality that is yet somehow a cosmological unity." He felt, however, that all this seemed to suggest " some ground beyond itself." And he fell back upon theism to supplement his spiritual pluralism. While rejecting the ordinary ideas about creation he held that God in some sense sustains the world by a continuous act of self-limitation. Ward realised, however, that the theistic part of his philosophy was more speculative than the rest. Like Kant he treated it as a matter of faith, and based the belief in God and in immortality on moral grounds.

[*Naturalism and Agnosticism*, London, 1899, 4th ed., 1915;
The Realm of Ends, Cambridge, 1911, 3rd ed., 1920;
Psychological Principles, Cambridge, 1918, 2nd ed., 1920;
A Study of Kant, Cambridge, 1922.]

W. R. Sorley (b. 1855) has devoted himself mainly to the ethical aspects of philosophy. Value experiences, he insists, are as much data of experience as are sense-perceptions, and must be taken into account in any philosophical view of reality as a whole. The experience of value is subjective, as is all experience. But experience also refers always to an object other than the experience itself. This applies to value-experience

as well as to cognition. The fact that value-experience implies feeling and desire makes no radical difference. It may have reference to feelings or desires of persons who are as objective to the subject of the value-experience as physical things are to the subject of sense-experience. Values are objective although, or just because, they are characteristics of the personal life. For persons belong to the order of reality. And they are the bearers of value, for values are manifested in their characters and lives. The goodness of the good man is as objective as the man himself. If it is objected that human life is more often a mere striving after values rather than a realisation of them, even so, it may be pointed out, the moral principles which induce people to pursue ideals, even unattainable ideals, are as objective as are natural laws, though they differ in the objective orders to which they apply and in their modes of application. Natural laws apply to phenomena in space and time, and their validity consists in their reality. Values apply to personal life, and their validity consists in expressing an ideal which people feel they ought to realise. Natural laws constitute the causal order of the existing world; values constitute its moral order. And a theory of reality must recognise and harmonise both orders. Sorley's solution of the problem is briefly as follows. The universe consists of a Supreme Mind, or God, to whom finite minds and their environment owe their reality. God is the creator, the essence and source of all values, but is willing that these values should be shared by the free minds who owe their being to Him.

[*The Ethics of Naturalism*, London, 1885, 2nd ed., 1904;
Moral Values and the Idea of God, Cambridge, 1918, 2nd ed., 1921.]

A. E. Taylor (b. 1869) is essentially a moral and religious philosopher. He maintains that philosophy " has to be content to recognise that in the sciences, in history, in morality and religion, it is dealing with a reality which is in the end simply ' given,' and not to be explained away." In fact he is more than suspicious of any system of philosophy that leaves no unexplained mystery at the root of things. His own philosophy mainly seeks to harmonise the exigencies of scientific thought with the moral and religious demands of life. Morality postulates freedom on the part of the agent and real contingency in nature. This, however, is not in conflict with science. For science itself recognises a principle of indetermination. The natural order is not necessarily the only one. Taylor insists that there is no reason to suppose that religious experience is concerned with anything less real than is any other part of human experience, and that the reality of religious experience is evidence of the reality of its object. "It is only because the absolutely Good and utterly Adorable has not left Himself without a witness in our hearts that we feel the need of an object of worship and are driven from the worship of trees or streams, or animals or mighty men or anthropomorphic deities, towards an object in which our adoration can at last find rest because that on which it is directed is adequate to sustain it." Taylor's view, accordingly, is frankly theistic. The ultimate ground of things, he holds, is a single supreme reality which is the source of everything other than itself, and has the characteristic of being intrinsically complete or perfect, and

an adequate object of adoration or worship. This supreme reality is best conceived after the analogy of the human spirit at its very best. Thy reality of moral progress, according to Taylor, postulates also the reality of time, of causal agency, of free-will, and of permanent personality. The moral life is a life of tension between the temporal and the eternal, and is only possible to a being which is neither abiding nor simply mutable, but both at once. It is a life of real adventure which begins with " nature " and ends in " supernature." The attainment of a fully unified personality depends on our finding our principal good in God, the concrete unity of all good in its source. The implication of morality is thus a double one. It points to the existence of God as the absolute and final plenitude of good, and to an eternal destiny for the moral person whose aim is the fruition of the good. Taylor's religious philosophy culminates in the theology from which, no doubt, he started. Its three main dogmas concerning God are these. (1) God is the Creator, Redeemer, and Sanctifier. (2) He is the lover of men. (3) The life of God is essentially an activity of self-communication (which is the meaning of the orthodox doctrine of the Trinity). Taylor also ventures to forecast the nature of man's life " in Heaven " after his present life of " probation." The process of character-forming will be over, but the activity issuing from character will remain.

[*The Problem of Conduct*, London, 1901 ;
Elements of Metaphysics, London, 1903, etc. ;
The Faith of a Moralist, London, 1930.]

N. O. Lossky (b. 1870), the Russian philosopher, advocates an intuitionist epistemology and a spiritualist ontology. All knowledge is based on immediate intuition. Objects are apprehended directly, without the intervention of mediating representations, but they are trans-subjective, that is, transcendent in relation to the consciousness which apprehends them in intuition. Intuition, however, is not yet knowledge. For although objects enter consciousness in all their fullness and with all their relations to one another and to the rest of the world, yet the subject must exercise his powers of discrimination and integration in order to construe all these things correctly. Then only is there knowledge. But the mind does not create or construct these objects or their interrelations ; it only construes them. Knowledge only reflects, so to say, the objective facts and their systematic interrelations in the cosmos. This relationship between the subject and the intuited objects is not the outcome of any causal operation of the objects on the subject but is due to an " epistemological co-ordination," perhaps a kind of pre-established harmony or mutual adaptation, between conscious subjects and the objects of which they become conscious. Lossky favours the conception of matter (or atoms) as events or processes of attraction and repulsion. But he regards these processes as manifestations of forces exercised by substances which are all spiritual though only some of them are fully conscious. Physical processes are, therefore, never entirely mechanistic, but always psycho-physical, and consequently purposive, though not always consciously so. Lossky follows Aristotle and Driesch in assuming the operations of an " entelechy " to account for the peculiarities of organic life and behaviour. But he

conceives the principle of life not as a force but as a substance exercising the creative activity of a being that is the source of its laws and not their slave. The universe is conceived by Lossky after this analogy. The world, he says, is an organic whole. By an organic whole he means a whole which is prior to its parts, so that the parts can only come into being and continue to exist within the whole. And " the unity of the intelligible world is not a functional unity of abstract ideas but a community of beings that live an infinite life." But such an organic whole cannot be self-existent. It must be grounded on some higher principle. So the unity of the cosmos compels Lossky to recognise " a super-cosmic principle, the Absolute, as the source of a plurality of substances which form a unity more intimate than the abstract unity of the world, and nevertheless remain free in their activity." In this way Lossky finds a philosophical basis for theism, or for Christian theology, in his " Organic Concrete Ideal-Realism," as he calls his philosophy, which seems to oscillate between spiritual pluralism and absolute idealism.

[*Handbuch der Logik*, 1927;
The World as an Organic Whole, London, 1928;
L'intuition, la matière et la vie, 1928.]

VII. NEO-TRANSCENDENTALISM (NEO-KANTIANISM AND PHENOMENOLOGY) IN GERMANY

O. Liebmann (1840–1912) was mainly responsible for the German philosophic movement which took for its motto the refrain " Back to Kant," and is consequently known as Neo-Kantian philosophy. He tried to show that the philosophical systems of Fichte, Schelling, Hegel, Herbart, Schopenhauer, etc., although they all claimed to be the successors of Kant, really misrepresented his views. For they all made the " thing-in-itself " (or Absolute, etc.) the central idea of their philosophies, whereas it played no such rôle in the philosophy of Kant, who regarded all knowledge as restricted to the realm of relationships, and as incapable of reaching the thing-in-itself (or Absolute). Liebmann applied the same kind of criticism to the empiricist or positivist tendencies in philosophy. The *data* of experience, which positivism treats as ultimate facts, are not purely objective entities, for they have already been affected by the general forms of thought. Pure " matter " of sensation, any kind of entity or reality untouched by the forms of cognition, is just as inaccessible to us as is the thing-in-itself. Nor is there such a thing as " pure experience," in Mill's sense, for all experience or empirical cognition is already determined by certain logical principles by means of which we try to understand natural phenomena. Liebmann enumerated four such principles, namely, those of real identity, of continuity of existence, of conformity to law, and of the continuity of events—these four principles between them constituting the " logic of matters of fact," which must be used in all scientific investigations, though not dogmatically but only regulatively.

[*Kant und die Epigonen*, 1865;
Zur Analysis der Wirklichkeit, 1879.]

H. Cohen (1842–1918) was the chief of the Neo-Kantian philosophers. He was the first to give a full and critical interpretation of the philosophy of Kant, treating the transcendental method as its central feature. Cohen insisted that a philosophical theory of knowledge must set out from the exact or mathematical sciences. Kant himself actually had Newtonian science always in mind, and, when attempting to put philosophy on the safe path of science, he measured the scientific character of an investigation by the amount of mathematics which it contained. Cohen maintained that philosophy should ascertain the possibility, and the conditions of the possibility, of all the ideas and principles which the exact or mathematical sciences of nature treat as their stock realities. Accordingly he paid special attention to the fundamental concepts of mathematics and mathematical physics, studying more particularly the history of the method of infinitesimals. He endeavoured to show that the ideal of the infinitely small, as used by Newton and Leibniz, is really the fundamental intellectual instrument of the scientific study of reality. Cohen insists that reality is never merely " given," whether in sense-perception or in intuition. It is always produced, in various ways, by means of thought. And it is the function of logic to trace these various ways in which thought produces the objects. Kant's great merit, according to Cohen, was that he initiated such a " logic of origin," in place of the previous logic of ready-made objects and forms. And Cohen set himself the task of developing this kind of " logic of origin," so as to show how thought produces the real objects of mathematics and mathematical physics. In a way, then, it may be said that Cohen attempted to drop the teaching of Kant's transcendental *æsthetics* and to begin at once with the transcendental *logic* dispensing with the assumption of given sense material, and so identifying reality with thought. His system is, accordingly, described as " logical idealism."

[*Kants Theorie der Erfahrung*, 1871 ;
Kants Begründung der Ethik, 1877 ;
Kants Begründung der Aesthetik, 1899 ;
Logik der reinen Erkenntnis, 1902 ;
Ethik des reinen Willens, 1904 ;
Aesthetik des reinen Gefühls, 1912.]

W. Windelband (1848–1915) attempted to save philosophy from the one-sided tendency to pay undue attention to the natural sciences to the neglect of the historical studies, which are concerned with the various phases of human culture. This tendency had been encouraged to some extent by Kant, who had based his theory of knowledge on mathematics and mathematical physics. In his day these were the most scientific studies. History was classed with *belles lettres*, and left to the care of literary artists. But things have changed since then. History also is now studied in an objective or scientific spirit. It also is an empirical study. And its very difference from science may make it more helpful in the study of the problems of philosophy. Science is " nomothetic," that is to say, it is mainly concerned with the discovery of laws or regularities, and for this reason is general and abstract, is concerned with classes or types,

not with individuals as such, but only as specimens of the types. History, on the other hand, is " idiographic," that is to say, it is concerned with individuals and individual events in all their particularity. And for the understanding of our ultimate problems a knowledge of the individual and temporal (History) is more important than is the knowledge of the general and timeless (Science). It is sometimes urged that the historian needs the aid of psychology, and psychology is a natural science. But the psychology that is of value to the historian is not the scientific psychology of abstract generalities, but that concrete, intuitive understanding of men, and insight into character, which is an art rather than a science, and cannot be learned or taught. In relation to human interests and appreciations of value, the unique or the individual is far more significant than what is typical or general, for feeling is blunted by repetition. History, moreover, is concerned not only with the temporal and mutable, but also with the eternal. For although history is primarily concerned with the successive stages in the development of human culture, yet the cultural values with which it deals constitute between them a kingdom of eternal values, for their claims to universal validity imply the existence of a " consciousness in general." The eternal values (logical, ethical, and æsthetic) realise themselves in history, namely, when men become conscious of them as " norms," or guiding principles, of conduct. To follow these norms, or ideals, involves no breach with the natural laws of the mind. For these norms themselves, as soon as we realise their validity and value, exercise a psychical force upon us. The same is true of our sense of responsibility. In this way education, including self-education, is possible not in spite of natural laws, but through their mediation. Turning next to the questions of immortality and God, Windelband challenges the morality of Kant's moral argument. Is it moral, he asks, to feel the need of a reward for virtue? Man may, of course, do his utmost towards the realisation of the good, and so gain a kind of immortality through his participation in the eternal values ; but that is not what people commonly understand by immortality. This kind of individual immortality, however, is not rendered probable by the modern tendency to regard the soul as a function rather than as a substance. And the general acceptance of the theory of psycho-physical parallelism leaves no ground for the view that the soul can outlive the body. Windelband also finds it very difficult to reconcile the existence of God with the existence of evil. The world of reality and the world of eternal values appear to him as an irreconcilable duality. They are not entirely divorced, for the one always points to the other. Yet the world of reality seems to contain much that is either hostile or indifferent to values. And this duality is unfavourable to a belief in the existence of God, though one might identify the Godhead with the World of Eternal Values. Windelband, however, admits that this dualism is an incitement to human endeavour. If the real were valuable, and the valuable real, man would have nothing to strive after.

[*Präludien*, 1884, etc. ;
Geschichte und Naturwissenschaft, 1894, etc. ;
Einleitung in die Philosophie, 1914 (Eng. Tr. *Introduction to Philosophy*, London, 1921).]

R. Eucken (1846–1926) was an impressive apostle of the life of the spirit, in support of which he elaborated a more or less theistic or Christian metaphysic, though he rejected some of the most characteristic dogmas of Christianity. The highest reality, according to Eucken, is a Spiritual Life, or Living Spirit, which is above Nature and yet pervades it in such a way that Nature can be a stepping-stone to it. This supernatural Spiritual Life is not something finished once for all but a living movement towards ever greater and deeper spirituality. By some kind of mystical intuition man may get to know this Spiritual Life. He can also participate in its progress. All inspiration in science, art, religion, etc., is at once the outcome and evidence of such human participation in the Life of the Spirit. For Truth, for instance, is not the creation of man. It exists in the Realm of the Spiritual, where man only discovers it. Only such a spiritual source of Truth can account for our faith in the power of Truth and our devotion to the pursuit thereof. Truth, indeed, is the measure of man, not man the measure of Truth. In the Life of the Spirit Truth has a reality and a value independently of man. Other evidence of the reality of the Realm of the Spiritual may be found in the fact that in times of tribulation most people seek refuge in this Spiritual Realm or Kingdom of Heaven. But real participation in it requires more than mere contemplation ; it requires active moral endeavour, for the Spirit is essentially moral and the embodiment of all values. Nature, indeed, is not to be underrated. For it embodies much intelligence, as is evident from the laws and interconnections of natural phenomena, and from the natural evolution of increasingly higher orders of natural beings. Indeed, the human mind itself is a product of Nature. Nevertheless, Nature stops short of Spirit, and is at best only a preliminary stage on the way to the Spiritual Life. For the Spiritual Life is not the product of Nature, but its ultimate foundation and goal. Hence although Eucken has every respect for science and its achievements, he maintains that it is history, the life-stories of great personalities, rather than science that brings us into closest contact with the Realm of the Spirit. He also insists that the intellectual methods of science, the methods of discursive reason, though they are suitable for the acquisition of knowledge of natural phenomena, are not adequate to the knowledge of the Spiritual Realm. For this purpose another method is required, namely, the " noological " method, as Eucken called it. By this he meant some kind of mystical, intuitive penetration on the part of our whole personality (as distinguished from our mere intellect) into the Life of the Spirit, which thereby takes possession of our consciousness. Eucken sometimes spoke of this Spirit or Spiritual Life in pantheistic terms, but for the most part he identified it with a personal God, in the sense of theism. On such a philosophic and religious platform Eucken took his stand and endeavoured to rouse his generation, to make them see the superficiality of the materialistic culture of the age, and to persuade them to strive after a deeper and more spiritual life. Human existence, he urged, is empty, and devoid of all significance, unless religion raises it to the other-worldly heights of the Life of the Spirit.

[*Die Einheit des Geisteslebens*, 1888 ;
Die Lebensanschauungen der grossen Denker, 1890 (Eng. Tr. *The Problem of Human Life*, London, 1909) ;

Der Wahrheitsgehalt der Religion, 1901 (Eng. Tr. *The Truth of Religion*, London, 1901);
Grundlinien einer neuen Lebensanschauung, 1907 (Eng. Tr. *Life's Basis and Life's Ideal*, London, 1912).]

E. Husserl (b. 1859) is the leader of the philosopical movement known by the name of Phenomenology (not to be confused with Phenomenalism). Phenomenology is primarily an epistemological method, which may be traced back to various other philosophers of the nineteenth century, and more especially to F. Brentano (1838–1917) and A. Meinong (b. 1853). Brentano, in his *Empirical Psychology* (1874), drew attention to the "referential" (or, in Scholastic terminology, the "intentional") character of mental processes. They all refer to an object, real or imaginary. Whether we perceive, or imagine, or judge, or desire, or love, or hate—there is always "something" that we perceive, or imagine, or judge, etc. This fact served as the basis of Meinong's study of "objects as such." (*Gegenstandstheorie*), with a view to determining the *a priori* characters of various objects independently of the psychical experiences whose objects they are, and independently even of their own existence. The Phenomenology of Husserl is largely a development of this kind of epistemological method, though he eventually associated with it also an idealistic ontology. To begin with, Husserl emphasises the fact that consciousness or experience, or cognition in particular, has two poles—a subject-pole and an object-pole (or a *noetic* and a *noematic* aspect). In other words, there is always a subjective activity, a correlated object on which it is directed, and some kind of nexus between them. There are many different kinds of activities in consciousness (perception, thought, appreciation, etc.) and many kinds of correlated objects (existents, universals, values, etc.). And the application of the phenomenological method consists in living through each of these activities in turn, and introspectively observing the whole structure of the activity and its object and the nexus between them (the subject and object "bracketed together," so to say). This procedure is different from the ordinary consciousness with its almost complete absorption in the object; and it is different from the usual psychological introspection with its concentration on the subjective. The phenomenological method started as a purely descriptive method proceeding by way of thoroughgoing analysis, and without making any presuppositions. It was intended, in fact, to carry out the main task of the Critical Philosophy in much more thorough fashion than Kant had done. Husserl meant his method to be transcendental and radical. At the first blush the tendency of his method appears to be realistic. Husserl, for instance, maintains that physical objects (unlike mental experiences as such, or also universals) can only be apprehended in part or in perspective, so that apparently they are always objectively more than what they are in empirical consciousness. But the tendency soon appeared to be definitely idealistic; and it looks as though his idealistic ontology had influenced Husserl's phenomenological method from the very beginning. The points of more general interest may be briefly indicated as follows. The mind's objects and the activities by which it apprehends them are not ultimately different in kind, only in degree. The acts of the mind may themselves become its objects, and the mind is

just as active when it has itself and its activities for its objects. What the mind gets to know of its objects is only their " whatness," not their " thatness," that is their universal characters, their " essences," not their peculiarities as particular existents. The phenomenological method is a method of " intuiting essences " (*Wesensschau*). In the last resort, moreover, the " essences " which the mind comes to know are really the forms of its own *a priori* activity. Husserl seems to assume that all " being " is " being in consciousness." The objectivity of objects is due to the fact that over and above the empirical ego there is a transcendental ego, in relation to which the empirical ego is only one object among many. And it is the transcendental ego that constructs all objects and their essences according to its own *a priori* forms. Lastly, all the transcendental egos jointly constitute one supreme transcendental Being or Spirit, rather like the Absolute of Hegel.

[*Logische Untersuchungen*, 1901, etc.;
Ideen zu einer reinen Phänomenologie, 1913, etc. (Eng. Tr. *Ideas*, London, 1931);
Formale und transzendentale Logik, 1929.]

VIII. BIOTISM, VITALISM, PRAGMATISM, INSTRUMENTALISM, AND FICTIONISM IN FRANCE, GERMANY, AND THE UNITED STATES

H. Bergson (b. 1859) marks the climax of the reaction of French Philosophy against scientific mechanism. His philosophy is mainly directed to the vindication of the spiritual character of the universe as a whole, without denying altogether the reality of matter and of natural law. The key concepts of his system are those of change, activity, freedom, creative evolution, duration, and intuition; and his philosophy is commonly described, accordingly, as the " philosophy of change " or of " creative evolution."

Ultimate reality, according to Bergson, is neither material nor mental, but something less determinate from which both mind and matter derive. It is " change," a flow of events, a surging of *life*, moving incessantly to new forms. It is not static, though he also calls it " duration " or real time. But this must not be conceived abstractly as a mere sequence of instants. " Duration [says Bergson] is the continuous progress of the past which gnaws into the future and which swells as it advances." This is best seen in the case of human life. Our whole past follows us at every instant. " All that we have felt, thought, and willed from our earliest infancy is there, leaning over our present, which is about to join it. . . . What are we, in fact, what is our *character*, if not the condensation of the history that we have lived from our birth—nay, even before our birth, since we bring with us parental dispositions? Doubtless we think with only a small part of our past, but it is with our entire past . . . that we desire, will, and act." Such is duration or real time. In it the whole past

is telescoped in the present. Moreover, it involves not only real and incessant change, but a certain freshness or novelty in every new change, since each successive change in a sequence has a richer past permeating it. The sequence of changes is, therefore, a creative evolution. Spirituality is just this kind of memory, this kind of concentrated activity in which the past interpenetrates the present. But sometimes there is a relaxation of this activity, and the result is matter. Broadly speaking it may be said that consciousness is interpenetration without externality, whereas matter is externality without interpenetration.

Now the evolution of life has followed three different and independent directions—the vegetative, the instinctive, and the intelligent (or rational). Instinct is the faculty of using organic instruments; it is a kind of unconscious practical skill. Intelligence is the faculty of making and using inorganic instruments, and develops into conscious thought about relations between things. Intelligence (owing to its original function of making inorganic tools) tends to regard all reality as though it were inert matter. Hence the scientific tendency towards mechanistic explanations. This tendency must be corrected by means of intuition, which is instinct become self-conscious and capable of reflecting upon its objects. But intuition and intelligence must co-operate if we are to avoid mechanism, at one extreme, and mysticism, at the other.

For Bergson, consciousness or spirituality is exemplified by memory, not by perception. Perception is only incipient or nascent action, not consciousness at all. The contrary view is based on the frequent mingling of memory with perception. This only shows that spirit can rest on matter, yet they remain distinct. Similarly, however intimately consciousness may be connected with the body, or with the brain, they are nevertheless distinct. Consciousness is not a mere function or epiphenomenon of the brain, but rather uses the brain as an instrument. " There is a close connection between a coat and the nail on which it hangs, for if the nail is pulled out the coat falls to the ground. Shall we say, then, that the shape of the nail determines the shape of the coat, or in any way corresponds to it? " No more is one entitled to say that psychical facts are determined by the cerebral facts with which they are associated. And mind is essentially free or creative, not mechanical, in its activity. Even if it is admitted that our past influences our present, our freedom is not affected thereby. For freedom is essentially self-expression, self-determination, and our conduct is free just when it expresses what we are.

The functions which Bergson attributes to matter are not entirely evil. It is the principle of individuation, it divides the sea of life into separate individualities who can each develop distinctive personalities. Moreover, the very obstacles which matter presents serve as an incentive to the intensification of activity, which is life. " By the resistance matter offers, and by the docility with which we endow it, it is at one and the same time obstacle, instrument, and stimulus." Life, however, always retains a certain corporate, social, or integral character, which prevents its dissipation in sheer, incoherent individualism. Life finds full satisfaction only in society. The best and most live man is " the man whose action, itself intense, is also capable of intensifying the action of other men, and, itself generous, can kindle fires on the hearths of generosity." In the last

resort, moreover, " all the living hold together." The central radiation of life is God. And God is " unceasing life, action, freedom."

[*Essai sur les Données immédiates de la Conscience*, 1889 (English Tr. *Time and Free Will*, London, 1910);
Matière et Mémoire, 1896 (Eng. Tr. London, 1911);
L'Evolution créatrice, 1907 (Eng. Tr. London, 1911);
L'Energie spirituelle, 1920 (Eng. Tr. *Mind-Energy*, London, 1920).]

H. Driesch (b. 1867) is the leader of contemporary Vitalism or Neo-Vitalism, the chief tenet of which is that the phenomena of life cannot be adequately explained in terms of physico-chemical processes. Driesch advocates a " dynamic teleology " in opposition to the mechanistic theory of life, according to which all vital phenomena are determined solely by physico-chemical factors. Driesch adduces the following evidence against biological mechanism. (*a*) A complete organism can be developed from an incomplete egg. Any one cell of a two-, four-, or eight-celled blastula (segmented ovum) can produce a complete embryo; and one cell of the four-celled blastula produces a different organ according as one or more of the remaining cells have been removed. Hence some special vital factor must be operative, over and above the physico-chemical factors. (*b*) Similarly, in the case of the blastula of the echinoderm (the sea-urchin, etc.) which is normally formed by the division of the egg, any one cell, or group of cells, can function instead of the whole egg. This is beyond mere mechanism. (*c*) If part of the brain of a living animal is removed, then after some time its functions are carried out by another part of the brain. (*d*) In the case of human behaviour experiences are accumulated and stored in the form of ideas. Now there are certain mechanisms which in a sense accumulate experiences. A phonograph, for instance, does so. But this kind of mechanistic storing is totally different from that through ideas, which can, moreover, be used for the construction of other, new ideas.

Vital reactions, then, according to Driesch, are not to be explained mechanistically. They are more like intelligent replies to a question, or the mutually responsive parts of a conversation. What determines the vital reaction is the complete animal or some vital unit which functions for the whole animal. In this connection Driesch re-introduces the Aristotelian idea of an *entelechy*. An entelechy is, so to say, a plan pervading a living organism, and its power is revealed in the development of the organism, and in all its biological reactions. If, for instance, a triton loses a foot, the entelechy responds by forming a new one very like the lost one. And so in all cases where special re-adjustments are called for, as in the examples mentioned above.

Driesch has applied the idea of entelechy also to the study of psychology. He treats psychology in a kind of behaviouristic manner as concerned with the study of organisms in action. Animal behaviour (including human behaviour) is very like animal development. Both are directed to a certain purpose or end. And just as the development of an animal is directed by an entelechy, so its behaviour is directed by an analogous *psychoid*, or an inborn intelligent urge to action. This urge finds expression

in the first movements of new-born animals. It is prior to all experience. In course of time the animal accumulates experiences and acquires knowledge by which its activities are then regulated. In this way " secondary purposes " and " secondary knowledge " come into being, as distinguished from the " primary purpose " and " primary knowledge " of the original " psychoid."

Driesch, though primarily a biologist, has developed a full-fledged philosophical system somewhat on the lines of German Idealism. Perhaps the most interesting feature of his system is the way in which it is dominated by his idea of entelechy. He inclines to conceive God, or the Absolute, as the ultimate Entelechy of the Universe, and as the ultimate Potentiality of all that comes into being. The conception of such a divine entelechy, considering the teleological character of entelechies, naturally inclines Driesch to believe (though he admits that he cannot prove) that the world has some ultimate purpose.

[*Analytische Theorie der organischen Entwicklung*, 1894;
Science and Philosophy of the Organism, London, 1908;
History and Theory of Vitalism, London, 1914 (German original 1905);
Problems of Individuality, London, 1914.]

W. James (1842–1910) was the leader of the American philosophic movement known as Pragmatism. This term was first introduced in 1878 by C. S. Peirce (1839–1914), and the main idea has been traced to the ancient Sophist Protagoras, who taught that " man is the measure of all things." The philosophy of James is perhaps best understood as a reaction against the excessive intellectualism, and the monism or singularism of absolute idealism and its conception of an eternally finished static world or " block universe." He had a keen feeling for what lives and moves. And to this feeling may perhaps be traced the most distinctive factors in his philosophy—its pluralism, individuality, freedom, novelty. To some extent he was influenced by Renouvier, the French defender of free-will against scientific determinism. Hence there is a certain affinity between James and Bergson. Already in his psychology James laid stress on the *activity* of consciousness or experience, which, under the influence of emotional and practical interests, selects for attention only certain things from a " theatre of simultaneous possibilities," and in this sense " carves out " a world of its own in " the jointless continuity of space and moving clouds of swarming atoms." Turning to human knowledge, James distinguished between *knowledge by acquaintance* (in which objects are apprehended immediately) and *knowledge about* (in which objects are known indirectly by means of ideas). James's pragmatism shows itself in his interpretation of ideas by reference to the practical effects involved, the sensations to be expected, the reactions which have to be prepared. " Thinking is first and last and always for the sake of doing," and " the conception with which we handle a bit of sensible experience is really nothing but a teleological instrument." This implies that ideas must be tested either by the realisation of the sensory expectations or by the success of the prepared reactions. " The ' true ' . . . is only the expedient in the way of thinking, just as the right is only the expedient in the way of

our behaving. Expedient in almost any fashion; and expedient in the long run, and on the whole, of course." If an idea cannot be tested by the fulfilment of sensory expectations we may legitimately " will to believe " it if emotional and practical interests favour it. The idea of God, for instance, is a case in point.

James's world-view, like his pragmatic method, was also largely the outcome of his psychology. He found in " experience " all that was necessary for the construction of reality. As against the idealist assumption that " relations " are the special creations of consciousness, and that a transcendent Spirit has to be assumed to sustain the unity of the cosmos, James contended that " conjunctive relations are just as much matters of direct experience " as are things. In fact, consciousness itself is only one kind of conjunctive relation among experiences. The system of external realities, and the stream of our internal thinking, are really the same " experience " taken in different relations. Such was James's " radical empiricism." His psychology also disposed James to accept the reality of a superhuman consciousness composed of all finite minds. This view seemed to him justified by the evidence of psychical research (automatic writing, mediumship, etc.), the phenomena of multiple personality, and above all by the " varieties of religious experience." These persuaded him of the existence of reservoirs of consciousness, " a more of the same quality " as human minds, a plurality of saving powers, with which man sometimes comes into contact. James approved of theism, but regarded God as finite, or of limited power and responsibility. The world, according to James, is undetermined, so that it is quite possible to realise in it whatever we reasonably think ought to be realised. The good man is a " faithful fighter " in the cause of righteousness, and is justified in his faith in the ultimate triumph of goodness.

[*Principles of Psychology*, London and New York, 1890;
The Will to Believe, London and New York, 1897;
Varieties of Religious Experience, London and New York, 1902;
Pragmatism, London and New York, 1907;
A Pluralistic Universe, London and New York, 1909;
The Meaning of Truth, London and New York, 1909;
Some Problems of Philosophy, London and New York, 1911.]

J. Dewey (b. 1859) teaches a form of pragmatist philosophy known as " instrumentalism." Thought, he maintains, is essentially an instrument of life. So long as life proceeds smoothly people do not think. It is only when the impulse to action is thwarted in some way that people pause to think. Their thought is an attempt to plan their action so as best to meet the difficulties of the situation. And the validity of their thought is gauged by its success—" that which guides us truly is true." The sciences may appear to be interested in knowledge for its own sake. The highly abstract knowledge which they accumulate may appear to be remote from the practical needs of life. In reality, however, the whole quest for truth is an elaborate and potent method of forging effective instruments for the future needs of our practical life. The object of thought is, accordingly, conceived as an ideal, that is, a plan of action. The object is, consequently, not

regarded as something ready-made, but as something which is progressively constructed by the activity of thought. In such a philosophy the moral problem is naturally supreme. Indeed, the initial motive of Dewey's " instrumentalism " appears to have been his desire to overcome the traditional dualism in logical standpoint and method between " science " on the one hand and " morals " on the other. " I have long felt [says Dewey] that the construction of a logic, that is a method of effective inquiry, which would apply without abrupt breach of continuity to the fields designated by both of these words, is at once our needed theoretical solvent and the supply of our greatest practical want." And what chiefly prompted his desire to produce such a joint, practical logic was his enthusiasm for social progress towards liberalism in the highest and widest sense of the term. Instrumentalism is conceived by him as affording a suitable philosophic basis for such liberalism, in so far at least as it is opposed to all that is static and obstructive, and encourages experiment and enterprise in social reconstruction. But, like Windelband, he also maintains that " the next synthetic movement in philosophy will emerge when the significance of the social sciences and arts has become an object of reflective attention in the same way that the mathematical and physical sciences have been made the objects of thought in the past, and when their full import is grasped." One of the chief obstacles in the way of advancing beyond the legacy of that " provincial episode " known as Western European history, is the solicitude of many people about the present and future of religion. But, thinks Dewey, such people " are moved more by partisan interest in a particular religion than by interest in religious experience " as such.

[*Studies in Logical Theory*, New York, 1903 ;
Essays in Experimental Logic, New York, 1916 ;
Democracy and Education, New York, 1916 ;
Reconstruction in Philosophy, New York, 1920 ;
Human Nature and Conduct, New York, 1922 ;
Experience and Nature, New York, 1925 ;
The Public and its Problems, New York, 1927 ;
The Quest for Certainty, New York, 1929.]

H. Vaihinger (b. 1852) has formulated an idealistic positivism commonly known as " the philosophy of ' as if,' " or " fictionism." It combines Kantian positivism (which confines human knowledge to the empirical) and pragmatism (primacy of the practical reason) with Schopenhauer's voluntarism and pessimism, Darwin's evolutionism, and Mill's empiricism (which reduced reality to sensations and permanent possibilities of sensation). He holds that psychological analysis ends in sensations, feelings, and conations, that epistemological analysis ends in sense-data (or contents of sensation), while physical analysis ends in mass and motion. So far as practical life is concerned all these different ultimate realities harmonise quite well, but thought cannot co-ordinate them in one rational system. This is due to the fact that thought was originally only an aid in the struggle for existence, and is still incapable of dealing with purely theoretical problems. What has happened in the case

of thought is only one instance of a common natural tendency. Namely, what was originally only a means to a certain end may develop far beyond its needs, and emancipate itself from its end to such an extent as to become an end in itself. In this way thought has come to be regarded as an end in itself, and has set itself tasks which are quite beyond it, such as the solution of the problem of the origin and significance of the universe, and similar metaphysical problems. But the solution of such problems is beyond thought—not merely beyond human thought, but beyond any thought as such. Many ideas are, in fact, just deliberate fictions affording merely apparent solutions of theoretical problems. In addition to their empirically verifiable hypotheses, the sciences contain many such deliberate fictions. So do ethics, æsthetics, and religion. What we call reality consists of the contents of our sensations, or sense-data, which force themselves upon us so that we cannot deny them. They exhibit many laws or regularities of coexistence and of sequence; and it is the business of the sciences to ascertain these laws. By means of those sense-data which we call our bodies we can exercise considerable influence upon the rest of the world (consisting of other sense-data). This world contains many manifestations of purpose, but also much that is purposeless. We must take the world as we find it. Myths may be helpful, morally or æsthetically. Many people find satisfaction in the fiction that the world has been created, or is governed, by a supreme and perfect Spirit. But this requires the complementary fiction of an evil opposing power. As to the significance of the world, man must by his practical endeavours try to *put* significance and value into it; he must not expect to *find* value and significance there ready made. Practical life and intuition are higher than speculative thought. In our practical contact with reality all speculative riddles disappear, and our practical work in and for the world is far more important than our theoretical speculations about it.

[*Die Philosophie des Als Ob*, 1911 etc. (Eng. Tr. *The Philosophy of "As If,"* London, 1924).]

IX. REALISM, EMERGENT EVOLUTION, AND FLUXIONISM IN ENGLAND, SOUTH AFRICA, AND THE UNITED STATES

S. Alexander (b. 1859) has constructed a philosophic system which has the great merit of unusual harmony with the broad results of modern science and with the whole spirit of science. The stuff of the world, according to Alexander, is Space-Time. Space alone is a mere abstraction, so is Time alone. The concrete reality is the four-dimensional Space-Time. This is the same as pure Motion, for Time is not static. But pure motion is not yet matter in motion, for matter has to be generated first. Within the whole of Space-Time, or pure Motion, point-instants may be distinguished. These are the elementary events. Space-Time has certain categorial characteristics which are consequently pervasive characters of all existents. The categorial characters are existence, universality, relation, order, substance, quantity, number, motion. But besides these universal characters there are also various empirical qualities which

distinguish different classes of objects emerging under special conditions. For Space-Time differentiates spontaneously into many different configurations or collocations of point-instants. The simplest of these consist of motions of various velocities and extents. But when these, or some of them, form certain patterns, then a new quality, namely materiality, emerges. Under certain further conditions such qualities as colour, scent, etc., emerge. Given certain additional conditions, and life emerges. And when such living complexes realise certain further conditions, then consciousness emerges as an additional quality of living bodies. Hence a hierarchy of existents, in which whatever has the higher qualities also has the lower ones from which they emerged. But the relation of a thing to its highest quality is different from its relation to the lower ones. It " enjoys " (or has a direct living apprehension of) its highest quality, but only " contemplates " (or has a merely external apprehension of) the lower qualities. Thus man, for instance, when he perceives a body (maybe his own body), " enjoys " the process of perceiving, and " contemplates " the body. Every conscious process is also a neural process. What is, in this case, " enjoyed " as a conscious process is also " contemplated " as a neural process. A mind is the substantial continuum of processes which have the quality of consciousness. Its cognition of objects is a special case of the more general relationship of " compresence " or togetherness of things, and does not change in any way the qualities of the objects cognised. Now although consciousness is the highest quality of human beings, it is reasonable to suppose that there are still higher qualities in the universe. The highest quality is called by Alexander " deity " or divinity ; and " deity " is conceived to be the highest quality of God in the same way as consciousness is the highest quality of man. The whole universe is the body of God. But mind is only one of his lower qualities. What kind of a quality " deity " is we cannot tell. But its nature may be assumed to be changing. For the universe is never complete, and new and higher qualities may continue to emerge. So that " deity " is always becoming, always yet to be. But God as the whole universe tending towards deity exists always. And this accounts for the human longing for God, and for communion with him. It is the world with its nisus towards deity that stirs this longing in us. Practical religion consists in doing our part so as to advance the world's progress towards deity, by helping the good to triumph over evil in human affairs. As to the relation of the finite many to the infinite One, " the One is the system of the many in which they are conserved, not the vortex in which they are engulfed."

[*Space, Time and Deity*, London, 1920.]

L. T. Hobhouse (1864–1929) elaborated a philosophy which may be described as a form of evolutionary realism, but which is specially noteworthy for its endeavour to effect a compromise between a number of philosophical antitheses—monism and pluralism, idealism and materialism, empiricism and rationalism. Under the influence of Bosanquet he embraced the view of the systematic or organic function of reason. Immediate judgments are not final. " The basis of rational judgment

lies in the inter-connection of judgments. . . . The whole rests upon the parts and in turn maintains them, and it is this organic principle of mutual support through inter-connection which is the Reason." The speculative reason is the continuous and comprehensive effort towards harmony in the judgments which interpret experience. The practical reason is the same impulse applied to all of our experience that we value. But it is a mistake to assume that the whole somehow explains the parts, without seeking also the explanation of the whole in the nature of the parts which it holds together. This mistake is mainly responsible for the idealist identification of knowledge with reality, in violation of the claim of knowledge to refer to objects beyond itself. " Nothing exists because it is known, but is known because it exists." " Briefly, there is in the nature of knowledge itself no ground for restricting the nature of the known or knowable. What they are must be learnt from the reports of our immediate judgments in so far as their deliverances are reduced to consistency." Knowledge is the correlation both of immediate judgments and of objects, for the interconnected system of judgments asserts a Reality of interconnected objects. This is so, not because objects must adapt themselves to thought, but rather because thought has learnt to accommodate itself to its objects. But the extent of the interconnection of objects must not be exaggerated. We must distinguish between *organic* and *harmonic* unity. There is organic unity wherever there is some degree of both mutual dependence and independence among the parts. The greater the mutual dependence, the greater is the tendency towards harmony ; the greater their independence, the greater are the opportunities for conflict. Now Reality has an organic unity, but is only slowly moving towards the harmonic ideal. Mind with its teleological activity is the tendency towards interrelation and harmony. But in so far as there are also independent or uncorrelated factors in existence, Reality is also characterised by Mechanism. Yet the characteristic process of Reality as a whole is development. And the end of its development is not the peace of death, but the harmony which keeps all things alive. The spiritual power, the principle of goodness that dwells in the world will some day come to its own. Evil is not inherent in the tendencies of things as such, but results from a failure to co-ordinate them. There is no evil principle in the sense in which there is a good principle. And so the world is worth living in, and fighting for.

[*The Theory of Knowledge*, London, 1896, 2nd ed., 1921 ;
Mind in Evolution, London, 1901, new ed., 1915 ;
Morals in Evolution, London, 1906, new ed., 1923 ;
Development and Purpose, London, 1913, new ed., 1929 ;
Social Development, London, 1924.]

C. Lloyd Morgan (b. 1852) is largely responsible for what is known as the philosophy of *emergent evolution*. His general attitude is realistic or dualistic. He accepts the reality of a physical world of events interpretable in terms of a four-dimensional space-time frame. These physical events manifest an ascending hierarchy of kinds of relatedness in the case of atoms, molecules, organic cells, and organisms respectively, each succeeding kind involving the preceding. He also assumes a correlation of psychical

with physical events. When certain physical events occur in the cortex of the brain there is consciousness. But this correlation is without a break. There are no physical events, or systems of such events, which are not also psychical events, or systems of such events. There are not two worlds, a physical and a psychical, but one world, which is psycho-physical from top to bottom. What we call " things " are clusters or systems of physical events regarded in abstraction from their psychical correlates. Events come together to form systems of all degrees of complexity. In any such system it is possible to distinguish between its *stuff* and its *relations*. But simpler systems may constitute the stuff of more complex systems. Thus, *e.g.*, electrons are the stuff of atoms, atoms of molecules, molecules are the stuff of a drop of water, and so on until we reach vital events in the cellular tissues which are the stuff of the organism. Each of these systems has its special set of relations, which are called *intrinsic* if within any one system, and *extrinsic* when they interrelate two or more systems. Moreover, these systems are objectively real; they are not carved out of a continuum by our interests. Mind is wholly intrinsic to the individual percipient, but stretches out into the external world through conscious reference to things in that world, which thereby become its objects of reference. This is possible because each receptor pattern has its own psychic sign which is projicient in such a way as to subserve behaviour. In this way the skeleton of independent physical events is clothed with flesh and raiment by the construction of psychic signs projiciently referred to them as the objects signified in perceptual experience.

The world at large consists of (1) physico-chemical events, (2) vital events which occur only in organisms, and (3) mental events which occur only in some organisms. In vital events there is a new kind of relatedness that does not obtain among merely physico-chemical events; and in mental events there is a further kind of relatedness that does not obtain in merely vital events. In other words, vitality is an emergent (or unpredictable) quality of organisms; and mentality is an emergent quality of some animals. But the emergent quality does not supersede the old, it only supplements it. A system of vital events remains also physico-chemical; and a mental system remains also a vital one. But the physico-chemical processes in a living organism are rather different from those in an inorganic one; and the vital processes in a mental system are rather different from those in a merely living one. As a man of science Lloyd Morgan fully accepts its naturalism with natural piety. But if, as a philosopher, he is asked to account for the direction of emergent evolution, he can only suggest that the scientific conception of evolution may be supplemented by the concept of the progressive unfolding in time of revelations of that " Activity " which is universally enfolded *sub specie æternitatis*.

[*Animal Life and Intelligence*, London, 1890;
Habit and Instinct, London, 1896;
Interpretation of Nature, London, 1905;
Animal Behaviour, London, 1908;
Instinct and Experience, London, 1912;
Emergent Evolution, London, 1923;
Life, Mind and Spirit, London, 1926.]

A. N. Whitehead (b. 1861) has taken upon himself the task of repairing the philosophic damage done by his fellow mathematicians. Mainly through the influence of the highly abstract methods of mathematics Nature, so rich in direct experience, has been reduced to something " soundless, scentless, colourless, merely the hurrying of material, endlessly, meaninglessly." Mathematical physicists have taken the cosmic watch to pieces (fortunately in thought only). Whitehead tries to put it together again by means of his " philosophy of organism." It is the ambition of this philosophy to vindicate the reality not only of secondary qualities but of all that contributes to the æsthetic, moral and religious life of humanity, and at the same time to do justice to the legitimate claims of science. The mechanistic tendency of science and its materialism are due to its concentration on abstractions, merely logical entities. Actual experience is always an experience of concrete events. These concrete events may legitimately be analysed into simpler elements or aspects, provided these abstractions are not hypostatised as such, and treated as though they were self-contained realities. The actual events of experience are concrete systems, or " organisms," in which the character of the whole (like the " entelechy " of Aristotle and Driesch) influences the very characters of various subordinate parts, elements or events which constitute it. " Organism," in this extended sense of the term, is a characteristic of all reality, and is not restricted to living organisms. It is a fundamental feature throughout the whole of nature. Physics, according to Whitehead, is the study of the smaller organisms (atoms, etc.), whereas Biology is the study of the larger organisms. Whitehead not only minimises the contrast between the organic and the inorganic, he also rejects the dualism of mind and body. The mind is treated simply as a special organisation of the system of events that constitute the body, and the higher activities rendered possible thereby. But this must not be taken to mean that Whitehead thinks in terms of " substances." Following the trend of recent physics, he takes " events " for his units. The universe consists of events and their interrelations. Events vary in complexity. The larger events are systems of lesser events and eventually of " atomic " events. Reality is thus conceived as a flux, after the manner of Heraclitus, though Whitehead also tries to salvage something of Eleatic permanence by positing Forms, " eternal objects," or universals, somewhat after the manner of Plato. " In the inescapable flux, there is something that abides ; in the overwhelming permanence, there is an element that escapes into flux." Atomic events are called " actual occasions " (also " actual entities"), so that an event in the more general sense is a nexus of actual occasions, interrelated in some determinate fashion in one extensive quantum. What is commonly called a thing or a person is a society of events, or a systematic stream of such events, having a certain causal continuity. Now each actual occasion is related to every other actual occasion in the universe, and so the universe is one compact, organic system of actual occasions, an " interlocked community " of events. And through this mutual interlocking of events it may be said in a sense that " everything is everywhere at all times." The Space-Time continuum is not (as with Alexander) a primitive datum but a construction from the relations between actual occasions. The " interlockings " of actual occasions

are called " prehensions," and are conceived causally. Each actual occasion is generated from its prehensions of preceding occasions, and is prehended by succeeding occasions. The process thus resembles Bergson's conception of the telescoping of the past in the present. In this way each actual occasion attains " objective immortality " in spite of the flux. The " togetherness " of the universe, " the principle of concretion," is identified by Whitehead with God. " God is not concrete, but He is the ground of concrete actuality." " The World is the multiplicity of finites seeking a perfected unity." God is " the unity of vision seeking physical multiplicity." " He is the lure for feeling, the eternal urge of desire," and each creature has its " prehension " into God. " The theme of Cosmology, which is the basis of all religions, is the story of the dynamic effort of the World passing into everlasting unity, and of the static majesty of God's vision, accomplishing its purpose of completion by absorption of the World's multiplicity of effort." But " neither God nor the World reaches static completion. Both are in the grip of the ultimate metaphysical ground, the creative advance into novelty."

[*The Concept of Nature*, Cambridge and New York, 1920;
Science and the Modern World, Cambridge and New York, 1926;
Religion in the Making, Cambridge and New York, 1926;
Process and Reality, An Essay in Cosmology, Cambridge and New York, 1929.]

G. E. Moore (b. 1873) may be said to have taken up again the fight which T. Reid (1710–1796) waged against the excesses of " the way of ideas." Like his prototype, Moore is a defender of " common sense." Negatively, his main contention is that idealism has not made out its case on behalf of the sole reality of what is mental. There is, therefore, no reason for abandoning the common-sense assumption that there exist material facts as well as mental facts. Positively Moore has done little more than enumerate a series of realistic propositions embodying his own *credo* as well as that of common sense. This may be summed up briefly as follows. (1) There is no good reason to suppose that *every* physical fact is logically or causally dependent upon some mental fact. (2) There are and have been material things. (3) There are and have been many selves. Perhaps rather unlike common sense, Moore does *not* hold that there is good reason for believing in the existence of God, or in human survival after the death of the body. As a philosopher especially interested in the theory of knowledge, Moore is deeply concerned about the correct *analysis* of the propositions which he accepts as true, namely those briefly summed up in (2) and (3) above. What exactly is known when it is asserted for instance, that " this is a hand " ? " Two things only seem to me to be quite certain about the analysis of such propositions . . . namely that whenever I know, or judge, such a proposition to be true, (1) there is always some *sense-datum* about which the proposition in question is a proposition . . . and (2) that, nevertheless, *what* I am knowing or judging to be true about this sense-datum is not (in general) that it is *itself* a hand . . . etc., as the case may be." " In other words, to put my view in terms of the . . . ' theory of representative perception,' I hold . . . that I do

not *directly* perceive *my hand* ; and that . . . I perceive . . . something which is . . . *representative* of it, namely, a certain part of its surface." But how exactly the representative sense-datum is related to the actual hand he does not know, for he is not satisfied with the various solutions suggested hitherto. Similarly with the proposition " there are and have been many selves." He is certain of its truth, but unaware of its correct analysis.

[*Principia Ethica*, Cambridge, 1903 ;
Ethics, London, 1911 ;
Philosophical Studies, London, 1922.]

C. D. Broad (b. 1887) is chiefly known for his Object Theory of Sensa. On this theory there are three entities involved in every perception. First, there are states of mind, called sensations. Secondly, these sensations have objects, called sensa, which are concrete particular existents, like coloured or hot patches, or noises, or smells—the sensa actually having the attributes of shape, size, hardness, colour, loudness, coldness, etc. Thirdly, there are physical objects, the existence of which, and their presence to our senses, we are led to believe in by the existence of the sensa and their presence to our minds in sensation. The properties which we ascribe to the physical objects are always correlated with and based upon the properties of the sensa, but are not always identical with them. When we look straight down upon an object, and the sensum is round, the object itself will also be regarded as round ; but when looking at an object obliquely, the *elliptical* sensum may make us believe that the physical object is round. As a rule we are not interested in the sensa as such, but in the physical objects of which they are the appearances. For it is the physical objects, not the sensa, that can help or hinder us in the struggle for existence.

Turning from Epistemology to Ontology, and more especially to the relation of Life to Matter, Broad favours the theory of Emergence. According to this theory there are certain wholes composed of certain constituents in a certain relation, and they are such that the characteristic properties of the whole cannot be deduced from the properties of the components either in isolation or in other kinds of wholes. To understand such emergent wholes it is not enough to know how the parts would behave separately, we must also know the laws of their behaviour when related in that way ; and the latter is independent of the former. Such emergence, according to Broad, is already observable in the inorganic world—the knowledge of the properties of elements as such does not enable one to predict the properties of a compound—but is most striking in the case of organisms. There appears to be a general tendency for complexes of one order to combine with each other under suitable conditions to form complexes of a higher order. At each stage there arise things with new characteristics, and at every stage there are new possibilities of further developments. In comparison with Biological Mechanism, the theory of Emergent Vitalism has the advantage that it can dispense with the aid of a Deistic supplement.

The relation between body and mind is, according to Broad, very intimate. Mind acts on body in volition, and body acts on mind in sensation.

If the relation is not described as one of interaction, it is mainly because that word does not express adequately the intimate character of the relation.

Specially interesting is Broad's view of " psychic factors." He finds enough evidence in certain abnormal psychical phenomena to dispose him in favour of the view that the mind is not a mere epi-phenomenon of the body and existentially dependent on it alone, but a compound substance whose constituents are the organism and a " psychic factor " which is not itself a mind, but which may combine with a series of organisms to form a successive series of minds. The psychic factor may exist independently of an organism, and may also combine temporarily with a medium so as to reproduce the characteristics of some dead man whose body it had once animated. On such a view the survival of the *whole* mind of a human being is, of course, excluded.

On the question of the status and prospects of mind in nature Broad's views are not very definite, nor very rosy. Perpetual mental progress is neither impossible nor inevitable. The possibility depends on our getting an adequate knowledge and control of life and mind before the combination of ignorance on these subjects with knowledge of physics and chemistry wrecks the whole social system. " Which of the runners in this very interesting race will win, it is impossible to foretell. But physics and death have a long start over psychology and life."

[*Perception, Physics and Reality*, Cambridge, 1914;
Scientific Thought, London, 1923;
The Mind and its Place in Nature, London, 1925;
Five Types of Ethical Theory, London, 1930.]

Earl Russell (b. 1872) has described his philosophy as " logical atomism," sometimes also as " neutral monism," as " pluralism," and " realism." It is all these, as will be indicated briefly. To some extent Russell follows the example of British empiricists and tries to analyse our complex experience into its elements or " atoms." But he avoids the mistake made by Locke and his successors when they assumed that a complex whole is nothing more than the bare sum of its elements and of their separate causal efficacies. Russell realises that a configuration may lose its causal properties when broken up into its elements. But he maintains that nevertheless it does consist of these elements related in certain ways, and that is why he calls his philosophy " logical atomism." Now philosophy is not intended to supplant, but only to supplement, the sciences by way of rather speculative suggestions about the world as a whole. And since science and common sense assume the independent reality of a multiplicity of events, things, etc., and there are no convincing arguments to the contrary, Russell feels justified in embracing both " realism " and " pluralism." But what is the nature of the real elements of which the world is composed? Idealism, which describes them as psychical in character, is rejected by Russell, though he admits its possibility. Materialism is rejected even more decisively, especially in view of the present tendency to reduce matter to mere radiation or wave-energy. He prefers to regard the ultimate stuff of reality as neither mental nor

material, but " neutral " in respect of these alternatives. But he thinks that the whole world is composed of only one kind of stuff, namely events. Hence the name of " neutral monism." But this " monism " is not inconsistent with " pluralism," for the monism is qualitative whereas the pluralism is substantival. In other words, although Russell admits only *one kind* of stuff, he also admits the existence of a great multiplicity of events, each minimal event being logically a self-subsistent entity. " The world consists of a number, perhaps finite, perhaps infinite, of entities which have various relations to each other, and perhaps also various qualities. Each of these entities may be called an ' event.' " With regard to the practical problems of life and its values, Russell disparages the homiletic function which philosophy has inherited from theology. " Philosophy cannot itself determine the ends of life, but it can free us from the tyranny of prejudice and from distortions due to a narrow view."

[*Our Knowledge of the External World*, London, 1914;
Mysticism and Logic, London, 1918;
Introduction to Mathematical Philosophy, London, 1918;
Analysis of Mind, London, 1921;
An Outline of Philosophy, London, 1927.]

J. E. McTaggart (1866–1925) was a realist in his epistemology and an idealist in his ontology. According to him knowledge is a true belief, and a belief is true when it corresponds to a fact, that is, to something that is something. The relation of correspondence is not a relation of similarity, but it cannot be defined further. Existence and reality are indefinable qualities. What exists must be real, but what is real need not exist. For instance, qualities and relations are in themselves real without being existent, though the qualities and relations of existent substances may be called existent. McTaggart denied the existence of time, of matter, and of sense-data. He held that the universe is spiritual, consisting of selves arranged in one or more primary wholes. The whole content of these selves consists in their perceptions of themselves and of each other. These perceptions have emotional and volitional qualities. The universe has not been created, for what is created must be in time, and nothing is in time. Moreover, the appearances of design in the universe do not suggest a conscious designer as its only possible cause, since a certain amount of order, and a certain direction towards the good, follows from the intrinsic nature of existence.

[*Some Dogmas of Religion*, London, 1906, 2nd ed., 1930;
The Nature of Existence, Cambridge, I., 1921; II., 1927.]

G. Santayana (b. 1863) is the poet-philosopher of America, though a Spaniard by birth. He is partly a " critical realist," but this does not adequately describe his philosophy. He accepts the reality of transcendent existences. Of these, however, we have no direct apprehension. It is by " animal faith " that we accept their reality although they are not directly " given " to us. What is given to us consists of certain images, notions, surface appearances, or general characters which we refer to the

transcendent existences. All such images, etc., Santayana calls " essences." All the familiar pictures painted by the senses, all the theories of science, and all the doctrines of religion belong to the sphere of " essences." And they can all be regarded as so many compatible, though different, arts of expression of the same transcendent matter. Materialism is a presupposition of conventional sanity ; religion is a fairy-tale of conscience. " All is a tale told . . . by a dreamer. . . . Sensations are rapid dreams ; perceptions are dreams sustained and developed at will ; sciences are dreams abstracted, controlled, measured, and rendered scrupulously proportional to their occasions. Knowledge accordingly always remains a part of imagination in its terms and in its seat ; yet by virtue of its origin and intent it becomes a memorial and a guide to the fortunes of man in nature." The whole life of reason is generated and controlled by the animal life of man in the bosom of nature. Human ideas have expressive, symbolic value : they are " the inner notes sounded by man's passions and by his arts " ; and they become rational partly by their inner harmony, and partly by their adjustment to external facts and possibilities. The human mind being thus essentially poetical, human wisdom lies in taking everything good-humouredly, with a grain of salt. In any case consciousness, according to Santayana, has no practical effectiveness, being merely an epiphenomenon, a " sort of ritual solemnising the chief episodes in the body's fortunes." The only good accessible to man is the satisfaction to be derived from the sheer exercise of his reason, and in the æsthetic joy that his artistic creations may yield.

[*The Life of Reason*, 5 vols., New York, 1905–6 ;
Winds of Doctrine, New York, 1913 ;
Scepticism and Animal Faith, New York, 1923 ;
Dialogues in Limbo, New York, 1925 ;
Platonism and the Spiritual Life, New York, 1927 ;
The Realm of Essence, New York, 1927.]

General J. C. Smuts (b. 1870) has outlined a philosophy which he has called Holism. By holism he means a tendency to the formation of systemic wholes, each of which is more than the bare sum of its component parts. A whole is not a mere aggregate of parts but has a certain structure (or " form," as Aristotle said) in virtue of which it has greater potentialities than a mere aggregate of similar parts could have. Smuts contends that this tendency to whole-making is traceable in all types of reality, and is the ground of what has been called creative or emergent evolution, which is inconsistent with bare mechanism. Modern science, according to Smuts, furnishes ample evidence in support of holism. Space and time, for instance, are no longer regarded as homogeneous continua, but have been reduced to a curved and warped Space-Time having a definite structure. Matter likewise has been given a precise structure. Chemistry treats the different kinds of substances as the results of different structural arrangements of atoms and molecules ; and physics treats the atoms themselves as varying in character with the different structural arrangements of protons and electrons in quasi-solar systems. Matter thus conceived as a system of electric charges is very different from the old inert

matter, and its difference from living protoplasm is considerably reduced. The cell differs from the atom in its greater complexity of structure and function, and in the greater co-operation of its parts, which are made to function for the whole. The same applies even to a greater extent to organisms consisting of multitudinous cells. Just as a " thing " is a synthesised " event " in the system of Relativity, so an organism is a synthesised section of history, which includes not only its present, but much of its past and even its future. The next higher " whole " after organism is Mind. In minds, or psychical organs, the central control is marked by consciousness, and has a creative power of far-reaching character. The highest known whole is Personality, which is characterised by the greatest freedom and creative power.

The world is characterised by both mechanism and free creation. There is mechanism wherever the working parts of an aggregate produce their effects individually, so that the total effect is merely the sum of their separate effects. In the course of evolution holism, with its creativeness, gains on mechanism, and at the stages of mind and personality mechanistic explanation is hopelessly inadequate. But mind, and even life, must not be thought of as new agents. Life, and mind, and personality must rather be conceived as successive advances in the " holistic " structure of matter, involving no disturbance in the prior structure on which each, in turn, is based, each being a creative continuation of the old, not a denial of it. But the inner trend of the universe is directed away from the merely mechanical towards the holistic type as its immanent ideal. The *summum bonum* of holistic philosophy is free and harmonious self-realisation. The holistic nisus of the universe is regarded as a guarantee that the ideals of Well-being, of Truth, Beauty and Goodness are firmly rooted in the nature of things, and are likely to be realised eventually.

[*Holism and Evolution*, London, 1926.]

X. THE PRESENT CONCORD BETWEEN SCIENCE, PHILOSOPHY, AND THEOLOGY

The foregoing account of recent and contemporary philosophy shows that there is considerable vitality in the philosophic thought of the age. The scoffer may pretend that all these philosophies are little more than the reminiscences of the thought of past ages. He may take to pieces all these philosophical tapestries and show that they are mainly a patchwork of scraps derived from Heraclitus or Parmenides, Plato or Aristotle, Descartes or Spinoza, Locke or Leibniz, Kant or Hegel, Schelling or Schopenhauer. And he may reiterate the oft-repeated charge that there is no progress in philosophy. Such disparagement, however, would be unwarranted, even if we admit some of the points on which it professes to be based. After all, the whole history of civilisation is so short that it has been described as a " provincial episode " when measured in terms of terrestrial time, to say nothing of cosmic time. And of this " provincial episode " the whole history of philosophy is but a single aspect, which only emerged about twenty-five centuries ago, and has been more or less smothered more than half the time. Moreover, the problems of philosophy are peculiarly difficult to answer in a manner that may command general

consent. For they do not lend themselves to the kind of empirical verification which secures something like general agreement in the sciences. In fact, as soon as any group of problems becomes amenable to empirical verification it forsakes its parental, philosophic home, and sets up as a separate science. In this way philosophy always remains the limbo of highly speculative questions, which it is very difficult to answer satisfactorily, but which most intelligent persons find it equally difficult to suppress. And since times do change, and we change with them, each age needs at least a restatement of old problems and old solutions in terms best adapted to its own habits of thought or speech. An excessive straining after originality, or the appearance of originality, may do more harm than good. A knowledge of the history of one's subject is probably a universal requisite, but especially so in the case of philosophy. For of philosophy it is particularly true that all history is contemporary history.

One of the most interesting features of recent and contemporary philosophy is the renewed co-operation between men of science and philosophers. During a great part of the nineteenth century science and philosophy were scarcely on speaking terms. The estrangement was probably rather harmful to both : science became rather materialistic, and philosophy lost something of its realism. The more friendly relationship between philosophy and science is therefore to be welcomed. Yet the change of mind on the part of some men of science is not without its dangers. The pendulum has swung rather hastily from the materialistic to the idealistic extreme. As already suggested, the change is largely due to the new conceptions of matter. The displacement of the old hard impenetrable pebbles by electric charges, or wave radiations, inclines some people to think that matter has lost its materiality and assumed a new spirituality. This reminds one rather of a story told by an eminent ecclesiastic about a young lady who, having strayed so far from the path of virtue as to have a baby, pleaded in mitigation that it was only such a wee little baby ! Matter, however refined, is matter still, not mind. Moreover, some eminent physicists, like J. J. Thomson, do not accept the non-substantial view of matter in its entirety.

Next to the new theories of the nature of matter, the now widely accepted Principle of Indeterminacy has had no little share in converting certain scientists to a religious view of the world. The principle in question is intimately connected with the new views on matter. It has been found impossible to determine simultaneously the energy *and* the position of a particle. This has been interpreted to mean that electrons or particles really have no definite energy and position, both being objectively indeterminate. From this alleged instance of indeterminacy there has been inferred a general Principle of Indeterminacy (or of Uncertainty) according to which, as some would maintain, there is no such thing in the physical world as that causal determination on which the older scientists insisted, and on which the mechanistic philosophy was based. The significance of the Principle of Indeterminacy in relation to free-will and miracles has made a great impression not only on professional theologians, but also on some scientists, who have consequently shown a new interest in theological thought and phraseology. But the precise meaning and significance of the new principle are still in the melting-pot. Einstein

and others regard it as a merely temporary " asylum of ignorance," and expect an early restoration of the principles of rigorous causality within the domain of science. In the meantime, the physicist's reliance on probabilities concerning the constancy of proportions in which atoms undergo certain changes (like disintegration) in a certain time appears to be evidence of physical regularity and determinacy rather than of the play of caprice.

The new scientific speculations, of which but a few examples have been referred to here, have culminated in a certain tendency among some scientists which can only be described as a kind of mysticism. First science is described as nothing more than a system of symbols, and eventually the whole choir of heaven and furniture of earth seem to fade away into a host of bloodless symbols. This whole tendency naturally enough ends in a kind of ontological idealism, the whole universe being reduced, or levelled up, to thought pure and simple. Whether all this is explicitly intended is not certain. One and the same scientist may be found to describe the world, in the same breath almost, as " thought " and as " light "—a combination which rather betrays the obscurity of inadequate reflection. But in any case the real nature of symbolism does not appear to be sufficiently appreciated. A symbol is always a thing of one kind which suggests a thing of another kind. Symbolism, it is true, implies thought, since it is only for thought that one kind of thing can suggest or mean another. But symbolism does not imply the reality of thought only, for unless a material thing really is material it cannot serve as a symbol of anything else. The emphasis so often laid on the symbolic character of science and of nature, though intended perhaps to lay stress on the *significance* of things, ends only too frequently in mystification.

The foregoing considerations may help to explain the unusually friendly relationship which is loudly proclaimed to exist now between science and the Churches. Such an amicable attitude is certainly better for all concerned than was their long-continued antagonism. Yet it is not without its dangers. The history of science makes it pretty clear that science was most fruitful when it followed naturalism as its regulative ideal; and that it declined, or remained immature or barren, when it came under the influence of theological or mythological conceptions. Let science continue to plough its lonely furrow, as indifferent now to the flatteries of the Churches as it was erstwhile to their frowns. Galileo and Descartes, Boyle and Newton, were deeply religious men (some of them, indeed, almost superstitiously so), yet they took good care to keep their theology out of their science, and to carry on their scientific researches on strictly naturalistic lines. Their example deserves to be followed by other men of science, whose theology is probably much more nebulous than was that of their distinguished predecessors. Let it not be forgotten that the amiable things said by men of science about religion in general may be exploited in the defence of dogmas and practices which they do not approve. In this way the representatives of science may actually obstruct the further advance of the Churches along the paths of progress which, largely under the stimulus of science, they have been following, however slowly, since the days of Bruno, and Galileo, and Servetus. Science owes its wonderful progress mainly to its specialisation, or division of labour.

It is hardly in keeping with the best traditions of science that its representatives should play the parts of popular philosophers and pontiffs. In the early decades of the nineteenth century, it is true, some of the Fellows of the Royal Society of London did perpetrate a series of Bridgewater Treatises "on the Power, Wisdom and Goodness of God, as manifested in the Creation." Nearly a century has elapsed since then, and people still have faith in God and in the Royal Society in spite of those treatises. It would be a great pity if that fact served to encourage many of the present Fellows of the Royal Society to tempt Providence too often. Theologians and philosophers certainly have much to learn from science. Let scientists continue to render the invaluable service of teaching them, by all means—but let them teach science, not philosophy nor theology.

Contemporary philosophy likewise seems to stand in need of an analogous warning. Considering the fact that so many philosophers were formerly students of theology, the relations between philosophy and theology are naturally expected to be friendly. Among British philosophers, indeed, the number of defenders of the faith seems to be abnormally large. It may be that academic conditions, and institutions like the Gifford Trust, either encourage this tendency, or give undue prominence to those who follow it. But philosophy will be in a healthier condition when it has entirely ceased to be a handmaid to theology, and pursues its cosmic problems as independently as possible of vested interests.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

R. B. PERRY : *Philosophy of the Recent Past* (New York. 1927)
H. HÖFFDING : *Modern Philosophers* (London. 1915)
G. DE RUGGIERO : *Modern Philosophy* (*London.* 1921)
B. BOSANQUET : *The Meeting of Extremes in Contemporary Philosophy* (London. 1920)
R. F. A. HOERNLÉ : *Studies in Contemporary Metaphysics* (New York. 1920)
R. B. PERRY : *Present Philosophical Tendencies* (New York. 1912)
A. K. ROGERS : *English and American Philosophy* (New York. 1922)
J. ROYCE : *Lectures on Modern Idealism* (New Haven. 1919)
J. LAIRD : *A Study in Realism* (Cambridge. 1920)
E. L. SCHAUB and OTHERS : *Philosophy To-Day* (New York. 1928)
D. S. ROBINSON : *An Anthology of Recent Philosophy* (New York. 1929)
J. NEEDHAM and OTHERS : *Science, Religion and Reality* (London. 1925)

AN INTRODUCTION TO ECONOMICS

By

MAURICE DOBB

SYNOPSIS

Economics is most easily defined in terms of the type of question it seeks to answer. The difference between different schools of thought, and particularly between the classical economists and modern economists, mainly consists in the different questions they pose and seek to answer. The Physiocrats first tried to represent the economic system as a unity, having a rational consistency, and regulated by a system of " natural laws." It was the purpose of Political Economy to discover these laws. In this they played the historical rôle of intellectual champions of the new capitalist order. They were principally concerned with the laws regulating " the circulation of wealth," and by discovering these laws sought to establish practical precepts for the action of government in levying taxation and framing commercial and industrial legislation. Their most significant contribution was the conception of " real cost " and of " surplus." Following them, Adam Smith and Ricardo developed the Theory of Value, and elaborated the theory of free competition and *laissez-faire* (or non-interference of government in economic affairs). Marx, however, took the basic conceptions of classical Political Economy, and by enlarging the concept of " surplus " into his concept of " surplus-value " used Political Economy as a criticism of the capitalist system.

In the second half of the nineteenth century economics, with Jevons and the Austrian School, acquired its modern form. The change from the old Political Economy to the new Economics was characterised by a shift of emphasis from cost and supply to demand and utility as determinants of market value. The new theory is frequently termed the Theory of Marginal Utility. But the change went deeper. It represented a concentration on a theory of price, as distinct from the classical concept of " intrinsic value." The theory of price was conceived as a theory of equilibrium ; and a mathematical technique was employed. The differences between modern schools of economists mainly consist in the different ways in which they seek to solve this problem of postulating an equilibrium. Certain economists, however, such as Marshall, have sought a synthesis between classical

and modern theory, and have based their theory on a subjective, or psychological, conception of utility and of cost. In this way economics has provided a new justification for capitalism, even while an increasing number of " exceptions " have been admitted to the classical case for *laissez-faire*. But since modern economic theory poses a different set of questions from classical Political Economy, the former is not competent to pass judgment on most of the wider issues with which the latter was concerned. Particularly does modern economics fail to afford any adequate solution of the so-called Theory of Distribution. In the Theory of Money modern economists have made important progress. Possibly the future will see an increasing tendency for economists to develop statistical and realistic studies of particular concrete problems.

AN INTRODUCTION TO ECONOMICS

To define what Economics is about is considerably more difficult than most people think. Economic text-books have provided a number of definitions. "Economics is a study of man in the ordinary business of life." "Economics is a study of those motives and actions which are capable of being measured in money." But such definitions do not carry us very far. In inductive and experimental sciences a preliminary definition of scope is given (at least initially) by the nature of the material, although even here the frontier may be a vague and fading one: for instance, the frontier between Astronomy and Physics to-day. But since experiment in the social sciences is so restricted, Economics is primarily a deductive science, which (like Geometry and Mechanics) deduces a series of conclusions from certain premises or assumptions; and in a deductive study it is necessarily the development of the concepts themselves which provides its boundaries. In such a case when different schools of thought exist, employing qualitatively different concepts, a satisfactory definition is hardly possible which includes them all. Each may be separately defined, and then the relationship in which each stands to the other may be expressed in terms of something wider. But a final and satisfactory answer can only really be given when qualitative differences have been reduced to a common term, *viz.*, to common differences of quantity or number. This stage, however, is far removed as yet in a field so little charted as the social sciences; and for the present the most satisfactory way of defining Economics seems to be in terms of the type of question which it asks and seeks to answer, and similarly to define the rival schools of thought in terms of the different questions they pose to themselves or of differences in the type of answer they afford. Much of the confusion which reigns in the field of Economics to-day is, I believe, due to failure to use this simple device. Much barren controversy—for instance between the classical economists and modern economists—has been staged with no issue but stalemate and confusion, because the contestants have failed to realise that each is engaged in answering a different set of questions—Ricardo or Marx, for instance, being concerned with certain aspects of the distribution of wealth between classes, Jevons or Pareto with the conditions of price-equilibrium on a competitive market. Much of the discussion as to the *adequacy* of a certain theory (say of wages or of profits) turns on whether it answers the questions it claims to when those questions are framed with a greater or smaller degree of explicitness. More than one economist has launched his enquiry in quest of answers to certain questions, and then has proceeded to employ an apparatus of assumptions which essentially preclude those questions from receiving any answer.

It is the fashionable view to imagine that the early economists were the crude craftsmen of economic science who, working with inferior tools and

experience, built their structure in an imperfect way, and that their modern successors have retrieved their errors and mistakes in a more finished and completer structure. Ricardo is said to have emphasised " only one side " of the problem (*e.g.* supply, not demand) : to have noticed only one set of the forces at work ; Adam Smith to have laid certain foundations (his enquiry into the causes of the wealth of nations) which needed the improved technique of a hundred years later to complete. Hence the concepts of classical economy are laid against the concepts of twentieth century economic theory and directly compared, to the undoubted credit of the latter for their greater finish and perfection of detail. Where they differ (*e.g.* in their emphasis on cost of production as against utility as determinants of exchange-value), argument is conducted between them as though it were solely a question of differences of answers afforded to the same basic *questionnaire*.

This method of approach is fundamentally erroneous. At best it is a sufficiently partial view of the matter to cause more confusion than enlightenment ; and any further progress in the subject seems likely to be seriously obstructed until an alternative critical approach is tried. It is a commonplace in Art to-day that the " Primitives " of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries were not merely cruder craftsmen compared to the representational painters of a later date—in many respects they very obviously were not—but that they were trying to do something that was qualitatively different. The Physiocrats and the classical economists are in a sense the " Primitives " of economic science. In some ways they may have had a less finished technique than their twentieth century descendants. But what is more important is that many of the concepts they used were different and that they were trying to answer a different set of questions in a different way : questions partly concerned with the distribution of income between classes, partly with the conditions of maximum economic progress. This fact is obscured because economists of to-day imagine themselves to be answering, and certainly claim to answer, many of the questions which their classical forebears set out to do. But, to a large extent, I believe that the apparatus which they use produces, in reality, solutions which are in fact appropriate to a quite different and more limited context.

THE RISE OF POLITICAL ECONOMY

Political Economy was cradled in those social economic and ideal changes which marked the transition in Western Europe to the new bourgeois epoch. In France and Germany the remnants of feudalism were ripe for abolition. The centre of gravity, economically and politically, was shifting in favour of the *parvenu* " third estate." In England the bourgeoisie had come into its own much earlier, and the bourgeois State, pursuing a commercial policy, had been established two to three centuries before. England had had her economic writers at that period—Thomas Mun, Locke and Sir William Petty—but they were concerned with detailed points of State policy rather than with creating a theoretical system. By the end of the eighteenth century a new section of the bourgeois class was coming into existence : a class of industrial capitalists whose interests

were ranged against the existing system established in the combined landowning and commercial interests of the eighteenth century Whig aristocracy. But it was in France rather than England that the unified concept of an economic society as the subject for Political Economy first appeared. The French Physiocrats of the eighteenth century sketched the outline which Adam Smith filled out in his enquiry into the *Wealth of Nations*, and Ricardo developed in his analysis of the distribution of wealth.

Both France and England at this time witnessed a considerable ferment of new ideas, couched in the language of natural science, which since Bacon and Descartes was making steady conquests. In antithesis to the old authoritarian order, with its prescribed codes and sanctions, there was placed the concept of a " natural order," which showed its hand only when man was unfettered and free, and which gave its sanctions to the popular will. In antithesis to authoritarian " divine right " was placed the "natural right " of the individual. In was in this framework that there developed the concept of an economic society. This economic society was still in the fœtal stage, taking shape within the confines of a system of sanctions and prohibitions which had at first nurtured and now cramped its further development as an independent entity. Hence, in opposition to the authoritarian views of Mercantilism, which held that a commercial system only existed as such by virtue of detailed regulation by the State and would relapse into chaos without such control, Political Economy offered the conception of an economic order ruled by " natural law," which would " go by itself " if left to itself and would only produce the best results if " natural law " were left to operate free and unfettered. The individual had a " natural right " to pursue his own self-interest, because in so doing by virtue of this " unseen hand " he thereby promoted the common good. To discover and postulate this " natural law " was the rôle of Political Economy ; and " the advice to the sovereign " which it tendered was not how to regulate, but why not to regulate, economic affairs in order to promote the greatest wealth of the nation. And while the Physiocrats coined the slogan *laissez-faire, laissez-aller* (let do as you please, let go as you please), the English economists followed Adam Smith in expounding that imposing symmetry of economic harmonies which would come to birth if it were not suffocated and strangled by an unnatural degree of obstetrical attention. Political Economy, therefore, had its origin and derived its force as a direct apologetic of capitalist individualism.

An economic order ruled by " natural law " must possess a unifying principle. However complex and apparently arbitrary the phenomena, they must be explicable in terms of generalisations which hold together in a consistent logical whole. Science is not a matter of classifying everything in an arbitrary arrangement of pigeon-holes, or fitting it into a convenient card-indexing system, even if this be a necessary preliminary device. Its ultimate aim is to refer the maze of qualitative differences which meet the eye to a single common denominator. The Physiocrats were the first explicitly to conceive of the economic order in analogy with a natural organism ; and the dominant analogy which presented itself was that economic society was a system of the circulation of wealth. What was

the physiology of this process? The economic system was to human society what the body was to the human personality—the physical basis for the growth of the higher functions; and the condition of social progress was that the economic system should be capable of yielding to the State and the ruling class the largest possible surplus on which the development of the State and of culture could thrive. Quesnay's famous *Tableau Economique* was designed to show how of the annual produce part went by exchange to replace what had been consumed during the previous cycle, another part did not need to go back into the economic system as a condition for restarting a fresh cycle of production and circulation over again, but remained as a *surplus* or *produit net*; and labour was judged "productive" to the extent that it yielded such a surplus. What commerce and manufacture absorbed was what was necessary as fuel to their activities. Manufacture exchanged the products which it did not use itself against the agricultural production which it required to supply its raw materials and the subsistence of its work-people. Manufacture by this act of exchange did no more than give an equivalent for equivalent received, and hence was not productive of any surplus. Said Mirabeau: "I give a length of cloth to a tailor: he will never be able to increase it, so as to make out of it a coat for himself as well as for me." Agriculture, on its side, exchanged a part of its products against manufactures which it needed for the maintenance of agriculture and the agricultural population, such as tools and clothing. But this part of its produce which it exchanged against manufactures, *plus* what it used itself for subsistence and seed-corn, did not exhaust the whole of the produce of the land: a third part went to the landowning class as rent, without any exchange of equivalents. This was the essential surplus, or *produit net*, of the economic system; and agriculture alone yielded this surplus. Progress consisted in the continual enlargement of this *produit net*.

These ideas have been so often misunderstood by later economists, that the Physiocrats are frequently assigned only a modest place in the hierarchy of political economy. Economic text-books customarily pass them by with a reproof for being so stupid as to assert that agriculture alone was "productive," thereby missing the essential definition of "productive" as creative of surplus or *produit net*, and missing, too, the whole fundamental significance of the distinction between surplus and gross produce and cost, as the unifying concept of political economy. And in tracing this surplus to agriculture alone the Physiocrats were asserting nothing so silly as their traducers claim: it was a concept born from, and appropriate to, economic society before the French Revolution, when manufacture on a capitalist basis was still in its infancy and land rent was the essential basis of the income of the ruling class. In the history of ideology it represents an interesting transitional philosophy lying between the old epoch and the new. Formally, by its insistence on the importance of agriculture and of land rent, it seemed to rest upon the aristocratic society of the past. Certainly it contained no prophecy of nineteenth century industrialism or of the needs and functions of a new bourgeois class. Indeed, what grounds for such ideas were there in eighteenth century France? But in its implied insistence on removing feudal restrictions on agricultural development and restrictions on

capital investment in farming, in its emphasis on freedom of commerce and on land rent as the appropriate basis of taxation, in its concept of a " natural " economic order which would " work of itself " unaided by authoritarian control, its significance was revolutionary. In the realm of economic ideas, it played the same rôle of John the Baptist to the coming bourgeois revolution that Voltaire and Rousseau played in the realm of political ideas.

Adam Smith (1723–1790), who was considerably influenced by the Physiocrats, was much more concerned with composing a commentary on specific economic questions and in advancing a practical thesis than in establishing a conceptual unity. In this he was fully in the tradition of English empiricism. At the same time, his treatment was more comprehensive in the range of practical issues he touched upon, more thorough in its detail, and his championing of the new bourgeois philosophy of economic freedom was much more explicit. His enquiry into the causes of the wealth of nations produced a number of sound empirical generalisations about the division of labour and the accumulation of capital, a vigorous criticism of Mercantilism, and an acute analysis of the effects of different forms of taxation. Temperamentally he differed considerably from the Physiocrats, at any rate from Quesnay. His empiricism even had a touch of atomism about it. He was at any rate quite willing to be eclectic where convenience seemed to demand it. The only considerable point of doctrine on which he differed from the Physiocrats was in their statement that agriculture alone was " productive " ; but true to his temperament he left the matter there and developed the concept of a *produit net* in manufacture no further. Ricardo (1772–1823), on the other hand, whose essentially continental temperament was in many ways the antithesis of that of Adam Smith, was much more in the direct tradition of the Physiocrats (*i.e.* in the manner of his approach, and in his method, rather than in his conclusions). He was concerned to establish a unitary principle by which to interpret all the major phenomena of the economic system. In particular, he was concerned, like the Physiocrats, with the problem of the distribution of wealth. In his treatment *produit net*, or rent, assumed specifically the garb of an exaction from the industrious classes for the benefit of the passive landowning class. This was an important shift of perspective. In his theory of Profit he virtually advanced a second species of *produit net*—an implication which Marx was quick to develop—the *produit net* of manufacture. But this species had essential peculiarities, even if it belonged to the same broader genus. As it represented the income of the bourgeoisie, the accumulators of industrial capital and the pioneers of industrial advance, its increase constituted a desirable engine of progress, whereas rent, which fed a passive and reactionary aristocracy, was a tax on progress. Ricardo was *par excellence* the economic prophet of the industrial bourgeoisie.

THE THEORY OF VALUE

The Physiocratic analysis clearly turned on the distinction between surplus and cost and on the notion of equivalence. In Quesnay's circulation process the actual equivalence established on the market in the

exchange of one commodity against another was taken for granted. But such a market equivalence was not a stable thing : cloth did not retain an invariable value in terms of corn, but changed from year to year, even possibly from week to week. What was the secret of such changes ? Was there some fundamental, some " natural " basis of equivalence which market value might not always adequately express ? Was there a sense in which corn might sell above its value and cloth below it ? If so, might not a concealed surplus lie behind the act of exchange ?

Such considerations led directly to the search for a theory of value, which became the primary concern and the essential framework of classical Political Economy. Preoccupied with ideas of " natural law," the political economists came to conceive of a " natural value," or principle of economic equivalence, which was not necessarily synonymous with actual realised " market values " and would only be completely realised on the market in a " natural order "—the ideal *laissez-faire* individualist system. And since such a value was a principle of " natural law," it necessarily had something essentially proper, just and harmonious about it. Just as natural science dealt with such properties as " length " and " weight," it seemed that economic science ought to be able to base itself on the basic fact of " value." " Intrinsic value " was commonly distinguished from " extrinsic value " (or actual exchange-value). Petty (1623–1687) used the interesting distinction between " Natural Cheapness (which) depends upon the few or more hands requisite to produce the necessities of nature, as corn is cheaper where a man produces corn for 10 than where he can do the like but for 6," and " Political Cheapness (which) depends upon the paucity of the Supernumary Interlopers into any trade over and above all that are necessary." Much effort has subsequently been expended in demonstrating that the classical economists were confused when they spoke of a " measure of value," by which they sometimes meant the " cause of value " and at other times the measuring rod (be it corn or labour or gold) in which value was expressed. Probably they did not analyse their concept very deeply ; it is easy in language, and consequently in thought, to confuse, say, length, or spatial extension, with the conventional foot, yard and furlong measures. This confusion, however, was not very serious to their reasoning ; and the criticism neglects what was the essence of their point of view. The thing, the quantity, which constituted the " intrinsic value," in so far as it could be separately abstracted, *ipso facto* constituted an invariable measure of " value " too ; just as a pound weight constitutes weight, and measures it at the same time. But the confusion of which the earlier economists definitely were guilty was between cost and value. It was distinctly tempting to identify the two : the distinction between gross produce and net produce turned on the concept of a cost which consisted in what was " necessary " to keep the productive system working—the essential fodder to the economic machine. In each cycle of production a certain amount is put into the economic system—seed-corn, subsistence for the workers, etc. In the course of the productive cycle enough is yielded to replace this original cost or outlay, *plus* something in addition—the *produit net*. So long as this process is conceived in terms of a single composite commodity, corn, as it was with Sir William Petty and to some extent with the Physiocrats,

the concept was an easy one. The real cost of a thing consisted in the outlay of corn necessary to finance its production, and it was a reasonable step to assume that this constituted the " natural value " of a commodity.[1] But as soon as one included other commodities than corn in " necessary " subsistence, the simplicity of the explanation broke down : one was involved in the circular problem of first establishing the equivalence of the various commodities (say corn, meat and cloth) which constituted cost. To resolve this difficulty, a transition was accordingly made from the corn necessary to feed labourers to the actual labour as constituting the fundamental " cost " and the basis of " natural value." Labour was essentially the creative agency in all production, the *sine qua non* of converting what nature offered into the actual requirements of man. The " real cost " to mankind of winning a livelihood consisted in the amount of labour it was necessary to expend ; and it seemed " natural " that different commodities should be estimated or valued in proportion to the labour their creation required.

But the earlier idea of cost as " subsistence " still remained to sow confusion. From the standpoint of an employer and the employing class as a whole, " cost " in the last analysis consisted in the outlay of subsistence for workers—the necessary condition of production. What the workers returned to him by their efforts over and above this constituted for the employing class the net produce of the system—the source of profit on capital. Marx was the first to point out this confusion when he charged Ricardo with confusing labour as the basis of value (the actual quantitative expenditure of effort) with the wages paid to labourers (the value of their labour-power).[2]

When Ricardo sought to show that in a " natural order " commodities tended to exchange at their labour equivalents, he did so on the assumption that competition would tend to establish a single level of wages (for labour of the same quality) and a single level of profits throughout different lines of production. Since the relative amount of wages expended, say, to produce a yard of cloth and a bushel of corn would be proportional to the labour employed, and since the profit, being the same rate on capital outlay in the two cases, would be proportional to the outlay in wages, it followed that the relative values (wages plus profit) of corn and cloth would be proportional to the labour involved in their production. Summarily, his argument amounted to an identification of money cost and real cost : market prices would be proportional to money costs (wages), and money costs proportional to labour expended.

This coincidence of normal market value with labour value applied so long as fixed capital, embodied in machinery and buildings, bore the same ratio to capital laid out as wages in all industries. But this is clearly not so : in agriculture or watch-making the ratio of labour to machinery

[1] For this interpretation of classical doctrine and for several other ideas which follow I am indebted to Mr. P. Sraffa, of Cambridge.

[2] The assertion frequently made that Marx was a man of hasty reading and understanding, who based his theories on one or two imperfectly understood ideas of Ricardo, is quite contrary to the fact. One need only read the very detailed and acute analysis of the Physiocrats, Smith, Ricardo and several less-known economists in Marx's *Theorien über den Mehrwert* (almost unknown in this country), to realise the absurdity of the assertion.

will be relatively high ; in iron or cotton production the ratio will be relatively low. Ricardo mentioned this as an " exception "—in his first edition as an exception of minor importance, insufficient to invalidate his general principle, in his third edition admitting it as a more serious modification of his theory. And a serious modification it certainly was. For, to the extent that the ratio between machinery and labour varies, commodities will actually exchange on the market, not in proportion to the labour expended to produce them (including the stored-up labour embodied in the machinery), but some at a higher value and some at a lower. Where a relatively large amount of capital is locked up in buildings and plant, the need for this capital to earn a normal rate of profit (otherwise it will eventually migrate elsewhere) will require these commodities to exchange at a higher value against commodities produced with less machinery. The coincidence between labour values and market values breaks down : if labour constitutes the fundamental " real cost," then the equivalence which the market expresses is not this more fundamental equivalence. Instead, market values = wages *plus* normal rate of profit on the capital employed.

RICARDO AND RENT OF LAND

But what of rent of land ? Did rent arise because agricultural commodities exchanged on the market at a higher value, relatively to their labour equivalence, than manufactures ? Did it arise because agricultural values equalled not only wages *plus* a normal rate of profit on capital employed, but wages *plus* profit *plus* rent as well ? In other words, was rent extracted because exchange on the market between agriculture and industry caused the former to give less than an equivalent for what it received in exchange ? Ricardo formally answered " No " to this question by an ingenious analytical device. How, indeed, could he admit the inconsistency of a " natural order " producing " unnatural " exchange equivalents ? But the answer was entirely dependent on the ingenuity of the device, and not independent of it. This device was the concept of the differential, so dear to the economist heart ever since. Rent arose because of differences in the fertility of different soils. As the market for corn expanded, the more fertile soils being fully tilled, cultivation extended to inferior soils where the expenditure of labour required to produce a bushel of corn was greater than on the superior land. The value of corn was determined by the labour expended at the margin of cultivation, *i.e.* under the least favourable natural conditions. But since the price of corn in the market equalled the cost on the inferior land, the corn grown on the better land, where the cost per bushel was less, yielded a surplus. This constituted economic rent and accrued to the landowner : directly if he was both owner and cultivator, indirectly through the competition of farmers for the better land if the owner leased to a tenant. Rent therefore figured as a product of Nature's bounty, which the landowning class was able to annex as attribute of its right of ownership. And as the progress of society increased the valuation placed upon these scarce qualities of nature, resort had to be made to less and less fertile soils, the margin of cultivation was extended, and rent tended to rise. With the march of industrialism

wages would tend to remain at, or near, subsistence level (owing to the law of population and the competition of labourers for employment), the rate of profit (with the progressive accumulation of capital, fall of price and rise in cost of agricultural production) would tend to fall, and at the same time rents would tend to rise.

The exclusion of rent from the problem of market value—excluding it as a price-determining element with the dictum, which has sown so much confusion, " that rent does not enter into cost of production "—was entirely formal. It was a trick of analytical framing, a trick of definition, the simplest of tautologies, and nothing more. If price equalled cost at the margin, then rent had nothing to do with it, for the simple reason that rent did not appear at the margin. But it still remained true that, if one spoke of the *average* cost of producing agricultural products, rent arose because a *smaller* quantity of cost-equivalents was yielded by agriculture in market exchange against a given cost equivalent yielded by manufacture. In other words, rent arose because the price of corn was raised *above* the *average* cost of producing that corn. But there was this much to be said for the Ricardian tautology : the reason for this raised agricultural price was the limitation of natural resources and was not the work of alterable man-made institutions or man-made restrictions. The landlord, as owner of scarce natural properties, was a passive not a deliberating agent in the process ; and the emergence of rent was consistent with, and not a violation of, a " natural order " of exchange-, or value-, ratios.

But Ricardo was less concerned with the *qualitative* characteristics of rent and profit than with the factors which influenced changes in them, and with emphasising the class antagonism which lay between them. And here he was most conspicuously champion of the new industrial order. His theory of rent as a surplus at the expense of the industrial classes, and a tax on their income, was heavy theoretical artillery against the landowning interests and against legislation, such as the Corn Laws, which by raising rent lowered profit. He was the bourgeois economist *par excellence* because he presented, more explicitly and fully than anyone before him, the " natural economic order " as a conceptual unity, and presented progress as essentially consisting in the process of capitalist industrialisation. And with him bourgeois Political Economy reached its zenith. His immediate followers did little more than repeat and elaborate his ideas. J. S. Mill (1806–1873), for all his undoubted qualities, was an essentially cautious and unoriginal mind, which played the rôle of careful editor, commentator and interpreter to Political Economy, rather than an inventor of new ideas.

AFTER RICARDO

The most significant characteristic of classical Political Economy after Ricardo has usually been treated as a marked improvement. Certainly it followed as an attempt to avoid the *impasse* which Ricardo had reached in his attempt to identify market values with real cost. Viewed in correct perspective, I believe, this is to be regarded as a symptom of decline, since it constituted, in effect, an abandonment of the most fundamental part of the problem which underlay the Physiocratic enquiry and a passing over into empiricism and eclecticism. The attempted solution was really

no solution, but a retreat from the issue. It consisted in virtually abandoning the conception of objective real cost. " Real cost " was retained in name, but was given an altered content which was sufficient to change and to destroy its essential significance. Adam Smith was first responsible for importing the phrase " toil and trouble " into the problem of real cost. But when he referred to labour as the basis of value, he seemed more frequently to use it in the original objective sense of concrete material expenditure of human energy than in any subjective psychological sense. With Ricardo's successors and interpreters, the conception of real cost became explicitly and completely shifted on to a subjective basis. McCulloch had defined " real value " as regulated by the " quantity of labour required " ; but at the same time he seems to have defined Smith's " toil and trouble " as measured by " the sacrifice to those by whom it [the labour] is performed."[1] And after him " real cost " became explicitly something psychological—a disinclination, or *malaise*, in the mind. Given this shift of content, the logical next step was Senior's " abstinence," or refraining from present consumption in order to save and invest, as a second category of real cost, this " abstinence " affording the " explanation " of profit and removing it from the category of a surplus. Real cost = labour + abstinence. Money cost and price = wages + profit. *Therefore*, market values coincide with real cost. The Ricardian dilemma seemed to be solved. But the solution was no solution. Once the unitary conception of real cost had been abandoned, the possibility of using it as a concept of equivalence between commodities necessarily broke down : to enquire whether or not things exchanged in the market on the basis of these equivalents became otiose. One now had two dissimilar so-called quantities—" labour " and " abstinence "—qualitatively different. How to equate them to form a single quantity, real cost ? Was an hour of labour to be equated to an abstinence from the enjoyment of £1 for an hour, or for a day, a week or a year ? " Real cost " remained merely as a catalogue-device to embrace two disparate categories which could only be equated in terms of money—*i.e.* in terms of their market values, which were themselves dependent, of course, on the market values of the latter. If the former reflected the latter, how could they be based on the latter ? What meaning had enquiries about the identity of the two ? Perhaps a Hedonist psychology (which explained human behaviour as motivated by calculations of pleasure and pain) could afford a solution by reducing both " abstinence " and " work " to terms of a single quantity—" Pain." But this solution, though it was suggested, was never very explicitly defined. If it had been, the concept of sacrifice would probably have had to be shorn of much of the meaning generally imparted to it. At any rate, it is highly questionable whether any such solution would find acceptance to-day. As it was, Senior had considerable difficulty, I believe an insuperable difficulty, in delimiting his concept of abstinence. Was there a " sacrifice," or " real cost," involved in lending property that was inherited, as well as in lending property that had been accumulated out of one's income ? If so, where was the difference between lending a factory or a railway and lending land ? If not (as Senior decided), why so arbitrary a boundary to the virtues of sacrifice ?

[1] J. R. McCulloch : *Principles of Political Economy* (1825), pp. 215–217.

So long as real cost meant " sacrifice," there seemed no solution : one cannot sacrifice unless one has something to sacrifice; and sacrifice becomes simply a " function " of available opportunities, variable with those opportunities and constituting nothing fundamental at all. The search for a theory of value became merely an empirical one—a collection of the various proximate causes of changes in market price—which could afford no judgment as to the " natural " fitness, appropriateness, desirableness or otherwise of the system of exchange equivalents which the market established. Moreover, once an adequate system of real cost was gone, there was no basis for any fundamental distinction between gross and net produce : the concept of surplus no longer had a consistent meaning.

MARX AND SURPLUS-VALUE

The tradition carried down from the Physiocrats through Ricardo passed not to Ricardo's direct descendants but to Marx (1818–1883), who took the Ricardian system, sheared it of its " natural law " framework, and revolutionised its qualitative significance. Marx was remarkable precisely for these features of his work, which have most rarely been appreciated ; but set against the background of the type of questions which classical Political Economy was concerned to answer, his system can justly be said to have crowned the classical edifice. Certainly Marx crowned it in a peculiarly Hegelian way : in the manner in which he claimed in his philosophy of history to have turned Hegel upside down—to have stood him on his feet where he found him standing on his head by substituting a materialistic interpretation of history for an idealistic one.

Marx did not start from the concept of natural order underlying the capitalist system ; for him capitalism did not constitute the final term of economic progress, but was historically relative and transitional. Hence he was biassed by no desire to identify market prices with real cost. Labour in an objective sense—the expenditure of human energy of muscle or nerve—constituted value, that is the social valuation to be placed on the commodities which were the fruit of this labour. It was the fundamental equivalent, the criterion by which one could judge the significance of the price relationships established by the market under varying sets of conditions. Without it there was no ultimate criterion. One could not say whether a certain act of exchange represented a passing of equivalents or not ; and hence without it the Physiocratic concept of " surplus," as something which accrued without any equivalent being absorbed in return, would have no meaning. Under certain sets of conditions,[1] market prices would coincide with values. Exchange would be of equivalent for equivalent ; but by no means under all sets of conditions. It is precisely in the failure to appreciate this that the monstrous misapprehensions which affected nearly all Marx's subsequent critics consist. Marx never identified market value with labour value, as Ricardo tried to do. How then could there be a " Great Contradiction " when Marx, in vol. iii. of *Capital*, developing what Ricardo had admitted as an

[1] *e.g.* what Marx, a little obscurely, termed " a society of simple commodity production " in vol. i. of *Capital*.

" exception," specifically stated that under conditions of modern capitalism commodities did not exchange at their values, but at what he called their " price of production ? " This latter quantity equalled wages *plus* a normal rate of profit on the capital employed, and diverged from " value " to the extent that the ratio of machinery to labour—what he termed the " organic composition of capital "—varied in different lines of industry.

Marx's problem was to determine the distinguishing characteristic, the social significance, of capitalist profit. If it was a surplus in the Physiocratic sense of values paid to someone without a giving of equivalents in exchange, how did it arise and on what conditions did its emergence depend ? His method was to take a " simple commodity society," where commodities exchanged at their values (avoiding the complication of different compositions of capital), and to enquire how a surplus could arise on such assumptions. It could not arise in the course of exchange, because this was an exchange of equivalents. The answer he gave was that it arose from the peculiarity of labour-power as a commodity in producing more commodities than were used up to produce the original labour-power—used up in the subsistence necessary to replace the energy expended. Labour-power produced a value greater than its own value. The capitalist purchased labour at its value ; and this constituted for him the primary expense of production. The value of labour-power was itself determined by the amount of labour required to produce it—that is, by the subsistence necessary to maintain the worker in working efficiency under any given set of social conditions and at any given time. The capitalist was able to annex, as his profit, the difference between this (*viz.*, wages) and the gross value which labour, when set to work, produced. Wages were the payment of equivalent for equivalent—subsistence for the worker replacing the energy he expended in his employer's service. Profit, in contrast, arose from the peculiar quality of the commodity labour-power that, when put to use, this labour created a value greater than its own value—profit arose from an exploitation of the difference between the value of labour and its product. Hence its qualitative peculiarity, which he characterised by the term " surplus value " ; hence a class antagonism between receivers of surplus value and the producers of it, which in our own day is more significant than Ricardo's antagonism between landlord and capitalist.

But labour-power only figured as a commodity, bought and sold in a labour market, under a definite set of historical conditions—when historical processes had created a propertyless proletariat without other means of livelihood, on the one hand, and a propertied class on the other hand. The emergence of profit, therefore, was not a " natural " category rooted in a natural order of things : it was a category of income peculiar to a particular stage of historical institutions, to a particular form of class society.

In the later stages of his analysis Marx introduced the conditions which caused market prices to diverge from value-equivalents. Chief of these was the need imposed by the competition of capitals for profit to be spread out so as to yield an equal rate per £, as water finds a common level given a sufficiency of connecting pipes. This caused commodities, which had

been produced with a relatively large proportion of fixed capital to labour, to sell above their value-equivalent, and commodities which had been produced with a relatively small proportion of fixed capital to labour, to sell below their value-equivalent. But this divergence was not of a kind to invalidate his central theorem—to upset the character of profit as surplus-value. It effected an altered distribution of this surplus between different lines of industry and altered proportions of production in different lines ; but it did not affect the size of surplus-value in the mass.

THE NEW ECONOMICS

In the last three decades of the nineteenth century Political Economy underwent an important change, which has a different and a deeper significance than is customarily realised. Simultaneously and independently the so-called Austrian School, on the one hand, with Menger, Boehm-Bawerk and Wieser as its giants, and Jevons in England, were building the new frame-work within which Economics (to use Jevons' new term) has moved ever since. Closely on their heels followed Marshall in this country and Walras and Pareto, of the so-called Lausanne School, on the Continent.

At first sight the change seems mainly a formal one. The new school of thought has frequently been referred to as the school of Marginal Utility to describe the two most important features of the new theories. The first noticeable difference between the old economists and the new consisted in an important shift of emphasis from supply and cost to consumers' demand and utility as the determinants of exchange-value. Value was no longer regarded as determined by labour, or even by labour *plus* abstinence, but by the capacity of a commodity to afford satisfaction to consumers (*i.e.*, its utility). This represented a psychological and Hedonist approach to the problem from the standpoint of consumers' desires. The second feature of the new theories was their emphasis on the effect of changes at the *margin*—for instance, the loss or gain of utility resulting from " a little less " or " a little more " of a certain commodity (say, cloth or corn or tea) ; and it was the utility of " a little less " or " a little more " (the *marginal utility*) which was regarded as important in the determination of value. This emphasis on the margin was the result of an attempt to construct economic science in a mathematical framework. Jevons (1835–1882), for instance, was at considerable pains to prove that economics must be a mathematical science in *form*, whether the economist actually spoke in words or in algebraic symbols. He accordingly employed the mathematical conceptions of the differential calculus and of functional equations as a convenient analytical technique ; and since the differential calculus deals in terms of small increments and decrements (of " a little more " or " a little less " of something or other), economists tended to frame their theories in terms of marginal changes of this kind.

But the change went deeper than this : it was a change of conceptual approach, and a change in the type of question that was being answered. The new economists were not concerned primarily with conceptions of " real cost " and " surplus " ; they were not concerned with a principle of intrinsic value as a key to the problem of equivalence. They were concerned with a more empirical enquiry—the causes of changes in

market values. This enquiry bounded their horizon so far as the theoretical core of economics was concerned; and all the major economic problems could be reduced to these terms. It was natural that, in pursuit of such an enquiry, the analogy of a theory of equilibrium should be suggested from mechanics. " Value " represented a certain " position " or " level " which, in equilibrium, a commodity occupied relatively to the remainder of commodities. In this sense " value " was always a " relative " value; and the concept of " absolute value " as a sort of " fixed star " in the economic universe was meaningless. The purpose of economic theory was to postulate the series of equilibria which would result under various possible sets of conditions; just as a theory of mechanics enables one to calculate that, given a collection of forces at work in a certain arrangement, things will come to rest in a certain equilibrium position. But, as everyone knows who has ever played with a collection of pulleys or thought about the structure of a suspension bridge, it may not always be possible to calculate a " stable equilibrium " where opposing strains and stresses balance one another; while in certain very complicated situations one may not know enough of the facts to be able to calculate what the new equilibrium will be, if one starts a movement by displacing one of the forces at work. To be able to calculate an equilibrium, therefore, the situation one is dealing with and one's knowledge about it must fulfil certain conditions. Whether these conditions are fulfilled or not is the criterion by which one judges whether a theory of equilibrium in economics, as in mechanics, is *adequate* or not.

The attempt to calculate an equilibrium in a given situation is comparable to the familiar attempt in algebra to " solve " a system of simultaneous equations. In these equations there are a number of " unknown variables " (usually written as x, y, z, etc.) and a number of " constants " (usually written as a, b, c, etc.). About the former, it is assumed, one knows initially nothing at all. The latter are part of the given *data* of the problem: some particular value, or number, is, or can be, assigned to them; and the actual arithmetical " solution " of the equations will differ according to the value assignable to these " constants." The " solution " consists in " determining " (or finding the value of) the unknowns (the x, y, z, etc.). A simple rule exists as to whether a system of equations is capable of being solved: it has a solution if *the number of equations (or known relationships) is equal to the number of unknown variables which have to be determined.* And this is the criterion of whether a theory of equilibrium is " adequate " or not.

Economic theory has employed the conception of " functional equations " (one quantity is expressed as a " function " of another if the one varies, or moves, with the other in some particular way). Moreover, it has employed functional equations of an " arbitrary " or general type, which merely postulate *some* functional relationship between quantities, and not any *one particular* relationship. By this means it has made its conclusions of a more general character—a given theory is made to cover a wider range of possible cases. For instance, economic theory may assume that consumers' demand for " a little more " of x will decrease with the quantity of it that is offered for sale, but without specifying the precise nature of that variation of demand; and in this way x can be taken to represent

a wider range of particular cases (*e.g.*, corn or cloth or tea or gramophones or labour).

In the new economics, therefore, it was no longer a question of searching for a single " cause " of value, a primary constituent or principle to which all questions of exchange and distribution could be related. There was no longer a need (at any rate for the theory of value as now conceived) to analyse everything into terms of what was virtually a single factor of production—a common term of real cost in relation to which qualitative differences could be resolved. It was a question of grouping together certain functional relationships, all of which, in combination and " simultaneously," determined value. It was a matter of pure convenience how many factors of production there were, provided only one could make sufficient assumptions about the supply of them. All that was necessary was to be able to postulate a sufficient number of conditions and to find the right number of independent variables for a determinate equilibrium to be established. In the search for these independent factors Jevons and the Austrians transferred their attention from conditions of production to consumption, from supply to demand, and sought the important determining factor in what underlay consumers' demand. And here Hedonism gave them an important clue. Consumers' demand was a reflection of consumers' desire ; and desire, in turn, (at least in rational men) was rooted in the pleasure which the object of desire afforded. This capacity of affording pleasure Jevons termed Utility. The earlier economists had indicated that value could not be a function of utility, since some commodities, like water, had a high utility but little or no value, and others, like diamonds, had small utility but high value ; and Marx had pointed out that utility was not a quantity and could not therefore bear a relation to a quantity value. The discovery which Jevons and the Austrians claimed to enunciate was that price was a function, not of aggregate utility (which it obviously could not be), but of the *increment of utility*—of the additional utility afforded to the consumer by the marginal unit of a given supply.

For instance, of a given supply of fish offered for sale on a market on a particular day the marginal utility of the supply of fish would be the utility to some consumer or other of the *n*th or final lot of fish sold. (By *n*th is meant, that, if there are 100 fish, it is the hundredth ; if 1,000 fish, the thousandth, and so on.) Price could not be greater than this (if the fish is marketed at a single price), otherwise the final lot of fish would not find a purchaser who thought it worth while (as measured by its utility) to buy more fish at this price ; while on the other hand the seller of fish, desiring to get the highest price he could, would presumably not part with his fish at a price appreciably below this. Whether utility itself was a quantity or not, this marginal increment of it was capable of being expressed in quantitative form. Jevons said : " Repeated reflection and enquiry has led me to the somewhat novel opinion that value depends entirely upon utility. . . . Labour is found often to determine value, but only in an indirect manner by varying the degree of utility of the commodity through an increase or limitation of the supply.[1]

The starting-point of the new theory was an empirical observation

[1] W. S. Jevons : *Theory of Political Economy*, (1871), pp. 1–2.

about the nature of desires, which has been variously described as the Law of Diminishing Utility or the Law of Satiety of Wants. The utility of a thing would generally increase with the amount of it possessed and enjoyed, but generally at a diminishing rate, the increment of utility afforded by an increment of supply tending towards zero at some near or distant point—the point of satiety. It was this increment of utility at any one point—"the final degree of utility," as Jevons called it, or "marginal utility," as Marshall termed it—which determined value, since this fixed the worth of a little more, or a little less, of the thing to the person in question, and so determined the rate at which he was willing to exchange it against something else—against money or other commodities. For instance, suppose two persons A and B exchanging corn against cloth. One could express the utility of corn and of cloth to each of the parties as some function of the respective quantities of corn and cloth possessed. The seller of corn will find it in his interest to continue to give corn in exchange for cloth up to the point where the utility of the bushel of corn he is parting with is equal to that of the quantity of cloth he obtains in return; and similarly for the other party. Hence the position of equilibrium—the point where exchange between them will stop—will be that rate of exchange where the marginal utility of corn and cloth is equal for each of the two parties. Hence, given this condition and the form of the utility function for the two parties, a determinate equilibrium—the amount of corn and cloth exchanged—can be calculated. Expressed symbolically in terms of two commodities a and b, we have the following conditions of equilibrium :—

$$\frac{\phi_1(x_1)}{\psi_1(y_1)} = \frac{x}{y} = \frac{\phi_2(x_2)}{\psi_2(y_2)}$$

where $\phi_1(x_1)$ and $\psi_1(y_1)$ represent the utility-functions of a and b to A, and $\phi_2(x_2)$ and $\psi_2(y_2)$ the utility-functions of a and b to B. In graphical form the relation between the pair of utility-functions to A can be expressed as a curve, and similarly for B; and the equilibrium will be represented as the point of intersection of the curves.

In this problem there are two equations and two unknowns, so that the equations yield a determinate solution.[1] Some economists have been quick to point out, as a corollary of this reasoning, that this equilibrium-rate of exchange, which the conditions of a free market tend to establish, is that which gives the maximum common gain of utility to the persons concerned in the exchange—in other words, that which coincides with what is socially desirable from a Hedonist point of view. Any interference with a free market and the prices which it tends to establish will accordingly reduce, and not augment, this common gain.

Prices are viewed simply as the resultant of subjective valuations in the minds of the individuals concerned. Expressed in the simple form of two commodities being bartered against one another, the problem does not give much room for dispute; and in the manner of treatment of the simplest case the underlying unity of modern economics is typified. But when

[1] This was the view of Jevons. It has since been established that under direct barter the conditions do not suffice to give a single solution.

of Marginal Productivity." Given the supply of, say, labour, the supply of labour will tend to be distributed between various sorts of production, so that the value of an increment of product yielded by an increment of labour (its marginal productivity) in all uses is equal; and the value of this increment which the final or marginal unit of labour is responsible for adding to the total produce determines the value of this factor of production. There are, then, n additional unknowns in the problem (the price of the n factors of production) and n additional functional equations.

Walras, and later Cassel, introduced in addition the conception of the "technical coefficients." The production of different commodities will require the factors of production to be combined in different proportions: corn production will require more land relatively to capital than will the production of cloth. The "technical coefficients" for commodity x can be expressed by a series representing the quantities of the different factors required to produce a unit of x. The weighted average for all commodities (x, y, z) will then give the "technical coefficients" for the economic system in general. Every change in technique will change these "technical coefficients" in particular industries and in industry in general—for instance a new invention which increases the proportion of mechanical power to human labour in some industry or group of industries; and these changes will affect both the prices of commodities and the relative prices of the factors of production.

Jevons, on the other hand, did not make this simplifying assumption concerning the supply of the factors of production, except in the case of land. The supply of labour, for instance, was likely to change with changes in wages, according as a higher wage gave a greater inducement to work harder and longer. The supply of labour, therefore, constituted an additional unknown quantity to determine. Here Jevons consistently applied the same Hedonist concept as he had applied to the problem of demand. As demand could be expressed as a function of "pleasure" or "utility," so the supply of labour could be expressed as a function of the "pain," or "disutility," involved in work. Not the supply of labour itself, but the disutility-function of work, was for him the independent constant by which the problem was resolved. "Labour," he wrote, "will be carried on until the increase of utility from any of the employments just balances the increase of pain. This amounts to saying that . . . the increase of utility derived from the first employment of labour is equal in amount of feeling to . . . the increase of labour by which it is obtained."[1]

This method of handling the problem was extended by Marshall, and with him it became the basis for an attempt to redress the classical conception of "surplus," and to effect a synthesis between the modern and the classical school. We have already noticed that it was never perfectly clear whether the early economists, when they referred to "real cost," conceived of it in an objective or in a subjective sense. In the main, it seems to have had the significance for them of some objective quantity "used up," *e.g.*, corn or the expenditure of physical energy. But already with Smith and McCulloch there were signs of a shifting of the idea to a purely subjective content. With Senior the identification of "real cost" with "sacrifice" was explicit. Jevons' "disutility" and Marshall's

[1] *Theory of Political Economy*, p. 185.

" efforts and sacrifices " were in the direct line of descent from this ; and with them the exclusively psychological content of the idea was made abundantly clear. " Sacrifice " was measured, not in any objective quantity, but by the pain or aversion aroused in the mind of the person responsible for this effort or abstinence. For Marshall the labour of the worker and the saving of the investor and the risk-taking of the *entrepreneur* (the " undertaker " of the risks of a business) all involved such a " real cost." To persuade the worker to work, the investor to save, the *entrepreneur* to be enterprising, a reward equivalent to the sacrifice—a utility to balance the disutility—was necessary ; and this necessary reward, required to evoke various quantities of labour, capital and enterprise, could be represented as a supply-function or as a schedule of supply-prices. Marshall said : " The exertion of all the different kinds of labour that are directly or indirectly involved in making it, together with the abstinences, or rather the waitings, required for saving the capital used in making it : all these efforts and sacrifices together will be called the *real cost of production* of the commodity. The sum of money that has to be paid for these efforts and sacrifices will be called either its money cost of production or its expenses of production ; they are the prices which have to be paid in order to call forth an adequate supply of the efforts and waitings that are required for making it : or, in other words, they are its supply-price."[1] The identification of price with " real cost," be it noted, was only at the margin ; and hence the reward of a factor (representing the *marginal* disutility involved in it) would tend to be in excess of the *average* disutility involved. This difference between the sacrifice and reward constituted various species of producers' surplus—a surplus of utility over disutility—which was simply another facet of the so-called consumers' surplus which a consumer enjoyed from the difference between the marginal utility and total utility—the difference between what he pays and what he gets.

Marshall and his school have sometimes been termed the neo-classicists, in contrast to the Austrians and certain of their American followers, such as J. B. Clark and T. N. Carver, who explicitly cut themselves adrift from the earlier Political Economy. The grounds for the label consist in his attempt to preserve the classical conceptions of real cost and of rent. Rent of land, in Marshall's treatment, remained qualitatively distinct from the rewards of other factors of production, for the reason that the supply of land was fixed, independent of human action, and that no " real cost "—no " effort or sacrifice "—was involved in the supply of it. It followed, as an important corollary, that economic rent could be taxed, or otherwise removed, without making the supply of land any the less ; whereas to tax wages or interest, by reducing the reward below the necessary supply-price of working and saving, would cause a shrinkage of supply of these factors of production. Marshall was careful, however, to soften the rigidity of the Ricardian distinction. Rent of land appeared to him " not as a thing by itself but as a leading species of a large genus " : elements of " producers' surplus " appeared in incomes earned by other factors of production ; and, in particular, capital sunk in buildings and plant bore all the characteristics of land for the period of

[1] *Principles of Economics*, (1890), p. 339.

durability of such capital (for which reason he coined the term *quasi-rent* to designate a short-period view of the return on capital that is immobilised in fixed forms).

In the treatment adopted by the Austrians, on the other hand, and still more clearly in the case of Cassel, the basis for any such distinction entirely disappears : all returns are equally " surpluses " or equally " necessary expenses." The distinction becomes meaningless, since by hypothesis all the factors of production stand on the same footing. The supply of all of them is assumed to be given : no question of a functional relationship between the supply of them and their reward enters in. Explicitly, such writers have declared that the only cost is the loss of the utilities which a factor could have produced if applied in a *different use* from that to which it is actually applied. Cost is simply the other " side of the shield " from utility : it simply consists of utilities of which one is deprived by adopting a certain course of action. The American economist, Davenport, has analysed all cost as " opportunity cost." Cassel speaks of the " scarcity-principle " as underlying equally the return to all the factors of production ; while in England Wicksteed devoted considerable space to enunciating his thesis that the Ricardian theory of rent was only a special case of the general Theory of Marginal Productivity, and that what could be argued concerning land was equally capable of being argued, on the same assumptions, concerning any of the other factors of production.

GENERAL AND PARTICULAR EQUILIBRIUM

The second set of complications arises when from the simplified case of exchange between two commodities, say cloth and corn, we pass on to more complex considerations of equilibrium in the real world, where purchase and sale of a large range of commodities are continually taking place. In considering the price of any particular commodity, say corn, one must consider it as being exchanged against the whole mass of other commodities or against generalised purchasing power, or money. (The two things come to the same thing, since money has no utility of its own apart from that of the things it can purchase.) Hence the buyers' demand for corn (whether measured in terms of money or of commodities in general) must be expressed as a function not only of the utility of corn, but also of the marginal utility of all other commodities. Any change in the supply, and hence in the marginal utility and price, of any of these other commodities will therefore alter this demand-function. The so-called Lausanne School, represented by Walras and Pareto, have accordingly occupied themselves with this more complex problem of *general equilibrium*, attempting to establish the terms of equilibrium of all commodities by means of a system of simultaneous equations to cover the aggregate of commodities. English and American economists, on the other hand, have in general confined their analysis to the problem of a particular commodity treated in isolation. To make this possible, the assumption is necessary that the price of all other commodities (and hence the marginal utility of money to buyers) is constant ; and this requires the further assumption that the commodity in question is so small a part

of the buyers' total expenditure that a change in *its* price exerts no appreciable influence on the price of other commodities (by affecting the demand for them) or on the marginal utility of money to buyers. Such a reaction is regarded as being so small as to be negligible (what mathematicians call of " the second order of small quantities "). A similar assumption has to be made on the side of supply. It has to be assumed that a change in the output of this particular commodity (say, silk stockings) does not appreciably affect the demand for the factors of production (land, labour, capital) and hence does not alter the price of these latter. This assumption will be valid if the production of the commodity in question occupies only a small part of the factors of production in the community at large. When, however, a commodity such as corn is being considered, which bulks large both in the average consumers' expenditure and in the employment of one or more of the factors of production, this convenient assumption breaks down, and a solution is only possible by the more complex methods of the Lausanne School.

ECONOMICS AS AN APOLOGETIC

As we have mentioned, the exponents of the utility theory have commonly underlined a significant corollary of their theory. They have pointed out that the competitive equilibrium which their equations establish represents the system of prices which yields the greatest common gain (of utility) to all the parties concerned. This can be demonstrated to follow as a direct corollary from the cloth and corn example which was cited above. If the seller of cloth, for instance, stopped his exchange of cloth for corn before the equilibrium (or " normal ") rate of exchange was reached, he would be getting a smaller total utility than he might otherwise have done; for the marginal utility of the cloth he possessed would be less than the utility of the corn he *might* have got had he continued the act of exchange further. This will continue to be true up to the point where the utility of the marginal cloth he parts with is equal to the utility of the corn he gets in exchange. And similarly for the seller of corn. Again, it can be easily demonstrated that the distribution of the factors of production between their various uses in such a way as to equalise their marginal yield is the condition of their maximum productivity. This follows for the reason that, if the marginal unit of labour employed in cultivating, say, potatoes is producing more than the marginal unit of labour employed in cultivating carrots, there will clearly be a gain in shifting labour from carrots to potatoes—a gain which will only cease when labour is so distributed between potato-culture and carrot-culture that the marginal productivity of labour in both directions is equal. Hence, any interference with competitive equilibrium, and with the prices which competition tends to establish, is likely to decrease, rather than to increase, economic welfare.

Such conclusions were clearly of very considerable significance; and it seems evident that to establish these important conclusions was the primary concern of the earlier utility theorists. By the middle of the nineteenth century industrial capitalism had won its battle against the old society. There was no longer much need, at least in England, for a cudgel

against the dominance of the landed interest; while America, having no feudal past to hamper it, was born bourgeois from the colonial days. Nor was there any longer the same need to create economic society as a conceptual unity in antithesis to the old authoritarian sanctions. Men were no longer interested in precisely those solutions which were the concern of bourgeois economists a hundred years before. Moreover, the tool which Ricardo had fashioned had been subsequently turned to dangerous uses in the hands of Marx. The new subjective economics, therefore, served a double purpose. It provided a new justification of the bourgeois order, and one more convincing to an age grown sceptical of the "unseen hand" of "natural law." At the same time, as an analysis of market price it provided a technique better suited to the more detailed, more microscopic problems with which the economic system in its maturity increasingly engrossed the minds of its servants.

Actually this imposing apology of *laissez-faire* is hardly more than a clever sleight-of-hand. The corollary follows simply because the necessary conditions to support the corollary are included in the assumptions from which one starts. And since these conditions are implicit in the assumptions, rather than explicit, the corollary can be produced in that atmosphere of surprise which (along with his "patter") is so commonly the conjuror's most valuable stock-in-trade. If two persons are equally situated, they will, by hypothesis, continue to perform the act of exchange with one another until it does not profit them to continue the transaction further; and therefore it follows that their common gain would be smaller if they carried on their transactions either further than or not so far as this point. On the other hand, if the two parties are unequally situated, there is nothing to say that the outcome of free exchange between them would not represent a smaller gain than if they had been less unequally situated, or to say that *laissez-faire* will do anything but perpetuate this inferior state of affairs. Again, Professor J. B. Clark may assure us that he can convincingly demonstrate (by the Theory of Marginal Productivity) that "a natural law exists" which causes "free competition (to tend) to give to labour what labour creates, to capital what capital creates and to *entrepreneurs* what the co-ordinating function creates"[1]; but the fact remains that if society were not a class society, where "labour" is provided by a proletarian class possessing no land or capital, the "creation" attributable to labour and the "creation" attributable to capital would be considerably different from what they are. Here, in particular, the demonstration of an "economic harmony" is a mere trick of words.

Increasingly, indeed, to-day economists are stressing "exceptions" to this supposed harmony of *laissez-faire*; even while they still customarily admit *laissez-faire* as a "general principle." Marshall himself was particularly careful to fence his analysis with a careful regard for the "exceptions" and modifications which special conditions (ignored in the more abstract formulation of theory) imposed. And Professor Pigou, developing certain hints of Marshall, has (in his *Economics of Welfare*) turned a powerful battery against the *laissez-faire* position, stressing the inadequacy of *laissez-faire* to achieve the *optimum* result in the case of

[1] *Distribution of Wealth* (1899), p. 3.

industries subject to " increasing returns " (or decreasing cost) as the scale of production is expanded and in the case of various social costs and social utilities which do not figure in the economic calculations of individuals. At any rate, with the competitive capitalism of the nineteenth century passing increasingly into the monopolist capitalism of the twentieth century, discussions of the value of competitive equilibrium retain little more than their academic interest; and the increasing need of the new capitalist forms for systems and methods of economic control, whether by the State, public corporations, or trade associations, has rendered the vindication of *laissez-faire* largely otiose.

It is, however, in the realm which economists term " the Theory of Distribution " that the modern proletarian challenge to capitalism has mainly come; and here economic theory is still successful as an apologetic. Not all economists may be so daring in their verbal agility as Professor Clark. Few to-day would join him in explicitly enunciating that the distribution of income is governed by " the hidden hand " of " natural law." Yet the theory that the returns to labour and capital correspond to the " effort and sacrifice " involved is a definite bulwark against Marxist criticism. Interest and profit, as well as wages, are the " necessary " rewards for an essential economic contribution; and without the reward the contribution would not be forthcoming. True, rent remains as a surplus, a deduction from producers for the enrichment of a passive class. But pure economic rent to-day, when land has been improved by decades of capital investment, represents only a relatively small portion even of the return to land, while " surplus " elements are also found in other incomes, including wages. Marshall's theory of " normal profit " was clearly fashioned to demonstrate that, from a long-period standpoint, profit contains no surplus, no " non-necessary " element; while Cassel is at pains to demonstrate, by the " scarcity principle," that interest would still exist in a socialist State.[1] Welfare may be augmented by any measures which reduce the inequality of incomes; certain surplus-elements in income may be desirably appropriated by the community for the common good. Still, economic theory postulates various limits to such remedial action in the connection which exists between incomes and the supply of necessary services. At any rate, even in the treatment of the matter by J. A. Hobson (who has carried Marshall's surplus and supply-price distinction furthest), there appears no defined class antithesis between qualitatively contrasted class-incomes—an antithesis such as figured in the treatment of Ricardo and Marx, holding the possibility of a revolutionary change of institutions.

To the extent that Economics concerns itself with this type of consideration, it is clearly attempting to answer somewhat similar questions to those which the older Political Economy sought to answer. Most noticeably with Marshall, we find the attempt to use the new technique and to fit it to a classical framework. Yet we have suggested that it has really set out to answer not the same but a different set of questions. Is it then competent to answer the former, as well as the latter questions? Or is it claiming competence over a sphere from which it is properly debarred by

[1] *Theory of Social Economy* (1923), vol. i, chapter vi.

the very assumptions which lie implicit in its method of enquiry? Clearly, if modern economics is simply a theory of market price and no more, it cannot provide a criterion by which to gauge the significance of any particular arrangement of prices. Being simply a theory of equilibrium —a group of equations showing the relationship between a system of variables—it can do no more than postulate the system of prices appropriate to a number of possible situations (for instance the prices appropriate to a competitive situation, on the one hand, and to monopoly, on the other; to a class society and a classless society). It says nothing about the relative character or significance of these various situations; and hence it can make none of the *normative* judgments which economics is usually required to make, for the simple reason that a mere system of simultaneous equations by itself contains no norm (or standard). It was such a norm that the old Political Economy sought to provide in its theory of value (as distinct from market price). But a mere equilibrium theory, which expresses market price as a function of certain variables, cannot itself supply such a norm.

It is in providing such a norm to a simple equilibrium theory that the Hedonist basis of the utility theory has its importance. For a pure theory of equilibrium such a basis is quite unnecessary, as various writers such as Pareto and later Cassel have indicated. It is sufficient for the theory of price to postulate simply certain *choices*—to take the observed fact of a certain scale of preferences among consumers as between different goods. Nothing need be assumed concerning the *significance* of these preferences —whether the market's preference for cocaine, quack-medicines or diamonds is because they yield more satisfaction or welfare than opera and working-class houses. Given one set of preferences, there will be a set of prices appropriate to them; to another set of preferences another set of prices. There is nothing postulated about the value of the first set of preferences against the second. This may be very convenient so far as a mere equilibrium theory goes—more economical in its hypotheses. At the same time, without these further inconvenient assumptions one's scope is strictly limited. One cannot say that an economic system which adjusts production so as to satisfy those preferences to the full is any more economically desirable than a system which deliberately ignores those preferences and establishes a set of prices appropriate to something quite different. If, however, one assumes that the demand for goods which is expressed by consumers on the market is a true index of some fundamental satisfaction (the old sense of utility) which they derive from these goods, then one can postulate the conditions under which this satisfaction will be maximised. A criterion then exists by which, for instance, it can be said that the set of prices appropriate to competitive conditions comes nearer to this *optimum* than that appropriate to monopoly. A criterion exists by which it can be said whether an economic society based on the price system and the market is economically preferable to a communist society which strictly subordinates the open market and curtails the price mechanism.

The modern tendency, however, is explicitly to sever this connection between Economics and Hedonism and to define "utility" in a purely empirical, behaviourist sense as measured by a person's observed desire

for a commodity. Cassel goes even further, and bases his theory of price on observed demands on the market *expressed in money*. Price becomes, therefore, on the side of demand a reflection or a product of consumers' preferences, or choices. For the purpose of the equilibrium theory, these choices are taken as ultimate—as the data of the problem. They are " constants," which in the concrete case give the actual numerical value of the equations. But, in fact, these choices are not necessarily the reflection of anything ultimate : they may be arbitrary, ephemeral. They may be the result of a passing whim, of a convention or the creation of a cunning advertiser. They may, indeed, themselves be partly dependent on price—for example, the changes of habits and conventional desires which accompany changes in relative prices or in the general price-level. In Cassel's treatment, indeed, they are largely a function of the distribution of income, not merely through the influence of the distribution of income on conventional standards and desires of different classes, but because the distribution of wealth between rich and poor will *directly* affect the market preference (as expressed in *money-demand*) for, say, rare luxuries as against cheap articles of mass consumption. At any rate, the theory of price endows these market preferences with no other significance than as the *data* for a theory of market equilibrium. In any wider sense they are entirely non-significant.

Some economists, particularly those of the school of Marshall and Jevons, still attempt to retain the old notion of utility as implying satisfaction of *needs*, and so to make economics into a normative science of economic welfare—that is, a science which implies *judgments* as well as merely describing things as they exist. Marshall pointed out (though in no more than a footnote)[1] that *desires* and *satisfactions* may diverge. But since, he said, the measurement of satisfaction is impossible, " we fall back on the measurement which economics supplies of the motive or moving force to action : and to make it serve, with all its faults, *both* for the desires which prompt activities and for the satisfactions that result from them." Following him, Professor Pigou has admitted the possibility of " gap " between them : one may " desire " a patent medicine and at the same time acquire a negative amount of lasting satisfaction from it. But he has suggested that such a divergence is probably not serious in the case of " most commodities, especially those of wide consumption that are required as articles of food and clothing." These, being " wanted as means of satisfaction, will consequently be desired with intensities proportioned to the satisfaction they are expected to yield."[2] This is probably true of prime necessaries—precisely the basic commodities which a communist society, for instance, could distribute without any difficulty on a rationed system, dispensing with a price system. But as soon as we pass from prime necessaries to comforts and semi-luxuries, coincidence of desire and satisfaction seems to become increasingly questionable. In all matters of acquired taste a large number of biassing circumstances seem likely to play a part in determining the taste that is actually acquired. There seems no warrant for assuming that the choice which ultimately results will necessarily be any more conducive to welfare than an

[1] *Principles of Economics*, pp. 92-93.
[2] *Economics of Welfare* (1920), p. 25.

alternative taste which might have been nurtured in a slightly altered set of circumstances. Moreover, purely conventional standards—particularly class conventions—enter surprisingly deeply into nearly all our tastes other than the primary needs of the body—a point which Thorstein Veblen illustrated with so much acumen. And these days, when advertisement plays the prime rôle in business supremacy, thriving as it does on "educating the consumer," afford much temptation to regard consumers' preferences as significant of little else than the persuasive skill of the publicity agent, the poster artist and the insinuating salesman.

For somewhat similar reasons the attempt to base a theory of distribution on a subjective conception of "real cost" seems equally based on shifting sand. The new conception of "real cost" as "effort and sacrifice," which replaces the old classical concepts of an objective "real cost," bears on its face the obvious disadvantage, which we have already mentioned, that it rests on a basic dualism. There is not one type of "real cost" but two; and there is no discoverable means of equating the two by a common term. It is no answer to say that a comparison between the disutility involved in an hour's work and the disutility involved in saving, say, £10 for a year, depends on which a particular individual himself would prefer to do, because such a preference varies with his circumstances—how rich or how poor he is. A more fundamental difficulty than this is the very delimitation of "sacrifice"—the logical difficulty which Senior originally found in knowing whether to define "abstinence" as including or as excluding the "abstaining" from the consumption of wealth that has been inherited. Similarly with the sacrifice involved in "saving" something which has not been expected: is it an equal "sacrifice" to save a "windfall" gain as to save an income that has been fully expected? If the answer is "Yes," the notion of sacrifice seems to fade into a bodiless ghost; if the answer is "No," then the frontier of "sacrifice" turns out to be drawn along the highly unsuitable line of whether the income that is "saved" has been expected or is unexpected. One clearly cannot "sacrifice" what one does not possess; and sacrifice seems, on analysis, to be hardly distinguishable from "opportunity-cost"—from the sacrifice of alternative opportunities. Reduced to these terms, it ceases to have any universal significance as a conception of "real cost"—it will change its coat with every change of regime. At any rate, it will have no significance which makes it at all comparable to the "real cost" involved in working an eight-hour day. If one uses "sacrifice," or "abstinence," in any sense that is at all fundamental, then it is not the rich men of the world who do the "sacrifice" involved in capital accumulation. The "sacrifice" rests in the lowered incomes and narrowed consumption of the proletariat which permits the propertied class to enjoy its privileged income. But the "sacrifice" which in Marshall's theory is the basis of supply-price is clearly nothing so fundamental as this. If Pharaoh lent his slaves for building pyramids, it was not the slaves alone who, in Marshall's sense of the word, performed a sacrifice: Pharaoh bore a "sacrifice," too, proportioned to the alternative enjoyments which his slaves might have yielded if put to other use. That the "real cost" borne by Pharaoh was of the same kind and order as that of the pyramid-building slaves may have been the viewpoint of the

scribes of the Egyptian Court. But from our more detached viewpoint of centuries later, it seems hard to discover any useful sense in which Pharaoh's " sacrifice " was of the same order as that which he would have incurred had he laboured at pyramid-building himself.

Modern economics seems to have developed a technique which may well prove of permanent value, at least in the study of particular detailed aspects of the economic world. Here, it has certainly made a lasting contribution. The conception of the functional equation and of increments at the margin makes possible a precision of thought entirely unattainable before, and renders the study of economic theory an intellectual discipline somewhat akin to the study of mathematics, even if of a more elementary and inferior order. At the same time, the glamour of the technique has been responsible for considerable carelessness in its use. The technique seems to have been put to employments which it is quite unsuited to support, and has become enmeshed in not a little confusion concerning the assumptions on which analysis has been based. By its assumptions modern economics is confined to a limited enquiry—the conditions of market equilibrium in face of a given scale of preferences on the part of consumers and in a given state of supply of the factors of production. That is all it can really ask and answer. Yet economists have generally thought that they were answering—at least their audiences have imagined them to be—the much wider type of questions with which classical Political Economy dealt : questions such as the relation between classes and the comparative merits of different types of economic system. " Economics " and " Political Economy " are something more than differences of name : they are different enquiries, different in scope and aim ; and while the former may be superior in finish and precision, at the same time it is necessarily more limited in its range. Until this fact is faced and realised I believe that little progress in the field of economic analysis will be made.

THE THEORY OF MONEY

One sphere in particular where the technique of modern economic analysis has borne considerable fruit is in the Theory of Money. To this enquiry the modern technique is eminently suited : the question is one of causes of variation in the price relationship of money to commodities in general ; and no deeper assumptions are involved. To a large extent the main lines of the subject were already laid down by Adam Smith and Ricardo ; but a good deal more than mere elaboration has been done by the work of Marshall in England and Irving Fisher in America, and more recently still by R. G. Hawtrey and J. M. Keynes. This has consisted of the formulation of the value, or the purchasing power, of money (or its inverse, the general price-level) in terms of an equation which relates it to the significant variables on which it depends. This is the famous Quantity Theory of Money. By itself it is scarcely more than a truism. It is an equation of identity which of itself gives no key to the causal order of events. But its practical implications are wide and important, and are frequently corollaries which are not immediately obvious to direct common-sense inference from the facts. To the politician as well as to the

man in the street, for instance, the chaos of price changes and of exchange-quotations which characterised the War and post-War years presented something of a bewildering mystery. It was left to the economist to give the rather simple explanation and to produce the recipe for monetary stabilisation after the War. Similarly, to-day, with the much-debated monetary aspects of the trade cycle—that cyclical alternation of trade boom and trade depression which characterises the modern economic system. And it is largely the economists' concern with the study of this special phenomenon that has prompted the most significant developments of monetary theory in recent years. In most pre-War formulations of the Quantity Theory equation the value of money was expressed as a function of the quantity of money in circulation and its velocity of circulation, compared to the output of goods and the volume of transactions. In more recent statements of the theory, emphasis has been placed on the volume of resources which are at any time held in the form of money-balances, principally as bank-deposits. This quantity has taken the place of the velocity of circulation. The demand for money has been conceived as the proportion of the national income of goods and services over which people have desired to hold command in money form; and variations in this quantity have been accorded an equal place with changes in supply of money—at least in the explanation of short-period changes in the price level. More recently still Mr. Keynes, in his *Treatise on Money*, has introduced a new set of equations, in which the relation between Saving (in the sense of money that is not spent) and Investment (in the sense of creation of capital goods, such as factories and plant) plays an important independent rôle in affecting both the price level and the volume of employment: when the former exceeds the latter there is the tendency for the price-level to fall and for unemployment to increase; and conversely when the latter exceeds the former.

CONCLUSION

In America in particular, in recent years, there has developed an important school of economic thought that has studied the future of economics along the lines of inductive enquiry.[1] Aided by the greater wealth of statistics which the modern world, and particularly America, affords, enquiry has proceeded along the lines of the study of business indices and of price-correlations. On the other hand, in Soviet Russia we find economists increasingly occupied with the specialised studies concerned with the concrete problems of economic planning —a development, perhaps, slightly reminiscent of the approach to particular problems of government adopted by the earlier economists prior to the Physiocrats, and particularly by the so-called Cameralists in eighteenth century Germany. It may be that the differential calculus and equations of market equilibrium have said all of which they are capable, and that the future of economic enquiry lies in specialised experimental and concrete studies such as these. Nevertheless, such enquiries can hardly provide more than contributory evidence to the solution of the problems of the general distribution of wealth and

[1] *Cf. The Trend of Economics* (1924), ed. by R. G. Tugwell.

the comparative results of different economic systems. This group of questions—those macroscopic, as distinct from microscopic, issues of the economic order—will still remain to be answered, and to be answered presumably in terms of the concepts which classical Political Economy created.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

General Theory :

J. K. INGRAM : *History of Political Economy* (London. 1888. Revised edn., 1915)

H. HIGGS : *The Physiocrats* (London. 1897)

ADAM SMITH : *The Wealth of Nations* (London. 1776. Everyman edn., 1911)

D. RICARDO : *Principles of Political Economy* (London. 1817. Various subsequent editions)

K. MARX : *Capital* ; 3 vols. (VOL. I., London, 1886, and Everyman edn. in new translation, 1930 ; VOLS. II. and III., Chicago, 1909)

K. MARX : *Theorien über den Mehrwert* ; 3 vols. (Stuttgart. 1904) Trans. into French as *Histoire des Doctrines Economiques*, 8 vols. (Paris. 1924)

J. S. MILL : *Principles of Political Economy* ; 2 vols. (London. 1848)

W. S. JEVONS : *Theory of Political Economy* (London. 1871)

A. MARSHALL : *Principles of Economics* (London. 1890)

A. C. PIGOU : *Economics of Welfare* (London. 1920)

F. VON WIESER : *Natural Value* (London. 1893)

E. VON BOEHM BAWERK : *Capital and Interest* (London. 1890)

V. PARETO : *Cours d'Economie Politique* (Paris. 1909)

R. AUSPITZ and R. LIEBEN : *Recherches sur la théorie du prix* (Fr. trans. Paris. 1914)

G. CASSEL : *Theory of Social Economy* ; 2 vols. (London. 1923)

J. B. CLARK : *Distribution of Wealth* (New York. 1908)

F. W. TAUSSIG : *Principles of Economics* (New York. 1911)

H. J. DAVENPORT : *Value and Distribution* (New York. 1908)

Special Aspects :

IRVING FISHER : *The Purchasing Power of Money* (New York. 1911. Revised edn., 1920)

D. H. ROBERTSON : *Money* (London. 1922)

R. G. HAWTREY : *Currency and Credit* (London. 1919. Revised edn., 1928)

J. M. KEYNES : *Treatise on Money* ; 2 vols. (London. 1930)

R. G. TUGWELL (ed.) : *The Trend of Economics* (New York. 1924)

J. N. KEYNES : *Scope and Method of Political Economy* (London. 1891. Revised edn., 1904)

I. LAPIDUS and K. OSTROVITYANOV : *Outline of Political Economy* (London and New York. 1929.) For Marxism and present-day Russia.

A. C. PIGOU : *Industrial Fluctuations* (London. 1927)

FINANCE

By

T. E. GREGORY

SYNOPSIS

The introductory portion of the Article delimits the field of finance and estimates the significance of financial operations in the modern world. It then passes on to a description of the mechanism of modern finance. It is shown that, in spite of superficial diversities of form due to historical and other circumstances, financial organisation everywhere conforms to the same fundamental requirements, and a survey is made of the nature of the markets required by modern economic communities. This is followed by a description of the operations carried on in such markets, and of the institutions which carry them on, including a description of the operations of Commercial Banking and of the problems involved in Commercial Bank organisation. Upon a discussion of these issues follows an analysis of the relations of Government finance to money market operations, and of the steps which are necessary to prevent the financial needs of Government from disorganising the market.

A new section commences with a description of the Capital Market and of the nature of the securities which it handles, including a discussion of the problem of speculation and the place of the Stock Exchange in economic life. This is succeeded by an analysis of the problems of Company Finance and a discussion of the relations between finance and economic well-being. There follows a section dealing with the problems of Public Finance, *i.e.* the place of public expenditure in the life of the community, the sources of public revenue and the limitations upon the power of the State to levy taxation.

A final section deals with the most urgent of all the financial questions of the day—the relations between financial well-being and stability of the price level—and concludes with a discussion of the part which can be played by Central Banks in the control of the price level.

FINANCE

I. ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL ASPECTS OF FINANCE

1

In that broad sense which implies the adjustment of means to ends, and of ends to means, when both means and ends are thought of in terms of money, financial problems, financing and finance are in effect co-extensive with economic life as a whole in any modern community. For economic operations in such a community present themselves primarily in the shape of an expenditure of money for the attainment of certain ends, and the problem of how the money costs are to be met is inescapable. Everyone's income helps to "finance" his expenditure; how everyone's income is to be adjusted to his expenditure, or his expenditure to his income, is a "financial" problem; and the shifts and expedients which are necessary for the attainment of equilibrium—if, indeed, equilibrium is ever attained—are "financial" operations no less vital or interesting to the individual concerned than the flotation of an international loan is to the Rothschilds and the Barings who manage the operation, and to the Finance Ministers of impecunious States on whose behalf the operation is conducted. Nevertheless, for purposes of discussion here, "Finance" must be interpreted in a somewhat more definite manner. In one sense, all pecuniary transactions can be thought of as "financial" transactions; but there are some pecuniary transactions which are thought of as being "financial" in the technical sense, while others are not.

It might at first sight appear that the distinction which has to be drawn between the wider and the narrower uses of the term turns on a question of fact; namely, on the question whether the resources involved are furnished by someone other than the recipient who intends to apply them to some purpose. Thus, if John Citizen buys a house out of his own savings, the operation is not, technically, a financial one; whereas, if he borrows the money in the first instance from a Building Society and repays the latter by instalments, the operation of buying a house *also* becomes a financial operation, because it involves the intervention of a professional lender. But economic science has long used the term "Public Finance" to describe, not only those aspects of governmental expenditure which involve the raising of loans through the intermediary of technical organisations, but also those operations, such as the raising of taxes and the administration of State property yielding a profit, which involve no loan operations at all. Moreover, when additions and extensions are made to the plant and equipment of a joint stock company and the necessary funds are provided by means of withholding from the shareholders part of the profits earned by the enterprise, the exponents of the new subject of "Corporation Finance" would undoubtedly say that the operation

has been " financed," just as the operation would have been called a financial operation if the company had raised new capital in the shape of debentures or shares in the London money market through the co-operation of a professional intermediary specialising in this class of business.

The examples above show, too, that the distinction between financial and non-financial operations does not always turn on the distinction between " capital " transactions and " revenue " or " income " transactions ; for " public finance " is concerned in the main with the devices by which the current day-to-day expenditure is provided, and the operations of the banking system with the provision of those temporary advances which anticipate the sale of the products of industry to the consumer.

But, though the distinctions drawn above are not sufficient accurately to delimit the frontier, they are guides to current conceptions. The truth is that the frontier between financial and other transactions is vague and very difficult to draw. Broadly, financial transactions are concerned with the raising of sums of money for the purpose of meeting the costs of economic activities where these activities either do not bring in an immediate return or where they—as in the case of much of the work of governments —do not bring in a return at all, and their cost has to be met by a general levy on the resources of others, or, finally, with the raising of sums of money in order to meet costs anticipatory of activities which are intended to bring in a direct pecuniary return at a later date. Very broadly, financial acts distinguish themselves from acts of purchase and sale by their subordinate, ancillary and provisional character. But it is useless to heap words on words in the effort to attach an invariable content to words which, in the mouth even of the technician, have a different meaning in different contexts ; for to do so is to run the danger of excluding important aspects of the situation. Illustration may serve to make the situation clearer.

By far the larger part of modern production takes place in anticipation of demand. Production takes the form of a continuous stream of goods, some of which are, at any moment, in a completed condition, others are just emerging from a semi-finished or partly finished condition, while at the same moment others are just beginning to be shaped out of the raw materials which they embody. At any moment the finished goods which happen to be in existence constitute the " stock " of that particular commodity, but the constituents of the stock change from moment to moment as goods are sold and are replaced by others which have just completed the production process. If consumption and production were completely adjusted there would be no " stock," since the newly finished goods would be at once taken off the market. But in fact consumption is in the majority of cases, more discontinuous than production ; the technique of production makes it desirable to make the flow as even as possible. Stocks are accumulated in anticipation of demand. These stocks, as well as the whole of the goods currently in process, represent a series of costs ; wages, expenditure on fuel, raw materials, transportation and the like. These costs are ultimately to be met out of the sale proceeds ; until they are they have to be met in some other way. In so far as they are

met by loans in anticipation of sales, whether these loans are made by bankers or whether they are made by those who furnish the raw materials, etc., being prepared to await payment until the goods are sold, a " short-term " financial operation is involved ; production is being " financed " by the banker, or by means of short-term commercial credit. The economic activities involve cost, and the outlay does not bring in an immediate return ; the mechanism by which the time-interval is bridged between outlay and return is part of the financial mechanism.

Again, production involves, not only current expenses in connection with the supply of labour and raw materials, etc., needed to bring goods to market, but it requires the creation of permanent units through which production is organised. These permanent units which undertake production constitute the " business enterprises " of the community, however much they differ in detail and in legal form from one to the other. They require, not only current assistance in bridging the gulf between production and consumption at any moment, but a permanent volume of pecuniary resources ; the capital of the enterprise. The capital is invested in innumerable ways ; in the provision of plant and equipment of all kinds. The costs involved are anticipatory costs, in the sense that they are intended to subserve the production of goods and services which alone bring in the revenue which will make the concern profitable. The problem of raising this capital is a financial one and forms part of the general question of Industrial Finance.

Lastly, as regards the economic operations of Government. In some respects the economic operations of Government resemble those of business enterprise. When a Government borrows in order to extend the telephone system, or when a municipality raises funds for erecting an electricity works, the sums so raised are anticipatory costs, just as they would be if the services, the provision of which they are intended to further, had been provided by private enterprise, and the essence of the problem is not altered by the public character of the authority involved, though the legal position may be much altered thereby. There are even analogies between private business and Government in that respect in which the difference at first sight appears so marked—the sphere in which Government undertakes to provide certain services and meets the cost of those services not by a charge varying with the amount of the service consumed, but by a charge on the general body of citizens, *i.e.* the sphere of " taxation." For the finances of a club are also conducted on a not dissimilar basis—the general costs of running the club are met out of subscriptions paid by the members ; though the amount of the amenities consumed by different members may vary very greatly there is little attempt to differentiate the tax-levy or subscription involved.

2

The impact of finance upon the modern world is of immense significance. In what follows attention will be drawn to some salient characteristics from the economic point of view. The social aspects deserve, and will receive, special consideration.

First, the *magnitude* of the operations involved. Leaving on one side

altogether the supply of long-period capital, each year the financial organisation has to finance the sowing and harvesting of the crops and the raw material supplies of the world. Of the total production of foodstuffs and raw materials, a part no doubt is consumed on the farms and other production sites by the producers themselves; but by far the larger part now enters into commerce, and to finance the grower during the intervals between sowing and final payment by the consumer is an operation the immensity of which is by no means always fully appreciated. For variations in the price and volume of a single crop may make very great differences to the strain imposed on the financial system. Thus, the world's wheat harvests in 1925–6 and 1930–1 differed by some 10% (3,344 million bushels in 1925–6; 3,675 million bushels in 1930–1). The average annual price in the first year (cents per bushel) was 139½; in the year 1930–1 it was 73¾. On the assumption that in each year 60% of the production entered into commercial trade and required financing at some stage or other, the amounts involved fluctuated from £558 millions in 1925–6 to £326 millions in 1930–1. Wheat represents only a single (though certainly very important) raw material; in addition to the financing of the raw material supplies of the world, the financial organisation has to provide for the current needs of manufacture and commerce. Without labouring the point any further, it is clear that a task of immense magnitude is involved.

Again, though figures relating to long-period capital issues are full of pitfalls and have, therefore, to be used with great caution, it would appear that in 1929—a year, it is true, of quite exceptional stock exchange activity in the United States and elsewhere—the volume of capital issues (excluding loans to Governments as far as possible from the computation) in the United States, Great Britain, Germany and France alone amounted to over £2,400 millions. Of this amount five-sixths was offered in the United States, but the whole world participated in the provision of the funds; and the figures will at least serve to show the scale of operations involved. (It must be remembered, however, that the effect of joint stock enterprise is in part only to *make visible* the flow of capital to business; if the whole of business were to-day in private hands, as it practically was a century ago, the volume of capital demanded might be the same but the statistical data would be much less available.)

Secondly, these magnitudes involve complementary and, in the main, equal magnitudes in the shape of a flow of savings. It is not enough for the financial system to cause funds to flow from industry to industry or from place to place in the appropriate amounts; it must stimulate the growth, and organise the collection, of savings, and must safeguard their investment to the extent necessary to guarantee the continuance of the flow. This, as will presently appear, is a matter of great complexity; not only or, indeed, mainly because of the problems of *organisation* which are involved, but because of the social strains set up when a superstructure of financial obligation is built upon the foundations of a standard of value which is not stable in purchasing power. But at this stage of the argument it is sufficient if the reader bears in mind that the task of finance is a double one; it is not only a question of applying funds to certain uses, but of seeing to it that funds are there to be used.

Thirdly, in the modern world, the scale of Governmental finance has assumed dimensions alien to the inherited traditions, not only of the financial world itself, but of the business classes and the academic students of economics and politics. Partly as a result of the Great War, partly as a result of the changing conceptions of the functions of Government (and these conceptions have changed, not only because of the general prevalence of democratic governments or dictatorships having to make a popular appeal, but because science in general, and administrative science in particular, is constantly opening up new avenues for exploitation), the scale of Government has expanded, and with that growth of scale the national Budgets have swollen also. This fact not only lends added significance to the technical problems which emerge—alternative systems of taxation and the like—considered as technical problems, but greatly adds to the significance of Government finance as an element of the economic life of the community, however the positive functions of Government may be regarded.

Fourthly, finance is one of the most potent, and almost the least impeded, of the agencies integrating the modern world into a single economic system. Tariffs interrupt the flow of goods, immigration and emigration laws prevent the free movement of persons from place to place. Though the flow of capital is not absolutely free, for nationalism dislikes the idea of domination by " foreign capitalists," yet, in comparison to the impediments in the way of the movements of goods and persons, capital movements are on a sufficiently broad scale to enable us to speak without hyperbole of a world rate of interest and of a world capital market. Without such a free flow of capital it would have been impossible to develop the natural resources of the Americas, of Australasia and of the Far East to the extent that has actually taken place within the last century and a half.

The social effects, to which we now turn, are no less striking. A century ago it was still possible for the most prominent English private banker of his day, Vincent Stuckey, to explain to a Parliamentary Committee that the rural Englishman preferred the notes issued by a private banker " with twenty thousand a year in Land " to the notes of the Bank of England. Until quite recently land and buildings and jewels constituted the *essence* of the idea of property : to-day the essence of property consists in the possession of " securities." Finance has altered the face of the world by making wealth *mobile*, in the sense that property rights attach directly, not so much to physical things as to documents of title to such things, or to rights to draw income, whether fixed or fluctuating, through institutions owning such property or from Governments and other public bodies which have borrowed for many purposes, productive and unproductive, on giving an undertaking to pay interest for the loan. Because property so largely takes the form of owning such titles to income, the constituents of a given fortune may change extraordinarily quickly : an " estate " of a million pounds may mean very different things on two successive days, simply because a different set of investments is held ; and the " management of property " in these days means much more frequently than it did even twenty years ago the art of knowing when to sell and when to buy securities of different kinds. The fact, so frequently deplored, that the

modern capitalist is " irresponsible," " divorced from places and things," is simply due to the growth of a species of property the essential character of which is its *mobility*.

Two very striking results follow. Property is more vulnerable than it ever was before to attack, because so large a part of it consists merely in rights to income. And these attacks can come in an obvious and a subtle guise. The obvious weapon of attack is taxation : the less obvious weapon is a change in the purchasing power of money. An income tax of five shillings in the pound reduces the net yield to the investor to fifteen shillings, and is regarded as a high rate of tax. But, if the price level doubles, the real yield of the investment is halved. Experience during the period of inflation following the War proved that a price level is capable of doubling, not only in the course of a year, but in the course of a day. The vulnerability of fixed income rights to attack from fluctuations in the purchasing power of money is thus of immense significance in the modern world in which, owing to the progressive transfer of certain types of undertakings to Government or quasi-Government operation, this kind of security is steadily increasing in importance. Property is more vulnerable to-day, further, because ownership is so much more clearly divorced from responsibility, and because the owners of such property seem so clearly immune from the obligation to reside at a fixed place for the performance of work which is the lot of the majority. Mobile property has created a class seemingly free from the most obvious restrictions resting upon the worker : it is not surprising, therefore, that the increasing publicity devoted to the doings and activities of an apparently irresponsible social class should result in an increasing resentment at the differences of fortune thus indicated.

Lastly, the spread of international investment raises social issues of a special, though still of a very serious kind, for it involves the contact of nationalities and of races. When this contact assumes the form of the capitalist employing local labour, of which he knows nothing at all except that such labour is willing to work for him or in his enterprise, it assumes at times an unlovely and unamiable form. It is not only that the introduction of modern capitalistic methods of production may destroy the indigenous standard of inherited skill and way of life ; it opens the door to exploitation of a crude kind, for the local labour may be helpless to protect itself and the capitalist owner may be unable, owing to ignorance and distance, to impose conditions of labour and standards of life. Without doubt, the introduction of capital into these new areas helps to increase their productivity, but the process of capital infiltration is not accomplished without serious elements of loss.

II. THE ORGANISATION OF THE MODERN FINANCIAL MECHANISM

Since finance is essentially the process of linking up the supply of funds with the demand for them, financial mechanism is in all countries intended to subserve the same primary purpose, however much the details of the structure may differ from place to place. A distinction must, therefore, be drawn between the different financial markets, each of which

exists to link up a particular kind of supply with a particular kind of demand for capital, and the nature of the agencies involved. In all countries there is a marked tendency for the distribution of functions among the various financial agencies to be determined in large part by historical causes, the importance of the historical factor itself varying, of course, with the various financial centres. Old financial centres, such as London or Amsterdam, will possess a financial structure more deeply marked by historical survivals than newer markets such as New York or Berlin. The main line of division concerns the degree to which there is division of labour or integration of function among financial agencies, *i.e.* the extent to which in each sub-market there are separate firms or institutions or, alternatively, the extent to which the same group of firms will perform different functions whilst maintaining identity of legal form. Thus the old private banking firms of such centres as London, Paris, Amsterdam and New York not only concern themselves with the issue of new securities, but are also concerned with the financing of foreign trade and with dealings in bullion and foreign exchange. That is, the " merchant banking " firms not only act as " acceptance houses " but also as " issuing houses," side by side with firms which specialise more closely in one or other of these directions.

Every modern financial structure comprises five different divisions :—

(1) A market in which funds which are only available for short periods of time can be handled. This market is known as the Short Loan Market. The funds which flow to this market come to it from other institutions, mainly from the Commercial Banks and the large private banking institutions. The borrowers in this market are the dealers in bills and the dealers in securities, or, to put the matter in technical language, Call Money is borrowed by the Bill Market and the Stock Exchange.

(2) A market in which funds available and required for moderately long periods of time are lent and borrowed. This market in all countries is the field of activity of the Commercial Banks. They absorb the current spare funds of the community, which constitute their deposits, and relend the bulk of them to the business community in the shape of commercial loans and overdrafts.

(3) A market which exists to facilitate, firstly, the creation of investment securities and, secondly, the transfer of long-period securities. Thus a twin organisation is necessary, of Promoters and Issuing Houses, on the one hand, and of an organised Securities Market, on the other. This latter market is the Stock Exchange, together with its membership of brokers (and, in London, of jobbers).

(4) Each financial structure comprises a series of specialised institutions, made necessary by the desirability of safeguarding savings in a special way or satisfying a particular kind of demand. These specialised institutions are of many kinds : Savings Banks, Agricultural Banks for short and long term loans, Building Societies, Insurance Companies and Investment Trusts, to name only those which are familiar to readers on both sides of the Atlantic.

(5) Lastly, there is one specialised division of the financial structure which carries out functions of a most important kind. This is the Central Bank ; the primary function of this institution is to act as the Central

Supervisory Agency of the financial system as a whole. How it carries out its functions will be discussed at a later stage.

Organised money markets differ from one another, as already pointed out, by the manner in which the agencies operating in these various markets are related to one another. Thus, in London, the Bill Market is more important as a source of demand for Call Money than the Stock Exchange: the reverse is the case in New York. In London the function of promoting and issuing new securities is in the hands of the old merchant banking firms: in Berlin this function is carried out in the main by the Commercial Banks, in New York by private banking firms *and* the special subsidiaries created for this purpose by the Commercial Banks. The Savings Banks are a more important element in the German banking structure than in the British. The dealers in bills in London are specialised, in New York they are not. Building societies have recently acquired great importance in England; agricultural banking in the U.S.A. But the structure as a whole covers the *same range of activities*, and this is the important matter. The survey of financial operations which follows is built up on the basis of the various sub-markets already described.

III. THE SHORT TERM MONEY MARKET

Funds borrowed and lent in this money market range from the day-to-day call loans to loans lent from one period of settlement on the Stock Exchange (in London) to the next. The essence of the "call" loan is that it is lent subject to very easy terms of withdrawal. But why should anyone be willing to borrow or lend on such terms? It seems at first sight impossible that it can pay anyone to borrow for 24 hours, running the risk of having to repay the money, or for anyone to lend for the same period of time.

The explanation lies in the facts that *any* rate of interest for *any* length of time is better than no rate of interest at all, and that, from the standpoint of the lender, a loan which is repayable at very short notice is a great convenience, since it earns something and yet is liquid. (One day's interest on £365,000 at 2½% per annum is £25, about one month's salary of a fairly well-paid London bank clerk, so that one year's salary can be paid by investing this amount for a fortnight.) Hence the great financial institutions like to keep a certain proportion of their funds permanently in such loans; they are a "second line of defence," ranking next to actual cash held in vault or at some other bank as liquid funds. And it is also convenient to borrowers to have loans easily repayable, since, if money can be obtained more cheaply elsewhere, the first loan can speedily be repaid by borrowing at a lower rate elsewhere. The *price* which is paid for a very liquid investment is, from the standpoint of the lender, a very low rate of return; from the standpoint of the borrower, the low rate he pays is compensation for the risk of having the money suddenly withdrawn.

The *supply* of such funds comes from two main sources. The normal supply comes from the great Commercial Banks which, as already pointed out, regularly invest a certain proportion of their deposit money in this way. But there are special sources of supply as well; funds awaiting permanent investment in the hands of financial institutions, *i.e.* proceeds of loans and sums available in anticipation of dividend requirements and

the like. The net effect is that the supply of " short money " as a whole is more regular than individual portions of it.

The users of " short money " are, primarily, in London, the dealers in bills ; in New York the Stock Exchange brokerage houses. Not all the funds used by bill dealers and stockbrokers is subject to short terms of recall, but much of it is. Whether employed in the purchase of bills or in the purchase of securities (by being lent to the customers of Stock Exchange houses who desire to buy securities they cannot immediately pay for) the money so lent flows back into the great stream of circulation, by which industry and trade are nourished. For the bills of exchange bought by means of this borrowed money represent, to a large extent, the current movement of produce and goods in the International Trade of the world, and the securities which have been bought by speculators with borrowed money have had to be sold by someone else, so that the purchasing power at the command of the seller has increased. In addition, call money borrowed by bill-dealers, under post-War conditions, is largely used by them in buying Treasury Bills, a bill of exchange issued by Government to finance its current expenditure, so that, again, through the channel of the Treasury, the money borrowed flows back into the general stream.

There are problems, however, attaching to the existence of the Short Loan Fund. The fundamental principle of every money market is that money paid for must be money used. Now, this means in practice that whilst *specific* loans are liquid, the total of the Short Loan Fund is not. If a broker borrows £100,000 from Bank A, he does not lock it up, but buys bills with it. Suppose that the Bank calls in the money, what can he do ? He can either re-sell the bills he has bought, which may prove unprofitable, or re-borrow. But the possibility of re-borrowing is conditioned by the Short Loan Fund *as a whole* remaining unchanged ; if all the lending institutions withdraw simultaneously it becomes impossible. Under these conditions, to re-sell what has been bought with the borrowed money *must* become unprofitable, for everyone will be trying to sell at the same time.

One of the functions of the Central Bank is to prevent the Money Market from becoming " jammed " in this way. For the Central Bank, both in London and New York, stands prepared to buy bills of exchange at a stated price, or to advance at a stated price ; alternatively, to create conditions in the Short Loan Market which will *restore* the normal process of its operation, which it can do by the device of buying securities in the open market, thus adding to the supply of funds in that market. The power of the Central Bank to act in these ways is, as we shall see later, the key to the understanding of the very peculiar position which it occupies. But the upshot of the present section is this : while the Money Market functions normally, short money really is a liquid form of investment, but only because it is assumed, by both borrowers and lenders, that money borrowed and lent can be re-borrowed and repaid through loans by someone else.

IV. THE INTERNATIONAL SHORT LOAN FUND

There is one form of lending for short periods of time which, since the War, has assumed enormous proportions and presents peculiar features

of its own. This is lending by institutions in one Money Market to institutions in another. The total of the sums so lent and borrowed constitutes the International Short Loan Fund. Before the War London was the great lender in this way; to-day London is both a lender and a borrower, while it shares its former predominance with New York and with Paris. Though the amounts involved are unknown, it is probable that a sum of something like £1,000,000,000 is involved in the aggregate.

(1) A large part of the international trade of the world is "financed" through London. Bills are drawn on the importers of goods in Hamburg or Shanghai, but these bills are validated, *i.e.* accepted, on behalf of the real importers by London banking houses, who rely on receiving funds for meeting the bills as they fall due from the importers. Pending the date of payment, the bills are discounted in London, *i.e.* ready cash is given for future payments, so that the banks are able to advance to the *exporters* in anticipation of repayment by importers. So long as the remittances are not yet received, London is lending abroad the present value of the bills, and, in so far as the amount of bills is increasing, the volume of London's foreign lending is increased.

(2) When the rate of interest is higher, say, in London than in New York, it pays American firms to invest in London, *i.e.* to lend money to London bankers. What really happens is that in London dollars are sold to those having debts to settle in America, and the pounds paid for these dollars represent the proceeds of the loan. As a general rule, no gold is actually transferred; from the banking point of view the transaction is then purely a book-keeping one, which has the effect of enabling Great Britain to meet (temporarily) one set of American debts by creating another.

(3) Thus it may very well be the case that London is lending on the one hand and borrowing on the other. The situation in New York may (on other grounds, however) be the same. A foreign Government may be borrowing in New York by means of a long-dated loan. The proceeds of the loan (dollar proceeds) may be sold by this Government to the local Central Bank for cash, say, marks. The Central Bank in question may want to hold dollars permanently as part of its reserve, in which case New York will be a creditor on Long Term Account and a debtor on Short Term Account.

(4) When a currency is disorganised, banks and business firms, as well as private individuals, try to escape from the consequences of further declines in the value of the currency by holding foreign bank balances. Thus, during the period of currency disorganisation in France, many millions of pounds of English money were acquired by French interests. France, in so far as these sums are held permanently in this country, is really making Great Britain a loan to this extent: in so far as French balances are permanently kept in New York, France is making a loan to the United States.

Thus the International Short Loan Fund, when analysed, is an extraordinarily complex thing. Instead of great financial centres being borrowers only, or lenders only, they are both, and their net position may be that of borrowing at one time and lending at another.

What are the dangers which accompany so considerable an extension of

the system of international short-term lending as the last decade has witnessed ? They are two in number.

First, the danger of a sudden withdrawal of these funds, which may put the Central Bank into a position of very great difficulty. For the normal weapons of defence may be unable to prevent these sums from being withdrawn, and a heavy loss of gold may be the consequence. If, for example, French balances are withdrawn from London, the technical method by which this is done is by sales of sterling in the Paris foreign exchange market ; this reduces the franc value of the pound and, if this reduction is great enough to make the costs of shipping gold from London worth while incurring, gold *will* be shipped. Hence a market with heavy foreign balances due by it is in an essentially unstable situation. This is why the influx of foreign balances into the London market is so often spoken of as the influx of " bad money." The money is " bad " simply because its withdrawal may, later on, involve heavy gold shipments. This, again, explains the statement, so frequently heard in these days, that the more gold a bank has lost, the less the danger of its losing any more, for, by losing gold, the foreign balances have been depleted.

Secondly, what is lent " short " must be invested " short " ; that is, international funds borrowed for short periods cannot be invested for a period of time longer than that. The danger is that funds so lent will be invested primarily in bills of exchange. An increase in the demand for bills raises their price, *i.e.* lowers the market rate of discount, which makes the bills dearer to buy. Now, if the Central Bank, for reasons of its own, desires to see the market rate of interest maintained at a certain level, its policy in this respect is endangered if an inflow of funds from abroad is pressing the rate in a downward direction. For, if the rate falls low enough, bills will be attracted to that centre for sale, *i.e.* the high current price (low rate of discount) leads to fresh bills being created for the purpose of being discounted, and if borrowers are foreigners an *outflow* of funds may be initiated, ultimately leading to gold movements. Thus, any beneficial effects produced by the previous inflow may be neutralised.

The growth of the International Short Loan Fund has thus created new problems, calling for some revision of the traditional attitude on the subject of the benefits to be derived from acting as an international centre. That attitude was based upon the popular conception of London as a predominantly lending centre, and had not taken into account the difficulties arising when a centre is at times more of a debtor than it is a creditor.

V. THE COMMERCIAL BANKING FIELD

It is through the Commercial Banks that industry, trade and commerce, the professions and the general public usually come into contact with the machinery of finance, and this in two ways ; as lenders to the banks, and as borrowers from them. Although it is habitual, in discussions of these subjects, to lay stress upon the functions of banks as *lenders*, their functions as borrowers are equally important. Many people and even many industrial and commercial firms have never found it necessary to borrow from their banks, but they find it absolutely necessary to maintain a banking account. The fact is that the modern world, at any rate the

modern English-speaking world, habitually uses the banking system, not only for the purpose of borrowing, and of depositing spare funds, but for the purpose of making its payments. Transfer by means of cheques is so convenient that the majority of transactions, certainly by value, most probably also by number, are made by means of cheques. In Great Britain the existence of a stamp duty upon every cheque drawn no doubt acts to some extent as a deterrent against the drawing of cheques in settlement of accounts which can be met without inconvenience by the use of small banknotes; but in the United States no such deterrent exists and the use of cheques for even the smallest payments is then habitual to those possessing a banking account. And the possession of a banking account (formerly in England, at least, the sign of a certain superior social status) has been made easier on account of the intense competition for customers by the banks themselves. The first group of questions which arises, therefore, concerns the relationship between banker and customer.

(*a*) *The Deposit Side of Banking*

In Great Britain a distinction is drawn in the literature of banking between Current Accounts on the one hand, and Deposit Accounts on the other; a distinction which corresponds to the American division between Demand Deposits and Time Deposits. The importance of the distinction in Great Britain is supposed to lie in the fact that only Current Accounts are available to be drawn against on demand by cheque, while carrying no interest; sums standing to the credit of Deposit Accounts are repayable only at notice, but carry interest. In practice, however, these rigid distinctions do not quite obtain and, in any case, practice in the North of England differs much in these respects from practice in the South of England. In the North, interest is paid upon the minimum amount kept on the credit side of the account. In these circumstances, there is not much advantage to the customer in keeping two accounts although, as a matter of fact, it is known that, in consequence of the trade depression, a considerable increase in the volume of Deposit Accounts has been taking place in the last eighteen months, taking the whole banking system into account.

In the U.S.A. the position is very different, owing to differences in the legal regulations relating to Reserve Ratios. In Great Britain there is no statutory obligation upon the Commercial Banks to keep any cash reserve at all, much less a statutory amount. In the U.S.A. the Federal Reserve Code imposes on all the Member Banks the obligation to maintain at the twelve Federal Reserve Banks a reserve against demand deposits of 7, 10 or 13%, according to the physical location of the Member Bank. Against time deposits a uniform cash reserve of 3% only has to be kept. This distinction has had the effect, perhaps entirely unexpected, of greatly stimulating the growth of time deposits. For a bank may be better off, financially speaking, by paying interest upon a Time Deposit, if at the same time it can cut its reserve requirements down from 13 to 3%. In effect, the growth of Time Deposits under these conditions is tantamount to a net reduction in the reserve requirements imposed on the Member Banks of the System.

The relationship between banker and customer is much wider than is implied in the mere keeping of an account by the one for the other. In America, in particular, banking competition has resulted in the banks being prepared to carry out a wide range of services on behalf of customers, some of which can hardly be regarded as falling within the sphere of banking at all. But in Great Britain the custody of documents and securities, the performance of Executor and Trustee functions (through subsidiary corporations in some instances), etc., have very much widened the range of contact.

(*b*) *The Loaning Side of the Banker's Activities*

A distinction must be drawn between the following three elements: (1) the time element, *i.e.* the length of time for which the loan is made; (2) the charge made for the loan; and (3) the nature of the security required. So far as Great Britain is concerned, advances by bankers fall into two great categories—loans and overdrafts. A loan is made when a fixed sum is advanced for a fixed period of time, say three or six months. The borrower pays interest upon the amount for the period of time in question. An overdraft is the right to borrow up to a given amount in excess of the customer's own credit balance and, therefore, the amount "overdrawn" depends on the extent to which the facilities granted are actually made use of during the period of time for which the facilities are granted. Hence the overdraft is a much more elastic form of borrowing. Though in Great Britain the distribution of loan and overdraft facilities is in part a matter of local custom and tradition (loans in the South, overdrafts in the North), it seems to be the case that overdraft facilities are growing at the expense of loans.

The charge made is governed, in the case of Great Britain, by a conventional relation based upon the movement of Bank Rate, *i.e.* the official minimum rate fixed by the Bank of England for the discount by it of bills of exchange. Charges range from ½ to 1½% over bank rate, with a fixed minimum of 4, 4½ or 5%. That is, when bank rate falls below 3½%, loan charges to customers no longer fall with it. Under existing arrangements, also, the interest paid upon deposits (or upon minimum balances on current account) varies in Great Britain with the bank rate, being fixed at 2% under bank rate for deposits subject to 7 days' notice of withdrawal, with a maximum of 5% interest. It is clear that the banks must maintain a margin between what they charge and what they can afford to pay to depositors, for out of the difference the banks must meet their charges for staff, buildings, etc. It is true that on a large part of their total deposits banks with branches in the South of England pay nothing, for current accounts in the South carry no interest. On the other hand, while earning more than bank rate on their loans and advances, banks earn nothing at all on their actual cash reserves, and a good deal less than bank rate upon such part of their funds as they invest in the Short Loan Market, or in the very finest classes of bills of exchange which they can buy in the Bill Market. Their earnings on securities, also, since these are mainly Government securities, tend not to be more than 4 to 5%, and on Treasury Bills, of course, considerably less. The earnings of the banks

depend, not only upon the manner in which their funds are invested, but upon the properties in which they are so invested. In this respect, the British banks tend to follow a fixed routine and, although their proportions are subject to a certain amount of change (for loans and advances to customers fall off in periods of bad trade and rise somewhat in periods of prosperity), the amount of elasticity is not very considerable. Bad trade, by lowering the rate to be earned in the Call Loan Market, reducing both the amount and the yield of loans and advances, raising the price and therefore the yield of long-dated securities, must affect bank earnings adversely, especially as the cost of staff and buildings, etc., remains more or less the same, whether trade improves or declines.

In the United States, the place of the overdraft is a much more modest one than it is in Great Britain : the normal form of a commercial advance takes the shape of a loan secured by promissory note or other collateral security—Stock Exchange securities, produce warrants and the like. But this raises the third point, namely, the nature of the security required. Loans and overdrafts can be divided into two groups, secured and unsecured. Where the loan or overdraft is " unsecured," it means in effect that the banker's belief in his customer's ability to repay rests upon his personal knowledge of the customer and upon his knowledge of how the loan is to be used. But when a loan is " secured," there is some piece of property or some legal right which the banker can utilise to compensate for the non-repayment of his advance. The most obvious illustration of the first kind of security is furnished by goods or produce in course of shipment pledged to the banker pending realisation of the proceeds ; the most obvious illustration of the second kind of security is a guarantee by third parties to the banker that, if the borrower does not repay the loan when called upon, the guarantors will do so in his place. Since the varieties of tangible and intangible property are very great, it follows that the security held against loans consists of many different kinds.

(*c*) *Problems of Commercial Banking Organisation*

The first duty of the banker is to secure the safety of the deposits entrusted to him ; the second, to invest the funds at his command in such a way as to secure, as far as he can, an even flow of profits. Security and profitability alike depend on spreading the risk and it is the desire to spread risks which explains why bankers keep, or try to keep, their funds invested in certain conventional proportions along certain lines. What these lines are is partly a matter of law and legal conditions, partly a matter of the investment opportunities open to the banker under circumstances of time and place, largely a matter of experience. The old adage that to be a banker one must know the difference between a mortgage and a bill of exchange throws light upon one fundamental aspect of the matter ; liquidity. Since the banker has liabilities a large part of which are payable at a moment's notice, some part of his assets, *i.e.* his cash reserve and some fraction of his loans, must be equally available at a moment's notice. In Great Britain the Commercial Banks are entirely free from any sort of legal interference : in the U.S.A. the position is very different in this respect. Not only are particular classes of banks

prohibited from making loans of a certain kind, or holding securities of certain descriptions, the law goes further and limits the amount which can be lent to any one customer. But what is attempted to be done by the force of law in the United States, the force of custom and experience tends to do in Great Britain.

In the final analysis, what has been said above of the liquidity of the funds invested in the Short Loan Market is true of the investment of funds generally. Bankers' loans are used by the borrowers for specific purposes. If all the depositors were to try to draw out their funds simultaneously, every bank, however sound it might be, would be bound to close its doors, since it would be impossible to sell securities and call in loans sufficiently quickly and on a sufficient scale. A run on a single bank can be met by assistance from other banks, a run on all the banks together can only be met by assistance from the Central Bank, and it can only help by the device of printing more notes. For the absolutely liquid assets (that is, the Cash Reserve) even of the Central Bank are not large enough to meet more than a small proportion of the total liabilities which the banks together owe the public. The safety of each bank is in part dependent on the size of its liquid resources ; the ultimate safety of the banking system as a whole lies in the fact that not all the depositors will normally ask for their money simultaneously and, should they do so in consequence of panic, in the fact that the Central Bank will come to the assistance of the Commercial Banks by a free use of the printing press. But large reserves and sound investments by themselves will not save the system as a whole in moments of general pressure.

If the banking structure of Great Britain is compared with that of the United States, a striking difference in the form of organisation appears. The entire commercial banking business of Great Britain is done by a group of 16 Joint Stock Banks, that of Scotland by 8 banks, some of which are owned by the larger of the English banks, which also control most of the remaining provincial banks of Lancashire. Five banks in fact do the main bulk of the banking business. The contrast with America is startling, if it is borne in mind that there were 7,707 National Banks and 1,633 Trust Companies recorded by the Comptroller of the Currency on 13th December, 1928, not to speak of the thousands of banks organised under State Laws. English banking is primarily organised on the basis of a few large institutions covering the country with a network of branches ; American banking upon the principle of " unit banking." Though, in certain States of the American Union, branch banking is permitted and is rapidly making headway in such States, and though the device of " chain banking," *i.e.* single banks associated through a holding company, represents a compromise between the British and American systems, yet what has been for a generation a *fait accompli* in Great Britain (and, indeed, in most parts of the world) is still a matter of acute controversy in the United States.

The purpose of branch banking is to assist in the geographical distribution of risk and to draw deposits from as wide an area as possible. So long as industry continues to be largely localised, geographical distribution of risk demands a widespread organisation, and districts rich in deposits can be drawn upon to supply the deficiency of borrowing ones

within the limits of a single organisation. From the technical banking standpoint there is a further advantage derived from a growth of scale which must not be overlooked. The cheques paid in over its counters will be cheques on its own customers to a greater extent the wider the organisation. But to pay such cheques no cash is required; all that is needed is two book-entries. Growth of scale implies *economy in reserves*, a smaller proportionate amount of cash has to be kept relatively to total business, because fewer cheques will be presented through other banks, and more through the branches of the same bank. Thus considerable advantages accrue; increased safety, economy and profitability.

How far are these advantages *only* to be obtained by means of branch banking? American critics would say that it was possible to obtain the same results in other ways. It is possible to obtain "out of town" customers, *i.e.* to get customers in places where the bank does not operate, and the larger American banks do, in fact, try to obtain such customers. Further, it is always possible for even a small bank to spread risks by making use of the facilities of the Central Money Markets. It can buy bills in the Bill Market, hold gilt-edged securities which can be readily sold on the Stock Exchange, and lend money at call or short notice. American banking organisation *facilitates* such methods of distributing risks by the fact that the large banks in cities like Chicago and New York act as "correspondents" for hundreds, in some cases thousands, of small banks scattered all over the vast area of the United States. Lastly, the apologist for "unit banking" would argue that, even if such banks have some disadvantages to contend with, they also have some unique advantages. They are less bureaucratically organised and inspired and, because they are more restricted in scope, they are more likely to be interested in the success of local enterprises and more prepared to see such enterprises "through" a period of depression or bad trade. The bigger the bank and the wider the network of branches, the more indifferent such banks must become to the fate of particular districts, industries and firms.

This line of argument proves perhaps too much rather than too little. All over the world, even in the U.S.A., the organisation of banking is tending towards the British, or, rather, the European system of branch banking. The charge of bureaucratic handling of business can be launched against unit banking as easily as against branch banking, when the unit banks attain a certain size—in fact, some of the New York banks are now among the largest in the world. Lastly, the association of a bank with a particular locality may lead very easily to such an intimate dependence of the bank on the prosperity of that locality that it becomes a danger to the bank itself: a danger which is exemplified in the wave of bank failures in the agricultural regions of the United States whenever agriculture is passing through a phase of falling prices. It is the duty of the banker to take a wider view of the situation than the business man. When he meets only the business men of his own locality, he is liable to take their view too easily and to overlook the dangers of local over-expansion. One may regret that banking is becoming less associated with the hopes and fears of particular localities, but the trend towards large-scale operation is so characteristic of business generally that small local banks have no longer the resources to finance such large concerns easily. Because the

borrowers are becoming larger in size, the banks must become larger too; otherwise the customer may be too large to lend to safely, for bankers know that a single big account is more dangerous than ten separate accounts aggregating an equal amount.

VI. GOVERNMENTS AND THE MONEY MARKET

The State in the modern world administers for the general benefit of the citizens of the country an enormous revenue. Since revenue and expenditure by Government are about one-fifth of the national income (£800 millions against, say, £4,000 millions) it is clear that the management of this immense amount of money requires very great care in order to prevent the smooth working of the money market from being adversely affected.

It is possible so to organise the system of Governmental finance as to separate it altogether from normal money market channels. Where this is done, the so-called " Independent Treasury System " comes into being. During a large part of the nineteenth century the financial procedure of the Government of the United States was based upon this system. The attempt was made to segregate in the American Treasury the revenues of the country in cash (gold, silver and notes) and to keep them there until they flowed out again to finance Government expenditure. It is easy to see that, when revenue and expenditure are heavy, intolerable difficulties are thereby created. If the period when tax collections are heaviest coincides with the maximum demand for accommodation for agriculture or industry, the banks are put into a most embarrassing situation, for their funds are drained away from them at the very moment when they need them most. If the bulk of the expenditure falls at a time of business slackness, the banks are faced with a plethora of funds. Thus the Independent Treasury System tends to accentuate the degree of variation of money market rates, and for that very reason has had to be abandoned. But even association of Government with a Commercial Bank does not quite meet the situation. What is wanted is association with an institution which will be in a position to even out the ebb and flow of money due to the financial operations of Government. Such an institution is the Central Bank. The management of the Government's current account and of its short-term and long-term borrowing operations are entrusted to it, because it, and it alone, is in touch with every part of the Money Market.

From the present point of view, the task of managing the finances of Government is essentially that of preventing a temporary excess of revenue over expenditure from depriving the Money Market of funds, and of preventing an excess of expenditure over revenue from flooding the market with funds. The first would result in rising money market rates, the second in falling rates. The instruments of adjustment are the Bank's own lending operations and the manipulation of the size of the " Floating Debt." Since the War the British Government has always been in debt to the Money Market, the evidence of indebtedness being the Treasury Bill. Periods of pressure lead to an increase in the Floating Debt, *i.e.* Treasury Bills plus the amount lent directly by the Bank of England (these advances are known as Ways and Means Advances),

periods of ease lead to a reduction in the Floating Debt. Now, when there is an excess of revenue over expenditure (as there usually is in the first three months of the *calendar* year, which correspond to the last three months of the *financial* year, when the bulk of the Income Tax proceeds are flowing in), the way to prevent a shortage in the Money Market is to pay off Floating Debt, because this adds to the resources of the market. And the way to prevent an excess of expenditure resulting in unusual ease is to increase the Floating Debt. The Bank's own loans can be used as a balancing factor, to add to the supply of cash in periods of stringency, to reduce cash (by *not* lending) in periods of ease. If revenue is flowing in faster than Floating Debt (Treasury Bills) is being paid off, the Bank can lend more freely : in periods when an increase in the Floating Debt is not taking funds off the market fast enough, the Bank, by reducing its own loans, can stiffen up rates and prevent an abnormal reduction in the price of loans in the Money Market.

The system so far described is the British system. In the United States, though the Treasury Bill has recently been introduced, the same function is carried out by the purchase and sale of Certificates of Indebtedness. At the quarterly dates when income tax receipts, on the one hand, and interest payments, on the other, create a situation of difficulty in the market, the Federal Reserve Banks, by the purchase of special One Day Certificates of Indebtedness, by not buying more bills to replace maturing ones and by other devices, attempt to even out the ebb and flow of money.

VII. THE LONG-PERIOD CAPITAL MARKET

1. *The Machinery of Issue*

In the modern world, savings can be devoted to the acquisition either of tangible property, such as land, houses, furniture, pictures or jewellery, or of property rights, such as mortgages, bank deposits or " stocks and shares." It is with the last class that we are concerned here. The classes of capital-rights which are offered to investors and which are handled in the long-period capital market take the following main forms :

(*a*) The obligations of Governments and Public Bodies of all kinds. Traditionally, Governments have chiefly borrowed for two main purposes—for waging war and for covering the deficit on the Budget even in times of peace. But such unproductive forms of borrowing, though responsible for the greater part of existing National Debts, are not the only purposes for which Governments can borrow, and they do not represent the reasons why subordinate Public Bodies borrow. The fact is that the control and operation of certain essential public services, the supply of railway and other forms of transportation, the provision of light, sewage, docks, water, etc., are more and more passing into public hands. Hence, Government debts may be raised, and to an increasing extent are raised, for productive purposes. The interest payments necessitated thereby are not a charge against the taxpayer, as they are in the case of unproductive Debt, but are met out of the revenues earned by the undertakings acquired, created or extended by the use of the funds so borrowed. There is, in other words, no essential difference, in the economic sense,

between a Government borrowing for reproductive purposes and the borrowings effected by a " Public Utility " enterprise organised in Joint Stock Company form.

(*b*) Obligations of all kinds issued by non-Governmental bodies. These, again, fall into three main groups :—

(i) Secured obligations. The most important class of such securities consists of mortgage debentures or mortgage bonds. By means of such bonds or debentures, the borrowing undertaking secures to the investor the due performance of the obligations it has assumed by assigning to him part or all of the assets, tangible and intangible, present and future, owned by the undertaking. In the event of default, therefore, the investor can protect his rights by seizing the assets held as a pledge.

(ii) Unsecured obligations with Preferential Treatment. Two main classes of investments fall within this category. First come what are legally evidences, not of ownership *in* the undertaking, but of *loans* to it unsecured by specific pledge of property, such as Income Debentures or Income Notes, where the investor is merely promised priority of interest payments, though this priority may be safeguarded in various ways. Next come evidences of part-ownership in the concern, given priority of interest payment over other classes of *owners*. This gives one the great class of Preference Shares. Such preference shares may merely carry the right to payment of interest in preference to all other classes, but with no guarantee that such interest will in fact be paid. Or the preference share may be made *cumulative*, in which case interest unpaid in any one year is carried forward to the next ; or the preference share may be made both cumulative and *participatory*, in which case, if earnings or dividends distributed to other classes of owners exceed a certain amount, the preference shareholder participates to a further extent in the prosperity of the concern, over and above the fixed interest to which he is entitled.

(iii) Lastly come various classes of share capital which rank after the classes mentioned (if the undertaking has issued more than one class of obligation or capital) in the distribution of income. In general, this class of rights may be called Residual or Ordinary Capital, and the shares Ordinary Share Capital. Such capital is itself divisible into Preferred Ordinary and Deferred Ordinary Capital. Where in an enterprise both these classes of shares are issued, the Preferred Ordinary will rank, as regards dividend payments, before the Deferred Ordinary Capital, which represents the true residual element of ownership in the concern.

The presence, or possible presence, of rights of so many different kinds within the same enterprise profoundly affects the practical working of the joint stock company. But, whether many or few, all such securities have in the first instance to be issued to the public, and an elaborate mechanism exists for the purpose. Issue covers three main elements : Promotion, Underwriting and the technical Act of Issue. Promotion, *i.e.* the processes necessary to the formation and legal creation of the concern, of course, only arises where the public is asked to take up capital or debt in a *new* enterprise, but issue and underwriting operations cover, not only capital operations on behalf of a new concern, but all cases where existing concerns offer new capital to the public or where existing public authorities desire to borrow afresh.

Promotion and issue may be united in the hands of the same institution, and the same institution may also agree to underwrite part or the whole of the issue. On the other hand, these various activities may be divided. And, in many cases, the activity of issuing must be divided into two parts, one purely mechanical and subordinate, the other substantial and essential. The essential part of the work of issue consists in preparing the statements and particulars by which the facts are brought to the notice of the public, in discussing with the promoters of the enterprise itself or the borrowing Government the terms on which the issue to the public is to be made, the time and conditions under which it is to be made, and the like relevant circumstances. The subordinate part of the task of issue concerns the mechanical aspect of actually receiving and accounting for the subscription. This mechanical work may be done by the " Issue House " itself; it may be left to a Joint Stock Bank, though, under British practice, a Joint Stock Bank agreeing to take subscription over the counter and allowing its name to appear on the " prospectus " (*i.e.* the statements relating to the issue) does not thereby assume any responsibility as to the goodness of the issue towards subscribers.

Issue may take two main forms. The issuer may offer *on behalf* of the enterprise or Government, receiving a commission or a payment arranged on some definite basis for the work or trouble and expenses involved. Or the issuer may have undertaken to buy up the entire issue at a fixed price and offers it to the public at another (and necessarily higher) price. This constitutes technically the form of issue known in Great Britain as the " Offer for Sale " ; in America, it constitutes the act of " Underwriting." The advantage of this form is that the enterprise is relieved of all further trouble ; its issue has been taken " firm " by what is presumed to be a reliable house or group of financial houses, and they must now run the risk of being unable to dispose of the security.

This risk is necessarily always present though to a smaller or greater extent, according to the intrinsic soundness of what is being issued and the state of opinion as regards the outlook for securities in general. Accordingly, in Great Britain the issue house safeguards itself by securing *contingent* subscribers to the issue, and this constitutes underwriting in the British sense. In return for a commission (the " underwriting commission ") individuals and firms will promise to take up any portions of the issue not sold to the public. Hence—at a price—a market for an issue can be found, even if the investing public is not in a mood to bite freely at new securities.

It is clear that the machinery of issue is complex. Who are the issuers ? In London there is a group of firms, traditionally known as the " Issue Houses," firms like Barings and Lazards and Schröders, who, however, in the main confine themselves to international loans and have little to do with British industrial issues. A second group of issuing houses is composed of certain large Stock Exchange firms, dealing partly with Colonial issues, partly with British industrials. Lastly, during the Stock Exchange boom of 1928, a certain number of new issuing agencies appeared, some of them not of a very high-class character. British Government loans are handled by the Bank of England ; and a few very large corporations are also strong enough to issue directly on their own behalf through their

banks. The underwriting of new issues is arranged for by the issuing house. Each will have its own list of persons and firms who will habitually underwrite for it (other finance houses, brokers, investments trusts), the principle being that the underwriter must take the bad with the good and take issues as they happen to come along. But there is a certain competitive fringe; at times when the securities markets are active there will be a certain competitive scrambling for underwriting privileges. A high underwriting commission points to a weak issue and a weak market situation. Moreover, the underwriter does not always live up to his obligations. In recent months the liquidation of certain companies created during the preceding boom has disclosed some very bad cases of high underwriting commissions paid to individuals unable to take up the shares on a failure of the public to subscribe.

The American machinery of issue resembles the British in that the issuing houses include large brokerage houses and private bankers like the Morgans, but differs in so far from the British situation that in recent years the great New York Commercial Banks have created subsidiary "Security Corporations," which handle issues which the Banks themselves are not in a position to do. To such dependent corporations there are no exact British analogies. Moreover, the *marketing* of securities in the two countries presents considerable differences. A large part of the securities issued in the United States are not intended to be quoted on any Stock Exchange, which tends rather to be the rule in Great Britain. Further, a system of retail selling of bonds and shares through direct solicitation of the investor is possible in the United States, where the "bond houses" have built up a great and costly organisation for the house-to-house sale of securities. Such a development has been severely hampered in Great Britain by the legal prohibition of "share hawking" in the latest Companies Act.

2. *The Stock Exchange*

When a great number of individuals hold investments which are legally easily transferable and when, on the other hand, the number of such securities is very large and their aggregate value larger still, the necessity for some organised market in which such securities can be bought and sold freely becomes clear. Without such a market it would be difficult to dispose of the securities easily and this would hamper the process by which large-scale modern industry can obtain the funds it needs—since the possession of securities which are not easily transferable increases the risk to the investor and makes him less inclined to hold property of this particular kind.

The Stock Exchange has been the object of such fierce denunciation by critics of the modern capitalistic system that it is essential to understand the true functions which it performs. A distinction is often drawn between the utility of the Stock Exchange as an agency whereby securities are transferred between investors, a function which is regarded as "legitimate," and the use of the Stock Exchange as an "instrument of speculation," which is looked upon as a "perversion" of its true function. But, in fact, speculation also involves acts of purchase and sale, indistinguishable

in form from pure investment transactions in the first instance. And the motives which lead investors to change their investments and those which lead to speculative purchases and sales are also not clearly distinguishable. But, apart from these obvious difficulties in the way of discriminating against speculation, it has still to be proved that speculation can be dispensed with, given the further circumstances that the future is unknown and that *anticipation* of the future course of events is inevitable. In the realm of economic life, uncertainty as to the future takes the form of uncertainty as to the course *prices* will take, including, of course, the prices of securities. The economic function of speculation, then, in so far as it is concerned with the prices of Stock Exchange securities, is a two-fold one : it consists in adjusting the relative values of securities to one another at any given moment of time, and in adjusting the present level of security prices to what, in the opinion of competent judges, will be their *future* price level. The first adjustment is made by selling " overvalued " securities and buying " undervalued " securities, with the result that the price of the first kind of securities will fall and that of the second will rise. The second adjustment is made either by selling securities or particular kinds or groups of securities when it is anticipated that the underlying forces at work will in any case produce a decline in the long run, or by buying them when it is anticipated that the underlying forces at work will produce a rise. But there is no guarantee, except such as are afforded by the circumstance that opinion is not necessarily wholly one-sided, to prevent the movements in question from being overdone. If and to the extent that they are, the fluctuations in security prices are greater than might have been experienced if no speculation had taken place at all. But if the market thinks the rise or the fall has been overdone, counter-speculation sets in which promotes a fall or a rise.

It is one of the main functions of the modern financial press and of the experts of brokerage and financial houses to assemble and study the data upon which judgments can be formed as to the relative merits of securities. The main influences which affect the general level of security prices are also known. Periods of rising prices, increasing production and employment, in a word, periods of good trade, are also periods in which non-fixed interest paying securities—the residual claimants to the profits of industry—rise in price because the dividends paid on such shares increase in amount. Periods of falling prices and bad trade mean falling prices for industrial shares and rising prices for fixed interest paying securities, in so far as their prices are not affected by the fear that times are so bad that the debtor will default. Superimposed upon these general movements are movements caused by the special circumstances, good or bad, affecting particular industries or areas, and superimposed upon these again are movements caused by the special circumstances of particular undertakings or governments.

To the extent that the investor and the speculator must be familiar with these general circumstances affecting the movement of security prices, and to the extent that these movements are predictable, one can legitimately speak of the scientific aspect of investment and speculation. But speculation and investment remain an art and not a science because no one can foretell the *magnitude* of the movements involved before they

actually take place. The reason must be clear. A fall in the long period rate of interest, for instance, makes a paper security paying a fixed or certain rate of return more valuable, but no one can say by how much more valuable it has " really " become. In 1928–9, when the United States was experiencing the greatest Stock Exchange boom in its history, it was argued, and quite legitimately argued, that the great growth of savings and productivity justified the valuation of securities at a price which substantially reduced the yield on the market value. Whereas formerly securities sold at a price equal to " ten years' purchase " of the annual earnings, they ought now to sell at a much higher price. But how much higher ? In the end securities sold at prices equal in some cases to fifty or one hundred years' purchase, *i.e.* at prices which yielded only one or two per cent. on the market value ! Until the break came in the autumn of 1929 these prices did not seem absurd, because there was no scientific standard by which to measure what they *ought* to be worth and there was only a general presumption that prices were going " too high " and would sooner or later decline. When a sufficient number of people finally believed this, they *did* decline. But no one could tell in advance *when* this would happen.

Actual market movements may therefore become quite irrational in magnitude, whatever the original justification for a rise and a fall may have been. And a further circumstance is likely to add to the magnitude of the movement in the *wrong* direction. Firstly, the professional speculator may try to exploit the irrationality of the situation by taking part in it. Securities may be selling above what he regards as their true value, but so long as the public is inclined to think that the rise will go on, it is safe to speculate on the side of the public. This drives the prices of securities up still more. And further, the irrational attitude of the public prevents the rapid application of the corrective—sales of the security made in the hope of prices falling sufficiently to enable the shares so sold to be bought in at a profit. An excited upward-moving market is one in which " bear " sales are highly dangerous, and, consequently, are not made. Until an advanced stage of the boom all the elements which should help to temper and moderate it are absent. A market in which no one will sell but only buy —*i.e.* a " bull-market "—is top-heavy and in the end leads to an equally top-heavy " bear " market in which no one will buy but everyone is willing to sell.

Thus speculation is necessary, but its manifestations—even where there is no attempt at deliberate manipulations of opinion by false rumours, " pool " operations and other devices intended to excite purchases or sales—are not always of the kind required in order that the economic functions which it is supposed to subserve shall be adequately carried out. And, in so far as the case against speculation is carried from the economic to the moral plane, the criticisms levelled against it are largely justified. It cannot be denied that the hope of getting rich quickly by speculation generates a tone of life which is inimical to the development of those habits of mind and of conduct which are necessary if men and women are to be content with the rewards which steady work and application to the routine of economic life offer them.

3. *Aspects of Company Finance*

Many of the problems of company finance (or corporation finance, to use the American equivalent) arise out of the very special characteristics of the joint stock company or corporation. As usually put in economic literature, the special characteristic of the joint stock company is that it permits an individual to spread his risks in many directions, by a relatively small investment in each special direction, but yet allows by a combination of sums, each relatively small, a great accumulation for each special purpose to be achieved. But this is only *one* of the special advantages of the joint stock company form. In addition, this form permits of great elasticity not only as regards the *amount* which the individual contributes, but also as regards the manner in which it is contributed. As the analysis of the various kinds of securities dealt in on the Stock Exchange showed, the individual may contribute capital in a form which carries prior rights or in a form which carries residual rights. We may put this in a somewhat different way by saying that the individual investor contributes both capital and risk-bearing, but the actual contribution may contain varying proportions of either : the only condition being that the more risk carried, the higher the ultimate return must promise to be.

Nevertheless, the joint stock company, just because of the differing natures of the contributions made by different investors, *i.e.* because of the presence of different classes of rights, also carries with it, besides its great advantages, certain disadvantages. When different rights are crystallised in the same structure, possibilities of divergence of interest exist, as well as possibilities of co-operation. So far as the joint stock company is concerned, these divergencies express themselves in differences of interest as regards both the form and the amount of the *capitalisation* of the concern. This requires explanation.

Legally, the capital of a joint stock company consists only of the amount subscribed by the shareholders. The actual amount paid up may be less than the amount which is authorised as the total capital, but whether the paid up capital differs from the authorised capital or not, there is a definite connection legally between shareholding and capital. But from the economic point of view, the capital with which the concern works is a much wider conception than this. Money advanced to the company by creditors (debenture holders) is part of the capital with which it works : so is the amount retained out of past profits—the Reserve Fund or Surplus. In actual practice, at any moment a concern will owe certain amounts to trade-creditors and may be borrowing from its bankers : these amounts in effect constitute the floating debt of the enterprise. One requires a word which will include the legal capital and the other permanent funds with which the enterprise really works. Such a word is the American phrase " capitalisation." We have now to see how the existence of different interests in the concern may affect the form of the capitalisation and its amount.

There are three considerations to be borne in mind in discussing this question : considerations of safety, control and profitability. The theory upon which the government of the joint stock company is built up is that

of democratic liberalism : the Directors of a Company are assimilated to the position of Members of a legislature elected by their constituents. In fact, widespread voting rights in a company easily interfere with the efficiency of its working. It is therefore possible to compromise : to give certain classes of rights priority, both as regards safety and security, provided that in return these classes of rights are prepared to sacrifice part of the control of the enterprise. Each party desires some *quid pro quo* for what it sacrifices, and each party can sacrifice something for what it desires. Hence the debenture or bondholder, and to a large extent the preference shareholder, have no voting rights (though of course it is possible legally for them to possess them) except in circumstances where the safety of the capital, or the security of the income, is at stake. Assent may be required for re-organisation proposals : for proposals to increase the volume of rights ranking prior to, or equally with his own, and so forth. Those ultimately in control are willing to part with some rights in order to obtain that which is in some respects fundamental : a concentration of authority within the enterprise.

One of the reasons making for a large volume of secured and prior rights will now have become clear. The form of capitalisation is influenced by the desire not to divide control too much. But there is another reason which works in the same direction so far as the form of capitalisation is concerned. Apart from the desire not to share control, there is the desire to add more to the earning capacity of the enterprise than is represented by the fixed interest or dividend which needs to be paid for the use of the funds obtained. If, on its capitalisation as a whole, an enterprise is earning 10% net, whilst it need pay only 6% interest on its debentures and, say, 7% dividend on its preference capital, the margin available for payment of larger dividends on the ordinary or residual capital goes up. The dividends to be expected upon ordinary shares depend, therefore, not only upon the earning capacity of the enterprise as a unit, but also upon the proportion of prior to residual capital. From the standpoint of the holder of residual capital, it pays to increase the proportion of prior-ranking capital, provided it does not mean sharing control, and provided also—an important element in practice—that the earnings as a whole are reasonably stable. For if they are not, a large amount of fixed-interest-bearing debt and capital may make dividends upon the residual capital more unstable than the earnings as a whole.

The manner in which the amount of the capitalisation is affected by the existence of different rights can be seen from two illustrations. Firstly, on the creation of an enterprise a large variety of interests may co-operate and of these interests some at least may desire to see the capitalisation expand. A promoter who obtains liens on a number of enterprises which he then unifies into one legal entity and resells to the public, makes a profit out of the difference between the buying and selling price which grows as that difference grows. If the financial interests concerned with the issue of the new securities are paid in shares, again that is an influence making for an enlarged capital. Or again, a new concern is founded to exploit a new patent or discovery. The inventor or patentee offers to take shares instead of cash. Pressure making for increased capitalisation is again present, especially as it is exceedingly difficult to estimate what the

earnings of an enterprise of this kind will really turn out to be. No doubt it is one of the functions of the financial press to warn the public against over-capitalised enterprises. But in periods of speculative mania and optimism, such warnings are notoriously disregarded.

4. *Some Relations between Finance and Economic Welfare*

Some of the relations of Financial Operations to Economic Welfare are very imperfectly understood, not only by the general public, but also by the business community.

Firstly, an individual can safeguard himself against loss by selling a security to someone else, but if the enterprise issuing the security does not prosper, the economic loss sustained through a misdirection of human effort nevertheless persists. From the standpoint of economic welfare, the enterprise has wasted resources which might have been better applied by another person in the same or some other direction. The real loss to society from the failure of the recent " crop " of artificial silk concerns to yield a profit is the wastage of the human labour and equipment which have built plant, etc., which will never be operated.

Secondly, in so far as equipment and human labour continue to produce as fruitfully as before, society as a whole suffers no loss even if the market values of the securities representing the nominal value of the productive enterprises of the community undergo a decline, and society as a whole gains nothing if these securities *rise* in value. The real wealth of the United States was no greater as a result of the phenomenal rise in stock market values in 1928–9, and is no less because of the subsequent decline : for the real wealth of a country consists of the stream of goods and services which can be consumed, and not of the nominal value of the securities issued by the enterprises producing these goods and services. Particular individuals have been ruined by buying securities at too high a price, but losses such as these have in fact been compensated by the gains of those who sold the securities at those prices : and no actual loss of any kind was incurred by those who retained possession of their securities throughout the period of rising prices and the period of subsequent fall. The effects of the boom, if any, upon the real wealth of the United States have been exerted in indirect ways : by over-stimulating construction in certain branches of industry : by encouraging, first, wasteful consumption and (since the depression) over-anxious economy. But apart from influences such as these no ultimate effect on material welfare was produced. As soon as this truth is realised, the depression itself will begin to pass away.

Thirdly, because speculation is concerned with the *transfer* of securities, it does not " withdraw funds from productive use." The impression prevails that if funds were not used for speculation, the amount accruing for commercial or industrial purposes would increase *pro tanto*. But this is an error. Where *new* securities are bought with borrowed money, the proceeds pass directly from the financial to the industrial circulation : the capital of a new steel works, for instance, when bought by speculators for the rise, is furnished by those speculators or those from whom they borrow, irrespective of the motive leading to the purchase. Where

existing securities are bought with borrowed money, the sellers of the old securities are in a position to take up new capital issues or to employ their funds for any purpose they wish. If the sellers again invest in old securities the funds are simply transferred to a new set of sellers and so on. The amount withdrawn from immediate productive use is simply the sum changing hands at a particular moment, and this is much less than the total amount borrowed for speculation over a given period of time. Thus if speculators have borrowed £100 millions in six months and on the last day of the period £10 millions is the amount due to sellers, *that* £10 millions is for the moment, but only for the moment, "withdrawn." The other £90 millions is still owing by speculators to lenders, but the sellers of the £90 millions of securities bought by the use of these funds have really received the money. As the volume of speculation grows, the "float," *i.e.* the sums due at any moment, also increases, but the extent to which sums have been withdrawn from other uses, even temporarily, cannot be measured by the mere figure of outstanding loans to speculators; the proceeds of these loans, when transferred to sellers in exchange for securities, have mainly gone back into the general circulation of funds.

VIII. THE PROBLEMS OF PUBLIC FINANCE

The problems of public finance are complicated by the fact that the social and economic welfare of a community is affected not only by the amount which the State absorbs in taxation and by the manner in which that amount is collected, but by the way and the objects upon which that revenue is expended. Thus, in addition to difficult questions relating to the best manner in which to raise a given revenue and problems relating to the desirable aggregate amount of taxation, there is also the problem of the purpose to which that revenue, when collected, can best be devoted. Taxation, in other words, affects welfare both by being collected from certain individuals and by being spent for the benefit of individuals. A system of taxation yielding certain sums of money may be better or worse than another system yielding an equal amount: one scheme of expenditure may be adjudged to have better or worse effects than another. But in order that final judgment may be passed, it is necessary to take both revenue and expenditure into account. It is *prima facie* clear that a system of public finance which levies taxes on the poorer sections of the community, and expends the funds so raised on ends largely benefiting the richer sections of the community, is helping to redistribute the national income in a less desirable way than a scheme of finance which taxes the richer sections of the community and uses the proceeds in a way which largely benefits the poorer sections of the community: for money, or *money's worth*, added to the incomes of the poor adds more to real material welfare than a similar sum (in money or kind) added to the income of the well-to-do. But there are obvious limits to the process of redistribution, which come from the possibly deterrent effects of high taxation. These deterrent effects may be so serious as to outweigh any directly beneficial effects otherwise obtained. Enough has been said to show how very complicated the problems of public finance are, when the effects both of taxation and of expenditure are taken into account.

Impressions derived from the practice of Governments in the past have led to an almost complete misunderstanding of the part which Government expenditure plays in modern economic life. There still lingers the view that Government expenditure is " unproductive," a view which is crystallised in the old statement that economy in Government expenditure enables money " to fructify in the pockets of the taxpayer," the obvious implication being that if money is *not* allowed to fructify in this way, a net loss, equal to the amount spent by Government, results. But this is a complete error. The difference between private expenditure and Government expenditure is not a difference between something and nothing, but between the production of one kind of thing and the production of another kind of thing. And it is by no means true that if Government abstained from spending anything at all, then the national income would remain the same in amount, however different the things upon which it is spent. For if there were no expenditure upon public health services, education, police, roads, the provision of information, etc., it is quite clear that the amount of production in the community would fall off. Taxpayers might have to pay a smaller amount in taxes, but the fund out of which taxes are paid would be so much less that the community would be very much less well-off than it is now. It is true that there are certain forms of Government expenditure which are unproductive in the economic sense. Expenditure upon armaments adds nothing in time of peace to the material well-being of the community, and in time of war, of course, is utilised for the destruction of the sources of well-being. Part of the expenditure of modern Governments, again, is " transfer expenditure," *i.e.* payments to old-age pensioners or payment of interest upon the National Debt. Such expenditure adds nothing directly to the productive resources of the nation, and therefore nothing to the National Income, except in terms of money. But the indirect effect of such " transfer expenditure " may be very great. For the bulk of expenditure upon Debt Services accrues to the richer classes of society, and the bulk of expenditure upon Pensions and Unemployment Payments (in Great Britain) accrues to the poorer sections of the community. The distribution of well-being is affected by such payments in a most marked way ; and in a modern State, in which the view is entertained that a greater effective degree of equality is itself a good thing, the Budget ceases to be a *mere* question of raising the minimum expenditure in the most convenient way. The Budget becomes an instrument of Social Adjustment whether, as in Great Britain, between the rich and the poor, or, as in other cases, between the urban population and the rural population, or, as in the case of Protective Duties, between Producers and Consumers. The Budget, in other words, has ceased to conform to the type of which it was true that any expenditure included in it was of a purely and strictly unproductive kind. It has become part of the machinery of Social Reform on the one hand, and on the other, its growth is merely an indication of the increased part which Government is called upon to play in economic life generally. The question whether a particular service can be better performed by the State than by some other agency is, to some extent, a question capable of expert determination. But services which in some countries are left to private enterprise, such

as the provision of life insurance and railway transport, are in other cases carried out by the State, and so the discussion of what it is "natural" for the State to do and not to do is very likely to be biassed by the traditional or customary division obtaining in a particular country. How much the State should do in the way of Social Reform is again an issue upon which no finality can be reached. For the answer depends not only upon the precise objects of social reform expenditure and their results, but also upon the reactions of taxation upon production, and these differ not only with the nature of the taxation imposed, but with the willingness of the taxpayer to pay taxes, which varies very much from time to time and from place to place.

The expenditure of a modern State is not, however, financed entirely by taxation. The aggregate revenue can be divided into (1) proceeds from State property; (2) proceeds from loans; (3) proceeds from the performance of specific services; (4) proceeds from charges for acts in which an element of service is contained; (5) proceeds from taxation; (6) proceeds from penalties. Some of these sources of revenue are not closely distinguishable in practice: thus, if the Post Office charges enough for the services it performs to gain a net revenue over and above the direct cost of the service, it is in effect levying a tax: the process of imposing a fee for stamping documents which validate proceedings important in the economic or social life of the community also partakes of the nature of taxation, whilst on the other hand, in return for taxes paid, the taxpayer does receive some benefit, although that benefit is not measurable exactly. The purpose of taxation is, in fact, to meet the general charges of Government, and arises out of the circumstance that, in the absence of State property yielding a sufficient income or State enterprises yielding a sufficient profit, the only way of meeting the cost of Government is by some levy on the citizens which does not pretend to vary with the benefit received, but with some standard, more or less accurate as the case may be, of "ability to pay." Revenue from State property, owing to the alienation of rights in the past, is not usually of great importance in the modern world: but proceeds from State enterprises (which, of course, involve the possession of fixed property by the State) is becoming more and more important as public utility enterprises are taken over by public authorities of one kind or another. In both these cases, of course, the revenue gained is, in part or in whole, offset by expenditure on maintenance and operating, so that only the margin between revenue and expenditure is available for meeting the general charges on the Budget. The possibility of meeting the general costs of Government by means of loans is clearly limited; in time of war expenses rise as well as loan-proceeds, and in time of peace a Government which attempts to meet general expenditure out of loans will find it impossible to raise loans except at constantly rising rates of interest. The place of loans in public finance is broadly limited to (1) war (and even here the purists would prefer heavier taxation to larger loans); (2) borrowing for short periods in anticipation of normal revenue proceeds; (3) productive purposes (more important in the case of subsidiary Governments than in the case of the Central Government); (4) temporary exigencies destroying the budgetary equilibrium for the time being, other than war, such as the failure of the crops in a country

dependent upon agriculture. (There is one form of borrowing which in distracted periods, War and Revolution, possesses great elasticity, the ultimate effects of which are, however, ruinous. That is borrowing by means of " inflation," *i.e.* an indefinite increase in the volume of paper money. In the end, however, inflation as an instrument of finance breaks down because the money issued becomes valueless, or almost so valueless that it no longer pays to increase the quantity any further.)

The upshot of the previous discussion is that the State must necessarily rely upon the yield of taxation for the bulk of the revenue which it needs to meet its expenditure. This raises, in the first instance, the question of whether it is possible to state in general terms how much taxation can be levied from a given community, or, in other words, whether it is possible to state what the community's " taxable capacity " amounts to.

This is a task which has been frequently essayed in recent years, with no very satisfactory results, and expert opinion is gradually coming round to the point of view that it is impossible to define, even approximately, what the limits to taxable capacity are. The limit is reached when the " bad effects " of taxation outweigh any good produced by the expenditure of the proceeds of that taxation. Now it is clear, in the first place, that opinion may differ as to what " bad effects " should be taken into account : and however these may be defined, two systems of taxation, yielding an equal revenue, may produce different kinds and quantities of bad effects. Not only so, but the badness of the effects, if any, varies not only with the volume and kind of taxation imposed, but with the opinions entertained by the taxpayers as to the " equity " of the taxation. And " equity " in these matters being largely, if not entirely, a matter of settled expectation, of what people are used to and therefore regard as " fair," it follows that given a change in this respect, a large measure of taxation may have approached the limit of capacity to a smaller degree than a smaller measure of taxation would have done, given no change in this respect. Finally, as already hinted at previously, the effects of the taxation on material welfare cannot be finally weighed until the effects of the expenditure financed by the taxation have also been taken into account. Without going as far as some writers who describe the whole concept of " taxable capacity " as a myth, it is at any rate clear that it is an elusive and unsatisfactory concept, with no great bearing upon the practical issues at stake.

The " bad effects " of taxation relate to the repercussions of taxation upon the taxpayer. Though it is habitual to speak of taxation as being imposed upon persons (as in the case of income taxes) or upon things or commodities (such as excise or customs duties), in the end, of course, all taxes are paid by persons or institutions. The effect of taxation is to discourage the production of the thing taxed, through alterations in the willingness of individuals who " really " pay the tax to produce those things, or to consume them. The important question then is, by how much will the production of the thing taxed fall off ?

In modern communities such as Great Britain a large part of the revenue is derived from the taxation of income, through income tax and super-tax, and of savings, through the imposition of estate, inheritance and legacy duties. Moreover these taxes have a growing importance,

since they present very great technical advantages over other forms of taxation. They lend themselves easily to exemption, differentiation and progression, and therefore fit in with the modern tendency to adjust taxation to differing degrees of ability to pay, and they finally possess the great virtue that they leave the taxpayer free to pay them by varying his expenditure on other things without interfering, except to the extent that his means are reduced in the aggregate, with the various possible directions of expenditure. A discussion of how far, if at all, income tax and death-duties affect the production of the things taxed, is of great practical importance. In other words, is the production of income and of savings adversely affected, and if so, to what extent?

The deterrent effect of a combination of high income tax rates and of high death duty rates is in current controversy rated very seriously. The knowledge that a large fraction of what is earned will be taken away in income tax, it is argued, destroys people's incentive to earn, the fact that earnings are less, and the net amount remaining after tax has been paid, reduces the *ability* to save, whilst the further fact that these savings will in turn be taxed reduces the *willingness* to save. Economic life is thus doubly affected: by a reduction in the spirit of enterprise, and by a reduction in the available volume of capital.

So far as willingness to earn is concerned, there is something to be said for the view that, in so far as the taxpayer desires to maintain a certain standard of life, higher income taxes, so far from deterring him from working, make him work harder. And, similarly, in so far as an individual desires to accumulate a given sum for the benefit of his descendants, a higher rate of death duty encourages him to save more, so as to leave the same net amount. If his income, out of which the savings are made, falls off, he will rather cut off expenditure upon current consumption than reduce the amount he saves. To the extent that considerations of the kind just outlined influence individuals subject to tax, the deterrent effect of such taxation is less than appears at first sight. But, it must be borne in mind (*a*) that where the income is itself uncertain, the willingness to take risks is diminished, for the gain is in any case uncertain and the deterrent effect of the tax has a more than proportionate influence; (*b*) a large part of the saving of the community is done by a small section of the taxpayers, owing to the inequality of incomes, and represents "automatic" saving, *i.e.* the excess of income over a high but largely predetermined standard of living. Taking these considerations into account, it is probable that the present scale of taxation is having a deterrent effect, but one which is probably less than is usually supposed.

The problem of deterrence is a different one from the problem of incidence, *i.e.* as to who ultimately pays the tax. In the case of income and super-tax and taxes on inheritance, expert opinion is almost unanimously in favour of the view that such taxes *cannot* be shifted and that the incidence is on the payer of the tax, though the effects of such taxation may be very wide. In the case of taxes on commodities, the question of deterrence and of incidence is more complicated. A tax on beer has deterrent effects on its production and consumption, but the incidence of the tax may be very complicated. The duty is levied in the first instance on the brewer, and he tries to "pass it on" to the consumer either by raising

the price or lowering the quality or by employing both methods together. In so far as the *aggregate amount* spent upon beer is the same as before, the whole of the tax is borne by the consumer, but less beer is consumed. If the *same amount* of beer is consumed as before, the whole of the tax is paid by the consumer, except in so far as, his total resources remaining the same, the prices of other things consumed by him fall because his demand for them is less urgent than his demand for beer, in which case part of the tax is shifted on to the producers of these things. But if, in the effort to keep up sales, brewers do not pass on the whole of the duty, *i.e.* do not raise the price of beer in proportion to the tax, they pay the duty. This makes brewing less profitable and tends to discourage as much production of beer in the long run as could otherwise have taken place. Taxes upon commodities are borne by producers and consumers in the proportion to which each party is in a position to turn in other directions, *i.e.* to produce other things or consume other things. The less easy it is for a producer to shift his production, and the easier the consumer finds it to alter his consumption, the more likely is it that the former will pay part of the tax, or, in extreme cases, the whole of it. The more wedded the consumer to certain types of consumption, the more likely it is that he will pay the tax. The result is that consumers tend to pay the whole of the tax on necessaries, except where the supply of such necessaries is highly competitive and some of the producers can be differentially treated. A tax upon wheat, accompanied by "Empire Free Trade," would not in all probability lead to a rise in wheat prices proportionate to the tax, except in periods when the Empire harvests were deficient. As the above illustration already shows, such considerations are important, particularly in dealing with the effects of tariffs. The question of whether the "foreigner" can be made to "pay" the tax depends upon the particular situation of each commodity: the more the market in question approaches the single market for a commodity, *i.e.* the more dependent sellers are upon it, the more likely it is that part of the tax will be borne by producers; the more sellers approach the position of having a monopoly of the commodity and the less dependent they are upon the particular market imposing the tax, the more likely is it that the local consumers will pay the whole or the greater part of the tax.

Taxes upon commodities suffer in general from one defect from which taxes upon income are exempt. They tend to fall with much greater proportional effect upon the lower ranges of income than they do upon the higher ranges of income, because a larger proportion of a small income is spent upon commodities than is normally the case with a large income, especially if the taxed commodities are necessaries or quasi-conventional necessaries, as they tend to be: for otherwise they do not yield a sufficiently large revenue. Hence a tax system in which commodity taxes loom large tends to favour the richer against the poorer sections of the community, and this would still be the case if the tax were a turnover tax on commodities generally: for a larger proportion of the larger incomes is saved than is true of the smaller incomes. It is true that if it is desired to extract a certain amount of revenue out of the poorer classes of the community, it is easier to do so by means of commodity taxes than by means, say, of a poll tax or a tax upon wages, for the taxpayer is not, in

many cases, aware that he is paying the tax and therefore the collection of a given revenue results in less *apparent* suffering. But it still remains true that, in order to make the richer sections of the community pay more, not only absolutely, but proportionately to their incomes, commodity taxes must be supplemented by other taxes, especially taxes upon incomes and inheritances, in such a way as to make the tax system as a whole progressive.

The distribution of taxation between different social classes is, in fact, one of the most difficult of all the Social Problems of the day. It arises from the fact that the electorate includes the bulk of the adult population of the country, and is consequently inclined towards methods of expenditure which benefit the poorer section of the community to a greater extent than the richer. The combined effect of progressive taxation and expenditure upon public health, education, non-contributory pensions, grants-in-aid towards Unemployment Insurance and the like is towards diminishing the inequality of fortune. Critics see in these developments not only a danger that, if the policy is pushed further, the burden of taxation imposed on the richer sections of the community will become excessive, but also grave moral and political dangers arising from the majority of the population being encouraged to get " something for nothing."

So far as the moral danger is concerned, a great deal turns upon the precise form which increased expenditure upon the Social Services takes. No one is likely to be demoralised by expenditure which does not involve a direct monetary payment to the beneficiary, but merely takes the shape of improving his physical and intellectual environment. Even direct monetary payments, when they take the form of old-age pensions, can hardly be regarded as demoralising. It may be argued that, in the absence of such gratuitous payments, the workers would be encouraged to make provision themselves for their old age. But whether their incomes are really large enough to enable them to do so, except by sacrificing immediate enjoyment for themselves and their families, which are so large relatively to their resources that only the most far-seeing and best-off among them will in part do so, is another matter. To sacrifice present efficiency for the benefit of the future may, in any case, prove very bad economics. It is true that direct pecuniary payments, where not coupled with any responsibility at all, do involve definite moral risks. But the way to prevent the risk from arising is to improve the economic environment by the elimination, as far as possible, of the causes of unemployment, for it is under this head that the risk of demoralisation most definitely arises. In any case, it has still to be proved that the moral demoralisation arising from the " dole " is worse than the demoralisation arising from mere lack of work and the decline of personal efficiency and self-respect which accompany long spells of unemployment, accentuated, as these would be in the absence of a system of relief, by underfeeding and physical deterioration of the most pronounced kind. On balance, even the payments under the Unemployment Insurance Schemes have done more good than harm to the bulk of the recipients.

Moreover, if the problem is looked at with British conditions particularly in mind, the redistribution of well-being which accompanies

expenditure upon the Social Services is accompanied to-day by another form of redistribution which benefits in the main the well-to-do sections of the community. So long as Great Britain possesses a National Debt involving an annual debt charge in the neighbourhood of £350 millions, income is being redistributed to the bondholder, which, so long as prices continue to fall, represents an ever-growing volume of *real* income. Or, as it is usually put, the real burden of the National Debt has been rising. Since it is a fixed payment, and since, in time of falling prices, the aggregate money income of the nation declines, the annual interest burden represents a larger proportion of the latter. It is true that, as the interest is paid out of taxation, the richer classes as a whole are paying for what they receive in interest, but this payment reduces their effective contribution to the general expenses of the community, other than the Debt Charge. In discussions of the equity of the existing scheme of taxation, this point is often overlooked, but it is obviously vital in attempting to arrive at a true picture of the present situation.

IX. FINANCE AND THE PROBLEM OF PRICES

The increase in the real burden of the National Debt through the fall in the level of prices is only one aspect of a problem, the significance of which for the whole Financial Structure cannot be exaggerated.

It is natural to think of the apparatus of production in concrete terms —in terms of goods and raw materials, and of plant and equipment, factories, ships and railways. But production has an abstract as well as a concrete side. The whole of the material equipment of mankind has at any moment a *balance sheet value* : investment at any moment involves a valuation, in terms of money, of what is being *invested in*. It follows from this that changes in the value of money—alterations in what the pound or the dollar will buy—must affect the value of investments, whether these consist of rights to income or property, or the actual property itself. In a period of falling prices, the value of property must fall, and therefore, if there are prior and residual rights attaching to such property, the net value of the residual rights must decline even faster than the value of the property itself, for whatever the property yields is subject to a fixed deduction. And similarly in periods of rising prices, the value of residual rights must rise faster than the rise of prices, because they are subject only to a fixed deduction, the proportion of which to the total yield falls as that total goes up. Hence rising and falling prices are among the most important of the general factors which affect the process of investment and the value of investments. Moreover, so long as men look to the future as well as to the present, the problems presented by rising and falling prices are inescapable.

The question thus naturally arises : can anything be done by conscious human effort to reduce the risks which are involved in this way ? There are two main ways of possible escape.

The first lies in devising contractual forms which take account of possible price changes and allow for them in the contract itself. Thus it can be agreed upon between debtor and creditor that if prices rise, the nominal amount to be paid by the debtor shall go up, so as to give the

creditor the *purchasing power* which he actually lent, not an amount of money which really is less than this. Or, if prices fall, the creditor is to receive a smaller amount in terms of money than he originally agreed to receive, so as not to force the debtor to pay over an *amount of purchasing power* greater than the amount he contracted to pay. The introduction of contracts such as these would involve agreement as to how changes in the value of money, *i.e.* changes in the price level, should be measured, and a condition of success would be a widespread adoption of the principle involved. For a debtor agreeing to pay more to his creditor in money would be in a difficult position unless he in his turn were covered, *e.g.* insurance companies, agreeing to make out their policies in terms of a fixed amount of purchasing power (not a fixed amount of money), could not possibly do so unless their investments in turn covered them against the risks involved.

The alternative is to attack the problem frontally and attempt to stabilise the value of money itself. But to achieve this, even partially, requires an instrument of stabilisation, and the vital issue of the moment is whether it is possible to utilise the powers of the Central Banks for this purpose. In the modern world, the ultimate basis of the monetary system, gold, no longer circulates as coin, but is kept in the vaults of the Central Banks as part cover of the actual circulating medium, whether notes or deposits. Subject to the requirements of the law, it is possible for the Banks to hold more or less gold against a given volume of purchasing power ; or what is the same thing, with a given amount of gold at their command, they can vary the amount of purchasing power issued against it. They can increase the amount of purchasing power outstanding either by lending more freely, or buying securities more freely, or both lending and buying more simultaneously. The problem of stabilising the purchasing power of money is, then, the problem of so varying the quantity of purchasing power issued directly or indirectly by the Banking System as to keep its value approximately constant in terms of an index number of prices : increasing the volume if the index number falls, decreasing the volume as the index number rises. To carry out this policy even approximately, however, requires a considerable degree of co-operation, at least between the Central Banks of the more important money markets : and as no attempt has ever been made to carry out such a policy, it is impossible to say what success would attend an effort to do so. The probability is that by means of it a much larger degree of stability could be imparted to prices, even if absolute stability were to remain a scientific ideal, impossible of practical realisation.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

Section I.

H. G. MOULTON : *The Financial Organisation of Society* ; 3rd edn. (Chicago and Cambridge. 1930)

F. LAVINGTON : *The English Capital Market* (London. 1921)

Section II.

WALTER LEAF : *Banking* (Home University Library. London and New York. 1926)

HARTLEY WITHERS : *The Meaning of Money*; 5th edn. (London. 1930)

R. G. RODKEY : *The Banking Process* (New York. 1928)

W. R. BURGESS : *The Reserve Banks and the Money Market* (London and New York. 1927)

Section III.

HARTLEY WITHERS : *Stocks and Shares*; 2nd edn. (London. 1917)

The Quicksands of the City (London. 1930)

Hints about Investment (London. 1926)

HASTINGS LYON : *Investment* (Boston. 1926)

E. SHERWOOD MEAD : *Corporation Finance*; 6th edn. (London and New York. 1928)

Section IV.

HUGH DALTON : *Principles of Public Finance*; 2nd edn. (London. 1929)

C. C. PLEHN : *Introduction to Public Finance*; 5th edn. (London. 1926)

Section V.

J. S. LAWRENCE : *Stabilisation of Prices* (New York. 1928)

J. R. BELLERBY : *Monetary Stability* (London. 1925)

MODERN THEORIES AND FORMS OF INDUSTRIAL ORGANISATION

By

G. D. H. COLE

SYNOPSIS

What is Capitalism? — Capitalists and Labourers — The ideal of Producers' Co-operation — The divorce between ownership and production — The American ideal — Can Capitalism be democratised? — The joint stock company or corporation as the typical modern business unit — Private companies and partnerships — The modern business administrator — The position of shareholders or stockholders — And of directors — Joint stock in theory and practice — The diffusion of ownership and the concentration of control in capitalist industry — The growth of subsidiary companies and interlocking directorates — And of State intervention — Why concentration is inevitable — The divorce between ownership and administration — The rights of the investor — Types of investors — The tendency of industries to finance themselves — Are shareholders becoming *rentiers*? — The elimination of risks — In a collectivist society — The status of business managers — The position of the workers — Attempts to give the workers a voice in control — The difficulties of "joint control" — Effects of the exclusion of the workers from control — How Capitalism is changing — Growth of working-class power — The situation in the United States — Will Capitalism survive? — An outline of Socialist doctrine — The problems of business management and control under Socialism — Two conceptions of Socialist administration — The representation of consumers — The authority of Parliament — The growth of semi-public concerns — The position of the workers in socialised industry — Guild Socialism — The sphere of workers' control — Works Councils — Wages and prices under Socialism — The Socialist case and the capitalist answer — Rationalisation — The problem of trusts and combines — Industrial legislation and Trade Union bargaining — Rationalisation in Great Britain and America — Co-partnership and profit-sharing — Welfare work — Is "joint control" possible? — The right to strike — Compulsory arbitration — State regulation of wages, hours and conditions — Working conditions under Socialism — The incentives to labour — The problem of irksome or

monotonous employment — Can new incentives be substituted for those on which we now rely ? — The Russian experiment considered — The " Five Years' Plan " — The method of Communism — The need for national planning — The control of banking and finance — The post-war problems of currency and credit — The raising of new capital for industry — The London money market — New and old methods of saving — Capital accumulation under Socialism — The allocation of capital — The Consumers' Co-operative Movement — Socialism and Co-operation — The modern conception of Socialism — The present economic situation in Great Britain — in the rest of Europe — in the United States — The influence of Russia — Will Europe go Socialist ?

MODERN THEORIES AND FORMS OF INDUSTRIAL ORGANISATION

The form of economic and industrial organisation under which we live to-day is commonly called Capitalism. It is not a rigid or a clearly defined system. No one person or school of thought planned it, or even thought of it as a system before it began to develop. It is impossible to say when precisely it arose, or from what period we should date the beginning of the capitalist era. For some of its features came into existence long before others; and many are but developments or modifications of features belonging to earlier forms of economic organisation.

Nevertheless, we have all a fairly clear idea of what capitalism means, in the form in which it exists in the world to-day. Its distinguishing features are, first and foremost, the direction of productive effort by large-scale business organisations, owned by a multitude of private individuals the vast mass of whom play no part at all in the active conduct of the enterprises in which their money is invested; and, secondly, the existence of a huge class of labourers who work for a wage or salary and have, as such, no part in the ownership either of the instruments with which they work, or of the goods which they help to produce. This divorce between the functions of labour and ownership is the most characteristic mark of modern capitalist organisation.

This, of course, is not to say either that the owner of capital does no work, or that the labourer is necessarily a propertyless proletarian. Many owners of capital work hard and well; and many labourers nowadays possess invested property on a small scale—even more in the United States of America than in Great Britain. There is not even a sharp and definite line of division between the owning and labouring classes—they shade into each other. The point is not that owners are idle or workmen destitute, but that there is, under capitalism, no necessary connexion between the separate functions of ownership and work.

Contrast the situation to-day with that of more primitive types of economic Society. It is commonly a characteristic of less developed economic systems that most workers own both their tools and their product, and live by selling what they have produced, where they do not live by consuming it directly, as many peasants do to a large extent. On the other hand, everywhere the modern workman lives by selling his labour. He cannot sell his product, both because he does not own it, and because its nature is such that he cannot possibly own it under modern conditions. In a sense, he has no product, and makes nothing. He only collaborates with a multitude of other workers by hand and brain in creating a product which is essentially the collective work of a complex and extensive economic group. Nor can he own his tools; for the simple hand-tools of the primitive craftsman have been developed into vast

power-driven machines far beyond the power of the individual worker to own, and in most cases beyond the power even of the individual capitalist. Men must work together to create a modern product ; and men must club together to buy the modern instruments of production.

There is no reason, in the nature of things, why the same groups of persons should not join together both to produce and to own the instruments of production. This has always been the ideal of those who, from the days of the Christian Socialists of 1848, have put forward the ideal of Producers' Co-operation as the means of resolving our industrial disharmonies. But, after a century of endeavour, Producers' Co-operation has achieved but little, though, in Europe, as we shall see later, the quite different movement of Consumers' Co-operation has achieved a great deal. There are a number of Co-operative Societies of producers at work to-day, both in Great Britain and in continental countries, and a few in America ; but their entire product is but an insignificant fraction of the output of capitalist industry. Their efforts, moreover, have been mainly confined to industries which do not call for much capital equipment, such as boot-making and tailoring ; and, even so, they have usually been compelled to go outside their own working membership in order to raise the sums required. The ordinary workman to-day does not possess enough capital to provide the means for his own employment ; and, even where he does, he is usually not in a position to take the heavy risk of embarking it all in a producers' co-operative enterprise which may fail, and sweep away the painful savings of a lifetime. It is usually sound business for the workman, if he has saved money, to invest it in something widely different from the business in which he is employed. He cannot afford to risk both his labour and his savings in the same enterprise, liable to the same uncertainties : the sound principle for him, as for many other classes of investor, is that of spreading his risks.

It is, then, impossible under modern conditions for the groups of producers and the groups of owners who are required for the conduct of modern business to coincide. This would not happen even if the workers became much richer and the gulf between rich and poor much narrower. American economists sometimes look forward to a day when capitalism will have been completely " democratised," and the ownership of modern large-scale business will be entirely in the hands of small investors who are also workers by hand and brain in the various enterprises which they own. I see no sign of the actual approach of this hundred per cent. American paradise ; but even if it did come it is safe to predict that the dualism of labour and ownership would not be removed. Each workman might own shares ; but he would not own them mainly in the business in which he worked. Owners and labourers would have come to be the same people ; but ownership and labour would continue to be two quite distinct and separately exercised functions. There is a very strong tendency in modern industry to tear these two functions apart : there is almost none to bring them together where they have once been sundered.

The typical form of capitalist structure in modern business is the joint stock company or corporation, in which usually many shareholders or stockholders contribute to provide capital for the carrying on of a complex enterprise employing wage-labour. Every decade and every year this method of business organisation becomes more pervasive. It arose first of all as a means of conducting certain quite exceptional types of enterprise, such as foreign trade with remote countries, or the exploitation of some patent or monopoly. It was then applied to certain types of public service undertaking—to the supply of gas and water, and the building of canals and, later, railways. Adam Smith, writing in the latter part of the eighteenth century, regarded it as suitable only for such services as could be reduced largely to routine, and called for no special qualities of initiative or enterprise. The economist M'Culloch, writing more than half a century later, echoed this judgment. In the first half of the nineteenth century, joint stock companies, save for certain narrow purposes, were still looked at askance. Limited liability, the foundation of modern joint stock company law, was granted generally in Great Britain only in 1855. Thereafter, joint stock organisation went ahead by leaps and bounds. In the past three-quarters of a century the joint stock company has conquered the world.

Moreover, States, which so long obstructed its progress, now do all they can to help it. The private company, limited to fifty shareholders and not offering its shares for public subscription, were first recognised as a separate type in 1907 under British law. The result was twofold. In the first place it became easy to convert family businesses, small productive concerns, even small retail shops, into companies; and this has been widely done. And secondly, the new law made possible an enormous growth of subsidiary companies owned and controlled by the great joint stock concerns, but not subject to the same conditions in respect of publicity. To-day in Great Britain the vast majority of the joint stock companies on the register are private companies.

Of course, even so, by no means all business has assumed a joint stock form; and many private companies continue to be actually managed by persons who are also the principal owners of their shares or by partnerships differing in form according to each country's legal code. But a greatly increased proportion of the total business activity of the nation is now conducted by joint stock concerns with numerous bodies of shareholders, under the actual management of salaried officers who may, or may not, hold shares in them, but whose holding of shares or stock is in any case wholly irrelevant to their managerial function. Not only labour and ownership, but also management and ownership, tend to become divorced. The typical administrator of modern business is not an owner, but himself an employee.

This does not mean that he is governed by the will of the stock- or shareholders. The typical shareholder in modern industry, following the sound principle of spreading his risks, owns holdings in a large number of different business undertakings. He is not in a position, and he does not seek, to understand the detailed working of these various undertakings,

or, save under quite exceptional conditions, to control in any way their policy or administration. Only when something goes very seriously wrong with a business does the typical shareholder usually make his appearance as anything other than the passive recipient of a policy laid down by the directors.

These directors are, indeed, in theory the shareholders' appointees. But hardly more than in theory. A contested election for a board of directors is an extreme rarity; and, in practice, the directorate usually recruits itself by co-option or by a policy of representation of vitally important interests. In some concerns, the directors count hardly more than the shareholders in the real conduct of the business; and the effective control has passed almost wholly into the hands of the salaried managers. In others, the directors count; but in large businesses they tend to count rather as controllers of ultimate financial policy than as administrators or technical controllers of production, and the productive control has passed into the hands of salaried managers who have little or no connection with the ownership of the business.

There is accordingly a sharp divergence between the theory and the practice of modern business organisation. In theory, the joint stock company is not a democracy—for it gives not one man, but one share, one vote in its deliberations—but at least a polity in which all shareholders have a voice proportionate to their holdings. In practice, it is nothing of the sort; for the main body of shareholders are far too scattered, too shifting and too little acquainted with the working of the businesses in which their holdings lie to make any effective use of their nominal voting power. Of course, even so a few big shareholders may exert a dominant influence; and this very commonly happens where one company holds, directly or through nominees, shares in another. But where there is no important shareholding of this sort and no small group of big shareholders dominating the rest, the body of shareholders hardly counts at all. The directors are, indeed, there to serve the financial interest of the whole group of owners and doubtless do their best to make the business a success. But in most companies the great majority of the shareholders have really no control, and in some the whole body of shareholders scarcely matters from the standpoint of policy.

Thus it comes about that most of the owners of modern industry neither possess nor desire any say in its control, and that a small number of great owners or administrators of large-scale business controls huge accumulations of capital belonging to other people. Probably the ownership of modern industry is becoming more widely diffused; but this does not prevent its control from becoming every year more closely concentrated.

Nor does this concentration stop short at the single business. As we have seen, there has been of late years a very rapid growth of subsidiary companies controlled by the big business concerns. Most big productive concerns, such as Vickers, or The General Electric Co., or Unilever, have under them a host of subsidiaries, over whose policy they exercise, in the last resort, a complete control. There is further concentration through the method of interlocking directorates, which often link up several big companies into a group following a common policy; and there are holding

companies, whose sole function is to unify the policy and pool the profits of a number of nominally separate businesses under their control. Concerns of this sort shade off into trusts, combines, cartels and other forms of trading association covering an even wider field, and bringing about varying degrees of unification over whole trades or classes of production. And we are now beginning to experience a still further degree of consolidation, where—as in the new Coal Mines Act of 1930 in Great Britain, or the Federal Farm Act of the United States—the State intervenes to bring about a compulsory unification of policy over an entire industry or service.

This description is not meant to imply a hostile criticism of the tendency towards consolidation. That tendency is indeed inevitable and, on the whole, salutary under modern conditions of production and sale. The scale of production and the capital equipment necessary for efficient service are now in many industries so large, and the results of purely unregulated competitive production and sale so liable to be uneconomic and disastrous, that businesses are compelled to frame a combined policy or the State to do it for them in their default. The single business can no longer pursue—in the major industries, at least—an independent career or adopt a purely autonomous policy without any co-ordination with others in the same line of production. The day of competitive *laissez-faire* within national borders is over. If it is not ended by action of the State, it is abrogated by the directors of industry on their own behalf.

The result of these changed conditions is, as we have seen, a divorce between ownership and administration, as well as between ownership and labour. The three functions become more and more sharply differentiated ; and the process of differentiation brings with it new problems of its own. Many people are disposed to look back with regret to the day when the master-craftsman, owning his own instruments of production and working in his shop alongside his journeyman, was at once owner, manager and artificer, and when the workman had, if not an assurance, at least a reasonable hope of becoming a master-craftsman in his turn. Such a system never existed in its entirety at any period in the past, and no one supposes that anything like it can be ever restored, under the changed technical conditions of modern production ; but many are inclined to wonder whether we have made the best of these new conditions, either from the human or from the economic standpoint.

Take first the position of the stock- or shareholder : he owns the business, but, normally, his interest in it is strictly limited to its capacity to yield him an income (or, in some cases, a capital appreciation) on his investment. He supplies the money to equip the business, but there his active function ends. For the rest he is merely a passive recipient of income. But, as owner, he preserves his legal right to any profits which the business may make. Surplus earnings (if there are any) belong to him and not to the managers or workers who actually conduct the affair. It is true that, in consideration of his claim to the profits, he also takes a risk. He may lose the money which he has invested. But, under modern conditions of limited liability, this is all he can lose. He can no longer, like a partner in a private concern, be made liable in all his fortune for the debts of the business. Limited liability is a clear recognition by

the State of the purely passive part which the ordinary investor now plays.

The question is : " Has the investor, in ceasing to be an active agent, forfeited his claim to receive the residuary profits ? " Many actual investors have voluntarily given up this claim in return for a greater security. They take up debentures (which are legally loans and not part of the capital of the business) and accept a fixed rate of interest instead of a variable profit. Or they invest in State or municipal or semi-public securities similarly carrying a fixed rate with greater security. Even the preference shareholder, while he is in form part-owner of the business, is often disfranchised and usually surrenders his claim to share in the residuary profits. His passive rôle, as a mere investor looking for a return in money but not interesting himself in the conduct of the business, is explicitly recognised. And, in the total investment of the community, the proportion of gilt-edged securities, debentures and preference shares bearing a limited interest tends to grow in relation to the magnitude of the ordinary capital or common stock. It is quite possible that, in some industries and services, the ordinary share will before long totally disappear and all the capital be provided at fixed or limited rates of interest or dividend.

Moreover, in certain types of business the private investor is even ceasing to be called upon to provide new capital by any volition of his own. In prosperous times in Great Britain most of the new capital needed by established industries tends to be provided by the accumulation of reserve funds out of the current profits. The entire amount of profit is not distributed in dividends : a substantial part is reserved in order to provide for the expansion of the business. These reserved profits, of course, become part of the property of the shareholders and are represented in an enhanced value of the shares, or in new bonus shares issued against them. But the process of investment ceases to be a voluntary act of the shareholder and is decided for him by those who control business policy. To the extent to which this occurs the shareholder loses his last remaining positive function and becomes a mere claimant to income, wholly without constructive part in the creation of wealth.

Under these conditions even those who would repudiate any desire to attack the " rights of property " sometimes suggest that the rights of the shareholder need re-defining in relation to his changed status. There arise demands for the limitation of profits, for a sharing in profits, as of right, by the administrators and labourers who do the actual work of industry, for a conversion of the shareholder into a *rentier*, having only a fixed or limited claim to a share in the product. The reply on the shareholder's behalf is that he still bears the risks and that someone must bear them. But how if, in a particular industry or service, the risk can be limited, or even eliminated ? There is practically no risk to-day in holding shares in the Bank of England or the big joint stock banks ; and in such public utility services as electric supply there is growing up a type of State-guaranteed capital from which risks have been practically eliminated. Large risks, of course, still remain in ordinary industries ; but wherever risks are diminished the shareholder's claim to take the residuary profits is proportionately weakened.

Suppose the community adopted a collectivist system this tendency

would be carried to its logical conclusion. The State would raise industrial capital or take it over from its present owners, and would pay a fixed interest for its use (reducing the claims, if it thought fit, by taxation of the interest or of inheritance). The State would take the risks of industry and would, presumably, do all it could to reduce them by "spreading," or would pass them on to the consumer through its control over prices. The owners of industry would become pure *rentiers*, like the present holders of national or municipal debt. We are still far from a collectivist system; but there can be no doubt that in Great Britain industry has been moving fairly rapidly towards such a system. The creation of such bodies as the Central Electricity Board (by a Conservative government) is a clear sign of this tendency at work.

The decline of the shareholder as an active partner in business enterprise tends to raise the status of the industrial manager and administrator. This class has become of late years far more articulate and conscious of its own existence; and it has tended, in some degree, to modify its attitude in consequence of the change. The managers of industry are less purely the servants of the shareholders and more the servants of industry than they were a generation ago. This is certainly a hopeful development. It tends to give the managers a broader and more humane outlook on the problems of industry, decreases their feeling of being at war against the workers as representatives of the money-power, and helps to develop in them a code of professional behaviour and public service. It would be unwise to stress too much the extent of this change of attitude; but no reasonable person will deny that it exists in some degree. The power of the managers of industry has greatly increased; and with more power goes, in some degree, a keener and finer sense of responsibility. For there can be no real responsibility without power.

THE WORKERS UNDER CAPITALISM

Therein lies the true seriousness of the workman's position. For he has still no recognised powers or rights in the conduct of industry. He may indeed through his Trade Union exert a considerable influence on the way in which industry is conducted; and in occupations where Trade Unionism is strong he may have in fact a considerable negative authority —a power to veto or hamper the policy of the management. But this power remains chiefly negative, and is not recognised or sanctioned either by law or by the customary view of the workman's rights. Consequently, little attempt is made, save sporadically here and there, to enlist the workman's positive co-operation in promoting economic efficiency. He is not regarded as a partner in the business, or as having any right to a share in the direction of its policy. Under these conditions he cannot be expected to feel much responsibility for making his industry as successful and efficient as possible, or to use his power in a responsible manner. He is too often consulted only when the management wants to cajole him into giving something up—into accepting a wage-reduction, for example, or agreeing to the abrogation of some cherished rule or method of work; and his response is, naturally enough, most often merely an assertion of his desire to get as much as he can out of industry without feeling

himself in any way responsible for doing his best to increase its ability to pay.

The question here is : What can be done to enlist the great power that now resides in the workers' hands on the side of productive efficiency, in order to raise the national dividend and the workers' standards of life ? Many answers have been put forward. In Great Britain the Whitley scheme of Joint Industrial Councils, launched at the close of the War, was a half-hearted attempt to recognise the workers' claim to a voice in the control of industry without any fundamental alteration in the economic system. It broke down in most cases because it did not really give the worker any power at all. The final decision remained as firmly as ever in the hands of the employer or manager. The Whitley Council could act only by mutual consent : it could carry no proposal against opposition from either side. And in the works, the employer or the manager still had the right to say what should be done and the workers had not. It may be said that this is inevitable, for as long as industry is conducted on capitalist lines. Perhaps it is inevitable ; but even so it was certainly fatal to the serene hopes of some of those who sponsored the Whitley scheme. And there have been many schemes similar to British " Whitleyism " in the United States.

Apart from Whitleyism some employers put their faith in Works Councils and the development of consultative machinery in the factory itself. But the same difficulty arises. The management have the right to give orders ; and the workmen have not. The Works Council can operate only where agreement can be secured ; and in default of agreement the employer or manager still decides what is to be done. What is sometimes called " joint control " is really unworkable. There must be somebody who has the last word.

I do not mean to suggest that Works Councils or Whitley Councils are necessarily bad. They may be good in their effects from the standpoint of both management and workers. But they do not and cannot, under existing conditions, give the workmen any real or recognised control over industrial policy. The workmen remain a class devoid of recognised power or responsibility—a body external to the control of industry, whose rights are limited in the last resort to the terms of the wage-contract.

Of course, many people regard this limitation as inevitable, on the ground that it is essential to the success of the capitalist system and that no workable alternative to capitalism has yet been advanced. But anyone who takes this view has to recognise that the limitation interferes seriously with the working of the capitalist system, because it engenders a constant friction which cannot be conducive to efficient production. The workmen, or a large number of them, do undoubtedly resent their exclusion from a recognised share in the determination of industrial policy. This does weaken their sense of responsibility for doing the best work they can, and does create discontent and friction in the workshops, and an attitude hostile to the development of co-operative measures for the improvement of industry and its adaptation to changing needs. Many economists attribute a great deal of the unemployment of recent years to the undue rigidity of our economic system ; and the lack of a co-operative spirit between the administrators and the ordinary workers in

industry is assuredly a powerful factor in causing this rigidity. It is almost impossible in most industries to get employers and workers to come together for the dispassionate consideration of changing needs and technological conditions.

The circumstances described above mean that the capitalist system works to-day in a fashion widely different from that of even a generation ago, and still more differently from the system as seen by the great classical economists when they formulated the theories which still largely dominate modern economic thinking. The classical economists thought of the employer as an individual operating largely with his own capital, and not as a huge corporation owned by many thousands of investors wholly ignorant of its working, and administered mainly by salaried officers uncertain of their relative duties to the shareholders, to the workers employed, and to the industry itself. They thought of the workman as an isolated individual seeking employment, and not as a member of a powerful Trade Union, possessing in addition a parliamentary vote, a State-provided education, and a desire to think for himself and to adapt social organisation to meet his needs. The idea that the workman should share in the determination of economic policy barely entered into their heads ; but neither, despite Robert Owen and a few other prophets, had it in those days seriously entered the heads of the workmen themselves. Nowadays it has ; and this fact makes a vital difference. For men who have votes, education and Trade Unions to back their demands simply cannot be managed by the same methods as the voteless and disorganised proletarians of a century ago.

Because of these changes, and of the growth in the organised political and industrial power of the working classes, we live in a world that is full of projects of economic reconstruction. And these projects have to be taken seriously even by their opponents ; for throughout the Old World at least they command vigorous support among classes powerful enough, as soon as they will, to shake the entire legal and factual foundation on which the capitalist system rests. The New World of America is indeed still largely immune from this menace or hope, as it may be regarded ; for the New World has been so far, on the whole, too busy discovering new resources and improvising methods for their exploitation to have leisure to sit down and cast a critical eye upon itself. There is Socialism in America ; but there has not been hitherto the widespread sense of discontent and maladjustment that are necessary in order to convert Socialism from a mere theory into a practical and positive challenge to things as they are. This may come in America, and come soon if the growth of material prosperity suffers any abiding check. In the Old World it has come already ; and the problems which it arouses need to be faced in the immediate future.

The broadest of all these questions is whether, in the countries of Western Europe, the capitalist system is to survive or not. Ranged against its continuance are Socialists of many varying schools of thought, who have for the most part successfully constituted themselves the leaders of the main bodies of organised working-class opinion. The Trade Unions may not be, in any full sense, Socialist ; but they certainly respond to Socialist leadership. Every developed European country possesses a powerful

Socialist or Labour Party, committed definitely to the advocacy of a new industrial system, and commanding the general support of the main body of Trade Unionists. Most of these parties are, of course, evolutionary in their ideas, and do not, like the Communists, contemplate a sudden and immediate overthrow of capitalism and the complete substitution of a Socialist system at a single blow. But they do, one and all, conceive themselves as working for the gradual and reasonably rapid transformation of the economic system from a capitalist to a Socialist basis.

I have attempted to give a general picture of the essential features of capitalist society ; and I must now attempt a similar general picture of the idea which the Socialists set up against it.

THE SOCIALIST ALTERNATIVE

Socialism, as a doctrine or plan of economic organisation, holds that the direction and control of industrial policy should be in the hands, not of private owners of capital or their nominees, but of the community itself. It urges the socialisation of the vital industries and services, as a means to their collective control in the common interest. Of course, the community, like the private capitalists—and indeed to an even greater extent—would have to act through agents. The whole people would be no more able than the whole body of shareholders in a great modern enterprise to *manage* an industry. No less able either, one might add ; for the thing is out of the question in either case. Nor could Parliament, lacking specialised competence and with a vast mass of other work to do, possibly administer industry itself, or keep a daily watch over its policy and working. It would be necessary, under Socialism as much as under large-scale capitalism, to entrust the actual management of industrial enterprise to salaried experts, chosen for their specialised knowledge and ability in particular branches of the work.

Moreover, it would be necessary to set over these specialist managers of the actual operations of production other persons, corresponding roughly to the directors of a capitalist firm, who would deal with broader issues of policy and define with the advice of the experts the course to be pursued. The difference would be that whereas the board of directors holds office and issues orders to the actual managers as the representative of the shareholders, the board of a nationalised or socialised concern would be there to represent the interests of the general public. The methods to be adopted in choosing these directors of socialised industries and services, and the question of the powers to be conferred upon them, raise some of the most vital questions of Socialist policy.

For it is evident that no board or commission appointed to direct a socialised service could be given absolute power. Take a further analogy with the board of a capitalist company. The impotence of the main body of shareholders in such a company may in practice give the directors a free hand in the direction of policy, including the fixing of dividends, the allocation of sums to reserve, and the entire expenditure of the company's available resources. But their power is still not absolute ; for apart from their reserved profits they cannot raise new capital except by persuading the public to subscribe it. In a socialised industry or service, even if the

board were left unfettered in the same degree, it would clearly not be able to get fresh capital except by appealing to some outside authority—presumably in this case the State itself.

But the controllers of a socialised service would hardly be given as much power as the directors of private enterprises in practice possess. They would hardly be allowed to appeal to the public to subscribe fresh money, or to arrange their own allocations to reserve, or to embark on big new capital expenditure even out of available resources, without the sanction of some higher authority. For it is part of the Socialist doctrine that the development of industry as a whole should proceed in accordance with an ordered plan, in order that the products of each service may be forthcoming in the right relation to demand, and the serious wastes and disproportions that arise under the capitalist system avoided. That these wastes are serious no one who has followed the subsequent stock exchange history of new flotations and issues of capital in recent years is likely to doubt. A very large part of the capital subscribed to new issues has been absolutely lost—a loss plainly reflected in the decline of the share values in question. It is part of the Socialist charge against the present system that its chaotic methods of raising new capital result in large avoidable waste and in the development of industries out of relation to the effective demand for their products. Evidently then the Socialist policy involves some sort of co-ordinated control over the supply of capital to different industries and undertakings, and this implies the existence of some sort of authority to which the boards of particular industries wanting fresh capital for development would have to submit their case.

We see, then, that the Socialist doctrine raises a number of distinct problems of industrial organisation. These are :

1. The form of actual management and the methods of appointing the managers.
2. The form of the directing board or authority for each industry or enterprise, and the methods by which it should be appointed ; and
3. The form of the co-ordinating control of supreme policy, including such matters as the raising of fresh capital and the relative rates of development of different industries and services.

Nor are these all the vital problems. We can, at this stage, add at least two others of primary importance. They are :

4. The relations to the management and to the directing bodies of the actual workers employed in the various industries ; and
5. The question of the prices to be charged and paid, both for the commodities produced and for the labour engaged in their production.

There is no reason to suppose that the methods of appointing the actual managers in socialised industries would differ widely from those already in force in large-scale capitalist enterprise. There would, of course, no longer be persons managing businesses solely because they were the sons of their fathers ; but in many forms of large-scale business this particular sort of nepotism has already almost disappeared. Modern big business

tries to find the most efficient managers it can; and socialised services would do the same as, say, a municipal tramway department or the Post Office already does. It is indeed to be hoped that the range of choice would be widened by the greater facilities for higher education, irrespective of the parents' means, which all Socialists wish to provide. But apart from this there would be no great change, save that greater stress would probably be laid on skill in the handling of men by enlisting their co-operation, rather than by driving them on under the impulse of fear. There is no reason to suppose that socialisation of any industry would mean a great change in its managerial personnel.

The remaining questions present far more difficulty, and to some extent Socialists hold varying views about them. This does not necessarily imply contradiction; for there is really no reason why a Socialist system should be uniform over all industries. There is room under Socialism, as under Capitalism, for diversity of structure and organisation. No sensible person, Socialist or not, would want to organise all industries and services in just the same way.

Broadly speaking, there are two different conceptions of the type of directing body suitable for a socialised enterprise. One of these would make the directing body representative, while the other would have the members of it chosen as individuals, purely on the score of their personal qualities and capacities. Thus, in the scheme for the nationalisation of the coal mines put forward by the Miners' Federation of Great Britain shortly after the War, it was proposed to entrust the direction of the industry to a representative Mining Council half nominated by the Miners' Federation and half to represent other interests and groups concerned. On the other hand, in the scheme put forward by the Labour Party and the Miners' Federation before the Samuel Commission in 1925, it seemed to be contemplated that the members of the supreme directing body would be chosen as individuals and not as representatives; and this course has actually been followed in setting up the new Central Electricity Board and appears to be intended in the case of the proposed new public traffic combine for Greater London.

It is not impossible to unite these two principles in one and the same body; but they are broadly distinct, and it is doubtful if the attempt to combine them in at all equal proportions on the same body would result in efficient control. Most Socialists seem to believe that, for the immediate future at any rate, the non-representative type of body is to be preferred; but some hold that in process of time non-representative may give way to representative forms of control. This issue is clearly bound up with that of the relation of the workers employed to the control of the industries in which they work; and I shall say no more of it now, as I shall have to come back to it in that connexion.

Of course, a representative body might represent other interests or groups than the workers engaged in the service. It might, for example, be so constituted as to represent the different types of consumers of the products in question. But, despite the success of the Consumers' Co-operative Movement, most Socialists seem to hold that any attempt to imitate its organisation in relation to each separate industry and service would be ineffective and would lead to inexpert control. It is one thing for

a large body of consumers to unite in order to choose a management committee to control a local general store, or even for such stores to unite in the control of a vast national Co-operative Wholesale Society. It would be quite another to attempt to constitute a Coal Consumers' Council to direct the fortunes of the coal trade alone and to reduplicate the special organisation for each socialised industry. There is much to be said for a Consumers' Council for each industry, meeting occasionally and exerting a critical function in relation to the actual directing body. But such Councils could hardly be more than advisory and would tend to lose their value as critics if they were actually involved in the direction of the industry.

The third problem is that of the construction and broad control of policy over a field wider than that of each single industry or service. Under a socialised system there would presumably be separate directing bodies for such services as coal, electric supply, railway transport, road transport, and so on. But it would be clearly necessary to co-ordinate the control over the whole group of services dealing with transport and power. Thus, in the scheme presented by the British Labour Party to the Samuel Commission in 1925 it was proposed to constitute, in addition to the separate directing body for each service, a central Power and Transport Commission, with a general oversight of the policy of the entire group. This was to be a non-representative body of persons chosen for their individual qualities and capacities and entrusted by Parliament with wide powers of supervision and control. But even to such a body Parliament clearly could not delegate all its power. It would have, while ridding itself of the day-to-day business of administration, to reserve to itself the final power of control over policy. The Commission would owe its authority to an Act of Parliament, and this Act would be at all times open to amendment. In addition, Parliament would presumably reserve to itself the final financial authority, and the right to disapprove orders or regulations issued by the Commission. The precise technique of this parliamentary control would need to be worked out by a process of experiment; but there are already enough Boards and Commissions actually exercising wide powers delegated to them by Parliament to give a fair idea of how the plan would operate. We have already the Port of London Authority, the Central Electricity Board and the British Broadcasting Corporation, to say nothing of various non-industrial Commissions exerting wide administrative powers, and on the American continent, the great public organisation which controls the power-supply of Ontario.

This brings us to the question of methods of appointment. Unless the representative principle is adopted, it seems clear that the various directing Boards and Commissions would have to be appointed by the Government. This is the existing practice, when such bodies exist; and no plausible alternative appears to be open.

We see, then, that the modern Socialist idea of economic organisation does not involve the conduct of socialised industries directly by Government departments, on the analogy of the Post Office, or by Civil Servants in the ordinary sense. We have rather a vision of a number of largely independent boards or commissions, differing from the directing bodies of large-scale capitalist concerns mainly in that their responsibility is not to a scattered group of private shareholders, but to Parliament and to the

public as a whole, and further in that their several activities are co-ordinated over a wide field in order to provide for their harmonious development within a general economic scheme.

WORKERS' CONTROL

What is the place in this imagined structure of the ordinary workers employed in the various services? How would their position under socialisation differ from their position in private industry to-day? It seems evident that they would have more security of employment and that there would be less shifting from employer to employer, or from one engagement to another. But security could not be absolute; for obviously the volume of employment could not be kept stable and unchanging in each industry irrespective of technical alterations and of fluctuations in the volume of demand. Socialised industries would have to be left free to expand or contract their relative demands for labour; and the State could not, as it does largely with the existing Civil Service, guarantee any absolute security of tenure.

But would the workers, while they were employed in any particular socialised industry, be admitted to a share in its control? That they should be was the persistent demand of the Guild Socialists, whose propaganda strongly influenced Trade Union and Socialist thinking during and after the War. The Guild Socialists, of whom I was one, stood for what they called "self-government in industry"; and this was really a combination in one phrase of two separate though related claims. In opposition to a now defunct and discredited "Collectivism," which proposed to hand over socialised industries to ordinary Civil Service administration, the Guild Socialists urged the need of endowing industry as a whole, and each industry in particular, with appropriate functional organisation. This first demand has largely been met in the propaganda of post-war Socialism by insistence on the necessity of placing each socialised service under a special board or commission. But the Guild Socialists urged, not only that each industry should have its own government, but also that the government should be based on the direct representation of the ordinary workers upon the functional authority. They wanted the leadership of industry to emerge from the will of the workers engaged in it, and not to be imposed on each industry from without.

How far does this claim still stand? The Guild Socialist movement, having caused the leaders of Socialism to modify their policy so as to accept the need for functional organisation, has now gone out of existence as a distinct organised affair; and the Trade Unions, which were largely attracted by Guild Socialist propaganda in the years immediately after the War, have mostly been too busy during the long depression with the defence of wages and conditions to have much energy left over for pressing the demand for workers' control. Trade Unionism depends for its strength upon the prosperity, and derives its moods from the condition, of industry; and since the slump of 1921 circumstances have been highly unfavourable to the growth of Guild Socialist doctrine or to any large practical movement for the securing of "workers' control."

Nevertheless, the Guild Socialist theories have left a strong impression

behind. On one of their two main points they have won over the main body of Socialist opinion. The other is still open to debate, and is likely to become of practical importance only when one of two things occurs: when trade revives and so restores the power of the Trade Unions, or when the State takes over some great industry and has to face the problem of equipping it with a satisfactory form of government. Should either or both of these things happen, there is certain to be a recurrence of the demand for workers' control.

It is, however, probable that the claim will be revived in a form different from that in which it was made by the Guild Socialists a decade ago. They urged that the State should acquire the ownership of industry, but should hand over its administration, under a charter, to a Guild composed of the whole body of workers engaged in it. Thus the entire administration of the industry would be in the hands of persons chosen by those who were to work under them, and the conduct of economic enterprise would be made as democratic as that of the political State is supposed to be. No one, I think, now expects matters to fall out after this wise. The practical problem is rather that of providing, within the framework of administration by a board or commission of the type suggested earlier in this essay, an outlet for the constructive co-operation of the ordinary employees, through the development of Workshop Committees, Works Councils, and representative bodies covering larger areas. This representative machinery would probably have, in the first instance, only limited functions; but an effort could be made gradually to delegate to it an increasing amount of actual power over such matters as the detailed organisation of work in the factory, discipline, engagements, promotions and dismissals, and all those matters which are of close and direct concern to the ordinary worker in his daily life. The Germans, with their Works Council Law, have already made a beginning of granting statutory authority to representative organisations of employees within the factory; and without statutory powers a number of experiments have been made in the development of workshop machinery in both Great Britain and the United States. Socialisation of industries would probably provide a fertile soil for the flourishing of such experiments on a more ambitious scale.

Fifth and last among the major problems of socialised control, as defined earlier in this essay, stands the question of wages and prices. It is clear that when socialised industries are given an autonomous direction, their powers cannot extend to an unfettered control over the pricing of their products or over the wages and salaries to be paid to their employees. In the services already subject to some sort of State regulation, there exists machinery for the fixing or control of prices. The British Railway Rates Tribunal has power to fix maximum railway charges; and there are similar powers in the case of both gas and electricity. On the railways, wages also are subject to a measure of statutory regulation under the Railways Act of 1921; for though the National Railway Wages Board has strictly no power to enforce its awards, they are in practice usually effective and observed. It seems safe to suggest that any extension of socialisation in the major industries would carry with it the creation both of some special mechanism of price-control and of some body or bodies to act as a court of appeal on questions of wages.

It has been necessary to present at some length this account of the modern policy of Socialism for the nationalisation or socialisation of industries, because it largely modifies earlier conceptions and is still very imperfectly understood. As socialisation becomes more and more a question of immediate practical politics, the simple solutions of purely propagandist days have to be discarded in favour of more complex and carefully elaborated plans. The stress used to be laid mainly on the desirability of the State taking over the control of industry, without much reference to the actual methods of socialised administration or control; but as soon as socialisation is proposed as an immediate measure for any industry, such as coal mining, it becomes imperative to define precisely the type of administration that is to be set up.

RATIONALISATION

We have now set out, in broad contrast to each other, the existing organisation of industry and the Socialist alternative. But there are, of course, persons who are satisfied with neither of these, and in particular many who believe that the abuses of capitalism can be remedied without passing over to a Socialist system. The Socialist attack on capitalism as a form of economic organisation, as we have seen, concentrates largely on two points: on the economic waste and inefficiency inherent in it, because of the lack of any coherent plan of social production, and on the unsatisfactory and deadening situation of the worker. Can the gravamen of these charges be removed by amending capitalism without bringing it to an end?[1]

The current answer to the first of these problems is in terms of "rationalisation." There is a powerful movement aiming at the rationalisation of industries and services under continued private ownership and control. This word "Rationalisation" has come prominently into use only during the past few years, first in Germany and then in other countries, as a name not for one thing alone, but for the unification into a single policy of a large number of pre-existing tendencies and ideas. This makes "rationalisation" exceedingly difficult to define. It includes at least these elements:—

(1) An intensive application to industrial processes of the most up-to-date technical methods of production, including a more developed mechanisation of industry and the more rapid scrapping of obsolescent plant and machinery, as well as the more active pursuit and encouragement of technical research.

(2) The standardisation and simplification of products and processes, in order to cheapen production by eliminating unnecessary varieties of goods, and enabling the remaining types to be made in larger quantities by methods of mass production.

[1] It should be noted that I am not discussing the whole Socialist case, but only that part of it that relates to the actual organisation of industry. The Socialists' most fundamental quarrel of all is, of course, with the present distribution of wealth; but that, except incidentally, falls outside the scope of this Article.

(3) The more scientific utilisation of labour, based both on simplification of processes, and on more accurate study of the conditions of work, by methods that used to pass under the name of "Scientific Management," and by newer methods associated with the growing study of Industrial Psychology.

(4) The aggregation of capital into larger units, and the establishment of inclusive regulating bodies for whole industries, with the purpose of regulating both production and prices, of concentrating output in the best equipped and most suitable factories, and of closing down "redundant" works in order to eliminate their competition.

(5) The adoption of more efficient methods both of buying materials and requisites in bulk, and of marketing products through a central selling agency, or by some similar method; and

(6) The conclusion of international agreements for the definition of markets and spheres of influence with similar organisations in other countries.

It is, of course, unlikely that any one scheme of rationalisation will embody all these features. Indeed, the development of the movement pursues a different course in different countries. In Germany it has grown up with the full encouragement, and sometimes the direct participation, of the Government. In the United States, on the other hand, the existence of Anti-Trust legislation has caused the main emphasis to be laid, publicly at least, rather on the standardisation and simplification of processes and the more economic use of labour than on the regulation of output and prices. And in Great Britain, where the State has in the past neither favoured capitalist combination nor legislated against it, the movement has grown up almost wholly apart from any element of public regulation or control, such as exists in the German *Reich*.

Obviously, from at least two standpoints, the rationalisation movement has its dangers. It places in the hands of great capitalist combines a wide power of restricting output and regulating prices; and these powers are plainly capable of being used against the public interest. It is not fanciful to see in the existence of strong combines among manufacturers one of the reasons why the relative prices of primary and manufactured products have changed of late years greatly to the disadvantage of the primary producers. Secondly, the more scientific utilisation of labour may mean in practice that the workman is driven at an increasing pace and that his work becomes more monotonous and more irksome. It is not suggested that this *must* be the result; but it certainly may be, if the problem is regarded solely from the standpoint of reducing costs, without care for its human aspects.

On the other hand, it is clearly to the advantage of the community that industry shall be conducted as efficiently as possible, in order both to decrease the need for long hours of work and to provide means of raising the standard of life. There is much waste in industrial processes, and rationalisation is calculated to reduce this waste and to increase the productive capacity, and decrease the costs, of the industry that adopts it. The trouble is that, under present conditions, the rationalised industry is often more likely to restrict production than to expand it, and so

likely to cause unemployment or at least most unlikely to cure it. Moreover, where national industrial groups are competing in the world market, their competition often prevents them from reducing hours of labour or raising wages, and so, instead of lightening the labour of the workers, actually makes it more intense than before.

Neither of these disadvantages, however, can fairly be made into an argument against rationalisation itself, but only against abuses of it. The first points to the need for developing a new technique of social control. If capitalism is in future to be organised in great combines, approaching the position of monopolies, and regulating both prices and the total volume of production, the State must clearly be equipped with means of preventing the abuse of these powers. This will have to be done, not by legislating against the existence of combines—a method which has always failed—but by taking authority to regulate their prices and to veto, in case of need, their restrictive measures.

In the case of the workers the remedy is less easy to formulate. It is likely to include the strengthening of codes of legislation regulating factory conditions, more drastic legal limitation of the hours of labour, and a readjustment—with support from the State—of the methods of Trade Union bargaining. As changes are made, workshop by workshop, in the conditions of labour, with the introduction of new machines and methods of production, the Trade Unions will need to do more of their bargaining upon a workshop basis, and to have at their command experts in Industrial Psychology and the technique of the new methods. This will involve the creation by them of stronger workshop machinery—a task in which the State might well help by the enactment of measures on the lines of the German law establishing Works Councils on a compulsory basis.

Socialists, of course, while they may favour these methods for the immediate future, will not rest satisfied with them. For the Socialist case is that the powers inseparable from the successful conduct of modern rationalised industries are far too vast to be safely left in private hands, and that, accordingly, any industry to which they are appropriate has already reached the stage at which socialisation in some form ought to be applied.

In Great Britain capitalist rationalisation, while it has been very widely discussed, has not yet in practice advanced very far. The outstanding example of its actual working is the great firm, Imperial Chemical Industries, Ltd. Certain recent amalgamations in the coal and steel trades, in Lancashire, for example, can be represented as partial measures of rationalisation; and the Coal Mines Act of 1930, with its establishment of compulsory organisations for the determination of output and selling prices throughout the coalfields, marks the definite entry of the State into the field in order both to further rationalisation and to establish some sort of public control over its working. But assuredly neither coal nor steel can yet be described as a " rationalised " industry; and the Lancashire cotton trade, despite a vast effusion of words, is yet further off the adoption of any co-ordinated form of organisation. In most industries British employers are very jealous of their individual freedom and very unwilling, save under the pressure of desperate need,

to surrender their powers into the hands of any general regulating body. This strongly individualistic temper, developed under the competitive conditions of the past, offers fierce resistance to measures of rationalised control which have been far more readily accepted in Germany, and even in France. Nevertheless, rationalisation is being slowly forced upon British industry by the necessities of competition in the world markets, and almost everyone nowadays at least pays lip-service to it. It represents the outstanding attempt of our time to reconstruct capitalism in the light of changing methods of production and conditions of sale in the markets of the world.

CO-PARTNERSHIP AND "WELFARE"

The second attempt to reconstruct capitalism is concerned rather with meeting the charge that it makes labour unduly irksome and repugnant, and does not enlist the co-operation of the worker in making production as efficient as possible. One school of capitalist reformers puts much faith in industrial co-partnership and profit-sharing as means of giving the worker a different attitude towards his job; while another, not necessarily different in personnel, stresses rather the need for humanising and improving the actual conditions of work, by means of "welfare" organisation and similar methods. Both these schools of thought agree that the workman ought to be consulted more than he normally has been in the past, and that an attempt must be made to enlist his loyalty and to bind him to his work by something more than the mere "cash nexus" characteristic of to-day.

Projects of profit-sharing and co-partnership in capitalist business (as distinct from the attempts at producers' co-operation mentioned earlier in this Article) have a long and chequered history behind them. They go back at least to the middle of the nineteenth century; and their number has always tended to grow at periods of acute industrial unrest. Yet, even to-day, despite a somewhat rapid rate of increase in the years following the War, the total number of schemes in force is not very large, and the whole of them cover only a tiny fraction of the total employed population. This is explained partly by the fact that the mortality among the schemes started has always been very large, and partly by the failure to obtain much foothold in the leading industries and services. Coal, steel, engineering and cotton have in the main stood aloof from the movement; and, indeed, the only industry in which profit-sharing applies to a large proportion of the total personnel is the gas industry. Here quite exceptional conditions exist. Profit-sharing was first introduced by the gas companies largely as a means of combating Trade Unionism. Moreover, the system by which in Great Britain the State regulates the dividends that a gas company is allowed to pay on a sliding scale depending on the selling price of gas, often enables the companies to pay a profit-sharing bonus to their employees without taking the sums paid out of profits which would otherwise be distributed to the shareholders. It certainly cannot be taken for granted, even in these cases, that the amount of the bonus is a real *net* addition to wages; for it is at least plausible to suggest that in such an industry as the gas service, where conditions are fairly standardised, the bonus has come in course of time to be reckoned in effect as

part of the wage, and has accordingly reacted on the level of wage-rates.

In industry generally profit-sharing has certain obvious disadvantages. Even apart from general fluctuations of business prosperity, the amount of profit made by a business from year to year bears no necessary relation to the quality of the work done by its employees. A bad sales department, or inefficient buying, or faulty factory management, may far more than counteract all the efforts of the workers; and, on the other hand, good management may yield profits that are not the result of the employee's efforts. Profit-sharing consequently means highly unequal rewards for equal efforts. It tends to cut right across the lines of ordinary Trade Union bargaining, with its attempt to establish standard rates and conditions corresponding to the skill and effort required. And if, in order to meet this point, the profit-sharing firm begins by guaranteeing the Trade Union rate as a minimum to every worker, this is apt to mean that the sum available for distribution as a share in the profits is too small to make much appeal. Actually the effect of most of the schemes in operation in the past has not been to distribute more than an average of about five or six per cent on the wage bill—far too small an amount to give the ordinary worker a sense of having an effective stake in the business. A few firms here and there, under exceptionally favourable conditions, have pushed profit-sharing a good deal further than this; but in general its effects on the relations of employers and employed have been insignificant.

At this point it is necessary to draw a distinction between profit-sharing pure and simple and co-partnership; for the latter implies that the workmen are given a share, not only in the profits, but also in the management of the business. This may be done in a variety of ways: by allowing them to appoint one or more workmen-directors to the Board, or by issuing to them shares or stock carrying voting rights instead of a cash share in the profits, or by creating a special class of workmen's shares and either giving them to the employees or selling them at a special price.

None of these methods has so far had any appreciable effect. The workman-director, chosen usually from among the older employees, has neither contributed much to the Board nor carried much weight with his fellow-workers. The shares issued to the workers have seldom or never been numerous enough to confer any real control; and their issue has sometimes been hedged round with conditions that have deprived them of much of their value. There may be a case for co-partnership here and there; but it neither has made, nor seems likely to make, any major contribution towards solving the problems of industry. It would, moreover, if the workmen's shares did come to be a considerable part of the total capital in the business, be open to the objection already mentioned—that the wise workman will wish to invest his savings so as to spread his risks, and therefore in almost anything rather than in the business from which he draws his wages. It may be added that the system is clearly inappropriate to industries in which there is much changing of jobs. It implies continuity of employment; but this, in many of the industries of to-day, does not exist for the main body of workers.

I therefore dismiss both profit-sharing and co-partnership on the

ground that, while they may serve a useful purpose here and there, they are not in the least likely to spread over the greater part of the industrial field. It remains to consider the proposed alternative method of improving relations between employers and employed by the extension of " welfare work " and similar measures designed to make labour more contented and " loyal to the firm."

Welfare work has several aspects. It includes the provision of canteens, playing-fields, rest-rooms, libraries and other amenities at or in connexion with the works, the application of Industrial Psychology to secure better vocational selection for different jobs, and to make the conditions of employment more hygienic and less unpleasant, special care for the condition of young persons and women employed, and a host of similar measures. It may be conducted mainly by the employer acting as a benevolent autocrat, or largely through organisations, such as clubs and societies, controlled by the workers themselves, with the employer's supervision and financial help. Like profit-sharing, it has sometimes been developed with the definite object of defeating Trade Union efforts to organise the workers; but in other cases it has been extensively practised by firms whose workers are Trade Unionists, and managed without Trade Union opposition or even with active Trade Union help.

The reason why Trade Unions often look askance at developments of this sort, which appear at first sight clearly desirable, is that the Trade Union depends for its power on maintaining solidarity among all the workers in a trade or industry, whoever their employer may be. Anything that tends to bind a section of the workers to a particular employer, or to enlist their loyalty to a single firm, may tend to weaken their solidarity with their fellow-workers, and to make combined action difficult —for example, in a strike. And the Unions are apt to maintain that what employers give away in " welfare," they often more than recover in other ways, by weakening the power of the Unions to secure improved wages and conditions. It is not suggested that this applies to all employers, or to all forms of welfare work. But the practice of welfare work by employers hostile to Trade Unionism has given it a bad name in Trade Union circles.

"JOINT CONTROL" AND THE "RIGHT TO STRIKE"

In any case, it is plain that methods of this sort, while they may to some extent improve the conditions of labour, make no radical alteration in the relationship of employers and employed. They bring us back to the point that any sort of " joint control " of industry is really impossible. There must be in a business some one final authority—someone who has the last word; and this final authority, which really is control, cannot be divided between two groups that may differ on practical issues of policy. It is the essence of capitalism that however much may be allowed to Trade Union bargaining or Works Councils, or however much may be done in the way of profit-sharing or welfare work, the final decision in matters of policy remains with those who represent the owners of capital, and the workmen's right is, in the last resort, still only a right to protest. This is inevitable as long as capitalism endures; for the capitalist

cannot carry on industry at all unless he keeps the control of policy in his hands.

The workmen have no doubt the right to strike; and this may be, on occasions, a most powerful weapon. But it is vitally different from the right to control. The workmen can give no positive orders : they can only refuse to obey and go on strike for as long as their resources allow. It is the employer who gives the orders, even if he is influenced by what the Trade Unions say. The strike and the lock-out are not really on all fours. If the employer gives an order which the workmen will not accept they have to strike; but they have no power to give an order themselves. Ordinarily the employer has no need to resort to the lock-out. He gives his order; and the workmen must obey, or strike.

It is an essential part of the Socialist case that this power, in the days of modern large-scale business, is too great to be left in the hands of any private person or group. The modern business is in itself a combination, with power over the lives of a large body of employees; and the employers' association covering a whole trade or industry decides policies which react at once on hundreds of thousands of working-class households. This power, says the Socialist, is too great to be irresponsibly exercised. It cannot rightly be left in the hands of any authority less than the whole community.

In some modern States—in Australia, for example, and to a great extent in post-War Germany—this claim has been met by the institution of compulsory arbitration under the direct authority of the State. Other countries, including Great Britain, used compulsory arbitration temporarily during the War, but set it aside on the return of peace. But even now in Great Britain the State, without using absolute compulsion, intervenes to help settle the wages of railway workers, and similar machinery has now been set up in the case of the coal mines. Compulsory arbitration, or something very much like it, as a method of preventing and settling industrial disputes, seems likely to spread.

Apart from compulsory arbitration, most modern States intervene in the settlement of wages and conditions in another way. They set up, either generally or for particular trades, machinery for fixing and enforcing a minimum wage and a maximum working day. Great Britain has her Trade Boards to regulate wages in the sweated and underpaid trades; and Germany, France, Australia and many other countries have similar machinery of varying scope. In these cases, the object is not to prevent disputes or to fix an actual wage—though these are often among the actual results—but to prescribe minimum conditions, leaving the workers free to demand, or the employers free to pay, more than the minimum if they will. In the matter of working hours, again most States have legislation limiting the duration of labour, and the first act of the International Labour Organisation of the League of Nations, on its establishment in 1919, was to draw up an International Convention for a maximum working week of forty-eight hours. There have been regrettable and indefensible delays in ratifying this Convention in many countries, including Great Britain; but it is generally recognised as the State's business to prevent by law the undue prolongation of the working day.

Compulsory arbitration, minimum wage enactments, and similar

measures may seem to meet the case for removing the control of the workers' lives and conditions from the irresponsible control of private capitalism. But in fact, even when they have been adopted, these methods work only within narrow limits imposed by the actual operation of the capitalist system. The employer cannot be compelled to keep his works open, or to pay more than he is prepared to pay rather than close them down. Compulsory arbitration often works out at little more than an estimation of the relative bargaining strength of the parties, and the fixing of wages roughly at the level which they would have reached as the result of a strike. Indeed, it may yield less than this; for the arbitrators are generally drawn from a class likely to be more appreciative of the employers' than of the workers' point of view. Only in Australia does compulsory arbitration seem to have been an important factor in actually raising wages; and the results there are due mainly to the great political power of the Trade Union movement.

Moreover, while compulsory arbitration and similar methods may take the actual fixing of wage-rates partly out of the employers' hands, the wage-contract actually involves many things in addition to the rate of wages. The whole pace and organisation of work in the factory gives rise to countless problems which can in most cases be settled only in the factory itself; and these remain for the most part firmly in the employer's control, subject only to the workman's right to strike. An outside decision on the question of wage-rates and working hours limits, but by no means abolishes, the employer's autocracy. It leaves him still with the right to give orders that profoundly affect the welfare and happiness of those whom he employs.

But this, it may be said, must remain true under any economic system. The management, however it may be appointed and whomever it may represent, must have the right to issue orders for the conduct of work. True enough; but again the question is: Whom ought the management to represent? It is at present an interested party, representing the shareholders, even if it is in fact becoming more and more independent of their will. It has the capitalist, and not the workers', or the community's, point of view. Ought it not to be responsible either to those whose welfare is most directly affected by it—the workers—or to the community as a whole?

This question has been faced already, to some extent, earlier in this Article. The Socialist policy, we have seen, is to replace the representatives of capital by representatives of the community in the final direction of industrial policy, and at the same time to delegate to the workers employed a larger, and increasing, but still subordinate, control over actual workshop administration. Socialism would not emancipate the worker from the need for obeying orders—for discipline is a necessity of industry under any conditions—but it would cause those orders to be actually issued to an increasing extent by representatives of the workers themselves, under the authority of a higher direction of industry representing the community as a whole. This, the Socialists maintain, would alter the entire psychological basis of industrialism, by making the worker feel that his orders came, not from a hostile and external power, but from an authority he would recognise as his own and that of his fellows.

We touch here on the matter which, at bottom, most sharply divides the adherents of the two rival economic systems, Socialism and Capitalism. This is the question of the incentive to labour. The adherents of Capitalism for the most part base their argument on the natural laziness of man, and his unwillingness to labour save under the spur of necessity and the offer of a strong material incentive. Capitalism, they say, is the best system because it provides the strongest incentives—those of material gain, and because it involves, for the mass of men, the obligation to work hard and regularly in order to get the means of life. Socialism, they say, would break down for two reasons : because it would not offer the man of exceptional business ability the prospect of fortune, and because it would refuse to hold over the mass of men the threat of privation as the alternative to hard work.

This argument is really made up of two elements which are, in the main, separable and distinct. The first element applies to the ordinary " rank-and-file " worker in industry, and the second to the exceptional man or woman to whose skill, enterprise, or inventive ability industrial progress is largely due. It is suggested that the inventor will not invent, or the capable business organiser put forth his best endeavours unless he is given the stimulus of a strong material incentive. And it is also urged that the ordinary " rank-and-file " worker will go slow and do as little as he can, unless he, too, in his humbler way, is pushed on by material incentives and threatened with personal and family privation if he fails to give of his best.

Most Socialists dissent strongly from both these opinions, which they believe to rest on a radical misunderstanding of human nature. They believe that the best work in business and in invention, as in the arts and sciences, is done not chiefly under the stimulus of material gain, but because men who are conscious of possessing an ability to do exceptional work *want* to do that work, and will be unhappy and thwarted if they are not able to do it. Such men must be given, no doubt, security and a reasonable income if they are to do their best for the community; but, given these conditions, they will work, and work hard, without any further material incentive. There are doubtless exceptions to this generalisation; but its broad truth receives ample confirmation from the facts of present-day Society. We have only to look around us to see a host of salaried managers, professional men, and administrators of all sorts working well and hard without any material incentive of the sort which the critics of Socialism believe to furnish the sole stimulus to successful economic effort. What these critics forget is that there are few pleasures in life equal to that of successfully holding down a difficult and responsible job.

In its applications to the activities of the ordinary rank-and-file worker it must be admitted that the argument has rather more force, for there are a great many necessary jobs within the economic system which no one feels, or is likely to feel, any urge to do—much less to carry on day in and day out, for the better part of a lifetime—for the sake of any pleasure to be derived directly from the doing of them. Few people *want* to be

dustmen, or to descend the mine day after day, or to stand hour after hour minding an automatic machine. Most people would rather, at least for part of their time, go away and play tennis, or tend their back-gardens, or visit pub. or club, theatre or cinema, or even stand on a soap-box and denounce the capitalist system, or preach their own particular brand of religious or social or ethical doctrine, or even just loaf. This is not to say that they would sooner do nothing all their lives—only that they would sooner not spend eight, or even six, hours a day, year after year, under the increasingly exacting discipline of the economic system. Nor could any practicable form of Socialism altogether change this ; for, under any system, the world's work will have to be done, and a great deal of it will continue to be irksome in its regularity and even physically unpleasant in the doing.

It would therefore be Utopian, at the present stage of social development, to expect the main body of the community to carry on all the world's work purely in a spirit of voluntary service, and without any form of direct or indirect compulsion. For a long time yet the right to an adequate income will have to depend on the performance of a recognised form of service, and men will have to be made to contribute regular work to the common stock upon which they and others depend for the means of life. But it does not follow that the monetary incentive to production must continue to occupy the same position as in the past. Socialists believe that, within the general obligation to perform useful labour, it will be possible, if the right means are applied, to create a powerful public opinion in favour of doing one's best and to elicit increasingly a spirit of service to reinforce and gradually replace the cruder material incentives even to ordinary manual labour.

They recognise, however, that this new spirit can only be aroused gradually, and that the compulsion to labour in order to procure adequate means of life can be superseded only as it is aroused. But they believe that the existence of the capitalist system stands fatally in the way of the awakening of this spirit, because, by making men's labour the means to the private profit of the owners of industry, instead of the common service, it destroys that sense of responsibility to the community which any tolerable economic system ought above all to foster and develop.

Socialists look, then, to a gradual change in the human motives on which dependence is to be placed for the successful working of the industrial system. They believe that, if industry can be organised and controlled in the common interest, a new set of motives will be brought effectively into play, and good work in industry come to be recognised as a general obligation fully as binding as the existing codes and conventions of decent conduct which are the marks of human civilisation. They refuse to believe that, for all time, man must be driven to work purely by material incentives, or that a system which relies upon such incentives can possibly be right or defensible for an educated people.

At the same time, it is evident that this change in the spiritual basis of the economic order is bound to bring with it large changes in the character of the labour process. Men who readily recognise the social obligations to do a good day's work will also insist that the work they are called upon to do shall be as little irksome or deadening as the resources

of science and invention can make it. A Socialist working class will insist that everything possible shall be done to eliminate " dirty " or unpleasant work, or at least to cut it down to the minimum. It will be alert to use every opportunity of making machines that will effectively lighten the task of labour, because it will be no longer afraid that the machine will take away men's jobs and throw them, unwanted, on the industrial scrap-heap. Machinery, under these changed conditions, will become man's servant where it is now his master ; and men will choose, freely and democratically, between the alternatives of increasing their material wealth and enjoying a larger leisure by the reduction of the working-day.

Doubtless, if Society were to attempt to change over too rapidly from the one set of motives to the other, or to dispense all at once with the compulsion to labour, there might be a great outburst of human laziness. But this would speedily bring its own corrective ; for under a Socialist system men would quickly realise that they cannot eat their cake without making it, and that the standard of life depends on the amount and skilfulness of the energy applied to production.

The Socialist has, indeed, something further to say to those who argue that a Socialist system would fail to elicit a sufficient volume of enterprise and productive energy to carry on the work of the world. He believes that, under present conditions of unequal opportunity and education, and of class-barriers which it is difficult, though not impossible, to transcend, a large part of the best productive ability in the world runs needlessly to waste. The field for the selection of those who are to occupy the directing positions in industry, or to receive the higher kinds of professional and technical training, is not nearly wide enough to secure that the best men get the jobs they are best able to do. Greater social, economic and educational equality would, he believes, both result in the discovery of a much larger supply of the higher kinds of ability and, by raising the general quality of the population, greatly increase its productive capacity. The better the quality of a people, both physically and mentally, the more it will be able to produce and the less effort it will need to expend upon the satisfaction of the minimum requirements of living. There is room here for a great liberation of human energy which might speedily revolutionise alike the arts and sciences and the productivity of the economic system.

The Socialist, in short, to whatever school of thought he belongs, bases his opinions upon a fundamental belief in the powers of common humanity. He stands for a planned and ordered development of all the resources, both human and material, that are at the disposal of Society. He does not believe that it is desirable to leave the working out of economic forces to an " unseen hand " that is supposed somehow, without the application of human will or directive reason, to harmonise and co-ordinate the divided forces of individual or group enterprise and material self-seeking. He is essentially an economic rationalist, who holds that the proper utilisation of the available powers of production should be a matter of organised collective effort, based on the fullest possible information and leading up to a systematic planning of the entire economic activity of the community as a whole.

At the present moment Russia, under the control of the followers of Lenin, is the one country in the world where an attempt is being made to put this idea of collective planning comprehensively into practice. There are among Socialists many divergent views about Communism in general and its particular application to Russian conditions; but a great many people who are not Communists, or even Socialists, are watching the Russian adventure with a keen sense that its success or failure will be pregnant with huge consequences for the world as a whole. The question that concerns us here is not whether Communism is good or bad as a political creed, but whether this heroic attempt of Stalin and his associates to mobilise the entire productive force of the Union of Socialist Soviet Republics under a centralised economic control is, or is not, on the right lines. Russia is now working under a "Five Years' Plan," in the composing of which all the economic organs of the Soviet Union were drawn into close collaboration. The object of this plan is to raise immensely within a few years the Russian standard of living by bringing about an unheard-of increase in the volume of both industrial and agricultural production.

On industry especially, the Russian Government is concentrating almost superhuman efforts; for obviously the expansion of agricultural production depends, in the last resort, on a huge development of industry, which must provide far more manufactured goods to exchange for the foodstuffs and raw materials which the peasant produces. Russia, largely cut off from the outside world by lack of credits, and by the impossibility of marketing abroad a greatly increased agricultural surplus, has set out to create a new balance between agriculture and industry, and at the same time greatly to increase the output of both within a few crowded years of feverish economic activity. Inevitably, this policy means, for the time being, a check to the rise in the Russian standard of life; for much of the energy of the Russian workers is being devoted to the increased production of capital goods, or of raw products which can be exchanged for capital goods imported from abroad. But this keeping down of the standard of life is only a means to its more rapid advancement as soon as the preparatory period is at an end; for, the new balance once established, the Russians hope to be able to use their greatly increased productive capacity to the full in making and distributing a much larger volume of consumable commodities in their own home market.

This "Five Years' Plan" is being pursued in a spirit of intense conviction, and with the aid of the most intensive propaganda that has ever been applied to the whole body of a people. The workers and peasants of Russia are being called upon not only to make immediate sacrifices in the interests of future prosperity, but also to work with an energy hitherto unparalleled for the victory of the Revolution and the cause of Socialism in the economic field. Amid all the conflicting reports brought back by visitors from Russia, it seems plain, at any rate, that this propaganda is having a tremendous effect, in town and country alike, and that the Russian people has mobilised its energies for production as no other people in history has ever mobilised except for war. The "Five Years' Plan" may

succeed, or it may fail. Meanwhile, all Europe is watching, conscious that its own economic destiny may depend upon the outcome.

The Russians have to face many disadvantages. They are terribly short of skilled workers and technicians and industrial administrators. They have become masters of an economic organisation devastated by war, civil war, and international blockade, and in many of its parts deteriorated almost beyond belief. They have to deal with a peasant agriculture, exceedingly backward in its methods, and with a population largely unused to the regularity of modern factory discipline. But they have two great compensating advantages : a supreme belief in themselves and in their mission, and a power that runs practically unchallenged over the entire industrial field.

Both these factors are of vital importance. The world's great events have been, again and again, the work of men who believed passionately in themselves and in their mission. Communism, diverted from the fomenting of world-revolution to the ordering of Russia's internal affairs, is spending its passion on a colossal attempt to establish within its own borders a Socialist economic system that shall surpass the industrialisation of the great Western Powers, and pour out the fruits of Socialist productivity into the lap of the common people. It brings to the task an enthusiasm beside which the temperate beliefs of the orthodox Socialist Parties of Western Europe seem tame indeed.

Nor is the other advantage of less account. The Socialist of Western Europe, attempting to work through the established institutions of parliamentary democracy, finds himself faced with Capitalism as a going concern which he can but attempt to alter piecemeal, introducing a touch of Socialism here and there in a dominantly Capitalist environment. He can make no " Five Years' Plan " at all comparable with that of the Russians, because the agents through which such a Plan must be worked are, for the most part, not under his control. Mr. Ramsay MacDonald's Government cannot, like Stalin's, issue orders which become immediately operative over the whole economic field. Some people may regard this as Stalin's disadvantage, because it confronts him with a task too great for human power. But Stalin, at any rate, does not think so. He is setting out to order, at once, the whole economy of the Russian people.

There can be no doubt that almost all Socialists envisage Socialism as involving a comprehensive Plan of the Russian type, though they may hope that such a Plan can, in the long run, be brought into being by democratic means and without the aid of either revolution or dictatorship. It is not within the scope of my subject to discuss this issue of method, but only the fact that any Socialist system does involve, at some stage, this process of planning systematically the entire economic activity of the community. Socialists, when they bring forward projects of socialisation, are thinking primarily in terms of bringing the " key " activities of the economic system under collective control, and so of gradually gathering into the hands of the community the powers essential to the making and execution of a comprehensive plan.

That is why there has been, of late years, so much insistence on the collective control of the banking system, and of the entire financial mechanism of the modern community. For men—including many who

are not Socialists—have come more and more to recognise that banking is above all the "key" industry of the economic system, and that no effective control over the working of the economic order can be established unless there is a firm direction of banking and financial policy. This is true, not only because the Central Banks which exist in all modern industrial countries are the final controllers of the volume of currency and credit—as far as these things are subject to control—and, thereby, exert a dominant influence over the movements of prices and the ebb and flow of industrial activity, but also because the ordinary commercial banks are able, by giving or refusing credit to particular businesses, largely to guide the fortunes of particular industries, and to dictate the policy of firms which get into any sort of business difficulty. I am not asserting that the banks actually make anything like full use of their powers in these respects. In fact, they do not. But none the less the power is there, and can be used ; and it is clear that any State that desires to control industrial activity will find in the banking system a convenient and indispensable instrument of the policy.

For most modern business is conducted largely on a basis of bank credit ; and, if this is not forthcoming in the amounts demanded, business men have no alternative to contracting the scale of their operations. A restriction in the total volume of credit means either a diminution of production, or a fall in prices, or more often both ; and a restriction applied to a particular firm or industry means an immediate shrinkage of its demand for labour. It is not suggested that the banks are simply free to manufacture prosperity or adversity at will ; for the Central Banks, in expanding or contracting the supply of currency and credit, are governed by the available supply of gold and by their estimate of the currents of world monetary demand, while the commercial banks, working within the conditions imposed on them by the Central Banks, can control only the allocation of credits between different claimants, and not the total amount available for allocation. The banks are by no means wholly free agents ; they are bound down to the gold standard, and even if this were done away with they would have still to pay regard to the international conditions of indebtedness and mutual exchange. No trading country can in effect contract out of the world monetary system.

Nevertheless, the power of the banks is very great. An unduly restrictive policy on the part of a Central Bank can at any time cause widespread unemployment, or an unduly inflationary policy can create the conditions for a crisis. And the commercial banks can stimulate one industry and damp down another, or can use their power to enforce reorganisation on businesses and industries which, in times of difficulty, have come to be heavily in their debt.

INDUSTRY AND FINANCE

Since 1918, the world has passed through successive periods of gross inflation of currency and credit, of currency stabilisation accompanied usually by a painful economic crisis, and of monetary deflation due in part to a shortage and maldistribution of gold. Everything has conspired to make the solution of the currency problem seem to be the key to he

gates of world prosperity ; and it is not surprising that, now as after the Napoleonic Wars a century ago, the air has been thick with the proclamations of currency reformers offering simple panaceas for the ills of the world. Most of these reformers have concentrated their attention—quite rightly—on the absurdly paradoxical situation of modern industry, which finds itself unable to make anything like full use of the productive power at its disposal because of a failure of demand. We have thus the ridiculous situation of a world in which dire poverty co-exists with an abundance of productive resources, and even with a positive " over-production " of consumable goods.

What can be more natural than to impute the blame for this to the banking system, and to urge that a cure can be found in the more liberal emission of purchasing power ? One school of reformers demands that industrialists shall be given more abundant supplies of credit, and so enabled both to produce more goods, and to distribute more money in wages, profits and other payments. Another urges that the need is not so much for larger credits to the industrialists, as for more purchasing power in the hands of the general public, and therefore advocates the creation, in one form or another, of " consumers' credits " designed to increase demand. Yet another urges inflation, and a rise in the price level brought about through the banking system, as a means of lowering real wages, increasing the margin of profits and so inducing higher production ; while a fourth school wants to increase wages, but not profits, in order to concentrate the increased demand upon consumable goods instead of causing it to flow towards capital goods by way of increased saving and business investment.

There is obviously no space here to examine any of these theories, most of which are a blend of truth and falsehood. What is common to them all is a sense that industrial organisation cannot be worked out in independence of monetary policy, and that any attempt to control industry, or to master unemployment, must begin with the effective control of the banking system. The Russian Five Years' Plan would have been utterly unworkable if the Soviet Government had not been in complete control of the banking and financial organisation of the country.

Public control of banks and banking policy forms, then, an essential and primary ingredient in modern Socialist economic policy. And with it goes control of the investment of capital. For clearly any centralised planning of economic development involves a collective decision about the amounts of new capital to be devoted to each enterprise included in the general plan. We have here yet another point at which the Socialist conception challenges the capitalist order.

At present, new capital for industry, as well as for other purposes, is provided mainly in two ways : by individual saving and investment, or by corporate accumulation of reserved profits. The sums saved in the latter way remain at the disposal of the businesses which have accumulated them, and are used either to develop these businesses or for reinvestment elsewhere. As we have seen, in prosperous times established British industries very largely finance themselves by this method of corporate accumulation. The sums so reserved from profits never form part of the income of individuals (though their value is added to that of the

capital belonging to the individual shareholder). They pass directly into the accumulation of new capital assets, without ever becoming private income.

Thus, in prosperous times, British industry makes relatively few claims on the capital market in the narrower sense. This market handles the resources which individuals save out of their current incomes for investment, as well as the balances available in the hands of corporate bodies after they have made provision for their own needs. In the past, a very large proportion of the total national saving, in the narrower sense, has been invested abroad; and the London capital market is still far more experienced and efficient in raising capital for foreign ventures than for the development of British industry. This did not greatly matter as long as British industry was able to finance itself for the most part out of reserved profits; but of late it has mattered, especially to those industries which have suffered exceptionally from depression. For in these cases profits have fallen too low to provide adequate reserves; and the raising of new capital in the ordinary capital market has been difficult or even impossible. That is why the Bank of England has had to undertake directly the financing of such bodies as the Lancashire Cotton Corporation, and why the Bank of England and the Joint Stock Banks have recently joined in creating a new body—the Bankers' Industrial Development Company, specifically for the purpose of providing capital and credit in connexion with approved schemes of industrial reorganisation.

From any national standpoint, the present methods of raising new capital seem to be highly illogical and inconvenient. Every year, large sums are distributed to individuals as income on an implied condition that their recipients will not spend them, but will invest them in order to provide new capital for economic development. On the face of the matter, it would surely be more logical to distribute as income to the community only what the community, taken as a whole, can afford to spend, and to reserve, before incomes are distributed, a sufficient sum to provide for all necessary accumulation of capital. This, it appears, is practically what the Russians are doing under their Five Years' Plan; and it is obviously only a further development of the tendency, strongly marked already in capitalist industry, to keep back out of the profits of the year's work enough to provide for the necessary expansion of capital.

In other words, there are clear signs that the time-honoured method of individual saving out of income—the "abstinence" dear to the economists of a century ago—is obsolescent as the chief means of providing new capital for the expansion of industry. Corporate accumulation is already taking its place to a large extent; and it is but a step from corporate accumulation by big joint stock companies to collective accumulation organised and controlled by the State.

If this came about, the State would clearly be in a position to determine not only the necessary amount of the national saving, but also its allocation among different claims—so much to this industry or service, and so much to that. And, even short of a general substitution of collective for private accumulation, much might be done—and something has been done already—to bring the utilisation of private savings more under the control of the State. This has been done by placing the

guarantee of the State behind certain investments, so as to attract into them money that could not otherwise have been secured on such favourable terms. Well-known instances are the issues of the London Underground Railways and, more recently, of the Central Electricity Board. And it has been strongly urged that the State ought to intervene far more actively in the distribution of new capital by creating a National Investment Board, empowered to borrow money from the public for the purpose of reinvestment in enterprises deemed to be of national importance as essential to the right development and restoration of industry.

The idea behind this proposal is obviously at one with the conception of a unified national economic plan. For, the Socialist urges, there is no reason to suppose that *laissez-faire* in the investment of capital will work out any better than *laissez-faire* in other spheres. The classical economists used to assume that, if each man were left free to invest his money where he thought fit, his pursuit of the highest return would result automatically in the best possible economic distribution of the available resources. The facts of the investment market, however, reflected in the subsequent quotations for new issues, seem to prove that the ordinary investor is a quite extraordinary bad judge even of his own prospects of profit. This is, doubtless, largely the result of the sharp divorce between ownership and control, which means that the ordinary investor has no knowledge of the real working of the enterprises into which he puts his money, but judges of them solely on the strength of plausible "offers for sale," newspaper "tips," and day-to-day Stock Exchange prices.

Nor is it even clear that, if the investor were in a position to pick out for himself the most profitable securities, his selection would bring about a distribution of new capital in accordance with the public interest. It would not pay the private investor to put money into reorganising, say, the coal trade, or steel, or cotton, unless a sufficient number of other investors were to do the same; whereas the State, by mobilising the capital resources needed to make reorganisation effective, might be able to convert an unprofitable into a profitable venture. Already, a substantial amount of new capital is invested—in housing, for example—under the direct influence of the State. It seems likely that the proportion of investment so influenced will, and should, be greatly increased in the near future; and it is clear that the collective direction of the national investment forms an integral part of any Socialist system.

THE CO-OPERATIVE MOVEMENT

Socialist projects have to reckon, however, not only with the now dominant system of capitalism, but also with other rivals to capitalism which have grown up within the existing order. By far the most powerful of these rivals is the consumers' Co-operative Movement, which has already brought under its control a large share of the total retail trade in consumable goods, and produces in its own factories a considerable proportion of the goods which are sold in its shops. In 1929 the distributive Co-operative Societies in Great Britain had over six million members, and the Co-operative Movement on a whole employed a quarter of a million workers, and had a wages bill of £32,000,000, and a capital of about

£150,000,000. Its retail trade alone amounted to £217,000,000, and its wholesale trade to over £117,000,000, while the productions of the wholesale societies only were valued at £38,000,000.

Now, the consumers' Co-operative Movement is, in its form, neither capitalist nor Socialist. It pays, indeed, a fixed rate of interest on its share and loan capital; but it distributes its surplus, not to shareholders, but to members as a rebate on their purchases. It has thus retained interest, but eliminated profits in the capitalist sense. It is, however, a voluntary movement, wholly independent of the State.

Some co-operators look forward to a time when all trade and production will be carried on co-operatively, and regard Co-operation as a complete alternative to both capitalism and Socialism. But this is certainly not the view of the majority; nor is it at all likely to come about. Co-operation is admirably suited to the distribution and production of many kinds of consumers' goods, especially those which enter into the regular weekly budget of the ordinary housewife; but it is most unlikely to become the means of organising the great staple industries, such as coal, steel and engineering, or the supply of the great public services, such as transport, gas, water, electricity and housing.

In practice, Socialists and Co-operators, allied in their political and economic aims, usually get along well enough together. No important school of Socialists wants the State, or any other public authority, to take over the Co-operative Movement, or the main groups of services with which it deals. On the contrary, Socialists desire to extend the scope and power of consumers' Co-operation, and to strengthen it by the assurance of State help. Even in Russia, where the Soviet Government did at one time attempt to nationalise the Co-operative Movement, its independence was speedily restored, and it now acts in close conjunction with the State, and is playing its full part in the formulation and execution of the Five Years' Plan. There may be marginal disputes about the respective spheres of State and municipal, and of Co-operative, enterprise; but there is, in practice, no general hostility between the two systems.

In fact, no Socialist wants to nationalise or municipalise everything. The modern Socialist alternative to capitalism is not a rigid or uniform system of economic organisation, but a diverse method of organising different industries and services within a common plan. It may include the direct nationalisation and national management of certain services such as social insurance; the direct municipal ownership and management of others, such as water, or gas, or purely local transport; the management of yet others, including such key industries and services as banking, long-distance transport, and coal-mining, through public service corporations on the model of the Central Electricity Board and the projected new Traffic Authority for Greater London; and the Co-operative ownership and management of others such as the distribution and production of staple consumable commodities. It may, moreover, be content to leave some industries and services, especially those which can be carried on economically on a small scale, in private hands, but subject to varying degrees and forms of public control over such matters as prices, wages and the provision of new capital for development. The

more Socialists are faced with the necessity of formulating practical policies for early adoption, the less rigid their proposals become. Socialism, in its earlier propagandist stages, was under the necessity of putting forward simple and comprehensive ideas that could be easily and widely understood. The practical application of these ideas inevitably destroys that primitive simplicity; for in practice each industry and service presents special problems of its own, and calls for somewhat different methods of organisation. The essence of Socialism lies, not in any particular method of administering industry, but in the insistence on the need for bringing all industry under the ultimate control of the community, and for planning comprehensively in the public interest the entire development of the economic system.

In this Article, I have drawn my examples largely from two countries, Great Britain and Russia, and have conducted the general argument largely in terms of British conditions. I have done this because I know the British conditions best, and because Russia is the one country in which a comprehensive attempt is being made to work out a Socialist system in practice. I think, however, that what I have said of the development of Socialism, and of the conflict of industrial theories, in Great Britain applies largely in the same way to other developed European countries as well. It would have been easy, for example, to take parallel examples in most cases from the post-War developments of German industry, and from the evolution of German economic thought. Walther Rathenau in Germany has made the most significant contribution to the theory of organised, State-controlled Capitalism, passing by gradations to the idea of public service on the basis of a systematised economic order. Germany, even more than Great Britain, has been fertile in experiments in "semi-public" enterprise, on the lines I have illustrated by the example of the British Central Electricity Board. In France, less has been done in practice, because the Labour Movement there is less strong and the industrial system as a whole at a less advanced stage; but the French Trade Unions formulated, on the morrow of the War, a plan of "industrialised nationalisation" which has much in common with the recent tendencies in thought and practice in Great Britain.

EUROPE AND AMERICA

In the United States of America, on the other hand, the tendencies that I have described, while they exist and are becoming more active, as the example of the United States Federal Farm Board clearly shows, do not yet appear so plainly on the surface, because there Socialism is still only the creed of a tiny minority, and the practical need has not yet arisen, or has not yet been recognised, for any wide extension of the powers of the State over industry. Co-operation, too, is there still in its infancy, and Trade Unionism weak, save in a few closely organised industries. America, as we have seen earlier in this Article, is still thinking in terms of a quasi-democratic capitalism, able to satisfy working-class aspirations by the offer of a rising standard of life and an easier movement from class to class than is possible in older countries. Nor is this American ideal likely to be seriously challenged on American soil as long as it

continues successfully to offer these advantages. If at any time it fails to offer them, a very different situation is bound to arise; for the American people, used to rapidly rising wealth, is likely to be more intolerant than any other of any serious check to its material progress. Whether it will, under such conditions, "go Socialist," more or less on the familiar European lines, or create for itself a new American gospel of its own, who knows? Certainly, I do not propose to venture into prophecy on such a matter, for the conditions are not even now ripe; I can only register the doubt whether American capitalism is as stable as it has hitherto seemed, and suggest that the American public would be wise to study the development of European economic thought and action no less intently than European opinion is intent on watching the great United States experiment in standardised mass production on a basis of private ownership and control. Europe has something to learn from America; but has America nothing still to learn from Europe, and particularly from the latest trends of European economic organisation and policy? In Europe, at any rate, the current is well set in the direction of collective economic control and of experiments in semi-Socialist organisation. At present, the rate of advance is not rapid; for even capitalism in difficulties is very powerful in defence, and Socialism, without any clear majority of opinion behind it, can but attack a few outposts of the existing order. The economic future of Europe, I think, depends very largely on the success or failure of the Russian experiment; and on that observers in other countries can but wait with bated breath. For, whether Communism be right or wrong, the Russian attempt to establish a complete Socialist system is certainly the outstanding economic experiment of our time.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

(a) *Descriptions of the Present Economic System:*

R. A. LEHFELDT: *Descriptive Economics* (London and New York. 1927)

G. D. H. COLE: *The Economic System* (London and New York. 1928)

J. H. JONES: *The Economics of Private Enterprise* (London and New York. 1926)

H. J. DAVENPORT: *The Economics of Enterprise* (New York. 1925)

J. A. HOBSON: *The Evolution of Modern Capitalism* (London and New York. Various dates)

The Industrial System (London. 1909 and enlarged edns.)

(b) *Books on Socialism:*

H. W. LAIDLER: *History of Socialist Thought* (New York. 1927; London. 1928)

G. BERNARD SHAW: *The Intelligent Woman's Guide to Socialism and Capitalism* (London. 1928)

A. W. HUMPHREY: *The Modern Case for Socialism* (London. 1928)

DR. C. ADDISON: *Practical Socialism* (London. 1926)

J. R. MACDONALD : *Socialism, Critical and Constructive* (London and New York. 1921)

(c) *Books on Trade Unionism, Co-operation, etc. :*

C. M. LLOYD : *Trade Unionism* ; revised edn. (London. 1928)

G. D. H. COLE : *Organised Labour* (London. 1924)

S. PERLMAN : *A Theory of the Labour Movement* (New York. 1928)

SIDNEY and BEATRICE WEBB : *The History of Trade Unionism* : revised edn. (London and New York. 1920)

The American Co-operative Movement (London and New York. 1921)

L. S. WOOLF : *Co-operation and the Future of Industry* (London. 1918)

(d) *Russia and Communism :*

H. J. LASKI : *Communism* (London and New York. 1927)

M. H. DOBB : *Russian Economic Development* (London. 1928 ; revised 1930)

(e) *Industrial Policy and Theories :*

G. D. H. COLE : *The Next Ten Years in British Social and Economic Policy* (London and New York. 1929)

Self-Government in Industry (London. 1917)

MAURICE CLARK : *Social Control of Business* (Chicago. 1926)

ORDWAY TEAD : *Instincts in Industry* (London and New York. 1919)

THORSTEIN VEBLEN : *The Theory of Business Enterprise* (New York. 1904)

R. H. TAWNEY : *The Acquisitive Society* (London. 1921)

HARTLEY WITHERS : *The Case for Capitalism* (London. 1920)

S. and B. WEBB : *The Decay of Capitalist Civilisation* (London. 1923)

A Constitution for the Socialist Commonwealth (London. 1920)

THEORIES AND FORMS OF POLITICAL ORGANISATION

By

G. D. H. COLE

SYNOPSIS

The subject-matter of Politics — Political Science and Political Philosophy — The forms of social organisation and the ultimate basis of human societies — The close connection between the two groups of problems — All political theories are theories about the nature of man — This is the basis of Plato's *Republic* — The doctrine of *function* as the basis of political rights and duties — The Greek City-State — Aristotle as its interpreter and as the founder of political science — Greek democracy — The political ideas of the Romans — The legacy of Roman Law — Political theories in the Middle Ages — Church and State — The idea of universality — Feudation and privilege — Towns and Guilds — Politics as a branch of morals — The Reformation — The politics of Machiavelli — Their secular tone — The political ideas of Luther and Calvin — Calvinism as a school of self-government — The Reformation in England — Hooker's *Ecclesiastical Polity* — The Divine Right of Kings — The ideas of the Puritans — Politics under the Restoration — Hobbes and the Sovereign State — John Locke and the English Revolution — Locke as the founder of modern political thought — English aristocratic ideas in the eighteenth century — Montesquieu and the separation of powers — Rousseau's *Social Contract* — The General Will — The ideas of the founders of the United States — The French Revolution — Burke as the philosopher of Conservatism — Why France had a Revolution and England only a Reform — Bentham and the English Utilitarians — Their influence on British politics in the nineteenth century — The growth of *laissez-faire* — Constructive Benthamism — John Stuart Mill — Continental political theory in the nineteenth century — Hegelianism and the metaphysical view of the State — Marxism and the Materialist Conception of History — The Marxian criticism of parliamentary democracy — Europe after 1848 — The political influence of Darwinism — The growth of Anthropology and Psychology — The attack on rationalist conceptions of politics — The revolt

against parliamentary institutions — Importance of voluntary association — Maitland and Gierke — Political Pluralism — based on the rise of combines and Trade Unions — Syndicalism an Industrial Unionism —Guild Socialism — Parallel religious movements — Georges Sorel and the General Strike — Effects of the War on politics and political theory — Revolution in Germany — and in Russia — Political ideas of the Russian Revolution — Communism contrasted with Social Democracy — The Communist idea of the State — The dictatorship of the proletariat — Rôle of the Communist Party — The Soviet system — Economic organisation of the U.S.S.R. — Communism and Fascism compared — The rise of Fascism in Italy — Breakdown of Italian parliamentarism — and of Socialism in Italy — Mussolini and D'Annunzio — Fascism and the " National Idea " — Its relation to Hegel — Fascism and the " Corporative State " — Nationalism in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries — *L'Action Française* — Hitler in Germany — Parliamentarism in the balance — The position in Great Britain — The changing functions of the modern State — The fundamental nature of modern party cleavages — Socialism *versus* Capitalism as the main issue — The position in the United States of America — The demand for national economic planning — Does Socialism involve dictatorship ?

THEORIES AND FORMS OF POLITICAL ORGANISATION

Ever since the theory of Politics has existed, men have been trying by means of it to answer two different questions : How can Society, or this or that Society, best be organised and administered ? and How does it come about that Societies exist, or can exist, at all ? The first question is practical ; and those who are impelled to ask it are seeking answers to problems of their own day and generation—problems that must be resolved somehow, for good or ill, and will not wait upon man's ability to find good answers, or on the progress of human knowledge. For, in one way or another, Societies do exist, and have to be administered. The second question is, in form, theoretical and philosophic. It sets on foot an enquiry into the nature of man as a being capable of living in Society, and into the fundamental principles of political obligation. There is no such urgency to answer it, somehow, as exists in the other case ; but throughout the ages men go on asking it, and will not be content without some form of answer. Shall we say that in the first case the necessity is practical and external, whereas in the second the demand for an answer arises out of an inner necessity of the human mind ?

In some measure this is true ; but it is, in fact, always impossible to keep the two questions apart. Men's theoretical curiosity about the basis of political association mingles in every age with their practical desire to set Society in order ; and they are for ever seeking, in the true nature of man and Society, justifications for the particular forms of social and political organisation which they desire to impose upon their fellow-men, or to persuade them voluntarily to accept. Every age seeks to support contemporary " causes " with theories for which universal validity is claimed ; and every age makes its supposedly universal theories with one eye on the movement of contemporary events. Political Philosophy may be centred round the second question, and Political Science and the Art of Politics round the first. But the two constantly interpenetrate and combine, despite repeated efforts to keep them apart. Political Philosophy and Political Science have not separate histories, but one history common to them both, with shiftings of emphasis now this way and now that ; and the Art of Politics draws argument and illustration from both alike.

The attempt to separate Political Philosophy and Political Science is, indeed, comparatively modern. Foreshadowed by Rousseau in the eighteenth century, when he set out to distinguish the object of his own political writings from that of Montesquieu's, it was proved impossible in that great welter of theoretical and practical question-and-answer that we call the French Revolution. Revived again in the nineteenth century under the powerful stimulus of scientific advance, it has achieved no

better success in the world of to-day. Marxism and its derivative Communism are inextricable minglings of theoretical and practical reasoning; and Gentile, the philosopher of Italian Fascism, writes of the "National Idea" in terms which base the practical structure of the Fascist State directly on ultimate philosophic realities.

Nor is this at all surprising. The sort of mechanism men will want to create within Society will depend on what they want Society to be; and their view of what Society should be will depend on their view of man's nature as a social being. There can be no universal "Science of Politics" unless there can be a universally accepted doctrine concerning man's social nature.

That, of course, makes it terribly hard to mark off, even provisionally, the field of political theory from the fields of other social studies. All political theories, and all practical judgments about politics, are bound to rest on assumptions, or dogmas, or doctrines about the nature of men, their instincts, desires, teachability, strength of will, patience, suggestibility, imitativeness, and a host of other characteristics innate or acquired. This psychological basis of politics may be more or less conscious or unconscious, explicit or implied, in the work of different writers and statesmen. But it can never be absent; for it is a sheer impossibility to formulate a single political theory or project without making assumptions about the nature of man.

THE GREEK CITY-STATE

This necessity received full recognition at the dawn of conscious political theory among the Greeks of the classical period. Plato's psychology is his politics, and his political theory is his psychology, as readers of *The Republic* are well aware. There are, for Plato, three parts in the human soul: that which knows (the philosophic); that which is full of zeal and bravery (the spirited); and that which merely seeks bodily satisfaction (the appetitive)—and there are three corresponding parts in the structure of human Society, if it is rightly founded. Plato's philosopher-king stands for the necessary domination of knowledge over both spirit and desire in the body politic. Or, in a Republic, his guardians must rule as embodiments of the same principle, with a brave and zealous soldiery under them, and a merely appetitive populace kept well in subjection to do the productive work of the community. Plato's conception is essentially aristocratic. He sweeps democratic arguments and talk about equality of rights aside by claiming that in Society, as in a man's own soul, the best part should rule in the interests of the whole. And he sustains this dogma with his doctrine of "function." Each man, according to the varying composition of his soul out of the three parts which together make it up, has his proper function in the social system. The philosopher's function is to rule, because he knows what is best. The others can have no claim to rule, because they do not know.

Thus, at the very beginning of systematic political theory, all the great questions that have perplexed later ages are raised at once. Is political authority a matter of inalienable human right, belonging to a man simply because he is a man, or is it a matter of knowledge? Should the expert act

under orders, or give them? Is politics a field for specialists, or for ordinary men and women? Does democracy involve a mere babble of incoherent voices, or is the voice of the people, in some sense, the voice of God? And underlying all these questions is another, more fundamental still: What is man? What is his nature? We must know that, or at least try to know, before we can begin to say how he ought to rule and be ruled.

Plato, of course, was theorising, and preaching practical doctrine, primarily for the Greek City-State. The Greek cities and islands were, indeed, the first great nurseries of political theory and of conscious experiment by the people in methods of government. Above all is this true of Athens, which was, at the height of its power in the fifth century B.C., a fully organised democratic republic of citizens, though slaves and the large foreign population which dwelt there had no part in the government. Plato, however, was writing amid the decay of the Athenian Empire after the defeat of Athens by Sparta in the Peloponnesian War, and when the glories of Athenian democracy had been for the time extinguished. His successor, Aristotle, often acclaimed as the Father of the Science of Politics as of many other sciences, strikes a different note. Plato was concerned to build up in thought an ideal republic, to fit the real needs of the human spirit. Aristotle was content rather to take the best of the available forms and methods of government, recognising that all were imperfect, but seeking to distinguish between better and worse on the basis of an elaborate study of the comparative institutions of different States. Aristotle, too, writes of, and for, the City-State, which he regards as the highest form of civilisation, and as marking off Greeks from the "barbarians" who make up the rest of the world. His best State is, like Plato's, aristocratic in a sense, in that he will not allow that slaves, or those who do manual work, have any claim to citizenship. But among the citizen body he advocates a fairly wide distribution of political power, seeking a mixed constitution embodying both democratic and aristocratic elements.

Aristotle, however, counts as a political theorist not only for his description of the best type of City-State, but also because of his insistence that "man is by nature a social animal," so that living in Society comes to him by way of nature, and not by any merely artificial contract or coercion, and so that Society itself does not really need explaining at all. It is a fact, arising out of man's nature, and developing from the mere family stage up to the fully grown City-State as men advance in knowledge and culture.

Plato and Aristotle between them set the fashion, and laid down the shape, of political theory for many generations. Aristotle's influence, above all, remained alive and pervasive all through the Roman period, the so-called "Dark Ages" and the Middle Ages, and so passed on into the modern world. Plato, largely forgotten between the decline of Rome and the Renaissance, came back to widespread influence at the Renaissance, and is still to-day the most widely read of all the great political thinkers.

The City-State of the Greeks exhibited, indeed, wherever it existed, an astonishing fertility of political experiment and diverse governmental structure. Athens herself, like many of the other cities, was governed in

turn by legitimate kings, by " tyrants "—that is, by personal rulers who seized power without legitimate title—by its aristocracy, and by the entire body of its citizens, and then again by aristocracies and democracies in turn, with a bewildering variety of forms and methods of administration. But with all these forms of government there was something in common—the fact that, even in Athens, by far the most populous of Greek cities, the entire body of citizens was small enough to take a direct part in the government, or at least to be consulted as a single assembly, or to exert as a single and direct group of individuals a pressure of public opinion. Democracy, in its characteristic Athenian form, meant direct government by the people, issuing in primary assembly direct orders to their elected magistrates. A great magistrate, like Pericles, might guide them by personal ascendancy and leadership ; but he had to lead, not a body of representatives, but the whole people. Moreover, most of the offices were elective, or depended on a mixed system of lot and election ; and these offices were very numerous in relation to the size of the population, and were mostly part-time occupations, so that a very high proportion of the whole body of citizens at some time held some definite office. The Greek City-States, save to a small extent in their federal relationships one with another, did not use, and hardly knew, the device of representative government which we in the modern world have come to regard as inseparable from democratic institutions. In classical Greece, active and not merely passive citizenship was regarded as the normal duty and privilege of every citizen ; and political consciousness was widely diffused through the entire community, which ranked political activity among its most constant and liveliest interests.

This did not make for tranquil government. Indeed, the Greek City-States easily outdid the modern Republics of South America in the number of their revolutions. Nor did it always make for wisdom : the democracy of Athens, in the days of its decline, was apt to be as excitable, unstable and shortsighted as the aristocracy was apt to be self-seeking and tyrannical. But it is safe to say that the Greeks, more than any other people in the history of the world, did really govern themselves and take the business of self-government seriously.

ANCIENT ROME

Rome, too, began as a City-State, to become the Imperial City of a world empire. The Romans, like the Greeks, passed from monarchy to aristocracy, and from aristocracy to a mixed constitution partaking of democracy. But the Roman democracy could not govern the rapidly spreading Roman Empire, which could only be held together by a strong and highly concentrated central power. After the brief episode of the Triumvirates, Cæsar's successor, Augustus, made himself Emperor, and thereafter, as long as the Empire held together, Rome was governed by a single ruler.

Great above all as practitioners of the art of ruling, the Romans bequeathed to the world their political theories in a strictly practical form. What theories they had were deeply influenced by the later Greek philosophy of Stoicism, which left its mark on the development of Roman law,

especially in its international aspects. They have left to us no great books on politics like those of Plato and Aristotle; but they have left the imperishably influential monument of Roman law. The legal system which they impressed upon Europe, which permeated the Canon Law and the Civil Law of the Middle Ages, which is still the foundation of much in the legal systems of the modern world, is the sole distinctive contribution of classical Rome to the theory of politics. It is, however, a many-sided contribution enough. The theory of State sovereignty, which still dominates the modern world, comes from it. So does the conception of absolute monarchy, yet of monarchy working not by caprice, but according to law. And, on the other hand, to it we owe, through the *Jus Gentium*, the germ of the conception of an International Law extending to all men and peoples by virtue of a common rule of human reason underlying all national codes, and also the idea of a universal Empire which was ever present in the mind of Mediæval Christendom, and lay behind the claims alike of the Holy Roman Empire and of the Papacy. Roman law, moreover, gave to the world the conception of corporate personality as the creation of the State, making all corporations and associations derive their recognised being from the fiat of political authority, and thus coming into conflict in the modern world with Germanic conceptions of voluntary associations as no less natural and spontaneous and subsisting by their own right than the general political associations which we call "States."

THE MIDDLE AGES

Mediæval political theory built largely on Roman foundations, with something of Aristotle to eke out the theoretical jejuneness of Roman thought. It took from Rome the idea of universality, and from Aristotle the idea of Society as natural to man and as necessary to man for the fulfilment of his vital purposes. But the Holy Roman Empire, with its immense complexity of feudal and corporate rights and duties, was never, in fact, at all like the Empire of Augustus. It divided power among diverse claimants as much as the Romans had united it under a single head. It dreamed of universality; but even the universal Church had in practice to recognise narrow limits to its power of interfering with the smaller powers which held temporal sway over Christendom. The Middle Ages have left, from the early Canonists and Civilians to St. Thomas Aquinas, much brilliant political thinking behind them; but they made no realistic political theory that fitted the complicated political and social adjustments of the mediæval world. There are mediæval theories, as in Aquinas, about the common basis of all human Societies; there are theories of the "two powers" of Church and State, and theories of the universal dominion of the successors of St. Peter. And there are theories, derived partly from Aristotle, about property and its rights and duties. But of feudalism as it was, or of the corporate personality of mediæval towns and guilds, the Middle Ages made no theory at all. That was left for moderns like Gierke and Maitland and Figgis to do as historians, after the conditions which they described had long passed away.

Apart from the Roman influence, the dominant quality of mediæval political thinking lies in its treatment of politics as a branch of morals.

The mediæval thinker, basing his thought upon the claims of the universal Church to regulate right conduct, treated every problem in politics and economics as a problem of theological morality. This is seen, in the economic field, in the elaborate codes prohibiting " usury " and defining the conditions under which profits could justly be made by a Christian ; and, in politics, it appears in the attempt to derive all authority in the State, and all principles of obedience in the subject, from the will of God as manifested in Scripture and in the inspired utterances of the Catholic Church. The conscious political thought of the Middle Ages dresses itself in the garments of revealed religion, and throws around doctrines derived from Aristotle and from Roman Law the sanctions of the Church.

RENAISSANCE AND REFORMATION

The Reformation was no less theological in its politics than the Middle Ages. It was, indeed, in practice a good deal more so ; for theological controversy, touching the very foundations of the Catholic system, speedily reacted on politics, and texts out of Scripture were never flung to and fro in desperate combat more fiercely than between the political disputants of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. It is true that on the eve of the Reformation a purely secular note is struck once, with a startling clearness that horrified a world used to thinking in theological terms. Niccolo Machiavelli was regarded in his own day, and long afterwards, as an immoral cynic, preaching a doctrine to appeal to tyrants claiming immunity from all ethical considerations. But Machiavelli was, in truth, rather secularist than cynic. He was seeking for political thought and action a realistic basis in the facts of human behaviour rather than in the Scriptures or any *a priori* set of moral principles. If the result was cynicism, that was because the author of *The Prince*, strong enough to break through the universal integument of contemporary thought, was not clear enough in his own mind to formulate a new body of positive principles. He saw Italy torn asunder by the constant struggles of petty tyrants and republics, by the ambitions and intrigues of the Papacy, and by the repeated interventions of strong military powers which, in her internal divisions, she was impotent to resist. He wanted a strong Italy —Italy a nation—and saw the one hope of this in the creation of a purely secular and authoritative State, powerful enough both to repel the foreigner and to deal effectively with the disruptive tactics of ambitious Popes seeking temporal power. Making this his aim, he subordinated to it all considerations of morality and fair dealing between men, and produced a monstrosity of political thought which was none the less seminal of great ideas for being in part notably immoral in its immediate teaching.

Machiavelli's *Prince*, striking the note of nationalism and making unlimited claims for the secular power, became the secret manual of ambitious monarchs who were engaged in building up strong national States on the ruins of the Universal Empire and the Universal Church. But in the realm of political theory it is long before his secularism finds an important echo. The true successor of Machiavelli is the Englishman, Thomas Hobbes, a century and a half later ; and between these two lie the Reformation and the great wave of religion that followed hard upon it.

The Reformers, Lutheran and Calvinist alike, set out primarily to combat the Papacy in the religious field. But the contention was bound to be at once political as well as theological. Martin Luther and his followers could not hope to fight the papal claims with success unless they could array on their side secular support, to protect them against suppression and persecution and to balance the temporal power of the Papacy and the Catholic monarchs. Thus Luther was led irresistibly to ally himself with the rising national States, and to defend to the uttermost the claims of sympathetic secular rulers to absolute monarchy. His fierce denunciations of the German Peasants' Revolt follow logically upon this alliance between the new-made Lutheran Church and the temporal claims of the German Princes. Making religion, indeed, a matter of individual conscience and direct interpretation of the Scriptures without the mediation of a universal and inspired Church, the Lutherans became, in politics, the defenders of absolute monarchy to an extent that speedily menaced the religious freedom from which they had set out. *Cujus regio, ejus religio* lurked dangerously in the background of the Lutheran doctrine.

Calvinism, and to a less extent Zwinglism, in their original homes in Switzerland and speedily elsewhere, took another road combining, wherever they were strong enough, Church and State into a single unity dominated by a rigid and exacting moral code based on a new Puritan interpretation of scriptural precept. Calvin's revolution was, above all, a revolution in morals, which sought to make of Church and State alike instruments of moral control over the lives of men. In this, Calvinism carried on, extended, and made far more rigorous, the mediæval tradition. Calvin was the Pope of Geneva in a far more exacting sense than there had ever been a Pope of Rome. His *Institutes* are as thoroughly mediæval in tone and temper as they are unlike the Middle Ages in the instruments which they devise to sanction their moral precepts. The nature of these instruments, secondary for Calvin, nevertheless gives Calvinism its pre-eminent importance in the development of political thought. For Calvin, having broken from the universal Catholic Church, was compelled both to set up a new instrument of Church government in its place, and to furnish forth a State armed to defend his Church.

He could do this only by building Church and State alike on the collective will and activity of the body of the faithful. Calvin's Geneva was far from being a democracy : it was based essentially on the domination of an aristocracy of the Saints. But there were in it the seeds of democracy, because it appealed not to the traditional authority of a Church ruling by right and prescript, but to the continuous sustaining force of its own membership.

The democratic qualities inherent in this Calvinist conception made themselves far more plainly impressive wherever the Calvinists were not, as at Geneva, in power, but in a minority. For where Calvinism had, often in face of persecution, to organise itself as a Church without being able to remake the State in its own image, it became of necessity a force making for self-government. Undoubtedly, it diffused over Europe a powerful impulse towards self-governing institutions, and was the most influential ally of the changing economic conditions of the time in setting

the face of Europe towards the development of democratic attitudes and forms of social organisation.

It is not possible in this Article to pursue further the conjoint course of religious struggles and political speculation and action in the Europe of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, to discuss the political theories of the Counter-Reformation, the doctrines and policies of French thinkers, such as Bodin and the author of the *Vindiciæ contra Tyrannos*, or the Dutch and German contributions of Althusius, Grotius, Spinoza, and many more great names to the theories of politics and of international law. I must be content only to say a little about the course of political theory in England during this season of world-wide conflict of both aims and ideas.

The English Reformation was as nearly secular in its basis as it is possible for a nominally religious movement to be. The cleavage between Henry VIII and the Papacy raised no fundamental question either of theology or of moral conduct; and the Church of England set out on its independent career without any break either with Catholic theology or with the Catholic moral code. There was an institutional break; that was almost all. But such a break involved the abandonment of the ideas of universality; and the declaration of independence of the English Church formally ratified and practically consolidated the complete and separate sovereignty of the English State. If at Geneva the State had become almost a branch of the Church, in England the Church became almost a branch of the State.

Thereafter a difficult situation arose. Calvinists, standing for a moral revolution to be enforced by a union of Church and State, with the Church as the dominant partner, were not likely to be satisfied with what had been done. But Calvinism was strong and growing; and it seemed essential to found the new English Church on a basis broad enough to include all the King's loyal subjects; for Church and State were thought of as co-extensive. Hence the movement, best illustrated in Richard Hooker's *Ecclesiastical Polity*, for a Church broad enough and tolerant enough to command the acquiescence of all good Englishmen, even if the extremer Catholics and the extremer Calvinists alike repudiated its tolerance. Hooker's masterpiece is directed above all against the Calvinists within the gates. They are wrong, he urges, in seeking to derive from Scripture binding rules of conduct and practice to regulate every occasion, secular and religious alike. It takes many sorts to make a world; and there is a wide sphere of conduct within which God has laid down no universal precepts, but left men free to decide on their course according to the expediency of time and place, always under the rule of the law of nature and reason.

Hooker's tolerance, however, came before its time; and for a century circumstances were too strong for his solution to prevail. England in the seventeenth century plunged, like the rest of Europe, into warfare in which considerations of religion and politics were mingled inextricably together, with the rising commercial classes ranged under the banner of Puritanism to destroy absolute monarchy in the name of a freedom of conscience which was also a freedom to break down the barriers of mediævalism and create a State responsive to the needs of the new

commerce, the new industry, and the new forms of capitalist farming based on enclosure of the land.

Unless the Stuart monarchs, under the spell of their fatal belief in the Divine Right of Kings, had made egregious blunders, English Puritanism would hardly have triumphed even for a time; for the mass of people would have been well content with a compromise. But Charles I threw away his crown and his head; and England experienced, for a moment, the rule of the Saints. But the Genevese model, despite its appeal to Milton and other leading Puritans, would not serve for England, being indeed essentially a form of city rather than of national government. Cromwell dismissed the "Rump," and ruled for a while personally in the name of the Saints. But such a personal autocracy could have no permanence; for most of England was not Puritan, and it exceeded the strength of Cromwell and his Saints to convert it. The Restoration was inevitable from the moment when the alliance of Presbyterians and Independents fell asunder.

But, though Charles II came back to reign, much had been changed, and the kingly power had been greatly diminished for good and all. The Puritans had failed; but they left behind a trail of broken institutions and beliefs. Though James II's Catholicism was the occasion of his losing his crown, he and his descendants could have held it only if they had been content to let England develop from absolute monarchy to aristocracy. After the death of Cromwell and the decay of belief in the Divine Right of Kings, the one power that was strong enough to rule the country was the landed aristocracy. The rising commercial classes were not yet nearly strong enough to govern on secular grounds. The only possible secular government was that of the great Whig houses which ruled England from 1688 onwards.

HOBBES AND HIS INFLUENCE

British political theory, founded by Hooker, took shape in the midst of the great conflicts of the seventeenth century. Apologists of the Divine Right of Kings, from James I himself to Sir Robert Filmer, did battle with Puritan apologists such as Milton and Algernon Sidney, reinforced by James Harrington with his *Oceana* on the one hand and by the author of *Eikon Basilike* on the other. But far more significant than anything written from the standpoint of either the Divine Right of Kings or the Rule of the Saints is the contribution of Thomas Hobbes of Malmesbury. Earlier in the century Francis Bacon had set in his *Essays* the Machiavellian fashion of a secular approach to the problems of State; and later, at the height of the civil conflict, Hobbes elaborated, on the side of monarchy but in sharp hostility to the doctrine of divine right, his famous theory of sovereignty based upon an all-embracing Social Contract.

To Hobbes's mind the first need of Society was order and, therefore, a power armed with absolute authority for the enforcement of order. Whereas Hooker, like Aristotle, had regarded Society as natural to man, and therefore as needing, in the last resort, no explanation, Hobbes represented it as an artificial condition, and the natural condition of men as a war of all against all, from which Society, by enforcing order and

justice, offered them the only way of escape. The institution of Society was thus represented as a purely rational act, done by men for self-preservation and requiring the continuous sanction of absolute authority to hold its artificial unity together. Justice, according to Hobbes, was no less artificial than Society itself, and existed only in Society, as the law imposed by the sovereign. And the sovereign derived his title to obedience solely from his effective power to enforce the law; for if he could not enforce it the social contract was dissolved, and no further moral obligation could subsist.

On an utterly false psychological foundation Hobbes thus erected a theory of Society ruthlessly logical, if once his initial assumptions were granted. And this theory of his, despite its false psychology, has exercised, and still exercises, an enormous influence. Straight out of Hobbes came the legal theories of Austin and his followers, with their insistence on the absolute, unlimited and indivisible sovereignty of the State. And out of Hobbes, too, though he was by no means its originator, comes the practical application to political theory and constitution-making of the doctrine of the Social Contract.

The fall of the Divine Right of Kings had left absolutism without a theoretical basis. Hobbes gave it a new secular foundation; but the absolutism which he preached did not belong, of necessity, to a single ruler, but to the government of Society, whatever form it might take. Hobbes preferred monarchy, as likely to be more efficient in the preservation of order; but he recognised that his doctrine could be applied equally well to justify the absolutism of an aristocratic or a democratic as of a monarchical government. The essence of his doctrine is that to the government, whatever its form, belongs absolute power over all the subjects.

In his own day, Hobbes found his doctrines rejected by all parties. The Cavaliers would have none of him, though he claimed to be on their side; for they wanted the King to rule by divine right. The opponents of monarchy would not accept him; for they mostly wanted to limit the King's power. The Saints rejected him; for they wanted to base their rule on theological and not on secular grounds. Only in the next generation, when the practical conflict had taken on a new form, did Hobbes's influence make itself plain.

THE ENGLISH REVOLUTION

It appears very plainly in Locke, the philosopher of the English Revolution of 1688, though Locke traverses most of Hobbes's doctrines and avows himself a follower rather of Hooker than of the author of *Leviathan*. Locke sets out, indeed, to limit the authority of governments and to confine them mainly to the duty of protecting the liberty and property of the subjects. He recognises that Society is natural to man and rests his case on a quite different psychology from that of Hobbes. And he derives the principles of politics from the laws of God and Nature and not, like Hobbes, from an act of human reason which removes Man from the sphere and state of Nature. But all the same he owes a great deal to Hobbes; and his theory of the Social Contract could never have been formulated as it was without Hobbes's theory to serve as a foundation.

For Locke distinguishes, as Hobbes did not, between Society and the government. Society is, indeed, based on a contract among men and sustained by their continuous consent to its being. In Hobbes the people set up a sovereign once and for all, and in doing so transferred and alienated to him and his successors all their power for evermore. The contractual act was the setting up of the government. In Locke this theory changes its content. The people do not for ever alienate their rights. They remain always sovereign, with perpetual power to recall and abolish the government they have established if it prove at any time false to its trust. And as sovereignty remains in them, absolute and unlimited, the power of government can be limited as much as you please, short of destroying its validity altogether. Thus, Hobbes's absolutism serves as the framework for Locke's very different theory of limited and constitutional government as the defender of property rights—a theoretical version of the practical achievement of the English Revolution of 1688.

After 1688 England settled down to aristocratic government with a limited constitutional monarch as its titular head. For some time, in face of the practical settlement of affairs, political speculation went to sleep, or ceased to concern itself with fundamentals. The early eighteenth century formulated, in the writings of Hoadly and others, highly Erastian theories of the relation between Church and State; it advanced slowly towards the acceptance of some of Locke's ideas about religious toleration; it produced many admirable political pamphlets, written by such masters of English prose as Swift and Steele, Addison and Defoe; and it gave a fine exhibition of charlatanism and virtuosity in Bolingbroke's *Patriot King*. But on the whole its tone and temper is best expressed in Pope's *Essay on Man*, with its twin assertions that "whatever is is right," and that:

> *For forms of government let fools contest:*
> *Whate'er is best administered is best.*

Not that the early eighteenth century was really indifferent about the forms of government, but that it regarded political authority as too securely settled in the hands of the aristocracy for its nature to be worth much argument.

Political speculation, which had found its home in England in the seventeenth century, thereupon crossed the Channel to France. Locke's writings were of immense influence upon the Continent; and Montesquieu, who reintroduced Aristotle's method by basing his speculations on a comparison and analysis of actual constitutions past and present, rather than on *a priori* principles, was a fervent admirer of the English Constitution as settled by the Revolution of 1688. Montesquieu was, indeed, the first modern political scientist, and his work gave, in the end, a new turn to political speculation. From him derive the long series of political students of constitutional practice, from Delolme and Hallam to Dicey and Anson.

Montesquieu, however, is chiefly remembered for his doctrine of the separation of powers, soon to become of vast practical influence in the Constitution of the United States. In *The Spirit of the Laws* he adapts from Locke the threefold classification of powers as legislative, executive

and judicial, and declares for the exercise of these three powers by different authorities as the indispensable safeguard of political and civil liberty. It has often been pointed out that Montesquieu misinterpreted the English Constitution from which he thought to derive his doctrine. But the doctrine remains as an extraordinarily influential concept for the political history of the succeeding century.

ROUSSEAU

Hard upon Montesquieu came Jean Jacques Rousseau, following a very different method. For Rousseau himself sharply contrasts his method with that of *The Spirit of the Laws*. He is not, he says, like Montesquieu, a compiler and comparer of instances. He goes back to the *a priori* method and seeks to lay down the fundamental principles which underlie all healthy political action and organisation. Returning to Hobbes and Locke, he lays hold on the doctrine of the Social Contract as an explanation of the origin and existence of Society, taking from Hobbes the idea of sovereignty as indivisible and unlimited and as arising in Society at the moment when the Social Contract is made; and from Locke the distinction between sovereign and government, which reserves supreme power for the whole people as sovereign and makes the government merely a derivative authority, always subject to the sovereign people's will. But unlike Locke, Rousseau seeks to make his sovereign active in carrying on the work of Society and not merely passive and acquiescent in the work of government. Thus, in Rousseau's hands the theory becomes fundamentally democratic and the claim is made that the people as a whole shall rule in fact as well as in name.

This theory has, however, for Rousseau the effect of a denial that large States or societies can ever rest on a legitimate principle. He will not agree that the sovereign people can be represented, or can in any respect alienate or delegate its rights. It must, accordingly, legislate for itself directly; and this, obviously, can be done only in a society small enough for the entire people to assemble together. Rousseau, himself a citizen of Geneva, thus brings us back to the City-State as the only kind of society in which the terms of the Social Contract can be carried really into effect.

It might be supposed that such a doctrine preached among the Nation-States and growing Empires of the eighteenth century could have been of scant practical effect; but, in fact, Rousseau's writings exerted an immense influence. For what men learnt from Rousseau was a theory not merely of popular sovereignty but of democratic government as well. He taught them to regard the will of the people as the only legitimate ground of political activity; and his doctrine of the General Will, obscure as it was in many of its bearings, gave political thought a new turn just because it did stress popular will-power as the creative force in the political field. Men did not obey Rousseau's behest to restore the City-State; but he did inspire them to make democracy the basis of their political institutions.

Thus, when the American Colonies revolted from Great Britain and sought for a theoretical foundation for their independence and for a practical constitution as its embodiment, they took the forms and arrangements of their new Republic largely from Montesquieu's interpretation

of the English Constitution, but their first principles largely from Rousseau's *Social Contract*. It was Rousseau, above all, who first made positive democracy a live doctrine in the world of politics.

THE FRENCH REVOLUTION

Barely was the American Constitution settled on the basis of Montesquieu's separation of powers, Locke's insistence on the function of the State as the protector of liberty and property, and Rousseau's doctrine of active sovereignty of the people, than the greater Revolution broke out in France and all Europe was plunged into warfare and an intense and acrimonious disputation about the first principles of political and human right. The *Déclaration des Droits de l'Homme et du Citoyen* derives its ideas and arguments from Montesquieu, Locke and Rousseau as the American Constitution had done; but revolutionary France, ringed round with the enemies of *Liberté, Egalité, Fraternité*, was soon driven to discard the separation of powers in favour of an active and extreme concentration of political authority. Rousseauism, and not the doctrines of Locke and Montesquieu, impressed themselves most firmly on France and its admirers throughout the world while the revolutionary epoch lasted; and Rousseauism, by insisting on the unlimited sovereignty of Society, prepared the way for the dictatorship of Napoleon as war leader of the young and threatened Republic.

In England and Scotland, while the events in France aroused fervent sympathies of which Tom Paine and William Godwin were the foremost theoretical exponents, the practical effect was to strengthen greatly the cause of reaction. The English governing class lived for a generation under the constant fear of violent revolution and, stirred into panic by the fulminations of Edmund Burke, turned to strong measures of repression against every form of Radical activity. The French Revolution gave the English aristocrats the philosophy of which till then they had felt no need, and Burke formulated it for them in noble prose worthy of a better cause. The principles of the Revolution were, above all, an appeal to first principles of human reason. Burke met them not by arguments on the same plane but with a denial of reason as the right basis for politics and an assertion of the fundamental importance of a living tradition of political life made flesh in the accumulated experience of an hereditary governing class. His influence was profound. As far as Conservatism has a philosophy to-day and is not merely an attempt of vested interests to hold what they have or regain what they have lost, the philosophy of Conservatism is still the philosophy of Edmund Burke.

It was not, however, solely or mainly because of successful repression that England did not after 1789 follow France's revolutionary example. The entire structure and spirit of the two societies was fundamentally different. France was an absolute monarchy, under which was an aristocratic class possessed of vast privileges without political power. The circle of this class was, in the main, closed to new men, even if they made fortunes in commerce or banking, and the exactions which its privileges involved weighed down the peasantry with almost intolerable burdens. The taxes were heavy because, largely, of heavy military expenditure

designed to uphold national power and prestige; and the exemption from taxation of the privileged classes made the taxes weigh heavily on industry and commerce as well as on the common people. Consequently, the rising men, potential leaders of discontent, were not absorbed into the governing class, but left outside to make common cause in the revolution with starving peasants and angry workmen from the towns.

In England, on the other hand, the aristocracy possessed power as well as privilege, and showed wisdom enough neither to exempt itself wholly from taxation nor to close its ranks against the admission of new men. All through the eighteenth century it steadily recruited adherents from the class below it, both by intermarriage and by direct admission of the new rich of commerce and finance. Its own members, as mine-owners, iron-masters, owners of flocks of sheep, investors in Bank of England and East India stocks, participated in the rapid economic development of the country. The aristocratic Parliaments of the century were keenly alive to mercantile interests; and the abundance of rotten boroughs open to purchase by the longest purse enabled rich merchants and others to find their way into Parliament side by side with the representatives of the landed classes. This gave the English aristocracy at once great strength and great adaptability. There was no such concentration of all the forces of discontent against the government in England as there was in France. France, accordingly, had her Revolution, whereas England, after standing out against any sudden change for a generation, contented herself with the Reform Act of 1832.

England, which had been the pioneer of parliamentary aristocracy, then slid gently and by stages into parliamentary democracy, which was to become in the nineteenth century the characteristic form of government for the developed countries of the world. The Reform Act of 1832 enfranchised only the middle classes, and the working classes had to wait for votes until the further Acts of 1867 and 1884. But from 1832 onwards it was clear that the country was heading for a system of parliamentary government based on universal suffrage. It was uncertain only how long it would take to complete the structure of formal political democracy. In fact, it was not quite completed until the concession of Women's Suffrage in 1918; and by that time parliamentary democracy was itself being challenged by new forms and theories of government and administration.

THE PHILOSOPHIC RADICALS

The theory underlying this gradual change from aristocracy to democracy was supplied, for the most part, in England not by the disciples of Rousseau or the makers of the French Revolution, but by the school of thought known as the Philosophic Radicals. The doctrines of Paine and Godwin were swept away in the panic of anti-Jacobinism which accompanied the revolutionary wars; and when England at length reformed herself after the peace their echoes had grown faint. It was Jeremy Bentham, and not William Godwin, who set his seal to the Reform Act of 1832.

Benthamism was, indeed, and remained for the rest of the century, the most powerful influence on English political thought and action. Bentham and his followers, the Utilitarians, or Philosophic Radicals, had no

use for Social Contracts or National Rights or for any *a priori* judgments except their own peculiar views about human nature. Their sole test of political right was expediency, and on this alone they professed to base their democratic case. But in fact expediency, or utility, of course, demands a prior standard of judgment; and in postulating as the end of politics the greatest happiness of the greatest number the Benthamists were really assuming a conclusion utterly at variance with what Burke had believed or England acted upon thitherto. They were assuming, to begin with, that any man's happiness ought to count for as much as any other's; and they were assuming, too, that what mattered was the happiness of individual men and women and not any well-being of Society as a whole, distinguished from the individuals who composed it. Their *a priori* doctrine thus embodied a democratic individualism, and their conceptions of utility could be made operative only upon this plain assumption.

Benthamism began as a destructive and critical doctrine. It was, above all, a great solvent of established dogmas and institutions. While Napoleon was sweeping the petty kingdoms and principalities of Europe free of feudal survivals and equipping them with the foundations of a new and simplified legal code, the English Benthamites, rejecting all high-sounding gospels of human rights, were criticising one institution after another by asking the simple question: "How far does this thing minister to the increase of human happiness?" And in face of the vast concurrent changes in economic conditions and social needs, one institution after another was going down before their criticism like a house of cards. It is easy to see now that they were far stronger as critics than in construction, and that their attacks on the old privileges and restrictions left the way clear for an unrestricted capitalist development that brought with it new problems of its own. But their work of destruction was none the less indispensable, and their principle of the greatest happiness of the greatest number was readily capable of being turned to constructive purpose when the time was ripe. The writings of John Stuart Mill in the middle of the century well mark the transition; for Mill hovered long between the two opposing interpretations of the Benthamite creed.

The Philosophic Radicals and their political allies and successors of the "Manchester School" hustled England into the full acceptance of the gospel of *laissez-faire*. Seeing the new economic system that came in with the Industrial Revolution through the eyes of Adam Smith and Ricardo and Nassau Senior, the great Victorians thought to foster human happiness by persuading the State to let economic conditions take their own course, convinced that some sort of preordained harmony of things would bring happiness and the common good out of the private self-interested strivings of individual men. Equally with Locke, these great Victorians desired to restrict the sphere of State action and to give free rein to private initiative. But Utilitarianism had the merits as well as the defects of its doctrine of expediency. If *laissez-faire* in industry and commerce came out of it, so, in some degree, did the movement for social reform; for it was impossible to survey, for example, the state of public health and sanitation in England without desiring to apply remedies in the cause of human happiness. Edwin Chadwick's great Reports on the health and

housing of the urban poor in the eighteen-forties are landmarks in the history of social reform; and long before the structure of *laissez-faire* was complete the State had begun upon a new career of intervention in the spheres of factory inspection, public health legislation and similar measures of social justice.

These, emphasised in the writings of John Stuart Mill, constitute the constructive outcome of the Benthamite gospel; and much of the best of modern social legislation can be traced back directly to this influence. But the new forms of constructive State intervention rested always on a basis of demonstrable necessity. For the Benthamites the presumption was always in favour of letting things alone; intervention was justified only if clear proof could be given of abuses that could not be remedied without the action of the State. The Benthamites remained to the end individualists, trusting, on the whole, to the free play of economic forces to increase the welfare and happiness of Society.

HEGEL AND MARX

Meanwhile, on the Continent of Europe political thought had been developing along very different lines. When Europe settled down after the revolutionary wars the dominant school of thought came to be for a time the Hegelian—developed by Hegel out of Kant, and by Kant out of Rousseau. As against the Utilitarian glorification of *laissez-faire* and private initiative the Hegelian doctrine glorified the power and authority of the State, bidding the individual seek to realise himself not in his own private concerns alone but far more and more fundamentally in and through his contribution to the life of the State. The State was, indeed, for Hegel a mystical being—an end in itself to which the separate individuals who at any time made it up must contribute according to their capacity, and in which they themselves would realise the best in life.

This metaphysical theory of the State has obvious affinities to the view preached by Burke in his diatribes against the French Revolution, for both make the claims of individuals subordinate to the well-being of the State itself as the highest good, and both are strongly imbued with an historical attitude which sees in a continuous tradition belonging to the State the highest incarnation of human value. It has also obvious tendencies towards autocracy, in that it emphasises the State's unity and preaches therewith a gospel of subjection, and towards aristocracy, in that it emphasises the inequality of different men's capacities for service of the State rather than the equality of human needs. It leads readily, moreover, to a judgment of the virtue of the State according to its power, and therewith to a glorification of war and Empire as means to the self-realisation of the State. And, above all, regarding the State as the highest form of human achievement and value, it denies the aspiration towards human brotherhood over the whole world and leaves State ranged against State as man was ranged against man in Hobbes's imagined condition of Nature.

More than enough has been written of the impression which the Hegelian view of the State made on the formative minds of nineteenth century Germany to make it unnecessary to stress the point here. What is

important for our purpose is that out of German Hegelianism, inverted and adapted to a very different purpose, came the new conception which, as the century advanced, was to challenge both Prussianism and the complacent parliamentary democracy of Victorian England. Marxian Socialism took much of its shape, though not its content, from the teaching of Hegel. For Hegel progress consisted in the gradual realisation of the "Idea," of which material things and conditions were but the reflection. This process was at every stage a conflict in which the dominant idea met with its opposite, its contradiction, until out of the contention came a fusion of old and new, creating a synthesis, a higher idea blended of the two and destined to be superseded by a similar process of conflict in its turn.

Karl Marx took this evolutionary conception and turned it upside down. For him the determining factor was not the "idea," but the material equipment of Society, for ever dictating new methods of production and new social and economic arrangements designed to further their development. This doctrine is the Materialist Conception of History which makes the "powers of production," in their ceaseless development, the true cause of changing social structures and class relationships in Society. As the "powers of production"—the material resources at man's disposal, and man's knowledge of their use—develop from stage to stage, different forms of economic organisation are required, and from these follow different arrangements of social classes and different distributions of power. At one time the main power belonged to the great landlords; and Society was constructed in accordance with their needs. Then came industrial and commercial developments which made the traditional authority of these landlords obsolete; and in due time the upper strata of the industrial classes—the employers—after fighting their way against the opposition of the old governing class, were invited to share in its authority, and a new governing class based on the fusion of the two came into being. But, in order to develop the productive resources at the disposal of Society, the industrial capitalists were compelled to gather the workers together into factories, and to subject them to a common discipline of production. This inevitably gave these workers power and opportunity to organise against their masters: in other words, it created the modern Labour Movement with its growing challenge to capitalist demands and assumptions. In the end, according to Marx, this subject class, to which the rights of organisation and protest cannot be denied, is destined to overthrow the capitalist class and Capitalism as an economic system. It will do this, Marx holds, because it is better fitted than the class which it supersedes to make full use of the developing powers of production that are at men's command. But with the victory of the proletariat there will remain no subject class to be exploited; and with the coming of a classless Society exploitation will cease, and the government of class by class give place to the social administration of the community's resources in the interests of all.

This is obviously not the place for any account of Marx's economic theories. What concerns us here is his conception of their political reactions. But it is difficult to keep the two apart because for the Marxist politics is not an independent science, but only a study of the reflections of

economic causes in the political sphere. The State is not a self-subsistent reality, based on any real solidarity of the community as a whole, but only an emanation from the class-relationships which exist in the economic sphere. It is merely an " executive committee for administering the affairs or the ruling class as a whole." Accordingly, as long as Capitalism continues to exist, the Marxist holds that there can be no real democracy, however widely the franchise may be extended; for it is meaningless to speak of equal political rights among men who are subject to gross economic inequalities. The cherished democratic conceptions of the nineteenth century are thus swept away with the wave of a hand; and the demand for true democracy is based on a demand for the abolition of economic inequality and class exploitation.

This theory has powerful repercussions in the sphere of political practice; for it means that as the State is a reflection of the dominant economic class, each new class that rises to power on the basis of the changing forms of production needs to remake the State in its own image. The workers, according to Marx, need, not merely to capture the existing State and use it for their own ends, but to destroy it together with the class which it represents, and to set up a new institution in its place. Marxists, agreed so far, differ widely among themselves concerning the nature of this new institution and the method by which the replacement is to be achieved. The orthodox Social Democrats of Germany and many other countries take one view and the Communists take another—both schools of thought claiming that what they advocate is the only true Marxian view. It will, however, be more convenient to discuss this problem at a later stage when we come to deal with the doctrines and conflicts of the twentieth century; for it is in our own day that the divergence between Communism and Social Democracy has come dramatically to a head.

Marx's doctrine was clearly outlined as early as the Year of Revolutions, 1848, in the famous *Communist Manifesto* which he and Engels published in that year. But Socialism, or Communism, was not strong enough at that stage to provide the central issue of the European struggle. Though Socialism of one sort or another figured in the movements of 1848 in both France and Germany, the main conflicts of that year were based rather on attempts to establish parliamentary democracy or to secure national unity and independence than on any bid of the working class for the overthrow of Capitalism. France established a bourgeois Republic which was speedily replaced by the bourgeois Imperialism of Napoleon III. In Germany the Frankfort Assembly made an unsuccessful attempt to achieve at once national unity and constitutional democracy. In England Chartism flickered out and died before the self-confident parliamentarism of the new British governing class. The time was not ripe for Socialism to take the centre of the stage; and Marxism had to wait its opportunity. The influence of the *Communist Manifesto* came in two later movements—the rise of Social Democracy after the foundation of the First International in 1864, and the rise of Communism after the Russian Revolution of 1917.

Meanwhile, after the suppression of the revolutions of 1848 Europe shaped for herself a different course. In the realm of political theory Darwinism produced a deep effect, by imbuing thinkers with an organic conception of Society. Very different conclusions were drawn by different writers from the Darwinian ideas. Some, like Herbert Spencer, stressed the factor of the struggle for existence, and based on evolutionary concepts an idea of Society as the scene of a permanent struggle, in which the fittest would survive if natural forces were allowed to take their course. This doctrine developed into the purest and crudest Individualism and allied itself with the economic school of *laissez-faire* to oppose every extension of the powers and intervention of the State. But, on the other side, writers such as Huxley regarded it as the mission of Society to control and supersede the struggle for existence, making of the community not a jungle, but an ordered garden; while Prince Kropotkin in his *Mutual Aid* sought to derive Communism from the biological necessity of co-operation among men and animals. Other writers seized on the conception of Society as an organism and used it to demand the co-ordinated control of all the parts of the community by the State, as a man's brain co-ordinates and controls his entire body. In the long run the two latter conceptions were the more influential; and the growth of science did make for strengthening the movement towards the co-ordinated control of the life of Society. But in the later Victorian era biological analogies were over-simplified and over-stressed on both sides of the argument by individualists and Socialists alike, until the critically minded became sick of analogies and set out to find a new basis for the study of Society either in the classification and comparison of actual social institutions, or in the attempts at a scientific study of the structure and working of the human mind.

ANTHROPOLOGY AND PSYCHOLOGY

The first of these two methods received, in the latter part of the nineteenth century, powerful reinforcement from the growth of Anthropology, and the more intensive study of the social institutions of primitive peoples past and present. The work of the followers of Spencer in this field, of Sir James Frazer, Professor Westermarck, L. T. Hobhouse, and a host of American and Continental scholars—Professor Ross, for example—threw a world of new light on the mind and social organisation of primitive peoples and drew theoretical students of politics away from the pure rationalism of the earlier schools of the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries to a more realistic way of looking at the actual institutions and behaviour of advanced as well as primitive peoples. This new stream of influences mingled readily, as in the work of Dr. Rivers, with materials of a similar tendency drawn from the growing study of psychology. The work of William James provided a mass of material ready and waiting for application to the social field; and in their very different ways Professor McDougall and Professor Graham Wallas laid hold on this material and applied it to the creation of a new study of Social Psychology. And later

in the new century the work of Professor Freud also began to make its mark on the shape and content of political theory.

This explanation of the psychological basis of politics took many different forms. Some writers, like McDougall, directed their attention mainly to a study and classification of the social instincts in men, discussing rather man as a social animal than the actual political and social institutions in which he embodied his social instincts and desires. Others, like Professor Wallas, began rather at the institutional end and studied the actual working of parliaments, committees and associations from a realistic standpoint, using the data—often none too clearly formulated by the psychologists—of individual psychology as the basis for a theory of the psychology of Society itself.

Whatever the angle of vision might be, the positive effect of all these new ways of approach—anthropological and psychological alike—was to make men far more sceptical both of answers to the social question which purported to lay down any universally right form of social organisation independent of considerations of time or place and of any purely rationalistic approach to the problem of politics. This does not mean that the anthropologists and psychologists generally set out to proclaim the advantages of irrationalism. Far from it! Some of them—Professor Wallas, for example—remained convinced rationalists in that they saw in the advance of human reason to the control of social life the main mark of the progress of civilisation and the chief hope for the future of mankind. But while they might still put their trust in reason, they were led by the new influences to regard the actual working of present and past forms of Society in a far less rationalistic spirit and to make, at the least, far greater allowances for the irrational in man as a necessary element in the working of any possible Society. Their entire standpoint came to differ radically from that of Godwin, on the one hand, or Bentham, on the other, or even from that of John Stuart Mill or T. H. Green. They came to recognise that much of men's social action was, and must be, under any Society instinctive rather than rational, and that forms and projects of social and political organisation must be judged not in the light of pure deductive reason but in relation to their appeal to men's instincts and passions.

POLITICAL PLURALISM

Some schools of thought, profoundly influenced by the new ideas that were in the air, went much further than this. The opening decade of the present century was marked by a revolt, in theory and practice alike, against the over-simplified conceptions of purely parliamentary democracy. This revolt found shape and substance in certain other studies and in certain practical movements which seemed to fit in closely with the new teachings of the psychologists and anthropologists. A revival of mediæval studies, in the hands of Gierke in Germany and F. W. Maitland in Great Britain, served to emphasise the importance and spontaneity in mediæval Society of institutions and associations which expressed a large part of the spirit of community, but in no sense owed their being or their authority to the creative fiat of the State. The State thus came to be regarded not as standing for the whole organised life of Society, but as one

among a number of social institutions and associations, of which each embodied in its degree some part or element in the total life of the community. Herbert Spencer's direct and simple opposition between " the man " and " the State " was thus transcended and half obliterated in a new view of the community as finding expression in a complex body of social institutions and relationships, among which the State might be first but only *primus inter pares*. Political Pluralism came into fashion, challenging the old unitary conceptions of political obligation and the old simple contrast between sovereign and subject.

It was no accident that these new views began to gain ground just at a time when certain forms of voluntary association were powerfully challenging the supposed absolute authority of the Sovereign State. In face of the rise of large-scale capitalist combines, America and Europe were finding that it was easier to pass laws against trusts than to secure their enforcement, and that great aggregations of capital directed by small groups of powerful financiers held, in practice, an authority over public policy and the lives of men that ordinary measures of legislation were almost helpless to counteract. Moreover, mass production and large-scale capitalism were calling into existence no less large and influential combines of manual workers. The Trade Unions, which Victorian jurists had been content to regard as the mere tolerated creatures of the State, possessing only so much of right as the State law chose to accord them, were coming to assert themselves as independent powers, claiming a right to act on behalf of their members and to strike even in defiance of the State's prohibition.

In the years before the War of 1914 a wave of Labour unrest swept over the industrialised world. Syndicalism in France and Italy, Industrial Unionism in the United States, and Guild Socialism in Great Britain, were all incarnations of a new Labour spirit hostile to the traditional conceptions of parliamentary democracy. Germany indeed, divided between a Hegelian Imperialism and a Social Democratic interpretation of Marxism, seemed to be little touched by the new ideas ; but elsewhere they were, in 1914, making a powerful appeal to the younger generation. One and all, despite their very great differences in other matters, these new theories and policies stood for a conception which sought to base the new life of a recreated Society, not on a parliamentary state, but on the spontaneous life of a variety of associations primarily economic, and founded on the idea of function, or work, as the source of creative vigour in the community. A new conception of functional democracy, with a diversified social structure at its back, came to challenge the " one man, one vote " conception of parliamentary democracy.

These movements were echoed, and paralleled, in other spheres. Churchmen, under the influences of J. N. Figgis, protested against the Erastianism of the Church Establishment, and sought to re-animate religion by giving it a recognised place in the life of society independent of, and co-ordinate with, the life of the State. Free Churchmen, such as Dr. Orchard, began to think along the same lines ; and modernists and Ultramontanes were alike influenced by the new ideas. The years before the War were everywhere fertile in plans for reorganising the life of society on a basis not of "one man, one vote" but of the recognition of the

community as a related complex of distinct functions, each needing a distinct and self-governing organisation of its own.

In the economic sphere the thought of Georges Sorel in France made of this new view an activist philosophy of social life. The old conception of merely voting citizenship was denounced as essentially passive and uncreative; and men were invited, in the name of active citizenship, to realise themselves in and through a host of functional associations in which they could perform positive service. Spontaneity of action, free expression of personality were stressed, in preference to any rationalised ordering of the life of society according to a simple intellectual plan. It was insisted that men would be moved to action, not so much by rational arguments, as by emotional appeals, or appeals to instincts of solidarity and self-expression, made practical in "social myths" such as the syndicalist myth of a "General Strike."

It is, of course, easy to exaggerate the direct influence of theories like those of Sorel in France or the Guild Socialists in Great Britain on the mass of the people. Neither Syndicalism nor Guild Socialism, as a theory, ever extended beyond a comparatively narrow circle. But these schools of thought did serve as interpreters of what was passing, far less consciously or articulately, in the minds of ordinary men. There was widespread disillusionment with the results of Parliamentarism, and a growing tendency to rely on forms of special functional association and on "direct action" in some shape for the achievement of political and economic ends.

WAR AND REVOLUTION

The War took Europe at a time when these new ideas were still in the stage of being formulated, and made the basis of positive theories and methods of action. Momentarily, it interrupted both the process of thought and the tendencies towards positive action in the economic field. But actually war-time experience, while it added immensely to the powers and activities of the various States, and made them for the time being the focusing points of the entire national effort, at the same time reinforced the realistic views we have been describing. For the States, in order to mobilise their several national resources, found themselves compelled, in practice, to call in the advice and assistance of a host of functional associations, and to take such bodies in varying degrees into partnership, or use them as agencies for the execution of the national policy. Associations of traders and manufacturers on the one hand, and Trade Unions on the other, found themselves regularly consulted and enrolled in the national service, while such movements of opposition to the War as existed in the various countries could only find strength and expression by organising themselves in voluntary societies of protest and agitation, either in the political or in the economic field. When, after the War, the States proceeded, as quickly as they could, to divest themselves of their added war-time functions, and to promote a return to the *status quo ante bellum*, the associations which were thus sundered from positive administrative functions within the State were left far stronger and with far more desire for a share in authority than before the War. There could be, in fact, no real return to the old conditions, for the War had radically

altered both the political and economic configuration of the world, and the real structure of the political societies and economic units of which it was made up.

Moreover, war had been the signal for revolution. In Germany the Hegelian Empire had gone down in defeat, leaving the German people both prostrate under the victors and doubtful and divided about the form of the new society that should take its place. If, for the moment, the form adopted was that of parliamentary democracy under the initial guidance of the Social Democratic Party, this was far less because these things really commanded the allegiance of the German people than because there was nothing else available. The fall of the Hegelian Empire left a great blank in the political consciousness of the German nation ; and ever since 1918 German politics have reflected the chaos of this consciousness. There is still, in 1931, no approach to a solution of the problem of German government.

Far greater and more influential than the German Revolution, because based on the clear conception of an alternative way of government, was the Russian Revolution of 1917. The fall of Russia's half-civilised despotism was, indeed, followed at first by the rule—or failure to rule—of a Government not unlike, in many of its features, the Government of Ebert and Scheidemann in Germany. But the episodes of Lvov and Kerensky were brief, and, within a few months of the collapse of Czardom, the Bolshevik party under Nikolai Lenin had seized power and issued to all the governments of the world the most authoritative challenge since 1789.

COMMUNISM

In order that we may understand what took place in Russia, and its persistent and growing influence on the world as a whole, we must go back to what was said earlier on about the doctrines of Karl Marx. For Russian Bolshevism, or Communism, is simply Marxism reinterpreted in terms of the conditions and ideas of the twentieth century. We have seen that, after Marx's day, while his disciples remained broadly in agreement about the basis of his economic doctrines, they differed widely about their practical and political implications. The German Social Democrats and many other parties founded upon the German model (including the Russian Mensheviks) set to work to create parliamentary Socialist parties, and to use these parties, as opportunity arose, for the advocacy and advancement of particular social reforms, with the aim of a gradual conquest of the State and a gradual transformation of Capitalism into Socialism by a succession of legislative measures changing, bit by bit, the character of the organised life of Society. The Bolsheviks, on the other hand, offered a radically different—and, in my view, a far more correct—interpretation of Marx's teaching. The capitalist State, they insisted, could not be captured and applied to Socialist uses. It would have to be overthrown ; and the victorious workers, or their leaders in the struggle, would then have to create in its place on the morrow of the revolution a new State of an utterly different kind and spirit, designed to serve their own utterly different ends.

This new State, however, could not itself be, in any full sense, Socialist

or Communist. To the mind of the Communist, indeed, the idea of a Communist State is a contradiction in terms; for to him the word "State" connotes an instrument for the coercion of one class by another, and with the full coming of Communism coercion of class by class will have disappeared because there will no longer be any classes at all. Under Communism, its adherents say, there will be an administrative machine but not a "State."

But for some time after the successful overthrow of the capitalist State, the Communists tell us, there must be a State of a radically different kind. For Societies cannot pass straight from Capitalism to Socialism. There must be an intervening period during which the victorious proletariat first consolidates its power, defends itself against the onslaughts of counter-revolution and completes the extermination, or merging in itself, of the dispossessed old ruling class, and then accustoms itself to the new classless way of living, and builds up for itself the social habits and forms of organisation necessary for the free functioning of a classless Society. This is the period known as the season of the "dictatorship of the proletariat"—a phrase quoted from Marx's own writings—the period through which the Communists claim that Russia, fourteen years after the Revolution, is still painfully passing.

This idea of dictatorship occupies a key position in the theory of Communism. In their ideals about the new Society at which they are aiming, the Communists do not necessarily differ at all from other Socialists who look forward to complete Socialism as the next stage in social evolution. Their difference is one of method and not of final objective. They believe that the cleavage between the old Society and the new must be sharp and absolute, that the new must be built right up from freshly-laid foundations and in a fresh environment carefully prepared for the minds of men, and that the building of it must be undertaken by a State wielding almost unlimited authority, acting on behalf of the proletarian class, and destined to "wither away" as soon as the work of Socialist construction has been solidly achieved. There is to be a period of transition between the fall of Capitalism and the establishment of Socialism; and during this period the proletariat must be "dictator," using as its instrument a specially constructed State of its own.

A class, however, cannot dictate directly, or in its own person. It may, indeed, take the place of the "sovereign people" of earlier theories, standing behind and sustaining the Government by its organised willpower. But it cannot be the Government, or even directly appoint it or tell it what to do. Between the proletariat and the actual executive Government, accordingly, there must be a mediating body, an organised collective expression of the will of the proletarian class. This, according to the Communists, is the function of the Communist Party, open to all class-conscious proletarians who have the will to share in the work and responsibilities of the new governing class.

Out of this idea arises the dual system of government in contemporary Russia. The proletariat is there represented twice over—as a sovereign class in the system of local and district Soviets, up to the national Soviet Congress of the entire U.S.S.R., and as a governing class in the Communist Party, to which the flower of the proletarian class belongs.

Under this arrangement it is, in effect, the Communist Party that debates and decides upon major questions of policy; and the Congress of Soviets, while it formally holds the supreme legislative power, serves rather as a means of broadcasting throughout the U.S.S.R. the policy which the party has already laid down. The Congress, it should be noted, is not, like the Parliaments of Western Europe and America, a body in more or less permanent session, but an occasional gathering of delegates, represented between sessions by a Præsidium with which the executive organ, the Council of People's Commissaries, and the Political Committee of the Communist Party keep in close and constant contact.

The Soviet Constitution and the actual methods of government in the U.S.S.R. alike run directly counter to the basic assumptions of parliamentary democracy. The franchise in Russia is, indeed, very widely diffused; but it is a class franchise, from which those who belong to the "exploiting" classes, including private traders and the *kulaks* (or rich peasants), are excluded. Its principle is not "one man, one vote," but rather "one worker, one vote." Moreover, the Communist system repudiates the secret ballot which has been regarded as the necessary complement of the wide franchise in parliamentary countries. The local Soviets are elected and elect their representatives to regional and national Soviets and Congresses by open voting; and very often this means that the official Communist list of candidates is chosen *en bloc* and without opposition. The object, one must understand, is not to reflect individual opinions, but to secure the adequate representation of a class interest and point of view. Accordingly, the Communist Party dominates the elections. The representation, moreover, is weighted in favour of the urban workers in order that they may not be swamped by Russia's vast peasant population; and this weighting adds in practice to the electoral influence of the party.

We have thus, in the U.S.S.R., an avowedly partisan State founded on a class basis, but conceived, not as the ruling instrument of a finished Socialist Society, but as the instrument of the gradual transition to such a Society. The measures designed gradually to exterminate the private trader and the *kulak*, the campaign for the socialisation of agriculture, and the Five Years' Plan of intensive industrialisation, are all conceived as steps on the road to a Socialist system which, when once it has been achieved and consolidated, will render unnecessary the existence of the class-State, because it will have made an end of the existence of classes. But here a word of caution is necessary. For the Communists the Russian Revolution was, and remains, not an independent national movement designed to lead to the creation in Russia of a Socialist Society, but a part or fragment of the World Revolution without which its victories cannot be consolidated or made secure. The class-State in Russia will continue to be needed as long as the existence of capitalism outside Russia still faces the U.S.S.R. with the risk of Counter-Revolution, or as there remains anywhere in the world a section of the proletariat still awaiting emancipation. Thus, the disappearance of the State in Russia is postponed to the indefinite future; and all peaceful relations of the U.S.S.R. with the capitalist world outside are but truces in a class-war that can end only in a world made safe for Socialism.

Nevertheless, within the U.S.S.R., the Communist Party is already striving to build up organs of economic administration which will in time become self-acting, without the need for political control. The " Trusts " which conduct State industries, the planning Commissions and controlling Councils which direct and co-ordinate the economic life of the country, the Trade Unions and Co-operative Societies which have been given a recognised place in the system of administration, are the true organs of social control which are destined to replace and outlive the class-State and the dictatorship of the proletariat when the time comes for political government to be superseded by economic administration.

Such, in broad outline, is the Soviet system, with the hierarchy of Soviets from those of village and factory up to the Central Congress, with its parallel hierarchy of branches, committees and Congresses of the Communist Party, with its Five Years' Plan and its third hierarchy of economic bodies responsible for its execution and, above all, with its perfervid faith in the power of men to be stirred to continuous action and service by means of a compelling mass-appeal. For this attempt to enlist the conscious will and enthusiasm of the proletariat on the side of the new system, to persuade men to work as well as to fight hard for the consolidation of the new Society, to create a community consisting of active instead of merely voting citizens on the basis of an equalitarian appeal, is, far more than the dry constitutional structure of the new Russia, the essential feature of Communism. The Five Years' Plan, with its effort to speed up industrialisation at the cost of keeping down the immediate standard of life, puts on the population of Russia, and particularly upon the urban workers, a strain which would be clearly intolerable unless there were faith behind it. The Five Years' Plan, and the Soviet scheme altogether, can succeed only if it is true, as the Communists believe, that proletarian faith can move mountains. Yet—hard as it is to get authentic information—the Plan does seem to be succeeding so far.

FASCISM

It is natural to compare with Russian Communism the other new form of political organisation which is challenging parliamentarism in contemporary Europe. Italian Fascism has, in terms of method, certain features in common with the Russian system—above all, its insistence on activity and not passivity as the function of citizenship, its attempt to exclude hostile elements and doctrines from any share in the control of the State, and even from any effective means of expression, its desire to co-ordinate under the banner of the State all active forms of voluntary association and all important forms of communal life, and its determination to give the Fascist Party, whatever the nominal character of the political system, the dominant place in the determination of policy. The methods of Fascism and Communism are, in many respects, closely akin; but the ends which they set before themselves are, of course, radically different.

For they are based on two radically different and conflicting concepts. For the Communist, schooled in Marxism, the underlying reality is the reality of class, and upon class must the foundations of the new Society be built. But for Fascism the underlying reality is the Nation—the

" National Idea," and the end of politics is to make the Nation great and to find a political organ which shall be expressive of the entire national life. As the ideas of Marx and Mazzini clashed in the making of the International Working Men's Association of 1864—the " First International "—so the ideas of Nationalism and of Marxist Socialism are at variance in the world to-day. But the clash is more violent because Nationalism is for the Italians, and for most of the peoples of Europe, no longer something to be won by victory over a foreign oppressor, but a thing possessed already in form, but needing to be made flesh and guarded against the onslaughts of Internationalism and Socialism.

Italian Fascism, created by the ex-Socialist, Benito Mussolini, arose out of the chaotic faction-fights of post-War Italy. Parliamentary government had there been always weak and vacillating; and, in face of the rising influence of Socialism during and after the War, it had become practically impotent. It was almost true that Italy was not being governed at all, and that no one had either power or will to make or to enforce the laws. The Socialists, for their part, were powerful enough to paralyse government, but not powerful enough to take it into their own hands; for they had little hold on the agrarian South, and feared that their seizure of authority in the North might only lead to a prolonged and disastrous civil war, in the course of which they might easily be starved into submission by foreign blockade. Consequently they hesitated, refusing to work the old system, and not daring, despite their sympathy with Russia, to institute the new. As in Germany and France, no great Socialist leader arose to guide their policy, and they floundered helplessly. The Government, in even worse case, floundered too, until there set in a general disgust with the failure of parliamentarism, combined with a loss of faith in the Socialist alternative. For a time, it seemed as if this situation might lead to the triumph of the progressive Catholic Party of Don Sturzo—the *Popolari*; but the Party, lacking a clearly defined policy or a wide enough basis of working-class support, fell also into impotence. The road was left clear for Fascism, to which all manner of discontented elements began to have recourse—from Syndicalists of the extreme left to militant and militarist Nationalists of the extreme right. D'Annunzio's Fiume adventure, with its fanciful devising of the Constitution of Cornaro and its appeal to Italian irredentism and disappointment with the spoils of the War, brought in a host of new recruits; and the situation which arose when the Italian Socialists and Trade Unionists, having declared a great strike and occupied the factories in defiance of the Government, drew back and refused to attempt to take government into their own hands, completed the discredit of the Socialist leaders. Rome was thereafter any strong man's for the taking; and it was not long before the King went over to Fascism, and the Fascist march on Rome registered the passing of authority into the hands of Signor Mussolini.

Fascism was, at this time, a call to action rather than a theory or a programme. It could be defined in terms of its " hates," but hardly of its positive doctrines, save that it was nationalist, that it appealed chiefly to youth, and that it laid stress on action rather than thought as the vital matter. It hated Communism, and all forms of internationalism and class-warfare. It hated parliamentarism, which it denounced as the cause of

Italian impotence and mismanagement. It hated pacifism, because it set limits to the range of Italian ambition, and denied the ultimate validity of the nation and of nationalist morality.

On this somewhat slender basis of hates and loves, Fascism has gradually built up for itself a comprehensive, if not always clear or consistent, political theory and outlook. This theory bases itself, first and foremost, upon the idea of the Nation as the ultimate moral being. To the Nation all things and persons are to be subordinate, and in and through the Nation they are to seek their self-realisation. Men owe duties to the Nation; but the Nation itself owes no duties. It may have dealings—peaceful and friendly as well as warlike and inimical—with other Nations; but it recognises no superior to itself, and no subordination to the family of Nations of which it is a member. In an almost Nietzschean spirit, it seeks self-expression and expansion, so that the world's peace depends on nothing getting in the way of its ambitions. It is in this thoroughly Hegelian and metaphysical. For those who accept it, the Nation is the universal; and the object of politics is national self-realisation.

This means Imperialism without, for the Nation must have room to breathe and to expand. It involves, accordingly, an extolling of the military virtues, and a constant militancy of tone among Italian diplomats. This does not necessarily mean that Italy wants to go to war, unless she can find an opponent she is quite sure to beat; for Fascist Italy preserves, amid all her high-sounding talk, a fair share of practical common sense. But it does mean that Italy must always be contemplating war as a possibility, and must never put herself in a posture of pacifism even when she means to keep the peace.

The National Idea means, in addition, concentration within; for the entire life of the Society must be grouped and organised, as far as possible, around the Nation-State. In particular, no organ of action or expression must be tolerated within the community unless it is prepared to yield homage to the National Idea, and to co-operate in its realisation. This involves especially the destruction of the Labour Movement, in the form which it has spontaneously assumed in Italy, as in other countries; for the working-class, like the Capitalist system, takes much the same shape in all industrialised countries, and is essentially "tainted" with internationalism. Trade Unions and Socialist Parties alike have their international affiliations, and pay homage to the idea of international class solidarity. Accordingly, Fascism must root them out; but it cannot do this unless it is also prepared to replace them; for there must in modern Society be means of organised expression for working-class needs and, unless these are recognised and granted, they will inevitably take forms hostile to the desires of those who seek their extermination.

Fascism, therefore, in destroying the established working-class in Italy, set out to replace it by a new movement made in the Fascist image. Instead of Socialist Trade Unions, there should be Fascist Unions, officered by approved supporters of Fascism and refusing admission to all malignants and recusants. Upon these bodies wide powers should be conferred, including the power to levy contributions on non-members as well as members. They should be given exclusive recognised rights of collective bargaining with the employers; and they should be grouped with the

corresponding employers' associations in State-recognised Corporations for the supervision of each industry or service as a whole. And, finally, as part of a general change in the structure of the Fascist State they, instead of the old geographical constituencies, should serve as electoral Colleges, along with other functional bodies, for the choice of members of the new Fascist legislature.

Gradually, the Fascist Government has carried these ideas into effect. It has founded, organised and endowed with special privileges and authority Fascist Trade Unions and Employers' Associations, Fascist Corporations made up of both elements, Fascist Professional Associations and Co-operative Societies—in short, it has given to every possible form of voluntary association a Fascist basis, making each an organ of the Fascist State in its own sphere, and carefully ensuring that each shall be officered and controlled only by adherents of the Fascist Party. How far this system has really come to command the allegiance of a large section of the Italian working-class it is not easy to say ; for it is an essential part of Fascism, as of Communism, to forbid free expression of hostile opinion. It has, at any rate, held fast so far, and prevented the effective revival of contacts between the workers of Italy and the organised Labour movements of other countries.

THE CORPORATIVE STATE

This idea and policy of Fascism are commonly described as the idea and policy of the " Corporative State." The Fascist State is conceived as consisting, not simply of so many individuals, but of these individuals grouped, according to their several functions, in a number of Corporations through which they are related to, and take their part in, the life of the State. Under the State itself the Corporations form the next order of reality, and in them, under the State, the life of the Nation must be expressed.

This conception has evidently much in common with the political Pluralism described earlier in this Article, in that it recognises the reality of functional association, and the necessity of according to it a recognised place in the organised life of Society. But the Fascist idea is at bottom radically different from such pluralistic conceptions as Guild Socialism ; for Fascism simply seeks to make its Corporations subordinate contributors to the life of the Nation-State, which is essentially unitary and sovereign. Pluralism, on the other hand, denies the State this over-riding function, and thinks of voluntary associations as independent and spontaneous bodies, capable of acting against the State as well as with it, and in no sense its creatures. Guild Socialism and Syndicalism laid stress on freedom rather than order : Fascism has the Hegelian preference for order, and bids men realise their freedom in the freedom of the State rather than in their individual or corporate capacities.

In the nineteenth century, Nationalism commonly appeared as a creed allied with some form of Liberalism, and fighting at once for national emancipation and unity and for guarantees of constitutional government according to the formulæ of parliamentary democracy. But it has been a common experience that, when once a people has achieved national

unity under a parliamentary system, Nationalism is apt to seek a new political creed, and to become the ally of extreme Conservatism rather than of the more democratic parties. Thus, before the War, German and Italian Nationalism were both represented by the parties of the extreme Right, while French Nationalism found its most characteristic expression in the anti-democratic and royalist groups, and especially in the *Action Française* of Charles Maurras and his followers. This tendency has become even more marked since the War; above all in the growth of Fascism, absorbing the old Nationalist Party in Italy, and in the so-called "National Socialism" of Herr Hitler and his associates in Germany. The Nationalists everywhere have moved away from parliamentary democracy, and towards some form of dictatorship; while, at the other extreme, the Communists, from a point of view predominantly international, have challenged parliamentary democracy no less insistently. The defence of the nineteenth century tradition has thus been left to the parties and groups lying between these extremes, including the middle-class parties tinged with Liberalism, and the orthodox Social Democratic and Labour Parties; and these middle groups have, in many countries, been forced into an uneasy and paralysing alliance for the defence of forms of government which they desire to use for widely divergent purposes Any alliance of this sort runs, however, a grave danger of practical sterility; and this sterility is apt to drive hesitant elements in the electorate towards one or other of the two extremes. Parliamentary democracy is thus further weakened, or even compelled, as in Germany to-day, to defend itself by temporary recourse to the expedients of those who assail it. The present German Chancellor (1931), for instance, has been driven to send the Reichstag home, and govern by means of a temporary dictatorship in order to preserve the post-War German political system from the danger of dissolution. Great Britain is almost alone in post-War Europe in having to face, so far, no important threat to its established system from either Right or Left; for Fascism and Communism have alike failed so far to make any real impression upon the British mind. But even in Great Britain there has been a decay of faith in Parliament, manifested rather in a significant multiplication of parties and fractions than in any deep-seated revolt or demand for a new institutional basis of political action.

THE CHALLENGE TO PARLIAMENTARISM

The political theorists of the nineteenth century seemed for the most part to imagine that with the gradual extension of the franchise, the gradual perfecting of the parliamentary machine, and the gradual acquisition by nations new to responsible parliamentary government of experience in its use, the problem of political structure would be settled for good and all. Few thinkers, however staunchly they uphold the parliamentary system, would now maintain that view in quite its old simplicity. It is increasingly recognised, even among believers in the "Sovereignty of Parliament," that a democratically elected Parliament can be, at best, only one vital expression of the consciousness of the community, that no political theory can afford to ignore the numerous forms of associative and institutional life of the community outside Parliament, and that the

most democratic parliamentary system may fail in the hour of trial because it lacks driving force and does not provide the basis for a strong Government capable of guiding the community along creative lines of development. The Victorians, indeed, were content with parliamentarism partly because in accordance with their philosophy of *laissez-faire* they thought of the countries of the world as deriving their creative momentum not from the State, but from the competitive endeavours of private enterprise. The State was thought of rather as a policeman, or at most a referee, than as a body designed effectively to control and organise the national effort. Even, then, if Parliaments did appear to be lacking in initiative and will-power, this did not seem greatly to matter; for these qualities could be supplied apart from any direct activity on the part of the State.

This change of attitude towards Parliamentarism is due largely to a changed idea of what States ought to be and do. The growth in the scale of economic enterprise, the development of what is called "Economic Imperialism," and the pressure of the organised workers for social reforms and for a better distribution of wealth have radically altered the normal work of the modern State, in both home and international affairs. States are now called upon not only to undertake a vast mass of social legislation, but also to an increasing extent to organise and control the economic life of Society. Rapidly changing conditions at home and abroad make necessary a constant recasting of the economic machine; and the ever-increasing demand for overseas markets or for the loan of foreign capital causes the State to intervene more and more in order to protect the interests of its trading nationals, and twines economics and politics inextricably together in the sphere of international relationships. Consequently, States and Governments are called upon to be more active and vigorous in the formation and pursuit of policies and plans of action; and the careful checks and balances of the old parliamentary system are felt as a severe and sometimes crippling restraint on swift or decisive action.

There is a second reason still more fundamental for the contemporary decay of parliamentary government. In Great Britain, at any rate, the issues dividing the two great parties during the Victorian era, while they were for the most part clear enough, were relatively small, and rested on an assured basis of agreement concerning the general structure of Society. In the United States the dividing issues were far less clear and even less fundamental; and the common basis of agreement was—and is—even wider. In neither country was any considerable party or group even trying to change the structure of Society in any far-reaching way. Socialism existed as a doctrine, but not as a party; and there was no other challenge to the established order. Where, as in France or Italy, there was less common basis of agreement about the structure of Society, the parliamentary system worked far less smoothly and with less assurance.

To-day, in all the leading countries except the United States, conditions are radically changed. In the first place, the European countries have by no means recovered from the upheavals of the War. There are new countries, such as Poland, Jugo-Slavia and Czecho-Slovakia, which have not yet settled down to the idea of common nationhood, or learnt by experience the arts of administration. There are countries, like Germany, which

have undergone a political upheaval and are working a new political machine under difficulties made greater by continued foreign interference in their affairs. Italy and Russia, in their several ways, have thrown over parliamentarism, and are experimenting in new conceptions of government as well as with new machinery. France is still in a condition of War neurosis which makes prediction of its political future very difficult; and even Great Britain is finding her long-established parliamentary machine more and more inadequate to the growing complexity of her political and economic problems. Moreover, all the European States, except Russia, have superimposed upon themselves a new machine of international government in the League of Nations, and are experimenting with this new instrument under exceptional difficulties created by their own neurotic condition and by the unsettlement of the entire political and economic basis of European Society.

SOCIALISM VERSUS CAPITALISM

Underlying all these hesitations and experiments is the great question of Socialism *versus* Capitalism. Almost every State, except the United States of America, has now within its borders a powerful Socialist movement organised as a party and strong enough to count in the making and unmaking of Governments. And one State, the U.S.S.R., is definitely Socialist in structure and policy and stands wholly apart from the comity of capitalism, challenging the other nations with its objective demonstration of Socialism as a practical system as well as a theoretical creed. It is true that the Socialist Parties of other countries for the most part repudiate Communism, and work for a gradual conquest of political power, and a gradual establishment of Socialism by parliamentary means. But this cannot alter the fact that class distinctions, and a difference of class point of view, now provide the most fundamental dividing line in the politics of the European nations, or that their influence is strong enough to have destroyed once and for all the old community of fundamental assumptions among the contending political parties. Nor can it be denied that the existence of Russia, with its Five Years' Plan and its bold and challenging attempt to reorganise the entire life of that great country—agricultural as well as industrial—on Socialist lines, is bound to react powerfully on the politics of other countries.

Fascism, as we have seen, is above all an attempt to override class distinctions by making the ideas of Nationalism and the Corporative State the dominant note in contemporary politics. But I, for one, do not believe that this attempt can in the long run succeed. It might, in this or that country, if in the modern world any one country could really isolate itself from the impact of world forces. But Socialism, as a movement based on the working-class, is a world-wide movement, bound to intrude itself into the internal affairs of every State. Italy may hold it off for a time by strong measures of dictatorship; but even Italy cannot keep it permanently out unless it can succeed in truly reconciling the claims of Capital and Labour within the existing economic system. America may hold it off longer by continually broadening the basis of American capitalism through the wide diffusion of industrial ownership among the

working-class ; but this policy depends on the maintenance of high and rising wage-rates and on America's ability to make use of her huge productive resources without an upset of economic equilibrium such as threatens her to-day. As long as the non-Socialist world can offer to its workers rising wages and reasonably steady employment it can probably stand out for capitalism against its own Socialists at home, and the influence of Russia upon it. But can the non-Socialist world continue to ensure these advantages ? They look none too secure to-day ; and I doubt if they can again be made secure.

If, as I believe, the world is on the verge of a Socialist era, what form is political organisation in the future likely to assume ? The political controversies of the twentieth century will turn, not on the nineteenth century issues of extension of the suffrage, vote by ballot, initiative referendum and recall, the powers, merits and demerits of Second Chambers, or of constitutional monarchies or republics, but rather on far more fundamental problems of the very structure of Society. The main question will be, not how we are to organise the machinery of government, but how we are to organise the entire economic and political life of the community, and of one community in relation to others. Politics and economics will cease to be thought about as mainly separate problems, and will present themselves as one and the same problem.

This unity is, of course, common ground between Fascism and Communism, which alike challenge the old divisions which the parliamentary system has so far accepted as natural. Parliamentarism's chance of survival, under the changed conditions, seems to me to depend on its power to adapt itself to the new tasks which this unity of politics and economics presents. Parliaments, if they are to survive as sovereign, have to find ways of bringing the economic life of the nations under their effective control ; for this economic life is crying out for organisation—for national and international planning—and if Parliaments resign this task into other hands they will, under modern conditions, be throwing away the substance of authority, and keeping only the shadow—and even that they will not keep for long.

But Parliaments, as they exist to-day, are obviously incapable of organising or controlling effectively the economic life of Society. They are too vacillating, too inexpert, too congested with a mass of secondary business, to take such a mighty task in hand. Either they must reform their ways, or they will be superseded by some more efficient instrument of control.

I do not mean, of course, that a Parliament, any more than a Soviet Congress, can or should undertake directly the detailed control of industries and services. Far from it. That form of Socialism is thoroughly out of fashion and never likely to be revived. Any system which attempts to co-ordinate and control the economic life of the community must be worked through a variety of functional organisations, to which large powers must be delegated in their several spheres. The central organs of government must, if they are to work even tolerably well, fling off all detail and delegate all specific administrative tasks. If Parliaments anywhere can do this, and concentrate all their time and energy on the supreme direction of policy, they may survive, and deserve to survive.

But can they ? I gravely doubt it ; for I doubt if the parliamentary

method of election is really suitable to the new tasks of government. Parliamentarism has worked only where it has been based firmly on a party system, presenting the electorate with rival candidates offering variants upon a broad community of policy and objective. It has worked because, and only because, there has been enough community of view for an incoming Government neither to try, nor usually even to desire, to undo the work of its predecessor. But in Europe, at any rate, it is impossible to rely on this basis for the future.

The business of Governments is to govern. Now government, in any real sense, will become impossible if successive Governments come to spend most of their time in undoing their predecessors' work. Moreover, if any party sets out really to change the fundamental basis of Society, it must feel assured of its own prolonged continuance in power, and against the undoing of its work by the opposite party. But under the parliamentary system it can never have either of these assurances ; for both of them are plain denials of the postulates of parliamentary democracy. I find it impossible to believe that any country will ever achieve Socialism by parliamentary means, though parliamentary methods may avail to carry it a certain distance along the road. For Socialism involves a radical change in the basis of Society, such as could not possibly be carried through to the end piecemeal, or in face of all the checks and balances of a neatly adjusted parliamentary system.

If, then, Socialism is to come, I believe it will involve transitionally some form of dictatorship and, when that is over, a system of administration far more closely resembling Sovietism than parliamentarism. In saying this I am postulating neither violent revolution as a means, nor Communism on the Russian model as the instrument. Different countries, with widely different economic and social conditions, will need to work out their own salvation each in its own way. What those ways will be can no more be prophesied to-day than the present system in Russia or Italy could have been prophesied before they were brought into being. Communism, of course, did begin with a theory based on Marx ; but, while this theory to a great extent supplied the driving-force of the movement, no study of Marxism would have enabled the student to predict the course of the Russian Revolution or the subsequent history of the Soviet system. Fascism started almost without any theory at all, save the broad idea of aggressive popular Nationalism, and tried to grow its theory along with its propaganda, justifying what it found itself doing rather than doing what it conceived in advance to be just. This may be its weakness ; for Fascism may prove to have no sufficient roots. But it remains true that living systems of Government grow : they are not made after a preconceived pattern. It has, however, been demonstrated that they can grow very fast.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

It is obviously impossible within the available space to compile any list of the great works on political theories of the past, from Plato and Aristotle to the twentieth century. The best short account that attempts to cover the whole ground from the historical standpoint is C. Delisle Burns, *Political Ideals* (Oxford, 1915). A larger work, competent but uninspired, is W. A. Dunning, *History of Political Theories*, 3 vols. (New York, 1905). Useful, too, are Sir F. Pollock's brief *History of the Science of Politics* (London, 1890), the volumes on *English Political Theory* by G. P. Gooch, H. J. Laski and Ernest Barker in the Home University Library (London and New York, 1915), and the volumes of University of London Lectures edited by F. J. C. Hearnshaw :

Social and Political Ideas of some great Mediæval Thinkers
" " *some great Thinkers of the Renaissance and the Reformation*
" " *some great Thinkers of the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries*
" " *some English Thinkers of the Augustan Age*
" " *some great French Thinkers of the Age of Reason*
" " *some representative Thinkers of the Revolutionary Era* (London. 1923–1931)

Of modern works on the theory of politics, the following may be noted : R. M. Maciver, *Community* (London and New York, 1917) and *The Modern State* (Oxford, 1926) ; H. J. Laski, *A Grammar of Politics* (London, 1925) ; H. Krabbe, *The Modern Idea of the State* (The Hague, 1922) ; G. D. H. Cole, *Social Theory* (London and New York, 1920) ; Graham Wallas, *Human Nature in Politics* (London, 1908) and *The Great Society* (London, 1914) ; R. H. Tawney, *The Acquisitive Society* (London, 1921) ; F. Oppenheimer, *The State* (New York, 1914) ; F. Müller-Lyer, *History of Social Development* (London, 1920) ; L. T. Hobhouse, *Social Development* (London, 1924).

For Parliamentarism, see Walter Bagehot, *The English Constitution* (London, 1872) ; A. V. Dicey, *The Law of the Constitution* (London, 1885) ; Sir W. R. Anson, *The Law and Custom of the Constitution* (Oxford, 1886–1892) ; Lord Bryce, *The American Commonwealth* (London, new edition, 1911) ; F. Esmein, *Manuel de Droit Constitutionnel* (Paris, various editions) ; and the classical work of Erskine May, *Constitutional History of England* (London, 1861–1863). See also F. A. Ogg, *The Governments of Europe* (New York, 1930) and A. L. Lowell, *Governments and Parties in Continental Europe* (London and New York, 1896).

For Communism, see Marx and Engels, *The Communist Manifesto* (London, 1848, and many later editions) ; K. Marx, *The Civil War in France* (London, 1871), and *The Critique of Political Economy* (1859 and various dates and places) ; N. Lenin, *The State and Revolution* and *The Proletarian State* (various dates and places) ; N. Bucharin, *A B C of*

Communism (London, 1922, etc.) ; H. J. Laski, *Communism* (Home University Library, London and New York, 1927) ; A. Rothstein, *The Soviet Constitution* (London, 1925) ; the *Year Book of the Soviet Union* (London).

For Socialism, see H. W. Laidler, *History of Socialist Thought* (New York and London, 1927) ; S. and B. Webb, *A Constitution for the Socialist Commonwealth of Great Britain* (London, 1920) ; J. Ramsay MacDonald, *Socialism, Critical and Constructive* (London and New York, 1921), and *Socialism and Government* (London, 1909) ; and Max Beer, *History of British Socialism*, 2 vols. (London, 1920).

For Fascism, see *Survey of Fascism*, by the International Centre of Fascist Studies (London, 1928) ; L. Villari, *The Fascist Experiment* (London, 1926) ; G. Salvemini, *The Fascist Dictatorship in Italy* (London, 1928) ; and Odon Por, *Fascism* (London, 1923).

MODERN THEORIES AND FORMS OF INTERNATIONAL ORGANISATION

By

C. DELISLE BURNS

SYNOPSIS

Modern civilisation depends upon an elaborate organisation of continuous intercourse between all the peoples of the world. This organisation has three aspects — the economic, the cultural and the political, and in each of these new theories follow from the understanding of the new situation. Economic organisation for supplies and services is international in the banking and investment system, in the great Combines such as those in the oil trade, in the armaments trade, and in the normal organisations of commerce. But the theories of this new aspect of life are somewhat ancient. In general Culture, each nation depends for its science and its arts upon continuous intercourse with other nations: but civilisation is still believed by many to be a local product. In political or governmental organisation, the States of the world have been compelled to co-operate, largely because the modern State fulfils new functions in public health, education, etc. The League of Nations is the best example of this co-operation. The principles involved would logically refute the old conception that " defence " is needed by every State against every other. But the League system operates within a complex of ancient institutions, such as diplomacy, and ancient fears and suspicions. The fundamental problem therefore is how to create an " international mind " in each nation.

MODERN THEORIES AND FORMS OF INTERNATIONAL ORGANISATION

Modern civilisation depends upon a close and continuous contact between men and women of distant countries, different languages and distinct traditions. The common man's food and clothing in any modern community is drawn from all parts of the world. We do not in Great Britain adorn ourselves in woad and imbibe mead, as our forefathers did. We wear cotton and silk; and we eat oranges and bananas. But this standard of life could not have been established, and it cannot be maintained, without international commerce and international banking. Normal daily life is part of a social structure which is world-wide: every breakfast-table and every drawing-room is international.

Most men think of civilisation in terms of food and clothing; but under the surface of daily needs is the structure which makes the supply of those needs possible; and that too involves continuous contact between men of different races and nations. The science, applied or speculative, which makes machinery possible and is always improving mechanisms, is kept alive by contact between men of genius in different nations. Health gains upon disease by the use of such contacts. And if civilised life is understood to include some music, painting and poetry—these too are the results of many years of contact between the artists of different traditions. The existing situation in any modern community, therefore, requires an explanation in the form of a working hypothesis of international contacts; and if modern civilisation is worth maintaining, it requires a policy which arises out of the actual situation. The facts change more rapidly than the ideas of men with regard to the facts, and still more rapidly than the policies by which men endeavour to control their own fate, in view of such facts. Therefore the modern world is difficult to see clearly and difficult to manipulate. Most men reach adolescence with the intelligence and imagination suitable only for childhood. Most groups of men are traditionalist, in the sense that they believe it to be "practical" to practise the mistakes of their grandfathers. And in the endeavour to see things as they are, one of the chief difficulties is that the instruments for seeing them—the words we use—are inherited. The words "international," "State," "government" and even "commerce" do not always add to our understanding of contemporary habits and beliefs.

The characteristics of modern civilisation seem to be as follows. The sort of life which is lived in London and Glasgow, New York and Ottawa, Paris and Berlin, is the most recent result of the process of mechanisation and large-scale social organisation, called the industrial revolution, which began about a century ago. But to-day a new revolution is occurring. Population in modern communities, which had increased rapidly fifty years ago, has now begun to decline. The expectation of life at birth is

longer ; but the birth-rate has rapidly decreased. Hence in the modern world populations are of greater average maturity, more healthy and much more active intellectually and emotionally. Fewer children mean fewer dependents upon each family income : and therefore more money for " luxuries," more leisure for women and less exhausting labour for all. The modern world is very much richer, per head of population, than men have ever been. Poverty still exists, obviously ; but that is due to maldistribution, not to lack of productive power. In general the standard of life has risen very greatly in modern communities. There is much more public wealth, in the form of roads and parks and schools, and much more leisure, with many more opportunities for enjoying leisure. Many more people than ever before are deriving some advantage from modern inventions and the modern organisations of society.

This modern world however exists in the midst of older worlds, upon whose services the modern world depends. The oil-seeds for soap and the rubber for motor-cars come from the labour of primitive peoples. Jute, cotton, corn and meat come from the labour of peoples who still live under mediæval conditions in Asia. We in the modern world in Europe and America are the beneficiaries ; and it is suspected that those others are often the victims of a civilisation over which they have no control, even if they pick up some scraps of advantage from maintaining the standard of life in London, Paris and New York. The " scale " of organisation upon which that standard of life depends is world-wide ; and the effect of improving that standard is to increase the contacts between parts of the world in the tropics, for example, which have so far remained primitive and other parts of the world in which men use tropical products.

So obsessed are we with the economics which enraptured our grandfathers, that even to name commodities seems to involve discussion of economic exchange. But oil-seeds, rubber, cotton and wheat are forms of service ; and service of one man by another is largely a psychological fact. Even if the Londoner who uses soap is not aware of the labour of the African who gathered the palm kernels from which the soap is made —the relation is psychological, " in the unconscious." Cut off the supply of soap, or of railway-trains, and the man who never noticed whose labour he used is at once offended at such action " against the community." But normally men have not thinking-power to spare for everyday habits. The relations of man to man are mainly unconscious ; and upon their desires and their energies is built the exchange-value which has been so elaborately studied. But men are now related, in all parts of the world, for the maintenance of that civilised life or that share of it which is psychologically dominant in the conceptions of what makes life worth living.

ECONOMIC INTERNATIONAL ORGANISATION

In the effort to secure the supply of soap and motor-cars, modern civilisation has produced institutions for the organisation of transport and exchange. Among these, the institutions *within* the modern world are increasingly parts of a single system. The banks of London, New

York, Paris and Berlin work together. But further, in the same effort to secure supplies for a rising standard of life, the modern world is "modernising" the primitive tropics and mediæval Asia, which still lie outside what is called "modern." The bicycle is to be found in Africa and the radio-set in China and India. Thus in spite of a distinction between modern civilisation in the present world and outlying remnants of earlier types of social life, all the peoples and races of the world are united. This is new. The first traces of such unity occurred about fifty years ago; but the present form of the social structure in the whole world is hardly yet twenty years old. The recent increase in productive power, both agricultural and industrial, the increase in the hours of leisure and in the number of ways of using leisure (cinema, radio, etc.), the psychological reactions against alien influence, the desire of social classes hitherto impoverished to share more of the benefits of civilisation, the recent creation of new States, more rapid transport and means of communication—all these factors are operative to-day in the tendency towards economic organisation across frontiers and racial barriers.

Finance is organised internationally. The central banks of the most important centres of financial operation are directly organised in relation to the new Bank for International Settlements. Under the Young Plan for German Reparations, the Bank for International Settlements was set up in 1930. This is partly an institution for organising the payment of Reparations, and in that aspect is of no permanent importance; but evidently those in control of policy intended that the B.I.S. should also be a first essay in organising credit on an international scale. It is a very recent attempt; but it is only the latest phase of a movement which has been, since 1918, rapidly increasing the contacts between the central banks. Apart however from central banks, the ordinary banks in all commercial countries have been either founding branches in foreign countries or entering into special agreements with foreign banks.[1] This is inevitable, because payment is made in different currencies in different countries. But international organisation of finance is even more important in investment. The "export of capital," outside any frontier into foreign countries, has increased.[2] Thousands of British citizens, for example, hold investments in companies which operate in the Dutch East Indies or in South America. And in any one such company there may be shareholders of ten or twelve different nations. Where the company is controlled by nationals of one State and operates in the territory of another, the controllers sometimes use and sometimes are used by their Government. This flow and settlement of capital in different countries therefore causes, first, an international organisation for the maintenance of the enterprise and, incidentally, some governmental policies which affect more than one State. Much of the existing system, however, is already more than fifty years old and, therefore, hardly modern. What is modern is the international structure of the banking system and the very rapid extension of the export of capital. Both these factors in modern life are making political frontiers less important.

The recent export of capital is largely due to the industrial changes of

[1] See C. Delisle Burns, *International Politics* (1920), pp. 96 sq.
[2] See C. K. Hobson, *Export of Capital* (1915).

the past ten years. The collapse of German currency after the War led to a hunger for industrial capital there; and much was brought in from America and elsewhere. But that was an abnormality. More significant is the entry of American capital into the British and French motor-trades. This is a new phase of the movement which led to the entry of British and German capital into the United States before the War of 1914–1918; and now several industries are so organised internationally that one or other national group has control of supplies in most countries. Thus branch-factories under American control exist in Europe and elsewhere in the manufacture of agricultural machinery, telephones, sewing-machines, cash registers, shoe-machinery, etc. A large part of the rayon industry in the whole world is controlled by British capital-owners; of the chemical industry by Germans; of the glass industry by Belgians; of the perfume industry by Frenchmen; of the margarine trade by Dutchmen; and of the match trade by Swedes. That one trade is controlled internationally by the nationals of one State does not prevent its being of advantage to the nationals of the other States within whose frontiers it is carried on; but obviously, whatever advantage accrues to such a trade from the tariffs of a State is an asset to capital-owners who live outside that State. Indeed, tariff-walls have in some cases provided the opportunity for foreign capital-owners to invest inside the walls. The control of production-policy then remains outside the tariff area. For example, electricity production in Canada is largely dependent upon capital controlled in the United States.

Also within the past ten years and as part of what is called rationalisation, agreements, cartels, trusts and combines have tended to unite industrial enterprises of different nations. Within any one State a cartel or trust may "rationalise" an industry by closing down obsolete plant in one area—thus causing unemployment there—in order to work more fully with plant in another area. The same movement internationally may close down plant in one State in order to produce better in another State. The result upon public funds may be imagined. Again, certain important supplies as, for example, oil, are controlled by a few great international combines, more powerful than many small States. The selling-policy of the Standard Oil Companies or of the Shell-Royal Dutch Company is international in the sense that it affects directly the peoples of many different nations. And into this economic world of international forces has entered, since 1920, the Government of Soviet Russia acting as a trader in oil in all countries, under the name of the R.O.P. Enough has been noted, then, to indicate the conclusion that economic forces are organised internationally and, even when controlled by one national group, operate upon all others. The States of the world, however, are still rivals rather than co-operators, partly because of the fear of war but partly because the ancient conceptions still prevail with regard to the effect of State-policy on commerce.

Commerce is organised internationally, in the sense that raw materials from one country are needed for manufacture in another, or because food-stuffs in one area are consumed elsewhere. Shipping, as the instrument of these necessities, is also an international service. Commerce across frontiers has increased since 1913, in spite of the fact that 7,000

miles of tariff-walls have been erected in Europe since the Armistice of 1918. The higher standard of life desired in the modern world, makes it necessary to secure supplies from all countries to be used in each country.

In economic services which are internationally organised for the advantage of consumers, and therefore for the raising of the standard of life everywhere, the Co-operative Wholesale Societies are among the most significant institutions of the modern world. Thus the English and Scottish C.W.S. supply the Russian Co-operative " Centrosoyus " with most of the tea consumed within the jurisdiction of the Soviet Government. An open credit of about a quarter of a million pounds sterling marks the extent of the trade. The relations between the Consumers' Co-operative Societies of about thirty different countries are organised through the International Co-operative Alliance, established in 1895. Since 1918 many Congresses of the Alliance have been held ; and direct trade between organisations of consumers is thus promoted.

The importance of this in international organisation does not rest upon the mere extent of the trade. Even the increase of trade by the Co-operatives is small by comparison with the vast amount of banking business, of foreign investment and of commerce upon the old plan. But the acquisition of one new habit is more significant of character than the continuance of many old habits ; and therefore perhaps, from the evidence, one may expect an increasing attention to means for raising the standard of life of the consumer in all countries. Since the chief international economic problem of the immediate future is the increase of the markets to take up the increase of productive power in all countries, consumption is more important for policy than production. We know how to produce but not how to consume. With a skilled organisation of consumers' habits, however, the standard of life of the majority could be rapidly raised.

Outside the sphere of normal production, but closely affecting the economic policy and also the political relations of Governments, is one " trade " with important international characteristics—the trade in armaments. The private firms which manufacture armaments supply partly the State of which the capital-owners of the firm are nationals, but partly also the Governments of other States. Those States, such as Greece or Brazil, which have not their own State-factories for armaments, buy in the open market from Vickers, Schneider's, the Skoda Works or the Bethlem Steel Works. The Great Powers, Great Britain, France and the United States, have within their jurisdiction the most powerful firms which supply the smaller States. Agents of the private armament firms travel to all the minor capitals and advertise the latest warships and bombing aeroplanes.[1] If one State buys a powerful type of bombing aeroplane, it is easier to persuade its neighbours to buy a similar type ; for the armament firms supply " defence " against the instruments of defence, which they also supply. Thus the organisation of " defence " by modern States necessitates a trade which derives gain from fear of

[1] See the pre-War study of this in G. H. Perris, *The War Traders* (1914) ; and a post-War study, *Die blutige Internationale der Rüstungsindustrie*, by O. Lehmann-Rüssbuldt (1929).

attack. The more nervous the peoples become, the better the profits on armaments. This seems to have been regarded as a danger to international amity; for in the Covenant of the League of Nations it was laid down that the League should "advise" how such evils can be prevented as arise from the trade in arms; but so powerful are the interests involved that the League has never attempted the task.[1] International organisation for selling the instruments of destruction to Governments has developed since "the war to end war": but international organisation for the control of the traffic in arms has proved utterly impossible. The chief purchasers of arms are the Governments of the modern world, which presumably, in so purchasing, act in accordance with the desires of their citizens and subjects. Thus the State itself seems to some to be the chief obstacle to the improvement in the standard of life which is implied as the purpose of modern civilisation.

Viewed as one whole, the organisation of production and of consumers' supplies in the modern world involves co-operation between men and women of many different States, races, religions and languages. Most modern products, such as a shoe, a gramophone or a cake of soap, involve complex organisations for finance, commerce and manufacture. Any one trade—for example, that in wheat or in motors—is an economic unit within which State-frontiers and language-barriers are not of much importance. The ordinary household in any modern country is the result of international intercourse and international exchange. And in spite of economic nationalism since 1918 and the setting up of new industries in all countries, the dependence of common life in each country upon all others daily increases. While in each locality some are attempting to supply all the necessaries of their neighbours, these very neighbours are acquiring tastes and habits of using leisure which reduce the proportion of income spent upon necessaries and increase the proportion spent upon non-necessaries, for which they depend upon all parts of the world. The more the standard of life rises, the greater the use of the international organisation of supplies.

THE THEORY OF ECONOMIC INTERNATIONALISM

The organisation of supplies in each country, however, is still limited by the obsolete conception of a local market "protected" against foreign sellers of the goods required for civilised life. Almost all Governments tend to act as agents for local producers who have influence in the political lobbies. On the other hand, a few countries maintain, with regard to most commodities, what is called "Free" Trade—that is to say, the unorganised scramble for selling in any market at the price that will undercut competitors. It is felt by some that if a nation or a group of men "goes to the wall" and loses its occupations, and therefore its purchasing power, because of the differential advantage in production of some other nation or group, it may be good for the rest of the world. But it is bad for the victims of the "play" of supply and demand. Thus, the need for international economic organisation is obvious; for supplies are international and no nation ought to suffer. But, at the moment, there are no

[1] See the Covenant, Article VIII., Section 5.

new policies concerning the international organisation of commerce. We stand irresolute between two obsolete policies—one that of " walls " round a local market ; the other, a scramble in which distress takes the hindmost. Meantime, productive power increases so fast that, even if a wall kept out all foreign products from a country, that country would not provide a large enough market for its producers ; and on the other hand, even if all tariffs were abolished, although some markets would be extended, the purchasing-power of the majority would not be adequate to buy all that is produced. The international economic problem of to-day is not to be read in terms of frontiers and " national " trade, but in terms of the distribution of purchasing-power in all nations.

One might imagine that, as the new productive power requires larger markets, the policy of any one Government would promote the increase of the purchasing-power not only of its own citizens but of the citizens of other States. Instead of that, however, each Government is dominated by small groups who still believe that to reduce the foreigner's purchasing-power is the best way of increasing their own. In the same way, in the days of slavery, the slaves having no purchasing-power, the markets were not great enough ; and the slave-owners thought they could improve their position by reducing more men and women to slavery. And yet, quite apart from humane sentiments, Africans are far more useful to us if they can buy cotton-goods and gramophones than they were as slaves of Europeans in the tropics. Perhaps an international policy may be adopted by some Government in the future ; but so far nothing has happened except Commercial Treaties on the pre-War plan—" pull-devil, pull-baker "—and the most excellent rhetoric at Geneva. The economic policy of Governments is like their disarmament policy : it is based upon the maxim that " the other fellow must begin."

This, however, is not strange ; because even the facts upon which policy might be based are obscured by the information collected upon the old assumptions. Thus statistics of import and export for each country—useful for the purpose of taxation—maintain the obsolete myth that a " nation " is a trading unit. Differences of currency obscure the exchange of goods, necessary for any modern production. A peculiar arithmetic provides us with a subtraction sum to show a " balance " of trade, according to which it is made to seem that " we " gain if " we " buy less from " foreigners." British apples are distinguished, not from British boots, but from French apples : and thus the relation between apples and boots, in the standard of life, is obscured. And how could we control epidemic disease if we distinguished, not smallpox from cholera, but French bacteria from British bacteria ? The prevailing conceptions of the economics of commerce are too primitive for the establishment of a modern policy. It is impossible to have international economic organisation for the public advantage, until economic conceptions are international, or at least until they exclude irrelevant factors in the system of production and consumption.

Thus, on the one hand, there are international Cartels and Trusts and an international export of capital, which may incidentally be advantageous to the general public, but are aimed not so much at their advantage as at the gain of the owners of capital in the enterprises concerned ; we have

international economic organisation, not as a public service but as a means of greater private gain. On the other hand, the States of the world, each of which presumably is a system of public service for its own citizens or subjects, act as obstacles to the advancement of public advantage outside their own borders, in so far as each Government can be used to injure the trade or industry of foreigners. Thus the States, which might organise by co-operation in economic policy, a force capable of directing economic organisations for public advantage, are prevented from adopting such an economic policy by obsolete ideas. The State-system has not developed so far as the economic system of finance and commerce. The absence of a modern State-system, the survival of State-anarchy, stands in contrast to the modern system of economic organisation which overrides frontiers.

Modern theory, based upon the review of facts, indicates the probable obsolescence in the near future of the territorial State, at any rate in its economic functions. Already the figures for trade and production are being collected by the Secretariat of the League of Nations to show, not " Great Britain " and " France," but cereals, rubber and motor-cars in the whole world. The balance of production and prices as between agricultural and manufactured products is already recognised to be more important than the balance of imports and exports for any country. But the most important factor in the formation of a modern theory of international economic life is the contrast between producing-power and consuming-power. Obviously the new industrial revolution, which has caused idleness in agricultural countries and unemployment in industrial countries, is only in its first phase. Power to consume has not kept pace with power to produce. International organisations therefore may adopt one of two policies—either they may restrict production to maintain prices in a shrinking market, or they may take steps to extend the markets. Of the former policy, at the moment, we have examples in the effort to reach international agreement for restricting the production of rubber and tin. This is merely the international version of the policy of holding up prices, as was attempted by the Brazilian Government in storing coffee, the Egyptian Government in holding stocks of cotton, and the United States Government in holding stocks of wheat. It may be possible to prevent the fall of prices at some level ; but no one knows at what level a further fall can be stopped, because substitution of commodities has become much easier in modern civilisation. For example, when Germany during the War was cut off from supplies of Chilean nitrates, the German chemists drew nitrogen from the air for explosives and fertilisers. It is possible that restriction of production may cause substitution of new products. However, in any case, international agreement for restricting production is difficult to organise without control by a monopolistic international Trust.

On the other hand, the policy of extending the markets to take up the increase of production seems to be more hopeful so long as there are, in any part of the world, men, women and children with a very low standard of life. The greater part of the human race, which is in Asia, is still unable to purchase modern products and therefore still not a " market." Even in Europe and America, within the modern world, poverty is common. That is to say, there are millions who need more food, clothing and

leisure occupations. It is irrelevant that they are Chinese or Indians or Germans, just as it is irrelevant that the food they need may come from tropical Africa or from Canada. Again, it is irrelevant that they may buy gramophones from England, since the materials that go to the making of gramophones come from all countries. The point is that economic progress depends upon international organisation for the increase of markets in all countries, that is to say internationally. It " pays " a great international Cartel to have more purchasing-power, and therefore richer people, in French West Africa, for example, although the French State may attempt to prevent the sale of non-French products there. In such a conflict of " powers "—the economic and the political—the State will prove the weaker. Thus the international need for new markets may support the advance of credit to peoples now unable to purchase ; it may cheapen production still further ; and it may increase the amount of leisure available in the whole world, because men spend more in leisure. Just as tea was once a luxury for a few and is now, in the modern world, available for many, so leisure, which used to be regarded as the privilege of a small caste, may be an economic necessity for the new production and therefore available for all men. But if that sort of policy is adopted, the international organisation of supplies will be a public service. It may even come to be recognised, not as a rhetorical phrase at the end of a chairman's speech, but as a principle of economic policy, that production is mainly a service of the consumer and only by accident, as it were, a source of income for the producer. The importance, even in economic theory, of potential, as contrasted with effective, demand will then be understood. A price-policy will then be influenced, not mainly by the costs of production but by the existence of *potential* markets, demanding credit because they are not *actual* markets.

Again, as the amount of leisure increases and population decreases, tastes will become more varied and less stable. Thus policy will envisage not merely an extension of the markets for " standard " products, such as cotton-clothing or wheat, but the creation of markets for products which never existed before, for example aeroplanes and radio-sets. Ten years ago there was no market in radio-sets ; at the moment there is no market in television-sets. But invention, advertisement and new tastes, due to better education, create markets where there were none. The rivalry of the future may be, not between producers of the same products scrambling for the scraps of a shrinking market in traditional goods, but between producers of different kinds of products. But because in non-necessaries taste is changeable and no market is " safe," therefore makers of non-essential new products will always look outside the frontiers of their own State, or outside the barriers of their own tradition, to find alternative markets. This will inevitably lead to increase of international commerce ; for even if every locality grows its own food, no one locality can be trusted to continue to absorb a supply of non-essentials. And besides, the more " modern " the product, the more varied must be the sources of the material necessary for making it. The increase of gramophones involves an increase in the demand for screws and other parts. Thus modern international organisation of economic life will inevitably disregard frontiers.

It cannot be said, however, that such conceptions are prevalent. They are not even discussed in the existing international institutions for connecting economic groups of one nation with those of another, in questions of policy. For example, the International Chamber of Commerce holds meetings at which the commercial men of different national groups may discuss their common interests. The Chamber has made recent pronouncements against war and against obstacles to trade; but obviously these do not represent the views of the armament firms, for example, or of the manufacturers protected by tariffs. The International Federation of Trade Unions continues, as before the War of 1914–1918; but its meetings are held in an atmosphere rendered stormy by rival groups organised under the patronage of the Moscow Government. Trade Unions in certain trades (e.g. Textiles and Mines) also have their international associations; and in such groupings as the International Association of Rotary Clubs there is a vague tendency for men of goodwill in different nations—to dine together! But although all such Associations and Groups provide platforms for new conceptions, no such new conceptions have come from them.

CULTURAL INTERNATIONALISM

The standard of life, that is to say, the way of living in modern civilisation, is dependent not only upon supplies of goods and services but upon dominant conceptions of the way in which to *use* such supplies. That is to say, the standard is fundamentally "moral" or cultural. It is the result of an ideal, an emotional conception of what is worth while, which is "in the air." Thus the way in which men live in London, Paris or New York is a behaviour-pattern expressive of desires, many of which are hardly conscious; but the whole complex of customs is the typical culture of modern times. In the modern world we have not merely public drainage, but also particular forms of food, clothing and entertainment. There is music also, largely of the eighteenth century, and some painting, which can be called modern, outside the public picture-galleries. The arts are significant of the culture of any age; but for most men, as in the nineteenth century, science is more significant of the modern world than the arts; and science is obviously the result of an interchange of ideas between men of genius, who belong to different nations. In general, it may be assumed that the whole of that "culture" which underlies the supply of commodities and directs its use is international; for both the sciences and the arts depend upon the maintenance and development of an interchange of ideas across the frontiers of States and over the barriers of language or diverse traditions.

In earlier times the contact of minds, across such barriers within the European tradition, was very largely in the field of the religious consciousness. The Roman Church assisted in civilising the European tribes of the Dark Ages: Luther and Calvin at a later date influenced men of other nations. Similarly, outside the European tradition, Buddhism spread into China and Japan; and Islam connected the Arabs, the Turks, the Persians and the Moors. But in the modern world the significant contacts across the barriers named above are not religious; they are in the field of

the sciences and the arts. Modern mathematics is international, even in its language. Modern physics and chemistry are international. Modern medicine is almost international, in its store of knowledge, if not in its practice. Similarly in the fine arts, architecture of steel and concrete in each modern country is affected by the comparison of experiments in all modern countries. The discussion of the actual sciences and arts of to-day, however, occurs elsewhere in this book. The point for attention here is that some form of social organisation is implied in the activity of modern scientists and artists : and that form is international. Scientific societies promote international contacts. Exhibitions of the work of foreign artists have become the familiar custom in all great capitals. And the increase of all this interchange within the past ten years has been remarkable, though the new habit is by no means securely established.

In the larger sphere of education, from the nursery to the University—not, after all, a far journey—there is a rapid increase of contacts across frontiers. Visits of school-children to foreign countries are much commoner than they ever have been before. The new educational uses of gramophones, cinemas and radio spread a knowledge of other village-pumps besides our own. Language-teaching is becoming more genuinely a study of a foreign or a national mind, and less a collection of tricks, the performance of which, if it were attempted outside the school, would astonish both one's fellow-citizens and the foreigners, whose language such tricks are supposed to exhibit. Even history, the most traditionalist of all the instruments of education, now begins to recognise that there is a modern world of contacts between peoples. School-methods have been revolutionised, and there is a growing interchange of scholars and teachers across the frontiers of States. Thus the organisation of education tends increasingly to be international.[1] But there is a long way to go, before the mental attitudes and assumptions of men are consonant with their daily practice in eating foreign foods and wearing the products of foreign labour. National prejudices are so deeply imbedded in men's minds, that many years of education may be necessary before men are aware of the characteristics of the modern world in which they live.

For the supply of news from foreign nations a few great news Agencies exist, closely connected with Governments and, in one case, the " Tass " of Moscow, an instrument of a single Government. Reuter, Wolf and Havas, organised from London, Berlin and Paris respectively, supply most of the material out of which " the public opinion " of one nation builds its beliefs about other nations. The Agencies have representatives in many countries, who receive " news " from official sources or collect news elsewhere. In some cases the representative is either a minor official in an Embassy or even an agent for selling goods, armaments among others. Wealthy newspapers in some places maintain their own correspondents, who have similar connections or similar plural functions. But the greater part of the " news " which connects one nation with another comes through the chief telegraphic Agencies, which supply the

[1] The Committee of the League of Nations which deals with " Intellectual Co-operation " is a sign of this tendency, but hardly more than a wave upon the vast current, which follows its course untouched by the wave. The Committee may, after the reorganisation in 1930, do more.

Press generally. Whatever dangers there may be in the use of this organisation, clearly the modern world could not exist without such an elaborate structure of information and current comment from diverse sources.

Let us suppose that the organisation of cultural contacts across the barriers of race, nationality or language were effectual, what then would be the result upon the moral standards operative in modern life? Clearly the first result would be to delocalise the mind of the educated man; but that would not imply an uprooting of the mind from its native soil. To be delocalised is not to be *déraciné*. Cosmopolitanism is only a primitive form of internationalism. A man who has no country of his own is almost as bad as one who is completely absorbed by his own country, and there is no contradiction between going on travels and having a home to start from, to which a return may be made. The intelligent contact, therefore, between the French and the English, for example, does not make the French less French or the English less English, although it does make each less primitive. In short, the modern conception and the modern practice of civilised life involve the recognition that national cultures are distinct, but that each nation can develop higher *stages* in its own national or racial culture. Thus there may be a French tradition of culture and different *stages* within the history of that culture, distinguishing French mediævalism from the French enlightenment and that again from French modernity.[1] A civilised Englishman is not less an Englishman because he does not drink as an Anglo-Saxon would. A civilised Chinese need not enslave his wife, nor keep concubines, in order to be Chinese. But the contact between nations is the best means for developing what is best in each. As in the conversation between individuals, each develops his own individuality by deriving something from the other, so in the contact between nations, each becomes more civilised by what it derives from trade or from the exchange of ideas with the other.

The cultural standard of the modern world is increasingly the result of contact between different traditions. Thus, for example, the use of soap made from palm-oil tends to spread into all countries; and an appreciation of Chinese art is increasing in the West. But neither washing nor painting destroys the roots out of which each man and each group of men grow; and the character of the tree in each centre of civilisation is to be known from its fruit, not from the label that the political gardener attaches to it. The best fruit of each tradition is the result of free contact between all traditions; and the modern organisation of interchanges in culture is therefore like an irrigation-plan which transforms primitive villages into flourishing cities. The difficulty in appreciating the actual situation in the modern world is that we tend to imagine that we are at the end of a process, whereas we are at its beginning. Civilised life is still a new experiment, only partially successful. Men cry out that "democracy" has failed, when it has not been tried; or that "education" is wasted, when we have hardly begun to discover how to teach or how to learn. History, which is now excavating a past hitherto unknown, is showing how far we have come, without indicating how far we still have to go.

[1] This theme is worked out in my book, *Modern Civilisation on Trial* (1931).

But in the modern world, the future is beginning to take its due place in thought. The England and France of 1950 will not be the England and France of 1850, nor even of 1930. The relations between the drama, the painting, the music and the common life of different peoples are already quite transformed from what they were a century ago. It follows that, if we so desire, we can transform the atavistic prejudices which divide and destroy into emotional ideals which may create a new civilisation ; but this new civilisation, among each people, will contain contributions of service and insight from all peoples. Thus the culture of modern times is necessarily international in its finest flower, although it remains national or racial in its " roots " in every land.

POLITICAL ORGANISATION

The organisation of law and order and of such liberty as we can achieve under a system of law—all this is what is called *the State*. There are now about fifty States, independent and autonomous, and many more institutions, to which the same name is applied, which are not in the same sense autonomous in all their functions. The history of political organisation is complex, and it is enough to note that, at present, the States of the world are conceived to include all men among their members and to divide the earth into separate jurisdictions. In some cases, as in Abyssinia or Persia, the State includes a great number of persons passively subject to the command of a few, as indeed is the case in most of the area covered by the State called Great Britain, or the British Empire, which includes African and Indian races, in no sense " citizens " but merely " subjects " submissive to rule. Citizens are persons having some share, however theoretical, in the power which is exercised by the Government. But citizens or subjects in all the States of the world are also producers and consumers, and they are affected by the fine arts or by such useful arts as cooking and washing clothes. Therefore in the modern world economic and cultural contacts inevitably support political contacts across the frontiers of States. Thus the States of the world make up a State-system, and a Government in the modern world is inevitably in contact with other Governments.

The functions of the State have greatly changed within the past fifty years. Until about 1870 the State was chiefly a system for maintaining law and order, by the enforcement of regulations in a given territory through State-forces, and the exclusion from that territory of any other power by means of armed men. The chief contacts between Governments were those of war, the threat of war or the preparation for new wars. The historians of war have recently become apologetic ; but until about the middle of the last century both historians and their pupils, the politicians or statesmen, thought of war as the source of a peculiar commodity called " glory." This faded into " prestige " in the industrial era ; and the armed forces of States were regarded in " advanced " countries as agents for the sale of goods by the advertisement they provided for the nation whose " prestige " they maintained. In the modern world, however, since the armistice of 1918, it has become popular to say that armed forces are for " defence." The strange results of that form of mythology

will be discussed later. Here it is enough to note that the States of the world still remain armed bands " in the posture of gladiators," and that the preparation in view of the possibility of future war obstructs the energies which might otherwise be devoted to the improvement of health and knowledge. Only a certain amount of ability is available in every generation ; and men in the service of the States of the world still spend a great part of the available ability in destroying or planning to destroy the ability of other men.

These same States, however, now perform functions with regard to industrial organisation, health and education which were never connected with government until about fifty years ago. The new functions of the States called France, Great Britain and Germany, for example, are expressed in factory laws, in the organisation of preventive medicine and in the school-system. These functions, and not the exercise of force, are the significant characteristics of the modern State. But in such functions States are not opposed, one to the other : indeed, owing to the increase of contact in trade, the States have been compelled to co-operate. Hence the modern State-system, which is to be seen in the immense number of commercial treaties, in the inter-State organisation for the control of epidemic disease, the improvement of communications and the rest. Indeed a modern State cannot fulfil its functions, even for the sake of its own citizens, without co-operating with other States ; and the administrative offices for commerce, industry, transport, finance, health and education in each modern State act in co-operation with similar offices in other States. The Universal Postal Union is one of the best examples of the results of this co-operation, because in that Union each State carries letters for the citizens of other States. The art of government, therefore, is less and less concerned with " defence," and more and more concerned with international organisation ; and in so far as government includes the organisation of public health, for example, the system of government in any country is a positive advantage for the citizens of all other countries. The practice of government in the modern world is being internationalised.

THE LEAGUE OF NATIONS

The most significant result of this tendency is the League of Nations.[1] The League is a system of co-operation under a Treaty, called the Covenant, between about fifty Governments. The system operates through a Council, acting as a sort of Executive, an Assembly, and a permanent Secretariat, whose office is at Geneva. The Council consists of representatives of five Great Powers, with permanent seats on the Council, and nine others elected by the Assembly from time to time to represent the other members of the League. The Council meets three or four times a year, usually at Geneva : the Assembly meets once a year,

[1] See especially *Ten Years of World Co-operation*, an account issued officially from the Secretariat of the League in 1930. Also C. Howard-Ellis, *The Origin, Structure and Working of the League of Nations* (1929). The League of Nations Union issues popular summaries in Great Britain and the League of Nations Non-Partisan Association in the United States.

early in September, at Geneva. The League has now been in existence since January 1920, when the Covenant came into force. During that time it has performed some very useful tasks in the liquidation of difficulties resulting from the Great War.[1] League Commissions restored about 400,000 prisoners of war to their homes, thus giving happiness to common folk who had suffered from the quarrels of Governments even after peace was made. League Commissions fought and overcame the plague of typhus which was spreading westward from Russia and Poland, soon after the armistice of 1918, thus saving from disease and death Western people who perhaps are not yet aware of what they owe to the League. The League also provided funds and organisation for the settlement of Greek refugees from Asia Minor in Greece; it guaranteed and administered loans for the restoration of the finances of Austria and Hungary, and it overcame some of the transport difficulties in Europe, which had been left by the Great War. The settlement of certain controversies between Governments was also achieved through the League, as, for example, in the case of the controversy as to Upper Silesia, between Germany and Poland, and the controversy as to Mosul, between Turkey and Great Britain.[2] In some cases warlike action, which would otherwise have caused open war, was stopped by the League, as in the dispute between Bulgaria and Greece in October 1925. The normal method of settling disputes which arise out of political or racial rivalries has been conciliation through, or in, the Council of the League; but other disputes in reference to "rights" which arise out of Treaties, have been settled by the use of the Permanent Court of International Justice, which was set up in connection with the League in 1920. By May 1930, forty-two States had ratified the Treaty, accepting the jurisdiction of the Court, and twenty-nine had signed the so-called "Optional Clause." This Clause of the Statute of the Court is "optional" because it need not be accepted by all those States which use the Court; but it makes "compulsory" on the part of its signatories the use of the Court for a certain limited number of cases—such, for example, as cases of dispute arising out of the terms of a Treaty.

The whole of the League system now in operation, therefore, is tentative and, in a sense, experimental. We are in a new world. The relations of Governments are not what they were in the days of Napoleon or Gladstone; a new machinery and new methods are being tested. The success which so far has been achieved in most of the tasks undertaken by the League is not less important because in certain cases, for example, in the Russo-Finnish dispute about Carelia, the League has failed to secure a solution. Only those who do not understand the art of government can expect that the inherited rivalries and suspicions of the world could possibly be abolished in ten or twenty years. The actual work, however, already done by the League shows that some of the dangers arising out of national rivalries can be avoided.

The new system is not only a security against the repetition of old

[1] A fuller account is to be found in my book: 1918–1928: *A Short History of the World* (1928).

[2] See a full account, with text of telegrams, in Sir E. Drummond (ed.): *Ten Years of World Co-operation*, p. 31 (1930).

evils. It is also the basis for a progressive co-operation between Governments in the pursuit of interests common to all peoples. For example, it is generally admitted that security from epidemic disease is an advantage for all. The League Health Section therefore carries forward the work begun before the War by the International Office of Public Health. Information about epidemics, the fixing of standards for sera and drugs, and other international tasks have been performed through the League; and in these spheres of the art of government even States such as Russia and the United States, which are not members of the League, have found it convenient to co-operate. Similarly, co-operation through the League has made it possible to limit the international trade in dangerous drugs and in prostitution. New functions of government have been undertaken in the League system, as in the supervision of the government of the Free City of Danzig, and the League government, during a period of years, of the Saar Territory. These, however, are results of the War of 1914–1918. More important are the new principles implied in the protection of Minorities and the supervision of certain "colonial" territories called Mandates. The Council of the League receives petitions from representatives of racial and religious Minorities, if the State, in which these Minorities live, is bound by Treaty or Declaration to grant them certain rights. And in the case of some territories hitherto under Turkish and German rule, outside Europe, the Mandates Commission of the League receives annual reports and advises the Council on the situation. By this means, the territories divided among themselves by the victors of 1918 have been treated as "Trusts," for the government of which the State controlling the territory is responsible before an international community, represented by the League. The system has made it possible for complaints to be made against, for example, the French Government with regard to Syria, the South African Government with regard to South-West Africa, and the British Government with regard to Palestine. The Mandates Commission, reporting to the Council, is thus a new organ of government in international affairs, affecting the relations between European and some non-European peoples.

Another section of the League system is the International Labour Organisation. The members of the Organisation are, in general, the same as the members of the League, although any State can belong to the Labour Organisation without being a member of the League. The I.L.O. was established under Part XIII of the Versailles Treaty and similar Parts of other peace Treaties. It exists for the promotion of industrial and social progress, in the elimination of inhumane conditions of labour. Its General Conference, which meets annually at Geneva, and its Governing Body, consists of representatives, not only of Governments, but also of the employers' and the workers' organisations of the countries which are members. Its permanent Secretariat, international in the same sense as is the League Secretariat, forms the International Labour Office at Geneva. The General Conference discusses and, if possible, agrees to Conventions forming what is sometimes called International Labour Legislation: but these Conventions do not bind the countries concerned unless they are afterwards separately ratified. Several Conventions have been ratified since October 1919, when the first General Conference was

held in Washington : and the result of the Conventions ratified, as well as of the influence of the International Labour Organisation in general, has been to " level up " the conditions of labour in certain backward countries. New conceptions of international agreement with regard, for example, to the uses of leisure, the housing of workers, unemployment and emigration, are being gradually worked out, by means of the information collected and published by the International Labour Office ; but the economic depression during the life of the I.L.O. has been so great, that its full influence has not yet been realised.

The principles implied in the new system may now be discussed. Although there was some experience of co-operation between Governments before 1918 in limited fields, there has never before been experience of dealing with major political issues by periodical Conferences between Governments organised through an established international Secretariat. The League now acts through an Assembly, a Council and a permanent international Secretariat, all of which imply an entirely new principle of co-operation between States instead of rivalry and " defence."

The system of co-operation between Governments includes two distinguishable methods—conciliation with reference to issues out of which disputes or conflicts may arise, and common action when a particular line of action is agreed to be to the common advantage. Under the general heading " conciliation " may be included the work of the Council, chiefly under Article XI. of the Covenant, for the adjustment of conflicting interests, and the work of the Court of International Justice in the rendering of judgments on cases submitted to it. The work of the Council is most important. Here we have a Body of five representatives of Great Powers, permanently functioning, and nine elected representatives of other States, which are changed from time to time by elections to the Council in the Assembly of the League. This Body meets about three times a year. Before it are placed any disputes or issues likely to give rise to disputes and also all plans for common action by Governments. A large and varied experience during the years since January 1920, when the Council first met, has established new methods, new skill, new knowledge in international politics. The Secretariat, through which the Council acts, has played a part in the formation of a new diplomacy by providing a point of view with regard to international affairs which is not that of any one Capital, and by frequent travel and contact with the Administrative Offices of different States. But perhaps the chief advantage of Council meetings has been the personal contact between responsible Ministers of the Great Powers and other States. Before the War of 1914–1918 the Foreign Secretaries or Ministers of Great Powers never met : each depended for his knowledge of the policy of other Foreign Ministers upon Embassies abroad. Again, the current business of international intercourse did not involve more than bilateral " conversations." Now under the League system the Foreign Secretaries and other Ministers meet personally at fixed intervals at Geneva, that is, in a " neutral " atmosphere ; and they have before them not their own quarrels or the promotion of their own national interests, but the common business of all peoples. If disputes are to be discussed, these disputes may not directly affect most of the members of the Council ; they are therefore able to see

how inadequate a ground for war or the threat of war a dispute is, when it is someone else's dispute. This may indirectly dwarf their own disputes, if they arise. But secondly, the members of the Council learn to act together for the solution of disputes or the prevention of a crisis. Quite apart from the success of the Council in adjusting some rivalries (for example, the British-Turkish rivalry in Mosul), and the failure in other disputes (for example, the Finnish-Russian dispute about Eastern Carelia), much has been learnt as to methods for preserving an " atmosphere " within which conflicting interests can be prevented from leading to war. The value of Article XI. of the Covenant has proved to be very great. The policy of peace is seen to be, not the mere treatment of a crisis or the solution of a dispute, but the preservation of contacts which may " insulate " the tendencies to war which exist in every nation. The success of the League system of conciliation has shown that even if no one could prevent war after a crisis, such as that of July 1914, had arisen, we can prevent such a crisis arising. There are obviously tendencies towards war in the policy of every State—especially that tendency which leads to preparation for future war. Fear and suspicion survive ; and there are groups of men and women who, perhaps honestly, believe it to be their duty to play upon such fear and suspicion. But such tendencies and such groups need not cause actual war if they are " insulated," that is to say, if the close contact of responsible Ministers through the Council and the free discussion in the Assembly of the League allow those to co-operate who, in every country, prefer peace and think it possible in all circumstances.

The other aspect of the Council's work is common action for purposes agreed to be good for all nations—for example, the conquest of epidemic disease, the restitution of economic stability, the control of noxious drugs, the raising of the standard of life of workers in " backward " countries. Here again, what is most valuable is not the actual work already done through the League system, but the habit of co-operation and skill in co-operation which modern Governments are learning. What has been done is merely an indication of what may yet be done. We are at the beginning of our task in modernising government. Such modernisation is still hampered by atavisms, as in the expenditure on preparations for a future war ; but although it seems to be difficult to reduce fear and so reduce armaments, other interests are gaining the attention of statesmen and ordinary citizens. The increase of attention to more civilised issues than " defence," to public health, to commerce, to the raising of the standard of life, may divert energies now largely wasted in preparations for war. Co-operation for common interests, therefore, however unimportant those interests may seem to be, tends to create an attitude of mind which favours peace rather than war. Even in that part of its work which is not directed to the prevention of war, the League is making peace more secure because more valuable to ordinary folk. Politically, then, in the League system we have advanced greatly within the past ten years. A modern State is obviously not a separate unit, but part of a State-system operating through meetings of responsible Ministers, through an international Secretariat and through the increasing contact between the Administrative Offices of the different States.

The membership of the League for the first six years of its existence did not include Germany ; and for the first twelve it has not included the United States or Russia. Turkey also does not belong. But the absence of the United States and of Russia as members has not prevented experiments in modern government in the international field. And in some issues the Governments of the United States and of Russia have co-operated with the League. Such co-operation tends to increase because of the obvious utility of the system to all modern Governments ; and perhaps by slow steps the opposition against accepting membership in the League may be modified by practical co-operation. There is already a tendency for critics of the League to say that it would be best to have another League of the same sort ! Even the obvious defects of the existing League system show the need for exactly that system—of course, without its defects. Suggestions for the creation of a World-State, in place of a co-operation between existing Governments, disregard actual experience. They are Utopian in the sense that they refer to no place at all. But even such suggestions imply the necessity in the modern world for the recognition of common interests as the basis of the political organisation connecting peoples.

This general view of the position in international affairs of the League system of co-operation, in conciliation and common action, needs to be supplemented by a note upon the principles underlying certain new tasks undertaken through the League. For example, some religious and racial Minorities have been given by Treaties and Declarations the right of complaint to the Council of the League. Many States contain sections of races or religious groups which are minorities by contrast with the race or group dominating the State, as the Ukrainians and Germans in Poland, the Germans in Czechoslovakia, etc. Some such minorities have no rights under Treaties or Declarations, as for example the German or Slav minorities in Italy. But the others can make representations before the Council. In cases in which acute feeling has not been excited, the League system has provided some appeasement or adjustment of rival interests ; but in other cases Minorities have had no redress for the grievances from which they say they suffer. The situation is by no means stable : many evils undoubtedly exist, which are due either to the tyranny of a majority or the " irredentism " of an excitable minority. But some difference within the past ten years has been made by the admission of international responsibility for preventing oppression within the frontiers of certain States ; and, at any rate, some attention has been given to those who have not the power to enforce their claims. Here is a principle of international organisation which will inevitably affect the traditional view of domestic jurisdiction, of sovereignty and of joint international responsibility.

Another example of common action undertaken by the League is the Mandate System. Certain territories, lately under Turkish and German jurisdiction, are now administered or controlled by France, Great Britain, Australia, New Zealand, the Union of South Africa and Belgium, under mandate from the League. The principle involved has been labelled " Trusteeship." In the case of ex-Turkish territories (the A Mandates), the Mandatory is supposed to assist but not to undertake complete control.

The idea seems to have been that France and Great Britain would, after a time for development, hand over to local political organisations the responsiblity for government and the power to govern. In the other cases (B and C Mandates), where the peoples were still in the main primitive, as in Africa and Polynesia, the Mandatory would fit the people for self-government; but evidently it was felt that this was in the far future. Meantime the Mandatory would take over complete control and report to the Council of the League upon what it was doing. To receive and examine these annual Reports, the League set up a permanent Mandates Commission. In practice this Commission has criticised some actions of the Mandatories; it has received criticisms of the Mandatories from persons resident in the area under Mandate; and it has suggested some details of policy. This organisation therefore represents a new form of international responsibility. The European peoples thereby recognise some joint duty towards non-European peoples under their control; and as in the case of Minorities, although many grievances remain unredressed, the situation is better than it would have been without the Mandatory system. Trusteeship, however, involves a claim on the part of the Trustee that he knows what is good for his ward; but if the ward is neither a child nor an imbecile, he may have his own views on what is for his good.

Undoubtedly it is a step forward that many Governments should recognise in practice the international aspect of colonial administration and colonial economic policy. Clearly, in the modern world, what happens in a French colony in Africa directly affects what happens in neighbouring British colonies; or again, the Union of South Africa cannot treat Africans well or badly without a reaction among Africans outside the territory of the Union. Further, skill in tropical medicine and the organisation of supplies of tropical products require international co-operation. In so far, therefore, as the Mandate system provides machinery for practical co-operation in colonial policy, it is useful. The common relationship of Europeans to non-Europeans under their control, however, remains ambiguous. Trustees who are determined that their wards shall never cease to be wards are indistinguishable from those who, with the noblest professions, are too ignorant or too incompetent to perceive the limits of their own abilities as Trustees. But it is doubtful whether Europeans really do know what is good for non-Europeans. It is not impossible that they should learn—from non-Europeans; but they must first unlearn their superior airs. The Mandates system may do more good to Europeans than to the non-Europeans for whose sake it is supposed to exist. However, it is a step forward from the Congo administration of 1908 and the bland complacency of British colonial government in the nineteenth century, in which it was assumed that nothing valuable was to be learnt from foreigners.

The League system provides a means whereby each nation, through its Government, may learn something from every other one. This is not an abolition of sovereignty, if sovereignty means responsibility; but it is an undermining of " localism " and village-pump politics. It is a means by which each people may learn to look beyond its own frontiers; and see beyond those frontiers not armed camps but markets. A market, in that

sense, however, is not merely a place for exchanging goods and services. It is also, as the *agora* was in Athens and the *forum* in Rome, a place for the exchange of ideas.

Within the League system is the International Labour Organisation, operating as described above.[1] Here a new principle has been used. The Governments are represented, as in the League Assembly and Council; but there is also representation in the Conference and Governing Body of the I.L.O. for organisations of employers and trade unions of the different countries which are members of the Organisation. Therefore the principle of "functional" representation has been established in international affairs. The "interests" represented are not all national; and the rivalry between "interests" is not the same as the rivalry between Governments. In practice, the divisions on votes in the I.L.O. Conferences are not national; for the trade unionists of different countries tend to act together and so do the employers. The issues discussed are not "defence," prestige and other such obsolete policies, but the cost of production, the hours of labour and the use of leisure. The I.L.O. Conference has no power to compel action on the part of any Government or Association; but it passes Conventions and Resolutions for social reform and the improvement of industrial organisation, which have great influence upon Governments and may be made the basis of legislation in the different States. Thus, in principle the I.L.O. stands for an international policy in the raising of the standard of living in all nations.

Also within the League system, but not entirely, is the Permanent Court of International Justice.[2] This is the latest development of the principles which were at first embodied in the Resolutions of the Hague Conference of 1907 and in the Court of Arbitration then set up, which continues to exist. The Permanent Court of International Justice, however, is significant of the progress made since 1914. It came into operation in 1922, and since that date has had before it important problems of interpretation of Treaties and actual disputes between States. Its judges belong to many different nations. It holds regular sessions; and up to December 1927 it had given fourteen advisory opinions and thirteen judgments or orders. For the first time in history, therefore, there is a competent Court based upon co-operation between States in the formation of a single juristic system covering the whole world. Some States, as in the case of the League Assembly and the International Labour Organisation, do not co-operate with the group of States maintaining the Court. But in spite of the suspicion and criticism of citizens of States which have not yet developed international co-operation so far as others, the League system is accumulating experience and strength.

The daily activities of administrative or official bodies in modern government are more important than occasional legislation or the acts of a judicature; for government is now a continuous process, not an occasional intervention or corrective. Thus the value of the League system must be estimated rather by reference to its day-to-day services

[1] For details see G. A. Johnston: *International Social Progress* (1924).
[2] See A. P. Fachiri: *The Permanent Court* (1925). J. W. Wheeler Bennett: *Information on the World Court* (1918–1928).

than by reference to the settlement of occasional disputes; and if this test is applied, it is more easily understood that the system now for the first time established may become the basis of an entirely new relationship between the peoples of the world.

THE DIPLOMATIC SYSTEM

The League system, however, operates within a complex of older institutions, of which the most important, in the relation between States, is *the diplomatic system*. Indeed, the chief issue for the future may be whether the old traditions of diplomacy will submerge the new principles implied in the League or the League system will transform the old practices of diplomacy. Diplomacy to-day is largely the result of the system of communication between Governments that was prevalent after the European Renaissance, when "sovereign" States first came to be the bases of social organisation. Thus diplomatic practice generally implies the assumptions of Renaissance "sovereignty." A State, on such assumptions, is a closed system of government, over against and entirely without responsibility to other States. The world of States is conceived to be an anarchy of atoms, not a system. But the States exist on the same Earth and occasionally come into contact; therefore they keep officials, ambassadors or envoys, resident within the territory of other States, to adjust these contacts. Each diplomatist is supposed to act for the advantage of his own State; and no common interests are assumed to exist. Besides, since war is always possible, diplomacy, with its naval and military attachés, must spy upon possible enemies.

Diplomacy in the modern world is in difficulties. It cannot refuse to recognise that States are still armed bands: and since war and the preparation for war involve secrecy and secret bargains, diplomacy is blamed for the primitive tendencies under which it has to operate. But in modern times many diplomatists have endeavoured to overcome the mutual suspicion of peoples and the rivalries of Governments. The treaty system, which has been the basis of International Law, is largely the result of progressive diplomacy. Nowadays, in every great capital, all the States of the world are represented in a diplomatic corps of ambassadors and envoys; and, in spite of surviving hatreds and jealousies, the common interest of all modern peoples is felt to be peace. Peace may not be secure, if the situation at any moment is so stabilised that grievances cannot be redressed; but in the Covenant of the League it is recognised, first, that Treaties may have to be revised and, secondly, that diplomacy provides means of adjustment for contending claims even outside the League system. If therefore diplomacy can be used for continuous readjustment of the claims of different States upon the basis of a common interest in progressive peace, the old system will be dominated by new principles. Instead of a mere bargaining of opponents or rivals, backed from time to time with a threat of armed force, diplomacy will aim at some interests common to many peoples or to all. Instead, for example, of the British diplomat thinking only of British interests, he will consider the interests of common folk in all nations, in terms of boots and bread, not of prestige and power. This may be what is

meant by those who use the phrase "the new diplomacy"; and it follows from such purposes that the means used cannot be deceit and secrecy.

For such a transformation of the old method of diplomacy, changes of personnel and of organisation may be necessary. Already the telegraph and the telephone have reduced some Embassies abroad to post-offices. An ambassador at the end of a telegraph-wire, the other end being in control of a strong Foreign Secretary, has not the responsibility or power of the diplomatist in former days. Besides, some States have recently improved their diplomatic services by democratising them; for men who know nothing of industry and commerce, or of the life of the majority of their own country, are hardly good representatives of that country abroad, now that common folk have political power. The days of the courtier and the diner-out in diplomacy are gone. The modern State, as was shown above, is a public service organisation; and naval and military attachés are merely survivals. Commercial attachés and Counsellors have been appointed by some Governments; and the consular service is now not so carefully separated from the diplomatic. But the system of diplomacy in most States is still pre-modern; and therefore modern international organisation is still only beginning in the diplomatic system. The personal contact of responsible Ministers in the League system and the new assumption on which that system rests—that common interests take precedence—may transform, without destroying, the use of diplomatists in all capitals. Even the Foreign Offices, which are supposed to be points of contact between Governments, and are usually, in undemocratic States, staffed by a social upper class, may be brought more closely into contact with commerce and culture. Modern international life may thus penetrate into the formalities of the old tradition.[1]

VOLUNTARY ASSOCIATIONS

Since the War of 1914–1918 many groups for association across frontiers, for the promotion of common purposes, have been strengthened or have come into existence. The Interparliamentary Union provides Conferences for Representatives in National Assemblies who favour peace. Since women have gained, in most modern States, the political franchise, their associations have become more powerful—for example, in the international sphere, the Women's International League and the International Council of Women. As an example of a new growth may be cited the Federation of League of Nations Societies, which holds an annual Conference in a different country each year, through which the groups that work for peace in the different nations may co-ordinate their policies. Similarly, the World Alliance of Churches holds Conferences for representatives of Protestant religious bodies from many countries. The growth in the membership, in the power and in the prestige of such bodies since the War has been very important. It may indicate that the interests in peace will overcome the tendencies towards

[1] See H. K. Norton: *Foreign Office Organisation* (1929), and R. Nightingale: *The British Foreign Services* (1930. Fabian Soc. Pamphlet).

war ; but a candid review of the groups concerned leaves it doubtful whether they have enough political weight, enough real sympathy among their members, apart from rhetoric, or enough hold upon the soil of common life in the different countries which the members of their international Conferences are supposed to represent. Twenty old gentlemen and ladies may come together from as many nations and agree and " resolve " that peace is good ; but such " resolutions " have no political significance. It would be a mistake however, it *is* a mistake made by diplomatists, to underrate the sullen resolution to avoid war which still survives among common folk in all nations. Even in those nations whose Governments find it convenient to play upon the fear of foreigners, war is not yet appetising. Glory is tarnished ; and victory evidently does not pay. We may be still a long way from such international organisation in the relation of Governments as will make war impossible ; but the hesitation among common folk to resort to armed conflict for the redress of grievances still paralyses the efforts of young enthusiasts who suffer from the atavism of violence as a policy.

Among the international institutions in the political sphere, the Labour and Socialist International (the so-called " Second International ") is most important. In this Association the Socialist Parties of many different countries maintain a Bureau and organise periodical Conferences. The issues discussed include not only war and peace, but colonial government, social legislation, the machinery of government and the organisation of production and consumption for public advantage. The constituent Parties of the International are entirely autonomous ; but they are able to co-ordinate their policies in their several Legislatures by means of discussion with Parties in other countries. This is a pre-War institution revived ; and it is now secure against a rival institution, created and maintained by the Moscow Government, called the Third International.

How far the Third International can be treated as representative of different national groups may well be doubtful. It is supposed to unite the policies of Communist Parties in all countries ; but its meetings and resolutions are so completely dominated by the small national group in control of the Government in Moscow that its policy is more like Russian " imperialism " than a genuine internationalism. There are, however, powerful Communist Parties in Germany and France, as well as in Russia ; and if the Third International does include any real contributions of thought or policy from other groups outside Russia, then it may be considered genuinely international.

The main point to be remembered, in any analysis of modern international organisation, is that we are dealing with life and not with a stable situation. The actual institutions of to-day in the international field, both official and voluntary, are only signs of the vitality which is compelling co-operation between peoples of different races, languages and traditions. There is a necessity even in human action. It is indeed not necessary that men should desire more food or more leisure ; but if by any chance they do, then they must necessarily work for peace. Peace, in that sense, is not a mere cessation of war. Indeed peace cannot exist until the preparation for war has ceased. But even that is not peace.

Peace is the skilled organisation of co-operation between peoples, through their Governments, for the advancement of civilised life.

THE THEORY OF INTERNATIONAL ORGANISATION

The theory of international social life or world-intercourse is ridiculously inadequate. Indeed it can hardly be said that a modern theory exists. Books on political science and social philosophy are still published in all countries, which imply the obsolete assumptions of the past; for example, the State is discussed as if its characteristics could be discovered by analysis of the "internal" structure of government or the relation of a Government to the subjects or citizens of which it is the Government. Perhaps a note in such books, or a concluding chapter, attempts to make some reference to the existence of other States, Governments or peoples; but the original assumption, that a State is a separate unit of government, still survives. It is not yet understood by political scientists that the State cannot be defined in isolation—that a modern State, in fact, is an integral part of a State-system. Some of the most important characteristics of a modern State and a modern Government arise out of their relationships to other States and Governments. Similarly, the analysis of civilisation continues to imply that civilisation is a local growth, with occasional external or foreign contacts. But, in fact, modern civilisation is essentially world-intercourse. Political science, therefore, in this matter is not yet based upon the facts of to-day. And as for "social psychology," which should have added something to the conception of world-intercourse, some of its authoritative exponents seem to be ignorant of actual social experience. The most fantastic abstractions are made with regard, for example, to a supposed "pugnacious" instinct and to a "herd-mind" which is supposed to dominate foreign nations; and no attempt is made to study psychologically such actual social experience as banking or shipbuilding. Again, it seems to be believed that it is social psychology, if a class of individuals is studied and contrasted with another class. Thus we have statements about negroes and white men, or about Frenchmen or Americans, based upon the examination of a logical "class" of separate individuals. This may be useful; but it is not social psychology. It is valueless for the theory of world-intercourse, because it discusses logical classes and not groups of men in relation. What is socially important is not the difference of a negro from a white man, but the difference of the *relations* between negroes and the *relations* between white men. Social psychology should pay less attention to logical classes and study the relation between members of groups.

The general conclusion indicated is that there is no modern theory of international intercourse, except in hints and suggestions. What then would such a theory be, if it existed? First, it would be an account of the most general or pervasive characteristics of contemporary world-intercourse. It would in that sense be an abstract science, a system of colourless and, as far as possible, unprejudiced statements. But theory in the social sciences is inevitably close to plans for action. Indeed, in the social sciences one cannot even make an abstract theory without affecting action. Thus the mere statement that Law is Command makes

men treat Law as if it were Command ; for Law is in the minds of men. We do not in the same way affect molecules when we say that they are atomic. They do not hear our observations ; but men do.

In the second place, then, a theory of international intercourse is a basis for action. Let it be assumed that ethics, or moral philosophy, is not being discussed here ; let it be assumed that we know, sufficiently for practice, what a good man is and what kind of society is desirable. This having been granted, the theory of world-intercourse will suggest some of the conditions under which good men and a good society may be brought into being. For example, if it is good to have soap and motor-cars, it is good to have peace as a means of obtaining soap and motor-cars. But peace is not simple. It involves justice, liberty and order in the contacts between peoples. And all these require knowledge of national or racial psychology, of institutional experience, and of the incidental effects abroad of local habits. The knowledge of such facts, again, is useless without the ability to lead or the skill in influencing men, which constitutes the art of government.

The modern theory of international intercourse is based upon experience, and perhaps upon experiment. It changes as conditions change. It cannot now rest upon the abstractions of the Renaissance, upon which a great part of the theory of International Law is based. The beginnings of a modern theory, however, of the relations between peoples may be found in two sections of the subject ; first, in the relation of " advanced," or controlling, peoples to less powerful peoples ; and secondly, in the relation of equals—the theory of the obsolescence of war.

The old imperialism implied that superior races or nations must govern others. Similarly, Trusteeship implies superior wisdom in those who administer the Trust. As described above, the Mandate System under the League of Nations is an attempt to improve the principles of colonial government in certain areas. But, as also indicated above, it is commonly assumed by European peoples that they know what is good for non-Europeans under their control ; and here the theory of their relationship must be discussed. In the old imperialism control was taken by the more powerful nation. In colonial territories the Trustees have appointed themselves. The system is benevolent alien dictatorship. The purpose of those in control may be to improve the races under their control, for the common advantage of all the peoples of the world. But in practice no nation in control is willing to lay down its power : for evidently each gains something from it—something more tangible than the sense of his own benevolence in governing other peoples for their good. Obviously, the people of Great Britain, France, Holland, Italy, Belgium, and Portugal, as well as the Japanese in Formosa or Korea, derive some wealth from colonial territories. But the Mandate principle, or Trusteeship, which cannot logically be applied only to ex-German and ex-Turkish territories, implies that all control over so-called backward peoples should be exercised for *their* advantage chiefly. What then is their advantage ? Who, better than they themselves, knows what it is or how to get it ?

The " strenuous conditions of the modern world," as the Covenant of the League puts it, means in plain prose, the pressure of European

peoples for the obtaining of oil, cotton and rubber. It may be an advantage to subject-peoples to sell such goods to Europeans. They may receive in return some European organisation of health, some very restricted education and some few commodities. But neither European trade nor European government has so far raised the standard of life of " backward " races more than just enough to secure supplies for Europe. A modern principle of the relation between peoples could not allow the continuance of the current practices of colonial government. Europeans are too ignorant of the peoples they control. Social anthropology is only just beginning ; and it is still academic. But more fundamental still—the assumption of European superiority, as more than a passing phase, cannot logically be maintained. Other races are indeed now in a social state from which we escaped some centuries ago ; but there is no evidence to show that they are not as capable as we have shown ourselves to be in the modernisation of ancient customs. The danger of Trusteeship is that it may *delay* the development of backward races. It is tempting for those in control to be slow in making those under control fit to escape from it. A modern prison, as the warder thinks, is very good for the prisoners ; they would only come to harm if they were not under supervision ! Thus the theory of Trusteeship itself has its dangers, even if we assume, what must be obvious, that the theory of slave-labour, still dominant in South Africa, is obsolete.

The only valid modern theory of the relation of races or groups at different stages of development is that they must be assumed to be fundamentally equal in rights and status, although at any moment one race may not have developed to its full stature. Just as the best teacher stands aside when the pupil is educated, so modern nations must stand aside when the other races which they control are able to govern themselves. And if they are not so able, after many years of control by others, that is a condemnation of their controllers. The relation of the peoples of Asia, who are by no means primitive, to the wealthier and powerful European peoples is already that of equals. Modern political theory assumes that the Chinese, for example, are not to be taken over as subjects by any European races. The same is true of India. Trusteeship is already inapplicable in most of Asia, where ancient civilisations survive. But in Africa, and in some tropical areas elsewhere, there are races which are not yet able to govern themselves. Even these races, however, in the modern theory of international organisation, are likely within the next fifty years to dispense with European control. The influence of modern commodities and modern ideas will render alien dictatorship impossible everywhere. A long-sighted policy, therefore, would provide that the obsolescence of alien control shall not be followed by chaos ; but if the controllers are unwilling to see the writing on the wall, chaos will come. African and other tropical races are now beginning to claim a larger share in the advantages derived from their labour. They may not make that claim by force of arms, for the boycott is more modern and more disastrous in its effects upon Europe and America ; but the claim to be free of alien control is now being made everywhere. The relation of races, controllers and controlled, which we glibly label Trusteeship, is therefore one of the most difficult of all the issues in international organisation ; and the modern

theory of that relation is quite different from the theory of Imperialism and " the white man's burden," as understood in the nineteenth century.

THE CONCEPTION OF " DEFENCE "

As for the relation between peoples regarded as politically equal in status, the attempt is now made to avoid the consequences of Renaissance Sovereignty. It is agreed that autonomy should not imply conflict, or preparations for conflict; and some have spoken of the outlawry of war by which, if anything definite is meant, war is conceived to be not a legal basis for any gain. Such a conception would undermine the practice of *force majeure*, of violence as a basis for Treaties. The moral effect upon existing Treaties, which have been the results of war, might be revolutionary.

All States in fact are armed against other States; and all Governments are preparing for war against other Governments. The more modern the State, the more effectual its preparations, the more destructive the weapons it purchases, and the more subtle its spy-system and secret agreements with possible allies. But nowadays each State and each Government is armed only for " defence." Aggression is not regarded by any people as a possible policy. War as a means of increasing power or wealth is no longer publicly advocated or officially countenanced. Only " defence " is regarded as justifiable. On the other hand, defence is force for repelling " aggression "; and all States, against whom any State might need to defend itself, are armed only for defence: therefore no danger can be anticipated from any foreign arms—unless, of course, what foreigners say is not to be trusted. But if foreigners are not to be trusted, then any other State is justified in distrusting *our* statement that *our* arms are only for defence, because we are foreigners to them. Again, defence by weapons is necessarily regarded as possible aggression by anyone against whom the weapon can be used. What to one nation is defence of its legitimate interests is to another unjustifiable aggression. Yet each nation is treated as the only judge of what constitutes defence in its own case. A gun has two ends. From the breach end it is " defence "; but not from the other end. And in fact the reason why the British are increasing their war-aeroplanes is that the French are increasing theirs; and the French are increasing theirs because the British are increasing theirs. We cannot agree to halve the defence on both sides against the defence on both sides, because neither side trusts the other to carry out such an agreement. Thus fear and suspicion breed the preparations for war—which increase fear in other nations and therefore lead to the very war against which they are supposed to insure the world.

As a further act in this comedy, some have evolved the theory of " mutual defence." It seems reasonable enough to argue that the maintenance of peace is a common interest, and therefore should be achieved by common action. Again, that France should be " secure " is an interest not only of the French but also the British; and *vice versa*. The conclusion is made that the arms of each should be used for the " mutual defence " of both. It is further said that armed forces are like police, maintaining a common peace. Therefore, it is argued, they should act

together. Other metaphors and analogies are used, as in the reference to the " posse comitatus " of the British tradition and the duty of all good citizens to assist one another against criminals. By such arguments and metaphors the so-called " policy of security " has been supported, and has been made the basis for such action as the French and the Czechs believed to be promised in the Geneva Protocol of 1924. The nations in Europe which have derived advantages from the events of 1914–1918, have looked to " mutual defence " as their best means of securing their gains. These nations have played with the word " sanctions," as if in a war, which is the result of many years of the policy pursued by many nations, there could be one side which was virtuous and the other criminal.

The theory is misleading and, in some forms, a travesty of facts. First, " defence " is quite impossible against those who are only defending themselves. If mutual defence is necessary, there must be some " aggressors." And if armed forces are " police "—police are not organised against other police; therefore armed forces, on one side, must be police and, on the other, " criminals." The conception that a modern State or Government, which is treated normally as defender and police, can suddenly and, as it were, in a psychological or moral lapse, become an aggressor or a criminal, is primitive social mythology. It is comparable to the theological idea of a " guilty race." Modern war is not made in a day or a week or a year. And again, the criminal in fact is disobeying a law to which he is presumed to have given consent. But no nation is disobeying a law to which it has consented, if it is, in its own eyes, defending its rights. Historically, the whole policy and theory of aggression and of criminal nations are due to the propaganda used on both sides between 1914 and 1918. In short, there is no escape from the absurdity of the conception of defence against defence by extending the area from which any supposedly virtuous nation can seek its defence. So long as any defence against other Governments is conceived to be necessary for any State, so long are there " possible enemies." And the mere suspicion that some Governments are " possible enemies " poisons the whole of international intercourse and hinders the modernisation of the State-system. The members of the League of Nations cannot possibly regard one another as potentially aggressive criminals, while they co-operate in common services for public health or commerce. The situation is ridiculous.

THE THEORY OF THE STATE-SYSTEM

A modern conception of a State in its relation to other States repudiates the assumption on which " defence " depends. It involves rather that each State is fundamentally and essentially a part of a single governmental system covering the whole earth—that each Government, therefore, is an instrument by which its citizens *assist* the citizens of other States. Spying and other preparations for war are atavisms. The conception of " defence," as an excuse for armaments, is a psychological cover. War is force and fraud, organised by one State against others; and neither of these is useful or necessary for modern government. The analogy of the need for force against individual criminals or dangerous lunatics cannot

be applied to the relation between Governments, as it could not be applied to the relation between Universities or trading companies. The new situation, as between States, is like that between local government authorities. One county does not defend itself by its police against the police of the neighbouring county ; one province in Canada, or one State in the United States, does not defend itself against the others, for each such institution exists for the same purpose as its neighbour. We can already see that the health of the citizens of Great Britain is an advantage for the citizens of France ; but we have not yet grasped the fact that the law and liberty of Great Britain are essential for the law and liberty of France—that disorder is like an epidemic disease. We have not yet grasped the fact that there is no need for Great Britain to be " defended " against France, nor for France to be " defended " against Germany.

In the modern conception of the State-system, there are of course police-forces for the suppression of crime or private violence ; but there is no theory of " defence " against any official institution or other State. What is irrelevant to the modern theory is the fear of aggression ; and it is fear, not aggression, which keeps States armed against other States. The problem of disarmament is not a problem in defining aggression, but a problem in abolishing or diminishing fear ; and the conception of mutual defence only confirms fear. Men cease to fear their neighbours, not when they are stronger than those neighbours, but when they do not think in terms of comparative strength. Thus the modern view of the State-system indicates a policy, which is that of creating mutual confidence by the habit of co-operation.

This is no easy task. Suspicion of foreigners is old ; it is maintained by ignorance and inattention ; and it is easily developed by any person or group able to excite fear of the unfamiliar. Again, apart from suspicion, localism is traditional. Each linguistic or " custom " group tends to centripetal thinking ; it examines its own entrails when it is unwell and credits its own ability when the weather is fine. This nationalistic egoism extends into commerce and finance. Thus co-operation between Governments or between groups in different States must develop slowly. Small groups exist in every State who cannot think in modern terms. For them, fear of foreigners is as natural as fear of the dark may be to children. Nursery fears breed nursery policies, for example, in playing at soldiers. Foreigners are regarded as beasts of prey, unintelligible and therefore to be suspected. A group with such ideas in one nation, playing at soldiers, confirms the fear of a similar group in another nation ; and thus " proves " to the satisfaction of each such group that the other nation is a possible enemy, an aggressor or a criminal.

In practice, the very groups which live upon fear of foreigners dominate State-policy in most States. The majority of men and women in normal times never think at all of the foreigners, on whose labour they depend for the food they eat. Thus in normal times the group that is preparing for future war is left a free hand in its preparations, which alarms similar groups abroad, who therefore hurry on with their own preparations. The last act of this old comedy occurs when the generals and admirals, whose duty it is to regard foreigners as dangerous and suspicious, are placed upon Commissions for disarmament or the reduction of arms. The users

of arms are treated as experts in the discarding of arms ; and quite naturally they can think of no alternative but new and more efficient ways (by mutual defence, etc.) of using arms.

It cannot be denied that groups, which assume that violence is a means of maintaining the rights or interests of a State or its citizens, do have great influence. The Committee of Imperial Defence in Great Britain, for example, is very powerful in deflecting or in directing the foreign policy of the British Government. Again, it cannot be denied that violent groups may take control of the Government of any State and thus become a danger to any other State. Practical politics requires the elimination of such influences *within* the States of the world before peace *between* the States is secure. Theoretically, in a world of States already disarmed some assistance might be required within any State for the suppression of violent groups within it. And in such a world the police-forces of all States might have to act together. But that is a situation in which Governments no longer rely upon force of their own as against other Governments—in which, therefore, armed forces are really police forces. And that situation implies complete mutual confidence as between Governments and the citizens of those Governments. The world at present is not like that. The preliminary work of taking any one State out of the hands of those who do not understand any instrument of policy but force has not yet been done; and probably it cannot be done by direct attacks upon militarism and the tendencies towards militarism. " Changing the subject," however, is a good policy. The obsolescence of war-mentality will probably occur, not through attacks upon war, but through increased attention to details of co-operation between Governments. When men acquire the habit of acting together for specific common purposes, they lose fear and suspicion of one another When Governments cease to " defend " their subjects from foreign bombs in times of war and foreign oranges in times of peace, they will learn to think of oranges and not of bombs. And when scientists are able to distinguish between the possible uses of science, they will not devise new weapons, as they do not now invent new diseases. There was a time when scientific ingenuity was devoted to the manufacture of new instruments of torture ; but we do not use torture now and therefore science has been applied to other purposes. Future ages will look back with astonishment at men, calling themselves civilised, who now devise new weapons for the destruction of their fellow-men, at the call of what they imagine to be patriotism ; but at present one of the chief causes of the fear which leads to war is the employment of science to make war more destructive.

The theory of international intercourse finds its chief obstacle in the assumptions which give rise to the inherited conceptions of patriotism and the " nationalism " of modern times. If one's country is falsely conceived to be civilised by isolation and segregation, then naturally the fear of foreign influence can be believed to be " patriotic." But no civilised country has developed its own civilisation by itself. Its science, its manufacture, its government itself, are the result of an interchange of ideas between many different nations. Indeed it has been well said that nothing is truly patriotic, in the old sense of that word, except barbarism. France in the eighteenth century, for example, became more civilised, not through

the wars of Louis XIV, but because of the trade and the science of men less noticed by the historians. And whatever may have been true of the past, at present the civilisation of each country and its true greatness depend, not upon its security from foreign influence but upon a continuous and complex interchange with all foreign countries. Modern patriotism—modern love, that is to say, of one's country—makes one perceive the need of one's own country for international intercourse. The best service of one's own country is not its " defence " from foreigners, but increase of its contacts with foreign countries. It follows that men will never think of other nations as they should, until they can think and feel about their own country in modern ways.

Modern international politics assumes that the common interests of ordinary folk are the same, whether they live in France, Germany, England or America. These common interests need no " defence " by armed force ; but they do need co-operation between peoples of different races, languages and traditions, because the common interests are health, food, clothing, leisure and the means of enjoying leisure, all of which are increased by intercourse between peoples. For such purposes Governments exist, not for prestige, or glory, or even " defence of legitimate interests." Where interests appear to be in conflict, there are modern methods, in law or diplomacy, for adjusting them or for avoiding violence, because violence is a lunatic's plan for maintaining interests. Skill in the organisation of the State-system, upon a basis of world-intercourse, is rapidly growing. The percentage of the primitive in all countries is being reduced by modern education. The commerce of the peoples is increasing. Modern life is becoming too full of varied interests to leave a space for atavistic fears and suspicions. Men may soon become too busy to go to war or even to prepare for new wars. And when that situation is established, as it may well be before the majority of men realise what has happened, the childish patriotisms, the narrow nationalisms and the appeals to violence, now still prevalent, will have disappeared. Men in all lands will then be able to work, with both hands and their minds free, for civilised life.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

NORMAN ANGELL : *The Great Illusion* ; 1st edn. (London. 1909)
Foreign Policy and our Daily Bread (London. 1925)

J. L. BRIERLY : *The Law of Nations : an Introduction to the International Law of Peace* (Oxford. 1928)

H. N. BRAILSFORD : *The War of Steel and Gold* ; 1st edn. (London. 1914)

C. DELISLE BURNS : *A Short History of International Intercourse* (London. 1924)
1918–1928: A Short History of the World (London. 1928)

SIR G. BUTLER and S. MACCOBY : *Development of International Law* (London. 1928)

T. P. CONWELL-EVANS : *The League Council in Action* (Oxford. 1929)

W. S. CUTHBERTSON : *International Economic Polities* (New York. 1925)

SIR E. DRUMMOND (editor) : *Ten Years of World Co-operation* (London. 1930)
F. DELAISI : *Political Myths and Economic Realities* (London. 1925)
A. P. FACHIRI : *The Permanent Court of International Justice* (Oxford. 1925)
C. HOWARD-ELLIS : *Origin, Structure and Working of the League of Nations* (London. 1928)
G. A. JOHNSTON : *International Social Progress* (London. 1924)
W. E. ROFFARD : *International Relations Viewed from Geneva* (Yale. 1925)
P. B. POTTER : *Introduction to the Study of International Organisation*; 3rd edn. (London. 1928)
A. J. TOYNBEE : *Survey of International Affairs*; annually from 1923 (Oxford)
The World after the Peace Conference (Oxford. 1924)
VARIOUS AUTHORS : *Problems of Peace*; four series in four volumes; essays (Oxford. 1927 *sq.*)
L. S. WOOLF : *International Government*; 2nd edn. (London. 1927)
Imperialism and Civilisation (London. 1928)

THE SCIENCE OF HISTORY

By

F. J. C. HEARNSHAW

SYNOPSIS

I Is history a science ? — Professor Bury's view challenged by both natural philosophers and literary men — Discussion of the question culminating in the conclusion that history is a science closely akin to the sciences of archæology and geology, although differing widely from the physical and mathematical sciences — Aims and methods of the science of history.

II Survey of history and historiography in ancient and mediæval times.

III Survey of history and historiography from the fifteenth to the nineteenth century.

IV The beginnings of the scientific study of history in the nineteenth century : new aims ; new conceptions ; new methods — Influence of natural science — The idea of evolution — Publication of sources.

V Pioneers in the new historiography — Influence of the positivist philosophy — Efforts of Comte, Buckle, Mill, and others to reduce history to the rank of physical science — Resistance of Kingsley, Froude, Droysen, and others.

VI The uses of history — Relation of history to politics.

VII The recent widening of the scope and enlargement of the content of history.

THE SCIENCE OF HISTORY

I

Few professorial pronouncements in recent years have excited so much controversy as Dr. J. B. Bury's challenging assertion, twice uttered during the course of his inaugural lecture in January 1903, that " history is a science, no less and no more." There may have been some point in his throwing down the gage of battle twice. For from two opposite sides champions at once emerged to take up his challenge and enter into combat with him. On the one hand, natural philosophers came forward to contend that history is much less than a science; on the other hand, literary men came forward to contend that it is much more.

The natural philosophers—men devoted to the study of the physical universe—maintained on their side that the data of history, unlike the data of the sciences with which they themselves were conversant, are uncertain and indeterminable; that no direct observation of the alleged facts of history is possible; that no experiments are practicable; that every historical event is a unique event which in no conceivable circumstances can be repeated; that, consequently, no sort of exact classification of events is feasible, and that nothing of the nature of generalisations or scientific laws of history can be formulated; that, moreover, the data of history are infinitely complex; that there is no agreement among historians as to what is important and what is insignificant; that the element of accident in history destroys all calculation and frustrates all attempt at prediction; and, above all, that the apparent presence of personality and freewill in each individual man renders all efforts to establish history on a scientific basis futile and even ridiculous. " A science of history," said Professor W. S. Jevons, " in the true sense of the term, is an absurd notion."

The literary men, on the other side, contended that, whether or not history is a science, it certainly is an art; that science at its best can provide no more than the dry bones of history; that the imagination of the poet is needed in order to make them live; and that, when they are imaginatively alive, the highest skill of the accomplished writer is required if they are to be decently clothed, and if they are to be presented in such a manner as to make them effective in the world. The literary men contended, further, that the passionless indifference of the man of science is out of place and intolerable in the case of the historian who is dealing with the affairs of sentient souls, since, as Professor G. M. Trevelyan says, " the man who is himself devoid of emotion or enthusiasm can seldom credit, and can never understand the emotions of others."

So was the battle joined until finally a sort of permanent triangular stalemate was achieved, the men of science and the men of letters assailing not only Professor Bury, but also one another. Nevertheless, out of the hurly-burly one truth at length emerged obvious and clear. It was this:

that the conflict was largely a mere logomachy, or battle of words, and that a little preliminary definition of terms might have obviated the greater part of it altogether. For both " science " and " history " are ambiguous expressions, and unless they are carefully defined it is possible, and indeed probable, that persons who use them in controversy will employ them in senses so diverse that they will really be arguing about totally distinct and separate things, never coming face to face at all. " Science," says Lord Acton, " is the combination of a great mass of similar facts into the unity of a generalisation, a principle, or a law, which principle or law will enable us to predict with certainty the recurrence of like events under given conditions." No wonder, having formulated this definition, he gives an emphatically negative answer to the question " Can there be a science of history ? " But science, although, no doubt, it always seeks to generalise, always gropes after laws, and always covets the gift of prophecy, is by no means deprived of its name and character if it fails to attain these goals of its ambition. The name and character of science, for example, are not denied to meteorology because generalisations concerning the climate (particularly in England) are impossible (at any rate in parliamentary language), because the laws according to which sunshine and storm succeed one another are as yet undiscovered, and because the weather forecasts of the experts are usually wrong in exact ratio as they are precise. In spite of all this, meteorology is admitted to be a science. For " science " can be quite accurately and adequately, as well as quite simply, defined as " systematised, organised, formulated knowledge." It is enough to give the quality of a science to a subject of study that it should be pursued with a single eye to the ascertainment of truth ; that it should be marked by a diligent search for all relevant facts ; that it should be built up with a critical judgment from which all presuppositions and prejudices have been eliminated ; and that it should be, so far as its content permits, reduced to the simplicities of uniformities, categories, and laws.[1] There is, therefore, no justification *a priori* for excluding history, or indeed any subject whatsoever, from the rank of the sciences. And if, in practice, some subjects have to be excluded, their exclusion is due solely to the fact that, when exposed to those tests of a science which have just been enumerated—search for truth, accumulation of fact, critical judgment, elimination of prejudice—their content vanishes away. Is such the case with history ? It does not appear to be so. For in the stable qualities of human nature, and in the permanent controls of man's terrestrial environment, history is provided with constants at least as real as the dubious atoms of the chemist or the elusive electrons of the physicist. History treats of the actions and reactions of essentially unchanging man and essentially unchanging circumstance. What then is its content ?

[1] Professor T. H. Huxley says, " By science I understand all knowledge that rests upon evidence and reasoning " ; Dr. Alex. Hill maintains that " all intelligent knowledge is science," and that " science is knowledge in perspective " ; Professor Karl Pearson shows that " the classification of facts, the recognition of their sequence and relative significance, is the function of science " ; while the American Professor, F. J. Teggart, defines science as merely " the systematic investigation of the processes manifested in phenomena."

This question compels us to consider the connotation of the term " history." And the most cursory examination enables us to perceive that the word is used in several widely different senses. Ignoring, however, finer shades of meaning, we may content ourselves with distinguishing the three following. (1) " History " is employed, conveniently no doubt, but quite improperly, to connote *the actual course of events*. We speak of " makers of history " when we mean, not the writers of books, but men like Alexander or Cæsar or Napoleon, who by their actions have deflected the stream of the world's affairs. We talk of the " influence of history " when we think, not of the potency of manuals, but of the power exerted by circumstances during the process of time. This use of the term we may dismiss. It is a terminological inexactitude which has to be permitted because unfortunately there is no other single word that stands for this temporal procession of the world's affairs. (2) The second important sense in which the term " history " is used is that in which it connotes the *narrative record* of the course, or of some portion of the course, of the world's affairs. This is a proper use, and it is the most common use. Thus we have histories of England, France, or Germany; histories of art, science, or literature; histories of anything and everything that has evolved in the course of time and left traces of its evolution behind it. But although this second use of the term is proper and popular, its employment leads to confusion. It leads, indeed, to that fundamental confusion which is at the bottom of all the controversy as to whether history is an art or a science. For if history is a narrative, then it is a work of literary composition; and literary composition is an art. That is quite true. But the art of literary composition when applied to history is best connoted by the word " historiography." And if that word is employed, controversy dies away. " Is historiography an art or a science? " The question has only to be asked to be answered: it is, of course, an art. The way is cleared for the consideration of the word " history " in its third and more precise connotation. For (3) " history " in its original and strict etymological sense means " enquiry," or " learning by enquiry," or " knowledge gained by a process of enquiry." The underlying idea is investigation, research, persistent pursuit of the truth. And in this sense of the word history is scientific, or it is nothing at all.

But if history in the sense of enquiry is a science or nothing at all, what sort of a science is it? What does it enquire into? What is its subject-matter? What are its aims? What are its methods? The answers to some of these questions will be manifested more fully as this article proceeds. For it will be seen, when the history of historiography is surveyed, that at different times very different answers to some of them have been authoritatively given. Here and now, in relation to the present day, the following brief remarks may be ventured.

First, what sort of a science is history? It is not, like astronomy, a science of direct observation; or, like chemistry, a science of experiment. It is a science of criticism. Its nearest analogue among the natural sciences is geology. Just as geologists examine the earth as it exists now, in order to find out, if possible, how it came to be what it is, so do historians study the extant relics of the past in order, as far as they can, to explain the phenomena of the present. And just as geologists are dependent for their

data upon such scanty evidences of the operations that occurred in remote epochs as have happened to survive in nature's chaotic rubbish-heap, so are historians dependent for all their knowledge of bygone events upon such concrete survivals, or such records and traditions, as may have chanced to escape the all-devouring maw of time. These relics and documents and memories are the only present and tangible facts with which historians come into contact. They are the basal material of their science. But they are valuable and important not at all for their own sakes, but only for what they reveal. They reveal past facts, yet even these not directly, but as seen through the refracting medium of the human mind. When the historian has eliminated, so far as he can, the elements of error from his records and has extracted such pure and unadulterated fact as remains, even then he has not come to the end of his research. For beyond and beneath all events and all monuments there lie the thoughts, the acts of will, the emotions of which they were the manifestations or realisations—ultimate facts of the human spirit wholly beyond the direct observation even of those in whose midst the events transpired or among whom the monuments were constructed. It is for these hidden springs of action, these spiritual and enduring realities, that the historian, in the last resort, seeks.

Secondly, into what does history enquire? Briefly, it enquires into all such existing relics and records of the past as seem likely to assist in the explanation and elucidation of the present.

Thirdly, what is the subject-matter of history? History, as such, in the scientific sense of the term, has no subject-matter at all. It is simply a mode of enquiry. In order to acquire a content, it has to associate itself with some adjective or other. Thus *political* history deals with past affairs of state; *ecclesiastical* history with the past affairs of the church; and so on. And there is no adjective relating to the concerns of men with which it may not be associated. In other words, the sphere of history is wide as the sphere of human interests itself. *Quicquid agunt homines*: nothing that men do or suffer, make or destroy, lies outside the scope of historical investigation. The muse of history can say, with Terence, *humani nihil a me alienum puto.*

Fourthly, what is the aim of historical investigation? The answer has already been indicated. It is: "the explanation and elucidation of the present." All the materials with which history has to deal are actually existing materials: nothing that is entirely past and gone can possibly come within its cognisance. Historical enquiry, moreover, has inevitably to be undertaken in accordance with the ideas and the interests dominant at the moment of investigation: no historian can abstract himself from his environment. Nor, indeed, should he make any attempt to do so. For his purpose as a historian is precisely to attain to an understanding both of his environment and of himself. In short—as Professor Benedetto Croce has pointed out—in a real and not merely a paradoxical sense of the expression, all history is contemporary history, and all true historians are, willy-nilly, philosophers.

Finally, what are the methods of history as a science? This, of course, is a question far too big to be answered at all fully in an article such as the present. Those who wish to know the detailed reply should consult

such books as the following: J. G. Droysen, *Grundriss der Historik* (1858); E. A. Freeman, *Methods of Historical Study* (1886); E. Bernheim, *Lehrbuch der historischen Methode* (1889); C. Langlois et C. Seignobos, *Introduction aux Etudes Historiques* (1898); E. Meyer, *Zur Theorie und Methodik der Geschichte* (1902); and C. G. Crump, *The Logic of History* (1919). Here it must suffice to mention the following main points which are emphasised by one or more of the writers enumerated. History as a science differs fundamentally from the physical sciences: it is, as has already been remarked, a science not of observation or of experiment but of criticism. Its data, Droysen tells us, "are not past things, for these have disappeared, but things which are still present here and now, whether recollections of what was done, or remnants of things that have existed, or consequences of events that have occurred." Its first task (*Die Heuristik*) is the collection of these data; that is to say the accumulation of authentic facts. But since facts are infinite in number, and since the immense majority of them are of minor significance—although none is wholly without significance—some principle of selection is necessary. What principle of selection do historians recognise? Probably no two wholly agree upon this crucial matter; that is to say, probably no two, if set to describe the same event or movement, will pick out quite the same features as important. The older historians were attracted by the abnormal, the dramatic, or the heroic. They portrayed, in their best literary style, the unusual, the tragic, the sublime. The modern scientific historian, however, tends to select from the limitless data at his disposal just those facts which seem to him to help to explain and elucidate the evolution of human society as it exists to-day. Most of the original sources of these relevant data are documents, although other sources exist in such things as implements, buildings, earthworks, pictures, sculpture, and even oral traditions. Yet so pre-eminent in importance are the written records of the past that MM. Langlois and Seignobos go so far as to say: "Pas de documents, pas d'histoire." The collecting of data from documents involves a highly technical and eminently scientific training in philology, palæography, and diplomatic, into the particulars of which it is unnecessary for us to enter now.

When the relevant data of history—the raw materials—are collected, the second process to be undertaken is criticism (*Die Kritik*). The statements of the documents, or the evidences of the other relics of the past, have to be examined in order that their authenticity and credibility may be determined. Questions have to be asked, and so far as possible answered, respecting such matters—especially in regard to documents—as their original genuineness, their accurate transmission, the inherent credibility of their statements, the mental and moral condition of their writers.

The third and final process, prior to the synthetical construction of the historiographical narrative, is that of interpretation (*Die Hermeneutik*), the most difficult of all. It is here that genius such as that displayed by Leopold von Ranke, by Fustel de Coulanges, or by F. W. Maitland, specially manifests itself. It involves the play of a scientific imagination, capable of the highest flights, and yet restrained within the straitest limits of veracity—the sort of imagination that enabled the zoologist

Cuvier to reconstruct long-extinct prehistoric monsters from a few scattered bones that had happened to remain extant. For many periods of history, and particularly for the Early Middle Ages of Christian Europe, the documentary and other remains are so scanty, the ignorance, credulity, and mendacity of the writers were so great, the modes of thought and ways of life of the people were so wholly different from those of the men of either ancient or modern times, that only the most supreme gifts of sympathetic imagination—gifts of both intellect and emotion—are adequate to an effective interpretation.

So much for the science of history as it is conceived of at the present day. We must proceed, later on, to treat of the present position of the science in Great Britain, on the Continent, and in America ; and, further, to enquire into the relation of history, as now studied, to the life and thought of our time. Before, however, taking up these matters of the moment, we must turn back for a short space and survey the steps by which the science of history and the art of historiography have reached their present condition of development.

II

Although the conception of history as, in any sense, a science is a very recent one, nevertheless history as the record of bygone times has existed ever since man acquired the art of writing. And, no doubt, for countless ages before even that remote date, the story of still earlier ages was remembered and was transmitted from father to son by word of mouth. No doubt, moreover, the purpose for which this ancient story was from age to age recited and eventually recorded was precisely that same purpose for which history is studied and written now, namely, in order to interpret and inspire the present. The earliest chronicles that have come down to us—those of the Egyptians, the Babylonians, the Assyrians, and the Hebrews—contain amid the records of many mere marvels (such as the appearance of comets or the birth of two-headed cows) the stories of divine providences and the tales of national heroes. The third century B.C. saw the almost simultaneous appearance of the Egyptian Annals of Manetho, the Babylonian History of Berossos, and the Books of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel and Judah. But earlier than these were the two Hebrew Books of Kings (about 575 B.C.), and still farther back (about 900 B.C.) the Jahvist sections of the Pentateuch, Joshua, and Samuel—the oldest historial works in the extant literature of the world. The purpose of these works was, of course, didactic and pragmatical. The writers were very little concerned to investigate the sources of their information, nor did they trouble themselves much about the accuracy of their assertions. Their business was to preach righteousness, to extirpate idolatry, and vindicate the ways of God to Man.

In striking contrast to the piety of the Orientals were the secularity and rationality of the Greeks. These remarkable peoples had come as intruders and invaders—from about 2000 B.C. onward—into regions where the old Mediterranean civilisations of Crete, Egypt, and Asia Minor were firmly established. It was the Cretan or "Minoan" civilisation with

which they came primarily into contact. Much of it they absorbed ; but its mythological elements were so different from their own that out of the clash a general and healthy scepticism arose. The Greeks began to see things as they actually were, without the trappings of superstition. They sought for natural causes in respect of phenomena which hitherto had been assigned to the incalculable caprice of countless divinities, and when Thales of Miletus was able to predict an eclipse which the event (585 B.C.) exactly verified, an epoch in the emancipation of the human intellect was marked. The Greeks henceforth displayed a passion for enquiry—what they called *ἱστορία*, or history—and among the subjects of their insatiable curiosity were pre-eminently the affairs of the human race. They travelled widely ; they examined the ancient civilisations of the East and the novel barbarisms of the West ; they searched out the secrets of the past ; they never rested until they had attained to a rational interpretation of things. The first Greek historian known to us is Hecatæus, a fellow-citizen of Thales, born in Miletus in or about the year (546 B.C.) in which the great philosopher died. He wrote of the origin of the Greek peoples and of their early wanderings. No doubt he made many mistakes in detail, but his spirit was the right one. He had the scientific mind. " What I write here," he said, " is the story which I believe to be the true one ; for the legends of the Greeks are many, and in my opinion absurd." The successor to Hecatæus was the great Herodotus of Halicarnassus (*c.* 484–*c.* 425 B.C.), sometimes called " the father of history." He had a fine theme, namely, the conflict between the Greeks and the Persians, between Europe and Asia, between West and East. And he rose to the height of his opportunity. For he recognised that the struggle that was decided at Salamis, Platæa, and Mycale (480–479 B.C.) was a mortal contest between opposing civilisations and between wholly incompatible ways of life. Hence in his great work he presented us with priceless pictures of the rival cultures, and with an inimitable narrative of the course of a series of events on which the destinies of mankind depended. The third notable Greek historian, Thucydides (*c.* 471–401 B.C.), had a narrower though still important and interesting theme, namely, the fratricidal but eminently dramatic and fluctuating Peloponnesian war between Athens and Sparta (431–404 B.C.). He was much more careful than Herodotus had been to verify his statements ; he was far less inclined to wander from the main stream of his narrative into irrelevant (though fascinating) by-ways ; he had incontestably a superior power of story-telling. But on the other hand, his interests were more restricted ; he too much identified history with mere politics and war ; he failed to penetrate to the deeper causes of events ; he attributed too great an influence to the actions of individuals, *e.g.*, Themistocles ; he saw all things in a false perspective. Above all, he wrote history with a rhetorical—or what Croce calls a " practicistical "—purpose. That is to say, he regarded it not so much in the light of a science whose function it is to explain and elucidate the present, as in the light of an art whose function it is to determine the course of the future. He held a cyclic view of human affairs ; and maintained that " an accurate acquaintance with the events of the past would be useful, because, in all probability, the same sort of things would happen again." Polybius (*c.* 204–*c.* 122 B.C.), another Greek historian, who lived in Rome and wrote of the

Roman Republic, shared the belief of Thucydides in the cyclic revolution of the polities of man; but he was far more scientific than Thucydides. That is to say, he was cooler, more impartial, less rhetorical, concerned rather to interpret the present than to control the future. His prime business was to explain in the light of history how it was that the Roman city state had attained a condition of stability and power so incomparably superior to that of the city states of his native land. This business he achieved in a work of massive solidity, comprising both a narrative of the Roman conquests and an analysis of the Roman constitution. His work is a model of judicial impartiality, and is therefore somewhat dull. He held the doctrine, later propounded by Dionysius of Halicarnassus (*c.* 15 B.C.) and by Viscount Bolingbroke (A.D. 1735), that "history is philosophy teaching by examples."

The native Roman historians were few and late: until the second century B.C.—that is, until the publication of Cato's *Origines* (*c.* 160 B.C.)—the annals of the Latin city were in Greek, and mainly written by Greeks. The first notable work of Latin history was, indeed, the inimitable *Gallic War* of Julius Cæsar—the great Cæsar, the democratic republican whose name became a synonym for autocratic empire, a man of genius equally unapproachable in statesmanship, in generalship, in oratory, and in literature. Yet, though Cæsar's *Gallic War* (51 B.C.) gives a vivid and masterly account of seven of the eight campaigns that resulted in adding a new province to the Roman Empire and in extending the Latin civilisation from the Mediterranean to the Atlantic, it is primarily an autobiography. With all its impersonality and restraint, it is essentially its author's *apologia pro vita sua*. And the same remark bears good respecting its sequel, the less accurate and less perfectly constructed *Commentaries on the Civil War*, published after Cæsar's death in 44 B.C. Not wholly unworthy to follow the writings of the incomparable Cæsar were the works of his contemporary and supporter, Sallust (86–34 B.C.). He wrote of the events of his own turbulent times in a detailed history of which, unfortunately, only a few fragments remain. He also wrote monographs on the *Conspiracy of Catiline*, which had taken place under his own eyes, and on the *Jugurthine War*, which had been waged two generations before his day. His story of Catiline is a vivid piece of contemporary journalism; his account of the struggle of Rome with Jugurtha, however, involved research which showed Sallust to be a historian of no ordinary perspicacity and power. He wrote partly for the pleasure of telling a fine tale finely; but partly also, and primarily, for the sake of conveying the moral that incompetencies and treacheries such as those that had marked the Numidian war, together with depravities and perfidies such as those of which Catiline and his comrades had been guilty, would inevitably and speedily entail the ruin of Rome. He wrote with a profound pessimism. He saw the state of the republic sinking from bad to worse. And he had little hope that either the warnings of his writings, or the vigorous anti-aristocratic actions of his friend Julius Cæsar, would stem the descent of the city to destruction. A more cheerful, and as it turned out, a more accurate view of the Roman fate was taken by Livy, whose career (59 B.C.–A.D. 17) formed a bridge linking the Republic to the Empire, and the pre-Christian era to the Christian. He—the Treitschke of antiquity—in a

style redolent of the Greek rhetoricians, sang the glories of the Roman Commonwealth, told the story of its expansion, and appealed to the pride and ambition of its citizens to maintain and enlarge its boundaries and its might. He saw the evils of his own day, but he had faith that Rome would suppress them, surmount them and survive, as she had so often triumphed over still deadlier calamities in the great times of old. As a historian he was careless in matters of detail; he gave currency to countless unsubstantial legends; he settled questions of truth by means of his own predilections: "*in rebus tam antiquis*," he comfortably said, "*si quæ similia veri sint pro veris accipiantur*"; necessity, to him, was the mother of invention—he freely composed speeches for his leading characters. A hundred years later than Livy flourished Tacitus, the last and in respect of language the most notable of all the great Roman historians (A.D. 55–*c.* 117). Although the son-in-law of Agricola, the conqueror of Northern Britain, and although himself a consul and a frequenter of the imperial court, he was under no illusion as to the moral decadence of Rome. He depicted in his *Annals*, in lurid and ineffaceable colours, the depravities and the iniquities, the cruelties and the treacheries, of the palaces of Tiberius and Nero. Over against them he set the virtues and the simplicities of the Teutonic barbarians—recently brought into contact with the Empire—who inhabited the forests of *Germania*. Tacitus was unquestionably a moralist rather than a scientific historian. He employed history, as Juvenal employed poetry, as an instrument with which to scourge the profligate degenerates who occupied the high places of State during the central period of his life.

One of the marks of Roman degeneracy which impressed itself upon the attention of Tacitus was the spread of the cult of Christianity. Tacitus, of course, could not understand the new religion, and since it prevailed mainly among slaves and aliens he considered it beneath his pride to examine it. But since he noticed that it led its votaries to decline military service, to withdraw from social life, and to repudiate the ceremonial worship of the emperor, he had no hesitation in pronouncing Christians to be "enemies of the human race." In spite, however, of the contempt of the worldly-wise, and the active hostility of the momentarily-great, the new religion spread until in the fourth century after Christ the emperor himself was constrained to profess conversion, to proclaim himself the protector of the Church, and the bishop of bishops. The conversion of Constantine (A.D. 306–337), and the triumph of the Christian Church over Roman paganism which was completed within the limits of the century, had a profound effect upon historiography. The writing of history passed into the hands of priests and monks, and in their hands it remained throughout the mediæval millennium. This meant that historiography was reduced to the rank of the handmaid of theology; that it was made, as never before, pragmatic and didactic; that it lost whatever scientific character it had ever had, and became wholly indifferent both to truth and probability; that it became filled with miracles and marvels; that it ceased to regard any values that were not religious; that it lost all sense of perspective, placing the Hebrews in the forefront of the drama of the ages and relegating all the empires of antiquity to the background or the wings; that, in short, it blotted true history out of existence for a

thousand years. The impressive unity of the Roman World was broken up. Belligerent and culturally-primitive barbarian tribes settled themselves where once had been established the *civitates* of the Empire. The Roman peace gave way to the incessant conflicts of inter-tribal war. Civilisation, almost exterminated throughout the West, maintained such life as it was able to preserve, in monasteries and churches. Here history of a sort continued to be studied and written. For example, the *Chronicles* of Africanus (A.D. 221), Eusebius (*c.* A.D. 340), and Jerome (*c.* A.D. 400) provided a rigid framework of fictitious chronology from which (as overhauled and renovated by Scaliger in 1583 and by Usher in 1650) history has hardly even yet been able to emancipate itself. The *Septem Libri Historiarum adversus Paganos* of Paulus Orosius, a mass of tendentious fable, maintained itself as the standard authority on secular history from the fifth century to the fifteenth, when it was consigned to the rubbish-heap by the destructive criticism of Flavius Blondus.

But if patristic historiography was fatal to the science of history, it was by way of compensation the creator of the philosophy of history. Fantastic as were the illusions of the early Christian Fathers respecting the actual course of terrestrial affairs, they certainly succeeded in viewing the process of history steadily and in viewing it as a whole. They perceived in the progress of humanity from the Garden of Eden to the New Jerusalem, by way of the Fall of Adam and the Redemption effected by Christ, a unity perfect in its dramatic integrity. They thus emancipated history from local and temporal limitations, and gave it an unprecedented dignity as the record of God's dealings with Man. The *Ecclesiastical History of Eusebius* (A.D. 324) was a work of a new type: it was the first attempt to write a history of civilisation. St. Augustine's *Civitas Dei* (A.D. 426), one of the outstanding books of the world's literature, may similarly be regarded as the first attempt to frame a complete philosophy of history. It was, however, a singularly unsuccessful attempt; for it contained neither philosophy nor history, but merely theology and fiction. Nevertheless, it was a sublime effort of the sanctified imagination. In order to rebut the charge that the capture of Rome by the Goths in 410 was due to the abandonment by the Romans of the old gods under whose tutelage the city had become great, Augustine surveyed the whole course of affairs, human and divine, from the casting of Satan out of heaven to the final Day of Judgment. All that he says about the *Civitas Diaboli*—that is about the four successive pagan empires of the Assyrians, Persians, Macedonians, and Romans—is a mere travesty of fact, a farrago of nonsense. And his pseudo-philosophy reduces mankind to the condition of mere puppets—helpless pawns in the frightful game played on the board of infinity during the æons of eternity between God and the Devil. Nevertheless, Augustine's conception, both of history and of philosophy, remained dominant throughout the thousand years of the middle ages, a nightmare obsession.

The middle ages, thus auspiciously inaugurated, got all the general secular history they seemed to need from Augustine and Orosius, and all the ecclesiastical history considered good for them from Eusebius and his continuators, Socrates, Sozomen, Theodoret, and Cassiodorus. The original contributions which the middle ages made to historiography

were of a very different order. They consisted primarily of annals and of chronicles. The *annals*—closely akin to those which had characterised the dawn of civilisation in Egypt and Babylonia—were mere jottings of contemporary events made in the margins of the chronological tables by means of which the date of Easter was determined. Many of the events mentioned, especially in the earlier annals, were of the most trivial description, *e.g.*, earthquakes, miracles, the transfer of sacred relics, the birth of six-legged pigs, and so on. Gradually, however, the quality of the entries improved, until in the later middle ages such annals as those of Roger of Hoveden, or the *Greater Annals of Cologne*, became valuable records of historical happenings. The *chronicles* attempted a larger survey. Keeping the annalistic form, they professed to summarise the history of the world from the creation to the date of writing. For the earlier section of their chronology they were usually content to transcribe the fabulous fabrications of Eusebius. For the later section, however, dealing with their own days, they drew upon more authentic sources of information, and gradually they became works to which the name of history might not inappropriately be assigned. Among the many notable and invaluable chronicles of the closing period of the middle ages the following may be mentioned as typical; the *Chronicle of Nantes* in France (to A.D. 1049); the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* (to A.D. 1154); the *Chronicle* of Otto of Freising in Germany (to A.D. 1158), and the *Greater Chronicle* of Matthew Paris in England (to A.D. 1255). In the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries the annalistic form began to be dropped, the number of recorded miracles and marvels tended to diminish, the style of consecutive narrative commenced to prevail. Works of the new type were well represented by the famous and delightful *Chronicles* of Froissart (A.D. 1337–1410), and by the not less attractive and far more scholarly *Memoirs* of Philippe de Commines (A.D. 1445–1509).

It is probable that the improvement characteristic of the later mediæval chronicles was due in no small degree to the influence of the Arabic civilisation of the contemporary Muhammadan world. Christianity and Islam came into contact with one another in the Holy Land and its vicinity, in Sicily and South Italy, and in the Spanish Peninsula. This contact was by no means wholly, or even mainly, a hostile one. Just as Balaam came to curse Israel and remained to bless, so did the Crusaders set out to fight Islam and remain to sit at its feet and learn. For the semi-barbaric warriors of the Cross found to their amazement that the infidels, although theologically in a state of reprobation, were possessed of a terrestrial civilisation incomparably superior to their own. For example, in the sphere of historiography, with which alone we are here concerned, Masoudi of Arabia (A.D. ?–956), in his *Ketab-al-Adjayb*, had surveyed with masterly ability both the history and the ethnography of Western Asia, Northern Africa, and Eastern Europe; Ibn-Khallikan of Damascus (A.D. 1211–1282) compiled a dictionary of historical biography not unworthy to be compared with the classical *Parallel Lives* of Plutarch,[1]

[1] So excellent both in form and substance was Ibn-Khallikan's book that, six hundred years after its first appearance, it was thought worthy of translation into English: *cf.* M. Slane, *Ibn-Khallikan's Biographical Dictionary*, 4 vols. (1842–1871).

but, above all, Ibn-Khaldun of Tunis (A.D. 1332–1406) wrote, *inter alia*, a *Prolegomena to Universal History* so remarkable in the sweep of its information, the sanity of its outlook, and the profundity of its philosophy, as to justify Professor Flint in speaking of the great Tunisian scholar as "the founder of the science of history."[1]

The influence of this Arabic culture, which reached Christian Europe mainly through the universities of Southern Italy and of Spain, was among the potent causes that brought the middle ages to an end, and ushered in the dawn of modern times. Among other influences tending in the same direction were those that came from the Far East by way of the trade routes opened up by the conquests of Jenghis Khan (A.D. 1162–1227) and his successors. These included the art of printing, which brought the clerical monopoly of knowledge to an end; the use of the mariner's compass, which made the great voyages of discovery possible; and the invention of gunpowder, which revolutionised the art of war, and so terminated the military ascendancy of the feudal chivalry. The century A.D. 1450–1550 was the great age of transition.

III

The renaissance of humanism, which was one of the most striking features of the age of transition from the mediæval to the modern times, was essentially a revolt of the long-suppressed paganism of Italy against the domination of the Church. It was in some respects a reactionary and retrogressive movement. It meant a return to the study of moribund languages, a resurrection of defunct and obsolete classics, a revival of fantastic philosophies, and above all, a descent to moral and social standards deplorably lower than those attained during the ages of faith. Probably, however, it was a necessary stage in the emancipation of the Western intellect from the ecclesiastical fetters in which it had been (for its good) held fast for a thousand years. What but the power of Plato could have broken the spell of Aquinas? Who save Julius Cæsar could have shaken the authority of Hildebrand? What lesser influence than that of Cicero could have challenged the ascendancy of Augustine?

In the sphere of historiography the humanistic revival meant the secularisation of history, the transference of the task of recording the course of affairs of state from clerics to laymen, the suspension of chronicles of all sorts and the substitution of writings of a very different character—writings in which the spasmodic workings of divine providence and the frequent interventions of the saints gave place to the systematic machinations of diplomatists and the intermittent arbitraments of the sword. It meant, in the second place, an excessive disparagement of the middle ages, as though they had been nothing but a period of suppressed liberty and vile Latinity; and, as a counterpart, an excessive adulation of the ages of classical antiquity, as though they had witnessed the attainment of all that the mind of man could desire. It meant, thirdly, a vast improvement in the style of literary composition, a purification of the Latin vocabulary, an imitation of the best models of

[1] For an admirable account of Ibn-Khaldun and his work see R. Flint, *History of the Philosophy of History* (1893), pp. 157–171.

the Augustan epoch—an imitation which, however, sometimes became so slavish as to render the writer, in his rhetorical efforts, unable to say a plain thing plainly, or even to convey any intelligible meaning whatsoever. It meant, fourthly, a revival of the pagan and pessimistic idea of cyclic movements in history (as opposed to the idea of the single progressive movement from the earthly to the heavenly paradise); to a recrudescence of the pre-Christian conceptions of capricious fortune and inexorable fate; and to a return to that individualism and emphasis on personality that had been so conspicuous a feature of the writings of such old historians as Thucydides and Plutarch. Finally, however, and above all, it meant the advent of a new critical spirit—a return in a novel guise of the old Greek passion of insatiable curiosity and unfettered enquiry. A tremendous sensation was caused in ecclesiastical circles when Lorenzo Valla (*c.* 1406–1457) demonstrated beyond possibility of dispute that the so-called *Donation of Constantine*—one of the central pillars of the temporal power of the papacy—was a clumsy forgery concocted in Rome nearly five centuries later than the date which it purported to carry. Less sensational, but even more remarkable as displays of his critical capacity, were his disquieting dissertations on the text of the Vulgate, and his destructive essays on the early decades of Livy.

Leading exemplars of the new humanistic historiography in Italy were, beside Lorenzo Valla, (1) Leonardo Bruni (1369–1444), whose *History of Florence in Twelve Books* was the first considerable work to display all the leading characteristics of the new school—its secularity, its classicism, its rationalism, its individualism; (2) Poggio Bracciolini (1380–1459), secretary to seven successive popes, whose *Eight Books of the History of the People of Florence* provided a conspicuous example of the way in which devotion to Latin style could obscure Italian sense; (3) Flavio Biondi, better known as Flavius Blondus (1388–1463), the greatest of all the humanistic scholars of his age, who wrote numerous works on Roman antiquities, and in addition thirty-one books of a history of Christendom since the fall of the Roman Empire, which served as the basis of all subsequent study of the subject; (4) Æneas Sylvius Piccolomini, Pope Pius II (1405–1464), who brought a unique knowledge of politics and the experience of extensive travel to aid him in his delineations of Germany under Frederick III, and of Bohemia during the Hussite wars. But eminent and typical beyond all these were the two great and wholly emancipated Florentines (5) Niccolo Machiavelli (1469–1527) and (6) Francesco Guicciardini (1483–1540), who in the completeness of their paganism, their contempt for the middle ages, their hatred of the papacy, their absorption in politics, their devotion to their country, and their skill as narrators, marked the apex of humanistic historiography.

Outside Italy the humanistic movement gradually spread, and before the middle of the sixteenth century most of the countries of Northern Europe had seen the rise of historiographers of the new order, whether nominally orthodox like Piccolomini, or frankly pagan like Machiavelli. Here and now it must suffice to mention a few representative names. Among the earliest and best was Polydore Vergil (1470–1535), an Italian ecclesiastic who settled in England and there wrote a *History of England in the Reign of Henry VII* that served as a model for all subsequent

historiographers in this country. Next in order of time came Joachim von Watt—commonly known as Vadianus—in Switzerland (1484–1551). He displayed in his *Grosse Chronik der Aebte von Sankt-Gallen* a critical command of his sources, a philosophical insight, and a power of literary presentation, that placed him high among the historians of his time. Almost exactly contemporary with Vadianus was the German Beatus Rhenanus (1486–1547), who applied to the sources of early Teutonic history the same canons of critical exegesis as his friend Erasmus was applying to the study of New Testament texts and ecclesiastical records. Even to Spain the humanistic tide extended, and Diego de Mendoza (1503–1575), the historian of the Castillian conquest of Granada, showed that, with all his piety, he had learned from the Italians both how to cross-examine his authorities and how to write. In Scotland humanism was worthily represented by the learned George Buchanan (1506–1582). He had a marvellous command of the purest Latin, and he could tell a story with unexcelled clarity and vigour. His critical powers, however, were not equal to his literary capacity and he embodied in his *Rerum Scoticarum Historia* masses of legendary and miraculous rubbish. Humanism reached France curiously late. Not until Joseph Scaliger (1540–1609) in his *De Emendatione Temporum* tried to harmonise the Eusebian chronology with the proved facts of secular history did a genuine humanistic scholar appear in the Valois kingdom—and Scaliger's later associations were with the Netherlands rather than with France. When he was a professor at Leyden he had among his pupils the portentous Hugo Grotius (1583–1645), in whom the humanistic renaissance in the Low Countries produced its finest flower.

But humanists like Buchanan, Scaliger, and Grotius were men of a very different type from the pagan classicists of Italy. They were men of the Reformation rather than of the Renaissance ; Christians of a new and strange sort rather than Neo-Platonists ; Hebraists or even Philistines rather than Hellenists or Ciceronians. The Italian humanists in their search for classical texts had discovered the Greek New Testament, and the study of this unfamiliar and revolutionary document revealed not only the fact that the Latin Vulgate contained some very bad perversions of the doctrines of Christ and the Apostles, but also the fact that the Catholic Church under the fifteenth century popes was a remarkably different institution from the Christian Church of the first century evangelists. The Italian scholars made the discovery, shrugged their shoulders, and went their way. It did not interest them. The Greek of the New Testament was so different from the Greek of the age of Pericles that they feared lest any careful study of it should spoil their style : even Cardinal Bembo warned his friends against reading the epistles of St. Paul ! North of the Alps, however, the result was different. To the sober and serious scholars of Germany, Switzerland, and the Low Countries, the content, not the language, of the Greek New Testament—and of the Hebrew Old Testament, the study of which soon followed—was of prime significance. Hence in these regions, instead of a movement of return to classical antiquity, there was a movement of return to primitive Christianity. This movement was strongly aided by the desire of the northern peoples to emancipate themselves from the Latin yoke, and to escape the

enormous and growing exactions of the papal court. This combined movement—moral and intellectual on the one hand, racial and political on the other—came to a head in Germany in A.D. 1517, when Martin Luther, an Augustinian monk and a professor at the university of Wittenberg, proclaimed anew the Pauline doctrine of justification by faith, and challenged the whole papal system of sacraments, priestly absolutions, penances, and indulgences.

This is no place in which to recount the story of the great Reformation struggle, or to retell the horrible tale of the so-called Wars of Religion. Enough for us to note that, as the result of this struggle and these wars, Christendom was rent in irremediable schism, and that controversy raged with a ferocity unknown since the remote centuries when Paganism and Christianity contended for the soul of Rome. Now Christianity—like its predecessor Judaism and its offshoot Muhammadanism, but unlike most of the other great faiths of the world—is a historic religion. That is to say, it asserts as its fundamental dogmas the verity of certain cardinal events alleged to have transpired in time and space. And not only is it historic in its foundations, it has also spread and developed by a historic or evolutionary process. Hence the controversy between Luther and the Pope, between Protestants and Catholics, and between the numerous sects that rapidly arose in the disintegrated Church, became a controversy in which history was called upon to provide some of the most formidable missiles and some of the highest explosives. An immense impetus was thereby given to historical research. The research was, of course, of an extremely impure kind. It was undertaken, on both sides, not in the interests of scientific truth, but in the interests of party propaganda. Nevertheless, just as religious toleration was the unintended but inevitable consequence of the indecisive Catholic-Protestant wars, so was historic truth the indirect product of the clash of the rival Catholic-Protestant propagandas. Never before had there been such a rummaging in the dust-heaps of forgotten ecclesiastical history; never before had the methods of historical investigation been developed to so high a degree of efficiency. From the blows of Protestant steel upon the flint of Catholic immobility the spark of historical verity was somehow struck.

Robert Barnes's *Vitæ Romanorum Pontificum* (1536) and John Foxe's *Book of Martyrs* (1554) were but preliminary biographical skirmishes. The attack of the main Protestant army upon the Catholic citadel was delivered by means of the famous *Magdeburg Centuries*, first published at Basel, under the title *Historia Ecclesiæ Christi*, during the years 1559–1574. This great work surveyed, century by century (whence the title by which it was popularly known, and under which it was actually published from 1757 onward), the history of the Christian Church from its foundation to the year A.D. 1400. Treating the Church as depicted in the Acts of the Apostles as the divinely ordained standard of organisation and doctrine, it depicted the ecclesiastical history of the succeeding fourteen centuries as the story of a rapid and continuous corruption and decline. It administered a wholesome shock to a complacent Christendom, and it provided a mass of authentic information respecting Councils and popes that required a lot of explaining away. The Magdeburg Centuriators—Matthias Vlacich (Flacius) of Magdeburg and his collaborators—initiated

the modern rationalistic study of ecclesiastical history. The challenge of the *Centuries* of Magdeburg called forth the answering *Years* of the Cardinal Cæsar Baronius. Baronius was director of the Vatican library, and so he had full access to the unparalleled collection of mediæval documents which that vast storehouse of historic material contained, and still contains. It had never before been drawn upon for historiographical purposes, and accordingly Baronius was able to lay before the learned world masses of new information which conclusively refuted many of the assertions of the Centuriators. Nevertheless, Baronius over-reached himself, and did serious harm to his cause, by his excessive economy of truth and by his wholly unscrupulous method of controversy. His *Annales Ecclesiastici* were published in Rome during the years 1588–1607. Their numerous errors, their flagrant *suppressio veri*, and their unwarranted *suggestio falsi*, made them an easy prey to the searching and remorseless criticisms of the great Protestant humanists, J. J. Scaliger and Isaac Casaubon. And so the great controversy went on.

Other influences, however, beside theology, in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, were stimulating the study of history. First and foremost of these were the influences which flowed from the regions opened up by the great voyages of exploration and discovery that were the outstanding features of that era. The Christian civilisation of Europe was brought into contact in Mexico and Peru, in Borneo and the Spice Islands, in South Africa and the archipelagos of the Pacific, with civilisations or barbarisms wholly alien from those of the Mediterranean world, and yet venerable with an immemorial antiquity, and fascinating with the attraction of curious novelty. The historic imagination was quickened; the scope of historical enquiry was widened; investigation into customs, manners, beliefs, modes of political and social organisation, took the place of the monotonous annals and chronicles of the stagnant middle ages. The earliest writers of this new order of social historians were mainly, as was natural, Spaniards. Eminent among these were Gonzalo de Oviedo (1478–1557), Bartolomé de Las Casas (1474–1566), Francisco de Gomara (1512–*c.* 1570), and Antonio de Herrera (1549–1625). A second influence, closely associated with this first, was the change in the economic organisation of Christendom caused by the opening up of the New World. Colonisation, overseas commerce, capitalism, unregulated industry, de-feudalised agriculture, produced a social upheaval that set numbers of the unhappy and disturbed proletariat to enquire into the origin and justification of the systems of law and government by which they were inconvenienced. In England, for example, the Norman Conquest got the unenviable reputation of having been the cause of most of the woes that afflicted the seventeenth century peasantry. Agitators, therefore, like Everard and Winstanley made it their business to enquire more fully what precisely the Norman Conquest was.

But more important than either geographical discovery or social transition as a cause of historical activity were the constitutional conflicts that marked the century A.D. 1550–1650. Three of these were of supreme significance. One was the struggle of the Dutch Netherlands to maintain their ancient rights of self-government and provincial autonomy against the encroaching centralisation of Philip of Spain. The controversy which

preceded the War of Independence necessitated profound research into the archives of Burgundian and even Carolingian times. Another crucial conflict that turned on historic issues was that between the French King and his feudal nobility. A number of works, half-legal, half-historical—of which Hotman's *Franco-Gallia* (1574) is among the best known—exposed the Capetian origins of the French monarchy, and maintained the cause of constitutional government. But greater and more far-reaching in its consequences than either of these conflicts was the mortal struggle that broke out in the early seventeenth century between the Stuart kings of England and their parliaments. Each side appealed to precedents. The kings contended that they were claiming no prerogatives that had not been possessed without dispute and exercised without opposition by Elizabeth and Henry VIII. The parliaments on their side maintained that they were claiming no privileges and asserting no rights that had not been fully admitted and allowed by Henry VI. Antiquaries on both sides were set to work to ferret out old charters, examine obsolete statutes, and collect relevant precedents. The king's researchers, and in particular Noy, his attorney-general, were extremely successful in finding information concerning the countless pettifogging and irritating ways in which mediæval monarchs had raised money from their reluctant subjects. On the other side, the great parliamentary lawyers—Coke, Selden, Spelman, St. John, and the rest—made permanent contributions to English constitutional historiography, as well as to English constitutional development, by revealing the foundation on which the liberties of the subject were based. The controversy between Charles I and John Hampden was almost as rich in its influence upon the development of the study of history in England as was the controversy between Leo X and Luther in its influence upon the development of the study in Germany. And once again, when the tumult of the battle had died down, it was found that in the space between the exhausted combatants, but subject to neither of them, historic truth at length stood free.

The tumult of religious and political conflict, however, was long in dying down in Europe. Not till the eighteenth century was well advanced did scepticism in matters theological, and stagnation in matters political, allow sufficient tranquillity of soul for history to re-assert itself as a science and not a weapon of war. The first clear voice that sounded in the eighteenth century, recalling history from the battlefield into the study, came from the remarkable Giovanni Battista Vico (1668–1744), whose great work *Principii d'una Scienza Nuova* appeared in 1725. In this seminal dissertation history takes its place as part of a comprehensive science of human society, the method of its study along strictly logical lines is considered, each epoch (including the much-maligned middle age) is viewed as having its proper place in an evolutionary scheme; the course of history is treated as at once cyclic and progressive, and the general idea of a providential plan is inferred. As a contribution to the philosophy of history Vico's *Scienza Nuova* stands in the front rank of eighteenth century writings. The actual study of history along rational and scientific lines, however, lay outside the sphere of Vico's labours : he was primarily a jurist. The task of applying his principles he had to leave to others. And among the first and most eminent of these was Montesquieu (1689–1755). How

far Montesquieu was a disciple and conscious follower of Vico is a matter of much dispute. He had a copy of the *Scienza Nuova* in his library, but there is no direct evidence that he had ever read it. But if he had not, then in a most remarkable manner he exemplified its precepts in the wide surveys of history and politics which he made in his *Lettres Persanes*, his treatise on *La Grandeur et la Décadence des Romains*, and his *Esprit des Lois*. In these works, with the calm detachment of a naturalist, he examined and compared the constitutional development and the existing conditions of the English and the French, contrasting them with those of the Romans and of other peoples of recorded antiquity. He made a valuable and enduring contribution to a science of society by emphasising the relation of climate to institutions and ideas. More destructive in his sceptical criticism and in his frank irreverence was François Marie Arouet, commonly known as Voltaire (1694–1778). His *Histoire de Charles XII* (1731) was a brilliant and illuminating survey of the meteoric career of the Swedish warrior-King; his *Siècle de Louis XIV* (1751), abandoning strict chronology, made a penetrating analysis of the elements of strength and of weakness in the France of *le roi soleil*; his *Essai sur les Mœurs* (1756), the first serious attempt to write a universal culture-history, was notable for its recognition of the debt of Christian civilisation to the Arabs, for its treatment of social and economic as well as political and religious affairs, and for its total repudiation of all those supernatural explanations of events which had dominated historiography from the days of Orosius to his own. Something of the rationalistic and comprehensive spirit of Voltaire manifested itself in the historical writings of David Hume (1711–1776), William Robertson (1721–1793), Michael Schmidt (1736–1794), Edward Gibbon (1737–1794), and Arnold Heeren (1760–1842). All of these agreed more or less with Bolingbroke in regarding history as philosophy teaching by example; but, since they had discarded completely the philosophy of history which had prevailed from Augustine to Bossuet, they were by no means sure either what history was intended to teach, or what as a matter of fact it taught. In the matter of method, too, although they were feeling their way towards a critical examination of original sources, they were all disposed to begin their writing before they had acquired a sufficiently complete control of their authorities. Only gradually, moreover—with the notable exception of Heeren, who in this respect was a pioneer—did they extend the scope of their enquiries beyond the restricted sphere of politics and religion.

While this distinguished band of rationalistic historians was at work, the French Revolution broke out (1789). It stemmed and diverted the current of historiography, as of most other things. At the time of its outbreak a number of young historians were at work, especially in Germany, producing writings, often brilliant in style, under the sentimental and subversive influence of Rousseau. They clearly displayed the beginning of a reaction against the arid rationalism of Voltaire and his school. Such were Johann Herder, whose *Reflections on the Philosophy of the History of Humanity* appeared during the years 1784–1791; Johannes Müller, whose enthusiastic *History of the Swiss Confederation* began to be published in 1786; Friedrich Schiller, whose highly poetical account of the Thirty Years' War was issued in 1791; and Friedrich Schlosser, who

attempted, but failed to complete, a gigantic *Weltgeschichte* during the opening years of the nineteenth century. The great quarter-century of the Revolution and the Revolutionary Wars (1789–1815) was, however, not favourable to historical research or historiographical composition. History was being made at too fast a rate to allow of reflection; passions were running too high to permit of abstraction; changes of ideas were occurring too frequently to warrant dogmatism.

When once again Europe settled down, after the Congress of Vienna (1815), to a peace of exhaustion, it was found that an intense reaction against Rousseau and the Revolution had taken place. In the sphere of philosophy no better example can be found than J. G. Fichte (1762–1814). His *Considerations on the French Revolution* (1793) and his *Foundations of the Rights of Nature* (1796) are instinct with the individualism, the cosmopolitanism, and the egalitarianism of the *Social Contract*. On the other hand, his *Closed Commercial State* (1800) and his *Theory of Politics* (1813) show an entire abandonment of Rousseau, and a whole-hearted conversion to the principles of reaction, collectivism, and nationalism. No historian lived to make so complete a *volte-face*, unless we include among historians the Englishmen Robert Southey, William Wordsworth, Samuel Taylor Coleridge, and James Macintosh. Before 1815 Herder (1803), Schiller (1805) and Müller (1809) were dead. And the new race of historiographers was in the grip of a portentous Romantic Reaction.

This Romantic Reaction was one of the most curious of the aftermaths of the revolutionary era. It marked a violent revolt both against the sceptical rationalism of Voltaire and the French Encyclopedists, which had undermined the Bourbon monarchy and the Gallican Church, and also against the abstract philosophy of Rousseau and Kant, which had repudiated all the lessons of history and had encouraged reckless innovators to try to reconstruct human society on entirely new foundations. The outstanding features of the reaction were devotion to irrational religion, reverence for antiquity merely as such, obedience to tradition and custom, idealisation and glorification of the middle ages, revival of the dogma of divine right, exaltation of the principle of nationality, opposition to the idea of democracy. Once again, in the hands of the romantics, historiography became didactic and pragmatical. The cult of chivalry was revived, and highly over-coloured pictures of the glories and graces of mediæval knighthood were presented in such works as Perrot's *Collection Historique* (1820), Digby's *Broad Stone of Honour* (1822), Büsching's *Ritterzeit und Ritterwesen* (1823), and James's *History of Chivalry* (1830). The imperfections of the mediæval Church were glozed over, and the attractive features of the ages of faith portrayed in glowing colours in countless works, of which Chateaubriand's *Génie du Christianisme* (1802) was the most notable and influential. Thierry's *Norman Conquest* (1825), Barante's *Dukes of Burgundy* (1826), Michelet's brilliant *History of France* (1833 et seq.), Carlyle's *Past and Present* (1843), all illustrate the way in which the minds of men had been turned from the contemplation of the horrid actual to that of the vanished ideal, the visionary and largely fictitious " old perfections of the earth." And the same might almost be said of such solid contributions to learning as Eichorn's *Deutsche Staats- und Rechtsgeschichte* (1808–1823). The one real service, indeed, which

Romanticism rendered to historiography was to rehabilitate the middle ages; to remove the stigma placed upon them by the men of the Renaissance, Reformation, and *Aufklärung* (or Age of Enlightenment); to turn scholars to the study of their long-neglected records. But, all the same, the spirit of Romanticism was wrong; it refused to allow the dead to bury its dead. The worst excesses of its embalming genius were displayed in the so-called philosophies of history of Schlegel, Schelling, and Hegel.

IV

The foregoing rapid and necessarily superficial survey of historiography from the earliest times down to the beginning of the nineteenth century will have made it clear that at no time had the study of history risen to the standard of accuracy, impartiality, and comprehensiveness demanded of a science. The nearest approach to a scientific treatment of the records of the past had been seen in the works of Thucydides and Polybius in ancient days; Ibn-Khallikan and Ibn-Khaldun during the middle ages; Machiavelli and Guicciardini in early modern times; and finally, the writers of the eighteenth century *Aufklärung*. But all of them had, from the scientific point of view, been less than perfect. The purpose of both Thucydides and Polybius in writing history had been distinctly political; that of the mediæval Arabs religious; that of the Renaissance Florentines patriotic and nationalist. As to the eighteenth century historiographers, from Voltaire to Gibbon, if they had to some extent emancipated themselves from enthusiasm for any causes human or divine, they had not succeeded in emancipating themselves from prejudices which perverted all their work. They were, also, in the main so careless respecting both accuracy of detail and completeness of information that their writings belonged rather to the category of imaginative fiction than to that of scientific history. Not without justification did Sir Robert Walpole remark: "History is not worth studying, for we know that it must be false." The persistence with which flagrant, if picturesque, errors were transmitted from author to author, world without end, gave point to the observation that, if history did not repeat itself, historians undoubtedly did repeat one another.

While, however, the renascent neo-pagans were reviving the cult of classical antiquity; while the reformers were disinterring primitive Christianity; while the rationalists were returning to nature, and the romantics to the middle ages—throughout the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries a slow work was going on, inconspicuously and laboriously, that made the development of a science of history possible in the nineteenth century. This work was the collection and the editing of sources. The task of collecting was at first performed but perfunctorily and spasmodically; the craft of editing had to be learned by means of many lamentable failures. But gradually the necessary technical skill was acquired, and as a result a corpus of authoritative original material was steadily accumulated. Here it must suffice to mention a few of the outstanding achievements of pre-nineteenth century scholarship. They were largely the outcome of the new sense of nationality, and of the novel passion of patriotism, that were stimulated by the struggles of the Reformation period.

England led the way with its collection of chronicles, of which the most famous were Hall's (1547) and Holinshed's (1586) (source of the majority of Shakespeare's historical plays). Spain followed suit with Robert Beal's *Rerum Hispanicarum Scriptores* (1578–1581). Then came Germany, with Melchior Goldast's monumental *Monarchia Romani Imperii* (1611–1614), closely followed by France, where André Duchesne edited first the *Historiæ Normannorum Scriptores* (1619) and then the *Historiæ Francorum Scriptores* (1636 et seq.). More important, however, than any of these merely national collections were the volumes of mediæval chronicles which from the middle of the seventeenth century began to be prepared and published by the scholarly Benedictine monks of the congregation of St. Maur in Paris. Particularly notable was the work of the great Jean Mabillon (1632–1707), whose treatise *De Re Diplomatica* (1681) initiated the scientific investigation of manuscripts, and made the satisfactory editing of mediæval documents possible. Almost exactly contemporaneous with the productions of the congregation of St. Maur were the *Acta Sanctorum* commenced in 1643 by Jean Bolland. In this immense series, continued for two-and-a-half centuries, all (and frequently more than all) that is known of the lives and works of the saints is told for the edification of the Church and the delectation of the world. In 1663 the powerful French minister Colbert founded the Académie des Inscriptions et Belles Lettres which began the publication, *inter alia*, of the *Ordonnances des Rois de France*.

The eighteenth century saw the initiation of other important series of publications. Notable among them were the twenty-five volumes of Muratori's admirably selected and edited *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores* (1723–1750), and Bouquet's twenty-three volumed *Recueil des Historiens des Gaules et de la France* (1738 et seq.). England was much behind other European countries in its care of its ancient documents. True, the Government paid Thomas Rymer to prepare his *Fœdera* (1704–1735) but it did not appoint a Record Commission to enquire into the nature and distribution of its muniments as a whole until 1800. Meanwhile, however, private enterprise and enthusiasm had to some extent prepared the way. William Dugdale's *Monasticon* (1655–1673); Thomas Madox's *Exchequer* (1711); Edmund Gibson's *Codex Juris Ecclesiastici* (1713); Thomas Hearne's *Chronicles* (1716–1735); David Wilkin's *Concilia Magnæ Britanniæ* (1737), and Farley's *Domesday Book* (1783) were among the works that had done something to remove the reproach of negligence and incompetence from English antiquarian scholarship, and to make good the lack of public activity.

Speaking generally, we may say that at the beginning of the nineteenth century the Western world was ripe for the institution of a scientific school of historians. The growing republic of letters, imbued with the new critical spirit which the study of nature had engendered, was tired of fiction dressed up to look like fact, of propaganda masquerading as truth, and of anecdotes professing to exemplify philosophy. The defects of the historiography of the period were conspicuously three, namely, first, an improper aim; secondly, an inadequate conception; and, thirdly, an ineffective method. *First, the aim was wrong.* History was rarely studied for its own sake, that is for the mere purpose of getting at the truth respecting

the causes, the course, and the consequences of the great movements of the past. It was studied, or exploited, in order to buttress some extraneous political or religious interest. Not even Voltaire could refrain from using his learning for the discomfiture of the clergy; not even the philosophical Hume could prevent his *History of England* from becoming a prolonged Tory pamphlet. Thomas Carlyle's American friend, R. W. Emerson, went so far as to say of the English that even "the history of Rome and Greece when written by their scholars degenerated into English party pamphlets," and the stricture was justified by the pronounced anti-democratic bias of Mitford, and the equally marked republicanism of Grote. The conservatism of Allison was as conspicuous as later was the Whiggism of Macaulay. *Secondly, the conception was inadequate.* History was at once too local, too sectional, too personal, and too superficial. It was too local, in that it tended to limit itself to separate countries, or even separate provinces, taking no purview of Europe as a whole, still less of the other Continents; it was too sectional, in that it rarely looked outside the restricted spheres of religion and politics, ignoring the frequently far more important movements that were transpiring in the spheres of economics and society, to say nothing of science and art; it was too personal, in that it concentrated its attention excessively on kings and queens, ministers and warriors, great men generally, passing over as too insignificant for notice the condition of the masses of the people on whose behalf these mighty potentates were supposed to legislate and fight, and by whose labour the state of the world was maintained; it was too superficial, in that it commonly failed to penetrate beneath the surface of anecdote and narrative to the ideas, the emotions, the acts of will which were the driving forces behind the great movements recorded. *Finally, the method was ineffective and insufficient.* Too much was taken on trust. Inadequate care was given to the collecting of original sources. Such sources as lay to hand were not sufficiently cross-examined and criticised, so as to separate true from false. The whole basis of the historiography was unsound and subject to suspicion.

The institution of the new critical school of historiography dates from the publication of C. F. A. Wolf's *Prolegomena to Homer* in 1795. This was, of course, a literary and philological, not a historical work: it showed cause for supposing that the Iliad and the Odyssey were written not by Homer, or even (as Lewis Carroll contended) "by another person of the same name," but by syndicates who carried on their poetical operations over extended periods of time. Its importance for history lay in the demonstration that information of a vitally significant kind could be extracted from ancient documents by the mere process of studying them attentively with the eyes open. It re-inforced what Lorenzo Valla had said three hundred years before, and what Mabillon had iterated in the seventeenth century. The sensation caused in the world of scholarship by Wolf's revolutionary treatise, led his pupil August Böckh to apply the master's method to historical materials. He did so tentatively, with interesting, though not startling, results in his *Public Economy in Athens* (1817). Incomparably more important, however, than Wolf's influence on Böckh was his influence on B. G. Niebuhr, the historian of early Rome. Inspired by the zeal of the new criticism, Niebuhr applied Wolf's method

to an intensive examination of the text of Livy and the other sources of the legendary history of the Roman republic. Under his disintegrating analysis the fiction which had filled the pages of even such sceptical writers as Machiavelli and Montesquieu vanished into thin air, leaving only a small residuum of solid and almost unrecognisable fact. Dr. G. P. Gooch well says of Niebuhr that " he made Roman history a living study, and won for history itself the position of an independent science of the first rank." The critical way thus marked out by Wolf and pursued by Niebuhr was further followed as the nineteenth century progressed by countless scholars in all countries. The names of only a few of outstanding eminence can here be mentioned. Germany, the home of the new historiography, saw the majority of its earliest and most eminent exemplars. Easily at their head stood Leopold von Ranke, of whom Dr. Gooch remarks that " he was beyond comparison the greatest historical writer of modern times," and that " no one ever approached so closely to the ideal historian." He was conspicuous for his impartiality and impersonality of judgment : he made it his supreme concern to discover precisely what had happened, and how it had taken place—*wie es eigentlich gewesen ist*. He lived a long life, he laboured hard, and he touched many themes—Italy, Turkey, Spain, Serbia, the Papacy, the Reformation, France, seventeenth century England, etc., etc. At the age of eighty-five —although unable either to write or to read—he dictated a *Weltgeschichte*, or Universal History, seven volumes of which (taking the story to the twelfth century A.D.) had been completed before he died at the age of ninety-one in 1886. His work was carried on by a noble band of pupils, among whom Waitz, Giesebrecht, and Sybel were the most conspicuous. In the sphere of Roman studies Niebuhr's mantle fell upon the able Theodor Mommsen (1817–1903), of whom more anon.

In France the advent of the new critical method was heralded by the foundation of the *Ecole des Chartes* in 1821. Although for a few years it languished, so that it had to be virtually refounded in 1829, before the middle of the century it had definitely established itself as the main centre of palæographical and diplomatic studies in Europe. Among the foremost of its early *alumni* were Benjamin Guérard (1797–1854), Louis Quicherat (1814–1882), and Léopold Delisle (1826–1910), whose works on various aspects of the mediæval history of France set a high standard of exact and penetrating scholarship. The fine example set by these pioneers was followed by a growing band of able followers, among whom Gabriel Monod, Auguste Molinier, Arthur Giry, Julian Havet, Fustel de Coulanges, Paul Viollet, and Achille Luchaire, may be singled out for special mention.

From France and Germany the infection of accuracy spread to England. But even before the Continental influence reached this country, the native conscience had begun to work. Henry Hallam (1777–1859) would now be called an amateur ; but he brought a vast learning, an indefatigable industry, a lofty impartiality, and a style of truly Teutonic heaviness, to the task of expounding *The State of Europe during the Middle Ages* (1818), and *The Constitutional History of England* (1827). More obviously guided by German models were Sir Francis Palgrave (1788–1861) and John Mitchell Kemble (1807–1857), whose writings on Norman and Anglo-Saxon England introduced a new era of investigation into

their country. These pioneers were followed by a host of scholars who, with all the specialised skill developed in the German *seminars* and the French *écoles*, re-explored the records of the whole range of British history. Eminent among these were William Stubbs, Mandell Creighton, Samuel Rawson Gardiner, Frederick William Maitland, and Thomas Frederick Tout. Equal with them, but hardly in their midst, stood the great Lord Acton; for, though British by birth, he was essentially European. His universal genius and unparalleled erudition knew no limitations of either place or time. His words were the utterances of the cultivated mind of Christendom.

America was not long in acclimatising the new scientific study of history. Here the German influence was dominant. Even the lyrical George Bancroft (1800–1891), whose *History of the United States* is the despair of all impartial critics, had sat at the feet of Heeren and enjoyed the friendship of Ranke. But the true spirit of Heeren and Ranke did not enter and inspire American historiography until the time when, in or about the year 1857, Henry Torrey began to teach at Harvard, Francis Lieber at Columbia, and Andrew White at Michigan. A further powerful impetus was given to genuine historical research when H. B. Adams, fresh from Heidelberg, was appointed to Johns Hopkins University in 1876; and when J. W. Burgess, on the model of Berlin, founded in 1880 the now famous faculty of political science in the Columbia University of New York. To mention the names of their distinguished successors in the younger generation of American historians would occupy more space than we can afford. For the same reason we can do no more than name, as pioneers of the new historiography in their respective countries, Arneth of Austria, Palacky of Bohemia, Marzali of Hungary, Villari of Italy, Altamira of Spain, Carvalho of Portugal, Kopp of Switzerland, Pirenne of Belgium, Fruin of Holland, Steenstrup of Denmark, Geijer of Sweden, Keyser of Norway, Soloviev of Russia, Lelewel of Poland, and Paparrigopoulos of Greece. In some of these notable scholars, it must be admitted, the pure water of science was to some extent tinctured with the red and intoxicating wine of patriotism, but, taking them as a body, they did noble work in freeing historiography from its discreditable association with ignorance, indifference to truth, prejudice, and propagandism.

One of the first tasks to which the scientific historians had to turn their attention and direct their energies was the collection, classification, tabulation, and gradual publication of the vast masses of the raw material of history which lay either neglected, or closely secreted, or both, in the archives and libraries of Europe. In most countries they were able, by sounding the patriotic note, and by drawing the attention of each government in turn to what other governments were doing (or saying they were going to do), to secure official aid and public funds. The first of the great nineteenth-century collections of published authorities—obviously inspired by the anti-revolutionary and romantic reaction at the time in full course—was Petitot's *Collection de Mémoires relatifs à l'Histoire de France*, commenced in 1819 and completed in 1829 by which time no fewer than one-hundred-and-thirty volumes had been issued. In Germany, the very year that saw the initiation of Petitot's French series, saw the establishment by the patriotic Prussian statesman Stein of the Society for the Study

of German History. This society decided to collect, edit, and publish that great series relating to the history of mediæval Germany known as the *Monumenta Germaniæ Historica*. Five separate groups of publications were projected, namely, writers (*scriptores*), laws (*leges*), imperial acts, letters, and antiquities. The first editor selected proved to be incompetent, and effective work was delayed for several years. In 1822, however, an ideal director was found in G. H. Pertz, who remained for nearly fifty years in charge. In 1826 the first volume of the *scriptores* appeared, and in 1835 the first of the *leges*. Before Pertz retired (to be followed as editor by Waitz) he had superintended the publication of no fewer than twenty-five masterly volumes, representing the highest grade of mediæval scholarship. Contemporary with Stein was the notable Orleanist minister F. P. G. Guizot (1787–1874), himself a historian of eminence, author of a *History of Civilisation* remarkable both for the sweep of its generalisations and for the brilliance of its style. In 1834, when he was minister of public instruction, he followed Stein's lead by organising the *Société de l'Histoire de France*, a body which—at first under the presidency of Barante, the romantic historian of the House of Burgundy—commenced the issue of a series of volumes of sources for French history which now includes over 350 items. In addition to this society, Guizot secured the institution of a sub-committee of the ministry of public education itself which, out of funds provided by the government, began the publication of a *Collection de Documents inédits sur l'Histoire de France*, a collection of hitherto-unpublished sources, many of them of inestimable historical value, extending now to some 330 volumes. In a similar manner Belgium began to publish its archives in 1836; Spain in 1842; Austria in 1849. England, however, lagged far behind. The Record Commission appointed in 1800 had proved to be a complete failure. Fifty years later, William Stubbs and other of the new historians began to agitate for greater governmental activity and intelligence. As a result of their stimulation, not only did the Stationery Office begin to issue its useful *Calendars of State Papers* (1857) but, the same year, was inaugurated the invaluable "Rolls Series" of the *Chronicles and Memorials of Great Britain and Ireland during the Middle Ages* which, when it was completed in 1896, comprised 244 massive volumes. In 1869 a Historical Manuscripts Commission, appointed to examine and calendar important collections of documents in the possession of private persons or municipal corporations, began to issue its still unfinished series of reports and appendixes. Meantime the enterprise of such professional or local societies as the Camden, the Selden, the Hakluyt, the Surtees, the Cheetham, rendered useful assistance in making available to scholars the documentary records of the past. In addition to these national treasures should be mentioned the great collections of materials for general ecclesiastical history, and particularly the 382 volumes of Migne's *Patrologia* (1846–1864); the Vienna edition of the Latin Fathers (1866 et seq.) and the Berlin edition of the Greek Fathers (1897 et seq.); the papal *Regesta* of Jaffé and Potthast (1851 et seq.) and the great work of Hefele and Hergenröther on the Councils (1855 et seq.).

So immense, indeed, has been the output of historical material from the various Record Societies, and from the works of private students, that

fear has been expressed by more than one eminent authority lately lest the wealth of production should exceed the capacity of historiographers for consumption. It has long since ceased to be possible for the student of history to keep himself informed of anything approaching the whole of the vast stores of new information which continue day by day to be presented to him by archivists and monographers. Specialisation has become more and more minute, until there is imminent danger lest the general title of " historian " should have to be dropped altogether ; lest even the more particularised titles, such as " ecclesiastical historian " or " economic historian " should have to be further qualified ; and lest, in time, no one should exist capable of synthesising the new knowledge, capable of formulating any sort of philosophy of history, capable of seeing the wood above the infinite multitude and variety of its trees.

V

Side by side, however, with the development of scientific method, with the growth of the impartial spirit, and with the accumulation of historical material, there occurred a notable change in the conception of history and of its functions. When history was regarded merely as a branch of literature—" fiction grown to maturity " as it was once described—historians considered it as beneath their dignity to treat of anything much except the doings and sufferings of royal and noble personages, the exploits of warriors, the machinations of ministers. History almost realised Carlyle's ideal ; that is to say it was little more than a compote of select biographies. No one did more than Carlyle himself—the last of the Romantics—with his eulogies of heroes, his glorification of Frederick the Great, his exaltation of Cromwell, and his open contempt for the undistinguished mob, to perpetuate the biographical conception of history. Carlyle, however, fought a losing battle, and the fact that he was aware of it (together with the fact of his biliousness) sufficiently accounts for the ferocity of his attacks upon the coming democracy in such essays as *Shooting Niagara*. The growth of democracy, indeed ; the spread of socialism ; the rise of economic unrest—these and the other popular movements of the middle of the nineteenth century caused a new conception of history to prevail. Historians such as Roscher in Germany, Avenel in France, and Macaulay in England, extended the scope of their enquiries and endeavoured to include in their survey the whole many-sided life of the people. Experience, however, soon showed that some sort of selection was necessary if any sort of conclusion was to be arrived at. Macaulay, for example, set out with the intention of writing the history of England from 1688 to 1760 : the five volumes published during the years 1849–1861 carried the story no farther than 1700, and it was estimated that to have completed the original design on the same scale would have involved the labours of another hundred years and the publication of a couple of score more volumes. The necessary selection and concentration was secured in England by the two academic leaders of mid-Victorian historiography—E. A. Freeman and John Seeley—by means of a rigid exclusion of everything except politics. " History is past politics ; politics is present history," was

one of the slogans of the period. Nothing except state-papers was recognised as proper for investigation by serious historians. The revolt against this narrow conception of history, which reduced the subject to the position of a mere item in the education of the prospective Member of Parliament, was impressively proclaimed by Lord Acton in his memorable Inaugural Lecture (June 1895). " Ours is a domain," he said, " that reaches farther than affairs of state, and is not subject to the jurisdiction of governments. It is our function to keep in view and to command the movement of ideas which are not the effect but the cause of public events." In accordance with the principle thus enunciated, Lord Acton devoted the first lecture of his first great course on the French Revolution entirely to the intellectual movements of the eighteenth century, out of which he held the Revolution arose. The intense intellectualism, or even spiritualism, of Lord Acton (which had its parallel in the strong emphasis laid upon religion as a force in history by Döllinger in Germany) itself led to a reaction. The economic or materialistic conception of history was expounded and maintained by the school of Marxian socialists. The dominant influence of the subconscious and irrational impulses of human nature and of organised society was proclaimed by a powerful school of social-psychologists, led by Karl Lamprecht of Leipzig. At the present day, however, the more thoughtful and philosophical historians are recognising that no single factor can explain the multifarious phenomena of human society; that character and circumstances both play their part; that neither free-will nor determinism expresses the whole truth respecting the source of man's actions; that both ideas and irrational impulses, both soul and body, are ultimate realities, none of which can be explained in terms of the other.

Widely, however, as nineteenth century historians differed in their conception of history, they all found their work unified and vitalised by the great principle of evolution which reached them from the realms of science and philosophy.

The idea of evolution—the master key to nineteenth century thought —was not by any means a new one. The conception of a process of gradual unfolding or development, as opposed to a succession of catastrophic and unrelated creations, was as old as Aristotle himself: it was, indeed, one of the numerous features that distinguished the philosophy of Aristotle from that of his great predecessor, Plato. But the conception lacked verification in natural science as known to the ancients, and it remained a mere speculation. It persisted until the dawn of the middle ages in the pantheistic system of the Stoics, but then for a thousand years it was submerged by the trancendentalism of Augustine and his school. It reemerged, like so many other classical ideas, at the time of the Renaissance, its first clear foreshadower being Giordano Bruno, who, for his numerous errors of judgment, was burned alive at Rome in A.D. 1600. From that time onward it was never wholly absent from European thought, among those whose works showed traces of its presence and influence being Spinoza, Locke, Vico (*facile princeps*), Leibniz, and Lessing. Not, however, till the end of the eighteenth century and the beginning of the nineteenth, when the lead in philosophy passed successively to Kant, Schelling, and Hegel, did the evolutionary idea assume its dominant position.

To Hegel it became the key to world-history. He saw the whole process of the political development of the human race as a gradual realisation of the idea of freedom. The evolutionary conception of history, indeed, became characteristic of the Romantics as a body. It entirely fitted in with their desire to rehabilitate the middle ages. For it enabled them to argue that it was absurd to regard, as the Rationalists did, the whole period from Constantine to Columbus as a mere empty chasm separating two kindred ages of enlightenment; but that, on the contrary, it was necessary to perceive beneath the surface of things one continuous purpose slowly working itself out in this and every age. The evolutionary idea, thus adopted by philosophers and historians, was taken over by thinkers in many other fields of investigation, *e.g.*, by reactionary theologians who found in the theory of "the development of Christian doctrine" an excellent weapon with which to repel the attacks of evangelicals who contended that complete and final truth was revealed in the New Testament. In the hands of Herbert Spencer it became the fundamental principle of a comprehensive system of thought by means of which an explanation was to be found of the processes whereby all existing phenomena had come to be what they were. Not, however, until the works of Lyell in geology and Darwin in biology displayed the actual modes in which development had taken place in the making of the world and in the formation of species did the evolutionary doctrine fully establish itself as the key-idea of the century.

The doctrine of evolution converted every branch of exact knowledge into a science. All the phenomena of nature, of human nature, of society, and of religion, had to be re-investigated in order to discover the way in which they had acquired their existing characteristics. Since unvarying "law"—that is an unbroken sequence of cause and effect—marked all the processes in which evolution could actually be traced, it was assumed that, if only men were clever enough, they could discover the same sort of "laws" in every sphere of investigation. This conviction was succinctly expressed by John Stuart Mill: "All phenomena without exception," he said, "are governed by invariable laws, with which no volitions, either natural or supernatural, interfere."[1] In accordance with this view, the main object of Mill's life came to be to discover the changeless "laws" of man's moral and social evolution. The purpose of his *Logic* (1843) was to formulate the method of enquiry proper to the sciences of man. And the reason why he turned next to *Political Economy* (1844 and 1848) was because he believed that in the science of man as producer, consumer, and exchanger of wealth, "laws" of the true positive kind could be most readily discerned—"laws" such as the "law of diminishing returns," the Malthusian "law of population," or the Ricardian "law of rent."

[1] *Auguste Comte and Positivism*, 2nd Ed. p. 12. Mill's statement is open to criticism, *e.g.*, (1) The word "govern" is inappropriate; natural laws are not commands but merely generalisations; (2) For the word "invariable" the word "unvarying" should obviously be substituted; (3) Volitions, whether natural or supernatural, are among the phenomena which science is called upon to explain; in so far as they exist and operate they are not extraneous "interferences" with the course of nature.

In thus seeking to raise, or reduce, the sciences of man to the rank of the physical sciences, Mill was but following the lead of his great French master, Auguste Comte (1798–1857), who with immense erudition and enormous labour had constructed on a naturalistic basis the gigantic structure of the Positive Philosophy. Just as both theology and metaphysics had been banished from the realms of mathematics and astronomy, so, maintained Comte, would they ultimately be banished from the realms of every other science, including sociology. And he set himself to discover the " laws " that would account for the unaccountable vagaries of man, whether in solitude or in community. Comte was not an inductive historian, but a deductive philosopher. He made no serious attempt to survey from the positive point of view the tangled record of man's evolution here on earth. He had, however, an English disciple, Thomas Henry Buckle (1821–1862), who ventured to essay the prodigious task. His *History of Civilisation*—a fragment only of a vast projected work—the fruit of twenty years' intensive reading and concentrated cogitation, appeared during the years 1857–1861. It made a deliberate effort to formulate, particularly on the basis of statistics, a positive science of human association. It was a pretentious effort which, because of its originality of conception, because of its parade of learning, and because of its aggressive challenge to current religious and philosophical opinion, made a considerable sensation at the time of its appearance, giving rise to long and heated controversy. The controversy, of course, raged round the problem of determinism and free-will—the same problem as, according to Milton, occupied the attention of the fallen angels, before the creation of man, so soon as they had recovered from the preliminary shock of finding themselves in hell. Charles Kingsley, recently appointed Regius Professor of History at Cambridge, charged (extremely ineffectually) against Buckle's determinism in his inaugural lecture on *The Limits of Exact Science as Applied to History* (1860). Much abler and more effective was a lecture, entitled *The Science of History*, delivered at the Royal Institution in 1864 by James Anthony Froude—later published in the first volume of his *Short Studies*. But by far the most devastating reply—because the one most free from theological reprobation—was J. G. Droysen's *Erhebung der Geschichte zum Rang einer Wissenschaft* (1862), and his *Grundriss der Historik* (1858). Droysen asks what is the outcome of Buckle's pretentious induction ; what " laws " has he discovered and formulated ? He quotes some of them, and then remarks : " Laws of this sort could be discovered daily by the dozen, in the selfsame way of generalisation ; laws none of which would in depth and fruitfulness be less pregnant than the well-known saying that ' the measure of a people's civilisation is its consumption of soap.' " Finally, as the outcome of this controversy, as we remarked in the opening section of this essay, two important truths emerged, namely, that history differs from the natural sciences in respect both of its methods and its generalisations : (1) As to its methods, it is a science, not of observation or of experiment, but of criticism ; (2) As to its generalisations, since these relate, not to the realm of matter, but to the realm of mind—a realm in which motive and not force is supreme—a realm of consciousness and apparent freedom—they can never have that fixity and universality which are connoted by the term " law."

VI

The demonstration that history could not be elevated or degraded to the rank of a physical science caused some serious questions to be asked respecting its functions, and particularly concerning its place in education. Buckle and his disciples had loudly proclaimed that, except as a positive science, history was entirely worthless either for edification or for guidance. Even idealists had seemed to concur. Principal Caird, for example, in an address on *The Study of History* delivered at the University of Glasgow in 1884 said : " The expediency of introducing the study of history into a university curriculum turns upon the question whether or not history is capable of scientific treatment. Knowledge which has not yet been elevated out of the domain of fact and details, which has not submitted itself to the grasp of principles, or become in some measure illuminated and harmonised by the presence of law, cannot, I suppose, be regarded as a fit instrument of the higher education." Principal Caird then proceeded to consider the problem to what extent and in what sense history could be regarded as a science, and he came to the conclusion that " though history cannot claim to be an exact science in the sense in which we apply the name to mechanics or optics, or even to botany and physiology, yet in its methods and results there is at least something so far analogous to these departments of knowledge as to entitle it to the name of science." And as a science of a sort he considered that history could be used to widen the mental horizon, to train the judgment in impartiality, and to place men and events in their true perspective on the stage of affairs. " It tends," he said, " to give a true conception of what is transient as compared with what is lasting in human life."

Principal Caird's sound and cautious opinion respecting the nature of history as a science won general acceptance. His statement of the uses of history, however, did not secure so wide an approval. Even now there is much divergence of opinion as to the place of history in education, and as to its relation to the practical affairs of men. If events do not repeat themselves ; if generalisations respecting historical phenomena are impossible, of what earthly use is it to study history at all ?

First, as to the place of history in the education of the individual. Here the practical or pragmatical value of the study of history is not at issue. Many subjects that have no obvious application to the business of life are said to have high educational value. They act as mental athletics, developing intellectual capacity. Some pedagogues go so far as to contend that the *only* satisfactory subjects for school and university study are precisely those that can be worked at without any disturbing utilitarian aim. " That education is best," said Mr. T. G. Rooper, " which develops the greatest amount of mental force." Most educationists, however, agree that purposes other than the mere development of intellectual power should be borne in mind : people who are all intellect, and nothing beside intellect, would be extremely dangerous members of society—predestined motor bandits, financiers, commercial magnates, trade-union leaders, politicians. Education should develop a moral control capable of keeping the lawless intellect in check; it should impart a technical skill sufficient to enable a man to earn his own living ; it should train the citizen to perform his functions as voter and administrator in the community to which he belongs.

How far can history be made to subserve any of these general purposes of education? Sir Ray Lankester regarded it as wholly useless. "We should wish," he said in his lectures on *The Kingdom of Man* (1907), "we should wish to see the classical and historical scheme of education entirely abandoned, and its place taken by a scheme of education in the knowledge of nature." He admitted, however, that "to read history is a pleasant occupation," and that history has its worth "as an entertainment." On the other hand, writers like MM. Langlois and Seignobos in France, Herr Bernheim in Germany, and Professor J. W. Allen in England, contend that it is an invaluable instrument of intellectual training. "The study of history," says Professor Allen, "is capable of stimulating, of widening, and of assisting thought in many ways." He deprecates, however, any attempt to use it for emotional, ethical, or political ends. Other eminent men, however, among whom Lord Bolingbroke, Bishop Stubbs, and Mr. Froude stand prominent, consider that it is exactly the moral instructiveness of history that makes it educationally valuable. Says Bolingbroke, for example, "The study of history seems to me, of all other, the most proper to train up to private and public virtue." Few nowadays would contend that it should be employed as a vehicle for the conveyance of extraneous moral lessons; but fewer still would deny that its study widens the mental horizon, tends to elevate the character by bringing the student into contact with the great and the high, arouses the sympathetic imagination, shows the connection between the moral quality of action and the fate of the actor, and, as Lamprecht remarks, inspires the reader with "awe at the prodigious manysidedness and endless significance of human activities." To R. W. Emerson the function of history is loftier still. To him there is an exact parallel between the life of the individual and the history of the race. Man is the microcosm, Humanity the macrocosm. Hence in the study of history the individual can discover the secret of his own personality. The ages instruct the hours, and the hours the ages. On the one hand, all history is implicit in the individual mind; on the other hand, the character and destiny of every man are explicit in history. It must be admitted that Emerson gets very near to the margin of nonsense. It is true, however, to say that a knowledge of history, as a synthesis of events, is necessary to anyone who would have a complete and balanced conception of the world as a whole. It alone can place the phenomena of the present in their proper perspective; it alone can portray the field of life in its entirety; it alone can enable the traveller who takes "his one day's rest" in the mysterious Tent of being to survey his strange surroundings *sub specie perennitatis*.

Secondly, as to the function of history in civic education and in public life? Is a knowledge of history of any really practical use? What are its relations with politics? That the rulers of most states consider the teaching of history important is indicated by the care with which they censor the text-books used in the schools, and attempt to tune the teachers. A report presented to the London County Council shortly before the War remarked that "in France the teacher is told to preach national republicanism as against monarchy and internationalism. In Prussia still more definitely he is told to preach the advantages of monarchy, as exemplified in the reigning house of Hohenzollern, and the danger of modern

socialism. On the other hand, in Queensland he has to found all his history-teaching upon the doctrine of the sanctity of state property." The experiences of the past twenty years have perhaps done something to shake the faith of politicians in the efficacy of propaganda in schools. Nevertheless, even though war and revolution have run their courses, we still see Germany continuing to tune her teachers, although now to the new melody of federal republicanism; we see the Soviet Government in Russia subordinating every element in the curriculum of both schools and universities to the inculcation of Bolshevism; we see Italy making Fascism the keynote of all its history teaching. Perhaps in course of time politicians will come to learn that nothing is so likely to defeat its own ends as propaganda in schools. The things that students love least are those things that have been drilled into them by pedagogues; and the dogmas that, as they grow older, they are most disposed to doubt are precisely those which have been impressed upon them in their infancy by irresistible authority. This is a lesson which might with advantage be borne in mind by a number of worthy people in all countries who are eager to secure the aid of educational authorities in their endeavour to use the history teachers in the public schools as missionaries for pacificism, cosmopolitanism, and other causes which they consider to be good.

If then history should not be used, and if, as is probable, it cannot effectively be used, as a means of propaganda, what service may it be made to render to civic and political education? A good general answer is provided by Professor Seeley in his lecture on *The Teaching of Politics* (1869). "History," he says, "is the school of statesmanship. Without at least a little knowledge of history, no man can take a rational interest in politics, and no man can form a rational judgment about them without a good deal. It is an important study to every citizen; it is the one important study to the legislator and ruler." If we ask more precisely wherein consists this civic and political value on which Professor Seeley so strongly insists, I think the answer will be a threefold one. History serves, first, as a school of political method; secondly, as a storehouse of political precedent; and, finally, as the basis of political progress.

(1) *History as a School of Political Method.* It is true, although not the whole truth, that history is past politics, and politics present history. The subject matter of the two is the same. Both of them deal with indeterminate facts, and both seek to discover behind the doubtful veil of facts the hidden spring of motive. They are socio-psychological sciences which treat not of the definite and regular phenomena of inanimate nature, but of the incalculable movements of peoples and the workings of the corporate mind. Both the politician and the historian have to argue from uncertain data; neither can ever attain to any nearer approach to truth than probability. One of the first lessons that the historian learns when he begins his investigations into the course of any movement of events is the extreme and even insuperable difficulty of arriving at the ultimate and indisputable truth. Examples of this difficulty abound; but perhaps the following illustration taken from very recent happenings may suffice. When Mr. Lloyd George was prime minister, Messrs. Krassin and Kameneff, envoys of the Soviet Government, visited the House of

Commons to hear his speech on Poland. These are the reports of eye-witnesses from the four London evening papers published the same day :

"Evening Standard"	"Star"	"Evening News"	"Pall Mall Gazette"
"In conversation they seemed to betray only a limited acquaintance with English; but every word of Mr. Lloyd George's utterance seemed intelligible to them. Not only did they follow him with eager interest, but often with animated comment."	"Krassin could follow every word of Lloyd George. His colleague does not speak or understand English; so Krassin every few minutes leaned over and whispered a translation into the other's ear."	"The two did not exchange a single remark during the whole of the Premier's speech."	"The Soviet envoys, especially M. Krassin, seemed somewhat restless, and appeared to take more interest in the scene than in the speech, but this I heard attributed to their difficulty in following the words of the Prime Minister."

It will be seen that in these first-hand records of the event under review there is an irreconcilable conflict of testimony, first, as to whether M. Krassin could or could not follow Mr. Lloyd George's speech with ease; secondly, as to whether M. Kameneff could or could not understand the speech at all; thirdly, as to whether or not either of them was interested in the speech; and finally, as to whether or not they spoke to one another during the course of the speech. Who shall say, in the presence of these four eye-witnesses, what was the truth of the matter? And this is only an extreme example of what is the case with every historic event. It is *never* possible to say with certainty of any occurrence whatsoever *wie es eigentlich gewesen ist*. Similarly in politics nothing is positive. The mind of the publicist is the field of a constant conflict of improbabilities; he is perpetually called upon to weigh and measure rival uncertainties. The only important difference, indeed, between history and politics is that the one is cold and the other is hot. But this difference is vital: for just because it is possible to handle the problems of past politics—say the politics of Periclean Athens or Augustan Rome—with coolness and detachment, the study of history is so valuable a school of method. For history teaches caution, impartiality, charity; it gives a sense of the complexity and uncertainty of socio-psychological phenomena; it provides practice in the subtle art of arguing from external acts to internal motives and ideas.

(2) *History as a Storehouse of Political Precedent*. History is more than a school of political method; it is a storehouse of political precedent. The problems which face the present generation have in one form or another come up for solution many times before. It is true that history does not repeat itself. It is true, indeed, that it cannot be made to repeat itself; for every event which occurs adds something to the environment of every subsequent event and is a factor in its causation: so that the mere fact that a thing has happened once presents an insuperable barrier to its ever happening again. But the same is true in individual life. No person ever finds himself twice in precisely the same situation, nor can anyone discover unvarying sequences of cause and effect in the relations between himself and his fellows; yet, notwithstanding this, every man in his mature years is guided and governed by his experiences as recorded in his

memory, and by the principles of conduct which his judgment has derived from them. As with the individual, so with the race ; but subject to this important difference—that the race lacks the personality, that continuity of self-consciousness which marks the individual. It has no natural memory, and in order that it may not lose the vast accumulated wealth of the experiences of the past, a memory has to be created for it. That race-memory is history. Through history mankind attains to self-consciousness. As Droysen says : *die Geschichte ist das* γνῶθι σαυτόν *der Menschheit, ihr Gewissen* (History is the *know thyself* of mankind, its conscience). By means of this self-consciousness humanity is able to become to a degree otherwise wholly impossible the master of its fate ; it is able to control its destiny, and to move deliberately forward on the pathway of progress.

It is neither possible nor necessary to give here many examples of the way in which one generation has learned from the experiences of its predecessors. In a sense all historiography is an exposition of this theme. The following may perhaps suffice. Elective monarchy has much to commend it on theoretical grounds ; yet it has been removed from the sphere of practical politics by the experiences of imperial Rome, mediæval Germany, and modern Poland. Again, the old " mercantile system " of colonial policy is capable of very powerful defence on general principles ; yet the revolt of the American Colonies has rendered its revival in the British Empire for ever inconceivable. In other cases precedent is not so conclusive ; but it always deserves attention. For instance, no discussion of the merits and defects of single-chamber government can be regarded as adequate if it ignores the experiments of the English Commonwealth and the French Revolution. Similarly, no advocacy of the abstract " right to work " can be considered satisfactory unless it explains away as due to accidental circumstances the ghastly results of the recognition of the right in Paris, 1848. Nothing, indeed, can be alike more futile or more dangerous than to treat politics as though it were an abstract science, divorced from the lessons of historic experience. Well says David Hume : " If we consider the shortness of human life, and our limited knowledge even of what passes in our own time, we must be sensible that we should be for ever children in understanding were it not for this invention which extends our experience to all ages past, and to the most distant nations, making them contribute as much to our improvement in wisdom as if they had actually lain under our observation. A man acquainted with history may, in some respect, be said to have lived from the beginning of the world, and to have been making continual additions to his stock of knowledge in every country."

(3) *History as a Basis for Political Progress.* History does more than supply the politician with precedents of completed experiments. It gives him the actual antecedents of present-day problems. Next to the danger of treating political questions in the abstract, as though they had no antecedents at all, nothing is so fatal as the error of supposing that those antecedents can be ignored in any settlement that aspires to permanence. The failure of the English Puritans in the seventeenth century to establish their régime, and the failure of the French Revolutionists in the eighteenth century to maintain their institutions, was in each case due

largely to the disregard of historic continuity. In each case, fired by zeal and inspired by novel ideas, the reformers broke too completely with the past. Ignoring the fact that the state is organic in its nature, they threatened its life by their drastic surgical operations. Hence in each case the patient rose in horror and in terror, and drove them out.

All the great political and social questions of the present day have long histories. In Europe, for instance, the English poor law problem, as set forth in the Report of 1909, is essentially the question whether England shall revert to the principles of 1834, of 1795, or of 1601. Again, the English franchise problem takes us back through the Reform Acts to the days of Edward I and Simon de Montfort. The English constitutional problem, too, has its roots far away in the folk-moots of the primitive Germanic peoples. Similarly, the Eastern Question is but a phase of that perennial conflict between Asia and Europe which was incalculably old even when the Greeks met the Persians at Marathon. And the Simon Report of 1930 has shown what a close and intimate study of Indian history is necessary to anyone who attempts to deal with the modern question of Indian self-government. In fact, the consideration of every great European problem that is now in the forefront of practical politics confirms the words of Sir John Seeley already quoted—History " is an important study to every citizen ; it is the one important study to the legislator and ruler."

The same truth is emphasised by a survey of the problem prominent in America. The fundamental controversy between the federal government and the state governments has, in order to be fully understood, to be traced back to the old colonial days when the central authority was located in Great Britain and when each of the thirteen colonies was wholly independent of all the others. Similarly, the question of the social and political position of the negro goes back to the days of mercantilism, when a profitable slave-trade supplied America with a cheap labour the mode of whose procurement caused no shock to the Puritan conscience. Some peculiarly American problems, such as the prohibition problem, seem at first sight to be new. Nevertheless, even these, though in appearance novel, are in substance old. The prohibition problem, for example, is but a manifestation of the constantly-recurring clash between liberty and authority—liberty capable of doing wrong and authority determined to enforce the right—which originally presented itself for solution in the Garden of Eden.

VII

For convenience' sake in the last section the word " politics " has been used as the antithesis to " history "—an antithesis corresponding to that between " present " and " past." To avoid misunderstanding, however, it is desirable to explain that the word is used in no narrow or restricted sense. It is intended to apply to, and include, the interests and concerns not merely of the state but of every other form of public human organisation. To make this clear is all the more necessary because, as has already been mentioned, some of the older historians limited themselves rather rigidly to the affairs of government—that is, to wars, to diplomacy, to legislation, to official administration, to judicial proceedings. Thucydides,

perhaps, set an evil precedent by the complete concentration of his attention upon Hellenic state affairs, to the entire exclusion of the rich cultural activities and acute economic crisis that marked Athenian and Spartan history in his day. Certainly in the nineteenth century the influence and example of the great Leopold von Ranke tended to keep historiography on narrow political lines. In England, Freeman and Seeley were historical politicians of the straitest sort.

But more and more as the century advanced were the barriers that restricted historical investigation broken down, until it is generally recognised nowadays that nothing is " beneath the dignity " of history's notice or outside the scope of its ken ; and that all the doings and sufferings of mankind in every walk of life are proper subjects for the historian's investigation. Nay, more ; it is realised and asserted that unless historians do, as a matter of fact, take this extended and all-comprehensive view, they are bound to present a distorted picture of whatever age they may profess to portray. In short, it is perceived that history is not an isolated subject of study, but is one of a group of kindred studies which together make up a general " science of society "—a science foreshadowed by the analytical genius of Comte in France, and by the synthetical ability of Spencer in England ; a science to which, in order to show their contempt of the old classical tradition, its founders attached the hybrid name of " sociology." Few teachers of history in the nineteenth century did more to spread the conception of history as a branch of sociology, or to strengthen the links which bound history to the other branches of the science of society, than did Karl Lamprecht of Leipzig, from whose famous *seminar* zealous sociological historians swarmed over the civilised world. Unfortunately, they carried with them not only Lamprecht's large conception and admirable methods, but also some of the bees which he harboured in his hospitable bonnet—in particular his preposterous and procrustean " culture-epoch " theory.

Among the sociological studies with which history is now closely affiliated none is more important than economics. Although the exaggerated dogma of the exclusively economic interpretation of history which Marx and Engels formulated has been abandoned by all responsible thinkers, historians recognise that economic factors have played a prominent part in all epochs of the world's social evolution, and particularly in those early epochs when man had to wage a ceaseless struggle for existence against natural enemies almost as powerful as himself. All politicians, moreover, realise that once again economic problems have come to the forefront of human interests. Hence at the moment economic history takes precedence of all other branches in the public attention.

A second ally of the new historiography is geography. No subject has been so completely revolutionised and transformed in recent years as geography. It also has been brought within the ambit of sociology and so humanised. It is no longer regarded as the science of the earth, primarily associated with geology, but rather, as the science of man conceived of in relation to space, having its main connections with history, the science of man conceived of in relation to time. Hence historical geography has been developed, to the immense advantage of scholarship. Of course, some historical geographers, fired with the zeal of young explorers, have gone too

far. When, for example, one of them explains religion purely by means of climate, and says that " monotheism is the product of the desert," we realise that we are in face of an absurdity of the same sort as we meet in the Marxian assertion that the Reformation was the product of bourgeois capitalism. Excessive claims of this kind, however, are soon reduced to reasonable limits by the attrition of criticism.

Further allies of history at the moment are anthropology and archæology.[1] No influence has been more powerful than that of anthropology in impressing upon historians the profoundly important truth of the essential unity of the human race. Archæology, for its part, has extended inconceivably the historian's conception of the immensity of the periods of time during which human society has been developing. The vast " prehistoric " (that is unrecorded) epochs have been revealed, and in a marvellous manner explored. So lately as the close of the nineteenth century chronologies were published and believed that placed the creation of the universe in 4004 B.C. and comprised the whole course of human history within a span of less than six thousand years. Archæology dates the Piltdown man at 100,000 B.C.; the Heidelberg man at 250,000 B.C.; and the Java ape-man at 500,000 B.C. It hints, moreover, that these are by no means likely to be the limits of its revelations. But not only has archæology opened up new realms of knowledge respecting palæolithic and neolithic man; it has also, by means of its discoveries of relics of the extinct civilisations of Egypt, Babylonia, Crete, and Asia Minor, added vivid chapters to our cognisance of ancient history.

Two significant results of these revelations of anthropology and archæology have been, on the one hand, the critical revision of the whole Biblical story of the creation and fall of man, together with an illuminating reconstruction of the records of the early doings of Israel; and, on the other hand, the complete abandonment of all the older attempts—from Augustine's to Hegel's—to formulate a philosophy of history. In short, history has ceased to concern itself with *a priori* speculations as to the purpose for which the world and man were created, or as to the inherent metaphysical ideas which the time-process is making explicit, and it has placed itself in line with the other sciences which are endeavouring to explain to the human mind the meaning of things as they are.

[1] For the importance of anthropology and archæology as aids to historical study, see the Articles on *The Beginnings of Morals and Culture* and *The Achievements of Archæology*.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

(*In chronological order*)

T. H. BUCKLE : *History of Civilisation* (London. 1857–1866)

J. G. DROYSEN : *Grundriss der Historik* (Jena. 1858)

G. KINGSLEY : *The Limits of Exact Science as applied to History* (Cambridge 1860)

J. G. DROYSEN : *Erhebung der Geschichte zum Rang einer Wissenschaft* (Leipzig. 1862)
J. A. FROUDE : *The Science of History* (London. 1864)
J. CAIRD : *The Science of History* (Glasgow. 1886)
W. STUBBS : *Seventeen Lectures on the Study of History* (Oxford. 1886)
R. FLINT : *History of the Philosophy of History* (Edinburgh. 1893)
E. BERNHEIM : *Lehrbuch der historischen Methode* (Leipzig. 1894)
C. V. LANGLOIS et C. SEIGNOBOS : *Introduction aux Etudes Historiques* (Paris. 1898)
J. B. BURY : *Inaugural Lecture on History* (Cambridge. 1903)
P. VILLARI : *Discussioni critiche e discorsi* (Milan. 1905)
F. J. TEGGART : *Prolegomena to History* (Berkeley. 1916)
B. CROCE : *Teoria e Storia della Storiografia* (Bari. 1920)
J. H. ROBINSON : *The New History* (New York. 1927)
M. M. CHATERJI : *History as a Science* (London. 1927)
H. SÉE : *Science et Philosophie de l'Histoire* (Paris. 1928)
LUCY M. SALMON : *Why is History Rewritten ?* (New York. 1929)

MODERN GEOGRAPHICAL IDEAS

By

L. DUDLEY STAMP

SYNOPSIS

Modern geography entirely changed in the present century — The old geography merely descriptive, the new seeks to search out cause and effect — The disappearance of the gazetteer type of geographical text-book — Modern geography essentially the study of human environment : the world as the home of man — The chief factors of the environment : topography, structure, climate, vegetation and animal life ; their influence on man and his reciprocal influence — The major climatic regions of the world : equatorial, tropical, monsoon, hot desert, mediterranean, warm temperate, cool temperate, temperate continental, east coast, temperate desert, cold temperate, arctic ; each considered in relation to natural resources, economic development and the life of man — World geography and international relations : the inevitable dependence of the United States, Canada and Russia on outside supplies of tropical products — Maldistribution of population : the problems of Japan and China — The explanation of Franco-Italian rivalry — Barriers and frontiers — Geography and nationality : the systematic study of a country or region — The siting of towns : London, New York and St. Louis — Conclusion : the modern world geographically minded.

MODERN GEOGRAPHICAL IDEAS

I. INTRODUCTION

Geography has been described as at once an art, a science and a philosophy. Such a description may well carry its own condemnation : how can a subject whose field is so broad have any depth, or any concrete form and expression ? Does it not indicate that the so-called " subject " of geography is merely the common meeting-ground of such sciences as geology, physiography, meteorology, ecology and economics, and that its entity is imaginary rather than real ? Similarly, if geography is regarded merely as " writing about the earth " (Gk. γῆ, the earth ; γράφειν, to write) and synonymous with a description of exploration or travel, is it not true that geography must automatically come to an end as the continents become entirely explored and known ?

To answer these two questions it is necessary to attempt to disentangle the modern point of view from the discarded axioms of a subject which has had a varied career for more than two thousand years, since Aristotle, or perhaps Eratosthenes, first used the name. Aristotle, in the fourth century B.C., must be given the credit of being the founder of scientific geography. He demonstrated the spherical form of the earth (the size of which was later calculated by Eratosthenes) and realised that the then known habitable world only occupied a portion of its surface. If Aristotle was the founder of mathematical geography, Strabo (50 B.C.–A.D. 24) was the founder of regional or political geography, and in his descriptions of the countries surrounding the Mediterranean Sea anticipated some of the concepts of the human geographers of the nineteenth century. The Middle Ages, with the literal interpretation of Scripture, saw the death of scientific geography in Christendom, if not in Islam. But the voyages of Marco Polo did much to re-create interest in the scientific conceptions of Aristotle and Ptolemy, Homer and Herodotus. The voyages of Columbus and the Great Age of Discovery show the *faith* in the old resuscitated ideas ; the geographer (under the title of cosmographer) became a personality whose opinions were sought and valued in the highest circles. The return to England in 1547 of John Dee—mathematician, astrologer and cosmographer—with the globes of the Renaissance geographers of Louvain, coincides with the beginning in England of serious participation in the exploration of America.

A scientific geography, concerning itself with the recognition, characters and classification of regions, was conceived in the seventeenth century by a German geographer, Bernhard Varenius, whose original work (1659) was reissued under the influence of Sir Isaac Newton at Cambridge in 1672.

Later, the extension of exploration in the Georgian and Victorian eras necessitated the setting down of innumerable facts of discovery

and the production of almost equally numerous maps and charts to illustrate these discoveries. In the words of the old text-book definition geography became " a description of the world and its inhabitants." The orderly catalogues of the facts to be recorded produced admirable gazetteers : it is significant of the gazetteer age that the voluminous and detailed description of the great Indian Empire was christened the *Gazetteer of India*. The gazetteers had to be condensed and summarised to produce text-books. So it came about that the science of geography died, and there arose in its stead a monstrosity pouring forth a torrent of words, loathed above all other deities by the average schoolboy, despised and condemned by the adult. The writer's earliest recollection of the worship of this monstrous deity is the recitation of a creed which commenced : " Northumberland, Newcastle on the Tyne ; Durham, Durham on the Wear ; Cumberland, Carlisle on the Eden ; Westmorland, Appleby on the Eden ; Lancashire, Lancaster on the Lune ; Yorkshire, York on the Ouse." The text-book led off, accompanied by the most wonderful variations in type, with the remark that " ENGLAND (*that is* the *land* of the *Angles*) is the *Southern* portion of Great Britain. Its greatest LENGTH is 420 miles, BREADTH 360 miles, and AREA over 58,000 square miles."

Unfortunately, this old Geography is scarcely yet dead. After all, it is the type of learning which passed under the name of Geography in the schooldays of many who will read these lines ; for it was not until the early years of the present century that Modern Geographical Ideas penetrated into America and into England, and not until later that the Modern Geography began to be taught in the schools and to be embodied in text-books.

In 1905 Andrew John Herbertson, Professor of Geography in the University of Oxford, published his *Major Natural Regions : an Essay in Systematic Geography* (*Geographical Journal*, vol. xxv., p. 300); in 1902 Sir Halford Mackinder, then Director of the London School of Economics and afterwards Reader in Geography in the University of London, had published his *Britain and the British Seas*, in the series of the " Regions of the World " under his editorship. The development of Modern Geography may be said to date in Britain from these two publications, and it is not too much to say that within the last twenty-five years no subject has changed so completely and fundamentally in its outlook and methods. In America Ellen Churchill Semple's *American History and its Geographic Conditions* (1903) provides a corresponding date. The catalogues of facts which formed the fundamental part of the old Geography were capable, it is true, of study with the object of determining underlying causes. But such study was for the few, and although one may say that the method of the old Geography was to work from effect to cause, the normal student rarely penetrated beyond the catalogue of effects. With the dawn of the new Geography it came to be realised that a limited number of causes, capable of detailed study, were in the main responsible for the multitude of otherwise unrelated facts. So the method of study of Modern Geography is to search out causes, and to work in a logical sequence from cause to effect. Hence the descriptive term often used of " causal geography "—perhaps unfortunate because of the ease with which it can be misread as " casual geography."

New wine is apt to go the heads of earnest pioneer missionaries, and the new Geography soon made enemies—as readily as it made converts, for there is no denying that many early exponents went too far. Whilst this is not true of the pioneers in Britain—Herbertson and Mackinder—it is a criticism which can be levelled against the school of Ratzel in Germany. Ratzel insisted on the control of human activities by natural conditions, on the permanency of those conditions and the strictness of the limitations they impose ; in other words, human development along certain lines is inevitable given a certain set of physical conditions in the environment. Some of Ratzel's followers, especially in France, went so far as to agree with Demolins that if history were to begin all over again, it must in all essentials follow the same lines, given the same setting of the natural stage. This school of " Determinism " insisted on the absolute " geographical control " exercised by the newly studied geographical factors.

The great French geographer Vidal de la Blache did not fall into this error, but recognised the creative power of human beings to exercise a reciprocal control or influence on their environment, to adapt themselves to natural circumstances, deliberately to attempt the moulding and even reshaping of their environment. Thus "geographical control " becomes modified, by the conception of a reciprocal control, to one of " geographical influence."

We are now in a position to answer the two questions postulated at the beginning of this article. To take the second one first : the completion of the exploration of the world and the collection of adequate data is only the beginning of modern scientific Geography. Analysis of the recorded facts must precede any attempt to make a synthetic study of the factors of the environment which have exercised a dominant influence on the development of a tract and its inhabitants, and will continue to influence development in the future. This brings us naturally to the answer to the first question. Geography is the study of the world as the home of man—of the physical environment of the human species. No other science is concerned with that human environment as such : the geologist may study the rocks of the earth crust ; the meteorologist may concern himself with the climate and weather ; the botanist with the plant life and the zoologist with animal life. The geographer requires just so much of the results of each of those sciences as may enable him to appreciate, as a living concrete whole, the stage whereon man is required to live his life and play his part.

II. THE GEOGRAPHICAL FACTORS

We have attempted to show that the modern geographer is concerned primarily with the study of the earth as the home of man. His first task is to disentangle the factors which go to the making up of that environment and to trace the influence exerted by each severally, as well as by the whole collectively, on the life and activities of man.

Topography or Physical Features

Switzerland, as all the world knows, is a mountainous country. No effort of man can ever remove those mountains and substitute for them a

flat plain. Similarly, if a country is flat no effort of man will provide it with chains of mountains. It is obvious, therefore, that the topography or physical geography of a country must play a permanent and leading part. Both the mountainous regions of North Wales and the lowlands of East Anglia are primarily farming countries; the relative sparseness of the farming population in the former, contrasted with the denser and well-distributed farming population of the latter, is essentially the result of the difference in topography. Comparable examples may be drawn from almost any part of the world. Even in the most densely populated country which the world knows at the present time—China—it is the flat land and valleys which teem with people, the intervening mountains which remain rugged and bare and almost uninhabited. It is significant of the modern appreciation of the paramount importance of this factor, that our present-day maps and atlases are nearly all topographical or physical maps. In the post-War *magnum opus* of the famous map-making firm of Bartholomew, *The Times Survey Atlas of the World*, the majority of the maps are layer coloured, so that they show at a glance the physical features of each country : the lowlands in green, the intervening areas and low plateaus in pale brown, the mountains in dark brown and increasingly dark colours. With this we may contrast any one of the old atlases, where colour is used to distinguish the various political units, and mountains are shown incidentally as caterpillars crawling uncertainly about the face of the map. It must be noted that the physical map does not replace the political map, as political boundaries can be clearly shown on top of the representation of physical features. One is thereby enabled to see at a glance how far boundaries between countries have been determined by physical features, and how far they are purely artificial in that they run in straight lines across featureless country. Thus Poland stands out as an irregularly-shaped fragment of the north European plain, with no clear features to separate it from Germany on the one hand or Russia on the other. By way of contrast the formidable Pyrenees form the natural boundary between France and Spain, cutting off the whole Iberian Peninsula from the rest of Europe.

The physical map, also, by showing clearly such features as river basins, may go far to suggest what may best be termed the " outlook " of the people. So often do rivers act as highways of trade and of culture that they link together the riverine peoples and the peoples of the basin as a whole. On the other hand, peoples who are separated by a natural barrier such as a range of mountains, tend to have entirely different outlooks and ways of thought. Thus the people of Burma are in the main the people of the basin of the Irrawaddy : the heart of the basin and the fertile lowlands are inhabited by Burmans ; the tangled masses of hills which surround the basin are occupied by allied hill tribes. But, except indirectly by sea, there is really no contact—racially, culturally or economically—with the peoples living on the other side of the wall of mountains which separates the province of Burma from India proper. It frequently happens, as in this case, that the mountainous belt is itself inhabited by people alien to the plain-dwellers on either side.

Just as easily as we refer to the physical features on the physical map of a large country, we refer to the topography on the topographical maps

of smaller tracts. For the function of the topographical map is similar. From the detailed topography of small areas we can comprehend the direction taken by main roads and railways and the way in which the meeting-places of such natural routes are marked by the presence of towns or villages. It is often possible to see from such a map the reasons for the location even of single habitations. So important is the topographical map that there is perhaps a danger of over-emphasising it. It is the culmination of the labours of the surveyor, but is only one of the aspects of a country which must be considered by the geographer. Thus the surveyor and the explorer, however exacting and however precise their work, are not necessarily geographers.

We have referred above to the reciprocal influence exerted by man on the features of his environment. Man's influence on the physical features and topography of the earth's surface is but comparatively small. It is true that he may modify or even nullify the effects of such barriers as mountains by cutting through them with a railway tunnel. Especially in urban areas he may do much to mask the original topographical features of the ground, though even in extreme cases the influence is comparatively slight. Two thousand years of building have not hidden the existence of a hill in the heart of London, now crowned by St. Paul's Cathedral, which formed at least one reason for the existence of the early London.

Of somewhat greater significance is man's activity in the reclamation of land : the conversion of the mediæval Fenland round the Wash in England into the fertile, argricultural land which it is to-day, is really an example of this character. And at the present time there is the ambitious project of the Dutch for reclaiming the greater part of the shallow Zuyder Zee. The existence of this reciprocal influence, however, does not mask in any way the real importance and significance of the topography or physical features of a country—the first aspect which it is really the duty of the geographer to consider.

Geological Structure

The surface topography of a country is really only the reflection of its underlying geological structure. Logically one should take structure first, but topography is a matter of observation, structure a matter of subsurface investigation combined with surface investigation and the interpretation of the results—an interpretation which may vary according to the worker. Hence, in many areas the interpretation of the underlying geological structure is still a matter of conjecture. But only a small portion of the field of the geologist is also the concern of the geographer. The underlying structure, in so far as it determines the character of the land surface, is obviously important, and at the present day forms a subject of its own known as geomorphology. The geographer, together with the geologist, is also concerned with the agents of denudation which shape the surface and are responsible for the continual changes which are taking place. The geographer is not concerned with the study of the rocks of the earth's crust as such—that is the field of the petrologist ; but he is concerned with the classification of rocks in so far as they affect the character and land forms of the earth's surface, and particularly in so far as

they concern the distribution of the useful minerals which have such an attraction for modern man.

From the geographer's point of view it is possible to distinguish four very broad groups of rocks, or, one should say rather, geomorphological major regions. These are as follows :

(*a*) Areas of old, hard rocks, resistant to denudation, which give rise to great plateaus, and, because of the resistant character of the rock, usually furnish rather poor soil. The rocks themselves may be either crystalline (metamorphic), or may merely be old and hardened sediments. The exact geological age is scarcely a matter of real importance to the geographer ; so that the geological map which distinguishes Cambrian from Ordovician is less important than one which distinguishes the lithological character of the rocks themselves, *i.e.* which separates tracts of hard crystalline rocks from relatively soft sandstones. Amongst the major plateau regions of the earth's surface, composed of ancient metamorphic or other rocks, may be mentioned the Brazilian plateau and the Guiana Highlands in South America, the greater part of Africa except the north, the great plateau of Arabia, the great plateau of Peninsular India, considerable portions of Indo-China, the great plateau which makes up the western two-thirds of Australia, the great plateau of central Siberia, and Scandinavia. With the latter may be linked the Highlands of Scotland and north-western Ireland.

(*b*) Areas of ancient rocks which, in the course of long ages of denudation, have been worn down almost to sea-level. Among such areas may be mentioned the Laurentian Shield of Canada, a vast tract occupying nearly two million square miles, a second area being the great Russian platform which underlies the greater part of Russia in Europe, and which comes to the surface round the borders in, for example, Finland.

(*c*) Areas of young, soft rocks, which usually give rise to lowlands or plains, and which tend to furnish a soil, as well as a topography, suitable for agriculture. The great alluvial plains of the world form a subdivision of this group. Amongst such major regions of young soft rocks may be mentioned the Central Plains of North America ; the Orinoco, Amazon and Paraguay plains in South America ; the North European Plain, which occupies the greater part of the north of the mainland of Europe ; the great lowland of western Siberia ; the great river plains of the Tigris, the Euphrates, the Indus, the Ganges and Brahmaputra, and the rivers of China ; as well as the central lowlands of Australia.

(*d*) The great folded mountain chains of the world are composed usually of highly-folded sedimentary rocks ; many of these chains arose in the last great period of mountain-building movements, the period of the middle Tertiary, when there appeared the Alps, the Himalayas, the Rockies and the Andes. The Tertiary was the last of the three great periods of time distinguished by geologists; it was the period when mammals established their supremacy and the ancestors of man himself made their first appearance.

The metalliferous minerals tend to be associated with the areas of ancient rocks, but rarely with the areas of young, soft, sedimentary rocks, and not very abundantly, except locally, with the young folded mountains. Iron and some of the ores which occur in alluvial deposits form

exceptions to this rule, whilst the non-metallic minerals, foremost amongst which are coal and oil, occur of course in sedimentary rocks. Turning to the direct influence of the structural geology on the activities of man, it may be pointed out that man is quite incapable of placing a coalfield where a coalfield has not already been placed by nature, or of discovering any new metalliferous deposit where such deposit has not been hidden by nature. Economic development consequent upon the discovery of mineral deposits must of necessity be controlled by the position of the deposits concerned. The reciprocal influence of man on geological environment is even smaller than in the case of reciprocal influence on the physical features. The casting of manure on the land is an attempt to overcome the disadvantages which are the result of the natural mineral constituents of the soil; but even so the example is not a very good one.

Climate and Weather

Although it is not so obvious, the influence of climate and weather is of equal importance with that of physical features and structure. In our everyday life we react so automatically to changes in weather that we do so almost unconsciously; the fact that those who dwell in colder climes don an overcoat at certain seasons of the year is a natural reaction to weather conditions. In such a fickle-weathered country as England, the inhabitants decide from day to say whether they will go out furnished with umbrella or mackintosh. Our bodies form sufficiently sensitive thermometers to determine when in the autumn we have a desire to see a fire, or to turn on the central heating, as the case may be. The date of that celebrated annual event, which is the *bête noire* of almost every English householder, namely the spring clean, is really determined by climatic conditions, when the dirt-making coal fires of winter are no longer required.

Climate is commonly defined as the average state of the weather and we show our trust in the recurrence of climatic conditions by taking, as far as we can, our holidays in June, July or August—our summer months. Probably, if we are fortunate enough to possess the wherewithal, we venture to escape from the hateful cold of New York in the heart of the winter and change those conditions for something more pleasant on the coast of Florida; or after the Christmas festivities we learn to hate the damp cold of London and turn our attention to the sunshine of the Riviera. If we venture to the Tropics, we automatically change our clothing; if we live in the Tropics, we probably change our mode of life and our food to a very considerable extent. The form of man's dwelling-places has been determined to a very large extent by climatic conditions. The steep-roofed houses of northern latitudes, from which the snow may slide away easily, form a remarkable contrast to the flat-roofed houses of the dry lands, of the Mediterranean or the Tropics. Often these flat roofs have a slope towards the centre and a tank below in which rainwater, precious to the inhabitants, may be collected. If rain is abundant, we shoot it off our roof on to our neighbour's garden; if rain is scarce, we carefully collect it on our own roof for our own use. We see the influence

of heat in the wide shady piazzas of Italian houses, which form an interesting contrast to the modern " sun-trap " house which architects have endeavoured to perfect for such sun-starved climes as parts of England.

The effect of climate is even more marked in the vegetable world. Even in a single small country such as Great Britain this is well exemplified. How often does one see in the north of Scotland fields of wheat? For there it is too cold for the ripening of this crop. How often does one see fields of wheat in Ireland, where it tends to be too wet for that crop? It is to the fields of East Anglia that one must turn to see this crop growing best. How many New Englanders have seen in their own countryside fields of cotton opening to the late summer sun? Very few, if any. Yet it is the yearly privilege of the southerner. We realise that the familiar coffee or tea or cocoa of the breakfast-table has to be brought to us from abroad, but we do not always realise that it is climate which is a controlling factor in this case. We need make no excuse, therefore, for stressing the extreme importance of the climatic factor in geography. It may be asked if this is not the field of the meteorologist, but it must be emphasised again that the geographer does not require the whole of meteorology. He is scarcely concerned with the design and character of the instruments by which meteorological records are made or kept; he is concerned with the interpretation of the results, with the way in which the consequent climate and weather affect the life of man, whereas the meteorologist may, and usually does, content himself with the actual interpretation of the climate and weather as such.

Turning to the reciprocal influence of man on climatic conditions, we find that it is possible to do far more to alter or nullify the effects of climatic conditions than to alter or nullify the effects of physiography or structure. The clothing which we wear is an adaptation against climatic conditions, but the heating of our houses is a very definite attempt to alter the effect of these conditions. The use of glasshouses for forcing flowers and vegetables is also an example of a special method of overcoming existing climatic conditions. It may be urged in this connection that man can increase temperature, but finds it more difficult to carry out the reverse process. Here we are apt to forget the common use of the refrigerator; the chilling of meat is the answer of man to the natural deterioration of dead flesh caused by temperatures above freezing-point.

Drainage is an attempt to overcome the disadvantages of too much moisture in the soil, whilst irrigation is the attempt to overcome the deficiencies of moisture, whether in the soil or as rainfall. It would seem, however, that man cannot do very much actually to alter atmospheric conditions. Experiments in high explosives would seem to indicate that man has not very much power, at any rate at present, to induce the formation of clouds and the consequent rainfall. Nor is it proved that by creating large bodies of water in arid areas, or by the planting of trees, man can definitely increase rainfall. The precise influence which the planting of trees has on atmospheric conditions is a large subject, but it must be mentioned as an attempt of man to exert a modifying influence on natural climatic conditions by which he finds himself surrounded.

So important is the climatic factor in geography that no excuse is made for dealing with it in some detail in the section which follows. Before passing

on to the consideration of the climatic regions of the world, something must be said about the influence of climate in the formation of soil. The science of the study of soils, or pedology, is now a special and important branch of knowledge. The older geologists and geographers used to consider that the character of a soil depended very largely on the character of the underlying rocks. It is now quite definitely proved that this is not the case ; climate has a more important effect on the formation of soils than the underlying rocks. Thus in the Tropics, where there are alternating wet and dry seasons, a lateritic[1] soil forms almost independently of the character of the underlying rocks, whilst it is found, broadly speaking, that in those countries where the rainy season coincides with the hot season the formation of soil goes on rapidly ; whereas where the rainy season coincides with the cold season, as it does in Mediterreanean lands, the formation of soil is a very much slower process.

The three great factors which we have considered so far, topography, structure and climate, may be regarded as of equal importance. Consideration of the first two, and sometimes of a part of the third, formed what was formerly the domain of the subject of " physical geography." We no longer consider it desirable to keep these watertight compartments in geography, and we recognise that the study of the old physical geography is an integral part of all geography. It is a necessary basis which must not on any account be neglected.

Vegetation

We find that the first three factors make their influence felt, and are most readily observed, by their influence on the natural vegetation cover of the world ; so the fourth factor which has to be considered is the factor of vegetation. As we wander about the surface of the British Isles, we see in the bogs of Ireland and the dry heaths of East Anglia the reflection of both climatic and soil conditions. The great pine and spruce forests of Norway contrast with the pleasant homely oakwoods of southern England, and in their turn reflect differences in climate. We shall endeavour to show shortly that each of the great climatic regions of the world has its own characteristic type of vegetation, and this natural vegetation exercises a very important influence on the life and activities of man. It is necessary to notice here how very extensive has been the influence of man on natural vegetation. It might be thought that the difference between primitive and civilised man in this connection lies in relatively slight effects exercised by the former on the natural vegetation of his habitat, contrasted with the enormous effect of the latter. This is not entirely the case, since primitive man tends to destroy without replacing ; civilised man to destroy with the object of replacing. In Tropical regions, especially in Asia and Africa, huge areas of valuable forest have been burnt by native cultivators to yield the small patches of cultivated land which are only used for two or three seasons, whilst the pristine richness of the soil remains. In more densely populated temperate lands (*e.g.* Britain) it is doubtful whether any extensive tracts of true natural vegetation remain. It might be held therefore, that vegetation is no longer a

[1] Latin, *later=a brick*—so called from the cellular character of the soil and its red-brown colour, which is due to iron.

dominant factor in determining the activities of man. It is true that the Redskin no longer hunts the bison over the wide prairies and the cowboy rides a Ford rather than a broncho, but much of the natural vegetation does still remain. Of still greater importance is the fact that the factors which limit the growth of natural vegetation still exert their limiting influence on vegetation improved by man. So that, in turn, the " artificial " vegetation influences and to a large extent determines the activities of man. The grass of the Canadian prairies has given place to the man-improved grasses, the cereals, but the cultivation of these cereals exerts an enormous influence on the life of man in these regions.

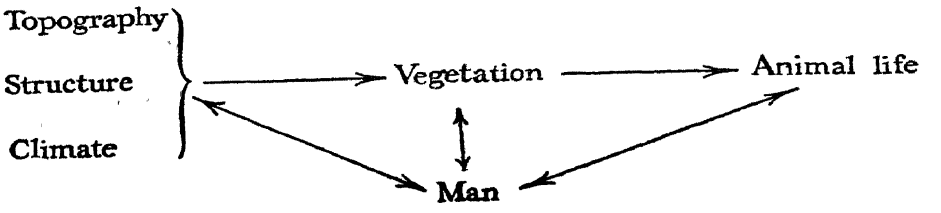
Sometimes man upsets the natural balance in the plant world, with disastrous results. The grasses of New Zealand have been largely replaced by the more nutritious pasture grasses of England, but the introduction of the succulent prickly pear into Australia to provide fodder in the drier tracts has resulted in the invasion and destruction of richer areas by what is now a serious pest. The water-hyacinth was brought to grace a few ornamental waters in India, with no thought that a few years later the expenditure of thousands of pounds per annum would be involved in clearing it from navigable streams.

Animal Life

Just as the joint influence of topography, soil and climate is expressed in the natural vegetation, so is the character of the latter expressed in the animal life. The monkeys are obviously adapted for life in forests, the antelopes for an existence on wide plains, the polar bear for life in Arctic wastes. Similarly vegetation exerts its influence on animals domesticated by man—as the concentration of sheep on the temperate grasslands of the Southern Hemisphere bears witness.

The character of the native animal life is obviously of the greatest importance to primitive man who is still a hunter. In the civilised modern world the trapper must scour the northern forests and tundra, the big-game hunter seeks his prey in appropriate regions. While these influences on modern man are obvious, we are apt to forget the more significant rôle played by humbler creatures. The tsetse fly belt in Africa still defies modern science and limits areas of settlement ; the conquest of the malaria-carrying mosquito is still but partly accomplished. A host of diseases still compel man to move warily and take adequate precautions.

To summarise, the relationship of the geographical factors of the environment to man may be expressed diagrammatically thus (reversed arrows representing reciprocal influence) :



It may be observed that man should properly take his place amongst the animals in the way in which he is influenced by the other factors, but as an animal capable not only of taking thought but also of taking action accordingly, he stands almost alone.

Enough has been said to indicate the logical order in which the geographical factors should be considered when studying the geography of the world or of individual tracts. In the first place, it is desirable to study the world as a whole and then to proceed to a study of definite regions. Many, if not most, modern school and university courses comprise these two aspects, each forming a part of the work : the first forming " World Geography," the second " Regional Geography."

We will consider in somewhat greater detail the climatic factor.

III. THE MAJOR CLIMATIC REGIONS OF THE WORLD

Reference has already been made to the enormous influence exerted on man and his activities by climate. One of the most valuable conceptions of modern Geography is that of climatic regions. It is found, for instance, that the climatic conditions characteristic of the countries surrounding the Mediterranean Sea are found also in part of the North American continent, in California. Almost precisely similar climatic conditions are again found in central Chile in South America, in the neighbourhood of Cape Town in South Africa, as well as in parts of Western and South Australia. In these regions there is often a very marked similarity in the natural vegetation. Still more important, agricultural methods which have been proved to be suitable to one of these regions will, economic and other conditions being equal, prove equally suitable in any one of the other regions. Again, the products of one area can be made also the products of the other areas in the same type of climate. A crop which flourishes in one of these Mediterranean regions, as they are called, may be expected to flourish equally well in any one of the others. We need but to watch the shop front of the nearest fruiterers' to see, during the year, oranges from Spain, from California, from Cape Province in South Africa, and again from Australia. It can be realised from this how the modern world has made use of regions that have a similar climate.

The division of the world into major natural regions on the basis of climate is due very largely to the late Professor A. J. Herbertson, and it is indicative of the youth of modern geographical science that Herbertson's famous paper to the Royal Geographical Society was only presented in the year 1905. Although he modified his general scheme of divisions, and although there are several schemes of world climatic divisions now in use, the principle remains the same. What one author may regard as a major type, another will merely regard as a sub-type, and so on ; but actually there is surprising agreement, rather than disagreement, on the subject as a whole. Consciously or unconsciously, major climatic regions play a large part in the troubled political and economic relationships of the countries of the world at the present time. This is because some of the leading raw materials of commerce can only be produced in regions with a certain type of climate. Thus Russia,

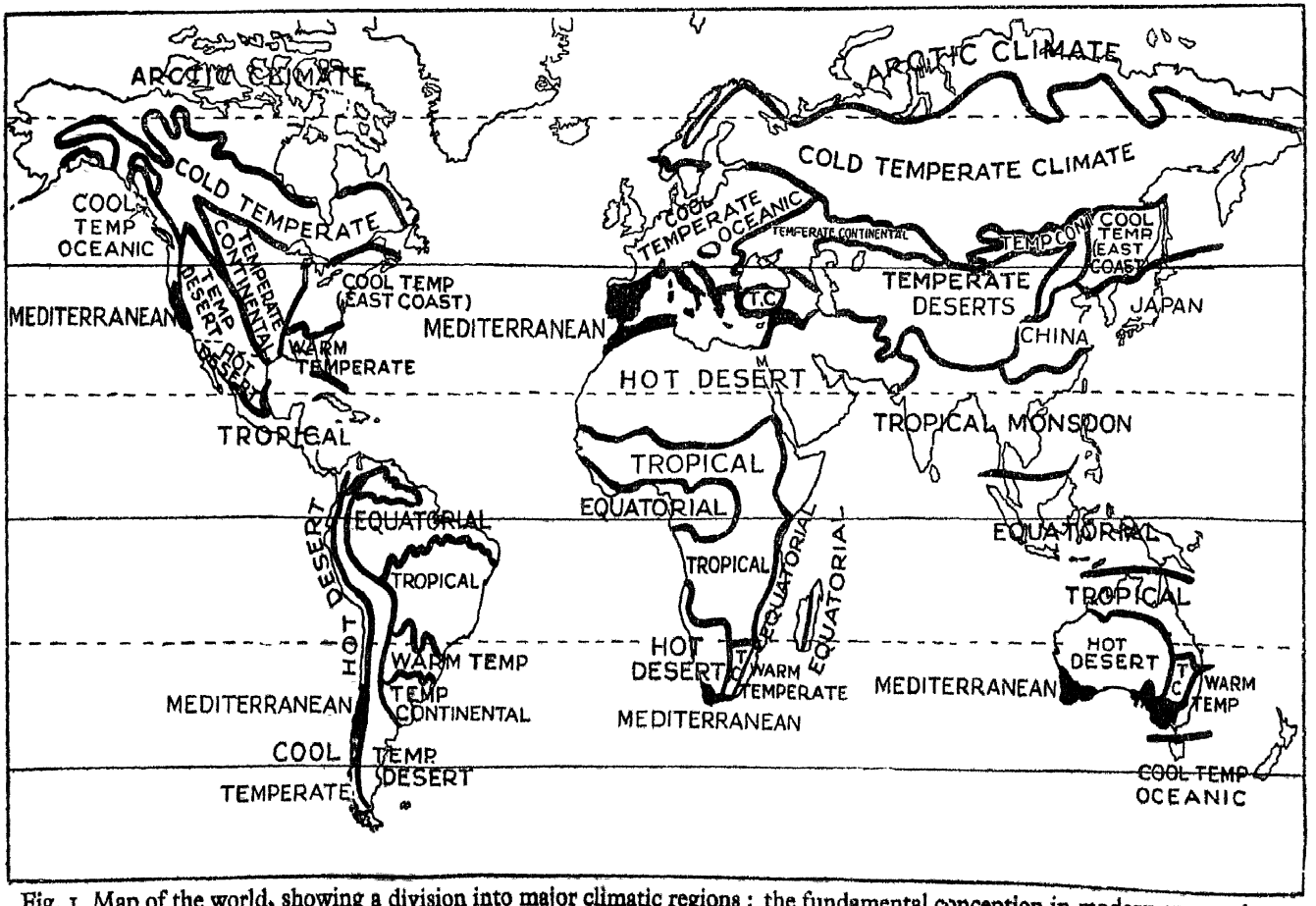


Fig. 1. Map of the world, showing a division into major climatic regions : the fundamental conception in modern geography.

despite her 8 million square miles of territory and her 150 million inhabitants, is unable to produce within her own territories any of those products which require an essentially tropical or equatorial climate. She must depend on outside sources for her requirements of such products as rubber, cocoa, tea, coffee and spices. Three million square miles of continental United States of America lie entirely outside the Tropics; so that although America is the largest consumer of rubber in the world, she must get that rubber from outside her own territory. Even her Tropical possessions, notably the Philippine Islands, only go a short way towards fulfilling requirements.

There are other ways in which the conception of major climatic regions is important. Much agricultural research in Canada has been directed towards finding a wheat which will ripen rapidly, and so can be grown in the northern latitudes of Canada, where the summer, though warm and bright and ideal for the ripening of cereals, is too short for existing varieties of wheat. Any result obtained by the Canadians in this respect can be immediately utilised for the steppe-lands of Russia and Siberia. Or again, in the problem of migration and settlement, as Japan has found to her disappointment, it is little use offering facilities for settlement in the wide open plains of Manchuria to the Japanese, who hates the long bitter winter. Still less can Canada hope to provide a home, even supposing she were willing, for the Indian cultivator whose native land is already overcrowded. On the other hand, the spectacle of overcrowded India and China, separated by underpopulated but equally desirable Indo-China with a climate equally suitable for settlement either by Indians or Chinese, provides a background for the study of existing racial and political problems in the countries of Indo-China. The major climatic regions of the world, their character and distribution, their products and potentialities, must therefore be discussed in some detail.

About a dozen well-marked climatic types can be distinguished, but naturally the actual divisions between the regions are not, as a rule, sharply marked lines. One type tends to fade gradually into another, and often considerable tracts can best be regarded as transitional areas. Further, there is obviously considerable variation between one part of a climatic region and another part. Local variations, due especially to topographical features, notably elevation, are found in all regions. The major climatic regions are given names in keeping with their general character, but so marked is the influence of climate on vegetation, that a climatic type is often named after the prevailing vegetation Thus the Temperate Continental Climate is called the Temperate Grassland, or Prairie, type, the Cold Temperate Climate is called the Coniferous Forest type, and so on. Other authors prefer to name their climatic types after the regions where they are found in their most characteristic form. Thus the Tropical Grasslands are so characteristic of Africa that one can easily justify the name " Sudan type." But the matter of fundamental importance is the character of the climate itself, hence it seems desirable to maintain the use of climatic names.

The Equatorial Climate

The Equatorial Climate, as its name implies, occurs in the belt on either side of the equator, extending roughly between 5° N. and 5° S., and occupying a tract about 600 miles in width almost encircling the land of the globe. Frequently the Equatorial type extends further north and south than this, but the extreme limits may be regarded as about 10° N. and 10° S. of the equator. Its most typical development is in the basin of the Amazon, hence the name "Amazon type." The characteristic vegetation is tall, evergreen forest, hence the descriptive name, the climate of Hot, Wet Forests or Selvas. The temperature of the Equatorial Belt is high throughout the year, and has but a very small variation. In the typical localities the average range is between 78° F. and 80° F.; the range between the hottest and coldest months is rarely more than 5° F. Similarly the difference between day and night temperatures is small, and may be taken as, typically, less than 20°—frequently less than 10°.[1] In these regions the rain falls at all seasons of the year, and there is no dry season except in a strictly relative sense. In very many cases there is a daily routine of weather which is particularly interesting. The early morning is frequently misty, but by 8 or 9 o'clock the mists have disappeared and the sun shines strongly till midday, thus causing rapid evaporation and upward currents in the atmosphere. The ascending moisture-laden air becomes cooler and clouds form; the formation of clouds in the afternoon and the subsequent downpour of rain are frequently accompanied by thunder. The rain falls in the latter part of the afternoon in a torrential downpour usually of short duration. The European living, for example, at Singapore must pay attention to this daily routine. His early morning walk takes advantage of the mist that hides the fierce rays of the sun, which can better be borne in the coolness of his office building. It is true that every two or three days out of four his arrangements for an afternoon tennis party or round of golf will be upset by the afternoon storm, but there is almost sure to be the joy of an after-dinner car drive by the light of the clear, starlit night. Although rain falls throughout the year in Equatorial regions, it is frequently found that there are one, or two, periods of maximum rainfall. Places near the equator usually have two maxima; stations on the more northern or southern fringes of the belt, usually one. In most places the rainfall maximum, or maxima, occur shortly after the period when the sun is vertical. The Equatorial regions are essentially regions of heavy rainfall. The rainfall for the year ranges from 70 or 80 inches upwards. The areas cut off from the influence of the sea and a ready supply of moisture, such as the interior of the Congo Basin, may have rather less. It is a popular fallacy that the nearer one gets to the equator, the hotter it becomes, and that the Equatorial regions are the hottest in the world. The average temperature, it is true, is uniformly high, and the constantly steamy atmosphere is enervating; but the Equatorial climate is far from being the most trying in the world. The thermometer rarely rises above 100° F., and the relatively cool rains which accompany the afternoon thunderstorms make the climate distinctly pleasant. This is particularly

[1] Fahrenheit degrees are used throughout this Article.

the case in maritime situations such, again, as the island of Singapore, where land and sea breezes impart a welcome movement to the air. The climate is found at its worst in the interior of the great Equatorial forests, where the air is absolutely still. Perhaps the most characteristic feature of this type of climate is the absence of seasonal change ; all the time a man remains in good health the climate can be described as a pleasant and by no means unhealthy one. But let his health fall for a short time below par, and the absence of change renders recuperation extremely difficult. Hence the need for hill stations, or for a trip home, for the European who has had the misfortune to get run down.

The ever wet, ever hot climate of Equatorial regions produces a very rank luxuriant vegetation. There is fierce competition, not for moisture, but for light and air. In that most characteristic region, the Amazon Basin, the whole country is clothed with an evergreen forest of giant trees. These hot, wet forests contain a great variety of trees, and it is rarely that more than two of the same species are found in the space of an acre ; but they are nearly all alike in having tall, unbranched boles, with a crown of leaves at the top, forming a close, interlacing mass so thick that sunlight never reaches the ground, and the interior of the forest is gloomy and lifeless in the extreme. This gloomy, vault-like type of Equatorial forest is almost restricted to South America, for in Equatorial Africa and Asia the forests are more open. Although nearly all the trees have short periods during which they shed their leaves, the shedding periods of the different species come at different seasons, and thus the forest is never bare of leaves. The trees are nearly all hardwooded species ; so rare is softwood in the forests that Manaos, in the heart of South America, imports its building timber from the temperate regions in North America. The struggle for light and air, which are of course only to be found above the tree-tops, has resulted in the existence of large numbers of woody climbers or lianas. The trees climbed may afterwards die and rot away, leaving the great coils of the climber pendulous from the height above and forming tangled, impenetrable masses on the ground. Ferns, and flowering plants such as orchids, may find a foothold on the higher branches of the trees and thus reach the much-desired light and air. So in the dense forests of South America the ground is almost devoid of living plants, and is covered with a mass of decaying vegetation. This is more particularly the case when the Amazon tributaries overflow their banks and cause wide morasses. In the more open forests of Africa and Asia there is a luxuriant ground vegetation of broad-leaved herbs. In the denser forests it is scarcely surprising that animal life is almost restricted to the tree-tops, and nearly all orders of the animal kingdom can exhibit members especially adapted for such a habitat. The monkeys are good examples amongst mammals ; the tree-frogs, with their sucker-like feet, are striking examples amongst the lower orders.

The denser Equatorial forests have been described as " regions of debilitation," since the dense vegetation causes man to degenerate; such forests are very sparsely inhabited by backward races, stunted both physically and mentally, of which the American-Indian tribes of the Amazon and the pygmies of the Congo are outstanding examples. The latter attempt to emulate the other denizens of the forest by building their

primitive homes high up in the trees, away from the damp and unhealthy ground. The more open Equatorial forests, where clearing is easier and Nature is bountiful in her gifts, are the home of many sturdy if somewhat lazy races. Of these the Malays, the Javanese, and the Dyaks of Borneo are good instances. There are certain marked difficulties in the clearing of Equatorial forests and the economic development of the countries. The trees are of extremely hard wood, very difficult to cut down and even difficult to burn. On the other hand, when once the forest is set alight, the trees do not recover. A great danger is the rapidity with which vegetation springs up on cleared land, so that crops rapidly become choked by bamboo and rank grass. Thousands of square miles of valuable forest were destroyed by native clearing in Africa and Asia, and are now occupied only by useless bamboo and thorny thickets. Another danger in clearing Equatorial forests, especially on hillsides, is that when the trees have been cleared away, the torrential rains will completely wash away the soil and leave but the bare rock. It has been well said that the Equatorial climate is a bad master but a good servant. To the South American-Indians, or to the pygmies of Africa, it is a master; to the European who succumbs to its subtle influence it may also be a master. But when Equatorial forests have been successfully cleared and plantations well established, the regions are extraordinarily productive. For instance, several crops of rice per year may be obtained from the same field. There are no seasons, and seed-time may be arranged at the pleasure of the cultivator himself. Amongst the leading products of Equatorial regions, the development of which is due mainly to European enterprise, may be noted rubber, palm oil, cocoa and sugar. Of these the modern rubber of commerce is entirely, or almost entirely, restricted to regions which have an Equatorial type of climate. Nearly all the rubber of commerce is now obtained from the Para rubber tree. A native of the Equatorial forests of the Amazon, after great difficulties the tree was introduced into Malaya and India. The introduction was carried out *via* London, where in the hothouses of Kew the seeds from South America were germinated in 1876 and the young plants sent to Ceylon. It is interesting to notice that the plants which were sent to Calcutta, where, although there is a heavy rainfall, there is a very dry season, were not successful. Calcutta remains outside the sphere where rubber can be cultivated with advantage. The wild rubber of Brazil and the Belgian Congo is now very unimportant, and the bulk of the world's supplies is obtained from the plantations of Ceylon, Southern India, Malaya and the Dutch East Indies. The limits of the Equatorial belt are roughly the limits where profitable rubber cultivation is possible.

Another interesting Equatorial product is cocoa, obtained from the seeds or beans of a large evergreen tree, the cacao-tree. The beans appear in rows inside large pods, which grow from the stem of a tree. The tree is limited in distribution to sheltered lowlands with a high temperature and a well-distributed rainfall. All countries with an Equatorial type of climate are, broadly speaking, suitable for cocoa cultivation; more than two-thirds of the world's total cocoa before the War came from Central and South America. Now half comes from the Gold Coast—an example of how economic conditions can shift the main centres of cultivation from one point to another of the same climatic belt, but no economic

factors can remove the centres of cultivation outside the limits defined by the climate which is necessary.

From what has been said, it will be seen that there is at the present time a marked contrast between : (*a*) the undeveloped Equatorial regions, such as the Amazon Basin and part of the Congo Basin, which are sparsely inhabited and very little used, yielding only a little wild rubber or ivory, and (*b*) the developed regions, where development is the result of the enterprise of the white man, partly with the aid of local labour, partly with coloured labour from other regions. The most highly developed tracts are Malaya, including the Federated Malay States and Straits Settlements, and Java ; but the development is spreading rapidly to Sumatra and the other islands of the East Indies, and also to parts of the Congo and to the coastal lands of Guinea in Africa. Indeed, development is proceeding along the fringes of all areas ; the region that is likely to defy man's activities longest is the heart of the great Amazon Basin.

The Tropical Climate

The word " tropical " is commonly used in such a loose way that it conveys little more than the idea of heat. But geographers have attached a more precise meaning to the Tropical Climate, which is found typically within the Tropics and on either side of the Equatorial Belt. One particularly extensive area is in the Sudan of Africa, hence the name of the " Sudan type." In this typical central portion the vegetation is all grassland, or grassland with scattered trees, and hence it is sometimes called " Tropical Grassland Climate " or " Savana Climate." By contrast with the Equatorial Belt, there is in the Tropical Climate a marked difference between the temperatures of the hot and cool seasons of the year. Towards the equator, or in maritime situations, where the rainfall is heavy, the difference in temperature between the hottest and the coldest months is but small. In the drier parts of the belt there is frequently a difference of more than 30° between the average temperatures in the cool and hot seasons. The difference between day and night temperatures is correspondingly marked.

Great tracts of Tropical grassland lie between the Equatorial forests on the one side and the hot deserts on the other ; and there is every gradation in rainfall, from 70 or 80 inches or more on the forest edge to about 15 inches on the desert border. In some of the wettest stations in the Tropical Belt, the rainfall may be as much as over 200 inches per year. There is, however, a distinctly dry and a distinctly wet season. It is usually possible to distinguish three seasons—a cool, dry season, followed by a hot, dry season when the land becomes greatly heated and the highest temperatures are recorded. In the northern hemisphere the hot season terminates about April or May ; then come the rains, with corresponding cooling of the atmosphere. It becomes slightly hotter again towards the end of the rainy season, before the cool season sets in. The rain falls in the spring and summer of the year, while the winter months are practically rainless. It is the season of intensive rainfall which favours the growth of grass ; trees tend to require a constant supply of moisture throughout the year, and those months which are rainless militate against a dense growth of many species of trees. Grass, on the other hand,

springs up where moisture is available and has a resting period in the cool winter as well as in the very hot months which precede the rains. Actually, we can distinguish several types of vegetation in regions having a Tropical Climate. Near the Equatorial Belt, provided the rainfall is sufficiently heavy, there is forest differing but little from the Equatorial forest. Where the rainfall drops below about 60 or 80 inches, this passes into forest in which the trees are deciduous, losing their leaves, that is to say having a resting period, during the heat of the year. Then comes the most characteristic belt—the great stretches of grassland, with occasional trees, the savana or parkland of Africa. Towards the desert borders this vegetation becomes poorer, the grass is coarse and stunted, the trees merely spiny bushes, till the whole fades into the great desert. In the drier parts the reliability of the rainfall from year to year is important; in some years the fall is sufficient to ensure good crops, whilst in other years a poor rainfall results in famine conditions. In the drier parts of the Tropical grasslands, therefore, we find some of the great famine belts of the world.

The animals of the Equatorial forests are especially adapted to climbing, an occupation which would be of little use in grasslands, where there are, instead, two main groups of animals : (*a*) the swift-footed, vegetable eating animals, such as the antelope and giraffe, which find safety from their enemies in flight ; (*b*) the carnivores, such as the lion and the leopard, which prey upon the members of the first group. Man in the savana is primarily a hunter ; but just as the grasslands support vast herds of wild, grass-eating animals, so man is able to rear great herds of cattle, and becomes then a pastoralist. The natural grasses which flourish in the savanas may be replaced by the cereal grasses, and so man may become an agriculturalist. The great Tropical grasslands cover enormous areas in at least two of the continents. In South America there are the llanos of Venezuela, the campos of Brazil ; in Africa, huge tracts are covered by Tropical grassland; in north Australia there is again another huge area. Few, if any, of the Tropical grasslands are yet fully developed. Above all, they are lands of the future. In the Temperate grasslands of the world, which will be discussed later, there is at present a war between bread and meat, and as wheat displaces cattle in these lands, herds are likely to become more and more important in the Tropical grasslands. In some areas the natural grasses are too coarse to be of immediate use ; but there are vast areas at present uninhabited or only thinly inhabited, such as Northern and Southern Rhodesia, Angola, the East African Highlands and northern Australia, which would make very productive country. Agriculture is likely to follow, maize and millets amongst the cereal crops, cotton and sugar amongst others, as well as groundnuts and many other oilseeds. It is interesting to notice that many of the companies which own ranches in South America, and find competition for the land there becoming severe, are taking up concessions in Africa. There are great difficulties, it is true, in the way of the development of many of these areas ; one at least is the shortage of labour. Few parts of the grasslands of Africa carry a population of more than 20 to the square mile, while the grasslands of northern Australia may be described as absolutely uninhabited. Communications are often virtually non-existent. It is useless

raising cattle in northern Australia if the railway is lacking which can take the fattened cattle to the coast ports; for cattle which have been driven hundreds of miles to the slaughterhouses arrive mere skin and bone, of value for their hide and nothing else. Settlement will follow the railway, which must be the pioneer. This is already happening with the new railway across Angola, in West Africa. Politically, it is almost certain that pressure will be brought to bear in the near future upon those nations who have control of these great tracts of undeveloped land, that they may develop them for the benefit of mankind as a whole. The question at present is how far the climate is suited to settlement by white men, and how far these lands must be developed by coloured races, either with or without European supervision.

The Tropical Monsoon Climate

The Tropical Monsoon Climate is very similar to the Tropical, though the rainfall is caused in a different way. Both types are found mainly within the Tropics, both have wet summers and dry warm winters; but whereas the rainfall in the Tropical grasslands depends on moisture brought from the sea by the normal trade wind system, the rainfall in Monsoon lands is caused by a complete reversal of the normal wind during the rainy season. During the hot season in the early part of the year the land becomes greatly heated and gives rise to an area of low pressure. The air rises, and cool, moisture-laden winds from the ocean flow in to take its place, bringing with them the life-giving rain on which the Monsoon countries may be said to depend. The typical Monsoon lands are India, Indo-China and southern China. Central and northern China and Japan are often called Monsoon lands; the rainfall is due to similar causes, but they lie outside the Tropics, and have distinctly cold winters, thus necessitating their separation from Tropical Monsoon Lands. In India, which may be regarded as *par excellence* the typical Monsoon land, there are three seasons: the cool season, with little rain, lasting from November to about January; the hot season, when the land becomes heated up and there is no rain, from January to about the middle of June; the rainy season, when the heavy rains cool the atmosphere and temperatures are lower, from about the middle of June to October. Generally speaking, the drier the place, the less the cooling influence of the rain is felt and the greater the range of temperature, as in the Punjab and the north-west of India generally. The wetter places, on the other hand, are those under the influence of the sea, and they have a smaller range of temperature. Of these, Bombay is a good example. The actual rainfall in Monsoon lands varies enormously; where the Monsoon comes in contact with high mountains near the coast, and starts to rise, the resulting rainfall is very heavy indeed, and can be as much as 500 inches a year, so that those positions may be classed as the rainiest in the world. On the other hand near the low pressure areas in India, towards which the winds blow for great distances over land, they arrive practically dry; and certain stations have less than 5 inches of rain per year.

The natural vegetation and the crops which are possible vary very widely according to the amount of moisture available. Broadly speaking, Monsoon lands are conveniently divided into four parts:

(*a*) Areas with more than 80 inches of rain a year. These are mainly clothed with evergreen forest of Equatorial type, and in these tracts rice is the staple food grain of the people and is often almost the only crop (*compare Fig. 2*). The danger here is not lack of water, but flooding, and protective works are usually necessary to prevent disastrous floods; as, for example, in the delta of the Irrawaddy.

(*b*) Areas with between 40 and 80 inches of rain per year. These are areas where the deciduous Monsoon forests flourish, the trees losing their leaves in the hot dry season. Here rice is again the usual food grain (*see Fig. 2*), but it requires to be protected against possible drought. The irrigation works may be classed as protective, rather than essential. Maize, sugar and oilseeds are other crops characteristic of this intermediate belt.

(*c*) Areas with between 20 and 40 inches of rain per year. These are normally covered with scrubland and thorn forest. Thus the true Monsoon forest, in which such trees as the teak are especially important, fades with decreasing rainfall into a woodland of small, thorny trees. The trees are separated often by bare patches which may, during the rains, become covered with a rich growth of grass, and in this season the scrubland of India closely resembles the savana or tropical grassland of Africa. In this dry belt millet is the staple food grain of the people (*see Fig. 4*), except where wheat (*compare Fig. 3*) and barley are grown as winter crops, as in the cooler, drier regions of northern India. Sesamum and various oilseeds are important, and cotton is also a characteristic crop of these drier parts of the Monsoon lands, which are, however, particularly famine areas, because the failure of the Monsoon brings the rainfall below the limit essential for successful cultivation. Hence the importance of irrigation works.

(*d*) Areas with less than 20 inches. These form desert and semi-desert, where irrigation is essential for the cultivation of almost any crop. In the semi-desert the vegetation is a scrubland, with a few scattered thorny or succulent plants.

Monsoon vegetation is more easily cleared than Equatorial forest, and once the land is cleared a comparatively small effort on the part of man procures an abundant return, whether it be in the wetter tracts or in the drier. Accordingly the Monsoon lands are amongst the most densely populated of the world, the population tending to be largely agricultural and concentrated in those areas where the soil is richest. The Monsoon land of India alone has a present population of over 320 million people, of whom nearly 90 per cent. depend for their existence on the products of the soil. The Monsoon climate occurs, as we have noted, in India, Burma and Indo-China, and south China, but in other lands, especially round the Indian Ocean, notably on the north-west coast of Australia, and part of the East African coast, climatic conditions are very similar. The Monsoon effect is also found on the coastal margins of the north-west of South America and Central America, where much of the heavy rainfall might be described as "monsoonal." It will be seen that of the Monsoon lands India proper and southern China are very densely populated; may, indeed, be described as over-populated. Between these two are the comparatively under-populated countries of French Indo-China; Burma,

a province of India; and Siam, an independent kingdom. There is very great Indian immigration to Burma, where the lazy, likeable Burma cultivator is no match for the Indian. Siam and French Indo-China are scenes of peaceful Chinese penetration ; but of greater importance in the future are the distinctly undeveloped Monsoon lands. Conditions along the north-west of Australia and along the east coast of Africa are sufficiently similar to those found in India to prove an inevitable attraction to Indians. Indian agriculture, as far as crops are concerned, could be applied to a considerable part of uninhabited northern Australia, though heaven forbid that the agricultural methods and treatment of land should likewise be applied *en bloc*. When the time comes for the development of this great area of northern Australia, the lessons learnt in India will be invaluable. It is scarcely too much to hazard that in the dry, light soils of north Australia the oilseeds, particularly perhaps the groundnut, will prove a salvation as they have done over much of the Dry Belt of Burma. But the geographer cannot do more than point to the potentialities of the region ; other factors must decide when and by whom these lands are to be developed.

The Hot Desert Climate

The Hot Deserts lie on the poleward side of the regions with a Tropical climate. They are confined to high pressure belts where the currents of air are descending and the winds blow outwards, so that there are no moisture-laden winds coming in from the ocean. They occur mainly on the western side of the land masses, because on the eastern side a certain amount of rain in the same latitudes would be brought by the trade winds. There are few clouds, and the sun pours down with unmitigated force on the unprotected soil, while the absence of cloud also permits rapid radiation of heat and the nights are often very cold. There is a big contrast between the hot season, when the sun is vertically overhead, and the cold season. There is little or no rain to exercise a cooling influence on the temperature. Then many of the deserts are low-lying, so there is not even altitude to temper the heat of summer, with the result that the highest temperatures in the world are recorded in these regions. Thus Golea, in the Sahara, has an average temperature of only 39° in January and of 93° in July—a range of 54° between the hottest and the coldest months. Similarly Jacobabad, in the north-west of India, ranges from 57°, an average temperature for January, to 98° F. as the average temperature in June. On the margins of the desert nearest the equator, the desert fades into semi-desert as soon as the rainfall reaches 9 or 10 inches. Thus Timbuctoo has a total rainfall of 9 inches, and can be considered as a very dry portion of Tropical grassland. But it is really not until the rainfall reaches 20 inches a year that one passes into the Tropical grassland belt properly speaking. Near these margins, such rain as does fall in the desert comes mainly in the same season as it does in the Tropical climate, that is to say, in the summer. On the poleward margins the desert fades gradually into Mediterranean scrubland, where rain comes in winter. Cairo, with 1.3 inches of rain per year, is an example of this type. The land masses are broader in the northern hemisphere, with the result that the deserts are larger there than they are in the southern hemisphere. There

are great continuous areas of desert stretching right across North Africa from the Atlantic to the Red Sea. This Sahara Desert often gives its name to the " Sahara type " of climate. The desert continues over Arabia to the borders of Baluchistan and the great Indian Desert. In North America there are the deserts of the Mexican-United States borders ; in South America there are the Peruvian and north Chilean deserts, which occupy the area between the Andes and the Pacific coast. In South Africa the Kalahari Desert extends right to the Atlantic Ocean. In Australia a very large area has a rainfall of less than 10 inches a year, forming the great Australian Desert.

There are few deserts where absolutely nothing grows ; the desert plants have special means of storing water. Some of them have very long roots which go down to great depths and so reach water ; others have special stems and leaves in which water can be stored up, whilst nearly all are armed with sharp spines and thorns to prevent their being eaten by animals. From the point of view of natural vegetation, Hot Deserts may really be regarded as falling into two divisions : (*a*) the portions fading into Tropical grasslands, which are really very dry grassland ; (*b*) the portions bordering the Mediterranean regions, which are very poor scrubland. Of special importance are the fertile areas or oases, usually occupying hollows, where an underground supply of water comes sufficiently near the surface to be accessible to vegetation. Some of these oases consist merely of a clump of palms surrounding a pool or well, and here the typical tree is the date palm. Other oases are many hundreds of square miles in area and, being very fertile, support a large population. Although the deserts are so sparsely inhabited, the people fall into three groups : (*a*) The wanderers who move about with their camels, their only means of transport, from place to place, and either act as carriers of goods from one desert margin to another or form bands of nomadic robbers. (*b*) The settled peoples of the oases who devote themselves to growing grain and rearing cattle, and also to the cultivation of the date palm. (*c*) The settled population of miners attracted by mineral deposits independently of climatic conditions, as in the nitrate fields of Chile or the gold fields of Western Australia. The latter settlements are often referred to as saxicultural settlements, those which are due to the presence of mineral or stone working. The influence of the desert environment on man is of the greatest interest. The monotony of the scenery, the clearness of the sky and the need for guidance when travelling by night, have concentrated the attention on the heavens rather than the earth. So the desert has produced peoples of philosophical outlook, as exemplified by the ancient Egyptians and the Arabs, learned in mathematics and astronomy. The larger oases of the desert, such as those in Arabia, have acted in a remarkable way as reservoirs of people ; they are capable of supporting a large population so long as the water supply is available. If the springs fail, the people are faced with starvation, with the result that large bands leave the oases for fresh lands and never return. The migrations of the Arabs in the Middle Ages can be traced to such causes, which were also responsible for the arrival of the Shepherd Kings in Egypt from Arabia and for the journeys of Abraham which led him to settle in the Promised Land. This factor is not without interest at the

present day, as any student of the politics of Arabia can witness. Here again the difficulties of French administration in the great tract over which the French have dominance in North Africa are largely concerned with hereditary occupations of the nomadic desert dwellers. It is to be noticed that in many cases the soil of desert land is a fine alluvium; where water is available for irrigation the desert may become exceptionally fertile. The Nile valley in Egypt is a special example, as the river flows in a narrow trench-like valley, cut in the surface of the desert; but the crop lands of the Colorado Desert of America and the Indus Plain of India are characteristic examples of desert irrigation.

The importance of deserts as barriers to human intercourse and migration is also of particular note. The Sahara, separating the white and coloured races of mankind, is an excellent example. Apart from the saxicultural settlements and the larger oases that have already been mentioned, it is obvious that deserts can never support more than an extremely limited population. Those European nations which have desert colonies may appear on paper to have control over large tracts of land, but those large tracts are potentially of very little use. One of the best examples is over-populated Italy, possessing as it does a large tract of the Sahara Desert in Libya, in North Africa, and another large tract of mainly desert country in Somaliland. As far as extensive colonies for settlement are concerned, Italy might almost as well be without colonies; and her need for an outlet for her swarming population is one of the most serious problems that affect European politics, more especially because of the contrast with her neighbour France, who possesses a vast colonial empire suitable for development and settlement.

The Mediterranean Climate

One of the most distinctive and best-known of all the climatic types is that known as the Mediterranean, which is characteristic of the lands surrounding the Mediterranean Sea. Like the Hot Deserts which border them on the side near the equator, these regions are hot and dry in the summer with outblowing winds. In winter, however, they come under the influence of the westerly wind belt and so enjoy moist, mild winters. In other words, this is the winter rain climate, contrasted with the typical summer rain climate of the Tropical Monsoon. It must be remembered, however, that the Mediterranean is a temperate climate and very much cooler. One of the characteristics of the Mediterranean climate is the large amount of sunshine throughout the year. Almost cloudless skies are the rule in summer, and even in winter clouds are less numerous than would be expected. The Mediterranean climate is restricted to the western sides of the continents, where during the hot summer the trade winds are blowing off-shore. A little reflection will show that a Mediterranean type of climate could scarcely exist on the east of the continents; where the trade winds blow from the oceans and are moisture-laden; whereas the westerly winds blowing from the land would be rainless. The Mediterranean regions thus lie on the western sides of the continents between the latitude of 30° and 45°; the largest area is that found all round the Mediterranean Sea. Other areas occur in North America

(California), South America (central Chile), South Africa (south-western Cape Province), and Australia (south-west of Western Australia, South Australia and a part of Victoria).

Naturally there are considerable variations within the type, especially in the large Mediterranean Sea area. There as one goes eastwards the winters tend to become colder; but the coldest month has usually an average temperature of over 40° and in very large tracts over 50°. The summers are both hot and dry, with a mean temperature in the hottest month of over 70°, and in many areas over 80°. The chilliness of winter days is compensated for by the bright sunshine. The rainfall varies in amount, but the typical average is between 10 and 40 inches a year. In exposed situations there is a very much heavier fall. In this climate of moist winters and hot, dry summers, the plants need to ultilise the water which accumulates during the winter, and to protect themselves against lack of moisture during the summer. The climate does not favour shallow-rooted herbs and grasses, which require light showers during the spring and early summer. The vegetation of the Mediterranean lands consists therefore mainly of evergreen trees and shrubs, with a ground vegetation of flowering shrubs and herbs to take the place of grass. Many of the shrubs and trees have small leathery leaves or leaves with a coating of wax to retain the moisture; others, such as the olive, have leaves covered with fine silky hairs. All these devices prevent excessive transpiration. Many of the plants, such as the vine, have exceptionally long roots. In the wetter parts of the Mediterranean lands fine forests may occur, of which the cork oak and the chestnut forests of Europe and the jarrah forests of Australia are examples. The thick bark of the cork oak is itself a protection against loss of moisture. The dry summer conditions of these lands are ideal for the ripening of fruit; typical examples are the citrous fruits—oranges, lemons, and grapefruit—a great variety of deciduous fruit, nectarine, apricot, peach, pear and apple, as well as the olive, almond, fig, mulberry and vine. Of grains, certain types of wheat and barley grow well, having been adapted by man to the exigencies of climate. A little reflection will reveal a certain incompatability between the desirable sunny summers in the ripening of fruit or grain and the undesirable lack of moisture which so often goes with it. Hence it is pre-eminently in Mediterranean regions that irrigation by water from snow-fed mountain rivers plays a very large part in economic development.

The climate of Mediterranean lands, favourable to man and plants alike, has harboured many of the great civilisations of the world—Greece and Rome, Crete and Carthage. But perhaps the ease of living and the spirit of *laissez-faire* engendered by the climate have resulted in degeneration. There is a tendency for the people to become lazy and too easily contented, and during the hot summer the attraction of the noontide siesta is too strong to be resisted. The Mediterranean regions are, however, definitely regions which favour a considerable population. Thus in South America and Australia these regions have been very considerably developed. Similarly the Mediterranean region of South Africa was not only the part of the continent first settled by the Dutch, but it remains a very important part. We do not need to be reminded either of the progress of California.

Most of the leading Mediterranean products are to be found in each of the regions concerned. The vine flourishes in the similar climatic regions of each of the continents ; and so there is the rivalry between the dried grape, the raisin, of Europe on the one hand, and California, South Africa and, more recently, Australia on the other. California no longer produces wine, but all the other regions do. Of recent years there has been more rivalry between four of the areas, Europe, California, South Africa and Australia, in the matter of the citrous fruit. It is not very long since oranges were definitely associated with Christmas and the winter season in England ; but the development of the Mediterranean lands in the southern hemisphere, where the seasons are the reverse of those in England, has put oranges on the European market throughout the year.

The Warm Temperate Climate

The Mediterranean climate is to be found on the western sides of the continents ; on the eastern sides in the same latitudes there are regions in which temperatures are roughly comparable but the rainfall comes mainly in summer. The regions now to be considered are the very important south-eastern states—the cotton lands—in the United States of America, the greater part of China, in Asia, the south-eastern coast lands of Australia and South Africa, and the region of Uruguay and south-eastern Brazil in South America. These regions have not a single type of climate in the sense in which the Mediterranean has a single type. Each region is influenced by the major physical features of the individual areas. The southern-eastern States have a well-distributed moderate rainfall throughout the year, usually with a maximum in the latter part of the summer, when the rain-bearing trade winds from the ocean flow in towards the low pressure areas created by the heat in the interior of the continent. The economy of this region is almost entirely bound up in the production of cotton, and it is interesting to note the northern and western limits of cotton cultivation. The northern limit can be defined by the length of the summer ; cotton must have 200 days between the last frost of spring and the first frost of autumn. Westwards the rainfall provides the limit, and between 20 and 23 inches is now found to be the minimum necessary for the cultivation of cotton, unless of course irrigation is available. Central and northern China form part of the great Monsoon region of Asia. The climate differs from that of India and southern China in the coldness of the winters. The rainfall, like that of India, is due to the development of a low pressure centre, towards which rain-bearing winds from the ocean blow. While India is protected in winter from the cold winds by the Himalayas, China is not so fortunate. Bitterly cold winds blow outwards from the heart of the land towards the sea throughout most of the winter bringing the temperature over much of the country down to freezing-point or below. The temperature of Peking is well below freezing in January. Snow falls commonly over the greater part of central and northern China. The summers, however, are both hot and wet, favouring the growth of rice in the south, whereas millet and wheat are the principal grains further north. Cotton is a leading crop in central China. In the three continents of the Southern Hemisphere, climatic conditions in

corresponding regions are somewhat similar, and sometimes one refers to the "Eastralian" type of climate, which is that found in eastern Australia. The rainfall is well distributed throughout the year, with a summer maximum derived mainly from the trade winds. But the southern continents are not broad enough to develop large high pressure centres in winter with cold out-blowing winds; so the southern regions are much more temperate and have very much milder winters. Though the natural vegetation varies from country to country in the Warm Temperate climate, high forest is typical: evergreen where the rainfall is sufficiently well distributed. These "Warm Temperate Rain Forests" often exhibit a luxuriance of growth rivalling the Equatorial forests, but they are more open. Palms and tree ferns are noteworthy in many areas. In the Gulf States there are both broad-leaved forests and coniferous forests, from which the well-known pitch pine is obtained. China has been very extensively cleared of her natural vegetation, so that it is very difficult to know what was the original forest cover. It should be mentioned that Japan possesses this type of climate, but in her case the conditions are modified by the position of the country as an archipelago. Sufficient has been said to indicate that these regions are eminently suited for human occupation and development. The valleys of central China, with their rice, cotton, tea and silk, resemble Monsoon India, or rather exceed it, in their density of population, and include the most densely populated agricultural tracts of the whole world. The density may be upward of 3,000 to the square mile—3,000 people who find their sustenance throughout the year from the small tract of land afforded by one single square mile. The Gulf States of America are the world's storehouse of cotton with the Maize Belt immediately to the north. The eastern coastal strip of Australia and the warm coastal belt of Natal have both attracted a large population. There are considerable untouched forest areas, however, in South America—untouched largely because they are swampy and unhealthy.

The Cool Temperate Oceanic Climate

Returning now to the western margins of the continents we must consider the climate found on the poleward side of Mediterranean lands, and we come to the regions which include the British Isles in Europe and the coastlands of British Columbia in North America. These regions lie constantly in the belt of the westerly winds—the Anti-Trade wind belt—and so are under the influence of cool, rain-bearing winds from the ocean the whole year. The two characteristics, small range of temperature between summer and winter and a well-distributed rainfall throughout the year, are at once obvious. The westerly winds do not blow as steadily as the trade winds, but rather as a succession of eddies and whirls known in geographical speech as cyclones and anti-cyclones. Residents in north-western Europe know well the prime importance of the cyclones or anti-cyclones in determining local weather conditions. The largest area having this type of climate is north-western Europe, but British Columbia and the north-western United States are another important area. In the Southern Hemisphere there is only a small tract in southern Chile, and no part of Africa lies sufficiently far south, whilst in Australasia only

Tasmania and New Zealand (especially the South Island) are typical. In Europe, owing to the drift of warm water which is the continuation of the Gulf Stream, the mild winters characterising this type of climate extend exceptionally far north. Conditions are most truly oceanic, that is, the annual range is least, near the western coasts. The winters become steadily colder as one goes eastwards and the summers slightly warmer ; so it is customary in Europe to distinguish two sub-divisions :

(*a*) The north-west European type, where the average temperature of the coldest month is above freezing—averaging about 40°.

(*b*) Central European type, where the average temperature of the coldest month is about or below freezing.

The temperature for the hottest month lies between 50° and about 75°, with 65° as an average figure.

The rainfall is well distributed throughout the year, but the total amount varies somewhat widely. In the west the mountains are the wettest part, the plains, lying to the east of the mountain ranges, are the driest. Some parts of the British Isles have a rainfall of over 80 inches, as in the Lake District, whilst in the east of England the rainfall drops to little over 20 inches, and is as low as 18 inches in eastern Germany.

The Cool Temperate Climate is the natural home of the Temperate Deciduous Forests. In Monsoon lands the trees lose their leaves to protect them against the heat of the hot season ; but in the Cool Temperate lands the trees are bare during the winter as a protection against cold. The delicately tissued leaves are easily injured by winter frosts, and the trees have made the winter their resting period. The very name of the " fall " of the year, though replaced in England by the less descriptive " autumn," is indicative of the marked nature of the phenomenon of leaf fall. Many of the trees of these deciduous forests yield valuable hardwood timbers, more easily worked than the timbers of Equatorial lands, but hard relatively to the softwood timbers of the coniferous forests. Well-known examples are the oak, elm, maple, beech and birch. Deciduous forests formerly covered most of north-western and central Europe, only interrupted by highlands clothed with evergreen forests or with tracts of moorland and heathland. In North America the mixture of several species of evergreen conifers gives the forests a somewhat different aspect.

The Cool Temperate type is the one most favourable to the development of the human race. It is sufficiently cold to necessitate manual work for the maintaining of bodily warmth in winter, but the summers are never so hot as to make outdoor work unpleasant. Individuals and races seem to develop somewhat more slowly than in tropical climes, but their maturity is more permanent when it is attained. Most of the great industrial countries of the world—Britain, France, Germany, Belgium and Czechoslovakia—are situated in this region. Over the greater part of Europe, the natural vegetation—the forest—has been cut down to make room for agricultural, pastoral and industrial development. All the important cereals—wheat, barley, oats and rye—flourish, at any rate in the drier parts, with maize in the warmer parts. The natural fruit include apples, pears and a number of others. In the drier regions sheep flourish on the hill pastures ; in the wetter areas the grass grows richly and affords

excellent pasture for cattle. The corresponding area in North America is equally suited for development, except that much of British Columbia is too mountainous for settlement; and in the deep valleys which separate the mountain ranges, the rainfall is often extremely low, some parts getting no more than about 5 inches a year. The mild winters of such places as Vancouver form a pleasant and interesting contrast to the very severe winters of the prairies of the heart of Canada. New Zealand—sometimes called the Brighter Britain of the South—forms an interesting example of modern development in the Southern Hemisphere of this type of climate. Only Chile's area, with too great a rainfall and too great an extent of mountainous country, remains undeveloped.

The Temperate Continental Climate

As we pass inland from the regions having the last type of climate, we come to great tracts in the heart of the land mass of North America and of the land mass of Eurasia which are far removed from the moderating influence of the sea. There are no cooling sea breezes to counteract the extreme heat of summer, nor are there warm ocean currents and pleasant westerly winds to mitigate the extreme cold of winter. When the land becomes heated up in the spring, low pressure areas form and winds blow from the ocean sufficiently moist to bring a moderate rainfall. This rainfall comes mainly in the spring and summer, and affords conditions far more suitable for grass than for trees. So in these regions are found the great Temperate grasslands of the world—the Prairies of North America, the Steppes of southern Europe and southern Siberia. The winters are very long and very severe, the summer short but hot. Average temperatures below 0° F. are common in the winter, but the three hottest months usually have temperatures over 60° and frequently over 70°. In the Southern Hemisphere, the land masses are so much narrower that the extreme continental type does not occur. In South America, however, the Pampas, cut off by the high Andes from the westerly winds of the south Pacific, enjoy a comparable though much more moderate climate. In South Africa Temperate grassland is found on the surface of the lofty South African Plateau. Here temperatures are much higher, snow being a rarity, and the existence of the grasslands is due largely to elevation. The Murray-Darling Basin in Australia has also a modified continental climate.

In some ways the Temperate grasslands form a type of region as distinctive in its own way as the Equatorial forests. The grass is usually lower and less coarse than in the Tropical grasslands, but the feature which strikes the eye is the absolute treelessness of the rolling plains. The contrast, too, between the tender green of the spring, the brown, dried-up wastes of late summer, and the boundless sheet of snow in winter is characteristic of these regions of the Northern Hemisphere. The animals, as in the Tropical grasslands, are divided into the grass-eaters, swift of foot to escape from their enemies, and the carnivores, amongst which man must really be classed.

Primitive man, as a native of the grasslands, is indeed primarily a hunter, as were the Red Indians of the Prairies. The second stage in

human development comes with the domestication of such animals as the sheep, the goat, the ox and the horse. Pastoral industries become of prime importance, and man is nomadic, wandering about with his flocks and herds in search of fresh pastures. Droughts and a consequent shortage of pasture have repeatedly led, throughout history, to great movements of these nomadic peoples and raids on the settled populations of surrounding lands. It is interesting to note that in the grasslands of the Southern Hemisphere, the rearing of sheep is still the first industry, as in Australia, South Africa and parts of the Argentine. In Canada and Russia the extremes of winter cold are too severe for sheep-rearing to be really successful; but a climate so favourable to the growth of native grasses has naturally proved favourable to those grasses which man has helped to perfect as the main cereals. The Temperate grasslands have become the world's granaries, from which the deficiencies of the industrial countries are made up. Except in South Africa, where maize is the leading cereal, wheat is the crop of first importance in international commerce, followed by barley, oats and rye. The Prairies, the Pampas, the Veld of South Africa, and the Downland of Australia are already well tilled; but there are still areas to be developed in Asiatic Russia. One large area of rather dry grassland remains undeveloped in Mongolia and Manchuria, where Chinese settlement is penetrating gradually along the fringes.

In the grasslands of the Southern Hemisphere, particularly in the Argentine and Uruguay, cattle-rearing is important; but there is a distinct tendency for " bread " to oust " meat " in the competition for these lands. There are no longer the numerous huge ranches that formerly existed; they are being broken up, and wheat farming becomes of greater importance. Hence the need for finding new lands for meat production, and reference has already been made to the importance of the Tropical grasslands in this particular respect.

The Cool Temperate Climate of the East Coasts

Whereas the Cool Temperate Oceanic Climate occurs on the western margins of the northern continents, being under the beneficial influence of the westerly winds, the east coasts are not climatically so fortunate. The moderating influence of the ocean prevents them from suffering the extremes of heat and cold experienced in the interiors of the continents, but the eastern margins of the great land masses are far colder in the winter than the corresponding western margins. Many of the ports, *e.g.* Montreal and Vladivostok, are ice-bound, though the summers are hotter than in corresponding latitudes on the west coasts. In the north-eastern United States, the Maritime Provinces and the St. Lawrence Valley of Canada, there is a well-distributed rainfall which permits of dairy and arable farming. The corresponding region in Asia, in Manchuria and Amuria, one is still in a region where the monsoon winds play their part; so it is the summers which are hot and moist, the winters extremely cold and almost rainless. The land masses of the Southern Hemisphere are not sufficiently broad for this type of climate to be developed.

The forests which normally clothe the two regions of the Northern Hemisphere are of mixed deciduous and coniferous species. Like the

Cool Temperate Regions of western Europe, these two tracts form " Regions of Effort," where man is rewarded in proportion to the effort expended. No one needs to be reminded of the industrial development of those portions of the United States which fall in this tract, nor indeed of the corresponding parts of Canada. The American tract has been so far developed that it is no longer self-supporting in the matter of foodstuffs. The same development has not yet taken place in the Asiatic regions; indeed, Manchuria is a tract as yet considerably undeveloped. It is obvious that if such a wonderful result may be attained with this type of climate in America, there are vast possibilities in the future for Manchuria. This country is bordered in the south by over-populated China, which needs an outlet for its people. Its neighbour on the seaward side is the Japanese Empire, almost equally over-populated, industrialised, and depending on foreign supplies for foodstuffs and raw materials. Obviously both nations must have a deep interest in the development of Manchuria; but it is the Pacific outlet for the great territory of Russia. Hence three nations, China, Japan and Russia, have a vital interest in the same tract of the Far East. As the position is at present, Manchuria is very largely being colonised and settled by Chinese, but the development is made possible by Japanese capital, especially by that wonderful organisation, the South Manchuria Railway, rivalling in the breadth of its interests and its functions the Canadian Pacific.

The Temperate Desert Climate

Although occurring for the most part nearer the equator than the three types just discussed, the Temperate Desert Climate has been left for consideration until now because it is closely related to four of the preceding types. The Temperate Deserts cover enormous areas in the heart of the land mass of Eurasia and considerable tracts in the heart of North America whilst in South America they are represented by the Patagonian Desert. In the Northern Hemisphere they occupy plateaux, cut off from the oceans by distance and mountain barriers. They agree in having wide ranges of temperature and a very low rainfall. Generally they form huge areas of high pressure—great masses of cold air—in winter, and areas of low pressure with inblowing winds in summer. The scanty rainfall is therefore mainly in summer, except in those regions, such as Persia, which border the Mediterranean countries.

It is not necessary for our purpose to enlarge upon the characters and the different sub-types of the Temperate Deserts—the Iran type on the lower plateaux of Asia, the Tibet type occurring on the highest plateau in the world, and others. From the point of view of vegetation, there is usually a close affinity with neighbouring, more fertile regions. Thus some of the Temperate Deserts are very, very poor grasslands and pass outwards into normal grassy steppes. Others represent the driest tracts of Mediterranean lands, and so on. Like the Hot Deserts, they are " Regions of lasting Difficulty," where effort can scarcely count upon a sure reward; and they remain, except where minerals have been the source of attraction, but thinly populated.

The Cold Temperate Climate

Stretching right across the Northern Hemisphere as a broad belt, is a region whose average temperature is low and where the greater part of the somewhat scanty precipitation is in the form of snow. The natural vegetation is everywhere of the evergreen, coniferous forest type. The really distinguishing feature is the shortness of the summer—insufficiently long for the effective ripening of cereals. Certainly a little oats and barley are grown, but we are here beyond the economic limit for the cultivation of wheat. In most typical stations only one month rises above 60°, and in many cases the annual average is below 40°. In certain parts near the ocean the range of temperature between summer and winter may be comparatively small, but in the heart of northern Asia there is actually a range of over 100° F.—the greatest in the world. A similar type of climate occurs on mountain ranges throughout Europe and North America. In the Southern Hemisphere only the extreme south of South America and the mountains of New Zealand have a climate sufficiently cold to belong to this type. Where agriculture is so little favoured, natural vegetation remains important. The majority of the trees are evergreen and coniferous. The peculiar structure of the thick-skinned resinous leaves affords adequate protection both against cold and excessive loss of moisture. The finest tree growth is in the warmer southern parts ; northwards the trees become scattered and smaller, or grow but slowly. Thus it takes 50 or 60 years for timber forests to regenerate in the southern margins, but up to 200 years in the northern tracts. The Coniferous Forests, or the Taïga, are the world's great storehouse of soft timber, such as pine, fir and deal. The great belt of forest stretching across North America is the most important in the world ; in Europe there are the forests of Scandinavia and northern Russia, whilst the same type reappears on the hills and mountains of north-western and central Europe. Across the north of Asia, that is in Siberia, the forested areas are largely inaccessible and suffer from the peculiar physical conditions of the land. The great rivers there flow northwards towards the frozen Arctic Ocean, and are themselves frozen throughout the winter. In the spring the upper courses in the warm south melt, whilst the central and lower courses are still ice-bound, with the result that flood-waters spread far and wide over the flat country and turn the Taïga into a vast forested morass. This state of affairs is reflected in the poor condition of much of the timber.

The sparsely inhabited and less accessible regions of the Coniferous Forests are occupied mainly, before development, by hunters and trappers, for the animals of the northern forests are protected from the cold by thick fur. The main fur-producing tracts are round Hudson Bay in Canada, and in the forest regions of Siberia. In the economy of a civilised world logging and timber-working industries take first place in these tracts, the production of wood pulp for paper being not the least important of the uses of coniferous wood. The trees are felled during the winter, dragged over the slippery snow to the watercourses, and floated down the rivers when the snows melt. Accessibility, the presence of streams suitable for floating, and the existence of water-power for sawmills and pulping mills are the factors influencing development. By far

the most important areas are along the southern fringes of the forest in Eastern Canada, and in the countries of Northern Europe. The influence of the abundance of easily worked wood is seen in the dwellings in the forested regions, from the rough log cabins of the Canadian backwoodsmen, the timber-workers of Finland and northern Russia, to the elaborate wooden chalets of the Swiss mountain forests.

The softwood forests of the smaller countries of Europe have been worked so long that it is difficult to maintain an output of timber and wood pulp, and certainly almost impossible to increase that output. The only two countries in the world which still have very large reserves of soft timber are Canada and Russia—a very interesting state of affairs.

The Tundra or Cold Desert Climate

Within the Arctic Circle the winters are very long and very cold—there are at least some days on which the sun never appears—whilst the summers are very short though warm. Though for certain periods the sun never sets, it never rises far above the horizon. It is too cold for forest; the natural vegetation is moss and lichen, with stunted bushes, and small trees near the forest limit. Agriculture is practically impossible, for the ground is frozen for three-quarters of the year. The short, hot summer does, however, sometimes, produce an amazingly prolific growth of grass and herbs, which can take advantage of the continuous sunshine of midsummer; hence the introduction of the name "Arctic Prairies," substituted in Canada for the old term "Barren Lands," which scarcely does justice to the region.

Though they are at present almost uninhabited, there seem to be future possibilities for the development of these lands, by the breeding of reindeer or caribou, the natural animal inhabitants, whose flesh and skins have a very definite economic value. Northwards the Tundra lands pass into regions of permanent ice and snow, the plateau of Greenland representing the ultimate development of the extreme type of Cold Desert Climate. To this the Antarctic continent corresponds in the Southern Hemisphere.

Before terminating this section, it is necessary to emphasise again the existence of transitional belts between the various types of climate which have just been described. It is necessary also to emphasise the existence of local variations in each of the major climatic regions—local variations which are due, in particular, to differences in elevation. In a very broad way, we may be said to pass through the same vegetation zones in ascending a mountain in the Tropics as we do in journeying from the Tropics polewards. The mountain softwood forests of the Himalayas, or of the Alps, or the Carpathians, are the counterpart of the great Coniferous Forests of northern Asia or northern Europe; whilst above come the "Alpine" pastures, which are the counterpart of the Arctic pastures just described. The variety in the natural vegetation, and so in natural resources, afforded by these vertical zones, in a mountainous country such as Switzerland, is a matter of obvious importance.

There are many dramatic critics who hold that Shakespeare should always be played without the distraction afforded by scenery or period dress. Carried to its logical conclusion, the best way of appreciating the rhythm of the words, and the beauty or intensity of the thoughts they clothe, would be in the quiet of a darkened room with merely a loud speaker to convey the spoken word. Yet who has not listened to the broadcast of some everyday comedy, and wondered all the time what could possibly provoke the obviously spontaneous peals of merriment from the audience in the theatre itself? We are all compelled to follow the world's events in precisely this way—robbed of the stage and setting. It is little wonder that the events often appear to have an intangible sequence and no discernible cause. But as voting citizens we have a very real share in the control of those events of which we really know so little and understand less. Surely it is a first duty at least to attempt a better understanding of those events by an appreciation of the *milieu* of their occurrence. It is not without reason that a recent writer called a series of his school textbooks the " Citizen of the World Geographies." For we have attempted to show that the first aim of Modern Geography is an interpretation of the stage on which the play of history, past present and future, is set.

It is only possible here to indicate one or two aspects of the rôle played by geography in international relationships.

There is, in the first place, the economic aspect. Our modern civilisation demands products from each of the major climatic regions, and international trade is almost essentially an exchange between regions of diverse geographical character. Yet only one political unit includes within its own bounds portions of each of these regions. That unit is the British Empire. From this point of view the British Empire could be an economic unit, self-supporting and self-contained. It must be noted, however, that the climatic regions do not govern the mineral products and the Empire, rich in coal, must remain poor in mineral oil.

The position of some of the other great powers is interesting. Continental United States, despite her 3,000,000 square miles of territory (more than half of it in favoured climates), does not stretch into the tropics or equatorial regions, and must depend on foreign supplies of tropical and equatorial products. Thus the greatest consumer of rubber in the world, as we pointed out above, must purchase from British or Dutch sources, or develop plantations with American money on alien soil. The United States' need for tropical products has undoubtedly influenced her foreign policy in many directions. Cuba, the greatest cane-sugar exporter in the world, though nominally a republic, is in a definitely subordinate alliance with the United States, which likewise dominates the other tropical West Indian islands of Haiti and Porto Rico. Sentimental attachment to the Monroe Doctrine scarcely explains the purchase of the Danish Virgin Islands. In her main tropical possession, the Phillippine Islands, the United States can hardly be described as fortunate. So the whole of the vast quantities of coffee, as well as cocoa and tea, must be purchased from foreign nations. It is interesting to note the character of the United States trade with countries, such as Argentina and Australia, that lie in

latitudes similar to those of the States themselves. Her purchases of their products are limited, but her interest in the sale of manufactured goods is much greater.

If the interest of the United States in the neighbouring tropical islands of the West Indies is evidence of a desire to control certain sources of tropical products, it is small wonder that her progressive neighbour, Canada, should have an equal desire. Indeed the British West Indies are rapidly becoming a tropical dependency of the Dominion of Canada, and the excellent steamship services between the Dominion and the West Indies is evidence of the closeness of that relationship.

Turning to the vast territory of Russia, it is interesting to notice that Russia is in a position somewhat comparable with that of the United States —or rather of the United States and Canada combined. For she shares with Canada the enormous reserves of softwood timber and the products available from the northern forests. In her fertile steppe lands she shares with both countries the advantages of possessing an enormous granary, still, as far as southern Siberia is concerned, only partly developed. But despite her 8,000,000 square miles of territory and her 150,000,000 inhabitants, Russia is even more dependent upon foreign supplies for tropical and equatorial products. She does not include within her boundaries any territory which can be described even as warm temperate; but in Russian Turkestan a very large area of Russian territory may be described as Temperate Desert or on the fringe of the Hot Desert. When irrigated the land is fertile, and so, in this tract at any rate, certain tropical products can be produced. Foremost amongst these is cotton, that is so urgently required for Russia's own cotton industry. But where people depend for their food supplies on irrigated crops, it is obvious that a major proportion of the land must be devoted to food crops, and only a small proportion can be given over to such non-food crops as cotton, however badly they may be required in other parts of the country. Herein lies the guiding motive for the new Turk-Sib railway, constructed at great expense and with great difficulty to link Turkestan with Siberia, and towards the conclusion of which strenuous efforts were made in 1929 amd 1930. For Siberia is the granary, and can produce vast quantities of wheat and other foodstuffs. By the railway these can be easily transported to Turkestan, thereby releasing the land in Turkestan for the cultivation of the warm temperate or tropical crop, cotton, which Siberia cannot produce.

This aspect of international relations is closely bound up with another —the distribution, or perhaps one might say the maldistribution, of population. Considering in the first place a purely agricultural population, there are certain of the major climatic regions which can support a large population, others which can only support a very limited population. But it is maldistribution of population within any given climatic region which is even more serious; for there is a very strong tendency for immigrants from any particular clime to desire to settle in a country whose climate is similar to that of their own homeland. Other things being equal, they will probably be more successful given such familiar conditions. Thus the Indian peasant farmer would be attracted primarily by other regions with a monsoon climate similar to that of his own home, and secondly by such areas as the tropical lands of Africa, or the warm

temperate lands where climatic conditions are roughly similar and where he can carry on agriculture in the way to which he has been used at home. Unfortunately it is often a matter of the utmost difficulty to persuade a cultivator to try his fortunes under climatic conditions with which he has no experience. Despite the congestion on the cultivable land of Japan, it has proved difficult to dispose the Japanese farmer to colonise the northernmost island of the group, simply because of the extremely cold winters, to which he is unaccustomed and which he cordially dislikes. Similarly, this has undoubtedly been the chief deterrent in keeping the Japanese farmer from developing the wide, open grasslands of Manchuria, where conditions are comparable to those on the Canadian prairies. Japan is willing to supply the money, but the cultivation has been done by the Chinese, already used, in the north of their country, to the climate of cold winters. The degree to which these general principles will apply is sometimes amazing. It has been said, with very considerable justification, that the Polish settlers in Canada, used as they are to the poor soils of the eastern portion of the north European plain, are more successful on the poorer lands of Canada than they are on some of the richer tracts. Perhaps one might almost venture to say here that the Italian labourer, coming from the sunny climes of Italy, is the most successful of the European peoples in the sugar plantations of Queensland, under conditions which the north European finds unpleasantly warm. Great value attaches to the attempts to discover what are the limiting climatic conditions under which outdoor labour is possible for white men; whether, for example, the highlands of East Africa are possible for permanent white settlement or not; whether northern Australia can or cannot be developed by white labour. But the personal factor undoubtedly comes in. Even if it is possible on health grounds, all depends on whether the white man has the desire to work under such conditions. It is useless, therefore, to take a population map of the world and calculate which are the areas that require a larger population and should be developed, unless we consider the climatic conditions from the point of view of the major climatic regions. If this is done, we get some very interesting pointers as to the land which remains to be developed and the lands which are likely to attract most attention in the near future from this point of view. As an example, we may take the tropical monsoon region, which we have already noted as including India, Indo-China and south China. India and China are already densely populated—it might be said that they are saturated; but between the two lies the under-saturated territory of Indo-China. Peaceful invasion by agricultural settlers is going on from both sides; the Indians settle in British Indo-China or Burma, where they meet an attenuated stream of Chinese, not in this case bent on settlement of the land. On the other side of the mountain divide between Burma and Siam we find that the stream is a stream of Chinese, and that Indians are distinctly in the minority. The meeting-place of the two streams of immigration is in the peninsula of Malaya. A few years ago one could point to the excellent balance in the population of Malaya—about one-third native Malays, one-third Indians, largely composed of coolies working on the plantations, and one-third Chinese. The state of political conditions in China has doubled or trebled the strength of the Chinese immigration, so that there is a

predominance of Chinese immigrants. These undeveloped monsoon territories are not large, and we turn to other countries which are underpopulated, and everything points indisputably towards northern Australia. The attraction for Indians of the similar climate of the east coast of Africa has already produced serious problems, regarding the political rights of these immigrants, which are amongst the foremost problems of the British Empire. The population problem in Japan has almost reached a crisis. If it is regarded merely as a problem of supporting a given population on a given area, then Japan has reached saturation point. Of her foreign possessions, Korea already has a large population of its own, and, being a mountainous country, cannot very well support a much larger number. The possibilities of settlement in Formosa, another possession of Japan, are limited, and the possibility of Japanese penetration into Manchuria, following the penetration of Japanese capital, is definitely hindered by the attitude of the Japanese farmers. America is practically closed to Japan, the whole of Australia is closed, and her people are now streaming across the Pacific to the lands of South America. We are struck by the fact that this does not seem a very satisfactory solution of the problem. There is, of course, another alternative for Japan—namely, increasing industrialisation and organisation. The War, when supplies were not easily available from Lancashire, gave a great opportunity to the Japanese cotton industry to gain the cotton markets of the whole of the Far East, which she actually did to a very large extent. But the maintenance and definite increase of supply to those markets, so as to support an ever larger industrial population at home, is no easy matter. Even if this should be accomplished, Japan is faced with the problem of raw material. Her deficiency in coal and iron makes a hold upon Manchuria and Manchuria's reserve of these two commodities essential. With very considerable justification, Japan is loth to rely upon the doubtful quantity of her friendship with China for the maintenance of these supplies, and also for the maintenance of supplies of raw cotton. To cut off the Manchurian supplies of coal and iron, or the Chinese raw cotton, would be to cut off the life-blood of a progressive and virile nation, with consequences which may well be imagined.

But perhaps the most interesting problem of this character is to be found in Europe, in the contrast between France and Italy. Both had a population, at the census in 1921, of approximately 39 million; but the area of France is 213,000 square miles, the Italian area only 150,000 square miles. With her fertile soil, her share in two of the major climatic regions of the world (both of them with their own characteristic crops), her very considerable reserves of coal and her very large reserves of iron ore, France is placed in a favourable position, more especially as she has a steady, or even declining, population; and it is small wonder that France at the present time is the country *par excellence* in Europe with no unemployment problem. Italy, on the other hand, is a smaller territory, has no coal, little iron and a country much of which is too dry or too mountainous for cultivation. Her population, in 50 years and despite enormous emigration, has increased by 50 per cent. If we turn to the overseas possessions of the two countries, we find France with a vast overseas dominion. No one who has been recently to Morocco or Algeria will deny the

ability of the French to organise or develop those territories abroad over which she has control. Her dominions give France, too, an almost complete independence in the matter of the supply of principal raw materials. On the other hand, France, with her comparatively small population at home, which can be supported on her European territory, has little or no need for any outlet for her people. Her foreign territories are not really required for the settlement of her own surplus agricultural population. What a contrast is afforded by Italy! She is a steam engine without a safety valve. It is true that figures show Italy with foreign possessions of something like 800,000 square miles; but this total is made up of the huge tract of Libya, in the main a large portion of the Sahara Desert in north Africa, over practically the whole of which settlement is impossible. The colony of Italian Somaliland is but little better, and supports at the present time a population of little over a thousand Italians. Similarly with the colony of Eritrea on the Red Sea. So that the Italian colonial empire can be dismissed from the point of view of settlement.

Is not the disparity between France and Italy, in their respective share of the fertile climatic regions of the world, the real cause of the French-Italian naval disagreement and the insistence by Italy on naval parity with France? Yet until the problem is considered in its geographical aspect, the sympathies of the man in the street are more likely to be with France in this particular connection, because it is Italy which seeks to establish parity, France which seeks to maintain the superior position she held in the past.

Perhaps sufficient has been said in these few examples to establish the claim of geography to serious consideration by those who are concerned with the study of international problems.

An extraordinarily interesting subject of study is the geographical character of international boundaries. Broadly speaking, the most satisfactory frontiers are those which are not only political but geographical. Just as a great range of mountains usually acts as a water-parting, sending the rain which falls on the one side towards one ocean and the rain which falls on the other toward another ocean, so does it act as a human parting. The thoughts of the people tend to flow, like the water, away from the mountains towards the lowlands to which they look. We have already referred to the importance of this aspect, and, moreover, except sometimes for mineral or water rights, a mountainous area tends to be economically unimportant and disputes relative to a frontier running through such a tract are therefore less likely. It would be difficult to deny the satisfactory character of the Pyrenees as a frontier between France and Spain, while the Andine chain is the natural frontier between Chile and the Argentine. The most satisfactory and perhaps the most stable of the new countries of Europe, namely Czechoslovakia, has a well-defined mountain frontier as far as the boundaries of the plateau of Bohemia are concerned. The satisfactory use of the sea as a frontier need scarcely be referred to, but special interest attaches to the use of rivers. They have the advantage of being clearly defined; but their influence may work in more than one way. Wherever nations are in ready communication with one another and have common interests in the use of the river as a highway of trade, they tend to be linked economically and to develop a

community of outlook and a community of interest, which naturally work towards international friendship. On the other hand, where the use of the river is required particularly for irrigation, for power, for fishing rights, or for the establishment of ports, the very existence of the river as a dividing-line between two nations may very easily cause friction. Especially is this the case if the mouth of the river is in alien territory from those of the nations who share its banks. An interesting example of what may happen is afforded by the protracted arguments as to the use of the waters of the Murray River between the Australian states of Victoria, New South Wales and South Australia. Victoria and New South Wales both require its water for irrigation purposes; but it reaches the sea through South Australian territory, and it is obvious that a proportion of the water must be reserved for South Australia's use. The Rhine, as a source of power in Switzerland and an outlet of that country, as a frontier between Germany and France with its outlet to the sea through Holland, immediately suggests complications. Or again, the Danube, rising in Germany, passing through Austria, forming the frontier of Austria and Czechoslovakia, passing through the heart of Hungary and through the heart of Yugoslavia before it flows into Roumania and thence to the sea, is another example of a great river whose use as a frontier is not always satisfactory. The problem has become so severe that it is only an international Commission for taking over the river rights, and the formation of a definitely international river, which can solve it.

On the whole it may be urged that a river is an unsatisfactory frontier, but a purely artificial boundary, a straight line drawn on a map, is usually still more unsatisfactory. It is true that its character may depend on the type of country through which it passes; for example, if the line passes through a desert country, then it is probably the most satisfactory form of boundary. But the varied fortunes of such a nation as Poland in the last two or three hundred years afford evidence of the fate of purely artificial frontiers, which have no strong geographical background. Still another aspect of the use of geography in the study of international problems is in connection with transport and communications. The study of a political map will often reveal communications, particularly rail communications, by land which are desirable for the better linking up of nations. But the study of a physical map shows immediately the physical barriers which will prove permanent obstacles to such development. We shall refer below to the use of various types of economic maps, and we may note here the importance of such maps in demonstrating those regions which do definitely require improvements in transport, or where the improvement of communications is a matter of prime importance.

V. GEOGRAPHY AND NATIONALITY

So far we have been concerned mainly with the geography of the world as a whole, that branch of the subject which is often referred to nowadays as "world geography." But although these broad international relationships and their geographical study are matters of supreme importance, there is equal need for the detailed study of definite regions.

Few can hope to attain a really useful grasp of the geography of all the countries of the world but, armed with a general background of the type which we have attempted to delineate, the geographer is well equipped for the detailed study of a definite area or a definite country. Indeed, for the progress of modern geography it is imperative that it become parochial, and that the geographer should devote himself to a definite country. This brings us to what is generally called " regional geography," because it deals with definite regions.[1]

Whether one undertakes the study of a broad region, such as the " Far East," or a single political unit, it is essential to follow a definite logical order. One should first consider aspects which concern its position on the globe, its distance or nearness from the great land masses, and so on. Then take in order its physical features, its geological structure, its climate, its natural vegetation and its animal life, exactly as has already been done in studying the world. At this stage we come to a very important conception—that of the natural region. We have learnt how useful is the conception of the world divided into major natural regions on the basis of climate; but when we come to the study of a single country, we find that this can likewise be divided into small units or natural regions on the basis of community of geographical factors. It is true that we may select almost any one of the great geographical factors for this purpose. Thus, we may consider a country as divided into physical units and structural units according to its topography and its structure respectively; or we may consider its smaller deviations in climate and divide it into climatic regions. Regions based on natural vegetation and agriculture, which generally go together, often bear a very close relationship to the regions which are distinguished on a climatic basis. Usually, however, a country is most satisfactorily divided into natural regions by a consideration of all these factors. Throughout any one natural region we may expect to find a certain similarity of topographical features, and a similarity of geological structure, of climate, of vegetation and of animal life, including the life of man, which is also largely moulded by the factors. It comes as no surprise to the geographer to find that his natural regions so defined bear an extraordinarily close relationship to what may be distinguished by the sociologists as " cultural " regions. Some years ago the writer attempted a division of India into natural regions on a geographical basis; almost simultaneously the division into cultural regions was undertaken by Mr. F. J. Richards. The results of these two studies were practically identical in all cases. Indeed a geographical natural region is often the race-home of an individual type. The group consciousness, which we call nationality, tends to develop within such a natural area, so that a natural geographical region is not infrequently an area inhabited by a single racial type with a common cultural and economic inheritance. Thus the most stable political units are undoubtedly the ones which correspond most closely

[1] Space does not permit of enlargement upon other aspects of specialisation in the study of geography; but a very profitable line of study embraces the conditions influencing the production of, and trade in, any particular commodity, as well as the geographical conditions which affect the development of trade in any one particular region.

to geographical regions or units, and it should be noted that the geographer's natural regions are not limited to considerations of physical and economic geography alone, since the natural factors are reflected in culture and language as well as in national consciousness. The plain of Hungary is a geographical region. It is occupied by the modern state of Hungary and by the nation known as the Hungarians. This forms at once a contrast with the Bohemian plateau and its inhabitants, the Czechs. Geographically the limits between the two natural regions are not well defined; the spurs of the Carpathians project on to the Hungarian plain and many of the Hungarian plain-dwellers live in close proximity to their Slovak neighbours of the mountains. So just as the geographical line of division between the highlands of Czechoslovakia separates them with difficulty from the lowlands of Hungary, so the international frontier between the two countries is extremely difficult to draw up satisfactorily.

Most political units, however, include more than one natural region. A good example is afforded by Scotland, which falls very clearly and obviously into at least three divisions: the Highlands, the Central Lowlands and the Southern Uplands, distinct geographically and in nearly all other respects. The study of natural regions may be carried further, and smaller and smaller units may be distinguished; and it is this that underlies the tendency of modern geography to a development of what is known as regional survey. It is only by an accurate and detailed survey of all aspects of the geography of a country that we can delineate wherein lie differences between individual parts. In the county of Kent, for example, there is obvious contrast between the fertile, market-gardening parts of north Kent, the pasture lands of the Downs and the hop-garden regions of the Weald.

It is often difficult to express in words the exact character of these differences between different parts of a single country. In this the geographer relies more and more on what has been described as his principal tool, for the map, according to Sir Halford Mackinder, is the tool of the geographer. In this regard geography, that is social and economic geography, can well perform the function of the handmaid to the science of economics. To give a single example of what is meant here; a student of the economic development of India would of necessity be concerned with the production and export of foodstuffs, and would be concerned with the three principal foodstuffs of rice, wheat and millet. Statistics will show the relative areas which these three crops occupy in India; we may go further and use statistics to show the relative areas which they occupy in the separate provinces of India. But the geographer is concerned with even more exact relationships than these; and he would naturally construct a map of India, showing by cartographical methods exactly where are situated the tracts under the three different crops. The common method used for this is that known as the dot method, allowing one dot on the map to represent so many acres or so many tons of production of a certain crop. The dots are placed as near as possible where the actual production takes place. The result is seen in the three maps given here, which show the areas of production in India of rice, millet and wheat. Such maps often suggest the factors which are in the

main responsible for the particular distribution. In the case of India, rainfall is the factor of paramount importance, and so on the maps illustrating this section certain rainfall lines have been inserted to show the connection. High land is also shown to demonstrate the effect of altitude on the distribution of main food crops. The deductions to be drawn from such maps are briefly indicated in the underlines.

We may go further with such maps, and use them to demonstrate the actual areas within which expansion or development is possible or likely.

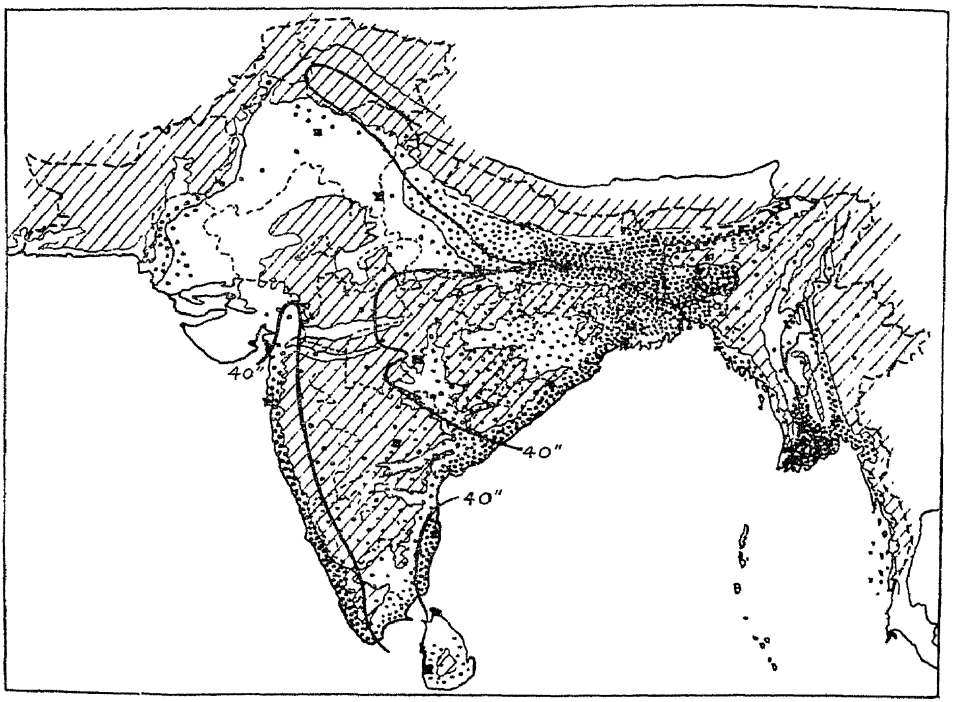


Fig. 2. Map showing the distribution of rice in India. Each dot represents 50,000 acres sown. The squares show for purposes of reference the positions of the capital towns of each province. The lined area shows that part of the country which is more than 1,000 feet above sea-level, and indicates the greater importance of rice in lowland areas where there are flat fields which can be flooded. The lines shown are the 40-inch annual isohyets or rainfall lines, and demonstrate that rice becomes unimportant where the rainfall drops below 40 inches.

Another important branch of geographical investigation concerns itself with the factors which determine, or have determined, the position of human settlements. In this regard the geographical factors were undoubtedly much more in evidence amongst primitive men, as determining, in the days of old, the initial position to be chosen for settlement; and very often the geographical factors have become obscured as time has advanced. For instance, we may take the case of London. In a part of the country far removed from coalfields or any other source of power,

in that half of the country which is agricultural rather than manufacturing, London is some distance from the sea and it does not offer any very special advantages to shipping; and it is at first difficult to see why it should remain the premier city of the world and the premier port of England. For an explanation of the advantages of London's position, we have to go back to the geographical factors which operated in the very early days of settlement. In those days the lowest point on a river which could be forded or bridged assumed a special significance, and

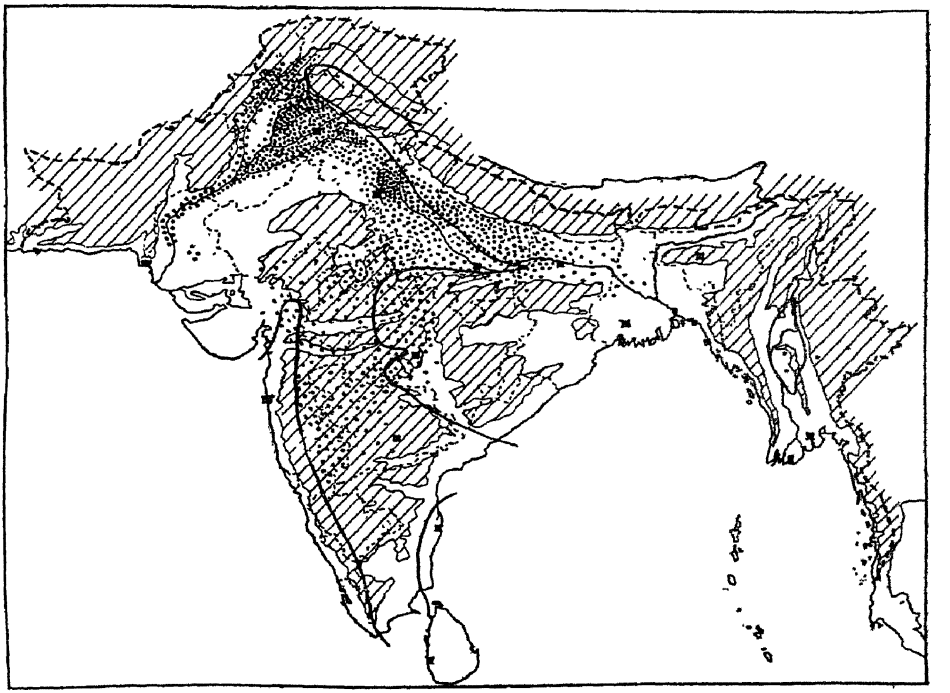


Fig. 3. Distribution of wheat in India, showing the concentration in the Punjab and the United Provinces. There is still a tendency for the crop to be concentrated on the lowland areas of rich alluvial soil. Nearly all the wheat-growing areas have less than 40 inches of rainfall a year, but it should be noted that the crop is important mainly in those parts of northern India which have a marked cool season. Each dot represents 20,000 acres. The lined area is more than 1,000 feet above sea-level.

London Bridge may be said to occupy roughly this position. It is interesting to notice that it has held the position of the lowest bridge over the Thames for more than 2,000 years, if we except the Tower Bridge with its somewhat special method of construction. The river ford or bridging point must be capable of being defended against attack, so the presence near the river of high ground, which could be surrounded by a wall or barricade and which was not liable to be flooded, was an attraction. It is difficult perhaps to imagine the day when London was concentrated on a small hill, or group of hills, of which the crest of one is now crowned by

St. Paul's Cathedral, and which sloped down by Ludgate Hill to the valley of the river Fleet. Away to the north of the city were again marshy tracts and fields, the presence of which is indicated to-day in the name of Moorgate. This hill, easily defended, surrounded on all sides by marshes or by rivers, was an ideal site for a town which should guard the lowest fording-place on the river Thames. For long these considerations determined the direction in which London should spread out from its original centre. The drier sandy ridges were settled, while the damper

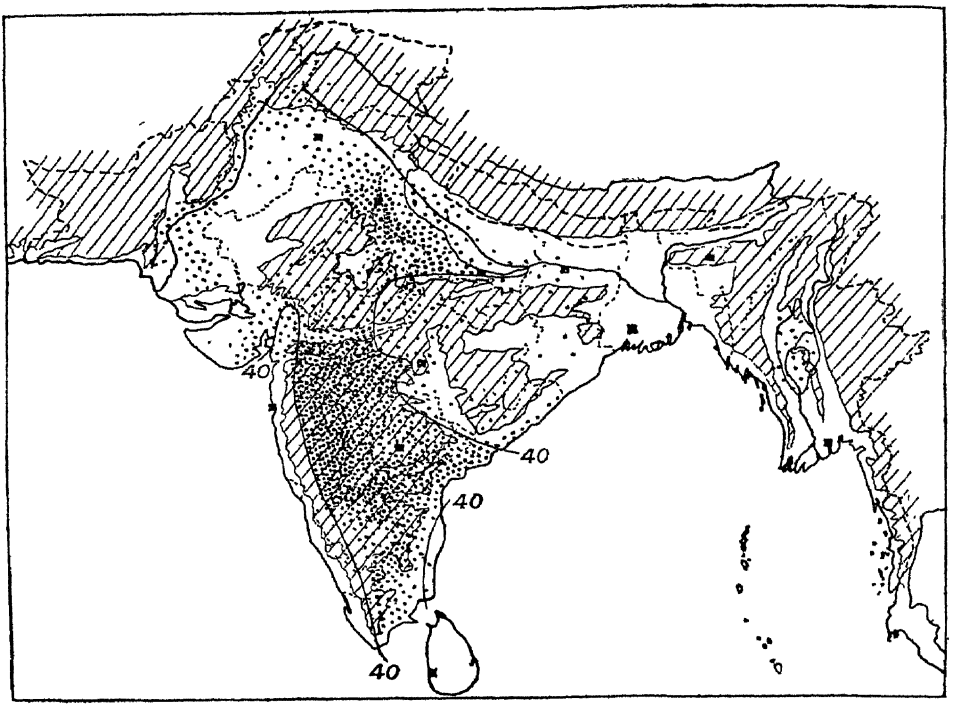


Fig. 4. Map showing the distribution of millet in India. Each dot represents 50,000 acres. The lined area is that part more than 1,000 feet above sea-level. The lines shown are the 40-inch isohyets and demonstrate that millet is essentially a dry zone crop, but that it can be grown on the hilly or poorer regions, whereas the better soil of the alluvial plains is utilised for wheat.

[The three maps, Figs. 2, 3 and 4, show how very different are the chief crops and consequent agricultural practice in different parts of India, and how climate is essentially the controlling factor.]

clay valleys between them were still neglected. But these factors have so been obscured, that we must go far back in history to trace their once enormous importance. It is much the same with the other great cities of the world. It is possible to find, if we go back in their history, very potent geographical factors that influenced their growth. We may take the example of New York, at the entrance to the one significant gateway across the difficult country of the Appalachian mountains *via* the Hudson

and the Mohawk gaps. Or there is the position of St. Louis. In the early days of American expansion, the great rivers, the Missouri, the Mississippi and the Ohio, were the principal highways in the new country, and an obvious nodal point for settlement would be just below the junction of the three ; the exact position of such a town would be settled by the presence of suitable land, near the river but free from floods ; a nodal town, once started, later became a focus of railways, with the result that it has risen at the present day to be one of the great focal cities of the United States. The origin of Birmingham, in the midlands of England, may be traced to the days when it was a small market town situated on a relatively infertile plateau but surrounded by fertile agricultural land, which then became a common meeting-place for the farmers of those surrounding tracts ; they would require, above all other things, horseshoes and simple agricultural implements. It is to their demand perhaps that Birmingham owes its great hardware industry, just as Derby owes its Rolls-Royce factories to the day when it was a meeting-place for coaches. A special reason may be given for the interest which ports possess. There are nearly always two points to be considered in tracing the growth of a port ; in the first place, its local position ; in the second place, its position relative to the hinterland and economic region which it serves. It was the now unimportant little river Hull which was responsible for the early growth of Kingston-on-Hull, now simply Hull, which uses not the smaller river, but the Humber itself. Similarly, Liverpool, with a tiny sheltered harbour, now no longer existing, suitable for fishing-vessels, was the precursor of the modern great port. All these form subjects of fascinating interest for the student of regional geography.

VI. CONCLUSION

Modern geography has been described by an American writer as human ecology, the study of the human species in relation to its environment. Since we cannot rightly understand the importance of human events without an adequate consideration of the stage on which they are played, it must be claimed that modern geography should occupy a key position in any modern educational system, and that a study of modern geographical ideas is a vital element in the equipment of every national and international citizen—more especially for those who are concerned with the administration of national or international affairs. The geographer's use of maps is an amazing discipline in an accurate presentation of facts. It is easy to be vague in phraseology, but difficult to be vague in the signs and symbols of a modern map ; or if there is vagueness, it is very easy to see at a glance. Geography is, in effect, a point of view. Consciously or unconsciously, it is becoming the universal point of view. A world which has endured the World War of 1914–1918 and the subsequent economic complications has, of necessity, grown geographically-minded.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

The development of modern geography may be traced in the works of Herbertson, Mackinder, Semple, Ratzel, La Blache and others :—

A. J. HERBERTSON : in *Geographical Journal* (See p. 815 of this Article)
H. J. MACKINDER : *Britain and the British Seas* (Oxford. 1902 ; 2nd edn. 1907)
E. C. SEMPLE : *American History and its Geographic Conditions* (Boston. 1903)
F. RATZEL : *Politische Geographie* (Leipzig. 1897)
P. VIDAL DE LA BLACHE : *Les Principes de géographie humaine* (Paris. 1922)

The influence of the geologist and physiographer, especially in America, will be found in the work of N. S. Shaler, W. M. Davis, T. C. Chamberlin and R. D. Salisbury :—

N. S. SHALER : Numerous books and papers
W. M. DAVIS : *Physical Geography* (Boston. 1899)
T. C. CHAMBERLIN and R. D. SALISBURY : *Geology* (Chicago. 1909)

The special application of geography to historical problems is developed in A. P. BRIGHAM : *Geographic Influence in American History* (Boston. 1903), and in H. J. MACKINDER : *Britain and the British Seas* (Oxford. 1902 ; 2nd edn. 1907).

The principles of modern geography will be found developed in many recent books—along the lines sketched in this essay, but applied to economic problems, in L. D. STAMP : *Intermediate Commercial Geography*, Part I. (London and New York. 1927 ; 3rd. edn. 1931), applied to political problems in I. BOWMAN : *The New World* (New York and London. 1922 ; 4th edn. 1928).

The best descriptions of the world will be found in the volumes of the *Géographie Universelle*, now in course of publication by Colin of Paris, or in a series such as *Methuen's Geographical Series* (London), of which North America, South America, Polar Regions and Asia are already published. A standard compendium of information in one volume is G. G. CHISHOLM : *Handbook of Commercial Geography* ; 11th edn. (London and New York. 1928).

PRINCIPLES OF LITERARY CRITICISM

By

LASCELLES ABERCROMBIE

SYNOPSIS

I INTRODUCTORY. Criticism a distinct species of literary activity — It presupposes literary creation and literary enjoyment — It cannot replace either, but it can help both — It exists, however, in its own right; and may take two forms, according as it enquires into general function (theory of literature) or particular merit (criticism proper) — These two forms overlap and are necessarily interrelated.

II THE ART OF LITERATURE. In literature, experience is *expressed* in language — But it is also *represented* in language — The two ideas are combined if we say that, in literature, language *communicates* experience — In literature as an art, experience is communicated for its own sake, to be valued as such — This means that the author's experience must be re-created in the reader — Language in literature must be a symbol of experience, communicating both its substance and its value, and so used as to unite all its parts into a single complex whole — Diction symbolizes the substance, form symbolizes the unity of the experience which inspires literary art — Poetry the type of that art.

III ARISTOTLE'S *Poetics*. Permanent importance of the book — Limitations of Aristotle's treatment — His opposition to Plato — The true doctrine of "imitation" in literature — The supreme place of the idea of unity in literary theory — False ideas of unity — The function of literature exemplified in tragedy — Character and action: "Katharsis."

IV AFTER ARISTOTLE. *Horace* as disseminator of Aristotle's theory in the form of critical principles — "Good taste" a rational conception — *Dante's* "allegorical" theory — *Sidney, Bacon, Kant, Croce* continue the direction of Aristotelian theoretical criticism — "*Longinus*" and stylistic criticism — Its English tradition: *Ben Jonson, Pope, Wordsworth* — Romanticism and the sublime: *Burke, Kant, Lessing, Manzoni* — The English romantics.

V CONCLUSION. The rules of criticism: their theoretical basis — The subjective element — The freedom and responsibility of criticism.

PRINCIPLES OF LITERARY CRITICISM

I. INTRODUCTORY

When Socrates was explaining to his judges how it was that he had made himself so unpopular, he told them of his investigations into the wisdom of those whom the world reputed to be wise. The enquiry had been strangely disappointing ; and when he came to describe his encounter with the poets, " Gentlemen," he said, " I am ashamed to tell you the truth. I took the poems which seemed to be most carefully composed " —the suggestion is, that these were the poems in which the poets ought to have been most conscious of what they were doing—" and I asked them what they meant." But the poets could not tell him that : " There was scarcely a man present "—for it seems these interrogations took place in the presence of the poets' admirers—" who could not talk about these poems much better than the poets themselves."

Socrates had, in fact, made a discovery of first-rate importance. With the peculiar and characteristic turn he gave to his discovery, we are not now concerned. The thing for us to note is, that he was the first person to distinguish between the ability to criticize literature and the ability to compose it. " I soon found out," he said, " that poets do not compose poetry because they are wise, but because they have a certain nature or genius, which is capable of enthusiasm,"—or, as we might nowadays put it, of being inspired ; poets in this respect being, he went on, " like prophets and oracular persons, who also say many fine things without knowing what it is they are saying." When he invited the poets to tell him what their poems " meant," Socrates was testing them for what he called " wisdom " : that is to say, for the power of rational analysis conducted in strict accordance with definite intellectual principles. In other words, he was inviting them to criticize their own poems. He found them unable to do so.

If it had suited his purpose, Socrates might have gone on to point out that the power to enjoy poetry is also quite different from the power to analyse it rationally. The power to enjoy poetry, like the power to compose it, proceeds from a certain nature. Very probably, indeed, both powers proceed from the same nature ; only in the one case it exists passively, in the other actively. Nevertheless, the two powers themselves are obviously quite distinct. And now to these must be added a third power—the power to criticize literature. For when Socrates interrogated the poets, he was not putting impertinent or unnecessary questions. Ever since man became conscious of possessing in the art of literature a region in which he could exercise some of his most delightful and most profitable energies, people have not only been asking what poems " meant," but all sorts of other questions as well, which properly fall under the heading of criticism. What makes Socrates' " Apology " the first milestone

in the history of criticism is simply this : that there Socrates for the first time clearly pointed out that criticism is a distinct species of literary activity, and also why it is distinct.

We may say, then, that the realm of literature is occupied by the activities of three distinct powers : the power to create, the power to enjoy, and the power to criticize. The chief thing that distinguishes the power to criticize from the other two is the fact that it can be acquired. For, though criticism may be intuitive, the critic may also be conscious of the process by which he criticizes ; and this process appeals to certain intellectual principles which can be set out in an orderly system, studied, and deliberately put into practice. But there are no principles which will tell you how to create literature, nor how to enjoy it. Criticism, then, does not pretend to account for the state of mind in which literature is created, nor for that in which it is enjoyed : still less does it pretend to bring these states of mind into existence if they do not exist already. It assumes their existence : for the person who can neither create nor enjoy literature, all criticism must be entirely meaningless. That is to say, it assumes the fact that literature exists ; and it then proceeds to enquire into the nature of that fact, to expound it, to assess its value, and in a word to think clearly about it.

And this, as Socrates pointed out, is quite distinct from the power to create literature, and, as he might have pointed out, quite distinct also from the power to enjoy it. Nevertheless, though perfectly distinguishable, it can co-exist with either of the other two powers. Socrates may have been unlucky in his poets : not all the poets living in his day, one imagines, would have been incapable of telling him what their poems " meant." Perhaps those whom he questioned found it a little difficult to make out what Socrates himself " meant " when he asked them what their poems " meant " ; perhaps they thought it a sufficient answer to say, that what a poem means is simply—itself. No doubt there is such a thing as quite uncritical composition in literature ; no doubt there is such a thing as quite uncritical enjoyment. But both must be very rare. As soon as a man becomes aware that it would suit his purpose to say a thing this way rather than that, as soon as a man becomes aware that he likes this thing better than that, criticism begins : which is as much as to say, that criticism begins when literature begins. But criticism as a noticeable activity in literature begins when vague instinctive preference passes into consciously defined choice which can be rationally justified : when, that is to say, there is an appeal to intellectual principles. What is to be gained by such an appeal ? Ultimately, simply this : the gain of being intelligent. Whatever man can think about at all, some men will insist on thinking about with the most conscientious precision and lucidity that can be contrived. But there is a more obvious reward. Criticism enables the man who has the energy to create literature, to make the most intelligent, and therefore the most efficient, use of his energy ; and just so criticism enables the man who has the capacity to enjoy literature, to make his enjoyment the most intelligent, and therefore the most discriminating and most illuminating, kind of experience.

Criticism, as distinct from creation and enjoyment, consists in asking and answering rational questions about literature. These questions are of

two main kinds, according as they proceed from literature in general to particular pieces of literature, or the other way round. In the first kind of enquiry we regard literature as a certain class of things, and we ask how it is that we are able to take this general view of literature as a whole. What does the word " literature " mean ? What are the properties common to all literature, by reason of which it exists as such ? Above all, what is the function of literature ? The results of this enquiry can be set out in a system of principles which expresses our understanding of the nature of literature. It is important to note that last point. These principles are intellectual principles ; but they are not principles which the intellect lays down *a priori* as prescribing the nature which literature *ought* to have. The nature of literature is a fact which exists, whether we investigate it or not, like any other objective fact. The principles of literature are the answers which our intellect gives us when we ask what sort of a fact literature is.

This kind of enquiry may be called the theory of literature. It only touches incidentally or by illustration on the merits of particular pieces of literature. On the contrary, the merit of this or that particular piece of literature is precisely the topic of the second main kind of enquiry. This is what usually goes under the name of criticism, and may indeed be called criticism proper. The question here is, not of literature in general, but of unique qualities in actual concrete examples of literature : what are the qualities which give to some particular work its peculiar individuality, and whether these are good or bad qualities. Style, in the broadest sense, which includes mood and spirit and the choice of matter as well as technique and language, is the subject of criticism proper ; and its end is to assess literary merit. Only incidentally to this does it touch on the function of literature.

Strictly speaking, the theory of literature belongs to that department of philosophy which is called æsthetics. But the two kinds of enquiry cannot be kept apart ; indeed, no clear line can be drawn between them. The theory of literature must be continually referring to the fact of literature ; which means, it must be continually referring to actual specimens of literature ; and to a considerable degree, these instances will be helpful according to the literary merit they possess. On the other hand, criticism proper naturally prefers to stand on something more reliable than impressions which may be at the mercy of personal prejudices or emotional accidents. The history of criticism has been very largely the history of attempts to formulate rules for criticism, chiefly by comparing the merits of several similar works of literature, and the means used to produce them. But rules derived from some particular instances in one kind of literature do not give the security required. Over and over again, such rules have been found wanting. When the number of instances has been enlarged, the rules have broken down. Thus, critics have demanded that epic poems should have invocations or funeral games or supernatural machinery, simply because these qualities occur in several good instances. So too the brilliant success of French classical drama induced many critics to accept the rule that drama should observe the unities of time and place. And however many particular instances the rules may be enlarged to include, they can never be safe rules, so long as they are derived from

the comparison of meritorious qualities, and not from the intellectual principles of the theory of literature. For you can never be sure that such qualities, however meritorious, are essential. Only the principles which express the nature, and define the function, of literature in general can determine what is essential in any kind of literature ; and only by appealing to what is essential can criticism provide itself with trustworthy rules.

Thus the two kinds of rational enquiry in literature, which we have called the theory of literature and criticism proper, necessarily overlap. Neither can complete itself without involving the other. Even if we confine the word criticism to the assessment of merit, there can be no security in this unless its analysis can appeal to intellectual principles. For our purposes, therefore, it is right to include the theory of literature under the heading of criticism. We shall proceed by discussing several works of outstanding importance in the history of criticism, whether their motive was philosophical (the theory of literature) or æsthetic (criticism proper). A complete history of European criticism cannot be attempted. Our attention will be chiefly given to those philosophical treatises which are especially valuable to æsthetic criticism, and to some critical enquiries important in the process of English literature. The chief place will be occupied by a discussion of the first and most celebrated of all systematic theories of literature, Aristotle's *Poetics*. We shall discuss this great treatise, not for the way it exemplifies the culture in which it originated, but for its contribution to all subsequent culture. And we shall discuss it at length because in it Aristotle raises almost all the problems out of which emerge the principles required by criticism for its security, Aristotle does not always solve these problems satisfactorily ; but he compels us to consider them exactly. But first of all it will be advisable to take a general view of the rational examination of literature.

II. THE ART OF LITERATURE

Literature is an art by which expression is achieved in language. As a preliminary description, that statement will do well enough ; but it is evidently inadequate as a definition of literature. Not everything which might come under that description would be called literature—not, at least, if the word literature is to retain any precision of meaning : and when we allow a word to become vague in its meaning, we deprive it of its usefulness. Thus, conversation is not literature ; and yet we speak of the art of conversation. The word *art*, in fact, appears to have many meanings : besides the so-called fine arts, we speak of the art of cooking, the art of war, the art of advertising, and a hundred other arts. But the word has the same core of meaning in all its contexts : it is always skill definitely and deliberately designed to produce an intended result. Clearly, then, we cannot rely on the word *art* to define what we mean by literature ; if we attempted to do so, we should only beg the question, and say, in effect, that art here means the art which produces literature. On the contrary, we can only define what we mean by art here when we know what we mean by literature. Certainly, there are degrees of skill ; we may easily admit, that in literature there is a higher degree of verbal skill—more studied, more consistent, more intent—than in conversation. Moreover, in literature,

the skill is *only* in words : in conversation, the skill is also in the use of personality—sometimes more than in the use of words. Poetry may be recited, of course, and plays may be acted ; but the literary art is substantially the same whether it is spoken aloud or read in silence.

We must not, therefore, define literature by referring it to the written or printed word. For the word intelligible to the eye is only the symbol of the word intelligible to the ear ; and is in fact *heard* (though it may be only mentally) at the same time that it is visually read. Moreover, in a great deal of literature—in all poetry, for instance—it is as essential to the art of it that the words should be vividly heard (though, once more, they need be only mentally heard) as that they should be understood.

Precisely what we mean by art in the case of literature, then, must be left to appear as we narrow down the idea of literature. Art, we say, is skill designed to produce an intended result. What is the result aimed at in the art of literature ? We have described literature as a species of expression. But this is only one side of the business. Literature exists not only in expressing a thing ; it equally exists in the receiving of the thing expressed. If I tell you of something I have experienced, my words, on my side, *express* my experience ; but on your side, my words *represent* my experience. It would be just as true, therefore, to say that literature represents things as to say that it expresses things. The possibility of regarding literature in either of these two directions has influenced not merely criticism, but literature itself. To regard literature as the expression of its author's mind (or mood or temperament) emphasizes the subjective element in it, and thus leads ultimately to romanticism ; in which what the author felt is the important thing. The opposite way of regarding literature, as a method of representing things to the reader, emphasizes the objective element, and thus leads ultimately to realism ; in which the substance exhibited is the important thing. Both of these aspects are true ; but neither is the whole truth. For the theory of literature, we require a word that will include both these aspects on equal terms ; and the simple word *communication* will give us exactly what we want. For evidently, whatever else literature may be, communication it must be : no communication, no literature. Though we are apt to speak as if the mere existence of a piece of language could constitute literary art, we must always remember that language is only the medium of the art. The art consists in the communication established between author and reader (or, of course, hearer). Clearly, then, what we mean by literature will be given by the *kind* of communication which this art sets up.

When we speak of the art of literature, then, we imply the existence of a series of three terms : the two extremes are author and reader ; the middle term is language. That is what it means to say, literature is communication. But we need not banish the words *expression* and *representation* (or *imitation*, which contains the same notion as the latter word : of imitation we shall hear much later on). On the contrary, they are often very useful words ; *expression* especially useful just now, when the question must unavoidably be, what kind of communication does literature set up between author and reader ? But whenever we use them, it will always be understood, that expression has achieved a form *communicable* to another mind, and that representation has arrived by being *communicated* from

another mind. The importance of this, in the theory of literature, can hardly be exaggerated.

We are at once struck, when we survey the studied and deliberate use of language, by the fact that sometimes we can approve of the language for the way it conveys something the worth of which can be judged quite apart from the language; and sometimes our approval of the thing conveyed cannot be distinguished from our approval of the language conveying it. In either case, we have an art. But in the first case, we have an art which exists for the sake of something justifiable outside the art itself; in the other case, we have an art which exists, as it seems, simply for the sake of existing as art. The first we may call *applied art*, the second *pure art*; and we may illustrate the difference by contrasting *The Origin of Species* with the *Ode on a Grecian Urn*. Both Darwin and Keats, we may say, wrote in order to express themselves. But Darwin expressed himself for the purpose of putting his readers in possession of a certain body of information, and of thereby persuading them of the cogency of a certain line of argument. We judge his power of expressing himself as it enabled him to achieve these purposes; but we do not judge these purposes by his power of expressing himself. We ask whether the information is true, whether the argument is reasonable; the virtue of the expression consists in the way it enables us to ask these questions, to make these judgements. If the expression were clumsy, the information might nevertheless still be true and the argument reasonable; but it might be more difficult to arrive at these judgements. The purpose of *The Origin of Species*, then, is *served* by the literary quality of the book (" literary quality " meaning, at present, according to our preliminary description, simply expressive power); but it is not *justified* by this literary quality. We can distinguish, therefore, the merit of Darwin's purpose from the merit of his expressive power.

But in the *Ode on a Grecian Urn*, what purpose can be distinguished from its expression? It offers us no information which may or may not be true, no argument which may or may not be reasonable; neither are we invited to consider whether it is useful or moral. This is expression which satisfies us simply by existing as expression. The art here does not conduct us to a position from which we can judge of something outside the art; this is art which serves no purpose but to be itself, and which prompts us to judge of nothing but of itself as art. In this sense the art is pure; and when we speak of literature, we either mean that the art is in this sense pure, or that we are regarding it as in this sense pure. For it is possible to consider *The Origin of Species* as literature; but only by attending to Darwin's power of expression as such, disregarding or taking for granted the purpose he aimed at. The case would be even clearer in a work of history. It is, in fact, very easy to read, say, Gibbon's *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* without much concern for the accuracy of his facts or the justice of his interpretation, taking it merely as a magnificent pomp of events presented to the imagination. If we do so, we take it as a work of pure literature, expression justified simply as such. Thus, by *applied literature*, we mean work which can be regarded as literature by ignoring its author's purpose: what he intended as a means to an end, we take as an end in itself. But in *pure literature* no such exclusion of the author's purpose is required; for there never was any purpose except that

the expression should exist for the mere sake of existing as itself. Our discussion of the art of literature, then, will concern itself wholly with pure literature, with the expression which justifies itself by the mere fact of existing. Whenever we speak of literature, we shall mean pure literature. Applied literature we shall ignore—anything which was written to give information or to make argument persuasive, any expression designed to serve a purpose beyond the mere achievement of expression as such. We shall ignore all this for two reasons. First, because whatever expressive qualities may be found in applied literature, may be much more easily and more demonstrably found in pure literature, along with a much greater range of such qualities. Secondly, because the principles to which criticism of these expressive qualities must appeal will most naturally reveal themselves when expression has to rely solely on itself for all its justification, being actuated by no other purpose than to exist as such.

But when we say the art of literature is expression, we mean communicable expression : more precisely, we mean that the artist, in expressing himself, communicates with someone else. What does he communicate ? In the case of Darwin, the answer is obvious ; he gives us facts, and a theory. But what does Keats communicate ? When expression justifies itself simply by existing as such, what is communicated then ? The answer can only be, something which, unlike Darwin's message, justifies itself simply by being communicated. And if we go on to ask, what sort of a thing is that ? again there is only one answer : *experience*—experience which is accepted and valued simply because it is experience. So accepted, we may call it *pure experience*. The epithet really adds nothing ; for by the very nature of experience, it can never be anything but purely itself. But we are not always satisfied to take experience at its face-value. We may ask whether it is true or reasonable or useful or moral. If I am looking at a landscape, I may, if I am a farmer, judge what I see in accordance with familiar practical values : I may ask myself whether I am looking at good farming land. On the other hand, I may be perfectly satisfied with the experience of looking at the landscape without asking any questions about it at all. I am merely aware that the landscape is *beautiful*. And whenever I am aware of that, I experience something which is wholly satisfactory by the mere fact of being experienced. Now if I express this, my expression of it will have no purpose but to exist as such ; and if my expression is communicable in language, I shall have achieved literature : I shall have communicated something which can be satisfactory simply because it has been communicated.

The matter of literature, then, is pure experience. This puts no restriction on the scope of literature. Nothing can happen in life that cannot be taken as experience valued for its own immediate sake. Though we are not always satisfied to accept experience at its face-value, it is always possible to be so satisfied, provided the experience is comprehensible. The possibility of pure experience in sensuous or emotional life is obvious ; but it is equally possible in intellectual or any other life. We can enter into and enjoy a train of reasoning simply as an intellectual experience, whether we are convinced by it or not. There are few things more satisfactory in themselves, more supremely beautiful, than the structure of Spinoza's philosophy : but its beauty is one thing, its truth is another.

Who indeed can tell whether it is true? But anyone who can understand it can know its beauty. And how often in literature do we not accept moral or religious conditions which we would never think of accepting in real life? We accept them simply as experiences. Even when we experience something which we feel bound to judge, not at its face-value, but for its truth or reasonableness, its morality or utility, the very act of so judging it can be intuited as experience, and enjoyed for its own sake. Thus, wherever there is life, there is the possibility of pure experience, and so of literature. This gives another explanation of applied literature. We have seen that *The Origin of Species* can be regarded as literature if we ignore Darwin's purpose, and simply regard for its own sake the expression he designed to serve his purpose. But besides excluding the author's purpose, we may also transform it : that is to say, we may take it as an enjoyable exhibition of purpose. That is how Spinoza's *Ethics* may be regarded as literature.

But in pure literature we need neither exclude nor transform : experience there is *expressed* as enjoyable merely by virtue of being expressed. It is the effect of the author's intentional art both that we have the experience and that we enjoy it. This is what we mean when we say that the matter of such literature is pure experience. We may illustrate it further by contrasting Darwin with Lucretius. Both Darwin and Lucretius give us elaborate argument embodied in a mass of facts, inviting us to accept the argument as reasonable and the facts as true. Darwin's mode of expression gives us nothing else : it is expression designed to serve a purely scientific purpose, and is literature only in so far as the expression can be judged as such, taking its purpose for granted. The art of literature is not concerned with the theory of natural selection ; it is only concerned with the art which puts that theory before us. This we call applied literature ; but the poem of Lucretius we call pure literature. Why? Because Lucretius expresses not merely a theory, but the experience of theorizing. His language certainly puts us in possession of his arguments and his facts ; but it also puts us in possession of the ardour and exultation with which he works his arguments out, the relish with which he seizes on his facts. Whether his doctrine convinces us or not, we enter, as we read him, not merely into a philosophy, but also into the experience of being a philosopher, the sublime experience (to which intellect, emotion, and sense all contribute) of encountering things with an understanding that feels itself equal to them.

This brings us to a most important principle in the theory of literature ; indeed, out of the apparently simple proposition that literature expresses pure experience, all the main principles of our theory proceed. And first comes this : the importance of combining the ideas of expression and representation in the larger and livelier idea of communication. The author, at his end, expresses an experience in language ; to the reader, at the other end, language represents an experience. Neither of these terms fully declares what literature is. For literature *communicates* experience : that is to say, the experience which lived in the author's mind must live again in the reader's mind. It is not enough to give the reader *what* has been experienced ; neither is it enough to give him *how* the experience has been taken. The experience itself must be given, transplanted from one

mind to another. I do not give you my experience of looking at a landscape if my words merely represent what I have seen, nor if they merely express my feelings : if this experience is to be matter for literature, it must be the experience whole and entire, both what I saw and what I felt in perfect combination.

For the matter of literature, nothing else is required ; but nothing less. Attempts have often been made to say what sort of matter is suitable for pure literature, what sort is unsuitable. Anything whatever is suitable matter for the art of literature, provided it is taken by the author as experience enjoyable for its own sake, and so given to the reader ; nothing whatever is matter for literature, unless it can be so taken and so given. Anything can be so taken ; but not everything can be so given. That must depend on the author's (or would-be author's) power of making language his communication. But how can language communicate experience ? It is time to look a little more closely at this. And when we do so, we cannot but see that to speak of language communicating experience is a somewhat elliptical way of speaking : though not quite so elliptical as might at first appear. Nothing can be more privately and peculiarly one's own than one's experience : it is the very process of one's life, and by no possibility can any person share his own individual life with another person. But my life can *imitate* your experience—by imagining it ; and in the case of literature, the imitation will be of the same kind as the original. For the art of literature deals wholly with the kind of experience which is, not necessarily imaginary, but certainly imaginative. The originating impulse which prompted literary composition may derive from any of the infinite possibilities of life : it may be purely imaginary, or absolutely actual : the author may have dreamt a dream, or he may have fallen in love. But whatever it was, it must have become imagination : in order to put it into words, the author must catch it out of the flux of life, and hold it distinctly before him. That is to say, he must continue its existence by making it continue in imagination.

Now, for an author to communicate this means that he must arouse a similar imagination in his readers. By means of words, he must not only set imagination working in his readers ; he must also, by his words, control his readers' imagination, so that their experience may, as closely as possible, *imitate* his own. But in order to do that, he must make these very words (in a somewhat different sense) *imitate* his experience : he must make them a *symbol* of his own experience, always governing this not only by his sense of expressing himself in the symbol, but also by his understanding of his symbol's power of representing his experience to his readers. If the language he uses does not represent his experience to his readers, no matter how clearly it expresses this to himself, it does not succeed in being literature : it does not succeed as communication.

For language, in literature, must always be symbolic. Literature communicates experience ; but experience does not happen in language. The author's experience must be translated into such symbolic equivalence in language that the symbol may be translated back again by the reader into a similar experience : in both cases, the experience being imagined. Now this symbolic medium, language, is a limited medium.

But there is no limit to the possibilities of imaginative experience. The art of literature, then, is the art of using a limited medium as the symbol of unlimited possibilities. Hence it is that the literary artist must know how to combine in his art every power he can find in language which can be both expressive and representative : whatever can be *communicative*, in the sense of simultaneously stimulating and guiding imagination. The language must be expressive, for it must be the author's own experience that is transmitted ; but it must also be language that can represent experience, for otherwise this will not arrive in the reader's mind. The business would be easy, if it were true that whatever is expressive is thereby also representative. But this is not true. An exclamation may be very expressive to the man who exclaims ; but to the man who hears it, it may represent little or nothing. An author may be tempted to invent new syllables, which to him may exactly express his mind : but the invention will have nothing to do with the art of literature unless these liberties unmistakably represent his mind to his readers : which they are not very likely to do.

Nevertheless, language in literature must be made to mean very much more than the logical or grammatical meaning which is given by its syntax—the orderly arrangement of its parts. In fact, literary language differs from ordinary language precisely by the conscious and deliberate use in it of powers additional to the force of grammatical meaning : powers which are only casually employed in common speech. *Thought* is not expressed in literature for its own sake, but for the sake of the organisation it gives to experience. Not only thought, but equally emotions, sensuous impressions, psychological intuitions, and the mass of infinitely variable associations that accompany the movement of thought, must also be communicated to the reader's mind : that is to say, experience itself, by being imaginatively provoked there. Thus, as we have already noticed, something infinitely variable (experience) must be committed to a notation (language), the capacity of which is, by its very nature, limited. Literary art, therefore, will always be in some degree *suggestion* ; and the height of literary art is to make the power of suggestion in language as commanding, as far-reaching, as vivid, as subtle as possible. This power of suggestion supplements whatever language gives merely by being plainly understood ; and what it gives in this way is by no means confined to its syntax. But for conveying the finest and, perhaps, the most individual qualities of his imagination, the author must rely on his readers' ability to respond to what his language can only suggest. Socrates derived the power of literary creation from a certain *special nature*, which he described as being capable of " enthusiasm." This is true enough ; but " enthusiasm " is of no avail without the power to express it intelligibly in words. It is the *sense of language* that distinguishes the literary artist from his fellows : and the supreme test of this is knowledge of what language can be relied on to suggest. Just so it is the sense of language, proved by ability to respond to the suggestions of language, that makes the enjoyer of literary art. This is that *special nature* which, active in the creator and passive in the enjoyer, we must assume as the prime specific condition of literary art.

As the medium of literary art, the communicative power of language

is of four main kinds. These, of course, are only separable in a theoretical analysis : actually, they are all inextricably involved in one another. They are all capable of being unmistakably understood, though this property belongs most obviously to the first. They are all capable of an endless range of suggestion, though this may seem peculiarly noticeable in the other three. Language consists of the meaning of words and of the sound of words. These are the two aspects of one essentially indivisible combination ; but each aspect can be separately attended to. And each of these can again be subdivided into two. Of the meaning of words, there is first the grammatical meaning of the sentences given by the syntax. This is the structure of language, and represents thought as the structure of experience. But every individually significant word may have, independent of its grammatical force, a peculiar *value* for imagination, derived from its context. For what a word means is by no means a simple affair. The meaning which the dictionaries give is not much more than the nucleus round which clusters a whole system of secondary meanings. The nucleus of meaning stands for a certain thing or action ; the secondary meanings indicate the various ways the thing or action can occur. A very large part of literary skill consists in vividly liberating for its effect on imagination just that particular secondary meaning in words which is not only appropriate to the immediate occasion, but which will make the occasion come to life in the reader's mind.

The meaning of words is inseparably conveyed by their sound ; but in addition to this, the sound of words can be made significant on its own account. There is first *syllabic* sound—the quality of the vowels and consonants in distinct syllables, or in sequences of syllables, brought out by contrast or by repetition. This includes, besides rhyme and alliteration, those subtly significant effects by which vowels or consonants, sounding against each other, become sometimes plainly imitative, more often indefinably but irresistibly suggestive. Secondly, there is the *rhythm* of language : not the *quality* of the sounds of syllables, but the undulation of the *degree* of sounds in whole sentences. The degree may concern strength, duration, or pitch of sound ; and the undulation is rhythmical in so far as it is a recognizable alternation of any or all of these variable degrees of sound. Rhythm is, no doubt, the most valuable use in literary art of the sound of words ; since for the most part it is rhythm which conveys the emotional atmosphere, without which experience could not live.

By considering language, then, first as meaning, and secondly as sound, and by subdividing each of these aspects into language in continuity, and language in individual words, we see that the art of literature can avail itself of a fourfold power of communication : (1) in sentences of language, there are (*a*) the syntax of the sense and (*b*) the rhythm of the sound ; (2) in individual words, there are (*a*) the imaginative value of the sense and (*b*) the syllabic quality of the sound. Thus, in the line

Crossing the stripling Thames at Bablockhithe,

the meaning of the phrase as a whole is given by the syntax, and the rhythm of it by the alternation of unstressed and stressed syllables ; while the imaginative value of the word " stripling " here is unmistakable,

and the quality of syllabic sound in the sequence of consonants and vowels in *stripling, Thames, Bablockhithe* is equally noticeable and effective (the suggestion of the sound of flowing water is obvious).

All four kinds of power need not always be simultaneously employed, or employed with anything like the same degree of importance. The art of literature is often divided into prose and poetry. This is undeniably convenient; but the division cannot properly be made hard and fast. When it is so made, it is found to depend on nothing more than the presence or absence of a particular kind of rhythm, which we call metre. But verse (or language disposed in metrical rhythm) is notoriously no guarantee of poetical language; and poetical language (as in the Authorized Version of the Book of Job) can exist very well without verse: unmetrical rhythm may often be the right rhythm for poetical language. But without some such definable criterion as verse, what is poetical language shades off into what is not poetical, by quite imperceptible degrees. The distinction, then, is only valid in a very broad sense, and is practical rather than philosophical. But it would not be even practical unless "poetical language" meant something. What does it mean? It means language which is capable of communicating the peculiar character of an author's experience with the most penetrating vigour, the finest definition, and the subtlest detail: it means language raised to the height of its power, language in which the utmost appropriate use is simultaneously made of all its four kinds of communication. It is true that, in the vast majority of cases, when the desire is to communicate exactly every instant of experience in its immediate intensity, the peculiar insistence of metrical rhythm is employed. But metrical rhythm is not the essential thing.

The word *poetry*, then, so understood, may very well stand for literature in general, in our discussion of literary art as a whole. For poetry is the essence of literature; in poetry, the whole business of literature, the communication of pure experience in language, is concentrated to its utmost intensity. Whatever is true, on general grounds, of poetry, will be true of literature as a whole; and whenever our theory speaks of poetry, it will be of poetry as the type of the art of literature.

The end or aim of that art is to express, to represent, to communicate. Literature is not composed in order to be beautiful: we judge it to be beautiful when it has succeeded in its aim. Just as we judge the pure experience of looking at a landscape to be beautiful, so do we judge the pure experience of receiving the communication of literature: for the experience of receiving the communication and the experience communicated are indistinguishable. But we have not yet completed our discussion of the art of communicating experience in language. We may judge many things in the texture of a poem to be beautiful; and we may judge the poem as a whole to be beautiful. But the beauty of the whole is not merely the sum of the beauty of the parts. So far we have been accounting for the *matter* in a work of literature; we must now speak of its *form*—that which enables us to judge the work as a whole. We shall find that the form of literature is just as important as its matter. It is form that gives the answer to the question, What is the function of literature?

We have seen that every work of literature originates in an experience. It may be any sort of experience : something may have happened to the author in actual life, or he may have heard a story of something, or some fantasy may have flashed into his mind. But it must be an experience peculiar in one respect : it must be of a kind to take hold of him and to demand utterance. There might be nothing extraordinary in an experience that merely urged him to express himself ; there must be something extraordinary in any experience that urges him to express himself to perfection, and in a way that will also represent his experience to another mind : in a word, that insists on being communicated. For this means the energetic exertion and strict discipline of effort, in order to produce in language a symbol of the experience that shall be as nearly as possible exactly right to his artistic conscience. What is his artistic conscience ? Nothing but the experience itself demanding its just equivalent in language : a severe taskmaster, to which the artist willingly subjects himself. And what peculiarity must the experience have, to give it this tyrannous power over the artist's mind ? The answer seems to be, a peculiar degree of intensity. Perhaps all experience demands expression ; but only a peculiarly intense experience demands that remarkable kind of expression which takes the form of artistic communication, seeking thereby not merely to proclaim its occurrence, but to proclaim *itself* : so to declare its very nature and substance and tone that it may come to life again in other minds.

Now, intensity of experience means intensity of attention to it. We may call an experience, which possesses this power of dominating and energizing the artist's mind, the *inspiration* of the resulting work of art : a useful word, so long as we confine it to this quite precise meaning. In this sense of the word, the rule is, that the greater the inspiration, the greater the art required to give it literary expression ; for the more there is in an experience, the more power over language will be required to symbolize it in a work of art. It is plain that the writers—Homer, Dante, Shakespeare, Milton—who can give us the greatest experiences, can do so because they are the writers who have the greatest command of expression in language. Of course, they had great inspiration ; but we should not know that if their language had not been adequate to it. The richer the substance of their experience, the richer they could make the texture of their poetry : but that was because of their power over language. It was not merely, however, the wealth of substance in it that made their experience an inspiration ; it was because this wealth of substance was attended to in a single intensity of experience. When Shakespeare heard (or read) the story of *Othello*, he took it as a single experience ; the whole matter and import of the tale was seized by him in a single act of imaginative attention. The wealth of matter in this experience of his is expressed by the texture of the play ; but the final impression of the completed play brings all this wealth of matter in our minds into a single intensity of experience, a single act of imaginative attention, the excitement of which corresponds (so far as we are able to correspond) with the energy of Shakespeare's inspiration.

Experience can never be simple. It must always at least unite what is given to a mind with what is given by the mind ; and both of these

may be complicated. Suppose a man is looking at a sunset. His senses do not only give him the glory of colour and the delight of shape; they also give him, perhaps, the coolness, the quiet, the fragrance of the moment. And to these he adds, perhaps, imaginative associations of his own: all that the appearance of fire means to him, all that is suggested by the end of day, the coming of night, the transitoriness of beauty, and so on. All this is united in a single experience; all this is collected in a single act of attention. If the moment has the intensity which demands artistic expression, it will be picked out of the flux of experience, isolated, and made to persist by being continued in imagination; and by the very act of being imagined, it will be still more enriched. Now what characterizes this experience is not merely the substance of which it is composed, but the unity in which this complex substance is held by imaginative attention. And if this experience is to be communicated *as such*, not only must literature symbolize its complex substance, it must also symbolize the peculiar unity in which that substance has been held by the author's imaginative attention: the very unity, in fact, which made it his inspiration.

That aspect of literature which symbolizes the substance of the originating experience we may call its *diction*; the aspect which symbolizes the unity of the substance in a single act of comprehensive attention we call the *form* of a piece of literature. Form is not imposed on diction by some sort of external application; form arises out of diction, when the diction truly corresponds with its inspiration. Nevertheless form in literature is an aspect of it as distinguishable from diction as the meaning of language is distinguishable from its sound: and it is important both in theory and in criticism that the distinction should be made.

Since experience cannot be directly transferred from one mind to another, but can only be communicated by a symbol, and since in literature the symbol consists of words and combinations of words which are successively put together and successively understood, it follows that the first thing to do in communicating an inspiration is to disintegrate its unity into the parts of which it was composed, and that the first thing to happen in receiving an inspiration must be to take in the parts of it piecemeal. But the artist in thus putting forth his inspiration must provide, all the time he is doing so, for the reintegration of its parts once more into a unity, when the process of their succession is finally complete; so that the mind that receives his art will have received a series of impressions in a certain shapeliness of succession that will give, at the moment when the series is complete, a *form* to the mass of his experiences, whereby all the successive impressions unite in a single organic whole.

Of form in literature, thus considered as the symbolic equivalent of the characteristic unity of inspiration (as diction is the equivalent of its characteristic substance), the importance appears when we ask, What is the function of literature? To what end is this communicating of pure experience in plays, poems, and novels? What do we gain thereby, if we do not gain information, nor persuasion of the truth, the moral worth, the utility of things? It might seem a sufficient answer simply to say, that we gain experience; and since it is *by* experience, and primarily *in*

experience, that we live at all, to gain experience simply as such is a gain in being alive. But this would put literature in competition with actual life; and literature can never compete with actual life in the mere provision of experience; for literature can never be anything but imagined experience, which, in competition with actuality, is always under the grave disadvantage of, precisely, not being actual. It is when we look to the form of literature that we see the remarkable advantage over actuality in the experience which literature can provide. For it is the nature of man never to be satisfied with himself simply as the being that experiences; the whole of his practical and speculative effort is to make, or to discover, significance in his experience. Now, in literature, we do not need to make, or to discover, significance in our experience there; experience there *is* significant, simply by virtue of being literature.

And that by reason of the *form* which literature gives to experience. Our practical and speculative efforts are always to advance towards the perfect significance of life as organized fact, or philosophic truth, or moral value, or convenient utility; but they never arrive, and they never will arrive. There is no advance in literature. If literature succeeds in coming into existence, the experience it gives us is thereby significant: it was so when first it was composed, and will be so for ever. If the experience is not significant, literature has not succeeded in coming into existence.

For what is this most fundamental of all man's desires, the desire that his experience should be significant? It cannot be, that experience should have a meaning outside itself: what meaning intelligible to us could experience have outside itself—to us who cannot pass beyond our experience? It can only be, that experience should have a meaning within itself. But what do we mean by "meaning"? Simply, the inevitable relation which one thing has with another. A thing is said to be full of meaning, when it is a focus of relationships with many other things. Experience is perfectly significant, when everything in it is a focus of relationships with everything else in it. It is our nature to detest that kind of experience in which things are incoherent, and happen (or seem to happen) independent of the rest of things—or, as we say, *by chance*. Significant experience is experience in which nothing happens by chance, but everything happens in complete coherence with the rest: everything there exists not only for its own sake, but also for the sake of the whole: the whole is implied by the manner in which everything occurs in it. Each part is more than itself; for it *means* more than itself—it means the furtherance of the organizing of a whole manifestly ordained.

Now this is exactly what experience is in literature. In a work of literature—poem, play, novel, essay, or whatever it may be, so long as it truly is literature—nothing happens that does not somehow contribute to the form of the work as a whole, to the finally unified impression of all the sequence of impressions it has given us. This is, certainly, a limited experience, for it corresponds with that experience which the author's imaginative attention seized on and isolated out of the flux of things, and maintained as an inspiration. But precisely, of course, because it is so limited has this experience the unity which gives it significance. Now it is possible that many people, who have not the literary artist's

power of expression, may nevertheless have moments of experience of a nature similar to his. But in literature we can all have them whenever we want. Moreover—and this is the important point—in literature the significance is given to us in a way that makes it much more noticeable than if it came in an instantaneous intuition of actual things. The literary artist has to build up in his symbolic medium, gradually and deliberately, the organic unity of his work. Hence, when we live in a work of literature, we live in a series of impressions, every one of which we feel is contributing to the final impression of the *form* of the work as a completed whole. We live in experience which we know is ordained to be, however complex, at last a unity. When we have the form of the work as a whole in our minds, we have the unity of all the experience it has given us ; and having the unity, we have our experience organized in perfect interrelationship ; we have what the whole manner of the work has made us expect and desire : we have, on a greater or lesser scale, experience that is completely significant. This is the kind of experience we are always hoping for ; but only in art do we get it : not merely a flashing accidental moment of unified experience, but a prolonged continuous series of moments securely and infallibly organizing their own perfect system of interrelationship, and thereby manifesting the only significance which is absolutely necessary to our minds—the revelation of law and order in things. The enemy of this is chance ; only in art are we safe from the enemy.

Here, then, is the function of literature : and to find it we have not gone beyond the sphere of literature, *pure experience*, judged simply for what it is in itself. To say that the function of literature is to teach us or convince us or make us moral is to step outside the literary art. Literature can do these things, but it is not by virtue of doing them that it is literature. Neither is it the function of literature to be beautiful ; we should rather say, one of the things we may judge to be beautiful in literature is the way it achieves its function. That function is, by its expression of experience as such, to make experience significant as such without our having to judge it as true or real or useful or moral. Every work of literature, though the experience it gives us is necessarily limited, provides us with an instance of the experience we most profoundly need : and that by reason of its form. It is form in literature that makes experience there significant. But it is obviously incorrect, though it may be convenient, to speak of significant form. Form itself cannot be significant. Form can only exist as the form of substance ; and the significance given by form is significance which form gives to substance. That substance, it is true, is not actual substance But in actual experience, we can never know complete and secure significance. If we wish to know what that is, we must be content with imagined experience. But the perfect significance we find in the imagined life of literature is a continual incentive to the noblest endeavour of actual life : the endeavour to attain, practically or intellectually, as much significance as may be.

It will be useful to conclude this section by recapitulating in a tabular summary the main principles of the theory of the art of literature.

1. The art of literature is the art of communicating in language experience valued as such and enjoyable for its own sake.

2. For this, it is not enough to communicate either the matter or the

manner of the experience : it is not enough to express the subject of the experience, nor to represent the object of the experience : it is the experience itself, whole and entire, both the object and the subject, the thing that happened and the mind to which it happened, that must be communicated.

3. Since the experience did not happen in language, language can only communicate it symbolically ; the power of language to symbolize experience depending on its power to stimulate imagination. Whatever the experience may have originally been, it must always be communicated as imagination.

4. In order to symbolize experience as completely as possible—that is, to provoke the most complex imagination possible—literature makes appropriate use of every power language has of affecting the mind, both on the semantic side (or the aspect of meaning) and on the phonetic side (or the aspect of the sound of language). The power of language over the mind is fourfold :

Semantic : the construction of the meaning in syntax, and the imaginative value of individual words ;

Phonetic : the construction of the sound in rhythm, and the quality of individual syllables.

5. An experience is characterized not only by its substance, but also by the unity in which its substance is held. To communicate an experience is therefore to communicate both its substance and its unity. The diction of literature symbolizes the substance of the experience inspiring it, the form of literature symbolizes the unity of this. In order to commit experience to the communication of language, it must be disintegrated ; but as the communication progresses, there must be a governing tendency towards a final re-integration into unity. So that as the series of impressions goes on, the diction designs itself as form ; and when the diction is complete, the form is achieved.

6. When the whole series of impressions can be seen as constituting a single shapely form, and therefore as a unity, everything in a work of literature is understood as existing in perfect interrelationship. Nothing is there by chance ; nothing is there unless in the interest of the whole. This is that significance in experience which we desire above all things. To provide us with vivid imagination of significant experience is the function of literature.

III. ARISTOTLE'S "POETICS"

Aristotle's treatise *Concerning the Art of Poetry*, usually called the *Poetics*,[1] was never meant by Aristotle himself to be a treatise. Like almost everything else of his that has survived, it was not composed as a book ; it merely represents the lectures which he used to give his students. It may be the notes which he himself set down for his own guidance ; it may be the notes which some student or students took of his

[1] Good English translations are Butcher's (Macmillan) and Bywater's (Clarendon Press).

lectures ; it may be a mixture of both. Whoever committed it to writing did not do so for the public to read. It is abrupt, disjointed, awkwardly terse, as awkwardly digressive ; essential ideas are left unexplained, inessential things are elaborated. In short, it has all the literary defects of lecture notes. The most important conception in it, the intellectual centre round which everything else is organized, is never defined ; it is mentioned by a technical term (which is not only metaphorical, but ambiguously metaphorical) and is frequently alluded to ; but we have to make out, as best we may, what Aristotle means by it. This is exactly what one might expect of lecture notes. The central idea of his system was precisely that which least of all needed to be written out in full : precisely that on which he could trust himself to lecture without notes.

In spite of all these defects, the argument majestically reveals itself : and the argument is such, that the *Poetics* is not only the first thoroughly philosophical discussion of literature, but the foundation of all subsequent discussions. It is, of course, the product of its time ; a fact which is most obviously apparent in the limitation of its subject matter ; for literature has developed in many directions since Aristotle's time. It is fatally easy for criticism to go wrong, when it is restricted, or restricts itself, to a few kinds and fashions in literature : it is fatally easy to take the inessential for the essential. But Aristotle had the conscience of a philosopher. With him, discussion of the problems of literary criticism, however restricted in scope, could not but be a truly philosophical discussion. What was good philosophy in Greece in the fourth century before Christ, is good philosophy everywhere and in every age. Much of what he says illustrates Greek thought and concerns Greek literature ; but much of what he says is the essence of right thinking about literature in general. In many respects, nothing has been added, and so far as one can see, nothing ever will be added, to what Aristotle had to say about the art of literature. Thus, though it must always be important to consider the *Poetics* as belonging to Greek culture, for us the important thing is to consider the book simply as an exposition of the principles of literary criticism, as valid for Shakespeare and Milton as for Homer and Sophocles. Nothing could be more misleading than to attribute to Aristotle modern ways of thought and feeling ; nothing could be more illuminating than to test his principles by applying them to modern expressions of thought and feeling.

The subject matter of the *Poetics*, as the book has come down to us, is not merely restricted to Greek literature, but to certain kinds of Greek literature. These are four in number ; and Aristotle groups them in pairs, according to their historical and æsthetic connexions. He supposes poetry to begin in two kinds, as the originating motive of all poetry tended, by its very nature, to diverge in two directions. Poetry, namely, begins either as heroic or as satiric poetry : but out of heroic (or epic) poetry develops tragedy, out of satiric comes comedy. Since, then, the nature of poetry thus disposes itself into two pairs of kinds, the principles valid for epic will, with the proper modification, be valid also for tragedy, those valid for satire will be similarly valid for comedy. But Aristotle regarded the historically later kind in each pair as a higher development of poetic art, and as therefore requiring fuller discussion than the earlier

kind. Accordingly his scheme is to work out the theory of the later development, and then, adapting it to different but closely related conditions, to apply it to the earlier kind. But the *Poetics*, as we have the book, is not complete. The scheme of the discussion is unmistakably indicated; but actually we are only given the discussion of tragedy, and the application of its results to epic poetry. There can be no doubt that the original treatise contained a second part, now lost, in which comedy and satire were similarly treated.

Broadly taken, this scheme of Aristotle's is sound enough. But it must always be remembered that the division of poetry (or literature in general) into kinds or species, though the demarcation may be sometimes very obvious, is in the last resort only commendable as a convenience of discussion. It is not like the division of animals into species : there are no biological boundaries in poetry. Aristotle sometimes forgets that to condemn a composition as a tragedy is not necessarily to condemn it as a poem. It may have seemed, by certain apparent signs, to resemble tragedy; but the real purpose may have been something quite different. It is also possible that the species " tragedy " may have been too rigidly defined. But what is more likely to strike a modern reader, in this scheme of Aristotle's, is its complete omission of lyric poetry. This is not likely to be due to inadvertence. Neither is the cause of this likely to have been, that lyric poetry would not fall in well with the sort of argument to which Aristotle's philosophical tendencies inclined. On the contrary, lyric poetry would have given him invaluable aid in making out his central proposition. The thing probably was, that for Aristotle lyric poetry was inseparably bound up with music; just as for most of us to-day " Drink to me only with thine eyes " or " Auld lang syne " only exists as a poem in conjunction with its melody. Lyric poetry would therefore scarcely fall within the scope of his topic; for he expressly limits the art of poetry to the medium of language. What we have, then, in Aristotle's *Poetics*, is really the theory of tragedy, with the modification of this to cover epic. But the theory of tragedy is worked out with such insight and comprehension, that it becomes the type of the theory of literature.

To a philosopher like Aristotle, whose ambition seems to have been to systematize the whole range of man's mental activity, it would scarcely have been possible to omit so conspicuous a part of it as the art of literature. But almost certainly his argument had another, and perhaps a more keenly urgent motive than that; almost certainly the *Poetics* is Aristotle's counterblast to Plato's celebrated condemnation of poetry as a pursuit unworthy of man's intellectual dignity, and radically vicious in its effect. In introducing the *Poetics*, therefore, something must be said, however briefly and inadequately, about the difference between these two typical minds; for, as far as our topic is concerned, out of this difference came the most formidable assault on poetry, and the most effective defence of it, that has ever been known.

Aristotle had been Plato's pupil; but as his mind matured, he became conscious of a deep cleavage between his convictions and his master's, and felt himself called upon to protest against some of the characteristic conclusions and methods of the Platonic philosophy. Indeed, it would scarcely be possible to pick out two men better fitted to illustrate the two

opposite poles of philosophic thinking. The difference between the two may, very roughly, be indicated by referring to the studies in which they were specially interested. Aristotle's philosophy was coloured by his interest in biology, Plato's by his interest in mathematics. This means that Aristotle's mind liked to proceed from things to ideas, Plato's from ideas to things. Aristotle had the scientific, Plato the metaphysical mind. The great importance of this difference between them comes in when the question is, What is meant by *reality* ? Thus, the biologist may be led by the study of actual individual creatures to the general idea of a species of creatures, Man or Dog. The idea of a species is real enough ; but it is real only because it is the idea of real men and dogs. Biologically speaking, the reality of things gives to ideas whatever reality they possess. But mathematically speaking, the reality of ideas gives to things whatever reality they possess. For the mathematician studies ideas which cannot be perfectly realized in things. The idea of a line is purely an idea, and the properties of a line are purely ideal properties. But they are eternal and immutable properties, in which the mind may rest with absolute conviction. In a word, they are the properties of that certainty of existence we call reality ; and actual physical lines only possess these properties in so far as they are able to represent the idea of a line, which they can only do approximately. Thus for the mathematical mind things are real enough, but only because they represent ideas ; reality is conferred on things by ideas ; the ideas would be real even if (as in fact is the case with many mathematical ideas) there were no things to represent them.

This digression may seem to have moved a long way from poetry. By what perverse logic Plato arrived at his condemnation of poetry, we shall presently see ; but the nature of his objection is quite in accordance with the nature of his philosophy, just as Aristotle's answer to that objection accords with the nature of *his* philosophy, and with his antipathy to Plato's. Aristotle never says that his theory is an answer to Plato ; he never mentions Plato in the *Poetics*, and never even alludes to the Platonic objection to poetry. But his whole argument is exactly planned to invalidate Plato's argument at every point ; and thus falls in with his openly expressed opposition to Plato elsewhere. The difference between the two minds is shown in the way they approach the very existence of poetry. It seems a paradox that Plato, who in his youth had done exquisite things in poetry, and in his maturity had such perfect command of literary art that he could present abstrusest metaphysics as an enchanting music of ideas, should have been the man to condemn poetry ; whereas Aristotle, whose extant works can scarcely be called literature at all, should have directed the full force of his philosophy into the sanest and strongest commendation poetry has ever had. But we must remember that Aristotle is not to be judged as a writer by his extant works ; the books by which he might have been so judged have almost entirely disappeared. Nevertheless, it seems unlikely that Aristotle could ever have stood beside Plato as a literary artist. But it was Plato the philosopher who condemned poetry ; and the mere fact that he did so is typical of the way his philosophy regarded *things*. Things being only important as the representatives of ideas, he was quite prepared to say that a thing which was unnecessary or unworthy as a representative of ideas ought not to

exist. Poetry was a thing of this nature ; Plato therefore proposed that it should be abolished. But it was with a biologist's respect for the existence of *things* that Aristotle looked on poetry : for him, ideas were only important as the interpretation of things. It never occurs to Aristotle to ask whether poetry ought or ought not to exist. It does exist : the questions for *his* philosophy are, In what manner and to what result does it exist ? One might perhaps say, Aristotle would no more think of asking whether poetry ought to exist, than whether a species of animals ought to exist. At any rate, the conclusion he comes to is the exact opposite of Plato's opinion ; it is, that the function of poetry can be supremely beneficent. It may very well be that he started with this opinion ; and that to prove it against the great authority of Plato was his chief motive in composing the *Poetics*. The thing is, that his argument arrives at this conclusion by a strictly philosophical process. Aristotle's philosophical conscience ensures that the result would be the same, whether the investigation did or did not begin as a perfectly disinterested enterprise.

But no systematic philosopher can be perfectly disinterested when he investigates a special topic ; he has, at least, the interests of his system in his mind—if he had not, it would not be a system with any life in it. Aristotle's philosophy was magnificently systematic ; and it was vividly alive. Its characteristic habit of life is apparent throughout the *Poetics*. We find there methods and notions that are sometimes more appropriate to Aristotle than to the subject. An invaluable method in biological research is classification. The *Poetics* is full of it. When he is defining his topic, Aristotle's mastery of this difficult method does noble service ; but afterwards, in the exposition of the topic, he sometimes classifies where no classification is needed, sometimes where no classification can be valid, sometimes where any classification must be misleading. We shall pay no attention to all this, since for us it is not his methods, but his results that matter. Again, the ethical notion of " the golden mean," so dear to Aristotle, insinuates itself into the argument in a manner which cannot be so persuasive to us as it evidently was to him.

But often his philosophical habits are most admirable when they seem to appear most casually. Thus, in the very first sentence of the treatise, he completely disposes of the theory of " Art for Art's sake " simply by describing his subject in terms satisfactory to a biological philosopher. " I shall speak," he says, " of the art of poetry and of its various species, discussing the function of each kind, along with the proper structure of a poem and the number and nature of its parts." It would be easy to pass over this sentence as a mere formal introduction ; but every clause of it is important. It posits the whole subject with truly scientific comprehension. To know what poetry really is, we must know not only its anatomy and physiology ; we must know its natural history also. We do not know what an animal truly is, until we have not only dissected it, but also have accurately observed how it behaves. The nature of animal life, the species of the animal, the structure of its body, the number and nature of its organs : we may know all this, but what the animal truly *is* will escape us, unless we also know what it can *do*, how it comports itself, in its natural surroundings. So it is with poetry. Poetry is one of the activities of human nature : but exactly what this activity is we shall never know unless,

besides analysing it, we note what it effects among the other activities of human nature : unless, that is to say, we note the *function* of poetry. Poetry must have some function : for, in the world of human activity, it must somehow *behave* : all human activities take place in human nature, and must therefore affect each other. Now, if the phrase " Art for Art's sake " means that art can never be understood, if we judge it according to something outside the nature of art, the phrase is a very salutary warning. But if it means, as it nearly always does, that art has no function in life, then the manifest falsity of the phrase is at once shown up simply by formulating what it is we require to know in order to understand what art truly is. As Aristotle's introductory sentence indicates, æsthetic investigation is exactly analogous with biological investigation. To know what poetry *is*, we must not only examine its organism : we must know what this organism can *do* in its natural habitat—the lives of human beings. We must know its function. But its function will be conditioned by the nature of its structure, and the parts out of which its whole structure is made.

Aristotle begins his investigation by calling poetry a mode of " imitation." This was in accordance with the Greek habit of thinking about all " fine art," just as it accords with our way of thinking to call art a mode of " expression." As casually as we talk of expression, the Greeks talked of imitation ; and neither term is very helpful unless it is defined. We must remember that the Greek word for art never acquired that limitation of meaning which our word has in the phrase " fine art." For the Greek mind, activity was either doing things or making things. In doing things, the action itself was to be judged ; in making things, the action was to be judged by what it made—the tangible object which it brought into existence. It was in the latter case that activity was an art. The value of the art was easily judged, when the thing it produced was a shoe or a pot. But how if the thing produced was a picture or a poem ? In that case, the value of the thing did not consist in its material, nor even in the arrangement of its material : it consisted in the way the material and its arrangement stood for something. The Greeks said, it consisted in the way the product imitated something.

So far, the word is completely vague : but it was as imitation that the Greek mind naturally explained the existence of what we call art (meaning " fine art ") ; and Aristotle inevitably made this elementary notion the starting point of his theory. The originality of his theory consists in the direction its argument took from this notion. The easy and obviously inviting way to argue from it would be to say that art imitates nature : art, then, is the skilled copying or mimicry of the objects we know in the world. This was the popular way of arguing ; and it was also Plato's way. It enabled him, in conjunction with his *theory of ideas* (which, however, he had to strain somewhat for the purpose) to give a plausibly reasoned form to his disparagement of poetry—indeed, of art in general. The accusation he brought against poetry was as complete as it could be ; the nature of poetry, he said, was wholly unworthy of serious attention, the function of poetry was radically vicious. This latter charge will be described later ; at present, we are concerned with his attack on the nature of poetry—on poetry, namely, as *imitation*. Aristotle, too, in the

early part of his treatise, was no doubt concerned with Plato's attack on the imitative nature of poetry ; and he meets the accusation of consequent unworthiness by giving a completely different interpretation of the whole notion of imitation in poetry. Aristotle's way of interpreting poetic imitation is possibly the most valuable of all his contributions to æsthetic theory. At any rate, it puts the theory on perfectly secure and solid foundations.

All the " fine arts " are connected. It suited the tactics of Plato's attack on the art of poetry to approach it through the art of painting ; for the notion that imitation is mimicry is most easily supported in painting. The attack went thus. The only business worthy of man's mind is his concern with reality. Men should be concerned with *things* for their reality ; and their reality is given to them by the ideas they represent. Now a painter imitates things ; and things represent ideas ; and ideas *are* reality. Painting, therefore, only deals with reality at third hand. Thus, in the famous example, there are many beds in the world ; but beds only exist because the idea of a bed exists. When a carpenter makes a bed, he may be said to copy the one original and universal bed, the ideal bed which (Plato's theory does not shrink from this) was created by God : by which he means, of course, that the ideal is the only truly real. The carpenter's is a necessary and entirely worthy occupation. And now along comes the painter, and copies the bed which the carpenter made : that is to say, he copies the copy of the real bed : an unnecessary and entirely unworthy occupation. And as it is with painters, so it is with poets (Plato, like Aristotle, is thinking chiefly of epic and dramatic poets). The painter copies objects, the poet copies the behaviour of men and women : both artists copy appearances in the world of things, and their work is therefore twice removed from reality.

This abstract does not, of course, do justice to the humour, gusto, good-nature, and persuasiveness with which Plato's inimitable art conducts the argument ; but it may serve to show the strain which the argument puts on the theory of ideas. And yet, if we grant that that theory may include particular objects (and even artifacts, such as beds), and if we grant that imitation in art means mimicry, the logic is sound enough. The attack, at any rate, is not one that can be ignored ; and we must remember that Plato's attack on the nature of poetry prepared the way for a weightier assault on its function. How then is this first assault to be met ? Aristotle, in the *Poetics*, leaves the theory of ideas alone ; for it can do nothing here without the theory that poetry imitates nature, in the sense of mimicry. It will suffice to show that poetry does not imitate nature. And to show this Aristotle does not appeal to *a priori* notions ; he appeals, as a good naturalist will always do, to the facts. He does not do this directly, however ; the facts of the case are implied by the nature of his argument. But they are obvious enough. It may seem easy and inviting theory to say that art is the mirror of nature ; but since we can see nature herself, what do we want with a mirror ? If poetry merely mirrored nature, it could give us no more than nature gives us ; but the fact is, that we enjoy poetry precisely because it gives us something which nature does not give us. We may say, for example, that the persons in dramatic poetry are " like life " ; but where in actual life shall we find such persons—

persons who are interesting in everything they do or say, persons who continually and inevitably reveal both themselves and the events in which they live ? The figures of such persons do not imitate nature ; and this is typical of poetry in general. What then does poetry imitate ?—But we had better follow Aristotle's argument.

Poetry, he begins, is a mode of imitation. But instead of saying, as Plato does, that in this respect it is like painting, Aristotle says that it is like music or dancing. This is significant ; for painting suggests (though quite falsely) imitation in the sense of mimicry. But the mention of music and dancing is a preliminary warning, that whatever imitation in poetry may mean, it does not mean mimicry. For what mimicry is there in music ? And, though dancing may represent passion and action, its formal rhythms and deliberate graces certainly do not copy natural gesture and movement. Aristotle then proceeds, by means of a threefold classification, to narrow down the general notion of imitation to the particular topics of his treatise. He asks, in effect, three questions : In what does the imitation exist ? What does it imitate ? How does it imitate ? That is, he classifies imitation according to its *medium*, its *object*, and its *manner*.

The *medium* of the kind of imitation with which he is concerned is, of course, language. And here he makes a remarkable reflection. He notes that the art he is to discuss has, as regards its medium, properly speaking no name—no name, at least, comparable for exact and generally agreed meaning with such names as " sculpture " or " music." And this is still true to-day. For purposes of discussion, we may use the word " poetry " for the pure art of literature. But, says Aristotle, people connect the idea of poetry with a particular kind of rhythm in language. Yet the nature of poetry is not given by metrical rhythm. Compositions which are designed to instruct or inform may be written in metre ; but they are not therefore poetry : in his terminology, they do not *imitate* anything. On the other hand, compositions may be very successful imitations (to us, " representations " would sound more familiarly) without being written in metre. The contrast, then, is not between poetry and prose ; for this simply marks a difference in technique ; the true contrast is between literature which " imitates " and that which does not ; and *either* of these two classes may be written in metrical or in non-metrical language. Thus Aristotle is the first critic to point out that the essential nature of poetry may often be found in prose ; and on the contrary, that verse is no guarantee of poetry. This short digression indicates that in the sequel his discussion of a particular kind of poetry is a type of the theory of pure literature in general.

Having thus limited his topic to what, for want of a more specific term, we must call pure literature, he goes on to classify this with respect to the *object* of the imitation. In general, he says, the object of poetic imitation is *men in action* ; which, remembering his exclusion of lyrical poetry, will be found an adequate description. For by *men in action* he does not necessarily mean *men doing things* ; he means *things happening in terms of human nature, events embodied in human lives*. In a word, he means a *story*, in the widest possible sense ; and the essential element in a story is the human element. The objects of poetic imitation, then, may be classified according to the nature of the human element in them ; and we judge

human nature by its goodness or badness. Poetry, then, may represent men as better than in real life, as worse, or as they are. This third variant Aristotle merely mentions, and then ignores ; he is wholly concerned with the other two. The poetry he is to discuss imitates men either as being better than in real life, or as being worse. The purpose of this classification is to derive from one common impulse the two main kinds of non-lyrical poetry, tragic and comic ; and as such it may be provisionally allowed. There is a sense in which a tragic character is better than real life, and a comic character worse. Real people do not exemplify in such capital fashion the qualities which make human nature admirable, nor those which make it ridiculous. Yet this rough sort of classification involves serious difficulties. Tragic characters are not necessarily *morally* better than in real life : witness Macbeth. But if they are said to be better in the sense of being more imposing and remarkable, may not the same thing be said of comic characters also ? Witness Falstaff.

But one thing remains quite unquestionable in this second classification of Aristotle's : poetic imitation does not mean mimicry. How can poetry imitate men as better or as worse than real life ? Obviously, not by copying nature ; but only by imitating imagination. The theoretical possibility that poetry *might* represent men " as they are," Aristotle, we have seen, mentions only to ignore ; no doubt because he did not think it worth discussing. For this possibility is not characteristic of poetry. This is not what we demand of poetry ; and therefore, as a matter of practical fact, this is not what poetry does. We do not want a transcription from nature, since we have the original always before us ; we want an imaginative reconstruction of the possibilities of nature.

Plato took imitation to be the connexion between poetry and nature ; which leaves quite unexplained the characteristic quality and energy of poetry (whether in verse or in prose, whether an epic or a novel). Aristotle, with far finer discrimination, saw that the connexion effected by imitation is not between poetry and the world without, but falls wholly within the being of poetry. Poetry is not connected with the outside world in the simple and direct fashion supposed by Plato. The poet first derives an inspiration from the world by the power of his imagination ; the art of poetry then imitates this imaginative inspiration in language. Aristotle's theory is not really concerned with the nature of the originating connexion between poetry and the world, except by certain plain implications in the argument throughout, and for one anomalous digression to be noted presently. His discussion is " concerning the art of poetry." The art exists to give shape and substance to a certain kind of imaginative impulse : the existence of the art implies the existence of the impulse. Aristotle, in discussing the art, assumes the existence of the impulse ; his business is to discuss its nature, and the way it works itself out into language. But to enquire into the connexion between poetry and the world is to enquire into the origin of this impulse ; and the questions how and why it arose belong rather to psychology than to æsthetics. Now it is just possible to imagine life exactly as it is ; but the exciting thing is to imagine life as it might be, and it is then that imagination becomes an impulse capable of inspiring poetry. This is true even in the case of what we call realism in literature ; it is true even when the life imagined was

originally an actuality of some highly exciting nature in itself. Imagination may do no more than concentrate the actuality, by dropping out all its insignificant passages. But that will be enough to make the resultant poetry (or literature) something quite different from that copy of the world which Plato's condemnation assumed it to be.

Thus, what Aristotle means by " imitation " in poetry is exactly what we mean by *technique*. Poetic imitation, as Aristotle uses the word everywhere in his theory (with the exception of an unimportant chapter which really forms no part of his theory), does not explain the origin of poetry, nor what the connexion is between poetry and real things and affairs. Aristotle's " imitation " is confined entirely to the poetic activity within the art itself : it describes the connexion between poetic impulse and poetic language. It is his word for the technique by which the poet finally achieves communicable expression of his imaginative inspiration. We say " finally achieves " : for, whether the word be " technique " or " imitation," more is involved than the mere management of language, as we shall soon see.

It remains, in the third place, to classify works of literature according to their *manner*. There is no difficulty here. Within the scope Aristotle has assigned to his subject, all poems may be classified either as narrative or as dramatic. Thus poems which resemble each other in the object may differ in the manner of imitation, and the other way round. Sophocles as a tragic poet might be classed with Homer, but as a dramatic poet with Aristophanes.

By means of this three-fold classification, Aristotle has prepared the way for the main topic of that portion of his treatise which has survived : namely, the discussion of tragic drama. At this point, however, he (or perhaps someone else) introduces a chapter on the history and development of literature by a brief discussion of the origin of poetry. It treats this business in a feeble, perfunctory, and confused fashion, and comes to no rational conclusion. That would be no great matter, since, as we have said, Aristotle's theory is an exposition of the nature of poetry as it actually exists, and has no concern with the question, How did poetry come to exist ? What has, however, caused a good deal of misunderstanding, is the fact that, in these few sentences, the word for " imitation " is expressly used to mean " mimicry." The argument takes us nowhere ; but if it had any validity, it would make the theory in all the rest of the book wholly unintelligible. Indeed, it would be hard to find plainer contradiction than that between " imitation " everywhere else in the book, and " imitation " in this quite superfluous digression (which merely interrupts the process of the argument). If we wish to understand Aristotle's theory, there is only one thing to be done : this passage must be ignored. We may regard it either as interpolation, or as a queer aberration. But perhaps not an unaccountable aberration. With Aristotle, æsthetic science first begins : it is marvellous that it should have begun with a treatment so precise and accurate, that in many respects it stands as the last as well as the first word on the subject. But very often, when a science first distinctly emerges, it uses terms, hitherto in vague and general use, which it has not yet strictly defined. It is very possible that Aristotle never consciously defined " imitation " in the sense which we have been attributing to him.

The word and the idea were there, ready for use in discussion of this sort; and he used them as seemed good to him. But his astonishingly keen critical insight into the nature of poetry led him to make just that specific use of " imitation " in his theory, which is the only intelligible use of the word and the idea in connexion with poetry : which is also, since it enabled him to discriminate between technique and inspiration, a contribution of incalculable value to the theory of literature. And though he does not define it, we are bound to attribute this specific meaning to the word " imitation " in his theory, simply because this is the only thing the word can mean as he uses it. But when he stepped for a moment outside his theory and digressed into the question of psychological origins, a quite different topic, he unconsciously allowed the word to relapse back again into its old meaning.

Coming now to his main subject of tragic poetry, and briefly noting some of the differences consequent on the different manners of epic and dramatic form, Aristotle makes a remark which has had more fame than it deserves. One very obvious difference between epic and drama is, that an epic is much longer than a drama. The reason is simple : a drama must be given complete in a single performance, but an epic is composed under no such necessity. This naturally involves a difference in content; but for Aristotle, with only the practice of Greek drama before him, the difference in content presented itself in a very noticeable way. Drama, he says, tends, " as far as possible," to confine its action to twenty-four hours, whereas epic action need have no limitation in respect of time. This casual remark simply refers to the practice of Greek tragedy, not to anything inherent in the nature of drama. Owing to its peculiar origin and circumstances, Greek tragedy presented its story in an unbroken continuity of action. The sort of story that would best fit in with this mode of dramatic presentation was evidently one that implied no great break in the time, and no great change in the place, of its occurrence. This was a mere matter of practical convenience. But since the tragic chorus might from time to time hold the movement of the story suspended in lyrical comment on it, the dramatist had the opportunity of introducing supposed intervals of time, as well as supposed changes of place, if it suited his story to do so. The Greek tragic poets made no difficulty about occasionally availing themselves of this opportunity. Aristotle himself admits that the rule was not absolute as regards time; about place he says nothing.

Intrinsically, the remark that tragedy " endeavours, as far as possible, to confine itself to the events of twenty-four hours," is of small importance. It is a good instance of the way Aristotle's illustration of his theory was limited by the literature of his time; it is also a good instance of the way he refused to dogmatize on purely accidental qualities. But in the history of criticism, this remark is of immense importance : an importance given to it by the power of sheer misunderstanding. Everyone has heard of the dogma of the Three Unities in drama—unity of action, unity of time, unity of place. Had it not been for this casual remark of Aristotle's, the dogma would never have been formulated. But Aristotle cannot be held responsible for conclusions which merely mistake his meaning. Critics, from the Renaissance onwards, especially in France and Italy,

dogmatically maintained the Three Unities as the great principle of dramatic composition, appealing to the example of the Greek tragedians and the authority of Aristotle. Now, for unity of action, which simply means that a poem must be a single organic whole, Greek tragedy as certainly provided noble examples, as Aristotle is certainly the best authority, since he it was who first explicitly, and with invincible argument, showed that unity in this sense is the essential thing in tragedy : and that not only as drama, but as the type of all literary composition. But as for the unities of time and place (which may, of course, in practice be invaluable for producing a certain kind of dramatic effect, as we may see in Racine's tragedy or Ben Jonson's comedy), the dogma which ascribes any *necessity* to these is purely arbitrary ; a good instance of those " rules " of criticism which, not being governed by genuinely philosophical theory, are merely misleading. In this case, the rules were governed by nothing but pedantry ; and, as it happened, by mistaken pedantry. The supposed example of Greek tragedy turns out to be by no means absolute ; and Aristotle, properly understood, provides no authority whatever. As regards time, no prescription of the *necessity* of the so-called unity can be made out from his carefully qualified remark on the practice of Greek drama ; and as regards place, a mere allusion in quite a different context is the only passage that can be alleged—and must be most fantastically wrested from its plain meaning to give any support to the dogma. No more absurd injustice was ever done to a critic than the suggestion that Aristotle would have condemned Shakespeare's dramatic treatment of time and place. If Shakespeare's plays satisfy unity of action, Aristotle would have required no more ; for the theory of poetry requires no more.

Aristotle now proceeds by focussing everything he has said hitherto into a formal definition of tragedy ; which definition his argument then elaborates, clause by clause, into a full exposition of the nature and function of tragedy. This definition, it is important to observe, is not offered as an *a priori* assertion of what tragedy ought to be ; it is a summary statement of what Aristotle has noted that tragedy actually is. After giving the definition, we shall merely give the gist of his exposition of it, without attempting to follow exactly the course of his argument, which is here rather tortuous and complicated. This portion of the treatise is the central doctrine of Aristotle's whole theory, and it is important for our purposes that it should be put as plainly as possible, though his elaborate argument will doubtless thereby lose some weight.

The definition of tragedy, then, is this : Tragedy is the imitation of an action that is serious, complete in itself, and possessing a certain magnitude ; in language that gives delight appropriate to each portion of the work ; in the form of drama, not of narrative ; through pity and fear accomplishing its *Katharsis* of such emotions.

This is a close paraphrase rather than an exact translation : but Aristotle's somewhat harsh concision of language defies exact translation as effectively as the finest lyricism of Sappho or Catullus. It will be seen that the definition falls into two divisions. In the first, consisting of the first three clauses, the *nature* of tragedy is given ; and this corresponds to the threefold classification with which the *Poetics* begins. The nature of tragedy is defined by that which is imitated—the object ; by that in which

the imitation occurs—the medium; and by the manner—how the imitation occurs. The second division consists of the final clause of the definition, which gives the *function* of tragedy. The crucial word here is the Greek word *Katharsis*. Aristotle, as we have seen, held that, in order truly to understand tragedy, it was as necessary to understand its function as to understand its nature. That function, he now says, is a *Katharsis*; but what *Katharsis* is, he entirely omits to explain. The meaning of the word is ambiguous; it may be either "purgation" or "purification." Which sense does he intend? And exactly what force does he intend the word to have in whichever sense is the right one? For in either case the word is a metaphor. For the present it will be best to leave the word untranslated.

Our first business, then, is to collect Aristotle's idea of the nature of tragedy. We must next try to make out what he meant by *Katharsis* as the term for its function. If we cannot find that he meant anything really satisfactory, we must then try to draw from his idea of the nature of tragedy some idea of its function corresponding with the sort of function Aristotle intended the word *Katharsis* to indicate. We may perhaps find something for which, with a change of the metaphor, the term *Katharsis* may still be used. If so, and if it is a function which genuinely arises out of Aristotle's idea of the nature of tragedy, the whole resulting view of tragedy may properly be called the Aristotelian theory of tragedy: and it must justify itself not merely by offering itself as a theory of Greek tragedy, not merely as a theory of tragedy in general, but as a typical theory of literature.

We therefore now take up, and expand the implications of, Aristotle's definition of tragedy as it is given above. Tragedy is an imitation of an action. By an *action* here is meant an event, or process of events—something happening. But by calling it an *action*, what is also meant is, that this happens by means of, and in the being of, *agents*—agents which have a disposition to act. These agents are, of course, human beings: and their disposition to act is their *character*. The action, then, of which tragedy is an imitation, is a process of events embodied in the lives and wills of human beings. But tragedy is an imitation of an action that is complete in itself, and of a certain magnitude. "Complete in itself," simply means, that the action in itself forms a whole; and "of a certain magnitude" simply means, that it can be *accepted* as a whole—it is neither too small to be appreciable, nor too large to be taken in, as a whole. But to be a whole, it must have a beginning, a middle, and an end. There must be a definite point at which the process of events as such begins, a definite point at which the process as such comes to an end. Before the first point, the process did not exist: it now comes into existence. After the last point, it finishes: the process no longer exists. And in between these two points, the process coherently develops out of its beginning into its end.

Such is the *object* of tragic imitation. And it is at once evident that tragic imitation is not the imitation of nature; for such is not the process of natural events. In nature, nothing at any assignable point begins, and nothing at any assignable point comes to an end: all is perfect continuity. What tragedy imitates is not life, but a conception of life: a very different matter. Some possibility of life is seized on by the poet's mind, and

imagined as a single movement of events. Some sense of life has become, by intense imaginative attention to it, clarified and defined into an idea of life—an idea shaping itself forth in the action of life; and the action has the unity of the idea it manifests. The idea, in fact, is what we have previously called the inspiration : " action " is Aristotle's technical term for imaginative inspiration in the case of drama. And however complex the idea may be, it must be a unity ; otherwise it could not be attended to as an idea. The imaginative form it takes—the action, the movement of events—must be equally a unity : and in that essential respect must be unlike any movement of events in actual life.

Tragedy is the imitation of this. " Imitation " as we have seen, means, in Aristotle's theory, the technique by which this inspiration is communicably expressed, and the technique is defined by its medium, which is language, and its manner, which is drama : that is to say, tragedy is enacted before us by speaking persons, the persons whose behaviour *is* the tragedy. But when we consider what this involves, we see that the language, the tragic dialogue, is only, as it were, the final imitation : actually, there must be a whole series of imitations before the technique can arrive at the stage of language. This series of imitations can be set out in a scheme of the order of their importance, or of their proximity to the originating *action* : but Aristotle's scheme is only for convenience of discussion ; the business could hardly occur in this schematic fashion. First, then, the action—that sense of life which the poet thinks of as some characteristic kind of movement of events—the imagined action expresses itself in the *plot*, or the arrangement of the incidents. The plot is then expressed in *characters* ; the *characters* in their *thoughts and feelings* ; and these finally in the dialogue or *language*. The truth of this scheme is very simply tested : all we have to do is to note what happens in us when we witness a tragedy. This, of course, exactly reverses the order of Aristotle's scheme : an order, once more, which is not meant to represent the process of composition, but merely the theory of the art. But in taking in the art, and critically appreciating it, we first receive the language ; the language gives us the thoughts and feelings of the persons speaking, by which we understand their behaviour ; from this we come to perceive their characters, and the characters embody the plot. Doubtless it is impossible to exaggerate the importance of the language ; since it is the language which must finally convey the whole series of the dramatist's technique. That is why dramatic language cannot be the speech of actual life, which never has any such burden laid on it : the dialogue of drama must always be unusually (it would be correct to say, unnaturally) expressive. But however we look at drama, whether we approach it theoretically, from its motive, or critically, from its effect, our conclusion must be the same : namely, that the most important thing in its technique is the plot.

Aristotle asserts this with the greatest possible emphasis. " The plot," he says, " is the first principle, and, as it were, the soul of a tragedy : character comes second." The assertion is strikingly at variance with the assumption of many dramatic critics, who regard a dramatist first and foremost as a creator of character. But, says Aristotle, character by itself, however skilfully delineated, will never give tragedy : it is only character in action that can be tragic (or, more generally, dramatic). Characterization

is, in fact, as much a part of the dramatist's expressive technique as the prosody or imagery of his language ; and what he is expressing is the idea of life which inspires him. The assumption that his chief business is to draw character is merely a relic of the naïve and unexamined belief that drama imitates life. It imitates a conception of life ; and characterization is but a phase of this imitation. This conception is what Aristotle calls the action ; and the essence of the action is its unity. It is the plot that expresses the action ; all the rest of the dramatist's technique—character, thought, and language—embodies the plot. It is by means of the plot that, theoretically considered, the whole mass of the drama is held in the unity of the dramatist's inspiration ; and it is by means of the plot that, critically considered, the whole mass of the play falls into a unity of effect.

But the definition of tragedy requires a further limitation. The action it imitates or expresses must not only be a unity ; it must also be serious. " Serious " is hardly an adequate rendering of Aristotle's pregnant epithet ; but what he means is made perfectly clear by his statement that tragedy must arouse the emotions of pity and fear : whereby we pass from his definition of its nature to that of its function. We must remind ourselves here of Aristotle's implied opposition to Plato. For it was against the function of tragedy, and precisely against its function as rousing pity and fear, that Plato brought his gravest charge. We have already seen how the Aristotelian doctrine of imitation gives a complete answer to Plato's accusation, that poetry is an unnecessary, superfluous, and unworthy form of activity. The whole force of the accusation there is derived from a misunderstanding of the imitativeness of poetry, and vanishes as soon as the true nature of poetic imitation is shown. So far, Aristotle's account of tragedy, by bringing out the full import of his doctrine of imitation, has made his case against Plato in this respect unanswerable. For no one can deny that to define tragedy as the imitation of an action in Aristotle's sense, with all that Aristotle finds implied in that definition, is simply to describe, with unmistakable accuracy, the nature of tragedy as it actually exists. But Plato also charged poetry, and notably tragedy, with having a radically vicious effect, due to its power of exciting emotion ; and this much more considerable charge Aristotle opposes by his doctrine of *Katharsis*. All the rest of his treatise is governed by the doctrine : whatever else he has to say about tragedy involves its *function*—which indeed could not but be of the first importance to a philosopher of Aristotle's outlook and predilection. Unfortunately, the idea of *Katharsis* was so familiar to him, and doubtless to his pupils, that he never stops to explain it. Even more than was the case with " imitation," we must make out what the word means by the way he uses it.

But first we must understand what Plato's charge against tragedy was. Roughly, it is this. How does a tragic hero arouse our emotions ? By bewailing his misfortunes : the more he can make us feel his grief, the more we admire him. Now in real life, the man we admire, and rightly, is the man who, without complaining, endures misfortune and controls its effect on him. Who would not be ashamed to indulge his lamentation, and to press his affliction on his neighbours ? Can it be right to admire an actor for doing the very things we despise in real life ? Moreover, by giving way to sympathy with him, we enjoy these lamentable emotions ; sorrow

becomes facile; pity, by weakening our control over grievous feelings, encourages us to indulge them also in the case of our own misfortunes. The whole effect of tragedy tends to debility of spirit: reason relaxes its hold on conduct, emotion takes charge.

Aristotle does not attempt to challenge (as he did in the case of the imitativeness of tragedy) the facts on which Plato grounds his accusation here. He agrees that it is characteristic of tragedy to arouse emotions which, in themselves, are dangerous, and perhaps unwholesome. Indeed, he is clearly wrong in agreeing too closely with Plato in this respect; for though pity and fear are certainly important among the tragic emotions, they are not the only tragic emotions: love and admiration are equally important in the effect of tragedy. But of the emotions he names, everyone would admit that fear is not an emotion to be encouraged for its own sake; and probably Aristotle had the same opinion of pity: at any rate, excess of pity, like excess of anything else, he would regard with strong disfavour. But, says Aristotle, tragedy not only rouses these emotions; it also, by the way it rouses them, effects a *Katharsis* of them. This is his answer to Plato.

Katharsis is in any case a metaphor. It may allude to rites of religion, in which case it means "purification"; or it may allude to theories of medicine, in which case it means "purgation." It is not easy to see exactly what is meant by "purifying" pity and fear; though something vaguely analogous with this sense may commend itself more plausibly as the sort of function Aristotle had in his mind, than that on which he actually insisted. For it seems certain that "purification" was not what he himself meant by *Katharsis*. Whenever he alludes to the tragic *Katharsis*, this is evidently identical with the mere fact of rousing pity and fear. There is never any hint of a "purification" of these emotions. But if he meant "purgation," it would be quite enough to refer to *Katharsis* as the mere rousing of these emotions. In Greek medicine, an organism could be purged of any undesirable product by the administration, in judicious doses, of something similar: as in modern homeopathy, "like cures like." Excess of any kind was unwholesome; health could be secured by purgation of anything which tended to be present in excess. This seems to be what Aristotle meant by *Katharsis*. Tragedy effected the purgation of pity and fear, by its administration of these very emotions: it was desirable that these emotions should be discharged, either because they were unwholesome in themselves, or because they tended to excess. Confirmation of this is given by what Aristotle says elsewhere of the effect of music. Certain highly exciting kinds of music have, he asserts, the effect of calming those who are already in a state of high excitement: by the administration of like emotion, their excessive emotion is purged away, and the process, he notes, is accompanied by feelings of pleasure. That this was Aristotle's own interpretation of the doctrine of *Katharsis* was well understood by Milton, who seems to have been the first English writer to explain it precisely. In the preface to *Samson Agonistes*, Milton calls tragedy the "most profitable of all other poems"; and supports this opinion by invoking the authority of Aristotle in these terms: "therefore said by Aristotle to be of power by raising pity and fear, or terror, to purge the mind of those and such like passions, that is to temper and reduce them to just measure with a kind of delight, stirred up by

reading or seeing those passions well imitated. Nor is Nature wanting in her own effects to make good his assertion : for so in Physic things of melancholic hue and quality are used against melancholy, sour against sour, salt to remove salt humours." Here we touch the medieval version of Greek medical theory. But there can be no doubt that Milton was entirely right : Aristotle regarded the function of tragedy as something medical : the pity and fear of tragedy were the doses by which the tragic poet homeopathically purged his audience into emotional health.

The medical analogy, of course, means nothing to us, except as a curiosity. But it is not for that reason that the theory fails ; there might be something in it, which would stand, without any analogy to support it. The theory, however, is unsound in itself. What Aristotle says of music may be true ; but in that case, the persons who were cured by ecstatic music were already possessed by ecstasy. But an audience does not go into a theatre in a state of pity and fear. Everyone is liable to these emotions ; but they are not present unless they are provoked. Tragedy, in order to be curative, must first produce the disease it is to cure. Yet we must surely feel that Aristotle's explanation of the function of tragedy was an attempt in the right direction. Tragedy certainly does produce an enjoyable and wholesome effect, by rousing in us emotions which in real life would be unpleasantly and perhaps dangerously disturbing (though these are not the only emotions it rouses). And the earlier part of Aristotle's theory—that which expounds the nature of tragedy—will give us a sufficient explanation of this remarkable effect : which, for the sake of convenience, we may still call *Katharsis*, though not now in the medical sense, and not exactly in the religious sense of " purification." But in so far as the emotions roused by the spectacle of the evil in life—not merely moral evil, but the evil of destruction and waste and misfortune—are by tragedy deprived of evil effect, and even made beneficial, something like " purification " may be alleged.

We return to that quality which Aristotle showed to be essential in the nature of tragedy—its *unity*. It is from this quality that he deduces his famous assertion, that " poetry is a more philosophical and a nobler thing than history." That is to say, poetry is more in accordance with the spirit of philosophy, the instinctive desire to *understand* : which means, the desire to know the laws of things, and to generalize these laws as widely as possible—to proceed from knowing how one thing is connected with another, to knowing how all things are connected together. Now history relates what has actually happened : things happened just so, but *why* they happened just so we can never be sure, for we can never account for all the antecedents of an actual event, nor reckon up all its consequences. We can surmise the law of the event, but we can never know it. But poetry relates what may happen according to the law of probability or necessity. We know what happens and we know how it happens. In contrast with history, in which nothing begins and nothing ends, and in which the mere sequence of events must satisfy as best it may our desire to know the secret connexion of events, in poetry we see an event complete in itself, definitely beginning and definitely ending, and proceeding with perfect coherence from antecedents we understand to consequences we accept as inevitable. While we live in the event,

we live in the world we most profoundly desire; our consciousness of things takes the form of a world in which all things are connected together.

Now tragedy exhibits the misfortune of life. But by reason of the unity of tragic drama, even the misfortune of life becomes an instance of the world we most profoundly desire. This accounts for the peculiar pleasure we take in tragedy. Things which in real life would be merely distressing become in tragedy nobly exhilarating. They do not cease to be distressing; but something is added to this; whereby their evil becomes our good. Even in evil, we gain the world we need. And in this sense, tragedy may be said to effect a *Katharsis* of the emotions it rouses. It is not the *Katharsis* Aristotle meant; but it is entirely in accordance with what Aristotle says. It is also in accordance with the facts.

All the rest of the *Poetics* is governed by Aristotle's idea of *Katharsis* as the function of tragedy. Wherever the idea is valid, our interpretation of it will be found workable: which is not surprising, since it is an interpretation Aristotle himself might well have given. But his insistence on pity and fear leads him sometimes to emphasize sensationalism in tragedy, and sometimes serves to excuse the prejudices of his philosophical system. A celebrated example of the latter is his account of the hero or heroine proper to tragedy. A tragic character is one that passes from prosperity to adversity. This must not be, says Aristotle, because he is a villain: that would arouse neither pity nor fear. But it must not be the unmerited misfortune of a perfectly virtuous character: that would be merely shocking. The tragic character must be something in between these two extremes: a person who is good, but not eminently good, and who brings on himself misfortune by his own error. This is simply Aristotle's doctrine of the "golden mean" intruding where it has no business. "The practise of the stage," he says, "bears us out." It did no such thing in his day, and has never done any such thing since. The character Aristotle describes may certainly be a tragic character; but equally tragic may be an utter villain, like Macbeth, who deserves all his misfortune, or a perfectly innocent person, like Desdemona, who deserves none of it.

Yet so great is Aristotle's prestige, that critics in all succeeding ages have attempted to reduce the practice of the dramatists to his theory of tragic character. Thus, it is pointed out that in the tragedy of *Prometheus Bound*, Æschylus has drawn a noble hero who nevertheless has grave faults. This is quite true; but the whole point of the tragedy—the thing that makes it perhaps the greatest of all tragedies—is that Prometheus does not suffer for his faults, but for his virtues: it is because of the good he has done that the Power which rules the world condemns him. Of course, any act that goes wrong may be called an error; but this is not what Aristotle means. For him, the tragic error (which he at one point says must be a *great* error) is quite plainly a moral lapse, not a mere failure to calculate all possible consequences. The truth is, that he ignored, in the interests of his theory, the unmistakably tragic effect of innocence suffering undeservedly, of Right punished by Wrong—and punished for *being* Right. If his theory of tragic function had taken into account its rousing of love and admiration as well as of pity and fear,

he would scarcely have failed to perceive the tragic possibilities in the suffering of innocence. Perhaps also he would have done justice to the other case which he denies to be tragedy—the opposite case of the downfall of the heroic villain. For, as *Macbeth* shows us, it is possible to admire a villain ; possible even to feel for him a sympathy which is not, in the end, very far from love.

But much more interesting than attempts to apply Aristotle's rule to cases which obviously contradict it, is the modification of it which Hegel suggested as the true doctrine of the tragic person : though here again æsthetic theory doubtless recommended itself to its author for its convenient accordance with his general philosophy. Certainly, says Hegel, the nature of tragedy allows a character to suffer for being in the right ; and yet the suffering may be just. For the right may not be an absolute right. It may be valid in ordinary circumstances ; but there may also be circumstances in which it is irreconcilably opposed by another equally valid right. Both are right ; but each is right only from its own point of view. The stock instance is Sophocles's tragedy of *Antigone*. Antigone's brother has committed the worst possible crime against his country, and has been killed in the act. Kreon, the ruler of Thebes, has refused him the rites of burial ; thus answering one atrocious wrong by another equally atrocious. Antigone contrives to pay the rites demanded by religion to her brother's corpse ; and is punished, as she knew she would be, by death. She appeals to the " unwritten laws " which man's conscience must obey against all earthly laws ; but Kreon appeals to the laws which the State has a right to make in vindication of its existence. Now, says Hegel, Antigone is in the right ; but only from her point of view ; she represents the rights of individual conscience. But Kreon is equally right from his point of view ; he represents the rights of the State. The conflict is irreconcilable. Both must suffer ; that is the tragedy.

This, like Aristotle's theory, is one of the possible cases of tragedy : but it no more provides a universal rule than Aristotle does. The *Antigone* itself does not bear it out ; though Hegel's theory certainly reminds us that, in order to understand Sophocles's tragedy, we must sympathize with Kreon as well as with Antigone. But the tragedy is, nevertheless, that Antigone is right and Kreon is wrong : and that the wrong has power to condemn the right. However plausible, and indeed profound, Hegel's theory may be, perhaps there is no tragedy that exactly accords with it. But the whole age-long discussion is a good instance of how criticism may be misled by a theory which, however philosophical elsewhere, is not truly philosophical in *art* : theory, that is to say, which, professing to interpret the facts, only does so by presenting facts which it can interpret.

With the rest of Aristotle's treatise we need not further concern ourselves ; though it is all eminently worth the carefullest study. But we now have the main features of his theory of tragedy : which, once more, is to be understood as a type of the theory of literary art in general. He illustrates it by working it out in detail in many interesting and important directions ; and he shows how it can be transposed from the dramatic to the narrative manner—from tragedy to epic. It is enough for our purpose to have explained the general nature of his poetic theory. For, whatever

may be said against it here and there, Aristotle's theory of tragedy is the foundation on which all subsequent discussion of literary æsthetic has most securely based itself.

IV. AFTER ARISTOTLE

No attempt will be made in this section to sketch, however cursorily, anything like a connected history of literary criticism since Aristotle. Even if we confined ourselves to English literature, it would not be possible here to describe the criticism of all those authors who have achieved marked eminence in this kind of writing. Nor, indeed, would it serve our purpose. The criticism of literature is often as entirely individual as the creation of literature, and as much the work of indefinable genius. Its success may be due to talents which do not require, and certainly do not seek—which perhaps would indignantly repel—the support of philosophical principles. Insight, sympathy, imaginative response, common sense, or mere power to express discriminating gusto—of these abilities, and other such, may excellent criticism be made, without anything being formulated. We may call this intuitive criticism. Our concern, however, will be with the criticism which is notable not merely for its quality, but for its addition to, or confirmation of, the intelligible *methods* of criticism. We shall attempt no more than a summary account of several tendencies in the history of criticism, briefly noticing some important contributions to its rational tradition. This means that we shall be concerned with critics who have been at least aware that there is such a thing as literary theory, even though they may not have been inclined to formulate it; similarly, we shall only mention theorists whose doctrines have proved, in one way or another, of value to criticism.

Horace is typical of the critic who has a *method*, which he is prepared to set out in a more or less systematic body of rules, independent of actual cases of the critical estimation of literature. Such a method evidently supposes a theory underlying it; but Horace is also typical of the critic who does not trouble to expound his theory; he is quite content if the rules themselves provide reasonable guidance. The theory underlying the *Ars Poetica*[1] is substantially Aristotle's; but Horace's interest in it is not in the least philosophical, but purely practical; he accepts it for what he, as a critic, can make of it. Thus the poem is in no sense an argument; it is a collection of precepts and pieces of advice, somewhat abruptly put together, and always with a connexion that is more poetical than logical. For it must be remembered that the *Ars Poetica* is not primarily a work of criticism; first and foremost it is a poem—a poem on the subject of criticism. And the chief value of its subject is in the poetry it urges Horace to write. There is more to be learnt from its workmanship than from its precepts. Perhaps no poem of comparable length has provided so many phrases that have become the common property of international culture. Here is the "purple patch"; here "Homer nods"; here the critic exclaims "*incredulus odi*"; and here

[1] A good prose translation by Fairclough in the Loeb Library (Heinemann), and a lively metrical version by Conington (Bell).

the old man is " *laudator temporis acti.*" The context of that last phrase is a good instance of the way Horace treats his subject. A character, he says, must accord with what we know of life ; it must, for instance, be suited to the supposed age of the person represented. And at once he proceeds to a brilliant summary of the changes in human nature with the process of time ; finally arriving at his pregnant, pathetic, and cruel picture of old age. He has forgotten all about literary criticism. It is the poet who knows the world, and who can distil his knowledge into a quintessence of language, that is writing now.

But these memorable phrases are not always, in relation to his discussion of criticism, merely ornamental. Their real point is sometimes lost when they are removed, not so much from their logical, as from their poetical context. When an author seizes on an opportunity for fine writing, we talk of a " purple patch." But that is not quite what Horace meant. He disapproved of the " purple patch " that was " *sewn on* " : that was not, therefore, an integral part of the texture of the whole. And this is typical of his critical method. Throughout the *Ars Poetica*, the governing consideration is the essential doctrine of Aristotle's *Poetics*, the doctrine of Unity. And it is the genuine Unity which Horace maintains : Unity of action, as it came to be called ; Unity of substance, of mood, of effect, as Horace maintains it. This is the chief debt which the tradition of criticism owes to the *Ars Poetica* : it was Horace who made the spirit of Aristotle's theory the ideal of European criticism. Horace was read when Aristotle was not ; even when Aristotle's influence in Europe was at its height, Horace was infinitely more readable than Aristotle ; his witty epigrams, deliciously phrased, disseminated the doctrine as Aristotle's compact and elliptical reasoning never could have done. It was Horace, in fact, who made men feel that the demand for Unity in a work of art is identical with *good taste* ; and this was not recommending a certain fashion in taste ; it was simply making men conscious of what good taste really is. A sound philosophy of art is nothing but a rational account of good taste. Horace, by transforming Aristotle's doctrine into critical rules, philosophically enlightened good taste without troubling his readers to philosophize about it. His immense influence in the history of criticism is, indeed, precisely due to the fact that he made æsthetic theory *appeal* to good taste.

Except in one important particular, he has nothing of his own to add to the *Poetics*. He is, in fact, a thoroughly conservative critic : it may be counted against him, that he is chiefly responsible for the wholly false notion, that classicism means conservatism. But his conservatism is easily explicable. The example of the Greek poets, he says, must be studied night and day. Poetry must still be composed as they composed it. For instance, the characters they gave to the great figures of myth and legend must be exactly maintained. Horace thinks that this respect for the ancients leaves quite sufficient room for originality ; and he apparently forgets the extraordinary liberties the Greek dramatists allowed themselves to take with the psychology of their heroes. But it is not easy for us to realize how completely Roman culture in Horace's day was dominated by Greek models and Greek standards. The very idea of literature might almost be said to be a Greek idea transported to Rome ;

certainly that could be said of literature as an activity cultivated for its own sake—of literature, so to speak, conscious of itself as an art. There was, for Horace, only one safe way in literature : and that was the Greek way. This is simply the historical situation of Roman culture translated into opinion. When we find, in a totally different situation, Pope recommending a similar respect for the ancients, the grounds for this respect have completely changed. Pope has to give plausible reasons for it. Horace is aware of no such necessity. For him, if literature is to exist at all, it must be on the Greek model : the reason why Greek standards must be accepted in literature is identical with the reason why there is such a thing as literature. And that, being a philosophical question, is no concern of his. He simply assumes (quite rightly) that the doctrine he expounds contains the answer.

But Horace had another and more salutary excuse for his conservatism. The *Ars Poetica* is, in form, a body of precepts addressed to those who wish to compose poetry. He detested the notion that poetry is something eccentric ; though Aristotle himself is partially responsible for the belief that poetry and madness are allied, Horace abhorred the poets whose " inspiration " took the form of crazy behaviour either in their art or in their conduct. The rage for extreme individualism provoked in him his sturdiest conservatism ; and his determined assertion that a poet must be a rational being, and poetry a rational art, is not the least of his services to sound criticism. Thus, under the appearance of advising poets how to criticize their own compositions, his real intention is to declare the true nature of literary merit ; and his rules and precepts for self-criticism become applicable to the criticism of literature in general.

But in one matter, Horace is remarkably liberal : and that he is so in this particular matter is an excellent instance of his sanity as a critic. This is the matter of diction. Aristotle's treatment of this is very disappointing. But Horace's is exactly right ; and unfortunately it is just here that his wisdom has, in the history of criticism, been least influential : though nowadays it is just here that it might seem most valuable. Poetic diction, he says, can never be an altogether established and stationary affair. The function of language in poetry is to express ; but man's experience, which poetry exists to express, is continually changing, since it is continually adding to itself. With the growth of experience, the language of poetry must keep pace, if it is to be truly expressive. Language is like a tree ; and its words are like the leaves. As the years go on, the old leaves fall, and new leaves take their place : but the tree remains the same. Horace's simile nicely puts the case of language and its words in the art of literature. But we must remember that in the trees which Horace had in mind, all the old leaves do not fall off at once ; thus at any moment, the leafage consists of both old and new. So it must be with poetic language. New words must be continually coming in, and old words dropping out. The poet must not expect to rely wholly on the proved poetic vocabulary of his predecessors, and he must not be afraid of being the first to make poetic use of new words. But of course, as Horace admirably points out, there is always the possibility, by skilfully joining words together in phrases, of making quite new poetic use of the most familiar words. Much fallacious writing and thinking about poetic

diction would have been saved, if this exquisite passage, which is as true to the nature of language as it is to the nature of poetry, had had on subsequent criticism anything like the influence of his doctrine that Five Acts in Drama are prescribed by an absolute rule.

On the whole, if we judge by effect, the most important name in the history of criticism next to Aristotle is Horace. Criticism which can give a rational account of itself was first made possible by Aristotle's philosophy; but it was the *Ars Poetica* which broadcast the seed of the *Poetics* over every literature in Europe. In the *Poetics*, the efficacy of Aristotle's doctrine depends on his readers' ability to follow philosophical reasoning; in the *Ars Poetica*, the magic of poetry has released it from this severe condition: henceforth the doctrine, or the essential spirit of it, is something which can *be enjoyed*. And the whole world has enjoyed it. What the history of Criticism owes to Horace is quite inestimable. Of no other figure, in the rest of our summary, will it be necessary to speak so fully.

In the scale which our survey requires, after Horace the next great figure in the critical succession is *Dante*.[1] For Dante, Aristotle was "the master of those who know"; but this was not the Aristotle who wrote the *Poetics*. Dante knew no such Aristotle. He knew Horace; but his philosophical mind required more than the *Ars Poetica* could give him. Possessed by the merciless rationalism of the middle ages, no rules could be valid for him without the theory on which they were grounded. But his theory was mainly theological, and is to-day not much more than an intellectual curiosity. Yet he can startle us with such complete anticipations, precisely argued, of modern theory, as his division of the power of language into "*signum rationale*" and "*signum sensuale*"; which is exactly our quite recent distinction of "semantic" and "phonetic." And his division is reasoned from profound insight into the nature of language. No doubt his chief contribution to criticism, though its importance is only historical, is his defence of a national vernacular in literature against the specious claims of the universal language of learning, Latin. His account, in the unfinished *De Vulgari Eloquentia*, of the structure of vernacular lyrical forms, is of great value to literary history. But his attempt to found a noble vernacular diction on an æsthetic classification of words is nothing; it was the poet in him, not the theorist, who made Italian a match for the language of Homer or Virgil. Much more interesting, and vastly more important, is his assertion, elaborated in the unfinished *Convivio*, and succinctly given in the letter to Can Grande della Scala, of the symbolic meaning of poetry. This is an invaluable supplement to Aristotle's theory. For Dante, the "action" or story, which inspires a poem, means more to the poet than its merely human events; it has seized on his mind because it seems to symbolize for him some conviction or intuition of the inmost meaning of life. According to Aristotle, the art of a poem is the symbol (or "imitation") of its inspiration—its "action"; and now, according to Dante, the action is itself symbolic. So that the whole poem not only embodies the action in artistic shape and substance, but by so doing suggests the symbolic (or, as Dante calls it, in a broad use of the word, the "allegorical") significance of the action.

[1] The works mentioned are translated in the Temple Classics edition (Dent).

This may not be a universal rule ; but its enlargement of Aristotle's system of " imitations " is clearly required in order to account for the full effect of such poems as the *Æneid* and *Paradise Lost* and *Gerusalemme Liberata*, as well as of Dante's own *Divine Comedy*. The symbolic nature of human events as the inspiration of poetry is even more evident in lyrical poetry. The emotional moment which a lyric celebrates may to the poet mean much more than itself ; and if it is completely caught in language, it will suggest this to the reader also. Dante himself is the great exemplar here : his love for Beatrice meant immeasurably more to him than merely human passion ; it was a symbol of matters transcending mortality. What these matters were, Dante endeavoured to expound, largely in terms of the scholastic philosophy. But they cannot be expounded : only the sense of them can be conveyed when the art of poetry is capable of conveying the very life of the moment that inspired it. Thus, for the higher criticism of certain noble kinds of literature, Dante's doctrine of the " allegorical " nature of poetry is indispensable. There are many novels in which the action is as symbolical as the *Æneid* itself of matters not otherwise expressible.

Much of the criticism of the Renaissance was deeply concerned with the *Poetics*. The main contribution of the Renaissance to the history of criticism was, in fact, the recovery of Aristotle's æsthetic philosophy for the modern world : though, as we have seen, the spirit of that philosophy had long been effective in the generalized form of the rules and precepts of Horace's *Ars Poetica*. In the earlier stage of the Renaissance, indeed, Horace was still the sole authority ; a position from which only Aristotle could depose him. But that followed inevitably on the discovery and circulation of the *Poetics*. Renaissance criticism, however, added little of any value to Aristotle ; its chief business was to interpret him. But there was one direction in which Aristotle's theory could obviously be extended. Plato said poetry imitated Nature. No, said Aristotle ; it imitates a conception of Nature : and to that he confined his theory. But what is the relation between Nature as it is and Nature as the poet conceives it ? What does the poetical conception of Nature mean ? The answer is no doubt implied by Aristotle's theory ; but the Renaissance critics began to make it explicit. Thus Sir Philip Sidney, in his brilliant *Apologie*, insisting on the freedom of poetry, finds its proper business in its creation of a sort of counterpart to Nature, in which whatever may delight us exists in its perfection ; and Bacon more profoundly says that poetry " doth raise and erect the mind, by submitting the shows of things to the desires of the mind." Since the Renaissance, this is the direction in which what we may call Aristotelian æsthetic theory has tended to develop. With Kant, the Baconian " desires of the mind " became the desire for a representation of the purpose in things ; but poetry, he says, represents things as purposive without representing any distinct purpose. So, too, for Shelley, poetry has a moral effect, without recommending any specific morality. For morality is simply mental life at its highest and finest ; and the vitality of the mind is in its imagination, which poetry feeds. In poetry, we live in the world out of which our sense of the purpose of things and the morality of action emerges : we live in the world which is immediately and on its own account, without reference to ulterior standards, significant.

In what region of experience can this immediately satisfactory world occur ? Benedetto Croce gives the answer : it is in the region of pure intuition, of experience accepted for its own sake. The question of the *reality* of experience does not arise in this region : we are satisfied with the experience itself, simply as such. But Croce seems to limit his answer to sensuous and emotional intuition. Yet anything at all, even ratiocination, can be intuited and taken as pure experience. The conception of nature, then, which poetry represents (and poetry stands for the art of literature generally), is a conception of the world which we most profoundly desire, imagined simply as existing, and satisfying our desires simply by being so imagined. And what we most profoundly desire in the world is law and order. Any kind of pure literature is inspired by the conception of a world which merely has to exist in order to assure us that its existence is an affair of perfect interconnexion and coherence. This is true, however the inspiration is represented to imagination ; whether as short story, or novel, or drama, or epic, or lyric.

This is the more theoretical tendency in criticism. But also since the Renaissance another tendency, of at least equal importance, has been discernible—the criticism of literary style. The fountain-head of stylistic criticism is also a Greek treatise, usually called *Longinus on the Sublime*[1] : a work which has sometimes seemed to rival in importance even the *Poetics*. But it is a wholly critical work, making no appeal to any philosophical theory of art. Though the work of a Greek of the first century, its importance in the history of criticism is entirely modern, dating from 1554, when it was first printed ; it seems to have been unknown to ancient or medieval culture. The title is a double misnomer : it is not by Longinus, and it is not concerned, in our sense of the word, with the Sublime. The anonymous author was attempting to formulate the nature and constitution of that style in literature which " elevates " language above its ordinary uses. He was the first comparative critic of literature ; for besides Greek and Roman, he could also draw from Hebrew literature, quoting with admiration from Moses (" no ordinary man "), as a sentence worthy of the Deity, " Let there be light, and there was light." The great merit of his treatment of literary style is, that though he certainly regards it as a quality on which criticism may fix its attention, he never thinks of it as a mere outer layer of decoration. Style, for " Longinus " (so, for convenience, we may continue to call the author), is the revelation of the very spirit of a work and of the personality of its author. The saying " Style is the man " takes its origin from " Longinus " : but he is too good a critic to leave it at that. Style is the man indeed : but the man doing a particular piece of work in a particular kind of mood. He attempts to classify the various causes in the nature of both work and poet, which can produce " elevated " style : the scheme is perhaps not quite satisfactory, but very suggestive. He thinks these " sources of elevation " (grandeur of conception, vehement passion, the ability rightly to employ certain definable modes of linguistic expression) should yield rules for good style : rules of such genuine authority that the breaking of them could be counted positive and unmistakable faults. Nothing should condone such faults ; for they are the true sins against good taste, offences against the

[1] Translated by Rhys Roberts (Cambridge University Press).

finest harmony of poetry. But he admits that genius is not to be bound by rules ; though the admission does not compromise the validity of his rules. Faults are none the less faults for being committed by genius. But the headstrong energy of genius, which ignores rules and commits faults, is more likely to do valuable things in the whole result, than the cautious spirit which always remembers the rules, and will run no risk of offending good taste. Yet no poet, who wishes to make the most of his endowment, should be indifferent to rules—at any rate, to " art " in the sense of the conscious and rational management of his creative power. There are those who say poetic power is simply the gift of nature. It undoubtedly is the gift of nature, like good fortune. But just as, in order to use good fortune, good counsel is advisable, so the poet will be wise if he allows art to show him how best to use what nature has given him.

In the criticism which we may call stylistic (taking style in the large sense which " Longinus " had given it), this attitude to poetry first becomes effective in English literature with Ben Jonson. Against the typical Elizabethan reliance on spontaneous, and often ungoverned, energy, Jonson upheld, by magnificent practice and vigorous precept, the ideal of poetry as creative power controlled by conscious, deliberate, and learned art : in which, however, abstract rules (the Unities of Time and Place, for instance, or the Five Acts in Drama) were only valid as they served a genuinely rational artistic purpose. When Elizabethan spontaneity failed, " strangled in its waste fertility," Jonson's was the ideal that survived into the succeeding ages ; and the " school of Ben " was powerfully confirmed in its general attitude by the criticism, vacillating in principle but always rational in method, of Dryden. But it was *Pope* who first in English literature attempted anything like a complete exposition of stylistic criticism. Like Horace's *Ars Poetica, An Essay on Criticism* is first and foremost a poem, and as poetry is primarily to be judged : and a most delightfully entertaining poem it is, as full as anything Pope ever did of his memorable wit and his exquisite skill with words. But it is a poem on the subject of criticism ; and of great importance in the history of that subject for its bringing together into one focus the influences of Aristotle, " Longinus," the school of Ben Jonson, Dryden's common sense, French ideals of literary taste, and the rationalism of Cartesian philosophy. Whence does criticism derive its authority ? Pope combines into a single mental attitude three authoritative ideas—the idea of Nature, the idea of Antiquity, the idea of Reason. All three must be obeyed ; but this means no divided allegiance—rather the authority of each one confirms the other two. " First follow Nature " ; but to learn how to do this, study the Ancients. For the Ancients were at one with Nature ; Nature and the Poetry of Antiquity are the same. But also to study the Ancients is to study art that always accords with reason : the lesson of antiquity is that poetry must obey the rules which reason prescribes. How is this ? The answer is (and here comes in the influence of that rationalism which the immensely potent philosophy of Descartes had made almost universal), Nature herself is reason. If nature seems irrational, it is our own understanding that is at fault. The ancient poets portrayed a rational world, because they knew what nature truly is. The rules of art which they obeyed were not imposed on nature ; the rules

were drawn from nature—they were " discovered, not devised," they were the laws which nature " first herself ordain'd " : they were the very truth of nature, precisely because they were rational. If there is any distinction to be drawn between art and nature, it is that art, being rational, is more natural than nature herself—than the nature, that is, of actual experience.

This dogma (for of course it is nothing more) that nature is really identical with reason, and that consequently nature is never so natural as in art (if art obeys the ancient rules), is the keystone in Pope's theory : a theory which may be described as a lucid confusion of ideas. He did not revere the Ancients, as Horace did, simply because they were predecessors, who could provide instructive instances of successful poetic art ; he revered them because, somehow, they possessed nature's secret. Aristotle had given a rational account of their art ; and therefore their practice must be rational. This is no doubt true, though very far from the whole truth. But Pope's theory does not amount to more than this : that the nature which poetry draws is the nature which we *desire* to know. This gives us no more than Aristotle had given. But Pope is writing in favour of a certain style of poetic composition—not only in language, but in conception also. It is what we roughly call the eighteenth century style of poetry ; and since the theory of it could invoke three names of such authority as Nature, Antiquity, and Reason, it is no wonder that this style could outlast a whole century—that it could begin in the seventeenth, prevail in the eighteenth, and continue well into the nineteenth century.

But Pope, the editor of Shakespeare, could not but admit that there might be " glorious offenders " against the rules. This admission is quite different from the apparently similar admission made by " Longinus." With " Longinus," faults were faults, whoever committed them. But with Pope, the rules were such, that an offence against them might be an excellence for which the rules had not provided. For the rules can only give as much as we can perceive of nature's reasonableness ; and genius may always transcend our ordinary perception of this. The admission that genius is *right* not to be limited by the rules should, properly speaking, deprive the rules of all their supposed validity. They cannot, at least, be more than provisionally valid.

Eighteenth century poetic style is most conspicuous in its diction. If poetry is always a rational art, must not the same kind of diction be always its most suitable medium ? Thus there came to prevail the belief that a certain kind of diction was, *per se*, poetical, and would be right for all poetical occasions : and the formation of a diction that seemed to satisfy these requirements was perhaps the most remarkable achievement of the eighteenth century. But in fact it was only really suited to a peculiar kind of rational inspiration. Revolt against it had been frequent, though sporadic, during the eighteenth century itself, and in 1800 its universal pretensions were exploded by Wordsworth's celebrated Preface to *Lyrical Ballads*. Wordsworth denied that there can be any such thing as diction poetical *per se* ; the proper language for poetry is the " language really used by men," which becomes poetical by the way it is used. Like most reforms, this goes too far in the opposite direction ; and Wordsworth himself in his practice never hesitated, when it suited his purpose, to use

language which belongs to literature rather than to life. But his protest remains invaluable; after Wordsworth, the tradition of criticism approves the use of any language in literature which will serve the writer's turn. Properly speaking, there is only one fault to be found with style: failure to be expressive in the sense of being truly, finely, and vividly communicative. Wordsworth cleared the way for the Romantics and all subsequent movements towards liberty of style. But the lesson of the eighteenth century has not therefore been lost: the tradition of criticism still bears the impress of its tremendous emphasis on the ideal of "Longinus" and Ben Jonson. Whether nature is rational or not, poetry must be: not necessarily logically or scientifically, but artistically, rational. It must be an activity which is wholly and completely *designed.*

Mention of the Romantics brings us to the third main tendency in the tradition of criticism; though, like Romanticism itself, it begins long before anything like a Romantic Movement is discernible. This too may be due to the influence of Descartes: at any rate, it belongs to something much wider than literature and its criticism It forms part of the increasing importance in modern consciousness of the distinction between the subjective and the objective elements of experience, between the person that experiences and the world that is experienced, between "inner" and "outer" life. This tendency may be most suitably approached, perhaps, through its addition of a new category to critical valuation. This is the category of the Sublime, in the sense in which Coleridge uses the word, when he claims Sublimity to be the peculiar distinction of Hebrew literature as against Greek or Roman. The suggestion is that sublimity is somehow superior to mere beauty.

The category of the Sublime first decisively enters the critical tradition with Burke's *A philosophical inquiry into the origin of our ideas of the Sublime and Beautiful* (1756). Neither the theoretical nor Aristotelian tendency in criticism, nor the stylistic tendency which derives from "Longinus," would give any justification to the assertion, that the *purpose* of poetry is to be beautiful; but in both it would be right to say, that when poetry succeeds in its purpose, it is *judged* to be beautiful. But may there not be, asks Burke, something better than beauty in poetry? Is not passion more important than beauty? This implies a somewhat limited understanding of the word beauty, which becomes more evident as the tendency goes on. For Burke, beauty is to be defined in such terms as "delicacy," "smoothness," "grace," even "smallness." His argument goes thus. The free exercise of any emotion is in itself pleasant; and the greater the emotion, the greater the pleasure. Even emotions associated with painful or terrible things are, as emotions, pleasant, provided they are disinterested. In poetry, that is precisely what they are: the painful and terrible things in poetry do not happen to us: we contemplate them, and are only affected by the emotions which accompany them. These emotions can then be freely enjoyed; and those are found to be most moving which accompany ideas or suggestions of death, destruction, annihilation, immensity, the unbounded, the infinite. That which astonishes and overwhelms us with its emotional effect is what we call the Sublime: and this effect is usually produced by something which is incapable of apprehension. The effect is, indeed, that of terror; "terror is

in all cases whatsoever, either more openly or latently, the ruling principle of the sublime." And with terror usually goes some kind or degree of obscurity. The sublime, which is the true greatness of poetry, is therefore in general associated with obscurity in the idea represented : so much so that " a clear idea is another name for a little idea." It may be noted that this category of the Sublime admits ugliness as an element in poetry.

What is more important to note, however, is that this category of the Sublime is typical of Romanticism. Wherever we find Romanticism, we find the " inner " life somehow asserting its superiority over the " outer." Burke's insistence that poetry must be judged by its emotional effect is the first declaration of the rights of romantic criticism—criticism by purely subjective standards. And the romantic importance of " inner " experience over the " outer " world is further asserted by his insistence on the poetic value of obscurity in what is represented. For obscurity, like ideas of boundlessness and infinitude, sets the mind free to expand its inner powers unconditioned by the outer actuality of things. It is thus that, for romanticism, " distance lends enchantment to the view " : distance obscures, actuality becomes vague, and in its place Fancy " glows divinely there." It is scarcely necessary to observe that the opposite of Romanticism is Realism, which puts all its emphasis on the " outer " world. But realism, in the tradition of critical method, has never been anything like so important as romanticism.

Kant, in the *Critique of Judgement*, agrees with Burke that the sublime and the beautiful are distinct categories in the æsthetic judgement ; but seems to think that the pleasure in the sublime consists in the mind's recovery from the imminent overwhelming force of natural grandeur : by collecting all its strength to resist the overpowering effect of sublime landscape, the mind is invigorated by its sense of asserting its moral superiority over nature. Kant thought much more of the æsthetic judgement in scenery than in art ; but his discussion of the sublime in nature combined with Burke's treatment of the sublime in art to enlarge the range of æsthetic experience : thereby, of course, greatly enriching the tradition of criticism.

Less closely connected with romanticism, but belonging to the same line of criticism as Burke and Kant, *Lessing*, in his famous essay on the statuary group known as *Laokoön*,[1] considers the relations of literature with the graphic arts. Lessing easily admits, with Burke, that the ugly may successfully be introduced into poetry ; but this is because he limits more narrowly even than Burke the scope and meaning of beauty. Beauty is the ideal of the graphic arts ; but for poetry, expressiveness is the ideal : and ugliness may be very expressive. On the contrary beauty, which is given by shapeliness of visible form, may be destroyed by expressiveness. What Virgil's poetry can artistically do in describing Laokoön's horrible death, cannot be artistically done by the sculptor who represents the same incident in visible form. It is doubtful whether the facts bear out this particular argument ; but it leads Lessing to a very important conclusion.

The difference of effect between poetry and graphic art is due to the difference in the way they present their subjects, which again is due to the difference of their media. Owing to the medium of painting or sculpture,

[1] Translated in Bohn's Library (Bell).

graphic art is the static representation of objects in single moments of their existence ; whereas poetry, again owing to its medium, must be the successive representation of actions in a continuous sequence of existence. Lessing refers to an old Greek saying, attributed to Simonides, that painting is dumb poetry, poetry is speaking painting. This emphasizes the resemblance between the arts ; but the difference between them is equally important. Painting must never seek to do what only literature can do, literature never what painting only can do. But perhaps Lessing did not perceive how radical was the distinction he maintained : later criticism has also sometimes failed to perceive this. When a picture is said to " tell a story," does it really compete with literature ? How can literature present its subject in actual colour and form ? So, too, description in poetry cannot really trespass on the domain of painting. But Lessing did invaluable service to criticism by emphasizing the boundaries dividing the arts. For whatever an art can do is conditioned by the medium in which it is done ; and the rules which genuinely formulate what can be done and what cannot be done in this medium or in that, are necessarily rules of an absolute validity.

The great contribution of romanticism to the tradition of criticism lies in the liberty of interpretation which it claims. This liberty denies the validity of the so-called objective rules of a merely pedantic classicism, but easily accepts the genuinely objective rules which, as Lessing showed, may be founded on the nature of the artistic medium ; for these latter rules do not in the least interfere with purely subjective judgement. It was romanticism that made possible the critical individualism, the complete liberty of appreciation, in Lamb, Coleridge, and Hazlitt. The danger is, the encouragement romanticism gives to irresponsibility. But the last word in the theory of romantic criticism, the perfectly balanced summation of the claims of liberty and responsibility, is given by Manzoni's formula in his preface to his noble poem *Il Conte di Carmagnola*. Every composition contains within itself the rules by which it should be criticized, or, as Manzoni himself more carefully puts it, " offers to anyone who wishes to examine it the principles necessary to form a judgement of it." These principles may be obtained by asking three questions : What was the author's intention ? Was the intention reasonable ? Has the author carried it out ? In other words : *Discover* the purpose ; *judge* its worth ; *criticize* the technique. This puts Manzoni's meaning in the most general form possible, but introduces a slight modification of it.

It may be said, that in this there is nothing essentially romantic. And that is true : Manzoni's great dictum is only historically romantic. It was uttered as a protest against the doctrine of universal abstract standards in criticism, to which false classicism and misapplied rationalism had perverted the teaching of Aristotle, Horace, and " Longinus." Having exploded that doctrine, Manzoni's formula becomes not merely a statement of the ideals of romantic criticism, but indicates the procedure of all sane criticism whatsoever.

V. CONCLUSION

With Manzoni's wisdom, we may conclude. The pronouncement concerns criticism, not theory. Every work of art is a particular case, and must

be judged as such; and the judgement must be of its merit. But the dictum is not quite so simple as it looks. How are we to know what an author's *intentions* are? An author seldom tells us that, and when he does, his information is seldom to be trusted. For the reason why a work of art exists at all is, that it was the only way in which its author could truly give us his intentions. What he may say of them elsewhere will surely be more or less than, or beside, the truth. But if we allow the work of art to make its effect on us as a whole, then in that final unity of its total impression we have the author's intention so far as we are able to respond to it. This is universally true of art; and it is a truth established not by criticism, but by the theory of art. Thus Manzoni's first critical principle is quite ineffective by itself, but becomes everything Manzoni intended it to be when it is based on theoretical principles. Precisely the same is true of the third part of his dictum. It is here that the paraphrase given above slightly modifies Manzoni's meaning. For if we know the author's intentions, we only do so because he has, somehow or other, carried them out. The real question is, *How* has he carried them out? But criticism of technique is helpless without understanding of the general nature and function of technique, which only the theory of art can provide.

All this applies to the whole history of criticism. The rules of criticism, so far as they are valid, are nothing but modes of using universal theory in particular cases. They are thus objective rules; and criticism, by virtue of them, need not wholly depend on the personal peculiarity of the critic. But the subjective element must come in. For it is entirely for its own purpose that criticism uses theory, a purpose which, strictly speaking, theory cannot assist: namely, to judge of merit. Obviously, nothing can limit the rights of purely subjective judgement on the question of merit. But as regards technique, if the criticism is at all considerable, the subjective judgement will be combined with judgement as certainly objective; for here criticism must have regard to rules—not rules laid down by mere authority, but rules derived from the very nature of art, made available by æsthetic theory. There remains the second principle in Manzoni's threefold dictum: the worth of the poet's inspiration. The judgement here can be nothing but entirely subjective, and its freedom is absolute. Nevertheless, the value of the critic's judgement in this respect does not depend on its freedom; it depends on the worth of the critic. When he is judging of technique, the weight of his verdict will largely be given by his intellectual qualities. But when he is judging of inspiration, the value of his judgement will depend on the whole man, on his moral and temperamental character, as well as his brain.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

G. SAINTSBURY: *History of Criticism*; 3 Vols. (London. 1902)

J. E. SPINGARN: *History of Literary Criticism in the Renaissance* (New York and Oxford. 1912)

H. B. CHARLTON: *Castelvetro's Theory of Poetry* (Manchester. 1913)

E. A. GREENING LAMBORN : *Rudiments of Criticism* (Oxford. 1916)
G. GREGORY SMITH : *Elizabethan Critical Essays* (Oxford. 1904)
R. A. SCOTT-JAMES : *The Making of Literature* (London. 1930)
J. E. SPINGARN : *Seventeenth Century Critical Essays* (Oxford. 1908)
Creative Criticism (New York, 1917 ; Oxford, 1926)
J. SHAWCROSS : *Coleridge's Biographia Literaria* ; 2 Vols. (Oxford. 1907)
A. C. BRADLEY : *Oxford Lectures on Poetry* (London. 1909)
J. MIDDLETON MURRY : *The Problem of Style* (Oxford. 1922)
JOHN LIVINGSTONE LOWES : *Convention and Revolt in Poetry* (New York, 1919 ; Oxford, 1930)
GEORGE EDWARD WOODBERRY : *Inspiration of Poetry* (New York. 1910)
WALTER PATER : *Appreciations* (" Style ") (London. 1889)
MATTHEW ARNOLD : *Essays in Criticism* ; 1st Series : (" Function of Criticism ") (London. 1865)

THE ARTS OF PAINTING AND SCULPTURE

By

ROGER FRY

SYNOPSIS

In this Article an attempt is made to gain some idea of the conditions under which paintings and sculptures have been made by man at different periods and in different countries, and also of the different purposes which those who made them had in view.

We find that a great many of these works were made in response of certain vital needs imposed on men by the complex conditions to human societies—these needs, for the most part, coming under the heading of publicity. Such works are, in effect, weapons in the struggle for social predominance, means employed by men to increase the importance of their own personalities. Other works of art, we find, were created in response to supposed needs arising out of superstitious or religious beliefs.

In both of these cases the labour expended upon these works of art is analogous to man's ordinary activities in response to the struggle for existence.

But we find a whole class of works of art in which no such biological aims are envisaged—works due to a gratuitous impulse which we call the æsthetic impulse. We find here a purely spiritual activity analogous to that which impels men to search for truth. It is this pure, free and biologically useless activity which has produced those works which are among the most cherished possessions of mankind.

CONTENTS

	Page		Page
Introduction	910	Indian Art	939
Palæolithic Art	915	The Art of the Dark Ages	941
Neolithic Art	917	Byzantine and Sassanid Art	941
Art of Primitive Peoples	918	Russian Art	944
Mexican and Peruvian Arts	920	Mohammedan Art	945
Egypt and Mesopotamia	921	Painting and Sculpture:	
Ægean	925	N. and W. Europe—The End of	
Greek, Roman, Etruscan	926	the Middle Ages	945
Scythian and Chinese	931	Italy, and the Tradition to Modern	
Japanese Art	937	Times	949

THE ARTS OF PAINTING AND SCULPTURE

INTRODUCTION

The arts of painting and sculpture have been practised by man since palæolithic times, for a period which has been estimated at more than twenty thousand years. One of the marks which distinguish the human species from the rest of the animal kingdom is the amount of time and energy which man expends on useless activities. By useless activities I mean those which are not dictated to him by his biological needs, either real or supposed. Play, the most universal of such useless activities, is the one, and almost the only one, which he shares with many animals. As far as we can tell from the records left by prehistoric man, painting and sculpture came next in regard to their early inception and wide distribution. In the life of the individual we find a similar precocious emergence of these arts, a passion for drawing being almost universal among children from about four years of age. And yet, deeply rooted as is the impulse to painting and sculpture in human nature, it would scarcely be an exaggeration to say that the average adult citizen of to-day would get through life with no appreciable difference if these arts had never come into being, nor is it unusual for him to look upon the artist as one of the least respectable drones in the social hive.

To be perfectly frank, one must admit that it would be no easy matter to persuade anyone who looked at life from a purely practical or ethical angle that there was any justification for the economic waste implied by these particular useless activities. Play he might admit as necessary to recuperate our forces for the work of the world; scientific research, though he would have regarded it as idle curiosity in its earlier stages, might be justified in his eyes by the advantages to our powers of production which are the fortuitous outcome of an activity that is, in aim, almost as useless as the arts. Such, certainly, was a very common attitude among many serious men throughout the nineteenth century, and the suspicion with which Puritans have always regarded the arts is far from extinct to-day, although it is less freely expressed.

We have then to face this fact, that throughout the immense period of human history and a great part of pre-history, the figurative arts have been practised in one form or another almost continuously and universally and yet that we have no very complete or cogent explanation of why man acts thus, with what precise aims, or impelled by what particular needs.

Impulses to make objects—to create, as it were, in play, animals or men which are objects of interest; impulses to imitate; impulses to relieve the stress of emotional states by outward expression; the desire to obtain a magical control of the forces of nature; the interpretation of life

in terms of desire ; an inherent love of beauty (whatever that may mean) —all these and other causes for this activity have been at various times adduced as explanations. It is almost certain that various different impulses have, at different times and places, come into play in the fashioning of pictures and sculptures. The attempt will be made in the course of this inquiry to distinguish some of these. We must also bear in mind the possibility that even in a single work of art more than one aim has been envisaged and more than one impulse has exercised its sway.

The ideal of such a critical survey of the figurative arts as is here attempted would be, so perfectly to read those works of art which different peoples and different ages have transmitted to us, that we should understand fully the precise mental and emotional conditions under which each of them was conceived. That this ideal is unattainable is evident when we consider that the critic himself, however much he may cultivate an objective attitude, cannot altogether liberate himself from the spiritual atmosphere of his own time and country. It is not so very long, for instance, since works of art of whatever country or period were estimated almost entirely by their approximation to, or difference from, Greek art of the fifth and fourth centuries B.C., which was accepted as an absolute standard of excellence. We may at least claim that whatever the prejudices by which we are unconsciously limited may be, we are at the present day more fitted, through our familiarity with a wider range of works of art than has ever before been possible, to make such a survey with a little more approximation to an objective standard.

Before actually entering upon the survey which is here contemplated, we must clear the ground by a consideration of what exactly we mean by the useless activity of the figurative artist. Man is essentially a civilized animal, that is to say that human beings, even those living under the most primitive conditions known to us, even savages, as we used to call them more frequently, when we knew nothing about them, than we do now—even savages live in a society which has its rules and restrictions. It follows from this that the biological struggle—the struggle for existence—is in part transferred from the plane in which it takes place in the animal world, to other planes : that success will cease to depend entirely upon brute force, courage and cunning, and may depend upon pre-eminence in various activities which social man has come to recognize, whether rightly or wrongly, as having value. It thus follows that even those superfluous and useless activities, among which the arts of painting and sculpture occupy, as we have seen, so prominent a place, may become the arena for a biological struggle. Though, in essence, useless activities, they may be, as it were, recaptured and exploited by biological forces.

To take a very simple instance of this, the drama began, as it begins anew in every child's life, as a pure play, as a satisfaction of gratuitous and entirely a-biological desires. But in our modern civilization there has grown up a vast business organization for the exploitation of this activity, and it would not be difficult to find writers and producers of plays who are actuated by a pure desire for gain, who are functioning, that is to say, according to strict biological need, who are true men of business. We have here a case where the free activity of make-believe which led to the drama has been recaptured and harnessed to the biological cart, and becomes

comparable to the primitive hunter's activity in searching for his daily food.

This possibility of recapturing and harnessing the free activity of the arts must be steadily borne in mind in studying the history and evolution of sculpture and painting, since at every step it complicates and confuses the situation. In examining any work of art, we shall want to discover, if possible, how far it was conceived in response to the free impulse which we may call the æsthetic impulse and how far it was conceived with biological or business ends in view.

We shall, in our survey of the arts, find these two forces continually acting and re-acting on one another with continually varying resultants. The quite recent developments of our capitalistic civilization have, curiously enough, brought into strong relief one of the great biological uses to which the figurative arts can be put. Before America had discovered the hypnotic influence of pictorial images on the public, the man of business had nothing to say to the artist with the sole exception of the portrait painter who was able to minister to his sense of self-importance. All other artists he regarded as certainly useless, probably mischievous, parasites upon society. But with the advent of advertisement the man of business has had to make terms with the artist, since the artist's activity has become a means towards the creation of wealth.

Now this twentieth century example of the relations of biological need, or business, and the æsthetic impulse throws a great deal of light on the arts of painting and sculpture throughout past ages. We shall find in fact that advertisement, or publicity, in one form or another has been one of the chief incentives to the production of painted or sculptured images. That, for instance, certain colossal statues of Pharaohs are clearly analogous to colossal portraits of ladies whose complexion has benefited by a particular brand of soap, or of gentlemen whose hilarity is due to a famous beer.

We must now consider a little more closely how the painted or sculptured image which has been ordered in response to the business instinct of the advertiser comes into being. The advertiser himself cannot make it, cannot even conceive it except in the very vaguest way. He therefore sends for an artist and tells him vaguely what he wants. Now the artist has presumably had a professional training. He has the technical skill necessary to fashion an image according to the accepted standards of his time and country. If he has nothing more than technical skill and if, in order to earn his living, he seeks merely to satisfy the demands of the advertiser, he too will be governed by biological need, and the whole production of the image from beginning to end will show no evidence of free activity whatever, no æsthetic impulse will have intervened, we shall be dealing only with the play of relatively simple biological forces acting in the complex ambience of a highly organized civilization.

On the other hand the artist for whom the advertiser sends may have, besides his technical professional skill to make imagery, a strongly marked impulse to free creative activity; his imagination may be so obsessed by a particular kind of imagery that he will seek first of all to externalize that imagery, even though it may be quite different from the sort of image that the advertiser wants, or he may try to conciliate the two

ideas ; but, at all events, he will have an impulse to "free" unconditioned creation which he will try to satisfy at all costs. If this impulse is so overpowering that the artist is quite incapable of modifying his imagery in any way in order to satisfy the exigencies of other people, we may call him a pure artist. It is evident that the pure artist can only come to terms with the pure business man if he can by some means persuade him that his, the artist's, imagery is likely to have a stronger hypnotic influence on the public than the one which the advertiser had vaguely presented to his mind.

We may, I think, with these facts in view formulate a law of art history: Every type of imagery which has come into existence tends to persist in the same form, except in so far as it is acted upon by a free æsthetic impulse.

As might be supposed however in so complicated a matter as art, this law is only approximately true, because in reality any type of imagery which persists without æsthetic intervention for any long period tends very slowly to undergo degradation. This degradation may be of various kinds ; the essentials may be overlaid with gratuitous ornament or the form may become vaguer and less explicit, but in one way or another its original significance tends to become obliterated.

Let us summarize briefly the situation to which we have been led by the previous considerations. When we view the whole corpus of works of figurative art which the past has handed down to us, we see that they have come into being as a result of many different impulses—we see that many of these impulses have a biological value and that works of art may become counters in the game of life. But we find also, running through the whole mass like gold threads in a tapestry, here appearing brightly and there lost sight of for long periods, the evidences of that specific "free" activity—"free," in that it is unconditioned by biological need—which we will call the æsthetic impulse. Whether that impulse can also, in some much more hidden way, be connected with certain fundamental instincts, or whether we should regard it as a gratuitous overflow of energy, we cannot now stop to enquire. For the time being we will take it as an unanalysed datum of human nature. Whatever its origin or psychological constituents may be, it is this æsthetic impulse which gives to works of art their spiritual significance. It is the recurrence of this æsthetic impulse at various times and in various countries that has built the spiritual habitations to which all men who have the necessary sensibility to apprehend works of art have the right of entry.

We have seen that advertisement, or publicity, in one form or another is one of the chief social functions of art, one of the ways in which æsthetic impulses are made to subserve practical biological ends. There is another social use of the work of art, closely connected with this, which we may classify as the luxury value of the work. This is ultimately one of the ways in which the individual proclaims his social superiority over his fellow men. Professor Veblen, in his *Theory of the Leisure Class*, has developed and explained this phenomenon. People desire to proclaim that they belong to the dominant caste in society, the caste which directs and controls the working classes and enjoys the fruits of their labour. The most effective way to do this is to show that they possess the spoils of

victory in the social struggle. Objects which are rare and generally coveted, such as gold and precious stones, are the most obvious means of such display of social superiority. But objects which are the result of prolonged and skilled labour are equally, if not more, effective, since here also the supply is limited, and they are even more striking evidence that the efforts of the best of the workers are exercised for the owner's benefit. Works of art in which this particular demonstration of social superiority is envisaged we may call objects of luxury. Since, until quite recent times, such objects were made by hand, and since it requires special aptitude and long training to control perfectly its movements, absolute precision of line and mechanical exactitude will be evidence of assiduity in the workman and rarity in the object. Similarly, the obliteration of all traces of the actual strokes made by the artist's tools in the execution of the work implies a final process in which the artist's work is to obliterate the traces of his own previous work, by polishing and smoothing away all irregularities. This last perfection of finish, for which craftsmen have adopted the excellent term " shop-finish," is very characteristic of the object of luxury, as we may see any day by looking in at the shop windows in Bond Street, Fifth Avenue, or the Rue de la Paix. The pure craftsman as such has always aimed at mechanical perfection of finish. The machine-made object is an unexpected realization of his ideal. But this ideal is directly contrary to the artist's æsthetic feeling. It denies a fundamental need of that impulse, the need to express sensibility. We must therefore try to make clear what this sensibility of the artist is, and what it implies in the work of art.

The full recognition of this quality in works of art is of relatively recent date. The quality itself has indeed always existed and has always appealed to receptive spirits, but the full consciousness of it as essential to a great work of art was impeded so long as we accepted the Greek idea of beauty and perfection as the aim of art.

A good example of what is implied in the word may be taken from architecture. The beauty of a Romanesque façade resides not only in the general ordering of the parts in relation to the whole, the proportions of the different members, but in the way in which mouldings and ornaments are carved. The craftsman who did these was no doubt given the general outline of mouldings and indications of floral ornaments, but he cut these according to his inevitable personal apprehension of the forms, with continual slight variations from the geometrical idea. Now we all know what happens when such a façade has been restored by a nineteenth century architect. Since the modern workman was trained to follow the given geometrical idea with unvarying mechanical precision, the mouldings have exactly the same contour throughout, each of the repeats of a meander is identical, and so forth, and the result is disastrous. We shall see the reason of this when we reflect that in a work of art, what gives us the special æsthetic pleasure is the recognition that the matter of which the work is made has been, as it were, penetrated and impregnated by an idea with which we associate ourselves. We see something akin to our spiritual being penetrating and moulding matter. The fullest pleasure occurs when, having realized the general idea, the main relations of the members of a building, the main composition of a picture,

the disposition of the limbs of a sculptured figure, we are able to consider the interior relations of the parts, proceeding always from larger to smaller relations, without finding any point at which the informing idea breaks down, until we come to the matter of the work, the grain of the stone or the canvas. It is important that we should feel at every point this impregnation of matter by the idea. The presence at any stage in this process of any mechanically precise statement of form causes a gap ; we feel that a link in the chain that binds matter to the informing spirit is broken. In a work like a picture or sculpture, if it is original and entirely by the master, we are able to see the same sensibility (that of the artist himself) working at every stage, down to the minutest touch or chisel stroke, upon the material. A proof of how highly the sensibility expressed in the minor relations is appreciated is given by the relatively small regard shown for copies and pupils' work, which none the less give the larger proportions as well as an original. In a building, such an all-pervading expression of the designer's sensibility is of course impossible, and we content ourselves with the subordinate sensibilities of the craftsmen. But in any case, what we desire in a work of art is the feeling of an inexhaustible wealth of significant relations which lie ready to hand for our investigation. We feel at once that a work of art has an idea that is intelligible, and that it is infinite in its possibilities. It is this feeling of infinity which gives to the embodied idea its organic completeness and uniqueness, and distinguishes it from a geometrical figure which is finite and capable of repetition.[1]

PALÆOLITHIC ART

As might be supposed, the very earliest evidences which we possess of human handicraft were dictated by sheer biological need—of this nature are the flints which were shaped into cutting, piercing and hammering tools. With the advent of Aurignacian man, after many thousand years, but still at a period which is estimated at over twenty thousand years ago, there occurs a great output of both sculpture and painting—executed on the rock faces of the caverns in which these men sheltered. With the exception of a few small statuettes of female figures, these works are confined to representations of the animals—horses, bisons, mammoths and cave bears—which were man's enemies or his prey. These representations are unlike any other works of painting and sculpture that have ever been produced in subsequent ages. In the first place, they show by their drawing of animals in movement that Aurignacian man possessed a rapidity and sureness of eye which no other race has approached, since he recognized poses, the truth of which has only been revealed to us by instantaneous photography. Secondly, the Aurignacian draughtsman saw the animal as a whole without any untrue emphasis on the separate features. In particular, the eye is not made either bigger or more marked than it would be in a photograph. Now in all subsequent art we note that it is almost impossible for a draughtsman not to emphasize and generally

[1] See on this question, Charles Maurron: *The Nature of Beauty in Art and Literature* (1927).

enlarge the eye, on account of its predominant attraction for our regard. This would seem to suggest that Aurignacian man had not developed a full conceptual language, that he had not made that rather complicated series of deductions by which we recognize the similarity of function and nature of this organ in whatever animal we may be considering—deductions which are summed up in the word "eye." Thirdly, these drawings are scattered on the walls of the caves without any idea of order, and often one artist will impose an image right across a previous drawing. There is, that is to say, no trace of any impulse to decorate the surface by an orderly symmetrical or balanced arrangement of the forms. In contradiction to this, the work of almost all existing primitive peoples is mainly dominated by the idea of pattern and decorative effect. However, this need not mean that Aurignacian man was entirely devoid of the decorative impulse—we find indeed suggestions of it in some of his bone carvings—but rather that the surface of his rock, without any evident boundary or limitation, failed to stimulate this impulse. We see the same phenomenon in children's drawings. A child who has got hold of a large sheet of paper will cover it with all sorts of images thrown helter skelter over the surface; but give the same child an object like a box to paint on, and he will instinctively put some symmetry or rhythmical repetition into his forms; he will inevitably relate each part in some way with the limiting boundary.

The question has naturally arisen—Why did these Aurignacian men, who must have lived a life of the utmost hardship, subject to a terribly severe struggle for bare existence, expend so much energy and effort on these paintings and still more on the high relief carvings of their rock walls? Some writers have imagined a high degree of civilization, arguing from the fact that naturalistic representation has generally only been accomplished in old and sophisticated cultures like those of the Roman Empire or of modern times. Everything we know of Aurignacian man makes such a theory fantastical. Others have sought more rationally to attribute this activity, in appearance so great a waste of effort, to a supposed biological function. They have suggested that the primitive hunters made these images as a means of giving them control over the animals themselves. In favour of this we find indeed some paintings in which the wounds by which the animal is killed are represented, as though the hunter, by wounding the image, would thereby acquire a magical power to wound the original. Again, by sympathetic magic the multiplication of the images may have been held to cause an abundance of the animals which were necessary for food. There is great probability in this theory, since it is a common result of primitive mentality to regard images as in some way identical with the object imaged; and this extends to reflections of a person in water or to the imprint of his footsteps. Power over the images or imprints gives power over the person. But while accepting the magical theory it does not explain everything. If magic had alone been considered, these painters would almost certainly have developed some kind of hieroglyphic, since any image, however distorted, so long as it was recognized as standing for the animal, would have the same magic power, and in that case the law of least effort would have brought about a rapid degeneration of the imagery. But this is not the case, for the drawings are

almost always carried out with great care and the complete realism—particularly in the case of certain sculptures and clay models—has been pushed to a high degree. It seems probable therefore that these people were repaid for their toil by some intense satisfaction; that there was a definite object in their image-making for its own sake. We see from observing children that whenever their emotion about any external object, such as an animal, becomes intense, there is felt a need to externalize the obsessive image. A child who has a passion for horses will cover endless pages with representations of whatever shapes it has adopted as expressive of a horse. The difference between these Aurignacian drawings and those of children lies in the vastly greater power of those early men to hold a literally exact mental image and subsequently project it unchanged upon the wall. It is almost as though those images which had most interest for the hunter were photographed on the retina, ready to be transferred to the wall surface later on. If I am right, then even these very early examples of painting and sculpture show man's willingness to go beyond biological necessities for the sake of gratuitous and non-biological satisfactions, for a rudimentary kind of spiritual life.

NEOLITHIC ART

From the remains which he has left us, Neolithic man seems to have bent his energies more intently towards practical ends than his Aurignacian predecessor. The discovery of the art of pottery added a new comfort to life. The smooth surfaces of his pots replaced the rough walls of caves as depositories of man's visual imagery. But these surfaces, with their fixed boundaries and special shapes, imposed great limitations on the painter. The pot itself was already a creation of the artist; his first care was to enhance its value, and he was willing to subordinate his image-making propensity to this purpose. Inevitably his painted forms must decorate the pot. And the easiest way to do this was by the repetition of simple geometrical patterns running round the body of the vessel. But even when Neolithic man set out to represent animals or men, he showed no evidence of that extraordinary power of seizing and stating the total visual impression of things which places Palæolithic painting in a category apart. He drew, as most children begin to draw, by means of a series of symbols for the component concepts of the object. For example a young child's drawing of a man consists of a circle, the simplest symbol for the head, a vertical line, the most abbreviated symbol for neck and trunk, a straight line for each of the limbs, ten short lines for the fingers and so on. This symbolic summary betrays a total indifference to actual visual impression. It is rather a hieroglyphic statement of the different concepts—head, arms, fingers, etc. It is far nearer to verbal description than to a visual record. If, as we may suppose, Neolithic man had elaborated a fairly complete conceptual language, it may well be that this had destroyed in him his predecessor's power of apprehending a total unanalysed impression. The concepts of the separate parts having divided the animal into its components, the animal itself had to be expressed by recompounding these parts. It could no longer be apprehended as a single entity. It is hardly an exaggeration to say that a great part of an

artist's training to-day is occupied in learning to counteract the distortions introduced into our vision by our conceptual language. As an instance of how profoundly this conceptual interpretation of our sensations go, we may cite the well-known fact that in cases of hysterical hyper- or an-æsthesia the area affected always corresponds to some conceptual image such as hand, wrist, forearm—it never occupies a vague undefined surface of the body.

Thus almost any artist begins by making the mask of the face too large in proportion to the skull. His attention being seized by the components—eyes, nose, mouth—he allows these to encroach on the nameless and undifferentiated surfaces of the skull. The difficulty of learning to apprehend any part in correct relation to the whole visual surface is very great, so great indeed that many very remarkable artists never quite acquire it. And yet this difficulty was apparently non-existent to the Aurignacian cave-man.

ART OF PRIMITIVE PEOPLES

In the art of the Bushmen of South Africa, there appears to be a survival of the attitude of Aurignacian man. But the art of all other primitive cultures of to-day corresponds in its main outlines with that of Neolithic man and of the bronze age. In all these, the elaborate decoration of surfaces with more or less geometrical patterns is the main preoccupation of painter and sculptor. Representations of natural objects are no doubt very frequent, but these representations have been so much modified by repetition, and by the need to adapt them to the decorative schemes in which they are incorporated, that they are often extremely hard to recognize. Indeed, it is often only when we put together a long sequence of such repeated forms that the representative basis of a pattern can be discovered. Here again we are at the opposite pole to Aurignacian man, who seems never to have used such convenient shorthand hieroglyphics for the multiplication of an image.

In primitive civilizations of to-day, however, sculpture is often employed with a more representative content, both in carving statues of gods, or ancestral figures, and in making masks to be worn in ceremonial dances. Such masks exist among almost all primitive peoples. What is most unexpected about these is that whether they come from the Indians of North or South America, from the various tribes of Central Africa, from Oceania, Indonesia, Polynesia, or New Zealand, they all have a general similarity of aspect. In almost all we find extensive distortion of the actual forms of the human or animal face. The eyes may be reduced to two small holes or slits, or they may make themselves globular protrusions, the nose may be an extremely long ridge down the flat surface of a mask or it may be a mere lump, the mouth may be made into a colossal grin, which displays rows of immense teeth, or it may be contracted to a slit or even suppressed. Naturally enough, for long after these sculptures became known to modern European man, they were regarded as the helpless stammerings of peoples incapable of rendering the human form truly. These deformations appeared to be due to mere incapacity. But as a result of the much wider outlook upon the art of the world which has

recently become possible, such a view is no longer maintained by serious students of art. Indeed, such a view might well have been rejected by any sculptor who looked at these works with an open mind. For the finer examples show that the artist had no hesitations, that he carved his forms with remarkable sureness of hand, and that his hand was guided by a very strong feeling for harmony of proportions and continuity of rhythm. The distorted features are no accident, they are designed to produce a particular effect on the spectator. In general they represent dead ancestors of the tribe, and they are inspired by a kind of ghostly and supernatural life. They do express something of the horror of death and the fearfulness of man's dreams of the supernatural. In all these works the artist is controlled not by the literal facts of nature, but by a vivid instinctive apprehension of the psychological significance of certain forms and of their rhythmic harmony. The fact that these works, from whatever quarter of the globe they may come, betray a closely similar method of expressing certain feelings, gives us the hint that probably certain patterns of social organization and certain levels of intellectual attainment and emotional habits are likely to find expression in a particular kind of art, with its own system of understanding the relations of form.

This idea is confirmed by the fact that modern European man showed such incapacity to understand these works, when he first became acquainted with them, precisely because in more highly developed social systems men generally demand that the imagery of art should correspond more or less closely with the actual appearances of nature. The imagery which appeals most to the ordinary man of our modern civilization is that which corresponds most to the photograph.

The art of these primitive peoples is singularly pure. That this should be so is not surprising when we consider that the social organization has not, at this stage, discovered and exploited the publicity value of art, and this remains therefore a direct expression of the sensibility. Thus those differences which do exist in the arts of these primitive peoples may be taken as corresponding to innate differences in the æsthetic sensibility of the various races. And here undoubtedly two races stand out as supremely gifted, the Polynesian and the Negro. Many objects made for personal use or ornament show the keenest sense of plastic harmony, the most delicately just proportion and organic design. In the making of images, whether of deities or ancestral figures, African art is however both the richer and the more advanced of the two.

In the figures, as in the masks, what strikes us is the expression of the inner life of the imagined being, and this again in spite of the most incorrect proportions and extravagant distortion of the actual human form. This vital reality is achieved by an instinctive sense of expressive form and by the coherence and inevitability of the plastic relations. Although much African sculpture is rough, grotesque, and sometimes merely incompetent, it never altogether belies the artist's sensibility, or aims at mechanical and surface perfection. But what distinguishes it from most sculpture is the surprising control of three dimensional form that these artists possess. In most races sculptors, like painters, find it easier to conceive form in its greatest extension to the eye, either full face or profile, and sculptors liberate themselves only slowly, and at the end of a long period

of tradition, from this inclination to conceive objects in the flat. Even in the mature style of Greek sculpture we find traces of the four sides from which the sculptor has worked. The figure results, as it were, from the convergence of four flat reliefs. But in Negro sculpture the artist appears to conceive from the first equally easily in all dimensions.

MEXICAN AND PERUVIAN ARTS

The arts of Central and South America are of peculiar interest, in that here we find quite complex social organizations capable of controlling a large co-operative effort for great public works, which none the less retained the essential qualities of the art of primitive peoples, perhaps in part because they continued to use the implements of primitive man.

The Mexicans lived an orderly and well-regulated life. Even their Spanish conquerors were impressed by their careful cultivation, their well-planned towns and excellent houses. This life they carried on under the tyranny of one of the most bloodthirsty theocracies which have ever been invented. The very cruelty of their religion was, however, a function of the extraordinary vividness and exuberance of their apprehensive imagination of the unknown, and this intensity and fertility of imaginative conviction gives its concentrated power to their plastic creations. Thus whilst the actual imagery is so charged with macabre and sadistic horror as to check our appreciation, the unconscious feeling which betrays itself in the choice of proportions and the plastic rhythms themselves often commands our ready acquiescence. In the more definitely religious works, like the great sculptured monoliths, the extravagance of Maya mythology leads to an intricate interweft of symbolic forms which, in its tropical exuberance, resembles somewhat the equally religious art of India. But, unlike that of the Hindus, the native sensibility of the Central Americans led them always to hold this multiplicity within the framework of a broadly conceived architectonic unity. In certain individual figures and in many masks, where no religious end seems envisaged, Maya sculpture has a placid and austere beauty of proportion and a sensitiveness in the modelling which has rarely been surpassed. In a judicial estimate we must, perhaps, admit that these people, working only with stone-age tools, have left us more masterpieces of pure sculpture than the whole of Mesopotamian, or than the majority of modern European, civilizations. Their painting, which we know only through miniature, is too purely hieroglyphic and conventional to have much æsthetic significance. They tended evidently to regard both low relief and painting in a more purely descriptive and expository light than their sculptures in the round or in high relief.

Peruvian art, which has evident affinities with that of Central America, is less macabre and horrible in its imagery. It agrees with all that we know of their relatively humane civilization. It does not however give proof of quite so intense and vigorous a plastic feeling, though some of the animal heads and the rare portions of human figures from Tihuanaco are supreme in their broad and significant simplications. On the other hand, some of the Nazca pots, made in the shape of human heads, are literal naturalistic

portraits singularly like some later Gothic sculpture and, like that, lacking in style. Such a non-æsthetic curiosity about verisimilitude is extremely rare in the arts of primitive peoples. On the other hand the pots with painted ornament, either geometrical or naturalistic plant-forms, show the finest feeling for proportion and an austere subtlety of taste which can only be paralleled in the greatest works of European and Chinese art. This firm grasp, this tendency to affect recti-linear, or at least strongly controlled linear, and plastic rhythms which marks the art of these ancient American civilizations is somewhat surprising in view of the extravagance, not to say monstrosity, of their invention. It makes some of their finest works strangely similar to the best achievements of the most intellectually gifted civilizations of the old world. And yet they appear to have retained an essentially primitive and pre-logical mentality.

EGYPT AND MESOPOTAMIA

The immense duration of Egyptian civilization, with relatively little change in the life of the average citizen throughout its thousands of years, suggests that it was a remarkably successful solution of the problem of reconciling the desires of the individual with the claims of society. Climate no doubt counted for much, but the tone of such representations of private life as remain, suggests that as a people the Egyptians preferred sensual pleasures to the love of power and that they cultivated these with refinement and discrimination. Such a people would be likely to have a natural aptitude for the visual arts, and in fact we find underlying the vast artistic production of Egypt a peculiarly instinctive and powerful sense of visual harmony.

Yet we have to admit that works of genuine æsthetic value form but a minute proportion of what has been left to us. We cannot doubt that non-æsthetic needs largely dominated their artistic productions. These needs were due both to the religious and political conditions of Egyptian society. No people has ever been so much obsessed as the ancient Egyptians by the idea of a future life, above all by the idea of that life inhering in the corpse. Hence the desire to preserve the latter for all eternity. In consequence, the early Pharaohs strained even the vast economic resources of the realm to construct the most perdurable and infrangible homes for their own bodies. The logical outcome of this was the pyramid, a marvel of constructional engineering and masonry, but too purely utilitarian, too simply geometrical to express complex æsthetic feeling. The same feeling about the life after death led them to furnish the tomb with simulacra of the utensils of daily life and to cover its walls with pictures of their duties and pleasures whilst on earth, since these would still be their concern beyond the grave. But since these images had a purely practical (magic) effect, it was only needful for them to be recognizable symbols of the original; the quality of the representation, beyond the necessary minimum of verisimilitude, was a matter of indifference. To give to these æsthetic value would have been a gratuitous waste, and when we find that speculative undertakers kept tomb chambers ready painted for the use of future clients, we can see how essentially commercial and non-æsthetic the result was likely to be.

Church and State were indissolubly united. The Pharaoh was believed to be the actual offspring of a God, so that religious and state art were indistinguishable. Now this religious state believed in the hypnotic effect of publicity on the people it governed almost more fervently than the modern oil or beer king. That this psychology was sound is proved by the fact that the advertisements in which they proclaimed their value still continue to work on the modern tourist by reason of their mere size, costliness and magnificence. When a king like Amenhemet I left ten identical replicas of his own statue at his tomb, we can see that his aim was practical and non-æsthetic. Moreover, like all highly organized religions, this intense state-religion of Egypt tended to extreme conservatism, and the artists it employed were forced to conform to a rigid and unchanging convention. This explains a curious fact common to most early art but more continuous in Egyptian art than elsewhere, namely that sculpture in the round attains to a more or less complete realization of natural form, whilst painting and bas relief (which is in effect a form of outline painting) remain at a relatively elementary stage. Sculpture, naturally enough, arrives first at a representation of natural form, since it is a three dimensional copy of a three dimensional object. The sculptor has merely to make each plane at the same inclination, and of the same size, as the original to arrive at his image. But to project the three dimensional objects of nature on to a flat surface, which is the problem of pictorial representation, is far more complicated. The size of any given plane will depend not only on its actual size but on its inclination to the line of vision. A plane, however large in reality, which is strongly inclined to the picture-plane may be reduced to a very small apparent surface. Perspective is the science by which we can estimate exactly what distortion the actual form of objects must undergo in appearance when seen from any given angle, and this science was only attained in highly intellectual and advanced civilizations.

The artists of early Dynastic and pre-Dynastic Egypt, by their keen aptitude for observation and their acute sensitiveness to form, had very quickly mastered the representation of the figure in the round, at least in its simpler poses, but when they came to represent objects on a flat surface they took the easiest course, namely that which avoids as far as possible perspective distortion of the actual form. This easy course, which is discovered anew by almost every child, consists in choosing always the aspect of greatest extension parallel to the picture plane. To take a simple instance, the greatest extension of a penny will give a circle as representational form, the least extension will give a single line and the intermediate extensions will be ellipses. A circle is a much more legible symbol for a penny than a line. Similarly, the shape of an arm stretched at right angles to the observer (*i.e.*, parallel to the picture plane) will be not only more legible but more easily drawn than an arm stretched straight at the spectator, in which case every plane will undergo violent distortion by reason of its foreshortening.

On these principles, the Egyptians at an early date elaborated a very complete system of linear description of objects seen always in profile or full face. The relation of these objects to one another was represented also in two dimensions only, or with only the vaguest hint of recession.

It was this elementary, purely descriptive, delineation which religious conservatism petrified, so that it persisted for many centuries with scarcely any change.

Even portrait statues, since they helped to preserve the original man from the decay of death, served biological, or perhaps we should say metabiological, ends. For this purpose they were preferably made of the hardest stones, such as diorite or granite. And here, for once at least, the biological datum actually furthered the æsthetic end. The artist, for all his patent and skilful craftsmanship, was obliged to find the simplest possible scheme in which to express the more fundamental plastic relations of the figure, and this helped to impose an æsthetically valuable unity, so that some of these early realistic statues have considerable beauty although the descriptive rather than the creative purpose tends to become apparent in spite of the broad simplification of the form. Even here the artist's personal sensibility does not function fully. This descriptive tendency of Egyptian art was also perhaps influenced by their strong intellectual bias. This would naturally make them desire a particularly clear, precise and definite statement of form. As we have seen, æsthetic sensibility envisages at the same time the coherence of form, its conformity to a single idea, and also the multiplicity and infinity of our actual sensations. Certainly the Egyptians tended to suppress this aspect of sensibility, to freeze their lines and polish their surfaces into mechanical perfection. We have also seen that the luxury motive in artistic production tends in the same direction, in its love of expensive shop-finish. The result is that the vast mass of Egyptian objects of art have the stamp of commercial production, and appear to be uninspired by any æsthetic idea. And the same is true of the greater part of their official art, in which the Pharaohs advertised their prowess and success.

None the less the native æsthetic feeling of this strangely gifted people lay hidden beneath the frozen surface, ready to emerge whenever it got a chance. At almost every period a careful search will reveal here and there a genuine work of art, generally in some minor object or statuette where by some lucky chance the artist was free to create independently. But the great proof of this extraordinary situation lies in the volcanic outbreak of an intense æsthetic sensibility which Akhenaton let loose. This poetical prodigy among kings succeeded, by sheer force of conviction, in breaking for a moment the age-long crust of convention which bound the artistic sensibility of the Egyptians. That this is no wild hypothesis we can tell from the fact that his chief sculptor declared that the King had taught him. Without supposing this to be literally true, we cannot doubt that a totally new direction was given to art under this King. Everything done for and under him had a free vitality of rhythm unapproached elsewhere in Egyptian art. A little torso of a girl's figure in University College, London, which is said to be part of a portrait of the King's daughter, has a tremulous sensitiveness of modelling which in this respect surpasses anything pronounced by Greek art ; whilst for subtlety and individuality of expression, some of the portrait heads at Berlin which came from the royal studios anticipate the best work of the Italian Renaissance. But this bid for freedom died with the King who had inspired it, and his son-in-law Tutankhamen's tomb was found to be filled with the

most expensive rubbish that money could buy from the most fashionable furnishers. But though it was suppressed, nothing could actually kill this native Egyptian propensity. Again and again we see it flickering beneath the surface of Ptolemaic art, and before the dissolution of the Roman Empire it had blossomed out into the free and playful fantasy of Coptic art.

The civilization of Mesopotamia seems to have started at about the same early period as the Egyptian, to have progressed almost more rapidly, and to have acquired technical accomplishment in sculpture, metal work and pottery before 3000 B.C. This civilization seems to be due entirely to the Sumerians, a non-Semitic people. Men of Semitic race lived in Mesopotamia even before the arrival of the Sumerians and later on became the dominant race, but everything that shows æsthetic impulse and creative power can be traced to a Sumerian origin. The Sumerians were a people of extraordinary organizing and commercial ability, but if we may infer from their imagery they had little of the refined sensuality, the reflective enjoyment of the pleasures of life and of the beauties of nature that characterized the Egyptians. We may infer from the wholesale human sacrifices that marked the burial of the earliest Kings that they too lived under a theocratic tyranny. This never seems however to have hardened into so thick a crust of convention as in Egypt, being prevented perhaps by the alternations of predominance among various rival city states. In any case, Sumerian art is freer than that of Egypt. Their artists seem to have striven rather for expressive vitality of rhythm than for the suave perfection of smooth surfaces and unbroken contours. They were relatively indifferent to the plastic possibilities of the nude human figure, and it is only in the modelling of the head, and occasionally of arms, hands and feet, that we can estimate the degree of sensibility to which they attained. This, in a few cases such as the portrait head of Gudea in the Louvre, is of a very high quality. The broad synthetic grasp of the general structure of the head marks a great artist, but he was capable also of the subtlest and most delicate modelling within the limits of this general scheme. Comparable with this are two heads of the third Dynasty at Ur, which rank among the masterpieces of sculpture. These all belong to the climax of Mesopotamian art, in the latter half of the third millennium B.C. The earlier work discovered at Ur shows considerable uncertainty of style. We find sudden appearances of literal naturalism in certain animal forms, and this does not seem to be connected with the general trend towards a decorative stylization. In many of the reliefs, inscriptions are not confined to the background but run right across the figure, a sign, among many others, of the essentially illustrative and didactic attitude to art which the Sumerians adopted. The publicity value of the official and religious art is constantly kept in view, and in the objects made for personal use which we know best from the earliest periods at Ur, the luxury quality is far more marked than the æsthetic. On the whole, we get the idea of a people but little inclined to the detached and reflective attitude necessary for artistic creation, but withal so naturally gifted that every now and then the craftsmen whom they employed for their practical publicity and luxury ends were capable of great æsthetic achievement. Their art never falls into the academic professional accomplishment which deadened so much of Egyptian art ; it is always vigorous,

never pedantic ; but, on the other hand, the Sumerians were as a people too little interested in art to concentrate their activities upon it. They lack any marked inclination towards sensual refinement and its æsthetic overtones.

With the predominance of Babylon in the early part of the second millennium the Sumerians became permanently subject to their Semitic neighbours, who had however adopted Sumerian culture. None the less this Semitic control seems to have put an end to all possibility of æsthetic growth. The fourteen centuries of Babylonian and Assyrian rule produced no new artistic motive, and art, accepted merely for the publicity value of its imagery, repeated the stock motives it had inherited from Sumerian masters. This art was entirely subservient to the practical purposes of propaganda and publicity—to the advertisement of the superhuman prowess and ferocity of the Kings and their divine masters. Apart from the hideous cruelties which are so complacently detailed, the emphasis was laid always upon what might serve to suggest irresistible brute-force and violent energy. Almost all sensibility to plastic harmony disappeared, and the art became one of descriptive illustration with a certain feeling for the decorative effect of repetitive lines. Just as the Assyrian empire was about to fall, in the eighth century B.C., there supervened a certain tendency to greater elegance in the proportions and more finesse in the drawing, but on the whole we may say that from the æsthetic point of view Mesopotamian art ceased to contribute anything of value with the fall of the Sumerian power.

ÆGEAN

To these great rigidly organized states the civilization that sprang up in the Ægean forms a marked contrast. It suggests to us a people grouped together into seaport towns by their common interests in fishing and maritime trade or piracy. The social system being relatively elastic, the individual was not overwhelmed by the power of the state and there was a beginning of democracy. Under these conditions, we might expect to find that the sensibility of the individual would recover something of that instinctive quality that we find in primitive peoples, and which we saw was largely suppressed in the early highly organized empires. And to some extent this is true. The Ægean artist chose for the subjects of his painting on pots, his frescos on walls, or his embossed metal work, almost any natural objects that had attracted his interest or attention—cuttle-fish, dolphins, seaweeds, or scenes of contemporary life, bull fights, acrobats, dances at festivals, fashionable ladies. He shows a restless, capricious curiosity, and a natural child-like enjoyment of the pleasure of life which marks him off from the Egyptians with their more reflective sensuality and their preoccupation with the life after death, and the Mesopotamians with their indifference to natural beauty, and their strong social religious feeling. But strangely enough the sensibility thus released seems to have been of a rather poor quality. Ægean art is conspicuous for the feebleness of its rhythmic sense, its want of feeling for clearly organized formal relations. To find any equivalent to the weak inconsequent rhythms and the incoherence of structure of Ægean art, we have to turn to the style which

appeared for a short time at the end of the nineteenth century in Europe called *art nouveau*. That was largely the result of amateur artists discovering an easy and thoughtless method of decorating a surface. And, in effect, Ægean art is marked, in spite of its technical skill, with amateurishness in the sense that it was satisfied with casual and rather lazy impromptu inspirations, that no attempt was made to discover the full implications of any idea. The artists never tried to condense their casual impressions and sensations into a clearly articulated synthesis. Their images have of course their interest for us as sketchy illustrations of contemporary life, but they have very little value as creations of formal harmony. Ægean art cannot, I think, show us a single masterpiece; nowhere do we find that sustained effort to realize fully, and in all its purity, a formal synthesis such as we find scattered in isolated examples through the long sequence of Egyptian art, or as marks a few happy moments of Sumerian art.

GREEK, ROMAN, ETRUSCAN

In Greek civilization at its height sculpture and painting were cultivated with an intensity and vigour which have rarely been equalled. The artist of this period became fully conscious of his rôle as an interpreter of the spiritual life of man. Art was for him a sacred vocation, to which he was dedicated by his talent. Such a recognition of the high purposes of art, when the artist is regarded as the equal of the poet and the philosopher, has only occurred at rare intervals. The situation in Greece during the fifth and fourth centuries B.C. may be compared to that of China in T'ang times, of Italy during the Renaissance and of France since the reign of Louis XIV. Undoubtedly there were some approximations to such a situation at various times in the history of Egypt. Architects in particular gained the recognition of the importance of their individual initiative. Such a situation implies not only a considerable excess of wealth over what is necessary for existence (some surplusage being, of course, necessary for any kind of art), but a desire on men's part for those purely disinterested spiritual satisfactions which come from the love of Beauty and Truth. For we may note that these periods of what we may call the self-consciousness of art have always occurred during periods of free intellectual speculation.

One evidence of this state of things, where the spiritual value of æsthetic creation is accepted as valid, is the recognition given to the individual artist. He signs his work, and his name may be quoted as one who confers honour on his country. More usually the artist has to satisfy his impulse to realize æsthetic synthesis under cover of some pretext or other; he has—to revert to our original analogy—to make an effective advertisement. But in these rare halcyon periods of art-history this independence from all other than æsthetic necessities is more or less complete.

Yet Greek art is not only the first entirely self-conscious art that we know of; it stands apart from all other traditions in its almost exclusive research for beauty, and in particular the beauty of the human form in the bloom of health and the perfection of its athletic force.

Since the word " beauty " is liable to misunderstanding, I must briefly

explain what I imply here. We apply this word to two classes of phenomena which, whatever their ultimate connection, are distinct to our consciousness. We use it, as regards a work of art, to express our recognition of its æsthetic appeal. We also use it of natural objects, in particular of animal and human forms, which give us a certain satisfaction. Now we are well aware that we might call a Gothic sculpture of a demon, or a drawing by Rembrandt of a fat and physically degraded woman, beautiful in the first sense, although in both cases the objects represented would be called repulsively ugly.

This double use of the word " beauty " propounds extremely difficult questions in æsthetics. But we may note, as common qualities of natural objects which we call beautiful, symmetry (as of two sides of a face) and regularity of surfaces and contours that are uninterrupted by sudden or unexpected changes of direction, surfaces that are inviting to the eye perhaps because of the promise of pleasure to the sense of touch.[1]

The peculiarity of Greek art lies in this, that the Greeks endeavoured to unite the two ideas in one. They thought that art should concern itself almost exclusively with objects of natural beauty, and that in his rendering of these the artist should endeavour by selection to heighten those qualities which arouse the notion of beauty in natural objects. So great has been the prestige of Greek civilization in philosophy and literature, and so perfect within its narrow limits was the sculpture which resulted from this theory, that it has dominated æsthetic speculation almost from that day to the present time, and even to-day confusion between the two ideas is not uncommon. We frequently hear artists reproached for treating ugly natural appearances, although the art of the intervening centuries can supply countless masterpieces to prove the irrelevance of such criticism.

We cannot doubt that the Greeks had a natural sensibility to visible forms, which was nearly if not quite as supreme as their intellectual power and their poetic feeling. The remains of their architecture, with its unsurpassed subtlety and perfection of proportional relation are a sufficient proof of this. In the art of sculpture (and probably of painting) this sensibility was concentrated almost exclusively upon the naked human form in its greatest physical perfection. And in this direction they established what has become the recognized standard of physical beauty for European man. In this connection we must remember that, in spite of the bitter feuds which raged between the various city-states of Greece, there was one institution in which all participated and that was the Olympic games. All Greece united to watch naked youths from various states competing for the supreme power of victory, an honour which was sometimes celebrated by the erection of the victor's statue in the sacred enclosure. Greek religion became then instinctively associated with something like a worship of the perfectly developed human body. The gods themselves were conceived as merely exceptionally perfect specimens of human beings, of different ages and bodily types. For types such as Zeus and Asclepios, which could not be expressed by the figure of the youthful athlete, they invented a type in which age had brought no physical decay, in which wisdom and power were expressed by an extreme gravity of

[1] It is possible that these characteristics of natural beauty make their appeal by transference from the sexual attraction of the feminine form.

bearing and facial aspect. This gave rise to an idea of nobility in art which has frequently had very unfortunate consequences.

The main theme of Greek art was the body of the young athlete, man or woman, and the artist's concentration on this produced both good and bad results. To the good we must put such a comprehension of the plastic forms of the human figure as no other art had approached, and which has remained one of the chief characteristics of European art ever since the recovery of Greek conceptions in the Renaissance. This has great advantages both for painting and sculpture, since the human figure not only provides a great variety of plastic sequences for æsthetic interpretation, but these sequences are instinctively and easily intelligible to us. On the other hand, this predominance of the human figure tends to limit and distort our vision of external nature as a whole. In particular, it has prevented European artists from acquiring the intimate understanding of animal forms which some Eastern arts have attained, and has delayed, though not prevented, our understanding of landscape and vegetable forms. European art under Greek influence has tended to become exaggeratedly anthropocentric.

Even in the plastic rendering of the human form, however, the narrowness of the Greek attitude has not been an unmitigated good. The athlete is trained with a view to the perfect execution of certain hard physical feats. He learns to repress all movements which are superfluous to that end. His body is either in a state of alert repose or in action. Neither his face nor his body is likely to be particularly expressive of complicated emotional states, or at least the artist, whose prime concern is with the physical perfection of his body, will tend to neglect such expressive movements. As a matter of fact Greek sculptors generally chose, as being most expressive of beauty, states of repose or very slight and simple movements. Indeed a whole æsthetic doctrine has been constructed on this habit—the doctrine, namely, that sculpture should always be static. Whenever the Greek artists of what is regarded as the great period endeavoured to render movement under stress of emotion, as in the Niobe group, they showed how little they understood movement as expressive of psychological states. Greek sculpture remains curiously external and descriptive. The sculptor gives us a marvellously accurate description of every part of the body and puts them together with a slowly acquired and firmly grasped sense of how they are related in certain poses, but except in one or two of the greatest artists, such as Myron and Pheidias and again in later Hellenistic art, we miss that intimate sense of the inner life of the figure through which alone the last expressive perfection of vital rhythm can be attained.

This lack of instinctive feeling for vital rhythms comes out particularly in the treatment of animal forms. The Greeks tended to read these like everything else from their anthropocentric position. They observed the external forms of animals accurately enough, but they could not enter into their life as some more primitive peoples have. We can see the contrast of these two methods of plastic interpretation clearly enough in those works found on the Sea of Azov where Greek and Scythian artists worked side by side and copied each other.

In later Greek sculpture of the Hellenistic period the athletic male

figure no longer predominated, a greater interest was shown in the female figure, and poses expressive of more varied mental states were discovered. In spite of a great deal more sentimentality and bad taste in the art of this period, there is in the best work (particularly in some female nudes) a finer sense of plastic rhythms and a more sensitive modelling of surfaces than in the works of previous periods. The prevailing idea that from 350 B.C. Greek art is decadent is justified only in so far as much of the work is inspired by trivial and vulgar motives. The best work cannot come under this condemnation, and the acceptance of movement as an expression of emotional states actually provided a new fund of richer and more perfectly harmonized plastic relations. The cause of the trivial, vulgar work of this period must be looked for in the social conditions of the day. Alexander's conquests and the resulting Greek domination of the East brought about a vastly freer intercourse around the shores of the Eastern Mediterranean, and gave rise to a flourishing industrial and trading civilization which continued under the Roman Empire. The social ambience of these wealthy trade centres and of Rome itself must have resembled in many ways the social patterns of our own time. The phenomenon of vulgarity made its appearance. Probably this must occur whenever a commercial middle class gets rapidly richer and desires to force its way into aristocratic circles. Under such circumstances works of art have always been used as weapons in the social struggle for predominance. But the new aspirants to social eminence are generally people of crude minds and coarse untrained sensibility, and they set up a demand for works of art which correspond to their low mental and emotional level. Trivial or banal situations of everyday life, which can be immediately apprehended because of their familiarity, treated with exaggerated emphasis on their pathetic, sentimental or comic possibilities and on an extreme verisimilitude of details, best fulfil this demand.

Under these conditions works of art become divisible into two distinct classes—one in which for some reason or another the artist can express his genuine æsthetic impulses, the other in which the artist uses his technical skill to gratify a public incapable of responding to æsthetic appeals.

Such was the situation roughly speaking from 200 B.C. to A.D. 200. As we know, a similar situation began to appear towards the end of the eighteenth century and has persisted more or less to our own day, and this similarity of social pattern has gone with a still more marked division of works of art into æsthetic and commercial groups. But whereas this situation produced in modern times a great creative effort among the real artists, there was a special reason why in the ancient world it was relatively barren. When the Romans conquered Greece in the second century B.C., they carried off innumerable masterpieces of Greek sculpture and set them up in Rome, obeying in this the general law that works of art have the highest prestige value, and this in spite of their own professed contempt for artists. These masterpieces aroused such enthusiasm among the more cultured Romans, that the best artists of the time (generally Greek immigrants) were employed in making copies of these Greek originals or in giving to Roman official portraits something of the air of Greek heroic figures. Thus the more gifted artists found little scope for

original creative work and were forced to create fundamentally insincere work. This attitude caused the production during the first century A.D. of a type of art called archaistic, in which the artist endeavoured to recapture the forms of a more ancient style. Inevitably, however, the more sophisticated and complex emotional feeling of the day conflicted with the formal qualities of the work which had been created in response to a very different mental attitude, so that whatever the superficial charm of such works may be, their fundamental insincerity cannot be hidden.

Hitherto nothing has been said about painting in Greek art. For the early and middle periods (the fifth and fourth centuries) we have no remains except the paintings on vases, which are only in contours round flat colours. But it is thought that some of these reflect the designs of the great wall paintings of which Greek and Latin writers speak. It must be admitted that the drawing on Greek vases shows the limitations of Greek art more clearly than its merits.[1] The line tends to an almost flaccid even elegance of movement. Even more than in Greek sculpture we feel the want of any controlling sense of vital rhythm in the rendering of movement, and in the composition we find very markedly a defect which may also be seen in some of the reliefs (even in the metopes of the Parthenon), namely the want of real rhythmic correlation of the figures one with another. Finally, there is but little feeling for the relation of the forms with the pot which they decorate.

The essential difference between painting and sculpture lies not in the rendering of individual figures, but in their relation to an imagined space. What we learn from literary sources, and from the pictures of Hellenistic and Roman times which have survived, shows us that the Greeks had progressed much further than the Egyptians in discovering the fundamental principles of painting. They had certainly some idea of the laws of perspective and they had studied the foreshortening of individual figures, but it is doubtful whether the development of the picture space had ever proceeded far. The best examples, like the battle of Alexander and Darius and the Aldobrandini marriage, show the figures disposed across a narrow stage. In some of the decorative paintings of Pompeii, however, as also in some of the later Hellenistic reliefs, we find a rather capricious suggestion of wider landscape horizons. But these never go beyond a sketchy suggestion of space relations in a manner similar to that of certain Chinese and Japanese decorative paintings.

It has been necessary to dwell at some length on the course of Greek art because of its immense influence on the whole of subsequent European art. The Greeks fixed for Europe the norm of the human figure and set a standard of realism in its rendering which European artists have never quite lost sight of. It has also inspired the conception of idealized form, implying an emphasis on whatever suggests nobility. To this day our portrait statues, and often our painted portraits, tend to become feeble and unconvincing because of this *damnosa hæreditas*.

We have treated of Roman art hitherto purely as a relatively unimportant appendix to Hellenistic art, but in reality there was another strain

[1] The forms of the pots show that mechanical perfection and regularity of curvature were aimed at, rather than the direct expression of plastic rhythm such as we find in the best Chinese and Persian work.

of influence derived from the Etruscans. This people, who had arrived in Tuscany (probably from Asia Minor) long before the rise of the Roman state, had brought with them the high level of culture and the technical traditions of the Eastern Mediterranean. They practised a decorative art in which Mesopotamian and Egyptian influences were combined. From the sixth century on, the Etruscans imported quantities of Greek works of art and adopted Greek ideas in their own work. Even in their imitative works there emerges something of a cruder, more restless vitality, with a tendency to emphasize character. This distinctive and original quality comes out particularly in their terra cotta portraits. It was the custom to portray husband and wife lying together on a couch upon the lid of the family tombs. In these there is an unmistakable sharpness of accent, an instinctive sense of what marks individual character, which we scarcely find elsewhere in ancient art, which is indeed particularly foreign to the Greek, who had on the one hand his tendency to a generalized type of beauty and on the other a power of purely external observation. The effect of character in Etruscan sculpture is not dependent on a detailed realism, but is the result of an instinctive feeling. It has often been remarked by critics that this specific tendency of Etruscan art seems like the germ of those qualities which flowered so magnificently in Italian art centuries later. Whether this realistic trend of Etruscan art is due to the Etruscans themselves or to something that emerged from the indigenous Italic peoples over whom they ruled, as has been suggested, remains doubtful, but in any case we note here a tendency already present on Italian soil which suggests a possible origin for those qualities in later Italian art that could never have been derived from the Græco-Roman culture it inherited. This vivid Etruscan realism probably also affected Roman art in that form which the essentially " Philistine " Roman patron appreciated best, namely the portrait statue. It was in this branch that Roman art showed a certain originality and independence. It can hardly be said, however, that the Romans ever succeeded in giving to the likeness that imaginative and æsthetic significance with which later art has invested the portrait, both in painting and sculpture.

SCYTHIAN AND CHINESE

Two other centres of culture in the ancient world remain to be considered. One belongs to the region of the Steppes of Central Asia, the other to China. We know very little about the culture of the Central Asian Steppes in the early periods, but among the nomad tribes that wandered over it the Scythians are of extraordinary importance for our study, because they created a specific style of sculpted, or rather moulded relief in metal which has been called the " animal style." It is probable that this style owes its origins to a culture that emerged from the neolithic stage with the discovery of copper somewhere before 3000 B.C. The copper vases from Maikop in the region just North of the Caucasus are probably contemporary with early Sumerian art, with which they have some analogy, but they already show a peculiarly intimate understanding of animal forms. True Scythian art however dates, as far as we know, from a later period, probably from the eighth or seventh century B.C.,

and continued till the early centuries of our era. Scythian art is manifested to us almost exclusively in the moulded bronze and gold ornaments and weapons which the nomad hunters and warriors carried on their persons and had buried with them in their tombs. It has a very wide range, extending from China to the North of Russia, and the motives used by the artists vary with the fauna of the districts where they worked. But all their art is based on animal forms which are often combined together in the strangest way, as for instance when one animal's body is made up out of the forms of a number of other animals, or the tail of one animal ends in the head of another. The favourite theme is either a fight between animals, or a horse dragged down and devoured by wolves or other carnivores.

Few people have ever found such striking interpretation of animal forms as these Scythians; none has had so intimate a feeling for the rhythms of the living animal; none has known as they did how to reduce the complexity of natural form to so simple and yet vital a statement. Their art is the exact antithesis to a descriptive art. It was not by cataloguing the observable facts about an animal that they proceeded, but by some intimate intuition of what might be called the dominant rhythmic character of the beast. In this way they were able to confer the semblance of life upon forms which sometimes scarcely define the animal at all, so far has the process of plastic synthesis and abbreviation been carried. No doubt the social organization of these people was of the simplest kind, and it is not to be wondered at that their art lacks the organized and combined effort which created vast and enduring monuments in the great empires of Egypt and Mesopotamia, but it never suffered from the social restraints which checked, even if they did not extinguish, the artists' æsthetic impulses. The art of the Scythians has the purity of æsthetic purpose that we find in the work of primitive peoples. A Scythian plaque is entirely permeated with the expressive quality of its creator's sensibility. Its forms emerge freely from that and obey no conventional control.

In contrast to the primitive conditions and incapacity for co-ordinated endeavour which mark Scythian art production, Chinese art grew up in a complex and organized social system. This system must be regarded indeed as, in its main outlines, one of the least imperfect social adjustments of the conflicting desires of individuals that have ever been devised, if we may judge from the fact that it has had some kind of continuity of tradition from the third millennium before Christ (and perhaps even from Neolithic times) down to our own day, a record which surpasses that of Egypt itself. But this very continuity is in part responsible for the fact that no great monumental or communal works of early periods have survived, nothing in the least comparable to the temple, tomb, and palace arts of Egypt and Mesopotamia, since these early monuments have been continually replaced by succeeding generations. Moreover, in China, until the foundation of the empire in 221 B.C., power was in the hands of a number of feudal princes who were too much occupied by mutual warfare to accomplish any vast works. In any case, what is left to us of the works of this period consists almost entirely of bronze sacrificial vessels, some pottery and minor works of art. But these are of such a distinct

character that we cannot omit them from our study. We have seen that for the most part the art of the ancient empires was controlled by its non-æsthetic social functions; that imposing scale and perfection of finish were aimed at, and that only here and there could the artist express even tentatively his individual sensibility. China is the only great, early, highly organized civilization in which we feel that the artist's sensibility comes fully into play. When we look at the bronzes of the Chou period, we feel that however rigidly the artist may have been bound to observe certain rules in order to conform to the principles of magic and ritual, within these limits he had freedom. Each one of these vessels appears as a new discovery of plastic harmonies of the most surprising kind. The proportions of each part with regard to the whole, the exact curve of the galb, or profile, the projection of the moulded ornamentation, all have been felt with an intense imaginative conviction. Moreover, however marvellous the technical skill required for such elaborate metal work, this is never insisted on, nothing is sacrificed to mere finish; the idea of luxury is absent. Chou bronzes are in fact for the most part pure works of art. Moreover, wherever animal forms enter into the design, as they often do, we notice that the Chinese artist has retained, perhaps from more primitive times, that peculiar instinctive grasp of vital rhythm which seems so often to disappear from a civilized and self-conscious art. The little that is left to us of true sculpture—mostly animal forms—bears out what is said above, and these remain indeed among the most perfect works of their kind that we know of.

With the unification of China under the Han Emperors not only was there a great increase of wealth, but both wealth and power were more centralized, and the social system, with its new slave class, must have approximated more to the patterns of other ancient empires. And, in fact, we do find at this period a certain number of works in which the effect of luxury is attained by a display of extreme technical skill and elaboration at the expense of any clear æsthetic purpose. But whereas elsewhere such works are the rule, in China they are the exception. The sculpture of this time shows the same synthetic grasp of formal structure as the earlier works and a strong feeling for subtle, non-accented plastic rhythms.

Since the tradition of Chinese art has never suffered any complete rupture, it will be convenient here to continue it into later times. In the fifth century of our era the growth of Buddhism had a profound influence on Chinese art. It brought with it from Central Asia types of the hybrid between late Greek and Hindu art which had arisen in N.W. India and Bactria. But though the actual types and poses of Buddhist imagery were adopted from Indo-Greek originals, they were translated at once by Chinese sculptors into their own plastic idiom. This new imagery, however, demanded a shift of the sculptor's attention from animal to human forms, since his work was dedicated to the glorification of Buddha and the holy beings by whom he was surrounded. It was necessary to discover forms expressive of an idealized humanity but idealized in one direction, namely that of the serenity attained by pure contemplation and detachment from the world of illusion. Among the innumerable works of Buddhist sculpture, which were produced in the sixth and succeeding

centuries (vast caves were filled with figures carved in niches in the rock), are some which succeed in expressing such an idealized humanity in forms of supreme beauty and often, with a view to greater impressiveness, on a colossal scale. But the subordination of the sculptor's powers to a strictly religious end was not entirely beneficent. For one thing Buddhist imagery, as practised in China, was for the most part extremely limited. It proposed only slight variations on a single type of face and bodily character. Nor did Chinese sculptors take much advantage of those Buddhist legends which might have given opportunities for action in the figure, with all the varied possibilities for rhythm which that suggested to European artists. More serious still for art was the tendency to regard sacred images as having magical properties, so that the mere repetition of sacred figures had a value. It sufficed for this end that the marks of holiness of the figure should be recognizable. The result was an immense production of merely journeyman sculpture without any claim to æsthetic value. We have here again a case of the pursuit of a biological end supplanting the spiritual æsthetic activity.

Painting, as well as sculpture, was pressed into the service of Buddhist art, and some of the finest existing examples of Chinese paintings are frescos which adorned Buddhist temples. But painting was not confined to Buddhist or other religious motives. Apart from fresco painting on temple and palace walls, the Chinese adopted as their chief medium water-colour on silk. They never developed a technique of tempera and oil painting, such as the Europeans did. This choice probably was no mere accident in either case, but corresponded to fundamental differences of feeling in Eastern and Western culture. We have seen that Greek art was influenced, in many ways unfortunately, by the artist's desire to realize and describe accurately the whole anatomy of the human figure. His æsthetic reaction to visible nature was accompanied by a vivid curiosity, a desire to know all the facts as well as to feel the significance of their appearance. And this we may assume was an inevitable result of the free intellectual activity of a people who, by their special aptitude for doubt and curiosity, bestowed on mankind the gift of science. The Greek artist thus continually modified his synthesis by analytical enquiry and scientific observation, and he learned thereby to construct images which were equally complete in every part, which did not merely suggest the real objects they represented but described them accurately and with no omissions. The texture of their imagery was solid from end to end ; there were no gaps. This was true at least of their sculptured renderings of the human figure and, so far as we can judge, was partly true also of the relations of the figures in space as realized in their painting. In any case it became true of later European art. Apparently no other culture but that of Europe has endeavoured, in its painting and sculpture, to create this perfectly consistent texture in its imagery. That is to say, to create imagery in which all the relations of every part cohere together not only according to æsthetic needs but also according to the laws by which the appearance of real objects to the eye is governed. The Chinese, though their attitude to life has generally been more rationalistic, if not more matter of fact, than has frequently been the case in Europe, have never had quite the European curiosity, have never, in any case, developed our scientific

attitude. They have never, therefore, felt our impulse to give to their imagery the same continuity and solidity of texture. They have been content to mark those parts of the total appearances of nature which seemed to them significant, relying on the spectator not even to ask for information as to the rest. They have never been either so analytic or so descriptive as the Europeans.

For their purposes, then, water-colour on silk was an ideal medium. A stroke of opaque oil paint upon a canvas gives to the eye a single positive statement of a particular tone and colour, there is nothing uncertain about it; but a wash of water-colour on silk is varied at every point by the different thicknesses of liquid which have dried or been absorbed by the silk at various points. It does not make any one positive statement, but suggests the possibility of different interpretations. The painter in oil is committed, by the positive statement contained in his first brush stroke, to complete the texture of his image by covering his canvas. The water-colourist, particularly if working on silk, can leave large surfaces of untouched silk between the various parts of the total vision to which he wishes to call our attention.

Another result of Chinese technique in painting must be noticed. Oil paint, having a certain viscosity, tends to cause a drag on the artist's gesture in making a touch, whilst liquid water-colour leaves the gesture nearly free. The result is that what is called, by analogy, the "hand-writing" of Chinese pictures is more clearly evident than it is in most European painting. This handwriting, which records the habitual and dominant unconscious reactions of the artist, supplies one of the most direct expressions of his sensibility. In his main design an artist expresses his deliberately chosen and conscious rhythmic idea; in his handwriting he carries this out with innumerable subtle inflections and variations which, in the case of a felicitous choice of idea, harmonize with and enrich the main theme. Great as the importance of "hand-writing" always has been, and must be, in the art of painting, it has nowhere been recognized as clearly and exploited as deliberately as by Chinese artists. Indeed their appreciation of linear rhythm has led them to regard calligraphy (handwriting in its literal sense) as one of the fine arts. A fine specimen of the handwriting of a master is treasured as much as a masterpiece of painting, and this attitude has constantly reacted in turn upon painting itself. This keen appreciation of handwriting has not been without its dangers to Chinese art, as we shall see later, and its effects would have been greater had not Chinese artists and writers on art insisted from early times (fifth century A.D.) on the need for the rhythm to conform to the vital rhythms of living things. As Mr. Binyon has pointed out,[1] this idea informs even the less intelligent talk about art. In Europe, from the time when Zeuxis's bunch of grapes caused birds to peck at them, the deceptiveness of a picture has been the source of much idle admiration. In China the corresponding story is of how, as a great artist put the final touch to a dragon which he was painting on a temple wall, it soared up through the roof and left the wall empty. This attitude shows that the strong intuitive feeling for vital rhythms, which we noted from the first

[1] Laurence Binyon: *Painting in the Far East* (1923).

in their sculpture, not only dominated their painting, but that its importance was clearly recognized.

Although painting was probably a completely self-conscious and elaborated art already in Han times, if not before—it is almost impossible to find anything that we can call primitive in Chinese art—it is probable that the power to dispose figures within a consistently imagined picture space was not fully attained until the great classic period of Chinese painting in T'ang times (618–905). Landscape painting (in which the construction of the picture space is of prime importance) was already recognized not only as a possible form of art but as one of the most important of all expressions of the spiritual life, while Europe, with its intense anthropocentric bias, had to wait until the seventeenth century to arrive at a similar conception.

The Chinese feeling for landscape and particularly for what we call romantic landscape, mountains and torrents, has been well analysed by Mr. Waley.[1] He shows how, with the over-elaborate machinery of the Chinese bureaucracy—a bureaucracy, moreover, composed of the most highly educated and cultured men of all classes—the desire to escape from the pressure of social life became a frequent obsession of more sensitive natures. They longed to live the life of the hermit, " to live free and fearless in the isolation of the hills." This impulse had nothing of the ascetic-religious impulse which drove the early Christians into the Thebaid. It was rather the ideal of complete self-realization by release from social pressure. Those, too, who never even attempted this flight from society, adored " mountains and torrents as symbols of escape," and for them landscape paintings, in which this aspect of nature was emphasized, became a source of spiritual satisfaction.

Chinese painting, then, acquired, at a far earlier date than European, the practice of vast space constructions. These artists, however, never seem to have worked out the laws of perspective with the completeness of later European painting. On the other hand they were impelled, by their special feeling for the overtones of nature, to study atmospheric effects of a kind which European art overlooked, until the nineteenth century, as being too elusive to admit into the more rigid context of their designs.

Nor was landscape the only aspect of painting in which the Chinese anticipated by many centuries the course of European art. Already in the T'ang period they created *genre* pieces, in which they expressed the subtlest spiritual overtones of a highly refined social life. Such, for instance, is the celebrated painting called " Listening to Music " by Chou Fang of the early ninth century. Here the whole design depends on the relative positions of the figures to each other in the vaguely suggested picture space, and on the significance of their poses. It succeeds in arousing a mood of *recueillement*[2] not unlike that which emanates from some of Giorgione's compositions. But whereas Giorgione expresses this mood through a complete plastic realization, the Chinese painter attains a

[1] Arthur Waley: *An Introduction to the Study of Chinese Painting* (1923).

[2] This word, for which old English writers frankly used *recollection*, implies the ingathering of the personality for a contemplative attitude. We might, perhaps, use the word *re-collection*.

similar spiritual end mainly by the subtle perfection of his divisions of the picture surface, plastic relief and space recession being but faintly suggested.

With comparatively rare exceptions, Chinese art seems to have been the direct outcome of æsthetic impulses aiming at pure spiritual satisfactions. A certain proportion of the minor works of art bear the impress of the desire for luxury and have the inexpressive shop-finish which results from that, but, in the main, art was not captured by society for biological ends. It was a free art. The Chinese are perhaps the only people who have constantly recognized the spiritual function of art, in a way that has only happened occasionally elsewhere.

And yet we have only to look at the general level of nineteenth century Chinese art to recognize that the Chinese tradition has suffered a process of decay, and has tended to sacrifice to trivial amusement or idle curiosity (the Chinese " curio " and " Chinoiseries " are evidence) the more intense and important spiritual states to which their great art had given expression in earlier times. When we study the causes of a similar degradation in European art, we shall find that a trivial pleasure in mere verisimilitude has been a large factor, but in China, where complete, " photographic " imagery was never attained, the causes must be sought elsewhere. They lie, in part, in that very vivid consciousness of the spiritual power of æsthetic creation. This led to an unintelligent reverence not only for the artist's creative power but for all that is accessory to that. In the passion for collecting, which such a highly cultured society developed, biological forces found a more devious access to the realm of art. The worship of rarity and antiquity, and the consequent prestige of those who had acquired rare antique pieces, led to a brisk trade in forgery and pastiche, to the deliberate imitation of ancient models and the choking of æsthetic feeling by a mass of pedantic learning. Besides this, we must note the ill effects upon painting of a perfectly genuine bias towards a literary understanding of the art. This induced a desire on the artist's part to underline the poetical overtones of visual form and led, from Sung times on, to an almost total indifference to plastic values and to an exaggeration of the scenically impressive aspects of nature.

JAPANESE ART

All that has been suggested here to explain the decay of what was one of the greatest and most consistent æsthetic traditions in the world is true, in a greater degree, of Japan. Working, as the Japanese did, under the influence of an indiscriminate admiration of their Chinese masters, the pedantry and falsification which connoisseurship induces was a constant bar to genuine æsthetic expression, and we find, alongside of the vulgar love of mere technical skill and shop-finish, a curious inverse phenomenon. The connoisseur is quick enough to see the vulgarity of shop-finish and to recognize the value of those irregularities of texture which are the result of the artist's sensibility. But this led him to an inconsiderate admiration for works of art in which these qualities were deliberately simulated. Many Japanese works of art were made by extremely skilled craftsmen, consciously giving an air of rough or primitive craftsmanship to their creations. This sentimental insincerity has been the

bane of Japanese art. We are of course familiar with this phenomenon in modern Europe.[1] It appears to arise as an inevitable commercial exploitation of the recognition on the part of any society of the importance of æsthetic feeling.

But whilst this pedantic æstheticism and its consequent insincerity of sentiment is the most marked and distinctive characteristic of Japanese art, even from early times, it is impossible to deny the marked aptitude of the Japanese people for artistic creation. One cannot doubt, indeed, that they were not only capable of producing a great art, but had an intense will to such production, if only they could have readjusted their sentimental attitude. As it is, some of the sculptures of the ninth century retain much of the impressiveness of the T'ang originals from which they derive, with the addition of a certain fragile elegance and subtlety which are distinctly Japanese. Again in the sixteenth century Matabei created a *genre* style which expresses a personal and original outlook on life, nor can we deny genius, though of a vulgar kind, to Korin. We see here, however, the inevitable counter-effect of that æsthetic preciosity and pedantry which beset the Japanese, namely that when an artist, brought up in such an artistic ambience, endeavours to rely on his own visual experiences, he finds himself without any guidance whatever, and almost inevitably falls back either on a trivial and unintelligent imitation of nature or on a crude romantic or melodramatic emphasis

But perhaps the most interesting phase of Japanese art was that which, in the eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries, grew up spontaneously in a quite popular and unlearned ambience. This took the form of cheap coloured woodcut prints of scenes of popular life, of a comic, pathetic or erotic character. This art, which was entirely disregarded by the cultured classes, and was first appreciated by European connoisseurs, has, at times, just that vital inspiration, that direct contact with experience, in which Japanese art had hitherto been almost entirely lacking. Though the most celebrated of those artists, Hokusai, is tainted with a too conscious and vulgar virtuosity, one or two others, and particularly Utamaro, attained to a really expressive beauty of design and linear rhythm. It is a noteworthy curiosity that some of his pornographic prints are genuine works of art. It is curious, because in almost all other periods and countries we notice that a preoccupation with this particular feeling has been disastrous to the æsthetic quality of the resultant imagery. This observation, which has almost universal validity, is indeed quite in keeping with what we know of the relation of the emotions of real life to the emotional content of works of art. For whilst, on the one hand, the whole history of art shows that art is nourished upon the actual emotional life of the artist, and springs, at least in part, from his desire to realize that more fully by expression, on the other hand we observe that it is only when the artist can stand apart from his own personal feeling and can view it with a certain detachment, as part of a greater whole, that the expression attains the unity and organic coherence of a great work of art, and we may well suppose that the emotion of physical desire is too physiological to be amenable easily to this contemplative detachment. Certain it is,

[1] The mechanical battering of machine-spun silver and copper vessels to imitate the surface of hand-made objects is a common example.

in any case, that pornographic imagery which is also æsthetically valuable is extremely rare.

Like the Japanese the Coreans derived their art from the Chinese, but their temperamental reaction was very different. With less creative energy, their interpretation of the Chinese tradition is more cautious and refined, with none of the sometimes vulgar emphasis of the Japanese.

INDIAN ART

There is no art more singular than the Indian. It covers a vast area and yet, though there are local and temporal modifications, the specific qualities of the style are unmistakable wherever it has penetrated, from the Afghan frontier to Cambodia and Java. It is one of the most original and self-contained arts of which we know, proceeding upon principles which distinguish it in some ways from all other known arts. The surviving monuments of Indian art begin at a relatively late date, *viz.*, third century B.C., and though in this and in the subsequent period foreign—Persian and Græco-Roman—influences are apparent, it developed almost immediately that specific quality which was to distinguish it throughout. More than any other art, Indian seems to have been self-determined, to be the pure expression of the specific sensibility of its people. For it is also in many ways one of the purest of all arts belonging to a complex and highly organized civilization. It is probable that all of these characteristics derive from the Indian attitude to religion, for this art is more entirely bound up with religious mythology than any other. Whereas in the early empires religion is an adjunct of the State, all art, even that specifically dedicated to the Gods, tends to become a field for State propaganda and publicity and to have the impurity of official art. But in India religious sentiment transcended the motive of the State, and the splendour of the temples was a genuine offering to the God, not a means to heighten the royal prestige. Under such conditions we should expect to find that Indian art had surpassed all others, since, as we have seen, the artist's sensibility has rarely been so free from biological interference as in India. But here comes in the fact that Indian sensibility differs so profoundly from not only our own but almost all other sensibilities as to embarrass our judgment and check our æsthetic response. In almost all other arts the unity of any complex whole is attained by what we may call the architectonic method, since it is a method most clearly seen in architecture. It depends upon the systematic subordination of parts to one another proceeding in successive units of design. Thus the ornamental details of, say, an acanthus leaf are subordinated to the conception of the capital as a whole unit. The shape, size and proportions of the capital are subordinated to the idea of the column as a whole. The columns and their interspaces are subordinate to the idea of the story as a whole, and each story depends on the nature of the façade as a whole, and so on. And this principle tends to govern all great sculptural or pictorial monuments. But it appears to be scarcely demanded by Indian æsthetic feeling. It would be an exaggeration to say that this demand is altogether lacking, but it exercises very little control. The Indian artist felt free to weave an unending texture of innumerable interlacing plastic forms over the surfaces of temples and

rock-cut chapels. The tropical exuberance of his fantastic and sometimes monstrous inventions seems unchecked even by physical difficulties. No other people has ever dreamed of sculpting such great temples out of the solid rock as he has. Indeed, Indian architecture proceeds, not as ours, according to the principles of construction; it is rather conceived as an object cut out of a solid material as an ivory figure might be. For undoubtedly the Indian artists had an extraordinarily developed plastic sense. Now in other arts, particularly in European, we find that a strong plastic feeling generally goes with firm architectonic control. In general those schools or periods wherein plastic feeling has been weak have tended to picturesque exuberance and decorative colour effects. But in India it is the reverse, and the plastic sense has been developed almost at the expense of architectonic control. Indian sculpture indeed shows an extraordinary grasp of three-dimensional form. In the West sculptors were continually obsessed by the full-face aspect of the figure, as we see in most early reliefs. It was only little by little that they ceased to feel the control of the four facets of the rectangular block out of which a figure was carved; only by degrees that they could allow the limbs of a figure to move freely in every direction. But the Indians who could carve a whole temple out of a rock face felt no such constraint, and even when their mythology conceived of Gods with many arms and heads dancing they were able more or less successfully to solve the extravagant plastic problem such an idea presents. The nude human figure plays as great a rôle in Indian as in Greek art, but the sculptor's attitude is strangely contrasted. All art is inevitably rooted in sensuality, but the question of how that is elaborated by social habits, by philosophy and by religion, what overtones it emits, is decisive for the arts. Now Indian sensuality seems less transmuted by reflection than that of the West; it is at once religious and predominantly erotic. Whereas the Greeks were moved mainly by the athletic perfection of the nude figure, the Indians felt most the female figure and the seductive charm of its free flexibility of movement. The result is a certain languid flaccidity in the dominant rhythms of Indian sculpture. And as these rhythms are interwoven in unbroken sequence, with no clear architectonic control, they rarely command complete æsthetic acquiescence to the Western eye. There are, of course, many exceptions to such a general estimate. At Ellora, for instance, the whole design of the rock-cut temple has a satisfying architectonic unity, and the composition and rhythmic idea of many of the reliefs is easily apprehended, whilst individual figures are often modelled with the utmost sensitiveness and delicacy of feeling. At Anuradhapura, in Ceylon, a greater restraint in the rhythm gives to some figures singular impressiveness. Again at Borobadur the Javanese sculptors invented an extremely picturesque style of narrative relief which is as lucid in its organic relations and appropriate in expression as the best of such reliefs elsewhere.

It is probable that painting was no less important than sculpture during the great periods of creative activity, but very little has survived. The frescoes at Ajanta show a narrative style of great freedom, with much of the same easy command of varied poses as the sculpture, but a relatively feeble and capricious sense of the construction of an ideated space. Judging from fragmentary reproductions, one may surmise

that the frescos at Bagh show a much nearer approach to complete pictorial design as understood in Europe and a surprising power of rendering difficult aspects of vision.

Indian painting took a fresh start at the Moghul Court, basing itself on Persian miniatures. This decorative art is of no great interest, but the Rajput school developed a more authentic native style, which is however mainly decorative and descriptive, with little plastic feeling and a tendency to literalism in the details.

THE ART OF THE DARK AGES

Gradually, as the elaborate bureaucratic organization of the Roman Empire went to pieces under the constant pressure of the wanderings of the barbaric tribes, Northern and Western Europe reverted to a primitive culture. Wealth became insufficient for elaborate artistic creations, and the arts were reduced to the ornamentation of weapons and rough jewellery. These took the form of geometrical patterns filled in with coloured stones, glass and enamel, in a style of technique and design which derived from those practised by the Sarmatians in Southern Russia and the Caucasus. This style appears to have spread north and west and thence over Gaul and Britain. The Sarmatians were akin to the Scythians, but their art had little of the rare plastic sensibility of that people. The style of the Dark Ages in Europe is lacking in organization; it is vague, incoherent and rambling. Though it is rough and barbaric, it shows none of the delicate sensibility to form which we have noted in the art of primitive peoples like the Polynesians and Negroes. There is one curious exception to this relative insignificance of the art of the Dark Ages, namely the crosses erected in Northumberland and on the Scottish border during the seventh century. These belong to an altogether higher culture, and suggest connections with South-Eastern Europe. Painting continued in the form of illuminated MSS. executed in monasteries, and was either, like the Irish, based on the Sarmatian style or, in Central Europe, lived on distorted reminiscences of Classical art.

BYZANTINE AND SASSANID ART

In the Eastern Mediterranean region, however, the situation throughout these centuries was very different. Here the Empire held out and maintained something of the tradition of Classical culture. But, though much of the organization remained, the spirit underwent a profound change, and this change expressed itself in a new art which gradually emerged from the Classical tradition. It was this new art, which grew up in the countries around the eastern end of the Mediterranean, that formed the basis of what was destined to become the general style of European art. By the twelfth century, if not earlier, a consistent and fairly uniform style of sculptural and pictorial iconography had become established throughout Europe. The change was from the exhausted, descriptive, naturalistic art of the later Empire to an art of much less accomplishment, as far as knowledge of nature is concerned, but of greater expressive power and far richer and more varied decorative effect. The question of

where and how this change was effected has been fiercely debated. Some have sought for the cradle of the new art in the East, others have claimed it as an evolution within the Classical tradition, and even believed that Rome was the centre. It can scarcely be disputed, however, that wherever the first germ of the new ideas emerged—and it may have emerged simultaneously in more than one centre—by far the most striking and evident examples of the new style derive from Egypt, Syria, Sassanid Persia and Byzantium.

The essentially external and ritualistic Paganism which remained the official religion of the Roman Empire was adequately expressed by official Hellenistic art. But long before Christianity appeared Paganism had been deeply undermined by various imported mystical religions. In particular, the Egyptian preoccupation with the life after death had, for some time before the birth of Christ, produced a profound influence through the worship of Isis which, like Christianity, assured the believer of victory over death and the possibility of salvation in the next life. Thus the formulæ of Hellenistic art were no longer adequate to the spiritual needs of the day. None the less Isiac, as well as, later on, Christian myths had perforce to be figured more or less in Hellenistic pictorial and sculptural idioms. In the nature of things, this could not be more than a temporary makeshift. It is doubtful whether Rome itself had enough artistic feeling ever to have found an alternative, but in the Eastern Mediterranean as well as in Byzantium itself, with its close Eastern contacts, there was the possibility of such a transformation.

And here a curious factor intervened. With the growing impoverishment and financial stress of the Empire it became increasingly difficult to maintain a high level of technical skill. In the West this merely led to more and more clumsy repetitions of Hellenistic forms, but we find a different situation in the East. In Egypt, for instance, the native Egyptian (Coptic) sculptors worked on Hellenistic models but without the technical training which Greek artists had had. Their deeply imbued æsthetic feeling, however, could not be satisfied with merely feeble imitation of the given forms. They had to produce something which, whilst within their limited technical power, yet satisfied at least their age-long decorative instincts. Since they could not carve an acanthus leaf with its natural curvature of exfoliation, they repeated the easiest part of the design—the sharp triangular serrated edges. They cut deep incisions, leaving roughly triangular projections, in a decorative scheme over the surface of the stone, and this produced a sculpture which by its richly lighted and shaded surfaces gave an effect, as it were, of colour. More and more such "coloured" effects tended to replace the plastic forms of the original. Or if the Copts sculpted Greek amorini, though they had little idea of the proportions and scarcely any of the anatomy of the human figure, they managed to give to them something of the sensual charm which underlay much of ancient Egyptian sculpture. The same is true of the painted portrait heads which were inserted into the tops of mummy cases. These start with typical Hellenistic "ennobled" realism, but rapidly lose the regularity of feature of the models and by sheer simplification, loss of modelling and reliance on outline, rather than shading, take on a new character, becoming more emphatic and inspired by an instinctive sense

of vitality and individual personality. It is evident that a new control over the expression of psychological values through elementary forms is being created, and is replacing the literal descriptive realism of Græco-Roman art. We note then that technical incompetence may, under certain conditions, actually be favourable to æsthetic invention, although under other conditions technical power may be of the utmost service.

Some of the most striking evidences of the new idea are the great reliefs cut on rock faces to commemorate the glories of the Sassanid Kings, and in particular their victories over their Roman invaders. Here almost all the forms are those of a debased Roman tradition, but they are related to one another with a new sense of the expressive possibilities of composing in large masses ; there is a new dramatic energy in the poses very distinct from the tired rhetoric of similar Roman monuments. There is a new vitality in the rhythms, particularly where animal forms are concerned, and in this we may suspect the survival of Scythian influence. In their metal reliefs on silver bowls and jugs we find the same evidence of the gradual formation of a new vividly expressive decorative style out of Roman material. Finally, in their silk brocades this style takes on its complete unity of character.

Almost identically similar silk brocades were being executed at the same time (fifth and sixth centuries) in Byzantium and it was here, in what was still the great world centre of culture, that the new art produced its greatest triumphs. Here, besides the new and magnificent architecture, of which St. Sophia is the grandest exposition, a great style of monumental wall painting (in the form of mosaic) was developed. In these works the illusion of real relief and modelling given by light and shade, as understood by Hellenistic painters, was gradually and intentionally abandoned. Organization in depth is sacrificed to a more perfect, more decoratively effective organization of the flat surface of the wall. Firmly designed flat masses with clearly marked contours replace modelling. These artists rely for their effect on the impressive ordering of the large divisions of the flat surface and the decorative splendour of the colour of these divisions, and upon the new power of suggesting vital energy and personality in the contours of their imposing figures.

Naturally enough, since the Christian contempt for the body had replaced the Greek worship of the nude athlete, it was upon the drawing of the face that the Byzantine artist concentrated. It is evident from these mosaics that this style afforded a new power of suggesting psychological states. It was particularly in this respect that it was able to embody the aspirations of Christian supernaturalism, though it also, especially in the earlier period, served to glorify the power of the Emperor.

This mosaic decoration of the new system of Church building was the main artistic form of the Byzantine culture. Sculpture was mostly used for decorative purposes in bas reliefs of marble or ivory. In general, the principles of plastic relief were abandoned in favour of the richer organization of flat surfaces.[1] In the ivories of this later period we find a tendency

[1] This abandonment of sculpture was also due to the iconoclastic movement which led finally to the separation of the Eastern and Western Churches. The taunts of their Mohammedan enemies that they were idolaters led the Emperors from 726–843 to proscribe the use of images.

to an insensitive perfection of finish which betrays a non-æsthetic motive, but on the whole what surprises us most in Byzantine art is that, in the long period through which it continued, the artists' sensibility seems always to find expression. An extraordinarily just sense of proportion in the general plastic form of objects (such for instance as the silver vessels for service in the churches), an exquisite taste in the spacing of their decoration, and still more for the value of untouched surfaces, and an astounding power of expression in their rendering of figures, within the narrow limits which their methods of design imposed, are what strike us in Byzantine works of art of almost all periods down to the fall of Constantinople. This art indicates a very limited outlook upon life with little interest in nature, owing to the restrictions imposed by a rigid religious orthodoxy, but within these limits it is singularly free from the impress of non-æsthetic impulses. For all the proverbial splendour and corruption of the Byzantine court, its art is innocent of the motive of vulgar display. It is in this a striking contrast to the art of all the ancient Empires except the Chinese.

How great and surprising was the vitality of this " decadent " Empire in the arts, as well as in policy, has recently become more apparent since researches in Bulgaria and Rumania have brought to light a number of fresco paintings of the twelfth century which show a remarkable renascence. In these we find signs of a new dramatic power and a search for greater realism in the rendering of the figure, which anticipated and probably influenced the beginnings of the far greater Italian renascence in the fourteenth century.

RUSSIAN ART

Byzantine painters of the twelfth century also found their way into Russia, where some of their masterpieces both in fresco and panel painting are still preserved. These artists were the originators of the native Russian School. This school is one of the most curious in the history of art in that it adhered with an extraordinary conservatism to the principles of its earliest tradition, so that even nineteenth century ikons remain essentially Byzantine in style. Whilst the rest of Europe was exploring all the possibilities for pictorial design which the infinite variety of nature reveals, the Russians continued to paint almost entirely without reference to their visual experience. Such changes as occurred were in the nature of mere variations of colour and tone harmonies within the fixed traditional formula of composition and figure-drawing. None the less, in the fifteenth century a few artists, of whom Rublev is the best-known, found means to express an individual feeling within these prescribed limits. This strange fixity of a pictorial tradition is comparable to that of the sculptural tradition of Egypt and like it is due to priestly predominance, for in Russia the art of painting remained until comparatively modern times a purely religious affair. This rigid conservatism of hieratic art is of course in harmony with the universally observed fact that wherever magical properties are attributed to objects these retain archaic forms unaffected by changes in all the other objects of social use, as for instance in the persistent use of stone axes and knives for sacrificial purposes.

As we have seen, those countries over which Mohammedanism first spread were the homes of this new Christian art, and art there developed for a time along the same lines. Even the Mohammedan objection to the images of men and animals did not take effect at first and never was observed fully in Persia. Indeed the earlier centuries of Mohammedanism produced an art as vital and as æsthetically free as that of Byzantium itself. The bronze sculptures of animals of Fatimite Egypt and a few similar examples from Persia are consummate expressions of vital rhythms condensed into a severely synthetic form. Pottery, particularly in Syria and Persia, produced a decorative art, in which animal forms predominate, of unsurpassed sensibility in the drawing and an exquisite taste in the proportions. None the less, in the long run the bad effects of the disapproval of figure design led to the development of an art of geometrical ornamentation, which became incoherent in its profuse repetition of similar details. A certain intellectual indolence and a love of rich profusion gradually undermined the art of Mohammedan countries, until it has become almost the archetype of what vulgar taste and thoughtless industry can accomplish, although among unsophisticated craftsmen we may still find evidence of the delicate sensibility to colour and form which distinguishes these peoples.

PAINTING AND SCULPTURE: N. AND W. EUROPE— THE END OF THE MIDDLE AGES

In North-Western Europe by the twelfth century the level of civilization and the consequent accumulation of wealth had proceeded far enough to admit of Church building on a large scale, and an extraordinary outburst of architectural experiment took place in most European countries. With this went a great revival of sculpture. The output of the twelfth century is enormous in quantity and shows an extraordinary fertility in the discovery of new sculptural ideas. To a great extent this sculpture was subservient to architecture, and the problem of adapting sculptural forms to given situations, such as the adornment of capitals and the tympana or jambs of great entrance doorways, at the same time expressing therein Christian doctrine and mythology, posed for the sculptor the limiting conditions of his art. The sculptures had to have a certain decorative richness of effect, and the dramatic and moral import of the scenes had to be made more or less clear to the onlooker. In many ways the art which was thus developed is curiously like that of Greece in the sixth century B.C. There, too, a flourishing and relatively rich civilization was just emerging from a " dark age " ; there, too, the artists were confronted with problems to which no traditional answer lay to hand ; there, too, the decoration of sacred edifices was the occasion, and the narration of sacred legends the motive, of the sculpture.

In both cases the sculptors found, in the repetition of the small folds of thin drapery clinging to the figure, a ready means of getting at once a decorative " colour " effect and of describing the shape of the limbs, with

the result that if one had only part of a draped figure from a twelfth century French church and part of one of the archaic statues of Greece to compare, one might almost be in doubt as to which was which. But in whole figures, still more in compositions, the differences would at once appear, for whereas the Greek was mainly preoccupied with realizing his idea of the harmoniously draped athletic body, the Romanesque sculptor's first concern was with the vivid narration of a sacred event or of some personality chosen for spiritual or moral rather than physical perfection. The result was that the Romanesque artist relied chiefly on facial expression. As to the body, he neglected its possibilities regarded as pure form and used it for the psychological values which its pose and movement could evoke. He attained to far greater variety of facial type and expression as compared to the fixed conventional smile of the early Greek. Moreover, as a natural outcome of the dramatic interplay of the figures, he devised rhythmic schemes which united many figures more clearly into a single design than the Greek artist had. Even in the treatment of the surface there is a difference. In sculpting the closely repeated folds of a drapery, or the strands of hair, or the feathers of a wing the Greek artist generally aimed at a mechanical regularity and uniformity of line, at an even perfection of finish, whereas in Romanesque art the artist's sensibility was generally allowed freer play.[1]

Towards the end of the twelfth century, Romanesque sculpture underwent a change almost exactly analogous to the change in Greek art from archaic to free. The decorative " coloured " effects given to details by repetitions of shallow grooves gave place to a more purely plastic treatment, freer and more significant movement of planes. Together with this, we note a new comprehension of the actual structure of the human figure and that easy control of varied and expressive gesture which grew out of the dramatic and psychological nature of the religious themes. Some of the figures of Prophets on Rheims cathedral must count among the supreme examples of plastic harmony. But already in the cathedral building of the thirteenth century a disturbing influence is at work. The complete mastery of the problem of stone-vaulting, which had just been attained, gave rise to a desire to exploit architecture with a view to publicity. The various towns vied with one another in the size and magnificence of their cathedrals. Not only was the possession of relics one of the best financial assets of a town or monastery, but the splendour and magnificence of the church which contained them would increase its celebrity. However the effect of this irruption of biological motives, which is so evident in thirteenth century architecture, is not so immediately evident in sculpture. Still, by the end of the century it had produced a distinct weakening of æsthetic feeling. A certain coyness of gesture and expression gives to the figures a more facile and popular charm ; an elegant complexity in the folds of the drapery adds to the arresting appeal and allows of an increasing display of purely technical dexterity. In the ourteenth century plastic significance was more and more sacrificed to decorative enrichment and a flattering sweetness in the psychological implications of the figures.

[1] Most of the German sculpture of the twelfth century, however, is markedly insensitive and harshly " finished."

We must turn now to the art of painting in Northern and Western Europe in the period from the fall of the Roman Empire to the end of the Middle Ages. During the Dark Ages painting occupied a very peculiar position. It took the form of the illumination of manuscripts and was carried on almost exclusively in monasteries. The tradition of the art in the earlier centuries was based on reminiscences of Roman wall paintings as practised in the catacombs. This was progressively simplified, with a gradual loss of the knowledge of light and shade and space construction to which Greek art had attained. More and more it became a simple art of conventional outline drawing, with figures seen in frontal positions and ornamental enrichments. This process was also hastened by influences from Byzantine models. Painting, being carried on in monasteries upon ancient traditional models in almost complete seclusion from contemporary life, became a veritable orgy of stylistic experiment, with hardly any controlling principle and above all without the inspiration which can only come from contemplating the infinite diversity of nature. Here again, as in later Chinese painting, we see an art, free from any anti-æsthetic social pressure, becoming enfeebled by the exclusive and narrow professional sophistication of its exponents. The Bayeux tapestry, with its brave amateurish attempt to describe somehow or other a contemporary event, brings the possibility of a new spirit into painting and with the considerable development of fresco painting on the walls of churches in the twelfth century,[1] painting is once more started upon a sequence which runs more or less *pari passu* with that of contemporary sculpture, though with the usual lag in the matter of naturalistic representation and understanding of the human figure.

In the thirteenth century an event took place which, from the point of view of painting, was a merely external accident, but which none the less acted very unfavourably on the development of painting in Northern countries, and gave to Italian painting an immense handicap. This was the French discovery of the art of vaulting and conveying the roof stresses to a relatively small number of supports. This allowed the walls to be almost entirely replaced by stained glass windows, which thus usurped the space which the fresco painter required. The Italians were never affected by this engineering enthusiasm; they continued to rely on walls to support their roofs and thus allowed scope for the painter. It was due to this circumstance that in the Northern countries painting was confined to the designing of stained glass windows, to which the simplest methods of flat contour design were best adapted, and to miniature painting. Now the small scale of the miniature in illuminated manuscripts renders the eye comparatively indifferent to those effects, produced by the general architecture of the design, which are of the utmost importance in fresco painting. On the other hand, minute realistic detail and intricately ornamental enrichment have a special charm to the eye that can pore over the page. The best illuminators were employed increasingly to execute Books of Hours for royal and princely patrons, and increasingly

[1] St. Savin near Poitiers and the churches around Barcelona give us the measure of this art, in which a more or less Byzantine formula is forced into a crude expressiveness. St. Eliza presso Nepi gives us the Italian analogue, already far more aware of pictorial science.

the artist was led to interest and amuse an idle curiosity by the exactitude of a rather trivial realism and to gratify the desire for luxury by profusion, intricacy and precision in the ornamental borders. By the end of the fourteenth century, with growing wealth and a growing frankness in the admission of mundane interests even in houses of devotion, these manuscripts became more and more luxurious and splendid and proportionately negligible as works of art. But the chief significance of these miniatures for the art of painting lay in the love of realistic representation. In the Hours of the Duc de Berri (about 1400), done by Pol de Limbourg and his brother, we get the first example of what we may call modern realism. The Duke was to be sustained during his attendance at church by the pleasant contemplation of exact likenesses of his various châteaux. The de Limbourgs painted in this Book of Hours a series of landscapes, in each of which one of the ducal châteaux appeared with the same kind of consistent realism as we are accustomed to in modern art. It is a measure of the extent to which the luxury motive had supplanted the æsthetic feeling, that these brilliantly executed paintings are almost devoid of any æsthetic quality. They are almost as purely descriptive as a photograph, and their appeal is to the trivial wonder at seeing such verisimilitude executed with such skill and technical dexterity. As we shall see, this quality of arousing an idle curiosity at mere likeness, and an equally insignificant wonder at professional skill, have remained ever since a constant element in European art. They have nothing to do with æsthetic satisfaction, though frequently confused with it. None the less, these works mark the beginning of the great efflorescence of realistic painting in Flanders throughout the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries.

Throughout the Middle Ages the Church was the chief patron of the arts and, in spite of the tendencies to large scale publicity in the building of the Gothic cathedrals, we note on the whole a relatively high state of æsthetic purity in the arts of sculpture and of painting until the rich private patron emerges. This phenomenon has led to the suggestion that religious institutions are more appreciative of æsthetic values than other employers of artists. But we have only to visit one of the large repositories of religious images in Paris, or to contemplate the lavish display of the most degraded art at a place like Lourdes, to recognize that the churches, as such, have no *parti pris* either for or against pure æsthetic expression. As much as the Pharaohs, or the Assyrian kings, or the modern industrial magnate, their concern is with propaganda or publicity. It is the means to arrest the attention and impress the imagination of the mass of mankind. All of these patrons choose, so far as they can, those works of art which they think most likely to have the widest appeal. When, then, we contemplate the æsthetic purity of French religious sculpture in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, or of Italian painting in the fourteenth, and compare it with the low æsthetic quality of similar work to-day, are we to assume that the average man of those centuries was instinctively more sensitive to æsthetic values than his modern counterpart? To some extent no doubt this may be true, since we have to admit varying innate aptitudes for æsthetic feeling in different races and also the influence of climate and of social surroundings. But, as far as we can tell, these variations are not sufficient to explain the whole of the great difference for

which we have to account. And this observation leads us, I believe, to recognize another factor in our problem. This is the factor of the long continuation of a particular civilization and culture. The organization of our European civilization had only just been accomplished by the twelfth century, and the art patron had no clear knowledge of what would appeal most to the average man. It required centuries of a process of trial and error before that could be fully ascertained. The peasant who admired a twelfth century figure of the Madonna could not imagine the simpering, sentimental and highly coloured image which his descendant can see in a modern church. It took centuries for the Church to discover that this was what he really liked best. Knowledge of the elementary crudity of the average man's sentimental reactions could only be attained by this long process of trial and error. It could not be discovered by the artist because, *ex hypothesi*, he is distinguished by the peculiar sensitiveness and subtlety of his reactions. The main body of artists would and did actually oppose a resistance to this process. Only, little by little, their position was undermined by the discovery of the greater effectiveness for publicity of the less sensitive members of the profession. Thus the long continuance of a civilization tends, of itself, towards the production of an ever greater quantity of works of art into which no æsthetic element enters.

ITALY, AND THE TRADITION TO MODERN TIMES

We must turn now to Italy, where the frescoed wall was destined to have a more propitious influence on the art of painting than the stained glass window and the miniatures of England, France and Germany. From the end of the thirteenth century, for rather more than two centuries, Italian civilization made a creative effort in painting and sculpture more intense and more continuous than any other of which we know. The only possible parallels are Greece in the fifth and fourth centuries B.C. and China at various periods until the end of the T'ang dynasty. As in these cultures we find in Italy during this period the full recognition of the æsthetic function as a spiritual activity. It was deliberately favoured in the social ambience of the governing classes who were by now the chief patrons of art.

As we have seen, in speaking of Greece, European art was always coloured by intellectual curiosity about the visible world. It was required of the artist not only that his imagery should appeal to the emotions by its rhythm, but that it should conform to the appearance of the actual world. Its texture had to be as continuous and unbroken as that of the visible scene, a condition which, as we have seen, was not imposed on the artists of China. That continuity of texture might be obtained in two ways, either by an accurate imitation of an actual scene or by constructing a picture according to those optical laws to which our vision inevitably conforms. The former, the empirical method, was used in Northern Europe by Flemish artists, the latter, the scientific, was worked out in Italy, especially by the Florentines, who first discovered the optical laws of appearance. The great advantage of the scientific method is that it enables the artist to construct imaginary scenes with nearly as great accuracy

as real ones. He can place his figures in any pose and any position that the demands of his subject and of his rhythmic organization may require.

Byzantine painting had undergone a remarkable revival in the twelfth century, and Italy was in closer contact with this centre than the rest of Europe. The Italian artists were therefore, from the first, familiar with the principles which are essential to wall paintings on a great scale. They felt much more strongly than the Northern artists the claims of harmonious proportions in the disposition of their forms over the picture surface and of rhythmic flow in the contours. Although their intellectual curiosity was more scientific, their æsthetic feeling was strong enough to rule out the childish satisfaction of mere verisimilitude which proved so attractive to Northern art patrons.

Italian painting in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries ran a course similar to that over which Greek painting must have passed before. From an art mainly of outlined figures seen in their frontal aspects and disposed more or less flatly across the picture space, they proceeded in the course of two centuries to discover how to represent more and more complex aspects of the figure, to increase the illusion of relief by modelling and to construct an ideated picture space which conformed to the laws of optics. But whilst recapturing the pictorial science of the Greeks, they did not altogether lose those powers of expressing the inner life by an intuitive rhythmic feeling which ancient art lacked and which was achieved in Christian art largely as a result of oriental influence.

Another distinction of Italian from other European arts was due to the wealth of its inheritance from Greece and Rome. The familiarity of Italian artists with the remains of Classical architecture and sculpture gave them, from the first, the idea of the harmoniously proportioned athletic type of the human body. Elsewhere artists liberated themselves with difficulty from the anti-sexual obsessions of Christianity, but in Italy this process—necessary for the completest plastic imagery—was more easily accomplished. Italian admiration for Classic art was in part due to antiquarian and historical interest, but was mainly æsthetic. It is a sign of the intense vitality of Italian culture at this period, that this admiration of the past was turned by these artists almost entirely into profit for their own art; that they did not, as might so easily have happened in a highly civilized and self-conscious society, impair their own sensibility by slavish copying or pastiche. They used their models with intelligent freedom and self-assurance. Even when they set out deliberately to revive Roman architecture, they created a new style which was more elastic and capable of far greater extension and variation than the original. It is interesting to note that this great creative effort took place under certain political conditions which somewhat resembled those of ancient Greece; namely that in both the country was divided into small city states. There seems to be a certain correlation between this and the possibility of the emergence of a large number of men of outstanding talent and marked individuality.

It is noteworthy that with all their scientific curiosity about appearance, their slowly gained control over the means of complete representation, the Italians never lost sight of the purely æsthetic qualities of their imagery. Each fresh acquisition of knowledge about appearance was at

once utilized for those new possibilities of pictorial harmony which it allowed. It was scarcely ever exploited for the mere interest in realistic verisimilitude as such.

There have been but few periods in history when artists, working out the pure æsthetic possibilities of vision, have met with the kind of sympathetic support which the patrons and public of the Renaissance extended. It would, however, be absurd to imagine that non-æsthetic motives were altogether absent. Collectors like Isabella d'Este acquired flattering and pretty pictures, so far as they could get them. Alexander Borgia was more pleased with the cheap finery of Pinturicchio's decorations than with the work of genuine artists, and even the Medici—excellent as their taste generally was—seem to have approved of the rather trivial realism of Benozzo Gozzoli's frescos. The prestige which lavish display confers could not be altogether eliminated, but in general the artist was not expected to compromise his individual sensibility. It is probable, too, that the opinion of other artists on any work was found to be of greater importance in the long run than the gratification of any particular patron.

Italian sculpture throughout this period presents a less consistent and continuous development than painting, though the two arts frequently interacted. Up to the mid-thirteenth century Italian sculpture was more or less in line with the general West European tradition, but at that point several sculptors, among whom Niccolo Pisano was the most distinguished, began a more deliberate imitation of Classical models than occurred elsewhere. But this Græco-Roman revival was short lived, for Niccolo's son Giovanni used the new-found understanding of the figure for an art more akin to that of contemporary French sculpture. He even pushed much further than the French did the conception of the figure as a vehicle for the expression of psychological states. Under the stress of passion his figures became expressions of dynamic forces. In this he stands somewhat apart from the general trend of Italian art in which, although the expression of the inner life was envisaged, the artists endeavoured not to break too completely with the suave rhythms and broad planes of Greek art.

In the art of painting, Giovanni Pisano's contemporary, Giotto, effected this compromise with such success that his general formula became the standard to which Italian artists continually referred throughout the next two centuries. An essential principle of Giotto's art lay in the fact that although he used the general Byzantine formula of significant disposition of large simple contours across the flat surface of the work, with little suggestion of light and shade, and an as yet necessarily imperfect statement of the depth of the scene, he drew these simple contours with a vivid imaginative grasp of the volume and bulk of the figure. That is to say, his contour did not merely describe changes of direction in the plane of the picture, but suggested the changes of direction of those planes which recede from the eye.[1]

[1] This is a difficult point to explain, but it is of crucial importance in the art of painting. Perhaps it can best be illustrated by taking the case of an artist drawing a sphere. The contour of this will be a circle. If an artist, in drawing that, thinks of it as merely the flat geometrical form of a circle, the line will be too precise and arresting to the eye to suggest the sphere. If, however, in drawing it he

It was this vivid imaginative grasp of the plastic implications of flat design that distinguished the Italian from Northern art and Gothic draughtsmanship. The Flemish artists evoked the illusion of reality by the minuteness and accuracy of their record of the changes of direction of contours in the picture plane, but this remained essentially a description of certain facts ; it failed to give vividly the suggestion of the volumes of the objects so described.

In order to understand this distinction, we must remember that painting and sculpture, in so far as they make recognizable images of natural objects, have a dual nature. On the one hand they may be illustrations of events or situations and, as such, capable to some extent of replacing a verbal description. Thus the illustrations of a book are an alternative way of stating the same events as those described in the text. On the other hand the painted or sculpted image may represent some situation of no interest or importance whatever, and yet may affect us by its pure formal relations in a way similar to that of architecture and music. Now illustration is likely to affect us by calling up emotions experienced in real life. For instance, a love-scene or one describing a violent conflict, either in writing or in illustration, will arouse reminiscences of emotions experienced in real life, and these evocations will share the precision and sharp limitation of such emotions. The effects of music, architecture and painting, viewed as pure form, though they may ultimately depend on the emotional life of the spectator, do not call up in the same way any particular experiences or any precisely defined feeling. They have a vague massive quality, and probably draw upon the deeper subconscious layers of our nature. These two effects of painting may perhaps work together, the massive formal effect lending weight and vastness to the more particularized emotions aroused by the illustration, or they may conflict, or either may preponderate to such a degree as to obliterate the other.

On the whole the particularized effect of illustration, since it calls up directly familiar emotional experiences, is more easily apprehended by the ordinary man, whose sensibility to the emotional overtones of form is generally weak as compared, for instance, with those of sound in music. On the other hand the emotional effect of a dramatic action in painting suffers from the grave defect that it can only represent a single moment, whereas literature can give the whole sequence. Painting often does inadequately what language does well, consequently pictures which rely solely on their illustrational effect tend to be rapidly exhausted, and in the long run only those in which the formal effect is powerful continue to be enjoyed.

For reasons which have never been fully investigated, it is found that

thinks of the volume of the sphere as a whole and his contour as the sum of all the tangents of the sphere which lie at right angles to the picture plane, his line will be more likely to express the idea of volume, though it will probably not be so true a geometrical circle. This is of course a rather paradoxical statement, but it may suggest the truth that in the greatest draughtsmanship the contour expresses more emphatically the recession of the disappearing planes of the figure than the changes of direction in the picture plane. It was this truth that the Italians discovered, but which was missed by the Northern painters, who were preoccupied with the accuracy of their description and the calligraphic regularity of their lines.

painted images, in which the volume and mass of objects and their spatial relations are vividly suggested, exercise a much more powerful "architectural" or formal effect on the emotions than pictures in which this suggestion is feeble or absent. Hence the great importance of the tradition of pictorial design established by Giotto and elaborated for two centuries in Italy.

In Giotto's work the figures tend to be represented by preference in the broadest flat extension, profile and full face, and the construction of the picture space is uncertain. The discovery of perspective a century later gave artists complete power to construct the picture space and regulate the relations of their figures within it. The study of anatomy and a growing familiarity with the nude figure—in which the Italians retraversed the course pursued before by Greek artists—gave them little by little the power to represent all aspects of the figure with equal ease. This at once allowed of an immensely increased repertory of poses and of more complex plastic rhythms. Finally, a careful study of light and shade enabled artists to suggest more and more completely the full rotundity of their volumes. By the beginning of the sixteenth century all these factors were worked out, and artists like Leonardo da Vinci, Fra Bartolommeo, Michelangelo and Raphael were able to produce pictorical systems of unheard-of perfection in all their plastic relations. These relations in all their complexity were so clearly felt that their coherence becomes instantly apparent. The unity thus formed was more close-knit and inevitable in all its parts than ever before.

Such in briefest outline was the evolution from 1300 to 1500 of this almost unparalleled effort of artistic creation. The process was not however perfectly continuous, there were periods of stagnation and periods when the main principle of development seemed to be lost sight of. But at each crucial point it was the good fortune of Italy at this period to produce the men capable of re-establishing the true direction of æsthetic endeavour. At the outset of this period two alternative conceptions of art are distinguishable. The Siennese, led by Duccio di Buoninsegna, were imbued with the principles of Byzantine painting and had attained to the greatest technical perfection. The Florentine school on the other hand, though influenced by the Byzantines, showed more indigenous tendencies. With a lower standard of accomplishment they were more experimental, more anxious to attempt the record of their own visual experience and to express in new forms the dramatic implications of the stories they painted. In this connection the recent history of their fellow countryman St. Francis of Assisi was of capital importance, and it was in the fresco decoration of the great memorial church dedicated to him at Assisi that the greatest of the Florentines, Cimabue and Giotto, created a distinctive Italian conception of painting. For whereas in the rendering of the main episodes of Christian mythology Byzantine formulæ of composition lay ready to the artist's hand, when it came to recording the actions of St. Francis, which belonged to the artist's own country and almost to his own time, he had to create everything from his own experience of contemporary life. With his rare feeling for the exact significance of gesture, Giotto was able to discover designs in which the dramatic situation was vividly expressed and the effect of these on the imagination was

heightened by the corporeal reality of his figures. His contours revealed the solidity and bulk of the forms. They were no mere descriptions of certain appearances ; they had the firm consistency of real things.

Neither in drawing nor in colour had Giotto's designs quite the elegant and flowing perfection of those of his Siennese contemporaries, but the gain in vividness and the sense of reality were of incomparable importance for the future of Italian painting.

And yet for nearly a century after Giotto's death it was still by no means certain whether the Siennese or the Florentine conception would predominate. Sienna produced in the next generation several artists of great power, of whom Simone Martini is the most important. Duccio di Buoninsegna had already modified the Byzantine tradition by softening the harshness of its rigid hieratic forms. Simone Martini carried this process much further, creating in his contours linear rhythms of incomparable suavity and charm capable of expressing the more intimate and tender humanity which had begun to colour the religious sentiment of the day. The change thus effected was similar to that which had taken place in French sculpture a century earlier. Simone Martini was creating what we may call a Gothic style of painting. It was far more masterly and more expressive than any of the Gothic painting of Northern Europe, but it might well have led Italian art along similar lines, for meanwhile Giotto's successors in Florence lacked initiative and originality. Giotto's style was copied, but without intelligence, and the Florentine school seemed to be already attacked by the disease of a lifeless academic formalism. By the end of the fourteenth century the most vital of Florentine painters, Lorenzo Monaco, had frankly adopted Siennese conceptions, and a similar style of elegant Gothic linear design without any research for plastic values was spreading to the other centres of art in Italy, even taking over German Gothic conceptions in Northern schools like that of Verona. Had this tendency persisted the Italians would have merely been the best exponents of a common European tradition ; they would not have created a new and quite distinct conception of the possibilities of pictorial design as in fact they did.

For at the critical moment there arose in Florence a group of men of extraordinary originality and creative energy. Leo Battista Alberti, the great architect and mathematician of the fifteenth century, in his book on painting, says that : " the spirit of the ancients passed into the frames of Ghiberti, Brunelleschi, Donatello and Masaccio and fitted them for the most honourable exercises." And it was indeed due to this group of Florentines that the tradition of European art took its actual course. We see from Alberti's words that what appeared capital to their followers was the return to the spirit of Græco-Roman culture, the fact that they picked up again the thread of tradition which had been broken by the centuries that intervened since the fall of the Roman Empire. We have seen that more or less distorted reminiscences of that culture had persisted intermittently throughout this period, but now for the first time the study of Classical art became scientific and critical. In fact civilization in Florence at the end of the fourteenth century had reached such a high level of spiritual self-consciousness as to feel its kinship with the great achievements of Greek culture far more clearly than with those of the immediate

past. The art of those recent Mediæval periods was too naïve, too instinctive and too little penetrated by any conscious intellectual conceptions to satisfy them any longer. Their own complete self-conscious awareness of the spiritual functions of art demanded for its expression a richer, more articulate, more intellectual artistic language, and in the remains of Græco-Roman art they believed that this language was to be discovered.

But the Florentines of the Renaissance, though they turned deliberately to the past, were not engaged in an archaistic revival. On the contrary, for them, Classical art was not simpler, more rudimentary, but more accomplished, more learned, more intellectual than the Gothic art of their own past. They did not go to it for a release from over-sophisticated technical skill, but rather for an enrichment and completion of their own knowledge. The spirit of the Renaissance was, then, the exact opposite of the spirit of archaism. It was a spirit of self-confident and enthusiastic adventure. The Florentines did not set out to copy the ancients but to make use of ancient methods for their own ends, and that chiefly in two respects. One was the greater knowledge of the anatomical structure of the figure, a greater familiarity with the play of the various muscles in action and of the poses which led to harmonious plastic sequences. The other aspect of Classical art was concerned mainly with architecture, though it strongly affected the decorative accessories and the general ordering of design. The Italians had never fully adopted the Gothic systems of building developed in France. Their Gothic construction had been essentially half-hearted, and by 1400 they were ready to study with enthusiasm the remains of Roman architecture which were still standing. What they found in them was the constant use of a relatively small number of forms combined in a vigorously co-ordinated system, as opposed to the variety and irregularity of Gothic design. It was the clarity and legibility of the disposition of the structural element, which they discovered in Roman architecture and its decorative enrichments, which satisfied their intimate needs. And this systematic clarity of co-ordination of parts in a whole, which they discovered in architecture, was applied by them also to their sculptural and pictorial designs.

To return to the four great men who effected this momentous change. Ghiberti and Brunelleschi were born in 1378 and 1377. Donatello and Masaccio were considerably younger. Ghiberti, as a sculptor, was essentially an exponent of that Gothic style which we found characteristic of the painting of this period, though in his celebrated bas-reliefs for the doors of the Baptistery he combined it with an ultra-picturesque use of perspective backgrounds and highly realistic ornaments, both prophetic of certain nineteenth century misunderstandings of the possibilities of sculpture. It was not as an artist therefore that he counted for much in the new movement, but rather as a student and collector of ancient art. He had actually procured a marble vase from Greece, and was probably the first to recognize the difference between Greek and Roman art and to insist on the greater value of the former.

Brunelleschi, after making a few sculptures which prove what a great sculptor he might have been, turned to engineering and architecture and solved the problem of constructing the dome of the cathedral. But he

was a man of wide intellectual and æsthetic range, and seems to have been the real discoverer of the laws of perspective which gave a new power of pictorial space construction. Donatello was one of the most daringly original artists of all time. He quickly freed himself from the facile and unstructural rhythms of the Gothic style, and established that conception of sculpture as a harmony of structural plastic sequences which has been the basis of all subsequent European sculpture. He studied Classic models deeply, but used his acquired sculptural knowledge with the most daring freedom, with a profound understanding of the significance of pose for the expression of character and of psychological states, which far transcended the limits of that Classical art which he took for master. And herein we touch on the fundamental importance of the Renaissance style. For though Donatello doubtless thought of the Greeks as superior to himself, though his utmost ambition may have been to recapture their spirit, he fortunately did not throw over those invaluable new qualities which came into the European tradition, mainly, as we have seen, from the East, namely, that feeling for the expression of character and the understanding of rhythms expressive of the inner life. Thanks to this, Renaissance art did not go back to the descriptive attitude which marked so much of Greek art. Even if it missed the static perfection of the finest Greek sculptors, it more than compensated for that by its profounder sense of character, its vital and pervasive rhythms and the richer conception of life which it was able to handle.

Though he never actually painted, Donatello shows himself in his bas-reliefs as an almost greater master of pictorial than of sculptural composition, and his influence on painting was immense. Fortunately, too, he found in his younger contemporary Masaccio a man of genius equal to his own and exactly attuned to the same conceptions of art. Considering what he accomplished before he died at the age of twenty-seven, we must account Masaccio as almost the most surprising manifestation of genius in the art of painting of which we know. Masaccio mastered at once the new ideas of the Renaissance. He learned how to give to his painted figures something of the structurally plastic unity of Donatello's sculpture. He used with ease the new perspective methods of space constructions. But the mastery of such new methods produced no evidence of strain or distortion in his work, nor did his enthusiasm for Classic art lead him to neglect what Italian painting had already achieved. With unerring instinct for the essential he founded his pictorial composition on Giotto and recovered at once the large clarity of disposition which had been lost sight of by Giotto's academic descendants. He gave to compositions based on Giotto's principles a fullness of relief and a depth of space which Giotto lacked the pictorial science to achieve.

This meant the final and decisive establishment of the Florentine conception of art as the predominant and central factor in the Italian tradition. The alternative Siennese conception, and the later Gothic design which had spread more or less all over Italy, were no longer able to compete with the plastic design to which Giotto had first given expression. Thus Masaccio committed European art to that age-long exploration of the appearances of external nature which was destined to be so singularly fruitful of ever fresh artistic possibilities. From this time it was generally

accepted in European art that the structure of a painted image must be in more or less accordance with our visual experience of the external world. As we have seen, this was by no means inevitable; great arts had arisen and flourished elsewhere without endeavouring to conciliate pictorial design and the texture of the visible world. It carried into new regions the same principle that had governed the Greek realization of the structure of the human figure.

Science, as we have seen, had already been called in aid to establish the laws of perspective, and this was immediately followed by the analytic study of human and animal structures by means of dissection. A little later, Leonardo began a scientific study of the colour effects of the atmosphere and the principles which govern the changes in the local colour of objects in various situations. In Leonardo's scientific investigation into the laws of appearance he far outran the practice of his day, and the principles he laid down only found their application to painting in the Impressionist school of the nineteenth century.

The Florentine artists of the fifteenth century were, in effect, the precursors of modern science, and their gradual exploration of the nature of visual experience gives to the history of European art a certain resemblance to that continual progress which fascinates us by its dramatic character in the study of scientific history. It has even led to an idea that there is, in any given culture, a normal course of evolution and a progress to ever greater powers. As we have seen, however, there may be long courses of artistic tradition with no such changes in the amount of visual experience which the artist takes over. In fact the exploration and explanation of visual appearances form a branch of science, though it is one which has naturally been mainly pursued by artists. But an increased knowledge of the facts of visual experience by no means necessitates increased power of exploiting them in art. It so happened that all the greatest Florentine artists of the fifteenth century were also those who accepted with most avidity the new discoveries in visual experience, but for the student of art the only point is what use they made of this new material. The worst painter of to-day can give to his picture truer perspective and truer light and shade than Giotto could, but this does not make him a better artist. The æsthetic value of a work of art is, in fact, independent of its factual content.

The great Florentines of the Renaissance never made the mistake of confusing their new science with their art. They used the new principles solely to increase the organic unity and completeness of their plastic and spatial harmonies. It is the quality of these harmonies, the elevation of imaginative feeling which they express, that makes the great importance of their creations.

At the same time that Masaccio was working in Florence there began in the Northern Italian schools an interest in visible nature of a very different kind. This was the result of a naïve curiosity in the variety and diversity of natural forms akin to that which we have noted in Flanders. This naïve naturalism led artists to delineate a number of plants, animals and objects which had never before attracted the painter's attention, but it implied no greater grasp of the relations of objects to one another in the visual field. Its effect indeed was almost the reverse of the Florentine

study of the laws of appearance. That had increased the integrity and continuity of the whole design; this naturalistic curiosity tended to disperse the attraction to the eye, calling our attention sharply now to one detail and now to another and appealing to the idle pleasure that we take in seeing the exact and detailed imitation of some real thing. To some extent the impulse towards this naturalism affected the Florentine school throughout the fifteenth century. Although the greater painters, like Castagno, Piero della Francesca and Signorelli were but little affected by it, and carried on in the great style of Masaccio, a less severe art naturally achieved success by its more flattering appeal. Benozzo Gozzoli's frescos, crowded with naturalistic detail, Ghirlandajo's hard and literal portrait heads and Filippino Lippi's fluid sentimentality appealed to those who were incapable of a purely æsthetic response, and already we have a hint of that separation of painting into two branches, the æsthetic and the popular, which was destined to increase in the succeeding centuries. No less than painting, sculpture fell away from the great plastic character of Donatello's art and aimed at decorative elegance and a slighter, more sentimental charm.

In all this period, however, much visual knowledge was being acquired, including a detailed familiarity with the structure and muscular functioning of the body and the solution of the more complicated problems of perspective. None the less, amidst this wealth of material, the great synthetic grasp of Masaccio's art was lacking; painting had become more varied, more intriguing, but had lost its monumental simplicity and grandeur. Once more, at the turn of the century, a group of great artists flourished, and once more the grand lines of the Florentine tradition were reasserted. Leonardo da Vinci, Fra Bartolommeo, Michelangelo and Raphael, all contributed in different ways towards an art of broader and more closely knit unity of design, handling the completer knowledge of natural appearance which the fifteenth century had accumulated with masterly care, in broadly synthetic constructions. Michelangelo, by his bold foreshortenings of the figure, increased the power of expressing movements to and from the spectator and thereby suggesting the full relief of plastic groups. Fra Bartolommeo and Raphael captured as never before the harmonic relations of the volumes to the picture space, the last trace of flatness disappeared from the imagery, leaving the figures standing free and encircled by aerial spaces. It is doubtful whether ever before or since pictorial art has achieved such a close-knit unity of design with so much appearance of ease and naturalness, so little evidence of the strict formal principles to which the artist conformed.

Though Michelangelo's influence upon the painters who realized this perfect pictorial system was immense, in his own paintings he remained essentially sculptural, that is to say, he could create volumes in all the fullness of their relief, but he lacked Raphael's sense of the relations of volumes to the surrounding picture space. As a sculptor he returned to the great conceptions of Donatello which had been lost sight of by the intervening generations of sculptors. His imaginative temperament was however less penetrating and profound, more emphatic and rhetorical, with a bias towards the grandiose. But the methods he discovered in order to produce this effect are of great importance, since they formed the basis

of design in the succeeding period. For it is generally admitted that Michelangelo, more than any one other artist, created the Baroque style.

In the Classical, or High Renaissance, style of Fra Bartolommeo, Leonardo and Raphael the unity is composed of parts which are co-ordinated so as to build up a single structure, but they remain distinguishable as constituent elements, and each element has its own rhythmic phrase. In the Baroque there is a single predominant motive to which all the others are subordinated. This is most clearly seen in architecture, and it was in his architecture that Michelangelo most clearly enunciated the Baroque idea. In Renaissance architecture, each story of a building composes a distinct and separate unit with its own system of columns or pilasters, though the various stories have a strictly co-ordinated relation to one another. In Baroque, the whole façade is treated as a single unit with columns going the whole height and bracketing the stories into a single architectural phrase.

In the same way, in his sculpture, Michelangelo created a single unbroken rhythmic phrase which passed through the whole figure. Such prolonged rhythmic phrases were particularly attainable in figures in those vigorous and declamatory gestures which he affected, and throughout the succeeding epoch sculptors developed this theme of vehement and agitated movement, sometimes to an extravagant degree. We shall follow later the developments of the Baroque style during the seventeenth century.

The art of the High Renaissance made an extraordinary appeal to the world at large, and when Raphael died at the age of thirty-seven his death was mourned as a public calamity by the Papal Court and the people of Rome. One cannot doubt that the spending of immense sums by the Popes of this period on works of art was largely inspired by the motive of publicity, though its effect in Protestant countries was by no means conciliatory. But it is noteworthy of this remarkable period, that it was the best work of the greatest artists that was considered most effective as propaganda. This shows the high general level of artistic culture of the day. Except for a certain pressure upon artists to produce more rapidly than they felt inclined, from which Raphael certainly suffered, there is little evidence of the deadening effect on art which conformity to the demands of publicity generally produces.

None the less this extraordinary outburst of artistic activity left the Italian tradition, so far as Rome and Florence were concerned, in an unhealthy condition. The extraordinary perfection of Raphael's art and the impressiveness of Michelangelo's were so effective, that artists thought that all they had to do was to produce works which repeated these qualities. The Mannerists, as they are called, endeavoured merely to create in the manner of their great predecessors. They unconsciously exaggerated the sentimental charm of Raphael's figures and underlined the already emphatic art of Michelangelo, in the simple faith that if only the gestures were sufficiently vehement, the foreshortenings sufficiently daring, they were doing all that was needed. We note, by the way, how often Academism treads in the footsteps of great geniuses. We ought perhaps to distinguish between those great originators, who open up a

new way of research, and those who seem to bar the future by a too complete realization. But perhaps the type of artist who takes up the succession may be a more determining factor in the subsequent course of tradition.

Had it not been for the independent schools of Northern Italy, the Italian tradition would have ceased to be creative with the advent of the Mannerists. Of these Northern schools Venice was the most important. In spite of occasional contacts with Florence, the Venetian artists had never taken up the pursuits of plastic design and space construction with anything like the same scientific ardour and passionate intensity as the Florentines. They practised a more naïve, more descriptive and less conscious art. Their attitude to life was more easy-going, less tense and less impassioned. But they had a deep instinctive sense of the beauty of nature which led them from the first to conceive the landscape backgrounds of their sacred imagery as of equal importance with the figures. And this led them to observe a whole aspect of nature which the Florentines had neglected. The latter had been so absorbed in the realization of complete formal design, that they allowed only an ancillary position to colour. Their colour was often extremely harmonious, but it was conceived as an adjunct to the design, not as an inevitable part of it. The choice of colour was moreover mainly dictated by *a priori* feeling for harmony. But the Venetians, in studying landscape, had come to an apprehension of the pervasive effects on all the separate local colours of a scene due to the particular state of light, to the time of day and the quality of the daylight. Giovanni Bellini always felt this strongly, and his pictures are generally conceived as expressions of a particular quality of light, all his colours being harmoniously attuned to this dominant effect. Thus colour becomes not merely decorative, but aids in the situation of the volumes within the luminous space of the picture. The implications of this discovery were not worked out till the landscape painting of the seventeenth century in Holland and, still more completely, in that of the nineteenth century in France and England.

Giorgione gave to Bellini's ideas a new significance. In his tragically short life he created a conception of art which has exercised as potent and intimate a spell on succeeding generations as any other. He expressed more completely than anyone else that synthesis between Paganism and Christianity which lies at the root of our imaginative life. Christianity had in effect denied nature, as it denied the natural man, but it was inevitable that those feelings which link us to the life of Nature should find expression. It was this that Giorgione accomplished by relating intimately the human figure to landscape and expressing in that the profoundest overtones of our feeling towards the life of Nature. The influence of this was immense and inspired a new creative impetus among his contemporaries and followers, of whom Titian was by far the most gifted. In his long life he did much to develop the Baroque conception of pictorial design, both in the form of his compositions but still more in his use of colour. In accordance with the Baroque idea of subordination to a single theme, he broke down the isolation of local colours and imposed a dominan chord throughout the whole composition.

The Venetian school was never attacked by the Academic disease that

destroyed the Florentine, and Tintoretto and Veronese continued to produce fresh and vivid work, though mainly of a secondary and decorative quality, throughout the century.

In Parma, Correggio, working in complete isolation, made the most daring experiments in Baroque composition, using a greater atmospheric fusion of tones and a richer play of light and shade than any before. But Italy was not in a state, at this time, to seize on the possibilities which Correggio's genius provided. It was divided between the academics, who harked back to Raphael, and the followers of a brilliant charlatan, Caravaggio, whose apparition marks a new phrase in the history of art.

The artists of the Middle Ages and Renaissance had a strong corporate consciousness. They were continually required to appraise one another's works, and in general an artist was at least as much affected by the opinion of his colleagues as a doctor is to-day. When, in the seventeenth century, the guild of artists was replaced by an academy, which represented only one party of artists, and that the more pedantic and less vital one, the inevitable response was to break entirely with the professional body and appeal directly to the public, just as a quack doctor does to-day. It was this defiance of professional opinion, this appeal to the public at large, that distinguished Caravaggio's position. It is one of the ironies of history that the kind of vulgar popular art of which Caravaggio was the initiator is precisely the type of art that has since captured the Academies and bears the misnomer of Academic art.

Caravaggio appealed by means of the topical, anecdotic subjects which he painted, such as the scene of a young and rich innocent cheated by cardsharpers. He even treated religious scenes in the same spirit. But vulgar and *ad captandum* as his art was, he had a touch of genius. He explored the melodramatic possibilities of light and shade, painting scenes immersed in darkness with a bright light striking in through a narrow aperture, and bringing certain features into strong relief. This led to a new kind of design, in which the contours counted for very little as compared to the pattern made by the edges which divided the strongly lit planes from those in shadow. A whole school of so-called "Tenebrosi" resulted. This would have been of little consequence but that elsewhere, in Spain particularly, and to some extent in Holland, his idea was taken over by far more serious and genuine artists. Even Velasquez's extraordinarily sober and refined art owed much, in its inception, to Caravaggio's example.

In sculpture seventeenth century Italy was more fortunate, since it was dominated by the genius of Bernini, who created the full Baroque conception of that art, developing to the utmost what was already implicit in Michelangelo. He not only created continuous and pervading rhythmic movement throughout his groups, but he broke down the contour by shaded planes, giving thereby a new quality of picturesqueness and movement to the whole effect. This conception of sculpture dominated the Italian and also the French school throughout the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries.

We must now turn back to the Northern schools, of which the Flemish took precedence, the German school being essentially a minor derivative of the Flemish, and the French, though more independent, far less productive. We saw that at the beginning of the fifteenth century Flemish

artists had acquired a notion of the exact description of actual scenes. It was not surprising that people, who had been accustomed only to the generalized decorative imagery of mediæval times, should be fascinated by the novelty of some familiar scene rendered with astonishing verisimilitude and an inexhaustible wealth of minute detail. It was Jan van Eyck who first fully realized this conception, and with such skill that his picture of a fifteenth century interior[1] still astonishes us by the incredible accuracy of his description. The appeal however was mainly to curiosity; no great emotional effect was envisaged or achieved, but a standard of verisimilitude was set which influenced the whole Flemish school. Now since preoccupation with those details which most arouse the idea of verisimilitude implies a different focus of attention from that whereby we perceive the volume and relief of objects, the Flemish were never led to attempt the Italian conception of plastic design but contented themselves mainly with exploiting the illustrational aspect of art, sometimes creating great imaginative "visual literature," as in the case of Rogier van der Weyden and Peter Breughel, more often satisfying their clients by the sentimental charm of their figures and the minuteness of their detail. Such was the situation throughout the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. In the seventeenth century, however, Rubens, after studying in Italy, where he embraced the Italian tradition, brought it back to Flanders and developed it along new lines. By the urge of his flowing rhythms he was able to hold a more complex material within the compass of a single phrase. And this Baroque idea he even carried further than had been done before, increasing at once the richness of content and the visible unity of his designs. By thus transplanting to the North the Baroque tradition, he changed the future of those Northern schools where his influence predominated.

His brilliant pupil Vandyck worked in England and developed a style of decorative portraiture which has had great influence. He was the first to insist on the social pretensions of the sitter at the expense of real character, a discovery which has been largely exploited by biological forces in modern times.

One school however, the Dutch, was developing along independent lines. It had shared the literal imitative conception of Flemish painting, but the peculiar mentality of the Dutch led them in the seventeenth century to inquire more closely into visual experience. They were brought to this, in part by their stolid Protestant indifference to the subject matter of the imaginative painting of the day, which was drawn either from religion as interpreted by the Roman Catholic Church or from Pagan mythology, and in part by their passionate appreciation of that national way of life which they had just so heroically defended against Spain. They demanded, therefore, an art capable of treating the familiar scenes and situations which they loved. But for all their lack of distinctively poetic feeling, their bourgeois sensuality was tinged with a reflective spirit, so that even a roystering publican like Jan Steen could look with a certain detachment on the revels in which he shared. To effect such a shift of focus of the imaginative faculty was a great feat, though it was perhaps performed almost unconsciously by the Dutch in response to their particular situation. And it was this that enabled them to take that

[1] *John Arnolfini and his wife.* National Gallery, London.

step in the exploitation of visual experience for its æsthetic possibilities before which the great Italian enterprise had come to a pause. To realize its full importance we must return to their position. The Italians had indeed explored visual experience very fully, but they never trusted themselves entirely and exclusively to the visual experience of a scene from a single point of view. They allowed themselves, as it were, the privilege of walking round the figures or objects, in order to see what they were, more clearly than the single viewpoint allowed. They included too experiences gained from touch, from feeling the shapes. That is to say, they continued to regard each figure or object as a separate entity; they painted them so as to give to each its fullest reality as a single whole, though they combined these to build up a plastic unity. It was this new step of trusting to purely visual values in order to express form that was taken by the Dutch. Its consequences were immense. It implied, when pushed to its limit, an undoing of that education of the eye under the influence of conceptual language through which we pass in infancy. It was not, however, until the latter half of the nineteenth century that the Impressionists worked out the full consequences of this Dutch initiative. But from the very first this disinterested contemplation of the scenes of everyday life revealed a whole new range of plastic and spatial relations capable of giving rise to many new types of pictorial harmony, types which could never have been conceived had the artist started from an *a priori* rhythmic idea.

At the same period a similar step into the world of unaided vision was taken in Spain, but here its greatest manifestation was due to a court painter; Velasquez's contemplative perception of the pictorial possibilities of life in the royal palace.

The conditions of art production in the seventeenth century are important for our study. In Belgium and Spain, Rubens and Velasquez were working mainly for the royal patrons who carried on the tradition of the Renaissance, in that they were able to accept the pure æsthetic activity of their artists even when this led them into new and unfamiliar regions. But in Holland the painters had to work for the bourgeoisie, many of whom were rising in the social scale and were using the patronage of art as a social weapon. As we have seen, such a situation always produces the phenomenon of vulgarity, and the demand for the luxury effect in objects of art. Great verisimilitude these patrons demanded from a genuine but non-æsthetic curiosity, and a highly polished surface and mechanical precision of handling they required as an expression of luxury. What is surprising, however, is the extent to which these Dutch artists were able to express their genuine æsthetic impulses whilst conforming more or less to this non-æsthetic demand, though the greatest of all, Rembrandt, was financially ruined by his refusal to make the compromise.

Rembrandt has a unique place in the history of European art, because he united in his spirit a dramatic and psychological imagination of Shakespearean intensity and an equally great plastic imagination. In his early work the illustration of psychological conceptions sometimes impairs the complete formal unity, but in his later years he accomplished a perfect fusion of the two elements in his imaginative life.

In landscape the Dutch pushed the observation of effects of colour

and tone to a much further point than the Venetians, and attained to a subtlety and nicety of tone and colour values which have never been surpassed.

It is one of the strangest phenomena in art history that Holland, after producing for about thirty years an exceptional number of artists of genius or supreme talent, suddenly became barren of artistic talent, and, for no apparent external reason, this extraordinary efflorescence of creative power disappeared almost completely and suddenly, though the Dutch people have continued to be distinguished for a finer taste in art than those of other Germanic countries.

Already in the seventeenth century France had produced two great artists, Poussin and Claude, who both studied in Rome and gave a new vitality to the tradition which still survived there, though in an enfeebled state. From the beginning of the eighteenth century until the present day France has been the one great centre of artistic creation in Europe.

In the eighteenth century Watteau refined upon Rubens's conceptions, adapting them to a more intimate and poetically contemplative interpretation of the life of the Court. Chardin painted still-lifes which equalled the Dutch in truthfulness of observation and surpassed them in the richness of his tone and colour harmonies. But the chief activity of French art during this century was the creation of a style of decorative compositions based on Rubens's example. The eighteenth century was, on the whole, one of exquisite minor work, devoted chiefly to the embellishment of the intense social life of the time. In Venice, however, it produced a surprising aftermath of the great tradition in Tiepolo and a landscape art of a relatively modern kind in Canaletto. An equally extraordinary revival of art, with modern elements but in harmony with the great style of the seventeenth century, occurred in Spain in the isolated figure of Goya.

In the early nineteenth century, England, in the person of Constable, made, for the first time, an important contribution to the development of the European tradition. Constable went a great deal further than any before in the process of disintegrating the separate objects within a field of vision. Refusing to pay separate attention to those sensations out of which we build up an object such as a tree or a house, he was able to realize, as never before, the continuity of light and colour throughout the whole scene, and to establish an unbroken plastic texture throughout. His idea was still-born in England but was taken up in the latter half of the century by the French Impressionists, who worked out its implications with extraordinary zeal, and with a scientific method analogous to that which the Italian discoverers of linear perspective had shown. The new problem was that of tone and colour perspective due to the atmosphere and, though the effects are too complicated to admit of any simple mathematical statement, the general principles were grasped and practised with great exactitude. Enthusiasm for these newly-discovered aspects of Nature led these artists, however, to overstate the continuity of texture of a field of vision and to understate those sensations whence we construct the notion of separate things. As a result of this bias the architectonic organization of pictorial design was inevitably weakened.

A reaction from this extreme was begun by Cézanne and later, independently, by Seurat, and, by the beginning of this century, this reaction

had moved rapidly towards an almost Byzantine conception of design by means of large simplified contours. The shock given by this sudden reversion has led to a period of free speculation on the whole nature and purpose of the painted image, with experiments towards an abstract, non-representational art and finally, in sur-realism, to a return to the concept as the unit of design. Meanwhile a form of Impressionism, influenced by severer architectonic principles, has remained the chief idiom of modern painting.

Paris has been the centre of all these artistic movements. In England, Constable remained an isolated figure. With their essentially literary bias, the English have never understood plastic art, and have been content to practise an art of decorative illustration. Throughout the nineteenth century the literary content of nearly all this art was of the feeblest kind. The attempt of the pre-Raphaelites in the sixties and seventies to raise the imaginative level of pictorial narrative and give to it a decorative quality had some success, but they were almost as insensitive to plastic construction as the popular anecdote painters against whom they rebelled. It was only in the Impressionist work of Mr. Steer and in that of some twentieth century artists that some conception of plastic design has found a precarious place in this country.

Throughout modern times, from the end of the Renaissance on, sculpture has played a relatively small part. For one thing, the new visual material of atmospheric colour and tone which the painters were exploring gave no opportunity for sculpture. For another, the cost of sculpture being great, the chief opportunities have always been for public monuments and these are peculiarly open to non-æsthetic claims, especially since democracy has tended to make everyone feel himself as well qualified to give an artistic judgment as anybody else. Sculpture has therefore rarely been practised by any but academic-popular artists. In quite recent times, however, two or three great artists have managed to find support for independent sculpture and have even gained a grudging admission to execute minor monuments. But the enormous patronage of sculpture which the monuments of the last war entailed has been, almost without exception, given to non-æsthetic work which was judged to have a strong publicity effect.

The economic and social status of modern painting has been full of curious complications. The immense industrial expansion of the nineteenth century, with the consequent rise of many people of elementary spiritual development to wealth and social position, produced the phenomenon of vulgarity on an even grander scale than during the Roman Empire. These patrons were willing to pay large prices for works which, by their trivial verisimilitude and obvious sentimental appeal, were easily apprehended and also for portraits which might advertise their social position. These non-æsthetic demands led to the growth of a large class of artists, with some technical skill and low sensibility, and these became so powerful that they were able to capture the Academies, which were originally intended to check such non-æsthetic art production. Thus the artists who were carrying on the tradition found themselves without any support, in a social ambience violently hostile to their activities. Such a situation might have led to a total neglect of art similar to that which took

place during the Roman Empire, as is described by Petronius Arbiter. But the fact that wealth was more widely distributed in the nineteenth century implied that some of these artists had independent means, whilst others found a precarious support from a few exceptional collectors and from picture dealers. Moreover, there was a much clearer consciousness of the rôle of art as a function of the spiritual life, and the idea grew up of the artist belonging to a kind of priesthood and having a vocation. The notion of artistic conscience became clear. Thus the work of these traditionalists, who were always denounced as revolutionaries, became gradually accepted, and in the long run their works changed hands at far higher prices than those of the academic-popular painters. Little by little, as their works entered the public museums, they were seen to be the real transmitters of the long European tradition.

These museums and public galleries began to function from early in the nineteenth century and their influence upon public taste and appreciation of art has been steadily growing. They have unconsciously made it evident how far academic-popular art has been from the tradition. The effect of this has been to replace the confident Philistinism of the nineteenth century public by an attitude of anxiety to accept some authoritative guidance of their æsthetic reactions. This too has been captured by biological forces and the new attitude, for which the word " Snobbism " has been coined, is being exploited by picture-dealers who sell works of startling and fictitious originality which are accepted almost in proportion to their lack of any evident charm.

Another phenomenon of twentieth century art is the recognition of the hypnotic influence of imagery by the great industrial concerns, and the increasing employment of artists for poster designs. There are signs that these magnates are beginning to enjoy the prestige value which art confers on them almost as much as its economic value, which indeed tends to grow less with its general use. If this is the case, they will be found repeating almost exactly the attitude of the great royal advertisers of ancient times.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

General :

Guide Books of the British, and other Museums

J. PIJOAN : *History of Art* ; English trans. ; 3 vols. (Barcelona. 1927–1928)

Propyläen-Kunstgeschichte (Berlin. Various dates)

This is the best collection of reproductions of works of all periods

Early Civilizations and Primitive :

M. C. BURKITT : *Prehistory* (Cambridge. 1921)

G. HARDY : *L'Art nègre* (Paris. 1927)

T. A. JOYCE : *Maya and Mexican Art* (London. 1927)

V. G. CHILDE : *The Most Ancient East* (London. 1928)

Art of Egypt Through the Ages (London. 1931)

M. SWINDLER : *Ancient Painting* (Yale. 1929)
G. RICHTER : *The Sculpture and Sculptors of the Greeks* (Yale. 1929)
M. ROSTOVTZEFF : *Greeks and Iranians in South Russia* (Oxford. 1922)
L. BINYON : *Painting in the Far East* (London. 1923)
A. L. B. ASHTON : *Introduction to Study of Chinese Sculpture* (London. 1924)
E. B. HAVELL : *Indian Sculpture and Painting* (London. 1928)

Post-Christian Art :

O. M. DALTON : *Byzantine Art and Archæology* (Oxford. 1911)
Masterpieces of Russian Painting (London. n.d.) (1930)
L. GONSE : *L'Art Gothique* (Paris. 1890)
A. VENTURI : *Storia dell' Arte Italiana* (Milan. 1901 *et seq.*)
B. BERENSON : *Italian Painters of the Renaissance* (Oxford. 1930)
W. PATER : *The Renaissance* (London and New York. 1898)
Imaginary Portraits (London and New York. 1890)
H. WÖLFFLIN : *Kunstgeschichtliche Grundbegriffe* (Munich. 1920) English trans. in preparation
M. ROOSES : *Rubens* ; English trans. (London. 1904)
C. H. COLLINS-BAKER : *Dutch Painting of the 17th Century* (London. 1926)
A. BRÉAL : *Rembrandt* (London. 1902)
Velasquez (London. 1905)
J. ET E. GONCOURT : *L'Art du 18me siècle* (Paris. 1874)
J. MEIER-GRAEFE : *Modern Art* ; English trans. (London. 1908)
R. FRY : *Cézanne* (London. 1927)

THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF ARCHITECTURE

By

C. H. REILLY

SYNOPSIS

1 The scope of architecture — The quality of the appeal to the imagination in buildings which makes them worthy of the term architecture.

2 An analysis of the appeal made by past architecture in the main line of our descent and the chief contribution of each period to the common stock of architectural ideas; the contribution of Egypt, Greece, Rome, Byzantium, of the Gothic period, of the Renaissance and the Baroque.

3 General principles of design — Certain criteria applicable to all buildings irrespective of style such as unity, scale, proportion, inflection and punctuation.

4 The practice of architecture — Modern architects as heirs to the past — The modern schools of thought: (*a*) the Classicists; (*b*) the Gothicists; (*c*) the Eclectics; (*d*) the Modernists.

5 The general effect of modern materials such as steel, ferro-concrete and glass on design. Their special effect on: (1) vertical expression; (2) horizontal expression. Modern development in America and on the continent of Europe.

THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF ARCHITECTURE

Architecture is one of those subjects whose content is difficult to define, but in spite of this everybody has ideas, more or less hazy, as to what the word implies. It is obviously something more than mere building, though not, as some would appear to think, only concerned with cathedrals and buildings of the first class. Is there, on the other hand, any building, even a corrugated iron shed, which under certain circumstances is not worthy of the term ? Certainly it is easy to conceive such a shed, so shaped, composed and coloured that it holds the imagination as securely as some more substantial building to which no one would deny the term. The only reason therefore why all building is not architecture is that we are not yet willing or able, as the Greeks appear to have been, to make it so. We must therefore at the outset consider the conditions which convert mere building into architecture.

We have a hint of these conditions in the word " imagination." A building appeals to the imagination of the beholder. But it may appeal to his imagination in many ways. It might appeal through his imagination to his greed. That sort of appeal would obviously not convert the building into architecture. It might only mean that to him the materials were more valuable in themselves when they were redistributed and the building thereby destroyed, which is a *reductio ad absurdum* of the first order. The appeal to the imagination unqualified is therefore not enough. The qualification, however, is difficult to define. Many buildings, some the most respected in the world, make their appeal for historical reasons. Something has happened in them which makes them sacred. That does not, however, ensure their being architecture. Mr. A. S. G. Butler, in his able book *The Substance of Architecture*, quotes the case of a friend who thought the interior of the celebrated church of St. Antony at Padua a poor edition of the modern Westminster Cathedral. " Perhaps," he says, " his judgement was a little callow and his sentiment for history peculiarly small, but his regard for architecture was of the right sort because he cared solely for the thing in itself and for none of its accessories. He had compared the impressions given him by two rather similar large churches, one in Venetia and the other in London, and had formed an opinion of them *as churches*, quite unbiased by historical importance, local association or age. He had studied and walked about in both and found himself more satisfied in the modern one, and so, quite properly, this was the better architecture. For, like anything else done for the amelioration of life, the object of architecture is to give satisfaction."

It will be agreed, I think, that Mr. Butler and his friend are right. The quality of the appeal to the imagination, which turns mere building into architecture, is an æsthetic one. The building, however humble, however

old, however new, however large or small, whatever its purpose may be, must make its appeal to the imagination as a thing of beauty. Beauty, however, leads one into vast fields of discussion which are out of place here. We must therefore make some assumptions, and most people not professional philosophers will make them readily enough. By beauty we must imply various qualities, and above all things the quality of unity. The building must have a general unity of conception; the thought and imagination, that is to say, that have gone to its conception must have direction and purpose. In other words, the building must be significant, not just haphazard. Its design must be definitely organized, whether consciously or unconsciously does not matter; and organized for the particular materials used. It must be a design in those materials. The result may, of course, be ugly, for there is certainly a significance in ugliness if that ugliness has vitality and power.

Which buildings of the world make most strongly this appeal to the æsthetic imagination, which buildings, that is to say, are considered the best architecture, will vary to a certain extent from time to time, according as the individual and racial imagination varies. In every age and country racial ambitions and feelings, like the other local conditions of religion, country, climate, available materials and the varying usages of civilization, have helped to determine the forms architecture has taken. They still do to-day, but to a less degree owing to such things as the quickened means of transport, the increased use of new materials like glass and concrete which have the same qualities everywhere, and to the genuine internationalism of outlook which is growing up in all big centres and is more apparent to-day perhaps in the arts than in any other field of work. Nevertheless to understand the scope and appeal of modern architecture it is still necessary, if in less detail than heretofore, to realize the outlook and contribution of each of the great periods in those races which are, as it were, in the direct line of our descent. The batter of a wall, for instance, that is, its slope inwards, in giving a sense of immovability and permanence, must always owe something through association of ideas to the monuments of ancient Egypt. Tradition in building has been described as crystallized reasoning. Such tradition, such reasoning, that is to say, may or may not be logical and valid to-day. To discover this one must consider a little how the traditional forms came about and what were the desires and ideals to which they answered. Some of the needs, spiritual or physical, to which past architecture answered may not exist to-day but, whether that is so or not, the methods by which they were expressed have value. To judge fairly any past work of architecture these needs must be known. They are the programme which the designers had before them. Although for its final and ultimate appeal to the imagination as a piece of abstract form it may not be necessary to appreciate that programme in all its detail, it is very necessary to understand it in order to grasp the evolution of architectural forms and to see how they have changed from age to age, crystallizing on the way into what are called the styles. Only so can we hope to find our way, and judge the changes which are taking place at the present time, and discover perhaps where a like crystallization is going on. Before discussing therefore the present position and the scope of modern architecture, with its new problems and

opportunities, it is necessary to see something of what each of the main periods in our line of descent has contributed to the general architectural language.

EGYPT

The first country in which we see architecture which we feel still directly and indirectly affects that of our own time is ancient Egypt. The Egyptians were a people with very marked characteristics, and they lived in a land with equally strong physical peculiarities. The life of the country is, and always has been, dependent on the Nile in a way that no other country depends on a single river. Running for several hundred miles through a comparatively narrow strip of fertile land, with desert sands or hills on either side, the Nile not only provides the means of transport but, by controlled irrigation, makes the country independent of variations of climate. The unending river and a monotonous land, largely cut off from the rest of the world, led on the one hand to a civilization which lasted with little change for four thousand years and on the other, no doubt, helped to formulate those beliefs by which not only was the life in the body considered a transitory thing and life after death of far greater importance, but the maintenance of the body itself in an unaltered state a thing of the first consideration. Hence the desire, evidenced on all sides in tombs and temples alike, to build with the utmost permanence. These indeed are the only buildings which have come down to us and, thanks largely to the dryness of the climate, in a remarkable state of preservation. If the ordinary dwelling-houses had been built as substantially, or even the palaces of the Pharaohs, some remains of them would too have lasted. The racial imagination of the Egyptians was fixed then on their tombs and religious buildings. To make the tomb or the temple permanent, impressive, mysterious, was obviously a religious necessity. To express this was the chief function of their architecture. That architecture should be functional and should derive its forms directly from the function that the building and its various parts have to serve, with as little extraneous decoration and make-believe as possible, is the great cry to-day in the revolt from traditional forms which is everywhere taking place. All the great styles of architecture are seen to exhibit this quality when the function their buildings serve is properly understood, though that function is often more complicated than it was in ancient Egypt.

To express their needs the ancient Egyptians evolved a peculiarly massive, simple style of architecture, constructed of great stones, in which the chief elements are the long unbroken wall, useful against the sun, the flat stone roof, easy to manage in a climate with little rain and no snow, the stout stone columns, connected to one another or to the walls with heavy stone lintels. The arch, though known, was not used. The dead weight of one great stone upon another was preferred to a sideway thrust making the structure depend for stability upon abutment. The pyramids, solid stone hills of sharp arresting outline in which each stone rests evenly on the one below, are the greatest example of this preference.

Mystery was obtained by a long main vista, enhanced by preparatory avenues of great sphinxes, passing next through the entrance to the temple, a small doorway between two great battering masses of similar

shape called pylons, then through sunlit courts each divided by similar pylons and lined along the walls with heavy columns and lintels casting great shadows, then through a hall with a forest of closely packed columns on either side and lit only down the central avenue by small windows raised above the roof, and finally into a series of apartments, each with a floor slightly raised and a ceiling slightly lowered compared to its predecessor to increase the perspective, until absolute darkness was reached. Among these columns in the darkness and semi-darkness stood gigantic granite statues of a simplification of form and an intensity of feeling which, in those of the best periods, have never been surpassed. The columns, walls and ceilings were generally covered with incised figures and designs in low relief and brightly coloured, so that when a procession carrying lights passed through the temple strange figures of men with heads of birds and similar devices would suddenly light up. Everything therefore was done to impress the beholder gradually penetrating the temple as he walked along the central axis and passed by stages from bright sunlight to deep blackness. Along this axis there was complete unity of idea and that idea very powerfully expressed. If one walked, however, round the exterior of the temple, or viewed it from a distance from any point except on this main axis, the total form bore no such significance. One simply saw a wall breaking back at indeterminate intervals and becoming lower at each. The building therefore has not complete external unity as well as internal. That combination of excellences was to be achieved by the Greeks and then lost for centuries.

The craftsmanship of the masonry varies a great deal, as was to be expected in buildings carried out by slave labour. Much of the design and execution is crude, and the architecture as a whole is not as impressive as the sculpture. Nevertheless, the great scale which is everywhere maintained and the simplicity, grandeur and power of the main ideas which inform it, gave to Egyptian architecture a status and value which are still a measure of, and inspiration for, the expression of similar ideas where they apply to-day.

GREECE

In the buildings of the Greeks we find the same simple post and lintel construction as in those of the Egyptians, but carried so much further in expressiveness and refinement that one is justified in saying that it is now carried to perfection. Under a régime of political liberty and professional salaried labour the size of buildings, compared to those erected under the slave conditions of Egypt, had to be curtailed. But that suited the Greek ideal. To do a smaller thing perfectly was to them more important than to do a larger thing imperfectly. In their chief buildings this ideal was fostered by the material used, a homogeneous self-coloured marble of the finest quality. It was fostered too by the fact that, like the Egyptians, their chief buildings were temples and by the further fact that, unlike the Egyptians, these temples were objects to be seen, in the main, externally. They were not for congregational use. Such public services as there were took place round an altar erected in front of them. As objects to be venerated in this way rather than used their temples were set on raised sites.

as the Parthenon on the Acropolis at Athens. These sites were raised, but not too much. There was not a temple for instance on the top of Lycobettus, the big mountain behind Athens. The sites were so chosen that the temple, though raised above the town as a monument, still belonged to it. This isolation of the temple affected its design. It contributed, no doubt, to its simple monumental form as well as to the refinements of its detail. The slight enlargement of the diameter of the columns at the corners of the peristyle, or encircling range of columns, to prevent their seeming thinner than the others when seen against the sky and the upward curving of the enriched lintel to prevent the appearance of sagging, are but two among a great number of similar refinements. The type of Greek temple did not greatly change. During the few hundred years in which it rose to perfection it maintained its rectangular shape in spite of the two main variations, Doric and Ionic, representing two racial streams each with their special deities. To the perfection of this single type of temple building the Greeks, lovers of order and harmony as they were, brought their capacity for logical thinking and their mathematical ability as well as the finest craftsmanship yet seen in masonry sculpture and decorative painting. They knew the value of a system of simple proportions readily to be grasped by the eye. They understood the impressiveness of large simple parts even in a small building and, by the fineness of their masonry joints, gave to their columns, made of several drums, the appearance of great monoliths. The colouring they used for a further finish no doubt helped this appearance. When a lime stone had to be used in place of marble the building was coated with a marble stucco, so that its intellectual character as a complete conception should not be interfered with by any accidental or romantic effects.

Here then were buildings once more expressing a definite set of ideas and answering very closely, as all good buildings must, to the character of their designers. They stood for perfection of proportion and finish and for an abstract, remote, almost inhuman beauty. Their broken fragments to-day are more like fragments of broken statuary than of buildings. Yet, for all this, people of a northern race, and living under cloud filled skies, are bound to feel a certain want of mystery and romance, a certain absence of imagination, that many cruder types of building possess. In a less vivid light the subtleties and refinements of Greek mouldings are lost. Certain it is that modern Greek buildings in northern latitudes—and the last hundred and fifty years have seen many attempts to create such—always appear cold and uncomfortable.

ROME

The perfection of the individual building as an isolated sculptured monument was very far from the Roman ideal. As the conquerors of the world the Romans needed a set of architectural forms which could be executed in any land and, to a great extent, by unskilled persons. Large stones for lintels not only require considerable skill in their manipulation, but were not to be found in all the places to which the empire spread. It was necessary therefore to adopt some other means of bridging from one point of support to another, and one, too, which could be carried out in

small stones or even in bricks. Under these circumstances the Romans chose the semicircular arch, which their near neighbours, the Etruscans, had already used, together with its continuation, the barrel or semicircular vault. From this it was but a step to the cross vault obtained by the intersection of two equal barrel vaults or to the dome, which is the arch rotated about a centre. The great constructional advance, however, of the Romans, due in the first instance to their cement, was the application of mass concrete to these forms and on a gigantic scale. Their use of the arch as a whole, however, was rather like the Egyptian use of the lintel compared to the Greek. The Romans did not explore, that is to say, all its constructional possibilities. That was left to the designers of the Gothic period. On the other hand they wisely allowed it to influence their plan forms, which are full of graceful apses and niches softening the rectangular forms of their apartments, cloaking changes of axis and ending vistas. With their simple vaults too, especially when those vaults were constructed of mass concrete, they obtained great impressiveness. Their vast halls, now that the surface decoration has fallen from their walls and only the solid brickwork is visible together with the remains of the concrete vaulting hanging to it, are grand and moving things. As the concrete of these vaults had to be poured in a wet state on to the wooden centering, designed to hold it in place till it was set, the Romans often placed on this centering a series of boxes which, when the centering was removed, left in the surface of the concrete a series of deep recesses or coffers. This coffering, varying with the curve of the surface, was a natural and appropriate method of decorating a cast material like concrete, and, because it arose directly out of the nature of the material instead of being copied from Greek architecture like so many of their motives, was one of the most successful forms of decoration they used. For the rest they largely applied to their buildings, both externally and internally, a veneer of imitation architecture very often unrelated to the structure behind. For such purposes they formalized the types of Greek columns and lintels and added to them to form the Five Orders, or five standardized types of columns and lintels, laying down definite rules for their proportions. In this way they evolved a form of architectural decoration which, if lacking in individuality, could be carried out anywhere within the empire. This view of architecture as so much formalized scenery led nevertheless to the great forums and other formal enclosures in their towns, to the long colonnaded streets with their vistas ending on a triumphal arch or other decorative object, which have formed ever since the basis of the town-planning of the more formal parts of our cities. In the same way the relations of the great and lesser halls to each other in the Roman Thermae, arranged about two axes at right angles, with the enhancement of the vistas so formed, have been, and still are, the basis of the planning of most of our public buildings. Fortunately Roman detail usually finds its way into modern buildings by way of the Renaissance, the architects of which, especially the Italian ones, gave it a refinement unknown to the Roman originals. From all this it will be seen that Roman architecture has many affinities with modern work, which it is still influencing in every country. Some of the better of these have been pointed out, but one can go further. The great commercial buildings of to-day, while their planning has to be

direct and practical like that of the Romans, are largely designed, as their Roman predecessors were, to express themselves by their grandeur rather than by their vitality. As in the Roman buildings, this grandeur is assumed like a cloak placed over a substructure of coarser stuff. The Roman *appliqué* of marbles arranged into a scenic architecture of pilasters and entablatures corresponds very closely to the make-believe architecture of columns and other classical trappings that one sees applied to-day like sugar icing to the steel frames of great blocks of offices. In both a certain make-believe takes the place of real romance and mystery. These latter are indeed the qualities that were chiefly lacking in Roman work. While Roman buildings, especially when executed in solid stone, brick or concrete and left without veneers of other materials, gave to the world a new sense of grandeur, of scale and of the relationship of one building to another, as well as a new power to roof in vast halls in a solid and impressive way, which for solemnity has not yet been surpassed, we must turn to other periods and countries to find that intimate, unfettered and individual outlook which alone can give free expression to the artist's spirit.

BYZANTINE EARLY CHRISTIAN AND ROMANESQUE ARCHITECTURE

The qualities of spirituality and intimacy which Roman architecture, in spite of or perhaps because of its grandeur, so largely lacked, found fresh life in one at least of the styles of architecture which grew out of its ashes. When the capital of the Empire was moved by Constantine to Byzantium, its buildings came more directly under Greek influence. That influence had not been absent in Rome, but there and in other parts of the empire where Greeks had been employed, they had been employed mainly as craftsmen working to other people's designs and not as originating artists. There are plenty of examples in the Roman Empire of fine craftsmanship, such as the detailing of the Maison Carrée at Nîmes, which can be attributed to such journeymen. At Byzantium, however, in the atmosphere of the East, the Greek architect as master-designer and builder comes into view and at once we have a cleaning up, as it were, of Roman building. The *appliqué* of make-believe architecture disappears, and in its place the great interior wall surfaces are decorated with a veneer of thin panels of marble and fields of gold mosaic on which float decorative motives and figures. Such columns as are used become structural again, carrying walls instead of merely enhancing vistas or supporting figures. The exterior too is left to explain itself, its solidarity being marked perhaps with alternate bands of stone and brick. Once again therefore the structure is encouraged to express itself internally and externally and the dome, its chief element, is developed into a live thing carried on pendentives (curved corbels) and semidomes instead of the heavy inert lid of mass concrete it was in Rome. We get in Byzantium some idea of what the active Greek mind would have made of the arch and its derivatives if it had applied itself to them instead of to purely post and lintel construction.

Under the influence of the East, Byzantine architecture became a field

for rich and elegant surface decoration which in its turn was reflected over Europe. Strains of Byzantine influence, once not unconnected with the Crusades, spread westward, and are still doing so. Much of our modern decoration is based on Byzantine form and colour. It appears in the design and colour of fabrics, in stage scenery, in silver ware and glass. Recently not only the decorative motives but the structural ones have greatly affected church building both in England and in America. In London there is E. F. Bentley's great Westminster Cathedral, frankly Byzantine in the broad surfaces of its domed interior as well as in its decoration, and from this cathedral influences have radiated to a large section of modern church building on both sides of the Atlantic. Whenever a certain kind of emotional appeal is desired, which can be given by richness of decoration combined with spaciousness of aerial enclosure within the gracious shapes of semicircular apses, domes and arches, Europe and America still turn for inspiration to the work of the architect of Sancta Sophia in Constantinople, St. Mark's in Venice and similar buildings. Mr. Howard Robertson, in his very useful introduction to the study of architecture entitled *Architecture Explained*, considers the appeal of Byzantine motives to the emotions as the most important contribution of this Eastern architecture to that of our present times, ranking it with Greek purity and refinement and the powerful grandeur of Roman planning and mass conception.

THE ARCHITECTURE OF THE MIDDLE AGES

Before the rise of Gothic architecture in the north of France, which was to bring about a great epoch in building as far removed in feeling and expression from the previous epochs already described as it is possible to conceive, there were attempts all over Europe to emulate the great Roman halls, although the secret of making Roman cement, and consequently of Roman concrete, was lost. The types of buildings so engendered, whether they have local names like Norman, Provençal or Lombardic, are better understood under the general heading of Romanesque, as are the languages which bear very much the same relationship to classical Latin. The Roman barrel vault and dome were their inspiration, but the construction of these had to be carried out in small stones or bricks. Though a great deal of Early Christian architecture, except for its decorative motives in floor patterns and the permanent furniture of churches, is rightly classed as decadent Roman work in which the bold and essential qualities of the latter are missing, Romanesque building on the other hand is generally anything but decadent in spirit. The boldness and vast scale of great naves like that at Durham Cathedral or of the great Romanesque churches of northern Italy and southern France preclude any such idea. Still the structural requirements to uphold high in the air their great vaults made of small stones, needing either the abutment of thick Roman walls or a system of buttresses such as the fully developed Gothic cathedral possessed, were not appreciated, with the result that most of such vaults have perished. We can feel, however, from the layout of the buildings, from the size and scale of the parts, as well as from the directness of the carved ornament, the vigour of designers whose ambitions outran

their constructive skill. Gradually we find the reinforcing arches, which the Romans themselves had placed within their concrete vaults and domes to hold the loose concrete while setting, reappearing in this Romanesque work, but as supporting arches crossing and strengthening the vault from below. It was probably out of an appreciation of the function of these arches and by introducing them for additional strength at every alteration in the vault surface, as where one vault intersected another, that the system of Gothic ribbed vaulting sprang up. Any structural explanation of this kind, however, let alone any decorative one, is insufficient to explain the totally different character of Gothic building. Such a change, like all fundamental changes in style as distinguished from the superficial ones dictated by fashion, could only be brought about by an equally fundamental change in the spirit, ambitions and outlook of the designers. So deep does this particular change from classical to Gothic now appear, that it can be said with some certainty that every architect to-day is born either a little Classicist or a little Gothicist; either, that is to say, he feels in his bones that form, order and proportion in the abstract are the essence of architectural design or he feels that form and proportion, not in the abstract but proceeding from construction and materials, are the real thing. In Gothic building, construction not only took on new forms but deliberately chose those which resulted from live loads instead of dead, not, that is to say, from adding one dead load to another but from balancing one live thrust against another. It was their system of balanced thrusts which gave to Gothic buildings their dynamic and aspiring quality compared with the static dignity of Greek and Roman work. One immediate result is that height became an essential element in design. For the first time we have tall towers, buildings which pile up against the sky, vertical lines as the dominant ones instead of horizontal. As construction is the most vital element in Gothic design, the inherent architectoric quality of each building material obtains an enhanced importance. Where a Roman builder would cover the structure of his building with a veneer of another material, and articulate that in a manner unrelated to what was behind it, a Gothic one would delight in the texture and inherent qualities of the material with which he was building. Its very inequalities and accidental variations would give him pleasure and be utilized by him. When his system of vaults and buttresses became fully developed, similar accidental variations in planning, owing to the site or to some other extraneous consideration, would be turned to happy account. To make a suitable site for its temples the top of the Acropolis at Athens had to be levelled, whereas the church at the top of Mont St. Michel not only clings to the hill but seems to emphasize and express the hill itself. All this means that adventure, romance, mystery and picturesqueness are once again sought and loved. Architecture with such qualities could only come about among a virile energetic people, and it is not surprising therefore that Gothic started and grew up in the north of Europe, in lands where the sun was less intense and regular in its bounty and where Roman rule, with its mass production and its denial of freedom to the individual, was less strong. Although Gothic architecture rose with extraordinary quickness, reaching heights of heroic adventure with which there is little to compare in other styles, and although it spread over Europe, it lasted in its main

manifestations only some three centuries. The particular spirit of adventure which brought it about died down and other feelings and ambitions took its place. Nevertheless it corresponds to something very deep rooted in human nature which must always be present. We may therefore always experience or expect a revival of its influence. For church building to-day it is still the recognized expression, though softened and modified by Byzantine forms and influences. All through the nineteenth century in England Gothic Revival architecture existed side by side with Greek Revival architecture, each answering, one must suppose, to different temperaments. Unfortunately, it was an archæologically-minded century, so that both sets of revivalists paid more attention to the letter than to the spirit of the style in which they were working. Mr. Charles Marriott suggests that in practice their effect on the body of architecture was compensatory. "But for the Greek Revival," he says, "we might have run to seed in pinnacles and but for the Gothic Revival we might have degenerated into stucco." With Sir Giles Scott's cathedral at Liverpool, which is still building, it is possible that a new chapter in Gothic architecture is already opening, for in it he has managed to combine not only the balance and symmetry of the classical ideal with Gothic construction but has so broadened the Gothic detail that he may be said to have clothed with new flesh the old bones of a style in which the bones generally show a great deal. It is certain that wherever construction is so loved that it provides the mainspring of design and the chief basis for the articulation of the building, the Gothic spirit will live and express itself afresh, whether in an American skyscraper or in a German ferro-concrete concert hall.

THE RENAISSANCE AND THE BAROQUE

The Renaissance was a phenomenon in all the arts which, starting with Italy, spread to every European country. In architecture it was natural that Italy should lead the way in a reaction against Gothic, for it was but a comparatively slight hold that the principles of Gothic architecture were able to obtain in a country with vast Roman remains and where the classical spirit still lingered. It was the function of the Italian Renaissance architects, however, not to bring back Roman methods of building nor, in their early work at any rate, anything corresponding to Roman architecture, but to replace the haphazardness of the mediæval town with Roman orderliness and precision. In the process the early Italian Renaissance architects, with every opportunity and temptation to do so, never became mere copyists of the antique. They invented many lovely forms and motives for which there were no Roman precedents. As has been often pointed out, there is more difference between a Renaissance church and a Roman temple than between a Roman temple and a Greek one. On the other hand it must be admitted that, even more than in the other arts, there was a strong determination to recover Roman methods both of design and construction. Once the possibility of this was realised, the remains of the Roman monuments must have produced a great effect on the imagination. With their far greater scale, if not always greater mass, than mediæval buildings, they must have seemed like the

work of a race of giants no longer to be shunned, as something evil, but rather, with the striking ambition of a time which produced figures like Galileo and Christopher Columbus, to be equalled and surpassed. The serious study of Roman buildings which started with Brunelleschi and Donatello in 1403 gradually gave place however, and especially after the discovery of the works of Vitruvius and their dissemination in endless editions, to an academic interest in a rigid system of proportion for columns, cornices and all other details, which stifled real design, until it was rescued and revivified by Michel Angelo and the other leaders of the Baroque movement. The history of the Italian Renaissance, as far as architecture is concerned, is the history of a school of ordered design, infused in its early stages with a very free and happy spirit especially in its ornament, which, having received its initial impetus from the antique, set out on a new, adventurous and extremely successful career of its own, until it was overtaken and bogged by a flood of misapplied scholarship, from which the only escape was into the new and dangerous freedom of the Baroque. During the process some of the most lovely buildings of the world sprang into existence, such as the Pazzi Chapel by Brunelleschi in Florence, in which Roman forms are used with an elegance almost Greek, but retaining nevertheless the spirit of adventure which every new style exhibits at the outset. Apart from individual buildings, the great achievement of the Italian Renaissance was the formalization of the town mansion, with its tactful balance between the rights of the street and those of the individual owner and, as a sequel to this, the formalization of the street itself into a series of street façades which, while differing among themselves, yet composed into an harmonious whole. France carried this latter idea further in her long designed streets of the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, with their continuous architecture, and England in her town squares and circuses of the same period. The highest synthesis of this kind however was reached in the early nineteenth century by the Regent Street in London of John Nash, which has unfortunately been rebuilt in recent years on commonplace lines. In the old street the buildings on either side, although in separate occupation as a series of shops and premises above, were conceived as separate compositions, each stretching from side street to side street; yet, by the similar height of the buildings and their shop facias and main cornices, but more still by all the buildings being informed with the same spirit and, though designed by different architects, designed in harmony with one another, this street reached a higher and more interesting form of street expression than any merely continuous design could achieve. It was indeed a procession of palaces, but palaces which, though differing, in a subtle way belonged to one another and to the street as a whole. Perhaps the greatest of all the gifts the Italian Renaissance gave to architecture was this civic sense which has made it possible to conceive a town, if one such has not yet been built on any scale, which is not only an organism with its separate parts and individual buildings expressing their separate functions, but one in which all such parts and structures have an hierarchic relation one to the other and are consciously designed as subordinate parts in their proper order of subordination to the conception of the whole. Sir Christopher Wren's plan for the rebuilding of London after the fire is perhaps the nearest

approach on paper to such an ideal, while the cities of Washington and New Delhi are the nearest approach in reality.

Among the gifts of the Renaissance which cannot be overlooked in however short a survey is that of the Baroque. The Baroque was the expression of a new spirit in architecture, a spirit of self-dramatization, of adopting a definite pose and swagger, not, as it were, wholly believed in by the actors. Its products must not be confused with the massive grandeur of Roman work on the one hand or the trumpery glitter of the *rococo*, a small scale degeneration of it, on the other. Although a great deal of Roman architecture was scenic architecture, it was not necessarily dramatic. The Baroque, however, always is. Its grandeur lies in the ideas expressed rather than in the materials used, which were often poor enough. It came about as a reaction to the academic architecture of the Vitruvian and similar rules and it obviously answered to a universal craving, for it quickly spread to all European lands. In so doing it often overtook the more sober forms of the Renaissance, so that in some countries, such as Germany and England, it is found mixed up with a tentative use of the Orders, that is to say before even the ideas of classical architecture had been clearly grasped. The invention of printing and wood block engraving, by enabling ideas and motives to travel at a rapid rate, had a good deal to do with this. The travels of Italian artists about Europe had much the same result. In France, for instance, we find in the time of Henri Quatre strong Roman exteriors with rich Baroque interiors. In England, largely cut off by the Reformation from direct contact with Italy and obtaining her knowledge of the new movement secondhand from Germany and the Low Countries, we find in Elizabethan and Jacobean architecture a strong mixture of the Baroque in buildings still Gothic in structure.

The Baroque architect conceives his building as so much plastic material, to be modelled very much as a sculptor does his lump of clay. Though the structure has to have its apartments and staircases like any other building, these are quickly given, by means of sweeping curves, a definite relation to the movement of the whole. In spite of the horror with which the Baroque was viewed in the last century, it can be readily seen that its buildings obey a law of their own, in which every part is subservient to the total dramatic effect. They possess therefore, often to a very high degree, the quality of unity so necessary to a work of art. Any building in which display was part of the programme easily fell within their scope. Palaces for the parade life of princes were particularly adapted to it, as were churches when worship took the form of high ceremonial. Gardens too became a favourite field for the baroque architect, for Nature herself, especially in a semi-tropical country, often falls in with the mood.

The chief value of the Baroque to-day is that it provides a contrast to the hard lines of modern building based on steel construction. It can provide many happy incidents in the long lines of streets, as the Baroque fountains do in Vienna. With life daily becoming more and more mechanical, the happy free spirit of the Baroque, careless of conventions and proprieties and even of the obvious laws of construction, provides a welcome release for the human spirit. While a large Baroque town might be a

nightmare, Baroque incidents in towns can be as delightful as a Chelsea china figure on a stiff marble mantelpiece.

While every nation produced its variants of early and central Renaissance architecture, as well as of academic classic and the Baroque, which it is not necessary to follow here, a word must be added about the French forms. France, in spite of her starting the great Gothic stream of building and developing its constructive possibilities to their highest pitch, was the quickest after Italy to adopt the ordered architecture of the Renaissance, and at once gave it a peculiar and national significance. The movement in France began with the châteaux of the King and the great nobles, that is with buildings either in the country or in small towns where they stood up high above their surroundings. In such buildings, in contrast to the urban palaces of Italy to be seen in narrow streets, the roofs of these châteaux outlined against broad landscapes or across whole towns naturally played a great part in the composition. It was for this reason perhaps that the architecture of French Renaissance buildings relied more on the masses of the building, the grouping that is to say of the various pavilions, than on the paraphernalia of the columns either free standing in portico or colonnade. This again is reflected in the plans. The French Renaissance architects were far quicker even than the Italians to see and adopt for their own purposes the elegances of Roman planning. They may be said to have done for Roman plan forms what the Italians did for Roman elevations, that is to say, they edited them for the modern world, while adding elegances and refinements undreamt of by their originators. Whereas other countries, such as England and Holland, have given a homely turn to Roman architecture, reducing it as it were to the domestic level, it has been the province of France to develop logically the broad spaciousness of Roman planning and, at the same time, to invent for such plans an elevational treatment which, if based on the Roman Orders, was not only suited to her climate but was decked with the peculiar elegance her designers are always able to achieve.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF DESIGN

There are certain general principles of design, in the main very simple, which can be applied as criteria to the design of any building. If such principles, however, covered the whole ground, there would be no such thing as the art of architecture but only the science of architecture, and every man or woman could by industry become an architect. We know that that is not so, and that the intentions of the artist go in many directions much further than the deductions of the man of science ; even in the higher realms of the latter there seems to-day a considerable tendency to adopt the artist's methods. It is possible, however, as in music and indeed all the arts, to lay down certain general rules as guiding principles, with regard to architectural expression, remembering that in every art the genius will in time break them all in favour of some wider generalization and that he will then—or more probably a century later—be rightly applauded for so doing.

The first general principle is the maintenance of unity in any design.

There must be a dominant mass or feature holding the various parts of the design together, as the church tower does the English village. If a design has two equal masses, like the twin towers at the west front of Notre Dame in Paris, those towers must either be bound together so that they become complementary parts of one mass or they must be dominated by a third mass in the way the central tower of Durham Cathedral, from certain points of view, dominates the two western ones. We have seen that the Greeks set immense store on the principle of unity, giving it their chief attention in the development of their temples, which however, as a rule, consisted of simply shaped single masses. Their problem was not to take two or more masses and so vary and model them that they combined satisfactorily into one whole, but so to relate the parts of a single mass that each contributed to and intensified the expression of the whole. If we examine in detail any part of a Greek temple we find no unresolved duality anywhere. The front, for instance—although there is an equal number of columns on either side of the central axis, these columns are united and held together by the strong entablature and the climax of the triangular pediment above. It may be suggested that this is not the case with the side, but the side is meant to lead up to and to be read with the front. This principle of unity applies likewise to all floating or semi-independent portions of a design, such as doors and windows in themselves. If a door has four panels, either the upper pair or the lower should be the taller. Four panels in pairs, one above the other of equal length, would make a very tiresome door. We all know how unpleasant a sash window looks if the sashes are of equal height and there are no other division bars. If, however, there are division bars so that the window consists, say, of eight panes to each sash, the duality disappears in the pattern of the sixteen panes as a whole. Inigo Jones's well known Banqueting Hall in Whitehall is a building which appears, on looking at it carefully, to consist of two equal storeys of windows, each between a range of columns of nearly equal height. The fact that most of us do not feel any difficulty about this, or even notice it at first glance, is due to the way in which the architect has given dominance to the upper storey by the frieze of heavy wreaths between the capitals of the columns and to the height to which he has raised his balustrade. Most architects unconsciously and easily avoid duality in their main masses, though it often creeps in with the minor detail. A pair of gate piers, for instance, with an iron gate between them, would provide a case of unpleasant duality if on the far side of each pier were iron railings of a similar height and design to the gate. The piers would then stand out as a definite pair of identical things. If, instead of the iron railings, there was a brick wall on the far side of each pier, the iron gate itself would make a third feature, binding together the other two and in that way producing the necessary unity. The clock tower between the two great arches of King's Cross Station in London serves this purpose, though it would serve it better if it were still more dominant.

The next general principle is punctuation (to adopt the classification of Mr. Trystan Edwards, who has written more incisively on the theory of formal design than anyone else). By this is meant that every element not serving as a link between others must have its terminations emphasized.

The obvious example of this is a column with its well-marked base and capital. Without these there would seem to be no reason why the column should be of any particular height. It may be replied that the Greek Doric column has no base, but the answer to that is that it always stood on the strongly-marked, horizontal lines of steps and that these served as a base. If the Greeks had used it standing free as a pedestal for a figure, as the Romans often used their columns, it would probably have been given some feature which would have served that purpose. The other exception which jumps to the mind is the columns of the Doge's Palace at Venice, but these have the definite appearance, probably intentional, of sinking into the ground. They suggest the piles on which the building is built. One of the well-known ways of punctuating the base of a building is to stand it on a series of columns which, contrasting with the horizontal lines of the wall above or of the pavement below, give to the base of the wall a very strong emphasis. It will be clear, however, apart from these exceptional cases, if they are that, that definition of outline is obviously a desirable quality in any design in the solid. One must know and feel where a wall, a tower, or roof ends, to form a satisfactory impression of the total design in one's mind. The apparently unfinished and certainly unpunctuated tops of the mediæval towers, which crowd the little hill town of St. Gimignano near Sienna, give one a sense of incompleteness, as if the town had just been sacked and the towers broken off. The thickening of the base of a wall and the marking of that thickening on the exterior with plinths, mouldings and the like seem an obvious thing to do, but a great deal of the satisfaction provided by a fine monumental wall, like those of the Florentine palaces, comes from such punctuation. In such palaces, and in others in Italy, the emphasis of the base is often increased by moulding it into a stone seat running the full length of the façade. The top of the wall is also strongly marked, either by the overhang of the roof, by the cornice which derives from it, or by some setting in of the parapet which emphasizes the fact that the wall is as high as this and no higher. In some modern German designs it is the fashion at the moment to cut off the wall of a great building sharp at the top without anything to mark the finish, and unless there is, as is usually the case, a topmost range of windows of different design from those below which serves the same purpose, the result is very crude. There seems indeed no reason why the building should not have another half-dozen storeys. In the more formal buildings of the Italian Renaissance the punctuation of the wall was carried very much further. Not only was each storey marked with a string course or band, thickening the wall where wall plates to receive the floor were inserted at the back, but the surface of the stone was varied from storey to storey, starting with the roughest quarry-faced stones and ending with a smooth surface of evenly cut stones to reflect, as it were, the glories of the great cornice immediately above it. In addition, these various stages of the wall were given vitality and interest by variety in the depths of the courses and lengths of the stones. Quoins, or alternate long and short stones, in the same way, define and punctuate the horizontal limits of a wall. That is why they are generally left out in a street front abutting on others as too unneighbourly an assertion of private rights. The continuity of the wall surface from building to building, which was so common in the

eighteenth century streets, was a gentlemanly admission that the street had its claims as well as the individual.

The third general principle is called by Mr. Trystan Edwards "the canon of inflection." It is the principle which governs the relation of the parts of a building to the whole and the relation of the whole to what lies outside. Punctuation, it will be seen at once, is but a special form of inflection in which an object takes cognizance of its boundaries. The western towers of St. Paul's Cathedral are punctuated very elaborately, the curved features at the top contrasting strongly with the vertical and horizontal lines below. They are, however, inflected as well to contrast with the dome. Their very elaboration, as well as their elongated shape, both pay deference to the great simple swelling curves of the latter. It has often been suggested that the thin lead spire of Wren's Church in Ludgate Hill, which from the base of the hill is seen against the cathedral, received from him its needle-like shape to throw up the mass of the great cathedral. The preparation every good building makes for every large feature is an obvious but important form of inflection. Most domed buildings like St. Paul's or St. Peter's (as originally designed) have a projecting portico or similar feature without which the dome would seem not to belong to the substructure, which is another way of saying the substructure has been inflected in deference to the dome. The frieze to a Greek Doric temple, with its alternate strongly marked vertical lines and carved panels, prepares the eye for the richness of the figures in the pediment, while the slight projections immediately under these vertical lines modify the plain strength of the lintel and make preparation for the frieze. One often hears the criticism that a feature of a building seems "stuck on," and there may be a proper basis for such criticism. It may be that the building in question has not been sufficiently inflected to lead one to expect the feature complained of.

The net result of all this is that inflection is the safeguard against crudity. It applies, if in a lesser degree, between the building and its neighbours, or should in a fully civilized town, as it does between one part of a building and another or one section of a moulding and the next. In a street it should regulate the attitude of one building not only to the next but to the whole street and, in an ideal town, of each building to the whole. There is no doubt that in periods of high civic manners something of the kind took place. Sir William Chambers apparently took care that the dome over the central feature of the river front of Somerset House in London did not rise to a height which would make it challenge the dome of St. Paul's, and in a time of less civic manners the architect of the Central Criminal Court in the Old Bailey in the same town did not take the same precaution. Sir William Chambers's courtesy, it is pleasant to think, was repaid to his own building when James Rennie, the designer of Waterloo Bridge, took pains that its long horizontal line should coincide, instead of conflicting, with that of the terrace of Somerset House.

It is needless to say that the principles already enumerated apply equally to the plan of a building. Assuming a plan has satisfied the practical requirements, the æsthetic judgement one passes on it must be based on considerations similar to those applied to the exterior. Has it unity? Do the apartments bear a definite and not haphazard relation to one

another ? Do the vistas end adequately and not just peter out ? These considerations do not of course preclude the element of surprise and contrast. Contrast is just as much an inflection as adjustment and preparation.

There are two other rather difficult things which must be referred to in this section. They are proportion and scale—both, however, things which cannot be definitely explained. Though they are obviously part of the method of inflecting a building, they are governed so much by the idiosyncrasy of the designer that no general rules can be laid down. A great modern architect, whom all respect, when asked what was good proportion replied laconically " God." What is good proportion to one man will not be so good to another. It is safe however to say this, that by maintaining a system of similar proportions throughout a building, say the same ratios of height to width in all openings, and by setting out one's building on a system of unit spacing, a sense of unity and power is fostered, until of course one wishes to break it for some dramatic effect. All attempts however to express architecture in terms of mathematics come to grief somewhere or other. Generally the ratios quoted are either too simple or too recondite to satisfy the æsthetic sense. There seems too within such limits to be no reason why any particular ratio should have more virtue than any other, except perhaps to a particular individual. The only constant element in the proportions of a building is the height and shape of the human figure. Doors and windows have, for instance, a direct relation to the human figure and consequently their proportions have a psychological reaction. A wider doorway than usual, such as that of a double door, at once suggests spaciousness, whereas a very narrow doorway, through which a man can barely squeeze, suggests cramped, prison-like quarters. Such questions are mixed up with that of scale, or the relative size of the parts of a building, to which short reference must be made.

It is important for good design that a building should look its size—a large building large and a small building small. The architect therefore introduces into his design doors, windows and other elements, related to the human figures, of such a size that the beholder has some means of measuring the size of the building. He might make an isolated building look twice its size if he halved the size of such features, but directly a human being approached this false size would be exploded. Within limits, however, he can do a great deal to give the character he desires to his building by altering the scale of such parts. The great door to an Italian palazzo at once seems to suggest that the owner is a fine fellow with fine apartments in his house, an effect to which the wide spacing of the windows gives further colour. Having once set the scale of a building, that is to say the air with which it should carry itself, it is highly important that this scale should be preserved in all important parts. A fine brave front to a public building must not sink, even in a key block or a single piece of ornament, to the scale suitable to similar features in a small domestic building, while even more obviously the reverse is the case. To maintain the same scale throughout a building, until one comes to a set of *petits appartements* or to a chapel or chantry purposely and obviously of another scale, is but to express another aspect of the necessary unity. A building designed on one scale cannot be reproduced on another and be

successful in both. The attempt in the cathedral at Montreal to make a reduced St. Peter's at Rome is an obvious failure, in spite of the abnormal scale of the latter. Scale, like proportion, is an instrument in the hands of the designer to obtain certain effects. By contrasting one thing of recognizable size with another the scale of that other may be forced up or down. The posterns within the great doors of a cathedral give a sense of size to the latter, and these in their turn to that of the porches in which the doors are set. These porches again form a foil to the west front and so on. The one thing however which is certain in regard to the scale of buildings is that the Scottish proverb " Many a mickle makes a muckle " is not true. A large number of small parts may together make a big building but, unless by inflection the whole has unity and scale, the building, however big, will lack the power to affect the imagination which a building a quarter the size with larger parts may possess. One has only to think of numberless examples of the modern apartment house or block of flats to realise that this is so.

In addition to those already discussed, there are two more general qualities in a building which should be mentioned. A building, like any other work of art, must have character in the general sense answering to the nobility of mind and intention or otherwise on the part of its designer, as well as to the idiosyncrasies of his personality. It differs, however, from a painting or piece of sculpture in that it must have functional character as well. Now functional character is of two kinds, first and foremost the character which a building or any part of it gets from its form being dictated by its function, that is to say by the practical purpose it serves, and secondly by the traditional form with which such a purpose is associated. When we say of a church that we like it because it looks like a church we are, generally speaking, being influenced by traditional form. When, however, we admire a grain elevator with its row of powerful concrete containers and say it has character, we mean that the mechanical function the elevator performs has been clearly expressed. Most buildings make use of both forms of expression, that is to say, their character is emphasized both by associated ideas and by a general truthfulness to the functions they serve. The modernists however, who attempt to throw over all traditional forms, rely entirely on the latter. To them anything beyond that is sentimental and false. Each section of their buildings and its function should be marked on the exteriors. Windows, for instance, take a long horizontal shape if that is the best shape to light a particular apartment, regardless of the pattern they are making on the exterior. This is not the method of nature with the human figure. Though that figure can be made to express an infinite variety of character with admirable clearness, the separate functions of the various minor organs do not receive, fortunately, separate expression. However, for those whose worthy ambition it is, with the aid of new materials and new methods of construction, to use less and less of the traditional forms in order to bring about an architecture more expressive of our times and purposes, it is an excellent beginning to allow their designs in the first instance to be regulated by function, for we may be sure, however crude the first results may be, there will be by this method no pompous or unnecessary decoration and no inherent vulgarity.

Modern architects in their daily practice may roughly be divided into four schools : (1) the Classicists, (2) the Gothicists, (3) the Eclectics, (4) the Modernists. That most of them would deny that their own work falls into one or other of these categories is a good sign, which nevertheless does not prevent it from being a fact. Let us take each division in turn.

The Classicists are those architects by whom the love of ordered abstract form is deeply felt. They are the inheritors of the Roman and Renaissance ideals and in a modern world, governed by law and with order prescribed on every hand, they are bound to exist in large numbers and to find constant employment. They are likely to include in their ranks official architects of every kind, who by the nature of their employment are little given to taking risks. In the eighteenth century and the early part of the nineteenth they were supreme in all European countries and in America. The romantic revival however before the end of the eighteenth century had already produced an affected form of Gothic, of which Walpole's Strawberry Hill villa is the stock example. Even before that there had been those world-wide bursts of pent-up energy and the sharp struggles to break free from the restraint of the rules of classical architecture, which the baroque and rococo movements in design represented. The course of classical architecture had indeed never been a continuous or consistent one. The first half of the eighteenth century, with its comparatively settled social order, was its great flowering time both in England and France. The ordered arrangement of the windows of the Georgian or Colonial house, whether in town or country, seems to express exactly the best qualities of combined refinement and dignity which that century offered to the more fortunate. With the rise of the manufacturing classes and their individualistic outlook these qualities rapidly broke down. The whole hierarchic system of country town or village, which in the eighteenth century produced a cousinship between the small Georgian house of the professional man or successful tradesman and the classical mansion of the squire, gave place in the nineteenth century, especially in the northern industrial towns of England, to the overgrown and overdecorated villas of the manufacturers on the outskirts of the town and to the rows of mean little boxes for his employees within the town itself. Beyond this there was no real link between their types of architecture, if that term can be extended to either. The manufacturer as an individualist, little conscious of the appeals of culture or even the dictates of fashion, began to house himself according to his fancy, and when the Gothic Revival starting in another field loosened the bands of tradition even for the cultured, he was ready for any experiment in plate glass, Gothic tracery and terra cotta which came along. The result on the architecture of the nineteenth century was chaos on the one hand and two ever hardening schools, one of Classicists and the other of Gothicists, on the other. With the former this naturally tended to a revival of Greek forms. The Bank or Baptist Chapel in England, the Law Courts building or State Treasury in America, assumed the portico, if not the complete peristyle, of a Greek temple. In France

Napoleon, assessing the competitive plans for the Madeleine in his carriage during the retreat from Moscow, in order one hopes to distract both his eyes and his thoughts, awarded the prize to a great temple structure. The next phase, generally called the Neo Grec, was probably due to the indirect influence of the Gothic revivalists. The restricted if high ideal of the Greek temple was naturally found insufficient for all modern purposes. The Gothic revivalists were offering freedom of plan and outline to their devotees. Perhaps the Greek revivalists felt the influence of this freedom. The result, at any rate, was the production of buildings like Duc's Palais de Justice in Paris and Cockerell's buildings in England, in which the architects felt they were free to use all the Greek and post-Greek motives, Roman and Renaissance, and blend them together. In the hands of great artists like these, their knowledge and taste were sufficient curb on their imagination, and powerful and expressive buildings resulted. In lesser hands this freedom meant the luxuriant ornateness of the Paris Opera House. In Scotland it produced free scenic compositions like Thomas Hamilton's Edinburgh High School or, where the same architect added Renaissance motives, so fine a block as that of the Royal College of Physicians in Queen Street in the same town. The climax of the whole movement may be said to be the great Græco-Roman building of St. George's Hall, Liverpool, begun by Harvey Lonsdale Elmes and finished by C. R. Cockerell, in the exterior of which, although far more complex than the simple Greek temple, there are no motives to which the greatest classical purist could object, while even the Gothicist must admit that it not only admirably expresses its purpose—a great covered forum for the town—but also truthfully explains the main divisions of its plan.

After St. George's Hall in England and Schinkel's Museum in Berlin, the building which most nearly approaches to it, the classical movement gradually gave way before that of the Gothicists, till it was revived at the end of the century, chiefly by the great designing firm of McKim, Mead & White in America and by Norman Shaw and E. C. Rickards in England. The former first awakened America to the scenic grandeur of classical architecture by its work at the World's Fair at Chicago, the international exhibition of 1893. This firm gave to New York and Boston buildings based on Roman and Italian inspiration, such as Pennsylvania Railway Station, the University Club and the Pierpont Morgan Library in the former and the Public Library in the latter, and these seemed at once to put America abreast of Europe in scholarship and distinction. By working in a Roman manner rather than in an English or French, these architects gave modern American architecture a central position from which it could develop in any direction. To have brought the architectural thought of their country to this eminently sane position after the vagaries of the Gothic Revival, as practised there and after the vogue of Richardson's Romanesque, was a great achievement, even if it was brought about by more faithful copying of past forms than most architects would care to adopt to-day. McKim himself, the leader of the firm, justified this by explaining that America, with no great monuments of antiquity to set up a standard of taste and finish, required such buildings in her midst, and to judge from the results which followed, especially in the very high

standard of detail to-day, whatever may be thought of the general composition, he was amply justified. In a country too where so much detail is standardized the importance of this can hardly be overrated.

In England the result of Norman Shaw's and E. C. Rickards's influence was rather different. The former was a domestic architect who gradually turned to classical forms in his old age, when great monumental buildings came his way. Having rescued English domestic architecture from the hard hands of the Gothic revivalists he brought it through a Queen Anne phase to a Georgian one, leaving behind him in the suburbs, unfortunately, many sad imitations by those who tried without sufficient knowledge to walk in his footsteps. Nevertheless his classical buildings still remained semi-picturesque. Sir Christopher Wren and his Dutch contemporaries were Shaw's chief inspiration, with the result that to-day in England Wren, Vanbrugh and the early classical architects, rather than Chambers, Adam and the later ones, have the chief influence among the classical school. Rickards's work pulled in the same direction but with a very strong leaning to the Baroque, of which difficult form of expression he proved himself the only modern English master. To the Wren school of English Classicists, that is to those who would temper the severity of classical building with a certain amount of picturesqueness of outline and modelling as well as with domestic softness in materials and craftsmanship, must be added the name of Sir Edwin Lutyens, by far the most powerful personal influence in this school to-day. Like Norman Shaw, Sir Edwin has passed from being the leading domestic architect of his time to be the builder of vast banks and commercial buildings, of the great palace at New Delhi, rivalling Versailles in size but with the lovableness of Wren's Hampton Court, and of the great Roman Catholic Cathedral at Liverpool. In all these latter, as was fast happening with his later domestic work, he has become a classical architect. Unlike so many however he has never lost the individuality of his touch, that is to say, he has never allowed himself to be mastered either by the Vitruvian rules of the Orders or by the general fashion of the time. Whereas the mass of post-classical architecture in England during the last thirty years, especially in town halls, banks, insurance offices and the like, has lacked distinction, too little study having been given to the details of the façades in comparison to the more obvious practical points of the plan—a result probably of the competitive methods by which the architects are so often selected—so that the work has at once an over rich and yet a tired appearance, Sir Edwin's buildings in contrast are always fresh and full of invention. No man is less tied by precedents, though no man knows them better. It is interesting to notice that, while giving this strong individuality to his buildings, he always designs them on a system of units and fixed proportions. Although strictly classical architecture seems everywhere to be dying, and not least where it is applied to a steel framed substructure, Sir Edwin, who so far has never made his external walls entirely dependent on such a frame, seems to be the one architect left who can still give it life and vitality. The architectural world waits with no little eagerness to see how the Roman forms he has chosen for his great cathedral at Liverpool, second only to St. Peter's at Rome in size, will live again in his hands. What seems certain is that, but for

inventiveness controlled by good taste such as he and certain modern Swedish architects like Ivar Tengbom have shown, the steel or reinforced concrete substructure would by now have everywhere broken through and mastered the appearance of the bigger buildings, as it is already beginning to do in Germany and America.

In France and Germany after the classical period of porticoes and peristyles, which was never so pronounced as the corresponding Greek Revival period in England, there was (as has already been mentioned in the case of France) a period of Neo Grec work, when the classical and post-classical motives were mixed together with a certain freedom. After that, though in neither country was there as strong a Gothic Revival as in England, both went through a series of experiments in various forms of Renaissance expression, but keeping, especially in France, to that system of Roman planning in the form known by and produced under the ægis of the Ecole des Beaux Arts. This system, based on a logic which lays emphasis on the chief apartments and then builds round them the plan and circulation of the building with a series of graceful Roman shapes, made no attempt, beyond the control which plan forms must always have over the modelling of buildings, to determine the expression of the elevations. When therefore a fashion for new forms and ornament, called *L'Art Nouveau*, started in Glasgow and travelled to Vienna, where it was developed to a certain consistency by the Viennese architect, Otto Wagner, and spread back to Paris, it was adopted there for a time under the free system of modelling which the Beaux Arts plan allowed. Being however but a series of decorative forms with no logical basis of structure behind them, and owing its existence mainly to a desire to break away from traditional forms, the fashion soon died a natural death. The fact of its appearance at all, however, and of the rate at which it spread across France and Germany proves the tenuousness of the hold classical architecture had even in those days before the development of either steel frame construction or of ferro-concrete. All great changes of style have coincided with the new use or discovery of a building material. It is these two materials steel and ferro-concrete, new to building operations on a large scale, which to-day threaten to alter to an unprecedented degree all modern architecture, sweeping away alike both the Classical and Gothic methods. Before however referring to the problems they are causing, it is necessary to say something about the Gothicists.

The Gothic Revivalists of last century were a band of enthusiastic architects and laymen who mixed religion and art in a way which, if it seems a little ridiculous to-day, represented something very real to them. Regardless of historical accuracy we find Gothic architecture described as Christian architecture and advocated as such on ethical grounds with truly missionary fervour. This, naturally enough, led to the worship of the letter rather than the spirit of the style. The curious thing is that, in spite of this, during the fifty years of its ascendency we find the exact phase of Gothic architecture to be followed by the elect always varying. Sometimes the only pure style of Christian art is said to be that of the last half of the thirteenth century, sometimes that of the first half of the

fourteenth. This was unfortunate, especially when it meant restoring buildings, great cathedrals as well as parish churches, to the right half century by rebuilding the delinquent parts. A great deal of beautiful and irreplaceable mediæval craftsmanship and architecture was thereby destroyed. Architects who were genuine artists, however, could not for long submit to having their freedom fettered in this way, and in the last quarter of the nineteenth century there grew up a school of church architects who, ceasing to be archæologists, sought to achieve the spirit of mediæval architecture rather than to copy its earlier manifestations. This, under modern conditions, led to a broadening and simplification of the style till in recent Gothic buildings, like Sir Giles Scott's Liverpool Cathedral, as has already been pointed out, and in the Högalid Church in Stockholm by Tengbom, the influence of the classical spirit of static beauty can be felt as well as the more dynamic spirit of Gothic. This broader treatment of Gothic, while it reduces the opportunities for individual craftsmanship, meets the conditions of to-day where design of every detail has to fall into the architect's hands owing to the absence of men so imbued with the Gothic spirit that they can themselves not only carry out their craft but think and design in its material.

Although classical forms of expression and Gothic ones must always be poles asunder, there is nevertheless no doubt about the influence of the spirit of each upon the other. We have noted the influence of the classical on modern Gothic architecture. It remains to point out the converse, which is perhaps the most valuable legacy Gothic architecture has given the modern architect. This influence is shown chiefly in two things, firstly, in an enhanced appreciation of the value of construction itself as a means of architectural expression, and secondly in the expressive value of the innate qualities of building materials. Taking the second of these influences first we may trace to it, I think, a great deal of the charm possessed by the domestic architecture of most countries, and especially of England. It is largely due to it that the smaller domestic buildings, when erected of local materials and with local craftsmanship, seem to belong to the countryside almost as works of nature. The old cottages of North Wales, built of big rough stones and roofed with small rough Welsh slates, grow as naturally out of the hills as if they had always been there. Even in the more formal building of the Georgian epoch in England the domestic buildings owe a great deal of their appeal to the varying colour of the bricks, to the contrast for instance of red quoins and arches with the rich brown and purples of the main walling. When the classical spirit gained a further hold such houses, to increase their formality, were often stuccoed over and the colours and textures of the brickwork were lost. One might almost say that the nearer a material approximates to the uniformity and purity of the marble of the Greeks, the less of the Gothic spirit can that material exhibit, yet to find the exact form of expression to make the most of that marble would have been as much a Gothic ambition as it was a Greek. It would be the Gothic spirit which would prevent a classical architect to-day from varnishing or polishing a wood like oak with its rough grain and open pores. It is the Gothic spirit that makes every architect who is building in the country study not only the local materials and methods of craftsmanship

before he designs his building, but the shapes best suited to the landscape.

More important, however, than the Gothic contribution of the value set to-day on craftsmanship and the use of materials to bring out their inherent qualities, is the stress it has taught us to lay on the expression of construction. Making a building truthful to the general principles of its construction does not mean that every floor joist and timber (even if of oak) must be exposed, any more than it is necessary to express on the exterior every lavatory and unimportant department of the plan. It means that in the main forms there must be no secret diplomacy of construction going forward. Wren's hidden brick cone carrying the stone lantern above the exterior wooden dome of St. Paul's Cathedral is the sort of thing a modern architect imbued with the Gothic reverence for construction could not commit, and is indeed a thing with which it is difficult for any one to be comfortable once it is realized. This reverence has given to-day added impetus to the modern movement for a new form of architectural expression largely corresponding to the constructural uses of the three new modern materials steel, concrete and glass. With it therefore we should reach our fourth division, the Modernists, but we must dispose of the Eclectics first.

Among modern architects the Eclectics are probably the largest of our four groups, but they are nevertheless and naturally the group with the least influence. They are of course the people who are prepared to experiment in any style, having few convictions and little in themselves to contribute beyond scholarship. They exist in larger numbers in America than in Europe, because with the roots of her architecture to a great extent in other countries and with a vast area producing every variety of climate and landscape, her architects have greater excuse or reason for experimenting in various methods of expression. Apart from their own very distinctive tall buildings, to be dealt with directly, their grain elevators and similar structures where they have had to break new ground, it would be safe to say that the mass of their modern architecture is more derivative than that of most European countries. One finds Tudor, Elizabethan, Jacobean and half timbered houses, Italian villas, French châteaux, Mexican farm buildings, and Spanish Mission buildings pretty evenly distributed throughout the country, though California on one side and Florida on the other have more wisely specialized in Spanish architecture. Unfortunately too, easy transport has to a large extent abolished the compulsion to use local materials, so that Indiana lime stone and Vermont slates, oak floors and windows from the south, or brick facing from Ohio, are far too widely distributed for the encouragement of local character. It must be admitted, however, that this decorative eclectic building is much better done as regards the scholarship of its detail than it was in England in the pre-War days, when to a lesser extent it was indulged in there. The American architect who is to build a Tudor or Elizabethan house to-day, not having the buildings to refer to, makes use of the books of measured drawings and photographs (which have now been published of every period in every country) and gets his detail right. It would often be better if he did not succeed in this quite so cleverly and

relied more on his own invention and judgement. Building in fancy dress, however archæologically correct, except as a training in craftsmanship, does, in the end, far more harm than good, and it is satisfactory to note that such building is less in evidence now than ten years ago, just as the fashion for period rooms in hotels and liners is gradually giving way to rooms designed to give similar atmospheres but achieved by choice of materials, by pattern and by ornament which are deliberately non-archæological. However, with this we again reach the Modernists.

Before the late War a movement had started in all the arts to break away from traditional forms of expression. They were felt by many to be out-worn. In painting and sculpture this took the guise of a revolt from realism in order to express more intense feeling. Architecture being in any case a non-representational art, the revolt showed itself in a desire to express more directly both the purpose of the building and the part played by its construction. " Fitness for purpose " became almost a slogan in certain architectural circles, the purpose being interpreted as the mechanical purpose of the building, not its appeal to the imagination : that would, it was considered, look after itself. Since the War the rapid development of the motor-car and the aeroplane have greatly strengthened this school of thought. These are held up to-day, especially the latter in the form of racing machines designed for the single purpose of speed such as the Schneider Cup flying boats, as examples of the beauty which can be brought about by perfect efficiency. There is little doubt about this beauty as far as it goes, but whether it is the full content of the beauty that architecture can provide is another matter.

THE MODERN MOVEMENT IN AMERICA

In America, before the War, the steel frame to carry the building had made possible the tall tower or sky-scraper, which the electric elevator, with its power of making vertical travel more speedy than horizontal, had made desirable. A well-known American architect has stated that thanks to its system of tall buildings a business man can pay five times as many calls in the morning in New York as he can in London or Paris. The concentration of population within the narrow limits of Manhattan Island no doubt helped to force these buildings skywards, but that they have appeared in considerable numbers in Chicago, where no such pressure exists, and are being erected in many other towns, proves that they possess in themselves an economic value. Recently they have almost doubled in height by the mere discovery that it is possible to run two elevators in the same shaft, one serving the upper and the other the lower portion of the building. From averaging round about 500 feet they are now being built round about 1,000 feet high.

It is interesting to note how this increase of height has been dealt with architecturally. When buildings first began to exceed the five or six storeys of the Old World, the Old World motives were merely stretched to accommodate them. In the Gorham Building in Fifth Avenue, with its dozen storeys, the classical form of cornice still remains, although it can

no longer be proportioned to an imaginary column applied to the front of the building, nor can it serve constructionally to protect more than a small part of the upper portion of the walls. Even so, the increased overhang required to prevent it seeming ridiculously small led to cornices being cast in light hollow metal and painted to look like stone, instead of being the stone oversailing courses they pretend to be. One saw whole lengths of such cornice, apparently ready carved, being hoisted up the fronts of buildings. This ridiculous position could not last very long. As buildings grew taller and lost all likeness to the proportions of the Italian palace, the Italian methods of façade design had to be thrown over. The next step was to try a stone *appliqué* of Gothic detail to the steel frame. The Woolworth Building in New York belongs to this period, just preceding the War. This, at any rate, gave prominence to the vertical lines of the steel, which in these high buildings are obviously the more significant. It led however to pinnacles, cathedral-like roof, niches, canopies, and other Gothic paraphernalia, which meant little or nothing, but gave a general ecclesiastical air inside and out which was rather unpleasant to those who associated the forms used with other purposes. The name " Cathedral of Commerce," adopted as an advertisement, only emphasized this unpleasantness. It must be admitted however that this tower building, with its vertical grouping of the windows and generally soaring lines, was a great improvement on its predecessors and pointed the way to the happier solutions which were to follow the War. It remained far in advance of other tower buildings, some of which followed it in point of date, in which, though the classical features were no longer stretched out over the whole building, they appeared at the base to punctuate that part and again at the top for the same purpose, leaving a tall plain shaft in between of indeterminate height. The punctuation at the top sometimes took the form of a small temple or other classical composition sitting like St. Simon Stylites on his column high above the town, while that at the base made an ordinary classical façade in scale with the street and decorating that part of the structure which could readily be seen from the street level.

In the meantime New York had adopted a legal enactment called the Zoning Law, regulating the height of buildings, which was to have a great effect not only on the parts of the building coming within its restrictions and on the tower section which was left free to run up to any height, but on the general form of big buildings in America. Briefly the law was that on a quarter of any site the owner was free to build a tower of any height. On the remainder, he could only build facing the streets to some definite ratio of the width of the streets, this ratio being determined by the district. This meant that in certain districts down town the first cliff front of the building to the street might be two and a half times the width of the street, or say 250 feet in the vertical, in other districts twice or 200 feet, and so on. Above these heights the building had to set back within a slope of one in five. This law, owing to the rectangular shape of the building sites, has brought into existence a series of great buildings, set in at the sides perhaps to give light and air to the depths of the structure, which rise in a solid mass, say 200 feet high, and then rise again while setting back in a series of Babylonian-like terraces to buttress a

central tower. The Shelton Building by Messrs. Harmon & White and the New York Telephone Building by Messrs. Vorhees, Gmelin & Walker were the first to take full advantage of the new outline the law permitted and to find in that outline, with its buttressing masses of building against the central mass, the main significance of the structure. The walls themselves in these buildings were grooved with long vertical lines in which were the windows now reduced in relative size to a series of dots. The punctuation of the mass was no longer obtained by an *appliqué* of either Classical or Gothic detail, but by an accentuation of the grooves and the consequent emphasizing of the piers between them, giving at the top of the building a serrated appearance against the sky. Here, at last, the American tall building had freed itself from all traditional methods of design, Classical or Gothic, and had found its expression in the conditions of the problem, in the steel construction, in the lighting of the interior and, most of all, in the lighting and ventilating of the surrounding streets, for that is what the Zoning Law was designed to secure. That this expression is highly satisfactory most people will agree, as they will agree that America has thereby contributed a new and very interesting type to the world's buildings. She is not standing still with this achievement to her credit, but is further developing the type in various ways. By the greater use of glass on the exterior, as well as by more electric light in the depths of the building, she is reducing the amount of setting in in the lower parts for light and air and therefore becoming possessed of a greater freedom of modelling. It is significant, owing to the plasticity of steel construction which can within reason be made sufficiently strong whatever the plan, that the architect nowadays generally begins his design with a clay or wax model, shaping his masses and planes to suit his sense of abstract proportion. In these high buildings his art more closely resembles that of the sculptor than ever before. As they grow (for economy in elevators, escalators and other central services), until each occupies a whole city block 400 feet by 200 feet, their isolation from one another becomes more and more complete. When this happens, they are separate monuments, freed from their neighbours by the surrounding streets. As experiments are continually being made, one building being in steel and glass only, warmed and ventilated through two thicknesses of the latter, another sheathed in bright metal, another in black brick, another in white, all mutual inflection disappears. It will be seen therefore that the tendency of such buildings is first to abolish the street as a street of continuous buildings, much less one of continuous design, and then to turn the town itself into a series of isolated tall structures. Unfortunately, in towns where the streets are already laid out to ordinary widths, these immense buildings very quickly overload with traffic the space between them, especially when they disgorge the people who work in them. Already a single such building may send out 25,000 persons within a few minutes. It is possible therefore that New York may have to consider in the near future a new traffic Zoning Law controlling the floor space within the buildings as the present Zoning Law controls their vertical height and outline. In the meantime the idea of a city of sky-scrapers, well isolated from one another, has become common property. Le Corbusier, the French exponent of modernism, in his book *Urbanisme*, has put forward a plan for rebuilding

the business portion of all old cities in this way, while an English architect has been called in to advise the Russian Government on a new sky-scraper capital in Asia entirely so planned. The Renaissance ideal of the organic city planned and designed as a complete whole, with every part inflected and related like the apartments of a palace, must disappear with these isolated towers as the only structures and with the streets fast traffic roadways crossing one another always at right angles, bridges being the means of communication. It might perhaps be possible to give some sort of form to such a city by grouping the towers and suitably inflecting them, but unless, as suggested by Le Corbusier, the towers are combined with lower and more temporary buildings for residential purposes, as is the case in America where tower buildings are still confined to certain quarters, such a town would have little means of growth and adaptation to new needs. This presupposes also that the parade life of the Renaissance when one strolled from building to building and contemplated the architecture has already given way to one of mechanism and rapid transport.

Contemporary with the growth of a classical school in America, which received its first general recognition in the Chicago World's Fair of 1893, and thirty years before the sky-scraper finally rationalized itself into a free expression of its construction, a school of architects had grown up in Chicago to whom all traditional architecture, and particularly that based on Roman and Italian Renaissance methods, was anathema. This school, of which the late Louis Sullivan may be said to be the founder and Frank Lloyd Wright the chief apostle and prophet, claims (as indeed most architects would to-day) that their buildings are in the first and last place functional and that with them form follows function both within and without. Unlike the German and Dutch modernists, however, who have followed them in point of time as well as in the general tenor of their design, this Chicago school did not deny itself, especially in the case of its founder, the use of modelled and carved ornament. In Louis Sullivan's buildings there is a great deal of ornament which to-day seems in no way connected with the function of the building or of its parts. This is floral and naturalistic in character and designed apparently more with the notion of being different from traditional forms than for any more serious reason. It is obviously part of a revolt and as such has but temporary value. With the forms of his buildings and those of Frank Lloyd Wright it is another matter. These are a conscientious attempt to allow practical considerations to govern the architectural expression, though in the work of both men, as in that of all artists, a personal note is bound to appear. It was at the same Chicago Exhibition of 1893, in his Transportation Building, that Louis Sullivan first presented his ideas on a large scale. To-day his building with its big arched openings, its heavy cornice and flat surface decoration in plaster, would not seem so novel, but among the colonnaded Roman buildings of the Fair it stood out as a very decided protest. His flat surface decoration was certainly suited to plaster, but there is nothing in the architectural forms he used to suggest the temporary building of steel and plaster which in fact it was. Indeed the deeply recessed arches suggest just the reverse. In Frank Lloyd Wright's buildings, however, which have had their repercussion in Germany, we do see the influence of rationalization both in his plan forms and in his treatment of the new

material, ferro-concrete. This material, with the external appearance and crushing strength of concrete and the tensile strength of steel, permits the use of long lintels and overhanging cantilevers which would be impossible to stone, brick or wood. Eyes trained to the proportions of construction in these latter materials naturally find difficulty in appreciating the new conditions. Buildings of ferro-concrete can take on a light spidery form impossible to those of the older materials, owing both to the tensile strength of the embedded steel and to the fact that the building when finished is a monolithic whole, standing on the ground like a piece of furniture rather than as an accumulation of small independent solids. These characteristics of ferro-concrete may not have as completely determined Frank Lloyd Wright's building forms as they have more recently determined those of certain German buildings like the great concert hall at Breslau which is constructed entirely of it, but they appear to have had great effect on them. While the tendency of ordinary steel-framed construction in New York was to aid buildings skywards, the tendency of ferro-concrete construction in the buildings of this Chicago school of architects was to give them a very powerful horizontal expression by means of long overhanging balconies and roofs projecting outwards, without apparent support from walls or piers, in a manner which would be impossible in any other material save wood. Mr. Wright's buildings have been largely domestic, and this extreme horizontal expression has suited well the expanses of the landscape in which they have been set, though when they appear in his fine Imperial Hotel in Tokio they seem almost to take on a traditional form, so like are they to the native forms of Japanese architecture. With the enormous spread of modernist building on the continent of Europe, claiming to be functional at all costs in its design and mostly showing the same horizontal emphasis, it is well to note that none of this continental work appears to have been executed before the beginning of this century, whereas both Louis Sullivan and Frank Lloyd Wright had put up many of their distinctive buildings in the nineties of last century and that a large folio volume of the latter's work was published in Berlin in 1912.

THE MODERN MOVEMENT IN EUROPE

With an architecture which claims that perfect efficiency in a building means perfect beauty, it is clear that national expression in architecture will tend very quickly to disappear. Given equal conditions of climate and of skill in its use a machine should function equally well in any country. Certain it is that a modern concrete and glass factory looks very much the same whether it is erected in England, Germany or Russia. That a modernist house does not do so to the same extent is due to the fact that we have not yet all accepted for domestic life the theory of pure efficiency. The extreme modernist architect would make all houses interchangeable, giving to none of the same calibre any difference of design except where special requirements existed, such as that for a doctor with an additional room for a surgery. One of them, a German, says, " The æsthetics of modern architecture recognize no demarcations between façade and ground plan, road and courtyard, or between the back and

front of a building. Nor does any detail exist for its own purpose alone, but should be designed to serve as a necessary part of the general plan. Everything that functions well looks well. We simply do not believe that anything can look unsightly and yet function well." It will be seen that the new movement already demands a certain amount of faith from its adherents.

Looking at this modernist work as a whole in any illustrated volume of it, it appears that the most powerful and satisfactory structures are those for some isolated factory, where the various units of the group can be seen both as individual structures and in relation to the group. Thus the sloping lines of cooling towers against the solid vertical mass of the engine house, and that again seen against the multiple floors of the factory proper, with its mesh of similar windows and the whole bound together by its roads and rails for the ingress and egress of materials and products, often, especially when in the hands of an artist like Erich Mendelsohn, provide a composition with great significance in its forms. For the equipment of a modern factory tanks of striking shape, raised high in the air, are often required. The architect of a generation ago would have tried to enclose all these things within screen walls and under roofs hiding their shapes. The architect of to-day seizes on them with avidity as significant forms and makes them play a definite part in his composition. Erich Mendelsohn makes models of all such work, so that he can better judge the relative value of his planes and masses. Anyone who has seen either his models or photographs of them will at once admit that by mass composition of this kind he has introduced into such work, or rather released from it, an element of combined beauty and power which is a new thing. The same may be said of the great masses of tenement dwellings erected outside most German and Dutch towns since the War. By the relations of the mass of one block against another, by the strength of the solid-fronted balconies and the deep shadows under them, such groups of building, without any decorative features and with all parts designed in a purely functional manner, have been made very impressive. To an Englishman or an American they may have nevertheless not a little of the effect of a giant prison where the individual is reduced to an inconspicuous unit. The vast Viennese post-War blocks of flats are much more human in this respect. Though they rely for their main effect on mass planning and the relation of one block to another, their relationships are not so hard and rectangular. Unlike most of the German ones these tenement houses, which have caused so much interest of recent years, are built on irregular town sites. That alone has prevented the rigidity and mechanical appearance of the German and Dutch schemes built generally on free sites, but there is a temperamental difference as well. The old tradition of elegance still clings to these Viennese workmen's dwellings, and curved plan forms, which are certainly not dictated by function, are still allowed to creep in. Perhaps the most pleasing of all the modernist buildings on the Continent are the new theatres and cinemas, where curved forms are largely used in the interiors and here assumed, I suppose, to be functional, though it may be doubted whether they are the best for sound. Combined with new methods of indirect or hidden lighting these interiors, relying purely on their interesting shapes for

effect and with no decoration other than surface colouring, are extraordinarily effective and contrast very strongly with the over-decorated and modelled theatres of England and America. The same may be said, if to a less degree, of the great exhibition halls. Indeed, in tracing the growth of modern functional architecture most writers begin with the large glass and cast iron buildings of the first great international exhibition, that of London in 1851. The buildings of this still exist to-day under the name of the Crystal Palace at Sydenham in South London, where they were re-erected after the exhibition, and certainly they express in a very dignified way their function of providing a series of great well-lit halls, each large enough for the exhibition of the largest industrial objects such as steam engines, and with galleries for smaller objects. It may be doubted whether any purely functional exhibition buildings have ever been more successful; the exhibition buildings of Paris, Chicago, St. Louis, Panama and the like, until we come to the quite modern exhibitions of Gothenburg, Stockholm and Antwerp, being designed to make a romantic appeal to the imagination by the association of ideas that their traditional forms call forth. The machinery halls at the Paris Exhibition of 1887 and 1889 had something of the quality of the Crystal Palace, but with less grandeur in their lines. The great hall for the cattle market at Lyons by Tony Garnier was the first of the great glass and iron roofs, which were developed during the last half of the nineteenth century for a variety of purposes, to introduce purely vertical glazing in a series of stages. This roof however has a simple triangular section, but the idea contained in it of a series of small stepped roofs above the principals has been developed and used in the extraordinarily elegant modern halls where the principals are arches of parabolic section, either built up in solid timber, as in the concert hall of the Gothenburg Exhibition, or in ferro-concrete, as in that of the Horticultural Hall in London. These halls are among the few instances, except for theatres and cinemas, where the modernists have allowed themselves the pleasure of curved shapes. This avoidance of curves is perhaps natural when one remembers they are usually dealing with beams of wood or steel, and that the obvious functional form of these is a straight line; the pleasure that the classical architects derived from clothing such rectangular forms with curved plaster semidomes and domes being of course denied to them by their principles.

In France the modernist movement, as in England, is at present confined to the work of a few men and cannot yet rank, except perhaps in furniture and decoration, as a school of thought in the way it does in the Teutonic countries. Probably the Eiffel Tower, with its frank but thoroughly graceful exposure of its construction, did more than any other single erection to reawaken in France an interest in structural form as such, and to break down to a limited extent the classical camouflage of construction which the teaching of the Ecole des Beaux Arts implied. Messrs. A. & G. Perret with their ferro-concrete churches in Paris, particularly with that at Le Raincy, have been foremost in exploiting this material for buildings in the light airy forms of which it is capable, though French engineers have a vast number of extraordinarily graceful bridges, in the new forms dictated by it, to their credit. The tendency of French designers in this material, as shown in the work of the brothers

Perret, is to emphasize the quality of lightness combined with strength of which it is capable, while in Germany one finds massive and monumental effects still aimed at, such as that of the interior of the great market at Frankfort, which should belong functionally to the expression of mass concrete rather than that of ferro-concrete. The houses of Le Corbusier, Malet Stevens and André Lurcat in Paris and Versailles, while consisting of compositions of rectangular forms as in the similar modern German ones, have an added appearance of lightness and grace owing to the thinness of their walls, roofs and balconies which is made possible by these qualities of reinforced concrete. For the highest expression of such qualities, not as yet generally connected in the public mind with modern functional design in modern materials, the reader is referred to M. Malet Stevens's delightful Casino at St. Jean de Luz in the south of France.

It is impossible to leave the question of modernist expression in architecture without mention of the position in Sweden, for since the building of the new Town Hall at Stockholm by Rägnar Östberg that country has become an architectural Mecca. It must be stated at once, however, that though there is a strong modernist movement in Sweden, connected chiefly with the name of Gunnar Asplund, neither the Stockholm Town Hall nor the other new buildings which have recently attracted architects to Sweden, such as Ivar Tengbom's Högalid Church, his Concert Hall and delightful offices for the Swedish Match Corporation, all in Stockholm, nor Carl Westman's Law Courts, Stockholm, nor his Arts and Crafts Museum, Gothenburg, nor Arvid Bjerke's Schools, Art Gallery and Concert Hall at Gothenburg are modernist functional buildings in any particular sense. On the other hand they are not to be classed either as Classical, Gothic or Eclectic buildings, but rather as free interpretations of the Classical or Gothic motives controlled by the excellent taste and personalities of the designers. Östberg's great Town Hall, in many ways the most remarkable of all modern buildings, though imbued with the mediæval spirit in the main lines of its composition, is a highly individual piece of work, in which a great architect has been able to use without disharmony motives derived from Byzantine, Mediæval and Renaissance sources and yet combine them into a unity—harmony would be the better word—by the strength of his own genius. In the same way he has absorbed into his building much diverse craftsmanship in painting, sculpture, metal work and mosaic, without clash of interest or sacrifice of his own romantic feeling. He has indeed proved himself here the master builder very much as a mediæval master builder did with church or cathedral. Ivar Tengbom shows the same capacity, but strives for and obtains a greater sense of unity, either when working on mediæval motives, as in his great church, or on Renaissance ones as in his banks and office buildings. Every detail of his buildings down to the smallest piece of door furniture, wherever the motives come from, shows a marked personal touch. In this his architecture resembles that of Sir Edwin Lutyens. One feels, however, with regard to all this fine new Swedish work that it may be the happy accident of a group of brilliant men—architects, sculptors, metal workers and decorators, but chiefly the first—existing at one fortunate moment, when their country could place the means at their disposal, working over the old ground and refining upon the jewels already

discovered, and that when they pass away the capacity for it may pass with them. Regretfully one does not find in it, especially in its most distinguished characteristics and indeed in the very things for which one loves it best, any consistent school of thought or philosophy of design such as one finds in the work of the modernists, whether in Europe or America. This latter, so it seems, however crude at present, holds within it the seeds of, and the potentiality for, endless development.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

HOWARD ROBERTSON : *Architecture Explained* (London. 1926)

MANNING ROBERTSON and NORA ROBERTSON : *Foundations of Architecture* (London. 1929)

A. L. N. RUSSELL : *Architecture* (London. 1927)

JOHN GLOAG : *Men and Buildings* (London. 1930)

A. TRYSTAN EDWARDS : *Good and Bad Manners in Architecture* (London. 1925)

Architectural Style (London. 1926)

C. and A. WILLIAMS-ELLIS : *The Pleasures of Architecture* (London. 1924

SIR T. G. JACKSON : *Architecture* (London. 1925)

A. S. G. BUTLER : *The Substance of Architecture* (London. 1926)

SIR REGINALD BLOOMFIELD : *Mistress Art* (London. 1908)

HOWARD ROBERTSON : *The Principles of Architectural Composition* (London. 1924)

ATKINSON and BAGNALL : *Theory and Elements of Architecture* (London. 1926)

LE CORBUSIER (*Trans. by* FREDK. ETCHELLS) : *The City of To-morrow* (London. 1929)

GEOFFREY SCOTT : *The Architecture of Humanism* (London. 1924)

KENNETH CLARKE : *The Gothic Revival* (London. 1928)

C. H. REILLY : *Architectural Problems of To-day* (London. 1924)

C. A. BARMAN : *Balbus, or the Future of Architecture* (London. 1927)

T. E. TALLMADGE : *The Story of Architecture in America* (New York. 1928)

CHARLES MARRIOTT : *Modern English Architecture* (London. 1924)

E. W. ROAK and W. H. CHURCH : *Masterpieces of American Architecture in the United States* (New York. 1930)

H. STARRETT : *Skyscrapers* (New York. 1930)

W. C. CLARKE and J. L. KINGSTON : *The Skyscraper* (New York. 1930)

AN INTRODUCTION TO MUSIC

By

R. O. MORRIS

SYNOPSIS

Part I. The Main Current. Explanation of the standpoint from which the Article is written (§ 1). It starts with a glossary of the commonest technical terms necessary to follow the argument (§ 2). *Harmony.* Elements of harmonic procedure; a few very simple fundamentals form the basis of harmonic structure; the apparent complexity of music is due to extensive employment of the unessential. Dissonance and the method of its resolution; meaning of Modulation (§ 3). *Texture.* Difference between the harmonic and contrapuntal types. Harmonic figuration an essential feature of orchestral technique (§ 4). *Design.* First principles illustrated by folk-song; binary and ternary types (§ 5). *Design* (continued). The early Suites and Sonatas; description of the various movements of which these normally consist (§ 6). *Design* (continued). The symphonic form. Ambiguity of the terms in common use; description of the usual movements comprised in a Sonata or Symphony; analysis of the structure of these various movements (§ 7). *Design* (continued). The contrapuntal forms; descriptive analysis of Fugue and Chorale prelude (§ 8). *Design* (continued). Variation Form and the Concerto. A word of caution; form is more than dry bones, but one cannot really understand the living form without some knowledge of the bony structure (§ 9).

Part II. Modern Problems. Harmonic novelty not the only consideration. Increasing freedom and complexity of design; formality out of fashion (§ 1). *Harmony.* Increasing use of dissonance; a new definition of discord required if modern procedure is to be adequately explained. Modern harmony chemical rather than mathematical (§ 2). *Polytonality.* Explanation of the term: reasons for mistrusting it as a method of procedure (§ 3). *Atonality.* Current meaning of the term; its arbitrary and anarchical nature. No use trying to scrap the traditional language of music; it may be enlarged but not superseded (§ 4).

Part III. Earlier Developments. 850–1300 the Palæolithic period of

AN INTRODUCTION TO MUSIC

PART I

THE MAIN CURRENT

I

Never before, probably, has music had so wide an audience as it has to-day. Orchestral music, in particular, is being introduced by means of the gramophone and the radio to thousands and hundreds of thousands of people who have never been to a symphony concert in their lives. A very large number of these discover, perhaps to their own surprise, that the new experience is a source of enjoyment; and as that enjoyment grows, there is added to it a certain curiosity, a desire to know as well as to enjoy; to understand, if possible, something of the methods and principles underlying this mysterious art of music.

It is for them, and them only, that this Article is written. It is not intended for the professional musician, or even the experienced amateur. Its only assumption is that the reader is sufficiently interested in music to want to know something more about it than he knows already, and its only object is to supply this knowledge in the broadest outlines and the simplest possible terms. In so far as these terms are technical, as to some extent they must be, they are explained beforehand in the glossary which immediately follows this introductory section. Any technical terms not found in this glossary will be explained as they occur in the course of the Article.

By far the greater part of the music that is heard and played is music that was composed between 1650 and 1900. This may be considered, from the harmonic and theoretical point of view, as a single great epoch or period of musical history. It embraces many styles, many different methods of construction, many kinds of texture; but the actual idiom of music, the harmonic vocabulary, so to speak, is a constant factor. It is amplified and enriched, but not fundamentally altered; its basic principles remain unchallenged. We shall see in due course what those principles are, and how they differ from those of earlier and later periods; meantime, let it be noted that what is said in Part I. of this Article holds good *for this period only* (1600–1900). The earlier and later periods are treated, more briefly, in Part III. and Part II. respectively. Few would deny that this is the order in which they rank as regards their general interest and significance from the ordinary music-lover's point of view, and it is precisely from that point of view (to repeat what has already been said) that the subject is here presented. Hence our departure from the chronological order of exposition.

Here follows a preliminary explanation of some of the commonest technical terms in general use. It is only just so much as will serve to make the subsequent parts of the Article readily comprehensible; readers who wish to expand their knowledge of the subject should procure one of the text-books of musical rudiments by C. H. Kitson, F. J. Read, or Stewart Macpherson. All three are excellent; they confine themselves strictly to the object in view, and present an immense amount of information in a concise and readily accessible form. They are intended primarily for the budding professional, but starting as they do from the very beginning, they are equally suitable for the budding amateur. For our immediate purpose, however, the following will suffice. The terms are classified according as they apply primarily to melody, to harmony, or to rhythm; but it will be noticed that some—*e.g.* cadence, inversion—belong to more than one category, and are used in more than one sense. It is usually clear from the context, however, which particular sense of the term is implied at any given moment.

A

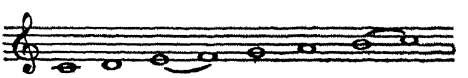
Terms used in connexion with Melody

Scale. A succession of notes proceeding stepwise, and unified by their relationship to a *tonic* or *key-note.* (In a *diatonic* scale there are usually five whole tones and two semi-tones. According to the position in which these semi-tones are found the scale is major or minor, the third note of the scale being the determinant.)

Examples of the major and " melodic " minor scales, the semitones being shown by slurs :

C major: (The same notes whether ascending or descending)

Ex. 1.



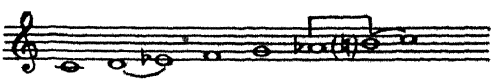
Ex. 2. C minor: (Ascending) (Descending)



In the " harmonic " minor scale there are three whole tones, three semitones, and one augmented interval (see below, under the head " Interval ").

C minor (harmonic): (the same whether ascending or descending)

Ex. 3.



As was said above, the minor third is the real determinant of the minor scale, and in practice one usually speaks in this general way of " the major " or " the minor," ignoring the further classification of " melodic " and " harmonic " minor.

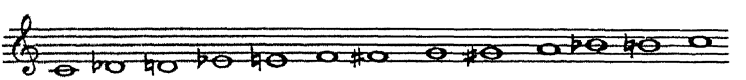
Each note of the scale has its own particular designation (the same for both major and minor forms). These, given in ascending order, are as follows :—

1st	note	Tonic (or Key-note)
2nd	,,	Supertonic
3rd	,,	Mediant
4th	,,	Subdominant
5th	,,	Dominant
6th	,,	Submediant
7th	,,	Leading-note

Of these, " tonic," " dominant," " subdominant," and " leading-note " are terms in constant use, and should be kept carefully in mind. In the scales of C, shown above, they designate the notes C, G, F, and B respectively.

A *chromatic* scale is a scale proceeding entirely by semitones :—

Ex. 4.



(*N.B.* A "sharp" (♯) raises the pitch of any note by a semitone: a "flat" (♭) lowers it to the same extent: a "natural" (♮) contradicts a previous flat or sharp, thus restoring the note to its original or "natural" pitch. These signs are known collectively as "*accidentals.*")

Interval. The distance (or difference of pitch) between any two notes sounded in succession.

Intervals are named primarily according to the number of degrees of the scale included in their formation, *e.g.*

Ex. 5.



These names are constant, as far as they go, regardless of chromatic alteration, or (to put it more obviously though less accurately) of sharps and flats.

For example :—

Ex. 6.



These intervals are all different, but all are expressed in terms of C and A ; therefore all are sixths of one sort or another. The further modifications—major, minor, augmented, diminished—are determined by the total number of semitones contained in the interval. It is not here necessary to enter into further details of this technical point.

A *diatonic* interval is one that occurs in any of the diatonic scales.

A *chromatic* interval is one that only occurs in the chromatic scale.

Of those shown in the last example, the first four are diatonic, the last two chromatic.

An *enharmonic* interval is one of less than a semitone—*e.g.* G♯–A♭. Another common definition of it is " change of name without change of sound." This is accurate so far as the piano is concerned ; but on other instruments—notably the stringed instruments—G♯ and A♭ are by no means identical.

Key. The *key* in which a melody is said to be written is determined by the scale from which the notes forming the melody are derived. It is not necessary that the melody should either start or finish on the tonic ; for example :—

Ex. 7.

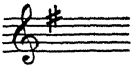
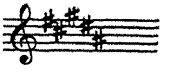
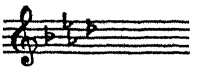


Here the tonic (A) occurs only once, and by no means in a prominent place, yet the ear has no doubt whatever that it *is* the tonic. That is because the notes found in the melody all occur in the scale of A major, but not all in any other scale.

There are thus as many possible keys as there are major and minor scales. To find the order of the " sharp " keys, work *upwards* in perfect fifths starting from C :—C, G, D, A, E, B, F♯, C♯. To find the order of " flat " keys, work similarly *downwards* :—C, F, B♭, E♭, A♭, D♭, G♭, C♭.

The number of sharps or flats required by any given key is shown by writing them at the beginning of the staff. Each of the " sharp " keys in the order shown above requires one more sharp than its predecessor, each of the " flat " keys one more flat. This indication is known as the *key-signature*. A minor key has the same key-signature as its relative major key—*i.e.* the key whose tonic is a minor third above its own. For example :—

Ex. 8.

(G major (E minor  (B major (G♯ minor  (A major (F minor 

B

Terms used in connexion with Rhythm

Music is measured by *bars*, which in turn are sub-divided into *beats*. Most commonly there are 2, 3, or 4 beats to each bar, and the music is then said to be in *duple*, *triple*, or *quadruple time*.

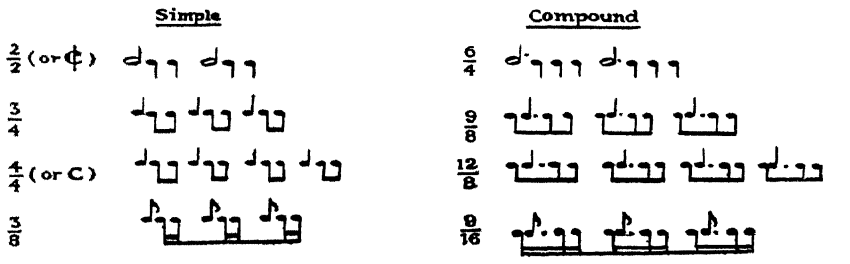
These beats again may sub-divide into groups of shorter notes, primarily into groups of 2 or 3. If the division is into groups of 2, the time is called *simple* ; if into groups of 3, *compound*.

These details are indicated by the *time-signature*, which is placed at the beginning of the piece, immediately to the right of the *key-signature* (v.s.) ; it takes the form of two numbers, one above the other. The upper of these shows how many notes of a particular kind there are in a bar, the lower tells what particular kind of notes they are (or, to speak more precisely, what fraction of a semibreve each note represents).

Such points are made much clearer by illustration than by definition. Let us take two common time-signatures $\frac{2}{4}$ and $\frac{9}{8}$. In the first of these, the lower figure (4) shows that we are dealing with *quarters of a semibreve, i.e.* with *crotchets* ; the upper (2) that there are two of these in each bar. In the other case, the lower figure (8) indicates *quavers* (*i.e.* eighth-parts of a semibreve), the upper (9) that there are 9 of these in each bar.

The upper figure further indicates whether the time is simple or compound (v.s.). If it is 2, or 3, or a multiple of 2, it is simple. If it is a multiple of 3, it is compound.

A glance at the following table, which is representative though by no means complete, should make all this quite clear :—



(A dot placed after a note lengthens its value by one half, indicating that it is worth 3 (not 2) of the note next below it in value. Therefore in compound time the beats are always dotted notes ; in simple time, plain notes.)

Just as the *beats* in music are grouped in *bars*, so the bars themselves may be grouped in larger and still larger units known (by analogy) as phrases, sentences, periods and so forth. For the time being, this analogy may be considered as applying to all music that is definitely formal in construction[1] ; and the following definitions may be provisionally accepted, though the terms are elastic :—

A *phrase* is the smallest unit of rhythmical structure ; it commonly, though not necessarily, consists of two bars, and is felt to be essentially incomplete. It is therefore followed by one (or more) similar phrases which combine with it to form a *sentence*.

[1] In particular, to the song- and dance-forms in which so much of the music of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries is cast.

For example, the first sentence of " God Save the King " consists of three 2-bar phrases :—

Ex. 9.



Similarly, a *period* consists properly of two or more sentences similarly balanced ; but such terms as " period," " sentence," " strain," are often used very loosely and in practice are almost interchangeable, each of them denoting a unit of musical thought which is *complete as far as it goes*, as distinguished from the phrase, which is essentially incomplete.

All these smaller units of musical thought are defined by *cadences*. Cadence is to music, roughly speaking, what punctuation is to literature. The word means literally " fall," and in the earliest days of European music the plainsong melodies always did end in this way—by a fall of one degree to the tonic. In more modern times the term has a wider and less clearly defined sense. Harmony plays such an important part in cadence formation that it will be more convenient to consider it in connexion with harmony rather than with rhythm pure and simple.

C

Terms used in connexion with Harmony

Interval. Two notes sounded simultaneously. If less than an octave, the interval is simple ; if more, compound.

Intervals are classified according to their *consonance—i.e.* according to the degree in which the two sounds blend or fuse together. The usual classification is as follows :—

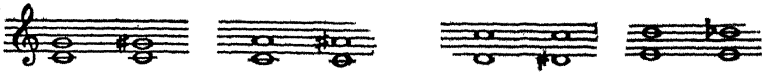
Perfect consonances. Unison ; octave ; perfect fourth ; perfect fifth.
Imperfect consonances. Major and minor thirds ; major and minor sixths.
Dissonances. Major and minor seconds ; major and minor sevenths ; all augmented and diminished intervals.

An augmented interval is formed by sharpening the upper note or flattening the lower note of a major or perfect interval.

A diminished interval is formed by flattening the upper note or sharpening the lower note of a minor or perfect interval ; *e.g.* :—

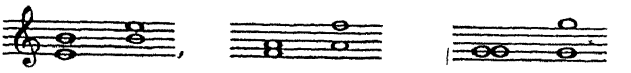
5th	6th	7th	7th
Perfect	Major	Minor	Minor
Augmented	Augmented	Diminished	Diminished

Ex 10.



An interval is said to be inverted when the lower note is placed an octave higher, or the higher note an octave lower :—

Ex. 11.



N.B.—The 4th inverted becomes the 5th and vice versa.
„ 3rd „ „ 6th „ „
„ 2nd „ „ 7th „ „
„ unison „ „ octave „ „

Furthermore :

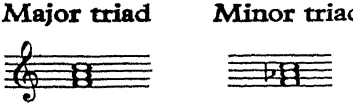
Perfect intervals when inverted remain *perfect*.
Major intervals when inverted become *minor* and vice versa.
Augmented intervals when inverted become *diminished* and vice versa.

Chord. A chord consists of two or more intervals sounded simultaneously.

(If these intervals are all consonant, whether perfect or imperfect, the chord is a *concord*. If one or more of them is dissonant, the chord is a discord.)

A *triad* (or *common chord*) consists of a bass note (or *root*) together with the major or minor 3rd and the perfect 5th above it : *e.g.* :—

Ex. 12.



(If the fifth is augmented or diminished, the triad is known as an " augmented " or " diminished " triad, and is no longer called a " common chord." It is, moreover, a discord, owing to the presence of the augmented or diminished interval.)

The *chord of the 7th* is formed from a triad by adding the 7th note above the bass :—

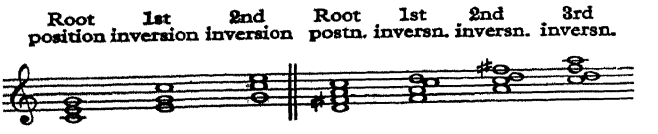
Ex. 13.



Such chords can be formed on every degree of the major and minor scale ; for our present purpose that formed on the *dominant* of the scale (the " dominant 7th ") is by far the most important.

Chords, like intervals, are said to be *inverted* when the root is transposed into a higher octave :—

Ex. 14.



In each of these inversions the *root* of the chord (C in the first three, D in the other four) is always the same, although the bass note is changed successively with each inversion.

Cadence, as has already been said, is akin to punctuation. Cadences are of two main families :—

(1) *Final* cadences, such as usually mark the close of a period or section.
(2) *Intermediate* cadences, such as define the limits of a phrase or short sentence.

Final cadences are of two kinds :—

(1) The *Perfect* cadence (or " Full Close ") in which the dominant chord with or without the 7th is followed by the tonic chord in root position.
(2) The *Plagal* cadence, in which the subdominant chord (instead of the dominant) precedes the final tonic.

For example :— (Key A major)

Ex. 15.



It will be noticed that although the root stays unchanged in the bass, the spacing and disposition of the upper parts is varied in each pair of cadences. The upper notes are the same, but their positions are interchanged. This does not modify the essential character of the chord in any way ; this point will receive further explanation in the next section.

Intermediate cadences are usually formed on the dominant chord, which may be preceded by the tonic or by some other chord, neither being necessarily in root position. Here are three short phrases in three different keys, each ending with a different kind of intermediate cadence (or " Half Close ") :—

Ex. 16. (1) B♭ major



(2) D major



(3) A minor



So far the terms requiring explanation could not well be set out in concise tabular definition as in a dictionary. But we may now add to them a few more, of common occurrence, which may be thus briefly defined :—

Conjunct movement. Movement of notes by step, *i.e.* with not more than the interval of a tone between any two successive notes.

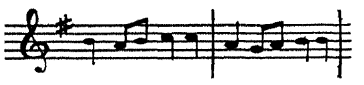
Disjunct movement. Movement of notes by leap (of a third or some larger interval).

(For example, " God Save the King " proceeds wholly by conjunct movement, except for the leap of a minor third between the 3rd and 4th notes.)

Sequence. The repetition of a fragment of melody or harmony at a different pitch. For example :—

(Melodic)

Ex. 17.



(Harmonic)

Ex. 18.



The above sequences are both *diatonic.* A *modulating* or *chromatic* sequence repeats the progression in a new key :—

C major B♭ major

Ex. 19.



Pattern. Akin to sequence, but less exact; denotes the prevalence of some single rhythmic figure in the melody, or the harmony, or both :—

Ex. 20.



Inversion (melodic). A phrase is said to be inverted melodically when the *intervals* between its successive notes are of the same nature, but taken in the opposite direction :—

Ex 21.



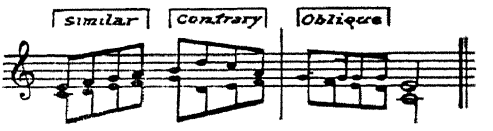
Inversion (contrapuntal). The interchange of two parts so that the higher becomes the lower and vice versa. (Counterpoint itself is explained in the following section.) For example :—

Ex. 22.



Similar movement. Movement of two parts in the same direction.
Contrary movement. Movement of two parts in opposite directions.
Oblique movement. Movement of one part while the other stands still or repeats the same note, *e.g.* :—

Ex. 23



Essential note. A note that is an essential part of any given chord—*e.g.* the note E in the triad C E G.
Passing (or unessential) note. A note that merely serves to connect two essential notes of two successive chords (or intervals), and is not itself part of either chord (or interval), *e.g.* :—

Ex. 24.



In the above, the passing notes (D and B) come *between* the beats and are therefore called *unaccented* passing notes. They may also occur *on* the beat ; they are then known as *accented* passing notes :—

Ex. 25.



Such a note may also be approached by leap ; it is then called an *appoggiatura*, or " leaning note," because it leans, so to speak, on the essential note to which it is prefixed :—

Ex. 26.



(*N.B.* " Appoggiatura " is often used loosely to denote any strongly accented unessential dissonance.)

Modulation. Passing from one key to another.

Transposition. The reproduction of a given piece or passage bodily in a new key.

Resolution (of discord). Its passage into consonance—normally by the stepwise movement of the dissonant note—as in Ex. 25, where the notes A and F (marked with a cross) " resolve " into G and E respectively.

3

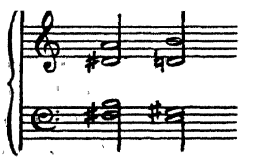
Harmony

The object of this section is not to enter into technical details or rules of procedure. It aims rather at a correlation of harmony with other aspects of music, such as texture and design, and will only consider such harmonic problems as bear directly upon those wider relationships.

Let it be stated first of all that the actual material of harmony is limited in extent and simple in character ; it consists indeed of the handful of common chords and diatonic sevenths which have already been enumerated, and of very little else. The enrichment of musical speech during this period is due mainly to an ever-increasing use of the unessential—passing notes, appoggiaturas, and so forth. New-seeming chords will be found on examination to be merely chromatic alterations of the old ones ; apparent novelties of idiom reveal themselves merely as unexpected juxtapositions of what is *per se* familiar. Two simple illustrations will serve to make this clear.

Take first of all this pair of chords :—

Ex. 27.



The dominant seventh of E, followed by the dominant seventh of A ;

what could be simpler, or (seemingly) less apt for the expression of intense emotional strain ? Yet look now at the opening of *Tristan and Isolde* :

Ex. 28.



It is beyond question one of the great utterances of the world, yet the harmonic element is derived entirely from these two simple chords. True, the upper note of each is delayed by an appoggiatura (G♯ in the second bar, A♯ in the third) and the first has its bass note (F♯) lowered chromatically to F♮. But whoever would have thought that so surprising a transformation could have been wrought by so time-worn a device ?

Above all, one must not overlook the significance of the rests : the harmonic silence of the first bar is as eloquent as the harmonic speech of the second and third.

Turn now to our second illustration, and first of all consider the following passage :—

Ex. 29.



Tonic and dominant of G minor ; tonic and dominant of C minor ; dominant once more of G minor. Yet see what Purcell makes of these guileless progressions in the famous lament from *Dido and Æneas* :—

Ex. 30.



Once more a miracle has been achieved by means of the appoggiatura (B♭ at the opening of the second bar and F♯ towards the end of the third bar in the top part ; D in the third bar in the alto part), aided by one simple chromatic—the E♮ taken by the bass in the third bar, *en route* from F to E♭.

One thing that may at first sight perplex the reader is that these fundamental chords of music, the triads and the sevenths, should consist of so few essential notes—3 and 4 respectively. He knows that a modern orchestra contains anything from 50 to 100 or more players, most of whom are kept fairly busy most of the time, and even allowing for a liberal use of unessential notes, it must seem strange that so large a force should be employed to play chords of only 3 or 4 essential notes.

This question will be partially answered in the section dealing with musical texture ; but the question is not wholly one of texture. It is also one of spacing, and to that extent can and should be answered here. If the reader will turn back to Ex. 14, he will see that every chord has a root position, in which the root of the chord is in the bass, and also various inversions, in which each of the other notes in turn is put in the bass. In each of these positions the upper notes of the chord may be arranged in any order ; moreover any note or notes of the chord may be doubled within reason[1] at the unison or octave, so that any instrument, however high or low its pitch, can always be assigned a note that lies within its effective compass. Take first of all the first inversion of the common chord of C major :—



Here are some simple spacings of this chord in four parts only, such as would be suitable to be sung by four voices (the usual S., A., T., B.) :—

Ex. 31.



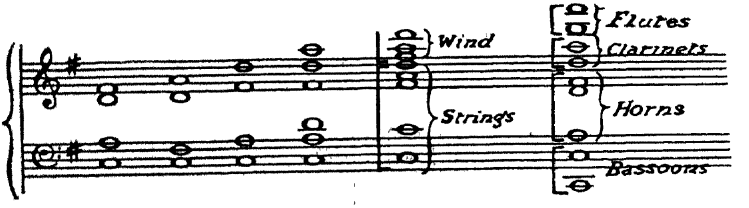
The E in the bass (which determines the chord as being the first inversion) remains constant ; the upper parts quite otherwise. In 1 and 2 C is doubled, in 3 and 5 G, in 4 and 6 E.

Now take the dominant chord in the key of G, in its third inversion :—



Here again are six out of the many possible spacings : the first three are once more ordinary four-part spacings, suitable for voices ; the other three show how the spacing and doubling may be extended in height and depth to suit a large body of instruments :—

Ex. 32.



[1] One has to be rather careful about doubling dissonant notes, but it is not here necessary to detail the technical precautions commonly laid down to guide students in this matter.

In the last two the brackets have been added to show how the constituents of the chord might be grouped and assigned to some of the various orchestral families. The only principle at work here is : keep the spacing fairly even and don't mass your notes thickly in the lower regions of the chord, except for certain special effects.

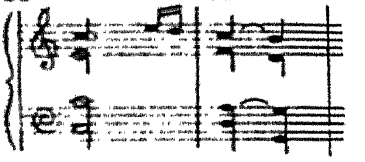
Before leaving this section a few words should be said about dissonance, or discord, and its resolution, and also a few words about modulation. First of all, dissonant notes (as has already been implied if not actually stated) are of two kinds, essential and unessential. They are "essential" when they are constituents of a fundamental chord : in any of the diatonic sevenths, for example (see Ex. 13), the seventh is a dissonant note and the chord itself is an "essential" or "fundamental" discord. They are "unessential" when they are passing notes or appoggiaturas (see above, p. 1015).

In each case, the "resolution" of the dissonant note or notes is normally by step, but there is this difference, that when the dissonance is unessential, the rest of the chord merely waits for its resolution ; when it is essential, the other voices commonly pass to a new chord whilst the resolution is taking place. Consider the two following cases :—

Ex. 33A. (a)



Ex. 33B. (b)



At (*a*) the note C is felt to be merely a strongly accented passing note prefixed to B, the note for which the rest of the chord is waiting. At (*b*), although as before it resolves on B, it is an essential constituent of the fundamental discord $\begin{matrix} C \\ A \\ F \\ D \end{matrix}$ (the supertonic seventh in the key of C), and therefore the chord is resolved as a whole into the new consonance $\begin{matrix} D \\ B \\ G \end{matrix}$ (the dominant) which is reached simultaneously by all voices. This is, technically, the difference between "resolution of dissonance" and "resolution of discord."

In the latter case, the stepwise resolution is often dispensed with, provided the discord as a whole is followed by one of its normal chords of resolution. Consider the following :—

Ex. 34.



Here the C at (*c*) never gets resolved at all, strictly speaking; yet the chord-progression is just as logical and satisfactory to our ears as that above (Ex. 33B). This is due really to mental association, which has played a part of incalculable importance in the development of harmonic thought. The actual *chords* in 33B (*b*) and 34 (*c*) are the same; therefore the latter is accepted as an equivalent or paraphrase of the former, and the dissonant note—C—is *felt as resolved*, though there has been no actual resolution of it. (*c*) only became possible when (*b*) had long been familiar.

Therefore, we are entitled in spite of apparent contradictions to say that throughout this period—1650–1900—the governing principle in the treatment of dissonant notes is that they must resolve stepwise.[1] This is not literally true, as the above example shows; but it is seen to be essentially true as soon as we pass through the appearance to the reality behind it.

Now for modulation. This has already been defined as "passing from one key to another," but the question may well be asked, How do we know when a new key has been established? This question cannot be brushed aside, for when we come to examine the methods of large-scale musical construction, we shall find that one of the basic principles involved is that of *key-distribution*. Therefore we must know something more than a mere definition if we wish really to understand what the composer is driving at, for he does not trouble to change his key-signature every time he changes his key; he uses accidentals (see p. 1007).

To some extent it is a matter of context. Consider this passage :—

Ex. 35.



and now this :—

Ex. 36.



Each of these consists of the same four chords—C major, G major, E minor, A minor; there is not a single note that is not common to the two keys of C major and G major. Yet there is not the slightest doubt that the first is in C, the second in G, and that the key-signature of G is correctly prefixed in the second case. Why?

[1] One ought also to mention the converse procedure in which the dissonant note itself stands still whilst the other parts move into harmony with it. This is however rare by comparison.

The answer is of course to be found in the order of rhythmical occurrence of the various chords. No. 1 starts and finishes with an emphatic statement of C, No. 2 with a no less emphatic statement of G; No. 1 rounds off its four bars with a well-defined perfect cadence in C, No. 2 with a scarcely less powerful plagal cadence in G. In other words, one has to interpret the harmony in the light of the rhythm. The elements of music are not isolated in practice as they may be in theory; even in the construction of such short and simple sentences as those above, it is not the harmony alone which controls, nor the rhythm alone, but the two acting in collaboration.

There is, however, one single chord which of itself can define a key—the chord of the dominant seventh. Consider that chord in the key of C—G B D F. The F shows it is not G or any of the " sharper " keys, for these would all require F♯. Similarly the " flatter " keys—F, B♭, etc., would all require B♭. Therefore C alone remains. Even A minor, the relative minor, requires a G♯ as leading note for its clear definition although G♮ frequently occurs as a diatonic note in that key. Therefore, when the dominant seventh of any key is sounded, particularly when closely preceded or followed by the tonic of that key, modulation results automatically, even though it be immediately contradicted by a new modulation or by a return to the original key. Apart from this, one has to trust for guidance to one's key-sense, not to any rule of thumb.

One further caution should be given. Accidentals of themselves do not necessarily indicate modulation, as might be supposed. Passing notes and unessential notes may be chromatic as well as diatonic. These have to be indicated by accidentals, and as they are of very frequent occurrence it follows that a passage may fairly bristle with these little signs and yet never stir out of its original key. Here is a sample :—

Ex. 37.



Nothing but F major here; whence it may be gathered that key-spotting is rather a tricky business until you are used to it.

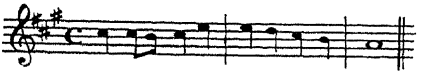
4

Texture

By the " texture " of a piece of music is meant the interweaving of the inner parts. Sometimes these are as interesting and vital as the melody itself: the piece would then be said to be " contrapuntal " in character or to present interesting contrapuntal features. Sometimes they serve merely to complete the chords necessary to support the principal notes of the melody, in which case the piece is described as " harmonic " in structure. To this antithesis between " harmony " and " counterpoint "

we will return a little later; meantime an example will serve to make plainer what is meant by the " texture " of music. Take this fragment of melody :—

Ex. 38.



Here are two ways of treating it, offering the strongest possible contrast :—

Ex. 38A.



Ex. 38B.



In the first of these the texture is the loosest possible; indeed you cannot properly speak of " texture " here at all. There is no trace of melodic or rhythmic interest anywhere except in the top part; there are only block chords, and those of the fewest and simplest character that will support the melody; the treatment in short is purely harmonic. In the second, all the parts have an equal interest and independence of character, and the treatment therefore is essentially contrapuntal.

This illustrates the common saying that harmony is music regarded *vertically*; counterpoint is music regarded *horizontally*. They are not necessarily two different things so much as two different ways of looking at the same thing. Admitted that you can have harmony without counterpoint—Ex. 38A above is an extreme case in point. *But you cannot have counterpoint without harmony.*[1] Take Ex 38B, cut out all the passing and unessential notes, and reduce it to its simplest harmonic form :—

Ex. 38B.



This, considered purely as harmony, *i.e.* as a top part supported by vertical blocks of chords, is at least as satisfactory and logical as Ex. 38A; if it were not so, the counterpoint of Ex. 38B would also not be felt as logical and satisfactory. Nevertheless the chords result from the counterpoint; and yet they are a vital factor in deciding the course of that counterpoint. Each determines and is at the same time determined by the other.

[1] I speak, of course, of classical counterpoint, not of the so-called " linear counterpoint " of our own time. Of this more in Part II.

Let us now consider how all this bears on the question of orchestral treatment. Harmony text-books present all these questions very largely from a vocal standpoint, and up to a point they are quite right in doing so, for by this method all extraneous questions are excluded and the student's mind is thus left free to concentrate on the simplest and most fundamental problems of harmonic progression and clear part writing, which he must master first of all. But one has only to open any page at random of a full orchestral score to see that it does not look in the least like any of the musical illustrations in the harmony book. There is a gap somewhere, and we must endeavour to bridge it.

First of all look back once more at Ex. 38A. It is obvious that this type of harmonic procedure is not very practical. You cannot assemble a huge orchestra together and then ask one instrument or group of instruments to play the melody while the rest from time to time ejaculate such notes as are necessary to give that melody the minimum of harmonic support. Such treatment is only possible occasionally and in small doses[1]; keep it up for any length of time, and the players who have not got the tune to play will die of boredom, to say nothing of the audience.

On the other hand, the purely contrapuntal kind of texture shown in Ex. 38B is also not of more than limited use for orchestral purposes. In the first place the number of parts that can well be combined in this fashion is not more than four or five at the most; above that number they lack proper manœuvring space, with consequent overcrowding and congestion. In the second, to make such a passage effective, each part must be of equal clearness and resonance, and must therefore be played by an instrument or instruments of equal power and mobility. Now of the three chief orchestral groups—strings, woodwind and brass—the strings can quite overpower the woodwind in a forte passage, and also dwindle far below them when a pianissimo is required. The brass, on the other hand, are superior to the other groups in blare and penetrative power, but immeasurably behind them in mobility. They could not attempt a passage like this without making themselves ridiculous; indeed, the passage is really suitable only for a homogeneous group of strings, or an equally homogeneous group of woodwinds, or a mixed group in which each line of strings is doubled at the unison by one or more of the woodwinds. Any of these methods would become wearisome after a short time, the last one particularly so, on account of the mixed timbres employed. It is a cardinal principle of good orchestration to make the fullest use of the pure unblended tone-colour of each orchestral group, and also of each individual tone-colour within that group—flutes, oboes, horns, trumpets, violas and so on.

Therefore, the orchestra has had to evolve other methods of tone-combination, and the most important of these by far is that of *rhythmical figuration*. This enables a composer to give all his instruments in turn plenty to do without necessarily bringing them prominently into the foreground, and without those frequent changes of the essential harmony which a strictly contrapuntal texture usually involves. Music moves more lightly when there are only one or two essential chords in a

[1] See, for example, the opening theme in the finale of Dvořák's *New World* Symphony, which is precisely so treated, with a tremendously powerful effect.

bar than when there are four. Let us examine in rather more detail how this kind of texture is contrived.

Take as a starting-point two of the simplest of all the chords—the tonic and dominant seventh of C major :—

Ex. 39.



Harmonically there is no difference whatever if we write each bar as 4 crotchets instead of 1 semibreve :—

Ex. 39A.



Clearly, too, these can equally well be changed into quavers or semiquavers, or a combination of both or of all three, without affecting the basic harmonies in any way. Or again, rests and ties may be used in certain places instead of actually repeating the chords :—

Ex. 40.



Ex. 41.



Ex. 42.



Moreover, such figures can easily be varied and amplified by the employment of unessential notes :—

Ex. 43.



Ex. 44.



Nor must we overlook the endless varieties of *arpeggio*—*i.e.* figures in which the notes of the chord are sounded in succession instead of simultaneously. (The sign // means that the figure is repeated to form the second half of the bar) :—

Ex. 45.



Ex. 46.



Ex. 47.



Ex. 48.



These also may be elaborated by the addition of unessential notes :—

Ex. 49.

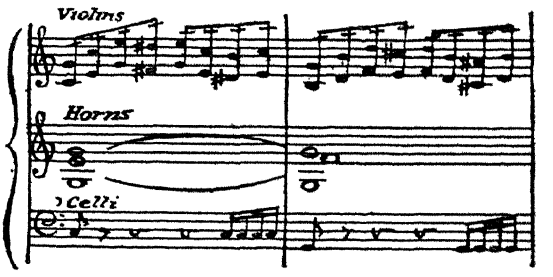


Ex. 50.



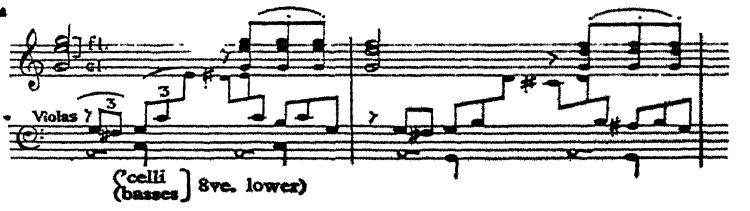
Moreover different types of pattern may be combined in different instrumental groups playing in different registers ; for example, the horns may sustain all or some of the chord in the background, whilst the upper strings play a rapid arpeggio or tremolando, the lower strings picking out the essential bass notes in some form of rhythmical punctuation. (In such a case we may imagine the melody being assigned to the woodwind, rather high up, in octaves) :—

Ex. 51.



Or the woodwind may hold and repeat the chord, the violas play a simple arpeggio in triplets (groups of three notes) while the basses punctuate as before. (In this case the melody would probably be assigned to the upper strings) :—

Ex. 52.



There is no end to the possible variety of such figures; they are the stock-in-trade of every orchestral composer. What I should like to emphasise here is the immense importance and significance of the rests; not only do they vitalise the harmony by infusing into it the element of rhythm, but they afford immense relief to the ear by lightening the texture. Without rests there would be a continuous blur of sound from every instrument participating in any given passage; the ear would quickly become fatigued and the melody would be unable to stand out in strong relief against the background of accompaniment, as it often wants to do. It is only thanks to the rest that orchestral music is saved from an all-pervading heaviness and dullness of sound—a point which even professional students are often curiously slow to realise.

Here we may leave the question of texture. It seemed worth while to embark on this brief discussion of it, because it really is difficult for the layman to understand, without some help, how the apparent complications of an orchestral score can be reduced to such very simple terms. Even if he is sufficiently interested to consult the text-books, he is probably no better off; the harmony books take him so far, and then he finds that the orchestration books start from quite a new point of departure. The object of this discussion has been to make the transition easy, and to show how the simple 3- and 4-part chords of harmony have to be re-spaced and broken up in order to form the actual stuff of composition, and of orchestral composition in particular. The illustrations chosen are simple to the verge of naïveté, and have deliberately been made so to serve this particular purpose.

5

Design : First Principles

Music—civilised music at any rate—has always realised the need of *unity*, *i.e.* of some principle or principles of design by virtue of which the piece may be recognised as a single coherent whole, and not as a mere succession of sounds beginning at random and ending where they will. Even in the simplest folk-songs and dances we commonly find three such principles in operation :—

(1) Unity of key.

(2) Balance of phrase and sentence.

(3) More or less extended use of sequence or pattern to reinforce (1) and (2).

To illustrate this, take first of all a very short and simple folk-tune, " Abroad as I was walking " :—

Ex. 53.



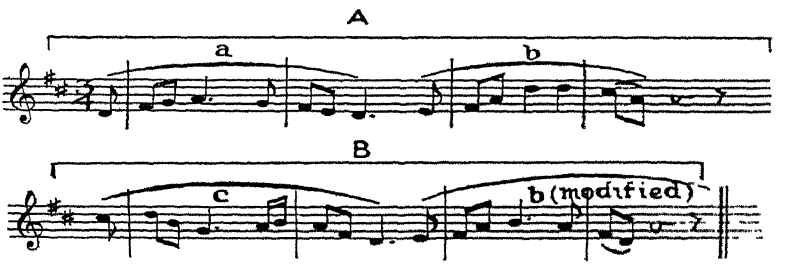
Here is a tune which clearly consists of 4 units or phrases; the opening phrase (2 bars) is followed by a phrase of contrast (also of 2 bars); then

the opening phrase is repeated, and followed by a new contrasting phrase which completes and rounds off the whole. This period of four phrases could be represented diagrammatically by the letters *a b a c*, *a* being of course the opening phrase, which occurs twice. This may fairly be considered a representative type of structure; the balance is by no means always so exact as this, but a surprisingly large proportion of folk-tunes and popular tunes will be found on examination to contain structural features of this kind. The diagram is of course not always the same—you may find *a b b c*, *a b c a*, *a b c b*, *a b b a*, and so on. These are of what is called "binary" structure, because they consist of two (more or less equal) halves or sentences, each pair of units or phrases combining into one sentence ($a^1b \parallel a^2c$). In more elaborate melodies there is often repetition of sentence as well as repetition of phrase, so that your diagram becomes (*e.g.*) $a^1b \parallel c^2c \parallel a^3b$. Such structure is called "ternary" or threefold. It is often referred to briefly as "A B A" form; in this context, of course, the letters A and B denote, not phrases, but sentences. To prevent possible confusion, it may be taken throughout this Article that the small letters, when used thus diagrammatically, denote phrases only; the capital letters represent sentences or larger units.

To illustrate these contrasting types, binary and ternary, two examples of each are subjoined, each a very well known tune and each presenting certain interesting features in the details of its phrase construction :—

(1) "Barbara Allen" (binary):—

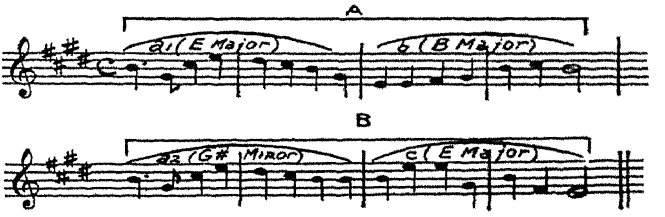
Ex. 54.



The general type here is $a\ b_1 \parallel c\ b_2$; at b_1, there is a half-close on the dominant; b_2 is modified so as to close on the tonic, whilst preserving the essential contour of b_1; moreover the whole is unified to a remarkable extent by the prevalence of a single rhythmical pattern, which is modified just enough to prevent any feeling of monotony.

(2) "Through the night of doubt and sorrow" (binary) :—

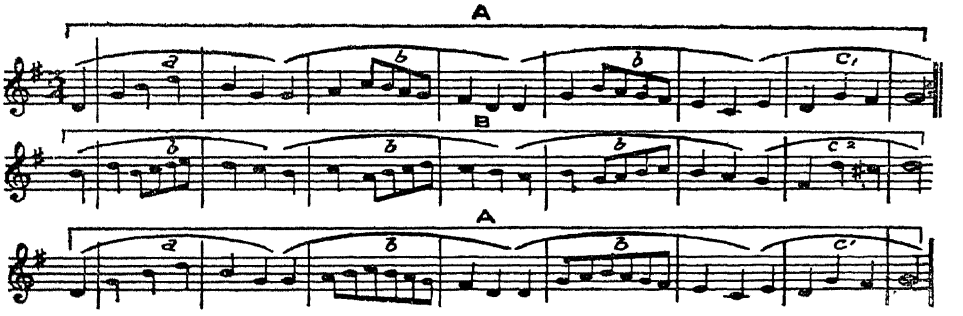
Ex. 55.



Here the type is $a_1 b \| a_2 c$. The tune is a harmonised tune, which will be found in full in *Hymns A. and M.* Here we quote the melody only, showing the modulations that occur to provide variety of key as well as variety of melodic outline. a_1 is in E ; recurring as a_2, it is in G♯ minor, thus providing unity and contrast at the same time.

(3) "The Ash Grove" (ternary) :—

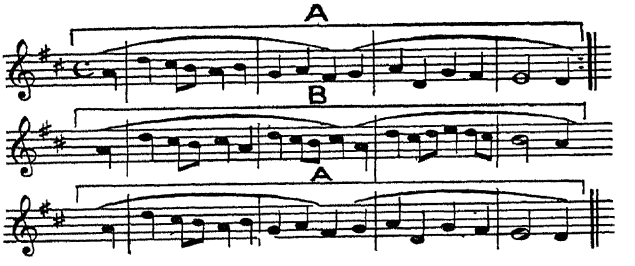
Ex. 56.



Here A, the first limb of the ternary structure, is itself binary in form, as very often happens, the pattern being $a\ b_1 \| b_2\ c$. Here b_2 is not an exact repetition of b_1, but a sequential reproduction of it one tone lower. B is even more sequential in structure, the opening phrase being thrice repeated on descending degrees of the scale, and rounded off by the repetition of *c*, borrowed from A, and put into the dominant key. Moreover the phrase thrice repeated is in itself an inversion of *b*, so that there is development as well as pattern to maintain our interest. Altogether a very neat little piece of workmanship.

(4) " The Vicar of Bray " (ternary) :—

Ex. 57.



Again quite a straightforward ternary tune, constructed of symmetrical two-bar phrases. The important things to note are (1) the opening strain is repeated ; (2) the contrasting strain—B—is not formed of new material, but by developing the rhythm of the opening bar of A. Thus the scheme in detail is seen to be :—

(4+4 bars) (1) *Exposition* of principal strain, closing with double bar and then repeated.

(4 bars) (2) *Development* of principal strain so as to form a new strain of sufficient length to balance the exposition, and asserting a new key (A major).

(4 bars) (3) *Recapitulation* of original strain.

This archetype has great significance for musical history; it has been found (unlike the binary form) to have almost indefinite powers of expansion, and is in fact precisely the same in its basic outlines as the so-called " sonata " form which dominated music from about 1770 onwards for more than a century and is by no means dead yet.

6

Design : The Early Suites and Sonatas

Both these simple types—binary and ternary—are found in a somewhat expanded form in a great deal of the music of the later seventeenth and early eighteenth centuries. In vocal music, the ternary influence was at first the stronger; in instrumental music, the binary. Before we consider how these primitive song-patterns were thus adapted to form the internal structure of more extended instrumental movements, some general explanation should be given of the titles " Suite " and " Sonata " which we find affixed to so many collections of these movements.

First of all, the Suite. This is merely a collection of pieces, mostly in dance form, arranged so as to form effective contrasts of time, pace and style, and unified as a whole principally by a common key; there is little or no inward connexion between the separate movements of a Suite, such as one often feels between a prelude and its fugue, or between the several movements of a modern symphony.

There is no fixed number of movements in a Suite; nor are they arranged in any fixed order, except that the allemande usually comes first and the gigue (or " jig ") last. Typical movements, some or all of which are pretty certain to be found in any Suite, are as follows :—

Allemande .. Common time, fairly fast : even and flowing in character.

Courante (Italian form) .. Triple time, with continuous rapid quaver or semiquaver movement.

Courante (French form) .. $\frac{6}{4}$ or $\frac{3}{2}$ time, or an irregular alternation of both; not such a lively pace as the Italian courante.

Minuet .. $\frac{3}{4}$ time, graceful but at the same time dignified in character—essentially a " courtly " dance.

Sarabande .. $\frac{3}{4}$ time, slow and dignified. Sometimes repeated once or twice with simple variations, known as " doubles " or " agréments."

Gavotte	.. $\frac{4}{4}$ time ; fairly quick ; starts usually on the 3rd beat of the bar. The gavotte is sometimes followed by a " musette "—a piece so-called from an old-fashioned instrument of that name (a kind of bagpipe), because the musette is written over a drone bass such as is always heard beneath a bagpipe tune.
Bourrée	.. $\frac{2}{2}$ time ; quicker than the gavotte ; starts on the fourth crotchet of the bar.
Jig (Giga, Gigue)	.. $\frac{3}{8}$ or some compound time ; very lively and energetic in character.

Various other dance-forms occur from time to time, but it is not possible to enumerate or describe them all in such a brief outline as this. One should add, however, that " Partita " and " Ordre " are roughly speaking synonyms for " Suite."

Second, as to the Sonata. The term had in these early days quite a different meaning from that which it acquired later and which will be explained in the following section. It meant simply " something to be played " as distinct from a Cantata, which meant " something to be sung " ; it consisted usually of four movements (slow, fast, slow, fast), many of which were contrapuntal in character and derived directly from the old-time canzonas and fugues (see section 8, where the contrapuntal forms are briefly described). A reference to the article " Sonata " in Grove's *Dictionary* will show the impossibility of covering the subject in a few words. The real point here is that these early Sonatas do also contain many movements that are definitely binary or ternary in form, and are to that extent similar in their internal structure, though not necessarily in their style or rhythm, to the movements of the Suite. This is particularly true of the so-called " Sonata da Camera " (chamber Sonata) which was of a lighter and less austere character than the " Sonata da Chiesa " (church Sonata).

So much for the generic terms " Suite " and " Sonata." We now have to show exactly what is meant by describing their individual movements as " binary " or " ternary " in form, for it has already been implied that these movements, short as they are, are considerably longer and more elaborate than the folk-song types analysed in section 5.

In the binary movements, the first thing to be explained is the key-system. A typical binary movement falls into two halves, separated by a double bar, each half being repeated. The first half starts, of course, in the tonic, modulates fairly soon, and closes at the double bar with a cadence in some closely related key—the dominant or (if the principal key is minor) the relative major. The second half starts out in the new key, modulates again, rather more freely, and eventually returns to the tonic, which is then re-asserted at sufficient length to restore its predominance as the principal key of the movement.

This unity of key structure is re-inforced by the use of the thematic

material. There need be no exact repetition, but at the opening of the second half there is commonly a reference to the opening of the first, either directly or—very commonly in Bach—by melodic inversion. The final cadence also is usually a reproduction in the tonic of the cadence heard at the double bar, and of the phrase which leads up to it. In between these, moreover, there are usually periodic references to the rhythms and melodic outlines of the first half, so that the whole is felt as balanced and coherent, even though there is no exact thematic repetition, and though the two halves are not of equal length (the second contains more modulation and is therefore as a rule rather longer). If one wishes to represent the form diagrammatically, it may be done as follows :—

$$: A_1 — B_2 : \| : A_2 — B_1 :$$

the numbers representing the keys, the letters the opening and closing phrases of the melody.

The ternary movements are similar to the binary in the arrangement of the keys and modulations, and in the general use—incidental rather than systematic—that is made of the thematic material. Where they differ is that in the second half, when the return is made to the tonic key, there is at the same time a return to the opening strain of the movement, which is then repeated, in whole or in part, in its original key.

(*N.B.* Some authorities do not consider that such a partial recapitulation justifies one in classifying a movement of this kind as " ternary " ; but for my own part I cannot see it in any other way, for a return to the opening theme in the opening key after a series of contrasts is surely the very essence of ternary form. I have therefore set down my own view of the case, with this warning that it is not universally upheld.)

7

Design : The Symphonic Form

The usual nomenclature of musical form as a whole conceals a perfect labyrinth of cross-divisions, and thereby gives rise to a great deal of misunderstanding and confusion. To depart from the usual nomenclature here would only make this confusion worse confounded ; for better for worse we must adhere to the customary names, and at the same time endeavour to show clearly where misunderstandings are liable to arise.

First of all, let us define " a Sonata " provisionally as an extended piece of music for not more than two solo instruments, in three or four movements, of which one or more exhibits a certain definite type of structure known as " Sonata form " or " first-movement form." What this type of structure is will be presently explained.

Second, let it be understood that " a trio," " a quartet " (quintet, sextet, etc.), is a precisely similar piece written for three, four, or more solo instruments—in fact, a Sonata for more than two solo instruments, the name being derived, not from the style or structure of the piece, but from the medium for which it is written. This description has to be further qualified by adding the names of the particular instruments

involved—*e.g.* " Trio for pianoforte, horn and violin," " Quartet for two violins, viola and 'cello " (the usual " string quartet "), and so forth.

Thirdly, " a Symphony " is again a piece of similar dimensions and construction composed for full orchestra.

Therefore, in heading this section " The Symphonic Form," what is indicated is a *brief* outline of the structure commonly found in the several movements of a classical Symphony ; from what has been said above, it will be understood that the structural outline of a sonata, trio, quartet, etc., is precisely the same. The word " brief " is purposely emphasised ; there is no room here to enter into the thousand and one little devices and expedients by which this form is endowed with almost inexhaustible variety.

The first movement. This is commonly in so-called sonata-form—an immensely amplified " ternary " type, in which distribution of key is carefully planned so as to emphasise at first the contrast between the principal themes, whilst paving the way later for a reconciliation. The three limbs of the structure are known as :—

(1) Exposition (sometimes preceded by a slow Introduction).
(2) Development.
(3) Recapitulation—a repetition of the Exposition, with certain modifications, and rounded off by a Coda.

The details of the analysis are as follows :—

Exposition

(1) Announcement of principal subject in tonic key. Modulations in this section are of a transitory nature ; it is the tonic that must first be strongly asserted.

(2) Transitional (or " bridge ") section, in which the influence of the tonic is gradually weakened, until finally some new key (not, however, too remote from the tonic)[1] is established.

(3) Announcement of secondary subject (or more accurately, group of subjects) in the new key, which thenceforward prevails until the end of the exposition. (In the earlier symphonies the exposition closes with a double bar and repeat ; later, it passes without break into the development.)

Development (also known as " free fantasia " or " working-out section ")

The themes already announced are " developed " in various ways—*i.e.* characteristic rhythmic or melodic features are presented in various new guises and combinations, according to the fancy and ingenuity of the composer. Modulation is frequent and remote keys are often reached. There is no sort of rule as to the order of presentation ; in the first movement of Beethoven's 8th Symphony, for example, the development is concise and based entirely on one single figure, taken from the principal subject ; in the *Eroica* practically the whole of the thematic material is

[1] In the earlier symphonists—Haydn, Mozart, and at first Beethoven—the new key is almost invariably the dominant or (if the original key was minor) the relative major. Subsequently Beethoven allowed himself a wider range of secondary keys, and later nineteenth-century symphonists followed his example

trotted out and made to show its paces in a development of unprecedented length and elaboration.

Recapitulation

Same as the exposition, but this time the tonic key prevails throughout, both for principal and secondary subjects. The Coda may be quite brief, or it may attain imposing dimensions—in Beethoven's *Waldstein* Sonata, for example, and (once more) in the *Eroica* Symphony, it is virtually a new "development" section; it depends generally on the proportions of the movement as a whole.

Slow Movement

This is cast on various lines :—

(1) First-movement form complete. Rare on account of its length, but nevertheless found occasionally—*e.g.* Beethoven Symphony No. 2 in D; pf. Sonatas in B♭, op. 22 and 106.

(2) Abbreviated first-movement form—*i.e.* sonata-form with the development section omitted, the exposition either leading straight back into the recapitulation (like a serpent swallowing its own tail), or being linked to it by a few transitional bars. This is Mozart's favourite form for the slow movement; cf. also Beethoven, pf. Sonata in D minor, op. 31, No. 2. (This type of movement is of course an enlarged "binary.")

(3) Enlarged ternary form with Coda. Here each limb of the threefold structure is itself a complex unit, very likely a complete binary or ternary stanza. This is much favoured by Beethoven in his earlier piano Sonatas.

(4) Some form of episodic structure, in which a central theme recurs from time to time with episodes of contrasted style and key in between—in fact, a Rondo (to be explained when we come to discuss the last movement). Common in Haydn, and found also in Beethoven (4th and 5th Symphonies; Sonata in C minor, op. 13).

(5) Theme and variations (described more fully in section 9). Less common than the others, but by no means unknown (Haydn, *Emperor* quartet; Beethoven, quartet in C♯ minor, op. 131).

Minuet or Scherzo

The difference between these two is one of pace, mood, and style; both are alike in form, which is most often ternary, the Minuet or Scherzo being followed by an intermediate section ("trio") and then repeated in its entirety. Sometimes the trio is itself repeated, and then followed by yet another re-statement of the principal section; or there may be a second trio, in which case the movement as a whole becomes a Rondo.

Last Movement

There are various alternatives—sonata-form (common); variation-form (Beethoven, Sonatas, op. 109 and 111; Choral Symphony; Brahms, Symphony in E minor, op. 98); fugue (Beethoven, Sonatas, op. 106, 110).

Very often it is a Rondo—*i.e.*, as already stated, a movement in which the principal theme recurs from time to time, plain or varied, with contrasting episodes in between.

There are two principal types of Rondo which may be diagrammatically rendered as A B A C A and A B A C A B A respectively. The shorter form is the one commonly employed by Haydn and the earlier eighteenth-century composers; the longer is Beethoven's invention, and is due no doubt to his desire for a Rondo of sufficient length and importance to balance the other movements of a Sonata, which he also greatly enlarged, in comparison with his predecessors. Both types may be seen side by side, as though to invite comparison, in the Sonata in C minor, op. 13 (the so-called " Sonata Pathétique "), where the slow movement and the finale are both Rondos, of the shorter and longer type respectively.

(*N.B.* Sometimes, in the longer form, the section C, instead of containing new material, consists of a development of themes heard in the earlier section. The form then becomes identical with ordinary first-movement form, except that the development section is preceded by a whole or partial re-statement of the principal subject in the tonic key. This is known as " modified rondo " or " rondo-sonata " form.)

It will thus be seen that a Symphony or Sonata is a highly complex affair, in which movements of strongly contrasted pace, mood, and style have somehow to be realised as a unity. In some of the later symphonists—more especially Liszt and Berlioz[1]—a single theme re-appears in various guises and rhythmical transformations throughout the entire course of a work. Such attempts at thematic unification are not wholly successful. The underlying unity of so multiple a structure as a Symphony is something to be felt rather than analysed; it is a psychological reality which seems to be in no way dependent on thematic transformation of the Liszt-Berlioz type. It is, in short, a mystery, and the success with which it is achieved is the measure of a composer's greatness. To impose a spiritual order upon this dramatic welter of conflicting emotions is the work of a giant. It is just in virtue of this inward mastery that Beethoven overtops all other Symphonists. Others may approach or even surpass him in formal perfection, romantic charm, or certainty of orchestral technique, but in sheer creative power he remains by common consent the greatest of them all.

8

Design : The Contrapuntal Forms

Counterpoint, as we have seen, is a term that applies properly to texture rather than to design, and some authorities would consider it a confusion of categories to talk of " contrapuntal forms," when the contrapuntal texture can be wrought into almost any form. Certainly it is a misnomer to call the finale of Mozart's *Jupiter* Symphony (as it often is called) " a fugue." The texture is consistently contrapuntal, but the outlines are cast unmistakably in sonata-form; that is to say, in the order of presentation and development of the themes, and the system of key-distribution, the work follows the perfectly normal course of a symphonic movement, although the way in which the subjects are combined,

[1] Partial application of the method is also to be found in Dvořák's *New World* Symphony and César Franck's Symphony in D minor.

inverted with one another, and generally manipulated, is fugal rather than symphonic in the ordinary sense. And since Bach, at any rate, the term " fugue " has consistently denoted a certain kind of outline as well as a certain kind of texture, so that a brief description of that outline must here be given.

A fugue, then, is built up from one principal theme (the " subject ") and commonly falls into three main divisions : Exposition, Middle Section, Final Section. The last is sometimes called " Recapitulation " ; this is a complete misnomer, for there is no recapitulation in a fugue. Bach tried it once or twice, and the result is not fully convincing, especially in the organ fugue in E minor (the so-called " Wedge "), where one feels that a fine subject has been thrown away. *The fugal process is essentially discursive and continuous.*

The order of the exposition is as follows :—

Each voice enters in turn, with the subject and answer usually alternating in tonic and dominant keys. When the first voice has announced the subject, the second gives the answer, whilst the first carries on with what is known as the *Counter-subject*—a term which explains itself. When the last voice to enter has finished its announcement of the subject, the Exposition is, strictly speaking, complete, although it is occasionally followed by a few transitional bars before the middle section proper begins, and these few bars are often included by convention as part of the Exposition. Such differences of detail are unimportant—they are differences of terminology, not of substance. Nor need we concern ourselves here with technical points such as the distinction between " real " and " tonal" answers : suffice it that sometimes the answer is an exact transposition of the subject, sometimes it is slightly modified.

Before we pass to the middle section, two points should be mentioned :—

(1) In the strictest type of fugue the counter-subject accompanies the subject in all its appearances throughout the entire course of the fugue. (This strict type is rare ; No. 2 in Book I. of Bach's " 48 " is an example.) Subject and counter-subject must of course " invert " readily—*i.e.* they must sound equally well whichever is uppermost. Subjects that invert in this manner are said to be " in double counterpoint." Sometimes a fugue has two or more counter-subjects, all of which invert in this manner with one another and with the principal subject ; they are then said to be in triple (quadruple, etc.) counterpoint. (See Bach, " 48," I. 4 and II. 17 for extremely fine examples of triple counterpoint.)

(2) Sometimes the exposition is followed by a whole or partial " counter-exposition," in which subject and answer again succeed one another in tonic and dominant keys, though the order in which the several voices enter is generally different.

Middle Section. This is the main body of the fugue ; the subject enters from time to time in its original form, but with a wider choice of keys. In between these " middle entries," as they are called, come short episodes or developments, usually founded on some characteristic phrase or rhythm of the subject or counter-subject, but often also incorporating new figures or features of interest such as augmentations, diminutions, strettos, etc. Moreover the episodes are themselves often

written in double counterpoint, a new episode being formed by the simple process of inverting an earlier one.

(*N.B.* " Augmentation " and " diminution " mean respectively doubling and halving the note-values of the theme. " Stretto " means overlapping of the theme—*i.e.* the announcing of it by a new voice before a previous announcement is complete, *e.g.* :—

Ex. 58.



Sometimes fugues are written almost entirely in stretto, *e.g.* " 48 ", I. 1 ; II. 5. In such cases the subject has everything its own way ; there is usually no counter-subject and few episodes if any.)

Final Section. Shorter than the other two, and generally indicated by a return to the tonic key. Apart from this, it is difficult to give any set description of this section, and in many cases difficult even to say exactly where it begins, so continuous a thing is a good fugue. Its chief function is to restore the predominance of the tonic key after all the excursions and modulations of the Middle Section. To this extent it is certainly analogous to the " recapitulation " of a Sonata, but to give it that title is extremely misleading, as already observed.

Before passing on to the other contrapuntal forms, two special types of fugue should be mentioned—the double fugue and the fugue on a chorale, although the latter is often classified as a special type of chorale-prelude (see below).

A double fugue is a fugue on two subjects. Sometimes these are announced simultaneously, in which case it closely resembles an ordinary single fugue, except that the counter-subject is elevated to a rank of equal dignity with the principal subject. Sometimes each subject is given a separate exposition and development, after which they are heard in combination in the final section (a spacious and attractive lay-out; cf. " 48 ", II. 18).

A fugue on a chorale is a fugue in which a chorale (old German hymn-tune) is superimposed, line by line, upon an ordinary three- or four-part fugue which pursues its own independent and continuous course underneath it.[1] There is also a shorter type in which the fugue instead of being continuous is built up of a series of short fugal expositions, the theme of each exposition being the opening notes of each successive line of the chorale usually (but not necessarily) in diminution. Examples of both kinds can be found in Bach's organ works—*e.g. Kyrie Gott Vater* (first type) and *Durch Adams Fall* (second type).

Closely akin to the fugue, but less strict, are the *Invention* and the *Canzona*. Both are terms of somewhat loose connotation, and there is no need here to enter into details of the unimportant technical modifications which they present. Either can safely be taken on trust by the layman as " more or less a fugue."

[1] Or above it, or around it, if the chorale is assigned to the bass or to one of the inner voices.

Canon merely means perpetual fugue—that is to say, continuous imitation of one voice by another throughout a movement, or throughout an entire section of it. It is not necessary that all the voices should participate in the canon; very often the canon is limited to two voices, the other parts pursuing an independent course. The imitation may be at any interval, and at any distance within reason—that is to say, the answering voice may enter a bar after the leader, or two bars, or half a bar (it is usually one or other of these).

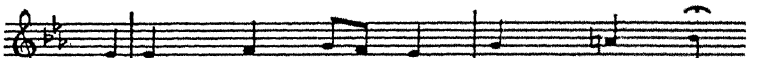
The only other contrapuntal form that need be here described is the *Chorale-Prelude*. There are three principal types of this :—

(1) It may be a special type of fugue (v.s.).

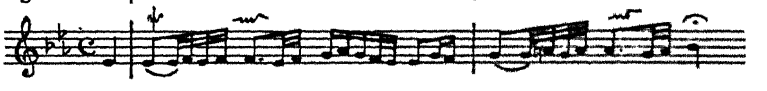
(2) The chorale may be given line by line to one voice (as in the fugal type) whilst the other voices are assigned, not a fugue, but free counterpoint of a more or less imitative character usually based on some definite and persistent rhythmical figure. Sometimes the successive lines of the chorale follow one another without a break (as in Bach's " Little Organ Book ") ; sometimes there is a long interval between each line, during which the accompanying voices carry on their counterpoint alone (*e.g.* the familiar *Wachet auf*). Naturally the second type is considerably longer and more elaborate.

(3) The melody of the chorale may be ornamented and embroidered—often to such an extent that it becomes a veritable arabesque, in which the original outlines of the tune are scarcely perceptible at a casual hearing. A glance at the opening notes of *O Mensch, bewein'* and then at the opening of Bach's Chorale-Prelude bearing the same title will serve to illustrate the process :—

Ex. 59.



Ex. 59A.



In this type the underlying voices are not in themselves of special interest ; their chief purpose is to supply appropriate harmony to the melody above them, though they still retain a certain independence of character and must not be regarded merely as a series of chords. The type is perhaps inferior to the other two in quality of texture, but certainly not in essential beauty—if in the world of music there exists anything lovelier than *O Mensch, bewein'* or *Herzlich tut mich*, I have yet to discover it.

9

Design : Variation-form and the Concerto

Variation-form remains to be discussed ; and something must also be said about the Concerto, for although this last is a medium and not a form *per se*, yet it is a medium which imposes certain definite modifications upon whatever form is adopted.

We may approach variation-form most easily by posing the question,

What precisely is the relationship that exists between a theme and its ensuing variations? We know that they are different, otherwise they would not be variations; but in what respect and to what extent are they the same?

To this question there are several answers:

(1) The melody of the theme may be kept virtually intact, whilst the accompanying harmonies are altered and the texture elaborated—as in many of Delius' "Brigg Fair" variations.

(2) The melody may merely be transferred to the bass or to an inner part, as in the first and third of Brahms' variations on a theme by Schumann (op. 9).

(3) The theme may be decorated and embellished, as often in Schubert—*e.g.* the first variation in the slow movement of his string quartet in D minor.

(4) Some characteristic figure or rhythm of the theme may be taken and worked up into a kind of independent study, persisting more or less throughout the variation, whilst the essentials of the harmonic structure are preserved in their original form. Very common.

(5) Sometimes the figure is not even taken from the theme at all, the harmonic and structural outline being relied on to give the necessary connexion. It should be noted furthermore that the harmonic reproduction is often limited to the most important progressions, cadences, and points of colour; it is seldom a chord-for-chord correspondence.

(6) The opening of the theme may be treated contrapuntally—either in a set fugue or in the freer kind of imitation known as *fugato*.

(7) Changes of mode (minor for major) and /or of time may accompany all or any of the above.

It is essential that in handling this form the composer should play fair with his listener, by adhering faithfully to the harmonic and structural outlines of the theme and also by reminding him from time to time of the theme itself. It is very easy to lose one's bearings when listening to an elaborate set of variations, a fact which the composer does not always remember. Brahms is especially scrupulous in this respect: the Handel Set in particular are a model of what variations should be—extraordinarily fertile in device and rich in contrast, and at the same time persistently faithful to the melodic and harmonic contours of his theme. Bach on the other hand (in the "Goldbergs") and Schumann (in the *Etudes Symphoniques*) are sometimes carried away by their own imagination to the point of forgetting their hearers altogether. As music, the "Goldbergs" are one of the wonders of the world—but only an optimist can take them seriously as variations.

There is a special variety of the variation-form which calls for brief description—that known as variations (or "divisions") on a ground. The distinguishing feature of this is the persistence of a single phrase repeated over and over again in the bass, each repetition, or pair of repetitions, forming the basis of a new variation in the upper parts. These variations are self-subsistent—that is to say, they fit harmonically over the

ground-theme, but are not in any sense derived from it. The ground is thus a highly formal type of structure, but very imposing if skilfully managed. The task is not easy, for the " joins " at the end of each repetition are apt to produce a too-strongly cadential kind of harmony, and thus the continuity of the fabric is easily impaired, unless the composer is very definitely on his guard.

Special types of ground are the *Chaconne* and the *Passacaglia*. Both terms are somewhat vaguely used. Both are strictly speaking in triple time, and the chief difference between them is that in the *Passacaglia* the ground is plain, whereas in the *Chaconne* it is harmonised. The finale of Brahms' E minor Symphony is an excellent example of the large-scale *Chaconne*, although it is not so labelled by the composer. This is said to have wrought great havoc amongst the critics when the Symphony was first produced ; the unhappy tribe settled themselves comfortably to hear something in ordinary sonata-form, or at worst a rondo ; they soon lost all their bearings, and were left floundering helplessly. After the *Eroica*, one would think, they might have been forewarned.

The Concerto

The Concerto probably owes its origin to purely practical considerations. In the early days of orchestral music, the standard of execution amongst the players varied a great deal ; the Concerto sought to turn this discrepancy to good account by contrasting " tutti " (*i.e.* full orchestra) passages with others in which a small and skilful band of players (the " Concertino ") could display their powers. It was not virtuosity in the modern sense that was demanded of the Concertino, so much as a high degree of neatness and precision, which in those days could not have been expected from the back benches. Incidentally, too, the change from *tutti* to *soli* produces a surprising contrast of tone-colour, even when the solo instruments are of the same kind as the *tutti*. To realise this, one has only to listen to Elgar's *Introduction and Allegro* for string orchestra and string quartet, or to Vaughan Williams's *Fantasia on a theme by Thomas Tallis*, in which again a quartet of solo strings is contrasted both with a partial and a full string *tutti*.

Therefore, one must not think of the Concerto as being at first a vehicle displaying the powers of a single individual, such as it afterwards became. Concertos for a single instrument there certainly were—*e.g.* the clavier and violin Concertos of Bach. But more frequently it was of what is known as the " Concerto Grosso " type, in which the *tutti* are contrasted with a small group, not with an individual. Occasionally it might even be written for such a group alone, without any contrasting *tutti* ; such a one is Bach's " Brandenburg " Concerto in G, written for three violins, three violas, three violoncellos, and double-bass.

The form adopted for these works was usually that of the Sonata ; but, as we have already seen, the Sonata of those times was very different from what it afterwards became ; it was a term of loose application, often approximating closely to what we should call a Suite. It is impossible, therefore, to lay down any rules of formal treatment ; think simply of a Suite or Sonata of the old-fashioned type in which certain passages are

performed by soloists or a small picked group of players, alternating with others in which the whole body of players take part, and you have as clear an idea of the Early Concerto as it is possible to give without a detailed analysis of individual works.

The later Concerto (whose form was really settled by Mozart) is a different affair altogether. It is more definitely a *bravura* piece, it is written usually for a single performer, and it is cast in the strict form of the classical Symphony, except that there are only three movements, the minuet or scherzo being omitted. As regards the second and third movements, it is again difficult to define precisely how the form is modified to suit the medium ; there are passages for solo alone, and passages for *tutti* alone ; also passages in which the solo plays together with—at times one might even say, in opposition to—a partial or full *tutti*. Details of these different combinations and alternations vary in each individual work ; but the main outlines of the form—Rondo, Sonata, or whatever it may be—are not as a rule obscure or hard to follow.

In the opening movement, however, there is a set mode of procedure which is worth noting. The exposition is given first to the *tutti* alone. It is commonly abbreviated to some extent and confined as a rule to the tonic. Not till this preliminary exposition is over does the soloist enter ; the exposition is then repeated in full with the soloist participating, and this time, of course, the usual modulations and contrasts of key are introduced, precisely as in the exposition of a Symphony. After that, the development and recapitulation proceed as usual, the soloist participating more or less continuously.

This treatment of the exposition was faithfully observed by Mozart and his contemporaries, also to a very large extent by Beethoven and later by Brahms. After Beethoven's time, however, the convention was often disregarded ; one finds even so conservative a composer as Mendelssohn, for example, preferring in his violin Concerto to plunge directly *in medias res*, and entrust his opening theme to the soloist.

Some may think that the vocal as well as the instrumental forms should have been explained to some extent in this Article. The reason for omitting them is that where the form is entirely dependent on the words, it is too elastic and too variable to lend itself to general analysis. There are many vocal works, however, where the form as a whole is not thus dependent. I am thinking of the great mass of liturgical and semi-scriptural compositions in which short fragments of the text are taken and made individually the basis of the successive movements, each fragment being sung over and over again throughout the course of its own particular movement. In such movements the form is only conditioned by the words to this extent, that the theme itself is necessarily adapted to them. The movement as a whole will commonly be found on analysis to be constructed on precisely the same lines as an instrumental movement of the corresponding type—enlarged ternary, fugue, or whatever it may be. A study of such works as Bach's *B minor Mass*, Brahms' *German Requiem* or Dvořák's *Stabat Mater* will make this perfectly clear.

A word of caution before leaving this subject. Musical form in its completeness is a living thing, an organic and beautiful growth, which in the long run defies analysis. We can dissect the bony structure of the human

body as much as we will, and yet never come within sight of solving the mystery of that " warm breathing beauty of flesh " which constitutes the human form divine. So in music; mere analysis will never reveal to us how it is that the many themes of the *Eroica* unfold out of and into one another so miraculously that each as it appears is felt to be the completion and consummation of the one before it. That is Beethoven's secret; we may possess it, but we may not understand it. None the less there *is* an anatomical structure of music on which its true form is moulded, just as the tissues of the living form are moulded on the bony framework underneath. What has been attempted here is an outline of this anatomical study. Such study, indispensable for the composer and the performer, is by no means so for a listener who is content to leave his brains on the doorstep when he goes into a concert hall. And many listeners are of this kind; they do not concern themselves with any process of musical thought; they surrender themselves passively, and resort to music chiefly as a means of inducing reverie. These may even be a majority, but there are countless others to whom music is or could be something more than this vague sensuous enjoyment. For them, it will be a help to have some slight acquaintance with musical physiology, such as these pages offer.

PART II

MODERN PROBLEMS

I

Musically, as in other respects, this is an age of transition. On the one hand, composers continue to write in the old forms, and to a large extent in the old idiom; in Elgar and Sibelius, for example—who, to put it mildly, are not least among their peers—you will probably not find a single chord that could not equally be found in Mendelssohn or Tschaikowsky. At the other end of the scale there are the wild men of every shape, size and nationality, who have broken more or less completely with the harmonic idiom of music as we have hitherto known it. With them are associated the various experiments in quarter-tones, polytonality, atonality, etc., which till recently have almost monopolised the attention of musical critics, especially on the Continent. To read the effusions of some of these gentlemen, one would think that novelty of harmonic idiom was the sole musical desiderium. And in between these two classes—the conservatives and the wild men—come the less fanatical modernists of all countries, composers who are in no sense revolutionary, yet whose music does sound in some indefinable way different from the music of the classical age.

Let us defer consideration of the more radical experiments, and confine ourselves for the moment to the general modernist attitude. To be more precise, let us try and define briefly the attitude of modern composers towards the problems of harmony and design, for these are the two aspects from which the question may most conveniently be approached. Texture is equally important, of course, but the texture of

modern music is so various and so complex that a discussion of it could hardly be kept within the scope of this outline, or rendered in terms which the layman could readily understand.

First, then, as regards design. The whole tendency of modern music has for some time been more and more towards abolishing the old formalities of structure. This is true alike on the largest scale and the smallest. Cadence in the old sense is almost a thing of the past; phrases, sentences, periods are no longer balanced in symmetrical antithesis, but have become as wayward and flexible as the sentences and periods of a prose discourse; music, in short, has freed itself, for better or worse, from the trammels of metre. Measure of course remains, for a conductor still has to beat time, or the players could not keep together. But the accents and stresses of the musical phrase are continually falling across the bar, so to speak; they no longer coincide with what were formerly known as "strong" beats, which now have scarcely any accentual significance. And precisely the same is true of musical form as a whole. One sees a modern work bearing the title "Symphony" or "Sonata," but till one opens it one has no idea how many movements there will be; how they will be constructed; or what will be the order of their succession. Themes are no longer presented in a continuous exposition before they are developed, so that one can no longer think of "exposition" and "development" as two distinct and clearly recognisable compartments; they have merged into a single continuum in which what is happening at any given moment after the first few bars may be expository, or transitional, or developous.[1] One can never know beforehand. And as for the recapitulation—well, there may be a reference to it in the analytical programme, but you are fortunate indeed if you are able to recognise it as such at a first hearing.

In a word, form is no longer generic, but individual; it is more and more conditioned by the content of a work, and can seldom be analysed except with reference to that content. This may be, ideally speaking, the highest condition to which form can aspire; but such an ideal makes very exacting demands upon listener and composer alike. Only the greatest—the Beethoven of the last quartets, the Sibelius of the 4th and 5th Symphonies, the Wagner of the *Tristan* prelude—can fully achieve it. And, lacking this perfect consummation, music so constructed easily degenerates into inconsequence and improvisation. For composers of less than the highest stature, more formal methods of design are still appropriate, and those who are wise enough to know their own limitations will not disdain them. For this reason, I think, the swing of the pendulum is sure to come in course of time, even though formality seems at the moment to be out of fashion.

2

Harmony

Another factor that perplexes and disconcerts many a listener when he first approaches modern music is its high degree of dissonance. Here,

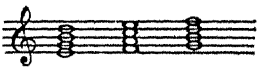
[1] I apologise for this adjective, but as it did not previously exist it was necessary to invent it.

once more, his instinct is probably right in the main. Consonance and dissonance have already been defined in terms of sound (v.s., p. 1010), but if sound was merely sound, music would not be worth troubling about. The acoustical distinction between consonance and dissonance has its counterpart in psychology; whether by chance association or some inherent property, dissonance in music has always signified the element of tension, consonance that of relaxation. And just as the human soul passes the whole of its conscious existence in a state of more or less continuous reaction or oscillation between these two extremes, so in the past the very being of music has always depended on the free interplay of consonant and dissonant elements, each of which acquired significance only by virtue of its contrast with the other.

Therefore, when one is asked to listen—as one often is to-day—to an all-dissonant music, one is in effect being asked to endure a state of continuous tension. Why should one? I for one believe that the instinctive hostility evoked by a great deal of contemporary music is due to this unwarrantable demand it makes on the listener, and to that extent well justified. It does not follow, however, that we can permit ourselves a purely static conception of discord, or assume that the nineteenth-century view of it is entirely adequate for ourselves. Ignore all merely provocative experiments; there still remains a great mass of modern and near-modern music, written within the last fifty years, which contrives to sound perfectly euphonious, and yet certainly treats discord with a freedom quite foreign to the old classical and romantic traditions. If that tradition was right in its view of discord, this newer music ought to sound all wrong. Yet it does not sound all wrong. Why? This is a question which theory hitherto has never squarely faced.

The answer, it seems to me, lies in the very definition of discord—a chord containing one or more dissonant intervals. One single dissonant interval, that is to say, is enough to turn what would otherwise be a concord into a discord. But this view of discord simply does not square with our common experience. Take the diatonic seventh in its three commonest forms :—

Ex. 60.



In each of these the seventh is the only dissonant interval; in the middle one the seventh is major, and therefore rather more acutely dissonant than the other two. For the rest, each chord contains five other intervals —three thirds, major and minor, and two fifths—which are all more or less consonant. Invert them and space them as you will, this remains true, for the thirds invert into sixths, the fifths into fourths, which again are respectively imperfect and perfect consonances. So that each dissonance is tempered and mitigated by the vicinity of five consonances, two of which are actually perfect. This proportion, moreover, is increased when one or more notes of the chord are doubled at the unison or octave, for the note so doubled is normally not the dissonant note. Small wonder,

then, that Vaughan Williams can open *Towards the Unknown Region* thus without fear of cacophony :—

Ex. 61.



for the fact is that we simply do not hear these chords as discordant ; the preponderance of the consonant intervals overpowers the single dissonance. It has taken the human ear several centuries to adjust itself to this view, but the adjustment has been made. There is no longer room for doubt here ; such treatment of the seventh is a commonplace of modern music, and causes no discomfort even to the most sedate of listeners. It is therefore merely silly of theory not to recognise it, and offer some kind of explanation.

Of course this makes it much harder to formulate any set rules of modern harmonic procedure ; in fact, it makes it impossible. As long as a single dissonance was enough to constitute a discord, one could pounce on it and virtuously demand its resolution, no matter how the rest of the chord was made up. Now this is impossible, for one can no longer say precisely what a discord is ; a conception previously rigid and absolute has become fluid and relative, and dogma must henceforth give way to individual judgment and perception. Or, to put it another way, the ingredients of modern harmony are not now mathematical, but rather chemical. The most unpromising collocation of notes may turn into a chord, whose precise effect in a particular context probably cannot be forejudged ; it may have to be tried experimentally at the piano, whose rôle in the extension and development of harmonic resource has been of incalculable importance. Formerly a composer who used the piano in this way was supposed for some obscure reason not to be quite playing the game. This form of snobbery is now a thing of the past ; a modern composer's obligation to his piano is no longer matter for pride or shame, but is simply taken for granted.

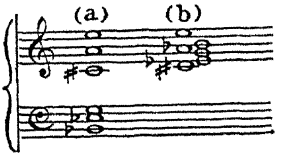
There is another element in modern chord-formation that has come to be recognised as of vital importance—that of the spacing and arrangement of the notes. Turn back to p. 1015, and you will recall that any of the simple fundamental chords that formed the basis of eighteenth and nineteenth century harmony could be spaced in a score of ways without infringing the limits of euphony or changing the essential nature of the chord. With the more complex modern chords one has to be much more careful. Consider the following :—

Ex. 62.



The notes are the same in both, yet (*b*) is beyond all question harsh, messy, and cacophonous, while (*a*) would hardly pass for a discord at all. This is particularly true of " polytonal " chords, *i.e.* chords formed from more than one tonality :—

Ex. 63.



At (*a*) the combination of A major and E♭ major is positively mellifluous ; the rearrangement at (*b*) is harsh and confused. So that instead of saying, as we used to say, " a chord may be spaced in any number of ways," we must now rather say " the spacing is the chord."

3

Polytonality

The last example leads us naturally on to the question of polytonality in its more general sense. This means literally, as was said, the combination of many keys or tonalities. There is nothing in the formation of the word to imply that these several tonalities must necessarily occur simultaneously. A " polytonal " piece of music might thus mean merely a piece which passes rapidly from one key to another and does not end in the key in which it began. In this sense a great deal of modern music contrives to be polytonal without occasioning anyone much discomfort. Listeners with an absolute sense of pitch are in a very small minority ; the others quickly lose their sense of the opening key in a work of any length or complexity. Unity of key was in theory the corner-stone of symphonic construction up to the close of last century, but probably the average concert-goer would freely admit that thematic development and continuity of thought are what really give unity to a musical composition, so far as he is concerned. It might even be claimed that unity of key is very often a factitious unity at best, and that the inner emotional logic of a piece may actually need a different key in which to conclude. At any rate, it is an open question, which every composer may fairly claim to decide for himself.

As used to-day, however, the term does mean, as a rule, " the employment of two or more keys *simultaneously*." Such procedure is from the very start open to grave suspicion on æsthetic and psychological grounds. Key is essentially a means of creating and preserving unity ; if it were not for this need of unity, there is not the slightest reason why even the simplest folk-song or hymn-tune should finish in the same key in which it started. Therefore, polytonality is in effect the attempt to establish two or more conflicting unities at the same time. As such it seems foredoomed to failure, except perhaps as an occasional device ; and even so it seems more appropriate to works for the stage, where it might be justified by some point in the dramatic situation, than to absolute music.

None the less it is worth while to glance at the technical problem it raises, because this, as it happens, can be stated in simple terms. Let us assume for the moment that not more than two keys are in question, for the difficulties thus arising are not in any way altered but merely intensified, if the number is increased. The simplest form of composition to which such a method could consistently be applied would be a two part invention, constructed of two melodic parts, each of which was written in a different key. Here, the conflict of unities would of course exist, but the two parts need not necessarily come into very violent harmonic collision at any given point. The effect is one of confusion rather than of actual cacophony. In a more complex composition it would be otherwise; each part would have to be accompanied by harmonies appropriate to its own particular key. These harmonies might be expressed as plain chords, or as harmonic figuration, or by some more contrapuntal type of texture, but each of these alternatives would necessarily give rise to a stream of more or less acute dissonance, of which the ear would quickly grow tired. I am speaking in hypothetical language, but experiments in polytonal combination have been freely made by Stravinsky, Milhaud, Hindemith, and others, so that everyone who is willing to take a little trouble can judge for himself, if he feels so inclined. He must however try and discount the interest that pure novelty of sensation is almost certain to arouse, for that quickly passes. The real question is whether polytonality provides a method of permanent value and universal appeal. Personally, after being strongly attracted by it for a time, I have come to the conclusion that it does not, and for the reasons which I have tried to analyse above. Many of equal or greater authority would not agree; time alone can show which view is right.

4

Atonality

" Atonality," like " polytonality," has in current usage a more limited and precise meaning than the actual formation of the word might suggest. It does not mean merely that in a given piece there is no definitely principal key, or that important sections of it may be tonally ambiguous. It starts with a definite theory of scale-formation, and deduces therefrom a complete method of musical composition, which is pursued relentlessly to its logical conclusion. The theory may be outlined thus :—

The scale consists of twelve semitones, all of which are, in the widest sense of the word, of equal value. Pre-existing relationships within the scale are abolished out of hand; there is no tonic, no dominant, no anything of the kind; one note is as good as another, and any note may occur in juxtaposition with any other note at any point of the musical phrase. Harmony results from the combination of the notes of the scale, therefore harmony too must reproduce this state of equality and fraternity; one note is as good as another, therefore one interval is also as good as another; so also the chords into which these intervals are combined.

This theory, or method, or whatever you like to call it, is associated entirely with the name of Arnold Schönberg and a handful of his

disciples—Alban Berg, Anton von Webern, and one or two others. Lest it be thought the above description is exaggerated, let me hasten to subjoin a few bars from Schönberg by way of illustration :—

Ex. 64.



These bars are taken from No. 19 of *Pierrot Lunaire*; it may interest the reader to learn that the number is entitled " Serenade." What I wish first of all to emphasise is that they are an absolutely normal and representative specimen of the Schönbergian procedure; they were indeed chosen almost at random from the first work of his I happened to pick up. The early Schönberg is associated with such verbose and heavily romantic compositions as *Verklärte Nacht* and *Pelleas*; about op. 12 or possibly earlier we begin to notice a transitional style, which is quickly outgrown. From op. 18 (or thereabouts) he has written consistently in the idiom here shown; *Pierrot Lunaire* is actually numbered op. 21.

Once more, I must confess to my total inability to foresee any possible future for this kind of thing. This complete upsetting of all traditional values, this disdain of all previously accepted melodic and harmonic relationships, suggests to me, not so much courage and sincerity, as an inflated arrogance of mind that can only be described as megalomania. To my ear it makes no more sense to-day than it did when I first made its acquaintance some fifteen years ago. Schönberg's experiments have aroused so much discussion in the past few years that it was impossible to omit all reference to them here. But one can only speak for oneself, and to me the result is pure anarchy and destruction of musical values—a dreary wilderness of cacophony that somehow contrives to be pedantic and hysterical at the same time.

Before leaving this topic, we may perhaps do well to remind ourselves of the enormous part played by tradition, inheritance, and association in the building up of our common musical language. The chords, progressions, and cadences of which that language has hitherto largely consisted, are not the invention of any individual ; no one composer has contributed more than a minute fraction of that common store of material, nor—till to-day—has he ever sought to do so. The greatest composers have usually been consolidators rather than innovators ; they have taken the language and idiom of music as they found it, and concerned themselves little with harmonic discoveries or new turns of speech. That language has grown, insensibly and continuously, by a process of slow accumulation and extension throughout the centuries ; it has had time to build itself into the very foundations of our consciousness, and so to become the vehicle of a musical speech that is felt not merely as sound but as sense. A Bach fugue or a Beethoven symphony is not merely reasoned in its general construction, it is logical in its progress from bar to bar. And as it has been in the past, so must it be in the future. The new must somehow incorporate the old, it must be felt as one with it, if music is to be anything more than a series of novel sensations. A composer who wants to reach the hearts and minds of his audience simply cannot afford to spend his time inventing a new language ; nor, if he did, would his audience trouble to learn it. Why should they ? They have their Bach and their Handel, their Haydn and their Beethoven, and all the other masters, great and small, who are of their lineage. The new can enrich the old, it may not supersede it.

Yet this, and no other, is what composers have largely been attempting to do since the time of the War. They have sought to create an entirely new instrument of musical speech, shunning familiar cadences and progressions as if they were the devil itself. Probably all the harmonic experiment of recent years will show, in the long run, very little that can be incorporated and assimilated by the language of the classical tradition—far less, at any rate, than is now hoped and claimed. That language, however, is the stem from which the music of the future will grow, even as the music of the past. Only that which can be grafted on to that stem is worth keeping.

PART III

EARLIER DEVELOPMENTS

I

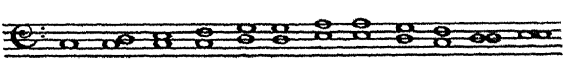
The period that has to be summarised in these concluding pages is one of no less than 750 years, *i.e.* from *circa* 850 (the first appearance of anything that could be considered as harmony) till 1600, which brings the first epoch of musical maturity to a glorious close. The last 50 years of this period far outweigh the earlier 700 in musical value ; therefore, in order to reserve as much space as possible for their discussion, the earlier years will only be outlined in a brief tabular chronology. Those who wish to amplify this outline must have recourse to the histories, but let them be

forewarned that throughout this early period the interest is antiquarian rather than musical. Its appeal is to the specialist, and a general sense of its chronology is really all that the ordinary music-lover need carry in his head.

This outline, then is as follows ; dates of course must be taken as approximate :—

(1) 850–1050. Voices move in similar or oblique motion only, except at the cadence. Intervals used are those of the unison, octave, fourth, and fifth only, except when the motion is oblique ; other intervals may then occur, but all such intervals are regarded as dissonant. No measured rhythm ; the accompanying voices follow the spoken rhythm of the intoning voice as best they can. This method is known as that of the OLD ORGANUM ; here is a specimen from Wooldridge :—

Ex. 65.



(2) 1050–1150. Similar to the above in rhythm, but contrary movement is freely employed, and parts are allowed to cross. Basic harmony is still that of the unison, octave, fourth, and fifth; but the contrary movement necessitates a more extended (though still quite experimental) use of the other intervals.

This is known as the NEW ORGANUM ; here again follows a specimen from Wooldridge :—

Ex. 66.



(3) 1150–1300. Musical measure is invented by borrowing some of the commonest poetic metres—iambus, trochee, etc.—and adapting them to musical requirements, long and short syllables being represented by longer and shorter note-values.[1] For example :—

Ex. 67.



[1] It should be noted that the metrical framework is always one of triple time Duple time only appeared in the fourteenth century. Therefore the ∪ ∪ of the dactyl is represented by the same relative note values (♩ 𝅗𝅥) that have to do duty for the ∪ – of the Iambus - a third degree method of torturing these unfortunate notes.

Harmonically no great change ; octave, fourth, and fifth still prevail, but thirds and (later) sixths begin to be recognised as partial consonances. This period is known as that of DISCANT.

This concludes what we may call the palæolithic period of European music. Another 250 years, more or less, have to elapse before the first period of its full maturity is reached ; but throughout those years progress is continuous. One can no longer say, " At such and such a point this or that was invented " ; one must view the period as a single stretch of musical history during which technique and style were steadily developed and refined into an instrument of singular perfection—more perfect, indeed, through its very limitations, than that of any later age.

There is an immense bulk of contemporary literature dealing with the theory of music at this time. It is written for the most part in dog-latin, and as it is often highly obscure and controversial we shall not here review it. It is always more satisfactory to establish your theory inductively by inference from actual practice, and the reader may take it that what here follows has been so established, though of course conclusions alone can be stated. It would take a large volume to collate and compare all the examples from which those conclusions are drawn.

2

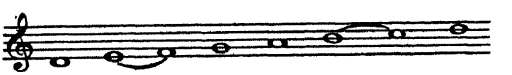
Scale : The Modal System

Our own major and minor scales are survivals of six older scales (or " modes " as they were then called) which survived down till the very end of the sixteenth century. Morley (writing in 1597) speaks of the modal system as something archaic and fallen into disuse, but it is incontestable that Palestrina (who died in 1594) was in all matters of modal procedure as orthodox at the end of his career as he had been at the beginning. The fact is that the transition from mode to scale was so gradual that no one can say exactly when it took place.

To return. All these modes were strictly diatonic ; that is to say, they all consisted of five tones and two semitones ; but the order in which these occurred was different in each mode. The easiest way to understand them is to think of the white keys of the pianoforte, and imagine a succession of scales, each formed of that series, but each starting and finishing on a different note ; *e.g.* :—

Ex. 68.

(Dorian)



(Phrygian)



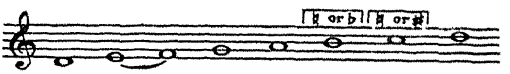
And so on ; the names of the other modes, starting respectively on F, G, A, and C, are Lydian, Mixolydian, Æolian, and Ionian. These names (borrowed from the old Greek scales) do not really matter very much, and are

only put in here for the sake of completeness. There is no mode starting on B because the false fifth (B♮ – F) made that series unusable.

The reader will probably ask at this point, Were chromatic notes ever used ? To which the answer is that they were, and that from the very first moment of their introduction the modal system as such was potentially doomed, although centuries were to elapse before the downfall was complete. They were not introduced all at once, but B♭, F♯ and C♯ were in frequent use before the end of the fourteenth century, and were followed before long by E♭ and G♯, while such remote accidentals as A♭, D♭, D♯ are by no means unknown in the madrigals of the later sixteenth century. They were used chiefly for two purposes—to correct the tritone (*i.e.* the false fifth B – F, or its inversion) and to raise the seventh note of the scale so as to form a perfect cadence when required. They were not always indicated by the composer,[1] but automatically inserted during a performance for the two purposes above mentioned, as also for certain others, which need not here be specified.

Consider now the effect of all this. Take the Dorian Scale shown above ; imagine that every time a B comes near an F it is changed into B♭ ; every time a C leads cadentially up to D it is changed into C♯. In effect, the scale is now as follows :—

Ex. 69.



And what is this but our old friend the " melodic " minor scale ? Apply this, *mutatis mutandis*, to the other modes, and you will understand how it was inevitable for the modal system to give way sooner or later to the two-scale system of our own times. There was no conflict between them, merely a gradual and imperceptible transformation of the one into the other.

3

Harmony

The harmonic basis of this early polyphony is very simple. To understand it, one need only focus the attention on two questions, which are both capable of straightforward answers. The questions may be posed as follows :—

(1) What was the general view of dissonance ?

(2) How did they set about combining intervals into chords ?

As regards dissonance, the practice was far stricter than that of the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. In those centuries, as we saw, dissonance could be freely approached so long as it was duly resolved. In the earlier period, dissonance has to be *prepared* as well as resolved ; that is to

[1] Hence the name " Musica Ficta " by which this procedure of chromatic alteration was generally known.

say, the dissonant note must form part of the essential harmony of the previous chord, as, for example :—

Ex. 70.



The technical description of this procedure is that at (*b*) the note C is a suspended dissonance, prepared at (*a*) and resolved at (*c*). This attitude towards dissonance—as something needing preparation as well as resolution—persisted to the very close of the sixteenth century. It is easy to produce exceptions from the madrigalists, who were more experimentally minded than Palestrina, Victoria, and the other great church composers of the time. But even in the secular work taken as a whole, infringement of the rule is of negligible frequency compared with its observance. We may therefore summarise the history of dissonance (ignoring the palæolithic period) as follows (it will be understood that there is always a certain overlapping between the end of one period and the beginning of the next) :—

Till 1600, dissonance requires both preparation and resolution.

From then till 1900, it need not be prepared, but it must still be resolved.

Since 1900 it has not necessarily required either preparation or resolution.

And as all progress has to be paid for, it may be confessed that each successive gain of freedom and expressive power has been compensated by a definite loss in purity of sound, and also in clearness and precision of style. In these latter qualities the music of the sixteenth century is the most perfect that has ever been in this world, or probably ever will be.

Turning now to the question of chord formation, one may sum up the whole procedure as follows : any number of mutually consonant intervals may be sounded together in the form of a chord. One should at once add that the fourth from the bass, even in its perfect form, is no longer considered a consonance. Between any two upper parts, yes ; between any upper part and the bass, no. It has never been quite clear why the fourth should have suffered this change of status ; it certainly will not combine with the third, whereas the fifth will, but that does not really explain how it came to be regarded as *per se* dissonant, nor why this supposed dissonance should be ignored, so long as the interval is confined to the upper voices. The whole business is thoroughly irrational and inconsistent ; nevertheless it happened.

The grouping and classification of these fundamental concords came later. In saying (as we commonly do say) that the common chord and its first inversion formed the basis of Palestrina's harmony, we are guilty of

an anachronism, for he would not have understood the description or admitted the relationship. To him the chords $\frac{A}{F}$ and $\frac{C}{A}$ and $\frac{F}{C}$ would have been essentially different chords, because they are compounded of different intervals. So with the discords; although by the device of "suspension" they were all brought into frequent use, they were not, so to speak, officially recognised. This too came later. The point is, that the seventeenth century composers found all the harmonic material they wanted ready to hand. They had to name it and classify it, and to free themselves from certain restrictions in the manner of employing it, but they did not have to discover it; that had already been done for them. It is therefore misleading to speak of 1600 as a time of harmonic revolution, for it lays a wrong emphasis. The really revolutionary changes were those of rhythm, texture, and design. Compared with these, the actual harmonic changes during the next hundred years or so were insignificant.

4

Rhythm

Early in the fourteenth century the rigid pseudometrical patterns described above were discarded in favour of a sensible and straightforward system that still serves us to-day. The names are different, but the thing is the same. What we call triple or duple time, they called respectively Perfect or Imperfect time; our further sub-divisions of time into simple and compound were known as the Lesser and Greater Prolations. The note values were the same relatively but not absolutely, for the semibreve, which is to-day the largest note value in general use, was at first the smallest. Above it were the breve and the long. Soon the long dropped out and the breve took its place, with the semibreve and minim ranking below it; the smaller notes—crochets, quavers, etc.—followed in due course. Generally speaking, we may take breve, semibreve and minim of those days as the respective equivalents of our semibreve, minim, and crotchet, or possibly (in quicker tempo) of our minim, crotchet, and quaver. The following table will make this plain at a glance :—

	Name	Sign	Our Equivalent
1.	Perfect Time Greater Prolation	⊙ or ϕ	$\frac{9}{4}$ or $\frac{9}{8}$
2.	Perfect Time Lesser Prolation	O or ϕ	$\frac{3}{2}$ or $\frac{3}{4}$
3.	Imperfect Time Greater Prolation	C or ¢	$\frac{6}{4}$ or $\frac{6}{8}$
4.	Imperfect Time Lesser Prolation	C or ¢	¢ or $\frac{2}{4}$

The circle represents perfection (triple time), the semi-circle imperfection (duple time). The dot means " compound " time ; where there is no dot, the time is " simple." The vertical line through the signature means that all note-values have been halved—*i.e.* that the semibreve, instead of the breve, is the unit of measurement.

Of course we have in current use many other time-signatures not included in the right-hand column of this table. But though the old system was thus apparently less extensive than our own, it was adequate for all practical purposes, containing as it did the essential divisions of duple and triple, simple and compound. If we chose to adopt the crotchet as the uniform beat, we could ourselves eliminate a good many superfluous time-signatures without really diminishing our metrical resources at all ; $\frac{9}{8}$ time, for example, is to the ear precisely the same as $\frac{9}{16}$, so why have both ?

Rhythm, however, is more than metre, and so far we have only been considering it as a system of time-measurement and its notation. This was merely a framework, within which the individual voices acquired an extraordinary degree of suppleness, freedom, and independence of accent. In the madrigal, more especially, the composer sought above all to reproduce in his musical accentuations the natural stress and thrust of the syllables. The harmony is measured, in that dissonance may only occur as a rule on the " strong " beat ; if it occurs (as an occasional licence) on a " weak " beat, it must resolve with all speed before the next beat is reached. But the voices are not measured in this way at all ; their accents—indicated more by duration than by stress—pursue a wayward and mutually independent course, in which the natural syllabic accentuation is faithfully reproduced. A single example, chosen from Byrd's *Who looks may leap*, will make this clear. It is shown below in two ways ; first in short score, with regular bar-lines inserted to mark off the time-divisions in accordance with the signature C ; second, in open score, with irregular barring to show the accentuation of each individual voice :—

Ex. 71A.



Ex. 71B.



The difference is astonishing to the eye, and not less so to the ear, once it has learned to listen in the right way. It is no use hearing a madrigal *vertically*, one must learn to hear it *horizontally*, *i.e.* as counterpoint, a simultaneous confluence of independent melodies and rhythms. Only so can one begin to appreciate the beauty of this wonderful music, so intricate and subtle in texture, and yet so direct in utterance. Its very perfection was its undoing, depending as it did on the peculiar limitations of its medium. For it is essentially music for the human voice, it needs the interplay of actual words and syllables to give it substance. And by 1600 the dominion of the voice was over; instrumental music, demanding quite other types of rhythm, texture, and design, was entering into its kingdom. The change had to come, and the gain on balance was immeasurable; but those who have once fallen under the spell of this older, quieter music may be forgiven an occasional sigh when they recall its brief and lovely heyday.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

I Historical:

C. H. H. PARRY: *The Evolution of the Art of Music*; 6th edn. (London. 1917)

H. C. COLLES: *The Growth of Music* (Oxford. Part I., 1912; Part II., 1913; Part III., 1916)

C. V. STANFORD and C. FORSYTH: *A History of Music* (London. 1916)

A. CARSE: *The History of Orchestration* (London. 1926)

II General:

W. H. HADOW: *Studies in Modern Music*; 5th edn. (London. 1902)

C. H. H. PARRY: *Style in Musical Art* (London. 1911)

J. D. M. RORKE: *A Musical Pilgrim's Progress*; 2nd edn. (London. 1923)

P. A. SCHOLES: *The Listener's Guide to Music*; 7th edn. (London. 1925)

D. F. TOVEY: *Programmes of the Reid Symphony Orchestra Concerts* (Oxford University Press; in preparation)

The last named is a masterly series of analytical discussions, of choral and orchestral masterpieces of every school, by the greatest musical scholar of our time.

III Technical:

C. H. KITSON: *The Rudiments of Music* (London. 1927)

R. O. MORRIS: *Foundations of Practical Harmony and Counterpoint*; 2nd edn. (London. 1931)

STEWART MACPHERSON: *Studies in the Art of Counterpoint* (London. 1930)

C. F. A. WILLIAMS: *The Rhythm of Modern Music* (London. 1909)

W. H. HADOW: *Sonata Form* (London. 1896)

E. PROUT: *Fugal Analysis* (London. 1892)

J. P. DUNN: *A Student's Guide to Orchestration* (London. 1928)

Parry's articles on theoretical subjects in Grove's *Dictionary of Music and Musicians*, and Tovey's in the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, should also be consulted as expositions of the very highest order.

INDEX

INDEX

A

Abelard, 18
Abortions, sex ratio among, 301
Absolute, Bosanquet's conception of the, 556
— idealism, reaction against, 68
Abyssinians, 442
Academism in art, 959, 965, 966
Accidentals in music, 1007, 1020
Ach on self-activity, 343
— psychological work of, 338, 339
Acropolis at Athens, 974
— exploration of, 496
Action the basis of international intercourse, 764
— unity of, in drama, 887
Action Française, 732
Acton, Lord, 775, 797, 800
Adam, R., classical architecture of, 990
Adams, H. B., 797
Adams, J. C., discovery of Neptune, 38, 117, 119
Addison, J., 713
Addition, mathematical operation of, 161
Adler, Alfred, and individual psychology, 362
— views on repression, 358
— views on self-assertion, 361
— work on psycho-analysis, 350
Adrenal gland, 298
Adrenalin, discovery of, 212
Advertisements, pictorial, 912, 966
Ægean art, 925
Ægina marbles, 491
— sculpture, 509
Æolian mode in early music, 1049
Aeroplanes, international trade in, 744
Æschylus, *Prometheus Bound*, 893
Æsthetics, definition of, 542
Ætiology, origin of, 237
— sub-divisions of, 209
Afghan tribe, 463
Africa, Arabs in, 469
— bushmen in, 472
— divisions of mankind in, 465
— ethnology of, 464
— grasslands of, 831
— Hottentots in, 473
— modernisation of, 742
— Negritos in, 473
— negroes in, 445, 469
— oldest inhabitants of, 467
— tribes in, 467
— tsetse fly belt in, 823
African art, æsthetic sense in, 919
— sculpture, 919
Africanus, Chronicles of, 783
Aggression, Freudian doctrine of, 360
Agnosticism contrasted with theism, 64
— definition of, 545
Agricultural banks, 632, 633
Agriculture, development of, 215
— in cool temperate oceanic climate, 840
— in Mediterranean lands, 837
— in relation to manufacture, 598
— productiveness of, 598, 599
— uses of biology in, 217
Ainu race, 441, 451, 455, 456
Ajanta frescoes, 490
Akamba tribe, 472
Akhenaton and æsthetic sensibility, 923
— art at time of, 535
Akikuyu tribe, 472
Al Batani, astronomical observations of, 19
Al Biruni, scientific work of, 19
Al Kindi (Moslem philosopher), 17
Alberti, L. B., 954
Albertus Magnus, teaching of, 18
Aldebaran, diameter of, 133
Alexander, Prof. S., and emergent evolution, 61
— and the word " deity," 67
— philosophy of, 579
Alexandrian chemistry, 15
Alexandrians and transmutation of matter, 15
— contributions of, to science, 13
Alfarabi (Moslem philosopher), 17
Algebra developed by Hindus, 159
— distinction of, from arithmetic, 180
— logical principles of, 173
— mathematical principles of, 174
— origin of, 159
— physical principles of, 173
— popular conception of, 156
— usefulness of, 169
Algebraic equations, 173, 174
— expressions, factorisation of, 172
— symbolism, 169
Algol-β Persei, 130
Algonquian tribe, 478
Allemande movement in music, 1028
Allen, J. W., 804
Allison, conservatism of, 795
Allo-erotism, 376
Allophyllian Whites, 435
Alphabetic systems of writing, 530
Alpine race, composition of, 440
— distribution of, 441
— early history of, 446
— temperament of, 449
Altair, magnitude of, 127
Altamira, Spanish historian, 797
Althusius, 710
Amazon basin, tribes of, 481
— types of equatorial climate, 827
Amenhemet I, statues of, 922
America, absolute idealism in, 553
— alliance with Cuba, 846
— anthropology of peoples of, 476
— anti-Trust legislation in, 681
— architecture in, 989
— banking in, 637, 640
— climatic regions of, 826
— constitutional basis of States, 714, 715
— economic relations with other countries, 846
— economic thought in, 622
— ethnology of, 474
— federal controversy in, 808
— government finance in, 643
— industrial organisation in, 698
— — unionism in, 723

America, instrumentalism in, 577
— mass production in, 699
— modern architects in, 993, 994
— natives of, 474
— need for tropical products, 846
— politics in, 734
— pragmatism in, 576
— prohibition problem in, 808
— scientific study of history in, 797
— skyscrapers in, 994
— Socialism in, 673
— stock languages in North, 475
— use of pictorial advertisements in, 912
— Whitleyism in, 672
American excavations in Greece, 504, 505
— Indians, 474
Americans, variations in types of, 438
Amerinds, 474
Amorites, 455
Ampére, work of, on electromagnetism, 39
Amphimixis, biological, 238, 261, 263
Anabolism in the body, 212, 240
Anaclitic object love, 387
Anatomy a branch of morphology, 206
— comparative, founded by Cuvier, 210
Anaxagoras' conception of " seeds " of things, 7
— explanation of astronomical phenomena, 14
Anaximander's conception of primary stuff, 6
— view of the earth and sun, 14
Anaximenes' conception of primary stuff, 6
Andromeda, nebulæ in, 143
Anger, 403
Animal behaviour, investigations into, 214
— life and natural vegetation, 823
— world, specificity in, 229
Animals, alternation of generations in various classes of, 212
— automatic activities of, 234
— crossing of species of, 238
— experiment in, 235
— initiative in, 235
— intelligence in the higher, 234
— mental activity of, 235
— life of the lower, 231
— of equatorial forests, 831
— parental care among, 224
— psychical activity in, 235
— psychology applied to study of, 325
— resemblance to plants in vital processes, 212
— souls of, 312
— varieties of, 229
Animism and the Divine, 55
— phase of, in children, 307
— transition from, to speculative philosophy, 307
Ankylostomiasis, 219
Annam, inhabitants of, 460
Anselm, St., 18, 56
Anson, 713
Antares, diameter of, 133
Anthropo-geography, 398
Anthropoid ancestry of man, 432
— apes, study of, 231
Anthropological interest of blood groups, 437
Anthropologist, scope of, 429
Anthropology and religion, 51
— and the meaning of life, 430
— archæology in relation to, 486
— bibliographical note on, 430
— distinction between physical and cultural, 397
Anthropology, growth of, 721
— history and, 810
— naturalistic attitude in, 44
— philosophy in relation to, 429
— psycho-analysis in, 355
— scope of general, 397
— social, study of, 398
Anthropomorphism of religion, 53
Antimerina tribe, 473
Antiquities, laws of, 504
— study of minor, 529
Antithenes' interpretation of Socrates, 9
Anti-Trust legislation in U.S.A., 681
Antoninus Pius, Emperor, 500
Apelles, Aphrodite Anadyomene of, 511
Apes, herding instinct of, 401
— study of anthropoid, 231
Apollo, Hymn to, 502
Apollonius, contributions to science, 13
Appoggiatura in music, 1015
Apulian vases, 520
Arab Moslems in Peking, 459
Arabia, population of, 452
Arabs, characteristics of, 453
— of Africa, 469
— relation to Hamites, 441
Araucanian tribes, 482
Arawak tribes, 481
Arbitration in industrial disputes, 686
Archæological Institute in Rome, 492
— schools at Athens, 492
Archæology, achievements of, 533
— aims of classical, 491
— air photography in, 540
— and history, 810
— bibliographical note on, 540
— classification of, 486
— future scope of, 540
— in relation to history, anthropology and geology, 486
— mythology a branch of, 533
— of Northern and Western Europe, 533
— prehistoric, 398, 487
— province of, 486
Archæopteryx, 226
Archaistic art, 930
Archimedes, contributions to science, 13
— mechanical inventions of, 15
Architects, schools of modern, 988
Architectural design, punctuation in, 983
— unity in, 982
Architecture, æsthetics of modern, 998
— Baroque, 959, 981
— bibliographical note on, 1002
— Byzantine, 976
— canon of inflection in, 985
— Chicago, school of, 997
— Classicists in, 988
— connotations of the term, 970
— differentiated from building, 970
— domestic, 992
— early Christian, 976
— Eclectics in, 988, 993
— expression of construction in, 993
— functional character in, 987
— Gothic, 977, 978
— Gothic Revival, 979, 988, 991
— in Egypt, 972
— in Greece, 973
— in Rome, 974

Architecture, Indian, 940
— Italian Renaissance, 979
— Italian revival of Roman, 950
— make-believe, in modern buildings, 976
— modern American, 994
— — European, 998
— — French, 1000
— — Swedish, 1001
— Modernists in, 988, 993, 994
— mystery in Egyptian, 972
— Neo Grec phase in, 989, 991
— of the Middle Ages, 977
— Romanesque, 976, 977
— Vitruvius' treatise on, 16
Arctic prairies, 845
Arcturus, diameter of, 133
Argive Heræum, excavation of, 504
Argon and the quantum theory, 136
Aristarchus and heliocentric theory, 14
— astronomical teachings of, 115
— contributions to science, 13
Aristippus' interpretation of Socrates, 9
Aristotelian schoolmen, 18
Aristotelianism, influence of, on chemical theory, 20
Aristotle and biology, 12, 415
— and lyric poetry, 878
— and poetry, 880 *et seq.*
— and psychology, 310
— and sense experience, 311
— and the existence of God, 57
— and the "final cause," 12
— and the function of tragedy, 352
— and the Greek City-State, 705
— and the origin of the individual, 267
— and the scale of nature, 4
— as founder of biology, 209
— — of scientific geography, 814
— classification of poetry, 877, 885
— conception of God, 11, 72
— — of matter, 10
— contrasted with Plato, 10, 878
— contribution to mechanics, 15
— — to geometry, 13
— doctrine of four causes, 11
— four principles of, 312
— metaphysical theories of, 311, 312
— on axioms, 183
— on divine attributes, 49, 73
— on immortality, 79
— on mathematics, 158
— *Poetics* of, 863, 876, *et seq.*
— psychological theories of, 311
— teachings of, 10
— the father of political science, 715
— theory of the soul, 312
Arithmetic, distinction of, from algebra, 180
— — from calculation, 158
— Plato on, 158
Arithmetical calculation, origin of, 156
Armaments, reduction of, 757
— trade in, 744, 745
Armed forces, justification for, 752
Armenians, 436, 455
Armenoid head, 441
— nose, 436, 442, 455
— race, 442
Arneth, A strian historian, 797
Arouet, F. M. (Voltaire), 791
Arpeggio, varieties of, 1023
Arrhenius and the theory of electrolysis, 40
Ars Poetica of Horace, 897
Art, Academism in, 959
— Ægean, 925
— æsthetic impulse in, 912, 913
— — judgment in, 904
— — pleasure in works of, 914
— African, 919
— and literature, 863
— and objects of luxury, 914
— and social superiority, 914
— applied, 865
— archaistic, 930
— as the mirror of nature, 882
— bibliographical note on, 966
— biological need in, 911, 912
— Byzantine, 941
— Chinese, 932 *et seq.*
— Coptic, 924, 942
— Corean, 939
— criticism, objective standard in, 911
— definition of, 863
— Dutch, 962
— Etruscan, 931
— Flemish, 961
— Florentine school of, 953, 954
— for art's sake, 880
— French, 964
— Greek view of, 881
— history as an, 774
— history, law of, 913
— impulses in production of a work of, 911, 912, 913
— in industry, 966
— in the later Roman Empire, 941
— Indian, 939
— influence of Greek, on European, 930
— inspiration in, 872
— Italian, 949
— Japanese, 937
— Mexican, 920
— modernism in, 994
— Mohammedan, 945
— Negro, 919
— neolithic, 917
— of pottery, discovery of, 917
— of primitive peoples, 918
— of the Dark Ages, 941
— palæolithic, 915
— Peruvian, 920
— photographic imagery in, 918
— Polynesian, 919
— psycho-analysis in, 355
— Ptolemaic, 924
— pure, 865
— religious, 920
— Roman, 930
— Russian, 944
— Sarmatian, 941
— Sassanid, 943
— Scythian, 931
— Sumerian, 924
— twentieth century, 966
— Venetian, 960, 964
Artemis Orthia, excavations at, 504, 517
Artist and the advertiser, 912, 966
— sensibility of the, 914
Arts, antiquity of figurative, 910
— as aid to international contact, 750
— boundaries dividing the, 905
— critical survey of figurative, 911
— free activity in the, 912, 913

Arts, impulses underlying figurative, 910, 913
— influence of the Church on, 948
— Puritan attitude towards, 910
— useless activity of figurative defined, 911
Aryans as a race, 444
Aryo-Dravidian tribes, 462
Asclepius, cures made by, 530
Asexual reproduction, 263
Asia, early history of man in, 451
— geographical features of, 451
— modernisation of mediæval, 742
— races in, 441
— relation of peoples of, 766
— the cradle of mankind, 433
Asia Minor, excavations in, 505
Asiatics, blood groups among, 438
Askenazim people, 455
Asplund, Gunnar, 1001
Assisi, frescoes in church at, 953
Association, mathematical law of, 161
Associationism, 328
Associationist school of psychology, 321
Associations, voluntary, 762
— women's, 762
Assyrian early chronicles, 779
— inscriptions, 491
Assyrians, 455
Astronomers, Greek, and a geo-centric theory, 14
Astronomical discoveries of Halley, 32
— instruments, precision of, 188
— phenomena, gravitation and, 119
— systems of Ptolemy and Copernicus, 115
— work of Herschel, 32
Astronomy and the solar system, 115
— and the theory of relativity, 115
— bibliographical note on, 153
— contributions of Alexandrians to, 14
— development of, 215
— effect of invention of telescope on, 115
— — on mathematics, 114
— evidence of, on theory of atoms, 138
— in relation to geometry and physics, 114
— in the nineteenth century, 38
— Newton and the mechanical problems of, 24
— opposition of the Churches to, 23
— Plato on, 158
— reasons for advance of, 114
— relation of, to other sciences, 114
— subject matter of, 115
Atheism, definition of, 545
— of Spinoza, 55
Athenian Acropolis, 496, 974
— decrees in inscriptions, 530
— vases, 517
Athens, archæological schools at, 492
— Asclepieum at, 501
— Attic sculpture of, 497
— potters' quarter of, 518
— ruling of ancient, 706
— Stuart's architectural drawings of, 491
— study of Hellenic art at, 492
Atom, Bohr's early theory of the, 111
— effect of electric discharge on, 91
— model of, 93
— nineteenth century definition of, 88
— of modern physical theory, 84
— of the Victorians, 84
— picturable description of, 94
Atomic events, 583
— numbers of elements, 41
Atomic theory and states of matter, 89
— — application to chemistry, 40
— — Dalton's, 88
— — Democritus and, 8
— — Descartes and, 25
— — Gassendi and, 25
— — Leucippus and, 8
— — Lucretius and, 16
— — Newton and, 25
— weights determined by Berzelius, 41
Atomism in later Greek philosophy, 314
— in psychology, 309
— logical, 586
— theory of, 308
Atomists and "conventional" qualities, 8
Atoms and radio-activity, 95
— and the quantum theory, 135
— as alphabet of the universe, 8
— behaviour of individual, 137
— electrical decomposition of, 92
— electrons of, 92, 135
— evidence of astronomy on theory of, 137
— nucleus of, 135
— on the sun, 105
— plurality of, 544
— protons in, 135
— quantised states of, 150
— relative weights of, 91
— spectra of, 135
— structure of, 92, 134
— temperature of, with selective absorption, 150
— wave theory of structure of, 135
Atonality in music, 1045
Attic sculpture of Athens, 497
— tombs, 532
— vases, 517, 518, 523
Attraction, Newton's forces of, 84
Augustine, St. and philosophy of history, 783
— and problem of evil, 75
— and significance of mathematics, 85
— contrasted with St. Thomas Aquinas, 18
— philosophic interests of, 16
— psychological teachings of, 314
Augustus, first Emperor of Rome, 706
Aulad Ali tribe, 469
Aurignacian man, 432, 915
— painting and sculpture, 915
— period, 434, 446
Aurora borealis, origin of, 126
Australia, future of agriculture in, 834
— industrial arbitration in, 686
— natives of, 482
Australian aborigines, ignorance of, on reproduction, 257
— race, characteristics of, 445
— tribes, marriage laws of, 414
Australians, blood groups among, 438, 439
Austrian archives published, 798
— finances organised by League of Nations, 754
— psychologists, 331
— school of economics, 607, 611
Author, aims of the, 868
Authority, classification of, 410
— respect for, 426
Auto-erotism, 375
Autosomes, 274, 277
Avebury, Lord, 423
Avenel, French historian, 799
Averroes, commentaries on Aristotle, 17

Averroes, teaching of, 17
Avicenna and the transmutation of metals, 20
— medical work of, 19
— philosophy of, 17
Avogadro, molecular theory of, 41
Axiological problems and solutions, 547
Axiology, definition of, 542
Axioms, definition of, 183
Aztec tribes, 478, 479

B

BABYLONIAN conception of the universe, 14
— early chronicles, 779
— record of solar eclipse, 14
— study of mechanics, 15
Babylonians, astronomical observations of, 14
Bach, *B minor Mass*, 1039
— concertos of, 1038
— fugues of, 1034
— *Goldbergs*, 1037
Bachyah (Jewish philosopher), 17
Bacon, Francis, and Shakespeare controversy, 85
— approach to problems of State, 711
— concept of two-fold function of science, 215
— teachings of, 22
Bacon, Roger, mathematical conception of nature, 85
— scientific method of, 21
Bacteria, adaptation to environment, 264
— discovery of, by Leeuwenhoek, 210
— Pasteur's work on, 41
— the cause of disease, 219
Bacteriology a branch of biology, 205
Baer and comparative embryology, 42
Baganda tribe, 470
Bagehot, 405
Bahero tribe, 470, 472
Bahima tribe, 472
Bain, Alexander, 236
Balfour, Earl of, on natural selection, 564
— philosophy of, 563
— religious arguments, 62
Baloch tribe, 463
Baluchi, 452
Baly, Professor, work on synthesis of sugar, 219
Bancroft, George, 797
Bank, function of Central, 632, 634, 640
— of International Settlements, 742
— overdrafts, 639
— rate, 638
Bankers, duties of, 639
Bankers' Industrial Development Company, 695
Banking, branch, 640
— current accounts in, 637
— deposit accounts in, 637
— English, compared with American, 640
— firms, 632
— organisation in Great Britain, 640
— psychological study of, 764
— system, collective control of, 692
— — international structure of, 742
Banks, activities of, 638
— agricultural, 632, 633
— classes of, 632
— earnings of, 638
— international relations of, 741, 742
— joint stock, 640
— loans made by, 638
— power of, 693
Banks, public control of, 694
— savings, 633
Bantu tribe, 445, 466, 471
Banyankole tribe, 472
Barabra tribe, 467
Barante, A. G. P., 792
Baring Bros. & Co., 645
Barnard, discovery of satellite of Jupiter by, 117
Barnard's star, 123, 133
Barnes, Robert, 788
Barometer, invention of, 26
Baronius, Cardinal Cæsar, 789
Baroque architecture, 959, 981
Barracco collection of sculpture, 510
Barry, investigatons of protozoa by, 43
Bars in music, 1008
Barth, Karl, 73
Bartolommeo, Fra, 953, 958, 959
Basque language, 448
Basques, characteristics of, 447
Bassæ marbles, 491
Basuto tribe, 471
Bayeux tapestry, 118, 947
Bayliss, work on hormones, 213
Beal, Robert, 794
Beats in music, 1008
Beauty as ultimate value, 547
— creation of, 63
— double use of the word, 927
— in literature, 871, 903
— philosophy of, 542
— significance of the term, 927
Beaux Arts, Ecole des, 991, 1000
Bechwana tribe, 471
Bedouin tribes of Arabia, 452
Bee-keeping, advantages of, 218
Beer, tax on, 656
Beethoven and the later concerto, 1039
— last quartets of, 1041
— sonatas of, 1032
— symphonies of, 1031
Behaviourism and emotion, 341
— contrasted with formalism, 332, 333
— Duns Scotus and, 317
— in psycho-analysis, 371
— in psychology, 329
Behaviourist philosophy, 399
Being, abstract concept of, 309
Beja tribe, 442, 467
Belgian archives published, 798
Belief in God, arguments for, 56
— in relation to religion, 54
Bellini, Giovanni, 960
Bembo, Cardinal, 787
Benedictine monks, historical researches of, 794
Beni Hillal tribe, 469
Bentham, Jeremy, political ideas of, 716
Bentley, E. F., 977
Berberine tribe, 442, 467
Berbers, 442, 467
Berg, Alban, and atonality, 1046
Bergson, H., and "creative evolution," 38
— and the "*durée*," 228
— idealistic philosophy of, 549
— philosophy of, 573
Berkeley, Bishop, idealism of, 30
— philosophy of, 30
— psychological theories of, 320
Bernard, Claude, 207, 212, 557
Bernheim, E., 778, 804
Bernini, sculpture of, 961

Berossos, Babylonian history of, 779
Berzelius and combination of organic substances, 41
— atomic weights determined by, 41
Besisi tribe, 460
Bessel, detection of stellar parallax by, 38
Betelgeuse, density of, 140
— diameter of, 133, 142
— radius of, 140
— size of, compared with sun, 129
— speculations as to origin of, 153
Bible, puerile numerical interpretations of, 85
Bichat, 206, 207
Biffen, work of, on wheat growing, 217
Bilharziasis, 220
Bill market, 632, 633
Binary systems of stars, 129
Binet's intelligence tests, 335
Binyon, Laurence, on Chinese art, 935
Bio-chemistry in relation to biology, 233
Biological classification, 34
— novelties, 240
— renaissance, 206
— theory of genius, 425
— view of the mind, 235
Biology and human life, 216
— and improved food supply, 218
— and its part in life's difficulties, 221
— and organic evolution, 237
— and the struggle for existence, 217
— as a foundation for eugenics, 223
— autonomy of, 225
— bibliographical note on, 251
— cell doctrine in, 211
— cultural value of, 222
— definition of, 204, 397
— development of, 215
— effect of, on man's outlook, 225
— ethical value of, 224
— foundation of, 209
— Geddes' map of, 209
— great events in, 209
— in relation to bio-chemistry, 233
— — to bio-physics, 234
— — to disease, 219
— — to health, 219
— — to philosophy, 225
— in the eighteenth century, 34
— in the nineteenth century, 41
— influence on social sciences, 44
— meaning of, for human life, 216
— place of, among the sciences, 204
— recent development of, 216
— scientific, among the Greeks, 12
— search for the origin of the new, 237
— service of, to agriculture, 217
— services rendered to man, 216
— sex and, 255
— statistical methods of, 214
— sub-divisions of, 205
— sub-sciences of, 206
— systematic history of, 210
— systematisation of, by Linnæus, 34
— tardy recognition of value of, 216
— uncertainties in science of, 225
Biometrics (statistical methods), 214
Biondi, Flavio, 786
Bio-physics in relation to biology, 234
Bio-psychology, 231
Bio-psychosis, 236
Biosphere, nature of, 204
Biotism, 549, 550, 573
Birds, courtship among, 295
— sex-reversal in, 286
Birmingham, importance of position of, 857
Birth-rate, control of, 257
— decrease in, 741
Bjerke, Arvid, 1001
Black, chemical discoveries of, 32, 33
Black magic, 426
Blood circulation, discovery of, by Harvey, 25, 209
— corpuscles in the human body, 230
— groups in relation to race, 437
— — inheritance of, 439
— revenge, tribal law of, 416
Blockh, August, 795
Bodin, political theories of, 710
Bodo tribe, 463
Bod-pa people, 443
Body, distinction between mind and, 307
— in relation to mind, 236, 585
— interactions of mind and, 223, 231
— parallelism of mind and, 338
Boethius on philosophy, 16
Bohr, Niels and the atomic theory, 94, 111
Bolingbroke, H., St. J., 713
Bolingbroke, Viscount, 781, 804
Bolland, Jean, 794
Bolshevism and civic education, 805
— Russian, 725
Bolyai and parallelism, 189
— geometrical work of, 39
Bond, G. P., discovery of satellite of Saturn by, 117
Bone carvings, study of, 529
Bonellia, sex characteristics of, 281, 282
Books of Hours, 947, 948
Borgia, Alexander, 951
Borneo, Muruts of, 444
— tribes in, 461
Bororo tribe, 482
Bosanquet, Dr., idealistic philosophy of, 67, 555
Botany a branch of biology, 205
Botocudo tribe, 481
Boundaries, geographical, 850
Bouquet, historical work of, 794
Bourgeoisie in England, 596
Bourrée in music, 1029
Boxer Rebellion, 459
Boyle and the atomic theory, 25
— improvement of air-pump by, 26
— theory of heat, 89
Bracciolini, Poggio, 786
Brachycephalic skull, 435
Brackets, mathematical use of, 161
Bradley, F. H., conception of God, 555
— idealistic philosophy of, 67, 554
Brahe, Tycho, astronomical work of, 23
Brahmans, Hindustani, 463
— Marātha, 463
— of Bengal, 462
Brahminism, 464
Brahms and the later concerto, 1039
— *German Requiem*, 1039
— symphonies of, 1032
Brāhui tribe, 463
Branchidæ, excavations at, 505
Brazil, purchase of armaments by, 744
— tribes in, 481
Breeding impulse, 401
— Mendelian theory of, 261

Brentano, F., 572
Breuer, Josef, work on psycho-analysis, 352
Breughel, Peter, 962
Bricks as building material, 992
Bridgewater Treatises, 592
British Broadcasting Corporation, 677
— Empire as economic unit, 846
— excavations in Greece, 502, 504
— Government finance, 642
— Museum, foundation of, 510
— Railway Rates Tribunal, 679
— West Indies, relationship with Canada, 846
Broad, C. D., philosophy of, 585
Bronze age, 490
— — relics of, 533
Bronzes of the Chou period, 933
— study of, 529
Brownian Movement, Einstein's explanation of, 90
Brown-Séquard, work on ductless glands, 342
Brunelleschi, architectural work of, 955
Bruni, Leonardo, 786
Brunn and Greek sculpture, 510
Bruno, Giordano, 21, 800
Buchanan, George, 787
Buchner, materialist philosophy of, 37
Buckle, T. H., 802
Buddhism and spread of civilisation, 749
— intellectual element in, 52
— primitive, 65
Budget, financial, 653
Buffon, work of, on evolution, 213
— on natural history, 34
Building differentiated from architecture, 970
— imagination in, 970
— materials, expressive value of, 992
— personality in, 987
— proportion in, 986
— scale in, 986
— Societies, 632, 633
— tradition in, 971
— unity of design in, 985
Buildings, æsthetic appeal of, 970
— American modern, 994
— as objects of beauty, 971
— design in, 971
— domed, 985
— economic value of high, 994
— effect of Roman architecture on modern, 975
— European modern, 998
— functional character in, 987
— German modern, 984
— glass and cast-iron, 1000
— Gothic, 978
— historical appeal of, 970
— make-believe architecture in modern, 976
— reinforced concrete structure in, 991
— steel structure in, 991
— zoning law for American, 995
Bulgaria, dispute between Greece and, 754
Bulgars, 447
Burgess, J. W., 797
Buriat tribe, 456
Burke, Edmund, and literary criticism, 903
— philosophy of conservatism, 715
Burmah, inhabitants of, 460
Burmese tribe, 463
Burns, C. Delisle, writings of, 742, 751, 754
Bury, Dr. J. B., 774
Büsching, A. F., 792
Bushmen, 445, 465, 472
Bushmen, art of African, 488, 918
Business, capitalist structure in modern, 667
Butcher's translation of *Poetics*, 876
Butler, A. S. G., 970
Butler, Bishop, 81
Buxton, L. H. Dudley, 459
Byrd, *Who looks may leap*, 1053
Bywater's translation of *Poetics*, 876
Byzantine architecture, 943, 976
— art, 941
— frescoes, 944
— silk brocades, 943

C

Cabanis (French materialist), 32
Caddoan tribe, 478
Cadences in music, 1010, 1012
Cæsar, Julius, *Gallic War*, 781
Caird, Edward, 542, 803
Calcium in the sun's atmosphere, 126
Calculation a preliminary for mathematics, 158
— distinction of arithmetic from, 158
Calculus, differential, 195, 607
— integral, 197
— popular conception of, 156
Calkins on characters of self, 343
Call money, 632, 633
Calvin and spread of civilisation, 749
— political ideas of, 709
Calvinism, democracy and, 709
Cambodia, inhabitants of, 460
Camden Society, 798
Cameo cutting, 526
Cameralists in Germany, 622
Campanian vases, 520
Canaanites, 455
Canada and climatic regions, 826
— relationship with British West Indies, 847
Canaletto, painting of, 964
Cannizzaro and the molecular theory, 41
Cannon, work on ductless glands, 342
Canon in music, 1036
Canova and restoration of Elgin marbles, 509
Cantata, meaning of, 1029
Canzona in music, 1035
Capella, diameter of, 133
Capillaries, Malpighi's discovery of, 210
Capital, accumulation of, 599
— export of, 742
— international export of, 746
— investments, 644
— issue, 645
— issues in 1929, 629
Capitalisation of companies, 649
Capitalism and industrial organisation, 665
— control the essence of, 685
— democratised, 666
— Marxian conception of, 605
— meaning of, 665
— position of workers under, 671
— Socialism as alternative to, 674
— triumph of industrial, 615
— *versus* Socialism, 688, 734
Capitalist individualism, 597
— profit, determination of, 606
— structure of modern business, 667
— system, present-day, 673
— view of incentive to labour, 688
Capitoline Museum, 511

Caraveggio, painting of, 961
Carelia controversy, 754, 757
Carib tribes, 481
Carlyle, Thomas, 792, 799
Carnivora in the scheme of classification, 207
Carnot, discoveries of, on heat, 39
Carrey, Jacques, 491
Carroll, Lewis, 795
Cartels, 743
— international, 746
Cartesian rationalism, 321
Carvalho, Portuguese historian, 797
Carver, T. N., and economics, 613
Carvings in bone and ivory, 529
Casaubon, Isaac, 789
Cassel, G., conception of cost, 614
— conception of technical co-efficients, 612
— theory of price, 619
Cassini, J. D., discovers satellites of Saturn, 117
Cassiodorus and ecclesiastical history, 783
Castagno, painting of, 958
Caste system in India, 463
Castration complex, 382
— effect of, 264, 297
— results of, 283
Cattle, free-martin in, 287
Caucasian man, 439, 440
Caucasians, blood groups among, 438
— characteristics of, 435
Causality, Hume's analysis of, 321, 322
— laws of, and nature, 111
Cave drawings, 488
Cavendish, discovery of constitution of water by, 33
Celebes, Toala of the, 445
Cell, colloidal state of, 233
— division, 238, 242, 273
— theory formulated by Schwann and Schleiden, 211
— propositions of, 211
Cells in the human body, 229, 259
— life of, 207
— meiosis of, 238
— meiotic division of, 246
α-Centauri, diameter of, 133
Centaurus, cluster in, 142
Central American art, 920
— — people, 479
Central Electricity Board, 671, 676, 696, 697
Centrosomes, 230
Cephalic Index, 435
δ-Cephei, remote distance of, 131
Cepheid variables in clusters, 142
Cepheids, magnitude of, 131
— periods of, 131
Ceramicus tombs, 533
Ceremonial masks of primitive peoples, 918
Cézanne, painting of, 964
Chaconne in music, 1038
Chadwick, Edwin, 717
Chæronea, Battle of, 12
Chalcidian vases, 517
Chaldæans, astronomical observations of, 14
Chamăr tribe, 463
Chambers, Sir William, 985, 990
Character, methods of disciplining the, 428
— psychological development of, 344
Charcot and significance of hysteria, 352
Chardin, painting of, 964
Charles I, King, 267, 711, 790
Charles II, King, 711
Charles the Great, educational work of, 18
Chartism, decline of, 720
Chastity, practice of, 428
Chateaubriand, F. A., 792
Cheapness, definition of, 600
Cheetham Society, 798
Chemical changes in the body, 234
— elements, 88
— industry, 743
— processes in the organism, 232
— symbols, 160
Chemistry among the Alexandrians, 15
— development of, 215
— early recognition of value of, 216
— international aspect of, 750
— Jabir the founder of scientific, 19
— Lavoisier the founder of modern, 211
— nineteenth century, 40
— place of, among concrete sciences, 204
— systematisation of, 33
Cherokee, 448
Cheques, payments by, 637
Chibcha tribes, 480
Chicago Exhibition of 1903, 997
— School of architecture, 997
— World's Fair, 989, 997
Children and the super-ego, 384
— behaviourism in, 329
— psychology applied to study of, 325
— relation of, to elders, 389, 419
— sexual instincts in, 374
China, ethnology of, 458
— modernisation of, 742
— old civilisation of, 458
Chinese art, æsthetic impulse in, 937
— — contrasted with Greek, 934
— — decay of tradition in, 937
— — influence of Buddhism on, 933
— — remains of early, 932
— — rhythm in, 935
— blood groups among the, 439
— character and temperament of the, 459
— characteristics of the, 443
— immigration, 848
— influence in Tibet, Mongolia and Manchuria, 460
— Jews, 460
— landscape painting, 936
— Northern, 458
— origin of, 458
— painting in T'ang times, 936
— — influence of Buddhism on, 934
— — spaciousness of, 936
— pictures, " handwriting " of, 935
— sculpture, plastic rhythm in, 933
— Southern, 459
Chladni and the study of sound, 33
Chorale, fugue on a, 1035
— Prelude, 1036
Chord formation in early music, 1051
— — modern, 1043
— inversions, 1017
— of the dominant seventh, 1020
— spacings, 1017
Chords in harmony, 1011
— polytonal, 1044
— rhythmical occurrence of, 1020
Chota Nagpur tribes, 464
Christian architecture, early, 976
— art, pure style of, 991
— Church and historiography, 782

Christian Socialists, 666
Christianity and revelation, 80
— attitude towards philosophy and science, 16
— intellectual element in, 52
— psychology in early, 314
Chromatic intervals in music, 1008
— notes in early music, 1050
— scales, 1007
— sequence in harmony, 1013
Chromatin, 261, 273
Chromidia, 230
Chromosomes, 230
— and gynandromorphism, 276
— crossing-over between, 238
— halving of, 238, 246
— hereditary characters in, 261
— in relation to sex, 273 *et seq.*
— in species of rose, 239
— types of, 275
Chronicles, historical, 779, 784, 794
Chukchi people, 455
Church and State, 707
— building, effect of, on sculpture, 945
— dogmas, philosophic defence of, 44
— influence of the, on art, 948
Church of England, foundation of, 710
Churches, attitude towards mediæval science, 21
— growth of tolerance in, 44
— relations of science with the, 591
— World alliance of, 762
Cicero and philosophy, 15
Cimabue, frescoes of, 953
Cinemas, educational uses of, 750
Circles, Euclid on, 182
Citizens, definition of, 752
Citizenship, claims to, 705
City-State, Greek doctrines for, 705
— Roman, 706
— Rousseau and the, 714
Civic education, history in, 804
Civilisation as provincial episode, 589
— characteristics of modern, 740
— creation of a new, 752
— modern, synonymous with world-intercourse, 764
— religion as aid to, 749
Clairaut, work of, on movements of the planets, 32
Clark, J. B., and economics, 613, 616, 617
Class as important as race, 440
— distinctions in European politics, 734
Classification, science of, 210
Claude, painting of, 964
Clausius and the Second Law of Thermodynamics, 39
— and the theory of electrolysis, 40
Clazomenæ, sarcophagi from, 516
Climate, cool temperate oceanic, 839
— cool temperate, of East Coasts, 842
— effect of, in the vegetable world, 821
— — on man, 820, 824
— equatorial, 827
— hot desert, 834
— Mediterranean, 836
— temperate continental, 841
— temperate desert, 843
— tropical, 830
— tropical monsoon, 832
— warm temperate, 838
Climatic regions of the world, 824, 826
Clocks, invention of pendulum, 26
Cloud of Magellan, cepheids in the, 131
— in the Galaxy, 145
Clusters, Cepheid variables in, 142
Cnidus, Demeter of, 509
— excavations at, 492
Cnossus, excavations at, 494
— frescoes at, 511
— pottery at, 512
Coal Mines Act of 1930, 669, 682
— — nationalisation of, 676
Cochin China, inhabitants of, 460
Cockerell, and Greek excavations, 492
Cockerell, C. R., 989
Cocoa cultivation, 829
Coefficients, conception of technical, 612
— differential, 195
Cohen, H., 548, 569
Cohn, work on protoplasm, 211
Coinage, traditional invention of, 526
Coins, antiquities in form of, 525
— difference between ancient and modern, 528
Coke, Sir Edward, 790
Colbert, J. B., 794
Cold desert climate, 845
Coleridge, S. T., 792, 905
Collectivism among savages, 422
Collectivist system in industry, 670
Colloidal protoplasm, 227
— state of living matter, 233
Colombia, tribes in, 480
Colonial administration, international aspect of, 759
— government, attempt to improve, 765
Colour of skin as criterion of race, 435
Colour-blindness, 275
Colours, Galileo's conception of, 87
Columbus, effects of voyages of, 21, 814
Columns, five orders of, 975
Coma, spiral nebulæ about, 146
Combines, 743
Combustion, Lavoisier's theory of, 33
Comets, elements in, 118
— Halley's observation of, 32
— in the solar system, 117, 118
— nature of, 118
— relation of, to planets, 118
— source of light of, 118
Commerce, economics of, conception of, 746
— effect of State policy on, 743
— international organisation of, 743, 745, 746
— intertribal, 423
— psychology in, 344
Commercial attachés, 762
— banking, problems of, 639
— banks and short loans, 633
— — functions of, 636
Committee of Imperial Defence, 770
Commodities, equivalence of, 601
— exchange of, in relation to labour, 601
— taxation of, 656, 657
Common sense, 584
Communications, international work for improving, 753
Communism and dictatorship, 726
— and Marxism, 720
— compared with Fascism, 728
— foundation of, 725
— in Russia, 691
— nature of, 704
— rise of, 720
Communist Parties, union of policies of, 763

Community, physiological view of, 208
Commutation, mathematical law of, 161
Companies, capitalisation of, 649
— growth of subsidiary, 668
— joint stock, 667
— limited liability of, 667, 669
— private, 667
Companion to Sirius, density of, 139
— diameter of, 133
Company directors, 650, 668
— finance, aspects of, 649
— promotion, 644
Comte, Auguste, on "legitimate materialism," 233
— on the science of society, 809
— positivism of, 37, 65, 802
Conation, explanation of, 309
Concepts, distinction from intuitions, 560
Concertino in music, 1038
Concerto, early forms of, 1038
— in music, 1036
— later forms of, 1039
— movements of, 1039
Conchology, the study of shells, 205
Conciliation, League of Nations work on, 756
Condensation as transformer of primary stuff, 6
Condillac, psychological theories of, 321
Confucianism and revelation, 80
Confucius' superior man in China, 459
Coniferous forests, 844
Conjugation and rejuvenation, 261
Conjunct movement in harmony, 1013
Conscience, pre-ethical, 408
Conscious self, development of, 307
Consciousness, conception of, 588
— epiphenomenal theory of, 78
— of action, 340
— of self, Hume on, 338
Conservatism, Burke's philosophy of, 715
Consonances in harmony, 1010, 1042
Constable, painting of, 964
Constantine, conversion of, 782
Constitutional problem in England, 808
Consular service, 762
Consumers' Co-operative Movement, 666, 676, 696
— — Societies, international relations of, 744
Consuming power in contrast to producing power, 747
Consumption, importance of, 744
Continuity, principle of, 193
Contrapuntal character of music, 1020, 1022
— design in music, 1033
— inversion in music, 1014
Convergency of series, 197
Cool temperate climate of East coasts, 842
— oceanic climate, 839
Co-operative movement, 696
— — in America, 698
— Societies in Great Britain, 696
— — progress of, 666
— Wholesale Societies, international activities of, 744
— — national, 677
Coorg tribe, 463
Copernicus and a heliocentric theory, 14
— astronomical system of, 115
— effect of teaching of, on the Church, 22
— scientific work of, 214
Coptic art, 924, 942
Corinth, excavations at, 504
Corinthian pottery, 516
Corn Laws, 603
Corona of the sun, 126
Corporation finance, 626, 649
Corporative State, Fascist theory of, 731
Corpuscles in the human body, 230
Correggio, painting of, 961
Correns and the theory of inheritance, 244
Cortez, 479
Cos, medical service at, 500
Cosmic activity, 560
— evolution, 236
— rays, characteristics of, 141
Cosmism of Spinoza, 55
Cosmogony, the origin of things, 147
Cosmological argument for existence of God, 56, 57
— dualism, 308
Cosmopolitanism, 751
Cosmosphere, nature of, 204
Cost, conception of, as subsistence, 601
— confusion between value and, 600
— distinction between surplus and, 599
— real, 604, 620
— subjective real, 611
Counterpoint as music regarded horizontally, 1021
Counter-Reformation, political theories of, 710
Courante movement in music, 1028
Cowell's application of Babylonian observations, 14
Cow-Fulani, 442
Cranial Index, 435
Creation, distinction from emanation, 71
Creator, existence of an intelligent, 60
Credit, international organisation of, 742
Creighton, Mandell, 797
Crescas (Jewish philosopher), 17
Cretan civilisation, 779
— code of laws, 530
— gems, 526
— paintings and vases, 511
— pottery, 512
— writing, 529
Crete, excavations in, 494
Crile, work on ductless glands, 342
Criticism, literary. *See* Literary criticism
— meaning of, 546
— stylistic, 900
Croce, Prof. Benedetto, 777, 780
— conception of poetry, 900
— — of religion, 51
— philosophy of, 559
Cromwell and Puritanism, 711
Crops, biological work on, 218
— financing of, 629
Cruikshank, William, and embryology, 270
Crump, C. G., 778
Cryptophors, 365
Crystal Palace, 1000
Ctesibus, mechanical inventions of, 15
Cuba, alliance with America, 846
Cultural internationalism, 749
Culture among savages, 411
— and the standards of life, 749
— human, 398, 411
— interchanges in, 751
— material, 397
— megalithic, 446
— value of biology to, 222
Cuneiform writing, 529

Currency, post-war problems of, 693
Cusanus, Nicolaus, scientific views of, 21
Custom, imitation the basis of, 420
— in relation to law, 405
— lifelong duration of, 404
— savages' adherence to, 408
Customs, spread of, 423
Cuvier, 206, 778
— and the foundation of palæontology, 42
— founder of comparative anatomy, 210
Cynics' interpretation of Socrates, 9
Cyrenaics' interpretation of Socrates, 9
Cytoplasm, 230
Czaplicka, 455
Czolbe, materialist philosophy of, 37

D

DA GAMA, VASCO, effect of voyages of, on thought, 21
D'Alembert (French materialist), 32, 33
Dalton, atomic theory of, 40, 88
Danakil tribe, 467
Dance forms of music, 1028
D'Annunzio, Gabriele, 729
Dante and literary criticism, 898
— on "a new life," 429
— power over language, 872
Danube and international problems, 851
Darwin, Charles, and inter-relations, 213
— and *The Descent of Man*, 324
— and the theory of evolution, 237
— and the theory of natural selection, 213, 238 246
— conception of the struggle for existence, 246
— contrasted with Lucretius, 867
— evolutionary suggestions of, 43
— on continuity of generations, 225
— *Origin of Species* of, 43, 865, 867
— psychological theories of, 324
— work of, on evolution, 213
Darwinism, effect of, on materialistic tendencies, 44
— political influence of, 721
Davenport, H. J., on cost, 614
da Vinci, Leonardo, 21, 85, 953, 958
Davy, discovery of anæsthetics by, 42
— discovery of new elements by, 40
Dawson, Rumley, 302
Daylight Comet of 1910, 118
Death duty, 656
— rate in Great Britain, 301
de Bary, work on lichens, 213
de Berri, Duc, 948
de Biran, Maine, 338, 557
Decimal, recurring, 166
— rotation, 165
de Commines, Philippe, 784
de Coulanges, Fustel, 778, 796
Dee, John, 814
Defence, conception of, 767
— mutual, 767, 769
Defoe, Daniel, 713
de Gomara, Francisco, 789
de Graaf, views on generation, 268
de Herrera, Antonio, 789
Deism, definition of, 545
Deity, conception of, 580
— connotation of the word, 67
de la Blache, Vidal, and modern geography, 816
de Las Casas, Bartolomé, 789
de Limbourg, Pol, 948
Delisle, Leopold, 796
Delius, *Brigg Fair*, 1037
della Francesca, Piero, 958
Delolme, 713
Delos, exploration of, 495, 531
Delphi, excavations at, 501
Demand, potential, in contrast with effective, 748
de Mendoza, Diego, 787
Democracy and Calvinism, 709
— and the Roman Empire, 706
— in ancient Greece, 706
— reputed failure of, 751
Democratic government, Rousseau's doctrine of, 714
Democratisation of capitalism, 666
Democritus and the atomic theory, 8
de Montesquieu, Baron, historical work of, 790, 796
de Morgan's modifications of Euclid's fifth book, 188
de Orviedo, Gonzalo, 789
Deposits in banking, 637, 638
de Sade, Marquis, 374
de Saussure, biological work of, 211
Descartes and the atomic theory, 25
— and the distinction between body and mind, 307
— and the existence of God, 57
— and the idea of God, 318
— discovery of analytic geometry by, 26, 27
— influence on Romanticism, 903
— materialism of, 31
— mathematical methods of, 24
— occasionalism of, 27
— on the passions of the soul, 341
— philosophy of, 27
— psychological theories of, 318
— theory of light of, 26
Desert climate, cold, 845
— hot, 834
Deserts as barriers to human intercourse, 836
— irrigation of, 836
— population of, 835
— rainfall in, 834
— vegetation in, 835
de Sitter, theory of slowing down of time, 108
d'Este, Isabella, 951
Determinism, changed scientific views on, 110
— definition of, 544
— in geography, 816
Development, individual, in relation to racial evolution, 211
— resemblance in, 211
— theory of, 209
de Vries and the theory of inheritance, 244
Dewey, J., philosophy of, 577
D'Holbach (French materialist), 32
Diatonic intervals in music, 1008
— scale in music, 1006
— sequence in harmony, 1013
di Buoninsegna, Duccio, 953
Dicey, 713
Dictatorship and Communism, 726
Diderot (French materialist), 32
Dido and Æneas, harmony in, 1016
Differential calculus, 195
— co-efficient, 195
— equations, 195

Differentiation in mathematics, 195
Digametic chromosomes, 275
Digby, K. H., 792
Dimensions of bodies, 181
Dinaric race, 440, 442
Dinka tribe, 471
Diocletian, Edict of, 531
Dionysius of Halicarnassus, 781
Diophantos of Alexandria, 159
— contributions to science, 14
Diplomatic system, 761
Diplomacy, democratisation of, 762
— difficulties in modern, 761
— " the new," 762
— traditions of, 761
Dipylon ware, 515
Disarmament policy of Governments, 746
— problem of, 769
Discipline, moral, 404
— of the character, 428
— parental, 405
Discord in harmony, 1018
— in music, definition of, 1042
Disease, bacteria as cause of, 219
— biology in relation to, 219
— carriers of, 219
— international control of epidemic, 753, 755, 757
— in wild nature, absence of, 230, 239
— microbes as cause of, 219
— protozoa as cause of, 219
Disjunct movement in harmony, 1013
Displacement in psycho-analysis, 371, 372
Dissonance in early music, 1050
— in harmony, 1010, 1018
— in music, 1042
Distribution, theory of, 611, 617
Distributive law in mathematics, 170
Divergency of series, 197
Divine, animism and the, 55
— attributes, 73
— being, existence of a, 545
— creativeness, analogies of, 71
— experience, suffering and, 76
— faith in the, 427
— idea of the, 55
— immanence and creation, 71
— monotheism and the, 55
— nature, 49
— — pantheistic theories of, 71
— — problem of, 67
— — theistic theories of, 71
— personality, arguments for, 68, 69
— — creativeness of, 73
— — metaphysical discussions on, 70
— right *v.* natural right, 597
— symbolism of the, 427
— transcendence, definition of, 72
— will, religion and the, 54
Division in mathematics, 164
Doge's Palace at Venice, 984
Dolichocephalic skull, 435
Döllinger, German historian, 800
Domestic activities, 411, 412
Dominicans, philosophy favoured by, 18
Donatello, sculpture of, 956, 980
Dorian mode in early music, 1049
Doric architecture in Greece, 974
— column, 984
— pottery, 516
Dörpfeld, Professor, 494
Drainage, object of, 821
Drama, distinction of, from epic, 886
— origin of, 911
— three unities in, 886, 901
Dravidian tribe, 452, 462
Drawings, prehistoric, 488
Dreams, analysis of, 354, 369
Driesch, H., philosophy of, 575
Droysen, J. G., 778, 802, 807
Drugs, fixing of standards for, 755
— international control of dangerous, 757
— limitation of trade in dangerous, 755
Drummond, Sir E., 754
Dru-pa people, 443
Dryden and literary criticism, 901
Dualism, attributive, 544
— in psychology, 308
— substantival, 544
Duchesne, André, 794
Dugdale, William, 794
Dujardin, work on protoplasm, 211
Dumas and embryology, 270
Duns Scotus, teaching of, 17, 19
— psychological theories of, 317
Durham Cathedral, 977, 983
Dürr, psychological work of, 343
Dutch art, 962
— people, 441
— tenement dwellings, 999
Dvorák, *New World Symphony*, 1022, 103
— *Stabat Mater*, 1039
Dyaks, 462

E

Earth, belief in a flat stationary, 14
— effect of sun on magnetism of, 126
— estimated age of, 152
— geological structure of, 818
— in solar system, 116
— movements of, experiments on, 98
— revolution of moon round, 150
— tidal effects of moon on, 148
East Baltic race, 440
Ebbinghaus, work on memory, 344
Ebert, Herr, 725
Eccentricity, 403
Ecclesiastical history, 777, 788, 798
Eclectic architecture in England, 993
Eclecticism, French, 321
Eclipses, Anaxagoras' explanation of, 14
— Ibn Yunus' study of, 19
Ecology, scope of, 207, 219, 222
Economic abstinence in relation to labour, 604
— activity, 560
— aspect of geography, 846
— conception of history, 800
— control, need for system of, 617
— function of speculation, 646
— future of Europe, 699
— Imperialism, 733
— internationalism, 742, 745
— nationalism, 745
— operations of Government, 628
— organisation and capitalism, 665
— — Socialist idea of, 677
— policy of Governments, 746
— rent, 602
— science, 596
— situation in Russia, 691

Economic society, primitive, 665
— stability, League of Nations and restitution of, 757
— system, basis of, 597, 598
— — of *laissez faire*, 597, 616, 717
— welfare, relations between finance and, 651
Economics, a deductive science, 595
— American school of, 622
— among savages, 421
— as an apologetic, 615
— Austrian school of, 607, 611
— bibliographical note on, 623
— classical *v.* modern, 596
— difficulty of defining, 595
— finance and world, 630
— *laissez faire* policy in, 597, 616, 717
— Lausanne school of, 607, 614
— modern tendencies in, 618
— natural law in, 597
— naturalistic attitude in, 44
— of commerce, conception of, 746
— political economy changed to, 607
— psycho-analysis in, 355
— theory of equilibrium in, 608, 614
— union of politics and, 735
Economists, classical *v.* modern, 595
Economy, political. *See* Political economy.
Eddington, Professor, distinction of the past from the future, 39
— geometry of, 106
— on nature, 59
— "point-events" of, 106
— theory of the universe, 106
Edinburgh High School, 989
Education among primitives, 407
— as aid to international contact, 750
— history in, 803
— moral, 411
— psychology in, 344
— reputed failure of, 751
Edwards, Trystan, 983, 985
Eggs, oology the study of, 205
Ego in psycho-analysis, 385
Egypt, architecture in ancient, 972
— art in, 536, 921, 942
— artists of Dynastic and pre-Dynastic, 922
— bronze age in, 490
— comparison of sculpture with painting in, 922
— historical inscriptions of, 491
— paintings in tombs in, 534
— Pyramids in, 972
— recent archæological discoveries in, 534
Egyptian art, characteristics of, 921
— — compared with Mesopotamian, 924
— — conservatism in, 922
— — descriptive tendency in, 923
— — hereditary, 536
— — in later Roman Empire, 942
— — mechanical finish in, 923
— clothing, 536
— contributions to mathematics, 157
— early chronicles, 779
— hieroglyphic writing, 529
— houses, 536
— medicine, psychology in, 345
— people, 467
— scarabs, 525
— sculpture, 923
— tombs, 921, 972
Egyptians, 442
Egyptians, life of the ancient, 536
— mensuration essential to, 157
— pre-dynastic, 467
— study of mechanics by, 15
Ehrenfels and formalism, 331
Eichorn, K. F., 792
Eiffel Tower, 1000
Einstein and *Generalised Principle of Relativity*, 104
— and non-Euclidean geometry, 39
— application of Riemann's geometry, 104
— concept of mass of energy, 102
— conception of light and time-lapse, 99
— electrical theory of attraction, 120
— Explanation of Brownian movement, 90
— principle of the velocity of light, 99
— theories of Newton and, contrasted, 84
— theory and the concept of gravitation, 104
— theory and the curved path, 105
— theory and the planets, 104
— theory of a finite universe, 107
— theory of relativity, 99, 120, 190, 192
— view of absolute space, 111
Eleatic philosophers, doctrines of, 7
Electric charges, Faraday's conception of, 97
— circuit, first propounders of, 173
— — impedence of an, 173
Electrical phenomena and relativity, 121
Electricity Board, Central, 671, 676, 696, 697
— charges, regulation of, 679
— identification of electrons with, 92
— fundamental conception of, 97
— of the early physicists, 84
— progress of, in the 19th century, 39
— study of, in the 18th century, 33
Electro-chemical equivalents, law of, 41
Electrolysis, development of, 40
Electromagnetic field, equations of, 195
— theory of light, 39, 97
Electromagnetism, 190
— geometrical scheme for, 105
— in Eddington's scheme, 106
— progress in, in the 19th century, 40
Electron as system of waves, 94
— identification of, with electricity, 92
— refraction of, 95
Electrons as basis of matter, 92
— configuration space of, 94
— laws governing the behaviour of, 109
— mathematical criticism of theory of, 93
— of atoms, 92, 135
— properties of, 92
— reflection of, 95
Elements, atomic numbers of, 41
— chemical, 88
— discovery of, 41
— ionisation of, 136
— mathematical specifications of, 112
— periodic table of, 41, 91
Eleusis, excavations at, 498
Elgar, Sir Edward, adherence to older form, 1040
Elgin marbles, 491, 509
Elixir, Alexandrian belief in, 15
Elizabethan architecture, 981
Elliot-Smith, G., 432, 443
Ellora temple, 940
Elmes, Harvey Lonsdale, 989
Embryo, influence of hormones on, 288
Embryology, comparative, founded by von Baer, 211

Embryology, physiological, 209
— science of comparative, 42
— scope of, 208
— studies in, 270
Emergence, concept of, in evolution, 61, 581, 585
Emergent evolution, 61, 581, 585
— vitalism, 585
Emerson, R. W., 795, 804
Emigration, international agreement with regard to, 756
Emotion, psychology of, 341
Emotional tendencies *v.* intellectual, 411
Emotions, analysis of, 400
— expressed in literature, 869
Empedocles and " the survival of the fittest," 8
— " four elements " of, 7
Empire Free Trade, 657
Empiricism, definition of, 546
Employers, organisations of, and League of Nations, 760
Encyclopædists, French, 321
Endocrine glands, 296, 300
Endogamy, tendency of, 248
Energism, definition of, 544
— in Germany, 550
Energy, conservation of, 102
— decrease of available, in the universe, 109
— degradation of, 151
— Einstein's concept of mass of, 102
— final residue of radiant, 167
— " heat death " of, 151
— interpretation of conversion of, 109
— of the universe, decrease of, 108
— — disorganisation of, 109
— relation of, to matter, 102
— theory of, 551
— transformation of, 102
Enfranchisement of middle classes, 716
Engels, economic interpretation of history, 809
Engineering, development of, 215
— use of algebra in, 170
England, antiquarian scholarship in, 794
— archives published in, 798
— Baroque architecture in, 981
— critical historiography in, 796
— domestic architecture of, 992
— eclectic architecture in, 993
— economists in, 596
— Guild Socialism in, 723
— idealism in, 553
— monadism in, 563
— politics in, in 18th and 19th century, 715
— Reformation in, 710
— rise of Puritanism in, 710
English Co-operative Wholesale Society, 744
— painting in the 19th century, 964
Enharmonic intervals, 1008
Entelechy of the organism, 567, 575
— of the universe, 576
Entomology a branch of biology, 205
Enzymes in vital processes, 213
Eoanthropus Dawsoni, 432
Ephebic inscriptions, 530
Ephesus, excavations at, 505
— temple of, 492
Epic, distinction of, from drama, 886
Epictetus and universal brotherhood, 13
Epicureans, doctrines of, 12, 13
Epicurus and atomism, 314
Epidaurus, excavations at, 499
Epidaurus, Hieron of, 501
Epiphenomalism in psychology, 338
Epistemological problems and solutions, 545
Epistemology, definition of, 542
— intuitionist, 567
Equals sign, origin of, 160
Equations and practical problems, 174
— cubic, 174
— differential, 195
— in algebra, 174
— quadratic, 174
— quartic, 170
— theory of, 179, 608
Equatorial climate, 827
— forests, 828
— — animals in, 831
— products, 829
— rainfall, 827
— regions, developed and undeveloped, 830
— — productivity of, 829
— temperature, 827
— vegetation, 828
Equilibrium in economics, 608, 614
Equivalence, economic theory of, 599
— of commodities, 601
Erasmus, work of, on evolution, 213
Eratosthenes and the term geography, 814
Eros, distance of, from earth, 117
Erotism, anal, 374, 377
— oral, 374, 376
— types of, 374
— urethral, 374, 379
Eskimo in North America, 474
— life of, 478
Ether and the earth's movements, 98
— Maxwell's theory applied to, 97
— theory of the, 96
Ethics a branch of axiology, 542
— evolution of, 224
— of evolution, 224
Ethnology, 397
— bibliographical note on, 484
— introduction to, 432
Etruscan arch, 975
— art, 931
— vases, 517, 520
Eucken, R., philosophy of, 571
Euclid, common notions of, 183
— geometry of, and the law of gravitation, 103
— — Arabic version of, 19
— — axioms of, 101
— — not valid in space, 191
— — principles of, 182
— — survey of, 183 *et seq.*
— interpretation of Socrates by, 9
— postulate as to parallelism, 188
— theory of parallel lines, 183
Eudoxus, contributions to geometry, 13
Eugenics, biology as a foundation for, 223
— genetic basis of, 217
Euler, work of, on movements of the planets, 32
Eupsychics, necessity for, 223
Europe, antiquity of man in, 446
— archæology of northern and western, 533
— capitalist system in western, 673
— economic future of, 699
— humanistic historiography in, 786
— modern architecture in, 998
— politics in, in 19th century, 720
— races in, 441

European Alpine race, 441
— races, history of, 446
— — temperament of, 448
— superiority over other nations a fallacy, 766
Europeans, blood groups among Western, 438
— relations of, to non-Europeans, 766
Eusebius, Chronicles of, 783
Eutechnics, 223
Evans, Sir Arthur, 494
Evil, problem of, 74
Evolution and a life-force, 66
— and affinity of species, 43
— and homologous structure, 43
— and naturalism, 43
— and psychology, 324
— and survivals, 43
— Bergson's creative, 38
— Buffon and the idea of, 34
— cosmic, 236
— creative, 545
— Darwinian theory of, 237
— effect of doctrine of, on history, 800
— emergent, 61, 545, 550, 581
— ethics of, 224
— Goethe and the idea of, 34
— hereditary a condition of, 242
— isolation factor in, 248
— Lloyd Morgan's " emergent," 38
— " mind " in organic, 214
— modern theory of, 237
— organic, 231
— — definition of, 236
— — nature of, 236
— — survey of, 248
— post-Darwinian steps in, 237
— racial, in relation to individual development, 211
— religion of, 66
— social, 236
— theory of, 42, 60, 209
— upward tendency of, 67
— variations the raw material of, 238, 239
Evolutionism, Green's hostility to, 553
— Haeckel's work on, 550
— in the 19th century, 37
Evolutionists, pre-Darwinian, 213
Exchange, equivalence of, 599
— Marx's concept of, 605
— organisation of international, 741
— value, 600
Exhibition buildings, 1000
Exhibitionistic instincts, 374, 381
Existence, struggle for, 224, 246, 398
Exogamy, law of, 413
— tendency of, 248
Experience as origin of knowledge, 336
— Royce on absolute, 561
Exploration in Georgian and Victorian eras, 814
Eyes, colour of, and inheritance, 262

F

FACE, character of, as criterion of Race, 436
Fachiri, A. P., 760
Factories, modern, 999
Factorisation of algebraic expressions, 172
Factory laws, 753
Fairclough's translation of *Ars Poetica*, 895
Faith among savages, 426
Family, physiological view of, 208
— life, part played by man and woman in, 418
Faraday and electrolytic decomposition, 40
— and the law of electro-chemical equivalents, 41
— and the laws of electric circuits, 173
— conception of electric charges, 97
— work of, on electromagnetism, 39
Farley's *Domesday Book*, 794
Farsi people, 452
Fascism and historical teaching, 805
— and the Corporative State, 731
— compared with Communism, 728
— origin of, 729
— theories of, 729
Fascist State, structure of, 704
Fasting, virtue of, 428
Father-right, origin of, 416
Fauna, physiological view of, 208
Fear, asthenic nature of, 402
— instinct, 402
— the basis of war preparations, 767
Fechner and idealism, 35
— psychological work of, 326
Federal Farm Act, 669
Federation of League of Nations Societies, 762
Feeling, psychology of, 341
Fellows, and Greek excavation, 492
Fenland, reclamation of, 818
Ferments in vital processes, 213
Fertilisation, microscopic process of, 238
— nucleus, 238
Fichte, J. G., and absolutism, 568
— and idealism, 34
— writings of, 792
Fictionism, definition of, 545
— theories of, 573, 578
Figgis, J. N., 723
Fighting instinct, 403
Filmer, Sir Robert, 711
Finance and the problem of prices, 659
— and world economics, 630
— bibliographical note on, 660
— Corporation, 626
— industrial, 628
— international organisation of, 742
— interpretation of, 626
— markets in modern, 632
— objects of, 629
— public, 626, 627, 642, 652
— relation between economic welfare and, 651
— social effects of, 630
Financial Budget, 653
— institutions, 632
— mechanism, division of, 632
— — organisation of, 631
— operations, magnitude of, 628
— transactions, 626, 627
Financing of crops, 629
— of international trade, 635
— of production, 627
— of raw material, 629
Fine arts, connection of, 882
Finnic tribes, 455
Fish, sex-transformation of, 285
Fisher, Irving, and the theory of money, 621
Fitzgerald, explanation of Michelson's experiment, 98
Five Years' Plan in Russia, 691, 692, 694
Flanders, realistic painting in, 948
Flavius Blondus, 783, 786
Flemings, 441
Flemish art in the fifteenth century, 961

Flemish art in the seventeenth century, 962
— artists, empirical methods of, 949, 952
Fletcher, Sir Walter Morley, on importance of biology, 216
Flint, Professor R., 785
Flints as guide in archæology, 487
— of Neolithic age, 489
— prehistoric, 915
Floating debt, 642
Florentine artists, 949, 954
— palaces, design in, 984
— school of art, 953, 954
Flugel, J. C., on status of psycho-analysis, 351
— on the psychology of clothes, 381
— on the psycho-analytic study of the family, 389
Fluxionism, ontological, 543
Folk-songs, design in, 1025, 1026
Form, Aristotle's concept of, 312
— in literature, 871, 873
Formalism contrasted with behaviourism, 332, 333
— in psychology, 330
Food production the origin of mathematics, 156
Force and general relativity, 120
Foreign nations, " herd-mind " in, 764
— news, supply of, 750
— newspaper correspondents, 750
— Secretaries, meetings of, 756
Foreigners, suspicion of, 769
Forests, coniferous, 844
— equatorial, 828, 831
— temperate deciduous, 840
Forms, conception of, 583
Fossil remains and evolution, 43
Fossils, Cuvier's work on, 210
Fowls, breeding experiments on Andalusian, 245
Foxe, John, *Book of Martyrs*, 788
Fractional rotation, 165
Fractions in mathematics, 165
France, absolute idealism in, 553
— Baroque architecture in, 981
— Communist Party in, 763
— economic position of, 849
— idealism in, 548
— industrial organisation in, 698
— modern architecture in, 1000
— political economy in, 597
— — theories in, in eighteenth century, 713
— Syndicalism in, 723
Franchise in Russia, 727
— problems, 808
Francis of Assisi, St., 953
Franciscans, hostility of, to Aristotelianism, 19
Franklin, electrical experiments of, 33
Frauenhofer lines in star spectra, 128
Frazer, Sir James, 533, 721
Freeman, E. A., 778, 799, 809
Free-martin, nature of the, 287
Free Trade, 745
Free will and determinism, 111
— — and material phenomena, 111
— — and physical science, 110
French art in the seventeenth century, 964
— critical historiography, 796
— eclectism, 321
— Encyclopædists, 321
— excavations in Greece, 502
— exploration of Delow, 495
— history, study of, 798
— Impressionists in art, 964
French-Italian naval disagreement, 850
— Renaissance architecture, 982
— Revolution, causes of, 715
— — effect on historiography, 791
— sculpture in the Middle Ages, 948
Frescoes at Ajanta, 940
— Byzantine, 944
— in church at Assisi, 953
— of Benozzo Gozzoli, 951, 958
Fresnel, experiments of, on light, 39
Freud, Professor Sigmund, abandons hypnosis, 353
— and pan-sexualism, 361
— and sexual reproduction, 400
— and the " Censor," 358
— and the study of hysteria, 352
— concept of dissociated personalities, 357
— concept of the unconscious, 358
— contrasted with Schopenhauer and Hartmann, 357
— influence on politics, 722
— on functional nervous disorder, 357
— on narcissism, 383
— on sexual instincts, 360, 374, 376
— on the sexual impulse, 366
— on totems and taboos, 377
— Socrates as forerunner of, 369
— work on psycho-analysis, 350
Freudian psychology, theoretical conception of, 356
Froebel, educational theories of, 344
Frogs, " fatherless," 259
Froissart, Chronicles of, 784
Frontinus, treatise on Roman waterworks, 16
Froude, J. A., 802
Frum, Dutch historian, 797
Fugue, double, 1035
— in music, 1033
— on a chorale, 1035
Fula tribe, 467
Fulvius Nobilior, 507
Fungi, study of, 205
Furtwöngler and Greek sculpture, 510
Future, modern thoughts for, 752
— relation between past and, 2

G

Galaxy, 122
— centre of the, 146
— Clouds of Magellan in, 145
— distance of clusters in, 145
— — of stars in, from one another, 145
— nebulæ in the, 142
— rotation of, 146
Galcha people, 452
Galen, Arabic version of, 19
— initiator of experimental physiology, 209
— views on generation, 267
— works of, 16
Galileo and " force," 86
— and the idea of motion, 85
— discovery of Satellites of Jupiter, 117
— invention of thermometer by, 26
— mathematic treatment of motion, 85
— mathematical definitions of, 86
— on non-quantitative properties of the world, 87
— support of Copernican theory by, 23
— reputed use of microscope by, 210
— theory of heat, 89

Galileo, three laws of motion of, 24
Galla race, 442, 467
Galton and continuity of germ-plasm, 225
— and the coefficient of correlation, 325
— on genetics, 213
— on " natural inheritance," 242
— psychological theories of, 325
— work on biometrics, 214
Galvani, development of electrical work of, 40
— electrical experiments of, 33
Gametes, sexuality of, 265
Gametogenesis, 274
Gardiner, S. R., 797
Garnier, Tony, 1000
Gas charges, regulation of, 679
— industry, profit-sharing in, 683
Gascoigne, invention of the micrometer by, 26
Gases and the atomic theory, 89
— inert, and the quantum theory, 136
— kinetic theory of, 91
Gassendi and the atomic theory, 25
Gates, Ruggles, 438
Gauss and parallelism, 189
— work on geometry, 39
Gavotte in music, 1029
Gay-Laussac, observations on gases, 40
Gazeteers, compilation of, 815
Geber, supposed identity of, with Jabir, 19
Geddes, Patrick, 206, 209, 240
Gegenbaur and embryology, 270
Geijer, Swedish historian, 797
Gems, antiquities in form of, 525
Generation, spontaneous. *See* Spontaneous Generation
Generations, continuity of, 225
Genes, 230, 238, 240, 244
Genetics, origin of, 213
Geneva Protocol of 1924, 768
Genius, biological theory of, 425
Gentile, G., on " the national idea," 704
— philosophy of, 560
Geodesy, distinction between geometry and, 158
Geographical factors, 816
Geography, aim of modern, 846
— and international relations, 846
— and nationality, 851
— and the compilation of gazeteers, 815
— Aristotle the founder of, 814
— beginnings of modern, 815
— bibliographical note on, 858
— causal, 815
— climatic factor in, 821
— connotation of the term, 816
— determinism in, 816
— historical, 809
— in relation to geology, 818
— influence of, on historiography, 809
— physical, 816
— political, foundation of, 814
— regional, 824, 852
— scope of, 814
— use of maps in, 853, 857
— vegetation as factor in, 822
— world, 824, 846
Geological structure of the earth, 818
Geology, archæology in relation to, 486
— Hutton's work on scientific, 34
— in relation to general anthropology, 398
— in relation to geography, 818
— in the eighteenth century, 34
— Lyell's principles of, 43
Geometric style of decorating pottery, 514
Geometry and natural phenomena, 101
— astronomy in relation to, 114
— axioms of Euclidean, 101
— Descartes' discovery of analytic, 26, 27
— distinction between geodesy and, 158
— — between mensuration and, 195
— Eddington's, 106
— Euclid's, 182
— in relation to physical space, 189, 190
— law of gravitation and Euclidean, 103
— Minkowski's, 100, 104
— non-Euclidean, 39, 190
— origin of, 180
— Plato on, 158
— relation of, to laws of nature, 103
— Riemann's, 104, 189
Geomorphological regions, 819
Geomorphology, 818
Georgian houses, 988
Germ cells, 208
— — continuity of, 242
— — reproductive powers of, 227
— plasm, continuity of, 212, 225
German buildings, modern, 984
— critical historiography, 796
— economic thought, 697
— excavations in Greece, 497, 505
— — of Olympia, 495
— historians, 791, 796
— history, Society for study of, 797
— psychologists, 331
— Reparations, Young Plan for, 742
— Revolution, 725
— sculpture of the twelfth century, 946
— tenement dwellings, 999
— Works Council Law, 679
Germans, 441
— blood groups in, 439
Germany, " Back to Kant " movement in, 548
— Cameralists in, 622
— Communist Party in, 763
— industrial arbitration in, 686
— — organisation in, 698
— metaphysical psychology in, 323
— modern architecture in, 999
— neo-transcendentalism in, 568
— post-war politics in, 725
— present-day politics in, 732
— pre-war politics in, 723
— rationalisation of industry in, 680, 681
Germinal variation, 239, 240
Gersonides (Jewish philosopher), 17
Ges tribe, 481
Gestaltpsychologie, 330
Ghiberti, sculpture of, 955
Ghirlandajo, portraits of, 958
Gibbon, Edward, 791, 865
Gibson, Edmund, 794
Gierke, mediæval studies of, 722
Giesebrecht, German historian, 796
Gifford Trust, 592
Gigue in music, 1029
Gilbert, work of, on magnetism, 24
Gilyak people, 455
Giorgione, paintings of, 936, 960
Giotto, principle in painting of, 951, 953
Girou and sex-determination, 271
Giry, Arthur, 796
Glands, endocrine, 296, 300
— internal secretary, 298

Glands, secretions of ductless, 342
— sex, 283
Glandular function and sex activity, 299
— hermaphroditism, 291, 292
Glass industry, 743
Globular clusters, 141
Glover, Edward, on psycho-analysis, 352
Gnosticism, definition of, 546
God and creation, 71
— and pantheism, 55
— and perfect Holiness, 73
— and purposive intelligence, 60
— and the Absolute, 70
— and the super-ego, 391
— and the Universe, 70
— arguments for belief in, 56
— — for existence of, 56, 57
— Aristotle's conception of, 72
— as the Perfect Being, 72
— as universal thought, 559
— attribution of love to, 74
— belief in a personal, 545
— belief in, and moral consciousness, 62
— Bradley's conception of, 555
— Christian conception of, 54, 68
— conception of " otherness " of, 73
— Descartes and the idea of, 318
— dissatisfaction with conceptions of, 64
— faith involved in belief in, 63
— Green's conception of, 554
— Hocking's conception of, 563
— humanity as substitute for, 65
— identification of, with the universe, 545
— James' conception of, 577
— Kant and belief in, 31, 323
— Leibniz, and the conception of, 29
— limitation of will of, 74
— omnipotence of, 73, 74
— personality of, 68, 69, 70
— Priestly and belief in, 31
— problem of existence of, 50
— religion without, 65
— Sorley's conception of, 566
— Spinoza and the idea of, 319
— spiritual development as revelation of, 82
— Taylor's conception of, 566
— Whitehead's conception of, 584
— Windelband's conception of, 570
Godliness, virtues constituting, 425
Godwin, William, 715, 716
Goethe, theories of evolution, 210
Goldast, Melchior, 794
Goldschmidt, biological work of, 278, 286
— on intersexuality, 291
Gooch, Dr. G. P., 796
Goodness as ultimate value, 547
Goodsir, cell theory of, 211
Gorham Building in New York, 994
Gothic architecture, 977, 978, 991
— Revival architecture, 979, 988
Government, administrative bodies in modern, 760
— borrowing, 643
— distinction between Society and, 713
— economic operations of, 628
— expenditure, 653
— finance, magnitude of, 630
— — organisation of, 642
— loans, issue of, 643, 645
— Ministers, meetings of foreign, 756
— modernisation of, 757
Government revenue, 654
Governments, contacts between, 752
— co-operation between, 756
— modern relations of, 754
Goya, painting of, 964
Gozzoli, Benozzo, frescoes of, 951, 958
Grafting, Mendelian theory of, 217
Graham, Thomas, study of osmosis, 213
Gramophones, educational uses of, 750
Grasslands in tropical climate, 830
— temperate, 841
Gravitation, 190
— and Minkowski's geometry, 104
— and Riemannian geometry, 105
— and the stars, 119
— as explanation of astronomical phenomena, 119
— Einstein's theory and the concept of, 104
— equations of, 195
— in Eddington's scheme, 106
— in relation to general relativity, 120
— law of, and Euclidean geometry, 103
— Newton and the law of, 24, 25, 118, 192
— unidirectional character of, 151
Great Britain, banking in, 637
— capitalist rationalisation in, 682
— Roman sites in, 540
— sex ratio for, 301
Greece, architecture in, 973
— democracy in ancient, 706
— dispute between Bulgaria and, 754
— excavations in, 491, 492, 495
— golden age of,)
— law of antiquities in, 504
— purchase of armaments by, 744
— the nursery of political theory, 705
Greek alphabet, 530
— architecture, characteristics of, 97
— — unity in, 983
— art as standard for European, 930
— — beauty in, 926
— — contrasted with Chinese, 934
— — contrasted with Indian, 940
— — contrasted with Romanesque, 946
— — painting in, 930
— — purposes of, 926
— — sensibility to form in, 927
— — treatment of animal forms in, 928
— — vulgarity in, 929
— astronomers and a geocentric theory, 14
— cities, excavation of, 492
— City-State, 705, 706
— coins, early, 526
— conception of square roots, 165
— contributions to mathematics, 157
— gem engraving, 526
— historians, 780
— houses, plan of, 531
— independence, loss of, 12
— mythology, 5
— New Testament discovered, 787
— painting, fundamental principles of, 930
— — study of, 511
— philosophers and geometry, 180
— philosophy after Aristotle, 12
— — and psychology, 310, 314
— — beginnings of, 308
— — effect of loss of, 12
— pottery, geometric style of, 514
— refugees, settlement of, 754
— scientific biology, 12

Greek sculpture, later examples of, 504
— — of Hellenistic period, 928
— — Roman copies of, 929
— — static ideal of, 928
— speculative thought and psychology, 307, 308
— statues in Italy, 507
— — restoration of, 508
— temples, 491, 973
— tragedy, 886
— vases from Egypt, 504
— — in Museums, 521
— — painting on, 930
— — preservation of, 520
— — styles of, 517
— — subjects of, 521
— — uses of, 525
— view of art, 881
Greeks and history, 780
— and monotheism, 55
— and polytheism, 55
— characteristics of Hellenic, 449
Green, T. H., 722
— and the conception of God, 554
— idealism of, 553
— philosophical views of, 548
Grote, George, 795
Grotius, Hugo, 710, 787
Group-consciousness of savages, 422
Group-loyalties, 422
Growth, limit of, 227
— process of, 227
Guanche tribe, 467
Gudea, Sumerian head of, 924
Guérard, Benjamin, 796
Guericke, invention of the air-pump by, 26
Guicciardini, Francesco, 786, 793
Guild Socialism, 723, 731
Guild Socialists, theories of, 678
Guizot, F. P. G., 798
Gurung tribe, 463
Gynandromorphism, 276
Gypsy moth, reproduction of, 278
— — sex transformation of, 285

H

Habit, nature of, 404
Habits, mastery of, 405
Haddon, A. C., 434, 444, 446
Hadrian, Villa of, 508
Haeckel, E. H., and evolutionism, 550
— monism of, 551
Hair as criterion of race, 435
Hakluyt Society, 798
Haldane, Viscount, philosophy of, 556
Hales, Stephen, and vegetable physiology, 211
Halicarnassus, excavations at, 492
Hall, Asaph, discovery of satellites of Mars by, 117
Hall, Edward, chronicles of, 794
Hallam, Henry, 713, 796
Halley, astronomical discoveries of, 32
Halley's comet, 118
Hallstatt, bronze age relics at, 446, 533
Hamilton collection of vases, 521
Hamilton, Thomas, 989
Hamilton, Sir William, 510
Hamites, 441, 442, 445, 452, 465
— characteristics of, 435
Hampden, John, 790
Hampton Court Palace, 990
Han Emperors, Chinese art under the, 933
Handicrafts of Scandinavia, 534
Hardy, work on protoplasm, 213
Harman & White, architects, 996
Harmonic minor scales, 1006
— sequence in music, 1013
Harmony as music regarded vertically, 1021
— in early music, 1050
— in modern music, 1041
— in music, material of, 1015
— — significance of rests in, 1016
— — terms relating to, 1010
Harpy monument, 492
Harrington, James, 711
Hartley, materialistic philosophy of, 31
— psychological theories of, 320, 329
Hartmann, Freud contrasted with, 357
— philosophy of, 35
Harvey, William, and blood circulation, 25, 206, 209
— on generation, 267
— on spontaneous generation, 210
Havas news agency, 750
Haverfield, Dr., 531
Havet, Julian, 796
Hawksbee, experiments of, on sound, 33
Hawtrey, R. G., and the theory of money, 621
Haydn, symphonies of, 1031
Hazlitt, critical individualism in, 905
Head, work on neural processes, 342
Head-shape as criterion of race, 435
Healing by suggestion, 345
Health, biology in relation to, 219
— improved, with smaller population, 741
— Section of the League of Nations, 755
Hearne, Thomas, 794
Heat, Black's discoveries on, 32
— caloric theory of, 89
— Carnot's discoveries on, 39
— Galileo's conception of, 87
— Joule's work on, 39
— regarded as molecular motion, 89
— Rumford's hypothesis of, as motion, 32
Hebraism, attempt to harmonise Platonism and, 13
Hebrew Books of Kings, 779
— doctrine of immortality, 77
— early chronicles, 779
Hebrews and monotheism, 55
Hecataeus, Greek historian, 780
Heeren, Arnold, 791, 797
Hegel and absolutism, 568
— and idealism, 34, 35
— and the doctrine of evolution, 801
— and the existence of God, 57
— conception of religion, 51
— political ideas of, 718
Heidelberg man, 434, 810
Heisenberg, principle of indeterminacy, 110
Helium atom, nucleus of, 93
— — structure of, 136
— in the corona of the sun, 126
Hellenic art, study of, 492
— Greeks, characteristics of, 449
Hellenistic period of Greek sculpture, 928
Helmholtz and the First Law of Thermodynamics, 39
— physical experiments of, 37
Helvetius (French materialist), 32
Henry VI, King, 790

Henry VIII, King, 710, 790
Heraclitus' conception of the cosmic process, 7
Herbart and absolutism, 568
— psychological theories of, 323
Herbertson, A. J., and modern geography, 815
— scheme of world climatic divisions, 824
Hercules and the Sun's motion, 123
— globular cluster in, 141
α-Herculis, disc of, 134
Herder, Johann, 791
Herding instinct, 400, 401
Herds, biological work on, 218
Hereditary characters in chromosomes, 261
— factors, 230, 238, 241, 244
Heredity a condition of evolution, 242
— a theory in Darwinism, 237
— Lamarck's theory of, 243
— nature of, 225, 241
— Spencer's theory of, 243
— variations in, 242
— Weismann's theory of, 212
Herero-Ovambo tribe, 471
Hermaphroditism, glandular, 291, 292
Hero, mechanical inventions of, 15
Herodotus of Halicarnassus, 780
Herschel, astronomical work of, 32, 122
— discovery of satellites of Saturn, 117
— discovery of Uranus, 117
Hertwig and embryology, 270
— on sex ratio, 301
Herz confirms Maxwellian theory of light, 97
Heterosexuality, 266
Heterosygosity and power of adaptation, 263
Heterozygous characters, 262
Hieroglyphic writings, 529
Higgins, W., application of the atomic theory, 40
Hill, Dr. Alex., definiuon of science, 775
Hindemith and polytonality, 1045
Hinduism, 464
Hindus, blood groups in, 439
— development of algebra by, 159
— numerical notation derived from, 159
Hindustani Brahmans, 463
Hipparchus, contributions to science, 13
Hippocrates and the beginnings of biology, 12
— and the doctrine of "four humours," 12
— as originator of medicine, 215
— contributions to geometry, 13
His, 208
Histogenesis, 208
Histology a branch of morphology, 206
Historians, American, 797
— British, 788, 790, 791, 796
— ecclesiastical, 788
— German, 791, 796
— Greek, 780
— Italian, 786
— modern European, 797
— political bias of, 795
— rationalistic, 790, 791
— Roman, 781
— social, 789
— Spanish, 789, 797
Historic truth as result of religious wars, 788
Historical activity, effect of constitutional conflicts on, 789
— annals, 784
— chronicles, 784, 794
— data, collection of, 778, 797
— — interpretation of, 778
— — uncertainty of, 774
Historical documents, care of, 794
— — criticism of, 778
— geography, 809
— investigation, 777
— Manuscripts Commission, 798
— research during the Reformation, 788
— works, oldest extant, 779
Historiography as handmaid of theology, 782
— critical school of, 795
— effect of French Revolution on, 791
— English constitutional, 790
— humanistic, 786
— in the Middle Ages, 783
— in the eighteenth century, 790
— in the nineteenth century, 794
— influence of geography on, 809
— — of humanistic revival on, 785
— Romantic Reaction in, 792
History and anthropology, 810
— and archæology, 486, 810
— as a basis for political progress, 807
— as a physical science, 802, 803
— as a school of political method, 805
— as a science, 774
— as a storehouse of political precedent, 806
— as an art, 774
— bibliographical note on, 778, 810
— changed conception of, 799
— connotation of the term, 776
— earliest chronicles of, 779
— ecclesiastical, 777, 788, 798
— economic conception of, 800
— evolutionary idea in, 800
— functions of, 804
— inadequate conception in, 795
— influence of geographical exploration on, 789
— makers of, 776
— materialistic conception of, 800
— methods of, as a science, 777
— nature of science of, 776
— origin of philosophy of, 783
— place of, in education, 803
— political, 777
— psycho-analysis in, 355
— secular, in the Middle Ages, 783
— specialisation in, 799
— study of, 569
— subject-matter of, 777
— teaching, international aspect of, 750
— value of coins in study of, 528
— value of inscriptions in study of, 530
— wrong aim of, 794
Hitler, Herr, 732
Hittite writing, 529
Hittites, 436, 455
Hoadly, political writings of, 713
Hobbes, Thomas, absolutism of, 713
— and modern materialism, 319
— materialism of, 27
— philosophy of, 27
— political theories of, 711, 712
— the successor of Machiavelli, 708
— theory of nature, 718
Hobhouse, L. T., philosophy of, 580, 721
Hobson, C. K., 742
Hobson, J. A. and economics, 617
Hocking, W. E., philosophy of, 562
Hoffding, conception of religion, 54
Hofmeister and the evolutionary descent of plants, 43
— biological works of, 212

Hogacker and sex determination, 271
Högalid Church in Stockholm, 992, 1001
Hokusai, art of, 938
Holinshed, R., chronicles of, 794
Holism, theories of, 588
Home-circle, 411, 412
Home life in early times, 412
Homer, power over language, 872
Homeric poems, 494
Homology, origin of concept of, 211
Homosexuality, 266, 296
Homozygous characters, 262
Hooke, theory of heat, 89
Hooker, Richard, and *Ecclesiastical Polity*, 710
— political theory of, 710, 711
Hookworm disease, 219
Hopkins, Pryns, 390
Horace, literary criticism of, 895 *et seq.*
Hormic psychology, 317, 327, 338
Hormone, definition of, 284
— function of ovary, 299
Hormones in the body, 212, 213
— sex, 283
Hot desert climate, 834
Hotman, *Franco-Gallia*, 790
Hottentots, 445, 473
Hova tribe, 473
Howard, work of, on wheat growing, 217
Howard-Ellis, C., 753
Hrdlička on American natives, 475
Huaxtecan tribe, 479
Human behaviour, hormic psychology and, 328
— body, chemical changes in, 234
— — intricacy of, 229
— character, sources of, 399
— conduct, arbitrary nature of, 403
— — character as shown by, 399
— — effect of customary morality on, 410
— consciousness, 553
— culture, 398
— — psycho-analysis and, 355, 392
— — scope of, 411
— development, 209
— environment, 398
— existence, pre-intellectual stage of, 5
— — struggle for, 398
— goodness, 426
— instincts, classification of, 399, 400
— intelligence, history of, 399
— life, biology and, 216
— nature, Thomistic conception of, 317
— race, 398
— society, structure of, 399, 704
— thought in ancient times, 4
— — mythological stage of, 5
— understanding, Locke on, 29
Humanism, renaissance of, 785
Humanity as substitute for God, 65
Hume, David, 791
— and associationism, 328
— criticism of Berkeley's philosophy, 30
— on consciousness of self, 338
— psychological theories of, 320
— scepticism of, 30
Hungarian finances organised by League of Nations, 754
— gypsies, blood groups in, 439
Hunter, William, 270
Hunting instinct, 403
Husserl, E., 548, 572
Hutton, work on scientific geology, 34
Huxley, T. H., 721
— and agnosticism, 64
— definition of science, 775
— conception of the struggle for existence, 246
— on ætiology, 209
— on consciousness, 78
— on the physical basis of life, 207
Huygens and the wave theory of light, 96
— invention of pendulum clock by, 26
— recognition of ring of Saturn by, 117
— undulatory theory of light of, 26
Hyades, clustering of stars in, 123
Hydrogen atom as unit of positive charge, 93
— nucleus of, 93
— structure of, 136
Hylozoism, conception of, 308
Hylozoists, conceptions of the, 6
Hypatia, murder of, 16
Hyperplatyrrhine nose, 436
Hypnosis abandoned by Freud and Breuer, 352, 353
— the origin of psycho-analysis, 334
Hysteria, significance of, 352
— symptoms of, 372

I

Ibn Gabirol (Jewish philosopher), 17
Ibn-Khaldun of Tunis, 785, 793
Ibn-Khallikan, *Biographical Dictionary*, 784, 793
Ibn Yunus, study of eclipses, 19
Ichthyology, a branch of biology, 205
Iconography in Europe, 941
Id in psycho-analysis, 385
Idealism, absolute, in England, 553
— critical, 546
— definition of, 544
— in the nineteenth century, 34
— ontological, 546
— reaction against, 549
— revival of interest in, 548
Idealistic philosophy, 548
Idealists, absolute, 544
Ideas, Herbart's concept of, 324
— Plato's theory of, 310, 314, 881
— theory of representative, 546
Illuminated MSS. in the Dark Ages, 941, 947
Illustration, effect of, 952
Imagery, persistence of, 913
Immanence, definition of, 71
Immortality and religion, 77
— conceptions of, 78
— Hebrew doctrine of, 78
— metaphysical proof of, 79
— of the soul, 314, 317
Imperial Chemical Industries Ltd., 682
Imperial Defence, Committee of, 770
Imperial Hotel in Tokyo, 998
Imperialism, economic, 733
— old, 765
Impulse, explanation of, 309
— nature of, 400
Impulses, need for controlled, 405
In-breeding, 400
— effect of, 261, 262
— tendency of, 248
Inca tribes, 480
Incest, savage laws against, 428
Income debentures, 644
— distribution of, 617

Income, national, 642
— notes, 644
— taxation of, 655
Independent Treasury System, 642
Indeterminacy, Heisenberg's principle of, 110
— principle of, 590
India, caste system in, 463
— ethnology of, 462
— geographical divisions of, 462
— modernisation of, 742
Indian architecture, 940
— art, 939, 940
— jungle tribes, 446
— painting, 940
— sculpture, 940
— tribes in America, 478
Individual, development of the, 209
— natural right of the, 597
— origin of the, 267
— sexuality of the, 265
— social duties of, 412
Individualism, capitalist, 597
Individuality, 403
— moral, 425
Indo-Aryan tribes, 463
Indo-China, inhabitants of, 460
— racial and political problems in, 826
Indonesian stock, 444
Industrial Boards, appointment of, 677
— Councils, Whitley scheme of Joint, 672
— discontent, 673
— disputes, arbitration in, 686
— enterprises, union of, 743
— finance, 628
— organisation and capitalism, 665
— — bibliographical note on, 699
— — in America, 698
— — in France, 698
— — in Germany, 698
— — Socialist problems of, 675
— policy in Russia, 691
— power of working classes, 673
— processes, waste in, 681
— psychology, need for experts in, 682
— revolution, 740
Industry, art in, 966
— collectivist system in, 670
— consolidation in, 669
— co-partnership in, 683, 684
— development of, under Socialism, 674
— international organisation of, 743
— joint control in, 672, 685
— labour in, 669
— lock-outs in, 686
— management of socialised, 675, 676
— ownership in, 667, 669
— powers of managers of, 671
— prices in socialised, 679
— profit-sharing in, 683
— provision of new capital for, 694
— psychology in, 345
— rationalisation of, 680, 743
— reserved profits in, 670
— strikes in, 686
— wages in socialised, 679
— welfare methods in, 683, 685
— workers' control in socialised, 678
— Works Councils in, 672
Infanticide among savages, 419
Infusorians, discovery of, by Leeuwenhoek, 210
Ingenhousz, biological work of, 211
Inheritance, deteriorative processes in, 248
— example of Mendelian, 244
— Mendelian theory of, 244
— natural, 242, 243
— of individual modifications, 243
— sex-linked, 275
— social, 243
— various modes of, 246
Inscriptions, ancient, 530
Insects, Swammerdam's study of, 210
Instinct, definition of, 57
— herding, 400, 401
— parental, 401
— purpose of, 400
— self-sustaining type of, 402
— sexual, 401
Instinctive activities, 234
— tendencies, classification of, 400
Instincts, classification of human, 399, 400
— group-maintaining, 400
— self-maintaining, 402
Instrumentalism, theories of, 573, 577
Insurance companies, 632
Integers, 165
Integral calculus, 197
Intellectual co-operation, League of Nations Committee on, 750
— eras, historical antecedents of, 4
— orientation, constant change in, 4
— tendencies *versus* emotional, 411
Intellectuality more active with smaller population, 741
Intelligence, definition of, 574
— in the higher animals, 234
— measurement of, 335
— significance of, 400
Interactionism in human consciousness, 78
International amity, danger of trade in armaments to, 745
— aspect of colonial administration, 759
— — of Co-operative Wholesale Societies, 744
— Association of Rotary Clubs, 749
— boundaries, geographical character of, 850
— cartels, 746
— Chamber of Commerce, 749
— contact aids to, 750
— — need for, 740
— control of epidemic disease, 753, 755
— co-operation and work for peace, 757
— Co-operative Alliance, 744
— Council of Women, 762
— disputes and the League of Nations, 754
— economic conceptions, need for, 746
— exchange of ideas, 759
— exchange, organisation of, 741
— export of capital, 746
— Federation of Trade Unions, 749
— intercourse, hypothetical theory of, 765, 770
— investment, spread of, 631
— Justice, Permanent Court of, 754, 756, 760
— Labour Office, 755
— Labour Organisation of the League of Nations, 686, 755, 760
— law, 707, 765
— League, Women's, 762
— markets, policy of extending, 747
— Office of Public Health, 755
— organisation, bibliographical note on, 771
— — economic, 742
— — for sale of armaments, 745
— — of commerce, 743, 745, 746

International organisation of credit, 742
— — of finance, 742
— — of industry, 743
— — of supplies, 748
— — theory of, 764
— political institutions, 763
— politics, League of Nations and, 756
— Psycho-Analytical Association, 350
— relations and distribution of population, 847
— — of banks, 741, 742
— — of Consumers' Co-operative Societies, 744
— — world geography and, 846
— responsibility, 758
— Settlements, Bank for, 742
— short loan fund, 634
— structure of banking system, 742
— trade, financing of, 635
— transport, organisation of, 741
— trusts, 746
Internationalism, cosmopolitanism a form of, 751
— cultural, 749
— economic, 745
Interparliamentary Union, 762
Intersexuality and hereditary constitution, 281
— development of, 291
— in man, 288
— in the pig, 289
— time law of, 280
Inter-tribal activities, 412
— virtues, 422
Interval, Minkowski's interpretation of, as distance, 101
Intervals in music, 1007, 1010
Introspection, controlled, 338
Intuitionism, 546
Intuitions, distinction from concepts, 560
— expressed in literature, 869
Invention, relation of, to a fugue, 1035
Inventions based on pure science, 215
Inversion in music, 1014
Invertebrates, varieties of, 229
Investment Board, suggested National, 696
— of savings, 695
— relation between savings and, 622
— spread of international, 631
— trusts, 632
Investments, holding of foreign, 742
Investors, capital-rights of, 643
Ionian mode in early music, 1049
Ionic alphabet, 530
— architecture in Greece, 974
— pottery, 516
Iranian people, 452
Irish illuminated MSS., 941
Iroquian tribe, 478
Irrigation, object of, 821
— of desert lands, 836
Irula tribe, 446, 462
Islam and spread of civilisation, 749
Island universes, recession of, 108
Isolation a theory in Darwinism, 237
Israel, Chronicles of the Kings of, 779
Israeli (Jewish philosopher), 17
Italian art, æsthetic qualities of, 950
— — evolution of, 949
— — Mannerists in, 959, 960
— painting in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, 950
— — in the Middle Ages, 948
— Renaissance architecture, 979, 984
Italian revival of Roman architecture, 950
— sculpture, 951
— vases, varieties of, 520
Italians, temperament of Southern, 449
Italy, absolute idealism in, 553
— collections of sculpture in, 510
— economic position of, 849
— Fascism in, 728
— Greek statues in, 507
— humanistic historiography in, 786
— Machiavelli's political ideas for, 705
— Syndicalism in, 723
Ivory carvings, study of, 529

J

JABIR, founder of scientific chemistry 19
Jakun tribe, 460
James I, King, 711
James II, King, 711
James, G. P. R., 792
James, William, 410
— and active willing, 338
— and elementary sensations, 332
— and psychology, 721
— doctrine of the "will to believe," 36
— on emotion, 341
— philosophy of 576
Janet and significance of hysteria, 352
— work on psycho-pathology, 357
Japan, agricultural conditions in, 848
— and migration, 826
— earliest inhabitants of, 457
— ethnology of, 456
— population problem in, 849
Japanese, æsthetic sense in, 458
— art, characteristics of, 937
— mental qualities of, 457
— physical characters of, 456
— prints, 938
Jats, 463
Javanese, 462
Jealousy, 401
Jeans, Sir James, on Nature, 59
— on theory of solar system, 147
Jenghis Khan, 785
Jenner, discovery of vaccination by, 34, 42
Jerome, Chronicles of, 783
Jevons, Professor W. S., 774
— and price-equilibrium, 595
— and the differential calculus, 607
— early work on economics, 607
Jewish nose, 436
— philosophers, 17
— races, 455
— theology and sex-ethic, 257
Jews in China, 460
— sex-ratio among, 302
Jig in music, 1029
Job, poetical language in Book of, 871
John Scotus Erigena (early Scholastic), 18
Johnson, and literary criticism, 901
Johnston, G. A., 760
Joint Stock Banks, 640
— Companies, 649, 667
Jones, Ernest, on neuroses, 352
— on symbolism, 362, 365
Jones, Sir Henry, 76
Jones, Inigo, 983
Joshua, Book of, 779

Joule, physical experiments of, 37, 39, 40
Judah, Chronicles of the Kings, of 779
Jung, C. G., behaviour types of, 448
— on dreams, 369
— on functional symbols, 365
— on the unconscious, 367
— work on psycho-analysis, 350, 366
Jungle tribes of India, 446, 462
Jupiter, degree of degeneration of, 152
— " Great Red Spot " on, 116
— in the solar system, 116
— satellites of, discovered, 117
— — Romer's observations on, 96
Jussieu, biological classification work of 34
Justinian, Emperor, 16

K

KABABISH tribe, 469
Kaffirs, 471
Kalmuk tribe, 456
Kamàres ware, 512
Kamchadal people, 455
Kameneff, M., 805, 806
Kanets, 463
Kansu Turki Moslems, 459
Kant and arguments for theism, 61
— and belief in God, 31
— and idealism, 34
— and the existence of God, 57, 323
— conception of poetry, 899
— — of religion, 51
— critical philosophy of, 37, 322
— *Critique of Pure Reason*, 548
— on æsthetic judgment in art, 904
— philosophy of, 30
— transcendentalism of, 31
Kapteyn Universe as degenerate spiral, 146
— — in the Galaxy, 145
Kasak people, 452
Katabolism, 212, 240
Katharsis, Aristotle's doctrine of, 887, 888, 890, 891, 892, 893
Katzaroff, psychological work of, 343
Kāyasths, 462
Keane, A. H., 452, 456
Keats, *Ode on a Grecian Urn*, 865
Keith, A., on the races of mankind, 433
Kelvin, Lord, 542
— and the Second Law of Thermodynamics, 39
— view on the ether, 97
Kemble, J., Mitchell, 796
Kenana tribe, 469
Kepler, astronomical work of, 23
— laws of, 23
— mathematical conception of nature, 85
Kerensky, Alexandre, 725
Key in music, 1008, 1044
Key-distribution in music, 1019
Key-note in music, 1006
Keynes, J. M., and the theory of money, 621
Keyser, Norwegian historian, 797
Khatris, 463
Khowarazmi, Al, 159
Kinetic energy, 102
— theory of gases, 91
Kindred, physiological view of, 208
Kings, Divine Right of, 711, 712
Kingsley, Charles, 802
Kinship, early views of, 415
— system, effect of, on marital relations, 420
Kirghiz people, 452, 456
Kitson, C. H., 1006
Knowledge, experience as origin of, 336
— Haldane's views on, 556
— Hobhouse's conception of, 581
— intuitions as origin of, 567
— Locke and the origin of, 319
— problems concerning avenues of, 546
— psychological criticism of value of, 309
Koffka and formalism, 331
Kohler and formalism, 331
Kopp, Swiss historian, 797
Korean art, 939
Koreans, 444
Korin, art of, 938
Koropakguru, 457
Koryak people, 455
Krassin, 805, 806
Kropotkin, Prince, 721
Krypton and the quantum theory, 136
Kulpe and controlled introspection, 338
Kunbi tribe, 463
Kuramba tribe, 462
Kurumba tribe, 446

L

LABANISM, 414
Labour and Socialist International, 763
— as basis of value, 604
— division of, 599
— hours of, 760
— in industry, 669
— in relation to economic abstinence, 604
— incentive to, 688
— International Organisation of, 755, 766
— Marx's conception of, 605
— movement, origin of, 719
— Party in Europe, 674
— productiveness of, 598
— ratio of, to machinery, 601
— scientific utilisation of, 681
— unrest before the war, 723
— value in relation to market value, 601
Lacheher, J., philosophy of, 558
Laconian ware, 517
Lacustrine tribes, 472
Lagrange, work of, on movements of planets, 32
Laissez-faire in capital investments, 696
— policy in economics, 597, 616
Lamarck and the theory of evolution, 211, 324
— biological work of, 211
— theory of heredity, 243
— work of, on the mental aspect of life, 213
Lamb, critical individualism in, 905
Lamprecht, Karl, 800, 809
Lancashire Cotton Corporation, 695
— cotton trade, 682
Land, Marshall on rent of, 613
— origin of rent of, 602
— reclamation of, 818
Langley, work on neural processes, 342
Langlois, C., 778, 804
Language, communicative power of, 869, 870
— distinction of literary, from ordinary, 869
— importance of, 439
— phonetic power of, 876, 898
— poetical, 871
— semantic power of, 876, 898
— sense of, in literature, 869

Language, symbolism of, in literature, 868
— the prerogative of man, 235
Languages, teaching of, 750
Lankes, psychological work of, 340
Lankester, Sir Ray, 804
Laplace's nebular hypothesis, 32, 38, 147, 149
— view of determinism, 110
Lashley, psychological work of, 337
La Tène, iron age relics at, 446, 533
Lausanne school of economics, 607, 614
Lavoisier and the nature of combustion, 33
— discovery of oxidation processes, 211
— execution of, 33
— systematisation of chemistry by, 33
Law as term applied to natural phenomena, 5
— coerciveness of, 407
— custom in relation to, 405
— foundations of, 405
— international, 707
— of art history, 913
— of population, 891
— of rent, 801
— philosophy of, 543
— psychology in, 344
— Roman, 707
— tribal, 406
Laws, Cretan code of, 530
— of perspective, 957
— of phenomena, 558
— of the blood, primitive, 406
Lazard Bros. & Co., 645
Leaders, responsibility of, 426
League of Nations and control of Mandates, 759
— and international politics, 756
— and rights of minorities, 759
— and trade in arms, 745
— character of, 753
— Committee on intellectual co-operation, 750
— criticisms of, 758
— defects of, 758
— government of Saar territory, 755
— International Labour Organisation of, 686, 755
— investigations into trade and production, 747
— Mandate system, 765
— Mandates Commission of, 755
— membership of, 758
— new functions of, 755, 756
— Non-Partisan Association, 754
— value of services of, 760
— work achieved by, 754
— work for peace, 757
Leake collection of vases, 520
Leakey, discoveries in East Africa, 467
Le Corbusier, houses of, 1001
— on rebuilding old cities, 996
Leeuwenhoek, biological discoveries of, 41, 210, 268
Lehmann-Rüssbuldt, 744
Leibniz and belief in God, 56
— and the conception of God, 29
— and the existence of God, 57
— and the problem of evil, 76
— invention of the infinitesimal calculus, 26
— monadism of, 29
— philosophy of, 29
— psychological theories of, 319, 321
Leiper, Major, work on cause of bilharziasis, 220
Lelewel, Polish historian, 797
Lenin, Nikolai, 725
Lenz, F., 449
Lepchas, 463
Leptorrhine nose, 436
Lessing on literature and the graphic arts, 904
— publishes *Laokoon*, 510
Leucippus and the atomic theory, 8
Leverrier, discovery of Neptune by, 38, 117, 119
Liberalism and Nationalism, 731
Libertarianism, definition of, 545
Libyans, 442, 467
Lichens, dual nature of, 213
Lieber, Henry, 797
Liebig and the circulation of matter, 211
— chemical researches of, 37
Liebmann, O., philosophy of, 568
Life, anthropology and the meaning of, 430
— ascending and descending curve in, 240
— biology as aid in difficulties of, 221
— cellular, 259
— evolution of, 400
— expectation of, 740
— factors governing standard of, 749
— immortality and a future, 77
— improved standard of modern, 741
— mental aspect of, 213
— mind in relation to, 231
— multitudinous, 229
— physical basis of, 207
— powers of, 228
— sciences, 204
— wonder of, 228
Light and the addition of velocities, 102
— and time-lapse, Einstein's conception of, 99
— and wave-theory of radiation, 94
— behaviour of, in relation to motions of bodies, 101
— curved path of, 105
— Descartes' theory of, 26
— discovery of velocity of, 26
— effect of the gravitational field of the sun on, 127
— Einstein's principle of velocity of, 99
— electromagnetic theory of, 39, 97
— Huygens' undulatory theory of, 26
— mechanical explanation of propagation of, 96
— Newton's corpuscular theory of, 96
— Newton's experiments on, 26
— transmission of, 126
— velocity of, 96, 101
— wave theory of, 96
— work on, in the nineteenth century, 39
Lillie, biological work of, 287
Limbu tribe, 463
Limited liability, 667, 669
Limits, notion of, 192
Lines, definition of, 181
— Euclid on straight, 182
— parallel, 183
Linguistics, scope of, 397
Linnean system of biological classification, 34
Linnæus, 206
— systematisation of biology by, 34
— work of, on organisms, 210
Lippi, Filippino, 958
Liquids and the atomic theory, 89
Lister, introduction of antiseptic surgery by, 42, 215
Literary art and power of suggestion, 869
— criticism, Aristotle's, 876 *et seq.*
— — bibliographical note on, 906
— — Ben Jonson and, 901

Literary art, Burke and, 903
— — Dante's, 898
— — Dryden's, 901
— — Horace's, 895
— — intuitive, 895
— — methods of, 895
— — of the Renaissance, 899
— — Pope's, 901
— — principles of, 960
— — since Aristotle, 895
— — Socrates on, 860
— experience, complexity of, 872
— — expression of, 866
— language as distinct from ordinary, 869
— style, criticism of, 900
— — liberty of, 903
Literature, active powers in, 861
— and communication by language, 867
— applied, 865
— art and, 863
— art of, 863, 875
— as form of expression, 864
— beauty in, 871
— connotation of the term, 862
— creative power in, 861
— definition of, 863
— diction in, 873
— division into poetry and prose, 871
— emotions expressed in, 869
— experience expressed in, 866
— form the function of, 871, 873
— imagination in, 868
— matter of, 866
— originating impulse in, 868
— psycho-analysis in, 355
— psychological intuitions expressed in, 869
— pure, 865
— rational enquiry in, 863
— relation of, to the graphic arts, 904
— rhythm in, 870
— suggestion expressed in, 869
— symbolic language in, 868
— theory of, 862
— thought expressed in, 869
Liverpool Cathedral, 979, 992
— Roman Catholic Cathedral, 990
Living beings, adaptiveness of, 230
— beauty in, 230
— difference between non-living things and, 227
— purposive behaviour of, 228
— qualities characteristic of, 227
Livy, historical writings of, 781
Llanos of South America, 831
Lloyd George, Rt. Hon. D., 805, 806
Lloyd Morgan and emergent evolution, 38
Loans, charges on, 638
— security for, 639
— short, 633, 634
— specific, 634
Lobatschewski and parallelism, 189
— work on geometry, 39
Location, simple, 194
Lock-outs in industry, 686
Locke, John, classification of powers, 713
— empiricism of, 37
— on human understanding, 29
— philosophy of, 29
— political ideas of, 712
— psychological theories of, 319, 321
— theory of constitutional government, 713
Logarithms, 26, 179
Logic, Cohen's conception of, 569
— definition of, 542
Logical principles of algebra, 173
Logistic synonymous with calculation, 158
Logos, doctrine of the, 16
Lombardic architecture, 977
London, advantages of position of, 855
— Underground Railways, 696
Longinus on the Sublime, 900
Lorenz, explanation of Michelson's experiment, 98
Lossky, N. O., philosophy of, 567
Lotuko tribe, 472
Lotze, Hermann, 70
— on beauty, 231
— idealistic pantheism of, 35
— psychological work of, 342
Louvre converted into a museum, 510
— Greek vases in, 521
Lowell, Percival, and the discovery of Pluto, 119
Loyalty, Royce's definition of, 562
Lucanian vases, 520
Luchaire, Achille, 796
Lucretius and atomic theory of antiquity, 13, 15
— contrasted with Darwin, 867
Lurcat, André, 1001
Luther, Martin, and the Reformation, 788
— and the spread of civilisation, 749
— political ideas of, 709
Lutyens, Sir Edward, 990, 1001
Luxury, shop-finish of objects of, 914
Lycian tombs, 506
Lydian mode in early music, 1049
Lyell's principles of geology, 43
Lyons cattle market, 1000
Lysippus, Agias of, 509

M

Mabillon, Jean, 794, 795
Macaulay, *History of England*, 799
— Whiggism of, 795
McCulloch, J. R., on joint stock companies, 667
— on real cost, 612
— on real value, 604
McDougall, Professor, 721
— hormic psychology of, 341
— on Nordic temperament, 448
Mach, E., philosophy of, 552
Machiavelli, Niccolo, 708, 786, 793, 796
Machinery, ratio of labour to, 601
Macintosh, James, 792
McKim, Mead and White, classical architecture of, 989
Mackinder, Sir Halford, and modern geography, 815, 853
Macpherson, Stewart, 1006
McTaggart, Dr., 74, 79, 587
Madagascar, inhabitants of, 473
Madeleine in Paris, 989
Madox, Thomas, 794
Madrigalists, experimentalism of, 1051
Madrigals, musical accentuations in, 1053
Magalhaes, effect of voyages of, on thought, 21
Magdalenian periods, cave drawings of, 488
— — men of, 432
Magdeburg Centuries, 788
Magnetic phenomena and relativity, 121
Magnetism, study of, in eighteenth century, 33
Magyars, 447

Maikop, copper vases from, 931
Maimonides (Jewish philosopher), 17
Maine, 408
Maison Carrée, architecture of, 976
Maitland, F. W., 722, 778, 797
Major scales in music, 1006
Malaria, cause of, 219
Malay, inhabitants of, 460
— Sakai of, 445, 446
Malaya, immigration into, 848
Malpighi, work of, on capillaries, 210
Malthusian law of population, 801
Mammalia in the scheme of classification, 207
Mammalian ovum, discovery of, 270
Mammals, partnership between parent and offspring, 243
Man, anthropoid ancestry of, 432
— antiquity of, in Europe, 446
— Aurignacian, 915
— conditions responsible for making, 398
— early, in Asia, 451
— effect of climate on, 820, 824
— effect of equatorial climate on, 828
— effect of weather on, 820
— Green on nature of, 553
— home life of primitive, 412
— hunting instinct of, 403
— influence of, on physical features of earth's surface, 818
— instinct in, 399
— intersexuality in, 288
— mathematics and the practical needs of, 156
— mental activity in, 235
— missing link in development of, 432
— moral freedom in, 399
— narcissism in, 384
— neanthropic, 434, 446
— necessity of society to, 707
— Nordic race of, 434
— palæanthropic, 434
— place of origin of, 433
— primitive, 398
— psychical activity in, 235
— psychology and the nature of, 306
— — in primitive, 307
— races of, 440
— reason and language the prerogative of, 235
— relations of geographical factors of environment to, 823
— relations of man to, 741
— science in service of, 214
— science of, 397
— self-consciousness of, 306
— sense of wonder in primitive, 4
— sex instinct in, 401
— — transformation in, 288, 290
— social activities of, 412
— study of speech forms of, 397
— time and the development of, 433
— yellow, 442
Mana, 407, 410, 413, 417, 422, 426, 428, 429
Manchu tribe, 456, 459
Manchuria and Japanese migration, 826, 849
— development of, 848
Mandates, classes of, 759
— control of, 755, 759
Manetho, Egyptian Annals of, 779
Mankind, classification of, 440
— differentiation of races of, 433
— older species of, 432
Manliness, virtues constituting, 423
Mantinea, excavations at, 502
Manu, *Institutes* of, 464
Manufacture in relation to agriculture, 598
Manzoni, principles of criticism, 905
Maori tribe, 483
Maps, physical features of, 817
— topographical, 818
— use of, in geography, 853, 857
Marātha Brahmans, 463, 464
Marble as building material, 992
Marco Polo, voyages of, 814
Marcus Aurelius, Emperor, 16
Margarine trade, 743
Marginal productivity, theory of, 612, 614, 616
— utility, theory of, 607
Market equivalence, 600
— value in relation to labour value, 601
— values, 600
Markets, creation of new, 748
— extension of, 748
— in modern finance, 632
— international, 747
— potential, in contrast with actual, 748
Marquis wheat, 217
Marriage laws of Australian tribes, 414
Marriott, Charles, 979
Mars, degree of degeneration of, 152
— discovery of satellites of, 117
— in the solar system, 116
— temperature on, 116
— topographical features of, 116
Marshall, A., and economics, 607
— and the theory of money, 621
— and the theory of normal profit, 617
— on the real cost of production, 612
— on the rent of land, 613
Martini, Simone, 954
Marx, Karl, and capitalist profit, 606
— and distribution of wealth, 595
— and the materialist conception of history, 719
— concept of capitalism and labour, 605
— economic interpretation of history, 609
— on cost and value, 601
— political theories of, 719, 725
— revises Ricardian system, 605
Marxian socialists and history, 800
Marxism, Bolshevik interpretation of, 725
— in politics, 704
Marzali, Hungarian historian, 797
Masaccio, paintings of, 956
Masai tribe, 469, 471
Masoch, Sacher, 374
Masochistic instincts, 374, 380
Masoudi of Arabia, 784
Mass, relations of radiation with, 127
Matabei, genre style of, 938
Matabele tribe, 471
Match trade, 743
Materialism, definition of, 544
— distinction of, from naturalism, 545
— early thinkers and, 6
— in Germany, 550
— in the eighteenth century, 31
— in the nineteenth century, 36
— " legitimate," 233
Mathematical conception of nature, 85
— definition, physical entities and, 85
— principles of algebra, 174
— relations of scientific terms, 112
— specifications of elements, 112

Mathematics and the practical needs of man, 156
— bibliographical note on, 200
— contributions of Alexandrians to, 14
— definition of, 158
— distinction between pure, and applied, 158
— distributive law in, 170
— division in, 164
— effect of astronomy on, 114
— Egyptian contributions to, 157
— fractions used in, 165
— Greek contributions to, 157
— in the seventeenth century, 26
— international aspect of, 750
— Omar Khayam's treatise on, 19
— origin of, 156
— Plato on, 158
— popular conception of, 156
— Rhind, papyrus on, 13
— use of symbols in, 160
Mating, process of, 256, 265, 400
Matter, Aristotle's concept of, 312
— conversion of, into radiation, 141
— destruction of, 141
— in a colloidal state, properties of, 213
— in relation to mind, 549
— Liebig's work on the circulation of, 211
— mathematical specification of, 95
— nineteenth century conception of, 88
— relation of energy to, 102
— three states of, 89
Mauron, Charles, 915
Maurras, Charles, 732
Maxwell and the laws of electric circuits, 173
— electromagnetic theory of light, 39, 97
— on degradation of energy, 151
Maya mythology expressed in art, 920
— sculpture, 920
— tribes, 479
Mayer, physical experiments of, 37
Mazzini, 729
Mechanics, Babylonian study of, 15
— development of, 215
— early recognition of value of, 216
— Egyptian study of, 15
— in Eddington's scheme, 106
Mechanism, definition of, 544
Mechanistic theory, 544
Medes, 452
Mediæval chronicles, 794
— science, 19
— thought and the Church, 21
— — epoch of, 307
— — subordination of, to authority, 21
Medical science and psychotherapy, 345
Medici as art patrons, 951
Medicine as a biological science, 215
— international aspect of, 750
— — co-operation regarding tropical, 759
— organisation of preventive, 753
— origin of science of, 215
— — of preventive, 215, 219
— psychology in, 344
Mediterranean climate, 836
— race, composition of, 441
— — distribution of, 442
— — early history of, 446
— — temperament of, 449
Megalithic culture, 446
Megalopolis, excavations at, 502
Megarians' interpretation of Socrates, 9
Meinong, A., 572
Meiosis of egg-cells, and sperm cells, 238
Meiotic cell division, 213
Melanesians, 482, 483
— blood groups among, 438, 439
Melodic inversion in music, 1014
— minor scales, 1006, 1050
— sequence in music, 1013
Melody of a theme, variations in, 1037
— terms used in connection with, 1006
Melos gems, 526
Melotte, discovery of satellite of Jupiter by, 117
Memory, nature of, 344
Mendel, theory of inheritance, 244
— work on genetics, 213
Mendeléeff discovers periodic law of elements, 41
Mendelian theory and inheritance of blood groups, 439
— theory of grafting, 217
Mendelism, modern, 261
Mendelsohn, Erich, 999
Menger and economics, 607
Menopause, effects of, 264
Mensheviks, 725
Mensuration, distinction between geometry and 195
— essential to Egyptians, 157
— study of, 180
Mental creative synthesis, 331
— development, 373
— powers, Hume's analysis of, 320
— — nature of, 319
— processes, intentional character of, 572
— — investigation of, 327
— — psycho-analysis and, 354
— — repression in, 358
Mercantilism, 597, 599
Merchant banking firms, 632
Mercury, anomalous course of, 120
— and Einstein's theory, 120
— in the solar system, 116
— motion of, explained by Einstein's theory, 105
— temperatures on, 116
— variation in mass of, 120
Mesaticephalic skull, 435
Mesopotamia, bronze age in, 490
— historical inscriptions of, 491
— recent archæological discoveries in, 534, 537
— sculpture in, 924
Mesopotamian art, 537, 924
— cuneiform writing, 529
— seal-stones, 525
Mesorrhine nose, 436
Metabolism of the body, 212
— two aspects of, 240
Metallurgy, development of, 215
Metals, discovery and use of, 490
Metamorphic rocks, 819
Metaphysical psychology, 323
Metaphysics, branches of, 542
Meteorology, function of, 821
Mexican art, 920
Mexicans, plastic creations of, 920
Mexico, people of, 479
— turquoise deposits in, 479
Meyer E., 778
Meyer, L., periodic arrangement of elements, 41
Michelangelo, 953, 958, 959
— and the Baroque movement, 980
— restores Greek statues, 508
Michelet, Jules, 792

Michelson, experiment on the earth's movement, 98
Michotte and consciousness of action, 340
— on self-activity, 343
Microbes as cause of disease, 219
Micrometer, invention of, 26
Microniesians, 482
Microscopists, work of early, 210
Microsomes, 230
Middle Ages, architecture of, 977
— historiography in, 783
— painting at end of, 945
— political theories in, 707
— sculpture at end of, 945
— transition from, to modern times, 785
Middle Classes, enfranchisement of, 716
Milestones, historical value of, 531
Miletus, excavations at, 505
Milhaud and polytonality, 1045
Milky Way, Anaxagoras' explanation of, 14
— and star streams, 123
— nature of, 122, 144
— rifts in, 140
Mill, John Stuart, 722
— and politics, 717, 718
— and positivism, 37, 38
— qualities of, 603
— on laws governing phenomena, 801
Milton, power over language, 872
— views on tragedy, 891
Mind as ultimate reality in nature, 59
— biological view of, 235
— -body dualism, epoch of, 307
— development of the, 373
— distinction between body and, 307
— in relation to body, 236, 585
— — to life, 231
— — to matter, 549
— interactions of body and, 223, 231
— nature of, 308, 456
— parallelism of body and, 338
— role of, in organic evolution, 214
Minerals in rocks, 819
Miners' Federation of Great Britain, 676
Mines, nationalisation of, 676
Miniature painting in the Middle Ages, 947
Minkowski, conception of velocity of light, 101
— explanation of relation between events, 100
— four dimensional universe of, 100
— on interval as distance, 101
Minoan civilisation, 779
— pottery, 512
Minor scales in music, 1006
Minorities, protection of, 755
— right of complaint to League of Nations, 758
Minuet in music, 1028, 1031
Minus sign in mathematics, 161
Mira (o Ceti), variations in brightness of, 131
Mirabeau on surplus, 598
Mitford, Wm., 795
Mitotic cell division, 213
Mitrochondria, 230
Mixolydian mode in early music, 1049
Moabite stone, 530
Modernisation of primitive regions, 742
Modernism in art, 994
Modes in early music, 1049
Modesty, 401
Modulation in music, 1015, 1019
Mohammedan art, 945
— influence on mediæval chronicle, 784
Mohammedanism and revelation, 80
— intellectual element in, 52
Molecular motion and the "Brownian Movement," 90
Molecules, difference in behaviour of atoms and, 137
— nineteenth century definition of, 88
Moleschott, materialist philosophy of, 37
Molinier, Auguste, 796
Mommsen, Theodor, 796
Monaco, Lorenzo, 954
Monadism in England and Russia, 563
Monadists, spiritual, 544
Monads, Leibniz's theory of, 322
Monarchy, conception of, 707
Money markets, types of, 632
— theory of, 621
— value, stabilisation of, 660
Money-Kyrle, R., 391
Mongol race, characteristics of, 443
— distribution of, 442
Mongolia, Chinese influence in, 460
Mongolian physical characters, 456
Mongolic tribes, 455
Mongolo-Dravidian tribes, 462
Mongoloid man, 460
— tribes, 463
Mongols, 460
— in China, 458
— Northern, 444
— Oceanic, 444, 473
— Southern, 443
Monism, attributive, 544
— Hæckel on, 551
— neutral, 544, 586
— substantial, 544
Monod, Gabriel, 796
Monogametic chromosomes, 275
Monotheism and the Divine, 55
— forms of, 55
Monsoon lands, typical, 832
— vegetation in, 833
Mont St. Michel church, 978
Montaigne, scepticism of, 22
Montesquieu, Baron de, doctrine of separation of powers, 713
— political writings of, 703
Montessori, educational theories of, 344
Montreal Cathedral, 987
Monumentum Ancyranum, 531
Moon, Anaxagoras' explanation of phases of, 14
— degree of degeneration of, 152
— revolution of, round the earth, 150
Moore, G. E., philosophy of, 584
Moral activities and virtues, 410
— activity, 560
— discipline in youth, 404
— education, 411
— effect of rites, 429
— freedom in man, 499
— individuality, 412, 425
— law, imitation the basis of, 420
— masochism, 380
— philosophy synonymous with ethics, 542
— purity, 428
— relations of husband and wife, 418
— sadism, 380
— sanction, external aspects of, 403, 404
— — internal aspect of, 408
— — working of, 410

Morality, difference between primitive and advanced, 404
— effect of customary, on human conduct, 410
— function of reason in, 404
— primitive, 405
— — bibliography of, 430
— raw material of, 399
Morals, Balfour's views on, 564
— politics as branch of, 707
— relation of, to social life, 399
— sex in relation to, 257
Mordven tribe, 451
Morgan, Prof. C. Lloyd, 61
— investigations into animal behaviour, 214
— philosophy of, 581
Morley and the modal system in music, 1049
Morphology, origin of the term, 211
— scope of, 206
Mortgage debentures and bonds, 644
Moseley and atomic numbers of elements, 41
Moslem philosophers, 16, 17
Moslems in China, 459
Mosquitoes as disease carriers, 219, 823
Mosul controversy, 754, 757
Motherhood in primitive races, 414
Mother-right, definition of, 416
— deterioration of, 417
Motion, conception of, 192
— conception of pure, 579
— equations of, 195
— Galileo's conception of, 88
— Galileo's mathematic treatment of, 85
Mountains as frontiers, 850
Mouse, Japanese waltzing, 244
Mozart and the later concerto, 1039
— symphonies of, 1031, 1033
Muhammadans of Bengal, 462
Müller, Johannes, 791
Müllerian ducts, 290, 291
Multiplication in mathematics, 163
Mun, Thomas, 596
Muratori, L. A., 794
Murder of kindred, savage laws against, 428
Murmi tribe, 463
Murray River as boundary, 851
Muruts of Borneo, 444
Muscayans, 480
Museums, Greek vases in, 521
— growth of, 510
Music, analysis of, 1039, 1040
— atonality in, 1045
— bibliographical note on, 1054
— binary structure of, 1026, 1028
— cadence in modern, 1041
— classical tradition in, 1047
— concerto in, 1036
— contrapuntal forms of, 1033
— counterpoint in, 1021, 1033
— dance forms of, 1028
— design in, 1025
— — in modern, 1041
— Discant period in, 1049
— dissonance in, 1042, 1050
— early development of, 1047
— glossary of terms used in, 1006–15
— harmony in, 1010, 1015, 1021
— — in early, 1050
— — in modern, 1041
— modern system of scale in, 1049
— modern problems in, 1040
— modernist attitude towards, 1040
Music, modulation in, 1015, 1019
— New Organum method in, 1048
— note values in early, 1052
— Old Organum method in, 1048
— perfect time in early, 1052
— poetic metres adapted to, 1048
— polytonality in, 1044
— rhythm in, 1008
— — in early, 1052
— rhythmical occurrence of chords in, 1020
— sonata in, 1029
— suites in, 1028
— symphonic form of, 1030
— symphonies in, 1031
— ternary structure in, 1026, 1028
— texture of, 1020
— — of modern, 1040, 1041
— unity in, 1025
— variation form in design of, 1036
Musica ficta, 1050
Musical chords, 1011, 1016
— discord, 1018
— measure, invention of, 1048
— scales, modal system of, 1049
— values, modern destruction of, 1046
Mussolini, Benito, founder of Fascism, 729
Mycenæ, discoveries at, 494
— frescoes in, 512
Mycenæan gems, 526
Mycology, the science of fungi, 205
Myron, sculpture of, 928
Mysticism in science, 591
— meaning of, 546
Mythological thought, transition from, to scientific attitude, 5
Mythology a branch of archæology, 533
— cosmic orderliness of Greek, 5

N

NAGAS, 464
Nahuatlan tribe, 479, 480
Nandi tribe, 471
Napier, invention of logarithms by, 26
Napoleon and the Madeleine, 989
Napoleon III, 720
Narcissism, 375, 383
Narcissistic object love, 387
Nasal Index, 436
Nash, John, 980
Nation, distinction between race, people and, 439
National Debt, 643, 653, 659
— income, 642
— Investment Board, suggested, 696
— Railway Wages Board, 679
— Socialism, 732
Nationalisation of coal mines, 676
Nationalism, allied to Liberalism, 731
— conception of, 729
— economic, 745
— Machiavelli and, 708
Nationality and geography, 851
— definition of, 439
Nations, vitality compelling co-operation between, 763
Natural history, Buffon on, 34
— Pliny the Elder's treatise on, 16
— scope of, 207
— inheritance, 242, 243
— laws, connotation of, 118

Natural phenomena, "law" as term applied to, 5
— selection, Darwin's theory of, 238
— — theory of, 213, 246, 247
Naturalism and evolution, 43
— and religious thought, 77
— definiuon of, 545
— descriptive, 232
Nature, absence of disease in wild, 230, 239
— art as the mirror of, 882
— beauty of, 63
— Bradley's conception of, 554
— identical with reason, 901, 902
— mathematical conception of, 85
— mechanical aspect of, 309
— numerical concepts of, 309
— periodic phenomena of, 198
— philosophical conception of, 59
— study of animate, 222, 224
Naucratis ware, 517
Navigation, development of, 215
Nazca pottery, 920
Neanthropic man, 434, 446
Near East, confusion of races in, 451
Nebulæ, conjectured nature of dark, 149
— evidence against gaseous constitution of spiral, 149
— extra galactic, 143
— galactic, 142
— in Andromeda, 143
— in the Galaxy, 142
— light from spiral, 108
— low densities of, 140
— number of, 143
— spectra of, 142, 143
— spiral, 143
— structure of, 143
— variations in size of, 143
Nebular hypothesis, 32, 149
Nebulium : hypothetical element, 140
Necessitarianism, 544
Negrillos, 444
Negritos, 444, 445
— in New Guinea, 482
— in the Philippines, 483
— of Africa, 473
Negro art, æsthetic sense in, 919
— race, distribution of, 444
— sculpture, 920
Negroes, blood groups among, 438, 439
— characteristics of the true, 445
— confined to tropics, 434
— in Africa, 465, 469
Neo Grec phase in architecture, 989, 991
Neo-Hegelianism, 553
Neo-Kantianism, 548, 553, 568
Neolithic age, pottery of, 488
— art, 917
— pottery, 917
Neon and the quantum theory, 136
Neo-platonism, 13, 15
Neo-Siberians, 455
Neo-transcendentalism, 548
— in Germany, 568
Neptune, discovery of, 38, 115, 117, 119
— in the solar system, 116
— temperature on, 116
Nereid monument, 492
Nero appropriates Greek statues, 507
Nerve-cells in the human body, 230
Nēsiots, 444
Netherlands conflict and historical research, 789
Neumann, work of, on electromagnetism, 39
Neurosis, obsessional, 372
Neutralism, definition of, 544
New Delhi, architectural conception in, 981, 990
New Guinea, pygmies of, 482
New Mexico, pottery of, 489
New Testament, discovery of Greek, 787
New York, cause of growth of, 856
— — Telephone Building, 996
— — Woolworth Building in, 995
Newars, 464
Newlands, periodic arrangement of elements, 41
News agencies for foreign news, 750
Newspapers, foreign correspondents of, 750
Newton and Greek excavation, 492
Newton, Sir Isaac, 814
— and the atomic theory, 25
— and the law of gravitation, 24, 25, 103, 118, 192
— and the mechanical problems of astronomy, 24
— and the theory of light waves in ether, 96
— corpuscular theory of light, 96
— discoveries of, the key to development of science, 215
— experiments of, on light, 26
— forces of attraction and repulsion, 84
— invents the infinitesimal calculus, 26
— makes distinction between inferences and hypotheses, 26
— mathematical description of nature, 86
— theories of Einstein and, contrasted, 84
Nicholson, discovery of satellite of Jupiter by, 117
Niebuhr, B. G., 795
Nietzsche, philosophy of, 36
Nightingale, R., 762
Nile, control of the, 536
— importance of the, 972
Nilo-Hamites, 470
Nilotes, 445, 466, 471
Noegenesis, principles of, 336
Nominalists, 17
Nordic race of man, 434
— composition of, 440
— early history of, 446
— temperament of, 448
Norman architecture, 977
North American Indians, blood groups among, 438, 439
Norton, H. K., 762
Nose, Armenoid, 436, 442, 455
— Jewish, 436
— shape of, as criterion of race, 436
Notes in musical scales, 1006
Notre Dame in Paris, 983
Novæ, explanation of variations of, 131
Noy, William, 790
Nubians, 467
Number, early conception of, 159
— origin of, 156
Numbers, derivation of, 159
— fractional, 165
— imaginary, 179
— integral, 165
— irrational, 167
— negative, 167, 171
— positive, 167
— square roots of, 165
Numeral system adopted by Arabs, 19

Numerals, invention of system of, 19
Numerical notation derived from Hindus, 159
Numismatics, study of, 526
Nursing impulse, 401
Nutrition, problem of, 218
Ny Carlsberg collection of sculpture, 510

O

Oases in deserts, 835
Occasionalists, psychological theories of, 319
Oceania, ethnology of, 482
Oceanic Mongols, 473
— Negroes, 445
Odours, Galileo's conception of, 87
Œdipus complex in psycho-analysis, 389
Oersted, work of, on electromagnetism, 39
Ohm and the laws of electric circuits, 173
— work on electricity, 40
Oil trade, international aspect of, 743
Old-age pensions, 653
Old Bailey, dome of, 985
Olympia, excavation of, 495
Olympic Games, influence on Greek art, 927
Omar Khayyam's treatise on mathematics, 19
Ontario, control of power supply of, 677
Ontogeny, definition of, 209
— in relation to racial evolution, 211
Ontological argument for existence of God, 56
— idealism, 546
— problems and solutions, 543
Ontology, definition of, 542
— significance of, 543
— spiritualist, 567
Oology, the study of eggs, 205
Optics in the seventeenth century, 25
Orang-Iban tribe, 462
Orang-Maláyu tribe, 460, 461
Orbits "forbidden" to electrons, 140
Orchard, Dr., 723
Orchestration and counterpoint, 1022
Order, conception of, 5
Organic evolution, 231
— — definition of, 236
— — nature of, 236
— — survey of, 248
— substances, vital force of, 41
Organism, analysis of, 206
— chemical processes in the, 232
— entelechy in the, 567, 575
— evolution of the, 226
— factors resident in, 232
— function of the, 207
— intricacy of the, 229
— multiplication of the, 227
— philosophy of, 583
— physical processes in, 232
— physiological character of, 236
— psychoid in the, 575
— origin of, 208
— transcendence over mechanism, 233
Organisms as links between past and future, 225
— cellular structure of, 211
— characteristics of, 225, 226
— transcendence over mechanism, 225
— unit characters in, 244
— work of Linnæus on, 210
Organogenesis, 208
Organs, animal, function of, 207
— correlation of, in the body, 210
Orinoco basin, tribes of, 481
Orion and star streams, 123
Ornithology a branch of biology, 205
Orthognathism, 436
Osmanli Turks, 447
Osmosis, study of, 213
Östberg, Ragnar, 1001
Ostwald, W., books of, 552
— theory of energy, 551
Ostyak tribe, 444, 455
Othello, inspiration in, 872
Otto, Rudolph, 52, 73
Otto of Freising, 784
Outbreeding, tendency of, 248
Outcrossing, effect of, 262
Ovarian tissue, implantation of, 283
Ovariectomy, effects of, 296, 297
Ovaries of female animals, 267
Ovary, hormone function of, 299
Owen, Robert, 673
Ownership in industry, 669
Oxidation processes, discovery of, 211
Oxygen, discovery of, 33, 211
— in sun's corona, 126

P

Paine, Tom, 715, 716
Painting at the end of the Middle Ages, 945
— attitude of average citizen towards, 910
— Chinese, 934
— compared with literature, 904, 905
— — with poetry, 882, 905
— dual nature of, 952
— Dutch, 962
— essential difference between sculpture and 930
— Impressionism in, 964, 965
— in Greek art, 930
— in the Dark Ages, 947
— inception of, 910
— Indian, 940
— non-æsthetic modern, 965
— of Aurignacian man, 915
— Rajput school of, 941
— realistic, in Flanders, 948
— study of Greek, 511
Palacky, Bohemian historian, 797
Palæanthropic man, 434
Palækastro, excavations at, 504
Palæolithic age, drawings of, 488
— — duration of, 433
— — flints of, 487
— art, 915
— period of music, 1047–9
Palæontology, foundation of, 42
— scope of, 208
Palæo-Siberians, 455
Palais de Justice in Paris, 989
Palestrina and the modal system in music, 1049
— harmony of music of, 1051
Paley, argument for an intelligent Creator, 60, 230
Palgrave, Sir Francis, 796
Pamir mountaineers, 441
Panathenaic amphoræ, 525
Paniyan tribe, 446, 462
Panlogism, definition of, 544
Panpsychism of Leibniz, 322
Pantheism and the Divine nature, 71

Pantheism, conceptions involved in, 55
— definition of, 67, 545
— objections to, 55
— Stoic, 13
Paparrigopoulos, Greek historian, 797
Pappus, contributions to science, 13
Papuans, 482
Paracelsus, scientific methods of, 21
Parallelism, Euclid's postulate as to, 188
— in human consciousness, 78
— nineteenth century views on, 189
— of mind and body, 338
Paramæcium, mating of, 256, 261
Parapraxia, meaning of, 355
Parasitism, 224
Parasitology, 205
Parental instinct, 401
— love for children, 388
Pareto, V., on economic equilibrium, 595, 607, 614
Paris, Matthew, 784
Parliamentarism, decay of, 733
Parliaments, future of, 735
Parmenides, teaching of, 7
Parthenegenesis in animals and plants, 260
Parthenon, 491, 492, 974
Pascal demonstrates accuracy of the barometer, 26
— mathematical theory of probability formulated by, 26
Passacaglia in music, 1038
Passions, restraining of, 430
Past, enregistration of, in the present, 228
— relation between future and, 225
Pasteur, discovers micro-organisms of disease, 42
— germ-theory of disease, 215, 219
— preparation of attenuated toxins, 42
— work of, on bacteria, 41, 213
— — on biology, 210
Patagonians, 482
Pathology of sex, biological aid in, 221
Patkanoff, 455
Patriotism, modern, synonymous with world-intercourse, 771
Patristic literature, 16
— philosophy, 314
Pattern in music, 1013
Paulus Orosius, 783
Pavlov on "conditioned reflexes," 234
— work of, on behaviourism, 329
Pazzi Chapel in Florence, 980
Peace, associations for fostering, 762
— League of Nations' work for, 757
— scope of, 764
Pearl on sex ratio, 301
— work of, on biometrics, 214
Pearson, Professor Karl, 214, 775
Pedigrees, study of, 208
Pedology, importance of, 822
Peirce, C. S., 576
Peking man, 432
Peloponnesian War, 705
Pennsylvania Railway Station, 989
Penrose, study of the Parthenon, 492
Pentateuch, Jahvist sections of, 779
People, distinction between nation, race and, 439
Perception, antithesis between thought and, 309
— theory of, 308
Perfume industry, 743
Pergamon, excavation of, 505
Pericles as magistrate, 706
Period in music, 1010
Periodic functions, 198
Perret, A. & G., 1000
Perrine, discovery of satellites of Jupiter by, 117
Perris, G. H., 744
Perrot, historical writings of, 792
Persecution, tendency to, 405
Persia, migration of Athenian philosophers to, 16
Persian inscriptions, 491
— Tajik, 441
Persians, 452
Personalism in psychology, 342
Personality, activities making for, 423
Perspective in art, 957
Pertz, G. H., 798
Peru, Inca in, 480
Peruvian art, 920
Petitot, historical work of, 797
Petrie, Sir Flinders, discovers Egyptian pottery, 512
Petrologist and study of rocks, 818
Petronius Arbiter, 966
Petty, Sir William, 596, 600
Pharaohs and art, 921, 923
Pheidias, sculpture of, 928
Phenomena, laws of, 558
Phenomenalism, 558
Phenomenology, 548, 568, 572
Philippine Negritos, 483
Philo Judæus, 13, 17
"Philosopher's stone," 15
Philosophers, doctrines of Eleatic, 7
— Jewish, 17
— Moslem, 16, 17
Philosophic Radicals, school of, 716
— thought, appearance of, 5
Philosophical theories of religion, 51
Philosophy, antagonism between science, theology and, 44
— anthropology in relation to, 429
— beginnings of Greek, 308
— behaviourist, 399
— bibliography of recent and contemporary, 592
— biology in relation to, 225
— characterisation of types of, 547
— Cicero's writings on, 15
— concord between science, theology and, 589
— differentiation of, from science, 26, 542
— effect of loss of Greek, 12
— — of Reformation on, 21
— — of Renaissance on, 21
— first exponent of Neo-Kantian, 569
— in the Middle Ages, 16
— in the seventeenth century, 26
— in the eighteenth century, 30
— in the nineteenth century, 34
— influence of new physics on, 549
— Kant's critical, 322
— of beauty, 542
— of history, 783
— of law, 543
— of organism, 583
— of religion, bibliographical note on, 82
— — definition of, 49
— — scope of, 49
— of the State, 543
— of the unconscious, 36
— Patristic, 314
— political, 703
— post-Aristotelian, 12

Philosophy, progress in, 589
— Scottish "common sense," 321
— separation of psychology from, 306
— three branches of, 542
— types of, 543
Phlogiston theory of Stahl, 33
Phobias, irrational, 428
Phœnician alphabetic writing, 530
Photosynthesis, origin of, 211
Phrase in music, 1009, 1025
Phrenology, 32
Phrygian mode in early music, 1049
Phylakopi, excavations at, 504
Phylogeny, definition of, 209
— in relation to individual development, 211
Physical characters, significance of, 436
— geography, 816
— maps, 817
— processes in the organism, 232
— science and the prediction of phenomena, 110
— — history as a, 802, 803
— space not finite, 191
Physics and mathematical methods, 85
— and the scientific method, 84
— as an ideal science, 84
— astronomy in relation to, 114
— beginning of, 84
— development of, 215
— early recognition of value of, 216
— explanations of phenomena, 84
— in the eighteenth century, 32
— in the nineteenth century, 39
— international aspect of, 750
— origin of science of, 86
— place of, among concrete sciences, 204
— primary entities in, 85
Physiocratic analysis of value, 599
Physiocrats and economic science, 596
— French, 597
Physiology, Galen the initiator of experimental, 209
— relation of, to general anthropology, 398
— the study of function, 207
— vegetable, 211
Piccolomini, Æneas Sylvius, 786
Pickering, W. H., discovery of satellite of Saturn by, 117
Pictorial images, hypnotic influence of, 912
Pierpont Morgan Library, 989
Pigou, Prof. A. C., and economic *laissez-faire*, 616
Piltdown man, 432, 434, 810
Pinturicchio, decorations of, 951
Pirenne, Belgian historian, 797
Pisano, Giovanni, 951
Pisano, Niccolo, 951
Pituitary gland, 298
— infantilism, 299
Pius II, Pope, 786
Planck, Max, quantum theory of radiant heat, 93
Planets, age of, 152
— Einstein's theory and the, 104
— minor, in solar system, 117
— relation of comets to, 118
— surface conditions of, 116
Plants, evolutionary trends in higher, 240
— leafing in relation to flowering in, 240
— mental life of, 231
— naturalisation of, 218
— resemblance to animals in vital processes, 212
Plants, seed-bearing, 243
— souls of, 312
— spore-producing, 212
Plateau regions of the world, 819
Plato and "ideas," 9, 310, 881
— and the existence of God, 57
— and "the good," 10
— and the Greek City-State, 705
— and "the lie in the soul," 428
— and *The Republic*, 704
— comparison of painting and poetry, 882
— conception of beauty, 63
— conceptions of, 9
— condemnation of poetry, 879, 881
— contrasted with Aristotle, 10, 878
— contributions to geometry, 13
— metaphysical theories of, 310
— on immortality, 79
— on mathematics, 158
— on the Divine, 49
— political theories of, 704
— psychological teachings of, 310
— views on sexuality, 266
Platonism, attempt to harmonise Hebraism and, 13
— influence of, on chemical theory, 20
Platyrrhine nose, 436
Pliny the Elder, treatise on natural history, 16
Plotinus and Neo-Platonism, 13
Plough, motion of stars in, 123
Pluralism, attributive, 544
— political, 723, 731
— spiritual, 563
— substantival, 544
Pluralists, spiritual, 544
Plus sign, origin of, 160
Plutarch, *Parallel Lives*, 784
Pluto, discovery of, 115, 119, 121
— discrepancies in movements of, 147
Poetic style in the eighteenth century, 902
Poetical diction, 902
— language, 871
Poetics of Aristotle, 876 *et seq.*
Poetry, allegorical nature of, 898
— Aristotle's classification of, 877, 885
— Aristotle's views on, 880 *et seq.*
— as imitation, 881 *et seq.*
— beauty in, 871, 903
— compared with painting, 882, 905
— — with sculpture, 904
— Croce's conception of, 900
— Dante's views on, 898
— definition of, 871
— Kant's conception of, 899
— lyric, 878
— Plato's condemnation of, 879, 881
— Shelley's conception of, 899
— symbolism in, 898
— the sublime in, 903
— tragic, 886
Points, definition of, 182
Polaris, remote distance of, 131
Political economy changed to economics, 607
— — in France, 597
— — in the nineteenth century, 607
— — origin of, 597
— — theory of value in, 600
— — unifying concept of, 598
— — zenith of, 603
— geography founded by Strabo, 814
— history, 777

Political institutions, international, 763
— method, history as a school of, 805
— organisation, history of, 752
— — of the future, 735
— philosophy, 703
— pluralism, 723, 731
— power of working classes, 673
— precedent, history as a storehouse of, 806
— progress, history as a basis for, 807
— science, 703, 764
— theories after the Reformation, 708
— — basis of, 704
— — Greek, 705
— — in the Middle Ages, 707
— — of the Counter-Reformation, 710
— — Roman, 706
Politics and religion, 708
— art of, 703
— as branch of morals, 707
— bibliographical note on, 737
— class distinction and, 734
— connotation of the term, 808
— effect of the war on, 724
— in Europe after 1848, 720
— in Italy, 728
— *laissez faire* in, 717
— Plato's theories of, 704
— post-war, 725, 733
— psycho-analysis in, 355
— psychological basis of, 704, 721
— union of economics and, 735
Polybius, Greek historian, 780, 793
Polyclitus, architect, 500
Polygnotus, frescoes of, 511
— paintings of, 502
Polygons, Euclid's propositions concerning, 196
Polynesian art, æsthetic sense in, 919
Polynesians, 482, 483
Polytheism and critical intelligence, 55
Polytonality in music, 1044
Pompeii, decorative paintings of, 930
Poor Law problem, 808
Pope, Alexander, 713, 901
Population, decline in, 740
— Malthusian law of, 801
— wealth per head of, 741
Port of London Authority, 677
Ports, geographical importance of, 857
Positivism, Comte's theory of, 65
— definition of, 546
— in Germany, 550
— in the nineteenth century, 37
Post-Aristotelian thinkers, 12
Postal Union, Universal, 753
Posters, painting of, 966
Pottery, discovery of art of, 917
— early Chinese, 932
— geometric style of Greek, 514
— Minoan, 512
— Mohammedan, 945
— Nazca, 920
— Neolithic, 488, 512, 917
— of New Mexico, 489
— Palace style of, 512
Poultry breeding, improvement in, 218
Poussin, painting of, 964
Poverty, causes of, 741
Power and Transport Commission, 677
Pragmatism, definition of, 545
— theories of, 573, 576
Prairies, 841
Prairies, Arctic, 845
Praxiteles, Hermes of, 509
Pre-Dravidian tribes, 445
Preference shares, 644
Prehistory, 398
Presbyterians in England, 711
Present, enregistration of the past in, 228
Pre-Socratic thinkers, 5
Prevost and embryology, 270
Price, Cassel and theory of, 619
— identified with real cost, 613
— in socialised industry, 679
— problem, 659
Priene, excavations at, 505, 531
Priestley and belief in God, 31
— and psychology, 321
— discovery of oxygen by, 33, 211
— materialism of, 31
Primitive godliness, 425
— man, sense of wonder in, 4
— peoples, art of, 918, 919
— races, homes of, 412
— — motherhood in, 414
— regions, modernising of, 742
— religion, effect of, on the inner life, 425
Principle of things expressed as forms, 6
— — as numbers, 6
Prisoners of war, release of, 754
Probability, laws of, 110
— Pascal's mathematical theory of, 26
Proclus and Neo-Platonism, 13
— contributions to science, 14
Procyon, diameter of, 133
Produce, gross and net, 600, 604
Producers' co-operation, ideal of, 666
Producing power in contrast to consuming power, 747
Production, cost of, and rent, 603
— cost of, League of Nations' work on, 760
— financing of, 627
— in advance of demand, 627
— increase in power of, 742
— less important than consumption, 744
— real cost of, 613
Productive efficiency, workers and, 672
Productivity of equatorial regions, 829
— theory of marginal, 612, 614, 616
Profit, Marshall's theory of normal, 617
— qualitative characteristics of, 603
— -sharing in industry, 683
Prognathism as criterion of race, 436
Prohibition problem, 808
Property, attacks on, 631
— changed values of, 630
— virtue of sacrificing, 428
Property-feeling, basis of, 403
Prostitution, limitation of trade in, 755
Protagoras, doctrine of, 9
Protection in trade, 745
Proteins, specificity of, 227
Protista, reproduction of, 259
Protistology a branch of biology, 205
Protons in the atom, 93, 135
— laws governing behaviour of, 109
Protoplasm, early biological work on, 211
— function of, 207
— nature of, 213, 259
— structure of, 207
— the physical basis of life, 227
Protozoa as cause of disease, 219
— Barry's investigations on, 43

Protozoology a branch of biology, 205
Prout and constitution of atoms, 41
Provençal architecture, 977
Psammetichus, 516
Psychic determinism, 356
— factors, 586
Psycho-analysis and analysis of dreams, 354
— and human culture, 355, 392
— and mental processes, 354
— and social sciences, 355
— behaviourism in, 371
— bibliographical note on, 392
— concept of the unconscious in, 357
— condensation in, 367
— development of, 352
— displacement in, 371, 372
— free association in, 353
— Freud's work on, 350
— in anthropology, 355
— in politics, 355
— in psychology, 333
— in the domain of dreams, 369
— — of wit, 368
— meanings of the term, 350
— medical aspect of, 352
— nature of, 350
— Œdipus complex in, 389
— origin of, 334
— over-determination in, 367
— resistance in, 354
— schools of, 350
— sex hormones in relation to, 298
— sex impulses in, 360
— sexual instincts in, 374 *et seq.*
— sublimation in, 372
— super-ego in, 359
— symbolism in, 362
— the " Censor " in, 358
— transference in, 370
Psycho-analytic Congress of 1908, 350
Psycho-biology, 231, 234
Psycho-biosis, 213, 236
Psychoid in the organism, 575
Psychological aspects of sex, 291
— basis of politics, 704
— intuitions expressed in literature, 869
— thought, modern schools of, 328
Psychologists, 331
Psychology, analytical, 350
— and interpretation of conduct, 306
— and mental disease, 307
— and religion, 51
— and the nature of man, 306
— applied to study of animals, 325
— Aristotle on, 311
— as an applied science, 344
— as independent science, 543
— Associationist school of, 321
— atomism and, 309
— beginnings of modern, 318
— behaviourism in, 329
— Berkeley and, 320
— bibliographical note on, 347
— comparative, 327
— conative control in, 337
— contemporary, 307
— definitions of, 306
— Descartes on, 319
— development of contemporary, 337
— dualism in, 308
— Duns Scotus on, 317
Psychology, empirical rise of, 319
— epiphenomalism in, 338
— evolution and, 324
— experimental, 326
— factors influencing contemporary, 321
— formalism in, 330
— Greek philosophy and, 310
— historical development of, 306
— Hormic, 317, 327
— Hume on, 320
— in early Christianity, 314
— in education, 344
— in industry, 345
— in law and commerce, 344, 345
— in medicine, 344
— in primitive man, 307
— in the Middle Ages, 315
— individual, 350, 362
— industrial, 682
— laboratories for study of, 326
— Leibniz on, 321
— Locke on, 319
— metaphysical, 323
— modern era of, 307
— naturalistic attitude in, 44
— need for knowledge of racial, 765
— Occasionalist theories of, 319
— of clothes, 381
— of emotion, 341
— of feeling, 341
— of primitive leaders, 409
— of Society, 722
— periods in growth of, 307
— personalism in, 342
— personalistic, 337
— place of, among concrete sciences, 204
— Plato on, 310
— principle of precision in, 332
— psycho-analysis in, 333
— rationalism in, 319
— reaction-formations in, 372
— relation of, to general anthropology, 398
— St. Augustine on, 314
— St. Thomas Aquinas on, 315
— Scholastic theories of, 315
— separation of, from philosophy, 306
— social, 327, 399, 721
— — and world intercourse, 764
— Socrates on, 310
— Structuralist school of, 321
— tardy recognition of value of, 216
— theoretical conceptions of Freudian, 356
— two-factor theory of, 335
— Wolff on, 322
Psycho-pathology, Janet's work on, 357
— of everyday life, 355
Psycho-physics, growth of, 326
Psychophysiology, growth of, 326
Psychotherapy, 345
Ptolemaic art, 924
Ptolemy and the magnitudes of stars, 121
— astronomical system of, 115
— contributions to science, 13, 19
— Greek astronomy systematised by, 15
Puberty rites, 429
Public Health, International Office of, 755
— — State organisation of, 753
— Services, borrowing for, 643
— — expenditure on, 653
— — socialised, 677
Pueblo Indians, 478

Puelchean tribes, 482
Pugnacity, 403
Punishment, 406
Punnett, Professor, 217
Purcell, *Dido and Æneas*, 1016
Purchasing power, distribution of, 746
Puritanism, rise of, 710
Purity, distinction between moral and ritual, 428
Pygmies, 444, 445, 828
Pyramids of Egypt, 921, 972
Pythagoras and the triangular theory, 157
— contributions to geometry, 13
Pythagorean conception of primary stuff, 6
— conception of spherical earth, 14
— proposition concerning square roots, 166
— school, foundation of, 7
— theorem concerning right-angled triangles, 189

Q

QUANTUM theory applied to atoms, 135
— of light, 94
— of radiant heat, 94
Quartet, musical, 1030
Quesnay, circulation process of, 599
— *Tableau Economique*, 598
Quicherat, Louis, 796
Quichuan race, 480
Quintet, musical, 1030

R

RACE, blood groups in relation to, 437
— class as important as, 440
— criteria of, 434
— definition of, 434
— distinction between nation, people, and, 439
— evolution of, 209
— healthfulness of, need for, 223
— human, 398
— language no criterion of, 439
— study of origin of, 208
— temperament in relation to, 439
Races of man, 440
Radiant energy and quanta, 93
Radiation and the quantum theory, 136
— relations of mass with, 127
Radicals, Philosophic, 716
Radio, educational uses of, 750
Radio-activity, 152
— and atoms, 95
Radium, particles of, 95
— transformation of, 95
Radon and the quantum theory, 136
Raglan, Lord, 453
Railway charges, fixing of, 679
Railways Act of 1921, 679
Rainfall in cool temperate oceanic climate, 840
— in equatorial regions, 827
— in hot desert climate, 834
— in Mediterranean lands, 837
— in tropical climate, 830
— in tropical monsoon climate, 832
— in warm tropical climate, 838
Rajput school of painting, 941
Rajputs, 463
Raphael, paintings of, 953, 958, 959
Rarefaction as transformer of primary stuff, 6
Rashdall, Dr. Hastings, 70
Rathenau, Walther, 698
Ratio, conception of, 188
Rationalisation, dangers of, 681
— in Germany, 680, 681
— of industry, 680
Rationalism, Cartesian, 321
— definition of, 546
— in psychology, 319
Ratzel, F., and modern geography, 816
Ravaisson-Mollien, F., philosophy of, 557
Raw materials, financing of, 629
Rayon industry, 743
Reaction-formations in psychology, 372
Read, F. J., 1006
Realism contrasted with Romanticism, 904
— definition of, 546
— mystical, 562
— varieties of, 549
Realists, 17
Reality and the meaning of life, 64
— characteristic process of, 581
— meaning of, to different minds, 879
— ultimate, 544, 573
Reason, distinction from revelation, 80
— function of, in morality, 404
— in higher animals, 235
— nature identical with, 901, 902
— the prerogative of man, 235
Reasoning, difference between ethical and logical, 404
Réaumur, 208
Record Commission, 794, 798
— Societies, 798
Redi, disproves spontaneous generation, 210
Reflex activities, 234
— mechanism in the living organism, 291
Reflexes, " conditioned," 234
Reform Act of 1832, 716
Reformation and political theories, 708
— effect of, on philosophy, 21
— history of, 788
— in England, and politics, 710
Reformers, intolerance of, 21
Refraction, discovery of law of, by Snell, 25, 26
Refrigeration, uses of, 821
Regent Street, building of, 980
Regional geography, 824
Reid, T., 584
Relativity, astronomy and the theory of, 115
— Einstein's principle of, 192
— electrical phenomena and, 121
— force in relation to, 120
— general, and gravitation, 120
— magnetic phenomena and, 121
— rôle of geometry in restricted, 103
— space in relation to, 120
Religion and immortality, 76
— and intuition of the " Other," 53
— and personal survival, 77
— and politics, 708
— and revelation, 80
— and satisfaction of human needs, 53
— and the Divine Will, 54
— anthropomorphism of, 53
— as aid to civilisation, 749
— belief in relation to, 54
— coerciveness of, 407
— creatureliness in, 52
— dissatisfaction with organised, 64
— effect of primitive, on the inner life, 425

Protozoology a branch of biology, 205
Prout and constitution of atoms, 41
Provençal architecture, 977
Psammetichus, 516
Psychic determinism, 356
— factors, 586
Psycho-analysis and analysis of dreams, 354
— and human culture, 355, 392
— and mental processes, 354
— and social sciences, 355
— behaviourism in, 371
— bibliographical note on, 392
— concept of the unconscious in, 357
— condensation in, 367
— development of, 352
— displacement in, 371, 372
— free association in, 353
— Freud's work on, 350
— in anthropology, 355
— in politics, 355
— in psychology, 333
— in the domain of dreams, 369
— — of wit, 368
— meanings of the term, 350
— medical aspect of, 352
— nature of, 350
— Œdipus complex in, 389
— origin of, 334
— over-determination in, 367
— resistance in, 354
— schools of, 350
— sex hormones in relation to, 298
— sex impulses in, 360
— sexual instincts in, 374 *et seq.*
— sublimation in, 372
— super-ego in, 359
— symbolism in, 362
— the " Censor " in, 358
— transference in, 370
Psycho-analytic Congress of 1908, 350
Psycho-biology, 231, 234
Psycho-biosis, 213, 236
Psychoid in the organism, 575
Psychological aspects of sex, 291
— basis of politics, 704
— intuitions expressed in literature, 869
— thought, modern schools of, 328
Psychologists, 331
Psychology, analytical, 350
— and interpretation of conduct, 306
— and mental disease, 307
— and religion, 51
— and the nature of man, 306
— applied to study of animals, 325
— Aristotle on, 311
— as an applied science, 344
— as independent science, 543
— Associationist school of, 321
— atomism and, 309
— beginnings of modern, 318
— behaviourism in, 329
— Berkeley and, 320
— bibliographical note on, 347
— comparative, 327
— conative control in, 337
— contemporary, 307
— definitions of, 306
— Descartes on, 319
— development of contemporary, 337
— dualism in, 308
— Duns Scotus on, 317
Psychology, empirical rise of, 319
— epiphenomalism in, 338
— evolution and, 324
— experimental, 326
— factors influencing contemporary, 321
— formalism in, 330
— Greek philosophy and, 310
— historical development of, 306
— Hormic, 317, 327
— Hume on, 320
— in early Christianity, 314
— in education, 344
— in industry, 345
— in law and commerce, 344, 345
— in medicine, 344
— in primitive man, 307
— in the Middle Ages, 315
— individual, 350, 362
— industrial, 682
— laboratories for study of, 326
— Leibniz on, 321
— Locke on, 319
— metaphysical, 323
— modern era of, 307
— naturalistic attitude in, 44
— need for knowledge of racial, 765
— Occasionalist theories of, 319
— of clothes, 381
— of emotion, 341
— of feeling, 341
— of primitive leaders, 409
— of Society, 722
— periods in growth of, 307
— personalism in, 342
— personalistic, 337
— place of, among concrete sciences, 204
— Plato on, 310
— principle of precision in, 332
— psycho-analysis in, 333
— rationalism in, 319
— reaction-formations in, 372
— relation of, to general anthropology, 398
— St. Augustine on, 314
— St. Thomas Aquinas on, 315
— Scholastic theories of, 315
— separation of, from philosophy, 306
— social, 327, 399, 721
— — and world intercourse, 764
— Socrates on, 310
— Structuralist school of, 321
— tardy recognition of value of, 216
— theoretical conceptions of Freudian, 356
— two-factor theory of, 335
— Wolff on, 322
Psycho-pathology, Janet's work on, 357
— of everyday life, 355
Psycho-physics, growth of, 326
Psychophysiology, growth of, 326
Psychotherapy, 345
Ptolemaic art, 924
Ptolemy and the magnitudes of stars, 121
— astronomical system of, 115
— contributions to science, 13, 19
— Greek astronomy systematised by, 15
Puberty rites, 429
Public Health, International Office of, 755
— — State organisation of, 753
— Services, borrowing for, 643
— — expenditure on, 653
— — socialised, 677
Pueblo Indians, 478

Roscher (German historian), 799
Rose, H. J., 449
Rosetta stone, 529
Ross, archæological work of, 497
Ross, Professor, 721
Rotary Clubs, International Association of, 749
Rousseau and democratic government, 714
— doctrine of the General Will, 714
— political ideas of, 714
— — writings of, 703
— reaction against, 791, 792
Royal College of Physicians, Edinburgh, 989
Royce, J., philosophy of, 561
Rubber, sources of, 829
Rubens and the Baroque tradition, 962
Rubley, paintings of, 944
Rumford and the caloric theory of heat, 39, 89
— theory of heat as motion, 32, 90
Russell, Earl, philosophy of, 586
Russia and climatic regions, 824, 826
— collective industrialism in, 691
— Communism in, 691
— Communist Party in, 763
— co-operative movement in, 697
— economic dependence on foreign countries, 847
— Five Years Plan in, 691, 692, 694
— franchise in, 727
— monadism in, 563
— politics in, 725
— Soviet system in, 726
Russian art, 944
— Bolshevism, 725
— Co-operative "Centrosoyus," 744
— dual system of government, 726
— Mensheviks, 725
— peoples, 441
— — blood groups in, 439
— Revolution of 1917, 725
Rutherford, Sir Ernest, theory of atomic structure, 93
Rymer, Thomas, 794

S

Saadyah (Jewish philosopher), 17
Saar territory, government of, 755
Sacrifice, economic concept of, 604
Sadistic instincts, 374, 380
Sadler and sex determination, 271
Sagittarius, clusters about, 141
— globular clusters in, 145
Sahara desert, 834
St. George's Hall, Liverpool, 989
St. Gimignano, towers of, 984
Saint-Hilaire, Geoffroy, theories of evolution, 211
St. Jean de Luz Casino, 1001
St. John, Oliver, 790
St. Mark's, Venice, 977
St. Paul's Cathedral, 985, 993
St. Peter's, Rome, 985
St. Sophia, architecture of, 943, 977
Sakai of Malay, 445, 446, 460
Sallust, Roman historian, 781
Samoyedic tribes, 455
Samuel, Book of, 779
Samuel Commission of 1925, 676, 677
Sanchez, scepticism of, 22
Sanctions, 768
Sanctity, profession of, 410
Santal tribe, 462
Santayana, G., philosophy of
Sarabande in music, 1028
Sarcophagi at Sidon, 506
Sardis, excavations at, 505
Sarmatians, art of the, 941
Sassanid art, 943
Satellites of Jupiter, discovery of, 117
— of Saturn, 117
Saturn, degree of degeneration of, 152
— in the solar system, 116
— ring of, 117
— satellites of, 117
Savages, bravery of, 424
— conservatism of, 406
— culture of, 411
— economics among, 421
— education among, 407
— faith among, 407, 426
— fundamental laws of, 405
— group-consciousness of, 422
— infanticide among, 419
— mating process among, 414
— morality among, 405
— punishment among, 406
— religious life of, 421, 428
— self-respect of, 423
— senicide among, 419
— sense of religion in, 428
— — of right and wrong in, 408
— settlement of disputes among, 421
Savana tropical climate, 830
Savings, investments of, 643, 695
— organisation of, 629
— relation between investment and, 622
Savings Banks, 633
Scales, modal system of, 1049
— musical, 1006
Scaliger, Joseph, 783, 787
Scandinavian handicrafts, 534
Scandinavians, 441
Scepticism, definition of, 545
Scheele, discovery of oxygen by, 33
Scheidemann, Herr, 725
Schelling and absolutism, 568
— and idealism, 34
Scherzo in music, 1031
Schiller, Friedrich, on the Thirty Years' War, 791
Schinkel's Museum in Berlin, 989
Schistosomum as cause of bilharziasis, 220
Schleiden, 206
— cell theory of, 43, 211
— rejection of vitalism by, 37
Schleiermacher, conception of religion, 52, 54
Schliemann, archæological discoveries of, 494
Schlosser, Friedrich, 791
Schmidt, Michael, 791
Scholastics and the Divine Personality, 69
— division of, 17
— main motive of, 18
— psychological theories of, 315
Schönberg, Arnold, and atonality, 1045
— compositions of, 1046
School-children, exchange of international visits, 750
Schools of eighth century, subjects taught in, 18
Schopenhauer and absolutism, 568
— Freud contrasted with, 357
— on sex, 257
— pessimism of, 35

Schröder & Co., 645
Schultze, Max, 206
— and sex determination, 271
— work on protoplasm, 211
Schumann, *Etudes Symphoniques*, 1037
Schwann, 206
— cell theory of, 43, 211
— experiments on putrefaction and fermentation, 41
— microscopic investigations of, 37
Schwendener, work on lichens, 213
Science and non-quantitative properties of the world, 86
— and the Churches, relations between, 591
— and the principle of indeterminacy, 590
— antagonism between philosophy, theology and, 44
— as aid to international contact, 750
— concord between philosophy, theology and, 589
— definition of, 775
— development of, after the Renaissance, 214
— differentiation of, from philosophy, 26, 542
— fruit-bearing function of, 215
— history as a, 774
— in modern times, 22
— in service of man, 214
— in the seventeenth century, 22
— in the eighteenth century, 32
— in the nineteenth century, 38
— light-bringing function of, 215
— mediæval, 19
— modern, and the supernatural, 22
— mysticism in, 591
— new concepts of, 111
— monothetic character of, 569
— object of, 214
— of development, 208
— physics as an ideal, 84
— picturability of old concepts of, 112
— political, 703
— psychology as an applied, 344
— pure, the basis of inventions, 215
— relation of, to religion, 563, 564
— Romans and, 15
— ultimate aim of, 597
Sciences, applied, 206, 215
— biological, 205
— exact, 215
Scientific instruments, invention of, 26
— research, foundation of academies for, 26
— terms, mathematical relations of, 112
— thought, appearance of, 5
— utilisation of labour, 681
Scoptophilic instincts, 374, 381
Scotland, geographical divisions of, 853
Scott, Sir Giles, 979, 992
Scottish "common sense" philosophy, 321
— Co-operative Wholesale Society, 744
Sculpture, African, 919
— at the end of the Middle Ages, 945
— attitude of average citizen towards, 910
— Chinese, 933
— compared with poetry, 904
— Coptic, 942
— dual nature of, 952
— effect of church building on, 945
— essential difference between painting and, 930
— German, 946
— Greek, in Italy, 507
— histories of, 510
Sculpture, inception of, 910
— Indian, 940
— Maya, 920
— Mesopotamian, 924
— Mohammedan, 945
— Negro, 920
— non-æsthetic modern, 965
— of Aurignacian man, 915
— of primitive peoples, 918
— religious, 948
— restoration of classical, 508, 509
— Romanesque, 946
— since the Renaissance, 965
— Sumerian, 924
Scutum and star streams, 123
Scythian art, 931
Scythians, 463
Scytho-Dravidian tribes, 463
Sea urchin, development of, 259
Seal-stones, 525
Second International, 763
Secularist theories of Machiavelli, 708
Securities, dealings in, 646
— market, 632
Security Corporations in America, 646
— policy of, 768
Seeley, John, 799, 805, 808
Seignobos, C., 778, 804
Selden, John, 790
Selden Society, 798
Selection a theory in Darwinism, 237
— artificial, 247
— Balfour on natural, 564
— lethal, 247
— natural, 246, 247
— reproductive, 247
— sex, 247
Self-assertion, 361, 402
Self-consciousness, 306, 553, 560
Self-display, 401, 424
Self-indulgence, effect of, 221
Self-protection, 402
Self-restraint, 428
Self-sustenance, 402, 403
Semang tribe, 460
Semites as a race, 440, 442, 452
Semitic inscriptions, 491
— nose, 436
Semple, Ellen Churchill, and modern geography, 815
Senicide among savages, 419
Senior, Nassau, concept of economic abstinence, 604
— economic system of, 717
— on real cost, 612
— on the consumption of wealth, 620
Sensa, object theory of, 585
Sense experience, 311
— perception, mechanical determination of, 308
— — validity of, 309
Sensory processes, 313
Sentence in music, 1009, 1025
Sephardim people, 455
Sequence in harmony, 1013
Sera, fixing of standards for, 755
Servetus, martyrdom of, 21
Seurat, painting of, 964
Sex, absence of, in worms and snails, 265
— act, reflex nature of, 294
— and biology, 255
— behaviour and œstrus, 294

Sex behaviour, effect of stimuli on, 293, 294
— — of the female, 296
— — of the male, 297
— — scientific study of, 291
— bibliographical note on, 303
— biological view of, 257
— biology, analysis of, 258
— cells, elaboration of, 259
— — union of, 260
— chromosomes in relation to, 273 *et seq.*
— complex, 401
— component instincts of, 374
— determination, 267, 271 *et seq.*, 302
— -determining mechanism, 274, 275
— differentiation by embryo, 288
— — theories of, 302
— dimorphism, 265
— early biological theories of, 261
— ethic and Jewish theology, 257
— evolution of, through the animal kingdom, 221
— glands, structure of, 283
— Greek attitude towards, 258
— hormones, 283
— — effect of, on mental development, 298
— — function of, 221
— — in relation to psycho-analysis, 298
— — influence on psychological sexuality, 296
— — psychological effects of, 297
— impulses in psycho-analysis, 360
— in relation to morals, 257
— — to reproduction, 256
— instinct in man, 401
— layman's definition of, 255
— -linked inheritance, 275
— nature of, 254
— origin of, in the individual organism, 267
— pathology, biological aids in, 221
— psychological aspects of, 291
— ratio, 300
— reversal, 285
— scientific attitude to, 254
— search for definition of, 265
— selection, 247
— sociological views of, 257
— system of biological classification, 34
— transformation, 285, 288, 290
Sexes, domestic relations between, 419
Sexual activity, 265
— — and glandular function, 299
— — and reflex action, 293
— — without reproduction, 264
— apparatus, 290
— congress, forms of, 255
— — reflex action in, 294
— desire, sublimation of, 428
— instincts, perversion of, 376
— — types of, 374
— reproduction, mutations in, 263
— — need for regulating, 400
— symbolism, 362
Sexuality and reproduction, 258
— difference between physical and psychological, 296
— of gametes, 265
— of the individual, 265
— Plato's views on, 266
— psycho-analytical theory of, 374
— relative, 266
— reproduction without, 260
— various aspects of, 259
Shakespeare and Bacon controversy, 85
— historical plays of, 794
— inspiration of, 872
— power over language, 872
Shape, fundamental laws of, 180
Shapley, determination of distances of clusters, 146
Share hawking, prohibition of, 646
Shareholders in modern industry, 667
— position of, 669
— rights of, 670
Shares, classes of, 644
Shaw, G. B., religious views in writings of, 66
Shaw, Norman, 989, 990
Shell-Royal Dutch Company, 743
Shelley, conception of poetry, 899
Shells, study of, 205
Shelton Building in New York, 996
Sherrington, work on neural processes, 342
Shilluk tribe, 471
Shipbuilding, psychological study of, 764
Shona peoples, 471
Shooting stars, formation of, 118
Short loan fund, international, 634
— market, 632, 633
Siam, inhabitants of, 460
Sibelius, adherence to older form, 1040
— symphonies of, 1041
Siberia, population of, 455
Sibylline Oracles, 17
Sidney, Algernon, 711
Sidney, Sir Philip, 899
Sidon, archæological work at, 506
Siennese and Byzantine painting, 953, 954
Signorelli, painting of, 958
Silberer, Herbert, and functional symbols, 365
Simon Report of 1930, 808
Sin, savage view of, 407
Sinanthropus pekingensis, 432
Singapore, origin of, 461
Siouan tribe, 478
Sirius, diameter of, 133
— magnitude of, 127
— motion of stars in, 123
Skin colour as criterion of race, 435
Skull, types of, 435
Sky, elements in empty space of the, 140
Slavery, 405
Sleeping sickness, cause of, 219
Slide rules, 179
Sloane, Sir Hans, 510
Smith, Adam, and the theory of money, 621
— and wealth of nations, 596, 597
— economic system of, 599, 717
— on joint stock companies, 667
— on real cost, 604
— on subjective real cost, 612
Smuts, General J. C., philosophy of, 588
Snell, discovery of law of refraction by, 25, 26
Snyder, L. H., on blood groups, 437
Social amalgamation, 423
— anthropology, 398, 766
— Contract, doctrine of, 714, 792
— — sovereignty based on, 712
— Democracy, Marxian view of, 720
— — rise of, 720
— evolution, 236
— habits, 404
— inheritance, 243
— life, relation of morals to, 399
— — scope of, 411

Social life, theory of international, 764
— organisation, study of, 398
— psychology, 399
— — and world intercourse, 764
— — study of, 721
— sciences, psycho-analysis in, 355
Socialism and control of banks, 694
— and development of industry, 674
— and industrial control, 686, 687
— and the co-operative movement, 697
— and the Five Years' Plan, 691, 692
— as alternative to capitalism, 674
— future development of, 735
— in America, 673
— in the nineteenth century, 720
— influence of Guild Societies on, 678
— National, 732
— Trade Unions and, 673
— *versus* Capitalism, 688, 734
Socialist idea of economic organisation, 677
— Party in Europe, 674
— policy, vital questions of, 674, 675
— problems of industrial organisation, 675
— view of incentive to labour, 688
Socialists, Christian, 666
Society, administration of, 703
— distinction between government and, 713
— necessity of, to man, 707
— order the first need of, 711
— primitive economic, 665
— psychology of, 722
— structure of human, 704
Sociologist, main concepts of, 223
Sociology and religion, 51
— naturalistic attitude in, 44
— place of, among concrete sciences, 204
— psycho-analysis in, 355
— the individual in, 398
Sociosphere, nature of, 204
Socrates and ecclesiastical history, 783
— and the inductive method, 9
— Apology of, 860
— as forerunner of Freud, 369
— interpretation of philosophy of, 9
— on literary criticism, 860
— on suggestive healing, 345
— on the Divine, 49
— power of literary creation, 869
— psychological teaching of, 310
Sodium in the sun, 125
Soils, study of, 822
Solar eclipse, Babylonian record of, 14
— motion, direction of, 123
— — measurement of, 123
— spectrum, lines in, 125
— system, 116
— — chance in formation of, 151
— —stability of, 32
— — theory of origin of, 147
— — theory of tidal formation of, 148
Solids and the atomic theory, 89
Soloviev, Russian historian, 797
Solutrian period, cave drawings of, 488
— men of the, 432
Somali people, 442, 467
Somerset House, dome of, 985
Sonata in music, 1029, 1030
Sophists, doctrine of the, 8
— in relation to convention and truth, 8
— scepticism of, 309, 310
Sorel, Georges, 724
Sorley, Professor W. R., 56, 565
Soul, Aristotle's theory of, 312
— biological concept of, 312
— Christian theory of, 315
— immortality of the, 314, 317, 323
— passions of the, 341
Sound, Chladni's study of, 33
— Hawksbee's experiments on, 33
— wave theory of, 95
South America, ethnology of, 480
— plateaux in, 819
South Sea Islanders and reproduction, 257
Southey, Robert, 792
Soviet Russia, work of economists in, 622
— system of government, 726
Sozomen and ecclesiastical history, 783
Space and general relativity, 120
— conception of, 579
— cosmic rays in, 141
— curved, 191
— Einstein's view of absolute, 111
— extension of bodies in, 181
— hypothesis of finite, 108
— metrics of, 190
— physical, not finite, 191
— question of the infinity of, 107
— theory of curved, 107
— tridimensional, 320
Space-time, conception of, 579, 583
— metrical properties of, 104, 105
— relation of events, 100
Spain, humanistic historiography in, 787
— Moors introduce philosophy into, 16
— social historiography in, 789
Spallanzi, experiments of, on spontaneous generation, 34
Spanish archives published, 798
— art in the eighteenth century, 964
Sparta, excavations in, 504
— vases from, 517
Spearman and conative control, 337
— and intelligence tests, 335
— and principles of noegenesis, 336
Species affinity, of, and evolution, 43
— origin of, 248
— unique, 248
Specificity in Nature, 227
Spectra of atoms, 135
— of nebulæ, 143
Spectral absorption lines in sunlight, 126
Speculation, economic function of, 646
Speed, conception of, 192
Spencer, Herbert, 721
— and associationism, 328
— and the principle of evolution, 801
— Darwinian theory applied by, 325
— evolutionary philosophy of, 37
— on the object of science, 214
— positivism of, 38
— psychological theories of, 325
— theory of heredity, 243
Spencerian scheme of concrete sciences, 204
Spermatozoa, discovery of, by Leeuwenhoek, 210
— transference of, 256
Spermatozoon, discovery of, 268
Spinoza, 18, 231
— and politics, 710
— and the existence of God, 57, 319
— *Ethics* of, 867
— naturalism of, 28

Spinoza, pantheism of, 28, 55
— philosophy of, 28
Spirits, plurality of, 544
Spiritual activity, 557
— life, Eucken on the, 571
— reality, 559
— uncleanness, primitive methods of avoiding, 428
Spirogyra, sex of threads of, 265
Spontaneous generation, Büchner's theory of, 37
— Harvey's views on, 210
— Redi disproves, 210
— Spellanzi's experiments on, 34
Square roots of numbers, 165
Stahl, phlogiston theory of, 33
Stained glass windows, 947
Standard Oil Companies, 743
Star magnitudes, standard distance for, 127
— spectra, analysis of, 127
— — variations in intensity of, 128
— streams, direction of, 123
Starkweather and sex determination, 271
Starling, work on hormones, 213
Stars and infinite space, 107
— and the galactic plane, 122
— and the planetary system, 128
— apparent brightness of, 122
— apparent diameter of, 133
— binary systems of, 129
— brighter than visual magnitude, 122
— calculated temperatures of, 128
— calculation of radiant emission from, 133
— cepheid type of, 130
— colour index of, 132
— composition of great, 134
— differentiation of, 121
— distribution of, 122
— division of, 127
— dwarf, 127
— early, 129
— eclipsing, 130
— fixed, 123
— giant, 127, 129
— gravitation and, 119
— increase in masses of, with temperature, 129
— luminosity of, 127, 130, 139
— magnitudes of, 121, 124
— main sequence of, 127
— masses of, 128
— measurement of linear motions of, 124
— — of radiant heat of, 133
— motions of, in relation to each other, 128
— nature of the, 132
— outflow of radiation from, 150
— period-luminosity relation of, 131
— photographic determination of temperature of, 132
— physical state of, 132
— proper motions of, 123
— radiation pressure in the, 139
— radiations of, 133
— sequence of giant, 130
— series of, 127
— spectra of, 133
— sun compared with other, 127
— temperatures of spectral classes, 133
— — within the, 133
— variable, 130
— variation in light of, 130
State and Church, 707
— characteristics of the modern, 752
State, Communist idea of, 725
— definition of the, 752
— functions of the, 752
— metaphysical theory of, 718
— philosophy of the, 543
— system, theory of, 768
States, co-operation of foreign, 753
— diplomatic relations between, 761
— inter-relationship of, 764
— modern conception of relations between, 768
— no longer separate units, 764
Stature as criterion of race, 435
Steam engineering, Watt's discoveries in, 32
Steele, Sir R., 713
Steen, Jan, 962
Steenstrup, Danish historian, 212, 797
Steer, impressionistic work of, 965
Stein, work on German history, 797
Steinach, study of homosexuality, 296
— work on hormones, 285
Stellar disc, measurement of, 134
— parallax, discovery of, 38
Stensen, views on generation, 268
Steppes, 841
Sterilisation, effects of, 264
Stern, W., on personalism, 343
Stevens, Malet, 1001
Stevenson, R. L., on the reality of the world, 226
Still-births, sex ratio among, 301
Stock Exchange, functions of, 646
Stockholders, *see* Shareholders.
Stockholm, modern buildings in, 1001
Stocks, accumulation of, 627
Stoic pantheism, 13
Stoics and determinism, 314
— doctrines of the, 12, 13
Strabo, 16, 814
Straffa, P., 601
Stravinsky and polytonality, 1045
Strikes in industry, 686
Structuralist school of psychology, 321
Structure, cellular, 211
— resemblance in, 211
— study of, 206
Struggle a theory in Darwinism, 237
Stuart's drawings of Athens, 491
Stubbs, William, 797, 798, 804
Stuckley, Viscount, 630
Sturzo, Don, 729
Sublimation in psycho-analysis, 372
— of sexual desire, 428
Subsistence, conception of cost as, 601
Substance of things, ultimate, 5
Substantialism, ontological, 543
Subtraction in mathematics, 162
Sudan tropical climate, 830
Sugar, syntheais of, 219
Suggestion expressed in literature, 869
— in healing disease, 345
Suites, musical, 1028
Suk tribe, 471
Sullivan, Louis, 997
Sumerian art, 537, 924
— inscriptions, 491
— people, life of, 538
Sun, angular daily motion of, 125
— application of terrestrial physics to phenomena of, 138
— calcium in atmosphere of, 126
— cause of opacity of disc of, 139
— compared with other stars, 127

Sun, comparison of star diameters with, 134
— corona of the, 126
— density of the, 139
— estimated age of the, 153
— heat from the, 124
— identification of elements in, 125
— loss of mass, by radiation, 141, 150
— magnetic effect of, on the earth, 126
— — field of, 126, 139
— magnitude of, on stellar scale, 127
— nature of the, 124
— periodicity of the, 125, 126
— photosphere of the, 126
— prominences of the, 126
— radiation of energy by, 127
— rate of vibration of atoms on, 105
— relative mass of, 116
— — motion of, 123
— sodium in the, 125
— spectrum of light from, 125
— spots on the, 125
— — temperature of, 138
— strata of, 126
— temperature of the, 132
— theories of radiation of, 126
Sunlight, spectral absorption lines in, 126
Super-ego, concept of, 359, 380
— Freud on the, 385
— God and the, 391
— narcissism and the, 383
— nature of the, 385
Supermanliness, 425
Supermen, Nietzsche's prediction of, 36
Supernatural power, 410
Supernaturalism, definition of, 545
Supplies, international organisation of, 745, 748
Surface, definition of, 181
— dimensions of, 181
Surplus, conception of, 598
— distinction between cost and, 599
— Physiocratic concept of, 605
Surtees Society, 798
Survival, factors determining, 247
Suspicion of foreigners, 769
— the basis of war preparations, 769
Suto-Chwana tribes, 471
Swahili tribe, 472
Swammerdam and the study of insect life, 210
— views on generation, 268
Sweden, modern architecture in, 1001
Swift, Dean, 713
Sybel, German historian, 796
Symbiosis, definition of, 243
— recognition of forms of, 213
Symbolism, sexual, 362
Symbols, material and functional, 365
Symphony, movements of musical, 1031
Syndicalism, 723, 731
Syracuse coins, 528
Syria, migration of Athenian philosophers to, 16

T

TABOOS, 406, 410, 417, 428
Tacitus, historical writings of, 782
T'ai of Burmah, 459
Taishi, Prince Shotoku, 456
Tajik of Persia, 441, 452
Tamils, 442
Tapuya tribes, 481
Taranchi tribe, 456
Tartars, 456
Tasmanians, 482
Taas news agency, 750
Taurus cluster, motion of, 123
Taxation, dangers of excessive, 658
— distribution of, 658
— of commodities, 656, 657
— of income, 655
— purpose of, 628
— State revenue from, 654
Taxonomy, foundation of, 210
— the study of classification, 206
Tayga, inhabitants of, 455
Taylor, A. E., philosophy of, 566
Technology, scope of, 397
Tegea, excavations at, 502
Teggart, Professor F. J., 775
Tehuelche tribes, 482
Teleological argument for existence of God, 60
Teleology, definition of, 545
— dynamic, 575
Telescope, invention of the, 26
Telesio, foundation of academy by, 21
Tell-el-Amarna, frescoes at, 511, 535
Temperament in relation to race, 439, 440
— moral estimate of high-strung, 410
Temperate climate, continental, 841
— — cold, 844
— — cool oceanic, 839
— — desert, 843
— — of the East coasts, 842
— — warm, 838
— deciduous forests, 840
— grasslands, 841
Temperature, absolute zero of, 90
— in cool temperate oceanic climate, 840
— in equatorial regions, 827
— in Mediterranean climate, 837
— in temperate continental climate, 841
— in the universe, range of, 90
— in tropical climate, 830
— in warm temperate climate, 838
— movement of the universe towards uniform, 109
Temple at Ellora, 940
Temples of Greece, 973
Tenebrosi, school of the, 961
Tenement dwellings, 999
Tengbom, Ivar, 991, 992, 1001
Tenos, pilgrimages to, 500
Terra-cottas, study of, 529
Tertullian, attitude towards philosophy, 16
Testicular tissue, implantation of, 283
Texture in music, 1020
Thales of Miletus, 780
— conception of primary stuff, 6
— contributions to geometry, 13
Theatres, modern continental, 999
Theban legends on vases, 523
Theism and the Divine nature, 71
— conceptions involved in, 55
— contrasted with agnosticism, 64
— definition of, 56, 545
— Kant and arguments for, 61
— philosophical, 68
Theodoret and ecclesiastical history, 783
Theology and the philosophy of religion, 49
— antagonism between science, philosophy and, 44

Theology, concord between science, philosophy and, 589
— natural, 58
Theon the astronomer, 16
Theophilus, Bishop, 16
Theophrastus, botanical work of, 12
Thermodynamics, Helmholtz and the First Law of, 39
— Kelvin and the Second Law of, 39
Thermometer, invention of, 26
Thermometric scales, 26
Thierry, J. N. A., 792
Third International, 763
Thomas Aquinas, St., and belief in God, 56
— — and the existence of God, 57
— — and the problem of evil, 75
— — on human societies, 707
— — on religion, 50
— — on revelation, 80
— — psychological teachings of, 315
— — teaching of, 18
Thomas, Bertram, 453
Thomistic conception of human nature, 317
Thomson, Sir J. J., electrical decomposition of atoms, 92
— on matter, 590
Thorwaldsen, restoration of Greek sculpture, 509
Thought, aim of, 557
— antithesis between perception and, 309
— expressed in literature, 869
— human, in ancient times, 4
— mediæval, and the Church, 21
— — subordination of, to authority, 21
— mythological stage of human, 5
— philosophic, appearance of, 5
— reality of, 559
— scientific appearance of, 5
— transition from mythological to scientific, 5
Thrasymedes of Paros, 501
Thucydides, Greek historian, 780, 793, 808
Thury on sex ratio, 300
Thyroid deficiency in the body, 235
— gland, 298
Thyroxin, discovery of, 212
Tiahuanaco, ruins of, 480
Tibet, ethnology of, 460
Tibetans, 443
Tibu tribe, 467
Tiepolo, painting of, 964
Tihuanaco, sculpture from, 920
Time and the universe, 151
— as a relative concept, 100
— conception of, 579
— de Sitter's theory of, 108
— in music, 1008
— lapse, 99
— scientific concept of, 108
— sequence, 152
— theory of curved, 107
— unity of, in drama, 887
Tintoretto, painting of, 961
Tiryns, frescoes at, 512
Tissues, properties of, 207
Titanium lines in star spectra, 128
Toala of the Celebes, 445
Toland, materialism of, 31
Toltec tribes, 479
Tombs, Attic, 531
— Egyptian, 534, 921
— Sidonic, 506
Tonic in music, 1006
Tonking, inhabitants of, 460
Topographical maps, 818
Topography and geological structure, 818
— as part of geography, 816
Torrey, Henry, 797
Torricelli, invention of the barometer by, 26
Totemism, definition of, 416
— origin of, 415
— rituals of, 377
Tout, T. F., 797
Townley marbles, 510
Trade Boards, 686
— free, 745
— protection in, 745
— Unionism, effect of on industry, 673
— — in America, 698
— Unions and Socialism, 673
— — and welfare work, 685
— — effect of the war on, 724
— — growth of, 723
— — in Russia, 727
— — International Federation of, 749
— — organisations of, and League of Nations, 760
Traditions, contact between different, 751
Traffic Authority, projected, 697
— Combine for London, 676
Tragedy, Aristotle's definition of, 887 *et seq.*
— Milton's view of, 871
— Plato's charge against, 890
Transcendentalism, definition of, 546
Transference in psycho-analysis, 370
Transport, organisation of, 741
Transposition in harmony, 1015
Treaty system between nations, 761
Trevelyan, Professor G. M., 774
Triangles, postulates as to right-angled, 189
— origin of theory of, 157
Tribal activities, 412
— disputes, settlement of, 421
— law, instruction in, 407
— — of blood revenge, 415
— marriage laws, 414
— relationships, 422
— society *versus* class system, 406
— virtues, 420
Tribalism, war the basis of, 422
Tribe, definition of, 439
Trigonometry, popular conception of, 156
Trinity, doctrine of the, 74
Trio, musical, 1030
Tristan and Isolde, opening bars of, 1016
Triumvirates, 706
Tropical climate, 830
— depression, cause of, 220
— grassland, 830
— medicine, 759
— monsoon climate, 832
Tropistic activities, 234
Trout breeding, improvement in, 218
Troy, discovery of site of, 494
Trusts, 743
— international, 746
Truth as ultimate value, 547
— human quests for, 4
Tschermak and the theory of inheritance, 244
Tsetse fly as disease carrier, 219
— belt in Africa, 823
Tsoneca tribe, 482
Tsonekan tribes, 482

Tuareg race, 442, 467
Tugwell, R. G., 622
Tundra, inhabitants of, 455
— lands, 845
Tungus tribe, 444, 456, 458
Tungusic tribe, 455
Tupi tribes, 481
Turkana tribe, 471
Turkestan, inhabitants of, 456
Turki Moslems of Kansu, 459
— peoples in Siberia, 456
— race, 441, 452
— tribes in China, 458
Turkic tribe, 455
Turkish law of antiquities, 504
— peoples, 447, 452
Turko-Iranian tribes, 463
Turkoman people, 456
Tutankhamen, tomb of, 534, 923
Twins in cattle, 287
— types of, 271
Tychism, definition of, 544
Tyndall, work on biology, 210
Typhus, League of Nations fight against, 754

U

UGRO-FINNISH tribes, 450
Unconscious concept of the, 357
— Freud's concept of, 358
— Jung on the, 367
Underwriting, 644, 646
Unemployment, cause of, 672
— Insurance, 653, 658
— international agreement regarding, 756
United States of America. *See* America.
Universal Postal Union, 753
Universality, idea of, 707
Universe, abundance of power in, 228
— Babylonian conception of, 14
— connotation of the word, 72
— decrease of available energy in, 108
— disorganisation of energy of, 109
— Eddington's theory of the, 106
— Einstein's theory of a finite, 107
— end of the, 109
— entelechy of the, 576
— expansion of the, 107
— God and the, 70, 545
— Italian idealists' views on, 72
— material, as subjective conception, 112
— movement of, towards uniform temperature, 109
— origin of the, 109
— past history of the, 109
— physical nature of the, 84
— Riemannian geometry and the, 105
— spirituality of, 587
— time and the, 151
— world-soul and the, 309
Upper Silesian controversy, 754
Ur, archæological discoveries at, 537
— Mesopotamian sculpture found at, 924
Uranus, anomalies in orbit of, 119
— discovery of, 115, 117
— first regarded as a comet, 118
— in the solar system, 116
Urea, chemical synthesis of, 211, 212
Usher, 783
Usury, prohibition of, 708
Utamaro, art of, 938
Utilitarians, 716
Utility, law of diminishing, 610
— theory of marginal, 607
Uzbeg people, 452, 456

V

VACCINATION, discovery of, by Jenner, 34
Vadianus, historical work of, 787
Vaihinger, H., philosophy of, 578
Valla, Lorenzo, 21, 786, 795
Value, confusion between cost and, 600
— definition of real, 604
— experience, Sorley's views on, 565
— extrinsic, 600
— intrinsic, 600
— market, 600
— natural, 600
— theory of, 599
— ultimate, 547
van Beneden, 208
Vanburgh, classical architecture of, 990
van der Weyden, Rogier, 962
Vandyck, portraiture of, 962
van Eyck, Jan, painting of, 962
van Helmont, scientific methods of, 21
van Horne, views on generation, 268
Varenius, Bernhard, geographical work of, 814
Variation a theory in Darwinism, 237
Variations, distinguishing characteristics of, 240
— in heredity, 242
— the raw material of evolution, 238, 239
Vases, designs on Greek, 521
— from Maikop, 931
— preservation and restoration of, 520
— styles of Greek, 517
— — of Italian, 520
— uses of Greek, 525
Vatican galleries, 510
Vaughan Williams, *Towards the Unknown Region*, 1043
Vaulting, discovery of art of, 947
Veblen, Thorstein, 620, 913
Vedda tribe, 446, 462
Vega, diameter of, 133
— magnitude of, 127
Vegetable world, effect of climate on, 821
Vegetation, animal life and natural, 823
— as a factor in geography, 822
— in desert lands, 835
— in equatorial regions, 828
— in Mediterranean lands, 837
— in monsoon lands, 833
— in tropical climate, 831
— in warm temperate climate, 839
Velasquez, art of, 961, 963
Venetian art in the eighteenth century, 964
— school of art, 960
Venus in the solar system, 116
— temperature on, 116
Vergil, Polydore, 786
Veronese, painting of, 961
Vertebrata in the scheme of classification, 207
— varieties of, 229
Vesalius, as biologist, 206, 209
— contributions to science, 22, 214, 215
Vico, G. B., 790
Villari, Italian historian, 797
Viollet, Paul, 796

Virchow, 207, 211, 215
Virgo, spiral nebulæ about, 146
Vitalism, 233
— definition of, 545
— emergent, 585
— theories of, 573
Vitruvius, discovery of works of, 980
— treatise on architecture, 16
Vlacich, Matthias, 788
Vogt, materialist philosophy of, 37
Vogul tribe, 444
Volta, development of electrical work of, 40
— electrical experiments of, 33
Voltaire, historical work of, 791
Voluntarism in the nineteenth century, 35
— definition of, 544
von Baer, K. E., 208, 211, 270
von Boehm Bawerk, E., and economics, 607
von Haller and embryology, 270
von Hugel, Baron F., 77
von Mohl, work on protoplasm, 211
von Ranke, Leopold, 778, 796, 797, 808
von Watt, Joachim, 787
von Webern, Anton, and atonality, 1046
von Wieser, F., and economics, 607
Vorhees, Gmelinand Walker, architects, 996
Votyak tribe, 451

W

Wachagga tribe, 472
Wages in socialised industry, 679
— Marxian theory of, 606
— methods of fixing, 686, 687
Wagner, Otto, 991
Wagner, Richard, 1041
Waitz, German historian, 796
Wales, domestic architecture of, 992
Waley, A., on Chinese painting, 936
Wallace, Alfred Russel, 232
— and the theory of natural selection, 213
Wallas, Professor Graham, 721
Walls, architectural punctuation of, 984
Walpole, Sir Robert, 793
Walras and economics, 607, 612, 614
Waltzing mice, breeding experiments on, 244
War, associations for prevention of, 762
— concept of, 752
— nature of, 768
— prevention of, 757
— State preparation for, 767
— the basis of tribalism, 422
Ward, James, 71, 74, 247, 565
Warm temperate climate, 838
Washington, architectural conception in, 981
Water, constitution of, 33
Waterloo Bridge, design of, 985
Watson, work on behaviourism, 329
Watt, discoveries of, in steam engineering, 32
Watteau, painting of, 964
Wave propagation, equations of, 195
— system as mathematical conception, 94
Ways and Means advances, 642
Wealth, circulation of, 597
— mobility of, 630
— nature of real, 651
— of nations, causes of, 599
Weather, effect of, on man, 820
Webb, Professor Clement, 81, 340
Weber, psychological work of, 326
— work on electricity, 40
Weight, Galileo's conception of, 88
Weismann and the continuity of germ cells, 242
— — of germ-plasm, 225
— and the theory of heredity, 212
— criticism of Lamarck's theory, 243
— on germinal origin of variations, 238
— work on genetics, 213
Weldon, work on biometrics, 214
Welfare work in industry, 685
Wells, H. G., religious views in writings of, 66
Wertheimer and formalism, 331
West African negroes, 470
— blood groups in, 438, 439
West Asiatic Alpine race, 442
Westermarck, Professor, 721
Westman, Carl, 1001
Westminster Cathedral, 977
Wheat, improvement in quality of, 218
— tax on, 657
Wheeler-Bennett, J. W., 760
Wheler's description of Athens, 491
White, Andrew, 797
White, Gilbert, and inter-relations, 213
Whitehall Banqueting Hall, 983
Whitehead, Professor A. N., 56, 59, 73, 583
Whitley scheme of Joint Industrial Councils, 672
Whitman, Walt, 222
Wicksteed on the Ricardian theory of rent, 614
Wilkin, David, 794
Wilkins and Greek excavations, 492
Will as emotion, 341
— explanation of, 309
— psychological work on, 338
Will-acts, experiments on, 342
William of Occam, teaching of, 19
Winckelmann and Greek sculpture, 510
Windelband, W., 548, 569
Wissler, C., on American natives, 475
Wöhler and chemical synthesis of urea, 211
— preparation of organic substances, 41
Wolf, C. F. A., 795
Wolff news agency, 750
— psychological theories of, 322
Wolffian ducts, 290, 291
Wollaston, "equivalents" of, 41
Women, International Council of, 762
— narcissism in, 383, 384
— sex importance of, 419
Women's International League, 762
— suffrage, 716
Wonder-working, 426
Wood, and Greek excavations, 492
Woolley, C. L., 537
Woolworth Building in New York, 995
Words as structure of language, 870
Wordsworth, William, 792
— on poetical diction, 902
Workers and productive efficiency, 672
— international agreement with regard to housing of, 756
— negative power of, in industry, 671
— place of, in socialised industry, 678
— raising of standard of life of, 757, 760
— right of, to strike, 686
Working classes, growth of power of, 673
—hours, regulation of, 686
Works Councils, 672, 679
Workshop Committee, 679
World Alliance of Churches, 762
— climatic regions of the, 824
— geography, 824